

# WEB DEVELOPMENT & DESIGN FOUNDATIONS *with* **HTML5**



TERRY FELKE-MORRIS

10th Edition



# WEB DEVELOPMENT & DESIGN FOUNDATIONS *with* **HTML5**



TERRY FELKE-MORRIS

10th Edition



# Web Development & Design Foundations with HTML5

10th Edition

# Web Development & Design Foundations with HTML5

10th Edition

**Terry Ann Felke-Morris, Ed.D.**

Professor Emerita Harper College



Please contact <https://support.pearson.com/getsupport/s/contactsupport> with any queries on this content

Microsoft and/or its respective suppliers make no representations about the suitability of the information contained in the documents and related graphics published as part of the services for any purpose. All such documents and related graphics are provided "as is" without warranty of any kind. Microsoft and/or its respective suppliers hereby disclaim all warranties and conditions with regard to this information, including all warranties and conditions of merchantability, whether express, implied or statutory, fitness for a particular purpose, title and non-infringement. In no event shall Microsoft and/or its respective suppliers be liable for any special, indirect or consequential damages or any damages whatsoever resulting from loss of use, data or profits, whether in an action of contract, negligence or other tortious action, arising out of or in connection with the use or performance of information available from the services.

The documents and related graphics contained herein could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically added to the information herein. Microsoft and/or its respective suppliers may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described herein at any time. Partial screen shots may be viewed in full within the software version specified.

Microsoft® and Windows® are registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries. This book is not sponsored or endorsed by or affiliated with the Microsoft Corporation.

**Copyright © 2021, 2019, 2017** by Pearson Education, Inc. or its affiliates, 221 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030. All Rights Reserved. Manufactured in the United States of America. This publication is protected by copyright, and permission should be obtained from the publisher prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise. For information regarding permissions, request forms, and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights and Permissions department, please visit [www.pearsoned.com/permissions/](http://www.pearsoned.com/permissions/).

Screen shots, figures, photos and icons reprinted with permission from the Microsoft Corporation; Mozilla Foundation; Terry Felke-Morris; & Terry Ann Morris. This book is not sponsored or endorsed by or affiliated with the Microsoft Corporation. All other photos and figures copyright Terry Felke-Morris & Terry Ann Morris.

Icon credits: Focus on Accessibility: Alexwhite/Shutterstock; Checkpoint, FAQ: FR Design/Shutterstock; Hands-on Practice: Alexwhite/123RF; Focus on Ethics: Alexwhite/Shutterstock; and Website Case Study: FR Design/Shutterstock.

PEARSON, ALWAYS LEARNING, and MYLAB are exclusive trademarks owned by Pearson Education, Inc. or its affiliates in the U.S. and/or other countries.

Unless otherwise indicated herein, any third-party trademarks, logos, or icons that may appear in this work are the property of their respective owners, and any references to third-party trademarks, logos, icons, or other trade dress are for demonstrative or descriptive purposes only. Such references are not intended to imply any sponsorship, endorsement, authorization, or promotion of Pearson's products by the owners of such

marks, or any relationship between the owner and Pearson Education, Inc., or its affiliates, authors, licensees, or distributors.

**Library of Congress Control Number:2019915440**

**ScoutAutomatedPrintCode**



ISBN 10: 0-13-591999-1

ISBN 13: 978-0-13-591999-6

# Preface

*Web Development & Design Foundations with HTML5* is intended for use in a beginning web development course. This textbook introduces HTML and CSS topics such as text configuration, color configuration, and page layout, with an enhanced focus on the topics of design, accessibility, and Web standards. The text covers the basics that web developers need to build a foundation of skills:

- Internet concepts
- Creating web pages with HTML5
- Configuring text, color, and page layout with Cascading Style Sheets (CSS), including the new CSS Flexbox and CSS Grid Layout Systems
- Web design best practices
- Accessibility standards
- The web development process
- Using media and interactivity on web pages
- Website promotion and search engine optimization
- E-commerce and the Web
- JavaScript

A special feature of this text is the *Web Developer's Handbook*, which is a collection of appendixes that provide resources including an HTML5 Reference, Special Entity Character List, CSS Property Reference, WCAG 2.1 Quick Reference, FTP Tutorial, and web-safe color palette.

## New to This Edition

Building on this textbook's successful ninth edition, new features for the tenth edition include the following:

- Updated coverage of HTML5 elements and attributes
- Updated code samples, case studies, and web resources
- Expanded treatment of page layout design and responsive web design techniques
- Chapter 7 has been renamed **Responsive Page Layout**, takes a mobile first approach, and has an expanded focus on new layout systems including CSS Flexible Layout Module (Flexbox) and CSS Grid Layout
- Form layout with the CSS Flexbox and Grid Layout Systems
- Updated reference sections for HTML5 and CSS
- Additional Hands-On Practice exercises

Student files are available for download from the companion website for this textbook at [www.pearson.com/felke-morris](http://www.pearson.com/felke-morris). These files include solutions to the Hands-On Practice exercises, the Website Case Study starter files, and access to the book's companion VideoNotes. See the access card in the front of this textbook for further instructions.

## Organization of the Text

This textbook is designed to be used in a flexible manner; it can easily be adapted to suit a variety of course and student needs. Chapter 1 provides introductory material, which may be skipped or covered, depending on the background of the students. Chapters 2 through 4 introduce HTML and CSS coding. Chapter 5 discusses web design best practices and can be covered anytime after Chapter 3 (or even along with Chapter 3). Chapters 6 through 9 continue with HTML and CSS.

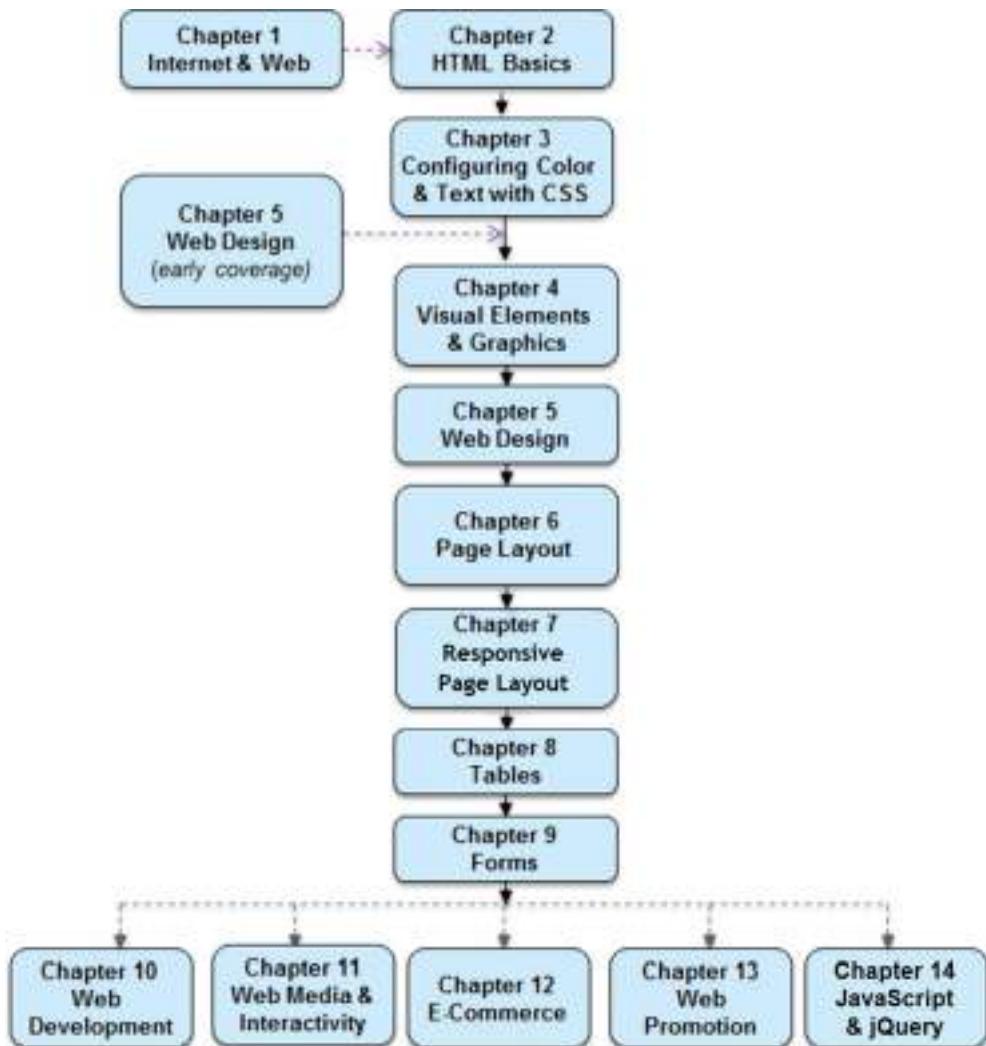
Any of the following chapters may be skipped or assigned as independent study, depending on time constraints and student needs: Chapter 10 (Web Development), Chapter 11 (Web Multimedia and Interactivity),

[Chapter 12](#) (E-Commerce Overview), [Chapter 13](#) (Web Promotion), and [Chapter 14](#) (A Brief Look at JavaScript and jQuery). A chapter dependency chart is shown in [Figure P.1](#).

---

**Figure P.1 This textbook is flexible and can be adapted to individual needs**

---



## Brief Overview of Each Chapter

## Chapter 1: Introduction to the Internet and World Wide Web

This brief introduction covers the terms and concepts related to the Internet and the Web with which Web developers need to be familiar. For many students, some of this will be a review. [Chapter 1](#) provides the base of knowledge on which the rest of the textbook is built.

## Chapter 2: HTML Basics

As HTML5 is introduced, examples and exercises encourage students to create sample pages and gain useful experience. Students use a variety of structural, grouping, and text-level HTML elements to create web pages with hyperlinks. Solution pages for the Hands-On Practice are available in the student files.

## Chapter 3: Configuring Color and Text with CSS

The technique of using Cascading Style Sheets to configure the color and text on web pages is introduced. Students are encouraged to create sample pages as they read through the text. Solutions for the Hands-On Practice are available in the student files.

## Chapter 4: Visual Elements and Graphics

This chapter discusses the use of graphics and visual effects on web pages, including image optimization, CSS borders, CSS image backgrounds, CSS visual effects, and HTML5 visual elements. Students are encouraged to create web pages as they read through the text. Sample solutions for the Hands-On Practice are available in the student files.

## Chapter 5: Web Design

This chapter focuses on recommended web design practices and accessibility. Some of this is reinforcement because tips about recommended website design practices are incorporated into the other chapters.

## Chapter 6: Page Layout

This chapter has been greatly revised for the 10th edition. It continues the study of CSS begun earlier and introduces techniques for positioning and floating web page elements, including CSS two-column page layouts. Coding techniques for CSS sprites, configuring for print, a fixed position navigation bar, a single page website, and parallax scrolling are also introduced. Students are encouraged to create web pages as they read through the text. Sample solutions for the Hands-On Practice are available in the student files.

## Chapter 7: Responsive Page Layout

This chapter has undergone a huge revision for the 10th edition. Chapter 7 has increased in-depth coverage of CSS Flexible Box Layout (Flexbox) and CSS Grid Layout. Chapter 7 continues to introduce CSS media queries and responsive image techniques along with CSS feature queries. Students are encouraged to create pages as they read through the text. Sample solutions for the Hands-On Practice are available in the student files.

## Chapter 8: Tables

This chapter focuses on the HTML elements used to create tables.

Methods for configuring a table with CSS are introduced. Students are encouraged to create pages as they read through the text. Sample solutions for the Hands-On Practice are available in the student files.

## Chapter 9: Forms

This chapter focuses on the HTML elements used to create forms.

Methods for configuring the form with CSS are introduced, including using CSS Grid Layout. HTML5 form control elements and attribute values are introduced. Students are encouraged to create sample pages as they read through the text. Sample solutions for the Hands-On Practice are available in the student files.

## Chapter 10: Web Development

This chapter focuses on the process of website development, including the job roles needed for a large-scale project, the web development process, and web hosting. The topic of file organization is also addressed. A web host checklist is included in this chapter.

## Chapter 11: Web Multimedia and Interactivity

This chapter offers an overview of topics related to adding media and interactivity to web pages. These topics include HTML5 video and audio, CSS transform, transition, and animation properties, interactive drop-down menu, interactive image gallery, JavaScript, jQuery, Ajax, and HTML5 APIs. Students are encouraged to create pages as the topics are discussed. Sample solutions for the Hands-On Practice are available in the student files.

## Chapter 12: E-Commerce Overview

This chapter introduces e-commerce, security, and order processing on the Web.

## Chapter 13: Web Promotion

This chapter discusses site promotion from the web developer's point of view and introduces search engine optimization. A solution for the Hands-On Practice is available in the student files.

## Chapter 14: A Brief Look at JavaScript and jQuery

This chapter provides an introduction to client-side scripting using JavaScript and jQuery. Sample solutions for the Hands-On Practice are available in the student files.

## *Web Developer's Handbook* Appendixes:

This handbook contains appendixes that include resources and tutorials that are useful for students, such as an HTML5 Quick Reference, Special Entity Characters, CSS Property Reference, a WCAG 2.1 Quick Reference, FTP Tutorial, ARIA Landmark Roles, and web-safe color palette.

## Features of the Text

### Well-Rounded Selection of Topics

This text includes both “hard” skills such as HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript ([Chapters 2](#), [3](#), [4](#), [6](#), [7](#), [8](#), [9](#), and [14](#)) and “soft” skills such as web design ([Chapter 5](#)), website promotion ([Chapter 13](#)), and e-commerce ([Chapter 12](#)). This well-rounded foundation will help students as they pursue careers as web professionals. Students and instructors will find classes more interesting because they can discuss, integrate, and apply both hard and soft skills as students create web pages and websites.

### Hands-On Practice

Web development is a skill and skills are best learned by hands-on practice. This text emphasizes hands-on practice through exercises within the chapters, end-of-chapter exercises, and the development of websites through ongoing real-world case studies. The variety of exercises provides instructors with a choice of assignments for a particular course or semester.

### Website Case Studies

There are four case studies that continue throughout most of the text (starting with [Chapter 2](#)). An additional case study starts in [Chapter 5](#). The case studies serve to reinforce the skills discussed in each chapter.

Instructors can cycle assignments from semester to semester or allow students to choose the case study that most interests them. Sample solutions to the case studies are available for download from the Instructor Resource Center at [www.pearson.com](http://www.pearson.com).

## Web Research

Each chapter offers web research activities that encourage students to further study the topics introduced in the chapter.

## Focus on Web Design

Most chapters offer additional activities that explore the web design topics related to the chapter. These activities can be used to reinforce, extend, and enhance the course topics.

## FAQs

In the author's web development courses, she is frequently asked similar questions by students. They are included in this textbook and are marked with the identifying FAQ logo.

---

FAQ

## Checkpoints

Each chapter contains two or three Checkpoints, which are groups of questions to be used by students to self-assess their understanding of the material. A special Checkpoint icon appears with each group of questions.

---

## Checkpoint

### Focus on Accessibility

Developing accessible websites is more important than ever and this textbook is infused with accessibility techniques throughout. The special icon shown here makes accessibility information easy to find.

## Focus on Accessibility

### Focus on Ethics

Ethics issues related to web development are highlighted throughout the textbook and are marked with the special ethics icon shown here.

## Focus on Ethics

### Reference Materials

The appendixes in the *Web Developer's Handbook* offer reference materials, including the HTML5 Quick Reference, Special Entity Characters, CSS Property Reference, a WCAG 2.1 Quick Reference, FTP Tutorial, ARIA Landmark Roles, and Web-Safe Color Palette.

### VideoNotes

These short step-by-step videos demonstrate how to solve problems from design through coding. VideoNotes allow for self-placed instruction with easy navigation including the ability to select, play, rewind, fast-forward, and stop within each VideoNote exercise.

---

#### Video Note

Margin icons in your textbook let you know when a VideoNote video is available for a particular concept or homework problem.

## Supplemental Materials

### Student Resources

The student files for the web page exercises, Website Case Study assignments, and access to the book's VideoNotes are available to all readers of this textbook at its companion website [www.pearson.com/felke-morris](http://www.pearson.com/felke-morris). A complimentary access code for the companion website is available with a new copy of this textbook. Subscriptions may also be purchased online.

### Instructor Resources

The following supplements are available to qualified instructors only. Visit the Pearson Instructor Resource Center ([www.pearson.com](http://www.pearson.com)) for information on how to access them:

- Solutions to the end-of-chapter exercises
- Supplemental Design Activities
- Solutions for the case study assignments

- Test questions
- PowerPoint® presentations
- Sample syllabi

## Author's Website

In addition to the publisher's companion website for this textbook, the author maintains a website at <https://www.webdevfoundations.net>. This website contains additional resources, including review activities and a page for each chapter with examples, links, and updates. This website is not supported by the publisher.

## Acknowledgments

Very special thanks go to all the folks at Pearson, especially Michael Hirsch, Tracy Johnson, Erin Sullivan, Scott Disanno, Carole Snyder, and Robert Engelhardt.

Thank you to the following people who provided comments and suggestions that were useful for this tenth edition and previous editions:

Carolyn Andres—*Richland College*

James Bell—*Central Virginia Community College*

Ross Beveridge—*Colorado State University*

Karmen Blake—*Spokane Community College*

Jim Buchan—*College of the Ozarks*

Dan Dao—*Richland College*

Joyce M. Dick—*Northeast Iowa Community College*

Elizabeth Drake—*Santa Fe Community College*

*Mark DuBois—Illinois Central College*

*Genny Espinoza—Richland College*

*Carolyn Z. Gillay—Saddleback College*

*Sharon Gray—Augustana College*

*Tom Gutnick—Northern Virginia Community College*

*Jason Hebert—Pearl River Community College*

*Sadie Hébert—Mississippi Gulf Coast College*

*Lisa Hopkins—Tulsa Community College*

*Barbara James—Richland Community College*

*Nilofar Kadivi—Richland Community College*

*Jean Kent—Seattle Community College*

*Mary Keramidas—Sante Fe College*

*Karen Kowal Wiggins—Wisconsin Indianhead Technical College*

*Manasseh Lee—Richland Community College*

*Nancy Lee—College of Southern Nevada*

*Kyle Loewenhagen—Chippewa Valley Technical College*

*Michael J. Losacco—College of DuPage*

*Les Lusk—Seminole Community College*

*Will Mahoney-Watson—Portland Community College*

*Mary A. McKenzie—Central New Mexico Community College*

*Bob McPherson—Surry Community College*

Cindy Mortensen—*Truckee Meadows Community College*

John Nadzam—*Community College of Allegheny County*

Teresa Nickeson—*University of Dubuque*

Brita E. Penttila—*Wake Technical Community College*

Anita Philipp—*Oklahoma City Community College*

Jerry Ross—*Lane Community College*

Noah Singer—*Tulsa Community College*

Alan Strozer—*Canyons College*

Lo-An Tabar-Gaul—*Mesa Community College*

Jonathan S. Weissman—*Finger Lakes Community College*

Tebring Wrigley—*Community College of Allegheny County*

Michelle Youngblood-Petty—*Richland College*

A very special thank you also goes to Jean Kent, North Seattle Community College, and Teresa Nickeson, University of Dubuque, for taking time to provide additional feedback and sharing student comments about the book.

Thanks are in order to colleagues at William Rainey Harper College for their support and encouragement, especially Ken Perkins, Enrique D'Amico, and Dave Braunschweig.

Most of all, I would like to thank my family for their patience and encouragement. My wonderful husband, Greg Morris, has been a constant source of love, understanding, support, and encouragement. Thank you, Greg! A big shout-out to my children, James and Karen, who

grew up thinking that everyone's Mom had their own website. Thank you both for your understanding, patience, and timely suggestions! And, finally, a very special dedication to the memory of my father who is greatly missed.

## About the Author

Terry Ann Felke-Morris is a Professor Emerita of Computer Information Systems at William Rainey Harper College in Palatine, Illinois. She holds a Doctor of Education degree, a Master of Science degree in information systems, and numerous certifications, including Adobe Certified Dreamweaver 8 Developer, WOW Certified Associate Webmaster, Microsoft Certified Professional, Master CIW Designer, and CIW Certified Instructor.

Dr. Felke-Morris has been honored with Harper College's Glenn A. Reich Memorial Award for Instructional Technology in recognition of her work in designing the college's Web Development program and courses. In 2006, she received the Blackboard Greenhouse Exemplary Online Course Award for use of Internet technology in the academic environment. Dr. Felke-Morris received two international awards in 2008: the Instructional Technology Council's Outstanding e-Learning Faculty Award for Excellence and the MERLOT Award for Exemplary Online Learning Resources—MERLOT Business Classics.

With more than 25 years of information technology experience in business and industry, Dr. Felke-Morris published her first website in 1996 and has been working with the Web ever since. A long-time promoter of Web standards, she was a member of the Web Standards Project Education Task Force. Dr. Felke-Morris is the author of the popular textbook *Basics of Web Design: HTML5 & CSS*, currently in its fifth edition. She was instrumental in developing the Web Development

certificate and degree programs at William Rainey Harper College. For more information about Dr. Terry Ann Felke-Morris, visit <https://terrymorris.net>.

# Contents

Chapter 1 Introduction to the Internet and World Wide Web 1 □

    1.1 The Internet and the Web 2 □

        The Internet 2 □

        Birth of the Internet 2 □

        Growth of the Internet 2 □

        Birth of the Web 2 □

        The First Graphical Browser 2 □

        Convergence of Technologies 3 □

        Who Runs the Internet? 3 □

        Intranets and Extranets 4 □

    1.2 Web Standards and Accessibility 4 □

        W3C Recommendations 4 □

        Web Standards and Accessibility 5 □

        Accessibility and the Law 5 □

        Universal Design for the Web 5 □

    1.3 Information on the Web 6 □

        Reliability and Information on the Web 6 □

        Ethical Use of Information on the Web 7 □

    1.4 Network Overview 8 □

    1.5 The Client/Server Model 9 □

    1.6 Internet Protocols 10 □

File Transfer Protocol (FTP) 10 □

E-mail Protocols 11 □

Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) 11 □

Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) 11 □

Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) 11 □

#### 1.7 Uniform Resource Identifiers and Domain Names 13 □

URIs and URLs 13 □

Domain Names 13 □

#### 1.8 Markup Languages 16 □

Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML) 16 □

Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) 16 □

Extensible Markup Language (XML) 16 □

Extensible Hypertext Markup Language (XHTML) 17 □

HTML5—the Newest Version of HTML 17 □

#### 1.9 Popular Uses of the Web 17 □

E-Commerce 17 □

Mobile Access 18 □

Blogs 18 □

Wikis 18 □

Social Networking 18 □

Cloud Computing 19 □

RSS 19 □

Podcasts 19 □

Constant Change 19 □

Chapter Summary 20 □

Key Terms 20 □

Review Questions 20 □

Hands-On Exercise 21 □

Web Research 22 □

Focus on Web Design 23 □

Chapter 2 HTML Basics 25 □

2.1 HTML Overview 26 □

HTML 26 □

XML 26 □

XHTML 26 □

HTML5 27 □

2.2 Document Type Definition 27 □

2.3 Web Page Template 28 □

2.4 HTML Element 28 □

2.5 Head, Title, Meta, and Body Elements 28 □

The Head Section 28 □

The Body Section 29 □

2.6 Your First Web Page 29 □

2.7 Heading Element 33 □

Accessibility and Headings 35 □

2.8 Paragraph Element 35 □

Alignment 36 □

2.9 Line Break Element 37 □

2.10 Blockquote Element 38 □

2.11 Phrase Elements 39 □

2.12 Ordered List 40 □

The Type, Start, and Reversed Attributes 41 □

2.13 Unordered List 42 □

2.14 Description List 44 □

2.15 Special Characters 46 □

2.16 Structural Elements 47 □

Div Element 48 □

Header Element 48 □

Nav Element 48 □

Main Element 48 □

Footer Element 48 □

Section Element 51 □

Article Element 51 □

Aside Element 52 □

Time Element 52 □

2.17 Hyperlinks 53 □

The A Element 53 □

The Href Attribute 53 □

Absolute Hyperlinks	54
Relative Hyperlinks	55
Site Map	55
The Target Attribute	59
Block Anchor	59
E-Mail Hyperlinks	59
Accessibility and Hyperlinks	61
2.18 HTML Validation	61
Chapter Summary	64
Key Terms	64
Review Questions	65
Apply Your Knowledge	66
Hands-On Exercises	67
Web Research	68
Focus on Web Design	68
Website Case Study	68
Chapter 3 Configuring Color and Text with CSS	83
3.1 Overview of Cascading Style Sheets	84
Advantages of Cascading Style Sheets	84
Configuring Cascading Style Sheets	85
CSS Selectors and Declarations	85
The <code>background-color</code> Property	85

The `color` Property 86 □

Configure Background and Text Color 86 □

3.2 Using Color on Web Pages 87 □

    Hexadecimal Color Values 88 □

    Web-Safe Colors 88 □

    CSS Color Syntax 88 □

3.3 Inline CSS with the Style Attribute 89 □

    The Style Attribute 89 □

3.4 Embedded CSS with the Style Element 91 □

    Style Element 91 □

3.5 Configuring Text with CSS 94 □

    The `font-family` Property 94 □

    More CSS Text Properties 96 □

3.6 CSS Class, Id, and Descendant Selectors 102 □

    The Class Selector 102 □

    The Id Selector 103 □

    The Descendant Selector 104 □

3.7 Span Element 106 □

3.8 Using External Style Sheets 107 □

    Link Element 107 □

3.9 Center HTML Elements with CSS 112 □

3.10 The “Cascade” 114 □

3.11 CSS Validation 117 □

Chapter Summary 119 □

Key Terms 119 □

Review Questions 119 □

Apply Your Knowledge 120 □

Hands-On Exercises 122 □

Web Research 124 □

Focus on Web Design 124 □

Website Case Study 125 □

Chapter 4 Visual Elements and Graphics 137 □

4.1 Configuring Lines and Borders 138 □

Horizontal Rule Element 138 □

The `border` and `padding` Properties 138 □

4.2 Graphics on the Web 144 □

Graphic Interchange Format (GIF) 144 □

Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) 145 □

Portable Network Graphic (PNG) 146 □

WebP Image Format 146 □

Popular Graphics Applications 147 □

4.3 Img Element 147 □

Accessibility and Images 148 □

Image Hyperlinks 149 □

Accessibility and Image Hyperlinks 151 □

4.4 More Visual Elements 152 □

Figure and Figcaption Elements 153 □

Meter Element 155 □

Progress Element 155 □

#### 4.5 Background Images 155 □

The `background-image` Property 156 □

Browser Display of a Background Image 156 □

The `background-repeat` Property 157 □

The `background-position` Property 159 □

The `background-attachment` Property 159 □

The `background-clip` Property 160 □

The `background-origin` Property 160 □

The `background-size` Property 161 □

Multiple Background Images 162 □

#### 4.6 More About Images 164 □

Image Maps 164 □

The Favorites Icon 166 □

Configuring a Favorites Icon 167 □

CSS Sprites 168 □

#### 4.7 Sources and Guidelines for Graphics 168 □

Sources of Graphics 168 □

Guidelines for Using Images 169 □

Accessibility and Visual Elements 170 □

**4.8 CSS Visual Effects** 171 □

CSS Rounded Corners 171 □

The `box-shadow` Property 173 □

The `opacity` Property 177 □

CSS RGBA Color 178 □

CSS HSLA Color 180 □

CSS Gradients 183 □

Chapter Summary 185 □

Key Terms 185 □

Review Questions 185 □

Apply Your Knowledge 187 □

Hands-On Exercises 188 □

Web Research 189 □

Focus on Web Design 190 □

Website Case Study 190 □

Chapter 5 Web Design 205 □

**5.1 Design for Your Target Audience** 206 □

5.2 Website Organization 207 □

Hierarchical Organization 207 □

Linear Organization 208 □

Random Organization 208 □

**5.3 Principles of Visual Design** 209 □

Repetition: Repeat Visual Components Throughout the Design 209 □

Contrast: Add Visual Excitement and Draw Attention 209 □

Proximity: Group Related Items 210 □

Alignment: Align Elements to Create Visual Unity 210 □

#### 5.4 Design to Provide Accessibility 210 □

Who Benefits from Universal Design and Increased Accessibility? 211 □

Accessible Design Can Benefit Search Engine Listing 211 □

Accessibility is the Right Thing to Do 211 □

#### 5.5 Writing for the Web 212 □

Organize Your Content 212 □

Choosing a Font 213 □

Font Size 213 □

Font Weight 213 □

Font Color Contrast 213 □

Line Length 214 □

Alignment 214 □

Text in Hyperlinks 214 □

Reading Level 214 □

Spelling and Grammar 214 □

#### 5.6 Use of Color 214 □

Color Scheme Based on an Image 214 □

Color Wheel 215 □

Color Scheme Based on the Color Wheel 216 □

**Implementing a Color Scheme** 217 □

**Accessibility and Color** 217 □

**Colors and Your Target Audience** 218 □

**5.7 Use of Graphics and Multimedia** 220 □

**File Size and Image Dimensions Matter** 220 □

**Antialiased/Aliased Text in Media** 220 □

**Use Only Necessary Multimedia** 220 □

**Provide Alternate Text** 221 □

**5.8 More Design Considerations** 221 □

**Mobile Devices** 221 □

**Browsers** 222 □

**Screen Resolution** 222 □

**White Space** 222 □

**Flat Web Design** 222 □

**Single Page Website** 223 □

**5.9 Navigation Design** 223 □

**Ease of Navigation** 223 □

**Navigation Bars** 224 □

**Breadcrumb Navigation** 224 □

**Using Graphics for Navigation** 224 □

**Skip Repetitive Navigation** 225 □

**Dynamic Navigation** 225 □

[Site Map 226](#) □

[Site Search Feature 226](#) □

[5.10 Page Layout Design 226](#) □

[Wireframes and Page Layout 226](#) □

[Page Layout Design Techniques 228](#) □

[5.11 Design for the Mobile Web 230](#) □

[Mobile Web Design Considerations 231](#) □

[Optimize Layout for Mobile use 231](#) □

[Optimize Navigation for Mobile Use 231](#) □

[Optimize Graphics for Mobile Use 232](#) □

[Optimize Text for Mobile Use 232](#) □

[Mobile Design Quick Checklist 232](#) □

[5.12 Responsive Web Design 233](#) □

[5.13 Web Design Best Practices Checklist 234](#) □

[Chapter Summary 237](#) □

[Key Terms 237](#) □

[Review Questions 237](#) □

[Hands-On Exercises 238](#) □

[Web Research 241](#) □

[Focus on Web Design 241](#) □

[Website Case Study 242](#) □

[Chapter 6 Page Layout 245](#) □

6.1 Width and Height with CSS 246 □

The `width` Property 246 □

The `min-width` Property 246 □

The `max-width` Property 247 □

The `height` Property 247 □

6.2 The Box Model 248 □

Content 248 □

Padding 248 □

Border 248 □

Margin 248 □

The Box Model in Action 249 □

6.3 Normal Flow 250 □

6.4 CSS Float 252 □

6.5 CSS Clearing a Float 254 □

The `clear` Property 254 □

The `overflow` Property 255 □

6.6 CSS Box Sizing 257 □

6.7 CSS Two-Column Layout 258 □

Your First Two-Column Layout 258 □

Two-Column Layout Example 261 □

6.8 Hyperlinks in an Unordered List 262 □

Configure List Markers with CSS 262 □

Vertical Navigation with an Unordered List 263 □

The `display` Property 264 □

Horizontal Navigation with an Unordered List 264 □

6.9 CSS Interactivity with Pseudo-Classes 265 □

CSS Button 267 □

6.10 CSS Sprites 271 □

6.11 CSS for Printing 273 □

Print Styling Best Practices 273 □

6.12 Positioning with CSS 275 □

Static Positioning 275 □

Fixed Positioning 275 □

Relative Positioning 275 □

Sticky Positioning 276 □

Absolute Positioning 277 □

Practice with Positioning 277 □

6.13 Fixed Position Navigation Bar 279 □

The `z-index` Property 279 □

6.14 Single Page Website 282 □

Fragment Identifiers 282 □

Parallax Scrolling 285 □

Chapter Summary 288 □

Key Terms 288 □

Review Questions 288 □

Apply Your Knowledge 289 □

**Hands-On Exercises** 292 □

**Web Research** 293 □

**Focus on Web Design** 293 □

**Website Case Study** 293 □

**Chapter 7 Responsive Page Layout** 311 □

**7.1 CSS Flexible Box Layout** 312 □

Configure a Flexible Container 312 □

The `display` Property 312 □

The `flex-wrap` Property 313 □

The `flex-direction` Property 313 □

**7.2 More About Flex Containers** 314 □

Flow Direction 314 □

The `justify-content` Property 314 □

The `align-items` Property 315 □

The `flex-flow` Property 315 □

Flexbox Image Gallery 316 □

**7.3 Configure Flex Items** 318 □

Proportional Flexible Item 319 □

The `order` Property 319 □

Practice With Flexbox 320 □

**7.4 CSS Grid Layout** 322 □

Configure a Grid Container 322 □

The `display` Property 322 □

Designing a Grid 322 □

Configure Grid Columns and Grid Rows 323 □

7.5 Grid Columns, Rows, and Gap 324 □

Grid Gap 324 □

The `order` Property 325 □

7.6 Two-Column Grid Page Layout 326 □

Configure Grid Columns and Rows 327 □

Configure Grid Items 327 □

Grid Line Numbers 327 □

7.7 Layout with Grid Areas 329 □

The `grid-area` Property 329 □

The `grid-template-areas` Property 330 □

The `grid-template` Property 332 □

7.8 Progressive Enhancement with Grid 333 □

CSS Feature Query 333 □

7.9 Centering with Flexbox and Grid 336 □

7.10 Viewport Meta Tag 338 □

7.11 CSS Media Queries 340 □

What's a Media Query? 340 □

Media Query Example Using a Link Element 340 □

Media Query Example Using an `@media` Rule 341 □

Mobile First 342 □

7.12 Responsive Layout with Media Queries 342 □

**7.13 Responsive Grid Layout with Media Queries** 347 □

**7.14 Responsive Images** 352 □

Flexible Images with CSS 352 □

Picture Element 354 □

Responsive Img Element Attributes 356 □

**7.15 Testing Mobile Display** 358 □

Testing with a Desktop Browser 358 □

Browser Viewport Size 358 □

Responsive Testing Tools 359 □

For Serious Developers Only 359 □

Chapter Summary 360 □

Key Terms 360 □

Review Questions 360 □

Apply Your Knowledge 361 □

Hands-On Exercises 365 □

Web Research 365 □

Focus on Web Design 366 □

Website Case Study 366 □

**Chapter 8 Tables** 385 □

**8.1 Table Overview** 386 □

Table Element 386 □

The Border Attribute 387 □

Table Captions 387 □

**8.2 Table Rows, Cells, and Headers** 388 □

Table Row Element 388 □

Table Data Element 388 □

Table Header Element 388 □

**8.3 Span Rows and Columns** 390 □

The Colspan Attribute 390 □

The Rowspan Attribute 390 □

**8.4 Configure an Accessible Table** 392 □

**8.5 Style a Table with CSS** 394 □

**8.6 CSS Structural Pseudo-Classes** 396 □

**8.7 Configure Table Sections** 398 □

Chapter Summary 401 □

Key Terms 401 □

Review Questions 401 □

Apply Your Knowledge 402 □

Hands-On Exercises 404 □

Web Research 405 □

Focus on Web Design 405 □

Website Case Study 405 □

Chapter 9 Forms 413 □

**9.1 Overview of Forms** 414 □

Form Element 414 □

Form Controls 415 □

## 9.2 Input Element Form Controls 415 □

Text Box 416 □

Submit Button 417 □

Reset Button 417 □

Check Box 419 □

Radio Button 420 □

Hidden Input Control 421 □

File Upload Control 422 □

Password Box 422 □

## 9.3 Scrolling Text Box 423 □

Textarea Element 423 □

## 9.4 Select List 425 □

Select Element 426 □

Option Element 426 □

## 9.5 Image Buttons and the Button Element 428 □

Image Button 428 □

Button Element 428 □

## 9.6 Accessibility and Forms 429 □

Label Element 429 □

Fieldset and Legend Elements 430 □

The Tabindex Attribute 433 □

The Accesskey Attribute 433 □

## 9.7 Style a Form with CSS 434 □

[Form with CSS Float](#) 434 □

[Form with CSS Grid Layout](#) 436 □

**9.8 Server-Side Processing** 438 □

[Privacy and Forms](#) 440 □

[Server-Side Processing Resources](#) 441 □

**9.9 HTML5 Form Controls** 442 □

[E-mail Address Input](#) 442 □

[URL Input](#) 442 □

[Telephone Number Input](#) 443 □

[Search Field Input](#) 443 □

[Datalist Form Control](#) 443 □

[Slider Form Control](#) 445 □

[Spinner Form Control](#) 446 □

[Date and Time Form Control](#) 446 □

[Color-well Form Control](#) 448 □

[Progressive Enhancement](#) 450 □

[Chapter Summary](#) 451 □

[Key Terms](#) 451 □

[Review Questions](#) 451 □

[Apply Your Knowledge](#) 452 □

[Hands-On Exercises](#) 454 □

[Web Research](#) 455 □

Focus on Web Design 456□

Website Case Study 457□

Chapter 10 Web Development 469□

    10.1 Successful Large-Scale Project Development 470□

        Project Job Roles 470□

        Project Staffing Criteria 471□

    10.2 The Development Process 471□

        Conceptualization 473□

        Analysis 474□

        Design 474□

        Production 476□

        Testing 476□

        Launch 479□

        Maintenance 480□

        Evaluation 480□

    10.3 File Organization 480□

        Relative HyperLink Examples 480□

    10.4 Domain Name Overview 482□

        Choosing a Domain Name 482□

        Registering a Domain Name 484□

    10.5 Web Hosting 484□

        Web Hosting Providers 484□

    10.6 Choosing a Virtual Host 485□

**Chapter Summary** 488 □

**Key Terms** 488 □

**Review Questions** 488 □

**Hands-On Exercises** 489 □

**Web Research** 491 □

**Focus on Web Design** 492 □

**Website Case Study** 492 □

**Chapter 11 Web Multimedia and Interactivity** 493 □

**11.1 Containers and Codecs** 494 □

**11.2 Getting Started with Audio and Video** 495 □

Provide a Hyperlink 495 □

Working with Multimedia on the Web 496 □

**11.3 Audio and Video Elements** 497 □

Audio Element 497 □

Source Element 498 □

Audio on a Web Page 498 □

Video Element 499 □

Source Element 500 □

Video on a Web Page 500 □

**11.4 Multimedia Files and Copyright Law** 502 □

**11.5 CSS and Interactivity** 502 □

CSS Drop Down Menu 502 □

The `transform` Property 504 □

Rotate Transform 505 □

Scale Transform 505 □

The `transition` Property 506 □

CSS Animations 511 □

Define an Animation with `@keyframes` Rule 511 □

Apply the Animation 511 □

11.6 Details and Summary Elements 514 □

Details Element 514 □

Summary Element 515 □

Details & Summary Widget 515 □

11.7 JavaScript 516 □

JavaScript Resources 517 □

11.8 Ajax 518 □

Ajax Resources 518 □

11.9 jQuery 519 □

jQuery Resources 519 □

11.10 HTML5 APIs 520 □

Geolocation 520 □

Web Storage 520 □

Progressive Web Application 520 □

Drawing with the Canvas Element 521 □

11.11 Multimedia, Animation, and Interactivity Accessibility Issues 524 □

Chapter Summary 525 □

**Key Terms** 525 □

**Review Questions** 525 □

**Apply Your Knowledge** 527 □

**Hands-On Exercises** 528 □

**Web Research** 528 □

**Focus on Web Design** 529 □

**Website Case Study** 529 □

**Chapter 12 E-Commerce Overview** 537 □

**12.1 What Is E-Commerce?** 538 □

**Advantages of E-Commerce** 538 □

**Risks of E-Commerce** 539 □

**12.2 E-Commerce Business Models** 540 □

**12.3 Electronic Data Interchange (EDI)** 540 □

**12.4 E-Commerce Statistics** 540 □

**12.5 E-Commerce Issues** 541 □

**12.6 E-Commerce Security** 543 □

**Encryption** 543 □

**Integrity** 544 □

**Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)** 544 □

**Digital Certificate** 545 □

**SSL and Digital Certificates** 546 □

**12.7 Order and Payment Processing** 547 □

**Credit Card** 547 □

Stored-value Card 547 □

Digital Wallet 547 □

Digital Cash 548 □

12.8 E-Commerce Technology Solutions 548 □

Instant Online Storefront 548 □

Shopping Cart Software 549 □

E-Commerce Platform 549 □

Chapter Summary 550 □

Key Terms 550 □

Review Questions 550 □

Hands-On Exercises 551 □

Web Research 552 □

Focus on Web Design 553 □

Website Case Study 553 □

Chapter 13 Web Promotion 565 □

13.1 Search Engine Overview 566 □

13.2 Popular Search Engines 566 □

13.3 Components of a Search Engine 566 □

Robot 566 □

Database 567 □

Search Form 567 □

13.4 Search Engine Optimization 567 □

Keywords 568 □

[Page Titles](#) 568 □

[Heading Tags](#) 568 □

[Description](#) 568 □

[Description Meta Tag](#) 568 □

[Linking](#) 569 □

[Images and Multimedia](#) 569 □

[Valid Code](#) 569 □

[Content of Value](#) 569 □

[HTTPS Protocol](#) 569 □

### [13.5 Submitting Your Website to a Search Engine](#) 570 □

[Map Your Site](#) 571 □

### [13.6 Monitoring Search Listings](#) 572 □

### [13.7 Link Popularity](#) 574 □

### [13.8 Social Media Optimization](#) 574 □

[Blogs](#) 574 □

[Social Networking](#) 574 □

### [13.9 Other Site Promotion Activities](#) 575 □

[Quick Response \(QR\) Codes](#) 575 □

[Affiliate Programs](#) 575 □

[Banner Ads](#) 576 □

[Banner Exchange](#) 576 □

[Reciprocal Link Agreements](#) 576 □

Newsletters	576
Sticky Site Features	577
Personal Recommendations	577
Website Forum Postings	577
Traditional Media Ads and Existing Marketing Materials	577
<b>13.10 Serving Dynamic Content with Inline Frames</b>	<b>578</b>
Iframe Element	578
Video in an Inline Frame	580
Chapter Summary	581
Key Terms	581
Review Questions	581
Hands-On Exercises	582
Web Research	583
Focus on Web Design	583
Website Case Study	584
<b>Chapter 14 A Brief Look at JavaScript and jQuery</b>	<b>587</b>
14.1 Overview of JavaScript	588
14.2 The Development of JavaScript	588
14.3 Popular Uses for JavaScript	589
Alert Message	589
Popup Windows	589
Jump Menus	590

Mouse Movement Techniques 590 □

14.4 Adding JavaScript to a Web Page 591 □

Script Element 591 □

Alert Message Box 592 □

14.5 Document Object Model Overview 594 □

14.6 Events and Event Handlers 597 □

14.7 Variables 600 □

Writing a Variable to a Web Page 600 □

Collecting Variable Values Using a Prompt 602 □

14.8 Introduction to Programming Concepts 604 □

Arithmetic Operators 604 □

Decision Making 604 □

Functions 607 □

The addEventListener Method 610 □

14.9 Form Handling 612 □

14.10 Accessibility and JavaScript 617 □

14.11 JavaScript Resources 618 □

14.12 Overview of jQuery 618 □

14.13 Adding jQuery to a Web Page 618 □

Download jQuery 618 □

Access jQuery via a Content Delivery Network 619 □

The Ready Event 619 □

14.14 jQuery Selectors 621 □

**14.15 jQuery Methods** 621 □

**14.16 jQuery Image Gallery** 624 □

**14.17 jQuery Plugins** 628 □

**14.18 jQuery Resources** 632 □

**Chapter Summary** 633 □

**Key Terms** 633 □

**Review Questions** 633 □

**Apply Your Knowledge** 635 □

**Hands-On Exercises** 636 □

**Web Research** 637 □

**Website Case Study** 637 □

**Web Developer's Handbook** 645 □

**Appendix A HTML5 Quick Reference** 647 □

**Appendix B Special Entity Characters** 651 □

**Appendix C CSS Property Reference** 653 □

**Appendix D WCAG 2.1 Quick Reference** 659 □

**Appendix E Landmark Roles with ARIA** 663 □

**Appendix F FTP Tutorial** 665 □

**Appendix G Web-Safe Color Palette** 669 □

**Answers** 671 □

**Index** 691 □



**VideoNotes are available at [www.pearson.com/felke-morris](http://www.pearson.com/felke-morris)**

#### **LOCATION OF VIDEONOTES IN THE TEXT**

A series of videos have been developed as a companion for this textbook. VideoNote icons indicate the availability of a video on a specific topic.

<b>Chapter 1</b> 	Evolution of the Web, p. 2
<b>Chapter 2</b> 	Your First Web Page, p. 29  HTML Validation, p. 61
<b>Chapter 3</b> 	External Style Sheets, p. 107  CSS Validation, p. 117
<b>Chapter 4</b> 	CSS Background Images, p. 156  Rounded Corners with CSS, p. 171
<b>Chapter 5</b> 	Principles of Visual Design, p. 209

**VideoNotes are available at [www.pearson.com/felke-morris](http://www.pearson.com/felke-morris)**

**LOCATION OF VIDEONOTES IN THE TEXT**

<b>Chapter 6</b> □	Interactivity with CSS pseudo-classes, p. 265  Linking to a Named Fragment, p. 282
<b>Chapter 7</b> □	CSS Grid Layout, p. 326
<b>Chapter 8</b> □	Configure a Table, p. 386
<b>Chapter 9</b> □	Connect a Form to Server-Side Processing, p. 438
<b>Chapter 10</b> □	Choosing a Domain Name, p. 482
<b>Chapter 11</b> □	HTML5 Video, p. 501
<b>Chapter 12</b> □	E-Commerce Benefits and Risks, p. 538
<b>Chapter 13</b> □	Configure an Inline Frame, p. 580
<b>Chapter 14</b> □	JavaScript Message Box, p. 592

# 1

## Introduction to the Internet and World Wide Web

---





## Chapter Objectives

---

IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .

- Describe the evolution of the Internet and the Web
- Explain the need for web standards
- Describe universal design
- Identify benefits of accessible web design
- Identify reliable resources of information on the Web
- Identify ethical use of the Web
- Describe the purpose of web browsers and web servers
- Identify networking protocols
- Define URIs and domain names
- Describe HTML, XHTML, and HTML5

**The Internet and the Web are parts of our daily lives.** How did they begin? What networking protocols and programming languages work behind the scenes to display a web page? This chapter provides an introduction to some of these topics and is a foundation for the information that web developers need to know. You'll be introduced to Hypertext Markup Language (HTML), the language used to create web pages.

## 1.1 The Internet and the Web

### The Internet

The **Internet**, the interconnected network of computer networks that spans the globe, seems to be everywhere today. It has become part of our lives. You can't watch television or listen to the radio without being urged to visit a website. Even newspapers and magazines have a place on the Internet.

### Birth of the Internet

The Internet began as a network to connect computers at research facilities and universities. Messages in this network would travel to their destination by multiple routes, or paths. This configuration allowed the network to function even if parts of it were broken or destroyed. In such an event, the message would be rerouted through a functioning portion of the network while traveling to its destination. This network was developed by the Advanced Research Projects Agency (ARPA)—and the ARPAnet was born. Four computers (located at UCLA, Stanford Research Institute, University of California Santa Barbara, and the University of Utah) were connected by the end of 1969.

### Growth of the Internet

As time went on, other networks, such as the National Science Foundation's NSFnet, were created and connected with the ARPAnet. Use of this interconnected network, or Internet, was originally limited to government, research, and educational purposes. The number of

individuals accessing the Internet continues to grow each year. According to Internet World Stats (<https://www.internetworldstats.com/emarketing.htm>), the percentage of the global population that used the Internet was 0.4% in 1995, 5.8% in 2000, 15.7% in 2005, 28.8% in 2010, 45% in 2015, and 56.1% in 2019.

The lifting of the restriction on commercial use of the Internet in 1991 set the stage for future electronic commerce: Businesses were now welcome on the Internet. However, the Internet was still text based and not easy to use. The next set of developments solved this issue.

## Birth of the Web

While working at CERN, a research facility in Switzerland, **Tim Berners-Lee** envisioned a means of communication for scientists by which they could easily “hyperlink” to another research paper or article and immediately view it. Berners-Lee created the World Wide Web to fulfill this need. In 1991, Berners-Lee posted the code for the Web in a newsgroup and made it freely available. This version of the World Wide Web used **Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)** to communicate between the client computer and the web server, used **Hypertext Markup Language (HTML)** to format the documents, and was text based.

---

Video Note

**Evolution of the Web**

## The First Graphical Browser

In 1993, Mosaic, the first graphical web browser became available. Marc Andreessen and graduate students working at the National Center for Supercomputing Applications (NCSA) at the University of Illinois Urbana–Champaign developed Mosaic. Some individuals in this group later created another well-known web browser—Netscape Navigator—which is an ancestor of today’s Mozilla Firefox browser.

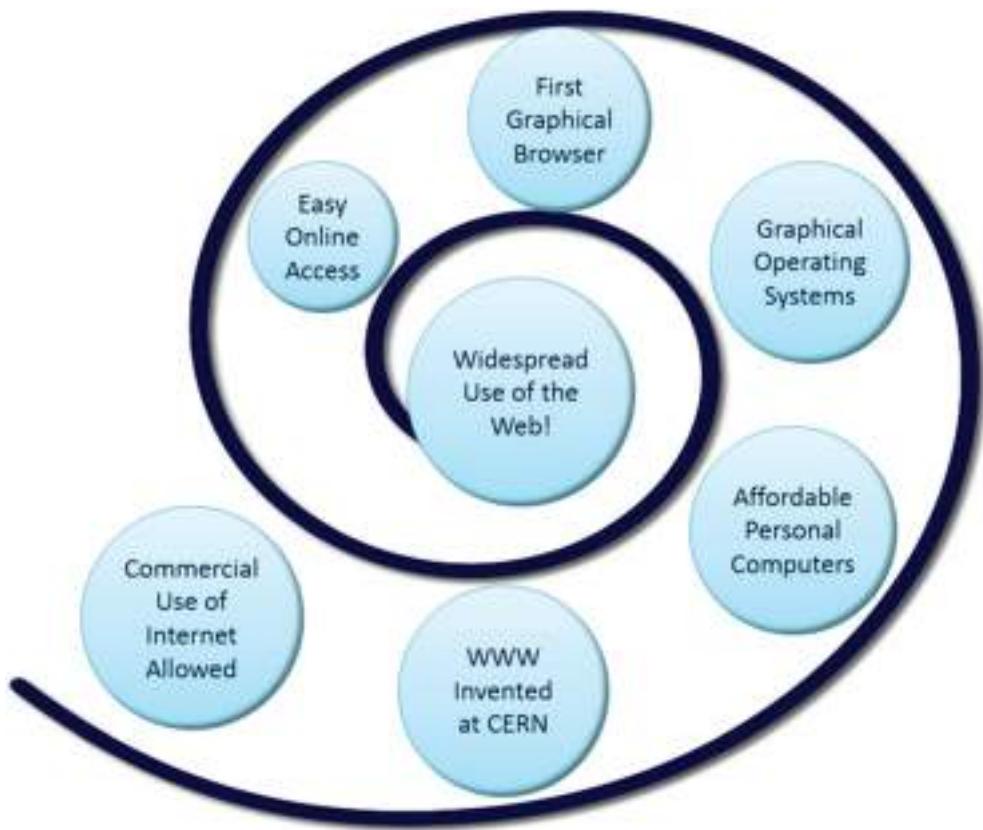
## Convergence of Technologies

By the early 1990s, personal computers with easy-to-use graphical operating systems (such as Microsoft’s Windows, IBM’s OS/2, and Apple’s Macintosh OS) were increasingly available and affordable. Online service providers such as CompuServe, AOL, and Prodigy offered low-cost connections to the Internet. [Figure 1.1](#) depicts this convergence of available computer hardware, easy-to-use operating systems, low-cost Internet connectivity, the HTTP protocol and HTML language, and a graphical browser that made information on the Internet much easier to access. The **World Wide Web**—the graphical user interface to information stored on computers running web servers connected to the Internet—had arrived!

---

**Figure 1.1 Convergence of Technologies**

---



## Who Runs the Internet?

You may be surprised that there is no single person “in charge” of the global interconnected network of computer networks known as the Internet. Instead, Internet infrastructure standards are overseen by groups, such as the **Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)** and the **Internet Architecture Board (IAB)**. The IETF is the principal body engaged in the development of new Internet protocol standard specifications. It is an open international community of network designers, operators, vendors, and researchers concerned with the evolution of Internet architecture and the smooth operation of the Internet. The actual technical work of the IETF is completed in its working groups. These working groups are organized into areas by topic, such as security and routing.

The IAB is a committee of the IETF and provides guidance and broad direction to the IETF. As a function of this purpose, the IAB is responsible for the publication of the **Request for Comments (RFC)** document series. An RFC is a formal document from the IETF that is drafted by a committee and subsequently reviewed by interested parties. RFCs are available for online review at <https://www.ietf.org/standards/rfcs/>. Some RFCs are informational in nature, while others are meant to become Internet standards. In the latter case, the final version of the RFC becomes a new standard. Future changes to the standard must be made through subsequent RFCs.

The **Internet Corporation for Assigned Numbers and Names (ICANN)**, <https://www.icann.org>, was created in 1998 and is a nonprofit organization. Its main function is to coordinate the assignment of Internet domain names, IP address numbers, protocol parameters, and protocol port numbers. Prior to 1998, the **Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA)** coordinated these functions. IANA still performs certain functions under the guidance of ICANN and maintains a website at <https://www.iana.org>.

## Intranets and Extranets

Recall that the Internet is an interconnected network of computer networks that is globally available. When an organization needs the communication capabilities of the Internet, but doesn't want its information to be available to everyone, either an intranet or extranet is appropriate.

An **intranet** is a private network that is contained within an organization or business. Its purpose is to share organizational information and resources among coworkers. When an intranet connects to the outside

Internet, usually a gateway or firewall protects the intranet from unauthorized access.

An **extranet** is a private network that securely shares part of an organization's information or operations with external partners such as suppliers, vendors, and customers. Extranets can be used to exchange data, share information exclusively with business partners, and collaborate with other organizations. Privacy and security are important issues in extranet use. Digital certificates, encryption of messages, and virtual private networks (VPNs) are some technologies used to provide privacy and security for an extranet. Digital certificates and encryption used in e-commerce are discussed in [Chapter 12](#).

## 1.2 Web Standards and Accessibility

Just as with the Internet, no single person or group runs the World Wide Web. However, the **World Wide Web Consortium** (<https://www.w3.org>), referred to as the **W3C**, takes a proactive role in developing recommendations and prototype technologies related to the Web. Topics that the W3C addresses include web architecture, standards for web design, and accessibility. In an effort to standardize web technologies, the W3C produces specifications called recommendations.

### W3C Recommendations

The W3C Recommendations are created in working groups with input from many major corporations involved in building web technologies. These recommendations are not rules; they are guidelines. Major software companies that build web browsers, such as Microsoft, do not always follow the W3C Recommendations. This makes life challenging for web developers because not all browsers will display a web page in exactly the same way. The good news is that there is a convergence toward the W3C Recommendations in new versions of major browsers. You'll follow W3C Recommendations as you code web pages in this book. Following the W3C Recommendations is the first step toward creating a website that is accessible.

### Web Standards and Accessibility

The **Web Accessibility Initiative (WAI)** (<https://www.w3.org/WAI>), is a major area of work by the W3C. Since the Web has become an integral part of daily life, there is a need for all individuals to be able to access it.

## Focus on Accessibility

The Web can present barriers to individuals with visual, auditory, physical, and neurological disabilities. An **accessible website** provides accommodations that help individuals overcome these barriers. The WAI has developed recommendations for web content developers, web authoring tool developers, web browser developers, and developers of other user agents to facilitate use of the Web by those with special needs. An overview of the WAI's **Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG)** is available at <https://www.w3.org/WAI/standards-guidelines/wcag/glance/>. The most recent version of WCAG is WCAG 2.1, which extends WCAG 2.0 and introduces additional success criteria including requirements for increased support of mobile device accessibility, low vision accessibility, and cognitive and learning disability accessibility.

## Accessibility and the Law

The **Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)** of 1990 is a federal civil rights law that prohibits discrimination against people with disabilities. The ADA requires that business, federal, and state services are accessible to individuals with disabilities.

## Focus on Accessibility

**Section 508 of the Federal Rehabilitation Act** was amended in 1998 to require that U.S. government agencies give individuals with disabilities access to information technology that is comparable to the access

available to others. This law requires developers creating information technology (including web pages) for use by the federal government to provide for accessibility. The GSA Government-wide IT Accessibility Initiative (<https://www.section508.gov>) provides accessibility requirement resources for information technology developers. As the Web and Internet technologies developed, it became necessary to review the original Section 508 requirements. New Section 508 requirements, commonly referred to as the Section 508 Refresh, were aligned to WCAG 2.0 guidelines and published in 2017. This textbook focuses on WCAG 2.0 guidelines to provide accessibility.

In recent years, state governments have also begun to encourage and promote web accessibility. The Illinois Information Technology Accessibility Act (IITAA) standards (<http://www.dhs.state.il.us/page.aspx?item=96985>) are an example of this trend.

## Universal Design for the Web

**Universal design** is a “strategy for making products, environments, operational systems, and services welcoming and usable to the most diverse range of people possible” (<https://www.dol.gov/odep/topics/UniversalDesign.htm>). Examples of universal design are all around us. The cutouts on curbs that make it possible for people in wheelchairs to access the street also benefit a person pushing a stroller or riding a Segway Personal Transporter (Figure 1.2). Doors that open automatically for people with mobility challenges also benefit people carrying packages. A ramp is useful for a person in a wheelchair, a person dragging a rolling backpack or carry-on bag, and so on.

---

**Figure 1.2 A smooth ride is a benefit of universal design**

---



Awareness of universal design by web developers has been steadily increasing. Forward-thinking web developers design with accessibility in mind because it is the right thing to do. Providing access for visitors with visual, auditory, and other challenges should be an integral part of web design rather than an afterthought.

A person with visual difficulties may not be able to use graphical navigation buttons and may use a screen reader device to provide an audible description of the web page. By making a few simple changes, such as providing text descriptions for the images and perhaps providing a text navigation area at the bottom of the page, web developers can make the page accessible. Often, providing for accessibility increases the usability of the website for all visitors.

---

#### Focus on Accessibility

Accessible websites, with alternative text for images, headings used in an organized manner, and captions or transcriptions for multimedia features, are more easily used not only by visitors with disabilities, but also by visitors using a browser on a mobile device such as a phone or tablet.

Finally, accessible websites may be more thoroughly indexed by search engines, which can be helpful in bringing new visitors to a site. As this text introduces web development and design techniques, corresponding web accessibility and usability issues are discussed.

## 1.3 Information on the Web

These days anyone can publish just about anything on the Web. In this section we'll explore how you can tell if the information you've found is reliable and how you can use that information.

### Reliability and Information on the Web

There are many websites—but which ones are reliable sources of information? When visiting websites to find information, it is important not to take everything at face value (Figure 1.3).

---

**Figure 1.3 Who really updated that web page you are viewing?**

---



Questions to ask about web resources are listed as follows:

- **IS THE ORGANIZATION CREDIBLE?**

Anyone can post anything on the Web! Choose your information sources wisely. First, evaluate the credibility of the website itself. Does it have its own domain name, such as <http://terrymorris.net>, or is it a free website consisting of just a folder of files hosted on a free web hosting site (such as [weebly.com](#), [awardspace.com](#), or [000webhost.com](#))? The URL of a free website usually includes part of

the free web host's domain name. Information obtained from a website that has its own domain name will usually (but not always) be more reliable than information obtained from a free website.

Evaluate the type of domain name: Is it for a nonprofit organization (.org), a business (.com or .biz), or an educational institution (.edu)? Businesses may provide information in a biased manner, so be careful. Nonprofit organizations and schools will sometimes treat a subject more objectively.

- **HOW RECENT IS THE INFORMATION?**

Another item to look at is the date the web page was created or last updated. Although some information is timeless, very often a web page that has not been updated for several years is outdated and may not be the best source of information.

- **ARE THERE LINKS TO ADDITIONAL RESOURCES?**

Hyperlinks indicate websites with supporting or additional information that can be helpful to you in your research as you explore a topic. Look for these types of hyperlinks to aid your studies.

- **IS IT WIKIPEDIA?**

Wikipedia (<https://wikipedia.org>) is a good place to begin research, but don't accept what you read there for fact, and avoid using Wikipedia as a resource for academic assignments. Why? Well, except for a few protected topics, anyone can update Wikipedia with anything! Usually it all gets sorted out eventually—but be aware that the information you read may not be valid.

Feel free to use Wikipedia to begin exploring a topic, but then scroll down to the bottom of the Wikipedia web page and look for "References"—and then explore those websites and others that you may find. As you gather information on these sites, also consider the other criteria: credibility, domain name, timeliness, and links to additional resources.

# Ethical Use of Information on the Web

This wonderful technology called the World Wide Web provides us with information, graphics, and music—all virtually free (after you pay your Internet service provider, of course). Let's consider the following issues relating to the ethical use of this information:

- Is it acceptable to copy someone's graphic to use on your own website?
- Is it acceptable to copy someone's website design to use on your own site or on a client's site?
- Is it acceptable to copy an essay that appears on a web page and use it, or parts of it, as your own writing?
- Is it acceptable to insult someone on your website or link to that person's site in a derogatory manner?

---

## Focus on Ethics

The answer to all of these questions is no. Using someone's graphic without permission is the same as stealing it. In fact, if you link to it, you are actually using up some of the site's bandwidth and may be costing the owner money. Instead, ask the owner of the website for permission to use the graphic. If permission is granted, store the graphic on your own website and be sure to indicate the source of the graphic when you display it on your web page. The key is to request permission before using someone else's resources. Copying the website design of another person or company is also a form of stealing. Any text or graphic on a website is automatically copyrighted in the United States, regardless of whether a copyright symbol appears on the site or not. Insulting a person

or company on your website or linking to the person's or company's website in a derogatory manner could be considered a form of defamation.

Issues like these, related to intellectual property, copyright, and freedom of speech, are regularly discussed and decided in courts of law. Good Web etiquette requires that you ask permission before using others' work, give credit for what you use ("fair use" in the U.S. copyright law), and exercise your freedom of speech in a manner that is not harmful to others. The **World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO)**, <https://wipo.int>, is dedicated to protecting intellectual property rights internationally.

What if you'd like to retain ownership, but make it easy for others to use or adapt your work? **Creative Commons**, <https://creativecommons.org>, is a nonprofit organization that provides free services that allow authors and artists to register a type of a copyright license called a Creative Commons license. There are several licenses to choose from, depending on the rights you wish to grant. The Creative Commons license informs others as to exactly what they can and cannot do with your creative work.

### Checkpoint 1.1

1. Describe the difference between the Internet and the Web.
2. Explain three events that contributed to the commercialization and exponential growth of the Internet.
3. Is the concept of universal design important to web developers? Explain your answer.

## 1.4 Network Overview

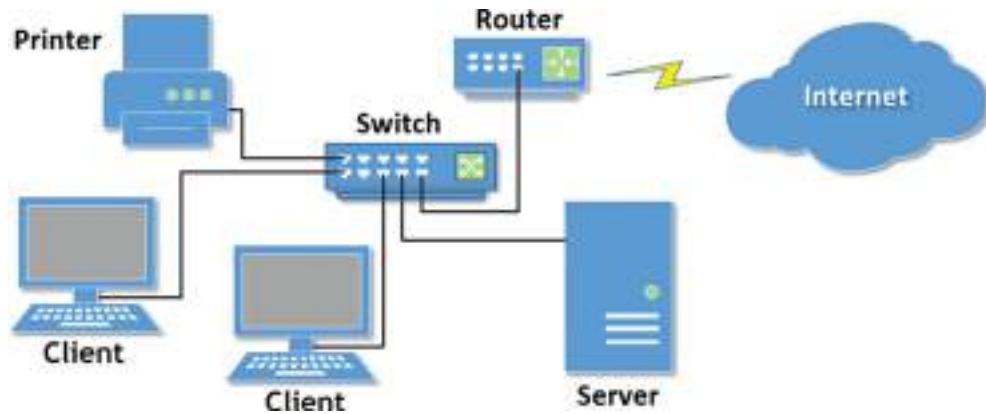
A **network** consists of two or more computers connected for the purpose of communicating and sharing resources. Common components of a network are shown in [Figure 1.4](#) and include the following:

- Server computer(s)
- Client workstation computer(s)
- Shared devices such as printers
- Networking devices (routers, hubs, and switches) and the media that connect them

---

**Figure 1.4 Common components of a network**

---



The **clients** are the computer workstations used by individuals, such as a personal computer (PC) on a desk. The **server** receives requests from client computers for resources such as files. Computers used as servers are usually kept in a protected, secure area and are accessed only by network administrators. Networking devices, such as hubs and switches, provide network connections for computers, and routers direct information from one network to another. The media connecting the

clients, servers, peripherals, and networking devices may consist of copper cables, fiber optic cables, or wireless technologies.

Networks vary in scale. A **local area network (LAN)** is usually confined to a single building or group of connected buildings. Your school computer lab may use a LAN. If you work in an office, you probably use a computer connected to a LAN. A **wide area network (WAN)** is geographically dispersed and usually uses some form of public or commercial communications network. For example, an organization with offices on both the East and West coasts of the United States probably uses a WAN to provide a link between the LANs at each of the offices.

A **backbone** is a high-capacity communication link that carries data gathered from smaller links that interconnect with it. On the Internet, a backbone is a set of paths that local or regional networks connect to for long-distance interconnection. The Internet is a group of interconnected networks with very high-speed connectivity provided by the Internet backbones.

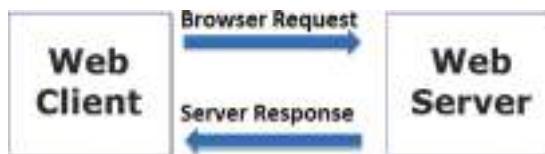
## 1.5 The Client/Server Model

The term **client/server** dates from the 1980s and refers to personal computers joined by a network. “Client/server” can also describe a relationship between two computer programs—the client and the server. The client requests some type of service (such as a file or database access) from the server. The server fulfills the request and transmits the results to the client over a network. While both the client and the server programs can reside on the same computer, typically they run on different computers (Figure 1.5). It is common for a server to handle requests from multiple clients.

---

**Figure 1.5 Web client and web server**

---



The Internet is a great example of client/server architecture at work. Consider the following scenario: An individual is at a computer using a web browser client to access the Internet. The individual uses the web browser to visit a website, let's say <https://www.yahoo.com>. The server is the web server program running on the computer with an IP address that corresponds to [www.yahoo.com](http://www.yahoo.com). It is contacted, locates the web page and related resources that were requested, and responds by sending them to the individual.

Here's how to distinguish between web clients and web servers:

**Web Client**

- Connected to the Internet when needed
- Usually runs web browser (client) software such as Google Chrome or Microsoft Edge
- Uses HTTP or HTTPS
- Requests web pages from a server
- Receives web pages and files from a server

### Web Server

- Continually connected to the Internet
- Runs web server software such as Apache or Internet Information Services (IIS)
- Uses HTTP or HTTPS
- Receives a request for the web page
- Responds to the request and transmits the status code, web page, and associated files

When clients and servers exchange files, they often need to indicate the type of file that is being transferred; this is done through the use of a **MIME type**. **Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME)** are rules that allow multimedia documents to be exchanged among many different computer systems. MIME was initially intended to extend the original Internet e-mail protocol, but it is also used by HTTP. MIME provides for the exchange of seven different media types on the Internet: audio, video, image, application, message, multipart, and text. MIME also uses subtypes to further describe the data. The MIME type of a web page is text/html. MIME types of GIF and JPEG images are image/gif and image/jpeg, respectively.

A web server determines the MIME type of a file before the file is transmitted to the web browser. The MIME type is sent along with the document. The web browser uses the MIME type to determine how to display the document.

How does information get transferred from the web server to the web browser? Clients (such as web browsers) and servers (such as a web server) exchange information through the use of communication protocols such as HTTP, TCP, and IP, which are introduced in the next section.

## 1.6 Internet Protocols

**Protocols** are rules that describe how clients and servers communicate with each other over a network. There is no single protocol that makes the Internet and Web work; a number of protocols with specific functions are needed.

### File Transfer Protocol (FTP)

**File Transfer Protocol (FTP)** is a set of rules that allow files to be exchanged between computers on the Internet. Unlike HTTP, which is used by web browsers to request web pages and their associated files in order to display a web page, FTP is used simply to move files from one computer to another. Web developers commonly use FTP to transfer web page files from their computers to web servers. FTP is also commonly used to download programs and files from other servers to individual computers.

### E-mail Protocols

Most of us take e-mail for granted, but there are two servers involved in its smooth functioning: an incoming mail server and an outgoing mail server. When you send e-mail to others, **Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP)** is used. When you receive e-mail, **Post Office Protocol (POP; currently POP3)** and **Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP)** can be used.

### Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)

**HTTP** is a set of rules for exchanging files such as text, images, audio, video, and other multimedia on the Web. Web browsers and web servers usually use this protocol. When the user of a web browser requests a file by typing a website address or clicking on a hyperlink, the browser builds an HTTP request and sends it to the server. The web server in the destination machine receives the request, does any necessary processing, and responds with the requested file and any associated files (such as image files, media files, and other related files).

## Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS)

**Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS)** combines HTTP with a security and encryption protocol. Using HTTPS provides a more secure transaction because the information passed between the browser and the web server is encrypted. See [Chapter 12](#) for more information on HTTPS.

## Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)

**Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** has been adopted as the official communication protocol of the Internet. TCP and IP have different functions that work together to ensure reliable communication over the Internet.

### TCP

The purpose of **TCP** is to ensure the integrity of network communication. TCP starts by breaking files and messages into individual units called **packets**. These packets (see [Figure 1.6](#)) contain information such as the

destination, source, sequence number, and checksum values used to verify the integrity of the data.

---

**Figure 1.6 TCP packet**

---



TCP is used together with IP to transmit files efficiently over the Internet. IP takes over after TCP creates the packets, using IP addressing to send each packet over the Internet via the best path at the particular time. When the destination address is reached, TCP verifies the integrity of each packet by using the checksum, requests a resend if a packet is damaged, and reassembles the file or message from the multiple packets.

## IP

Working in harmony with TCP, **IP** is a set of rules that controls how data is sent between devices on the Internet. IP routes a packet to the correct destination address. Once sent, the packet gets successively forwarded to the next closest router (a hardware device designed to move network traffic) until it reaches its destination.

Each device connected to the Internet has a unique numeric **IP address**. These addresses consist of a set of four groups of numbers called octets. The current version of IP, **Internet Protocol Version 4 (IPv4)**, uses 32-bit (binary digit) addressing. This results in a decimal number in the format of xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where each xxx is a value from 0 to 255. Theoretically, this system allows for at most 4 billion possible IP addresses (although many potential addresses are reserved for special uses). However, even

these many addresses will not be enough to meet the needs of all of the devices expected to be connected to the Internet in upcoming years.

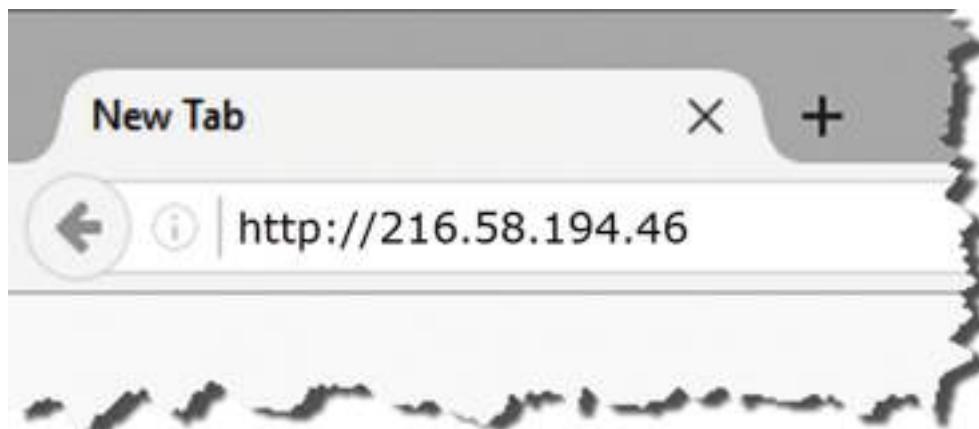
**IP Version 6 (IPv6)**, intended to replace IPv4, was designed as an evolutionary set of improvements and is backwardly compatible. Service providers and Internet users can update to IPv6 independently without having to coordinate with each other. IPv6 provides for more Internet addresses because the IP address is lengthened from 32 bits to 128 bits. This means that there are potentially  $2^{128}$  unique IP addresses possible, or 340,282,366,920,938,463,463,347,607,431,768,211,456 addresses. (Now there will be enough IP addresses for everyone's PC, notebook, cell phone, tablet, toaster, and so on!)

The IP address of a device may correspond to a domain name. The **Domain Name System (DNS)** associates these IP addresses with the text-based URLs and domain names you type into a web browser address box. For example, at the time this book was written, an IP address for Google was 216.58.194.46. You can enter this number in the address text box in a web browser (as shown in [Figure 1.7](#)), press Enter, and the Google home page will display. Of course, it's much easier to type "[google.com](http://google.com)," which is why domain names such as [google.com](http://google.com) were created in the first place! Since long strings of numbers are difficult for humans to remember, the Domain Name System was introduced as a way to associate text-based names with numeric IP addresses.

---

**Figure 1.7 Entering an IP address in a web browser**

---



---

## FAQ

What is HTTP/2?

HTTP/2 is the first major update to HTTP, which was first developed in 1999. As websites have become more image and media intensive, the number of requests needed to display a web page and its related files have increased. A major benefit of HTTP/2 will be quicker loading of web pages by processing multiple concurrent HTTP requests. Visit <https://http2.github.io> for more information about HTTP/2.

---

# 1.7 Uniform Resource Identifiers and Domain Names

## URIs and URLs

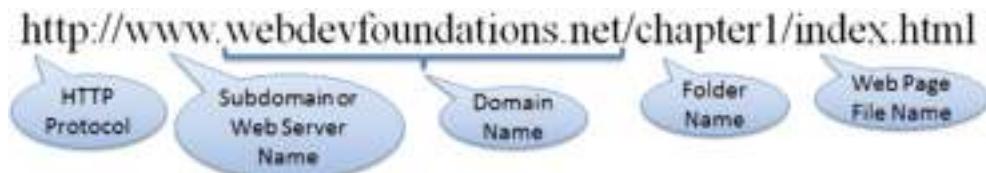
A **Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)** identifies a resource on the Internet. A **Uniform Resource Locator (URL)** is a type of URI which represents the network location of a resource such as a web page, a graphic file, or an MP3 file. The URL consists of the protocol, the domain name, and the hierarchical location of the file on the web server.

The URL <http://www.webdevfoundations.net/chapter1/index.html>, shown in Figure 1.8, denotes the use of HTTP protocol and the web server named www at the domain name of webdevfoundations.net. In this case, the root file (usually index.html or index.htm) in the directory named chapter1 will be displayed.

---

**Figure 1.8 URL Describing a file within a folder**

---



## Domain Names

A **domain name** locates an organization or other entity on the Internet. The purpose of the Domain Name System (DNS) is to divide the Internet into logical groups and understandable names by identifying the exact

address and type of the organization. The DNS associates the text-based domain names with the unique numeric IP address assigned to a device.

Let's consider the domain name [www.google.com](http://www.google.com). The portion "google.com" is the domain name that is registered to Google. The ".com" is the top-level domain name. The "google" is considered a second-level domain name. The "www" is the name of the web sever (sometimes called the host) at the [google.com](http://google.com) domain.

A **subdomain** can be configured to house a separate website located at the same domain. For example, Google's Gmail can be accessed by using the subdomain "gmail" in the domain name ([gmail.google.com](http://gmail.google.com)). Google Maps can be accessed at [maps.google.com](http://maps.google.com), and Google News Search is available at [news.google.com](http://news.google.com). A list of the top 40 Google subdomains is available at <https://www.labnol.org/internet/popular-google-subdomains/5888/>. The combination of a host/subdomain, second-level domain, and top-level domain name (such as [www.google.com](http://www.google.com) or [mail.google.com](http://mail.google.com)) is called a **fully qualified domain name (FQDN)**.

## Top-Level Domain Names

A **top-level domain (TLD)** identifies the rightmost part of the domain name, starting with the final period. A TLD is either a **generic top-level domain (gTLD)**, such as .com for commercial, or a **country-code top-level domain**, such as .fr for France. The **Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA)** website has a complete list of TLDs (<https://www.iana.org/domains/root/db>).

## Generic Top-Level Domain Names (gTLDs)

The Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers (ICANN) administers gTLDs. [Table 1.1](#) shows several common gTLDs and their intended use.

---

**Table 1.1 Top-level domains**

Generic TLD	Used By
.aero	Air-transport industry
.asia	Pan-Asia and Asia Pacific community
.biz	Businesses
.cat	Catalan linguistic and cultural community
.com	Commercial entities
.coop	Cooperative
.edu	Restricted to accredited degree-granting institutions of higher education
.gov	Restricted to government use
.info	Unrestricted use
.int	International organization (rarely used)
.jobs	Human resources management community
.mil	Restricted to military use

<b>Generic TLD</b>	<b>Used By</b>
.museum	Museums
.name	Individuals
.net	Entities associated with network support of the Internet, usually Internet service providers or telecommunication companies
.org	Nonprofit entities
.post	Universal Postal Union, an agency of the United Nations
.pro	Professionals such as accountants, physicians, and lawyers
.tel	Contact information for individuals and businesses
.travel	Travel industry

The .com, .org, and .net TLD designations are currently used on the honor system, which means that, for example, an individual who owns a shoe store (not related to networking) can register shoes.net if the domain name is not already taken.

Expect the number and variety of gTLDs to increase. As of 2017, there were over 1,500 TLDs. The new gTLDs include place names (.quebec,

.vegas, and .moscow), retail terms (.blackfriday), financial terms (.cash, .trade, and .loans), technology terms (.systems, .technology, and .app), and whimsical, fun terms (.ninja, .buzz, and .cool). ICANN has set a schedule to periodically launch new gTLDs. A list of the newest gTLDs can be found at <https://newgtlds.icann.org/en/program-status/delegated-strings>.

## Country-Code Top-Level Domain Names

Two-character country codes have also been assigned as TLD names. These codes were originally intended to be meaningful by designating the geographical location of the individual or organization that registered the name. [Table 1.2](#) lists some popular country codes used on the Web.

---

**Table 1.2 Country codes**

Country Code TLD	Country
.au	Australia
.de	Germany
.es	Spain
.eu	European Union (a group of countries rather than a single country)
.in	India
.jp	Japan

<b>Country Code TLD</b>	<b>Country</b>
.ly	Libya
.nl	The Netherlands
.us	United States
.ws	Samoa

Visit [https://icannwiki.org/Country\\_code\\_top-level\\_domain#Current\\_ccTLDs](https://icannwiki.org/Country_code_top-level_domain#Current_ccTLDs) for a complete list of country-code TLDs. Domain names with country codes are often used for municipalities, schools, and community colleges in the United States. For example, the domain name `www.harper.cc.il.us` denotes, from right to left, the United States, Illinois, community college, Harper, and the web server named "www" as the site for Harper College in Illinois.

Although country-code TLD names were intended to designate geographical location, it is fairly easy to obtain a domain name with a country-code TLD that is not local to the registrant. Examples of non-geographical use of country-code TLDs include domain names such as `mediaqueri.es`, `webteacher.ws`, and `bit.ly`.

## Domain Name System (DNS)

The DNS associates domain names with IP addresses. The following happens each time a new URL is typed into a web browser:

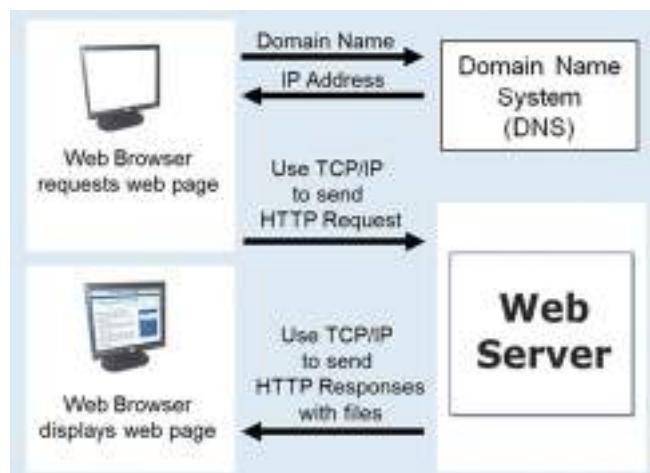
1. The DNS is accessed.
2. The corresponding IP address is obtained and returned to the web browser.
3. The web browser sends an HTTP request to the destination computer with the corresponding IP address.
4. The HTTP request is received by the web server.
5. The necessary files are located and sent by HTTP responses to the web browser.
6. The web browser renders and displays the web page and associated files.

We all get impatient sometimes when we need to view a web page. The next time you wonder why it is taking so long to display a web page, think about all of the processing that goes on behind the scenes before the browser receives the files needed to display the web page ([Figure 1.9](#)).

---

**Figure 1.9 Accessing a web page**

---



## 1.8 Markup Languages

**Markup languages** consist of sets of directions that tell the browser software (and other user agents such as mobile phones) how to display and manage a web document. These directions are usually called tags and perform functions such as displaying graphics, formatting text, and referencing hyperlinks.

### Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML)

**SGML** is a standard for specifying a markup language or tag set. SGML in itself is not a document language, but a description of how to specify one and create a document type definition (DTD). When Tim Berners-Lee created HTML, he used SGML to create the specification.

### Hypertext Markup Language (HTML)

**HTML** is the set of markup symbols or codes placed in a file intended for display on a web browser. The web browser renders the code in the HTML file and displays the web page document and associated files. The W3C sets the standards for HTML.

### Extensible Markup Language (XML)

**XML** was developed by the W3C as a flexible method to create common information formats and share the format and the information on the Web. It is a text-based syntax designed to describe, deliver, and exchange structured information. It is not intended to replace HTML, but to extend

the power of HTML by separating data from presentation. Using XML, developers can create whatever tags they need to describe their information.

## Extensible Hypertext Markup Language (XHTML)

**XHTML** uses the tags and attributes of HTML4 along with the more rigorous syntax of XML. XHTML was used on the Web for over a decade and you'll find many web pages coded with this markup language. At one point the W3C was working on a new version of XHTML, called XHTML 2.0. However, the W3C stopped development of XHTML 2.0 because it was not backward compatible with HTML4. Instead, the W3C decided to move forward with HTML5.

## HTML5—the Newest Version of HTML

**HTML5** is the successor to HTML4 and replaces XHTML. HTML5 incorporates features of both HTML and XHTML, adds new elements, provides new features such as form edits and native video, and is intended to be backward compatible. The W3C approved HTML5 for final Recommendation status in late 2014. The W3C continued its development of HTML and added more new elements, attributes, and features in an update to HTML5 called HTML5.1. In late 2017, HTML 5.2 reached final Recommendation status. At the time this was written, HTML5.3 was in working draft status.

### Checkpoint 1.2

1. Describe the components of the client/server model as applied to the Internet.
2. Identify two protocols used on the Internet to convey information that use the Internet, but do not use the Web.
3. Explain the similarities and differences between a URL and a domain name.

# 1.9 Popular Uses of the Web

## E-Commerce

Continued growth is expected for **e-commerce**, which is the buying and selling of goods and services on the Internet. The statistics portal Statista reports that United States retail e-commerce sales will increase from \$446.8 billion in 2017 to over \$700 billion in 2022 (<https://www.statista.com/statistics/272391/us-retail-e-commerce-sales-forecast/>). A study by PEW Research Center indicates that about 80% of American adults shop online (<http://www.pewinternet.org/2016/12/19/online-shopping-and-e-commerce>). E-commerce can be done not only from desktop computers, but also from a variety of other devices including tablets, smartphones, and devices with voice-enabled personal assistant software (such as Google Assistant and Amazon Alexa).

## Mobile Access

Accessing the Web with devices other than the standard desktop or notebook computers has become commonplace. The PEW Research Center reported in 2018 that 77% of Americans own a smartphone and 53% own a tablet (<http://www.pewresearch.org/fact-tank/2017/01/12/evolution-of-technology/>). Twenty percent of American adults depend only on smartphone access to the Internet and do not have broadband access in their home (<http://www.pewinternet.org/fact-sheet/internet-broadband>). Web designers must consider how their pages will display and function not only on desktop and notebook computers, but also on smartphones, tablets, and other mobile devices.

## Blogs

A **blog** is a journal that is available on the Web; it is a frequently updated page with a chronological list of ideas and links. Blog topics range from politics to technical information to personal diaries. Blogs can focus on one subject or range across a diverse group of topics—it's up to the person, called a blogger, who has created the blog and maintains it.

Bloggers usually update their blogs daily with easy-to-use software designed to allow people with little or no technical background to update and maintain a blog. Many blogs are hosted at blog communities such as <https://www.wordpress.com>. Others are hosted at individual websites, such as the blog kept by the web designer Eric Meyer at <https://meyerweb.com>. Businesses have noted the value of blogs as communication and customer relationship tools. Companies such as TechSmith (<https://www.techsmith.com/blog/>) and IBM (<https://developer.ibm.com/dwblog/>) utilize blogs in this manner.

## Wikis

A **wiki** is a website that can be updated immediately at any time by visitors, using a simple form on a web page. Some wikis are intended for a small group of people, such as the members of an organization. The most powerful wiki is Wikipedia, an online encyclopedia, which can be updated by anyone at any time. Wikis are a form of social software in action—visitors sharing their collective knowledge to create a resource freely used by all. While there have been isolated incidents of practical jokes, and inaccurate information has occasionally been posted at Wikipedia, the given information and linked resources are a good starting point when exploring a topic.

## Social Networking

Blogs and wikis provide web visitors with new methods for interacting with websites and other people—a use referred to as **social networking**. A trendy activity these days is participating in a social networking sites such as Facebook, Twitter, Pinterest, LinkedIn, or Instagram. Pew Research Center reports that in 2019, 70% of American adults use at least one social media site (<https://www.pewinternet.org/fact-sheet/social-media/>). If it seems to you as if most of your friends are on Facebook, that may be the case: As of 2019, Facebook had over two billion monthly active users (<http://newsroom.fb.com/company-info>). While LinkedIn was created with professional and business networking in mind, businesses often also use other social media sites to promote their products and services.

Twitter is a social networking site for **microblogging**, or frequently communicating with a brief message (280 characters or less) called a **tweet**. Twitter users (called twitterers) tweet to update a network of friends and followers about their daily activities and observations. Twitter is not limited to personal use. The business world has also discovered the marketing reach that Twitter can provide. Visit <https://business.twitter.com/basics> for insights on how to use Twitter to promote your business and communicate with customers.

## Cloud Computing

Document collaboration sites like Google Drive and Microsoft OneDrive, blogs, wikis, and social networking sites are all accessed via the Internet (the “cloud”) and are examples of **cloud computing**. The National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) defines cloud computing as the on-demand use of software and other computing resources hosted at a remote data center (including servers, storage, services, and applications) over the Internet. Expect to see more public and private use of cloud computing in the future.

## RSS

**Really Simple Syndication, or Rich Site Summary (RSS)** is used to create newsfeeds from blog postings and other websites. The RSS feeds contain a summary of new items posted to the site. The URL to the RSS feed is usually indicated by the letters XML or RSS in white text within an orange rectangle. A **newsreader** is needed to access the information. Some browsers, such as Firefox and Safari, can display RSS feeds. Commercial and shareware newsreader applications are also available. The newsreader polls the feed URL at intervals and displays the new headlines when requested. RSS provides web developers with a method to push new content to interested parties and (hopefully) generate return visits to the site.

## Podcasts

**Podcasts** are audio files on the web that take the format of an audio blog, radio show, or interview. Podcasts are typically delivered by an RSS feed, but can also be made available by providing the link to a recorded MP3 file on a web page. These files can be saved to your computer or to an MP3 player (such as an iPod) for later listening.

## Constant Change

Internet and web-related technologies are in a constant state of development and improvement. If constant change and the opportunity to learn something new excite you, web development is a fascinating field. The skills and knowledge you gain in this book should provide a solid foundation for your future learning.

---

## FAQ

What is the next big thing on the Web?

The Web is changing by the minute. Check the textbook's companion website at <https://www.webdevfoundations.net> for a blog that will help you stay current about web trends.

---

# Chapter Summary

This chapter has provided a brief overview of Internet, Web, and introductory networking concepts. Much of this information may already be familiar to you.

Visit the textbook's website at <http://www.webdevfoundations.net> for links to the URLs listed in this chapter and to view updated information.

# Key Terms

**accessible website** ⓘ

**Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)** ⓘ

**backbone** ⓘ

**blog** ⓘ

**client/server** ⓘ

**clients** ⓘ

**cloud computing** ⓘ

**country-code top-level domain** ⓘ

**Creative Commons** ⓘ

**domain name** ⓘ

**Domain Name System (DNS)** ⓘ

**e-commerce** ⓘ

**extranet** ⓘ

**File Transfer Protocol (FTP)** ⓘ

**fully qualified domain name (FQDN)** ⓘ

**generic top-level domain (gTLD)** ⓘ

**HTML5** ⓘ

**Hypertext Markup Language (HTML)** ⓘ

**Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)** ⓘ

**Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) **

**Internet **

**Internet Architecture Board (IAB) **

**Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) **

**Internet Corporation for Assigned Numbers and Names (ICANN) **

**Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) **

**Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP) **

**intranet **

**IP **

**IP address **

**IP Version 4 (IPv4) **

**IP Version 6 (IPv6) **

**local area network (LAN) **

**markup languages **

**microblogging **

**Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) **

**network **

**newsreader **

**packets **

**podcasts **

**Post Office Protocol (POP3) **

**protocols** ⓘ

**Really Simple Syndication or Rich Site Summary (RSS)** ⓘ

**Request for Comments (RFC)** ⓘ

**Section 508 of the Federal Rehabilitation Act** ⓘ

**server** ⓘ

**Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP)** ⓘ

**social networking** ⓘ

**Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML)** ⓘ

**subdomain** ⓘ

**TCP** ⓘ

**Tim Berners-Lee** ⓘ

**top-level domain (TLD)** ⓘ

**Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** ⓘ

**tweet** ⓘ

**Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)** ⓘ

**Uniform Resource Locator (URL)** ⓘ

**universal design** ⓘ

**Web Accessibility Initiative (WAI)** ⓘ

**Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG)** ⓘ

**web host server**

**wide area network (WAN)** ⓘ

[wiki](#)①

[World Intellectual Property Organization \(WIPO\)](#)①

[World Wide Web](#)①

[World Wide Web Consortium \(W3C\)](#)①

[XHTML](#)①

[XML](#)①

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. What is a unique text-based Internet address corresponding to a computer's unique numeric IP address called?
  - a. IP address
  - b. domain name
  - c. URL
  - d. user name
2. Select the item below that indicates the top-level domain name for the URL <http://www.mozilla.com>.
  - a. mozilla
  - b. com
  - c. http
  - d. www
3. Of the following organizations, which one coordinates applications for new TLDs?
  - a. Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA)
  - b. Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)
  - c. Internet Corporation for Assigned Numbers and Names (ICANN)
  - d. World Wide Web Consortium (W3C)
4. Which of the following is a network that covers a small area, such as a group of buildings or campus?
  - a. LAN
  - b. WAN
  - c. Internet
  - d. WWW

5. Which of the following organizations takes a proactive role in developing recommendations and prototype technologies related to the Web?
- a. World Wide Web Consortium (W3C)
  - b. Web Professional Standards Organization (WPO)
  - c. Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)
  - d. Internet Corporation for Assigned Numbers and Names (ICANN)

## True or False

- 6. \_\_\_\_\_ A URL is one type of URI.
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_ Markup languages contain sets of directions that tell the browser software how to display and manage a web document.
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_ The World Wide Web was developed to allow companies to conduct e-commerce over the Internet.
- 9. \_\_\_\_\_ A domain name that ends in .net indicates that the website must be for a networking company.
- 10. \_\_\_\_\_ An accessible website provides accommodations that help individuals overcome barriers such as visual, auditory, physical, and neurological disabilities.

## Fill in the Blank

- 11. \_\_\_\_\_ is the set of markup symbols or codes placed in a file intended for display on a web browser.
- 12. A \_\_\_\_\_ can be configured to house a separate website located at the same domain.
- 13. A standard language used for specifying a markup language or tag set is \_\_\_\_\_.

- 14.** Frequently communicating by posting brief messages at a social networking site is called \_\_\_\_\_.
- 15.** The purpose of \_\_\_\_\_ is to ensure the integrity of network communication.

# Hands-On Exercise

1. Twitter (<https://www.twitter.com>) is a social networking website for microblogging, or frequently communicating with a brief message (280 characters or less) called a tweet. Twitter users (referred to as twitterers) tweet to update a network of friends and followers about their daily activities, observations, and information related to topics of interest. A hashtag (the #symbol) can be placed in front of a word or term within a tweet to categorize the topic, such as typing the hashtag #SXSWi in all tweets about the SXSW Interactive Conference for the web design industry. The use of a hashtag makes it easy to search for tweets about a category or event in Twitter.

If you don't already use Twitter, sign up for free account. Use your Twitter account to share information about websites that you find useful or interesting. Post at least three tweets. You might tweet about websites that contain useful web design resources. You might describe sites that have interesting features, such as compelling graphics or easy-to-use navigation. After you begin to develop your own websites, you could tweet about them, too!

Your instructor may direct you to include a distinctive hashtag (for example, something like #CIS110) in your tweets that are related to your web design studies. Searching Twitter for the specified hashtag will make it easy to collect all the tweets posted by the students in your class.

2. Create a blog to document your learning experiences as you study web development. Visit one of the many sites that offer free blogs, such as <https://www.blogger.com>, <https://www.wordpress.com>, or <https://www.tumblr.com>. Follow the

site's instructions to establish your own blog. Your blog could be a place to note websites that you find useful or interesting. You might report on sites that contain useful web design resources. You might describe sites that have interesting features, such as compelling graphics or easy-to-use navigation. Write a few sentences about each site that you find intriguing. After you begin to develop your own sites, you could include the URLs and reasons for your design decisions. Share this blog with your fellow students and friends. Display your page in a browser, and print the page. Hand in the printout to your instructor.

# Web Research

**1.** The World Wide Web Consortium creates standards for the Web.

Visit its site at <https://www.w3c.org> and then answer the following questions:

- a. How did the W3C get started?
- b. Who can join the W3C? What does it cost to join?
- c. The W3C home page lists a number of technologies.

Choose one that interests you, click on its link, and read the associated pages. List three facts or issues you discover.

**2.** The Internet Society takes an active leadership role in issues

related to the Internet. Visit its site at <https://www.internetsociety.org> and then answer the following questions:

- a. Why was the Internet Society created?
- b. Determine which local chapter is closest to you. Visit its website. List the website's URL and an activity or service that the chapter provides.
- c. How can you join the Internet Society? What does it cost to join? Would you recommend that a beginning Web developer join the Internet Society? Why or why not?

**3.** HTTP/2 is the first major update to HTTP, which was first

developed in the late 1990s. As websites have become more image and media intensive, the number of requests needed to display a web page and its related files have increased. A major benefit of HTTP/2 will be quicker loading of web pages.

HTTP/2 Resources:

- <https://readwrite.com/2015/02/18/http-update-http2-what-you-need-to-know>

- <https://http2.github.io>
- <https://www.engadget.com/2015/02/24/what-you-need-to-know-about-http-2>
- <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7540>

Use the resources listed above as a starting point as you research HTTP/2 and answer the following questions.

- a. Who developed HTTP/2?
- b. When was the HTTP/2 proposed standard published?
- c. Describe three methods used by HTTP/2 intended to decrease latency and provide for quicker loading of web pages in browsers.

# Focus on Web Design

1. Visit a website that interests you. Print the home page or one other pertinent page from the site. Write a one-page summary of the site that addresses the following topics:
  - a. What is the URL of the site?
  - b. What is the purpose of the site?
  - c. Who is the intended audience?
  - d. Do you think that the site reaches its intended audience?  
Why or why not?
  - e. Is the site useful to you? Why or why not?
  - f. Does this site appeal to you? Why or why not? Consider the use of color, images, multimedia, organization, and ease of navigation.
  - g. Would you encourage others to visit this site? Why or why not?
  - h. How could this site be improved?

## 2

# HTML Basics

---





## Chapter Objectives

---

### IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .

- Describe HTML, XHTML, and HTML5
- Identify the markup language in a web page document
- Use the html, head, body, title, and meta elements to code a template for a web page
- Configure the body of a web page with headings, paragraphs, line breaks, divs, lists, and blockquotes
- Configure text with phrase elements
- Configure special characters
- Configure a web page with HTML5 structural elements: header, nav, main, footer, section, and article
- Use the anchor element to link from page to page
- Create absolute, relative, and e-mail hyperlinks
- Code, save, and display a web page document
- Test a web page document for valid syntax

This chapter gets you started on your very first web page. You'll be introduced to Hypertext Markup Language (HTML), the language used to create web pages. The chapter begins with an introduction to the syntax of HTML5; continues with sample web pages; and introduces HTML structural, phrase, and hyperlink elements as more example web pages are created. You will learn more if you work along with the sample pages.

in the text. Coding HTML is a skill, and every skill improves with practice.

## 2.1 HTML Overview

**Markup languages** consist of sets of directions that tell the browser software (and other user agents such as mobile phones) how to display and manage a web document. These directions are usually called tags and perform functions such as displaying graphics, formatting text, and referencing hyperlinks.

The World Wide Web is composed of files containing **Hypertext Markup Language (HTML)** and other markup languages that describe web pages. Tim Berners-Lee developed HTML using Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML). SGML prescribes a standard format for embedding descriptive markup within a document and for describing the structure of a document. SGML is not in itself a document language, but rather a description of how to specify one and create a document type definition (DTD). The W3C sets the standards for HTML and its related languages. Like the Web itself, HTML is in a constant state of change.

## HTML

HTML is the set of markup symbols or codes placed in a file that is intended for display on a web page. These markup symbols and codes identify structural elements such as paragraphs, headings, and lists. HTML can also be used to place media (such as graphics, video, and audio) on a web page and describe fill-in forms. The browser interprets the markup code and renders the page. HTML permits the platform-independent display of information across a network. No matter what type of computer a web page was created on, any browser running on any operating system can display the page.

Each individual markup code is referred to as an **element** or a **tag**. Each tag has a purpose. Tags are enclosed in angle brackets, the `<` and `>` symbols. Most tags come in pairs: an opening tag and a closing tag. These tags act as containers and are sometimes referred to as container tags. For example, the text that is between the `<title>` and `</title>` tags on a web page would display in the title bar on the browser window. Some tags are used alone and are not part of a pair. For example, a `<br>` tag that configures a line break on a web page is a stand-alone, or self-contained, tag and does not have a closing tag. Most tags can be modified with **attributes** that further describe their purpose.

## XML

**XML (eXtensible Markup Language)** was developed by the W3C to create common information formats and share the format and the information on the Web. It is a text-based syntax designed to describe, deliver, and exchange structured information, such as RSS feeds. XML is not intended to replace HTML, but to extend the power of HTML by separating data from presentation. Using XML, developers can create any tags they need to describe their information.

## XHTML

**eXtensible HyperText Markup Language (XHTML)** uses the tags and attributes of HTML4 along with the syntax of XML. XHTML was used on the Web for over a decade and you'll find many web pages coded with this markup language. At one point the W3C was working on a new version of XHTML, called XHTML 2.0. However, the W3C stopped development of XHTML 2.0 because it was not backward compatible with HTML4. Instead, the W3C decided to move forward with HTML5.

# HTML5

**HTML5** is the successor to HTML4 and replaces XHTML. HTML5 incorporates features of both HTML and XHTML, adds new elements of its own, provides new features such as form edits and native video, and is intended to be backward compatible.

The W3C approved HTML5 for final Recommendation status in late 2014. This markup language is constantly changing and evolving. New versions HTML5.1 and HTML5.2 have reached final Recommendation status and HTML 5.3 is currently in working draft status. Recent versions of popular browsers offer good support for HTML5, including its newest official version, HTML5.2, which you'll learn to use as you work through this textbook. W3C HTML5.2 documentation is available at <https://www.w3.org/TR/html52/>.

In 2019, the W3C and the **WHATWG (Web Hypertext Application Technology Working Group)** agreed to collaborate on the development of HTML specifications. The WHATWG is an open group founded by individuals working at many leading technology organizations including Apple, the Mozilla Foundation, and Opera Software. The WHATWG plans to prepare a Review Draft of the HTML Standard every six months.

---

## FAQ

What software do I need?

No special software is needed to create a web page document; all you need is a text editor. The Notepad text editor is included with Microsoft Windows.TextEdit is distributed with the Mac OS X operating system. An

alternative to the operating system's basic text editor is one of the many free or shareware editors that are available, such as Notepad++ (<http://notepad-plus-plus.org/download>), BBEdit (<http://www.barebones.com/products/bbedit/index.html>), Brackets (<http://brackets.io>), and Visual Studio Code (<https://code.visualstudio.com>).

Another commonly used alternative is a commercial web-authoring tool, such as Adobe Dreamweaver. Regardless of the software or program you use, having a solid foundation in HTML will be useful.

You will need to test your web pages in the most popular browsers, such as Microsoft Edge, Mozilla Firefox, Apple Safari, and Google Chrome. Access a free download of Firefox at <https://www.mozilla.org/en-US/firefox/new/>. A free download of Google Chrome is available at <https://www.google.com/chrome>.

You will also find the Web Developer Extension for Firefox (<https://addons.mozilla.org/en-us/firefox/addon/web-developer>) to be useful.

---

## 2.2 Document Type Definition

Because multiple versions and types of HTML and XHTML exist, the W3C recommends identifying the type of markup language used in a web page document with a **Document Type Definition (DTD)**. The DTD identifies the version of HTML contained in your document. Browsers and HTML code validators can use the information in the DTD when processing the web page. The DTD statement, commonly called a **doctype** statement, is the first line of a web page document. The DTD for HTML5 is:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
```

## 2.3 Web Page Template

You already know that the HTML markup language tells browsers how to display information on a web page. Let's take a closer look at what's "under the hood" (Figure 2.1) of every web page you create. Every single web page you create will include the DTD and the html, head, title, meta, and body elements. We will follow the coding style to use lowercase letters and place quotes around attribute values. A basic HTML5 web page template (see chapter2/template.html in the student files) is as follows:

---

**Figure 2.1 It's what is under the hood that matters.**

---



```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Page Title Goes Here</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
```

```
... body text and more HTML tags go here ...
</body>
</html>
```

With the exception of the specific page title, the first seven lines will usually be the same on every web page that you create. Review the code above and notice that the document type definition statement has its own formatting and that the HTML tags all use lowercase letters. Next, let's explore the purpose of the html, head, title, meta, and body elements.

## 2.4 HTML Element

The purpose of the `html` element is to indicate that the document is HTML formatted. The `html` element tells the browser how to interpret the document. The opening `<html>` tag is placed on a line below the DTD. The closing `</html>` tag indicates the end of the web page and is placed after all other HTML elements in the document.

The `html` element also needs to indicate the spoken language, such as English, of the text in the document. This additional information is added to the `<html>` tag in the form of an attribute, which modifies or further describes the function of an element. The **lang attribute** specifies the spoken language of the document. For example, `lang="en"` indicates the English language. Search engines and screen readers may access this attribute.

## 2.5 Head, Title, Meta, and Body Elements

There are two sections on a web page: the head and the body. The **head section** contains information that describes the web page document. The **body section** contains the actual tags, text, images, and other objects that are displayed by the browser as a web page.

### The Head Section

Elements that are located in the head section include the title of the web page, meta tags that describe the document (such as the character encoding used and information that may be accessed by search engines), and references to scripts and styles. Many of these features do not show directly on the web page.

### The Head Element

The **head element** contains the head section, which begins with the `<head>` tag and ends with the `</head>` tag. You will always code at least two other elements in the head section: a title element and a meta element.

### The Title Element

The first element in the head section, the **title element**, configures the text that will appear in the title bar of the browser window. The text between the `<title>` and `</title>` tags is called the title of the web page and is accessed when web pages are bookmarked and printed. Popular search engines, such as Google, use the title text to help determine

keyword relevance and even display the title text on the results page of a search. A descriptive title that includes the website or organization name is a crucial component for establishing a brand or presence on the Web.

## The Meta Element

The **meta element** describes a characteristic of a web page, such as the character encoding. **Character encoding** is the internal representation of letters, numbers, and symbols in a file such as a web page or other file that is stored on a computer and may be transmitted over the Internet. There are many different character-encoding sets. However, it is common practice to use a character-encoding set that is widely supported, such as utf-8, which is a form of Unicode (<https://home.unicode.org>). The meta tag is not used as a pair of opening and closing tags. It is considered to be a stand-alone, or self-contained, tag (referred to as a **void element** in HTML5). The meta tag uses the **charset attribute** to indicate the character encoding. An example meta tag is as follows:

```
<meta charset="utf-8">
```

## The Body Section

The body section contains text and elements that display directly on the web page in the browser window, also referred to as the browser viewport. The purpose of the body section is to configure the contents of the web page.

## The Body Element

The **body element** contains the body section, which begins with the **<body>** tag and ends with the **</body>** tag. You will spend most of your

time writing code in the body of a web page. Text and elements typed between the opening and closing body tags will display on the web page in the browser viewport.

## 2.6 Your First Web Page

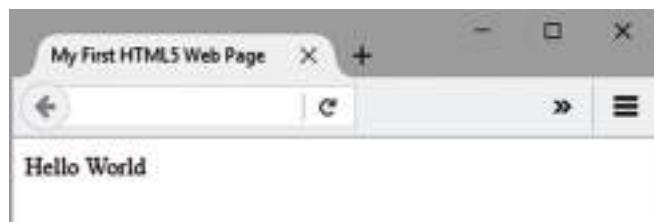
Video Note

**Your First Web Page**

### Hands-On Practice 2.1

Now that you're familiar with basic elements used on every web page, it's your turn to create your first web page, shown in [Figure 2.2](#).

**Figure 2.2 Your first webpage**



### Create a Folder

You'll find it helpful to create folders to organize your files as you develop the web pages in this book and create your own websites. Use your operating system to create a new folder named mychapter2 on your hard drive or a portable flash drive.

To create a new folder on a Mac:

- 1.** Launch Finder, and select the location where you would like to create the new folder.
- 2.** Choose File > New Folder to create an untitled folder.
- 3.** To rename the folder, select the folder and click on the current name. Type a name for the folder, and press the Return key.

To create a new folder with Windows:

- 1.** Launch File Explorer (formerly called Windows Explorer):
  - a.** Display the Desktop.
  - b.** Right-click on the Start button and select File Explorer.
- 2.** Navigate to the location where you would like to create the new folder, such as Documents, your C: drive, or an external USB drive.
- 3.** Select the Home tab. Select New Folder.
- 4.** To rename the New Folder, right-click on it, select Rename from the context-sensitive menu, type in the new name, and press the Enter key.

---

## FAQ

Why should I create a folder? Why not just use the desktop?

Folders will help you to organize your work. If you just use the desktop, it would quickly become cluttered and disorganized. It's also important to know that websites are organized on web servers within folders. By starting to use folders right away to organize related web

pages, you are on your way to becoming a successful web designer.

---

## Your First Web Page

Now you are ready to create your first HTML5 web page.

Launch Notepad or another text editor. Type in the following code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>My First HTML5 Web Page</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
Hello World
</body>
</html>
```

Notice that the first line in the file contains the doctype. The HTML code begins with an opening `<html>` tag and ends with a closing `</html>` tag. The purpose of these tags is to indicate that the content between them makes up a web page. The head section is delimited by `<head>` and `</head>` tags and contains a pair of title tags with the words “My First HTML5 Web Page” in between, along with a `<meta>` tag to indicate the character encoding.

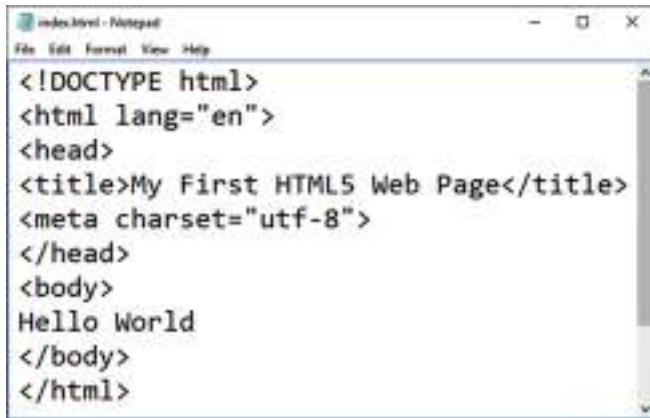
The body section is delimited by `<body>` and `</body>` tags. The words “Hello World” are typed on a line between the body tags. See [Figure 2.3](#) for a screenshot of the code as it would

appear in Notepad. You have just created the source code for a web page document.

---

**Figure 2.3 Code displayed in Notepad. Courtesy of Microsoft Corporation.**

---



A screenshot of the Windows Notepad application window titled "index.html - Notepad". The window contains the following HTML code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>My First HTML5 Web Page</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
Hello World
</body>
</html>
```

---

## FAQ

Do I have to start each tag on its own line?

No, you are not required to start each tag on a separate line. A browser can display a page even if all the tags follow each other on one line with no spaces. Humans, however, find it easier to write and read web page code if line breaks and indentation are used.

---

## Save Your File

You will save your file with the name of index.html. A common file name for the home page of a website is index.html or index.htm. Web pages use either a .htm or a .html file

extension. The web pages in this book use the .html file extension. Display your file in Notepad or another text editor. Select File from the menu bar, and then select Save As. The Save As dialog box will appear. Navigate to your mychapter2 folder. Using [Figure 2.4](#) as an example, type the file name. Click the Save button after you type the file name. Sample solutions for the exercises are available in the student files. If you like, you can compare your work with the solution in the student files at chapter2/index.html before you test your page.

---

**Figure 2.4 The Save As dialog box. Courtesy of Microsoft Corporation.**

---



---

## FAQ

Why does my file have a .txt file extension?

In some older versions of Windows, Notepad will automatically append a .txt file extension. If this happens, type the name of the file within quotation marks ("index.html"), and save your file again.

---

## Test Your Page

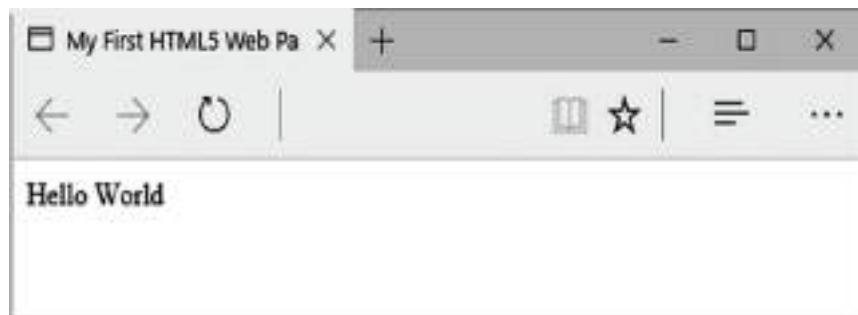
There are two ways to test your page:

1. Launch File Explorer or Finder (Mac). Navigate to your index.html file. Double-click index.html. The default browser will launch and will display your index.html page.
2. Launch a web browser. Select File > Open, and navigate to your index.html file. Double-click index.html and click OK. The browser will display your index.html page. Examine your page. If you are using Microsoft Edge, your page should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 2.5](#). A display of the page using Firefox is shown in [Figure 2.2](#). Look carefully at the browser window. Notice how the browser title bar or browser tab displays the title text, “My First HTML5 Web Page.” Some search engines use the text enclosed within the `<title>` and `</title>` tags to help determine the relevancy of keyword searches, so make certain that your pages contain descriptive titles. The title element is also used when viewers bookmark your page or add it to their Favorites. An engaging and descriptive page title may entice a visitor to revisit your page. If your web page is for a company or an organization, it’s a best practice to include the name of the company or organization in the title.

---

**Figure 2.5 Web page displayed by Microsoft Edge.  
Courtesy of Microsoft Corporation.**

---



## FAQ

When I viewed my page in a browser, the file name was index. html.html—why did this happen?

This usually happens when your operating system is configured to hide file extension names. You will correct the file name, using one of the following two methods:

- Use the operating system to rename the file from “index.html.html” to “index.html”.  
OR
- Open the index.html.html file in your text editor and save it with the name “index.html”.

It's a good idea to change the settings in your operating system to show file extension names. Access the system help for your operating system or the resources below for information about how to configure your operating system to show file extension names:

- *Windows*: <http://www.file-extensions.org/article/show-and-hide-file-extensions-in-windows-10>
- *Mac*: [http://www.fileinfo.com/help/mac\\_show\\_extensions](http://www.fileinfo.com/help/mac_show_extensions)

---

## Checkpoint 2.1

- 1.** Describe the origin, purpose, and features of HTML.
- 2.** Describe the software needed to create and test web pages.
- 3.** Describe the purpose of the head and body sections of a web page.

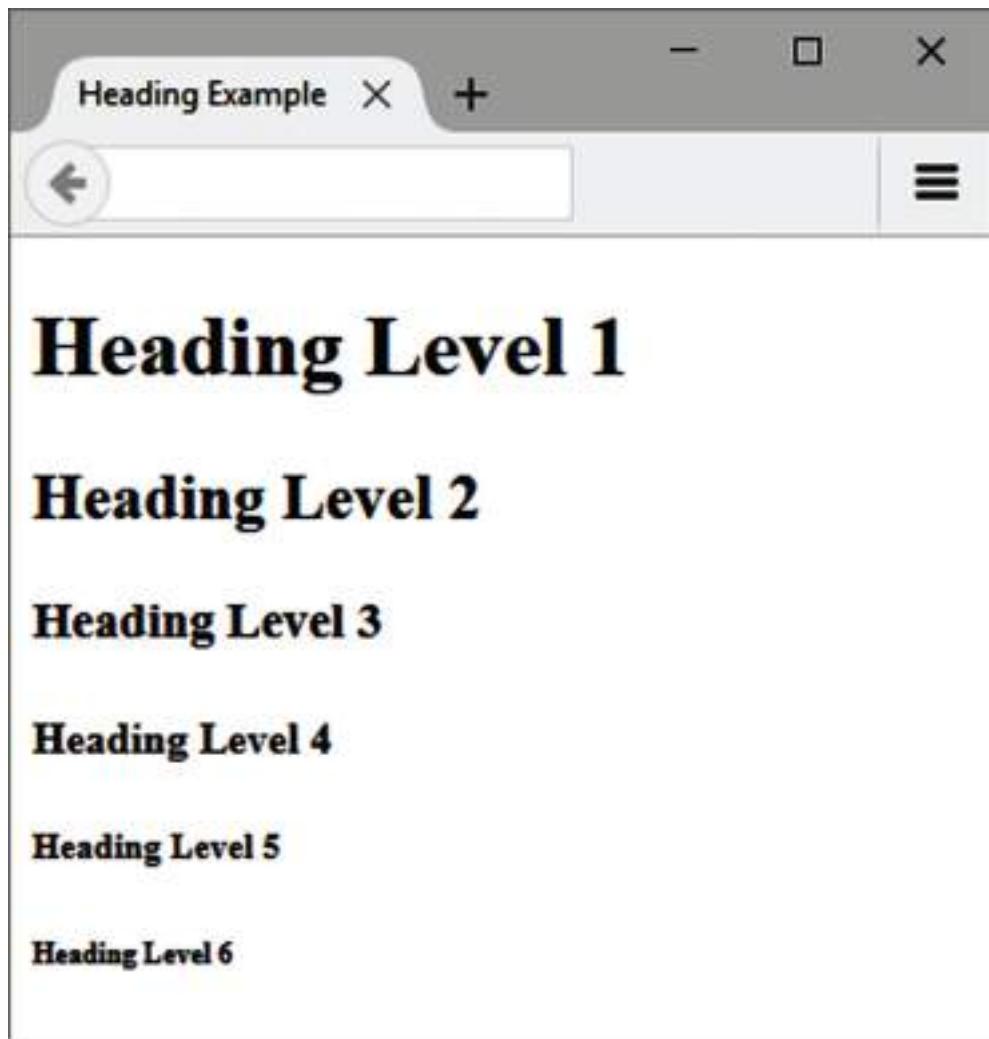
## 2.7 Heading Element

**Heading elements** are organized into six levels: h1 through h6. The text contained within a heading element is rendered as a “block” of text by the browser (referred to as **block display**) and displays with empty space (sometimes called “white space”) above and below. The size of the text is largest for **<h1>** (called the heading 1 tag) and smallest for **<h6>** (called the heading 6 tag). Depending on the font being used (more on font sizes in [Chapter 3](#)), the text contained within **<h4>**, **<h5>**, and **<h6>** tags may be displayed smaller than the default text size. All text contained within heading tags is displayed with bold font weight. [Figure 2.6](#) shows a web page document with six levels of headings.

---

**Figure 2.6 Sample headings**

---



## FAQ

Why doesn't the heading tag go in the head section?

It's common for students to try to code the heading tags in the head section of the document, but doing this is not valid and will cause issues with the way the browser displays the web page. Even though "heading tag" and "head section" sound similar, always code heading tags in the body section of the web page document.

## Hands-On Practice 2.2

To create the web page shown in [Figure 2.6](#), launch Notepad or another text editor. Select File > Open to edit the HTML5 template file located at chapter2/template.html in the student files. Modify the title element and add heading tags to the body section as indicated by the following code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Heading Example</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<h1>Heading Level 1</h1>
<h2>Heading Level 2</h2>
<h3>Heading Level 3</h3>
<h4>Heading Level 4</h4>
<h5>Heading Level 5</h5>
<h6>Heading Level 6</h6>
</body>
</html>
```

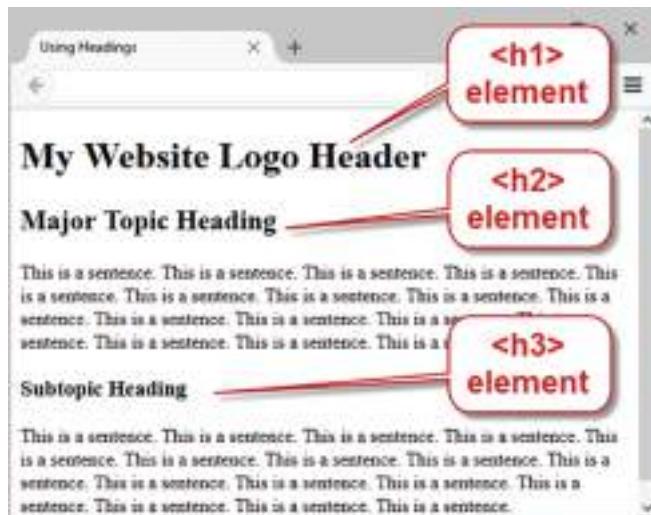
Save the document as heading.html on your hard drive or flash drive. Launch a browser such as Microsoft Edge or Firefox to test your page. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 2.6](#). You can compare your work with the solution found in the student files (chapter2/heading.html).

## Accessibility and Headings

## Focus on Accessibility

Heading tags can help to make your pages more accessible and usable. It is good coding practice to use heading tags to outline the structure of your web page content. To indicate areas within a page hierarchically, code heading tags numerically as appropriate (h1, h2, h3, and so on), and include page content in block display elements such as paragraphs and lists. In Figure 2.7, the `<h1>` tag contains the name of the website in the logo header area at the top of the web page, the `<h2>` tag contains the topic or name of the page in the content area, and other heading elements are coded in the content area as needed to identify major topics and subtopics.

## Figure 2.7 Heading tags outline the page



Visually challenged visitors who are using a screen reader can direct the software to display a list of the headings used on a page to focus on the topics that interest them. Your well-organized page will be more usable for every visitor to your site, including those who are visually challenged.

## 2.8 Paragraph Element

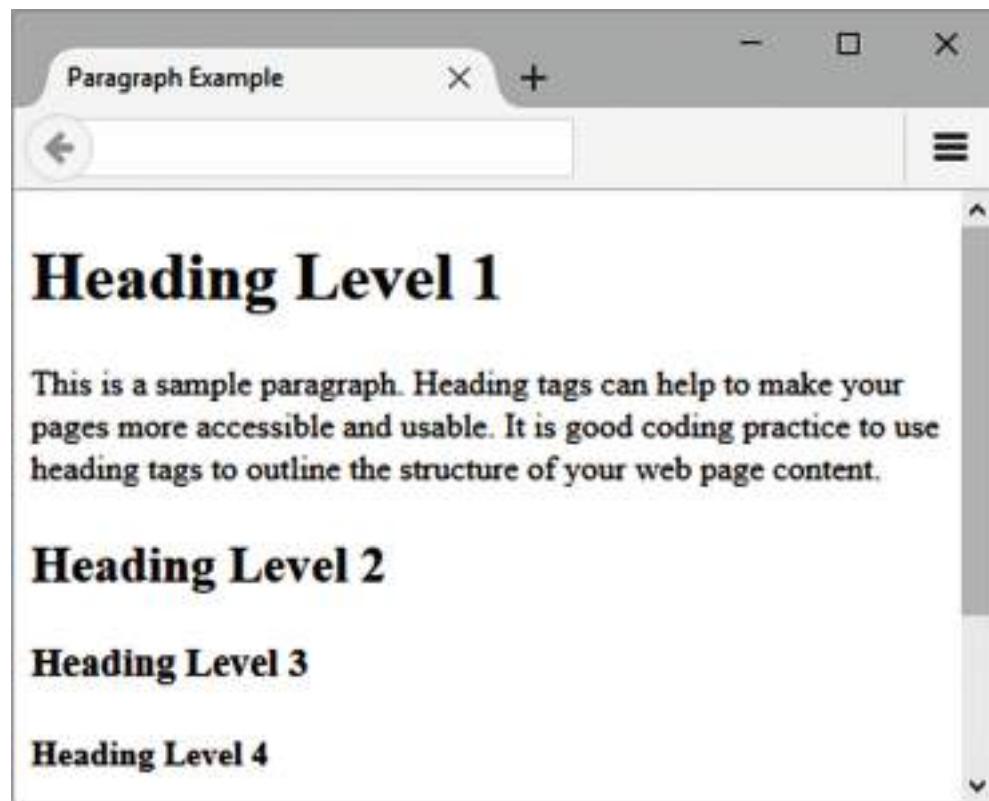
A **paragraph element** groups sentences and sections of text together.

Text within `<p>` and `</p>` tags display as a “block” (referred to as block display) and will appear with empty space above and below it. [Figure 2.8](#) shows a web page document with a paragraph after the first heading.

---

**Figure 2.8 Web page using headings and a paragraph**

---



---

### Hands-On Practice 2.3

To create the web page shown in [Figure 2.8](#), launch a text editor. Select File > Open to edit the file located at chapter2/heading.html in the student files. Modify the page title, and add a paragraph of text to your page below the line with the `<h1>` tags and above the line with the `<h2>` tags. Use the following code as an example:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Paragraph Example</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<h1>Heading Level 1</h1>
<p>This is a sample paragraph. Heading tags can
help to make your
pages more accessible and usable. It is good
coding practice to use
heading tags to outline the structure of your
web page content.
</p>
<h2>Heading Level 2</h2>
<h3>Heading Level 3</h3>
<h4>Heading Level 4</h4>
<h5>Heading Level 5</h5>
<h6>Heading Level 6</h6>
</body>
</html>
```

Save the document as paragraph.html on your hard drive or flash drive. Launch a browser to test your page. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 2.8](#). You can compare your work with the solution (chapter2/paragraph.html) found in the student files. Notice how the text in the paragraph wraps automatically as you resize your browser window.

# Alignment

As you tested your web pages, you may have noticed that the headings and text begin near the left margin. This placement is called **left alignment** and is the default alignment for web pages. There are times when you want a paragraph or heading to be centered or right aligned. The align attribute can be used for this purpose. Note that the align attribute is obsolete in HTML5, which means that the attribute has been removed from the W3C HTML5 specification, even though it is still supported by browsers. You'll learn techniques to configure alignment with Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) in [Chapters 6](#) and [7](#).

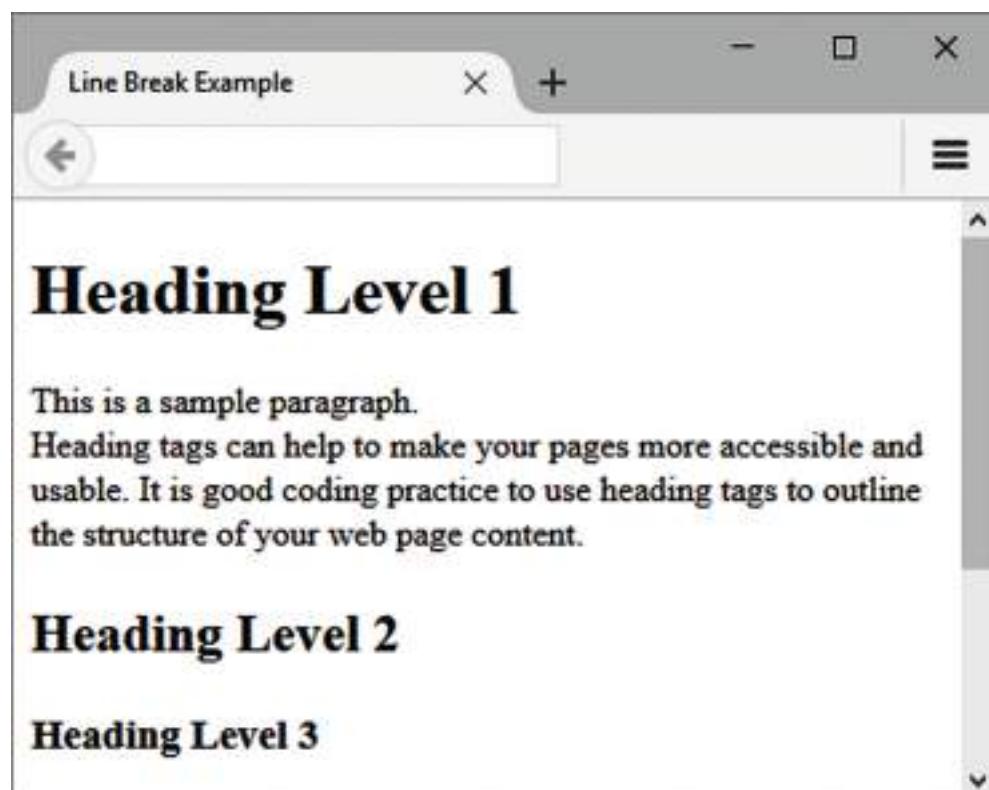
## 2.9 Line Break Element

The **line break element** causes the browser to advance to the next line before displaying the next element or portion of text on a web page. The line break tag is not coded as a pair of opening and closing tags. It is a stand-alone, or void element, and is coded as `<br>`. Figure 2.9 shows a web page document with a line break after the first sentence in the paragraph.

---

**Figure 2.9** Notice the line break after the first sentence

---



---

### Hands-On Practice 2.4

To create the web page shown in [Figure 2.9](#), launch a text editor. Select File > Open to edit the file located at chapter2/paragraph.html in the student files. Modify the text contained between the title tags to be “Line Break Example”. Place your cursor after the first sentence in the paragraph (after “This is a sample paragraph.”). Press the Enter key. Save your file. Test your page in a browser, and notice that even though your source code showed the “This is a sample paragraph.” sentence on its own line, the browser did not render it that way. A line break tag is needed to configure the browser to display the second sentence on a new line. Edit the file in a text editor, and add a `<br>` tag after the first *sentence* in the paragraph, as shown in the following code snippet:

```
<body>
<h1>Heading Level 1</h1>
<p>This is a sample paragraph. <br> Heading tags
can help to make your
pages more accessible and usable. It is good
coding practice to use
heading tags to outline the structure of your
web page content.
</p>
<h2>Heading Level 2</h2>
<h3>Heading Level 3</h3>
<h4>Heading Level 4</h4>
<h5>Heading Level 5</h5>
<h6>Heading Level 6</h6>
</body>
```

Save your file as linebreak.html. Launch a browser to test your page. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 2.9](#). You can compare your work with the solution found in the student files (chapter2/linebreak.html).

## FAQ

Why does my web page still look the same?

Often, students make changes to a web page document, but get frustrated because their browser shows an older version of the page. The following troubleshooting tips are helpful when you know you modified your web page, but the changes do not show up in the browser:

- 1.** Make sure you save your page after you make the changes.
  - 2.** Verify the location that you are saving your page to –a specific folder on the hard drive or removable storage.
  - 3.** Verify the location that your browser is requesting the page from—a specific folder on the hard drive or removable storage.
  - 4.** Be sure to click the Refresh or Reload button in your browser.
-

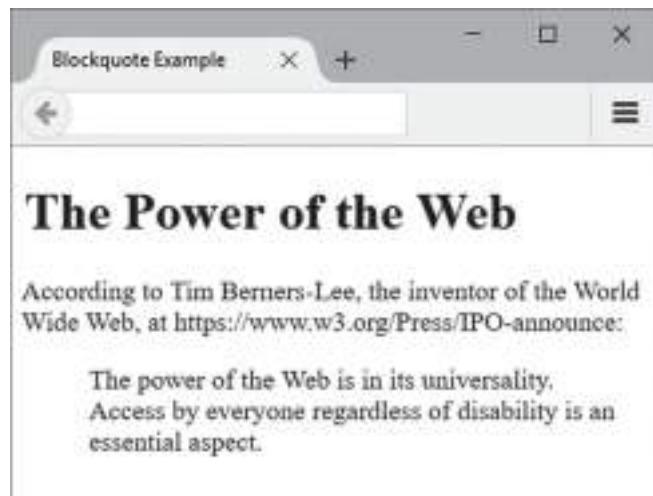
## 2.10 Blockquote Element

In addition to organizing text in paragraphs and headings, sometimes you need to add a quotation to a web page. The **blockquote element** is used to display a block of quoted text in a special way—indented from both the left and right margins. A block of indented text begins with a `<blockquote>` tag and ends with a `</blockquote>` tag. [Figure 2.10](#) shows a web page document with a heading, a paragraph, and a blockquote.

---

**Figure 2.10** The text within the **blockquote** element is indented

---



---

### Hands-On Practice 2.5

To create the web page shown in [Figure 2.10](#), launch a text editor. Select File > Open to edit the template file located at chapter2/template.html in the student files. Modify the title element. Add a heading tag, a paragraph tag, and a blockquote tag to the body section as indicated by the following code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Blockquote Example</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<h1>The Power of the Web</h1>
<p>According to Tim Berners-Lee, the inventor of  
the World Wide Web,  
at https://www.w3.org/WAI/:</p>
<blockquote>
The power of the Web is in its universality.
Access by everyone
regardless of disability is an essential aspect.
</blockquote>
</body>
</html>
```

Save the document as `blockquote.html` on your hard drive or flash drive. Launch a browser to test your page. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 2.10](#). You can compare your work with the solution (`chapter2/blockquote.html`) found in the student files.

You have probably noticed how convenient the `<blockquote>` tag could be if you need to indent an area of text on a web page. You may have wondered whether it would be okay to use the `blockquote` element anytime you would like to indent text or whether the `blockquote` element is reserved only for long quotations. The semantically correct use of the `blockquote` element is only for displaying large blocks of quoted text within a web page. Avoid using a `blockquote` element just to indent text. You will learn modern techniques to configure margins and padding on elements in [Chapters 6](#) and [7](#).

## 2.11 Phrase Elements

**Phrase elements** indicate the context and meaning of the text between the container tags. It is up to each browser to interpret that style. Phrase elements are displayed right in line with the text (referred to as **inline display**) and can apply to a section of text or even just a single character of text. For example, the **<strong>** element indicates that the text associated with it has strong importance and should be displayed in a “strong” manner in relation to normal text on the page. [Table 2.1](#) lists common phrase elements and examples of their use. Notice that some tags, such as **<cite>** and **<dfn>**, result in the same type of display (italics) as the **<em>** tag in popular browsers. These tags semantically describe the text as a citation or definition, but the physical display is usually italics in both cases.

---

**Table 2.1** Phrase elements

Element	Example	Usage
<b>&lt;abbr&gt;</b>	WIPO	Identifies text as an abbreviation; configure the title attribute with the full name
<b>&lt;b&gt;</b>	<b>bold</b> text	Text that has no extra importance, but is styled in bold font by usage and convention
<b>&lt;cite&gt;</b>	<i>cite</i> text	Identifies a citation or reference; usually displayed in italics

Element	Example	Usage
<code>	code text	Identifies program code samples; usually a fixed-space font
<dfn>	<i>dfn</i> text	Identifies a definition of a word or term; usually displayed in italics
<em>	<i>emphasized</i> text	Causes text to be emphasized in relation to other text; usually displayed in italics
<i>	<i>italicized</i> text	Text that has no extra importance, but is styled in italics by usage and convention
<kbd>	kbd text	Identifies user text to be typed; usually a fixed-space font
<mark>	mark text	Text that is highlighted in order to be easily referenced
<samp>	samp text	Shows program sample output; usually a fixed-space font
<small>	small text	Legal disclaimers and notices (“fine print”) displayed in small font size
<strong>	<b>strong</b> text	Strong importance; causes text to stand out from surrounding text; usually displayed in bold

Element	Example	Usage
< <b>sub</b> >	<code>sub</code> text	Displays a subscript as small text below the baseline
< <b>sup</b> >	<code>sup</code> text	Displays a superscript as small text above the baseline
< <b>var</b> >	<code>var</code> text	Identifies and displays a variable or program output; usually displayed in italics

Each phrase element is a container element, so an opening and a closing tag must be used. As shown in [Table 2.1](#), the <**strong**> element indicates that the text associated with it has “strong” importance. Usually, the browser (or other user agent) will display <**strong**> text in bold font type. A screen reader, such as JAWS or Window-Eyes, might interpret <**strong**> text to indicate that the text should be more strongly spoken. In the following line, the phone number is displayed with strong importance:

Call for a free quote for your web development needs:  
**888.555.5555**

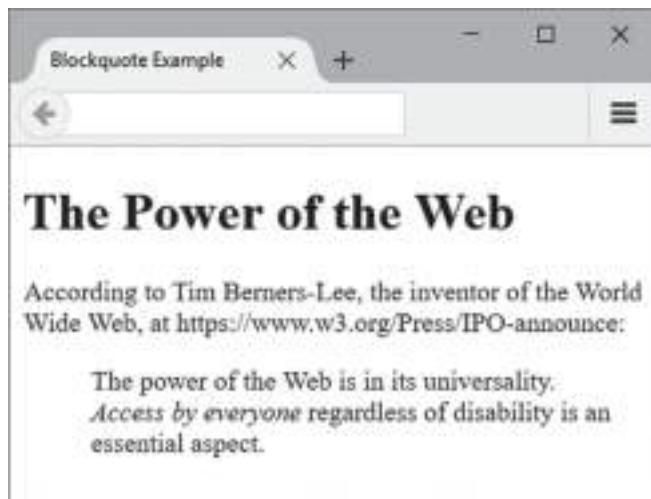
The corresponding code is:

```
<p>Call for a free quote for your web development needs:<br>
<strong>888.555.5555</strong></p>
```

Notice that the opening `<strong>` and closing `</strong>` tags are contained within the paragraph tags (`<p>` and `</p>`). This code is properly nested and is considered to be **well formed**. When improperly nested, the `<p>` and `<strong>` tag pairs overlap each other instead of being nested within each other. Improperly nested code will not pass validation testing (see [Section 2.18](#), “HTML Validation”) and may cause display issues.

[Figure 2.11](#) shows a web page document (also found in the student files at chapter2/em.html) that uses the `<em>` tag to display the emphasized phrase “Access by everyone” in italics.

**Figure 2.11** The `<em>` tag in action



The code snippet is

```
<blockquote>
The power of the Web is in its universality.
<em>Access by everyone</em>
regardless of disability is an essential aspect.
</blockquote>
```

## 2.12 Ordered List

Lists are used on web pages to organize information. When writing for the Web, headings, short paragraphs, and lists can make your page more clear and easy to read. HTML can be used to create three types of lists—description lists, ordered lists, and unordered lists. All lists are rendered as block display with an empty space above and below.

This section focuses on the **ordered list**, which displays a numbering or lettering system to itemize the information contained in the list. Ordered lists can be organized by the use of numerals (the default), uppercase letters, lowercase letters, uppercase Roman numerals, and lowercase Roman numerals. See [Figure 2.12](#) for a sample ordered list.

---

**Figure 2.12 Sample ordered list**

---



Ordered lists begin with an `<ol>` tag and end with an `</ol>` tag. Each list item begins with an `<li>` tag and ends with an `</li>` tag. The code to configure the heading and ordered list shown in [Figure 2.12](#) follows:

```
<h1>My Favorite Colors</h1>
<ol>
    <li>Blue</li>
    <li>Teal</li>
```

```
<li>Red</li>  
</ol>
```

## The Type, Start, and Reversed Attributes

The purpose of an **attribute** is to modify the properties of an HTML element. The **type attribute** configures the symbol used for ordering the list. For example, to create an ordered list organized by uppercase letters, use `<ol type="A">`. Table 2.2 documents the type attribute and its values for ordered lists.

---

**Table 2.2** The type attribute for ordered lists

Value	Symbol
1	Numerals (the default)
A	Uppercase letters
a	Lowercase letters
I	Roman numerals
i	Lowercase Roman numerals

The **start attribute** is useful when you need a list to begin with an integer value other than 1 (for example, `start="10"`). Use the HTML5 **reversed**

**attribute** (set `reversed="reversed"`) to configure the list markers to display in descending order.

## Hands-On Practice 2.6

In this Hands-On Practice, you will use a heading and an ordered list on the same page. To create the web page shown in [Figure 2.13](#), launch a text editor. Select File > Open to edit the template file located at chapter2/template.html in the student files. Modify the title element and add h1, ol, and li elements to the body section as indicated by the following code:

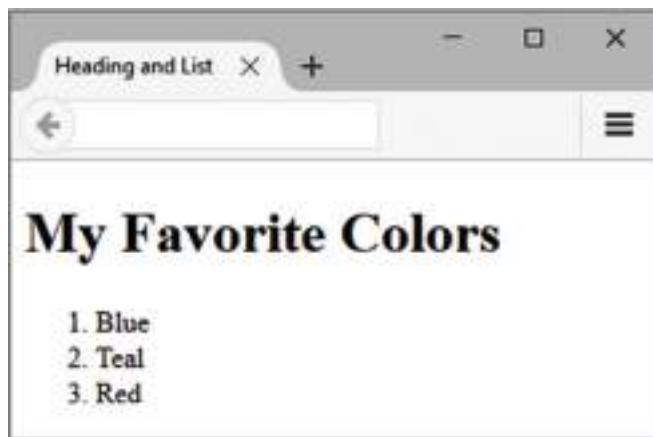
```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Heading and List</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<h1>My Favorite Colors</h1>
<ol>
    <li>Blue</li>
    <li>Teal</li>
    <li>Red</li>
</ol>
</body>
</html>
```

Save your file as ol.html. Launch a browser and test your page. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 2.13](#). You can compare your work with the solution in the student files (chapter2/ol.html).

---

**Figure 2.13 An ordered list**

---



Take a few minutes to experiment with the type attribute.

Configure the ordered list to use uppercase letters instead of numerals. Save your file as ola.html. Test your page in a browser. You can compare your work with the solution in the student files (chapter2/ola.html).

---

## 2.13 Unordered List

An **unordered list** displays a bullet, or list marker, before each entry in the list. This bullet can be one of several types: disc (the default), square, and circle. See [Figure 2.14](#) for a sample unordered list.

---

**Figure 2.14** Sample unordered list

---



Unordered lists begin with a `<ul>` tag and end with a `</ul>` tag. Each list item begins with an `<li>` tag and ends with an `</li>` tag. The code to configure the heading and unordered list shown in [Figure 2.14](#) is

```
<h1>My Favorite Colors</h1>
<ul>
    <li>Blue</li>
    <li>Teal</li>
    <li>Red</li>
</ul>
```

---

### Hands-On Practice 2.7

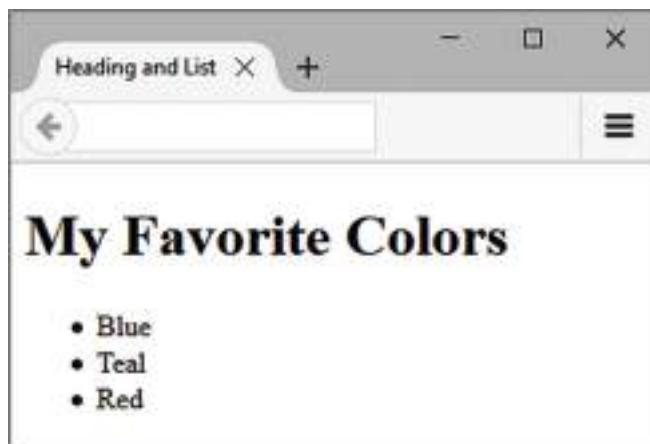
In this Hands-On Practice, you will use a heading and an unordered list on the same page. To create the web page

shown in [Figure 2.15](#), launch a text editor. Select File > Open to edit the template file located at chapter2/template.html in the student files. Modify the title element and add h1, ul, and li tags to the body section as indicated by the following code:

---

**Figure 2.15 An unordered list**

---



```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Heading and List</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<h1>My Favorite Colors</h1>
<ul>
    <li>Blue</li>
    <li>Teal</li>
    <li>Red</li>
</ul>
</body>
</html>
```

Save your file as ul.html. Launch a browser and test your page. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 2.15](#). You can compare your work with the solution in the student files (chapter2/ul.html).

---

---

## FAQ

Can I change the "bullet" in an unordered list?

Back in the day before HTML5, the type attribute could be included with a `<ul>` tag to change the default list marker to a square (`type="square"`) or open circle (`type="circle"`). However, be aware that using the type attribute on an unordered list is considered obsolete in HTML5 because it is decorative and does not convey meaning. No worries, though—you'll learn techniques to configure list markers (bullets) in [Chapter 6](#) to display images and shapes.

---

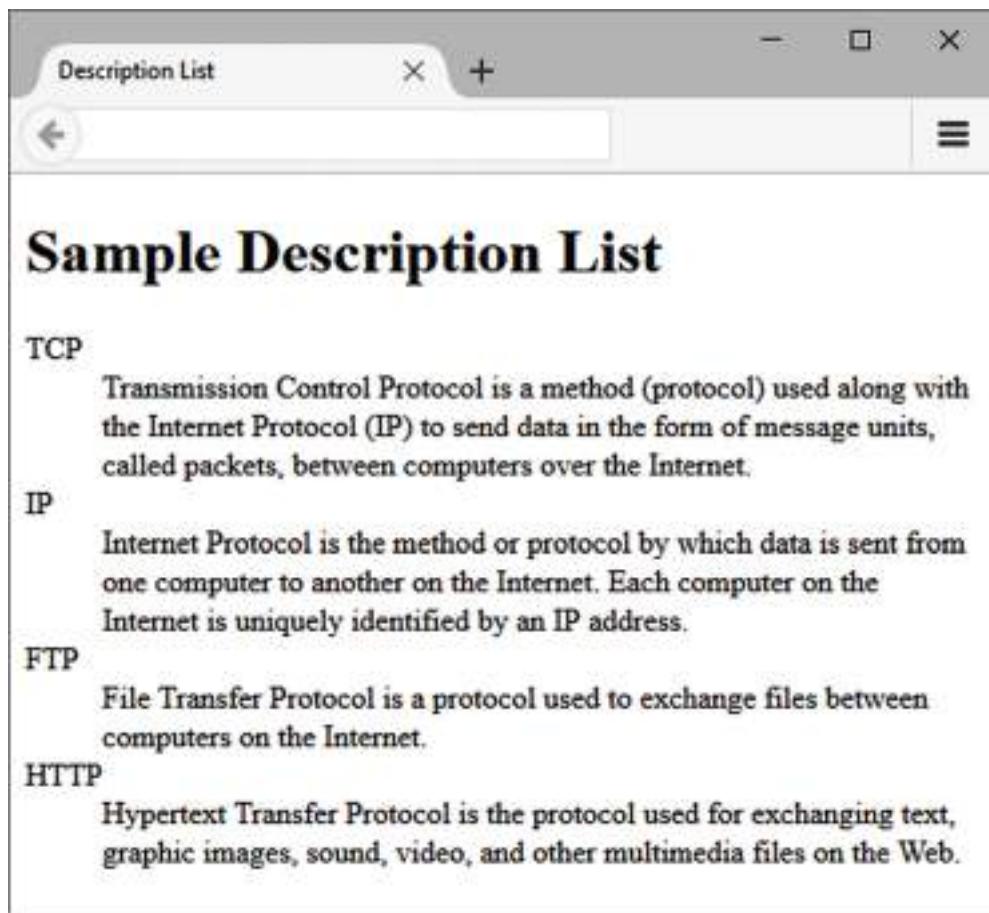
## 2.14 Description List

A **description list** can be used to organize terms and their descriptions. The terms stand out, and their descriptions can be as long as needed to convey your message. Each term begins on its own line at the margin. Each description begins on its own line and is indented. Description lists are also handy for organizing Frequently Asked Questions (FAQs) and their answers. The questions and answers are offset with indentation. Any type of information that consists of a number of corresponding terms and longer descriptions is well suited to being organized in a description list. See [Figure 2.16](#) for an example of a web page that uses a description list.

---

**Figure 2.16 A description list**

---



Description lists begin with the `<dl>` tag and end with the `</dl>` tag.

Each term or name in the list begins with the `<dt>` tag and ends with the `</dt>` tag. Each description begins with the `<dd>` tag and ends with the `</dd>` tag.

## Hands-On Practice 2.8

In this Hands-On Practice, you will use a heading and a description list on the same page. To create the web page shown in [Figure 2.16](#), launch a text editor. Select File > Open to edit the template file located at chapter2/template.html in the student files. Modify the title element and add `h1`, `dl`, `dd`,

and dt tags to the body section as indicated by the following code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Description List</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<h1>Sample Description List</h1>
<dl>
    <dt>TCP</dt>
        <dd>Transmission Control Protocol is a method (protocol) used along with the Internet Protocol (IP) to send data in the form of message units, called packets, between computers over the Internet.</dd>
    <dt>IP</dt>
        <dd>Internet Protocol is the method or protocol by which data is sent from one computer to another on the Internet. Each computer on the Internet is uniquely identified by an IP address.</dd>
    <dt>FTP</dt>
        <dd>File Transfer Protocol is a protocol used to exchange files between computers on the Internet.</dd>
    <dt>HTTP</dt>
        <dd>Hypertext Transfer Protocol is the protocol used for exchanging text, graphic images, sound, video, and other multimedia files on the Web.</dd>
</dl>
</body>
</html>
```

Save your file as `description.html`. Launch a browser and test your page. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 2.16](#). Don't worry if the word wrap is a little different; the important formatting is that each `<dt>` term should be on its own line and the corresponding `<dd>` description should be

indented under it. Try resizing your browser window, and notice how the word wrap on the description text changes. You can compare your work with the solution in the student files (chapter2/description.html).

---

## FAQ

Why is the HTML code in the Hands-On Practice examples indented?

Actually, it doesn't matter to the browser if web page code is indented, but humans find it easier to read and maintain code when it is logically indented. Review the description list created in [Hands-On Practice 2.8](#). Notice how the `<dt>` and `<dd>` tags were indented.

This makes it easier for you or another web developer to understand the source code in the future. There is no rule as to how many spaces to indent, although your instructor or the organization you work for may have a standard. Consistent indentation helps to create more easily maintainable web pages.

### Checkpoint 2.2

1. Describe the features of a heading element and how it configures the text.

- 2.** Describe the difference between ordered lists and unordered lists.
- 3.** Describe the purpose of the blockquote element.

## 2.15 Special Characters

In order to use special symbols such as quotation marks, the greater-than sign (>), the less-than sign (<), and the copyright symbol (©) in your web page document, you need to use **special characters**, sometimes called **entity characters**. For example, if you wanted to include a copyright line on your page as follows:

```
© Copyright 2020 My Company. All rights reserved.
```

Use the special character code `&copy;` to display the copyright symbol, as shown in the following code:

```
&copy; Copyright 2020 My Company. All rights reserved.
```

Another useful special character code is `&nbsp;`, which stands for nonbreaking space. You may have noticed that web browsers treat multiple spaces as a single space. If you need a small number of spaces in your text, you may use `&nbsp;` multiple times to indicate multiple blank spaces. This practice is acceptable if you simply need to tweak the position of an element a little. However, if you find that your web pages contain many `&nbsp;` special characters in a row, you should use a different method, such as configuring the padding or margin with Cascading Style Sheets (see [Chapters 4](#) and [6](#)). [Table 2.3](#) and [Appendix B](#), “Special Entity Characters,” provide descriptions of special characters and their corresponding code.

**Table 2.3 Common special characters**

Character	Entity Name	Code
“	Quotation mark	&quot;
,	Apostrophe	&#39;
©	Copyright symbol	&copy;
&	Ampersand	&amp;
Empty space	Nonbreaking space	&ampnbsp
—	Long dash	&mdash;
	Vertical Bar	&#124;

---

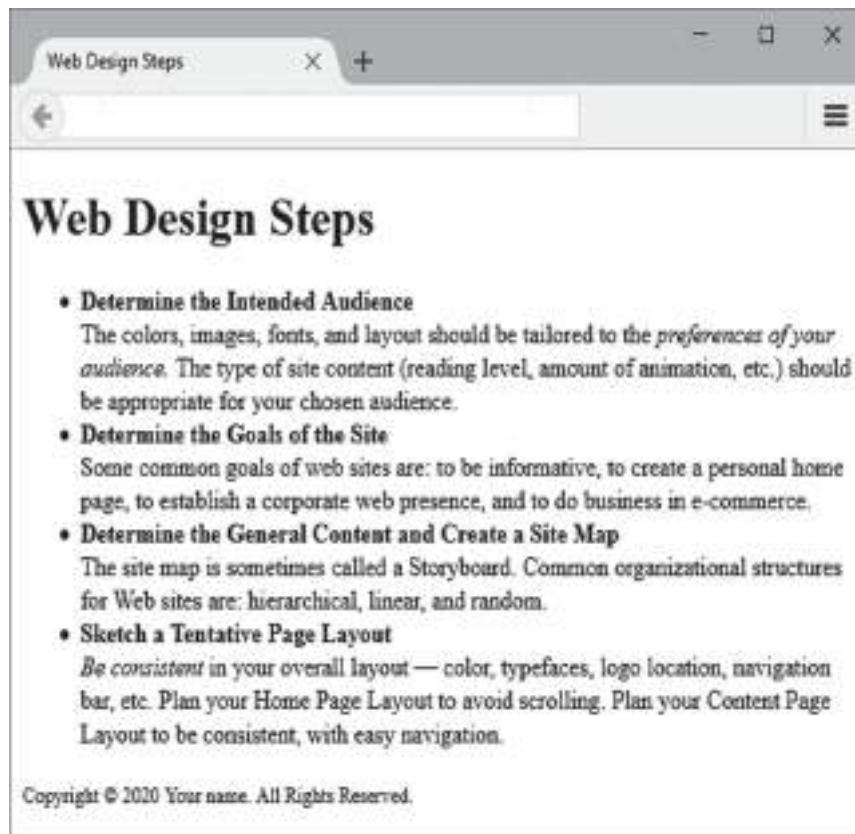
## Hands-On Practice 2.9

Figure 2.17 shows the web page you will create in this Hands-On Practice. Launch a text editor. Select File > Open to edit the template file located at chapter2/template.html in the student files. Save your file as design.html. Modify the title of the web page by changing the text between the `<title>` and `</title>` tags to “Web Design Steps.”

---

**Figure 2.17 The design.html web page**

---



The sample page shown in Figure 2.17 contains a heading, an unordered list, and copyright information. Configure the heading “Web Design Steps” as a Level 1 heading (`<h1>`) as follows:

```
<h1>Web Design Steps</h1>
```

Now create the unordered list. The first line of each bulleted item is the title of the web design step, which should be strong or stand out from the rest of the text. The code for the beginning of the unordered list is as follows:

```
<ul>
<li><strong>Determine the Intended
```

Audience</strong><br>The colors, images, fonts, and layout should be tailored to the <em>preferences of your audience.</em> The type of site content (reading level, amount of animation, etc.) should be appropriate for your chosen audience.</li>

Now code the entire unordered list in your design.html file. Remember to code the closing `</ul>` tag at the end of the list. Don't worry if your text wraps a little differently; your screen resolution or browser window size may be different from what is displayed in [Figure 2.17](#).

Finally, configure the copyright information with the small element. Use the special character `&copy;` for the copyright symbol. The code for the copyright line is as follows:

```
<p><small>Copyright &copy; 2020 Your name. All Rights Reserved.</small></p>
```

How did you do? Compare your work to the sample in the student files (chapter2/design.html).

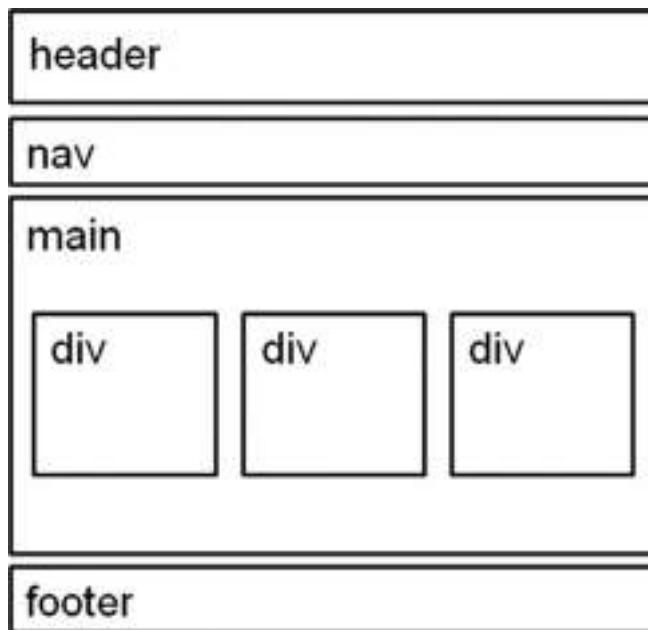
## 2.16 Structural Elements

HTML5 introduces a number of semantic structural elements that can be used to configure specific areas on a web page. These new HTML5 header, nav, main, and footer elements are intended to be used in conjunction with div and other elements to structure web page documents in a more meaningful manner that indicates the purpose of each structural area. [Figure 2.18](#) shows a diagram of a page (called a wireframe) that indicates how the structure of a web page could be configured with the header, nav, main, div, and footer elements.

---

**Figure 2.18 Structural elements**

---



### Div Element

The **div element** has been used for many years to configure a generic structural area or “division” on a web page as a block display with empty

space above and below. A div element begins with a `<div>` tag and ends with a `</div>` tag. Use a div element when you need to format an area of a web page that may contain other block display elements such as headings, paragraphs, unordered lists, and even other div elements. You'll use Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) later in this book to style and configure the color, font, and layout of HTML elements.

## Header Element

The purpose of the **header element** is to contain the headings of either a web page document or an area within the document such as a section or article element. The header element begins with the `<header>` tag and ends with the `</header>` tag. The header element is block display and typically contains one or more heading level elements (h1 through h6).

## Nav Element

The purpose of the **nav element** is to contain a section of navigation links. The block display nav element begins with the `<nav>` tag and ends with the `</nav>` tag.

## Main Element

The purpose of the **main element** is to contain the main content of a web page document. The block display main element begins with the `<main>` tag and ends with the `</main>` tag.

## Footer Element

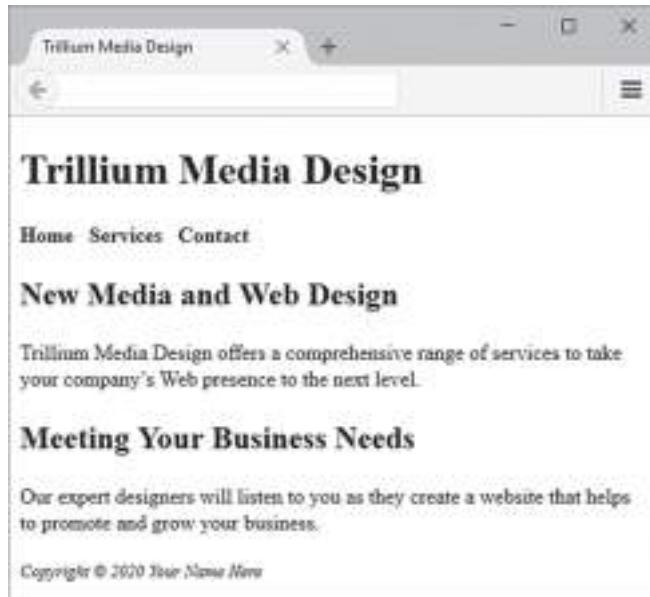
The purpose of the **footer element** is to contain the footer content of a web page or section of a web page. The block display footer element

begins with the `<footer>` tag and ends with the `</footer>` tag.

## Hands-On Practice 2.10

In this Hands-On Practice you will use structural elements as you create the Trillium Media Design home page, shown in [Figure 2.19](#). Launch a text editor, and open the template.html file from the [chapter2](#) folder in the student files. Edit the code as follows:

**Figure 2.19 Trillium home page**



1. Modify the title of the web page by changing the text between the `<title>` and `</title>` tags to Trillium Media Design.
2. Position your cursor in the body section and code the header element with the text, “Trillium Media Design” contained in an `h1` element:

```
<header>
  <h1> Trillium Media Design</h1>
</header>
```

3. Code a nav element to contain text that will indicate the main navigation for the website. Configure bold text (use the **b** element) and use the &nbsp; special character to add extra blank space:

```
<nav>
  <b>Home &nbsp; Services &nbsp; Contact</b>
</nav>
```

4. Code a main element that contains the h2 and paragraph elements:

```
<main>
  <h2>New Media and Web Design</h2>
  <p>Trillium Media Design offers a
comprehensive range of
services to take your company's Web
presence to the next
level.</p>
  <h2>Meeting Your Business Needs</h2>
  <p>Our expert designers will listen to you
as they create a
website that helps to promote and grow your
business.</p>
</main>
```

5. Configure the footer element to contain a copyright notice displayed in small font size (use the small element) and italic font (use the *i* element). Be careful to properly nest the elements as shown here:

```
<footer>
  <small><i>Copyright © 2020 Your Name
Here</i></small>
</footer>
```

Save your page as structure.html. Test your page in a browser. It should look similar to [Figure 2.19](#). You can compare your work to the sample in the student files (chapter2/structure.html).

---

Coding HTML is a skill and skills are best learned by practice. You'll get more practice coding a web page using structural elements in this section.

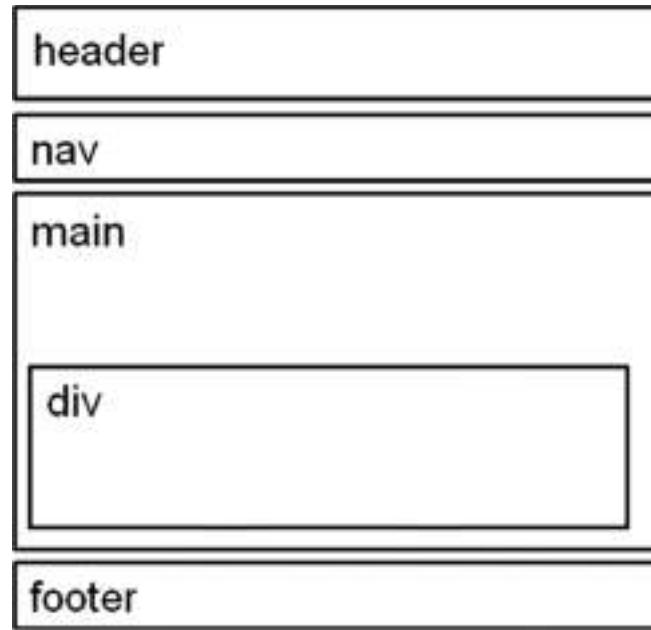
## Hands-On Practice 2.11

In this Hands-On Practice you will use the wireframe shown in [Figure 2.20](#) as a guide as you create the Casita Sedona Bed & Breakfast web page, shown in [Figure 2.21](#).

---

**Figure 2.20 Wireframe for Casita Sedona**

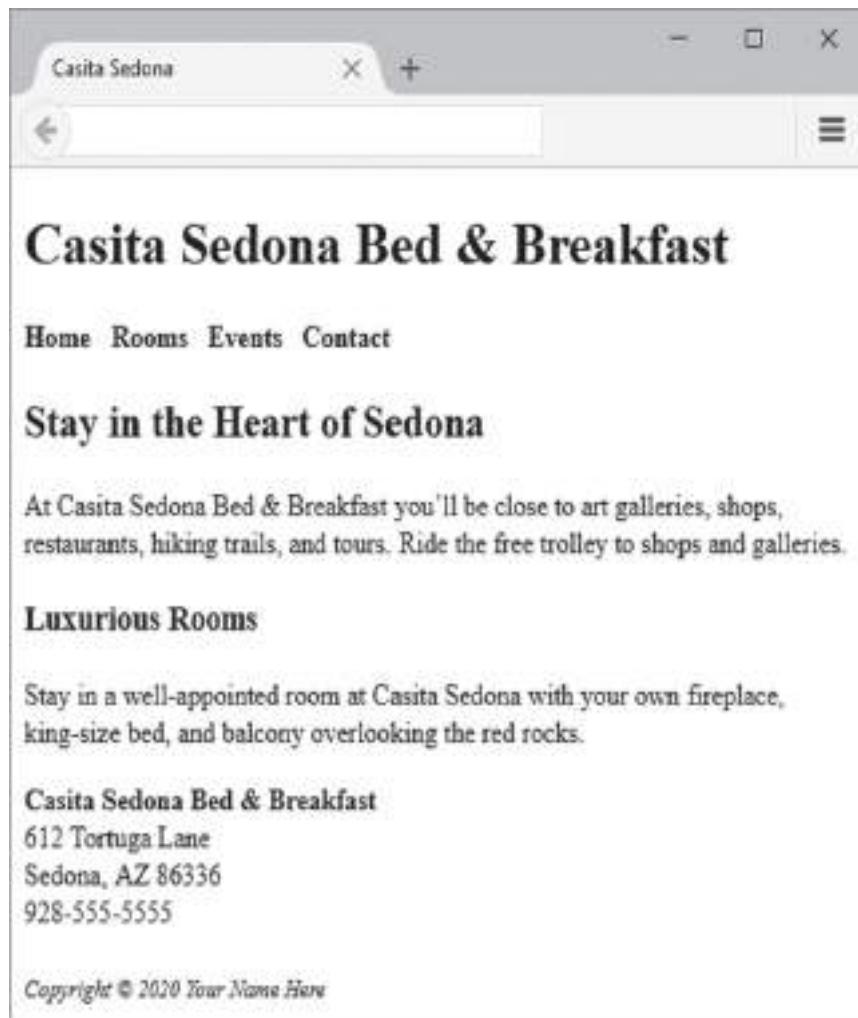
---



---

Figure 2.21 Casita Sedona web page

---



Launch a text editor, and open the template.html file from the **chapter2** folder in the student files. Edit the code as follows:

1. Modify the title of the web page by changing the text between the `<title>` and `</title>` tags to Casita Sedona.
2. Position your cursor in the body section and code the header element with the text, “Casita Sedona Bed & Breakfast” contained in an `h1` element. Be sure to use the special character & for the ampersand.

```
<header>
  <h1>
    Casita Sedona Bed &
```

```
Breakfast  
</h1>  
</header>
```

3. Code a nav element to contain text that will indicate the main navigation for the website. Configure bold text (use the b element) and use the &nbsp; special character to add extra blank space:

```
<nav>  
<b>  
Home &nbsp;  
Rooms &nbsp;  
Events &nbsp;  
Contact  
</b>  
</nav>
```

4. Code the content within a main element. Start with the h2 and paragraph elements:

```
<main>  
<h2>Stay in the Heart of Sedona</h2>  
<p>At Casita Sedona Bed & Breakfast  
you'll be close to art  
galleries, shops, restaurants, hiking trails,  
and tours. Ride the  
free trolley to shops and galleries.</p>  
<h3>Luxurious Rooms</h3>  
<p>Stay in a well-appointed room at Casita  
Sedona with your own  
fireplace, king-size bed, and balcony  
overlooking the red rocks.</p>  
</main>
```

5. Configure the company name, address, and phone number within a div element. Code the div element *within* the main element before the closing main tag. Use line break tags to

display the name, address, and phone information on separate lines and to create extra empty space before the footer.

```
<div>
  <strong>Casita Sedona Bed &amp;
Breakfast</strong><br>
  612 Tortuga Lane<br>
  Sedona, AZ 86336<br>
  928-555-5555<br><br>
</div>
```

6. Configure the footer element to contain a copyright notice displayed in small font size (use the small element) and italic font (use the i element). Be careful to properly nest the elements as shown here:

```
<footer>
  <small><i>Copyright &copy; 2020 Your Name
Here</i></small>
</footer>
```

Save your page as casita.html. Test your page in a browser. It should look similar to [Figure 2.21](#). You can compare your work to the sample in the student files (chapter2/casita.html). Older browsers (such as Internet Explorer 8 and earlier) do not support the new HTML5 structural elements. In [Chapter 6](#), we'll explore coding techniques that will force older browsers to correctly display HTML5 structural elements. For now, be sure to use a current version of any popular browser to test your pages.

You've just worked with the HTML5 header, nav, main, and footer elements. These HTML5 elements are used along with div and other elements to structure web page documents in a meaningful manner that defines the purpose of the structural areas. Next, you'll explore the section, article, aside, and time elements.

## Section Element

The purpose of a **section element** is to indicate a “section” of a document, such as a chapter or topic. This block display element begins with the `<section>` tag, ends with the `</section>` tag, and could contain header, footer, section, article, aside, figure, div, and other elements needed to configure the content.

## Article Element

The **article element** is intended to present an independent entry, such as a blog posting, comment, or e-zine article that could stand on its own. This block display element begins with the `<article>` tag, ends with the `</article>` tag, and could contain header, footer, section, aside, figure, div, and other elements needed to configure the content.

## Aside Element

The **aside element** indicates a sidebar or other tangential content. This block display element begins with the `<aside>` tag, ends with the `</aside>` tag, and could contain header, footer, section, aside, figure, div, and other elements needed to configure the content.

## Time Element

The **time element** represents a date or a time. The time element is not a structural element, but it is included here because it is useful to identify the date of content, such as an article on a web page or a blog entry. The inline display time element begins with the `<time>` tag, ends with the `</time>` tag. An optional `datetime` attribute can be used to specify a

calendar date and/or time in machine-readable format. Use YYYY-MM-DD for a date. Use a 24-hour clock and HH:MM for time.

## Hands-On Practice 2.12

In this Hands-On Practice, you'll edit a web page document and apply the section, article, aside, and time elements to create the page with blog postings shown in [Figure 2.22](#).

**Figure 2.22** The blog page.



Launch a text editor and open the `starter.html` file from the [chapter2](#) folder in the student files. Save the file as `blog.html`. Examine the source code.

1. Locate the title tag in the head section. Change the text within the title tags to “Lighthouse Bistro Blog.”

2. Locate the opening main tag. Delete the HTML elements and text between the opening and closing main tags.

3. Code an aside element with the following content below the opening main tag. The HTML follows:

```
<aside>
  <p><i>Watch for the March
    Madness Wrap next month!</i></p>
</aside>
```

4. Code an opening section tag followed by an h2 element. The HTML follows:

```
<section>
<h2>Bistro Blog</h2>
```

5. Code two blog articles as shown below. Note the use of the header, h3, time, and paragraph elements. Also, code a closing section tag. The HTML follows:

```
<article>
  <header><h3>Valentine Wrap</h3></header>
  <time datetime="2020-02-01">February 1,
  2020</time>
  <p>The February special sandwich is the
  Valentine Wrap —
    heart-healthy organic chicken with roasted
  red peppers on a
    whole wheat wrap.</p>
</article>
<article>
  <header><h3>New Coffee of the Day
  Promotion</h3></header>
  <time datetime="2020-01-12">January 12,
  2020</time>
  <p>Enjoy the best coffee on the coast in the
  comfort of your
    home. We will feature a different flavor of
  our gourmet,
    locally roasted coffee each day with free
```

```
bistro tastings and a  
discount on one-pound bags.</p>  
</article>  
</section>
```

Save your file. Display your blog.html page in a browser. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 2.22](#). A sample solution is in the student files (chapter2/blog.html).

---

## 2.17 Hyperlinks

### The A Element

Use the **a element** (commonly called the **anchor element**) to specify a **hyperlink**, often referred to as a *link*, to another web page or file that you want to display. Each anchor element begins with an `<a>` tag and ends with a `</a>` tag. The opening and closing anchor tags surround the text to click to perform the hyperlink.

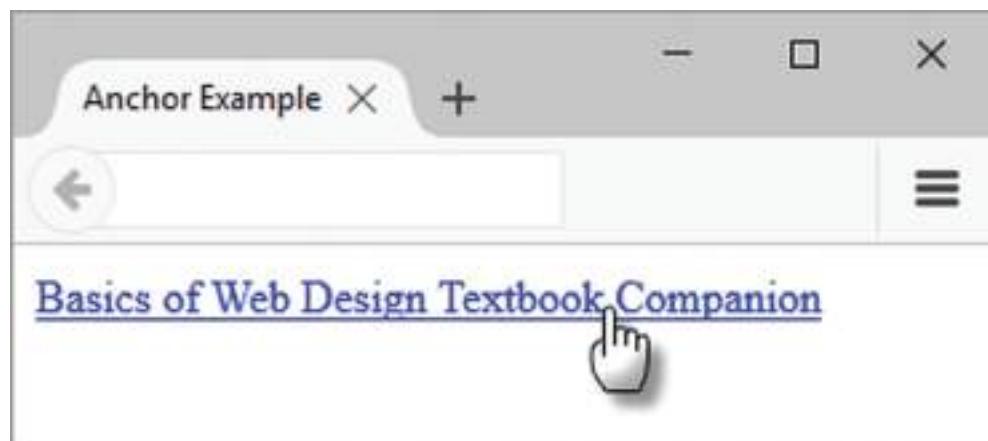
### The Href Attribute

Use the **href attribute** to configure the hyperlink reference, which identifies the name and location of the file to access. [Figure 2.23](#) shows a web page document with an anchor tag that configures a hyperlink to this book's website, <http://webdevfoundations.net>.

---

**Figure 2.23 Sample hyperlink**

---



The code for the anchor tag in [Figure 2.23](#) is as follows:

```
<a href="http://webdevfoundations.net">Web Development  
& Design  
Foundations</a>
```

Notice that the href value is the URL for the website. The text that is typed between the two anchor tags displays on the web page as a hyperlink and is underlined by most browsers. When you move the mouse cursor over a hyperlink, the cursor changes to a pointing hand, as shown in [Figure 2.23](#).

## Hands-On Practice 2.13

To create the web page shown in [Figure 2.23](#), launch a text editor. Select File > Open to edit the template file located at chapter2/template.html in the student files. Modify the title element and add anchor tags to the body section as indicated by the following code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>  
<html lang="en">  
<head>  
<title>Anchor Example</title>  
<meta charset="utf-8">  
</head>  
<body>  
<a href="http://webdevfoundations.net">Web  
Development & Design  
Foundations</a>  
</body>  
</html>
```

Save the document as anchor.html on your hard drive or flash drive. Launch a browser to test your page. It should look similar

to the page shown in [Figure 2.23](#). You can compare your work with the solution found in the student files (chapter2/anchor.html).

---

## FAQ

Can images be hyperlinks?

Yes. Although we'll concentrate on text hyperlinks in this chapter, it's also possible to configure an image as a hyperlink. You'll get practice with image links in [Chapter 4](#).

---

## Absolute Hyperlinks

An **absolute hyperlink** indicates the absolute location of a resource on the Web. Use absolute hyperlinks when you need to link to resources on other websites. The href value for an absolute hyperlink to the home page of a website includes the `http://` protocol and the domain name. The following hyperlink is an absolute hyperlink to the home page of this book's website:

```
<a href="http://webdevfoundations.net">Web Development  
& Design  
Foundations</a>
```

Note that if we want to access a web page other than the home page on the book's website, we could also include a specific folder name and file name. For example, the following anchor tag configures an absolute hyperlink for a file named `chapter1.html` located in a folder named `10e` on this book's website:

```
<a href="http://webdevfoundations.net/10e/chapter1.html">Web Development & Design Foundations Chapter 1</a>
```

## Relative Hyperlinks

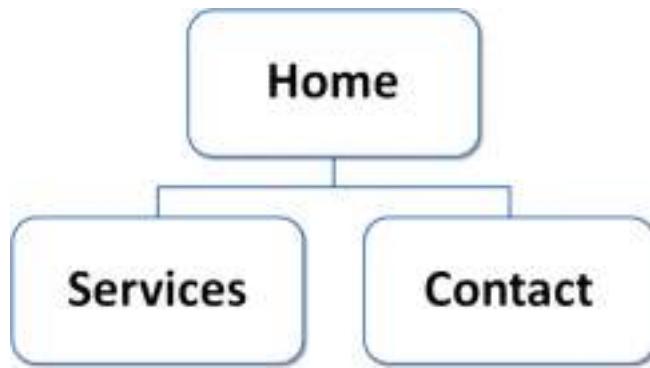
When you need to link to web pages within your site, use a **relative hyperlink**. The href value for a relative hyperlink does not begin with the `http://` and does not include a domain name. For a relative hyperlink, the href value will contain only the file name or file name and folder of the web page you want to display. The hyperlink location is relative to the page currently being displayed. For example, if you were coding a home page (`index.html`) for the website whose site map is illustrated in [Figure 2.24](#) and wanted to link to a page named `contact.html` located in the same folder as `index.html`, you would use the following code sample:

```
<a href="contact.html">Contact Us</a>
```

---

**Figure 2.24 Site map**

---



## Site Map

A **site map** represents the structure, or organization, of pages in a website in a visual manner. Each page in the website is represented by a box on the site map. [Figure 2.24](#) displays the site map for a website that contains a Home page and two content pages: a Services page and a Contact page. Review [Figure 2.24](#) and notice that the Home page is at the top of the site map. The second level in a site map shows the other main pages of the website. In this very small three-page website, the other two pages (Services and Contact) are included on the second level. The main navigation of a website usually includes hyperlinks to the pages shown on the first two levels of the site map.

---

### Hands-On Practice 2.14

The best way to learn how to code web pages is by actually doing it! Let's practice and create three pages in the website shown in [Figure 2.24](#): home page (index.html) with two content pages: services page (services.html) and contact page (contact.html).

- 1. CREATE A FOLDER.** If you had printed papers to organize you would probably store them in a paper folder. Web

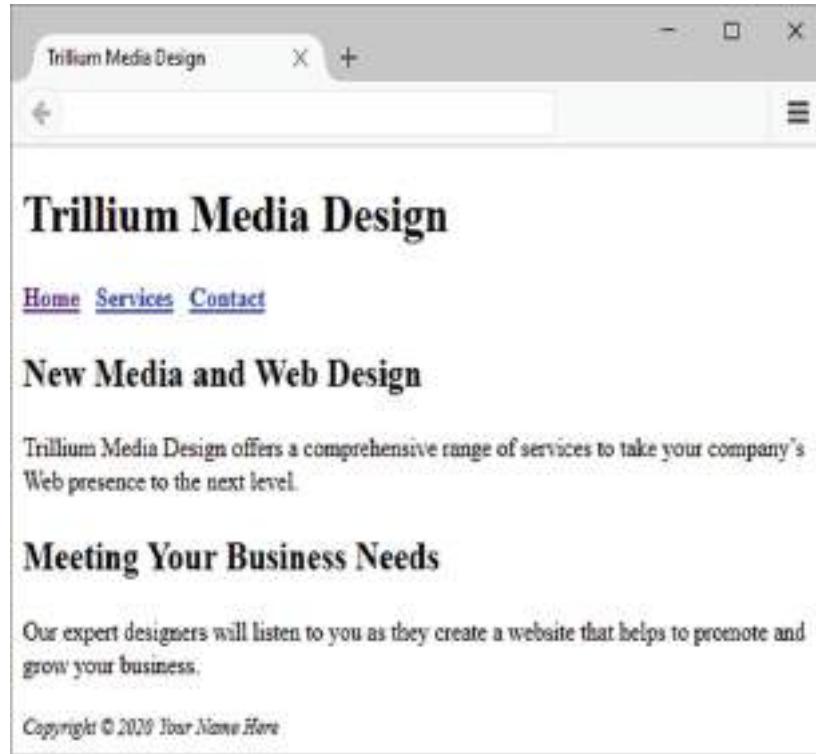
designers store and organize their computer files by creating a folder on a hard drive (or portable storage such as an SD card or Flash drive) for each website. This helps them to be efficient as they work with many different websites. You will organize your own web design work by creating a new folder for each website and storing your files for that website in the new folder. Use your operating system to create a new folder named mypractice for your new website.

**2. CREATE THE HOME PAGE.** Use the Trillium Media Design web page ([Figure 2.19](#)) from [Hands-On Practice 2.10](#) as a starting point for your new home page (shown in [Figure 2.25](#)). Copy the sample file for [Hands-On Practice 2.10](#) (chapter2/structure.html) into your mypractice folder. Change the file name of structure.html to index.html. It's common practice to use the file name index.html for the home page of a website.

---

**Figure 2.25 New index.html web page**

---



Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file.

- a. The navigation hyperlinks will be located within the nav element. You will edit the code within the nav element to configure three hyperlinks:
- The text “Home” will hyperlink to index.html
  - The text “Services” will hyperlink to services.html
  - The text “Contact” will hyperlink to contact.html

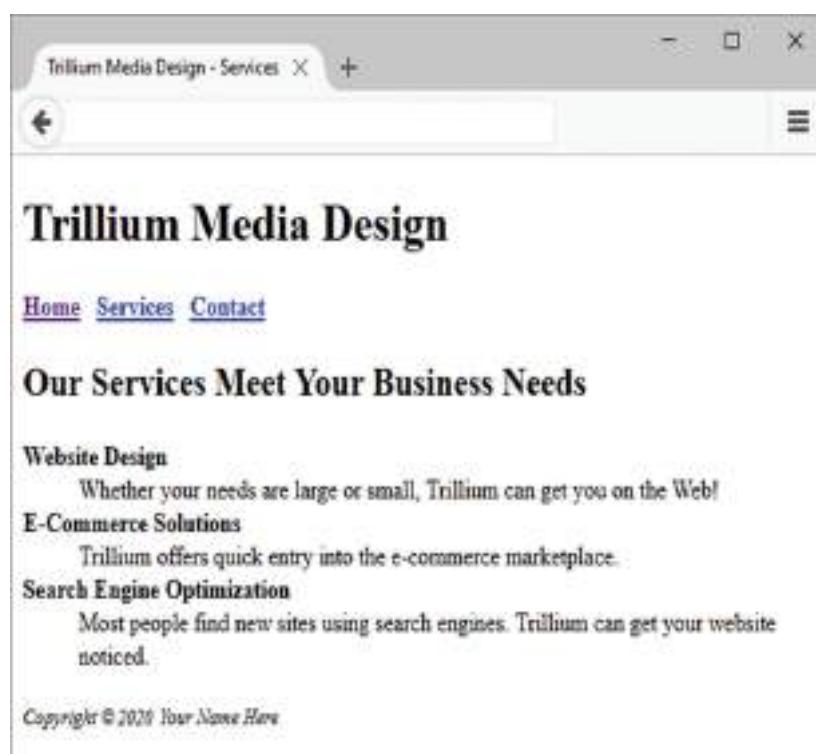
Modify the code within the nav element as follows:

```
<nav>
  <b><a href="index.html">Home</a>
  &nbsp;
    <a
      href="services.html">Services</a>  &nbsp;
        <a
          href="contact.html">Contact</a>
        </b>
    </a>
</nav>
```

**b.** Save the index.html file in your mypractice folder. Test your page in a browser. It should look similar to [Figure 2.25](#). You can compare your work to the sample in the student files (chapter2/2.14/index.html).

**3. CREATE THE SERVICES PAGE.** It is common practice to create a new web page based on an existing page. You will use the index.html file as a starting point for the new services page, shown in [Figure 2.26](#).

**Figure 2.26** The services.html web page



Open your index.html file in a text editor and save the file as services.html. Edit the code as follows:

**a.** Modify the title of the web page by changing the text between the `<title>` and `</ title>` tags to “Trillium Media Design - Services”. In order to create a consistent header, navigation, and footer for the web

pages in this website, do not change the code within the header, nav, or footer elements.

- b.** Position your cursor in the body section and delete the code and text between the opening and closing main tags. Code the main page content (heading 2 and description list) for the services page between the main tags as follows:

```
<h2>Our Services Meet Your Business  
Needs</h2>  
<dl>  
    <dt><strong>Website Design</strong>  
</dt>  
    <dd>Whether your needs are large or  
small, Trillium can  
get you on the Web!</dd>  
    <dt><strong>E-Commerce  
Solutions</strong></dt>  
    <dd>Trillium offers quick entry  
into the e-commerce  
marketplace.</dd>  
    <dt><strong>Search Engine  
Optimization</strong></dt>  
    <dd>Most people find new sites  
using search engines.  
    Trillium can get your website  
noticed.</dd>  
</dl>
```

- c.** Save the services.html file in your mypractice folder.

Test your page in a browser. It should look similar to [Figure 2.26](#). You can compare your work to the sample in the student files (chapter2/2.14/services.html).

- 4. CREATE THE CONTACT PAGE.** Use the index.html file as a starting point for the new Contact page, shown in [Figure 2.27](#). Open your index.html file in a text editor and save the file as contact.html. Edit the code as follows:

---

**Figure 2.27 The contact.html web page**

---



- a. Modify the title of the web page by changing the text between the `<title>` and `</title>` tags to “Trillium Media Design – Contact”. In order to create a consistent header, navigation, and footer for the web pages in this website, do not change the code within the header, nav, or footer elements.
- b. Position your cursor in the body section and delete the code and text contained between the opening main tag and the closing main tag. Code the main page content for the contact page between the main tags:

```
<h2>Contact Trillium Media Design  
Today</h2>  
<ul>  
    <li>E-mail:  
        contact@trilliummediadesign.com</li>  
    <li>Phone: 555-555-5555</li>  
</ul>
```

**c.** Save the contact.html file in your mypractice folder.

Test your page in a browser. It should look similar to

**Figure 2.27**. Test your page by clicking each link.

When you click the “Home” hyperlink, the index.html page should display. When you click the “Services” hyperlink, the services.html page should display.

When you click the “Contact” hyperlink, the contact.html page will display. You can compare your work to the sample in the student files (chapter2/2.14/contact.html).

## FAQ

What if my relative hyperlink doesn’t work?

Check the following:

- Did you save files in the specified folder?
- Did you save the files with the names as requested? Use Windows File Explorer or Finder (Mac users) to verify the actual names of the files you saved.
- Did you type the file names correctly in the anchor tag’s **href attribute**? Check for typographical errors.
- When you place your mouse over a link, the file name of a relative link will display in the status bar in the lower edge of the browser window. Verify that this is the correct file name. On many operating systems, such as UNIX or Linux, the use

of uppercase and lowercase letters in file names matters—make sure that the file name and the reference to it are in the same case. It's a good practice to always use lowercase for file names used on the Web.

## The Target Attribute

You may have noticed as you have coded hyperlinks that when a visitor clicks on a hyperlink, the new web page will automatically open in the same browser window. You can configure the **target attribute** on an anchor element with `target="_blank"` to open a hyperlink in a new browser window or browser tab. For example, the following HTML will open Google's home page in a new browser window or tab:

```
<a href="http://google.com" target="_blank">Search  
Google</a>
```

Note that you cannot control whether the web page opens in a new window or opens in a new tab; this is dependent upon your visitor's browser configuration. See an example in the student files (chapter2/target.html).

## Block Anchor

It's typical to use anchor tags to configure phrases or even just a single word as a hyperlink. HTML5 provides a new function for the anchor element—the block anchor. A block anchor can configure one or more

entire elements (even those that display as a block, such as a div, h1, or paragraph) as a hyperlink. See an example in the student files (chapter2/block.html).

## E-Mail Hyperlinks

The anchor tag can also be used to create **e-mail hyperlinks**. An e-mail hyperlink will automatically launch the default mail program configured for the browser. It is similar to an external hyperlink with the following two exceptions:

- It uses `mailto:` instead of `http://`.
- It launches the default e-mail application for the visitor's browser with your e-mail address as the recipient.

For example, to create an e-mail hyperlink to the e-mail address `help@terrymorris.net`, code the following:

```
<a  
href="mailto:help@terrymorris.net">help@terrymorris.net<  
/a>
```

It is good practice to place the e-mail address both on the web page and within the anchor tag. Not everyone has an e-mail program configured with his or her browser. By placing the e-mail address in both places, you increase usability for all of your visitors.

---

## Hands-On Practice 2.15

In this Hands-On Practice you will modify the contact page (contact.html) of the website you created in [Hands-On Practice 2.14](#) and configure an e-mail link in the page content area. Launch a text editor, and open the contact.html file from your mypractice folder. This example uses the contact.html file found in the student files in the [chapter2/2.14](#) folder.

Configure the e-mail address as an e-mail hyperlink as follows, but type the entire anchor element on a single line.:

```
<li>E-mail:  
<a  
href="mailto:contact@trilliummediadesign.com">  
contact@trilliummediadesign.com</a>  
</li>
```

Save and test the page in a browser. The browser display should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 2.28](#). You can compare your work with the sample in the student files (chapter2/2.15/contact.html).

---

**Figure 2.28 An e-mail hyperlink on the contact page**

---

A screenshot of a web browser window titled "Trillium Media Design - Con...". The page content includes a large header "Trillium Media Design", a navigation menu with links to "Home", "Services", and "Contact", a main section with the heading "Contact Trillium Media Design Today", and a bulleted list of contact information: "E-mail: [contact@trilliummediadesign.com](mailto:contact@trilliummediadesign.com)" and "Phone: 555-555-5555". At the bottom, there is a copyright notice: "Copyright © 2020 Your Name Here".

Trillium Media Design

[Home](#) [Services](#) [Contact](#)

## Contact Trillium Media Design Today

- E-mail: [contact@trilliummediadesign.com](mailto:contact@trilliummediadesign.com)
- Phone: 555-555-5555

Copyright © 2020 Your Name Here

## FAQ

Won't displaying my actual e-mail address on a web page increase spam?

Yes and no. While it's possible that some unethical spammers may harvest web pages for e-mail addresses, the chances are that your e-mail application's built-in spam filter will prevent your inbox from being flooded with messages. When you configure an easily readable e-mail hyperlink you increase the usability of your website for your visitors in the following situations:

- The visitor may be at a public computer with no e-mail application configured. In this case, when the e-mail hyperlink is clicked, an error message may display, and the visitor will have difficulty contacting you using the e-mail link.
- The visitor may be at a private computer but may prefer not to use the e-mail application (and address) that is configured by default to work with the browser. Perhaps he or she shares the computer with others, or perhaps he or she wishes to preserve the privacy of the default e-mail address.

If you prominently displayed your actual e-mail address in both of these situations, the visitor can still access your e-mail address and use it to contact you (in either their e-mail application or via a web-based e-mail system such as Google's Gmail). The result is a more usable website for your visitors.

---

## Accessibility and Hyperlinks

---

### Focus on Accessibility

Visually challenged visitors who are using a screen reader can configure the software to display a list of the hyperlinks in the document. However, a list of links is useful only if the text describing each link is actually

helpful and descriptive. For example, on your college website, a “Search the course schedule” link would be more useful than a link that simply says, “More information.”

---

## FAQ

What are some tips for using hyperlinks?

- Make your link names descriptive and brief to minimize possible confusion.
- Avoid using the phrase “Click here” in your hyperlinks. In the early days of the Web, this phrase was needed because clicking links was a new experience for web users. Now that the Web is a daily part of our lives, this phrase is slightly redundant, and even archaic.
- Try not to bury hyperlinks within large blocks of text; use lists of hyperlinks instead. Be aware that it is more difficult to read web pages than printed pages.
- Be careful when linking to external websites. The Web is dynamic, and it’s possible that the external site may change the name of the page, or even delete the page. If this happens, your link will be broken.

---

Checkpoint 2.3

- 1.** Describe the purpose of special characters.
- 2.** Describe when to use an absolute link. Is the http protocol used in the href value?
- 3.** Describe when to use a relative link. Is the http protocol used in the href value?

## 2.18 HTML Validation

The W3C's free Markup Validation Service, available at <http://validator.w3.org>, will validate your HTML code and check it for syntax errors. **HTML validation** provides students with quick self-assessment—you can prove that your code uses correct syntax. In the working world, HTML validation serves as a quality assurance tool. Invalid code may cause browsers to render the pages slower than otherwise.

Video Note

**HTML Validation**

## Hands-On Practice 2.16

In this Hands-On Practice, you will use the W3C Markup Validation Service to validate a web page file. This example uses the page completed in [Hands-On Practice 2.9](#) (located in the student files at chapter2/design.html). Open design.html in a text editor. Add an error to the design.html page by deleting the first closing `</strong>` tag. This modification should generate several error messages.

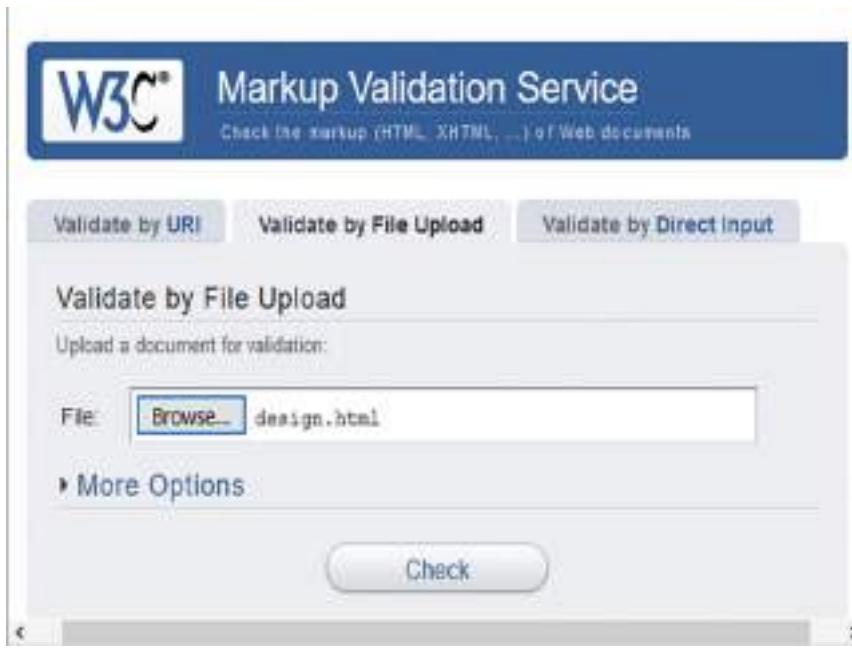
Next, attempt to validate the design.html file. Launch a browser and visit the W3C Markup Validation Service file upload page at [http://validator.w3.org/#validate\\_by\\_upload](http://validator.w3.org/#validate_by_upload). Click the Browse button, and select the chapter2/design.html file from your

computer. Click the Check button to upload the file to the W3C site ([Figure 2.29](#)).

---

**Figure 2.29 Validating a page with the W3C Markup Validation Service.**

---



Screenshots of W3C. Courtesy of W3C (World Wide Web Consortium).

An error page will display. Notice the “Errors found while checking this document” message. You can view the errors by scrolling down the page, as shown in [Figure 2.30](#).

---

**Figure 2.30 The service indicates errors.**

---

The image shows three separate screenshots of W3C validation error messages, each in a light gray box with a thin border. The first message (line 12) is about an end tag being seen before open elements. The second message (line 10) is about an unclosed element. The third message (line 12) is about a strong element not being allowed as a child of ul.

1. **Error** End tag `li` seen, but there were open elements.  
From line 12, column 160; to line 12, column 164  
`audience.</li>2 <li>`
2. **Error** Unclosed element `strong`.  
From line 10, column 7; to line 10, column 14  
`ul>2 <li><strong>Determ`
3. **Error** Element `strong` not allowed as child of element `ul`  
in this context. (Suppressing further errors from this subtree.)  
At line 12, column 165  
`ence.</li>2 <li>`  
Contexts in which element `strong` may be used:

Screenshots of W3C. Courtesy of W3C (World Wide Web Consortium).

Notice that the first message indicates line 12, which is after the missing closing `</strong>` tag. HTML error messages often point to a line that follows the error. The text of the message, “End tag li seen, but there were open elements,” lets you know that something is wrong. It is up to you to figure out what it is. A good place to start is to check your container tags and make sure they are in pairs. In this case, that is the problem. You can scroll down to view the other errors. However, since multiple error messages are often displayed after a single error occurs, it is a good idea to fix one item at a time and then revalidate.

Edit the design.html file in a text editor, and add the missing `</strong>` tag. Save the file. Launch a browser, and visit [http://validator.w3.org/#validate\\_by\\_upload](http://validator.w3.org/#validate_by_upload). Select your file, select More Options, and verify that the Show Source and Verbose

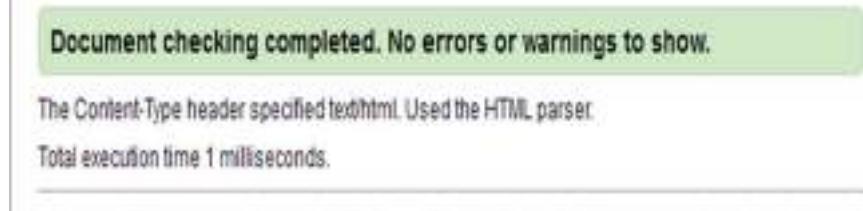
Output check boxes are checked. Click the Check button to begin the validation.

Your display should be similar to that shown in [Figure 2.31](#). Notice the “Document checking completed. No errors or warnings to show.” message. This means that your page passed the validation test. Congratulations, your design.html page is valid! You may also notice a warning message, which you can overlook, indicating that the HTML5 conformance checker is in experimental status.

---

**Figure 2.31 The page has passed the validation test.**

---



Document checking completed. No errors or warnings to show.

The Content-Type header specified text/html. Used the HTML parser.

Total execution time 1 milliseconds.

---

Screenshots of W3C. Courtesy of W3C (World Wide Web Consortium).

It is good practice to validate your web pages. However, when validating code, use common sense. Since web browsers still do not completely follow W3C recommendations, there will be situations, such as when adding multimedia to a web page, in which HTML code configured to work reliably across a variety of browsers and platforms will not pass validation.

---

## FAQ

Are there other ways to validate my HTML?

In addition to the W3C validation service, there are other tools that you can use to check the syntax of your code. Explore the HTML5 validator at <https://html5.validator.nu> and the HTML & CSS Validator / Linter at <https://www.freeformatter.com/html-validator.html>.

---

# Chapter Summary

This chapter has provided an introduction to HTML, XHTML, and HTML5. The basic elements that are part of every web page were demonstrated. HTML elements including div, paragraph, blockquote, header, nav, main, and footer were presented. Additional topics included configuring lists and using special characters, phrase elements, and hyperlinks. You have practiced testing your HTML5 code for valid syntax. If you worked along with the samples in the chapter, you should be ready to create some web pages on your own. The Hands-On Exercises and Web Case Studies that follow will provide some additional practice.

Visit this textbook's website at <https://www.webdevfoundations.net> for links to the URLs listed in this chapter and to view updated information.

# Key Terms

&copy; ⓘ  
&ampnbsp ⓘ  
<a> ⓘ  
<abbr> ⓘ  
<article> ⓘ  
<aside> ⓘ  
<b> ⓘ  
<blockquote> ⓘ  
<body> ⓘ  
<br> ⓘ  
<cite> ⓘ  
<code> ⓘ  
<dd> ⓘ  
<dfn> ⓘ  
<div> ⓘ  
<dl> ⓘ  
<dt> ⓘ  
<em> ⓘ  
<footer> ⓘ  
<h1> ⓘ  
<h6> ⓘ  
<head> ⓘ  
<header> ⓘ  
<html> ⓘ  
<i> ⓘ  
<kbd> ⓘ  
<li> ⓘ  
<main> ⓘ

[\*\*<mark>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<meta>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<nav>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<ol>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<p>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<samp>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<section>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<small>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<strong>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<sub>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<sup>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<time>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<title>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<ul>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<var>\*\*](#)  
**a element**  
**absolute hyperlink**  
**anchor element**  
**article element**  
**aside element**  
**attribute**  
**block anchor**  
**block display**  
**blockquote element**  
**body element**  
**body section**  
**character encoding**  
**description list**  
**div element**  
**doctype**  
**Document Type Definition (DTD)**  
**element**

[e-mail hyperlinks](#)  
[entity element](#)  
[eXtensible HyperText Markup Language \(XHTML\)](#)  
[footer element](#)  
[head element](#)  
[head section](#)  
[header element](#)  
[heading element](#)  
[href attribute](#)  
[HTML5](#)  
[hyperlink](#)  
[Hypertext Markup Language \(HTML\)](#)  
[inline display](#)  
[lang attribute](#)  
[left alignment](#)  
[line break element](#)  
[main element](#)  
[markup languages](#)  
[meta element](#)  
[nav element](#)  
[ordered list](#)  
[paragraph elements](#)  
[phrase elements](#)  
[relative hyperlink](#)  
[reversed attribute](#)  
[section element](#)  
[site map](#)  
[special characters](#)  
[stand-alone](#)  
[start attribute](#)  
[tag](#)  
[target attribute](#)

[time element](#) ⓘ

[title element](#) ⓘ

[type attribute](#) ⓘ

[unordered list](#) ⓘ

[validation](#) ⓘ

[void element](#) ⓘ

[Web Hypertext Application Technology Working Group \(WHATWG\)](#) ⓘ

[well-formed](#) ⓘ

[XML \(eXtensible Markup Language\)](#) ⓘ

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. Which tag pair configures a structural area on a web page?

- a. `<area> </area>`
- b. `<div> </div>`
- c. `<cite> </cite>`
- d. `<strong> </strong>`

2. Which tag configures the next element or portion of text to display on a new line?

- a. `<line>`
- b. `<n1>`
- c. `<br>`
- d. `<new>`

3. Which tag pair is used to link web pages to each other?

- a. `<link> </link>`
- b. `<hyperlink> </hyperlink>`
- c. `<a> </a>`
- d. `<body> </body>`

4. Which tag pair is used to create the largest heading?

- a. `<h1> </h1>`
- b. `<h9> </h9>`
- c. `<h type="largest"> </h>`
- d. `<h6> </h6>`

5. What is the default horizontal alignment for elements on a web page?

- a. center
- b. left

- c. right
  - d. wherever you type them in the source code
- 6. When do you need to use a fully qualified URL in a hyperlink?
  - a. always
  - b. when linking to a web page file on the same site
  - c. when linking to a web page file on an external site
  - d. never
- 7. Which of the following is a reason that the text contained by the title tag should be descriptive and include the name of the business or organization?
  - a. The title is saved by default when a visitor bookmarks a web page.
  - b. The title may be printed when a visitor prints a web page.
  - c. The title may be listed in search engine results.
  - d. All of the above are reasons that the text contained by the title tag should be descriptive and include the name of the business or organization.
- 8. Which type of HTML list will automatically number the items for you?
  - a. numbered list
  - b. ordered list
  - c. unordered list
  - d. definition list
- 9. Which of the following is an HTML5 element used to indicate navigational content?
  - a. main
  - b. nav
  - c. header
  - d. a
- 10. What does an e-mail link do?
  - a. automatically sends you an e-mail message with the visitor's e-mail address as the reply-to field

- b.** launches the default e-mail application for the visitor's browser, with your e-mail address as the recipient
- c.** displays your e-mail address so that the visitor can send you a message later
- d.** links to your mail server

## Fill in the Blank

- 11.** Use the \_\_\_\_\_ element to configure text to have strong importance and display in a bold font weight.
- 12.** The \_\_\_\_\_ element is intended to present an independent entry such as a blog posting.
- 13.** The `<meta>` tag can be used to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 14.** The \_\_\_\_\_ is used to place a nonbreaking space on a web page.
- 15.** Use the \_\_\_\_\_ element to configure text to be emphasized and displayed in an italic font style.

## Short Answer

- 16.** Explain why it is good practice to place an e-mail address on the web page and within an anchor element when creating an e-mail link.

# Apply Your Knowledge

- 1. PREDICT THE RESULT.** Sketch out and briefly describe the web page that will be created with the following HTML code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
    <title>Predict the Result</title>
    <meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
    <header><h1><i>Favorite Sites</i></h1></header>
    <main>
        <ol>
            <li><a href="http://facebook.com">Facebook</a></li>
            <li><a href="http://google.com">Google</a>
        </li>
        </ol>
    </main>
    <footer>
        <small>Copyright © 2020 Your name here</small>
    </footer>
</body>
</html>
```

- 2. FILL IN THE MISSING CODE.** The web page defined by the given code should display a heading and a description list, but some HTML tags, indicated by <\_>, are missing. Fill in the missing code.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
    <title>Door County Wildflowers</title>
    <meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
    <header><_>Door County Wild Flowers<_></header>
```

```
<main>
<dl>
    <dt>Trillium<_>
        <_>This white flower blooms from April
through June in
        wooded areas.<_>
    <_>Lady Slipper<_>
        <_>This yellow orchid blooms in June in
wooded areas.</dd>
    <_>
</main>
</body>
</html>
```

3. FIND THE ERROR. All the text on the web page defined by the given code displays in large and bold font typeface. Explain why this is happening.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
    <title>Find the Error</title>
    <meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
    <h1>My Web Page</h1>
    <p>This is a sentence on my web page.</p>
</body>
</html>
```

# Hands-On Exercises

1. Write the HTML to display your name with the largest heading element.
2. Write the HTML to create an absolute link to your school's website.
3. Write the HTML for an unordered list to display the days of the week.
4. Write the HTML for an ordered list that uses uppercase letters to order the items. This ordered list should display the following phrases: wake up, eat breakfast, and go to school.
5. Think of a favorite quotation by someone you admire. Write the HTML code to display the person's name in a heading and the quotation in a blockquote element.
6. Modify the following code snippet to indicate that the term "site map" should have strong importance:

```
<p>A diagram of the organization of a website is  
called a site map.  
A site map represents the structure, or  
organization, of pages in  
a website in a visual manner. Creating the site  
map is one of the  
initial steps in developing a website.</p>
```

7. Modify the blockquote.html web page you created in [Hands-On Practice 2.5](#). Configure the URL <https://www.w3.org/WAI/> as a hyperlink. Save the file as blockquote2.html.
8. Create a web page that uses a description list to display three network protocols (see [Chapter 1](#)) and their descriptions. Include a hyperlink to a website that provides information about

the protocols. Add an appropriate heading to the page. Save the page as network.html.

**9.** Create a web page about your favorite musical group. Include the name of the group, the individuals in the group, a hyperlink to the group's website, your favorite three (or fewer if the group is new) album releases, and a brief review of each album.

- Use an unordered list to organize the names of the individuals.
- Use a description list for the names of the albums and your reviews.

Save the page as band.html.

**10.** Create a web page about your favorite recipe. Use an unordered list for the ingredients and an ordered list to describe the steps needed to prepare the food. Include a hyperlink to a website that offers free recipes. Save the page as recipe.html.

**11.** Create a web page with two blog posts about websites that could be useful to you in your web development studies. Each blog post should contain a hyperlink to the home page of the website, a description of the type of information provided at the website, and the date you accessed the website. Use the article and time elements for each blog post. Save the page as myblog.html.

# Web Research

There are many HTML5 tutorials on the Web. Use your favorite search engine to discover them. Choose two that are helpful. For each, print out the home page or other pertinent page and create a web page that contains the answers to the following questions:

- a. What is the URL of the website?
- b. Is the tutorial geared toward the beginner level, intermediate level, or both levels?
- c. Would you recommend this site to others? Why or why not?
- d. List one or two concepts that you learned from this tutorial.

# Focus on Web Design

You are learning the syntax of HTML5. However, coding alone does not make a web page; design is also very important. Surf the Web and find two web pages, one that is appealing to you and one that is unappealing to you. Print each page. Create a web page that answers the following questions for each of your examples:

- a. What is the URL of the website?
- b. Is the page appealing or unappealing? List three reasons for your answer.
- c. If the page is unappealing, what would you do to improve it?

---

## Website Case Study

Each of the case studies in this section continues throughout most of the text. This chapter introduces each website scenario, presents the site map, and directs you to create two pages for the site.

### JavaJam Coffee Bar

Julio Perez is the owner of the JavaJam Coffee Bar, a gourmet coffee shop that serves snacks, coffee, tea, and soft drinks. Local folk music performances and poetry readings are held a few nights during the week. The customers of JavaJam are mainly college students and young professionals. Julio would like a web presence for his shop that will display his services and provide a calendar for the performances. He would like a

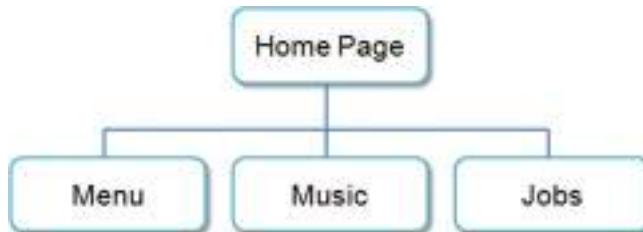
home page, menu page, music performance schedule page, and job opportunities page.

A site map for the JavaJam Coffee Bar website is shown in [Figure 2.32](#). The site map describes the architecture of the website, which consists of a “Home” page with three main content pages: “Menu,” “Music,” and “Jobs.”

---

**Figure 2.32 JavaJam site map**

---

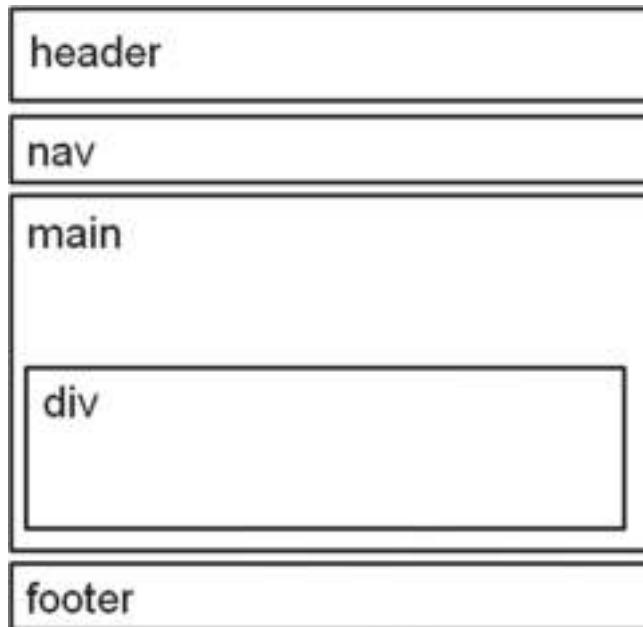


[Figure 2.33](#) displays a wireframe sketch of the page layout for the website. It contains a header area, a navigation area, a main content area, and a footer area for copyright information.

---

**Figure 2.33 JavaJam wireframe**

---



You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a folder for the JavaJam website.
2. Create the Home page: index.html.
3. Create the Menu page: menu.html.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder on your hard drive or portable storage device (thumb drive or SD card) called “javajam” to contain your JavaJam website files.

**TASK 2: THE HOME PAGE.** You will use a text editor to create the Home page for the JavaJam Coffee Bar website. The Home page is shown in [Figure 2.34](#).

---

**Figure 2.34 JavaJam index.html**

---



Launch a text editor, and create a web page with the following specifications:

- 1. WEB PAGE TITLE.** Use a descriptive page title. The company name is a good choice for the home page of a business website. On pages other than the home page, the title typically contains both the company name and a word or a phrase that describes the purpose of the page.
- 2. WIREFRAME HEADER.** Code the header element with the text, “JavaJam Coffee Bar” contained within a heading 1 element.
- 3. WIREFRAME NAVIGATION.** Place the following text within a nav element with bold text (use the <b>

element):

Home Menu Music Jobs

Code anchor tags so that “Home” links to index.html, “Menu” links to menu.html, “Music” links to music.html, and “Jobs” links to jobs.html.

Add extra blank spaces between the hyperlinks with the &nbsp; special character as needed.

**4. WIREFRAME MAIN CONTENT.** Code the main page content within a main element. Use [Hands-On Practice 2.10](#) as a guide.

**a.** Code the following text within an h2 element:

Relax at JavaJam

**b.** Configure the following content within a paragraph.

Friendly and eclectic — JavaJam Coffee Bar is the perfect place to take a break, enjoy a refreshing beverage, and have a snack or light meal.

**c.** Configure the following content in an unordered list:

Specialty Coffee and Organic Tea

Bagels, Muffins, and Gluten-free Pastries

Organic Salads

Music and Poetry Readings

Open Mic Night

**d.** Code the following address and phone number contact information within a div element. Use line break tags to help you configure this area and add extra space between the phone number and the footer area.

12010 Garrett Bay Road

Ellison Bay, WI 54210

888-555-5555

**5. WIREFRAME FOOTER.** Configure the following copyright and e-mail link information within a footer element. Format it with small text size (use the `<small>` tag) and italics font style (use the `<i>` tag).

Copyright © 2020 JavaJam Coffee Bar

Place your name in an e-mail link on the line under the copyright.

The page in [Figure 2.34](#) may seem a little sparse, but don't worry; as you gain experience and learn to use more advanced techniques, your pages will look more professional. White space (blank space) on the page can be added with `<br>` tags where needed. Your page does not need to look exactly the same as the sample. Your goal at this point should be to practice and get comfortable using HTML.

Save your page in the javajam folder, and name it `index.html`.

**TASK 3: THE MENU PAGE.** Create the Menu page shown in [Figure 2.35](#). A technique that improves productivity is to create new pages based on existing pages so that you can benefit from your previous work. Your new Menu page will use the `index.html` page as a starting point.

---

**Figure 2.35 JavaJam menu.html**

---



Open the index.html page for the JavaJam website in a text editor. Select File > Save As, and save the file with the new name of menu.html in the javajam folder. Now you are ready to edit the page.

- 1. WEB PAGE TITLE.** Modify the page title. Change the text contained between the `<title>` and `</title>` tags to the following:  
JavaJam Coffee Bar Menu

- 2. WIREFRAME MAIN CONTENT.**

- a.** Delete the Home page content paragraph, unordered list, and contact information.
- b.** Replace the text in the h2 element with the following:  
Coffee at JavaJam

c. Use a description list to add the menu content to the page. Use the `<dt>` tag to contain each menu item name. Configure the menu item name to have strong importance and display in bold font weight with the `<strong>` tag. Use the `<dd>` tag to contain the menu item description. Configure line break tags as needed to display two lines of information within each dd element. The menu item names and descriptions are as follows:

### Just Java

Regular house blend, decaffeinated coffee, or flavor of the day.  
Endless Cup \$3.50

### Cafe au Lait

House blended coffee infused into a smooth, steamed milk.  
Single \$4.00 Double \$5.00

### Iced Cappuccino

Sweetened espresso blended with icy-cold milk and served in a chilled glass.  
Single \$5.00 Double \$6.50

Save your page, and test it in a browser. Test the hyperlink from the menu.html page to index.html. Test the hyperlink from the index.html page to menu.html. If your links do

not work, review your work, paying close attention to these details:

- Verify that you have saved the pages with the correct names in the correct folder.
- Verify your spelling of the page names in the anchor elements.

Test again after you make changes.

## Fish Creek Animal Clinic

Magda Patel is a veterinarian and owner of the Fish Creek Animal Clinic. Her customers are local pet owners who range from children to senior citizens. Magda would like a website to provide information to her current and potential customers. She has requested a home page, a services page, a page for advice from a veterinarian, and a contact page.

A site map for the Fish Creek Animal Clinic website is shown in [Figure 2.36](#). The site map describes the architecture of the website, which consists of a “Home” page with three main content pages: “Services,” “Ask the Vet,” and “Contact.”

---

**Figure 2.36 Fish Creek site map**

---

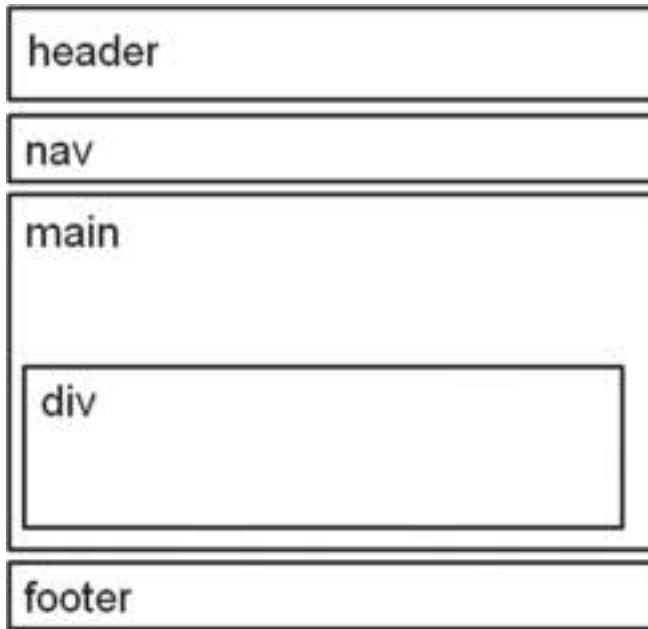


[Figure 2.37](#) displays a wireframe sketch of the page layout for the website. It contains a header area, a navigation area, a main content area, and a footer area for copyright information.

---

**Figure 2.37 Fish Creek wireframe**

---



You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a folder for the Fish Creek website.
2. Create the Home page: index.html.
3. Create the Services page: services.html.

### Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder on your hard drive or portable storage device (thumb drive or SD card) called “fishcreek” to contain your Fish Creek website files.

**TASK 2: THE HOME PAGE.** You will use a text editor application to create the Home page for the Fish Creek Animal Clinic website. The Home page is shown in [Figure 2.38](#).

**Figure 2.38 Fish Creek index.html**

---

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the title "Fish Creek Animal Clinic". The page content includes a navigation bar with links to Home, Services, Ask the Vet, and Contact. Below the navigation is a main heading "Professional, Compassionate Care for Your Pet". A paragraph explains that caring doctors and staff understand the bond between pets and their owners. It then lists three service highlights: "Years of Experience" (with a note about veterinarians providing care since 1984), "Open Door Policy" (welcoming owners to stay with their pets during procedures), and "Always Available" (offering 24-hour, 7-day service). At the bottom, there is contact information for the clinic, including its name, phone number (800-555-5555), address (12456 Grassy Lane, Fish Creek, WI 55534), and a copyright notice for 2020.

Fish Creek Animal Clinic

[Home](#) [Services](#) [Ask the Vet](#) [Contact](#)

## Professional, Compassionate Care for Your Pet

The caring doctors and staff at Fish Creek Animal Clinic understand the special bond you share with your cherished pet.

**Years of Experience**  
Fish Creek Veterinarians have provided personalized and compassionate care since 1984.

**Open Door Policy**  
We welcome owners to stay with their pets during any medical procedure.

**Always Available**  
Our professionals are on duty 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

Fish Creek Animal Clinic  
800-555-5555  
12456 Grassy Lane  
Fish Creek, WI 55534

Copyright © 2020 Fish Creek Animal Clinic  
[jane@fishcreekanimalclinic.com](mailto:jane@fishcreekanimalclinic.com)

Launch a text editor, and create a web page with the following specifications:

- 1. WEB PAGE TITLE.** Use a descriptive page title. The company name is a good choice for the home page of a business website. On pages other than the home page, the title typically contains both the company name and a word or a phrase that describes the purpose of the page.
- 2. WIREFRAME HEADER.** Code the header element with the text, "Fish Creek Animal Clinic" contained within a heading 1 element.

**3. WIREFRAME NAVIGATION.** Place the following text within a nav element with bold text (use the **<b>** element)

Home Services Ask the Vet Contact  
Code anchor tags so that “Home” links to index.html, “Services” links to services.html, “Ask the Vet” links to askvet.html, and “Contact” links to contact.html. Add extra blank spaces between the hyperlinks with the &nbsp; special character as needed.

**4. WIREFRAME MAIN CONTENT.** Code the main page content within a main element. Use **Hands-On Practice 2.10** as a guide.

**a.** Code the following text within an h2 element:

Professional, Compassionate Care for your Pet

**b.** Code the following text within a paragraph element:

The caring doctors and staff at Fish Creek Animal Clinic understand the special bond you share with your cherished pet.

**c.** Code the following content in a description list. Configure the text in each dt element to have strong importance and display in bold font weight:

## Years of Experience

Fish Creek Veterinarians have provided personalized and compassionate care since 1984.

## Open Door Policy

We welcome owners to stay with their pets during any medical procedure.

## Always Available

Our professionals are on duty 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

- d. Configure the following address and phone number contact information within a div element below the description list. Use line break tags to help you format this area.

Fish Creek Animal Clinic  
800-555-5555  
1242 Grassy Lane  
Fish Creek, WI 55534

- 5. **WIREFRAME FOOTER.** Code the following copyright and e-mail link information within a footer element. Format it with small text size (use the `<small>` tag) and italics font style (use the `<i>` tag).

Copyright © 2020 Fish Creek Animal Clinic  
Place your name in an e-mail link on the line under the copyright.

The page in [Figure 2.38](#) may seem a little sparse, but don't worry; as you gain experience and learn to use more advanced techniques, your pages will look more professional. White space (blank space) on the page can be added with `<br>` tags where needed. Your page does not need to look exactly the same as the sample. Your goal at this point should be to practice and get comfortable using HTML.

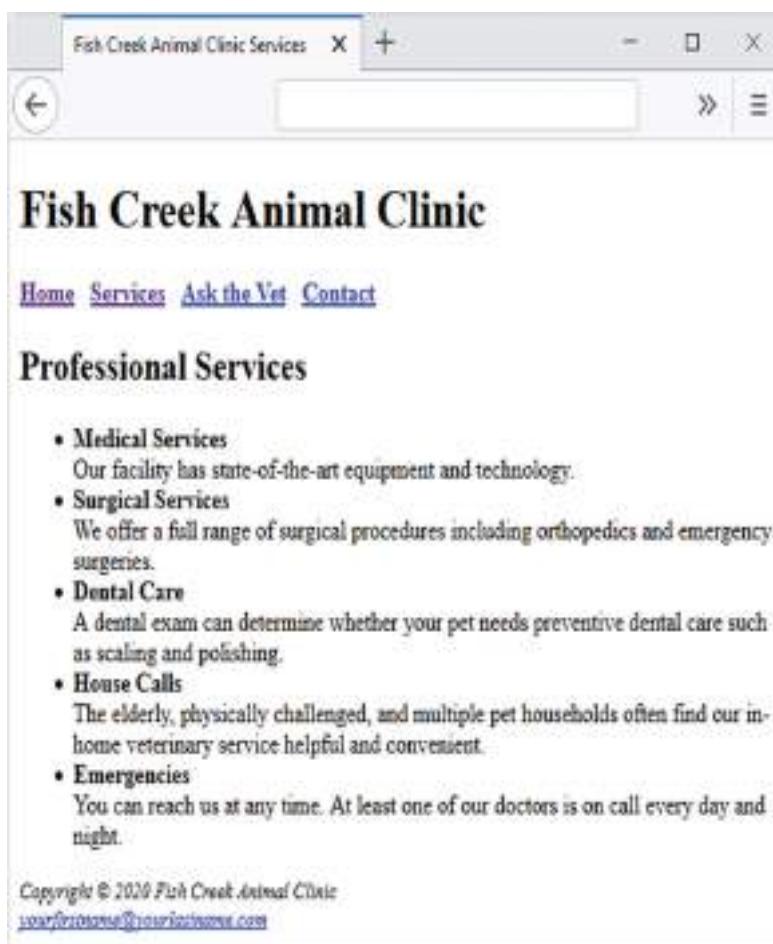
Save your page in the fishcreek folder, and name it index.html.

**TASK 3: THE SERVICES PAGE.** Create the Services page shown in [Figure 2.39](#). A technique that improves productivity is to create new pages based on existing pages so that you can benefit from your previous work. Your new Services page will use the index.html page as a starting point.

---

**Figure 2.39 Fish Creek services.html**

---



Open the index.html page for the Fish Creek website in a text editor. Select File > Save As, and save the file with

the new name of services.html in the fishcreek folder.

Now you are ready to edit the page.

- 1. Web Page Title.** Modify the page title. Change the text contained between the `<title>` and `</title>` tags to the following:

Fish Creek Animal Clinic Services

- 2. WIREFRAME MAIN CONTENT.**

- a.** Delete the Home page content paragraph, description list, and contact information.
- b.** Replace the text in the h2 element with the following:

Professional Services
- c.** Use an unordered list to add the services content to the page. Configure the name of each services category to use bold font weight and have strong emphasis. (Use the `<strong>` tag.) Use line break tags to help you configure this area. The service categories and descriptions are as follows:

## Medical Services

Our facility has state-of-the-art equipment and technology.

## Surgical Services

We offer a full range of surgical procedures including orthopedics and emergency surgeries.

## Dental Care

A dental exam can determine whether your pet needs preventive dental care such as scaling and polishing.

## House Calls

The elderly, physically challenged, and multiple pet households often find our in-home veterinary service helpful and convenient.

## Emergencies

You can reach us at any time. At least one of our doctors is on call every day and night.

Save your page, and test it in a browser. Test the hyperlink from the services.html page to index.html. Test the hyperlink from the index.html page to services.html. If your links do not work, review your work, paying close attention to these details:

- Verify that you have saved the pages with the correct names in the correct folder.
- Verify your spelling of the page names in the anchor elements.

Test again after you make changes.

## Pacific Trails Resort

Melanie Bowie is the owner of Pacific Trails Resort, located on the California North Coast. The resort offers a quiet getaway, with luxury camping in yurts along with an upscale lodge for

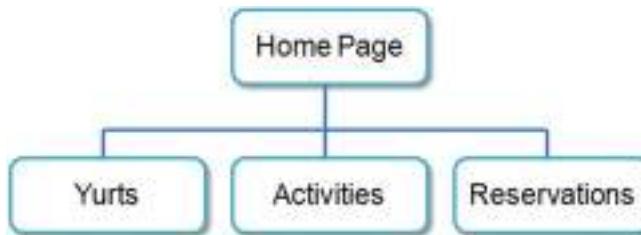
dining and visiting with fellow guests. The target audience for Pacific Trails Resort is couples who enjoy nature and hiking. Melanie would like a website that emphasizes the uniqueness of the location and accommodations. She would like the website to include a home page, a page about the special yurt accommodations, a reservations page with a contact form, and a page to describe the activities available at the resort.

A site map for the Pacific Trails Resort website is shown in [Figure 2.40](#). The site map describes the architecture of the website, which consists of a “Home” page with three main content pages: “Yurts,” “Activities,” and “Reservations.”

---

**Figure 2.40 Pacific Trails Resort site map**

---

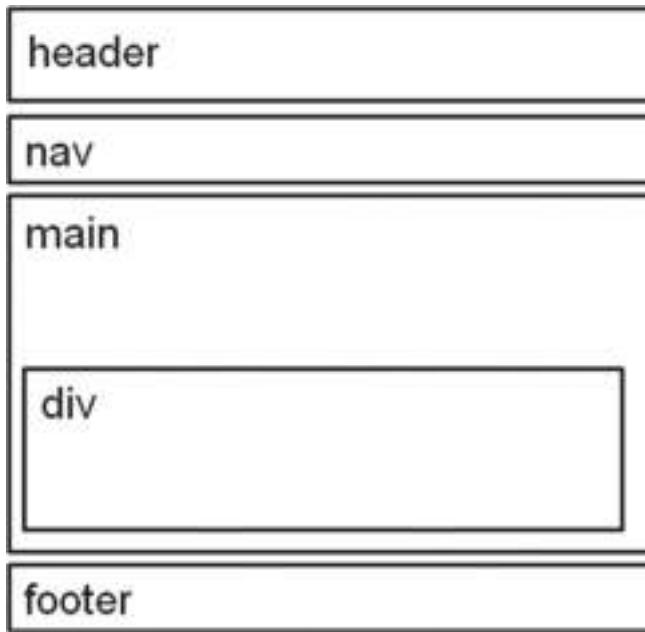


[Figure 2.41](#) displays a wireframe sketch of the page layout for the website. It contains a header area, a navigation area, a main content area, and a footer area for copyright information.

---

**Figure 2.41 Pacific Trails Resort wireframe**

---



You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a folder for the Pacific Trails website.
2. Create the Home page: index.html.
3. Create the Yurts page: yurts.html.

### Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder on your hard drive or portable storage device (thumb drive or SD card) called “pacific” to contain your Pacific Trails Resort website files.

**TASK 2: THE HOME PAGE.** You will use a text editor to create the Home page for the Pacific Trails Resort website. The Home page is shown in [Figure 2.42](#).

---

**Figure 2.42 Pacific Trails Resort index.html**

---



Launch a text editor, and create a web page with the following specifications:

- 1. WEB PAGE TITLE.** Use a descriptive page title. The company name is a good choice for the home page of a business website. On pages other than the home page, the title typically contains both the company name and a word or a phrase that describes the purpose of the page.
- 2. WIREFRAME HEADER.** Code the header element with the text, “Pacific Trails Resort” contained within a heading 1 element.

**3. WIREFRAME NAVIGATION.** Place the following text within a nav element with bold text (use the `<b>` element):

Home Yurts Activities Reservations  
Code anchor tags so that “Home” links to index.html, “Yurts” links to yurts.html, “Activities” links to activities.html, and “Reservations” links to reservations.html.  
Add extra blank spaces between the hyperlinks with the `&nbsp;` special character as needed.

**4. WIREFRAME MAIN CONTENT.** Code the main page content within a main element. Use [Hands-On Practice 2.10](#) as a guide.

**a.** Code the following text within an h2 element:

Enjoy Nature in Luxury

**b.** Configure the following sentences in a paragraph:

Pacific Trails Resort on the California North Coast offers panoramic views of the Pacific Ocean. Our guests experience an opulent camping adventure in sumptuously appointed private yurts featuring a gas fireplace, king-size bed, and private deck.

**c.** Code the following content in an unordered list:

Unwind in the heated outdoor pool and whirlpool

Explore the coast on your own or join our guided tours

Start the day with a complimentary  
cooked-to-order breakfast  
Relax in our lodge while enjoying  
complimentary appetizers and  
beverages  
Savor nightly fine dining with an ocean  
view

- d. Configure the following address and phone  
number contact information within a div  
element below the unordered list. Use line  
break tags to help you format this area.

Pacific Trails Resort  
12010 Pacific Trails Road  
Zephyr, CA 95555  
888-555-5555

5. **WIREFRAME FOOTER.** Configure the following  
copyright and e-mail link information within a footer  
element. Format it with small text size (use the  
`<small>` tag) and italics font style (use the `<i>` tag).

Copyright © 2020 Pacific Trails Resort  
Place your name in an e-mail link on the line  
under the copyright.

The page in [Figure 2.42](#) may seem a little sparse,  
but don't worry; as you gain experience and learn  
to use more advanced techniques, your pages will  
look more professional. White space (blank space)  
on the page can be added with `<br>` tags where  
needed. Your page does not need to look exactly  
the same as the sample. Your goal at this point  
should be to practice and get comfortable using  
HTML.

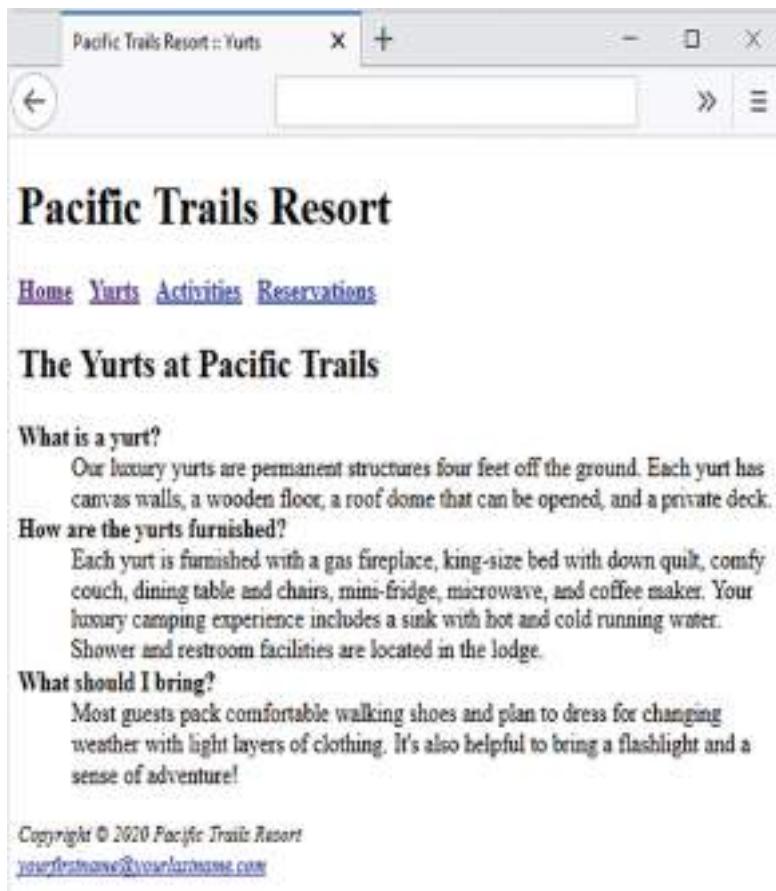
Save your page in the pacific folder, and name it index.html.

**TASK 3: THE YURTS PAGE.** Create the Yurts page shown in [Figure 2.43](#). A technique that improves productivity is to create new pages based on existing pages so that you can benefit from your previous work. Your new Yurts page will use the index.html page as a starting point.

---

**Figure 2.43 Pacific Trails Resort yurts.html**

---



Open the index.html page for the Pacific Trails Resort website in a text editor. Select File > Save As, and save the file with the new name of yurts.html in the pacific folder. Now you are ready to edit the page.

**1. WEB PAGE TITLE.** Modify the page title. Change the text contained between the `<title>` and `</title>` tags to the following:

Pacific Trails Resort :: Yurts

**2. WIREFRAME MAIN CONTENT.**

- a.** Replace the text in the h2 element with the following:

The Yurts at Pacific Trails

- b.** Delete the Home page content paragraph, unordered list, and contact information.

- c.** Add the yurts content to the page as a FAQs (frequently asked questions) list by using a description list. Configure each question to have strong importance and bold font weight (use the `<strong>` phrase element) within a dt element. Configure each answer within a dd element. The text is shown as follows:

What is a yurt?

Our luxury yurts are permanent structures four feet off the ground. Each yurt has canvas walls, a wooden floor, a roof dome that can be opened, and a private deck.

How are the yurts furnished?

Each yurt is furnished with a gas fireplace, king-size bed with down quilt, comfy couch, dining table and chairs, mini-fridge, microwave, and coffee maker. Your luxury camping experience

includes a sink with hot and cold running water. Shower and restroom facilities are located in the lodge.

### What should I bring?

Most guests pack comfortable walking shoes and plan to dress for changing weather with light layers of clothing. It's also helpful to bring a flashlight and a sense of adventure!

Save your page, and test it in a browser. Test the hyperlink from the yurts.html page to index.html. Test the hyperlink from the index.html page to yurts.html. If your links do not work, review your work, paying close attention to these details:

- Verify that you have saved the pages with the correct names in the correct folder.
- Verify your spelling of the page names in the anchor elements.

Test again after you make the changes.

## Path of Light Yoga Studio

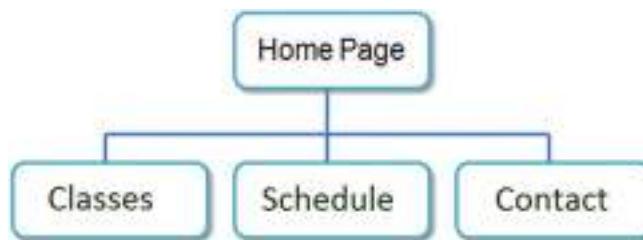
Path of Light Yoga Studio is a small, recently opened yoga studio. The owner, Ariana Starrweaver, would like a website to showcase her yoga studio and provide information for both new and current students. Ariana would like a home page, a classes page that contains information about the types of yoga classes offered, a schedule page, and a contact page.

A site map for the Path of Light Yoga Studio website is shown in [Figure 2.44](#). The site map describes the architecture of the website, which consists of “Home” page with three main content pages: “Classes,” “Schedule,” and “Contact.”

---

**Figure 2.44 Path of Light Yoga Studio site map**

---

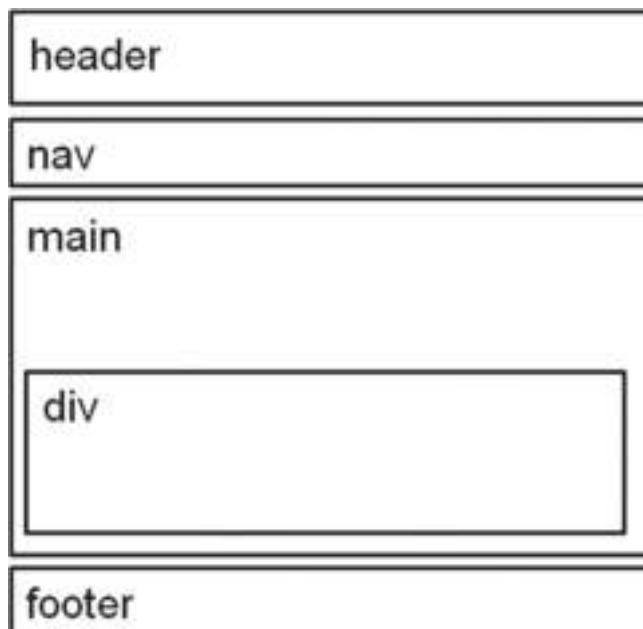


[Figure 2.45](#) displays a wireframe sketch of the page layout for the website. It contains a header area, a navigation area, a main content area, and a footer area for copyright information.

---

**Figure 2.45 Path of Light Yoga Studio wireframe**

---



You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a folder for the Path of Light Yoga Studio website.
2. Create the Home page: index.html.
3. Create the Classes page: classes.html.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

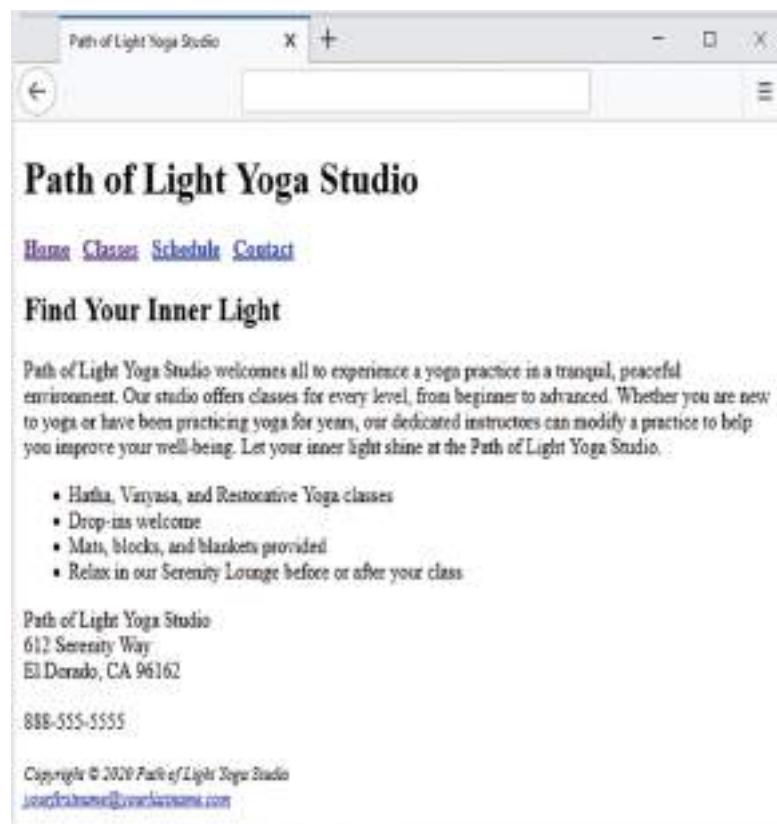
**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder on your hard drive or portable storage device (thumb drive or SD card) called “yoga” to contain your Path of Light Yoga Studio web page files.

**TASK 2: THE HOME PAGE.** You will use a text editor to create the Home page for the Path of Light Yoga Studio website. The Home page is shown in [Figure 2.46](#).

---

**Figure 2.46 Path of Light Yoga Studio index.html**

---



Launch a text editor, and create a web page with the following specifications:

**1. WEB PAGE TITLE.** Use a descriptive page title. The company name is a good choice for the home page of a business website. On pages other than the home page, the title typically contains both the company name and a word or a phrase that describes the purpose of the page.

**2. WIREFRAME HEADER.** Code the header element with the text, “Path of Light Yoga Studio” contained within a heading 1 element.

**3. WIREFRAME NAVIGATION.** Place the following text within a nav element with bold text (use the `<b>` element):

Home Classes Schedule Contact  
Code anchor tags so that “Home” links to index.html, “Classes” links to classes.html, “Schedule” links to schedule.html, and “Contact” links to contact.html. Add extra blank spaces between the hyperlinks with the `&ampnbsp` special character as needed.

**4. WIREFRAME MAIN CONTENT.** Code the main page content within a main element. Use **Hands-On Practice 2.10** as a guide.

**a.** Code the following text within an h2 element:

Find Your Inner Light

**b.** Configure the following sentences in a paragraph:

Path of Light Yoga Studio welcomes all to experience a yoga practice in a tranquil, peaceful environment. Our studio offers

classes for every level, from beginner to advanced. Whether you are new to yoga or have been practicing yoga for years, our dedicated instructors can modify a practice to help you improve your well-being. Let your inner light shine at the Path of Light Yoga Studio.

- c. Configure the following content in an unordered list:

- Hatha, Vinyasa, and Restorative Yoga classes

- Drop-ins welcome

- Mats, blocks, and blankets provided

- Relax in our Serenity Lounge before or after your class

- d. Code the following address and phone number contact information within a div element. Use line break tags to help you configure this area and add extra space between the phone number and the footer area.

Path of Light Yoga Studio

612 Serenity Way

El Dorado, CA 96162

888-555-5555

- 5. WIREFRAME FOOTER.** Configure the following copyright and e-mail link information within a footer element. Format it with small text size (use the `<small>` tag) and italics font style (use the `<i>` tag)

Copyright © 2020 Path of Light Yoga Studio

Place your name in an e-mail link on the line under the copyright information.

The page in [Figure 2.46](#) may seem a little sparse, but don't worry; as you gain experience and learn to use more advanced techniques, your pages will look more professional. White space (blank space) on the page can be added with `<br>` tags where needed. Your page does not need to look exactly the same as the sample. Your goal at this point should be to practice and get comfortable using HTML.

Save your page in the yoga folder, and name it index.html.

**TASK 3: THE CLASSES PAGE.** Create the Classes page shown in [Figure 2.47](#). A technique that improves productivity is to create new pages based on existing pages so that you can benefit from your previous work. Your new Classes page will use the index.html page as a starting point.

---

**Figure 2.47 Path of Light Yoga Studio classes.html**

---



Open the index.html page for the Path of Light Yoga Studio website in a text editor. Select File > Save As, and save the file with the new name of classes.html in the yoga folder. Now you are ready to edit the page.

- 1. WEB PAGE TITLE.** Modify the page title. Change the text contained between the `<title>` and `</title>` tags to the following:

Path of Light Yoga Studio :: Classes

- 2. WIREFRAME MAIN CONTENT.**

- Delete the Home Page content paragraphs, unordered list, and contact information.

- Configure the following text in the heading 2 element:

Yoga Classes

**c.** Use a description list to configure

information about the yoga classes.

Configure the name of each class to have strong importance and bold font weight (use the `<strong>` phrase element) within a `dt` element. Configure `<dd>` elements for the class descriptions. The information follows:

**Gentle Hatha Yoga**

A 60 minute class of poses and slow movement that focuses on asana (proper alignment and posture), pranayama (breath work), and guided meditation to foster your mind and body connection. This class is intended for beginners and anyone wishing a grounded foundation in the practice of yoga.

**Vinyasa Yoga**

A 60 minute class that focuses on breath-synchronized movement — you will inhale and exhale as you flow energetically through yoga poses. While intended for intermediate to advanced students, beginners are welcome to join in this class.

**Restorative Yoga**

A 90 minute class that features very slow movement and long poses. Restorative yoga is useful in relieving stress and fostering a sense of well-being. This calming, restorative

experience is suitable for students of any level of experience.

Save your page and test it in a browser. Test the hyperlink from the classes.html page to index.html. Test the hyperlink from the index.html page to classes.html. If your links do not work, review your work with close attention to these details:

- Verify that you have saved the pages with the correct names in the correct folder.
- Verify your spelling of the page names in the anchor elements.

Test again after you make the changes.

---

3

## Configuring Color and Text with CSS

---





## Chapter Objectives

---

IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .

- Describe the evolution of style sheets from print media to the Web
- List advantages of using Cascading Style Sheets
- Configure background and text color on web pages
- Create style sheets that configure common color and text properties
- Apply inline styles
- Use embedded style sheets
- Use external style sheets
- Configure element, class, id, and descendant selectors
- Utilize the “cascade” in CSS
- Validate CSS

Now that you have been introduced to HTML, let’s explore **Cascading Style Sheets (CSS)**. Web designers use CSS to separate the presentation style of a web page from the information on the web page. CSS is used to configure text, color, and page layout. CSS is not new—it was first proposed as a standard by the W3C in 1996. In 1998, additional properties for positioning web page elements were introduced to the language with CSS level 2 (CSS2), which was used for over a decade before reaching official “recommendation” status in 2011. CSS level 3 (CSS3) properties support features such as embedding fonts, rounded corners, and transparency. The CSS specification is divided into modules, each with a specific purpose. These modules move along the approval

process independently. The W3C continues to evolve CSS, with proposals for many types of properties and functionality currently in draft form.

This chapter introduces you to the use of CSS on the Web as you explore how to configure color and text.

## 3.1 Overview of Cascading Style Sheets

For years, style sheets have been used in desktop publishing to apply typographic styles and spacing instructions to printed media. CSS provides this functionality (and much more) for web developers. CSS allows web developers to apply typographic styles (typeface, font size, and so on) and page layout instructions to a web page. The CSS Zen Garden, <http://www.csszengarden.com>, exemplifies the power and flexibility of CSS. Visit this web site for an example of CSS in action. Notice how the content looks dramatically different depending on the design (CSS style rules) you select. Although the designs on the CSS Zen Garden are created by CSS masters, at some point these designers were just like you—starting out with CSS basics.

CSS is a flexible, cross-platform, standards-based language developed by the W3C. The W3C's description of CSS can be found at <https://www.w3.org/Style/CSS>. Be aware that even though CSS has been in use for many years, it is still considered an emerging technology, and different browsers do not support it in exactly the same way. We concentrate on aspects of CSS that are well supported by popular browsers.

### Advantages of Cascading Style Sheets

There are several advantages to using CSS (see [Figure 3.1](#)):

- **TYPOGRAPHY AND PAGE LAYOUT CAN BE BETTER CONTROLLED.** These features include font size, line spacing, letter

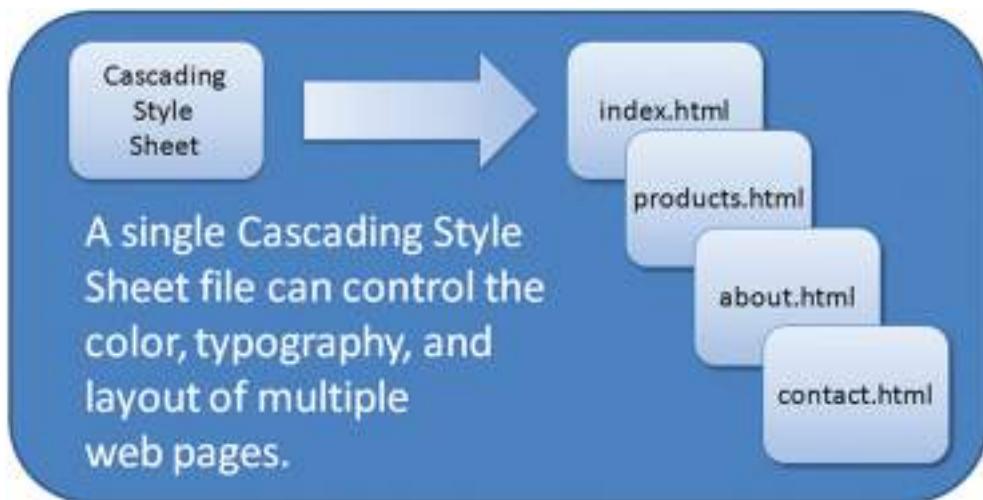
spacing, indents, margins, and element positioning.

- **STYLE IS SEPARATE FROM STRUCTURE.** The format of the text and colors used on the page can be configured and stored separately from the body section of the web page document.
- **STYLES CAN BE STORED.** You can store styles in a separate document and associate them with the web page. When the styles are modified, the HTML remains intact. This means, for example, that if your client decides to change the background color of a set of web pages from red to white, you only need to change one file that contains the styles, instead of modifying each web page document.
- **DOCUMENTS ARE POTENTIALLY SMALLER.** The formatting is separate from the document; therefore, the actual documents should be smaller.
- **SITE MAINTENANCE IS EASIER.** Again, if the styles need to be changed, then it is possible to complete the modifications by changing the style sheet only.

---

**Figure 3.1** The power of a single CSS file

---



## Configuring Cascading Style Sheets

Web developers use four methods to incorporate CSS technology: inline, embedded, external, and imported.

- **Inline styles** are coded in the body of the web page as an attribute of an HTML tag. The style applies only to the specific element that contains it as an attribute.
- **Embedded styles** (also referred to as **internal styles**) are defined within a style element in the head section of a web page. These style instructions apply to the entire web page document.
- **External styles** are coded in a separate text file. This text file is associated with the web page by configuring a link element in the head section.
- **Imported styles** are similar to external styles in that they can connect styles coded in a separate text file with a web page document. An external style sheet can be imported into embedded styles or into another external style sheet by using the @ import directive.

## CSS Selectors and Declarations

Style sheets are composed of style rules that describe the styling to be applied. Each **rule** has two parts: a **selector** and a **declaration**:

- **CSS STYLE RULE SELECTOR** The selector can be an HTML element name, a class name, or an id name. In this section, we will focus on applying styles to element name selectors. We will work with class selectors and id selectors later in this chapter.
- **CSS STYLE RULE DECLARATION** The declaration indicates the **CSS property** you are setting (such as color) and the value you are assigning to the property.

For example, the CSS rule shown in [Figure 3.2](#) would set the color of the text used on a web page to blue. The selector is the body tag, and the

declaration sets the color property to the value of blue.

---

**Figure 3.2** Using CSS to set the text color to blue

---



## The background-color Property

The CSS **background-color** property configures the background color of an element. The following style rule will configure the background color of a web page to be yellow. Notice how the declaration is enclosed within braces and how the colon symbol (:) separates the declaration property and the declaration value.

```
body { background-color: yellow }
```

## The color Property

The CSS **color** property configures the text (foreground) color of an element. The following CSS style rule will configure the text color of a web page to be blue:

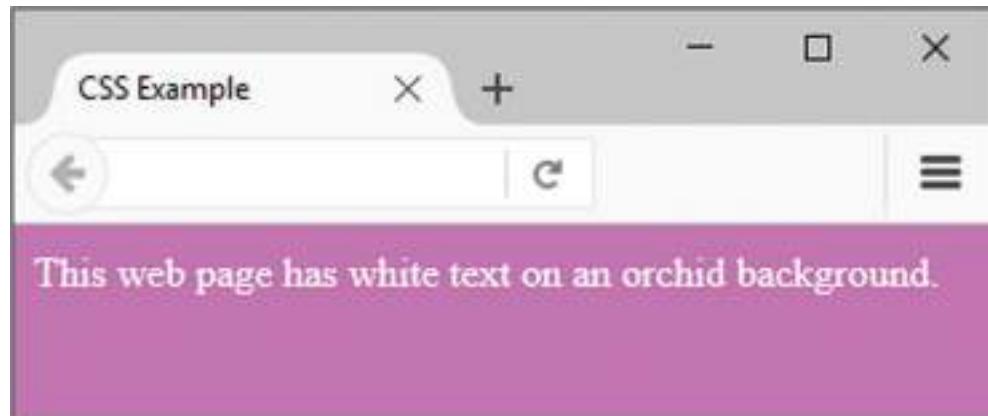
```
body { color: blue }
```

## Configure Background and Text Color

Figure 3.3 displays a web page with a white text and an orchid background. To configure more than one property for a selector, use a semicolon (;) to separate the declarations as follows:

```
body { color: white; background-color: orchid; }
```

**Figure 3.3 A web page with orchid background color and white text color**



The spaces in these declarations are optional. The ending semicolon (;) is also optional, but useful in case you need to add additional style rules at a later time. The following code samples are also valid:

```
body {color:white;background-color:orchid}
body { color: white;
      background-color: orchid; }
body {
      color: white;
      background-color: orchid;
}
```

You might be asking yourself how you would know what properties and values can be used. See the CSS Property Reference in [Appendix C](#) for a detailed list of CSS properties. This chapter introduces you to some of the CSS properties commonly used to configure color and text, shown in [Table 3.1](#). In the next sections, we'll take a look at how color is used on web pages.

---

**Table 3.1 CSS properties introduced in this chapter**

Property	Description	Values
background-color	Background color of an element	Any valid color
color	Foreground (text) color of an element	Any valid color
font-family	Name of a font or font family	Any valid font or a font family such as serif, sans-serif, fantasy, monospace, or cursive

Property	Description	Values
<code>font-size</code>	Size of the font	Varies; a numeric value with pt (standard font <b>point</b> sizes) or px ( <b>pixels</b> ) units or the unit em (which corresponds to the width of the uppercase M of the current font); a numeric percentage; and the text values xx-small, x-small, small, medium, large, x-large, and xx-large
<code>font-style</code>	Style of the font	normal, italic, or oblique
<code>font-weight</code>	The “boldness” or weight of the font	Varies; the text values normal, bold, bolder, and lighter and the numeric values 100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600, 700, 800, and 900
<code>letter-spacing</code>	The space between characters	A numeric value (px or em) or normal (default)
<code>line-height</code>	The spacing allowed for the line of text	It is most common to use a percentage for this value; for example, a value of 200% would correspond to double-spacing.

Property	Description	Values
margin	Shorthand notation to configure the margin surrounding an element	A numeric value (px or em); for example, body {margin: 10px} will set the page margins in the document to 10 pixels. When eliminating the margin, do not use the px or em unit—for example, body {margin:0}
margin-left	Configures the space in the left margin of the element	A numeric value (px or em), auto, or 0
margin-right	Configures the space in the right margin of the element	A numeric value (px or em), auto, or 0
text-align	The alignment of text	center, justify, left, or right

Property	Description	Values
text-decoration	Determines whether text is underlined; this style is most often applied to hyperlinks	The value “none” will cause a hyperlink not to be underlined in a browser that normally processes in this manner
text-indent	Configures the indentation of the first line of text	Numeric value (px or em) or percentage
text-shadow	Configures a drop shadow on the text displayed within an element. This CSS3 property is not supported in all browsers.	Two to four numerical values (px or em) to indicate horizontal offset, vertical offset, blur radius (optional), spread distance (optional), and a valid color value.

Property	Description	Values
<code>text-transform</code>	Configures the capitalization of text	none (default), capitalize, uppercase, or lowercase
<code>white-space</code>	Configures the display of whitespace	normal (default), nowrap, pre, pre-line, or pre-wrap
<code>width</code>	The width of the content of an element	A numeric value (px or em), numeric percentage, or auto (default)
<code>word-spacing</code>	The space between words	A numeric value (px or em) or normal (default)

## 3.2 Using Color on Web Pages

Monitors display color as a combination of different intensities of red, green, and blue, a concept known as **RGB color**. RGB intensity values are numerical from 0 to 255. Each RGB color has three values, one each for red, green, and blue. These values are always listed in the same order (red, green, blue) and specify the numerical value of each color used (see the examples in [Figure 3.4](#)). You will usually use hexadecimal color values to specify RGB color on web pages.

---

**Figure 3.4** Color swatches and hexadecimal color values

---



## Hexadecimal Color Values

Hexadecimal is the name for the base-16 numbering system, which uses the characters **0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, A, B, C, D, E, and F** to specify numeric values. **Hexadecimal color values** specify RGB color with numeric value pairs ranging from **00** to **FF** (**0** to **255** in base **10**). Each pair is associated with the amount of red, green, and blue displayed. Using this notation, one would specify the color red as **#FF0000** and the color blue as **#0000FF**. The **#** symbol signifies that the value is hexadecimal.

You can use either uppercase or lowercase letters in hexadecimal color values; `#FF0000` and `#ff0000` both configure the color red.

Don't worry—you won't need to do calculations to work with web colors. Just become familiar with the numbering scheme. See [Figure 3.5](#) for an excerpt from the color chart at <http://webdevfoundations.net/color>.

---

**Figure 3.5 Partial color chart**

---

#FFFFFF	#FFFFCC	#FFFF99	#FFFF66	#FFFF33	#FFFF00
#FFCCFF	#FFCCCC	#FFCC99	#FFCC66	#FFCC33	#FFCC00
#FF99FF	#FF99CC	#FF9999	#FF9966	#FF9933	#FF9900
#FF66FF	#FF66CC	#FF6699	#FF6666	#FF6633	#FF6600
#FF33FF	#FF33CC	#FF3399	#FF3366	#FF3333	#FF3300
#FF00FF	#FF00CC	#FF0099	#FF0066	#FF0033	#FF0000

## Web-Safe Colors

Back in the day of 8-bit color monitors, web page color could be problematic and it was important to use one of the 216 **web-safe colors**, which display in a similar manner on both the Mac and PC platforms. The hexadecimal color values of web-safe colors use the numerals `00`, `33`, `66`, `99`, `CC`, and `FF`. The 216 web-safe colors make up the **Web-Safe Color Palette**, found in the Appendix (also at <http://webdevfoundations.net/color>). Now that most monitors display millions of colors, using web-safe colors is less important. The Web-Safe Color Palette is rather limited, and it is common for today's web designers to choose colors creatively rather than select them only from the palette.

## CSS Color Syntax

CSS syntax allows you to configure colors in a variety of ways:

- color name
- hexadecimal color value
- hexadecimal shorthand color value
- decimal color value (RGB triplet)
- HSL (Hue, Saturation, and Lightness) color value notation (see [Chapter 4](#))

We'll typically use hexadecimal color values in this book. [Table 3.2](#) shows CSS syntax examples that configure a paragraph with red text.

---

**Table 3.2 css color syntax examples**

CSS Syntax	Color Type
<pre>p { color:     red; }</pre>	Color name
<pre>p { color:     #FF0000; }</pre>	Hexadecimal color value
<pre>p { color:     #F00; }</pre>	Shorthand hexadecimal (one character for each hexadecimal pair; used only with web-safe colors)
<pre>p { color:     rgb(255,0,0); }</pre>	Decimal color value (RGB triplet)

CSS Syntax	Color Type
<pre>p { color:     hsl(0, 100%,         50%); }</pre>	HSL color values

---

## FAQ

How do I choose a color scheme for a web page?

There's a lot to consider when you select a color scheme for a website. The colors that you choose set the tone and help to create a web presence for the company or organization that appeals to the target audience. The colors you choose for text and background need to have good contrast in order to be readable. We'll explore techniques for choosing a color scheme in [Chapter 5](#).

## 3.3 Inline CSS with the Style Attribute

Recall that there are four methods for configuring CSS: inline, embedded, external, and imported. In this section, we focus on inline CSS using the `style` attribute.

### The Style Attribute

Inline styles are coded as an attribute on an HTML tag using the **style attribute**. The value of the `style` attribute is set to the style rule declaration that you need to configure. Recall that a declaration consists of a property and a value. Each property is separated from its value with a colon (:). The following code will use inline styles to set the text color of an `<h1>` tag to a shade of red:

```
<h1 style="color:#cc0000">This is displayed as a red heading</h1>
```

If there is more than one property, they are separated by a semicolon (;). The following code configures the heading with a red text color and a gray background color:

```
<h1 style="color:#cc0000;background-color:#cccccc">  
This is displayed as a red heading on a gray background</h1>
```



## Hands-On Practice 3.1

In this Hands-On Practice, you will configure a web page with inline styles. The inline styles will specify the following:

- Global body tag styles for an off-white background with teal text. These styles will be inherited by other elements by default. For example:

```
<body style="background-color:#F5F5F5;color:#008080;">
```

- Styles for an h1 element with a teal background with off-white text. This style will override the global styles configured on the body element. For example:

```
<h1 style="background-color:#008080;color:#F5F5F5;">
```

A sample is shown in [Figure 3.6](#). Launch a text editor. Select File > Open to edit the template file located at chapter3/template.html in the student files. Modify the title element, and add heading tags, paragraph tags, style attributes, and text to the body section as indicated by the following code:

---

**Figure 3.6 Web page using inline styles**

---



```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Inline CSS Example</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body style="background-color:#F5F5F5;color:#008080;">
<h1 style="background-color:#008080;color:#F5F5F5;">Inline CSS</h1>
<p>This paragraph inherits the styles applied to the body tag.</p>
</body>
</html>
```

Save the document as inline.html on your hard drive or flash drive. Launch a browser to test your page. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 3.6](#). Note that the inline styles applied to the body tag are inherited by other elements on the page (such as the paragraph) unless more-specific styles are specified (such as those coded on the `<h1>` tag). You can compare your work with the solution found in the student files (chapter3/inline.html).

Let's continue and add another paragraph, with the text color configured to be dark gray:

```
<p style="color:#333333">This paragraph overrides the text color style applied to the body tag.</p>
```

Save the document as inlinep.html. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 3.7](#). You can compare your work with the solution found in the student files (chapter3/inlinep.html).

Note that the inline styles applied to the second paragraph override the global styles applied to the body of the web page.

---

**Figure 3.7 The second paragraph's inline styles override the global styles configured on the body tag**

---



---

## FAQ

Are inline styles recommended?

While inline styles can sometimes be useful, you'll find that you won't use this technique much in practice—it's inefficient, adds extra code to the web page document, and is inconvenient to maintain. However, inline styles can be quite handy in some circumstances, such as when you post an article to a content management system or blog and need to tweak the sitewide styles a bit to help get your point across.

---

## 3.4 Embedded CSS with the Style Element

In the previous Hands-On Practice, you added inline styles for one of the paragraphs. To do so, you coded a style attribute on the paragraph element. But what if you needed to configure the styles for 10 or 20 paragraphs instead of just one? Using inline styles, you might be doing a lot of repetitive coding! While inline styles apply to one HTML element, embedded styles apply to an entire web page.

### Style Element

The opening `<style>` tag and the closing `</style>` tag contain the list of embedded style rules. Embedded styles apply to the entire document and are typically placed within a style element located in the head section of a web page. Note that while HTML 5.2 also allows the style element in the body section, we'll always code the style element in the head section.

The web page in [Figure 3.8](#) uses embedded styles to set the text color and background color of the web page document with the body element selector. See the example in the student files at chapter3/embed.html. The code follows:

---

**Figure 3.8 Web page with embedded styles**

---



```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Embedded Styles</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
body { background-color: #E6E6FA;
      color: #191970;
}
</style>
</head>
<body>
<h1>Embedded CSS</h1>
<p>This page uses embedded styles.</p>
</body>
</html>
```

Notice the way the style rules were coded, with each rule on its own line. This formatting is not required for the styles to work, but it makes the styles more readable and easier to maintain than one long row of text. The styles are in effect for the entire web page document because they were applied to the `<body>` tag using the body element selector.

---

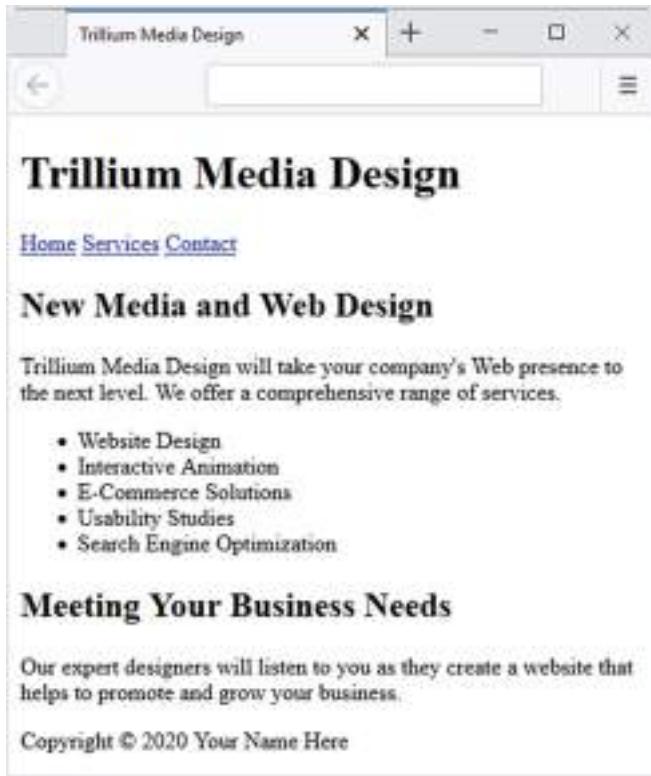
## Hands-On Practice 3.2

Launch a text editor, and open the starter.html file from the chapter3 folder in the student files. Save your page as embedded.html, and test it in a browser. Your page should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.9](#).

---

**Figure 3.9 The web page without any styles**

---



Open the file in a text editor, and view the source code. Notice that the web page code uses the `<header>`, `<nav>`, `<main>`, `<footer>`, `<h1>`, `<h2>`, `<p>`, `<ul>`, and `<li>` elements. In this Hands-On Practice, you will code embedded styles to configure selected background and text colors. You will use the body element selector to configure the default background color (#E2FFFF) and default text color (#15495E) for the entire page. You will also use the h1 and h2 element selectors to configure different background and text colors for the heading areas. Edit the embedded.html file in a text editor, and add the following code below the `<title>` element in the head section of the web page:

```
<style>
body { background-color: #E2FFFF; color: #15495E; }
h1 { background-color: #237B7B; color: #E2FFFF; }
```

```
        }
    h2 { background-color: #B0E6E6; color: #237B7B;
        }
    </style>
```

Save your file, and test it in a browser. **Figure 3.10** displays the web page along with corresponding color swatches. A teal monochromatic color scheme was chosen. Notice how the repetition of a limited number of colors unifies the design of the web page. View the source code for your page, and review the CSS and HTML code. An example of this web page is in the student files at chapter3/3.2/index.html. Note that all the styles were located in a single place on the web page. Since embedded styles are coded in a specific location, they are easier to maintain over time than inline styles. Also, notice that you coded the styles for the h2 element selector only once (in the head section), and *both* of the `<h2>` elements applied the h2 style. This approach is more efficient than coding the same inline style on each `<h2>` element. However, it is uncommon for a website to have only one page. Repeating the CSS in the head section of each web page file is inefficient and difficult to maintain. In the next section, you'll use a more productive approach—configuring an external style sheet.

---

**Figure 3.10** The web page after embedded styles are configured

---



## FAQ

My CSS doesn't work; what can I do?

Coding CSS is a detail-oriented process. There are several common errors that can cause the browser not to apply CSS correctly to a web page. With a careful review of your code and the following tips, you should get your CSS working:

- Verify that you are using the colon (:) and semicolon (;) symbols in the right spots—they are easy to confuse. The colon should separate the properties from their values, while the semicolon should be placed between each `property:value` configuration.

- Check that you are not using equal (=) signs instead of colons (:) between each property and its value.
- Verify that curly braces ({ and }) are properly placed around the style rules for each selector.
- Check the syntax of your selectors, the selectors' properties, and the property values for correct usage.
- If part of your CSS works and part doesn't, read through the CSS and determine the first rule that is not applied. Often, the error is in the rule above the rule that is not applied.
- Use a validation application to check your CSS code. The W3C has a free CSS code validator at <http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>. The W3C's CSS validator can help you find syntax errors. See [Section 3.11](#) for an overview of how to use this tool to validate your CSS.

### Checkpoint 3.1

1. List three reasons to use CSS on a web page.
2. When designing a page that uses colors other than the default colors for text and background, explain why it is a good reason to configure both the text color and the background color.
3. Describe one advantage to using embedded styles instead of inline styles.

## 3.5 Configuring Text with CSS

In [Chapter 2](#), you discovered how to use HTML to configure some characteristics of text on web pages, including phrase elements such as the `<strong>` element. You have also already configured text color using the CSS color property. In this section, you will learn to use CSS to configure font typeface. Using CSS to configure text is more flexible (especially when using an external style sheet, as you will discover later in the chapter) than using HTML elements and is the method preferred by modern web developers.

### The `font-family` Property

The `font-family` property configures font typeface. A web browser displays text using the fonts that have been installed on the user's computer. When a font is specified that is not installed on your web visitor's computer, the default font is substituted. Times New Roman is the default font displayed by most web browsers. [Figure 3.11](#) shows font family categories.

---

**Figure 3.11 Common fonts**

---

Font Family Category	Font Family Description	Font Typeface Examples
serif	Serif fonts have small embellishments on the end of letter strokes; often used for headings.	Times New Roman, Georgia, Palatino
sans-serif	Sans-serif fonts do not have serifs; often used for web page text.	Arial, Tahoma, Helvetica, Verdana
monospace	Fixed-width font; often used for code samples.	Courier New, Lucida Console
cursive	Hand-written style; use with caution; may be difficult to read on a web page.	<i>Lucida Handwriting, Brush Script, Comic Sans MS</i>
fantasy	Exaggerated style; use with caution; sometimes used for headings; may be difficult to read on a web page.	Jokerman, Impact, Papyrus

The Verdana, Tahoma, and Georgia font typefaces were specifically designed to display well on computer monitors. A common practice is to use a serif font (such as Georgia or Times New Roman) for headings and a sans-serif font (such as Verdana or Arial) for detailed text content. Not every computer has the same fonts installed. See <http://www.ampsoft.net/webdesign-1/WindowsMacFonts.html> for a list of web-safe fonts. Create a built-in backup plan by listing multiple fonts and categories for the value of the font-family property. The browser will attempt to use the fonts in the order listed. The following CSS configures the p element selector to display text in Arial (if installed), Helvetica (if installed), or the default installed sans-serif font:

```
p { font-family: Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif; }
```

## Hands-On Practice 3.3

Launch a text editor, and open the starter2.html file from the chapter3 folder in the student files.

Locate the style tags in the head section, and code embedded CSS to style the following:

1. Configure the body element selector to set global styles to use a sans-serif font typeface, such as Verdana or Arial. An example is

```
body { font-family: Verdana, Arial, sans-serif; }
```

**2.** Configure h2 and h3 element selectors to use a serif font typeface, such as Georgia or Times New Roman. You can configure more than one selector in a styles rule by placing a comma before each new selector. Notice that “Times New Roman” is enclosed within quotation marks because the font name is more than a single word. Code the following style rule:

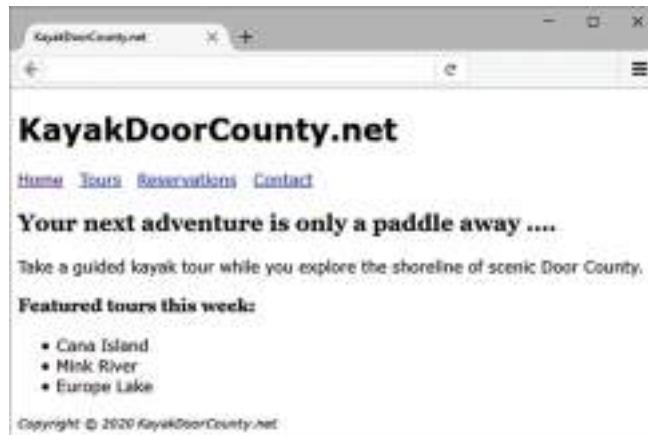
```
h2, h3 { font-family: Georgia, "Times New  
Roman", serif; }
```

Save your page as index.html in a folder named kayak3. Launch a browser and test your page. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.12](#). A sample solution is in the chapter3/3.3 folder.

---

**Figure 3.12 The new home page**

---



---

## FAQ

---

I've heard about "embedding" fonts in order to use special fonts on a web page—what's that all about? For many years, web designers have been limited to a set of common fonts for text on web pages. CSS3 introduced `@font-face`, which can be used to "embed" other fonts within web pages although you actually provide the location of the font and the browser downloads it. For example, if you own the rights to freely distribute the font named MyAwesomeFont and it is stored in a file myawesomefont.woff in the same folder as your web page, the following CSS will make it available to your web page visitors:

```
@font-face { font-family: MyAwesomeFont;
              src: url(myawesomefont.woff)
                   format("woff"); }
```

After you code the `@font-face` rule, you can apply that font to a selector in the usual way, such as in the following example that configures h1 elements:

```
h1 { font-family: MyAwesomeFont, Georgia,
      serif; }
```

Current browsers support `@font-face` but there can be copyright issues. When you purchase a font for use on your own computer you do not necessarily purchase the right to freely distribute it. Visit <https://www.fontsquirrel.com> to browse a selection of

commercial-use free fonts available for download and use.

Google Web Fonts provides a collection of free hosted embeddable web fonts. Explore the fonts available at <https://fonts.google.com>. Once you choose a font, all you need to do is:

1. Copy and paste the link tag provided by Google in your web page document. (The link tag associates your web page with a CSS file that contains the appropriate @font-face rule.)
2. Configure your CSS font-family property with the Google web font name.

See the Getting Started guide at [https://developers.google.com/fonts/docs/getting\\_started](https://developers.google.com/fonts/docs/getting_started) for more information. Use web fonts judiciously to conserve bandwidth and avoid applying multiple web fonts to a web page. It's a good idea to use just one web font on a web page along with your typical fonts. This can provide you a way to use an uncommon font typeface in page headings and/or navigation without the need to create graphics for these page areas.

---

## More CSS Text Properties

CSS provides you with lots of options for configuring the text on your web pages. In this section, you will explore the `font-size`, `font-weight`, `font-style`, `line-height`, `text-align`, `text-decoration`, `text-indent`,

`letter-spacing`, `word-spacing`, `text-shadow`, and `text-transform` properties.

## The `font-size` Property

The `font-size` property sets the size of the font. Table 3.3 lists several commonly used categories of font-size values. As you review the table you'll see a wide variety of text and numeric values—there are almost too many choices available. See the notes in Table 3.3 for recommended use.

---

**Table 3.3 Configuring font size**

Value Category	Values	Notes
Text Value	xx-small, x-small, small, medium (default), large, x-large, xx-large	Scales well when text is resized in browser; limited options for text size
Pixel Unit (px)	Numeric value with unit, such as 10 px	Pixel-perfect display depends on screen resolution; may not scale in every browser when text is resized
Point Unit (pt)	Numeric value with unit, such as 10 pt	Use to configure print version of web page (see Chapter 6); may not scale in every browser when text is resized

Value Category	Values	Notes
Em Unit (em)	Numeric value with unit, such as .75 em	Recommended by W3C; scales well when text is resized in browser; many options for text size
Percentage Value	Numeric value with percentage, such as 75%	Recommended by W3C; scales well when text is resized in browser; many options for text size

The **em unit** is a relative font unit that has its roots in the print industry, dating back to the day when printers set type manually with blocks of characters. An em unit is the width of a square block of type (typically the uppercase M) for a particular font and type size. On web pages, an em unit corresponds to the width of the font and size used in the parent element (typically the body element). So, the size of an em unit is relative to the font typeface and default size. Percentage values work in a similar manner to em units. For example, `font-size: 100%` and `font-size: 1em` should render the same in a browser. To compare font sizes on your computer, launch a browser and view chapter3/fonts.html in the student files.

## The **font-weight** Property

The **font-weight** property configures the boldness of the text.

Configuring the CSS rule `font-weight: bold;` has a similar effect as the `<strong>` or `<b>` HTML element.

## The `font-style` Property

The `font-style` property typically is used to configure text displayed in italics. Valid values for font-style are normal (the default), italic, and oblique. The CSS `font-style: italic;` has the same visual effect in the browser as an `<i>` or `<em>` HTML element.

## The `line-height` Property

The `line-height` property modifies the default height of a line of text and is often configured with a percentage value. For example, code `line-height: 200%;` to configure text to appear double spaced.

## The `text-align` Property

HTML elements are left-aligned by default; They begin at the left margin. The CSS `text-align` property configures the alignment of text and inline elements within block display elements such as headings, paragraphs, and divs. The values for the `text-align` property are left (default), right, and center. The following CSS code sample configures an `h1` element to have centered text:

```
h1 { text-align: center; }
```

## The `text-indent` Property

The CSS `text-indent` property configures the indentation of the first line of text within an element. The value can be numeric (such as a px, pt, or em unit) or a percentage. The following CSS code sample configures the first line of all paragraphs to be indented:

```
p { text-indent: 5em; }
```

## The **text-decoration** Property

The purpose of the CSS **text-decoration** property is to modify the display of text. Commonly used values for the text-decoration property include none, underline, overline, and line-through. Did you ever wonder why some hyperlinks are not underlined? Although hyperlinks are underlined by default, you can remove the underline with the text-decoration property. The following code sample removes the underline on a hyperlink:

```
a { text-decoration: none; }
```

## The **text-transform** Property

The **text-transform** property configures the capitalization of text. Valid values for text-transform are none (default), capitalize, uppercase, or lowercase. The following code sample causes all the text within an h3 element to be displayed in uppercase:

```
h3 { text-transform: uppercase; }
```

## The **letter-spacing** Property

The **letter-spacing** property configures the space between text characters. Valid values for letter-spacing are normal (default) and a

numeric pixel or em unit. The following code sample configures extra spacing between characters within an `h3` element:

```
h3 { letter-spacing: 3px; }
```

## The `word-spacing` Property

The `word-spacing` property configures the space between words. Valid values for word-spacing are normal (default) and a numeric pixel or em unit. The following code sample configures extra spacing between words within an `h3` element:

```
h3 { word-spacing: 2em; }
```

## The `white-space` Property

The `white-space` property specifies the way that whitespace (such as a space character, or line feed within code) is displayed by the browser. The default browser behavior is to collapse adjacent whitespace to a single space character. Commonly used values for `white-space` are normal (default), nowrap (text will not wrap to the next line), and pre (preserves all whitespace in the browser display).

## The `text-shadow` Property

The `text-shadow` property adds depth and dimension to text displayed on web pages. Configure a text shadow by coding values for the shadow's horizontal offset, vertical offset, blur radius (optional), and color:

- **HORIZONTAL OFFSET.** Use a numeric pixel value. Positive value configures a shadow on the right. Negative value configures a shadow on the left.
- **VERTICAL OFFSET.** Use a numeric pixel value. Positive value configures a shadow below. Negative value configures a shadow above.
- **BLUR RADIUS (OPTIONAL).** Configure a numeric pixel value. If omitted, defaults to the value 0 which configures a sharp shadow. Higher values configure more blur.
- **COLOR VALUE.** Configure a valid color value for the shadow.

The following code configures a dark gray shadow with 3px horizontal offset, 2px vertical offset, and 5px blur radius:

```
text-shadow: 3px 2px 5px #667788;
```

---

## Hands-On Practice 3.4

Now that you've got a collection of new CSS properties for font and text configuration, let's try them out. You will use the file from [Hands-On Practice 3.2](#) (see the student files chapter3/3.2/index.html) as a starting point. Launch a text editor, and open the file. You will now code additional CSS styles to configure the text on the page.

### Set Default Font Properties for the Page

As you have already seen, CSS rules applied to the body selector apply to the entire page. Modify the CSS for the body

selector to display text using a sans-serif font. The new font typeface style declaration shown in the following code will apply to the entire web page unless more specific style rules are applied to an element selector (such as h1 or p), a class, or an id (more on classes and ids later):

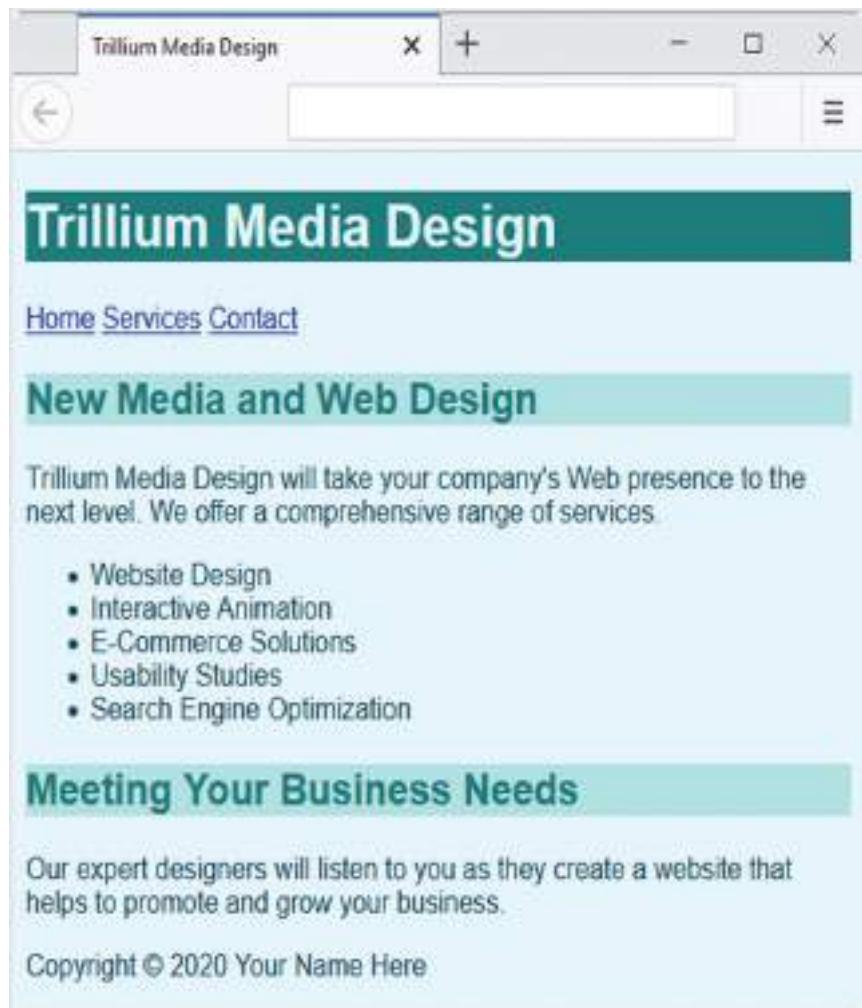
```
body { background-color: #E2FFFF;  
       color: #15495E;  
       font-family: Arial, Verdana, sans-serif;  
 }
```

Save your page as embedded1.html, and test it in a browser. Your page should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.13](#). Notice that just a single line of CSS changed the font typeface of all the text on the page!

---

**Figure 3.13 CSS configures the font on the web page**

---



## Configure the h1 Selector

Now you will configure the `line-height`, `font-family`, `text-indent`, and `text-shadow` CSS properties. Set the `line-height` property to 200%; this will add a bit of empty space above and below the heading text. (In Chapters 4 and 6, you will explore other CSS properties, such as the margin, border, and padding, that are more commonly used to configure space surrounding an element.) Next, modify the h1 selector to use a serif font. When a font name contains spaces, type quotes as indicated in the code that follows. While it is generally recognized that blocks of text using sans-serif fonts are easier

to read, it is common to use a serif font to configure page or section headings. Indent the text 1em unit. Configure a black (#000000) text shadow with a 3 pixel vertical offset, 3 pixel horizontal offset, and 5 pixel blur radius.

```
h1 { background-color: #237B7B;
      color: #E2FFFF;
      font-family: Georgia, "Times New Roman",
      serif;
      line-height: 200%;
      text-indent: 1em;
      text-shadow: 3px 3px 5px #000000; }
```

Save your page and test it in a browser.

## Configure the h2 Selector

Configure the CSS rule to use the same font typeface as the h1 selector and to display centered text.

```
h2 { background-color: #B0E6E6;
      color: #237B7B;
      font-family: Georgia, "Times New Roman",
      serif;
      text-align: center; }
```

## Configure the Navigation Area

The navigation links would be more prominent if they were displayed in a larger and bolder font. Code a selector for the nav element that sets the font-size, font-weight, and word-spacing properties.

```
nav { font-weight: bold;
      font-size: 1.25em;
      word-spacing: 1em; }
```

## Configure the Paragraphs

Edit the HTML, and remove the line break tag that is after the first sentence of each paragraph; these line breaks look a bit awkward. Next, configure text in paragraphs to display just slightly smaller than the default text size. Use the `font-size` property set to `.90em`. Configure the first line of each paragraph to be indented. Use the `text-indent` property to configure a `3em` indent.

```
p { font-size: .90em;  
    text-indent: 3em; }
```

## Configure the Unordered List

Configure the text displayed in the unordered list to be bold.

```
ul { font-weight: bold; }
```

Save your page as `index.html`. Test it in a browser. Your page should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.14](#). The student files contain a sample solution at `chapter3/3.4/index.html`. CSS is quite powerful—just a few lines of code significantly changed the appearance of the web page. You may be wondering if even more customization is possible. For example, what if you did not want all the paragraphs to display in exactly the same way? While you could add inline styles to the web page code, that is usually not the most efficient technique. The next section introduces the CSS class

and id selectors, which are widely utilized to configure specific page elements.

---

**Figure 3.14 CSS configures color and text properties on the web page**

---



---

## FAQ

---

Is there a quick way to apply the same styles to more than one HTML tag or more than one class?

Yes, you can apply the same style rules to multiple selectors (such as HTML elements, classes, or ids) by listing the selectors in front of the style rule. Place a comma between each selector. The following code sample shows the `font-size` of 2em being applied to both the paragraph and list item elements:

```
p, li { font-size: 2em; }
```

## 3.6 CSS Class, Id, and Descendant Selectors

### The Class Selector

Use a CSS **class selector** when you need to apply a CSS declaration to certain elements on a web page and not necessarily tie the style to a particular HTML element. See [Figure 3.15](#), and notice that the last two items in the unordered list are displayed in a different color than the others; this is an example of using a class. A class name must begin with a letter and may contain numbers, hyphens, and underscores. Class names may not contain spaces. When setting a style for a class, configure the class name as the selector. Place a dot, or period (.), in front of the class name in the style sheet. The following code configures a class called **feature** in a style sheet with a foreground (text) color set to a medium red:

---

**Figure 3.15 Using a class selector**

---

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the title bar "Trillium Media Design". The main content area displays the website for "Trillium Media Design". At the top, there is a green header bar containing the company name "Trillium Media Design" in white. Below this, a navigation menu bar has three items: "Home", "Services", and "Contact", all in blue text. Underneath the menu is a teal-colored section titled "New Media and Web Design" in white. A descriptive paragraph follows, stating: "Trillium Media Design will take your company's Web presence to the next level. We offer a comprehensive range of services." Below this text is a bulleted list of services in red: "• Website Design", "• Interactive Animation", "• E-Commerce Solutions", "• Usability Studies", and "• Search Engine Optimization". Another teal section titled "Meeting Your Business Needs" is present. A copyright notice "Copyright © 2020 Your Name Here" is at the bottom of the page.

```
.feature { color: #C70000; }
```

The styles set in the new class can be applied to any element you wish. You do this by using the **class attribute**, such as `class="feature"`. Do not type the dot in front of the class value in the opening tag where the class is being applied. The following code will apply the `feature` class styles to two `<li>` elements:

```
<li class="feature">Usability Studies</li>
<li class="feature">Search Engine Optimization</li>
```

## The Id Selector

Use a CSS **id selector** to identify and apply a CSS rule uniquely to a *single* area on a web page. Unlike a class selector which can be applied multiple times on a web page, an id may only be applied once per web page.

When setting a style for an id, place a hash mark (#) in front of the id name in the style sheet. An id name may contain letters, numbers, hyphens, and underscores. Id names may not contain spaces. The following code will configure an id called **feature** in a style sheet:

```
#feature { color: #333333; }
```

The styles set in the feature id can be applied to any element you wish by using the **id attribute**, `id="feature"`. Do not type the # in front of the id value in the opening tag. The following code will apply the **feature** id styles to a div tag:

```
<div id="feature">This sentence will be displayed using
styles
configured in the feature id.</div>
```

Using CSS with an id selector is similar to using CSS with a class selector.

Use an id selector to configure a single element on a web page. Use a class selector to configure one or more elements on a web page.

# The Descendant Selector

Use a CSS **descendant selector** when you want to specify an element within the context of its container (parent) element. Using descendant selectors can help you to reduce the number of different classes and ids but still allows you to configure CSS for specific areas on the web page. To configure a descendant selector, list the container selector (which can be an element selector, class, or id) followed by the specific selector you are styling. For example, to specify a green text color for paragraphs located *within* the main element, code the following style rule:

```
main p { color: #00ff00; }
```

## Hands-On Practice 3.5

In this Hands-On Practice, you will use the Trillium Media Design file from [Hands-On Practice 3.4](#) (see the student files chapter3/3.4/index.html) as a starting point and modify the CSS and the HTML in the page to configure the navigation hyperlinks, content area, and page footer area. Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file.

### Configure the Navigation Hyperlinks

Navigation hyperlinks are often displayed on web pages without the default underline by configuring the text-decoration property and applying that property to a descendant selector that targets only the anchor tags in the navigation area.

Configure embedded CSS before the closing style tag. Code a

descendant selector that specifies the hyperlinks with the nav element and set the text-decoration property.

```
nav a { text-decoration: none; }
```

## Configure the Content Area

Trillium Media Design would like to draw attention to its new usability and search optimization services. Configure embedded CSS before the closing style tag. Create a class named `feature` that configures the text color to be a medium dark red (#C70000).

```
.feature { color: #C70000; }
```

Modify the last two items in the unordered list. Add a class attribute to each opening li tag that associates the list item with the `feature` class as follows:

```
<li class="feature">Usability Studies</li>
<li class="feature">Search Engine
Optimization</li>
```

## Configure the Footer Area

Configure embedded CSS before the closing style tag. Code a selector for the footer element that sets the text color, font-size, and font-style properties.

```
footer { color: #333333;  
         font-size: .75em;  
         font-style: italic; }
```

Modify the HTML and code a [yourfirstname@yourlastname.com](mailto:yourfirstname@yourlastname.com) e-mail hyperlink (refer to [Chapter 2](#)) within the footer element on a line below the copyright information.

Save your file and test it in a browser. Your page should look similar to the image shown in [Figure 3.16](#). See chapter3/3.5/index.html in the student files for a sample solution. Notice how the footer element, class, and nav hyperlinks styles are applied. Although the hyperlinks in the navigation area do not display with an underline, the e-mail hyperlink in the footer area displays with the default underline.

---

**Figure 3.16 The new home page**

---



## FAQ

How do you choose class and id names?

You can choose almost any name you wish for a CSS class or id. However, CSS class names are more flexible and easier to maintain over time if they are descriptive of the structure rather than of specific formatting. For

example, a class name of largeBold would no longer be meaningful if the design were changed to display the area differently; however, a structural class name such as item, content, or subheading is meaningful regardless of how the area is configured. Here are more hints for class names:

- Use short but descriptive names.
- Always begin with a letter.
- Avoid spaces in class names.
- Feel free to use numerals, the dash character, and the underscore character in addition to letters.

Be wary of “classitis”—that is, creating a brand new class each time you need to configure text a bit differently. Decide ahead of time how you will configure page areas, code your classes, and apply them. The result will be a more cohesive and better organized web page.

---

## 3.7 Span Element

Recall from [Chapter 2](#) that the `div` element configures a section or division on a web page with empty space above and below. The `div` element is useful when you need to format a section that is physically separated from the rest of the web page, referred to as a block display. In contrast, the **span element** defines a section on a web page that is *not* physically separated from other areas; this formatting is referred to as inline display. Use the `<span>` tag if you need to format an area that is contained within another, such as within a `<p>`, `<blockquote>`, `<li>`, or `<div>` tag.

---

### Hands-On Practice 3.6

You will experiment with the `span` element in this Hands-On Practice by configuring a new class to format the company name when it is displayed within the text on the page and using the `span` element to apply this class. Use the file from [Hands-On Practice 3.5](#) (see the student files chapter3/3.5/index.html) as a starting point. Open the file in a text editor. Your web page will look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.17](#) after the changes are complete.

---

**Figure 3.17 This web page uses the span element**

---



## Configure the Company Name

View [Figure 3.17](#), and notice that the company name, Trillium Media Design, is displayed in bold and serif font within the first paragraph. You will code both CSS and HTML to configure this formatting. First, create a new CSS rule above the closing style tag that configures a class called `company` in bold, serif font, and 1.25em in size. The code follows:

```
.company { font-weight: bold;
            font-family: Georgia, "Times New
Roman", serif;
            font-size: 1.25em; }
```

Next, modify the beginning of the first paragraph of HTML to use the `span` element to apply the class as follows:

```
<p><span class="company">Trillium Media  
Design</span> will bring
```

Save your file, and test it in a browser. Your page should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.17](#). A sample solution (chapter3/3.6/index.html) is in the student files. View the source code for your page, and review the CSS and HTML code. Note that all the styles were located in a single place on the web page. Since embedded styles are coded in a specific location, they are easier to maintain over time than inline styles. Also notice that you needed to code the styles for the `h2` element selector only once (in the head section), and *both* of the `<h2>` elements applied the `h2` style. This approach is more efficient than coding the same inline style on each `<h2>` element. However, it is uncommon for a website to have only one page. Repeating the CSS in the head section of each web page file is inefficient and difficult to maintain. In the next section, you will use a more efficient approach: configuring an external style sheet.

## 3.8 Using External Style Sheets

The flexibility and power of CSS are best utilized when the CSS is external to the web page document. An external style sheet is a text file with a .css file extension that contains CSS style rules. The external style sheet file is associated with a web page by using the link element. This approach provides a way for multiple web pages to be associated with the same external style sheet file. The external style sheet file does not contain any HTML tags; it contains only CSS style rules.

---

### Video Note

#### *External Style Sheets*

The advantage of external CSS is that styles are configured in a single file. This means that when styles need to be modified, only one file needs to be changed, instead of multiple web pages. On large sites, this approach can save a web developer much time and increase productivity. Let's get some practice with this useful technique.

## Link Element

The **link element** associates an external style sheet with a web page. It is placed in the head section of the page. The link element is a stand-alone, void tag. When coding in HTML5, two attributes are used with the link element: rel and href.

- The value of the **rel attribute** is "stylesheet".

- The value of the **href attribute** is the name of the style sheet file.

Code the following in the head section of a web page to associate the document with the external style sheet named color.css:

```
<link rel="stylesheet" href="color.css">
```

## Hands-On Practice 3.7

Let's practice using external styles. First, you will create an external style sheet. Next, you will configure a web page to be associated with the external style sheet.

### Create an External Style Sheet

Launch a text editor, and type in the following style rules to set the background color of a page to blue and the text color to white. Save the file as color.css.

```
body { background-color: #0000FF;  
       color: #FFFFFF; }
```

Figure 3.18 shows the external color.css style sheet displayed in Notepad. Notice that there is no HTML in this file. HTML tags are not coded within an external style sheet. Only CSS rules (selectors, properties, and values) are coded in an external style sheet.

**Figure 3.18 The external style sheet color.css. Courtesy of Microsoft Corporation.**



## Configure the Web Page

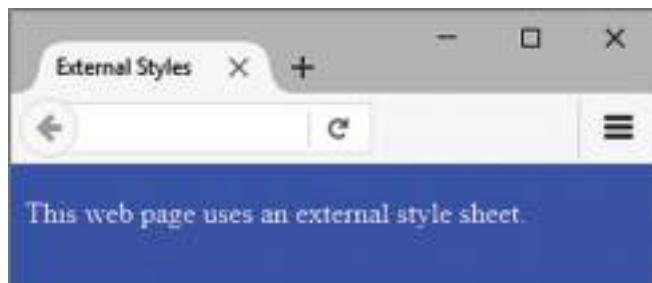
To create the web page shown in [Figure 3.19](#), launch a text editor and open the template file located at chapter3/template.html in the student files. Modify the title element, add a link tag to the head section, and add a paragraph to the body section as indicated by the following code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>External Styles</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<link rel="stylesheet" href="color.css">
</head>
<body>
<p>This web page uses an external style sheet.</p>
</body>
</html>
```

---

**Figure 3.19 This page is associated with an external style sheet**

---



Save your file as external.html. Launch a browser, and test your page. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 3.19](#). You can compare your work with the solution in the student files (chapter3/3.7/external.html). The color.css style sheet can be associated with any number of web pages. If you ever need to change the style of formatting, you need to change only a single file (color.css) instead of multiple files (all of the web pages). As mentioned earlier, this technique can boost productivity on a large site.

The advantage of having only a single file to update is significant for both small and large websites. In the next Hands-On Practice, you will modify the Trillium home page to use an external style sheet.

---

## Hands-On Practice 3.8

In this Hands-On Practice, you will continue to gain experience using external style sheets as you create the external style sheet file named trillium.css, modify the Trillium home page to use external styles instead of embedded styles, and associate a second web page with the trillium.css style sheet.

Use the file from [Hands-On Practice 3.6](#) (see the student files chapter3/3.6/index.html) as a starting point. Open the file in a browser. The display should be the same as the web page shown in [Figure 3.17](#) from [Hands-On Practice 3.6](#).

Now that you've seen what you're working with, let's begin. Launch a text editor, and save the file as index.html in a folder called trilliumext. You are ready to convert the embedded CSS

to external CSS. Select the CSS rules (all the lines of code between, but not including, the opening and closing `<style>` tags). Use Edit > Copy, or press the Ctrl + C keys (Cmd + C keys on a Mac), to copy the CSS code to the clipboard. Now you will place the CSS in a new file. Launch a text editor and create a new file. Use Edit > Paste, or press the Ctrl + V keys (Cmd + V keys on a Mac), to paste the CSS style rules. Save the file as trillium.css. See [Figure 3.20](#) for a screenshot of the new trillium.css file in Notepad. Notice that there are no HTML elements in trillium.css—not even the `<style>` element. The file contains CSS rules only.

---

**Figure 3.20 The external style sheet named trillium.css.**  
Courtesy of Microsoft Corporation.

---



```
trillium.css - Notepad
File Edit Format View Help
body { background-color: #E2FFFF;
       color: #15495E;
       font-family: Arial, Verdana, sans-serif; }
h1 { background-color: #237B7B;
      color: #E2FFFF;
      line-height: 200%;
      font-family: Georgia, "Times New Roman", serif;
      text-indent: 1em;
      text-shadow: 3px 3px 5px #000000; }
h2 { background-color: #B0E6E6;
      color: #237B7B;
      font-family: Georgia, "Times New Roman", serif;
      text-align: center; }
nav { font-weight: bold;
      font-size: 1.25em;
      word-spacing: 1em; }
nav a { text-decoration: none; }
p { font-size: .90em;
    text-indent: 3em; }
ul { font-weight: bold; }
.feature { color: #C70000; }
footer { color: #333333;
         font-size: .75em;
         font-style: italic; }
.company { font-weight: bold;
            font-family: Georgia, "Times New Roman", serif;
            font-size: 1.25em; }
```

Next, edit the index.html file in a text editor. Delete the CSS code you just copied. Delete the closing `</style>` tag. Replace the opening `<style>` tag with a link element to associate the style sheet named trillium.css. The `<link>` tag code is as follows:

```
<link href="trillium.css" rel="stylesheet">
```

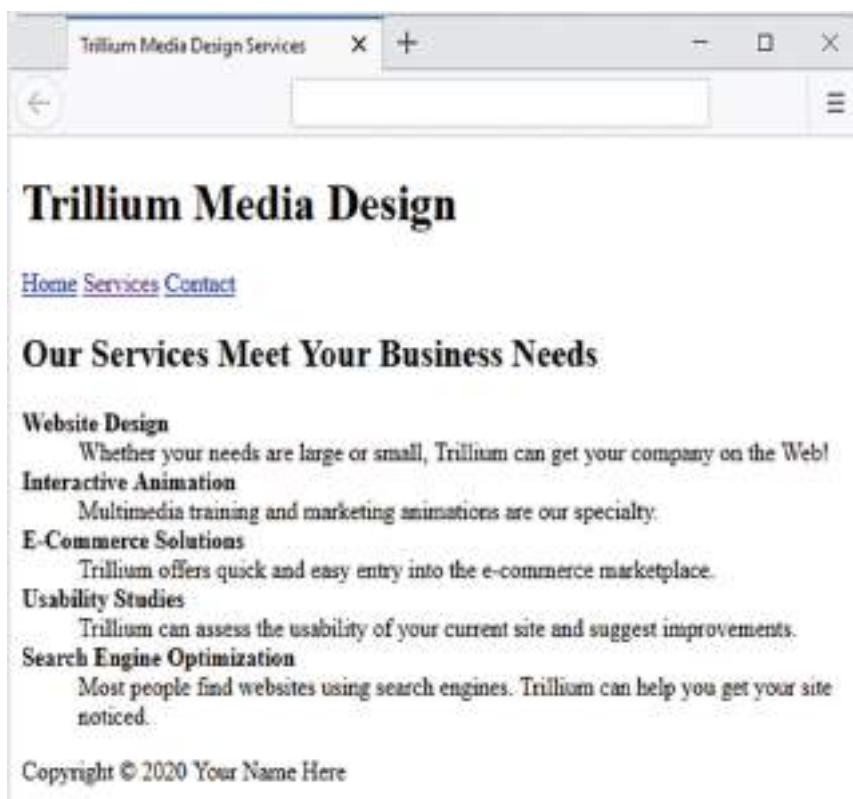
Save the file, and test it in a browser. Your web page should look just like the one shown in [Figure 3.17](#). Although it looks the same, the difference is in the code: The page now uses external, instead of embedded, CSS.

Now, for the fun part—you will associate a second page with the style sheet. The student files contain a services.html page for Trillium at chapter3/services.html. When you display this page in a browser, it should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.21](#). Notice that although the structure of the page is similar to the home page, the styling of the text and colors is absent.

---

**Figure 3.21 The services.html page is not associated with a style sheet**

---



Copy the services.html file to your trilliumext folder. Launch a text editor to edit your services.html file. Code a `<link>` element to associate the services.html web page with the trillium.css external style sheet. Place the following code in the head section above the closing `</head>` tag:

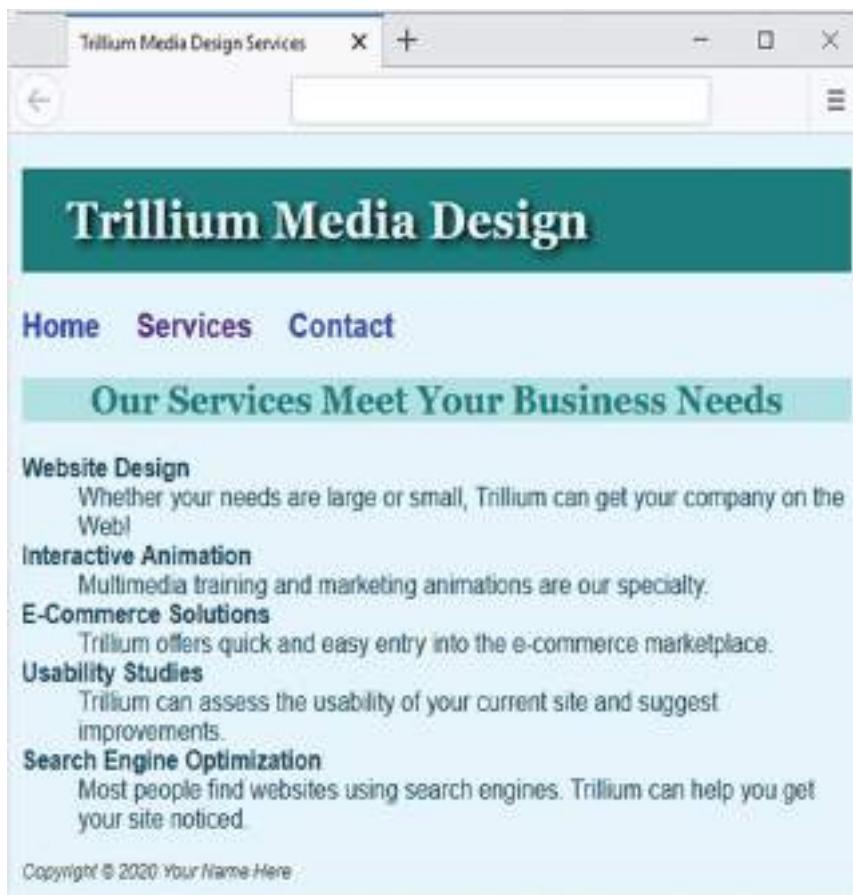
```
<link href="trillium.css" rel="stylesheet">
```

Save your file, and test it in a browser. Your page should look similar to [Figure 3.22](#)—the CSS rules have been applied!

---

**Figure 3.22 The services.html page has been associated with trillium.css**

---



If you click the Home and Services hyperlinks, you can move back and forth between the index.html and services.html pages in the browser. The student files contain a sample solution in the chapter3/3.8 folder.

Notice that when using an external style sheet, if the use of color or fonts on the page ever needs to be changed, modifications are made only to the external style sheet. Think about how this approach can improve productivity on a site with many pages. Instead of modifying hundreds of pages to make a color or font change, only a single file—the CSS external style sheet—needs to be updated. Becoming comfortable with CSS will be important as you develop your skills and increase your technical expertise.

### Checkpoint 3.2

1. Describe a reason to use embedded styles. Explain where embedded styles are placed on a web page.
2. Describe a reason to use external styles. Explain where external styles are placed and how web pages indicate that they are using external styles.
3. Write the code to configure a web page to associate with an external style sheet called mystyles.css.

### FAQ

When designing a new web page or website, how do I begin to work with CSS?

The following guidelines can be helpful when configuring a page using CSS:

- Review the design of the page. Check if common fonts are used. Define global properties (the default for the entire page) for characteristics such as fonts and colors attached to the body element selector.
- Identify typical elements used for organization in the page (such as `<h1>`, `<h2>`, and so on), and declare style rules for these elements if different from the default.
- Identify various page areas such as the header, navigation, footer, and so on. List any special configurations needed for these areas. You may decide to configure classes or ids in your CSS to configure these areas.
- Create one prototype page that contains most of the elements you plan to use and test. Revise your CSS as needed.
- Plan and test. These are important activities when designing a website.

## 3.9 Center HTML Elements with CSS

You learned how to center text on a web page earlier in this chapter—but what about centering the entire web page itself? A popular page layout design that is easy to accomplish with just a few lines of CSS is to center the entire contents of a web page within a browser viewport. The key is to configure a div element that contains, or “wraps,” the entire page content. The HTML follows:

```
<body>
<div id="wrapper">
... page content goes here ...
</div>
</body>
```

Next, configure CSS style rules for this container. As will be discussed further in [Chapter 6](#), the **margin** is the empty space surrounding an element. In the case of the body element, the margin is the empty space between the page content and the edges of the browser window. As you might expect, the **margin-left** and **margin-right** properties configure the space in the left and right margins, respectively. The margins can be set to 0, pixel units, em units, percentages, or auto. When margin-left and margin-right are both set to auto, the browser calculates the amount of space available and divides it evenly between the left and right margins. The **width** property configures the width of a block display element. The following CSS code sample sets the width of an id named **wrapper** to 960 pixels and centers it:

```
#wrapper { width: 960px;  
margin-left: auto;  
margin-right: auto; }
```

You'll practice this technique in the next Hands-On Practice.

## Hands-On Practice 3.9

In this Hands-On Practice, you will code CSS properties to configure a centered page layout, using the files from [Hands-On Practice 3.8](#) as a starting point. Create a new folder called trilliumcenter. Locate the chapter3/3.8 folder in the student files. Copy the index.html, services.html, and trillium.css files to your trilliumcenter folder. Open the trillium.css file in a text editor. Create an id named `wrapper`. Add the margin-left, margin-right, and width style properties to the style rules as follows:

```
#wrapper { margin-left: auto;  
margin-right: auto;  
width: 80%; }
```

Save the file.

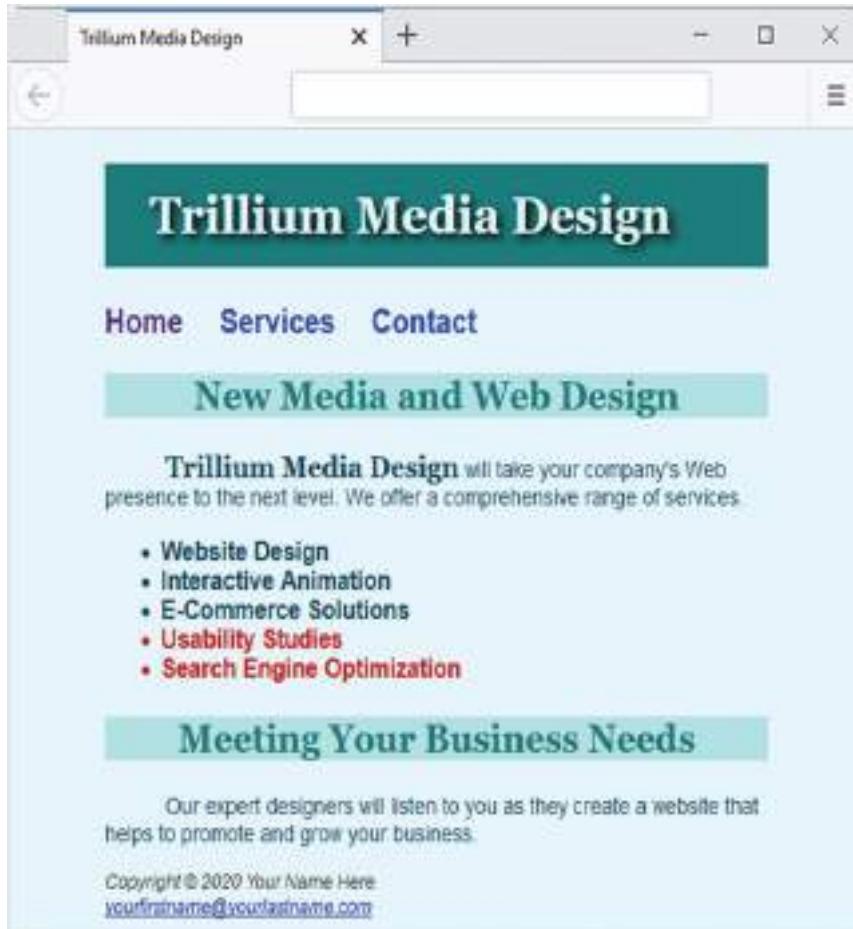
Open the index.html file in a text editor. Add the HTML code to configure a div element assigned to the id wrapper that "wraps," or contains, the code within the body section. Save the file. When you test your index.html file in a browser, it should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 3.23](#). The

student files contain a sample solution in the chapter3/3.9 folder.

---

**Figure 3.23 The page content is centered within the browser viewport**

---



---

## FAQ

Is there an easy way to add a comment for documentation purposes in CSS?

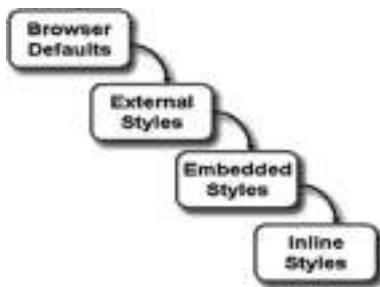
Yes. An easy way to add a comment to CSS is to type "`/*`" before your comment and "`*/`" after your comment, as shown in the following example:

```
/* Configure Footer */  
footer { font-size: .80em; font-style:  
italic; text-align: center; }
```

### 3.10 The “Cascade”

**Figure 3.24** shows the “cascade” (**order of precedence**) that applies the styles in order from outermost (external styles) to innermost (inline styles). This set of rules allows the sitewide styles to be configured, but overridden when needed by more granular page-specific styles (such as embedded or inline styles).

**Figure 3.24** The “cascade” of Cascading Style Sheets



External styles can apply to multiple pages. The order the styles are coded in the web page matters. When using both external and embedded styles, it is typical practice to code the link element (for external styles) before the style element (for embedded styles). So, when a web page contains both an association with an external style sheet and embedded styles, the external styles will be applied first, and then the embedded styles will be applied. This approach allows a web developer to override global external styles on selected pages.

If a web page also contains inline styles, any external and embedded styles are applied first as just described, and then the inline styles are applied. This approach allows a web developer to override page-wide styles for particular HTML tags or classes.

Note that an HTML tag or attribute will override styles. For example, a `<strong>` tag will override corresponding font-related styles configured for an element. If no attribute or style is applied to an element, the browser's default is applied. However, the appearance of the browser's default may vary by browser, and you might be disappointed with the result. Use CSS to specify the properties of your text and web page elements. Avoid depending on the browser's default.

In addition to the general cascade of CSS types described previously, the style rules themselves follow an order of precedence. Style rules applied to more local elements (such as a paragraph) take precedence over those applied to more global elements (such as a `<div>` that contains the paragraph).

Let's look at an example of the cascade. Consider the following CSS code:

```
.special { font-family: Arial, sans-serif; }
p { font-family: "Times New Roman", serif; }
```

The CSS has two style rules: a rule creating a class named `special` that configures text using the Arial (or generic sans-serif) font family, and a rule configuring all paragraphs to use the Times New Roman (or generic serif) font family. The HTML on the page contains a `<div>` with multiple elements, such as headings and paragraphs, as shown in the following code:

```
<div class="special">
<h2>Heading</h2>
<p>This is a paragraph. Notice how the paragraph is
contained in the
```

```
div.</p>  
</div>
```

Here is how the browser would render the code:

1. The text contained in the heading is displayed with Arial font because it is part of the `<div>` assigned to the `special` class. It inherits the properties from its parent (`<div>`) class. This is an example of **inheritance**, in which certain CSS properties are passed down to elements nested within a container element, such as a `<div>` or `<body>` element. Text-related properties (font-family, color, etc.) are generally inherited, but box-related properties (margin, padding, width, etc.) are not.
2. The text contained in the paragraph is displayed with Times New Roman font because the browser applies the styles associated with the most local element (the paragraph). Even though the paragraph is contained in (and is considered a child of) the `special` class, the local paragraph style rules takes precedence and are applied by the browser.

Don't worry if CSS and order of precedence seem a bit overwhelming at this point. CSS definitely becomes easier with practice. You will get a chance to practice with the "cascade" as you complete the next Hands-On Practice.

---

## Hands-On Practice 3.10

You will experiment with the "cascade" in this Hands-On Practice as you work with a web page that uses external, embedded, and inline styles.

1. Create a new folder named mycascade.
2. Launch a text editor. Open a new file. Save the file as site.css in the mycascade folder. You will create an external style sheet that sets the `background-color` of the web page to a shade of yellow (#FFFFCC) and the text color to black (#000000). The code follows:

```
body { background-color: #FFFFCC;  
      color: #000000; }
```

Save and close the site.css file.

3. Open a new file in the text editor, and save it as mypage1.html in the mycascade folder. The web page will be associated with the external style sheet site.css, use embedded styles to set the global text color to blue, and use inline styles to configure the text color of the second paragraph. The file mypage1.html will contain two paragraphs of text. The code follows:

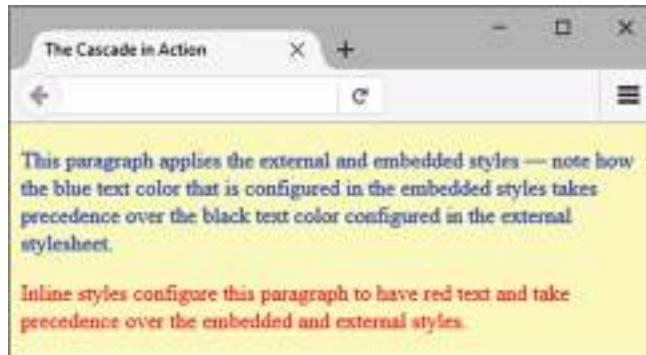
```
<!DOCTYPE html>  
<html lang="en">  
<head>  
<title>The Cascade in Action</title>  
<meta charset="utf-8">  
<link rel="stylesheet" href="site.css">  
<style>  
  body { color: #0000FF; }  
</style>  
</head>  
<body>  
<p>This paragraph applies the external and  
embedded styles &mdash;  
note how the blue text color that is  
configured in the embedded  
styles takes precedence over the black text  
color configured in the external stylesheet.  
</p>  
<p style="color: #FF0000">Inline styles  
configure this paragraph
```

```
to have red text and take precedence over the  
embedded and  
external styles.</p>  
</body>  
</html>
```

Save mypage1.html, and display it in a browser. Your page should look similar to the sample shown in [Figure 3.25](#).

The student files contain a sample solution at chapter3/3.10/mypage1.html.

**Figure 3.25 Mixing external, embedded, and inline styles**



Take a moment to examine the mypage1.html web page and compare it with its source code. The web page picked up the yellow background from the external style sheet. The embedded style configured the text to be the color blue, which overrides the black text color in the external style sheet. The first paragraph in the web page does not contain any inline styles, so it inherits the style rules in the external and embedded style sheets. The second paragraph contains an inline style of red text color; this setting overrides the corresponding external and embedded styles.

## 3.11 CSS Validation

The W3C has a free Markup Validation Service (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>) that will validate your CSS code and check it for syntax errors.

**CSS validation** provides students with quick self-assessment—you can prove that your code uses correct syntax. In the working world, CSS validation serves as a quality assurance tool. Invalid code may cause browsers to render the pages more slowly than they would otherwise.

Video Note

*CSS Validation*

### Hands-On Practice 3.11

In this Hands-On Practice, you will use the W3C CSS Validation Service to validate an external CSS style sheet. This example uses the color.css file completed in [Hands-On Practice 3.7](#) (student files chapter3/3.7/color.css). Locate color.css, and open it in a text editor. Now add an error to the color.css file by finding the body element selector style rule and deleting the first “r” in the `background-color` property. Add another error by removing the # from the `color` property value. Save the file.

Next, attempt to validate the color.css file. Visit the W3C CSS Validation Service page at <http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator> and select the “by file upload” tab. Click the Browse button and

select the color.css file from your computer. Click the Check button. Your display should be similar to that shown in [Figure 3.26](#). Notice that two errors were found. The selector is listed, followed by the reason an error was noted.

---

**Figure 3.26 The validation results indicate two errors.**  
Screenshots of W3C. Courtesy of W3C (World Wide Web Consortium).

---



The screenshot shows the W3C CSS Validation Service interface. At the top, it says "The W3C CSS Validation Service" and "W3C CSS Validator results for color.css (CSS level 3 + SVG)". Below that, there's a link "Jump to: Errors (2)". The main area displays the validation results for "color.css". It shows two errors:

URI : color.css
1 body Property 'background-color' doesn't exist. The closest matching property name is 'background-color': '#0000FF'.
2 body Value Error: color '#FFFFFF' is not a 'color' value: '#FFFFFF'.

Notice that the first message in [Figure 3.26](#) indicates that the “`background-color`” property does not exist. This is a clue to check the syntax of the property name. The second sentence in the message suggests a closely matching property name. Edit `color.css` and correct the first error. Test and revalidate your page. Your browser display should now look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.27](#) and should be reporting only one error.

---

**Figure 3.27 The validation displays one error.**  
Screenshots of W3C. Courtesy of W3C (World Wide Web Consortium).

---



The error reminds you that `FFFFFF` is not a color value; you are expected to already know that you need to add a "`#`" character to code a valid color value, as in `#FFFFFF`. Notice how any valid CSS rules are displayed below the error messages. Correct the color value, save the file, and test again.

Your results should look similar to those shown in Figure 3.28. There are no errors listed. The Valid CSS Information contains all the CSS style rules in `color.css`. This means your file passed the CSS validation test. Congratulations—your `color.css` file is valid CSS syntax! It is good practice to validate your CSS style rules. The CSS validator can help you to quickly identify code that needs to be corrected and indicate which style rules a browser is likely to consider valid. Validating CSS code is one of the many productivity techniques that web developers commonly use.

---

**Figure 3.28 The CSS is valid! Screenshots of W3C. Courtesy of W3C (World Wide Web Consortium).**

---



## The W3C CSS Validation Service

W3C CSS Validator results for color.css (CSS level 3 + SVG)

---

Jump to: [Validated CSS](#)

---

W3C CSS Validator results for color.css (CSS level 3 + SVG)

**Congratulations! No Error Found.**

This document validates as [CSS level 3 + SVG !](#)

---

# Chapter Summary

This chapter has introduced Cascading Style Sheet rules associated with color and text on web pages. There is much more that you can do with CSS, including positioning, hiding and showing page areas, formatting margins, and formatting borders. As you continue your study of web development with this textbook, you will learn about these additional uses. Visit this textbook's website at <http://www.webdevfoundations.net> for examples, information on the resources described in this chapter, and to view updated information.

# Key Terms

[\*\*<link>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<span>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<style>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*background-color property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*Cascading Style Sheets \(CSS\)\*\*](#)  
[\*\*class attribute\*\*](#)  
[\*\*class selector\*\*](#)  
[\*\*color property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*CSS validation\*\*](#)  
[\*\*descendant selector\*\*](#)  
[\*\*declaration\*\*](#)  
[\*\*em unit\*\*](#)  
[\*\*embedded styles\*\*](#)  
[\*\*external styles\*\*](#)  
[\*\*font-family property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*font-size property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*font-style property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*font-weight property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*hexadecimal color values\*\*](#)  
[\*\*href attribute\*\*](#)  
[\*\*id attribute\*\*](#)  
[\*\*id selector\*\*](#)  
[\*\*imported styles\*\*](#)  
[\*\*inheritance\*\*](#)  
[\*\*inline styles\*\*](#)  
[\*\*internal styles\*\*](#)  
[\*\*letter-spacing property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*line-height property\*\*](#)

[link element](#)  
[margin-left property](#)  
[margin-right property](#)  
[order of precedence](#)  
[pixels](#)  
[point](#)  
[property](#)  
[rel attribute](#)  
[RGB color](#)  
[rule](#)  
[selector](#)  
[span element](#)  
[style attribute](#)  
[style element](#)  
[text-align property](#)  
[text-decoration property](#)  
[text-indent property](#)  
[text-shadow property](#)  
[text-transform property](#)  
[type attribute](#)  
[Web-Safe Color Palette](#)  
[Web-Safe Colors](#)  
[white-space property](#)  
[width property](#)  
[word-spacing property](#)

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following is the declaration property used to set the font typeface for an area of a web page?
  - a. face
  - b. font-family
  - c. font-face
  - d. size
  
2. Which of the following is the CSS property used to set the background color of a web page?
  - a. bgcolor
  - b. background-color
  - c. color
  - d. none of the above
  
3. Which of the following describe two components of CSS rules?
  - a. selectors and declarations
  - b. properties and declarations
  - c. selectors and attributes
  - d. none of the above
  
4. Which of the following associates a web page with an external style sheet?
  - a. `<style rel="external" href="style.css">`
  - b. `<style src="style.css">`
  - c. `<link rel="stylesheet" href="style.css">`
  - d. `<link rel="stylesheet" src="style.css">`
  
5. Which type of CSS is coded in the body of the web page as an attribute of an HTML tag?

- a. embedded
- b. external
- c. inline
- d. imported

6. Which of the following do you configure to apply a style to only one area on a web page?

- a. group
- b. class
- c. id
- d. none of the above

7. Which of the following can be a CSS selector?

- a. an HTML element name
- b. a class name
- c. an id name
- d. all of the above

8. Where do you place the code to associate a web page with an external style sheet?

- a. in the external style sheet
- b. in the DOCTYPE of the web page document
- c. in the body section of the web page document
- d. in the head section of the web page document

9. Which of the following configures a background color of #00CED1 for a web page using CSS?

- a. `body { background-color: #00CED1; }`
- b. `document { background: #00CED1; }`
- c. `body { bgcolor: #00CED1; }`
- d. `document { bgcolor: #00CED1; }`

10. Which of the following uses CSS to configure a class called news with red text, large font, and Arial or a sans-serif font?

a.

```
news { color: red;  
      font-size: large;
```

```
font-family: Arial,  
sans-serif; }
```

b.

```
.news { color: red;  
        font-size: large;  
        font-family: Arial,  
        sans-serif; }
```

c.

```
.news { text: red;  
        font-size: large;  
        font-family: Arial,  
        sans-serif; }
```

d.

```
#news { text: red;  
        font-size: large;  
        font-family: Arial,  
        sans-serif; }
```

11. Which of the following is true if a web page contains both a link to an external style sheet and embedded styles?

- a. Embedded styles will be applied first, and then the external styles will be applied.
- b. The inline styles will be used.
- c. External styles will be applied first, and then the embedded styles will be applied.
- d. The web page will not display.

## Fill in the Blank

12. The \_\_\_\_\_ element is useful for creating areas on a web page that are embedded within paragraphs or other block display elements.
13. The \_\_\_\_\_ CSS property can be used to center text within a block display element.
14. The \_\_\_\_\_ CSS property can be used to indent the first line of text.
15. The \_\_\_\_\_ CSS property can be used to configure bold text.

# Apply Your Knowledge

- 1. PREDICT THE RESULT.** Draw and write a brief description of the web page that will be created with the following HTML code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Trillium Media Design</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
    body { background-color: #000066;
            color: #CCCCCC;
            font-family: Arial,sans-serif; }
    header { background-color: #FFFFFF;
              color: #000066; }
    footer { font-size: 80%;
              font-style: italic; }
</style>
</head>
<body>
<header><h1>Trillium Media Design</h1></header>
<nav>Home <a href="about.html">About</a> <a
href="services.html">
Services</a>
</nav>
<p>Our professional staff takes pride in its
working relationship
with our clients by offering personalized services
that listen
to their needs, develop their target areas, and
incorporate these
items into a website that works.</p>
<br><br>
<footer>
Copyright © 2020 Trillium Media Design
</footer>
</body>
</html>
```

- 2. FILL IN THE MISSING CODE.** The web page corresponding to the following code should be configured so that the background and text colors have good contrast. The header area should use

Arial font. Consider the following code, in which some CSS properties and values, indicated by \_, and some HTML tags, indicated by <\_>, are missing. Fill in the missing code.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Trillium Media Design</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
    body { background-color: #0066CC;
           color: " "; }
    header { " ": " " }
<_>
<_>
<body>
<header><h1>Trillium Media Design</h1></header>
    <p>Our professional staff takes pride in its
working
relationship with our clients by offering
personalized services
that listen to their needs, develop their target
areas, and
incorporate these items into a website that works.
</p>
</body>
</html>
```

**3. FIND THE ERROR.** Why won't the page corresponding to the following code display properly in a browser?

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Trillium Media Design</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
    body { background-color: #000066;
           color: #CCCCCC;
           font-family: Arial,sans-serif;
           font-size: 1.2em; }

<style>
</head>
<body>
<header><h1>Trillium Media Design</h1></header>
<main><p>Our professional staff takes pride in
```

```
its working  
relationship with our clients by offering  
personalized services  
that listen to their needs, develop their target  
areas, and  
incorporate these items into a website that works.  
</p></main>  
</body>  
</html>
```

# Hands-On Exercises

1. Write the HTML for a paragraph that uses inline styles to configure the background color of green and the text color of white.
2. Write the HTML and CSS code for an embedded style sheet that configures a background color of `#eaeaea` and a text color of `#000033`.
3. Write the CSS code for an external style sheet that configures the text to be brown, 1.2em in size, and in Arial, Verdana, or a sans-serif font.
4. Write the HTML and CSS code for an embedded style sheet that configures a class called new that is bold and italic.
5. Write the HTML and CSS code for an embedded style sheet that configures links without underlines; a background color of white; text color of black; is in Arial, Helvetica, or a sans-serif font; and has a class called new that is bold and italic.
6. Write the CSS code for an external style sheet that configures a page background color of `#FFF8DC`; has a text color of `#000099`; is in Arial, Helvetica, or a sans-serif font; and has an id called new that is bold and italic.
7. **PRACTICE WITH EXTERNAL STYLE SHEETS.** In this exercise, you will create two external style sheet files and a web page. You will experiment with linking the web page to the external style sheets and note how the display of the page is changed.
  - a. Create an external style sheet (call it format1.css) to format as follows: document background color of white, document text color of `#000099`, and document font family of Arial, Helvetica, or sans-serif. Hyperlinks should have a background color of gray (`#cccccc`). Configure

- the h1 selector to use the Times New Roman font with red text color.
- b. Create an external style sheet (call it format2.css) to format as follows: document background color of yellow and document text color of green. Hyperlinks should have a background color of white. Configure the h1 selector to use the Times New Roman font with white background color and green text color.
- c. Create a web page about your favorite movie that displays the movie name in an `<h1>` tag, a description of the movie in a paragraph, and an unordered (bulleted) list of the main actors and actresses in the movie. The page should also have a hyperlink to a website about the movie. Place an e-mail link to yourself on the web page. This page should be associated with the format1.css file. Save the page as moviecss1.html. Be sure to test your page in more than one browser.
- d. Modify the moviecss1.html page to link to the format2.css external style sheet instead of the format1.css file. Save the page as moviecss2.html and test it in a browser.  
Notice how different the page looks!

**8. PRACTICE WITH THE CASCADE.** In this exercise, you will create two web pages that link to the same external style sheet. After modifying the configuration in the external style sheet, you will test your pages again and find that they automatically pick up the new style configuration. Finally, you will add an inline style to one of the pages and find that it takes effect and overrides the external style.

- a. Create a web page that includes an unordered list describing at least three CSS properties that can be used to format text. The text "CSS Properties" should be contained within `<h1>` tags. Write the HTML code so that

one of the properties is configured to be a class called favorite. Place an e-mail link to yourself on the web page. The web page should be associated with the external style sheet called ex8.css. Save the page as properties.html.

- b. Create an external style sheet (call it ex8.css) to format as follows: document background color of white; document text color of #000099; and document font family of Arial, Helvetica, or sans-serif. Hyperlinks should have a background color of gray (#cccccc). `<h1>` elements should use the Times New Roman font with black text color. The favorite class should use red italic text.
- c. Launch a browser, and test your work. Display the properties.html page. It should use the formatting configured in ex8.css. Modify the web page or the CSS file until your page displays as requested.
- d. Change the configuration of the external style sheet (ex8.css) to use a document background color of black, document text color of white, and `<h1>` text color of gray (#cccccc). Save the file. Launch a browser, and test the properties.html page. Notice how it picks up the new styles from the external style sheet.
- e. Modify the properties.html file to use an inline style. The inline style should be applied to the `<h1>` tag and configure it to have red text. Save the properties.html page, and test in a browser. Notice how the `<h1>` text color specified in the style sheet is overridden by the inline style.

**9. PRACTICE VALIDATING CSS.** Choose a CSS external style sheet file to validate; perhaps you have created one for your own website. Otherwise, use an external style sheet file that you worked with in this chapter. Use the W3C CSS validator at <http://validator.w3.org>

</jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>. If your CSS does not immediately pass the validation test, modify it and test again. Repeat this process until the W3C validates your CSS code. Write a one- or two-paragraph summary about the validation process that answers the following questions: Was the CSS validator easy to use? Did anything surprise you? Did you encounter a number of errors or just a few? How easy was it to determine how to correct the CSS file? Would you recommend the validator to other students? Why or why not?

# Web Research

This chapter has introduced you to using CSS to configure web pages. A great place to learn about web technology is the Web itself. Use a search engine to find resources with either information about CSS or useful CSS tutorials. The following resources can help you get started:

- <http://www.w3.org/Style/CSS>
- <https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/CSS>
- <https://www.noupe.com/essentials/freebies-tools-templates/css-typography-contrast-techniques-tutorials-and-best-practices.html>

Create a web page that provides a list of at least five CSS resources on the Web. For each CSS resource, provide the URL, website name, and a brief description. Configure text and background colors with good contrast. Place your name in the e-mail address at the bottom of the web page.

# Focus on Web Design

In this chapter, you have learned how to configure color and text with CSS. In this activity, you will design a color scheme, code an external CSS file for the color scheme, and code an example web page that applies the styles you configured. Use any of the following sites to help you get started with color and web design ideas:

## Psychology of Color

- <https://www.infoplease.com/spot/colors1.html>
- <https://www.empower-yourself-with-color-psychology.com/meaning-of-colors.html>
- <https://www.designzzz.com/infographic-psychology-color-web-designers>

## Color Scheme Generators

- <https://meyerweb.com/eric/tools/color-blend>
- <http://www.colr.org>
- <https://color.adobe.com/create/color-wheel>
- <http://paletton.com>

Complete the following tasks:

- a. Design a color scheme. List three hexadecimal color values in addition to neutral colors such as white (#FFFFFF) or black (#000000) in your design.
- b. Describe the process you went through as you selected the colors. Describe why you chose these colors. For what type of website

- would they be appropriate? List the URLs of any resources you used.
- c. Create an external CSS file named color1.css that configures font properties, text color, and background color selections for the document, h1 element selector, p element selector, and footer class, using the colors you have chosen.
  - d. Create a web page named color1.html that shows examples of the CSS style rules.
- 

## Website Case Study Implementing CSS

Each of the case studies in this section continues throughout most of the text. This chapter implements CSS in the websites.

### JavaJam Coffee Bar

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the JavaJam Coffee Bar Case Study. [Figure 2.32](#) shows a site map for the JavaJam website. The Home page and Menu page were created in [Chapter 2](#). You will develop a new version of the website that uses an external style sheet to configure text and color. [Figure 2.33](#) depicts the wireframe page layout.

You have the following tasks:

1. Create a new folder for this JavaJam case study.
  2. Create an external style sheet named javajam.css that configures the color and text for the JavaJam website.
  3. Modify the Home page to utilize an external style sheet to configure colors and fonts. The new Home page and color swatches are shown in [Figure 3.29](#).
- 

**Figure 3.29** New JavaJam index.html



4. Modify the Menu page to be consistent with the new Home page.
5. Configure centered page layout.

## Hands-On Practice Case

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder on your hard drive or portable storage device called `javajamcss`. Copy all the files from your [Chapter 2](#) `javajam` folder into the `javajamcss` folder.

**TASK 2: THE EXTERNAL STYLE SHEET.** You will use a text editor to create an external style sheet named `javajam.css`. Code the CSS to configure the following:

1. Global styles for the document (use the `body` element selector) with background color `#FCEBB6`;

text color #221811; and Tahoma, Arial, or any sans-serif font.

2. Styles for the header element selector that configure text color #8C3826, background color #D2B48C, and centered text.
3. Styles for the h1 element selector that configure 200% line height.
4. Styles for the h2 element selector that configure #8C3826 text color.
5. Styles for the nav element selector that configure centered, bold text. *Hint:* Use the CSS `text-align` and `font-weight` properties.
6. Styles for the footer element selector that configure background color #D2B48C, small font size (.60em), italics, and centered text.

Save the file as javajam.css in the javajamcss folder.

Check your syntax with the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>). Correct and retest if necessary.

**TASK 3: THE HOME PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file. You will modify this file to apply styles from the javajam.css external style sheet as follows:

1. Add a `<link>` element to associate the web page with the javajam.css external style sheet file.
2. Configure the navigation area. Remove the `<b>` elements which are no longer needed because you have configured bold text with CSS.
3. Configure the page footer area. Remove the `<small>` and `<i>` elements—they are no longer

needed since CSS is now used to configure the text.

Save the index.html file, and test it in a browser. Your page should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.29](#), except that the background color and alignment of your page content is different. Don't worry—you'll center your page layout in Task 5 of this case study.

**TASK 4: THE MENU PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the menu.html file. You will modify this file in a similar manner as you modified the home page: Add the `<link>` element and configure the navigation and page footer areas. Save and test your new menu.html page. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.30](#), except for the background and alignment.

---

**Figure 3.30 New menu.html page**

---



**TASK 5: CENTER PAGE LAYOUT WITH CSS.** Modify javajam.css, index.html, and menu.html to configure page content that is centered with 80% width (refer to [Hands-On Practice 3.9](#) if necessary):

1. Launch a text editor, and open the javajam.css file.

Add a style rule for an id named `wrapper` with `width` set to 80%, `#FEFAEB` background color, `margin-right` set to auto, and `margin-left` set to auto.

2. Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file.

Add the HTML code to configure a div element assigned to the id `wrapper` that “wraps,” or contains, the code within the body section. Save and test your index.html page in a browser and you’ll notice that the page content is now centered

within the browser viewport as shown in [Figure 3.29](#).

**3.** Launch a text editor, and open the menu.html file.

Add the HTML code to configure a div element assigned to the id `wrapper` that “wraps,” or contains, the code within the body section. Save and test your menu.html page in a browser and you’ll notice that the page content is now centered within the browser viewport as shown in [Figure 3.30](#).

Experiment with modifying the javajam.css file. Change the page background color, the font family, and so on. Test your pages in a browser. Isn’t it amazing how a change in a single file can affect multiple files when external style sheets are used?

## Fish Creek Animal Clinic

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Fish Creek Animal Clinic Case Study. [Figure 2.36](#) shows a site map for the Fish Creek website. The Home page and Services page were created in [Chapter 2](#). You will develop a new version that uses an external style sheet to configure text and color. [Figure 2.37](#) depicts the wireframe page layout.

You have the following tasks:

1. Create a new folder for this Fish Creek case study.
2. Create an external style sheet named `fishcreek.css` that configures the color and text for the Fish Creek website.
3. Modify the Home page to utilize an external style sheet to configure colors and fonts. The new Home page and color swatches are shown in [Figure 3.31](#).

**Figure 3.31** New Fish Creek index.html



4. Modify the Services page to be consistent with the new Home page.
5. Configure centered page layout.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder on your hard drive or portable storage device called fishcreekcss. Copy all the files from your **Chapter 2** fishcreek folder into the fishcreekcss folder.

**TASK 2: THE EXTERNAL STYLE SHEET.** You will use a text editor to create an external style sheet named fishcreek.css. Code the CSS to configure the following:

1. Global styles for the document (use the body element selector) with background color #FFFFFF; text color #003366; and Verdana, Arial, or any sans-serif font.
2. Styles for the header element selector that configure background color #003366, text color #AEC3E3, and a serif font such as Georgia or Times New Roman.
3. Styles for the h1 element selector that configure 200% line height and set the text-indent property to 1em.
4. Styles for the h2 element selector that configure 1.2em font size.
5. Styles for the nav element selector that display text in bold.
6. Styles for the dt element selector that configure #5280C5 text color, size 1.1em font in bold, and a serif font such as Georgia or Times New Roman.
7. Styles for a class named category with bold font, text color #5380C5, and a serif font such as Georgia or Times New Roman.
8. Styles for the footer element selector with a small font size (.70em) and italic text.

Save the file as fishcreek.css in the fishcreekcss folder.

Check your syntax with the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>). Correct and retest if necessary.

**TASK 3: THE HOME PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file. You will modify this file to apply styles from the fishcreek.css external style sheet as follows:

1. Add a `<link>` element to associate the web page with the fishcreek.css external style sheet file.
2. Configure the navigation area. Remove the `<b>` element from the navigation area, because the CSS will configure the bold font style.
3. Configure the content area. Remove the `<strong>` tags from within each `dt` element, because the CSS will configure the bold font style.
4. Configure the page footer area. Remove the `<small>` and `<i>` elements—they are no longer needed since CSS is now used to configure the text.

Save the index.html file, and test in a browser. Your page should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.31](#), except that the background color and alignment of your page content will be different. Don’t worry—you’ll finish configuring your page layout in Task 5 of this case study.

**TASK 4: THE SERVICES PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the services.html file. You will modify this file in a similar manner: Add the `<link>` element, configure the navigation area and page footer areas, configure the `category` classes (*Hint:* Use the `<span>` element to contain the name of each service offered), and remove the strong tags.) Save and test your new services.html page. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.32](#) except for the alignment and background color.

**TASK 5: CENTER PAGE LAYOUT WITH CSS.** Modify fishcreek.css, index.html, and services.html to configure page content that is centered with 80% width with a light

gray background color. Refer to [Hands-On Practice 3.9](#) if necessary.

1. Launch a text editor, and open the fishcreek.css file. Add a style rule for an id named `wrapper` with `width` set to 90%, `margin-right` set to auto, `margin-left` set to auto, and background color set to #F0F0F0.
2. Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file. Add the HTML code to configure a div element assigned to the id `wrapper` that “wraps,” or contains, the code within the body section. Save and test your index.html page in a browser and you’ll notice that the page content is now centered within the browser viewport as shown in [Figure 3.31](#).
3. Launch a text editor, and open the services.html file. Add the HTML code to configure a div element assigned to the id `wrapper` that “wraps,” or contains, the code within the body section. Save and test your services.html page in a browser and you’ll notice that the page content is now centered within the browser viewport as shown in [Figure 3.32](#).

---

**Figure 3.32 New services.html page**



Experiment with modifying the fishcreek.css file. Change the page background color, the font family, and so on.

Test your pages in a browser. Isn't it amazing how a change in a single file can affect multiple files when external style sheets are used?

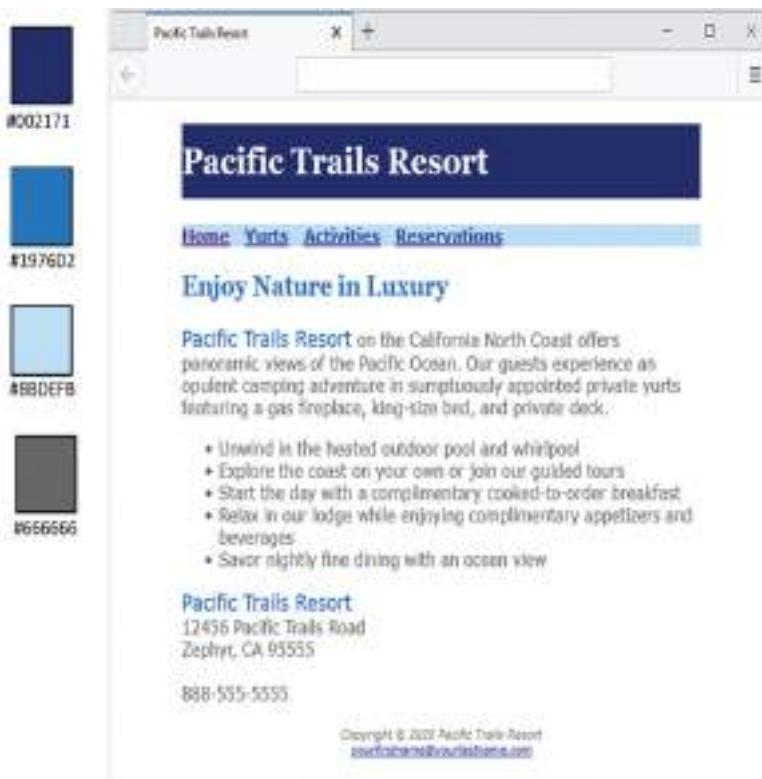
## Pacific Trails Resort

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Pacific Trails Resort Case Study. [Figure 2.40](#) shows a site map for the Pacific Trails Resort website. The Home page and Yurts page were created in [Chapter 2](#). You will develop a new version of this website that uses an external style sheet to configure text and color. [Figure 2.41](#) depicts the wireframe page layout.

You have the following tasks:

1. Create a new folder for this Pacific Trails case study.
2. Create an external style sheet named pacific.css that configures the color and text for the Pacific Trails website.
3. Modify the Home page to utilize an external style sheet to configure colors and fonts. The new Home page and color swatches are shown in [Figure 3.33](#).

**Figure 3.33 New Pacific Trails index.html**



4. Modify the Yurts page to be consistent with the new Home page.
5. Configure centered page layout.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder on your hard drive or portable storage device called pacificcss.

Copy all the files from your **Chapter 2** pacific folder into the pacificcss folder.

**TASK 2: THE EXTERNAL STYLE SHEET.** You will use a text editor to create an external style sheet named pacific.css. Code the CSS to configure the following:

1. Global styles for the document (use the body element selector) with background color `#FFFFFF`, text color `#666666`, and Verdana, Arial, or any sans-serif font.
2. Styles for the header element selector that configure background color `#002171`, text color `#FFFFFF`, and Georgia or any serif font.
3. Styles for the h1 element selector that configure 200% line height.
4. Styles for the nav element selector that display text in bold and has a sky-blue background color (`#BBDEFB`).
5. Styles for the h2 element selector that configure medium-blue text color (`#1976D2`) and Georgia or any serif font.
6. Styles for the dt element selector that configure dark-blue text color (`#002171`) and bold font.
7. Styles for a class named `resort` that configure medium-blue text color (`#1976D2`) and `1.2em` font size.
8. Styles for the footer element selector with a small font size (`.70em`) and italic, centered text.

Save the file as pacific.css in the pacificcss folder. Check your syntax with the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>). Correct and retest if necessary.

**TASK 3: THE HOME PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file. You will modify this file to apply styles from the pacific.css external style sheet as follows:

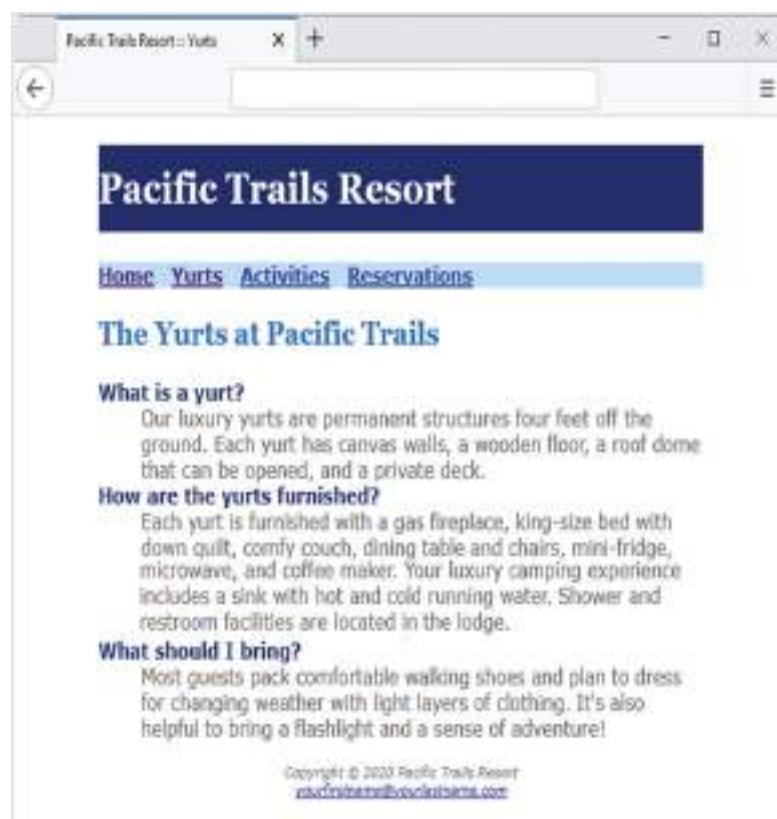
1. Add a `<link>` element to associate the web page with the pacific.css external style sheet file.
2. Configure the navigation area. Remove the `<b>` element from the navigation area, because the CSS will configure the bold font weight.
3. Find the company name (“Pacific Trails Resort”) in the first paragraph below the h2. Configure a span that contains this text. Assign the span element to the `resort` class.
4. Look for the company name (“Pacific Trails Resort”) directly above the street address. Configure a span that contains this text. Assign the span element to the `resort` class.
5. Configure the page footer area. Remove the `<small>` and `<i>` elements—they are no longer needed since CSS is now used to configure the text.

Save the index.html file, and test in a browser. Your page should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.33](#) except that your page content will be left-aligned instead of indented from the margins. Don’t worry—you’ll configure your page layout in Task 5 of this case study.

**TASK 4: THE YURTS PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the yurts.html file. You will modify this file in a similar manner: Add the `<link>` element, configure the navigation area, and configure the page footer area. Delete the strong tags contained within each dt element. Save and test your new yurts.html page. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.34](#) except for the alignment.

---

**Figure 3.34** New yurts.html page



**TASK 5: CENTER PAGE LAYOUT WITH CSS.** Modify pacific.css, index.html, and yurts.html to configure page content that is centered with 80% width. Refer to [Hands-On Practice 3.9](#) if necessary.

**1.** Launch a text editor, and open the pacific.css file.

Add a style rule for an id named `wrapper` with `width` set to 80%, `margin-right` set to auto, and `margin-left` set to auto.

**2.** Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file.

Add the HTML code to configure a div element assigned to the id `wrapper` that “wraps,” or contains, the code within the body section. Save and test your index.html page in a browser and you’ll notice that the page content is now centered within the browser viewport as shown in [Figure 3.33](#).

**3.** Launch a text editor and open the yurts.html file.

Add the HTML code to configure a div element assigned to the id `wrapper` that “wraps,” or contains, the code within the body section. Save and test your yurts.html page in a browser and you’ll notice that the page content is now centered within the browser viewport as shown in [Figure 3.34](#).

Experiment with modifying the pacific.css file. Change the page background color, the font family, and so on. Test your pages in a browser. Isn’t it amazing how a change in a single file can affect multiple files when external style sheets are used?

## Path of Light Yoga Studio

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Path of Light Yoga Studio Case Study. [Figure 2.44](#) shows a site map for the Path of Light Yoga Studio website. The Home page and Classes page

were created in [Chapter 2](#). You will develop a new version of this website that uses an external style sheet to configure text and color. [Figure 2.45](#) depicts the wireframe page layout.

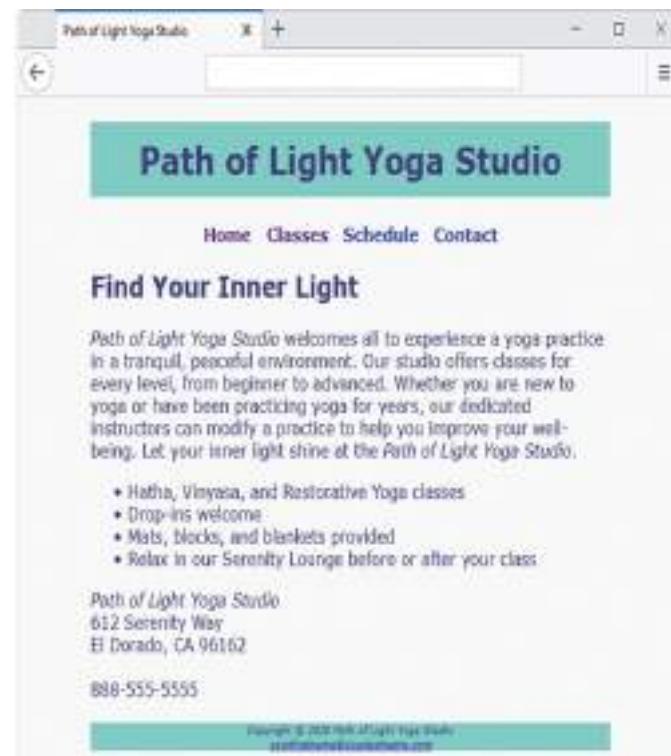
You have the following tasks:

1. Create a new folder for this Path of Light Yoga Studio case study.
2. Create an external style sheet named `yoga.css` that configures the color and text for the Path of Light Yoga Studio website.
3. Modify the Home page to utilize an external style sheet to configure colors and fonts. The new Home page and color swatches are shown in [Figure 3.35](#).

---

**Figure 3.35 New Path of Light Yoga Studio index.html**

---



4. Modify the Classes page to be consistent with the new Home page.
5. Configure centered page layout.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder on your hard drive or portable storage device called yogacss.

Copy all the files from your **Chapter 2** yoga folder into the yogacss folder.

**TASK 2: THE EXTERNAL STYLE SHEET.** You will use a text editor to create an external style sheet named yoga.css.

Code the CSS to configure the following:

1. Global styles for the document (use the body element selector) with background color `#F5F5F5`; text color `#40407A` and Verdana, Arial, or any sans-serif font.
2. Styles for the header element that configure background color `#80CBC4` with centered text.
3. Styles for the h1 element selector that configure 200% line height.
4. Styles for the nav element selector that configure centered and bold font.
5. Styles for the anchor elements within the nav area to eliminate the default underline (Hint: use the `nav a` selector).
6. Styles for a class named `studio` that configures italic text.
7. Styles for the footer element selector with `#80CBC4` background color, small font size (`.60em`), and italic, centered text.

Save the file as yoga.css in the yogacss folder. Check your syntax with the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>). Correct and retest if necessary.

**TASK 3: THE HOME PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file. You will modify this file to apply styles from the yoga.css external style sheet.

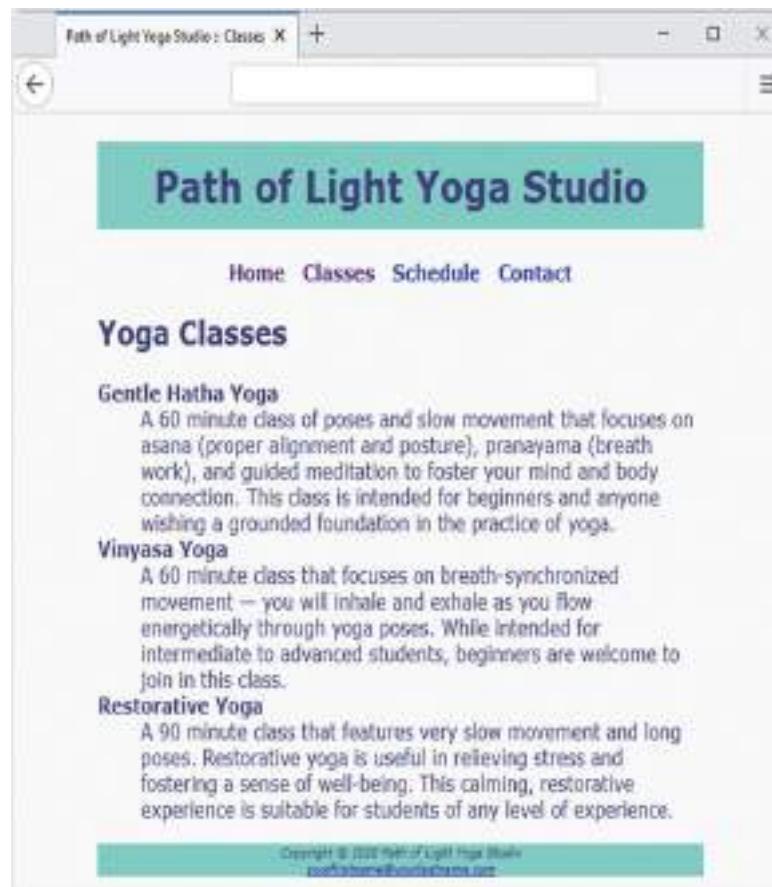
1. Add a `<link>` element to associate the web page with the yoga.css external style sheet file.
2. Configure the navigation area. Remove the `<b>` element from the navigation area, because the CSS will configure the bold font style.
3. Look in the main content area for the company name (“Path of Light Yoga Studio”) and configure a span element to contain this text each time it appears. Assign each span element to the `studio` class.
4. Configure the page footer area. Remove the `<small>` and `<i>` elements—they are no longer needed since CSS is now used to configure the text.

Save the index.html file, and test in a browser. Your page should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.35](#) except that your page content will be left-aligned instead of indented from the margins. Don’t worry—you’ll configure your page layout in Task 5 of this case study.

**TASK 4: THE CLASSES PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the classes.html file. You will modify this file in a similar manner: Add the `<link>` element, configure the navigation area, and configure the page footer area. Save

and test your new classes.html page. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 3.36](#) except for the alignment.

**Figure 3.36** New classes.html page



**TASK 5: CENTER PAGE LAYOUT WITH CSS.** Modify yoga.css, index.html, and classes.html to configure page content that is centered with 80% width. Refer to [Hands-On Practice 3.9](#) if necessary.

1. Launch a text editor, and open the yoga.css file.

Add a style rule for an id named `wrapper` with `width` set to `80%`, `margin-right` set to `auto`, and `margin-left` set to `auto`.

**2.** Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file.

Add the HTML code to configure a div element assigned to the id `wrapper` that “wraps,” or contains, the code within the body section. Save and test your index.html page in a browser and you’ll notice that the page content is now centered within the browser viewport as shown in [Figure 3.35](#).

**3.** Launch a text editor, and open the classes.html file.

Add the HTML code to configure a div element assigned to the id `wrapper` that “wraps,” or contains, the code within the body section. Save and test your classes.html page in a browser and you’ll notice that the page content is now centered within the browser viewport as shown in [Figure 3.36](#).

Experiment with modifying the yoga.css file. Change the page background color, the font family, and so on. Test your pages in a browser. Notice how a change in a single file can affect multiple files when external style sheets are used.

---

## 4

# Visual Elements and Graphics

---





## Chapter Objectives

---

### IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .

- Create and format lines and borders on web pages
- Decide when to use graphics and what graphics are appropriate
- Apply the image element to add graphics to web pages
- Optimize an image for web page display
- Configure images as backgrounds on web pages
- Configure images as hyperlinks
- Configure rounded corners, box shadow, text shadow, opacity, and gradients with CSS
- Configure RGBA color with CSS
- Configure HSLA color with CSS
- Use the figure and figcaption elements
- Configure a graphic display with the meter and progress elements
- Find free and fee-based graphics sources
- Follow recommended web design guidelines when using graphics on web pages

**A key component of a compelling website** is the use of interesting and appropriate graphics. This chapter introduces you to working with visual elements on web pages.

When you include images on your website, it is important to remember that not all users are able to view them. Some users may have vision problems and need assistive technology such as a screen reader application that reads the web page to them. In addition, search engines send out spiders and robots to walk the web and catalog pages for their indexes and databases; such programs do not access your images. Visitors using a mobile device may have images disabled. As a web developer, strive to create pages that are enhanced by graphical elements, but are usable without them.

## 4.1 Configuring Lines and Borders

Web designers often use visual elements such as lines and borders to separate or define areas on web pages. In this section, you'll explore two coding techniques to configure a line on a web page: the HTML horizontal rule element and the CSS `border` and `padding` properties.

### Horizontal Rule Element

A **horizontal rule element**, `<hr>`, visually separates areas of a page and configures a horizontal line across a web page. Since the horizontal rule element does not contain any text, it is coded as a void tag and not in a pair of opening and closing tags. The horizontal rule element has a new semantic meaning in HTML5, it can be used to indicate a thematic break or change in the content.

#### Hands-On Practice 4.1

Open the web page found at `chapter4/starter1.html` in the student files in a text editor. Add an `<hr>` tag after the opening footer element.

Save your file as `hr.html`, and test it in a browser. The lower portion of your web page should look similar to the partial screenshot shown in [Figure 4.1](#).

---

**Figure 4.1** The `<hr>` tag configures a horizontal line

---

## Meeting Your Business Needs

Our expert designers will listen to you as they create a website that helps to promote and grow your business.

---

Copyright © 2020 Your Name Here  
[yourfirstname@yourlastname.com](mailto:yourfirstname@yourlastname.com)

Compare your work with the solution in the student files (chapter4/4.1/hr.html). While a horizontal rule can be easily created using HTML, a more modern technique for configuring lines on web pages is to use CSS to configure a border.

## The border and padding Properties

As you may have noticed when you configured background colors for heading elements in [Chapter 3](#), block display HTML elements form the shape of a rectangular box on a web page. This is an example of the CSS box model, which you will explore in detail in [Chapter 6](#). For now, let's focus on two CSS properties that can be configured for the "box": the **border** and **padding** properties.

### The border Property

The **border** property configures the border, or boundary, around an element. By default, the border has a width set to 0 and does not display. You can set the **border-width**, **border-color**, and **border-style** with the **border** property. And there's more—you can even configure individual settings for the **top**, **right**, **bottom** and **left** borders using the **border-top**, **border-right**, **border-bottom**, and **border-left** properties.

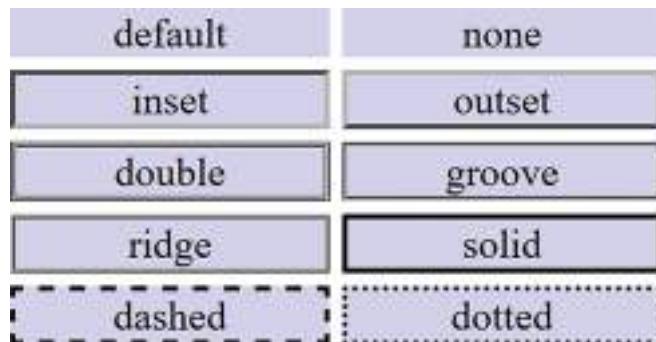
## The border-style Property

The **border-style** property configures the type of line displayed in the border. The formatting options include `inset`, `outset`, `double`, `groove`, `ridge`, `solid`, `dashed`, and `dotted`. Be aware that these property values are not all uniformly applied by browsers. [Figure 4.2](#) shows how a recent version of Firefox renders various border-style values.

---

**Figure 4.2 Examples of the various border-style values rendered by Firefox**

---



The CSS to configure the borders shown in [Figure 4.2](#) uses a `border-width` of 4 pixels, the value indicated for the `border-style` property, and a `border-color` of `#000000`. For example, the style rule to configure the dashed border follows:

```
.dashedborder { border-width: 4px;  
    border-style: dashed;  
    border-color: #000000; }
```

A shorthand notation allows you to configure all the border properties in one style rule by listing the values of `border-width`, `border-style`, and `border-color`, as in the following example:

```
.dashedborder { border: 4px dashed #000000; }
```

## The padding Property

The **padding** property configures empty space between the content of the HTML element (usually text) and the border. By default, the padding is set to `0`. If you configure a background color for an element, the color is applied to both the padding and the content areas. The padding property can be configured with a variety of values, including pixels, em units, and percentages. You'll apply the **padding** and **border** properties in the next Hands-On Practice. You may want to refer to [Table 4.1](#), which presents a description of the CSS properties introduced in this chapter, as you work through the Hands-On Practice exercises.

---

**Table 4.1** New CSS properties introduced in this chapter

Property	Description	Values
background	Configures multiple properties related to the background; can configure multiple background images	Valid values for one or more of the following properties related to a <code>background: background-attachment, background-clip, background-color, background-image, background-origin, background-position, background-repeat, background-size</code>

<b>Property</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Values</b>
background-attachment	Configures whether the background image scrolls with the page or is fixed in place	fixed, local, scroll (default)
background-clip	Configures the background painting area.	padding-box, border-box, or content-box
background-image	Background image on an element	To display an image, use <code>url(imagename.gif)</code> , <code>url(imagename.jpg)</code> , or <code>url(imagename.png)</code> . To disable image display, use <code>none</code> (default).
background-origin	Configures the background positioning area.	padding-box, border-box, or content-box

<b>Property</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Values</b>
background-position	Position of the background image	Two percentage values or numeric pixel values. The first value configures the horizontal position, and the second configures the vertical position starting from the upper left corner of the container's box. Text values can also be used: <code>left, top, center, bottom, and right.</code>
background-repeat	Controls how the background image will repeat	Text values <code>repeat</code> (default), <code>repeat-y</code> , (vertical repeat), <code>repeat-x</code> (horizontal repeat), <code>no-repeat</code> (no repeat). <code>space</code> (repeat and adjust empty space to avoid clipping), and <code>round</code> (repeat and scale the image to avoid clipping).

Property	Description	Values
background-size	Configures the size of the background image.	Two percentages, pixel values, <code>auto</code> , <code>contain</code> , or <code>cover</code> . The first value indicates width. The second value indicates height. If only one value is provided, the second value defaults to <code>auto</code> . The value <code>contain</code> causes the background image to be scaled (with aspect ratio intact) to horizontally fill the container. The value <code>cover</code> causes the background image to be scaled (with aspect ratio intact) to vertically fill the container.
border	Shorthand notation to configure the values for <code>border-width</code> , <code>border-style</code> , and <code>border-color</code> of an element	The values for <code>border-width</code> , <code>border-style</code> , and <code>border-color</code> separated by spaces—for example, <code>border: 1px solid #000000;</code>

Property	Description	Values
border-bottom	Shorthand notation to configure the bottom border of an element	The values for border-width, border-style, and border-color separated by spaces—for example, <code>border-bottom: 1px solid #000000;</code>
border-bottom-left-radius	Configures rounded corners on the bottom left corner of a border.	One numeric value (px or em) or percentage that configures the radius of the corner.
border-bottom-right-radius	Configures rounded corners on the bottom right corner of a border.	One numeric value (px or em) or percentage that configures the radius of the corner.
border-color	The color of the border around an element	Any valid color value

Property	Description	Values
border-left	Shorthand notation to configure the left border of an element	The values for <code>border-width</code> , <code>border-style</code> , and <code>border-color</code> separated by spaces—for example, <code>border-left: 1px solid #000000;</code>
border-radius	Configures rounded corners on an element.	One to four numeric values (px or em) or percentages that configure the radius of the corners. If a single value is provided, it configures all four corners. The corners are configured in order of top left, top right, bottom right, and bottom left.
border-right	Shorthand notation to configure the right border of an element	The values for <code>border-width</code> , <code>border-style</code> , and <code>border-color</code> separated by spaces—for example, <code>border-right: 1px solid #000000;</code>
border-style	The type of border around an element	<code>double</code> , <code>groove</code> , <code>inset</code> , <code>none</code> (the default), <code>outset</code> , <code>ridge</code> , <code>solid</code> , <code>dashed</code> , <code>dotted</code> , and <code>hidden</code>

Property	Description	Values
border-top	Shorthand notation to configure the top border of an element	The values for border-width, border-style, and border-color separated by spaces—for example, <code>border-top: 1px solid #000000;</code>
border-top-left-radius	Configures a rounded top left corner. This CSS3 property is not supported in all browsers.	One numeric value (px or em) or percentage that configures the radius of the corner.
border-top-right-radius	Configures a rounded top right corner.	One numeric value (px or em) or percentage that configures the radius of the corner.
border-width	The width of a border around an element	A numeric pixel value (such as 1px) or the text values <code>thin</code> , <code>medium</code> , and <code>thick</code>

<b>Property</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Values</b>
box-shadow	Configures a drop shadow on an element.	Two to four numerical values (px or em) to indicate horizontal offset, vertical offset, blur radius (optional), and spread distance (optional), and a valid color value. Use the inset keyword to configure an inner shadow.
height	The height of an element	A numeric pixel value or percentage
linear-gradient	Configures a linear blending of shades from one color to another.	Numerous syntax options for starting points of the gradient and color values. For example, the following configures a two-color linear gradient:  <code>linear-gradient(#FFFFFF, #8FA5CE);</code>
max-width	Configures a maximum width for an element	A numeric pixel value or percentage

Property	Description	Values
min-width	Configures a minimum width for an element	A numeric pixel value or percentage
opacity	Configures the transparency of an element.	Numeric values between 1 (fully opaque) and 0 (completely transparent). This property is inherited by all child elements.

Property	Description	Values
	<p>padding</p> <p>Shorthand notation to configure the amount of padding—the blank space between the element and its border</p>	<p><b>1.</b> A single numeric value (px or em) or percentage; configure padding on all sides of the element.</p> <p><b>2.</b> Two numeric values (px or em) or percentages; the first value configures the top and bottom padding, and the second value configures the left and right padding—for example, <code>padding: 2em 1em;</code></p> <p><b>3.</b> Three numeric values (px or em) or percentages; the first value configures the top padding, the second value configures the left and right padding, the third value configures the bottom padding—for example, <code>padding: 5px 30px 10px;</code></p> <p><b>4.</b> Four numeric values (px or em) or percentages; the values configure the padding in the following order: <code>padding-top, padding-right, padding-bottom, padding-left.</code></p>

<b>Property</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Values</b>
padding-bottom	Blank space between an element and its bottom border	A numeric value (px or em) or percentage
padding-left	Blank space between an element and its left border	A numeric value (px or em) or percentage
padding-right	Blank space between an element and its right border	A numeric value (px or em) or percentage
padding-top	Blank space between an element and its top border	A numeric value (px or em) or percentage

Property	Description	Values
radial-gradient	Configures a radial (circular) blending of shades from one color to another.	Numerous syntax options for starting points of the gradient and color values. For example, the following configures a two-color radial gradient:  radial-gradient(#FFFFFF, #8FA5CE);

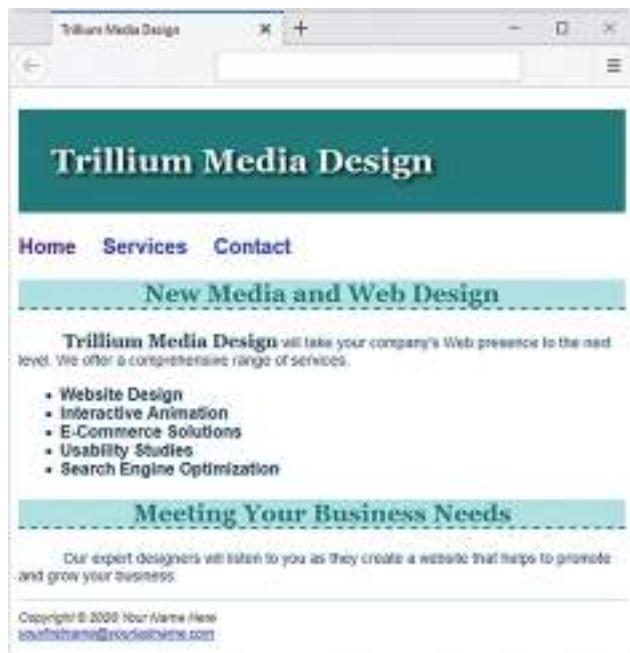
## Hands-On Practice 4.2

In this Hands-On Practice you will work with the `border` and `padding` properties. Launch a text editor, and open the web page found at chapter4/starter1.html in the student files. You will modify the CSS style rules for the `h1` element selector, `h2` element selector, and `footer` element selector. When you are finished, your page should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 4.3](#).

---

**Figure 4.3 CSS border and padding properties add visual interest to the page.**

---



Edit the CSS style rules as follows:

1. Edit the styles for the h1 element selector. Remove the styles for the text-indent and line-height properties. Add a declaration to configure 1em padding. The code follows:

```
padding: 1em;
```

2. Add a style to the h2 element selector to configure a 2-pixel, dashed, bottom border in the color #237B7B. The code follows:

```
border-bottom: 2px dashed #237B7B;
```

3. Add styles to the footer element selector to configure a thin, solid, top border in the color #B0E6E6 along with 10 pixels of

top padding. Also configure the footer to have gray text. The new style declarations follow:

```
border-top: thin solid #B0E6E6;  
padding-top: 10px;  
color: #333333;
```

Save your file as border.html.

Test your page in multiple browsers. Expect your page to look slightly different in various browsers. See [Figure 4.3](#) for a screenshot of the page using Firefox. [Figure 4.4](#) shows the page displayed in Microsoft Edge. The student files contain a sample solution (chapter4/4.2/border.html).

---

**Figure 4.4 Microsoft Edge renders the dashed border differently than Firefox.**

---



---

Screenshots of Microsoft Edge. Copyright by Microsoft Corporation. Courtesy of Microsoft Corporation.

## FAQ

My web page looks different in some browsers. What can I do?

Do not expect your web pages always to look the same in every browser and every browser version. Web pages that look slightly different in various browsers and on a variety of devices are a part of life in the world of web developers.

### Checkpoint 4.1

1. Is it reasonable to try to code a web page that looks exactly the same on every browser and every platform? Explain your answer.
2. Describe what is incorrect with the following CSS code, which causes a web page containing it not to display a border when rendered in a browser:

```
h2 { background-color: #FF0000  
border-top: thin solid #000000 }
```

3. True or False: CSS can be used to configure visual elements such as rectangular shapes and lines on web pages.

## 4.2 Graphics on the Web

Graphics can make web pages compelling and engaging. This section discusses features of graphic files commonly used on the Web: GIF, JPEG, PNG, and WebP.

### Graphic Interchange Format (GIF)

The **GIF** image format is best used for line drawings containing mostly solid tones and simple images such as clip art. The maximum number of colors in a GIF file is 256. GIF images have a .gif file extension. [Figure 4.5](#) shows a logo image created in GIF format.

---

**Figure 4.5** This logo is a GIF

---



### Transparency

The format GIF89A used by GIF images supports image **transparency**. In a graphics application, such as the open-source GIMP, one color (typically the background color) of the image can be set to be transparent. The background color (or background image) of the web page shows through the transparent area in the image. [Figure 4.6](#) displays two GIF images on a blue textured background.

---

**Figure 4.6** Comparison of transparent and nontransparent GIFs

---



## Animation

An **animated GIF** consists of multiple images or frames, each of which is slightly different. When the frames display on the screen in order, the image appears animated.

## Compression

**Lossless compression** is used when a GIF is saved. This means that nothing in the original image is lost and that the compressed image, when rendered by a browser, will contain the same pixels as the original.

## Optimization

To avoid slow-loading web pages, graphic files should be optimized for the Web. Photos taken with a digital camera are too large—in both their dimensions and their file size—to display well on a web page. **Image optimization** is the process of creating an image with the lowest file size that still renders a good-quality image—balancing image quality and file size. GIF images are typically optimized by using a graphics application to reduce the number of colors in the image.

## Interlacing

Browsers render, or display, web page documents in order, line by line, starting at the top of the document. They display standard images as the files are read in order from top to bottom. The top of a standard image begins to display after 50% of the image has been read by a browser.

When a GIF graphic file is created, it can be configured as interlaced. An **interlaced image** progressively displays and seems to fade in as it

downloads. The image first appears fuzzy but gradually becomes clearer and sharper, which can help to reduce the perceived load time of your web page.

## Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG)

The **JPEG** image format is best used for photographs. In contrast to a GIF image, a JPEG image can contain 16.7 million colors. However, JPEG images cannot be made transparent, and they cannot be animated. JPEG images have a .jpg or .jpeg file extension.

## Compression

JPEG images are saved using **lossy compression**. This means that some pixels in the original image are lost or removed from the compressed file. When a browser renders the compressed image, the display is similar to, but not exactly the same as, the original image.

## Optimization

There are trade-offs between the quality of the image and the amount of compression. An image with less compression will have higher quality and result in a larger file size. An image with more compression will have lower quality and result in a smaller file size. Graphics applications allow you to configure the compression quality and choose the image that best suits your needs.

When you take a photo with a digital camera, the file size is too large for optimal display on a web page. [Figure 4.7](#) shows an optimized version of a digital photo with an original file size of 250KB. The image was

optimized using a graphics application set to 80% quality, is now only 55KB, and displays well on a web page.

---

**Figure 4.7** A JPEG saved at 80% quality (55KB file size) displays well on a web page

---



Figure 4.8 was saved with 20% quality and is only 19KB, but its quality is unacceptable. The quality of the image degrades as the file size decreases. The square blockiness you see in Figure 4.8 is called **pixelation** and should be avoided.

---

**Figure 4.8** JPEG saved at 20% quality (19KB file size)

---



Another technique used with web graphics is to display a small version of the image, called a **thumbnail image**. Often, the thumbnail is configured as an image hyperlink that displays the larger image when clicked. [Figure 4.9](#) shows a thumbnail image.

---

**Figure 4.9 This small thumbnail image is only 5KB**

---



## Progressive JPEG

When a JPEG file is created, it can be configured as progressive. A **progressive JPEG** is similar to an interlaced GIF in that the image progressively displays and seems to fade in as it downloads.

## Portable Network Graphic (PNG)

The **Portable Network Graphics (PNG)** image format (<https://www.w3.org/TR/PNG/>) was initially developed as a replacement for the GIF image format. PNG (pronounced “ping”) graphics can support millions of colors, variable transparency levels, and interlacing. PNG images use **lossless compression**, so the image can be perfectly reconstructed after being compressed (to reduce file size) and decompressed for display. Animation is not supported by PNG images. PNG images are well-supported by modern browsers.

## WebP Image Format

The relatively new **WebP** (<https://developers.google.com/speed/webp/>) offers improved file compression over other types of images used on the Web. WebP (pronounced “weppy”) graphics can support millions of colors, transparency, and animation. WebP images do not support interlacing. The WebP image format supports both lossy (like JPG) and lossless (like PNG) compression. In a Google comparison test, WebP images were 26% in smaller file size than comparable PNG images and 25–34% smaller in file size than comparable JPG images.

Initially, only the Chrome, Opera, and Android browsers displayed WebP images. At the time this was written, Firefox and Edge had recently added support for WebP. Check <https://caniuse.com/#feat=webp> for the current level of browser support. Since some browsers, such as Internet Explorer, do not support WebP, special consideration is needed for backward compatibility (see [Chapter 7](#)). In the next section, you’ll begin coding the HTML img element to display GIF, JPEG, and PNG images on web pages. [Table 4.2](#) summarizes the characteristics of GIF, JPEG, PNG, and WebP file formats.

---

**Table 4.2 Overview of common web graphic file formats**

Image Type	File Extension	Compression	Transparency	Animation	Color
GIF	.gif	Lossless	Yes	Yes	256
JPEG	.jpg or .jpeg	Lossy	No	No	Millions
PNG	.png	Lossless	Yes	No	Millions

<b>Image Type</b>	<b>File Extension</b>	<b>Compression</b>	<b>Transparency</b>	<b>Animation</b>	<b>Color Depth</b>
WebP	.webp	Lossy and Lossless	Yes	Yes	Million+ colors

## Popular Graphics Applications

A variety of graphics applications can be used to edit, optimize, and export images in GIF, JPEG, and PNG file formats such as:

- Adobe Photoshop (<https://www.adobe.com/products/photoshop.html>)
- GIMP (<https://www.gimp.org>)
- Sketch (<https://www.sketchapp.com>)

There are several options for converting a GIF, JPG, or PNG image to WebP format, including Google's command line encoder (<https://developers.google.com/speed/webp/download>), online converters (such as <https://ezgif.com/jpg-to-webp> and <https://image.online-convert.com/convert-to-webp>), a Photoshop plugin, and Sketch.

## 4.3 Img Element

The **img** element (often referred to as the image element) configures graphics on a web page. These graphics can be photographs, banners, company logos, navigation buttons, and so on; you are limited only by your creativity and imagination.

The img element is a void element and is not coded as a pair of opening and closing tags. The following code example configures an image named logo.gif, which is located in the same folder as the web page:

```

```

The **src** attribute specifies the file name of the image. The **alt** attribute provides a text replacement, typically a text description, of the image. The browser reserves the correct amount of space for your image if you use the **height** and **width** attributes with values either equal to or approximately the size of the image. Provide accurate values for the height and width of the image to retain the image's **aspect ratio** which is the proportional relationship between the width and height of an image. The image could be skewed or distorted by the browser if you provide inaccurate values for the image height and/or width. [Table 4.3](#) lists **<img>** tag attributes and their values. Commonly used attributes are shown in bold.

---

**Table 4.3 Attributes of the img element**

Attribute	Value
<code>align</code>	right, left (default), top, middle, bottom; obsolete—use the CSS float or position property instead (see <a href="#">Chapter 6</a> )
<code>alt</code>	Text phrase that describes the image
<code>height</code>	Height of image in pixels
<code>id</code>	Text name—alphanumeric, beginning with a letter, no spaces; the value must be unique and not used for other id values on the same web page document
<code>longdesc</code>	URL of a resource that contains an accessible description of a complex image
<code>src</code>	The URL or file name of the image
<code>srcset</code>	HTML 5.1 attribute that supports the browser display of responsive images (see <a href="#">Chapter 7</a> )
<code>title</code>	A text phrase containing advisory information about the image; typically more descriptive than the alt text
<code>width</code>	Width of image in pixels

## Accessibility and Images

## Focus on Accessibility

Use the `alt` attribute to provide accessibility. The `alt` attribute configures an alternative text description of the image. This alt text is used by the browser in two ways. The browser will display the alt text in the image area before the graphic is downloaded and displayed. Some browsers will also display the alt text as a tool tip whenever a visitor to the web page places the mouse cursor over the image area. Applications such as screen readers will read the text in the `alt` attribute out loud. A mobile browser may display the alt text instead of the image.

Standard browsers such as Firefox and Safari are not the only type of application or user agent that can access your website. Major search engines run programs called spiders or robots; these programs index and categorize websites. They cannot process text within images, but some process the value of the `alt` attributes in image tags.

The W3C recommends that alt text be no longer than 100 characters. Avoid using the file name or words like picture, image, and graphic as the value of the alt attribute. Instead, use a brief phrase that describes the image. If the purpose of an image, such as a logo, is to display text, then configure the text as the value of the alt attribute.

## Hands-On Practice 4.3

In this Hands-On Practice you will place a logo graphic and a photograph on a web page. Create a new folder called kayakch4. The images used in this Hands-On Practice are located in the student files chapter4/starters folder. Copy the

kayakdc.gif and hero.jpg files into your kayakch4 folder. A starter version of the [KayakDoorCounty.net](#) Home page is ready for you in the student files. Copy the chapter4/starter2.html file into your kayakch4 folder. Rename the file as index.html. When you complete this Hands-On Practice, your page will look similar to the one shown in [Figure 4.10](#)—with two images. Launch a text editor and open the index.html file.

---

**Figure 4.10 A web page with images**

---



1. Delete the text contained between the h1 opening and closing tags. Code an `img` element for kayakdc.gif in this area. Remember to include the `src`, `alt`, `height`, and `width` attributes. Sample code follows:

```

```

- 2.** Code an img element to display the hero.jpg photo below the h2 element. The photo is 500 pixels wide and 350 pixels high. Configure appropriate alt text.
- 3.** Save your page in the kayakch4 folder. Launch a browser and test your page. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 4.10](#).

Note: If the images did not display on your web page, verify that you have saved the files inside the kayakch4 folder and that you have spelled the file names correctly in the img elements. The student files contain a sample solution in the chapter4/4.3 folder. Isn't it interesting how images can add visual interest to a web page?

---

## FAQ

What if I don't know the height and width of an image?

Most graphics applications can display the height and width of an image. If you have a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, Adobe Fireworks, Microsoft Paint, or GIMP handy, launch the application and open the image. These applications include options that will display the properties of the image, such as height and width.

It's also easy to use Windows Explorer to determine the dimensions of the image. First, display the folder containing the image and verify that the "Details pane"

view is selected. Next, select the image file to display the dimensions, file size, and other image information.

---

## Image Hyperlinks

Writing the code to make an image function as a hyperlink is very easy. To create an **image link** all you need to do is surround your `<img>` tag with anchor tags. For example, to place a link around an image called `home.gif`, use the following code:

```
<a href="index.html"></a>
```

A thumbnail image link is a small image configured as an image link with an href attribute value that points to another image file instead of to a web page. For example,

```
<a href="sunset.png"></a>
```

To see this in action, launch a browser and view `chapter4/thumb.html` in the student files.

---

## Hands-On Practice 4.4

You will add image links to the [KayakDoorCounty.net](#) Home page in this Hands-On Practice. You should already have the index.html, kayakdc.gif, and hero.jpg files in your kayakch4 folder. The new graphics used in this Hands-On Practice are located in the student files in the chapter4/starters folder. Copy the home.gif, tours.gif, reservations.gif, and contact.gif files into your kayakch4 folder. View [Figure 4.11](#) to see how your page should look after you are done with this Hands-On Practice.

---

**Figure 4.11 The new Home page navigation with image links**

---



Let's get started. Launch a text editor and open index.html. Notice that the anchor tags are already coded—you'll just need to convert the text links to image links!

1. Whenever the main navigation consists of media, such as an image, some individuals may not be able to see the images (or may have images turned off in their browser). To provide navigation that is accessible to all, configure a set of plain text navigation links in the page footer area. Copy the `<nav>` element containing the navigation area to the lower portion of the page and paste it within the footer element, above the copyright line.
2. Locate the style tags in the head section and code the following style rules:

a. Configure a green background color for an id named

`bar`:

```
#bar { background-color: #152420; }
```

b. Some browsers display a border around image links by default. Prevent the border display by setting the border property to none for the img element selector:

```
img { border: none; }
```

3. Now, focus on the top navigation area. Code `id="bar"` on the opening nav tag. Next, replace the text contained between each pair of anchor tags with an img element. Use home.gif for the link to index.html, tours.gif for the link to tours.html, reservations.gif for the link to reservations.html, and contact.gif for the link to contact.html. Be careful not to leave any extra spaces between the img tag and the opening and closing anchor tags. A sample follows:

```
<a href="index.html"></a>
```

As you code the img tags be mindful of the width of each image: home.jpg (90 pixels), tours.jpg (90 pixels), reservations.jpg (190 pixels), and contact.jpg (130 pixels).

4. Save your page as index.html. Launch a browser and test your page. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 4.11](#).

The student files contain a sample solution in the chapter4/4.4 folder.

## Accessibility and Image Hyperlinks

When using an image for main navigation, there are two methods to provide for accessibility:

1. Add a row of plain text navigation hyperlinks in the page footer. These won't be noticed by most people but could be helpful to a person using a screen reader to visit your web page.
2. Configure the `alt` attribute for each image to contain the exact text that displays in the image. For example, code `alt="Home"` in the `<img>` tag for the Home button.

---

Focus on Accessibility

---

## FAQ

What if my images don't display?

The following are common reasons for an image to not display on a web page:

- Is your image *really* in the website folder? Use Windows Explorer or the Mac Finder to double check.
- Did you code the HTML and CSS correctly? Perform W3C CSS and HTML validation testing to find syntax errors that could prevent the image from displaying.
- Does your image have the exact file name that you have used in the CSS or HTML code? Attention to detail and consistency will be very helpful here.

---

## FAQ

How should I name my image files?

Guidelines for naming image files:

- Use all lowercase letters.
- Do not use punctuation symbols and spaces.
- Do not change the file extensions (should be .gif, .jpg, .jpeg, or .png).
- Keep your file names short, but descriptive. Here are some examples:

i1.gif is probably too short.  
myimagewithmydogonmybirthday.gif is too  
long.  
dogbday.gif may be just about right.

---

## 4.4 More Visual Elements

You'll explore configuring images with captions in this section. In the next Hands-On Practice you'll configure an image and a caption using a div element as a container. Next, you'll explore an approach to configure a image with a caption that implements the figure and figcaption elements.

### Hands-On Practice 4.5

In this Hands-On Practice you will configure an image with a caption on a web page. The photo used in this Hands-On Practice is located in the student files chapter4/starters folder. Save the myisland.jpg file in a folder named mycaption.

- Step 1:** Launch a text editor and open chapter4/template.html in the student files. Modify the title element. Add an img element to the body section to display the myisland.jpg image as follows:

```

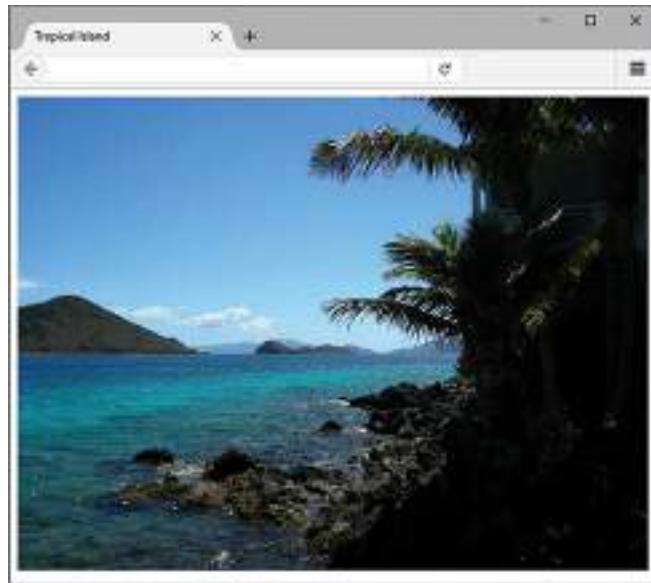
```

Save the file as index.html in the mycaption folder. Launch a browser to test your page. It should look similar to the page shown in **Figure 4.12**.

---

**Figure 4.12** The image is displayed on the web page

---



**Step 2:** Configure a figure caption and border for the image. To do so, launch a text editor and open the web page file. Add embedded CSS to the head section that configures an `id` named `figure` that is 640 pixels wide, has a border, has padding set to 5px, and has centered text using the Papyrus font typeface (or the default fantasy family font). The code follows:

```
<style>
#figure { border: 1px solid #000000;
           font-family: Papyrus, fantasy;
           padding: 5px;
           text-align: center;
           width: 640px; }
</style>
```

Edit the body section to add a div to contain the image. Add the text “Tropical Island Getaway” below the image but within the div element. Assign the div to the id named `figure`. Save the file as index.html in the mycaption folder. Launch a browser to test your page. It should look similar to

the page shown in [Figure 4.13](#). The student files contains a sample solution in the chapter4/4.5 folder.

---

**Figure 4.13 CSS configures the placement of the border and figure caption**

---



---

## Figure and Figcaption Elements

The block display **figure** element comprises a unit of content that is self-contained, such as an image, along with one optional **figcaption** element.

The block display **figcaption** element provides a caption for a figure.

You might be wondering why these new HTML5 elements were created when the same design can be configured using a div element as a container. The reason is semantics. The div element is useful but very

generic in nature. When the figure and figcaption elements are used, the structure of the content is well defined.

## Hands-On Practice 4.6

In this Hands-On Practice you will configure an area on a web page that contains an image with a caption by using the HTML5 figure and figcaption elements. The graphic used in this Hands-On Practice is located in the student files chapter4/starters folder. Save the myisland.jpg file in a folder named mycaption2.

- Step 1:** Launch a text editor and open chapter4/template.html in the student files. Modify the title element. Add an img element to the body section to display the myisland.jpg image as follows:

```

```

Save the file as index.html in the mycaption2 folder. Launch a browser to test your page. It should look similar to the page shown in **Figure 4.12**.

- Step 2:** Configure a figure caption and border for the image. Launch a text editor and open the web page file. Add embedded CSS to the head section that configures the figure element selector to be 640 pixels wide, with a border, and with padding set to 5px. Configure the figcaption element selector to have centered text using the Papyrus font typeface (or the default fantasy family font). The code follows:

```
<style>
    figure { border: 1px solid #000000;
              padding: 5px; width: 640px; }
    figcaption { font-family: Papyrus, fantasy;
                 text-align: center; }
</style>
```

Edit the body section. Below the image, add a `figcaption` element that contains the following text: “Tropical Island Getaway.” Configure a `figure` element that contains both the img and the figcaption. The code follows:

```
<figure>
    
    <figcaption> Tropical Island
Getaway</figcaption>
</figure>
```

Save the file as index.html in the mycaption2 folder. Launch a browser to test your page. It should look similar to the page shown in **Figure 4.14**. The student files contains a sample solution in the chapter4/4.6 folder.

---

**Figure 4.14 The figure and figcaption elements were used in this web page**

---



## Meter Element

The **meter** element displays a visual gauge of a numeric value within a known range, typically as part of a bar chart. The meter element is configured with several attributes, including **value** (the value displayed), **min** (the lowest value in the range), and **max** (the highest possible value in the range). The following code snippet (student files chapter4/meter.html) configures the display of a report that shows total visits and the number of visits by users for each browser:

```
<h1>Monthly Browser Report</h1>
<meter value="14417" min="0"
max="14417">14417</meter>14,417 Total Visits<br>
<meter value="7000" min="0" max="14417">7000</meter>
7,000 Chrome<br>
<meter value="3800" min="0" max="14417">3800</meter>
3,800 Edge<br>
<meter value="2062" min="0" max="14417">2062</meter>
2,062 Firefox<br>
<meter value="1043" min="0" max="14417">1043</meter>
1,043 Safari<br>
```

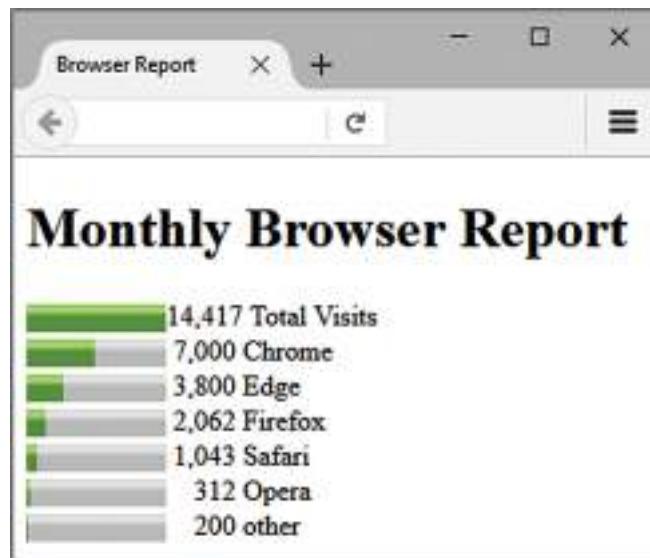
```
<meter value="312" min="0" max="14417">312</meter>
  &nbsp;&nbsp; 312 Opera<br>
<meter value="200" min="0" max="14417">200</meter>
 &nbsp;&nbsp; 200 other<br>
```

As shown in [Figure 4.15](#), the meter element provides a handy way to display a bar chart on a web page.

---

**Figure 4.15 The `meter` element**

---



## Progress Element

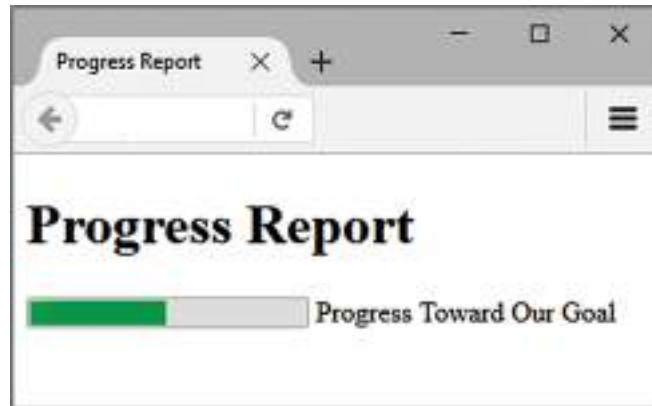
The **progress** element, shown in [Figure 4.16](#), displays a bar that depicts a numeric value within a specified range. The progress element is configured with the `value` (the value displayed) and `max` (highest possible value) attributes. Place information for nonsupporting browsers to display between the opening and closing progress tags. The following code snippet (student files chapter4/progress.html) shows 50% completion of a task:

```
<h1>Progress Report</h1>
<progress value="5" max="10">50%</progress>
Progress Toward Our Goal
```

---

**Figure 4.16** The `progress` element

---



## 4.5 Background Images

Back in [Chapter 3](#), you learned how to configure background color with the CSS `background-color` property. For example, the following CSS code configures the background of a web page to be a soft yellow:

```
body { background-color: #FFFF99; }
```

### The `background-image` Property

Use the CSS `background-image` property to configure a background image. The following CSS code configures the HTML body selector with a background of the graphic texture1.png located in the same folder as the web page file:

```
body { background-image: url(texture1.png); }
```

### Using Both Background Color and a Background Image

You can configure both a background color and a background image. The background color (specified by the `background-color` property) will display first. Next, the image specified as the background will be displayed as it is loaded by the browser.

---

### Video Note

#### *CSS Background Images*

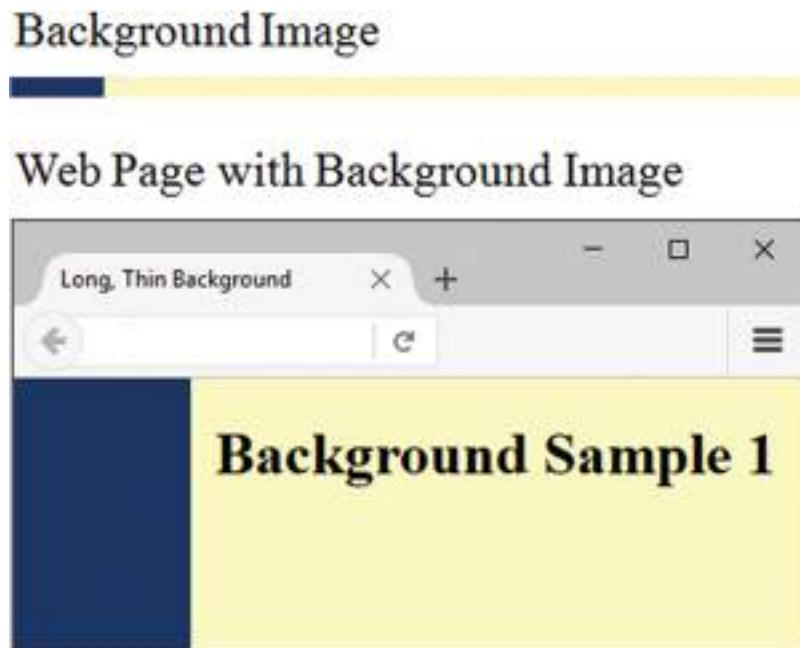
By coding both a background color and a background image, you provide your visitor with a more pleasing visual experience. If the background image does not load for some reason, the background color will still have the expected contrast with your text color. If the background image is smaller than the web browser window and the web page is configured with CSS not to automatically tile (repeat the image), the background color of the page will display in areas not covered by the background image. The CSS for a page with both a background color and a background image follows:

```
body { background-color: #99cccc;  
background-image: url(background.jpg); }
```

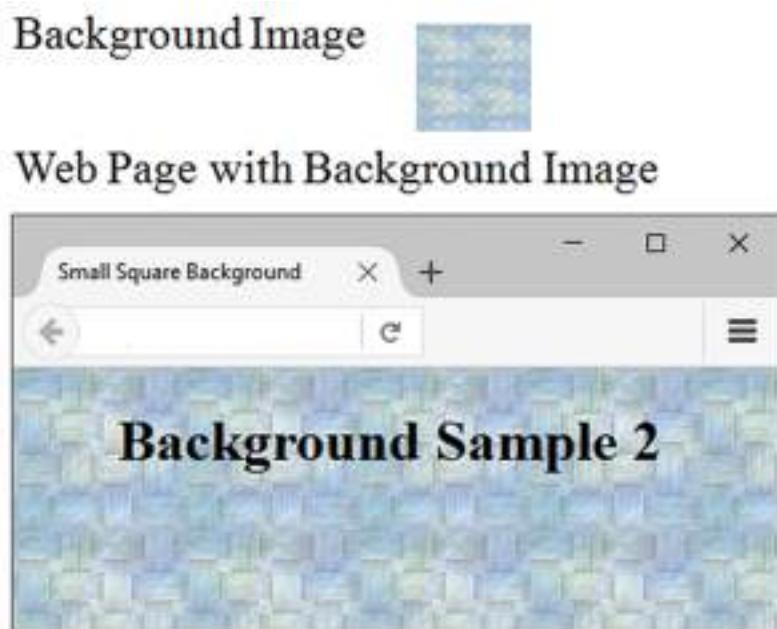
## Browser Display of a Background Image

You may think that a graphic created to be the background of a web page would always be about the size of the browser window viewport. However, the dimensions of the background image are often much smaller than the typical viewport. The shape of a background image is often either a thin rectangle or a small rectangular block. Unless otherwise specified in a style rule, browsers repeat, or tile, these images to cover the page's background, as shown in Figures 4.17 and 4.18. The images have small file sizes so that they download as quickly as possible.

**Figure 4.17** A long, thin background image tiles down the page



**Figure 4.18** A small rectangular background is repeated to fill the web page window



# The background-repeat Property

As just discussed, the default behavior of a browser is to repeat, or tile, background images to cover the entire element's background. This behavior also applies to other elements, such as backgrounds for headings, paragraphs, and so on. You can modify this tiling behavior with the CSS **background-repeat** property. Values for the **background-repeat** property are shown in [Table 4.4](#).

---

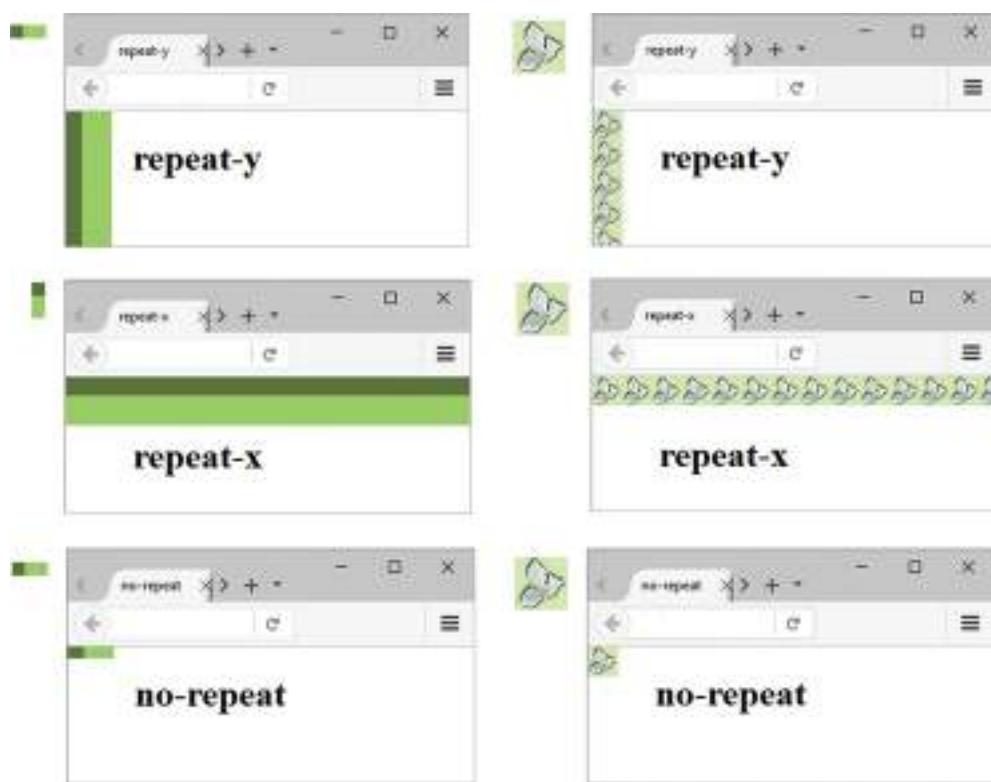
**Table 4.4** Values for the **background-repeat** property

Value	Purpose
repeat	Default value. Repeats ("tiles") the image across and down to fill the background
repeat-y	Vertically repeats the image in the background
repeat-x	Horizontally repeats the image in the background
no-repeat	The image is not repeated
space	Repeats the image in the background without clipping (or cutting off) parts of the image by adjusting empty space around the repeated images.

Value	Purpose
round	Repeats the image in the background and scales (adjusts) the dimensions of the image to avoid clipping.

Figure 4.19 provides examples of background images and the results of applying the `repeat-y`, `repeat-x`, and `no-repeat` values for the `background-repeat` property.

**Figure 4.19 Examples of the CSS `background-repeat` property**



## Hands-On Practice 4.7

Let's practice using a background image. In this exercise, you will use your files in the kayakch4 folder from **Hands-On**

**Practice 4.4** (also see the student files chapter4/4.4 folder) as a starting point. In this Hands-On Practice you will configure the main element selector with a background image that does not repeat. Obtain the heroback.jpg image from the student files chapter4/starters folder. Copy the image into your kayakch4 folder. When you have completed this exercise, your page should look similar to the one shown in **Figure 4.20**.

Launch a text editor and open index.html.

---

**Figure 4.20 The background image for the main element is configured with `background-repeat: no-repeat`**

---



1. Locate the style tags in the head section. Code a new style rule for the main element selector to configure the `background-image` and `background-repeat` properties. Set the background image to be heroback.jpg. Set the background not to repeat. The main element selector style rules follow:

```
main { background-image: url(heroback.jpg);  
       background-repeat: no-repeat; }
```

2. Remove the img element that displays the hero.jpg image from the body of the web page.
  3. Save your page as index.html. Launch a browser, and test your page. You may notice that the text within the main element is displayed over the background image. In this case, the page would look more appealing if the paragraph did not extend across the background image. Open index.html in a text editor and code a line break tag before the word “explore”.
  4. Save and test your page again. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 4.20](#) if you are using a browser other than Internet Explorer. The student files contain a sample solution in the chapter4/4.7 folder. Internet Explorer does not support default styles for the HTML5 main element. If you are concerned about the display of your page in Internet Explorer, you can nudge this browser to comply by adding the display: block; declaration (see [Chapter 6](#)) to the styles for the main element selector. An example solution is in the student files (chapter4/4.7/iefix.html).
- 

## FAQ

What if my images are in their own folder?

It's a good idea to organize your website by placing all your images in a folder. Notice that the CircleSoft website whose file structure is shown in [Figure 4.21](#) contains a folder called images, which contains GIF and JPEG files.

To refer to these files in code, you also need to refer to the images folder. The following are some examples:

- The CSS code to configure the background.gif file from the images folder as the page background follows:

```
body { background-image:  
    url(images/background.gif); }
```

- The HTML to display the logo.jpg file from the images folder follows:

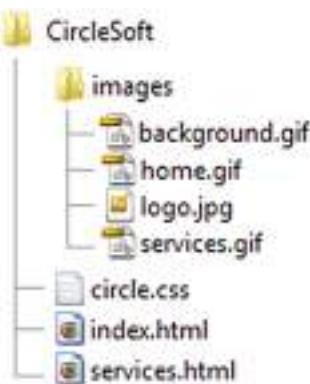
```

```

---

**Figure 4.21** A folder named “images” contains the graphic files

---



## The background-position Property

You can specify other locations for the background image besides the default top left location by using the CSS **background-position** property. Valid values for the background-position property include percentages; pixel values; or `left`, `top`, `center`, `bottom`, and `right`. The first value indicates horizontal position. The second value indicates vertical position. If only one value is provided, the second value defaults to center. In [Figure 4.22](#), the small flower image has been placed in the background on the right side of the element by using the following style rule:

```
h2 { background-image: url(flower.gif);  
     background-position: right;  
     background-repeat: no-repeat; }
```

---

**Figure 4.22** The flower background image was configured to display on the right side with CSS

---

New Media and Web Design



## The background-attachment Property

Use the CSS **background-attachment** property to configure whether the background image remains fixed in place or scrolls along with the page in the browser viewport. Valid values for the **background-attachment** property include:

- `scroll` (default)

The background image scrolls with the page in the browser viewport.

- `fixed`

The background image does not scroll with the page in the browser viewport.

- `local`

The background image scrolls with the element's content the browser viewport.

## The `background-clip` Property

The CSS `background-clip` property confines the display of the background image with the following values:

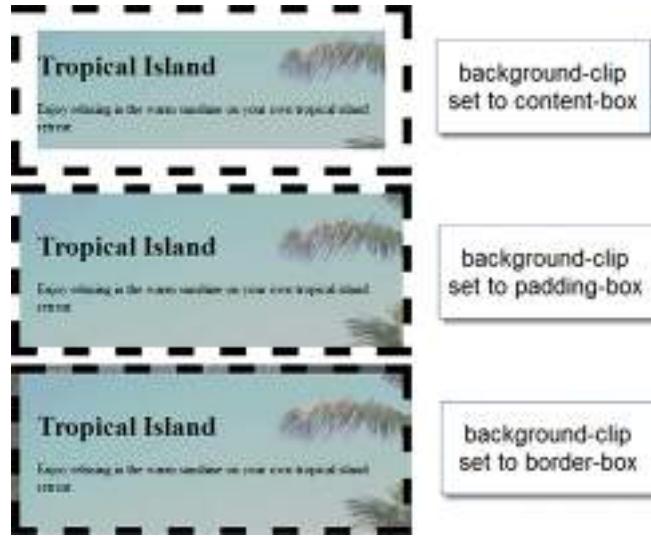
- `content-box` (clips the display to the area behind the content)
- `padding-box` (clips the display to the area behind the content and padding)
- `border-box` (default; clips the display to the area behind the content, padding, and border; similar to the padding-box property except that the image will display behind a border configured to be transparent)

Figure 4.23  shows div elements configured with different values of the `background-clip` property. Note that the dashed border is intentionally large in these examples. The student files (chapter4/clip folder) contains an example page.

---

**Figure 4.23 The CSS `background-clip` property**

---



The CSS is shown as follows:

```
.test { background-clip: content-box;
        background-image: url(myislandback.jpg);
        border: 10px dashed #000;
        padding: 20px;
        width: 400px; }
```

## The background-origin Property

The CSS **background-origin** property positions the background image, using the following values:

- **content-box** (positions relative to the content area)
- **padding-box** (default; positions relative to the padding area)
- **border-box** (positions relative to the border area)

The **background-origin** property is supported by current versions of modern browsers. [Figure 4.24](#) shows div elements configured with

different values of the background-origin property. The sample page is located in the student files (chapter4/origin folder).

**Figure 4.24** The CSS `background-origin` property



The CSS for the first div follows:

```
.test { background-image: url(trilliumsolo.jpg);  
       background-origin: content-box;  
       background-position: right top;  
       background-repeat: no-repeat;  
       border: 1px solid #000;  
       padding: 20px; width: 200px; }
```

You may have noticed that it's common to use several CSS properties when configuring background images. The properties typically work together. However, be aware that the `background-origin` property has no effect if the `background-attachment` property is set to the value "fixed".

# The background-size Property

The CSS **background-size** property can be used to resize or scale the background image. Valid values for the **background-size** property include:

- a pair of percentage values (width, height)

If only one percentage value is provided, the second value defaults to **auto** and is determined by the browser.

- a pair of pixel values (width, height)

If only one numeric value is provided, the second value defaults to **auto** and is determined by the browser.

- **cover**

The value **cover** will preserve the aspect ratio of the image as it scales the background image to the *smallest size* for which both the height and width of the image can completely cover the area.

- **contain**

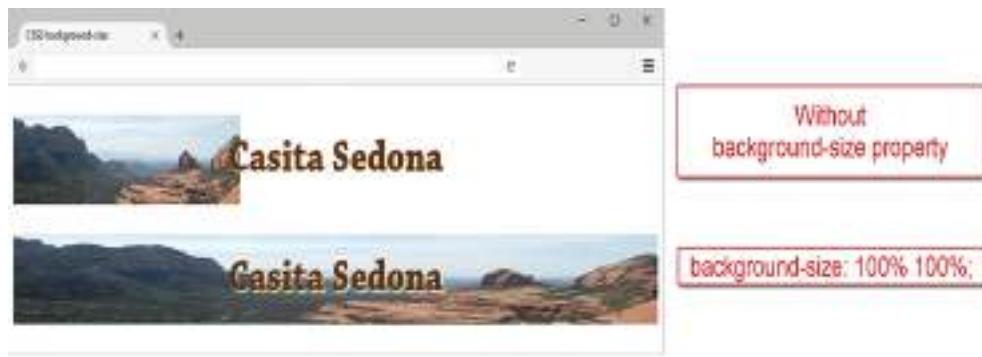
The value **contain** will preserve the aspect ratio of the image as it scales the background image to the *largest size* for which both the height and width of the image will fit within the area.

Figure 4.25  shows two div elements that are each configured with the same background image to display without repeating.

---

**Figure 4.25 Configuring a background image.**

---



The `background-size` property is not configured for the first div element's background image which only partially fills the space. The CSS for the second div configures the `background-size` to be 100% 100% so the browser scales and resizes the background image to fill the space. The sample page is located in the student files (chapter4/size/sedona.html). The CSS for the second div follows:

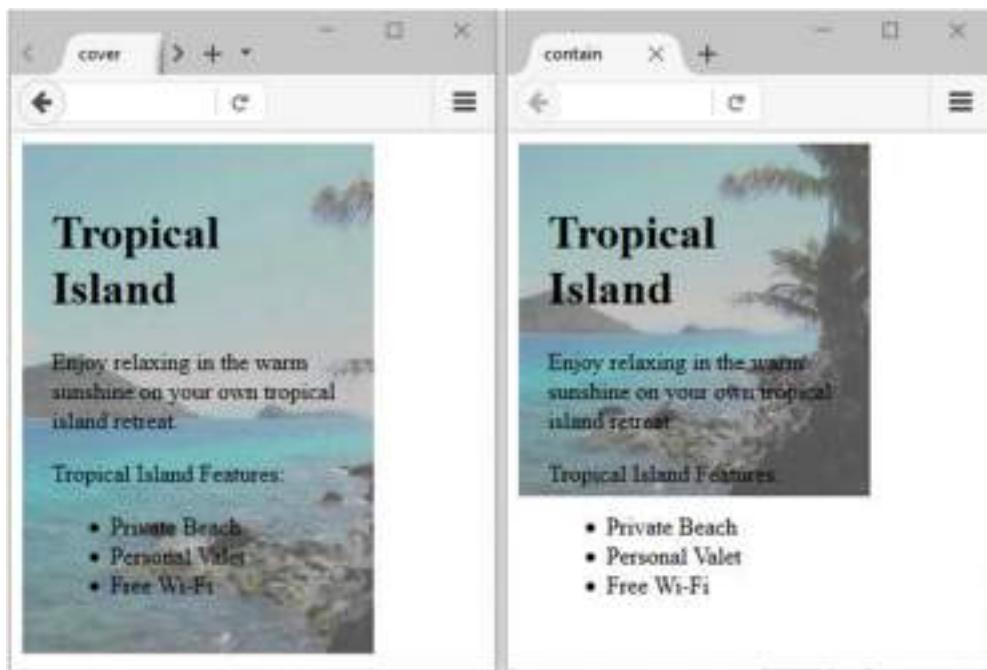
```
#test1 { background-image: url(sedonabackground.jpg);  
         background-repeat: no-repeat;  
         background-size: 100% 100%; }
```

**Figure 4.26** demonstrates use of the cover and contain values to configure the display of a  $500 \times 500$  background image within a 200 pixel wide area on a web page. The web page on the left uses `background-size: cover;` to scale and resize the image to completely cover the area while keeping the aspect ratio of the image intact. The web page on the right uses `background-size: contain;` to scale and resize the image so that both the height and width of the image will fit within the area. Review the sample pages in the student files (chapter4/size/cover.html and chapter4/size/contain.html).

---

**Figure 4.26 Examples of `background-size: cover;` and `background-size: contain`**

---



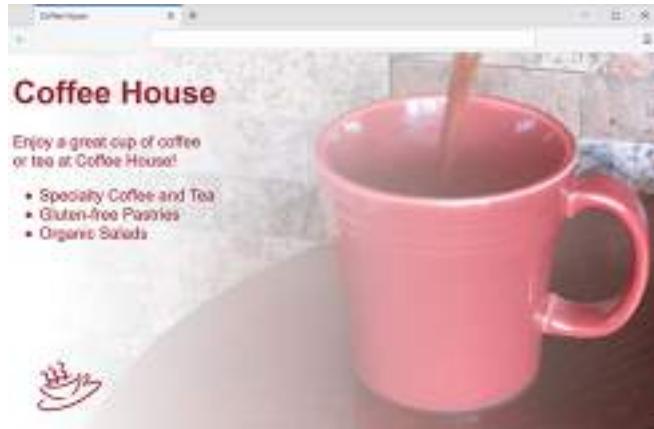
## Multiple Background Images

Now that you are familiar with background images, let's explore applying multiple background images to a web page. [Figure 4.27](#) shows a web page with two background images configured on the body selector: a large photograph of a coffee cup on a table that displays across the entire web page and a small coffee cup drawing that displays once in lower left corner.

---

**Figure 4.27** The browser displays multiple background images.

---



Use the CSS **background** property to configure multiple background images. Each image declaration is separated by a comma. You can optionally add property values to indicate the image's position and whether the image repeats. The **background** property uses a shorthand notation—just list the values that are needed for relevant properties such as **background-position** and **background-repeat**.

To provide for progressive enhancement when using multiple background images, first configure a separate **background-image** property with a single image (rendered by browsers that do not support multiple background images) prior to the **background** property configured for multiple images (to be rendered by supporting browsers and ignored by nonsupporting browsers).

---

## Hands-On Practice 4.8

Let's practice configuring multiple background images. In this Hands-On Practice, you will configure the **body** element selector to display multiple background images on the web page. Create a new folder named **coffee4**. Copy all the files

from the student files chapter4/coffeestarters folder into your coffee4 folder.

Launch a text editor and open coffee.html. Style declarations for browsers that do not support multiple backgrounds are already coded. Add style declarations to the body selector to configure the background property for multiple background images: configure coffee.gif to display on the bottom left without repeating, configure coffeepour.jpg to display without repeating as a fixed background. Also set the background-size property for multiple images by separating their background-size values by a comma: configure auto for coffee.gif and cover for coffeepour.jpg. The new code follows:

```
background: url(coffee.gif) no-repeat left  
bottom,  
          url(coffeepour.jpg) no-repeat fixed;  
background-size: auto, cover;
```

Save your file as index.html. Launch a browser and test your page in a modern browser. Your display should be similar to [Figure 4.27](#). If the page is displayed in a browser that does not support multiple background images, only the large photograph will be displayed. The student files contain a sample solution in the chapter4/4.8 folder.

A **cinemagraph** is a type of animated GIF created by taking a video or series of photos with small changes (such as coffee pouring into a cup or hair waving in the wind), processing them in a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, and exporting the file as an animated GIF or PNG. [Figure 4.28](#) shows a web page with three background images: a large

coffee cup cinemagraph GIF, a solid color rectangle, and a small sketch of a coffee cup.

---

**Figure 4.28** Multiple background images.

---



---

## Hands-On Practice 4.9

In this Hands-On Practice, you will rework the example in [Hands-on Practice 4.8](#) to display a cinemagraph as one of three background images on the web page. Use your files from [Hands-On Practice 4.8](#) (see the chapter4/4.8 folder in the student files).

Launch a text editor and open index.html. You will modify the style rules for the body element selector. Configure the style rules to display the coffeepour.gif image instead of the coffeepour.jpg image. Edit the background property values to display a third image (coffeeback.gif) under the coffee.gif and above the coffeepour.gif. Configure coffeeback.gif to repeat

vertically down the browser viewport (the value repeat-y). Also configure the background-size property for each image: set cover for coffeepour.gif and auto for the other two images. The style rule for the body element selector follows:

```
body { font-size: 150%; font-family: Arial;  
color: #992435;  
background-image: url(coffeepour.gif);  
background-size: cover;  
background-repeat: no-repeat;  
background-attachment: fixed;  
background: url(coffee.gif) no-repeat  
left bottom,  
url(coffeeback.gif) repeat-  
y;  
url(coffeepour.gif) no-  
repeat fixed;  
background-size: auto, auto, cover; }
```

Save your file as coffepour.html. Launch a browser and test your page in a modern browser. Your display should be similar to [Figure 4.28](#). You will see an animation of coffee pouring into the cup. If the page is displayed in a browser that does not support multiple background images, only the large pouring coffee image will be displayed. The student files contain a sample solution in the chapter4/4.9 folder.

## Checkpoint 4.2

1. Describe the CSS to configure a graphic named circle.jpg to display once in the background of all `<h1>` elements. Code the CSS.
2. Describe the CSS that configures a file named bg.gif to repeat vertically down the background of a web page. Code

the CSS.

- 3.** Explain how the browser will render the web page if you use CSS to configure both a background image and a background color.

## 4.6 More About Images

This section introduces several additional techniques used with images on web pages. Topics discussed include image maps, the favorites icon, image slicing, and CSS Sprites.

### Image Maps

An **image map** is an image that can be used as one or more hyperlinks. An image map will typically have multiple clickable or selectable areas that link to another web page or website. The selectable areas are called **hotspots**. Image maps can configure selectable areas in three shapes: rectangles, circles, and polygons. An image map requires the use of the `image element`, `map element`, and one or more `area elements`.

### Map Element

The **map element** is a container tag that indicates the beginning and ending of the image map description. The `name` attribute is coded to associate the `<map>` tag with its corresponding image. The `id` attribute must have the same value as the `name` attribute. To associate a map element with an image, configure the `img element` with the **usemap attribute** to indicate which `<map>` to use.

### Area Element

The **area element** defines the coordinates or edges of the clickable area. It is a void tag that uses the `href`, `alt`, `title`, `shape`, and `coords` attributes.

The `href` attribute identifies the web page to display when the area is clicked. The `alt` attribute provides a text description for screen readers. Use the `title` attribute to specify text that some browsers may display as

a tooltip when the mouse is placed over the area. The `coords` attribute indicates the coordinate position of the clickable area. [Table 4.5](#) describes the type of coordinates needed for each shape attribute value.

---

**Table 4.5 Shape coordinates**

Shape	Coordinates	Meaning
rect	“x1,y1, x2,y2”	The coordinates at point (x1,y1) represent the upper-left corner of the rectangle. The coordinates at point (x2,y2) represent the lower-right corner of the rectangle.
circle	“x,y,r”	The coordinates at point (x,y) indicate the center of the circle. The value of r is the radius of the circle, in pixels.
poly	“x1,y1, x2,y2, x3,y3”, etc.	The values of each (x,y) pair represent the coordinates of a corner point of the polygon.

## Exploring a Rectangular Image Map

We'll focus on a rectangular image map. For a rectangular image map, the value of the `shape` attribute is `rect`, and the coordinates indicate the pixel positions as follows:

- distance of the upper-left corner from the left edge of the image
- distance of the upper-left corner from the top of the image
- distance of the lower-right corner from the left edge of the image

- distance of the lower-right corner from the top of the image.

Figure 4.29 shows an image of a fishing boat. The dotted rectangle around the fishing boat indicates the location of the hotspot. The coordinates shown (24, 188) indicate that the top-left corner is 24 pixels from the left edge of the image and 188 pixels from the top of the image. The pair of coordinates in the lower-right corner (339, 283) indicates that this corner is 339 pixels from the left edge of the image and 283 pixels from the top of the image. This example is in the student files at chapter4/map.html. The HTML code to create this image map follows:

```
<map name="boat" id="boat">
    <area href="http://www.fishingdoorcounty.com"
shape="rect"
    coords="24, 188, 339, 283" alt="Door County
Fishing Boat">
</map>

```

---

Figure 4.29 Sample image map

---



---

## Focus on Accessibility

Note the use of the `alt` attribute on the area element in the previous code sample. Configure a descriptive `alt` attribute for each area element associated with an image map to provide for accessibility.

Most web developers do not hand-code image maps. Web authoring tools, such as Adobe Dreamweaver, have features that help you to generate image maps. There are also free online image map generators available at:

- <http://www.maschek.hu/imagemap/imgmap>
- <http://image-maps.com>
- [https://mobilefish.com/services/image\\_map/image\\_map.php](https://mobilefish.com/services/image_map/image_map.php)

## The Favorites Icon

Ever wonder about the small icon you sometimes see in the address bar or tab of a browser? That's a favorites icon, usually referred to as a **favicon**, which is a square image (either  $16 \times 16$  pixels or  $32 \times 32$  pixels) associated with a web page. The favicon, shown in [Figure 4.30](#), may display in the browser's address bar, tab, or the favorites and bookmarks lists.

---

**Figure 4.30** The favorites icon displays in the browser tab and address bar

---



## Configuring a Favorites Icon

While some versions of early browsers expected the file to be named favicon.ico and to reside in the root directory of the web server, a more modern approach is to associate the favicon.ico file with a web page by using the link element. Recall that in [Chapter 3](#), you coded the `<link>` tag in the head section of a web page to associate an external style sheet file with a web page file. You can also use the `<link>` tag to associate a favorites icon with a web page. Three attributes are used to associate a web page with a favorites icon: `rel`, `href`, and `type`. The value of the `rel` attribute is `icon`. The value of the `href` attribute is the name of the image file. The value of the `type` attribute describes the MIME type of the image—which defaults to `image/x-icon` for .ico files. The HTML code to associate a favorites icon named favicon.ico to a web page follows:

```
<link rel="icon" href="favicon.ico" type="image/x-icon">
```

You may need to publish your files to the Web (see the FTP tutorial in the Appendix) in order for the favicon to display in Microsoft Edge and Internet Explorer. Other browsers, such as Firefox, display favicons more reliably and also support GIF, JPG, and PNG image formats. Be aware that

if you use a .gif, .png, or .jpg as a favorites icon, then the MIME type should be image/ico. For example,

```
<link rel="icon" href="favicon.gif" type="image/ico">
```

## Hands-On Practice 4.10

Let's practice using a favorites icon. Obtain the favicon.ico file from the student files in the chapter4/starters folder. In this exercise, you will use your files in the kayakch4 folder from [Hands-On Practice 4.7](#) (also see the student files chapter4/4.7 folder) as a starting point.

1. Launch a text editor, and open index.html. Add the following link tag to the head section of the web page:

```
<link rel="icon" href="favicon.ico"
      type="image/x-icon">
```

2. Save your file. Launch the Firefox browser, and test your page. You should notice the small kayaker image in the Firefox browser tab as shown in [Figure 4.31](#). The student files contain a sample solution in the chapter4/4.10 folder.

---

**Figure 4.31 The favorites icon displays in the Firefox browser tab**

---



---

## FAQ

How can I create my own favorites icon?

You can create your own favicon with a graphics application, such as GIMP, or with one of the following online tools:

- <http://favicon.cc>
- <http://www.favicongenerator.com>
- <http://www.freecfavicon.com>
- <http://www.xiconeditor.com>

---

## FAQ

What about icons on mobile devices?

Apple, Google Android, and Microsoft each specify the icon image usage guidelines and required syntax for their devices. Visit <https://webdevfoundations.net/10e/>

[chapter4.html](#) for current links to these guidelines. You'll first need to create multiple versions of your icon file in a variety of sizes, such as `180x180` (iPhone), `192x192` (Android), and `167x167` (iPad Pro). The PNG file format is typically used for these icons. Then, configure a link element for each icon with the rel, href, and sizes attributes. The sizes attribute specifies the dimensions of the icon file. The following is an example of the HTML to specify icon files for a typical iPhone, iPad, and Android Device.

```
<link rel="apple-touch-icon"  
      sizes="180x180" href="iPhoneIcon.png">  
    <link rel="apple-touch-icon"  
      sizes="167x167" href="iPadIcon.png">  
    <link rel="icon" sizes="192x192"  
      href="AndroidIcon.png">
```

## CSS Sprites

A modern technique to optimize the use of images on web pages is called CSS Sprites. A **sprite** is an image file that contains multiple small graphics that are configured as background images for various web page elements. The CSS `background-image`, `background-repeat`, and `background-position` properties are used to manipulate the placement of the image. Having just a single image saves download time, because the browser needs to make only one http request for the combined image instead of many requests for the individual smaller images. You'll work with CSS Sprites in Chapter 6.

## 4.7 Sources and Guidelines for Graphics

### Sources of Graphics

There are many ways to obtain graphics: You can create them using a graphics application, download them from a website which provides them for free, purchase and download them from a graphics website, purchase a graphics collection on a DVD, take digital photographs, scan photographs, scan drawings, or hire a graphic designer to create graphics for you. Adobe Photoshop and GIMP (<https://www.gimp.org/>) are popular graphics applications. Pixlr offers a free, easy-to-use, online photo editor at <https://pixlr.com/x/>. These applications usually include tutorials and sample images to help you get started.

#### Focus on Ethics

Sometimes you might be tempted to right-click on an image on a web page and download it for use on your own website. Be aware that materials on a website are copyrighted (even if a copyright symbol or notice does not appear) and are not free to use unless the owner of the site permits it. So, contact the owner of an image and request permission for use of a graphic rather than just taking it.

There are many websites that offer free and low-cost graphics. Choose a search engine and search for “free graphics”—you’ll get more results than

you have time to view. The following are a few sites that you may find helpful when looking for images:

- Free Images: <https://www.freeimages.com>
- Free Stock Photo Search Engine: <http://www.everystockphoto.com>
- Free Digital Photos: <http://www.freedishalphotos.net>
- Pixabay: <https://pixabay.com>
- iStockphoto: <https://www.istockphoto.com>
- Adobe Stock: <https://stock.adobe.com>

## Guidelines for Using Images

Images enhance your web page by creating an engaging, interesting user experience. Images can also hurt your web page by slowing down its performance to a crawl and discouraging visitors. This section explores some guidelines for using images on web pages.

### Reuse Images

Once an image from your site is requested for a web page, it is stored in the cache on your visitor's hard drive. Subsequent requests for the image will use the file from the hard drive instead of another download. This approach results in faster page loads for all pages that use the image. It is recommended that you reuse common graphics such as logos and navigation buttons on multiple pages instead of creating different versions of these common graphics.

### Consider the Size vs. Quality Issue

You can choose among varying levels of image quality when using a graphics application to create or optimize an image. There is a correlation between the quality of the image and the size of the image file: The

higher the quality, the larger the file size will be. Choose the smallest file that gives you appropriate quality. You may need to experiment until you get the right match.

## Consider Image Load Time

Be careful when using images on web pages—it takes time for them to load. Optimize the file size and the dimensions of images for efficient web page display.

## Use Appropriate Resolution

Most desktop and laptop web browsers display images at relatively low **resolution**—typically 96ppi (pixels per inch). Many digital cameras and scanners can create images with much higher resolution. Of course, higher resolution means larger file size. Even though the browser does not display the depth of resolution, more bandwidth is still used for the large file size. Be aware that some devices (such as tablets and smartphones) have high pixel density displays (such as over 400ppi) which can affect the rendering of an image. In [Chapter 7](#), you'll be introduced to configuring flexible, responsive images for multiple devices.

## Specify Dimensions

Use accurate height and width attributes on image tags. This will allow the browser to allocate the appropriate space on the web page for the image and load the page faster. Do not try to resize the appearance of an image by modifying the settings of the height and width attributes. While this approach will work, your page will load more slowly, and your image quality may suffer. Instead, use a graphics application to create a smaller or larger version of the graphic when needed.

## Be Aware of Brightness and Contrast

**Gamma** refers to the brightness and contrast of the monitor display. Monitors used with Macintosh and Windows operating systems use a different default gamma setting (Macintosh uses 1.8; Windows uses 2.2). Images that have good contrast on a computer running Windows may look slightly washed out on a Macintosh. Images created on a Macintosh may look darker, with less contrast, when displayed on a computer with a Windows operating system. Be aware that even monitors on the same operating system may have slightly different gamma values than the default for the platform. A web developer cannot control gamma, but should be aware that images will look different on various platforms because of this issue.

## Accessibility and Visual Elements

### Focus on Accessibility

Even though images help to create a compelling, interesting website, remember that not all your visitors will be able to view your images. The Web Accessibility Initiative's WCAG 2.1 includes a number of guidelines for web developers in the use of color and images:

- Don't rely on color alone. Some visitors may have color perception deficiencies. Use high contrast between background and text color. Tools that can verify appropriate contrast are described in [Chapter 10](#).
- Provide a text equivalent for every nontext element. Use the `alt` attribute on your image tags.

- If an image displays text, configure that text as the value of the `alt` attribute.
- Use `alt=""` for an image that is purely decorative.
- If your site navigation uses image hyperlinks, provide simple text links at the bottom of the page.

Vinton Cerf, the co-inventor of TCP/IP and the former chairman of the Internet Society, said, “The Internet is for everyone.” Follow web accessibility guidelines to ensure that this is true.

### Checkpoint 4.3

1. Search for a site that uses image hyperlinks to provide navigation. List the URL of the page. What colors are used on the image links? If the image links contain text, is there good contrast between the background color and the letters on the image links? Would the page be accessible to a visitor who is sight challenged? How have accessibility issues been addressed? Is the `alt` attribute used to describe the image link? Is there a row of text links in the footer section of the page? Answer these questions and discuss your findings.
2. When configuring an image map, describe the relationship between the image, map, and area tags.
3. True or False: You should save your images using the smallest file size possible.

## 4.8 CSS Visual Effects

This section introduces CSS properties that provide visual effects on web pages, including rounded corners, box shadows, text shadows, opacity effects, transparent color with RGBA, transparent color with HSLA, and gradients.

### CSS Rounded Corners

As you've worked with borders and the box model, you may have begun to notice a lot of rectangles on your web pages! The **border-radius** property can be used to create rounded corners and soften up those rectangles.

---

#### Video Note

##### *Rounded Corners with CSS*

Valid values for the **border-radius** property include one to four numeric values (using pixel or em units) or percentages that configure the radius of the corner. If a single value is provided, it configures all four corners. If four values are provided the corners are configured in order of top left, top right, bottom right, and bottom left. You can configure corners individually with the **border-bottom-left-radius**, **border-bottom-right-radius**, **border-top-left-radius**, and **border-top-right-radius** properties.

CSS declarations to set a border with rounded corners are shown in the next segment of code. If you would like a visible border to display, configure the border property. Then set the value of the `border-radius` property to a value below 20px for best results. For example:

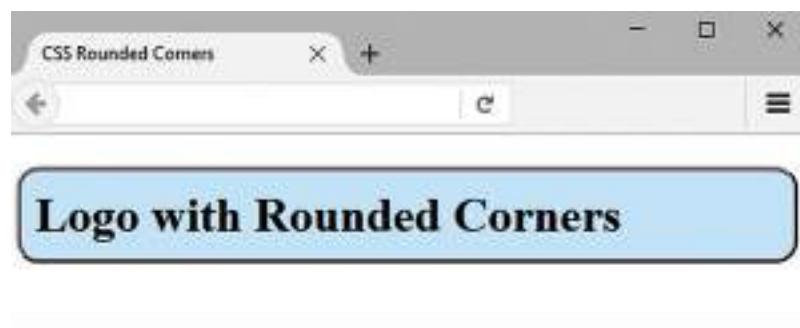
```
border: 3px ridge #330000;  
border-radius: 15px;
```

See [Figure 4.32](#) (chapter4/box.html in the student files) for an example of this code in action. Keep in mind that another approach to getting a rounded look is to create a rounded rectangle background image with a graphics application.

---

**Figure 4.32 Rounded corners were configured with CSS**

---



---

## Hands-On Practice 4.11

You'll configure a logo header area that uses a background image and rounded borders in this Hands-On Practice.

1. Create a new folder called borderch4. Copy the following files in the chapter4/starters folder to your borderch4 folder: lighthouselogo.jpg and background.jpg. A starter file is

ready for you in the student files. Save the chapter4/starter3.html file to your borderch4 folder. Launch a browser to display the starter3.html web page shown in [Figure 4.33](#).

**Figure 4.33** The starter3.html file



2. Launch a text editor, and open the starter3.html file. Save the file as index.html. Edit the embedded CSS, and add the following style declarations to the h1 element selector that will configure the lighthouselogo.jpg image as a background image that does not repeat: height set to 100px, width set to 650px, font size set to 3em, 150px of left padding, 30px of top padding, and a solid dark-blue border (#000033) with a border radius of 15px. The style declarations are as follows:

```
h1 { background-image:  
url(lighthouselogo.jpg);  
background-repeat: no-repeat;  
height: 100px; width: 650px; font-size:  
3em;  
padding-left: 150px; padding-top: 30px;  
border: 1px solid #000033;  
border-radius: 15px; }
```

**3.** Save the file. When you test your index.html file in a browser, it should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 4.34](#) if you are using a browser that supports rounded corners. Otherwise the logo will have right-angle corners, but the web page will still be usable. The student files (chapter4/4.11.index.html) has a suggested solution.

---

**Figure 4.34 The web page with the logo area configured**

---



## The box-shadow Property

The CSS **box-shadow** property can be used to create a shadow effect on block-display elements such as div and paragraph elements. Configure a box shadow by coding values for the shadow's horizontal offset, vertical offset, blur radius (optional), spread distance (optional), and color:

- **HORIZONTAL OFFSET.** Use a numeric pixel value. Positive value configures a shadow on the right. Negative value configures a shadow on the left.
- **VERTICAL OFFSET.** Use a numeric pixel value. Positive value configures a shadow below. Negative value configures a shadow above.
- **BLUR RADIUS (OPTIONAL).** Configure a numeric pixel value. If omitted, defaults to the value 0 which configures a sharp shadow. Higher values configure more blur.
- **SPREAD DISTANCE (OPTIONAL).** Configure a numeric pixel value. If omitted, defaults to the value 0. Positive values configure the shadow to expand. Negative values configure the shadow to contract.
- **COLOR VALUE.** Configure a valid color value for the shadow.

Here's an example that configures a dark-gray drop shadow with 5px horizontal offset, 5px vertical offset, and a 5px blur radius:

```
box-shadow: 5px 5px 5px #828282;
```

**INNER SHADOW EFFECT.** To configure an inner shadow, include the optional `inset` value. For example:

```
box-shadow: inset 5px 5px 5px #828282;
```

---

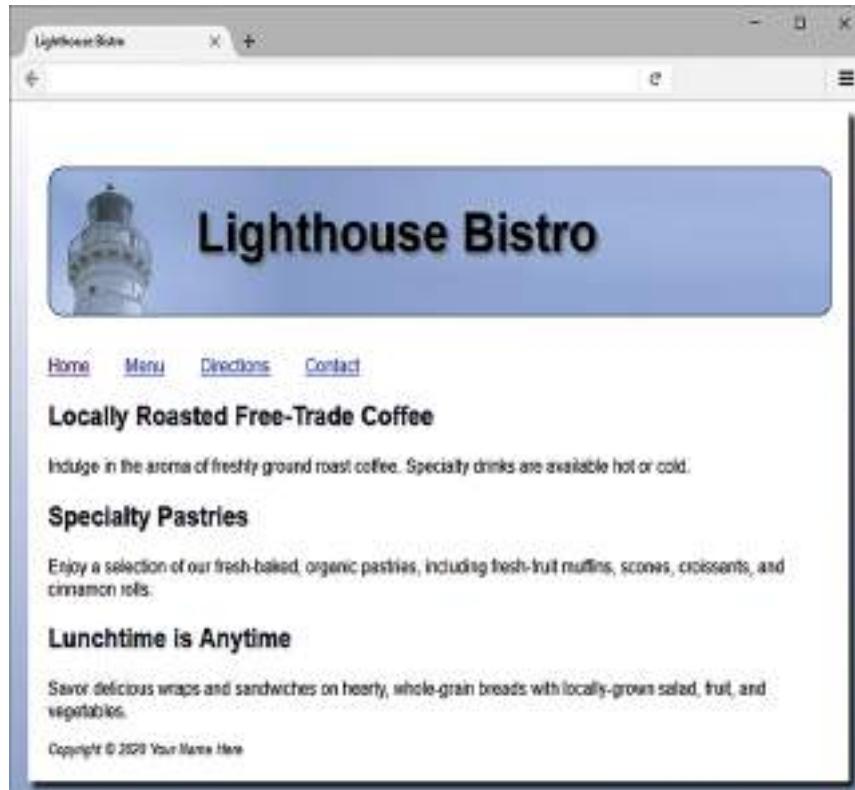
## Hands-On Practice 4.12

You'll configure a centered content area and apply the `box-shadow` and `text-shadow` properties in this Hands-On Practice. When complete, your web page will look similar to the one shown in [Figure 4.35](#).

---

**Figure 4.35 The centered neutral background along with shadow properties add dimension**

---



Create a new folder called shadowch4. Copy the `lighthouselogo.jpg` and the `background.jpg` files from the `chapter4/starters` folder to your `shadowch4` folder. Launch a text editor, and open the `chapter4/4.11/index.html` file (shown in [Figure 4.34](#)). Save the file in your `shadowch4` folder.

1. Configure the page content to be centered, with an 800-pixel width, a white background, and some padding.

- a.** Edit the HTML. Configure a div element assigned to the `id` named container that wraps the code within the body section. Code the opening `<div>` tag on a new line after the opening body tag. Code a closing div tag on a new line before the closing body tag.
- b.** Edit the embedded CSS to configure a new selector, an `id` named container. Configure a white background color and padding set to 1.25em. Recall from Chapter 3 the style declarations that will center the page content. Use the `width`, `min-width`, `max-width`, `margin-left`, and `margin-right` properties as follows:

```
#container { background-color: #FFFFFF;
              padding: 1.25em;
              width: 80%; min-width:
800px; max-width: 960px;
              margin-left: auto;
              margin-right: auto; }
```

2. Edit the embedded CSS to add the following style declarations to the `#container` selector to configure a box shadow:

```
box-shadow: 5px 5px 5px #1E1E1E;
```

3. Add the following style declaration to the `h1` element selector to configure a dark-gray text shadow:

```
text-shadow: 3px 3px 3px #676767;
```

4. Add the following style declaration to the h2 element selector to configure a light-gray text shadow with no blur:

```
text-shadow: 1px 1px 0 #CCC;
```

5. Save the file. When you test your index.html file in a browser, it should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 4.35](#). See the student files for a solution (chapter4/4.12/index.html).

---

## Hands-On Practice 4.13

In this Hands-On Practice you will practice your new skills as you configure a web page with centered content and apply CSS properties. When complete, your web page will look similar to the one shown in [Figure 4.36](#).

---

**Figure 4.36** [css drastically changes the look of the web page](#)

---



Create a new folder called kayakch4a. Copy the background.jpg, heroback2.jpg, and headerbackblue.jpg files from the chapter4/starters folder to your kayakch4 folder. Launch a text editor and open the chapter4/starter2.html file. Save the file in your kayakch4a folder with the name index.html. Modify the file as follows:

**1.** Center the page content.

- a.** Configure embedded CSS between the style tags and code a new selector, an id named `container` with style declarations for the `width`, `margin-left`, and `margin-right` properties as follows:

```
#container { margin-left: auto;
              margin-right: auto;
              width: 80%; }
```

- b.** Edit the HTML. Configure a div element assigned to the id `container` that “wraps” or contains the code

within the body section. Code an opening div tag on a new line after the opening body tag. Assign the div to the id named `container`.

**2.** Configure embedded CSS.

**a. THE BODY ELEMENT SELECTOR.** Configure a declaration to display `background.jpg` as the background image.

```
body { background-image:  
url(background.jpg);
```

**b. THE CONTAINER ID SELECTOR.** Add declarations to configure a white background color, 650px minimum width, 1280px maximum width, and a box shadow with a 3px offset in the color #333.

```
#container { margin-left: auto;  
margin-right: auto;  
width: 80%;  
background-color: #FFFFFF;  
min-width: 650px; max-  
width: 1280px;  
box-shadow: 3px 3px 3px  
#333; }
```

**c. THE HEADER ELEMENT SELECTOR.** Configure declarations to configure #000033 background color, #FF9 text color, a display of the `headerbackblue.jpg` image on the right without repeating, 80px height, 5px top padding, 2em left padding, and a text shadow in the color #FFF with a 1px offset.

```
header { background-color: #000033;  
color:#FF9;  
background-image:
```

```
url(headerbackblue.jpg);
background-position: right;
background-repeat: no-repeat;
height: 80px;
padding-top: 5px;
padding-left: 2em;
text-shadow: 1px 1px 1px #FFF;
}
```

- d. **THE NAV ELEMENT SELECTOR.** Code declarations to configure bold, 1.5em size, and centered text with 1em word-spacing.

```
nav { word-spacing: 1em;
      font-weight: bold;
      font-size: 1.5em;
      text-align: center; }
```

- e. **THE NAV A DESCENDANT SELECTOR.** Code a declaration to eliminate the underline from hyperlinks.

```
nav a { text-decoration: none; }
```

- f. **THE MAIN ELEMENT SELECTOR.** Code declarations to configure heroback2.jpg as the background image and set background-size: 100% 100%; Also configure white text (use #FFF) and 2em of padding.

```
main { background-image:
url(heroback2.jpg);
background-size: 100% 100%;
color: #FFF;
padding: 2em; }
```

**g. THE FOOTER ELEMENT SELECTOR.** Configure declarations for italic, .80em size centered text with 0.5em of padding.

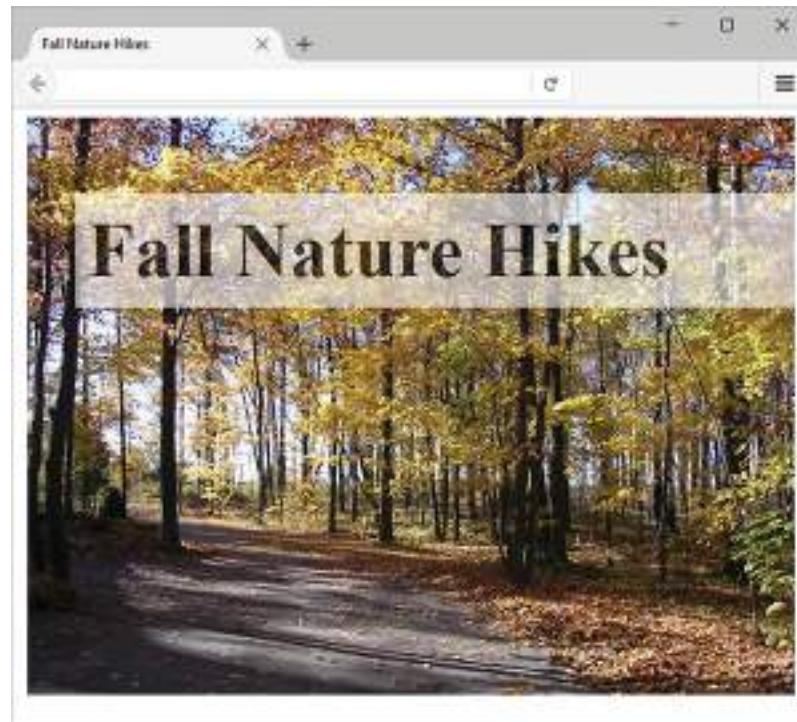
```
footer { font-style: italic; font-size: .80em; text-align: center; padding: 0.5em; }
```

3. Save the file. When you test your index.html file, it should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 4.36](#). Compare your work with the solution in the student files (chapter4/4.13/index.html).

## The opacity Property

The CSS **opacity** property configures the transparency of an element. Opacity values range from 0 (which is completely transparent) to 1 (which is completely opaque and has no transparency). An important consideration when using the **opacity** property is that this property applies to both the text and the background. If you configure a semi-transparent **opacity** value for an element with the **opacity** property, both the background and the text displayed will be semi-transparent. See [Figure 4.37](#) for an example of using the **opacity** property to configure a white background that is only 60% opaque. If you look very closely at [Figure 4.37](#) or view the actual web page (student files chapter4/4.14/index.html), you'll see that both the white background and the black text in the h1 element are semi-transparent. The **opacity** property was applied to both the background color and to the text color.

**Figure 4.37** The background of the h1 area is transparent



## Hands-On Practice 4.14

In this Hands-On Practice you'll work with the opacity property as you configure the web page shown in [Figure 4.37](#).

1. Create a new folder called opacitych4. Copy fall.jpg file from the chapter4/starters folder to your opacitych4 folder. Launch a text editor and open the chapter4/template.html file. Save it in your opacitych4 folder with the name index.html. Change the page title to “Fall Nature Hikes”.
2. Let's create the structure of the web page with a div that contains an h1 element. Add the following code to your web page in the body section:

```
<div id="content">
<h1>Fall Nature Hikes</h1>
```

```
</div>
```

3. Now, add style tags to the head section, and configure the embedded CSS. You'll create an `id` named `content` to display the fall.jpg as a background image that does not repeat. The `content` id also has a width of 640 pixels, a height of 480 pixels, left and right auto margins (which will center the object in the browser viewport), and 20 pixels of top padding. The code is

```
#content { background-image: url(fall.jpg);  
background-repeat: no-repeat;  
margin-left: auto;  
margin-right: auto;  
width: 640px;  
height: 480px;  
padding-top: 20px; }
```

4. Now configure the `h1` element selector to have a white background color with opacity set to 0.6, font size set to 4em, and 10 pixels of padding. Sample code is

```
h1 { background-color: #FFFFFF;  
opacity: 0.6;  
font-size: 4em;  
padding: 10px; }
```

5. Save the file. When you test your `index.html` file in a browser that supports opacity, it should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 4.37](#). See the student files for a solution (`chapter4/4.14/index.html`).

## CSS RGBA Color

CSS3 supports syntax for the color property that configures transparent color, called **RGBA color**. Four values are required: red color, green color, blue color, and alpha (transparency). RGBA color does not use hexadecimal color values. Instead, decimal color values are configured; see the partial color chart in [Figure 4.38](#) and the Web-Safe Color Palette in the Appendix for examples.

---

**Figure 4.38 Hexadecimal and RGB decimal color values**

---

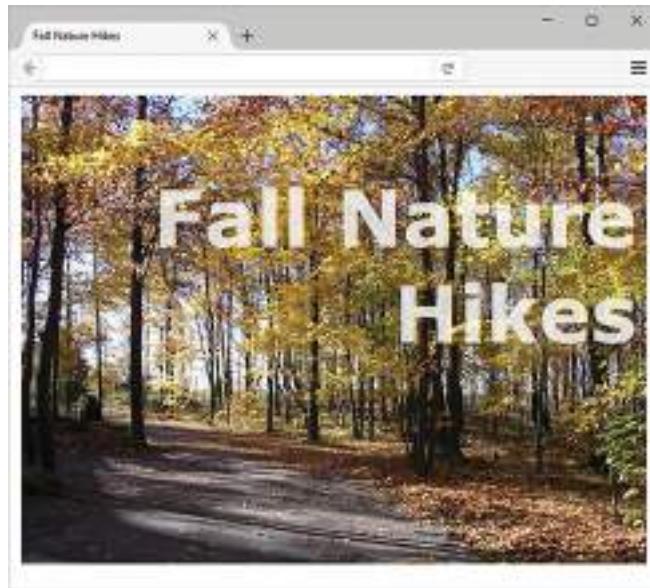
#FFFFFF rgb(255, 255, 255)	#FFFFCC rgb(255, 255, 204)	#FFFF99 rgb(255, 255, 153)	#FFFF66 rgb(255, 255, 102)
#FFFF33 rgb(255, 255, 51)	#FFFF00 rgb(255, 255, 0)	#FFCCFF rgb(255, 204, 255)	#FFCCCC rgb(255, 204, 204)
#FFCC99 rgb(255, 204, 153)	#FFCC66 rgb(255, 204, 102)	#FFCC33 rgb(255, 204, 51)	#FFCC00 rgb(255, 204, 0)
#FF99FF rgb(255, 153, 255)	#FF99CC rgb(255, 153, 204)	#FF9999 rgb(255, 153, 153)	#FF9966 rgb(255, 153, 102)

The values for red, green, and blue must be decimal values from 0 to 255. The alpha value must be a number between 0 (transparent) and 1 (opaque). [Figure 4.39](#) shows a web page with the text configured to be slightly transparent.

---

**Figure 4.39 CSS RGBA color configures the transparent text**

---



---

## FAQ

How is using RGBA color different from using the `opacity` property?

The `opacity` property applies to both the background and the text within an element. If you would like to specifically configure a semi-transparent background color, code the `background-color` property with RGBA color or HSLA color (described in the next section) values. If you would like to specifically configure semi-transparent text, code the `color` property with RGBA `color` or HSLA color values.

---

## Hands-On Practice 4.15

In this Hands-On Practice you'll configure transparent text as you code the web page shown in [Figure 4.39](#).

1. Create a new folder called rgbach4. Copy fall.jpg file from the chapter4/starters folder to your rgbach4 folder. Launch a text editor, and open the file you created in the previous Hands-On Practice (also located in the student files chapter4/4.14/index.html). Save the file with the name rgba.html in your rgbach4 folder.
2. Delete the current style declarations for the h1 element selector. You will create new style rules for the h1 selector to configure 10 pixels of right padding and right-aligned sans-serif white text that is 70% opaque, with a font size of 5em. Since not all browsers support RBGA color, you'll configure the color property twice. The first instance will be the standard color value that is supported by all modern browsers; the second instance will configure the RGBA color. Older browsers will not understand the RGBA color and will ignore it. Newer browsers will “see” both of the color style declarations and will apply them in the order they are coded, so the result will be transparent color. The CSS code is

```
h1 { color: #FFFFFF;
      color: rgba(255, 255, 255, 0.7);
      font-family: Verdana, Helvetica, sans-serif;
      font-size: 5em;
      padding-right: 10px;
      text-align: right; }
```

3. Save the file. When you test your rgba.html file in a browser that supports RGBA color, it should look similar to the page

shown in [Figure 4.39](#). See the student files for a solution (chapter4/4.15/rgba.html).

---

## CSS HSLA Color

For many years web designers have configured RGB color using either hexadecimal or decimal values on web pages. Recall that RGB color is based on hardware—the red, green, and blue light that is emitted by computer monitors. CSS introduced a new color notation system called **HSLA color**, based on a color wheel model, which stands for hue, saturation, lightness, and alpha.

### Hue, Saturation, Lightness, and Alpha

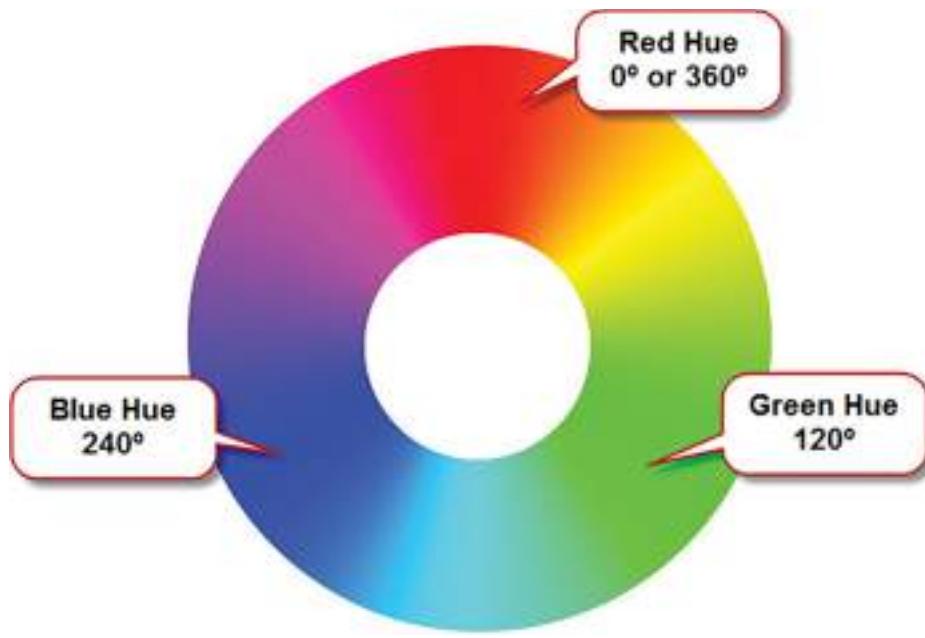
When you work with HSLA color, think of a color wheel—a circle of color—with the color red at the top of the wheel as shown in [Figure 4.40](#).

Hue is the actual color which is represented by numeric values ranging from 0 to 360 (like the 360 degrees in a circle). For example, red is represented by both the values 0 and 360, green is represented by 120, and blue is represented by 240. Set hue to 0 when configuring black, gray, and white. Saturation configures the intensity of the color and is indicated by a percentage value (full color saturation = 100%, gray = 0%). Lightness determines the brightness or darkness of the color and is indicated by a percentage value (normal color = 50%, white = 100%, black = 0%). Alpha represents the transparency of the color and has a value from 0 (transparent) to 1 (opaque). Note that you can omit the alpha value and use the `hsl` keyword instead of the `hsla` keyword.

---

**Figure 4.40 A color wheel**

---



## HSLA Color Examples

Configure HSLA color as shown in [Figure 4.41](#) with the following syntax:

```
hsla(hue value, saturation value, lightness value, alpha value);
```

---

**Figure 4.41 HSLA color examples**

---

<b>Red</b>
<code>hsla(360, 100%, 50%, 1.0);</code>
<b>Green</b>
<code>hsla(120, 100%, 50%, 1.0);</code>
<b>Blue</b>
<code>hsla(240, 100%, 50%, 1.0);</code>
<b>Black</b>
<code>hsla(0, 0%, 0%, 1.0);</code>
<b>Gray</b>
<code>hsla(0, 0%, 50%, 1.0);</code>
<b>White</b>
<code>hsla(0, 0%, 100%, 1.0);</code>

- Red: `hsla(360, 100%, 50%, 1.0);`
- Green: `hsla(120, 100%, 50%, 1.0);`
- Blue: `hsla(240, 100%, 50%, 1.0);`
- Black: `hsla(0, 0%, 0%, 1.0);`
- Gray: `hsla(0, 0%, 50%, 1.0);`
- White: `hsla(0, 0%, 100%, 1.0);`

According to the W3C, an advantage to using HSLA color is that it is more intuitive to work with than the hardware-oriented RGB color. You can use a color wheel model to choose colors and generate the hue value from the degree placement on the circle. If you would like to use a tone of a color, which is a color with gray added, vary the saturation value. If you would like to use a shade or tint of a color, use the same hue value, but vary the lightness value to meet your needs. [Figure 4.42](#) shows three shades of cyan blue configured using three different values for lightness: 25% (dark cyan blue), 50% (cyan blue), 75% (light cyan blue).

---

**Figure 4.42 Shades of cyan blue**

---

```
hsla(210, 100%, 25%, 1.0);
```

```
hsla(210, 100%, 50%, 1.0);
```

```
hsla(210, 100%, 75%, 1.0);
```

- Dark Cyan Blue:

```
hsla(210, 100%, 25%, 1.0);
```

- Cyan Blue:

```
hsla(210, 100%, 50%, 1.0);
```

- Light Cyan Blue:

```
hsla(210, 100%, 75%, 1.0);
```

---

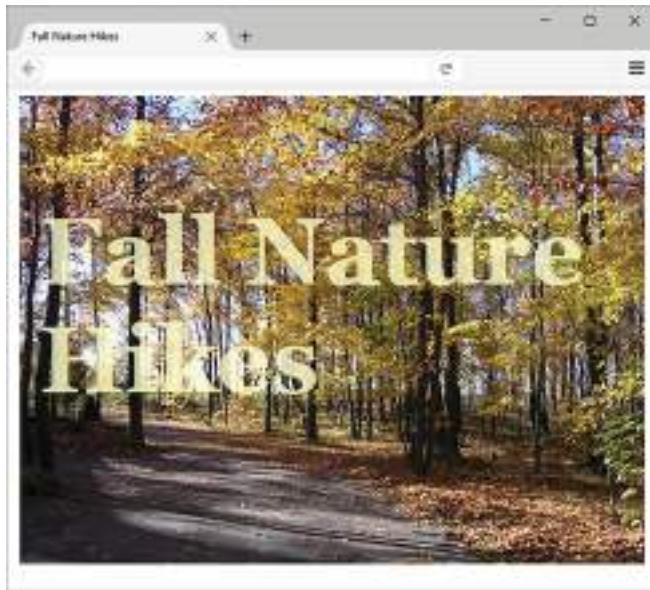
## Hands-On Practice 4.16

In this Hands-On Practice you'll configure light yellow transparent text as you work with the web page shown in [Figure 4.43](#).

---

**Figure 4.43 HSLA color**

---



1. Create a new folder called hslach4. Copy fall.jpg file from the chapter4/starters folder to your hslach4 folder. Launch a text editor and open the file you created in the previous Hands-On Practice (also located in the student files, chapter4/4.15/rgba.html). Save the file with the name hsla.html in your hslach4 folder.
2. Delete the style declarations for the h1 selector. You will create new style rules for the h1 selector to configure 20 pixels of padding and serif light yellow text with a 0.8 alpha value and a font size of 6em. Since not all browsers support HSLA color, you'll configure the color property twice. The first instance will be the standard color value that is supported by all modern browsers; the second instance will configure the HSLA color. Older browsers will not understand the HSLA color and will ignore it. Newer browsers will “see” both of the color style declarations and will apply them in the order they are coded, so the result will be transparent color. The CSS for the h1 selector is

```
h1 { color: #FFCCCC;  
     color: hsla(60, 100%, 90%, 0.8);  
     font-family: Georgia, "Times New Roman",  
     serif;  
     font-size: 6em;  
     padding: 20px; }
```

3. Save the file. When you test your hsla.html file in a browser that supports HSLA color it should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 4.43](#). See the student files for a solution (chapter4/4.16/hsla.html).

## CSS Gradients

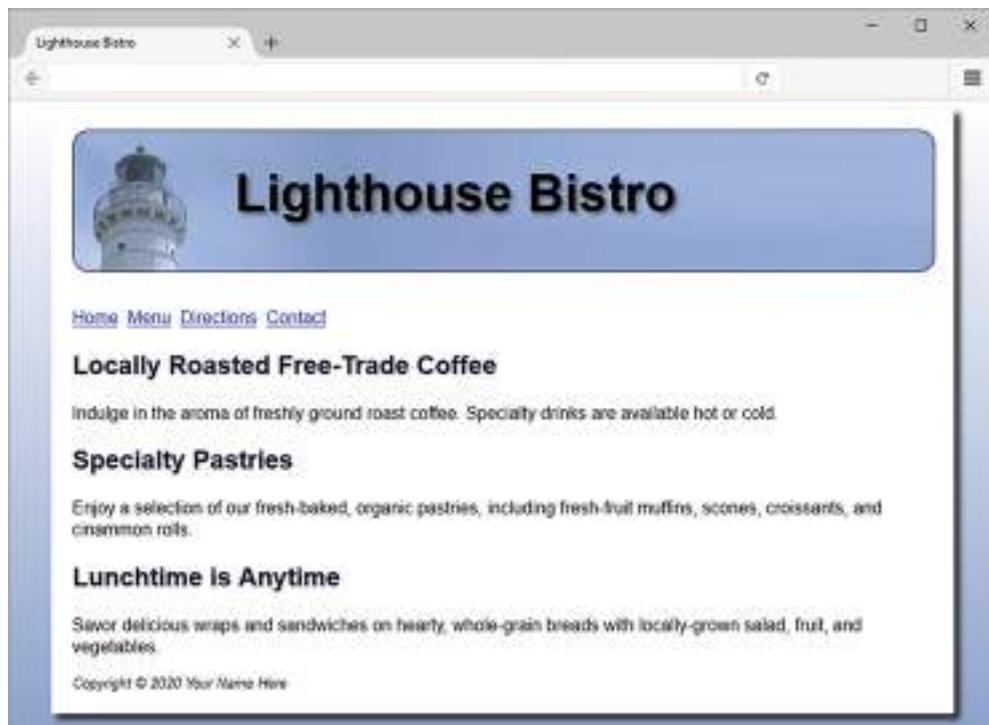
CSS provides a method to configure color as a **gradient**, which is a smooth blending of shades from one color to another color. A CSS gradient background color is defined purely with CSS—no image file is needed! This provides flexibility for web designers, along with a savings in the bandwidth required to serve out gradient background image files.

[Figure 4.35](#) displays a web page with a JPG gradient background image that was configured in a graphics application. The web page shown in [Figure 4.44](#) (available at chapter4/gradient/index.html in the student files) does not use a JPG for the background; CSS gradient properties recreated the look of the linear gradient image.

---

**Figure 4.44 The gradient in the background was configured with CSS without an image file**

---



## Linear Gradient Syntax

A **linear gradient** is a smooth blending of color in a single direction such as from top to bottom or from left to right. To configure a basic linear gradient, code the `linear-gradient` function as the value of the `background-image` property. Indicate the direction of the gradient by coding the keyword phrase “`to bottom`”, “`to top`”, “`to left`” or “`to right`”. Next, list two or more color values to indicate the color stops. The basic format for a two-color linear gradient that blends from white to green follows:

```
background-image: linear-gradient(to bottom, #FFFFFF,  
#00FF00);
```

## Radial Gradient Syntax

A **radial gradient** is a smooth blending of color emanating outward from a single point. Code the `radial-gradient` function as the value of the background-image property to configure a radial gradient. List two or more color values to indicate the color stops. The first color will be displayed by default in the center of the element and gradually blend outward until the second color is displayed. The basic format for a two-color radial gradient that blends from white to blue follows:

```
background-image: radial-gradient(#FFFFFF, #0000FF);
```

## CSS Gradients and Progressive Enhancement

The term **progressive enhancement** is defined by web developer and HTML5 evangelist Christian Heilmann as “starting with a baseline of usable functionality, then increasing the richness of the user experience step by step by testing for support for enhancements before applying them.” In other words, start with a web page that displays well in most browsers and then add newer design techniques, such as CSS gradients, in a way that enhances the display for visitors who are using browsers that support the new technique. It’s useful to keep progressive enhancement in mind when using CSS gradients. Configure a “fallback” `background-color` property or `background-image` property which will be rendered by browsers that do not support CSS gradients. In [Figure 4.44](#) the background color was configured to be same value as the ending gradient color.

---

### Hands-On Practice 4.17

You'll work with CSS gradient backgrounds in this Hands-On Practice. Create a new folder called gradientch4. Copy the chapter4/starter4.html file into your gradientch4 folder. Rename the file index.html. Launch a text editor and open the file.

1. First, you will configure a linear gradient. Code embedded CSS in the head section. Configure the body of the web page to display a fallback orchid background color of #DA70D6 and a linear gradient background that blends white to orchid from top to bottom without repeating:

```
body { background-color: #DA70D6;
        background-image:
            linear-gradient(to
                bottom, #FFFFFF, #DA70D6);
        background-repeat: no-repeat; }
```

2. Save your file and test it in a modern browser. The display should be similar to the results shown in [Figure 4.45](#). The background gradient displays behind the page content, so scroll down the page to see the full gradient. Compare your work with the solution in the student files (chapter4/4.17/linear.html).

---

**Figure 4.45 Linear gradient background**

---

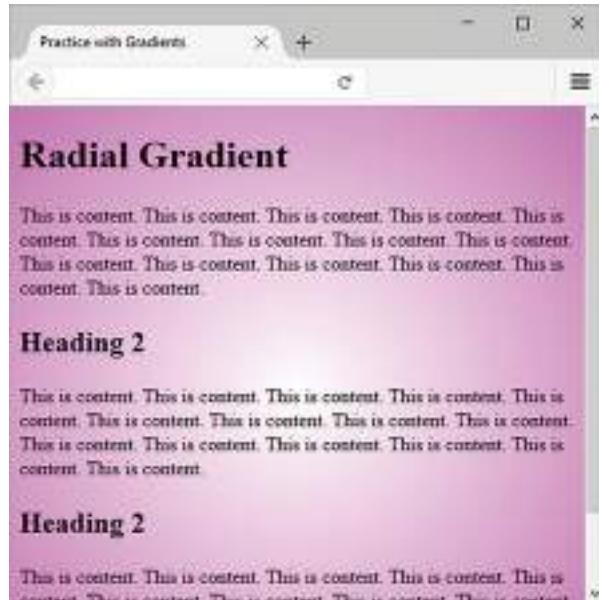


3. Next, you will configure a radial gradient. Edit the body section of the web page and code change the text within the h1 element to: Radial Gradient.
  4. Edit the CSS and modify the value of the `background-image` property to configure a radial gradient linear gradient that blends white to orchid from center outward without repeating:

```
body { background-color: #DA70D6;  
       background-image:  
       radial-gradient(  
       #FFFFFF, #DA70D6);  
       background-repeat:  
       no-repeat; }
```

5. Save your file and test it in a modern browser. The display should be similar to the results shown in [Figure 4.46](#). Scroll down the page to see the full gradient. Compare your work with the solution in the student files (chapter4/4.17/radial.html).

**Figure 4.46** Radial gradient background



FAQ

Where can I find out more about CSS gradients?

Visit <https://css-tricks.com/css3-gradients> to delve deeper into CSS gradients. Experiment with generating CSS gradient code at <http://www.colorzilla.com/gradient-editor>, <http://www.css3factory.com/linear-gradients>, and <http://www.westciv.com/tools/qgradients>.

# Chapter Summary

This chapter has introduced the use of visual elements and graphics on web pages. The number-one reason visitors leave web pages is long download times. When using images, be careful to optimize the images for the Web, reducing both the size of the file and the dimensions of the image, in order to minimize download time.

You explored new HTML5 elements and many CSS properties in this chapter. When using the new CSS properties and HTML5 elements, be mindful of the concepts of progressive enhancement and accessibility. Verify that the pages display in an acceptable manner even if new techniques are not supported by the browser. Provide text alternatives to images with the `alt` attribute.

Visit the textbook's website at <https://www.webdevfoundations.net> for examples, the links listed in this chapter, and updated information.

# Key Terms

<figcaption>  
<figure>  
<hr>  
<img>  
<meter>  
<progress>  
**alt attribute**  
**animated GIF**  
**area element**  
**aspect ratio**  
**background property**  
**background-attachment property**  
**background-clip property**  
**background-image property**  
**background-origin property**  
**background-position property**  
**background-repeat property**  
**background-size property**  
**border property**  
**border-color property**  
**border-radius property**  
**border-style property**  
**border-width property**  
**box-shadow property**  
**cinemagraph**  
**favicon**  
**figcaption element**  
**figure element**

[gamma](#)  
[GIF](#)  
[gradient](#)  
[height attribute](#)  
[hotspots](#)  
[HSLA color](#)  
[horizontal rule element](#)  
[image element](#)  
[image link](#)  
[image map](#)  
[image optimization](#)  
[image slicing](#)  
[interlaced image](#)  
[JPEG](#)  
[linear gradient](#)  
[lossless compression](#)  
[lossy compression](#)  
[max-width property](#)  
[meter element](#)  
[min-width property](#)  
[opacity property](#)  
[padding property](#)  
[pixelation](#)  
[PNG](#)  
[progress element](#)  
[progressive enhancement](#)  
[progressive JPEG](#)  
[radial gradient](#)  
[RGBA color](#)  
[resolution](#)  
[sprite](#)  
[src attribute](#)

**srcset** attribute

thumbnail image<sup>②</sup>

transparency<sup>①</sup>

usemap attribute<sup>①</sup>

WebP<sup>②</sup>

**width** attribute

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following graphic types can be made transparent?
  - a. GIF
  - b. JPG
  - c. PNG
  - d. GIF and PNG
  - e. GIF and JPG
2. Which of the following configures empty space between the content of the HTML element (typically text) and the border?
  - a. space property
  - b. padding property
  - c. margin property
  - d. border property
3. Which of the following creates an image link to the index.html page when the home.gif graphic is clicked?
  - a. `<a href="index.html" src="home.gif" alt="Home"></a>`
  - b. `<a href="index.html"> </a>`
  - c. ``
  - d. `<a href="index.html"> <img href="home.gif" alt="Home"></a>`
4. What is the purpose of coding height and width attributes on an `<img>` tag?

- a. They are required attributes and must always be included.
  - b. They help the browser render the page faster because it reserves the appropriate space for the image.
  - c. They help the browser display the image in its own window.
  - d. none of the above
5. Which attribute specifies text that is available to browsers and other user agents that do not support graphics?
- a. `alt`
  - b. `text`
  - c. `src`
  - d. none of the above
6. What is the term used to describe a square icon that is associated with a web page and is displayed in the browser address bar or tab?
- a. background
  - b. bookmark icon
  - c. favicon
  - d. logo
7. Which of the following graphic types is well-suited to photographs?
- a. GIF
  - b. JPG
  - c. WebP
  - d. JPG and WebP
  - e. GIF and JPG
8. Which CSS property configures the background color?
- a. `bgcolor`
  - b. `background-color`
  - c. `color`
  - d. none of the above

**9.** Which HTML tag configures a horizontal line on a web page?

- a. <line>
- b. <br>
- c. <hr>
- d. <border>

**10.** Which of the following configures a graphic to repeat vertically down the side of a web page?

- a. background-repeat: left;
- b. background-repeat:repeat;
- c. repeat: left;
- d. background-repeat: repeat-y;

## Fill in the Blank

**11.** A background image will automatically be repeated, or \_\_\_\_\_, by a web browser.

**12.** If your web page uses graphic links, include \_\_\_\_\_ at the bottom of the page to increase accessibility.

**13.** A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ image is a smaller version of a larger image that usually links to the larger image.

**14.** The \_\_\_\_\_ CSS property configures a drop-shadow effect on an HTML element.

**15.** The \_\_\_\_\_ element displays a visual gauge of a numeric value within a known range.

# Apply Your Knowledge

- 1. PREDICT THE RESULT.** Draw and write a brief description of the web page that will be created with the following HTML code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Predict the Result</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<header> 
</header>
<nav> Home <a href="about.html">About</a>
<a href="services.html">Services</a>
</nav>
<main><p>Our professional staff takes pride in its working relationship with our clients by offering personalized services that take their needs into account, develop their target areas, and incorporate these items into a website that works.</p>
</main>
</body>
</html>
```

- 2. FILL IN THE MISSING CODE.** This web page contains an image link and should be configured so that the background and text colors have good contrast. The image used on this web page should link to a page called services.html. Some HTML attribute values, indicated by \_, are missing. Some CSS style rules, indicated by \_, are incomplete. The code follows:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
```

```
<head>
<title>CircleSoft Design</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
body { _:_: _:_;
      color: _:_;
}
</style>
</head>
<body>
  <div>
    <a href=_>
      <br>Enter CircleSoft Design</a>
    </div>
  </body>
</html>
```

**3. FIND THE ERROR.** This page displays an image called trillium.jpg. The image is 307 pixels wide by 200 pixels high. When this page is displayed, the image does not look right. Find the error. Describe any attributes that you would code in the `<img>` tag to provide accessibility. The code follows:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Find the Error</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>

</body>
</html>
```

# Hands-On Exercises

1. Write the HTML to place an image called primelogo.gif on a web page. The image is 100 pixels high by 650 pixels wide.
2. Write the HTML to create an image for the schaumburgthumb.jpg image. It is 100 pixels high by 150 pixels wide. The image should link to a larger image called schaumburg.jpg. There should be no border on the image.
3. Write the HTML to create a nav element that contains three images used as navigation links. [Table 4.6](#) provides information about the images and their associated links.

---

**Table 4.6**

Image Name	Link Page Name	Image Height	Image Width
homebtn.gif	index.html	50	200
productsbtn.gif	products.html	50	200
orderbtn.gif	order.html	50	200

4. Experiment with page backgrounds. Locate the twocolor.gif file in the student files chapter4/starters folder. Design a web page that uses this file as a background image that repeats down the left side of the browser window. Save your file as bg1.html.
5. Experiment with page backgrounds. Locate the twocolor1.gif file in the student files chapter4/starters folder. Design a web page

that uses this file as a background image that repeats across the top of the browser window. Save your file as bg2.html.

**6.** Visit one of your favorite websites. Note the colors used for background, text, headings, images, and so on. Write a paragraph that describes how the site uses color for these elements. Code a web page that uses colors in a similar manner. Save your file as color.html.

**7.** Practice with CSS.

- a. Write the CSS for an HTML selector footer with the following characteristics: a light-blue background color, Arial font, dark-blue text color, 10 pixels of padding, and a narrow, dashed border in a dark-blue color.
- b. Write the CSS for an id named `notice` that is configured to 80% width and centered.
- c. Write the CSS to configure a class that will produce a headline with a dotted line underneath it. Choose a color that you like for the text and dotted line.
- d. Write the CSS to configure an h1 element selector with drop-shadow text, a 50% transparent background color, and sans-serif font that is 4em in size.
- e. Write the CSS to configure an id named `feature` with small, red, Arial font; a white background; a width of 80%; and a drop shadow.

**8.** Design a new web page about you. Use CSS to configure a background color and text color for the page. Include the following on your web page:

- Your name
- A description of your favorite hobbies and activities
- A photo of yourself (be sure to optimize the image for display on the Web)

Save the page as yourlastname.html.

- 9.** Design a web page that provides a list of resources for free stock photographs. The list should contain at least five different websites. Use your favorite graphic sites, the sites suggested in this chapter, or sites you have found on the Web. Save the page as freographics.html.
- 10.** Visit the textbook's website at <http://webdevfoundations.net/10e/chapter4.html> and follow the link to the Adobe Photoshop tutorial. Follow the instructions to create a logo banner. Hand in the printouts described in the tutorial to your instructor.

# Web Research

**1.** Providing access to the Web for all people is an important issue.

Visit the W3C's Web Accessibility Initiative and explore its WCAG 2.0 Quick Reference at <https://www.w3.org/WAI/WCAG21/quickref/>. View additional pages at the W3C's site as necessary. Explore the checkpoints that are related to the use of color and images on web pages. Create a web page that uses color, uses images, and includes the information that you discovered.

**2.** This chapter has introduced you to image formats used on the Web. Obtain the butterfly.jpg image found in the student files chapter4/starters folder. Use one of the resources listed below (or locate your own resource) to convert the image file to WebP format. Create an example web page that indicates the file size of the original image and the WebP image. Also code two img tags on the web page to configure the original image and the WebP image. Use a modern browser (such as Chrome, Firefox, or Edge) to display your web page. Note that if you display your page in a non-supporting browser, such as Internet Explorer, the WebP image will not display. Resources for image conversion are listed below:

- <https://ezgif.com/jpg-to-webp>
- <https://image.online-convert.com/convert-to-webp>
- <https://developers.google.com/speed/webp/>

# Focus on Web Design

Visit a website that interests you. Print the home page or one other pertinent page from the site. Write a one-page summary and reaction to the website you chose to visit. Address the following topics:

- a. What is the purpose of the site?
- b. Who is the intended audience?
- c. Do you believe the site reaches its audience?
- d. Was this site useful to you? Why or why not?
- e. List the colors and/or graphics that are used on the home page of this website: background, backgrounds of page sections, text, logo, navigation buttons, and so on.
- f. How does the use of color and graphics enhance the website?

---

## Website Case Study Using Graphics & Visual Elements

Each of the case studies in this section continues throughout most of the text. In this chapter, we add images to the websites, create a new page, and modify existing pages.

### JavaJam Coffee Bar

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the JavaJam Coffee Bar Case Study. [Figure 2.32](#) shows a site map for the JavaJam website. The Home page and Menu page were created in earlier chapters. Using the existing website as a starting point, you will modify the design of the pages and create a new page, the Music page. You have five tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this JavaJam case study, and obtain the starter image files.
2. Modify the Home page to display the winding road image as shown in [Figure 4.47](#) using the wireframe in [Figure 4.48](#) as a guide.

---

**Figure 4.47 New JavaJam Home page**

---



---

**Figure 4.48 Home page wireframe**

---



3. Modify the Menu page to display the same background image as the Home page and to display an image, as shown in Figure 4.49.

**Figure 4.49** JavaJam menu.html



4. Create a new Music page, as shown in Figure 4.50.

**Figure 4.50 JavaJam music.html**



5. Modify the style rules in the javajam.css file as needed.

## Hands-On Practice Case

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder on your hard drive or portable storage device called javajam4.

Copy all the files from your [Chapter 3](#)javajamcss folder into the javajam4 folder. Obtain the images used in this case study from the student files. Copy all the files from the chapter4/starters/javajam folder into your javajam4 folder.

**TASK 2: THE HOME PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file from your javajam4 folder. It is common for the Home page of a website to have a slightly different layout than the content pages. Modify the index.html file to look similar to the web page shown in [Figure 4.47](#).

1. Configure a div element to display the hero.jpg image. Code an opening div tag assigned to the id named homehero after the closing nav tag. Next, code a closing div tag. As shown in the wireframe in [Figure 4.48](#), this div is located between the nav element and the main element. There is no HTML or text content for this div. The purpose of this div is to display a large image (configured with CSS in Task 5).
2. Replace the “Relax at JavaJam” text contained within the h2 element with “Follow the Winding Road to JavaJam.”
3. Add a paragraph with the following text below the h2 element and above the existing paragraph:

“We’re a little out of the way, but take a drive in the country down Garrett Bay Road to JavaJam today! Indulge in our locally roasted free-trade coffee and home-made pastries. You’ll feel right at home at JavaJam!”
4. Configure the text “JavaJam Coffee Bar features:” within an h3 element below the second paragraph and above the unordered list.

Save and test your new index.html page. It will be similar to [Figure 4.47](#), but you’ll notice that a few final touches (including the background image and the winding road image) are missing; you’ll configure these with CSS in Task 5.

**TASK 3: THE MENU PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the menu.html page from your javajam4 folder. Modify the

menu.html file to look similar to the web page shown in [Figure 4.49](#).

1. Code an img element for the mugs.jpg image above the h2 element in the main content area. Be sure to include the `alt`, `height`, and `width` attributes. Also configure the image to appear to the right of the text content by coding the `align="right"` attribute on the `<img>` tag. Note: The W3C HTML validator will indicate that the align attribute is invalid. We'll ignore the error for this case study. In [Chapter 6](#), you'll learn to use the CSS float property (instead of the align attribute) to configure this type of layout.
2. Add a paragraph with the following text below the h2 element:

“Indulge in our locally roasted free-trade coffee and enjoy the aroma, the smooth taste, the caffeine! Join our Mug Club and get a 10% discount on each cup of coffee you purchase — ask the barista for details.” *Hint:* See [Appendix B](#), “Special Characters,” for the character code to display the em dash (—).

Save and test your new menu.html page. It will be similar to [Figure 4.49](#), but missing a few final touches (see Task 5).

**TASK 4: THE MUSIC PAGE.** Use the Menu page as the starting point for the Music page. Launch a text editor, and open the menu.html file in the javajam4 folder. Save the file as music.html. Modify the music.html file to look similar to the Music page, as shown in [Figure 4.50](#):

1. Change the page title to an appropriate phrase.
2. Delete the image and description list from the page.
3. Configure “Music at JavaJam” as the text within the h2 element.
4. Configure the following as the text within the paragraph element:

“The first Friday night each month at JavaJam is a special night. Join us from 8 pm to 11 pm for some music you won’t want to miss!”
5. The rest of the content in the page will consist of two areas describing music performances. The area describing each music performance consists of an h4 element, a div assigned to the class named `details`, and an image link.

### January Music Performance:

- Configure an h4 element with the following text:

January
- Code an opening div tag. Assign the div to the class named `details`.
- Configure the melaniethumb.jpg as an image link to melanie.jpg. Code appropriate attributes on the `<img>` tag.
- Configure the following text within the div after the image link:

Melanie Morris entertains with her melodic folk style.

### February Music Performance:

- Configure an h4 element with the following text:  
February
- Code an opening div tag. Assign the div to the class named `details`.
- Configure the gregthumb.jpg as an image link to greg.jpg. Code appropriate attributes on the `<img>` tag.
- Configure the following text within the div after the image:  
Tahoe Greg is back from his tour. New songs. New stories.

Save the music.html file. If you test your page in a browser, you'll notice that it looks different from [Figure 4.50](#)—you still need to configure style rules.

**TASK 5: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Open javajam.css in a text editor. Edit the style rules as follows:

1. Modify the body element selector style rules.  
Configure fadedroad50.jpg as the background image that does not repeat. This background image will fill the entire browser viewport so set the `background-attachment` property to `fixed` and the `background-size` property to `cover`.
2. Modify the style rules for the `wrapper` id. Configure a minimum width of 900px (use `min-width`).  
Configure a maximum width of 1280px (use `max-width`). Use the `box-shadow` property to configure a drop-shadow effect.
3. Modify the header element selector style rules.  
Configure declarations to set top and bottom padding to 5px.

4. Modify the h1 element selector style rules. Remove the `line-height` declaration. Code a declaration to set font size to 3em.
5. Modify the nav element selector style rules. Configure declarations for 1.5em font size size, 5px of top padding, and 5px bottom padding.
6. Code a new style rule to prevent the hyperlinks in the nav area from displaying the default underline. Use `nav a { text-decoration: none; }`
7. Modify the footer element selector style rules. Configure declarations for 1em of padding and a solid 2px top border (use #8C3826 as the color).
8. Add a new style rule for the h4 element selector that configures a background color (#D2B48C), font size (1.2em), left padding (.5em), and bottom padding (.25em).
9. Configure style rules for the h3 and dt element selectors to set the text color to #8C3826.
10. Add a new style rule for the main element selector to configure 2em of padding on the left, right, and bottom. You may need to nudge Internet Explorer to display the page as intended by adding the `display: block;` declaration (see [Chapter 6](#)).
11. Add a new style rule for the class named `details` to add 20% left and right padding. This will configure empty space on either side of the music performance description and image on the music.html page.
12. Add a new style rule for the img element selector that configures 10px left padding and 10px right padding.

**13.** Add a new selector for an id named homehero.

Code declarations to configure 300px height and to display the hero.jpg background image to fill the space (use `background-size: cover;`) without repeating.

Save the javajam.css file. Test your pages (`index.html`, `menu.html`, and `music.html`) in a browser. If your images do not appear or your image links do not work, examine your work carefully. Use Windows Explorer or Mac Finder to verify that the images are saved in your javajam4 folder. Examine the `src` attribute on the `<img>` tags to be sure you spelled the image names correctly. Examine your CSS to verify that you have spelled the image names correctly. Another useful troubleshooting technique is to validate the HTML and CSS code. See [Chapters 2](#) and [3](#) for Hands-On Practice exercises that describe how to use these validators.

## Fish Creek Animal Clinic

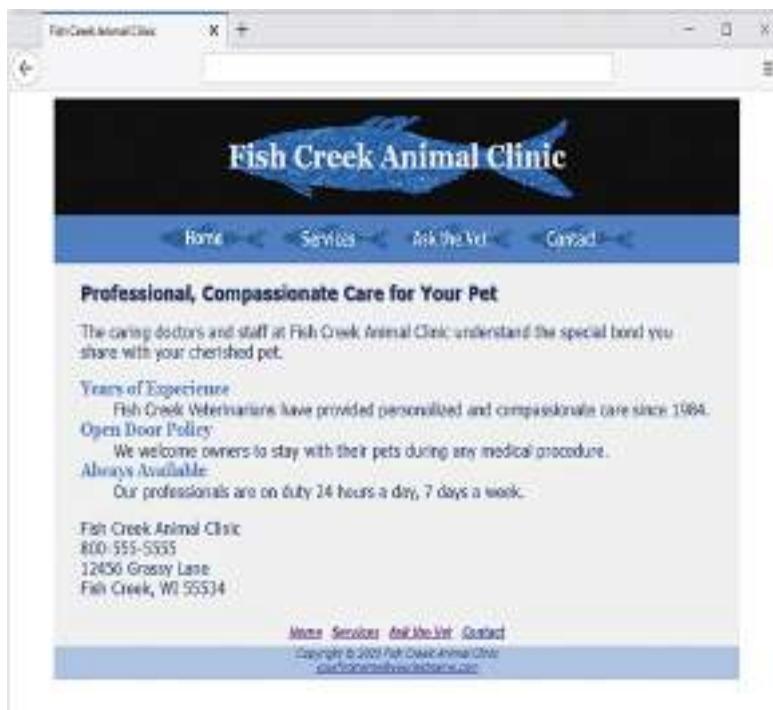
See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Fish Creek Animal Clinic Case Study. [Figure 2.36](#) shows a site map for Fish Creek. The Home page and Services page were created in earlier chapters. Using the existing website as a starting point, you will modify the design of the pages and create a new page, the Ask the Vet page. You have five tasks in this case study:

- 1.** Create a new folder for this Fish Creek case study, and obtain the starter image files.
- 2.** Modify the Home page to display a logo image and navigation image links as shown in [Figure 4.51](#).

---

**Figure 4.51** New Fish Creek Home page

---



3. Modify the Services page to be consistent with the Home page.
4. Create a new Ask the Vet page, as shown in Figure 4.52 □.

**Figure 4.52** Fish Creek askvet.html



5. Modify the style rules in the fishcreek.css file as needed.

## Hands-On Practice Case

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder on your hard drive or portable storage device called fishcreek4.

Copy all the files from your [Chapter 3](#) fishcreekcss folder into the fishcreek4 folder. Obtain the images used in this case study from the student files. Copy all the files from the chapter4/starters/fishcreek folder into your fishcreek4 folder.

**TASK 2: THE HOME PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file from your fishcreek4 folder. Modify the index.html file to look similar to the web page shown in [Figure 4.51](#).

Update the navigation area.

- Since you will be replacing the top navigation with image links, it's a good idea to provide for accessibility by including a set of text navigation links in the footer section of the web page. Copy the nav element, and paste it inside the footer area above the copyright line.
- Refer to [Figure 4.51](#), and replace the top navigation text hyperlinks with image links. The home.gif should link to index.html. The services.gif should link to services.html. The askthevet.gif should link to askvet.html. The contact.gif should link to contact.html. Use appropriate attributes on the `<img>` tag: `alt`, `height`, and `width`.

Save and test your new index.html page. It will be similar to [Figure 4.51](#), but you'll notice that the header, footer,

and navigation areas still need work; you'll configure these with CSS in Task 5.

**TASK 3: THE SERVICES PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the services.html page from your fishcreek4 folder. Configure the navigation areas in a similar way as the home page. Save and test your new services.html page.

**TASK 4: THE ASK THE VET PAGE.** Use the Services page as the starting point for the Ask the Vet page. Launch a text editor, and open the services.html file in the fishcreek4 folder. Save the file as askvet.html. Modify the askvet.html file to look similar to the Ask the Vet page, as shown in [Figure 4.52](#):

1. Change the page title to an appropriate phrase.
2. Change the text in the `<h2>` to be “Ask the Vet”.
3. Delete the unordered list from the page.
4. The page content consists of a paragraph of text followed by a description list that contains a question and an answer.
  - a. Configure the text in the paragraph as follows:

Contact us if you have a question that you would like answered here.
  - b. The phrase “Contact us” should link to the contact.html page.
  - c. The description list displays the question and answer. The `<dt>` element configures the question. The `<dd>` element configures the answer. The content of the description list follows:

Question: Our dog, Sparky, likes to eat whatever the kids are snacking on. Is it OK for the dog to eat chocolate?"

Answer: Chocolate is toxic to dogs.

Please do not feed your dog chocolate.

Try playing a game with your children – when you feed them people treats, they can feed Sparky dog treats.

d. Hint: See Appendix B, “Special Characters,” for the character code to display the em dash (—).

Save the askvet.html file. If you test your page in a browser, you'll notice that it looks different from Figure 4.52—you still need to configure style rules.

**TASK 5: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Open fishcreek.css in a text editor. Edit the style rules as follows:

1. Modify the style rules for the `wrapper` id. Configure a minimum width of 700px (use `min-width`).
2. Modify the style rules for the header element selector. Change the text color to `#F0F0F0`. Configure `fishcreeklogo.gif` as a background image that is centered and does not repeat. Configure 1em padding. Configure the text alignment to be centered (use `text-align:center`).
3. Remove the style rules for the `h1` element selector.
4. Modify the style rules for the `nav` element selector. Add a new declaration to center the text. Also set the background color to `#5280C5` and padding to .5em.

- 5.** Modify the styles for the h2 element selector to display text with a drop shadow (use `text-shadow: 1px 1px 1px #777`).
- 6.** Modify the style rules for the footer element selector. Configure centered text, bottom padding set to `.5em`, and set background color to `#AEC3E3`.
- 7.** Add a new style rule for the main element selector. Set left and right padding to `2em`.
- 8.** Add a new style rule for the navigation in the footer area (use `footer nav` as the selector) to overrule the previous nav style rule and configure a `#F0F0F0` background color. Also set font size to `110%` and bottom padding to `.5em`.

Save the fishcreek.css file. Test your pages (`index.html`, `services.html`, and `askvet.html`) in a browser. The Home page (`index.html`) should look similar to [Figure 4.51](#). The new Ask the Vet page (`askvet.html`) should look similar to [Figure 4.52](#). If your images do not appear or your image links do not work, examine your work carefully. Use Windows Explorer or Mac Finder to verify that the images are saved in your `fishcreek4` folder. Examine the `src` attribute on the `<img>` tags to be sure you spelled the image names correctly. Examine your CSS to verify that you have spelled the image names correctly. Another useful troubleshooting technique is to validate the HTML and CSS code. See [Chapters 2](#) and [3](#) for Hands-On Practice exercises that describe how to use these validators.

## Pacific Trails Resort

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Pacific Trails Case Study. [Figure 2.40](#) shows a site map for Pacific Trails. The Home page and Yurts page were created in earlier chapters. Using the existing website as a starting point, you will modify the design of the pages to display a large image on each page, as indicated in the wireframe in [Figure 4.53](#). You will also create a new page, the Activities page. You have five tasks in this case study:

---

**Figure 4.53 New Pacific Trails wireframe**

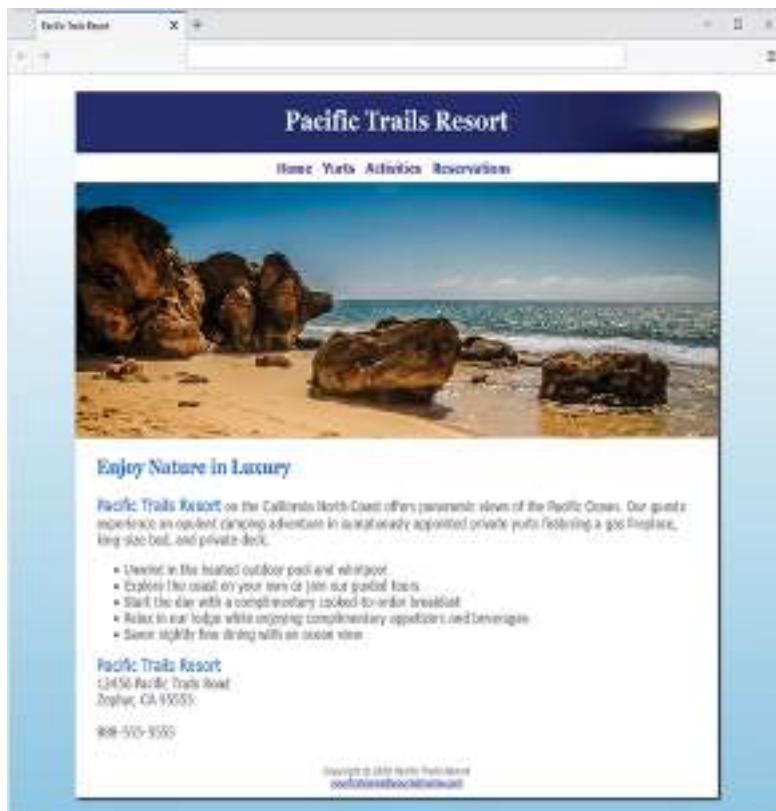
---



1. Create a new folder for this Pacific Trails case study, and obtain the starter image files.
  2. Modify the Home page to display a logo image and scenic photograph as shown in [Figure 4.54](#).
- 

**Figure 4.54 New Pacific Trails Resort Home page**

---



3. Modify the Yurts page to be consistent with the Home page.

4. Create a new Activities page, as shown in [Figure 4.55](#).

**Figure 4.55 Pacific Trails Resort activities.html**



5. Modify the style rules in the pacific.css file as needed.

## Hands-On Practice Case

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder on your hard drive or portable storage device called pacific4.

Copy all the files from your [Chapter 3](#) pacificcss folder into the pacific4 folder. Obtain the images used in this case study from the student files. Copy all the files from the chapter4/starters/pacific folder into your pacific4 folder.

**TASK 2: THE HOME PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file from your pacific4 folder. Modify the index.html file to look similar to the web page shown in [Figure 4.54](#). Configure a div element to display the coast.jpg image. Code an opening div tag assigned to the

id named `homehero` after the closing nav tag. Next, code a closing div tag. As shown in the wireframe in [Figure 4.53](#), this div is located between the nav element and the main element. There is no HTML or text content for this div. The purpose of this div is to display a large image (configured with CSS in Task 5).

Save and validate your new index.html page. It will not yet be similar to [Figure 4.54](#); you'll configure CSS in Task 5.

**TASK 3: THE YURTS PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the yurts.html page from your pacific4 folder. Configure a div element to display the yurt.jpg image. Code an opening div tag assigned to the id named `yurthero` after the closing nav tag. Next, code a closing div tag. As shown in the wireframe in [Figure 4.53](#), this div is located between the nav element and the main element. There is no HTML or text content for this div. The purpose of this div is to display a large image (configured with CSS in Task 5). Save and validate your new yurts.html page.

**TASK 4: THE ACTIVITIES PAGE.** Use the Yurts page as the starting point for the Activities page. Launch a text editor, and open the yurts.html file in the pacific4 folder. Save the file as activities.html. Modify the activities.html file to look similar to the Activities page, as shown in [Figure 4.55](#):

1. Change the page title to an appropriate phrase.
2. Modify the div assigned to the id `yurthero`.  
Replace `yurthero` with `trailhero`.
3. Change the text in the `<h2>` to be “Activities at Pacific Trails”.
4. Delete the description list from the page.

5. Configure the following text, using h3 tags for the headings and paragraph tags for the sentences:

### **Hiking**

Pacific Trails Resort has 5 miles of hiking trails and is adjacent to a state park. Go it alone or join one of our guided hikes.

### **Kayaking**

Ocean kayaks are available for guest use.

### **Bird Watching**

While anytime is a good time for bird watching at Pacific Trails, we offer guided birdwatching trips at sunrise several times a week.

6. Configure a span element to contain the phrase “Pacific Trails Resort” in the first paragraph on the page. Assign the span to the class named `resort`.

Save the activities.html file. If you test your page in a browser, you’ll notice that it looks different from [Figure 4.55](#); you still need to configure style rules.

**TASK 5: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Open pacific.css in a text editor. Edit the style rules as follows:

1. Modify the body element selector style rules.

Change the background color to light blue:

`#90C7E3`. Add style declarations to display a linear gradient that blends from white (`#FFFFFF`) to light blue (`#90C7E3`) and does not repeat.

2. Modify the style rules for the `wrapper` id. Configure the background color to be `#FFFFFF`. Configure a minimum width of 960px (use `min-width`).

Configure a maximum width of 2048px (use `max-`

`width`). Use the `box-shadow` property to configure a drop-shadow effect.

**3.** Modify the style rules for the header element selector. Configure the sunset.jpg as a background image that displays on the right and does not repeat. Configure a 72-pixel height (the same height as the background image).

**4.** Modify the style rules for the `h1` element selector. Remove the `line-height` declaration. Configure centered text and `.5em` top padding.

**5.** Modify the style rules for the `nav` element selector. Set top, right, and bottom padding to `.5em`. Remove the style rule for the background color. Configure centered text.

**6.** Modify the style rules for the `footer` element selector. Set padding to `1em`.

**7.** Add a new style rule for the `h3` element selector to configure the font to be Georgia or a generic serif.

**8.** Add a new style rule for the `main` element selector that configures `2em` of left and right padding. You may need to nudge Internet Explorer to display the page as intended by adding the `display: block;` declaration (see [Chapter 6](#)).

**9.** Add a new selector for an id named `homehero`.

Code declarations to configure 300px height and to display the coast.jpg background image to fill the space (use `background-size: 100% 100%;`) without repeating.

**10.** Add a new selector for an id named `yurthero`.

Code declarations to configure 300px height and to display the yurt.jpg background image to fill the

space (use `background-size: 100% 100%;`)

without repeating.

**11.** Add a new selector for an id named `trailhero`.

Code declarations to configure 300px height and to display the trail.jpg background image to fill the space (use `background-size: 100% 100%;`) without repeating.

**12.** Code a new style rule to prevent the hyperlinks in the nav area from displaying the default underline.

Use `nav a { text-decoration: none; }`

Save the pacific.css file. Test your pages (`index.html`, `yurts.html`, and `activities.html`) in a browser. The Home page (`index.html`) should look similar to [Figure 4.54](#). The new Activities page (`activities.html`) should look similar to [Figure 4.55](#). If your images do not appear, examine your work carefully. Use Windows Explorer or Mac Finder to verify that the images are saved in your `pacific4` folder. Examine your CSS to be sure you spelled the image names correctly. Another useful troubleshooting technique is to validate the HTML and CSS code. See [Chapters 2](#) and [3](#) for Hands-On Practice exercises that describe how to use these validators.

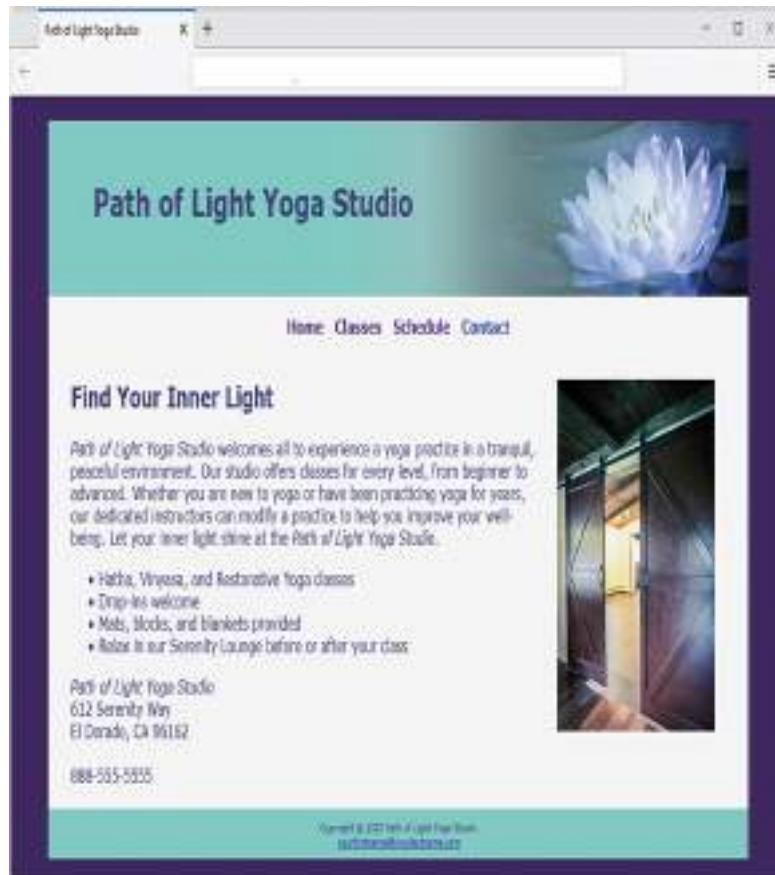
## Path of Light Yoga Studio

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Path of Light Yoga Studio Case Study. [Figure 2.44](#) shows a site map for Path of Light Yoga Studio. The Home page and Classes page were created in earlier chapters. Using the existing website as a starting point, you will modify the design of the pages and

create a new page, the Schedule page. You have five tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Path of Light Yoga Studio case study, and obtain the starter image files.
2. Modify the Home page to display as shown in Figure 4.56.

**Figure 4.56** Path of Light Yoga Studio Home page



3. Modify the Classes page to display as shown in Figure 4.58.
4. Create a new Schedule page, as shown in Figure 4.59.
5. Modify the style rules in the yoga.css file as needed.

## Hands-On Practice Case

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder on your hard drive or portable storage device called yoga4. Copy all the files from your [Chapter 3](#) yogacss folder into the yoga4 folder. Obtain the images used in this case study from the student files. Copy all the files from the chapter4/starters/yoga folder into your yoga4 folder.

**TASK 2: THE HOME PAGE.** Launch a text editor, and open the index.html file from your yoga4 folder. Modify the index.html file to look similar to the web page shown in [Figure 4.56](#).

Code an img element for the yogadoor.jpg photo above the h2 element in the main content area. Be sure to include the `alt`, `height`, and `width` attributes. Also configure the image to appear to the right of the text by coding the `align="right"` attribute on the `<img>` tag.

Note: The W3C HTML validator will indicate that the align attribute is invalid. We'll ignore the error for this case study. In [Chapter 6](#), you'll learn to use the CSS float property (instead of the align attribute) to configure this type of layout.

Save and test your new index.html page. It will be similar to [Figure 4.56](#) but you'll notice that a few final touches (including dark page background and lily image in the header) are missing; you'll configure these with CSS in Task 5.

**TASK 3: THE CLASSES PAGE.** It's common for the content pages of a website to have a slightly different structure than the home page. The wireframe shown in [Figure 4.57](#) depicts the structure of the Classes and Schedule pages. Launch a text editor, and open the classes.html

page from your yoga4 folder. Configure a div element to display the yogamat.jpg image. As shown in the wireframe in [Figure 4.57](#), this div is located within the main element. Code an opening div tag after the opening main tag. Assign the div to an id named `hero`. Code an img element for the yogamat.jpg image. Be sure to include the alt, height, and width attributes. Next, code a closing div tag. Save and test your new classes.html page. If you test your page in a browser, you'll notice that it looks a bit different from [Figure 4.58](#); you still need to configure style rules.

---

**Figure 4.57 New Path of Light Yoga Studio wireframe**

---



---

**Figure 4.58 Path of Light Yoga Studio Classes Page**

---



**TASK 4: THE SCHEDULE PAGE.** Use the Classes page as the starting point for the Schedule page. Launch a text editor, and open the classes.html file in the yoga4 folder. Save the file as schedule.html. Modify your file to look similar to the Schedule page, as shown in [Figure 4.59](#).

**Figure 4.59 Path of Light Yoga Studio schedule.html**



1. Change the title to an appropriate phrase.
2. Replace the h2 element text “Yoga Classes” with “Yoga Schedule”.
3. Modify the img tag to display the yogalounge.jpg image. Configure appropriate alt text.
4. Delete the description list.
5. Configure content for the Schedule page.
  - Configure a paragraph element that contains the following text:

Mats, blocks, and blankets provided.

Please arrive 10 minutes before your class begins. Relax in our Serenity Lounge before or after your class.

- Configure an h3 element with the following text:

Monday – Friday

- Configure an unordered list with the following text:

9:00am Gentle Hatha Yoga

10:30am Vinyasa Yoga

5:30pm Restorative Yoga

7:00pm Gentle Hatha Yoga

- Configure an h3 element with the following text:

Saturday & Sunday

- Configure an unordered list with the following text:

10:30am Gentle Hatha Yoga

Noon Vinyasa Yoga

1:30pm Gentle Hatha Yoga

3:00pm Vinyasa Yoga

5:30 pm Restorative Yoga

Save the schedule.html file. If you test your page in a browser, you'll notice that it looks different from [Figure 4.59](#), you still need to configure style rules.

**TASK 5: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Open yoga.css in in a text editor. Edit the style rules as follows:

1. Modify the style rules for the body element selector to configure a very dark background color

(#3F2860).

**2.** Modify the style rules for the `#wrapper` id.

Configure #F5F5F5 as the background color.

Configure a minimum width of 1000px (use `min-width`) and a maximum width of 1280px (use `max-width`).

**3.** Modify the style rules for the header element

selector. Remove the `text-align` declaration.

Configure `lilyheader.jpg` as a background image that displays on the right without repeating. Set height to 150px.

**4.** Modify the style rules for the `h1` element selector.

Remove the `line-height` declaration. Configure 50px top padding and 2em left padding.

**5.** Modify the style rules for the `nav` element selector.

Configure 1em padding.

**6.** Modify the style rules for the `footer` element selector. Configure 1em padding.

**7.** Configure styles for the `main` element selector. Set left and right padding to 2em. You may need to nudge Internet Explorer to display the page as intended by adding the `display: block;` declaration (see [Chapter 6](#)).

**8.** Configure styles for the `img` element selector. Set left and right padding to 1em.

**9.** Configure styles for an id selector named `hero`. Set `text-align` to center.

Save the `yoga.css` file. Test your pages (`index.html`, `classes.html`, and `schedule.html`) in a browser. Your pages should be similar to [Figures 4.56](#), [4.58](#), and [4.59](#). If your images do not appear, examine your work

carefully. Use Windows Explorer or Mac Finder to verify that the images are saved in your yoga folder. Examine the `src` attributes on the `<img>` tags to be sure you spelled the image names correctly. Examine your CSS to verify that you have spelled the image names correctly. Another useful troubleshooting technique is to validate the HTML and CSS code. See [Chapters 2](#) and [3](#) for Hands-On Practice exercises that describe how to use these validators.

---

# 5

## Web Design

---





## Chapter Objectives

---

IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .

- Describe the most common types of website organization
- Describe the principles of visual design
- Design for your target audience
- Design clear, easy-to-use navigation
- Improve the readability of the text on your web pages
- Use graphics appropriately on web pages
- Apply the concept of universal design to web pages
- Describe web page layout design techniques
- Describe the concept of responsive web design
- Apply best practices of web design

**As a website visitor, you have probably found that** certain websites are appealing and easy to use while others seem awkward or just plain annoying. What separates the good from the bad? This chapter discusses recommended web design practices. The topics include site organization, navigation design, page layout design, text design, graphic design, choosing a color scheme, accessibility considerations, designing for the mobile web, and responsive web design concepts.

## 5.1 Design for Your Target Audience

Whatever your personal preferences, design your website to appeal to your **target audience**—the people who will use your site. Your intended target audience may be specific, such as children, teenagers, college students, young couples, or seniors, or you may intend your site to appeal to everyone. The purpose and goals of your visitors will vary—they may be casually seeking information, performing research for school or work, comparison shopping, job hunting, and so on. The design of a website should appeal to and meet the needs of the target audience.

For example, the web page shown in [Figure 5.1](#) features compelling graphics and has a different look and feel from the web page displayed in [Figure 5.2](#).

---

**Figure 5.1** The compelling graphic draws you in

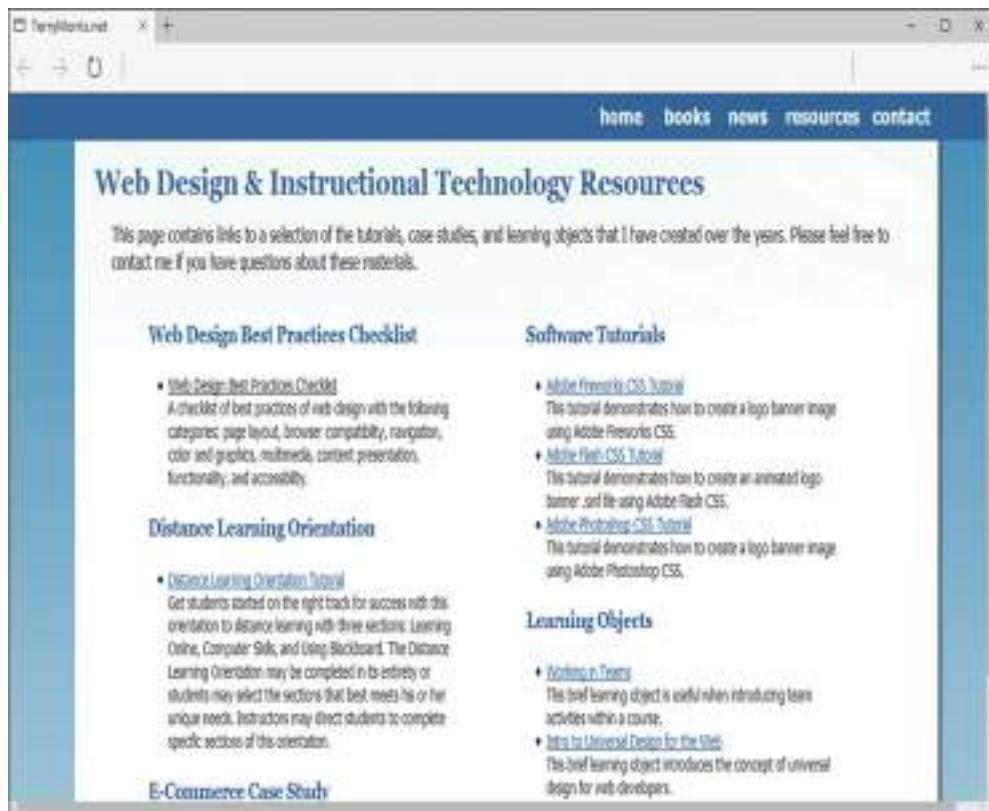
---



---

**Figure 5.2** This text-intensive web page offers numerous choices

---



The first site engages you, draws you in, and invites exploration. The second site provides you with text-based information so that you can quickly get down to work. The layout, navigation, and even the use of color and text can work together to appeal to your target audience. Keep your target audience in mind as you explore the web design practices in this chapter.

## 5.2 Website Organization

How will visitors move around your site? How will they find what they need? This is largely determined by the website's organization or architecture. There are three common types of website organization:

- Hierarchical
- Linear
- Random (sometimes called Web organization)

A diagram of the organization of a website is called a **site map**. Creating the site map is one of the initial steps in developing a website (more on this in [Chapter 10](#)).

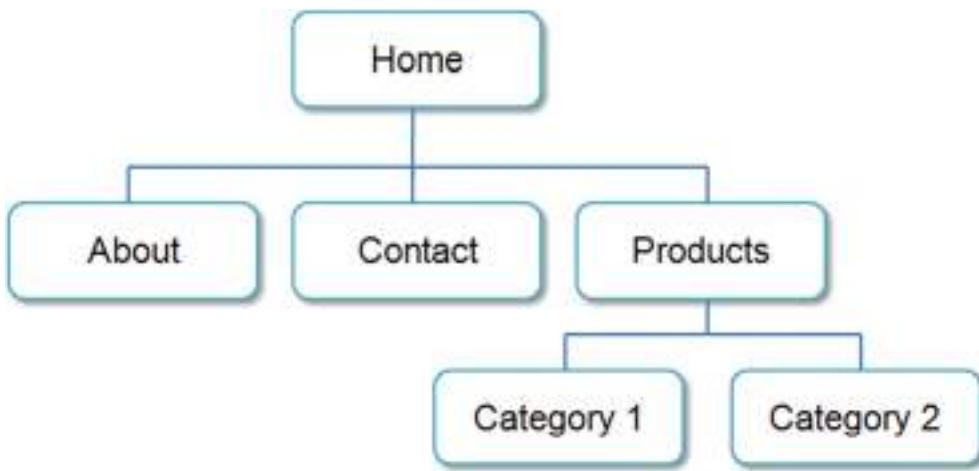
### Hierarchical Organization

Most websites use **hierarchical organization**. A site map for hierarchical organization, such as the one shown in [Figure 5.3](#), is characterized by a clearly defined home page with links to major site sections. Web pages within sections are placed as needed. The home page and the first level of pages in a hierarchical site map typically indicate the hyperlinks on the main navigation bar of each web page.

---

**Figure 5.3** Hierarchical site organization

---



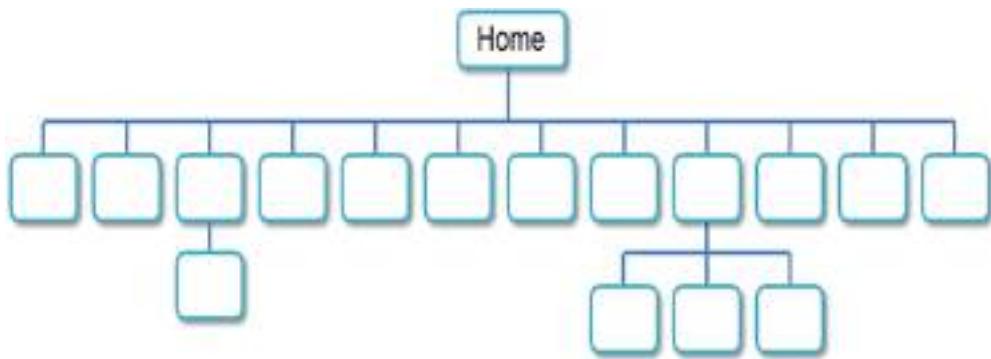
It is important to be aware of the pitfalls of hierarchical organization.

Figure 5.4 shows a site design that is too shallow—there are too many major site sections.

---

**Figure 5.4 This site design uses a shallow hierarchy**

---



This site design needs to be organized into fewer, easily managed topics or units of information, a process called **chunking**. In the case of web page design, each unit of information is a page. Nelson Cowan, a research psychologist at the University of Missouri, found that adults typically can keep about four items or chunks of items (such as the three parts of a phone number 888-555-5555) in their short-term memory (<https://memory.psych.missouri.edu/cowan.html>). Following this principle, be aware of the number of major navigation links and try to group them into

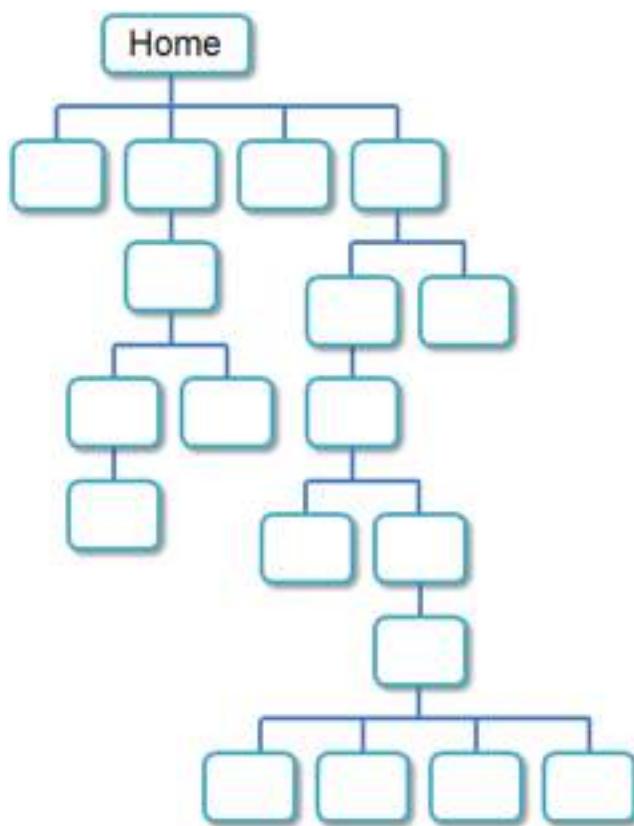
visually separate sections on the page with each group having no more than about four links.

Another pitfall is designing a site that may be too deep. [Figure 5.5](#) shows an example of this. A visitor who cannot get to the information they want will begin to feel frustrated and may leave your site. Organize your site so that your visitors can easily navigate from page to page within the site structure and locate the information they seek.

---

**Figure 5.5 This site design uses a deep hierarchy**

---



## Linear Organization

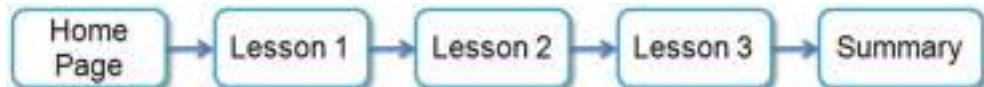
When the purpose of a site or series of pages on a site is to provide a tutorial, tour, or presentation that needs to be viewed sequentially, **linear**

**organization**, as shown in [Figure 5.6](#), is useful.

---

**Figure 5.6 Linear site organization**

---



In linear organization, the pages are viewed one after another. Some websites use hierarchical organization in general, but with linear organization in a few small areas.

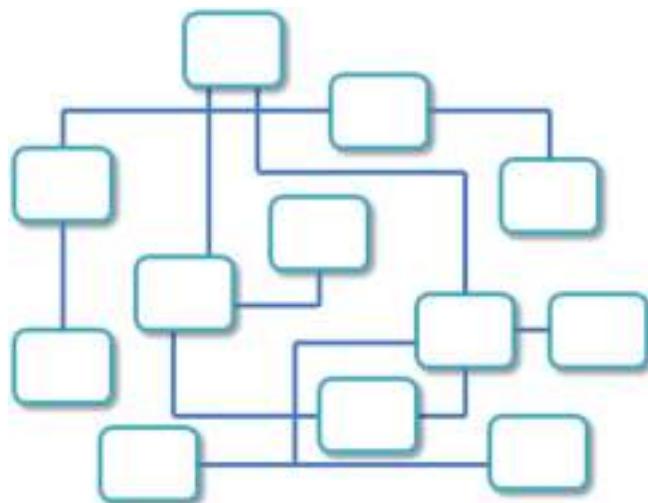
## Random Organization

**Random organization** (sometimes called Web organization) offers no clear path through the site, as shown in [Figure 5.7](#). There is often no clear home page and no discernable structure. Random organization is not as common as hierarchical or linear organization and is usually found only on artistic sites or sites that strive to be especially different and original. This type of organization is typically not used for commercial websites.

---

**Figure 5.7 Random site organization**

---



---

## FAQ

What's a good way to build my site map?

Sometimes it is difficult to begin creating a site map for a website. Some design teams meet in a room with a blank wall and a package of large Post-it® Notes. They write the titles of topics and subtopics needed in the site on the Post-it® Notes. They arrange the notes on the wall and discuss them until the site structure becomes clear and there is consensus within the group. If you are not working in a group, you can try this on your own and then discuss the organization of the website with a friend or fellow student.

---

## 5.3 Principles of Visual Design

There are four visual design principles that you can apply to the design of just about anything: repetition, contrast, proximity, and alignment.

Whether you are designing a web page, a button, a logo, a DVD cover, a brochure, or a software interface, the design principles of repetition, contrast, proximity, and alignment will help to create the “look” (visual aesthetic), of your project and will determine whether your message is effectively communicated.

---

### Video Note

#### *Principles of Visual Design*

## Repetition: Repeat Visual Components Throughout the Design

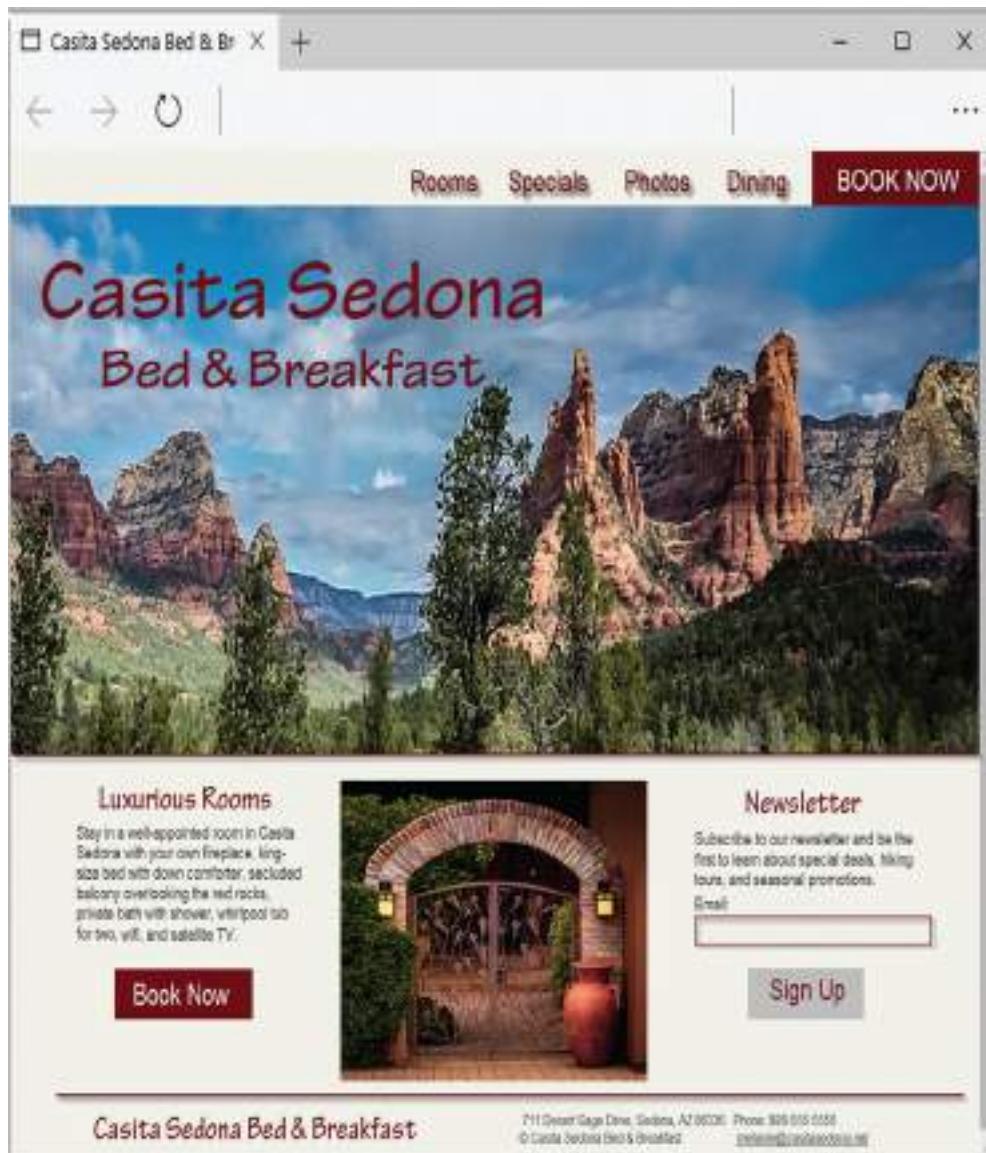
When applying the principle of **repetition**, the web designer repeats one or more components throughout the page. The repeating aspect ties the work together. [Figure 5.8](#) displays the home page for a bed and breakfast business. The page design demonstrates the use of repetition in a variety of design components, including color, shape, font, and images.

- The large photograph on the web page draws the viewer's attention. The smaller image repeats some of the same colors: terracotta, green, off-white, and grey. Colors that either occur in the photographs (off-white and grey) or that coordinate with the photographs (a dark red/rust) are repeated in other elements on the page. The rust color is

used in the headings, navigation, e-mail address box, call to action button backgrounds, and horizontal line. The page background is off-white.

- The call-to-action “Book Now” and “Sign Up” buttons both have a rectangular shape and format with heading, content, and button.
- The use of only two font typefaces on the page also demonstrates repetition and helps to create a cohesive look.

**Figure 5.8** The design principles of repetition, contrast, proximity, and alignment are applied on this web page.



Whether it is color, shape, font, or image, repetition helps to unify a design.

## Contrast: Add Visual Excitement and Draw Attention

To apply the principle of **contrast**, emphasize the differences between page elements in order to make the design interesting and direct attention. There should be good contrast between the background color and the text color on a web page. If there is too little contrast, the text will be difficult to read. Notice how the upper right navigation area in [Figure 5.8](#) uses a dark text color that has good contrast with the light background color. The BOOK NOW call to action button has a dark background that both contrasts well with the light text and serves to make it stand out from the navigation. The area under the large photograph features a light background that has good contrast with the dark text. The dark text in the footer area contrasts well with the light background color.

## Proximity: Group Related Items

When designers apply the principle of **proximity**, related items are placed physically close together. Unrelated items should have space separating them. In [Figure 5.8](#), the horizontal navigation links are all placed in close proximity to each other. This creates a visual group on the page and makes the navigation easier to use. Proximity is used well on this page to group related elements such as each heading and its related paragraph and call to action button.

## Alignment: Align Elements to Create Visual Unity

Another principle that helps to create a cohesive web page is **alignment**. When applying this principle, the designer organizes the page so that each element placed has some alignment (vertical or horizontal) with another element on the page. The page shown in [Figure 5.8](#) also applies this principle. Notice how the page components under the large photograph are vertically aligned in columns of equal height.

Repetition, contrast, proximity, and alignment are four visual design principles that can greatly improve your web page designs. If you apply these principles effectively, your web pages will look more professional and you will communicate your message more clearly. Keep these principles in mind as you design and build web pages.

## 5.4 Design to Provide Accessibility

In [Chapter 1](#), you were introduced to the concept of universal design.

Let's take a closer look in this section at how the concept of universal design can apply to web design.

### Focus on Accessibility

## Who Benefits from Universal Design and Increased Accessibility?

Consider the following scenarios:

- Maria, a young woman in her twenties with physical challenges who cannot manipulate a mouse and who uses a keyboard with much effort: Accessible web pages designed to function without a mouse will help Maria to access content.
- Leotis, a college student who is deaf and wants to be a web developer: Captions for audio/video content and transcripts will provide Leotis access to content.
- Jim, a middle-aged man who has a dial-up Internet connection and is using the Web for personal enjoyment: Alternate text for images and transcripts for multimedia will provide Jim improved access to content.
- Nadine, a mature woman with age-related macular degeneration who has difficulty reading small print: Web pages that are designed so that

text can be enlarged in the browser will make it easier for Nadine to read.

- Karen, a college student using a smartphone to access the Web: Accessible content organized with headings and lists will make it easier for Karen to surf the Web on a mobile device.
- Prakesh, a man in his thirties who is legally blind and needs access to the Web in order to do his job: Web pages that are designed to be accessible (which are organized with headings and lists, display descriptive text for hyperlinks, provide alternate text descriptions for images, and are usable without a mouse) will help Prakesh to access content.

All of these individuals benefit from web pages that are designed with accessibility in mind. A web page that is designed to be accessible is typically more usable for all—even a person who has no physical challenges and is using a broadband connection benefits from the improved presentation and organization of a well-designed web page.

## Accessible Design Can Benefit Search Engine Listing

Search engine programs (commonly referred to as bots or spiders) walk the Web and follow hyperlinks on websites. An accessible website with descriptive page titles that is well organized with headings, lists, descriptive text for hyperlinks, and alternate text for images is more visible to search engine robots and may result in a better ranking.

## Accessibility is the Right Thing to Do

The Internet and the World Wide Web are such a pervasive part of our culture that accessibility is mandated by law in the United States. Section

508 of the Rehabilitation Act requires electronic and information technology, including web pages, used by federal agencies to be accessible to people with disabilities. In 2017, an update to Section 508 Standards became official which requires meeting the requirements of WCAG 2.0 Level A & AA Success Criteria. The accessibility recommendations presented in this text are intended to satisfy the Section 508 standards and the **Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG)** recommended by the W3C's **Web Accessibility Initiative (WAI)**. The following four principles are essential to conformance with WCAG: **Perceivable**, **Operable**, **Understandable**, and **Robust**, referred to by the acronym **POUR**.

- 1.** Content must be **Perceivable**. Perceivable content is easy to see or hear. Any graphic or multimedia content should be available in a text format, such as text descriptions for images, closed captions for videos, and transcripts for audio.
- 2.** Interface components in the content must be **Operable**. Operable content has navigation forms, or other interactive features that can be used or operated with either a mouse or a keyboard. Multimedia content should be designed to avoid flashing, which may cause a seizure.
- 3.** Content and controls must be **Understandable**. Understandable content is easy to read, organized in a consistent manner, and provides helpful error messages when appropriate.
- 4.** Content should be **Robust** enough to work with current and future user agents, including assistive technologies. Robust content is written to follow W3C recommendations and should be compatible with multiple operating systems, browsers, and assistive technologies such as screen reader applications.

The W3C has approved a new version of WCAG, called WCAG 2.1, which extends the guidelines in WCAG 2.0. The WCAG 2.1 Quick

Reference in the Appendix contains a brief list of guidelines for designing accessible web pages. You can access WAI's Web Content Accessibility Guidelines 2.1 (WCAG 2.1) at <https://www.w3.org/WAI/standards-guidelines/wcag/>. These guidelines are segmented into three levels of conformance: Level A, Level AA, and Level AAA. In addition to satisfying the Section 508 guidelines, the accessibility recommendations discussed in this textbook are also intended to fully satisfy the WCAG 2.1 Level AA (includes Level A) guidelines and partially satisfy the Level AAA guidelines. Visit <https://www.w3.org/WAI/WCAG21/quickref> for an interactive checklist of these guidelines. Developing accessible web pages is an important aspect of web design. The University of Toronto (<http://achecker.ca/checker/index.php>) provides a free accessibility validation service.

As you work through this book, you'll learn to include accessibility features as you create practice pages. You've already discovered the importance of the title tag, heading tags, descriptive text for hyperlinks, and alternate text for images in Chapters 2□, 3□, and 4□. You're well on your way to creating accessible web pages!

## 5.5 Writing for the Web

Long-winded sentences and explanations are often found in academic textbooks and romance novels, but they really are not appropriate on a web page. Large blocks of text and long paragraphs are difficult to read on the Web. The following suggestions will help to increase the readability of your web pages.

### Organize Your Content

According to web usability expert Jakob Neilsen, people don't really read web pages; they scan them. Organize the text content on your pages to be quickly scanned. Be concise. Use headings, subheadings, brief paragraphs, and unordered lists to organize web page content so that it is easy to read and visitors can quickly find what they need. See [Figure 5.9](#) for an example of organizing web page content with headings, subheadings, and brief paragraphs.

---

**Figure 5.9 The web page content is well organized with headings**

---



## Choosing a Font

Use common font typefaces such as Arial, Verdana, Georgia, or Times New Roman. Remember that the web page visitor must have the font installed on his or her computer in order for that particular font to appear. Your page may look great with Gill Sans Ultra Bold Condensed, but if your visitor doesn't have the font, the browser's default font will be displayed. A list of "browser safe fonts" is available at <http://www.ampsoft.net/webdesign-l/WindowsMacFonts.html>.

Serif fonts, such as Times New Roman, were originally developed for printing text on paper, not for displaying text on a computer monitor. Sans-serif fonts such as Verdana and Tahoma were specifically designed for display on screens.

## Font Size

Be aware that fonts display smaller on a Mac than on a PC. Even within the PC platform, the default font size displayed by browsers may not be the same. Consider creating prototype pages of your font size settings to test on a variety of browsers and screen resolution settings.

## Font Weight

**Bold** or *emphasize* important text (use the `<strong>` element for bold and the `<em>` element to configure italics). However, be careful not to bold everything—that has the same effect as bolding nothing.

## Font Color Contrast

Written content is easier to read when there is sufficient contrast between text and background color. Visit <https://webdevbasics.net/10e/chapter5.html> for links to online tools that can help you verify that your page background color properly contrasts with your text and hyperlink colors.

## Line Length

Be aware of line length—use white space and multiple columns if possible. Christian Holst at the Baymard Institute (<https://baymard.com/blog/line-length-readability>) describes studies that recommend between 50 and 75 characters per line for readability.

## Alignment

A paragraph of centered text is more difficult to read than left-aligned text.

## Text in Hyperlinks

Hyperlink key words or descriptive phrases; do not hyperlink entire sentences. Avoid use of the words “Click here” in hyperlinks because users know what to do by now. Also, be aware that an increasing number of people are using touch screens so they’ll be selecting or tapping rather than clicking.

## Reading Level

Match the reading level and style of writing to your target audience. Use vocabulary that they will be comfortable with. Juicy Studio offers a free online readability test at <http://juicystudio.com/services/readability.php>.

## Spelling and Grammar

Unfortunately, many websites contain misspelled words. Most web authoring tools such as Adobe Dreamweaver have built-in spell checkers; consider using this feature. Finally, be sure that you proofread and test your site thoroughly. It’s very helpful if you can find web developer buddies—you check their sites and they check yours. It’s always easier to see someone else’s mistake than your own.

## 5.6 Use of Color

You may be wondering how to select colors to display on web pages. The right color scheme can attract and engage your website visitors while a garish color scheme can drive them away. This section introduces several methods for choosing a color scheme.

### Color Scheme Based on an Image

One of the easiest ways to select a color scheme for your website is to start with an existing graphic image, such as a logo or a photograph of nature. If the organization already has a logo, select colors from the logo for use as the basis of your color scheme. Another option is to use a photograph that captures the mood of the website—you can create a color scheme using colors found in the image.

Figure 5.10 shows a photograph along with two potential color schemes created by selecting colors from the image. If you are comfortable using a graphic application (such as Adobe Photoshop or GIMP), you can use the color picker tool within the application to determine the colors used in an image. There are also websites that will generate a color scheme based on a photograph, including

- <https://www.degraeve.com/color-palette/index.php>
- <http://www.cssdrive.com/imagepalette>

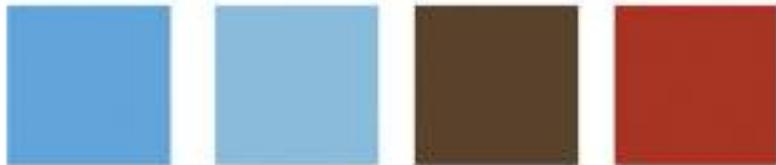
---

**Figure 5.10 A color scheme selected from a photo**

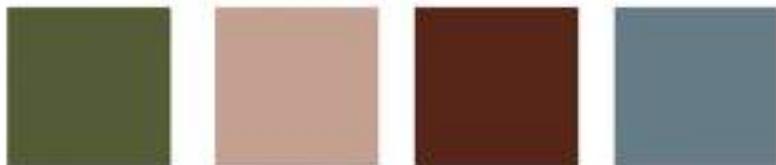
---



Color Scheme A:



Color Scheme B:



Even if you use an existing graphic as the basis for a color scheme, it's helpful to have a working knowledge of **color theory**, the study of color and its use in design. Let's explore color theory and the color wheel.

## Color Wheel

A **color wheel** (see [Figure 5.11](#)) is a circle of color depicting the primary colors (red, yellow, and blue), the secondary colors (orange, violet, and green), and the tertiary colors (yellow-orange, red-orange, red-violet,

violet-blue, blue-green, and yellow-green). There is no need to restrict your choices to the web-safe color palette.

---

**Figure 5.11 Color wheel**

---



## Shades, Tints, and Tones

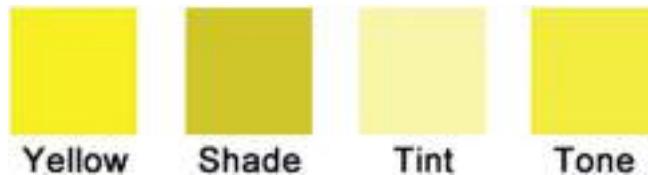
Modern monitors can display millions of colors. Feel free to choose a shade, tint, or tone of a color. [Figure 5.12](#) shows four swatches: yellow, a shade of yellow, a tint of yellow, and a tone of yellow. A **shade** of a color is darker than the original color and is created by mixing the color with black. A **tint** of a color is lighter than the original color and is

created by mixing color with white. A **tone** of a color has less saturation than the original color and is created by mixing the color with gray.

---

**Figure 5.12 Yellow with a shade, tint, and tone**

---



Next, let's explore the six commonly used types of color schemes: monochromatic, analogous, complementary, split complementary, triadic, and tetradic.

## Color Scheme Based on the Color Wheel

### Monochromatic Color Scheme

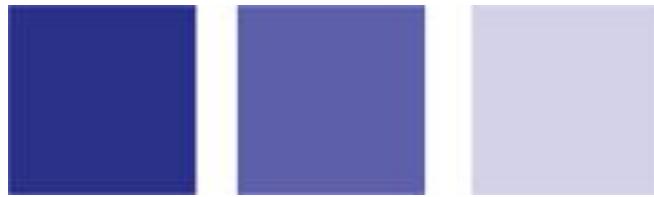
Figure 5.13 shows a **monochromatic color scheme** which consists of shades, tints, or tones of the same color. You can determine these values yourself, or use an online tool provided by one of the following resources:

- <https://meyerweb.com/eric/tools/color-blend>
- <http://www.colorsonttheweb.com/Color-Tools/Color-Wizard>  
(choose a color and view a variety of color schemes including monochromatic)
- <http://paletton.com> (choose a color and select monochromatic)

---

**Figure 5.13 Monochromatic color scheme**

---



## Analogous Color Scheme

To create an **analogous color scheme**, select a main color and the two colors that are adjacent to it on the color wheel. [Figure 5.14](#) displays an analogous color scheme with orange, red-orange, and yellow-orange. When you design a web page with an analogous color scheme, the main color is the most dominant on the web page. The adjacent colors are typically configured as accents.

---

**Figure 5.14** Analogous color scheme

---



## Complementary Color Scheme

A **complementary color scheme** consists of two colors that are opposite each other on the color wheel. [Figure 5.15](#) displays a complementary color scheme with yellow and violet. When you design a web page with a complementary color scheme, choose one color to be the main or dominant color. The other color is considered to be the **complement**. Configure the complement along with colors adjacent to the dominant color as accents.

---

**Figure 5.15** Complementary color scheme

---



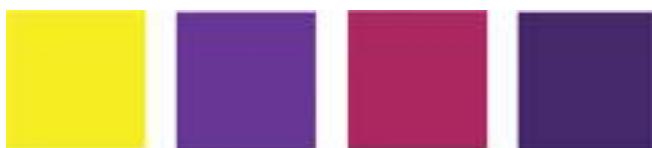
## Split Complementary Color Scheme

A **split complementary color scheme** is comprised of a main color, the color opposite it on the color wheel (the complement), and two colors adjacent to the complement. [Figure 5.16](#) shows a split complementary color scheme with yellow (main), violet (complementary), red-violet, and blue-violet.

---

**Figure 5.16 Split complementary color scheme**

---



## Triadic Color Scheme

Choose three colors that are equidistant on the color wheel to create a **triadic color scheme**. [Figure 5.17](#) displays a triadic color scheme with blue-green (teal), yellow-orange, and red-violet.

---

**Figure 5.17 Triadic color scheme**

---



## Tetradic Color Scheme

Figure 5.18 shows a **tetradic color scheme**, which consists of four colors that are two complementary pairs. For example, the complementary pair yellow and violet along with the complementary pair yellow-green and red-violet make up a tetradic color scheme.

---

**Figure 5.18 Tetradic color scheme**

---



## Implementing a Color Scheme

When designing a web page with a color scheme, one color is typically dominant. The other colors are configured as accents such as colors for headings, subheadings, borders, list markers, and backgrounds. No matter what your color scheme, you will typically also use neutral colors such as white, off-white, gray, black, or brown. Ensure that the colors you choose for text and background have good contrast. Selecting the best color scheme for your website often takes some trial and error. Feel free to use tints, shades, or tones of the primary, secondary, and tertiary colors. There are so many colors to choose from! The following resources can help you choose a color scheme for your website:

- <http://paletton.com>
- <http://www.colorsonttheweb.com/Color-Tools/Color-Wizard>
- <https://color.adobe.com>
- <https://www.colorsinspire.com>

## Accessibility and Color

While color can help you create a compelling web page, keep in mind that not all of your visitors will see or be able to distinguish between colors. Some visitors will use a screen reader and will not experience your colors, so your information must be clearly conveyed even if the colors cannot be viewed.

---

### Focus on Accessibility

---

Your color choices can be crucial. For example, red text on a blue background, as shown in [Figure 5.19](#), is usually difficult for everyone to read. Also avoid using a red and green color scheme or a brown and purple color scheme because individuals with color-deficient vision may have difficulty differentiating the colors. According to Color Blindness Awareness (<http://www.colourblindawareness.org/>), 1 in 12 men and 1 in 200 women experience some type color blindness. Visit <https://www.toptal.com/designers/colorfilter> to simulate how a person with a color deficiency experiences the colors on a web page. White, black, and shades of blue and yellow are easier for most people to discern.

---

**Figure 5.19 Some color combinations are difficult to read**

---



Can you read this easily?

Choose background and text colors with a high amount of contrast. The WCAG 2.0 and 2.1 guidelines recommend a contrast ratio of 4.5:1 for standard text. If the text has a large font, the contrast ratio can be as low as 3:1. New to WCAG 2.1 are minimum requirements of 3:1 for non-text

contrast such as user interface components and graphics. Jonathan Snook's Colour Contrast Check at [https://snook.ca/technical/colour\\_contrast/colour.html](https://snook.ca/technical/colour_contrast/colour.html) can help you to verify the contrast level of your text and background colors. When choosing color, it's important to consider the preferences of your target audience. The next sections focus on this aspect of web design.

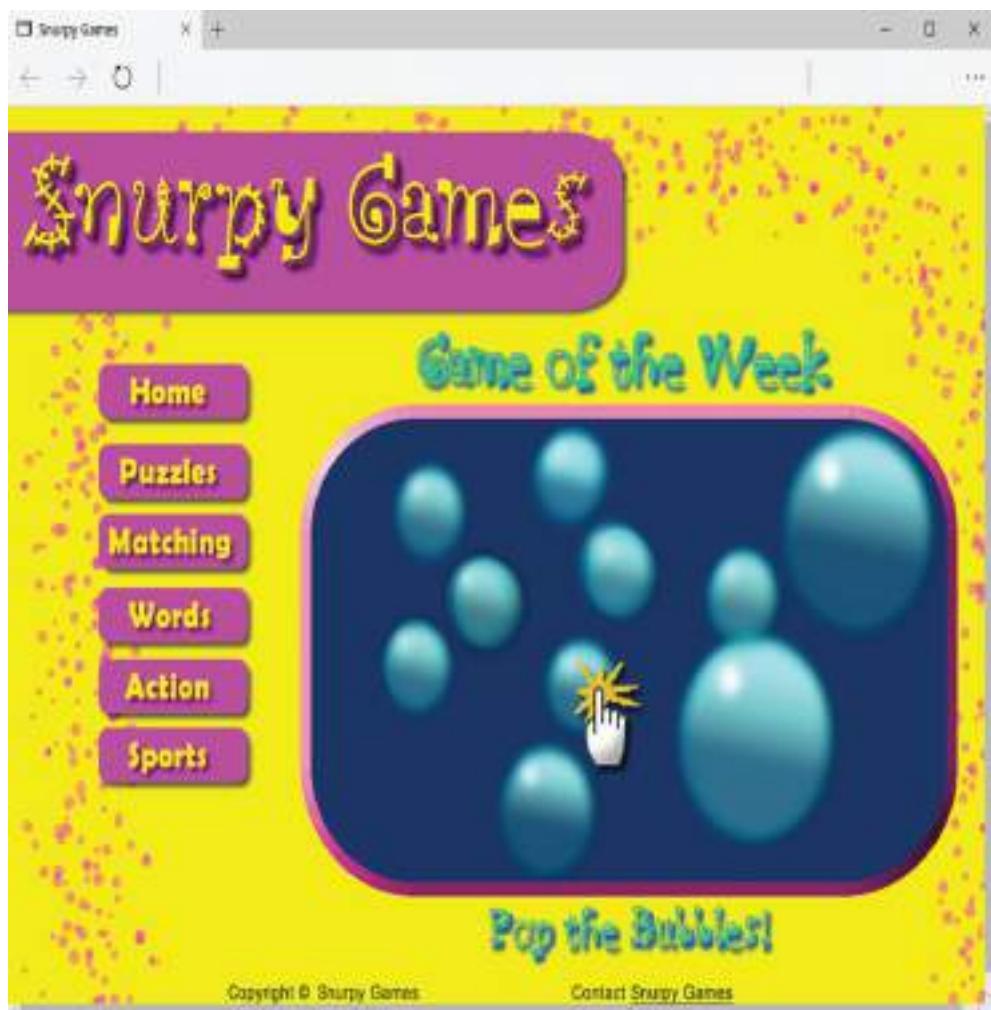
## Colors and Your Target Audience

Choose colors that will appeal to your target audience. Younger audiences, such as children and preteens, prefer bright, lively colors. The web page shown in [Figure 5.20](#), features bright graphics, lots of color, and interactivity.

---

**Figure 5.20 A web page intended to appeal to children**

---



Individuals in their late teens and early twenties generally prefer dark background colors with occasional use of bright contrast, music, and dynamic navigation. [Figure 5.21](#) shows a web page designed for this age group. Note how it has a completely different look and feel from the site designed for young children.

---

**Figure 5.21 Many teens and young adults find dark sites appealing**

---



If your goal is to appeal to everyone, follow the example of the popular [Amazon.com](#) and [eBay.com](#) websites in their use of color. These sites display a neutral white background with splashes of color to add interest and highlight page areas. Use of white as a background color was found to be quite popular by Jakob Nielsen and Marie Tahir in *Homepage Usability: 50 Websites Deconstructed*, a book that analyzed 50 top websites. According to this study, 84% of the sites used white as the background color, and 72% used black as the text color. This maximized the contrast between text and background—providing maximum ease of reading.

You'll also notice that websites targeting "everyone" often include compelling visual graphics. The web page shown in [Figure 5.22](#) ▶

provides the text content on a white background for maximum contrast while engaging the visitor with a large graphic, called a **hero**, intended to grab attention and entice the visitor to want to explore the website.

---

**Figure 5.22 A compelling graphic along with white background for the content area**

---



For an older target audience, light backgrounds, well-defined images, and large text are appropriate. The web page shown in [Figure 5.23](#) is an example of a web page intended for the 55-and-older age group.

---

**Figure 5.23 A site designed specifically for the 55-and-older age group**

---

Senior Moments

55 is the new 30!

Home   Travel   Discounts   Healthcare   Medicare   Contact

**Senior Moments is your source for:**

- ★ [Senior Travel Opportunities](#)
- ★ [Senior Discounts](#)
- ★ [Healthcare Information](#)
- ★ [Medicare Updates](#)
- ★ [News for Seniors](#)

**Celebrate Life After 55!**

Featured this week are seniors Steve and Melanie enjoying a favorite outdoor cafe in Sister Bay, Wisconsin.



Send us your Senior Moment photo!

In The News

 Best Places to Retire  
Wondering about where to retire? Here are some suggestions...

 Top 10 Cruises  
Thinking of taking a cruise? Read about our favorite cruises...

 Active Lifestyles  
Want to be more active but not sure how to begin? Get started now...

Copyright © Senior Moments

### Checkpoint 5.1

1. List the four basic principles of design. View the home page of your school and describe how each principle is applied.
2. Choose one best practice of writing for the Web. Locate a web page that demonstrates the use of your chosen best practice. Provide the URL of the web page and describe why you believe the web page exemplifies the best practice.
3. View the following three websites:
  - <https://www.walmart.com>

- <http://www.willyporter.com>
- <https://www.sesamestreet.org/art-maker>

Describe the target audience for each website. How do their designs differ? How are their designs similar? Do the sites meet the needs of their target audiences? Why or why not?

## 5.7 Use of Graphics and Multimedia

As shown in [Figure 5.1](#), a compelling graphic can be an engaging element on a web page. However, avoid relying on images to convey meaning. Some individuals may not be able to see your images and multimedia—they may be accessing your site with a mobile device or using an assistive technology such as a screen reader to visit your page. You may need to include text descriptions of important concepts or key points that a graphic image or multimedia file conveys. In this section, you'll explore recommended techniques for the use of graphics and multimedia on web pages.

### File Size and Image Dimensions Matter

Keep both the file size and the dimensions of images as small as possible. Try to display only exactly what is needed to get your point across. Use a graphic application to crop an image or create a thumbnail image that links to a larger version of the image.

### Antialiased/Aliased Text in Media

**Antialiasing** introduces intermediate colors to smooth jagged edges in digital images. Graphic applications such as Adobe Photoshop and GIMP can be used to create antialiased text images. The graphic shown in [Figure 5.24](#) was created using antialiasing. [Figure 5.25](#) displays an image created without antialiasing; notice the jagged edges.

---

**Figure 5.24 Antialiased text**

---

# Antialiased

---

**Figure 5.25 This graphic was not antialiased: The letter “A” has a jagged look**

---



## Use Only Necessary Multimedia

Use animation and multimedia only if it will add value to your site. Limit the use of animated items. Only use animation if it makes the page more effective. Consider limiting how long an animation plays.

In general, younger audiences find animation more appealing than older audiences. The web page shown in [Figure 5.20](#) is intended for children and uses lots of animation. This would be too much animation for a website targeted to adult shoppers. However, a well-done navigation animation or an animation that describes a product or service could be appealing to almost any target group, as shown in [Figure 5.26](#). You'll

work with CSS properties to add animation and interactivity to web pages in [Chapter 11](#).

**Figure 5.26** The slideshow adds visual interest and interactivity



## Provide Alternate Text

As discussed in [Chapter 4](#), each image on your web page should be configured with alternate text. Alternate text may be displayed by mobile devices, displayed briefly when an image is slow to load, and displayed when a browser is configured to not show images. Alternate text is also read aloud when a person with a disability uses a screen reader to access your website.

---

## Focus on Accessibility

To satisfy accessibility requirements, also provide alternate text equivalents for multimedia, such as video and audio. A text transcript of an audio recording can be useful not only to those with hearing challenges, but also to individuals who prefer to read when accessing new information. In addition, the text transcript may be accessed by a search engine and used when your site is categorized and indexed. Captions help to provide accessibility for video files. See [Chapter 11](#) for more on accessibility and multimedia.

## 5.8 More Design Considerations

### Mobile Devices

According to a recent study by the PEW Internet and American Life Project (<http://www.pewinternet.org>), 20% of American adults depend on their smartphones for Internet access. A Statcounter report (<http://gs.statcounter.com/platform-market-share/desktop-mobile-tablet>) showed that mobile devices (49%) have more market share than desktops (47%), and tablets (4%). PEW also reported that the percentage of U.S. Internet users with a broadband connection (cable, DSL, and so on) at home or at work has decreased from a peak of 73% in 2016. As of 2018, 65% percent of adult Americans studied had access to broadband at home.

Apply the principle of **progressive enhancement**. Design your website so that it looks good when displayed in mobile devices and the browsers commonly used by your target audience; then add enhancements with CSS and/or HTML5 to take advantage of the capabilities of modern browsers. Always try to test your pages with the most popular versions of desktop browsers (on both PC and Mac operating systems) and popular mobile devices such as smartphones and tablets. Many web page components, including default text size and default margin size, are different among devices, operating systems, and browsers. Chapter 7 will introduce techniques for designing web pages that display well on both mobile devices and standard desktop computers.

**Perceived load time** is the amount of time a web page visitor is aware of waiting while your page is loading. Since visitors often leave a website if a

page takes too long to load, it is important to shorten their perception of waiting. In addition to optimizing all images, another common technique for shortening perceived load time is to utilize image sprites (see [Chapter 7](#)), which combine multiple small images into a single file.

## Browsers

Unless you are designing for an intranet within an organization, expect your website to be visited using a wide variety of browsers. Just because your web page looks great in your favorite browser doesn't automatically mean that all browsers will render it well. A recent survey by Statcounter (<http://gs.statcounter.com/browser-market-share>) reports that about 71% of desktop website visitors use Chrome, 10% use Firefox, 6% use Internet Explorer, and 5% use Microsoft Edge. The market share of the top four mobile/tablet browsers was reported by Statcounter as: Chrome (56%), Safari (21%), Samsung Internet (7.4%), and UC Browser (7.3%).

## Screen Resolution

Your website visitors will use a variety of screen resolutions. A recent survey by Statcounter (<http://gs.statcounter.com/screen-resolution-stats>) reported the use of popular screen resolutions. The top four desktop screen resolutions were  $1366 \times 768$  (with 28%),  $1920 \times 1080$  (19%),  $1440 \times 900$  (7%), and  $2600 \times 900$  (5%). Mobile use will vary with the purpose of the website, but it is expected to grow as the use of smartphones and tablets increases. Be aware that some smartphones have low screen resolution, such as  $360 \times 640$ . The top four mobile screen resolutions were reported by Statcounter to be  $360 \times 640$  (40%),  $375 \times 667$  (9.41%),  $414 \times 736$  (4.31%), and  $720 \times 1280$  (3.87%). Popular tablet devices offer a higher screen resolution: Apple iPad Pro ( $2732 \times 2048$ ), Samsung Galaxy Tab S2 ( $2048 \times 1536$ ), and Kindle Fire HD ( $1200 \times 1920$ ). Visit <https://>

[www.browserstack.com/test-on-the-right-mobile-devices](http://www.browserstack.com/test-on-the-right-mobile-devices) for a list of popular mobile devices. In [Chapter 7](#), you'll explore CSS media queries, which is a technique for configuring a web page to display well on various screen resolutions.

## White Space

The term **white space** is borrowed from the publishing industry. Placing blank or white space (because paper is usually white) in areas around blocks of text increases the readability of the page. Placing white space around graphics helps them to stand out. Allow for some blank space between blocks of text and images. How much is adequate? It depends—experiment until the page is likely to look appealing to your target audience.

## Flat Web Design

**Flat web design** is a minimalistic design style with a focus on simplicity, blocks of color, empty space between design elements, hero images, and use of typography. Because the design is so minimalistic and uncluttered, web pages with flat design often feature vertical scrolling.

Flat web design initially avoided the use of 3D effects such as drop shadows and gradients. However, as time went along, **Flat Design 2.0** emerged which includes gradients, shadows, expanded color palettes, animation, and ghost buttons which are buttons with transparent backgrounds. The page shown in [Figure 5.27](#) demonstrates a flat minimalistic design that emphasizes typography, has large blocks of color, and has quite a bit of empty space. Visit the following resources to explore the trend of flat web design:

- <https://designmodo.com/flat-design-principles/>
- <https://flatuiccolors.com/>
- <https://speckyboy.com/flat-web-design>
- <https://spyrestudios.com/flat-design-2-0/>
- <https://www.uxpin.com/studio/blog/the-7-minute-guide-to-flat-design-2-0>

---

**Figure 5.27 Flat web design**

---



## Single Page Website

A **single page website** (sometimes called a **one page website**) is a website that contains one very long page (a single HTML file) with a clearly defined navigation area, usually at the top of the page. This navigation takes you to specific areas on the page. You can also scroll up and down to see the entire page. The first view of the page often displays a large attention-grabbing header element. Since the website is on one

long page, there should be clearly separated sections for the information topics. Single page websites often feature large compelling images, so care must be taken to optimize them to prevent a slow-loading page. A single page website can be quick to create and may be a good choice for a portfolio website, a brochure website, or an initial website for a small business. You will explore creating a single page website in [Chapter 6](#).

## 5.9 Navigation Design

### Ease of Navigation

Sometimes web developers are so close to their sites that they can't see the forest for the trees. A new visitor will wander onto the site and not know what to click or how to find the information he or she seeks.

Clearly labeled navigation on each page is helpful. For maximum usability, the navigation should be in the same location on each page.

### Navigation Bars

Clear **navigation bars**, either graphic or text based, make it obvious to website users where they are and where they can go next. It's quite common for site-wide navigation to be located either in a horizontal navigation bar placed under the logo (see [Figure 5.28](#)) or in a vertical navigation bar on the left side of the page (see [Figure 5.29](#)). Less common is a vertical navigation bar on the right side of the page because this area can be cut off at lower screen resolutions.

---

**Figure 5.28 Horizontal text-based navigation**

---



Figure 5.29 Visitors can follow the “breadcrumbs” to replace their steps

A screenshot of a web browser showing a tour details page. The title 'KayakDoorCounty.net' is at the top. On the left is a vertical navigation menu with a light blue background. It includes links for 'Home', 'One-Hour Tours', 'Half-Day Tours' (which is highlighted in yellow), 'Europe Lake', 'Sister Bay', and 'Cave Point'. Under 'Full-Day Tours', there are links for 'Custom Tours', 'Reservations', and 'Contact'. The main content area has a white background. At the top right, it shows the breadcrumb trail: 'Home &gt; Tours &gt; Half-Day Tours &gt; Europe Lake Tour'. Below this is a large image of a person in a yellow kayak on the water. To the right of the image, the tour name 'Europe Lake Tour' is in bold, followed by 'Time: One-Half Day', 'Distance: 4 miles', and 'Launch: Europe Lake'. A detailed description follows: 'Explore an inland lake surrounded by state natural area on three sides. Enjoy birdwatching while you paddle. Includes a short break for picnic and a brief optional swim.' Below this is the cost information: 'Cost: \$30.00 per person'. At the bottom right of the page is the slogan 'Your next adventure is only a paddle away!'

## Breadcrumb Navigation

A **breadcrumb trail** indicates the path of web pages a visitor has viewed during the current session. [Figure 5.29](#) shows a page with a vertical navigation area in addition to the breadcrumb trail navigation above the main content area that indicates the pages the visitor has viewed during this visit: Home > Tours > Half-Day Tours > Europe Lake Tour. Visitors can easily retrace their steps or jump back to a previously viewed page. This page demonstrates that a website may use more than one type of navigation.

## Using Graphics for Navigation

Sometimes graphics are used instead of text to provide navigation, as in the pink navigation buttons on the web page shown in [Figure 5.20](#). The “text” for the navigation is actually stored in image files. Be aware that using graphics for navigation is an outdated design technique—the more modern approach is to configure text navigation with CSS background images. A website with text navigation is more accessible and more easily indexed by search engines. Even when image hyperlinks instead of text hyperlinks provide the main navigation for the site, you can use two techniques that provide for accessibility:

- Configure each image with an alternate text description.
- Configure text hyperlinks in the footer section.

## Skip Repetitive Navigation

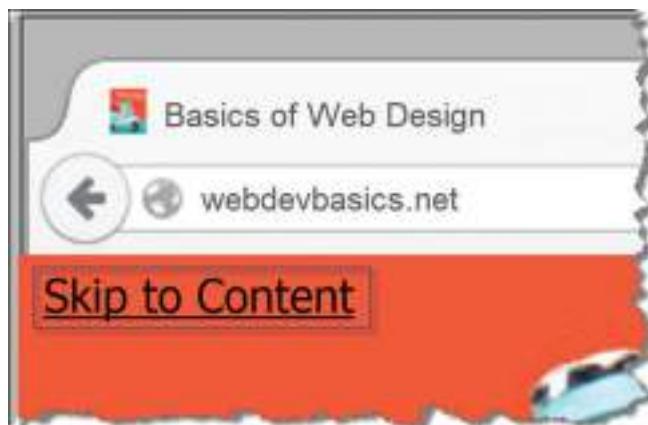
Provide a method to skip repetitive navigation links. It is easy for visitors without vision and mobility challenges to scan a web page and quickly focus on the page content. However, long, repetitive navigation bars

quickly become tedious to access when utilizing a screen reader or a keyboard to visit a web page. Consider adding a “Skip navigation” or “**Skip to content**” hyperlink before your main navigation bar that links to a named fragment (see [Chapter 6](#)) at the beginning of the content section of your page. [Figure 5.30](#) presents another way to implement the skip navigation feature. Although not immediately visible in the browser, visitors using a screen reader or a keyboard to tab through the page will immediately encounter the “Skip to content” hyperlink near the top of the web page at <https://webdevbasics.net>.

---

**Figure 5.30 Press the tab key to access the “Skip to content” link for this web page**

---



Focus on Accessibility

---

## Dynamic Navigation

In your experiences visiting websites you've probably encountered navigation menus that display additional options when your mouse cursor moves over an item. This is dynamic navigation, which provides a

way to offer many choices to visitors while at the same time avoid overwhelming them. Instead of showing all the navigation links all the time, menu items are dynamically displayed (typically using a combination of HTML and CSS) as appropriate. The additional items are made available when a related top-level menu item has focus or is selected. In [Figure 5.31](#), “Tours” has been selected, causing the vertical menu to appear.

---

**Figure 5.31 Dynamic navigation with HTML and CSS**

---



## Site Map

Even with clear and consistent navigation, visitors sometimes may lose their way on large websites. A site map page, also referred to as a site index, provides an outline of the organization of the website with

hyperlinks to each major page. This can help visitors find another route to get to the information they seek, as shown [Figure 5.32](#).

**Figure 5.32 This large site offers a site search and a site index to visitors**



## Site Search Feature

Note the search feature on the right side of the web page in [Figure 5.31](#).

This **site search** feature helps visitors to find information that is not apparent from the navigation or the site map.

## 5.10 Page Layout Design

### Wireframes and Page Layout

A **wireframe** is a sketch or diagram of a web page that shows the structure (but not the detailed design) of basic page elements such as the header, navigation, content area, and footer. Wireframes are used as part of the design process to experiment with various **page layouts**, develop the structure and navigation of the site, and provide a basis for communication among project members. Note that the exact content (text, images, logo, and navigation) does not need to be placed in the wireframe diagram—the wireframe depicts the overall structure of the page.

Figures 5.33 □, 5.34 □, and 5.35 □ show wireframe diagrams of three possible page designs with horizontal navigation. The wireframe in Figure 5.33 □ is adequate and may be appropriate for when the emphasis is on text information content, but it's not very engaging.

---

**Figure 5.33 An adequate page layout**

---

Header				
Home	Services	Products	About	Contact
<b>Heading</b> Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aliquam laoreet mi sed sapien tristique et cursus lorem venenatis. Curabitur fermentum purus ut odio sodales consectetur interdum purus dictum. Donec ac purus a lectus rutrum auctor quis sed justo. In sed enim eu dui posuere lobortis id eget diam.				
<b>Subheading</b> Maecenas ac lorem et leo sagittis dictum. Nam congue fringilla velit, at bibendum nulla placerat in. Integer dictum tortor sit amet felis placerat sed vehicula nisl lobortis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Fusce volutpat enim ut felis tincidunt</li><li>• Non ornare tellus commodo</li><li>• Sed nec diam erat</li></ul> <p>Morbi iaculis libero mi. Integer vel dolor at erat interdum interdum sit amet sit amet ligula. In molestie massa eu sem dapibus et consequat purus pulvinar.</p>				
Footer				

---

**Figure 5.34** The image and columns make this page layout more interesting

---

<h1>Header</h1>				
Home	Services	Products	About	Contact
<p><b>Heading</b></p>  Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Fusce volutpat enim</li><li>• Non ornare tellus</li><li>• Sed nec diam erat</li><li>• In sed enim eu dui</li></ul> In molestie massa eu sem dapibus et consequat purus pulvinar.	 <p><b>Subheading</b> Maecenas ac lorem et leo sagittis dictum. Nam congue fringilla velit.</p>  At bibendum nulla placerat in. Integer dictum tortor sit amet felis placerat sed vehicula nisl lobortis.	 <p><b>Subheading</b> interdum interdum sit amet sit amet</p>		
Footer				

---

**Figure 5.35** This wireframe page layout a top navigation area and a hero image

---

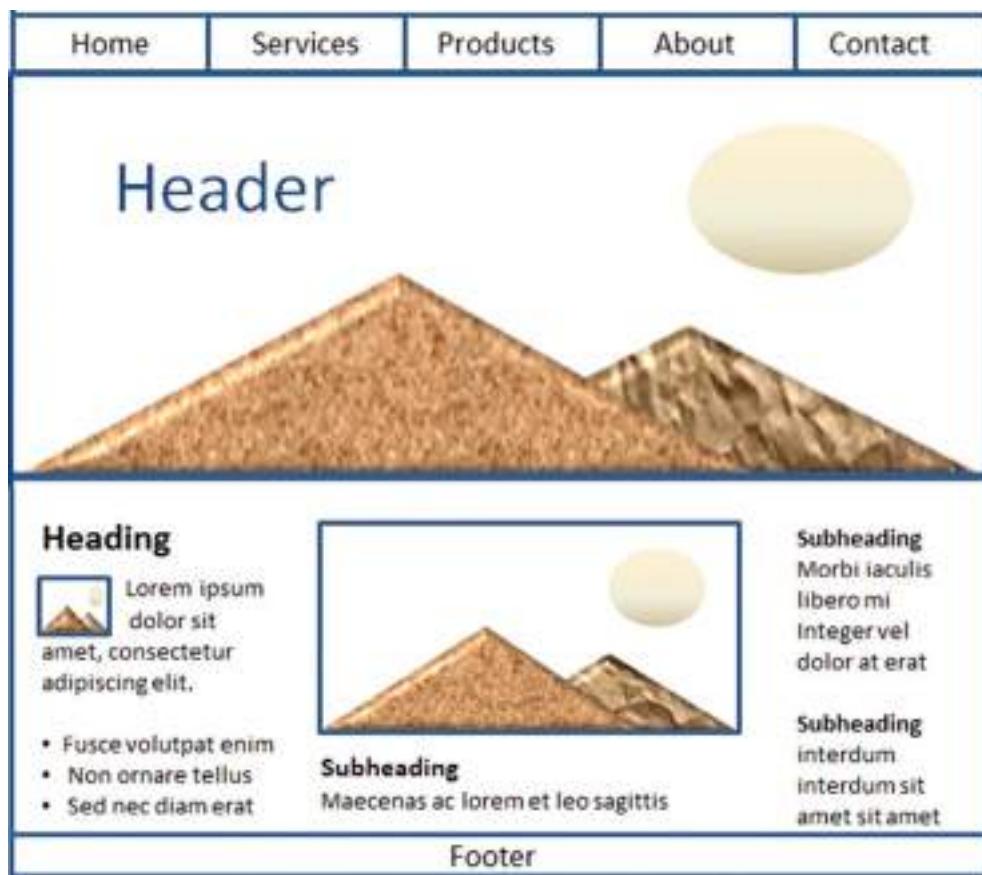
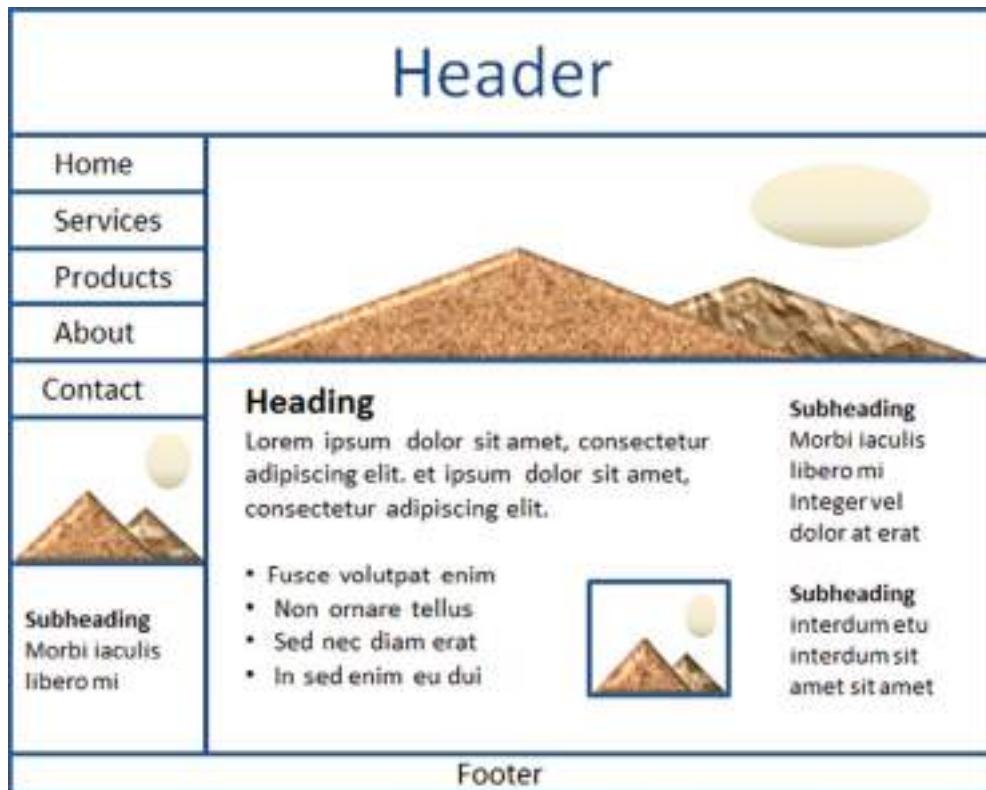


Figure 5.34 shows a diagram of a web page containing similar content formatted in three columns of varying widths with a header area, navigation area, content area (with headings, subheadings, paragraphs, and unordered list), and a footer area.

The wireframe in Figure 5.35 is formatted in three columns with a header area, top navigation area, large hero image, content area (with headings, subheadings, paragraphs, and unordered list), and a footer area. Notice how the use of columns and images in Figures 5.34 and 5.35 increase the appeal of the page.

The wireframe in Figure 5.36 displays a webpage with a header, vertical navigation area, content area (with headings, subheadings, images, paragraphs, and unordered list), and a footer area.

**Figure 5.36** Wireframe with vertical navigation



Often the page layout for the home page is different from the page layout used for the content pages. Even in this situation, a consistent logo header, navigation, and color scheme will produce a more cohesive website. You'll learn to use Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) along with HTML to configure color, text, and layout as you work through this book. In the next section you will explore two commonly used layout design techniques: fixed layout and fluid layout.

## Page Layout Design Techniques

Now that you have been introduced to wireframes as a way to sketch page layout, let's explore two commonly used design techniques to implement those wireframes: fixed layout and fluid layout.

## Fixed Layout

The **fixed layout** technique is sometimes referred to as a solid or “ice” design. The web page content has a fixed width and may hug the left margin as shown in [Figure 5.37](#).

---

**Figure 5.37 This page is configured with a fixed layout design**

---



Notice the empty space in the right side of the browser viewport in [Figure 5.37](#). To avoid this unbalanced look, a popular method to create a fixed layout design is to configure the content with a specific width in pixels (such as 960px) and center it in the browser viewport as shown in [Figure 5.38](#). As the browser is resized, it will expand or contract the left and right margin areas to center the content in the viewport.

---

**Figure 5.38 This fixed-width centered content is balanced on the page by left and right margins**

---



## Fluid Layout

The **fluid layout** technique, sometimes referred to as a “liquid” layout, results in a fluid web page with content typically configured with percentage values for widths—often taking up 100% of the browser viewport. The content will flow to fill whatever size browser window is used to display it, as shown in [Figure 5.39](#). One disadvantage of liquid layout is that when displayed in maximized browser viewports using high screen resolutions the lines of text may be quite wide and become difficult to scan and read.

---

**Figure 5.39 This fluid layout expands to fill 100% of the browser viewport**

---

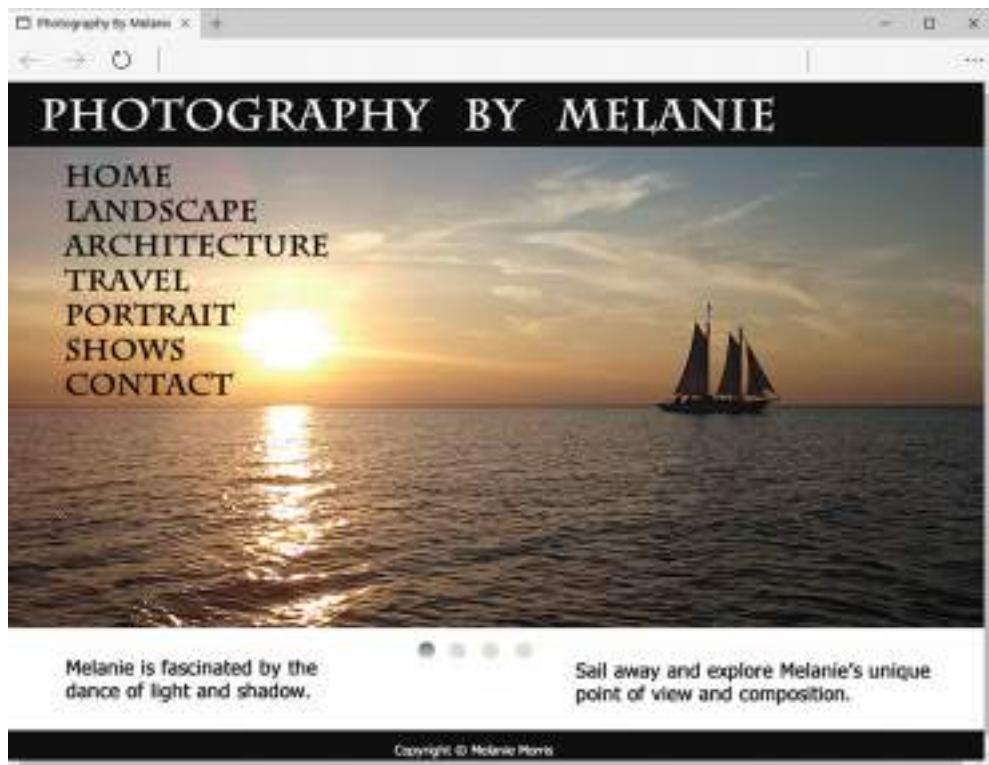


Figure 5.40 shows an adaptation of liquid layout that utilizes a 100% width for the navigation area along with an 80% width for the centered page content. Compare this to Figure 5.39. The centered content area grows and shrinks as the browser viewport is resized. Readability can be ensured by using CSS to configure a maximum width value for this area.

---

**Figure 5.40 This fluid layout also has a maximum width value configured for the centered content area**

---



Websites designed using fixed and fluid layout techniques can be found throughout the Web. Fixed-width layouts provide the web developer with the most control over the page configuration but can result in pages with large empty areas when viewed at higher screen resolutions. Fluid designs may become less readable when viewed at high screen resolutions due to the page stretching to fill a wider area than originally intended by the developer. Configuring a maximum width on text content areas can alleviate the text readability issues. Even when using an overall fluid layout, portions of the design can be configured with a fixed width (such as the two columns of text at the bottom of the content in Figures 5.39 and 5.40). Whether employing a fixed or fluid layout, web pages with centered content are typically pleasing to view on a variety of desktop screen resolutions.

## 5.11 Design for the Mobile Web

Coding techniques to configure responsive web page layouts that display differently on desktop browsers and mobile devices will be introduced in Chapter 7. Figures 5.41 and 5.42 show the same website but look different. Figure 5.41 depicts the desktop browser display. Figure 5.42 shows the display in a small mobile device. Let's explore some design considerations for mobile display.

---

**Figure 5.41 Desktop browser display.**

---



**Figure 5.42** Mobile display.



## Mobile Web Design Considerations

Mobile web users are typically on-the-go, need information quickly, and may be easily distracted. A web page that is optimized for mobile access should try to serve these needs. Take a moment to review Figures 5.41 and 5.42 and observe how the design of the mobile website addresses the following design considerations:

- **SMALL SCREEN SIZE.** The size of the header area is reduced to accommodate a small screen display. It's also common to configure nonessential content, such as sidebar content to not display on a mobile device.
- **LOW BANDWIDTH (SLOW CONNECTION SPEED).** Note that a smaller image is displayed on the mobile version of the web page.
- **FONT, COLOR, AND MEDIA ISSUES.** Common font typefaces are utilized. There is also good contrast between text and background color.
- **AWKWARD CONTROLS, LIMITED PROCESSOR, AND LIMITED MEMORY.** The mobile website uses a single-column page layout that facilitates keyboard tabbing and will be easy to control by touch. The page is mostly text, which will be quickly rendered by a mobile browser.
- **FUNCTIONALITY.** A single-column layout is utilized with navigation areas that can be easily selected with a fingertip. The W3C recommends a target size of at least  $44 \times 22$  pixels for controls requiring tapping such a navigation hyperlink.

Let's build on this base of design considerations and expand them.

## Optimize Layout for Mobile Use

A single-column page layout ([Figure 5.43](#)) with a small header, key navigation links, content, and page footer works well for a mobile device display. Mobile screen resolutions vary greatly (for example,  $320 \times 480$ ,  $360 \times 640$ ,  $375 \times 667$ ,  $640 \times 690$ , and  $720 \times 1280$ ). W3C recommendations include the following:

- Limit scrolling to one direction.
- Use heading elements.

- Use lists to organize information (such as unordered lists, ordered lists, and description lists).
- Avoid using tables (see [Chapter 8](#)) because they typically force both horizontal and vertical scrolling on mobile devices.
- Provide labels for form controls (see [Chapter 9](#)).
- Avoid using pixel units in style sheets.
- Avoid absolute positioning in style sheets.
- Hide content that is not essential for mobile use.

---

**Figure 5.43** Wireframe for a typical single-column page layout.

---



# Optimize Navigation for Mobile Use

Easy-to-use navigation is crucial on a mobile device. The W3C recommends the following:

- Provide minimal navigation near the top of the page.
- Provide consistent navigation.
- Avoid hyperlinks that open files in new windows or pop-up windows.
- Try to balance both the number of hyperlinks on a page and the number of levels of links needed to access information.

# Optimize Graphics for Mobile Use

Graphics can help to engage visitors, but be aware of the following W3C recommendations for mobile use:

- Avoid displaying images that are wider than the screen width (assume a 320-pixel screen width on a smartphone display).
- Configure alternate small, optimized background images.
- Some mobile browsers will downsize all images, so images with text can be difficult to read.
- Avoid the use of large graphic images.
- Specify the size of images.
- Provide alternate text for graphics and other nontext elements.

# Optimize Text for Mobile Use

It can be difficult to read text on a small mobile device. The following W3C recommendations will aid your mobile visitors:

- Configure good contrast between text and background colors.

- Use common font typefaces.
- Configure font size with em units or percentages.
- Use a short, descriptive page title.

The W3C has published Mobile Web Best Practices 1.0, a list of 60 mobile web design best practices, at <https://www.w3.org/TR/mobile-bp>.

Flipcards that summarize the Mobile Web Best Practices 1.0 document are available at [https://www.w3.org/2007/02/mwbp\\_flip\\_cards.html](https://www.w3.org/2007/02/mwbp_flip_cards.html).

## Mobile Design Quick Checklist

- Be aware of the small screen size and bandwidth issues.
- Configure nonessential content, such as sidebar content, to not display.
- Consider replacing desktop background images with graphics optimized for small screen display.
- Provide descriptive alternate text for images.
- Use a single-column layout for mobile display.
- Choose colors to maximize contrast.

## 5.12 Responsive Web Design

**Responsive web design** is a term coined by noted web developer Ethan Marcotte (<http://alistapart.com/article/responsive-web-design>) to describe progressively enhancing a web page for different viewing contexts (such as smartphones and tablets) through the use of coding techniques, including fluid layouts, flexible images, and media queries. In [Chapter 7](#), you'll configure flexible images and responsive page layouts with a variety of CSS coding techniques including CSS Flexible Box Layout, CSS Grid Layout, and **CSS media queries**, which is a technique for configuring a web page to display well at various screen resolutions.

Visit the Media Queries website (<https://mediaqueri.es>) to view a gallery of sites that demonstrate this method for responsive web design. The screen captures in the Media Queries gallery show web pages at the following screen widths: 320px (smartphone display), 768px (tablet portrait display), 1024px (netbook display and landscape tablet display), and 1600px (large desktop display).

You might be surprised to discover that [Figures 5.44](#), [5.45](#), and [5.46](#) are actually the same web page .html file that is configured with CSS to display differently, depending on the viewport size detected by media queries. [Figure 5.44](#) shows the standard desktop browser display.

---

**Figure 5.44 Desktop display of the web page**

---



Figure 5.45 Portrait orientation tablet display of the web page

Rooms Specials Photos Dining **BOOK NOW**

# Casita Sedona Bed & Breakfast



**Luxurious Rooms**

Stay in a well-appointed room in Casita Sedona with your own fireplace, king-size bed with down comforter, secluded balcony overlooking the red rocks, private bath with shower, whirlpool tub for two, wifi, and satellite TV.

**Book Now**

**Newsletter**

Subscribe to our newsletter and be the first to learn about special deals, hiking tours, and seasonal promotions.

Email

**Sign Up**



**Casita Sedona Bed & Breakfast**

711 Desert Sage Drive, Sedona, AZ 86336 Phone: 900-555-0005  
© Casita Sedona Bed & Breakfast [reservations@casitasedona.com](mailto:reservations@casitasedona.com)

Figure 5.46 Smartphone display of the web page



Figure 5.45 □ demonstrates how the page would render on a tablet using portrait orientation. Figure 5.46 □ shows the web page displayed on a mobile device such as a smartphone—note the smaller images and prominent phone number.

## 5.13 Web Design Best Practices Checklist

Table 5.1 contains a checklist of recommended web design practices.

Use this as a guide to help you create easy-to-read, usable, and accessible web pages.

**Table 5.1 Web design best practices checklist Note: Web Design Best Practices Checklist is copyrighted by Terry Ann Morris, Ed.D. (<https://terrymorris.net/bestpractices>). Used with permission.**

Page Layout		
<input type="checkbox"/>	1.	Appealing to target audience
<input type="checkbox"/>	2.	Consistent site header/logo
<input type="checkbox"/>	3.	Consistent navigation area
<input type="checkbox"/>	4.	Informative page title that includes the company/organization/site name
<input type="checkbox"/>	5.	Page footer area includes copyright, last update, contact e-mail address
<input type="checkbox"/>	6.	Good use of basic design principles: repetition, contrast, proximity, and alignment

## Page Layout

<input type="checkbox"/>	7.	Balance of text/graphics/white space on page
<input type="checkbox"/>	8.	Good contrast between text and background
<input type="checkbox"/>	9.	Home page downloads within 10 seconds on mobile device
<input type="checkbox"/>	10.	Viewport meta tag is used to enhance display on smartphones (see <a href="#">Chapter 7</a> )
<input type="checkbox"/>	11.	Media queries configure responsive page layout for smartphone and tablet display (see <a href="#">Chapter 7</a> )

## Browser Compatibility

<input type="checkbox"/>	1.	Displays on current versions of Microsoft Edge
<input type="checkbox"/>	2.	Displays on current versions of Firefox
<input type="checkbox"/>	3.	Displays on current versions of Google Chrome
<input type="checkbox"/>	4.	Displays on current versions of Safari

## Browser Compatibility

<input type="checkbox"/>	5.	Displays on current versions of Internet Explorer
<input type="checkbox"/>	6.	Displays on mobile devices (including tablets and smartphones)

## Navigation

<input type="checkbox"/>	1.	Main navigation links are clearly and consistently labeled
<input type="checkbox"/>	2.	Navigation is easy to use for target audience
<input type="checkbox"/>	3.	If main navigation uses images, clear text links are in the footer section of the page
<input type="checkbox"/>	4.	Navigation is structured in an unordered list
<input type="checkbox"/>	5.	Navigation aids (such as site map, skip to content link, and/or breadcrumbs) are used
<input type="checkbox"/>	6.	All navigation hyperlinks work

## Color and Graphics

<input type="checkbox"/>	1.	Color scheme is limited to a maximum of three or four colors plus neutrals
<input type="checkbox"/>	2.	Color is used consistently
<input type="checkbox"/>	3.	Background and text colors have sufficient contrast
<input type="checkbox"/>	4.	Color is not used alone to convey meaning
<input type="checkbox"/>	5.	Use of color and graphics enhances rather than detracts from the site
<input type="checkbox"/>	6.	Graphics are optimized and do not slow download significantly
<input type="checkbox"/>	7.	Each graphic used serves a clear purpose
<input type="checkbox"/>	8.	Img elements use the alt attribute to configure alternate text replacement
<input type="checkbox"/>	9.	Animated images do not distract from the site

### **Multimedia (see Chapter 11)**

<input type="checkbox"/>	1.	Each audio or video file used serves a clear purpose
<input type="checkbox"/>	2.	The audio or video files used enhance rather than distract from the site
<input type="checkbox"/>	3.	Captions or transcripts are provided for each audio or video file used
<input type="checkbox"/>	4.	The file size is indicated for audio or video file downloads
<input type="checkbox"/>	5.	If needed, hyperlinks to downloads for media plug-ins are provided
<input type="checkbox"/>	6.	Animation enhances rather than distracts from the site content

### **Content Presentation**

<input type="checkbox"/>	1.	Common fonts such as Arial, Verdana, Georgia, or Times New Roman are used
<input type="checkbox"/>	2.	Writing techniques for the Web are used: headings, bullet points, brief paragraphs, and so on

## Content Presentation

<input type="checkbox"/>	3.	Fonts, font sizes, and font colors are consistently used
<input type="checkbox"/>	4.	If web fonts are configured, no more than one font typeface is used.
<input type="checkbox"/>	5.	Content provides meaningful, useful information
<input type="checkbox"/>	6.	Content is organized in a consistent manner
<input type="checkbox"/>	7.	Information is easy to find (minimal clicks)
<input type="checkbox"/>	8.	Timeliness: The date of the last revision and/or copyright date is accurate
<input type="checkbox"/>	9.	Content does not include outdated material
<input type="checkbox"/>	10.	Content is free of typographical and grammatical errors
<input type="checkbox"/>	11.	Avoids the use of “Click here” when writing text for hyperlinks
<input type="checkbox"/>	12.	Hyperlinks use a consistent set of colors to indicate visited/nonvisited status
<input type="checkbox"/>	13.	Alternate text equivalent to content is provided for graphics and media

## Functionality

<input type="checkbox"/>	1.	All internal hyperlinks work
<input type="checkbox"/>	2.	All external hyperlinks work
<input type="checkbox"/>	3.	All forms (see <a href="#">Chapter 9</a> ) function as expected
<input type="checkbox"/>	4.	No JavaScript (see <a href="#">Chapters 11</a> and <a href="#">14</a> ) errors are generated by the pages

## Accessibility

<input type="checkbox"/>	1.	When the main navigation consists of images and/or multimedia, the page footer area contains text hyperlinks
<input type="checkbox"/>	2.	Navigation is structured in an unordered list
<input type="checkbox"/>	3.	Navigation aids, such as site map, skip navigation link, or breadcrumbs are used
<input type="checkbox"/>	4.	Color is not used alone to convey meaning
<input type="checkbox"/>	5.	Text color has sufficient contrast with background color

## Accessibility

<input type="checkbox"/>	6.	Img element use the alt attribute to configure alternate text replacement
<input type="checkbox"/>	7.	If graphics are used to convey meaning, the alternate text equivalent is provided
<input type="checkbox"/>	8.	If media is used to convey meaning, the alternate text equivalent is provided
<input type="checkbox"/>	9.	Captions or transcripts are provided for each audio or video file used
<input type="checkbox"/>	10.	Attributes designed to improve accessibility, such as alt and title, are used where appropriate
<input type="checkbox"/>	11.	Use the <code>id</code> and <code>headers</code> attributes to improve the accessibility of table data (see <a href="#">Chapter 8</a> )
<input type="checkbox"/>	12.	If the site uses frames, frame titles are configured and meaningful content is placed in the no-frames area
<input type="checkbox"/>	13.	To assist screen readers, the spoken language of the page is indicated with the HTML element's <code>lang</code> attribute

## Checkpoint 5.2

1. View the home page of your school. Use the Web Design Best Practices Checklist ([Table 5.1](#)) to evaluate the page. Describe the results.
2. View your favorite website or a URL provided by your instructor. Maximize and resize the browser window. Decide whether the site uses fixed or fluid design. Adjust the screen resolution on your monitor to a different resolution than you normally use. Does the website look similar or very different? Offer two recommendations for improving the design of the site.
3. List three best practices used when placing graphics on web pages. View the home page of your school. Describe the use of web graphic design best practices on this page.

# Chapter Summary

This chapter introduced recommended web design practices. The choices you make in the use of page layout, color, graphics, text, and media depend on your particular target audience. Developing an accessible website should be the goal of every web developer. Visit the textbook website at <https://www.webdevfoundations.net> for examples, the links listed in this chapter, and updated information.

# Key Terms

[alignment](#)  
[analogous color scheme](#)  
[antialiasing](#)  
[breadcrumb trail](#)  
[chunking](#)  
[color theory](#)  
[color wheel](#)  
[complement](#)  
[complementary color scheme](#)  
[contrast](#)  
[fixed layout](#)  
[flat web design](#)  
[fluid layout](#)  
[hero](#)  
[hierarchical organization](#)  
[horizontal scrolling](#)  
[linear organization](#)  
[load time](#)  
[media queries](#)  
[monochromatic color scheme](#)  
[navigation bars](#)  
[page layouts](#)  
[perceived load time](#)  
[POUR](#)  
[progressive enhancement](#)  
[proximity](#)  
[random organization](#)  
[repetition](#)

[responsive web design](#) ⓘ

[screen resolutions](#)

[shade](#) ⓘ

[single page website](#) ⓘ

[site map](#) ⓘ

[site search](#) ⓘ

[skip to content](#) ⓘ

[split complementary color scheme](#) ⓘ

[target audience](#) ⓘ

[tetradic color scheme](#) ⓘ

[tint](#) ⓘ

[tone](#) ⓘ

[triadic color scheme](#) ⓘ

[WAI \(Web Accessibility Initiative\)](#) ⓘ

[Web Content Accessibility Guidelines 2.1 \(WCAG 2.1\)](#) ⓘ

[white space](#) ⓘ

[wireframe](#) ⓘ

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following is a sketch or blueprint of a web page that shows the structure (but not the detailed design) of basic page elements?
  - a. drawing
  - b. HTML code
  - c. site map
  - d. wireframe
2. Which of the following is not a web design recommended practice?
  - a. Design your site to be easy to navigate.
  - b. Colorful pages appeal to everyone.
  - c. Design your pages to load quickly.
  - d. Limit the use of animated items.
3. Which of the following are the three most common methods for organizing websites?
  - a. horizontal, vertical, and diagonal
  - b. hierarchical, linear, and random
  - c. accessible, readable, and maintainable
  - d. contrast, repetition, and proximity
4. Which of the following are the four principles of the Web Content Accessibility Guidelines?
  - a. repetition, contrast, proximity, and alignment
  - b. perceivable, operable, understandable, and robust
  - c. accessible, readable, maintainable, and reliable
  - d. hierarchical, linear, random, and sequential

**5.** Which of the following would a consistent website design *not* have?

- a.** a similar navigation area on each content page
- b.** the same fonts on each content page
- c.** a different background color on each page
- d.** the same logo

**6.** Which of the following are influenced by the intended or target audience of a site?

- a.** the amount of color used on the site
- b.** the font size and styles used on the site
- c.** the overall look and feel of the site
- d.** all of the above

**7.** Which of the following recommended design practices apply to a website that uses images for its main site navigation?

- a.** Provide alternative text for the images.
- b.** Place text links at the bottom of the page.
- c.** Both a and b.
- d.** No special considerations are needed.

**8.** Which of the following is known as white space?

- a.** the empty screen area around blocks of text and images
- b.** the background color of white used for a page
- c.** configuring the color of the text to be white
- d.** none of the above

**9.** Which of the following should you do when creating text hyperlinks?

- a.** Create the entire sentence as a hyperlink.
- b.** Include the words "Click here" in your text.
- c.** Use a key phrase as a hyperlink.
- d.** none of the above

**10.** Which of the following is a color scheme that consists of two colors that are opposite each other on the color wheel?

- a.** analogous

- b. complementary
- c. split complementary
- d. contrasting

## Fill in the Blank

11. The most common structure used for commercial websites is \_\_\_\_\_ organization.
12. All browsers and browser versions \_\_\_\_\_ display web pages in exactly the same way.
13. The \_\_\_\_\_ is a group whose mission is to create guidelines and standards for web accessibility.

## Short Answer

14. Describe an issue to consider when designing for the mobile Web.
15. Describe one of the four principles of WCAG.

# Hands-On Exercises

**1. WEB DESIGN EVALUATION.** As you read this chapter, you explored web page design, including navigation design techniques and the design principles of repetition, contrast, proximity, and alignment. In this exercise, you'll review and evaluate the design of a website. Your instructor may provide you with the URL of a website to evaluate. If not, choose a website to evaluate from the following list of URLs:

<https://www.telework.gov>

<https://www.dcmm.org>

<https://www.sedonalibrary.org>

<https://bostonglobe.com>

<https://www.alistapart.com>

Visit the website you are evaluating. Write a paper that includes the following information:

- a. URL of the website
- b. Name of the website
- c. Target audience
- d. Screenshot of the home page
- e. Indicate the type(s) of navigation evident.
- f. Describe how the design principles of contrast, repetition, alignment, and contrast are applied. Be specific.
- g. Complete the Web Design Best Practices Checklist (see [Table 5.1](#)).
- h. Recommend one improvement for the website.

**2. Practice creating site maps for the following situations.**

- a. Doug Kowalski is a freelance photographer who specializes in nature photography. He often gets contract work shooting photos for textbooks and journals. Doug

would like a website that showcases his talents and provides publishers with an easy way to contact him. He would like a home page, a few pages with samples of his nature photographs, and a contact page. Create a site map based on this scenario.

- b. Mary Ruarez owns a business, named Just Throw Me, which sells handcrafted specialty pillows. She currently sells at craft fairs and local gift shops, but would like to expand her business to the Web. She would like a website with a home page, a page that describes her products, a page for each of her seven pillow styles, and an order page. She has been advised that because she is collecting information from individuals, a page describing her privacy policy would be a good idea. Create a site map based on this scenario.
- c. Prakesh Khan owns a dog-grooming business named A Dog's Life. He would like a website that includes a home page, a page about grooming services, a page with a map to his shop, a contact page, and a section that explains how to select a good pet. The content for the part of the website on selecting a pet will be a step-by-step presentation. Create a site map based on this scenario.

3. Practice creating wireframe page layouts for the following situations. Use the style for page layout composition shown in [Figures 5.33 – 5.36](#) where places for logo, navigation, text, and images are indicated. Do not worry about exact wording or exact images.

- a. Create sample wireframe page layouts for Doug Kowalski's photography business, described in 2(a). Create a wireframe layout for the home page. Create another wireframe page layout for the content pages.

- b.** Create sample wireframe page layouts for the Just Throw Me website described in 2(b). Create a wireframe layout for the home page. Create another wireframe page layout for the content pages.
- c.** Create sample wireframe page layouts for the A Dog's Life website described in 2(c). Create a wireframe layout for the home page and the regular content pages. Create another wireframe page layout for the presentation pages.
- 4.** Choose two sites that are similar in nature or have a similar target audience, such as the following:
- [Amazon.com](https://www.amazon.com) (<https://www.amazon.com>) and Barnes & Noble (<http://www.bn.com>)
  - Kohl's (<https://www.kohls.com>) and JCPenney (<http://www.jcpenney.com>)
  - CNN (<https://www.cnn.com>) and MSNBC (<http://www.msnbc.com>)
- Describe how the two sites you chose to review exhibit the design principles of repetition, contrast, proximity, and alignment.
- 5.** Choose two sites that are similar in nature or have a similar target audience, such as the following:
- Crate & Barrel (<https://www.crateandbarrel.com>) Pottery Barn (<https://www.potterybarn.com>)
  - Harper College (<https://goforward.harpercollege.edu>) College of Lake County (<http://www.clcillinois.edu>)
  - Chicago Bears (<https://www.chicagobears.com>) Green Bay Packers (<https://www.packers.com>)
- Describe how the two sites you chose to review exhibit web design best practices. How would you improve these sites? Recommend three improvements for each site.
- 6.** How would you design a home page for the following businesses using a single page website design? Create a wireframe page

layout for the home page.

- a. See 2(a) for the description of Doug Kowalski's photography business.

- b. See 2(b) for the description of Just Throw Me.

- c. See 2(c) for the description of A Dog's Life.

7. How would you design a home page for the following businesses using a responsive layout design? Create two wireframe page layouts for the home page: a wireframe for mobile devices and a wireframe for desktop browsers.

- a. See 2(a) for the description of Doug Kowalski's photography business.

- b. See 2(b) for the description of Just Throw Me.

- c. See 2(c) for the description of A Dog's Life.

8. Visit the Media Queries website at <https://mediaqueri.es> to view a gallery of sites that demonstrate responsive web design. Choose one of the example responsive websites to explore. Write a one-page paper that includes the following:

- URL of the website
- Name of the website
- Three screenshots of the website (desktop display, tablet display, and smartphone display)
- Describe the similarities and differences between the three screenshots.
- Describe two ways in which the display has been modified for smartphones.
- Does the website meet the needs of its target audience in all three display modes? Why or why not? Justify your answer.

# Web Research

This chapter introduced techniques that are useful when writing for the Web. Explore this topic further. Visit the resources listed below to get started.

- Writing for the Web: <https://www.useit.com/papers/webwriting>
- 9 Simple Tips for Writing Persuasive Web Content: <https://www.enchantingmarketing.com/writing-for-the-web-vs-print/>
- Web Writing that Works!: <http://www.webwritingthatworks.com/CGuideJOBAID.htm>
- A List Apart: 10 Tips on Writing the Living Web: <http://www.alistapart.com/articles/writeliving>

If these resources are no longer available, search the Web for information on “writing for the Web.” Read one or more articles. Select five techniques that you would like to share with others. Write a one-page summary of your findings. Include the URLs of your resources.

# Focus on Web Design

Visit any of the websites referenced in this chapter that interest you.

Write a one-page summary and reaction to the website you chose to visit.

Address the following topics:

- What is the purpose of the site?
- Who is the intended audience?
- Do you think the site reaches the intended audience?
- Does the website display well on a mobile device?
- List three examples of how this website uses recommended web design guidelines.
- How could this site be improved?

In this activity you will design a color scheme, code an external CSS file for the color scheme, and code an example web page that applies the styles you configured. First, choose a topic for your web page. Explore the resources below to find out about the psychology of color:

- <http://www.infoplease.com/spot/colors1.html>
- <https://precisionintermedia.com/color>
- <http://www.webpagefx.com/blog/web-design/psychology-of-color-infographic/>

Complete the following tasks:

- a. Design a color scheme. List three hexadecimal color values in addition to neutrals such as white (#FFFFFF), black, #000000, gray (#EAEAEA or #CCCCCC), and dark brown (#471717) in your design.

**b.** Describe the process you went through as you selected the colors.

Describe why you chose these colors and why they would be appropriate for your website topic. List the URLs of any resources you used.

**c.** Create an external CSS file named colors.css that configures font properties, text color, and background color selections for the document, h1 element selector, p element selector, and footer class using the colors you have chosen.

**d.** Create a web page named color1.html that shows examples of the colors configured in the CSS style rules.

---

## Website Case Study Web Design Best Practices

Each of the following case studies continues throughout most of this textbook. In this chapter, you are asked to analyze the design of the websites.

### JavaJam Coffee Bar

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the JavaJam Coffee Bar case study. [Figure 2.32](#) shows a site map for the JavaJam website. Three pages for this site were created in earlier chapters. In this case study, you will review the site for recommended web design practices.

### Hands-On Practice Case

1. Examine the site map in [Figure 2.32](#). What type of site organization is used for the JavaJam website? Is it the most appropriate organization for the site? Why or why not?

- 2.** Review the recommended web design practices from this chapter. Use the Web Design Best Practices Checklist ([Table 5.1](#)) to evaluate the JavaJam site that you created in earlier chapters. Cite three design practices that have been well implemented. Cite three design practices that could be implemented in a better way. How else would you improve the website?

## Fish Creek Animal Clinic

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Fish Creek Animal Clinic case study. [Figure 2.36](#) shows a site map for the Fish Creek website. Three pages for the site were created in earlier chapters. In this case study, you will review the site for recommended web design practices.

### Hands-On Practice Case

- 1.** Examine the site map in [Figure 2.36](#). What type of site organization is used for the Fish Creek website? Is it the most appropriate organization for the site? Why or why not?
- 2.** Review the recommended web design practices from this chapter. Use the Web Design Best Practices Checklist ([Table 5.1](#)) to evaluate the Fish Creek site that you created in earlier chapters. Cite three design practices that have been well implemented. Cite three design practices that could be implemented in a better way. How else would you improve the website?

## Pacific Trails Resort

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Pacific Trails Resort case study. [Figure 2.40](#) shows a site map for the Pacific Trails

Resort website. Three pages for the site were created in earlier chapters. During this case study, you will review the site for recommended web design practices.

### Hands-On Practice Case

1. Examine the site map in [Figure 2.40](#). What type of site organization is used for the Pacific Trails Resort website? Is it the most appropriate organization for the site? Why or why not?
2. Review the recommended web design practices from this chapter. Use the Web Design Best Practices Checklist ([Table 5.1](#)) to evaluate the Pacific Trails Resort site that you created in earlier chapters. Cite three design practices that have been well implemented. Cite three design practices that could be implemented in a better way. How else would you improve the website?

## Path of Light Yoga Studio

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Path of Light Yoga Studio case study. [Figure 2.44](#) shows a site map for the Path of Light Yoga Studio website. Three pages for the site were created in earlier chapters. During this case study, you will review the site for recommended web design practices.

### Hands-On Practice Case

1. Examine the site map in [Figure 2.44](#). What type of site organization is used for the Path of Light Yoga Studio website? Is it the most appropriate organization for the site? Why or why not?
2. Review the recommended web design practices from this chapter. Use the Web Design Best Practices Checklist

(Table 5.1) to evaluate the Path of Light Yoga Studio site you created in earlier chapters. Cite three design practices that have been well implemented. Cite three design practices that could be implemented in a better way. How else would you improve the website?

## Web Project

The purpose of this Web Project case study is to design a website using recommended design practices. Your website might be about a favorite hobby or subject, your family, a church or club you belong to, a company a friend owns, or the company you work for. Your website will contain a home page and at least six (but no more than ten) content pages. Complete the following documents: Topic Approval, Site Map, and Page Layout Design. You will not develop web pages at this point; you will complete that task in later chapters.

### Hands-On Practice Case

**1. WEB PROJECT TOPIC APPROVAL.** The topic of your website must be approved by your instructor. Provide the following information:

- What is the purpose of the website?  
List the reasons you are creating the website.
- What do you want the website to accomplish?  
List the goals you have for the website.  
Describe what needs to happen for you to consider your website a success.
- Who is your target audience?  
Describe your target audience by age, gender, socioeconomic characteristics, and so on.

- What opportunity or issue is your website addressing?

For example, your website might address the opportunity to provide information about a topic to others or create an initial web presence for a company.

- What type of content might be included in your website?

Describe the type of text, graphics, and media you will need for the website. While you should write the text content yourself, you may use outside sources for royalty-free images and multimedia.

Review copyright considerations (see [Chapter 1](#)).

- List the URLs for at least two related or similar websites found on the Web.

**2. WEB PROJECT SITE MAP.** Use the drawing feature of a word processing program, a graphics application, or a paper and pencil to create a site map of your website that shows the hierarchy of pages and relationships between pages.

**3. WEB PROJECT PAGE LAYOUT DESIGN.** Use the drawing feature of a word processing program, a graphics application, or paper and pencil to create wireframe page layouts for the home page and content pages of your site. Unless otherwise directed by your instructor, use the style for page layout composition shown in [Figures 5.33–5.36](#). Indicate where the logo, navigation, text, and images will be located. Do not worry about exact wording or exact images.

# 6

## Page Layout

---





## Chapter Objectives

---

IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .

- Describe and apply the CSS Box Model
- Configure width and height with CSS
- Configure margins with CSS
- Configure float with CSS
- Configure positioning with CSS
- Create two-column page layouts using CSS
- Configure navigation in unordered lists and style with CSS
- Add interactivity to hyperlinks with CSS pseudo-classes
- Configure a hyperlink to a named fragment internal to a web page
- Configure images with CSS sprites
- Configure an interactive image gallery
- Configure CSS for printing
- Configure a single page website with parallax scrolling

You've already configured the centered page layout with CSS. We'll add to your toolbox of CSS page layout techniques in this chapter, starting with the box model. You'll explore floating and positioning elements with CSS. You'll be introduced to using CSS to add interactivity to hyperlinks with pseudo-classes and use CSS to style navigation in unordered lists. You will configure a single-page website using hyperlinks to named fragments. You will build many page layout skills in this chapter.

## 6.1 Width and Height with CSS

There are many ways to configure width and height with CSS. You've already used the width and height properties to configure elements on web pages. This section takes a closer look at the width, min-width, max-width, and height properties. [Table 6.1](#) lists commonly used width and height units and their purpose.

---

**Table 6.1 Unit Types and Purpose**

Unit	Purpose
px	px Configures a fixed number of pixels as the value
em	Configures a value relative to the font size
%	Configures a percentage value of the parent element
vh	Configures a value relative to 1% of the viewport height
vw	Configures a value relative to 1% of the viewport width

---

### The `width` Property

The `width` property configures the width of an element's content in the browser viewport with either a numeric value unit (such as `100px` or `20em`), percentage (such as `80%`, as shown in [Figure 6.1](#)) of the parent element, or viewport width value (such as `50vw`, which is 50% of the

viewport width). The actual width of an element displayed in the browser viewport includes the width of the element's content, padding, border, and margin—it is not the same as the value of the width property, which only configures the width of the element's *content*.

---

**Figure 6.1** The web page is set to 80% width.

---



## The min-width Property

The **min-width** property sets the minimum width of an element's content in the browser viewport. This minimum width value can prevent content from jumping around when a browser is resized. Scrollbars appear if the browser viewport is resized below the minimum width (see [Figures 6.2](#) and [6.3](#)).

---

**Figure 6.2** As the browser is resized, the “Coffee House” and navigation text wrap.

---

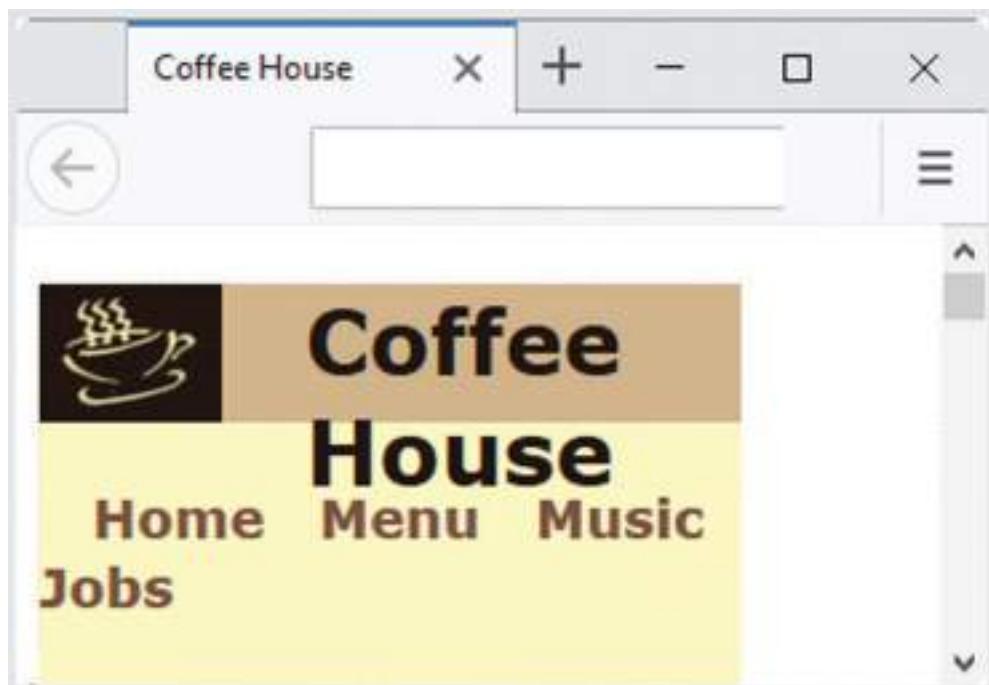
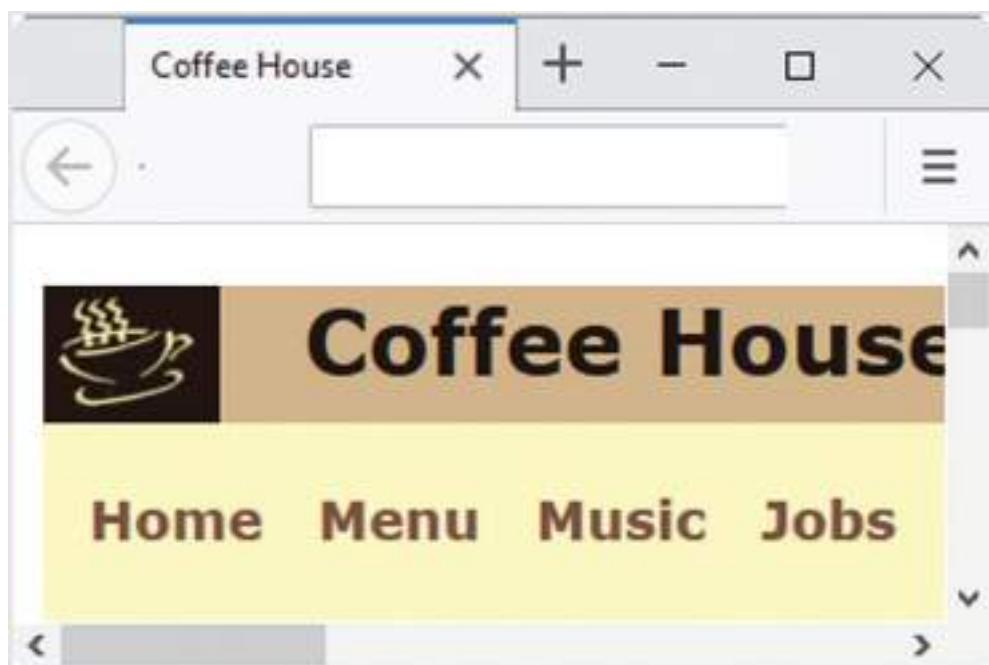


Figure 6.3 The min-width property avoids display issues.



## The max-width Property

The **max-width** property sets the maximum width of an element's content in the browser viewport. This maximum width value can reduce the possibility of text stretching across large expanses of the screen by a high-resolution monitor.

## The **height** Property

The **height** property configures the height of an element's content in the browser viewport with either a numeric value unit (such as `900px`), percentage (such as `60%`) of the parent element, or viewport height value (such as `50vw`), which is 50% of the viewport height. [Figure 6.4](#) shows a web page with an h1 area without a **height** or **line-height** property configured. Notice how part of the background image is truncated and is hidden from view. In [Figure 6.5](#), the h1 area is configured with the **height** property. Notice the improved display of the background image.

---

**Figure 6.4** The background image is truncated.

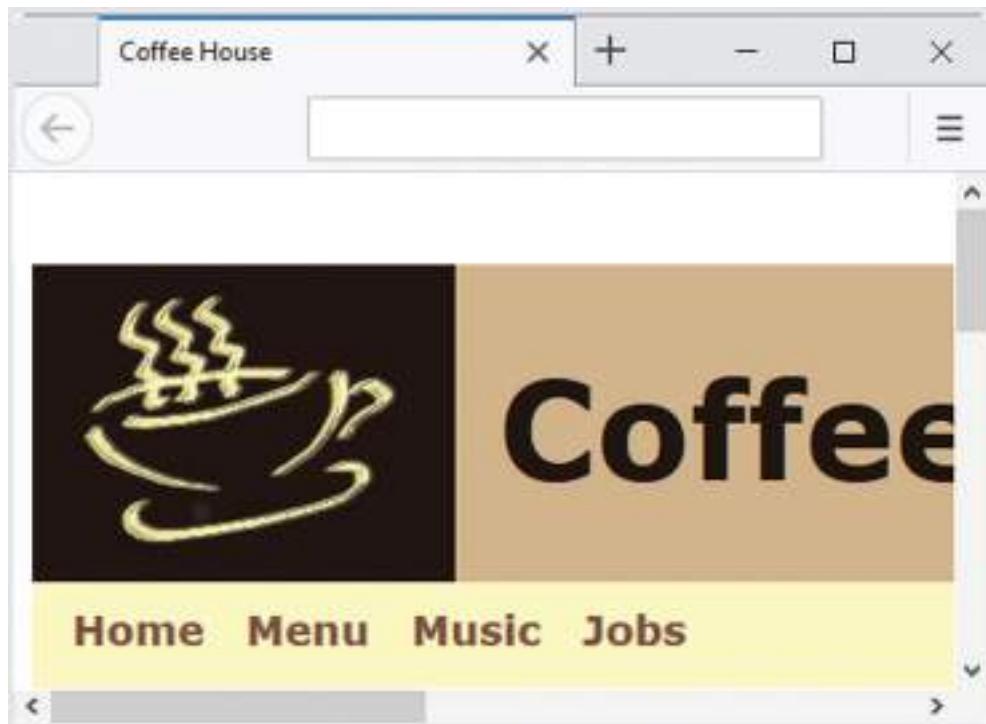
---



---

**Figure 6.5** The height property value corresponds to the height of the background image.

---



---

## Hands-On Practice 6.1

You'll work with the height and width properties in this Hands-On Practice.

Create a new folder called coffeech6. Copy the coffeeelogo.jpg file from the student files chapter6/starters folder into your coffeech6 folder. Copy the chapter6/starter.html file into your coffeech6 folder. Launch a text editor and open the file.

1. Edit the embedded CSS to configure the document to take up 80% of the browser window but with a minimum width of 750px. Add the following style rules to the body element selector:

```
width: 80%; min-width: 750px;
```

2. Add style declarations to the h1 element selector to configure height as 150px (the height of the background image) and line height as 220%.

```
height: 150px; line-height: 220%;
```

Save your file as index.html. Launch a browser and test your page. Your web page should look similar to [Figure 6.1](#). A sample solution is in the chapter6/6.1 folder.

---

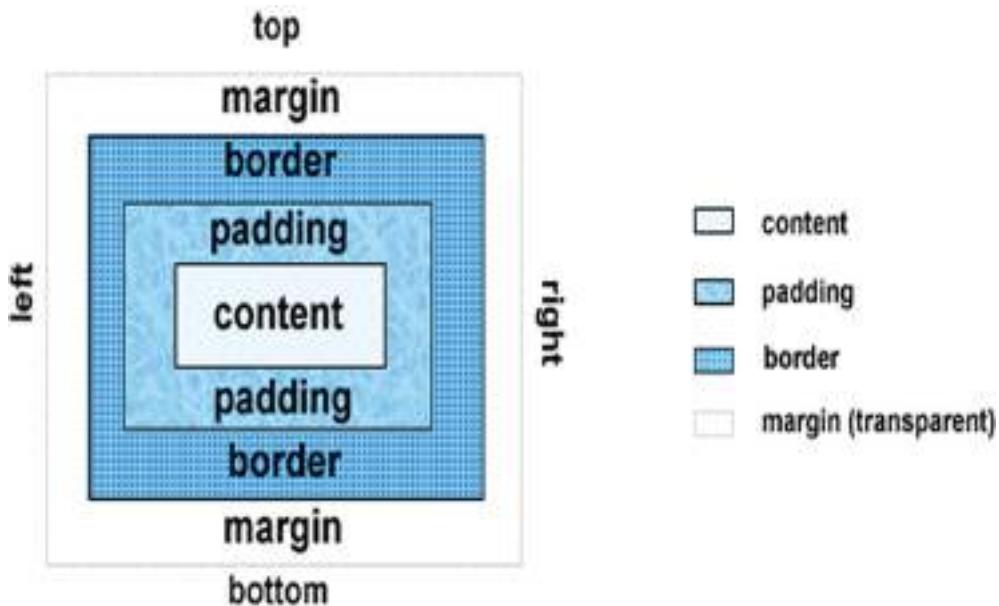
## 6.2 The Box Model

Each element in a document is considered to be a rectangular box. As shown in [Figure 6.6](#), this box consists of a content area surrounded by padding, a border, and margins. This is known as the **box model**.

---

**Figure 6.6 The CSS box model**

---



### Content

The content area can consist of a combination of text and web page elements such as images, paragraphs, headings, lists, and so on. The **visible width** of the element on a web page is the total of the content width, the padding width, and the border width. However, the **width property** only configures the actual width of the content; it does not include any padding, border, or margin.

# Padding

The **padding** area is between the content and the border. The default padding value is zero. When the background of an element is configured, the background is applied to both the padding and the content areas. Use the `padding` property to configure an element's padding (refer to [Chapter 4](#)).

# Border

The **border** area is between the padding and the margin. The default border has a value of `0` and does not display. Use the `border` property to configure an element's border (refer to [Chapter 4](#)).

# Margin

The **margin** determines the empty space between the element and any adjacent elements. The solid line in [Figure 6.6](#) that contains the margin area does not display on a web page.

## The margin Property

Use the `margin` property to configure margins on all sides of an element. The margin is always transparent—the background color of the web page or parent element shows in this area. Browsers have default margin values set for the web page document and for certain elements such as paragraphs, headings, forms, and so on. Use the margin property to override the default browser values.

To configure the size of the margin, use a numeric value (px or em) or a percentage. To eliminate the margin, configure it to 0 (with no unit). Use the value `auto` to indicate that the browser should calculate the margin.

In [Chapters 3](#) and [4](#), you used `margin-left: auto;` and `margin-right: auto;` to configure a centered page layout. [Table 6.2](#) shows CSS properties that configure margins.

---

**Table 6.2 Configuring margins with CSS**

Property	Description and Common Values

Property	Description and Common Values
<code>margin</code>	<p>Shorthand notation to configure the margin surrounding an element</p>
	<p>A numeric value (px or em) or percentage; for example, <code>margin: 10px;</code></p>
	<p>The value <code>auto</code> causes the browser to automatically calculate the margin for the element</p>
	<p>Two numeric values (px or em) or percentages: The first value configures the top margin and bottom margin, and the second value configures the left margin and right margin; for example, <code>margin: 20% 10%;</code></p>
	<p>Three numeric values (px or em) or percentages: The first value configures the top margin, the second value configures the left margin and right margin, and the third value configures the bottom margin; for example, <code>margin: 10% 20% 5px;</code></p>
	<p>Four numeric values (px or em) or percentages; the values configure the margin in the following order: <code>margin-top</code>, <code>margin-right</code>, <code>margin-bottom</code>, and <code>margin-left</code>; for example, <code>margin: 10% 30px 20% 5%;</code></p>

Property	Description and Common Values
<code>margin-bottom</code>	Bottom margin; a numeric value (px or em), percentage, or <code>auto</code>
<code>margin-left</code>	Left margin; a numeric value (px or em), percentage, or <code>auto</code>
<code>margin-right</code>	Right margin; a numeric value (px or em), percentage, or <code>auto</code>
<code>margin-top</code>	Top margin; a numeric value (px or em), percentage, or <code>auto</code>

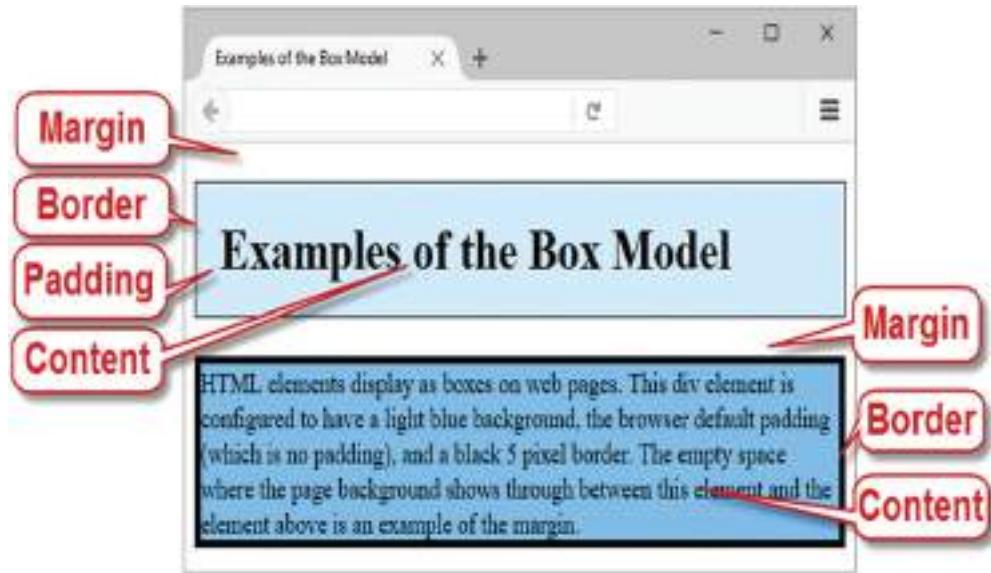
## The Box Model in Action

The web page shown in [Figure 6.7](#) (chapter6/box.html in the student files) depicts the box model in action with an h1 and a div element.

---

**Figure 6.7 Examples of the box model**

---



- The h1 element is configured to have a light-blue background, 20 pixels of padding (the space between the content and the border), and a black, 1 pixel border.
- The empty space where the white web page background shows through is the margin. When two vertical margins meet (such as between the h1 element and the div element), the browser collapses the margin size to be the larger of the two margin values instead of applying both margins.
- The div element has a medium-blue background; the browser default padding (which is no padding); and a black, 5 pixel border.

You will get more practice using the box model in this chapter. Feel free to experiment with the box model and the chapter6/box.html file.

## 6.3 Normal Flow

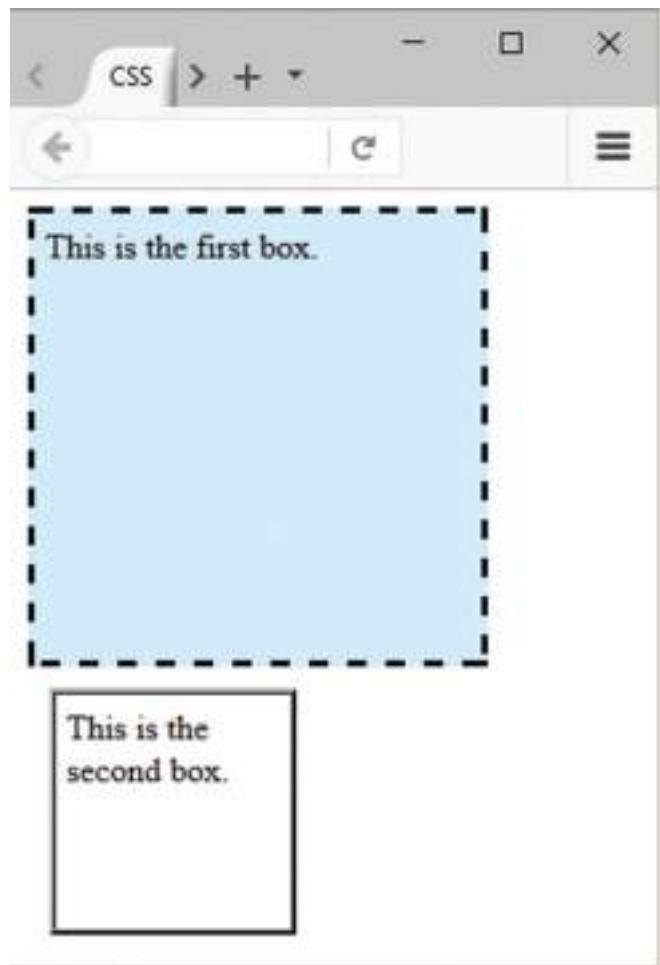
Browsers render your web page code line by line in the order it appears in the .html document. This processing is called normal flow. **Normal flow** displays the elements on the page in the order they appear in the web page source code.

Figures 6.8 and 6.9 each display two div elements that contain text content. Let's take a closer look. Figure 6.8 shows a screenshot of two div elements placed one after another on a web page. In Figure 6.9, the boxes are nested inside each other. In both cases, the browser used normal flow (the default) and displayed the elements in the order that they appeared in the source code. As you've worked through the exercises in the previous chapters, you created web pages that the browser has rendered using normal flow.

---

**Figure 6.8 Two div elements**

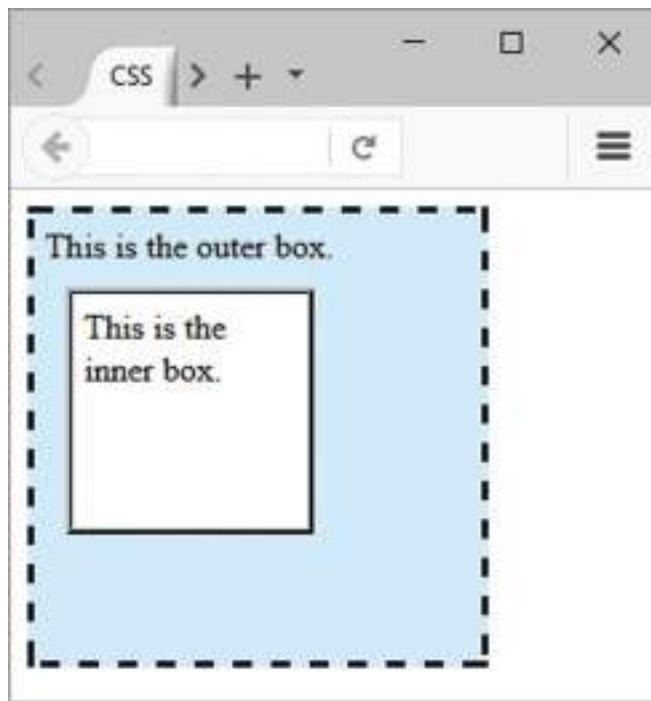
---



---

**Figure 6.9** Nested div elements

---



You'll practice this a bit more in the next Hands-On Practice. Then, later in the chapter, you'll experiment with CSS positioning and float to configure the flow, or placement, of elements on a web page.

---

## Hands-On Practice 6.2

You will explore the box model and normal flow in this Hands-On Practice as you work with the web pages shown in [Figure 6.8](#) and [Figure 6.9](#).

### Practice with Normal Flow

Launch a text editor and open chapter6/starter1.html in the student files. Save the file with the name box1.html. Edit the body of the web page and add the following code to configure two div elements:

```
<div class="div1">  
    This is the first box.  
</div>  
<div class="div2">  
    This is the second box.  
</div>
```

Now let's add embedded CSS in the head section to configure the "boxes." Add a new style rule for a class named `div1` to configure a light-blue background, dashed border, width of 200 pixels, height of 200 pixels, and 5 pixels of padding. The code is

```
.div1 { width: 200px;  
        height: 200px;  
        background-color: #D1ECFF;  
        border: 3px dashed #000000;  
        padding: 5px; }
```

Create a style rule for a class named `div2` to configure a width and height of 100 pixels, white background color, ridged border, 10 pixel margin, and 5 pixels of padding. The code is

```
.div2 { width: 100px;  
        height: 100px;  
        background-color: #FFFFFF;  
        border: 3px ridge #000000;  
        margin: 10px;  
        padding: 5px; }
```

Save the file. Launch a browser and test your page. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 6.8](#). The student files contain a sample solution (see chapter6/6.2/box1.html).

## Practice with Normal Flow and Nested Elements

Launch a text editor and open your box1.html file. Save the file as box2.html.

Edit the code. Delete the content from the body section of the web page. Add the following code to configure two div elements—one nested inside the other.

```
<div class="div1">
  This is the outer box.
    <div class="div2">
      This is the inner box.
    </div>
</div>
```

Save the file. Launch a browser and test your page. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 6.9](#). Notice how the browser renders the nested div elements: The second box is nested inside the first box because it is coded inside the first div element in the web page source code. This is an example of normal flow. The student files contain a sample solution (see chapter6/6.2/box2.html). The examples in this Hands-On Practice happened to use two div elements. However, the box model applies to block display HTML elements in general, not just to div elements. You will get more practice using the box model in this chapter.

## 6.4 CSS Float

Elements that seem to float on the right or left side of either the browser window or another element are often configured using the **float property**. The browser renders these elements using normal flow and then shifts them to either the right or left as far as possible within their container (usually either the browser viewport or a div element).

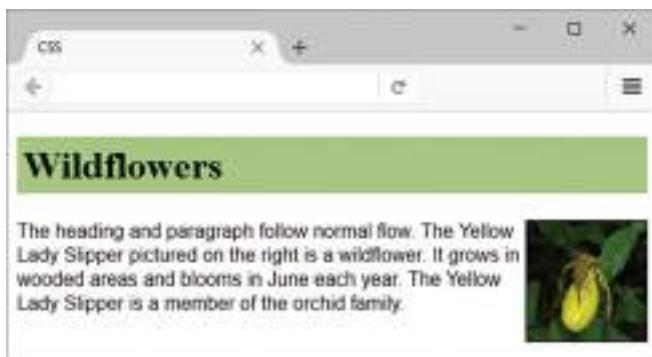
- Use `float: right;` to float the element on the right side of the container.
- Use `float: left;` to float the element on the left side of the container.
- Specify a width for a floated element unless the element already has an implicit width, such as an img element.
- Other elements and web page content will flow around the floated element.

Figure 6.10 shows a web page with an image configured with `float: right;` to float on the right side of the browser viewport (see chapter6/float.html in the student files). When floating an image, the margin property is useful to configure empty space between the image and text on the page.

---

**Figure 6.10 The image is configured to float**

---



View Figure 6.10 and notice how the image stays on the right side of the browser viewport. An id called `y1s` was created that applies the `float`, `margin`, and `border` properties. The attribute `id="y1s"` was placed on the image tag. The CSS is

```
h1 { background-color: #A8C682;
      padding: 5px;
      color: #000000; }
p { font-family: Arial, sans-serif; }
#y1s { float: right;
        margin: 0 0 5px 5px;
        border: 1px solid #000000; }
```

The HTML source code is

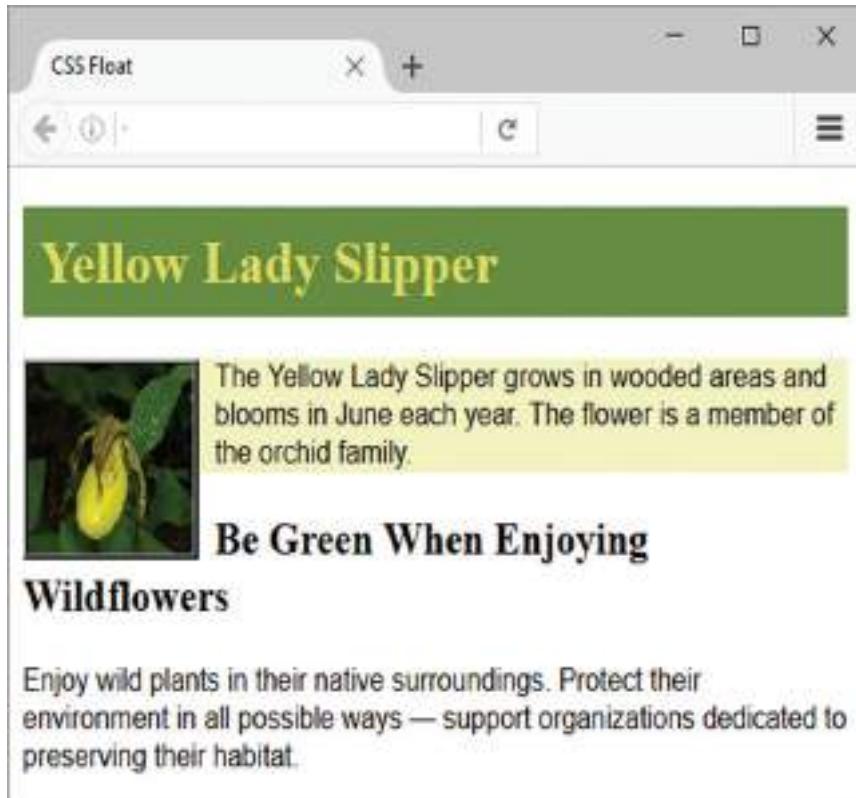
```
<h1>Wildflowers</h1>

<p>The heading and paragraph follow normal flow. The
Yellow Lady
Slipper pictured on the right is a wildflower. It
grows in wooded
areas and blooms in June each year. The Yellow Lady
Slipper is a
member of the orchid family.</p>
```

## Hands-On Practice 6.3

In this Hands-On Practice, you'll use the CSS float property as you configure the web page shown in [Figure 6.11](#).

**Figure 6.11 The CSS float property left-aligns the image**



Create a folder named ch6float. Copy the starteryls.html and yls.jpg files from the chapter6 folder in the student files into your ch6float folder. Launch a text editor and open starteryls.html. Notice the order of the images and paragraphs. Note that there is no CSS configuration for floating the images. Display starteryls.html in a browser. The browser renders the page using normal flow and displays the HTML elements in the order they are coded.

Let's add CSS to float the image. Save the file as index.html in your ch6float folder. Open the file in a text editor and modify the code as follows:

1. Add a style rule for a class name `float` that configures float, margin, and border properties.

```
.float { float: left;  
        margin-right: 10px;  
        border: 3px ridge #000000; }
```

2. Assign the image element to the class named `float` (use `class="float"`).

Save the file. Launch a browser and test your page. It should look similar to the web page shown in [Figure 6.11](#). The student files (chapter6/6.3/index.html) contain a sample solution.

## The Floated Element and Normal Flow

Take a moment to examine your file in a browser (see [Figure 6.11](#)) and consider how the browser rendered the page. The `div` element is configured with a light background color to demonstrate how floated elements are rendered outside of normal flow. Observe that the image and the first paragraph are contained within the `div` element. The `h2` element follows the `div`. If all the elements were rendered using normal flow, the area with the light background color would contain both child elements of the `div`: the image and the first paragraph. In addition, the `h2` element would be placed on its own line under the `div` element.

However, once the image is placed vertically on the page, it is floated outside of normal flow—that’s why the light background color only appears behind the first paragraph and why the h2 element’s text begins immediately after the first paragraph and appears next to the floated image. In the following sections, you’ll explore properties that can “clear” this float and improve the display.

---

## 6.5 CSS Clearing a Float

### The `clear` Property

The `clear` property is often used to terminate, or clear, a float. You can set the value of the `clear` property to `left`, `right`, or `both`, depending on the type of float you need to clear.

Review [Figure 6.11](#) and the code sample (see chapter6/6.3/index.html in the student files). Notice that although the `div` element contains both an image and the first paragraph, the light background color of the `div` only displays behind the screen area occupied by the first paragraph—it stops a bit earlier than expected. Clearing the float will help take care of this display issue.

### Clear a Float with a Line Break

A common technique to clear a float within a container element is to add a line break element configured with the `clear` property. See chapter6/clear1.html in the student files for an example. Observe that a CSS class is configured to clear the left float:

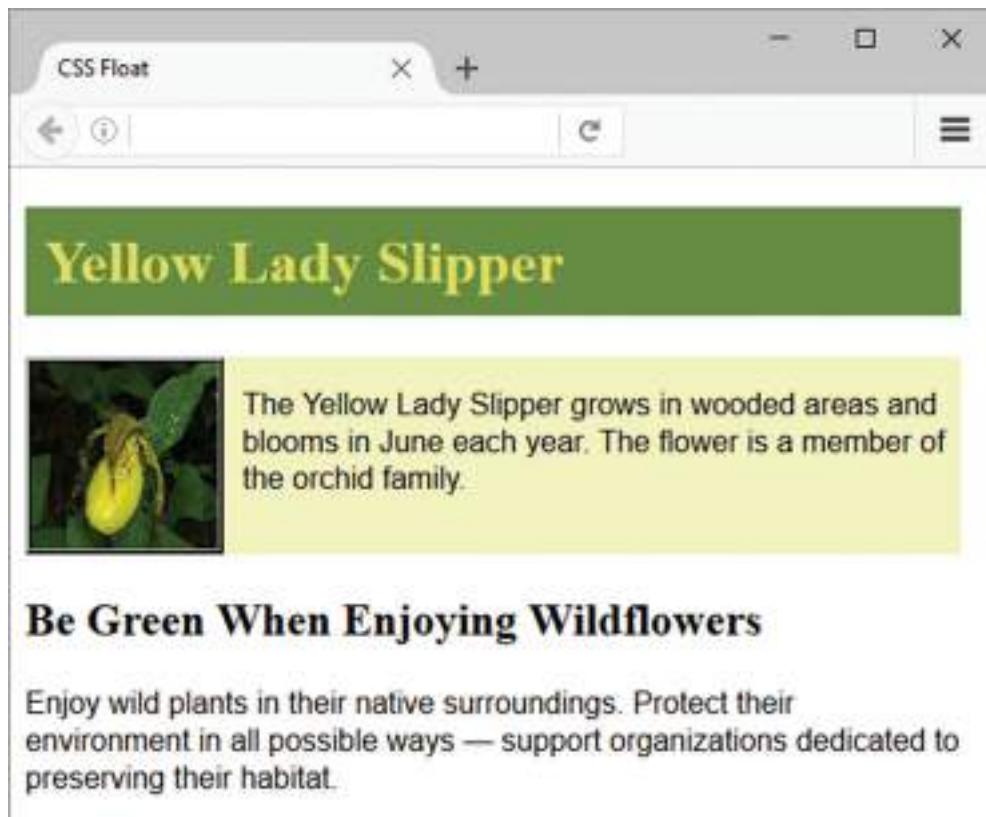
```
.clearleft { clear: left; }
```

Also, a line break tag assigned to the `clearleft` class is coded before the closing `div` tag. The code for the `div` element is

```
<div>
  
  <p>The Yellow Lady Slipper grows in wooded areas and
blooms in June
  each year. The flower is a member of the orchid family.
</p>
  <br  class="clearleft">
</div>
```

Figure 6.12 displays a screen shot of this page. Review Figure 6.11 and note two changes: the light background color of the div element extends farther down the page and the h2 element's text begins on its own line under the image.

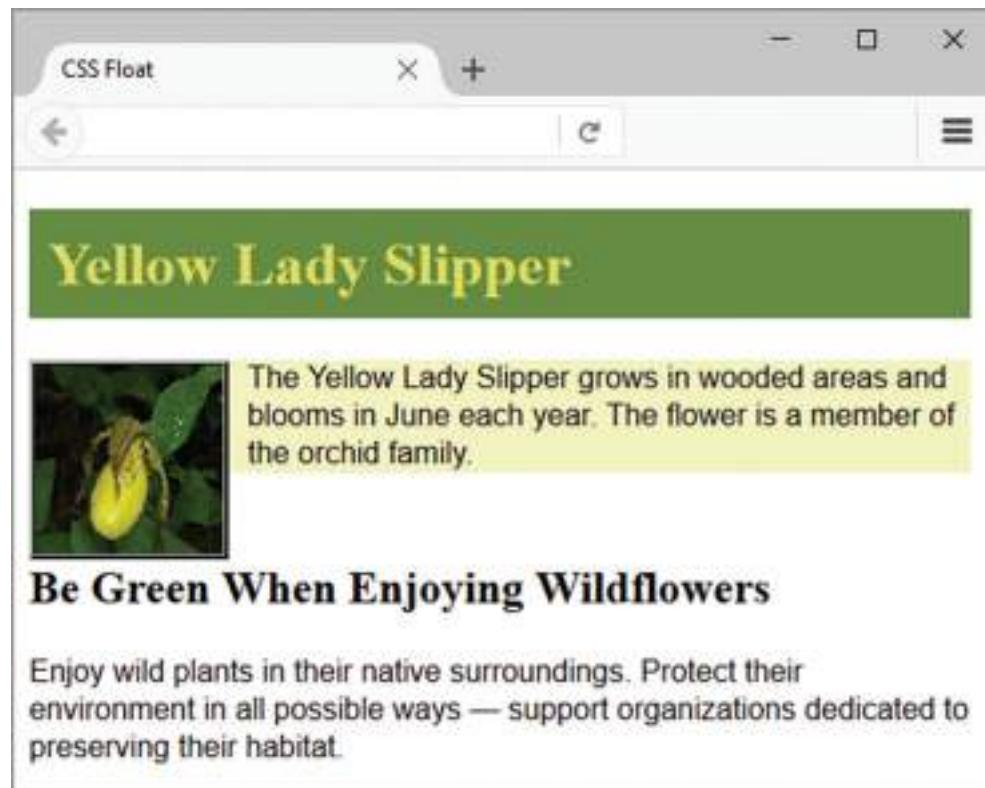
**Figure 6.12 The clear property is applied to a line break tag**



## Another Technique to Clear a Float

If you are not concerned about the light background color display, another option is to omit the line break tag and, instead, apply the `clearleft` class to the h2 element, which is the first block display element after the div. This does not change the display of the light background color, but it does force the h2 element's text to begin on its own line, as shown in [Figure 6.13](#) (see chapter6/clear2.html in the student files).

**Figure 6.13** The clear property is applied to the h2 element



## The `overflow` Property

The `overflow` property is often used to clear a float, although its intended purpose is to configure how content should display if it is too

large for the area allocated. See [Table 6.3](#) for a list of commonly used values for the `overflow` property.

---

**Table 6.3 The `overflow` property**

Value	Purpose
<code>visible</code>	Default value; the content is displayed, and if it's too large, the content will overflow and extend outside the area allocated to it
<code>hidden</code>	The content is clipped to fit the area allocated to the element in the browser viewport
<code>auto</code>	The content fills the area allocated to it and, if needed, scrollbars are displayed to allow access to the remaining content
<code>scroll</code>	The content is rendered in the area allocated to it and scrollbars are displayed

## Clear a Float

Review [Figure 6.11](#) and the code sample (`chapter6/6.3/index.html` in the student files). Observe the `div` element, which contains the floated image and first paragraph on the page. Notice that although the `div` element contains both an image and the first paragraph, the light background color of the `div` element does not extend as far as expected; it is only visible in the area occupied by the first paragraph. You can use the `overflow` property assigned to the container element to resolve this

display issue and clear the float. In this case, we'll apply the `overflow` and `width` properties to the div selector. The CSS to configure the div in this manner is

```
div { background-color: #F3F1BF;  
      overflow: auto;  
      width: 100%; }
```

This will clear the float. The web page will display as shown in [Figure 6.14](#) (see chapter6/overflow.html in the student files).

**Figure 6.14 The overflow property is applied to the div selector**

The screenshot shows a web browser window with a tab labeled "CSS Float". The main content area displays a green header bar with the text "Yellow Lady Slipper" in yellow. Below the header is a thumbnail image of a yellow flower. To the right of the image is a yellow text box containing the following text: "The Yellow Lady Slipper grows in wooded areas and blooms in June each year. The flower is a member of the orchid family." At the bottom of the page, there is a section titled "Be Green When Enjoying Wildflowers" with the text: "Enjoy wild plants in their native surroundings. Protect their environment in all possible ways — support organizations dedicated to preserving their habitat."

Notice that using the `overflow` property (see [Figure 6.14](#)) and applying the `clear` property to a line break tag (see [Figure 6.12](#)) result in a similar web page display. You may be wondering about which CSS property (`clear` or `overflow`) is the best one to use when you need to clear a float.

Although the `clear` property is widely used, in this example, it is more efficient to apply the `overflow` property to the container element (for example, a `div` element). This will clear the float, avoid adding an extra line break tag, and ensure that the container element expands to enclose the entire floated element. You'll get more practice with the `float`, `clear`, and `overflow` properties as you continue working through this textbook. Floating elements is a key technique for designing multicolumn page layouts with CSS.

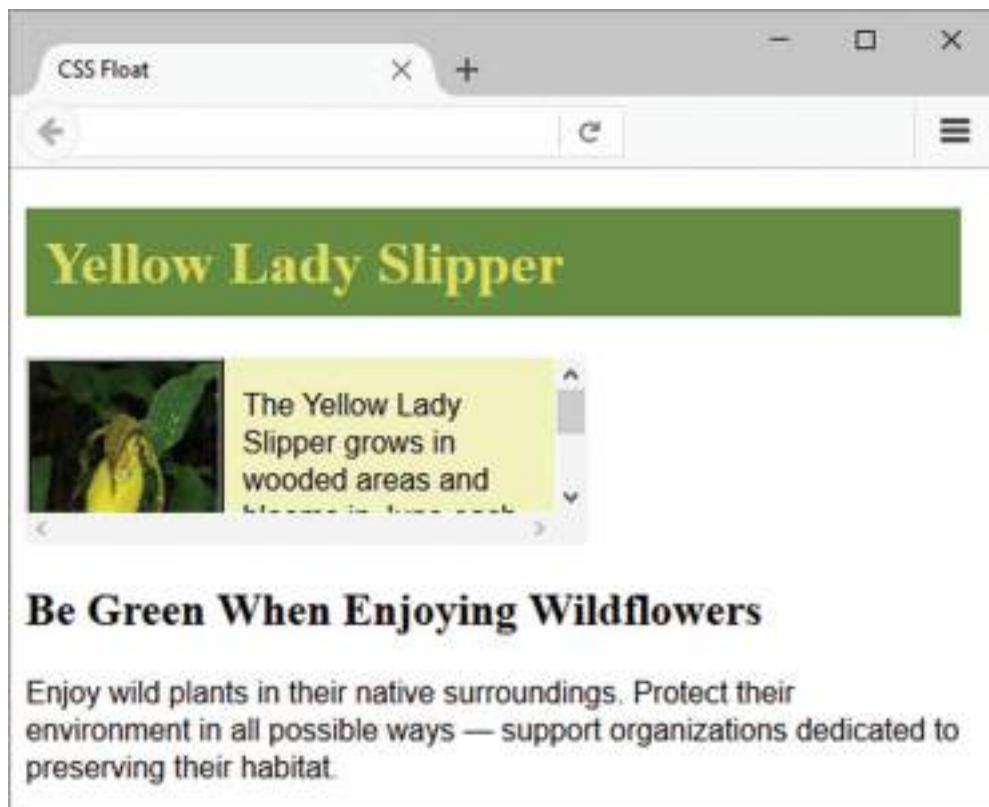
## Configure Scrollbars

The web page in [Figure 6.15](#) demonstrates the use of `overflow: auto;` to automatically display scrollbars if the content exceeds the space allocated to it. In this case, the `div` that contains the paragraph and the floated image was configured with a width of 300px and a height of 100px.

---

**Figure 6.15 The browser displays scrollbars**

---



## Be Green When Enjoying Wildflowers

Enjoy wild plants in their native surroundings. Protect their environment in all possible ways — support organizations dedicated to preserving their habitat.

See the example web page (chapter6/scroll.html in the student files). The CSS for the div is shown below:

```
div { background-color: #F3F1BF;  
      overflow: scroll;  
      width: 300px;  
      height: 100px; }
```

### Checkpoint 6.1

1. List the components of the box model from innermost to outermost.
2. Describe the purpose of the CSS float property.
3. Which two CSS properties can be used to clear a float?

| \_\_\_\_\_|

## 6.6 CSS Box Sizing

When you view an element on a web page it's intuitive to expect that the width of an element on a page includes the size of the element's padding and border. However, this isn't the default behavior of browsers. Recall from the box model introduction in [Section 6.2](#) that the `width` property by default only includes the actual width of the content itself within the element and does not also include the width of any padding or border that may exist for the element. The purpose of the `box-sizing` property is to alleviate this issue. The **box-sizing property** causes the browser calculation of the width or height to include the content's actual width or height in addition to the width or height of any padding and border that may exist.

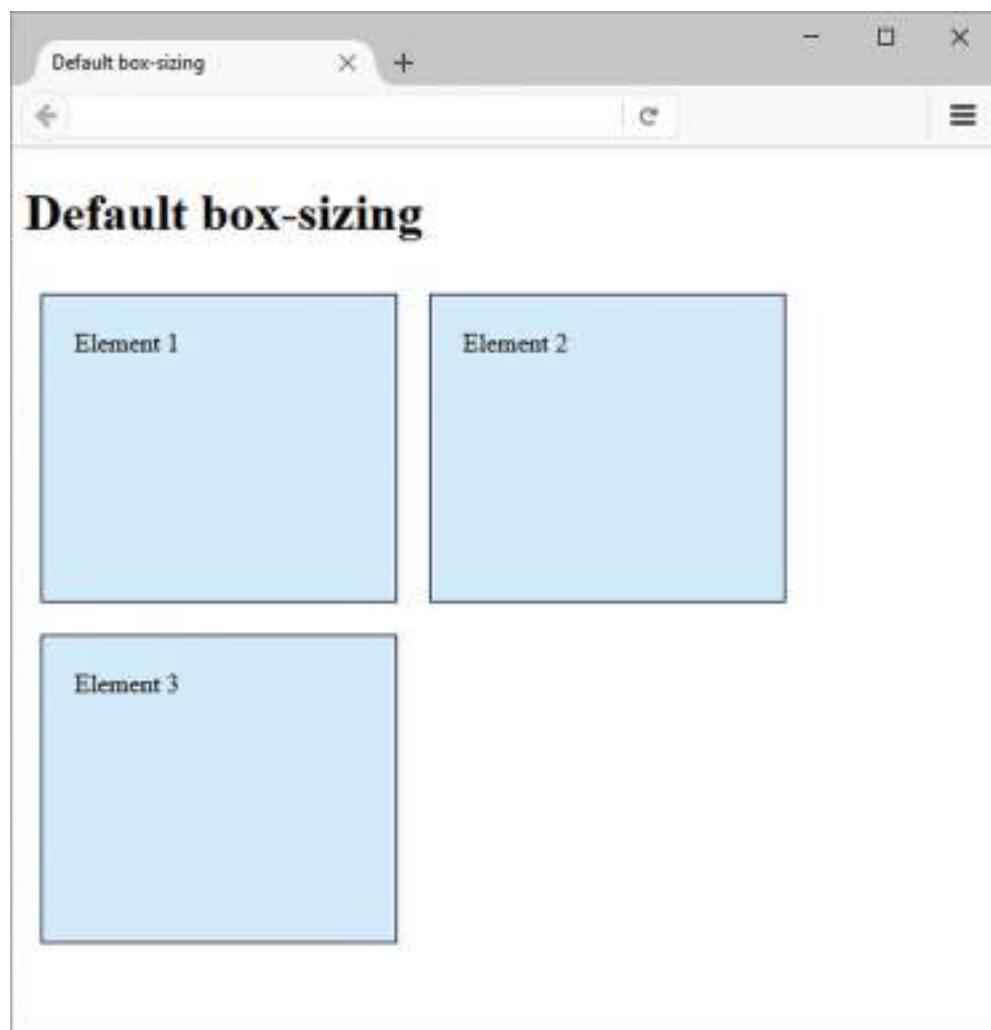
Valid `box-sizing` property values include `content-box` (the default) and `border-box`. Use the CSS `box-sizing: border-box;` declaration to configure the browser to also include the values of the border and padding when calculating the width and height properties of an element.

[Figures 6.16](#) and [6.17](#) show web pages (`boxsizing1.html` and `boxsizing2.html` in the student files `chapter6` folder) that each have floated elements configured with 30% width, 150px height, 20px padding, and 10px margin. The page in [Figure 6.16](#) uses default box-sizing. The page in [Figure 6.17](#) uses box-sizing set to `border-box`. The size of the elements and the placement of the elements on the pages differ. You may notice at first glance that the elements look larger in [Figure 6.16](#). The larger display is because the browser sets the content to 30% width before adding the 20 pixels of padding on each side. The elements are smaller in [Figure 6.17](#). The smaller display is because the browser applies the 30% width to the combination of the padding and the content.

---

**Figure 6.16 Default box-sizing**

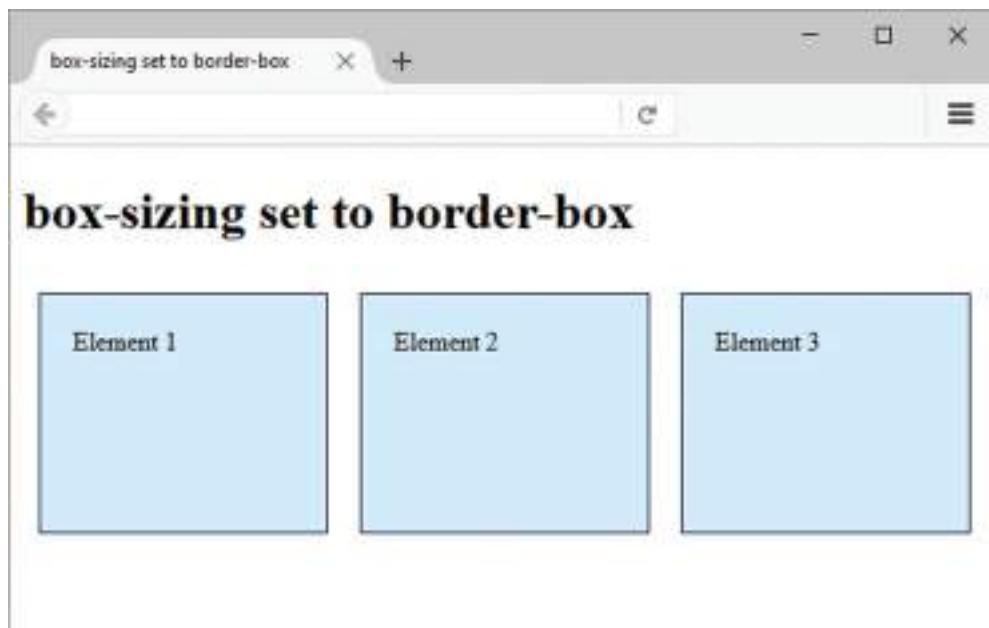
---



---

**Figure 6.17 box-sizing set to border-box**

---



Let's take a closer look at the placement of the three floated elements on the pages. Figure 6.16 does not display all three elements side-by-side. This web page uses default `box-sizing` so the browser assigned the 30% width to each element's content only and then added 20 pixels of padding to each side of each element. Due to these calculations, the browser determined there was not enough room in the browser viewport to display all three elements next to each other and the browser dropped the third floated element to the next line. The web page in Figure 6.17 is coded with `box-sizing` set to `border-box` which configures the three floated elements to be displayed side-by-side because the browser assigned the 30% width to the combined content and padding areas (including 20 pixels of padding on each side).

It is common practice for web developers to apply border-box box-sizing when they plan to use floated elements or multicolumn layouts. It's also common practice to apply `box-sizing` by configuring the **\* universal selector**, which will target all HTML elements. The CSS style rule to apply border-box box-sizing to all elements with the universal selector is

```
* { box-sizing: border-box; }
```

Feel free to experiment with the box-sizing property and the example files (chapter6/boxsizing1.html and chapter6/boxsizing2.html in the student files).

## 6.7 CSS Two-Column Layout

### Your First Two-Column Layout

A common design for a web page is a two-column layout. This is accomplished with CSS by configuring one of the columns to float on the web page. Coding HTML is a skill and skills are best learned by practice. The next Hands-On Practice guides you as you convert a single-column page layout ([Figure 6.18](#)) into your first two-column layout ([Figure 6.19](#)).

---

**Figure 6.18 Single-column layout.**

---



---

**Figure 6.19 Two-column layout.**

---



---

## Hands-On Practice 6.4

A. **REVIEW SINGLE-COLUMN LAYOUT.** Launch a text editor, and open the `singlecol.html` file from the chapter6 folder in the student files. Take a moment to look over the code. Notice the structure of the HTML tags correspond to wireframe in [Figure 6.18](#).

```
<body>
  <div id="wrapper">
    <header> </header>
    <nav> </nav>
    <main> </main>
    <footer> </footer>
  </div>
</body>
```

---

Save the file as `index.html`. When you display `index.html` in a browser, your display should be similar to [Figure 6.20](#).

**Figure 6.20** Web page with single-column layout.



**B. CONFIGURE A TWO-COLUMN LAYOUT.** Launch a text editor and open the index.html file. You will edit the HTML and CSS to configure a two-column layout as shown in [Figure 6.19](#) in the wireframe.

**1. EDIT THE HTML.** The single-column navigation is horizontal but the two-column navigation will be displayed in a vertical orientation. Later in this chapter, you'll learn how to configure navigation hyperlinks within an unordered list but for now, a

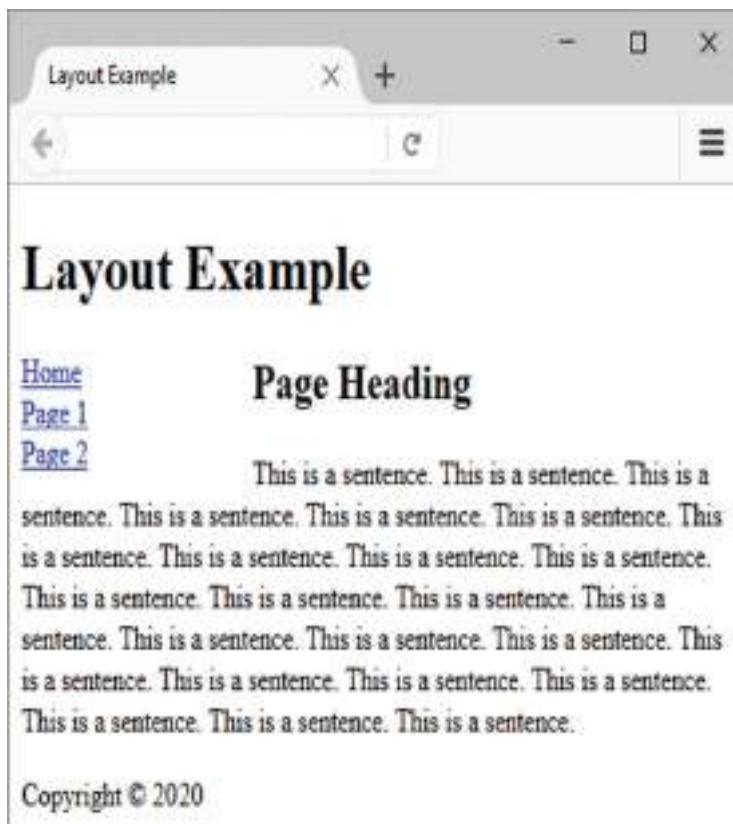
quick adjustment is to code a line break tag after each of the first two hyperlinks in the nav area.

**2. CONFIGURE THE FLOAT WITH CSS.** Locate the style tags in the head section of the document and code the following style rule as embedded CSS to configure a nav element with a width of 90px that floats to the left.

```
nav { float: left;  
      width: 90px; }
```

Save the file and test it in the Firefox or Chrome browser. Your display will be similar to Figure 6.21 □. Notice that the content in the main area wraps around the floated nav element.

**Figure 6.21** The nav is floating on the left



**3. CONFIGURE TWO COLUMNS WITH CSS.** You just configured the nav element to float on the left. The main element will be in the right-side column and will be configured with a left margin (the same side as the float). To get a two-column look, the value of the margin should be greater than the width of the floated element. Open the index.html file in a text editor and code the following style rule to configure a 100px left margin for the main element.

```
main { margin-left: 100px; }
```

Save the file and test it in the Firefox or Chrome browser. Your display will be similar to [Figure 6.22](#) with a two-column layout.

---

**Figure 6.22 Two-column layout**

---

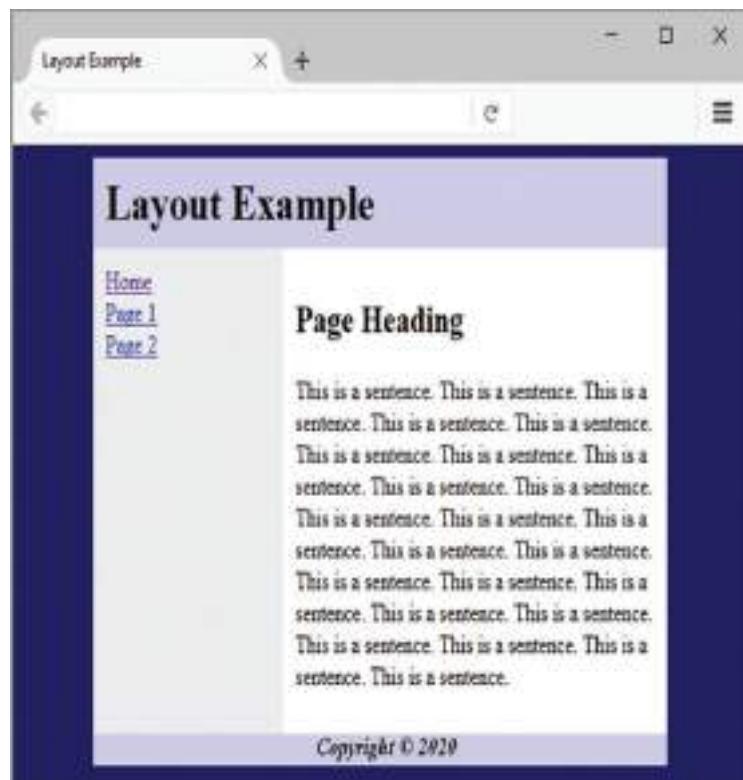


**4. ENHANCE THE PAGE WITH CSS.** Code the following style rules as embedded CSS to create a more appealing web page. When you have completed this step, your page should be similar to [Figure 6.23](#).

---

**Figure 6.23 Final two-column layout**

---



- a. **THE BODY ELEMENT SELECTOR.** Configure a dark background color.

```
body { background-color: #000066; }
```

- b. **THE WRAPPER ID SELECTOR.** Configure 80% width, centered on the page, and a light (#EAEAEA) background color. This background color will display behind child elements (such as the nav element) that do not have a background color configured.

```
#wrapper { width: 80%;  
          margin-left: auto;  
          margin-right: auto;  
          background-color:  
#EAEAEA; }
```

c. **THE HEADER ELEMENT SELECTOR.** Configure  
#CCCCFF background color.

```
header { background-color: #CCCCFF;  
}
```

d. **THE H1 ELEMENT SELECTOR.** Configure 0  
margin and 10px of padding.

```
h1 { margin: 0;  
padding: 10px; }
```

e. **The nav element selector.** Edit the style rule  
and add a declaration for 10 pixels of padding.

```
nav { float: left;  
width: 90px;  
padding: 10px; }
```

f. **The main element selector.** Edit the style rule  
and add a declaration for 10 pixels of padding  
and #FFFFFF background color.

```
main { margin-left: 100px;  
padding: 10px;  
background-color: #FFFFFF;  
}
```

g. **The footer element selector.** Configure  
centered, italic text, and a #CCCCFF background

color. Also configure the footer to clear all floats.

```
footer { text-align: center;  
font-style: italic;  
background-color: #CCCCFF;  
clear: both; }
```

Save your file and test it in the Firefox or Chrome browser. Your display should be similar to [Figure 6.23](#). You can compare your work to the sample in the student files (chapter6/6.4/index.html). Internet Explorer does not support the HTML5 main element. You will need to nudge Internet Explorer to comply by adding the `display: block;` declaration (introduced later in this chapter) to the styles for the main element selector. An example solution is in the student files (chapter6/6.4/iefix.html).

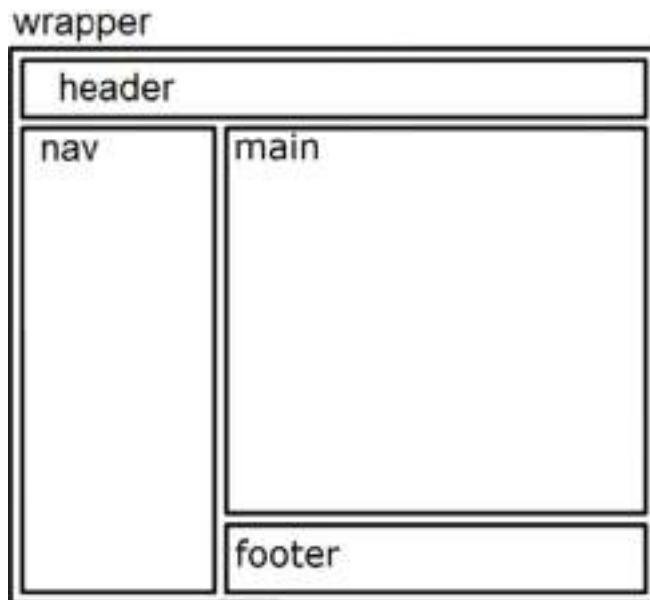
## Two-Column Layout Example

The web page you coded in [Hands-On Practice 6.4](#) is just one example of a two-column layout design. Let's explore coding the two-column layout with a footer in the right column as shown in [Figure 6.24](#) wireframe. The HTML template for the page layout is

---

**Figure 6.24 Alternate wireframe**

---



```
<div id="wrapper">
  <header>
  </header>
  <nav>
  </nav>
  <main>
  </main>
  <footer>
  </footer>
</div>
```

The key CSS configures a floating nav element, a main element with a left margin, and a footer with a left margin.

```
nav { float: left; width: 150px; }
main { margin-left: 165px; }
footer { margin-left: 165px; }
```

The web page shown in [Figure 6.25](#) implements this layout. An example is in the student files, chapter6/layout/twocol.html.

Figure 6.25 Page with alternate layout



## FAQ

Does the order of the floated and non-floated elements matter?

A key to coding successful layouts with float is in the HTML—code the element that needs to float BEFORE its companion elements. The browser will shift the floated element over to the side of the browser viewport and display the elements that follow alongside the floated element.

## FAQ

Do I have to use a wrapper?

No, you are not required to use a wrapper or container for a web page layout. However, it does make it easier to get the two-column look because the background color of the wrapper div will display behind any of its child elements that do not have their own background color configured. This technique also provides you with the option of configuring a different background color or background image for the page using the body element selector.

---

## Not Yet Ready for Prime Time

There is one more aspect of the two-column layout web page design to consider before it is ready for “prime time.” The navigation area is a list of hyperlinks. In order to more closely semantically describe the navigation area, the hyperlinks should be configured in an unordered list. In the next section, you’ll learn techniques to configure horizontal and vertical navigation hyperlinks in unordered lists.

## 6.8 Hyperlinks in an Unordered List

One of the advantages of using CSS for page layout involves the use of semantically correct code. Writing semantically correct code means choosing the markup tag that most accurately reflects the purpose of the content. Using the various levels of heading tags for content headings and subheadings or placing paragraphs of text within paragraph tags (rather than using line breaks) are examples of writing semantically correct code. This type of coding is a step in the direction of supporting the Semantic Web. Leading Web developers such as Eric Meyer, Mark Newhouse, Jeffrey Zeldman, and others have promoted the idea of using unordered lists to configure navigation menus. After all, a navigation menu is a list of hyperlinks.

Configuring navigation with a list also helps to provide accessibility. Screen reader applications offer easy keyboard access and verbal cues for information organized in lists, such as the number of items in the list.

---

Focus on Accessibility

## Configure List Markers with CSS

Recall that the default display for an unordered list is to show a disc marker (often referred to as a bullet) in front of each list item. The default display for an ordered list is to show a decimal number in front of each list item. When you configure navigation hyperlinks in an unordered list, you may not always want to see those **list markers**. It's easy to configure

them with CSS. Use the `list-style-type` property to configure the marker for an unordered or ordered list. See [Table 6.4](#) for common property values.

---

**Table 6.4** css properties for ordered and unordered list markers

Property	Description	Value	List Marker Display

<b>Property</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Value</b>	<b>List Marker Display</b>
list-style-type	Configures the style of the list marker	none	No list markers
		disc	display
		circle	Circle
		square	Open circle
		decimal	Square
		upper-alpha	Decimal numbers
		lower-alpha	Uppercase letters
		lower-roman	Lowercase letters
			Lowercase Roman numerals

Property	Description	Value	List Marker Display
list-style-image	Image replacement for the list marker	The <code>url</code> keyword with parentheses surrounding the file name or path for the image	Image displays in front of each list item
list-style-position	Configures placement of the list marker	<code>inside</code>  <code>outside</code> (default)	Markers are indented; text wraps under the markers  Markers have default placement

Figure 6.26 shows an unordered list configured with square markers using the following CSS:

```
ul { list-style-type: square; }
```

---

**Figure 6.26 The unordered list markers are square**

---

- Website Design
- Interactive Animation
- E-Commerce Solutions
- Usability Studies
- Search Engine Optimization

Figure 6.27 shows an ordered list configured with uppercase letter markers using the following CSS:

```
ol { list-style-type: upper-alpha; }
```

---

**Figure 6.27 The ordered list markers use uppercase letters**

---

- A. Website Design
- B. Interactive Animation
- C. E-Commerce Solutions
- D. Usability Studies
- E. Search Engine Optimization

## Configure an Image as a List Marker

Use the **list-style-image** property to configure an image as the marker in an unordered or ordered list. In Figure 6.28, an image named trillium.gif was configured to replace the list markers using the following CSS:

```
ul {list-style-image: url(trillium.gif); }
```

---

**Figure 6.28** The list markers are replaced with an image

---



## Vertical Navigation with an Unordered List

Figure 6.29 shows the navigation area of a web page (see chapter6/layout/twocolnav.html in the student files) that uses an unordered list to organize the navigation links. The HTML is

```
<ul>
<li><a href="index.html">Home</a></li>
<li><a href="menu.html">Menu</a></li>
<li><a href="directions.html">Directions</a></li>
<li><a href="contact.html">Contact</a></li>
</ul>
```

---

**Figure 6.29** Navigation in an unordered list

---



## Configure with CSS

OK, so now that we're semantically correct, how about improving the visual aesthetic? Let's use CSS to eliminate the list marker. We also need to make sure that our special styles only apply to the unordered list in the navigation area (within the `nav` element), so we'll use a descendant selector. The CSS to configure the list in [Figure 6.30](#) is

```
nav ul { list-style-type: none; }
```

---

**Figure 6.30 The list markers have been eliminated with CSS**

---



## Remove the Underline with CSS

The `text-decoration` property modifies the display of text in the browser. This property is most often used to eliminate the underline from the navigation hyperlinks with `text-decoration: none;`.

The CSS to configure the list in [Figure 6.31](#) (see chapter6/layout/twocolnav2.html in the student files) that eliminates the underline on the hyperlinks in the navigation area (within the `nav` element) is

```
nav a { text-decoration: none; }
```

**Figure 6.31** The CSS `text-decoration` property has been applied

---



## The `display` Property

The CSS **`display`** property configures how the browser renders, or displays, an element on a web page. There is a default display value setting for each element, such as block display for a `div` element and inline display for a `span` element. It's even possible to hide the display of an element. See [Table 6.5](#) for a list of commonly used values.

---

**Table 6.5** The `display` property

Value	Purpose
<code>none</code>	The element will not display
<code>inline</code>	The element will display as an inline element in the same line as the surrounding text and/or elements
<code>inline-block</code>	The element will display as an inline display element adjacent to other inline display elements but also can be configured with properties of block display elements including width and height.
<code>block</code>	The element will display as a block element with a margin above and below

Value	Purpose
flex	The element will display as a block-level flex container (see Chapter 7  ).
grid	The element will display as a block-level grid container (see Chapter 7  ).

## Horizontal Navigation with an Unordered List

You may be wondering how to use an unordered list for a horizontal navigation menu. The answer is CSS! List items are block display elements. They need to be configured as inline display elements to display in a single line. To create a horizontal navigation menu, use the CSS display property to set the li elements to inline display or inline-block display.

Figure 6.32  shows the navigation area of a web page (see chapter6/layout/vertical.html in the student files) with a horizontal navigation area organized in an unordered list. The HTML is

```
<nav>
<ul>
  <li><a href="index.html">Home</a></li>
  <li><a href="menu.html">Menu</a></li>
  <li><a href="directions.html">Directions</a></li>
  <li><a href="contact.html">Contact</a></li>
</ul>
</nav>
```

---

**Figure 6.32 Navigation in an unordered list**

---



Home Menu Directions Contact

## Configure with CSS

The following CSS was applied in this example:

- To eliminate the list marker, apply `list-style-type: none;` to the `ul` element selector:

```
nav ul { list-style-type: none; }
```

- To render the list items horizontally instead of vertically, apply `display: inline;` to the `li` element selector:

```
nav li { display: inline; }
```

- To eliminate the underline from the hyperlinks, apply `text-decoration: none;` to the `a` element selector. Also, to add some space between the hyperlinks, apply `padding-right: 10px;` to the `a` element selector:

```
nav a { text-decoration: none; padding-right: 10px; }
```

## 6.9 CSS Interactivity with Pseudo-Classes

Have you ever visited a website and found that the text hyperlinks changed color when you moved the mouse pointer over them? Often, this is accomplished using a CSS **pseudo-class**, which can be used to apply a special effect to a selector. The five pseudo-classes that can be applied to the anchor element are shown in [Table 6.6](#).

---

**Table 6.6 Commonly used CSS pseudo-classes**

Pseudo-Class	When Applied
:link	Default state for a hyperlink that has not been clicked (visited)
:visited	Default state for a visited hyperlink
:focus	Triggered when the hyperlink has keyboard focus
:hover	Triggered when the mouse pointer moves over the hyperlink
:active	Triggered when the hyperlink is actually clicked

### Video Note

#### Interactivity with CSS pseudo-classes

Notice the order in which the pseudo-classes are listed in [Table 6.6](#).

Anchor element pseudo-classes *must be coded in this order* (although it's OK to omit one or more of those listed). If you code the pseudo-classes in a different order, the styles will not be reliably applied. It's common practice to configure the `:hover`, `:focus`, and `:active` pseudo-classes with the same styles.

To apply a pseudo-class, write it after the selector. The following code sample will configure text hyperlinks to be red initially. The sample also uses the `:hover` pseudo-class to configure the hyperlinks to change their appearance when the visitor places the mouse pointer over them so that the underline disappears and the color changes.

```
a:link { color: #ff0000; }
a:hover { text-decoration: none;
           color: #000066; }
```

[Figure 6.33](#) shows part of a web page that uses a similar technique.

Note the position of the mouse pointer over the Print This Page hyperlink. The text color has changed and has no underline.

---

**Figure 6.33 Using the `hover` pseudo-class**

---

1. Text hyperlinks are underlined by default.

 [Print This Page](#)

2. The `:hover` pseudo-class is triggered by the mouse. The browser no longer displays the underline below the hyperlink.

 [Print This Page](#)

---

## Hands-On Practice 6.5

You will use pseudo-classes to create interactive hyperlinks in this Hands-On Practice. Create a folder named ch6hover. Copy the lighthouse.jpg and lightlogo.jpg, files from the chapter6/starters folder in the student files into your ch6hover folder. Copy the starter2.html file from the chapter6 folder into your ch6hover folder. Display the web page in a browser. It should look similar to [Figure 6.34](#). Notice that the navigation area needs to be configured.

---

**Figure 6.34** The navigation area needs to be styled in this two-column page layout

---



Launch a text editor and open starter2.html. Save the file as index.html in your ch6hover folder.

1. Review the code for this page, which uses a two-column layout. Examine the nav element and modify the code to configure the navigation in an unordered list.

```
<ul>
  <li><a href="index.html">Home</a></li>
  <li><a href="menu.html">Menu</a></li>
  <li><a href="directions.html">Directions</a></li>
    <li><a href="contact.html">Contact</a>
  </li>
</ul>
```

Let's add CSS to the embedded styles to configure the unordered list elements in the nav element. Eliminate the list marker, set the left margin to 0, and set the padding to 10 pixels.

```
nav ul { list-style-type: none;
          margin-left: 0;
          padding: 10px; }
```

2. Next, configure basic interactivity with pseudo-classes.

- Configure the anchor tags in the nav element to have 10 pixels of padding, use bold font, and display no underline.

```
nav a { text-decoration: none;
          padding: 10px;
          font-weight: bold; }
```

- Use pseudo-classes to configure anchor tags in the nav element to display white (#FFFFFF) text for unvisited hyperlinks, light-gray (#EAEAEA) text for visited hyperlinks, and dark-blue (#000066) text when the mouse pointer hovers over hyperlinks:

```
nav a:link { color: #FFFFFF; }
nav a:visited { color: #EAEAEA; }
nav a:hover { color: #000066; }
```

Save your page and test in a browser. Move your mouse pointer over the navigation area and notice the change in the text color. Your page should look similar to [Figure 6.35](#) (see chapter6/6.5/index.html in the student files).

---

**Figure 6.35 css pseudo-classes add interactivity to the navigation**

---



---

## CSS Button

In addition to configuring an interactive text hyperlink, another use of CSS and pseudo-classes is to configure a hyperlink that looks like a button. This coding technique saves on the bandwidth used by button image files. [Figure 6.36](#) shows a web page with a “button” configured with CSS instead of with an image. The following CSS was applied in this example:

---

**Figure 6.36 CSS button**

---



A `button` class selector was configured with 60px border radius, 1em padding, #FFFFFF text color, #E38690 background color, Arial or sans-serif font family, 2em size bold font, centered text, and no text decoration. The CSS follows

```
.button { border-radius: 60px;
    padding: 1em;
    color: #FFFFFF;
    background-color: #E38690;
    font-family: Arial, sans-serif;
    font-size: 2em;
    font-weight: bold;
```

```
text-align: center;  
text-decoration: none; }
```

To provide for interactivity, the `:link`, `:visited`, and `:hover` pseudo-classes for the `button` class were configured. The CSS follows

```
.button:link { color : #FFFFFF; }  
.button:visited { color : #CCCCCC; }  
.button:hover { color : #965251;  
background-color: #F7DEE1; }
```

You can find a sample page that demonstrates a button with these styles in the student files (chapter6/button.html).

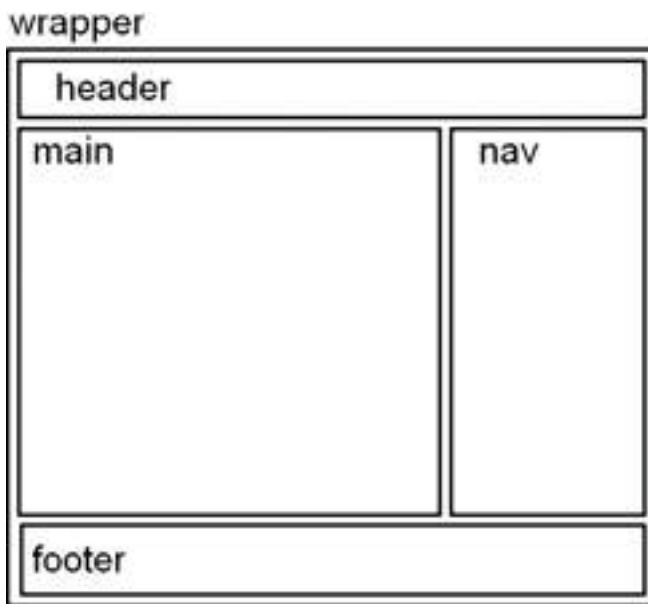
---

## Hands-On Practice 6.6

You've had some experience with a two-column layout, organizing navigation links in an unordered list, and configuring CSS pseudo-classes. Let's reinforce these skills with a Hands-On Practice. You'll create a new version of the Lighthouse Island Bistro home page with a header spanning two columns, content in the left column, vertical navigation in the right column, and a footer below the two columns. See [Figure 6.37](#) for a wireframe. You will configure the CSS in an external style sheet. Create a folder named ch6practice. Copy the lighthouse.jpg and lightlogo.jpg files from the chapter6/starters folder in the student files into your ch6practice folder. Copy the starter3.html file from the chapter6 folder into your ch6practice folder.

---

**Figure 6.37** Wireframe for a two-column layout with navigation in the right-side column.



1. Launch a text editor and open starter3.html. Save the file as index.html. Add a link element to the head section of the web page that associates this file with an external style sheet named lighthouse.css. A code sample follows.

```
<link href="lighthouse.css" rel="stylesheet">
```

2. Save the index.html file. Launch a text editor and create a new file named lighthouse.css in your ch6practice folder. Configure the CSS for the wireframe sections as follows:

- The universal selector: set the box-sizing property to border-box.

```
* { box-sizing: border-box; }
```

- The body element selector: very-dark-blue background (#00005D) and Verdana, Arial, or the default sans-serif font typeface

```
body { background-color: #00005D;
        font-family: Verdana, Arial,
        sans-serif; }
```

- The `wrapper` id: centered, width set to 80% of the browser viewport, minimum width of 960px, maximum width of 1200px, display text in a dark-blue color (#000066), and display a medium-blue (#B3C7E6) background color (*this color will display behind the nav area*)

```
#wrapper { margin: 0 auto;
            width: 80%;
            min-width: 960px; max-width:
            1200px;
            background-color: #B3C7E6;
            color: #000066; }
```

- The header element selector: slate-blue (#869DC7) background color; very-dark-blue (#00005D) text color; 150% font size; top, right, and bottom padding of 10px; 155 pixels of left padding; and the lightlogo.jpg background image

```
header { background-color: #869DC7;
          color: #00005D;
          font-size: 150%;
          padding: 10px 10px 10px 155px;
          background-repeat: no-repeat;
          background-image:
          url(lightlogo.jpg); }
```

- The nav element selector: float on the right, width set to 200px, display bold text, letter spacing of 0.1 em

```
nav { float: right;
      width: 200px;
      font-weight: bold;
      letter-spacing: 0.1em; }
```

- The main element selector: white background color (#FFFFFF), black text color (#000000), 10 pixels of padding on the top and bottom, 20 pixels of padding on the left and right, display set to block (to prevent an Internet Explorer display issue), and overflow set to auto

```
main { background-color: #FFFFFF;
        color: #000000;
        padding: 10px 20px;
        overflow: auto; }
        display: block; }
```

- The footer element selector: 70% font size, centered text, 10 pixels of padding, slate-blue background color (#869DC7), and clear set to both

```
footer { font-size: 70%;
          text-align: center;
          padding: 10px;
          background-color: #869DC7;
          clear: both; }
```

Save the file and display it in a browser. Your display should be similar to [Figure 6.38](#).

---

**Figure 6.38 Home page with major sections configured using CSS**



3. Continue editing the lighthouse.css file to style the h2 element selector and floating image. Configure the h2 element selector with slate-blue text color (#869DC7) and Arial or sans-serif font typeface. Configure the `floatright` id to float on the right side with 10 pixels of margin.

```
h2 { color: #869DC7;
      font-family: Arial, sans-serif; }
#floatright { float: right;
               margin: 10px; }
```

4. Continue editing the lighthouse.css file and configure the navigation bar.

- The ul element selector: Eliminate the list markers. Set a zero margin and zero padding.

```
nav ul { list-style-type: none; margin:
          0; padding: 0; }
```

- The a element selector: no underline, 20 pixels of padding, medium-blue background color (#B3C7E6), and 1 pixel solid white bottom border

Use `display: block;` to allow the web page visitor to click anywhere on the anchor “button” to activate the hyperlink.

```
nav a { text-decoration: none;
    padding: 20px;
    display: block;
    background-color: #B3C7E6;
    border-bottom: 1px solid
    #FFFFFF; }
```

Configure the `:link`, `:visited`, and `:hover` pseudo-classes as follows:

```
nav a:link { color: #FFF; }
nav a:visited { color: #EAEAEA; }
nav a:hover { color: #869DC7;
    background-color: #EAEAEA;
}
```

5. It’s common practice for the header area of a website to link to the home page—even though you don’t see the underline for the hyperlink. The header text “Lighthouse Island Bistro” is coded as a hyperlink. Continue editing your lighthouse.css file to configure any hyperlinks in the header to have no underline. Also configure the `:link`, `:visited`, and `:hover` pseudo-classes for anchor elements in the header.

```
header a { text-decoration: none; }
header a:link { color: #00005D; }
header a:visited { color: #00005D; }
header a:hover { color: #FFFFFF; }.
```

Save your files. Open your index.html file in a browser. Move your mouse pointer over the navigation area and notice the interactivity, as shown in [Figure 6.39](#) (see chapter6/6.6/index.html in the student files).

---

**Figure 6.39 css pseudo-classes add interactivity to the page**

---



---

## FAQ

---

In [Hands-On Practice 6.6](#) why did we set the display property to block for the main element selector?

Although all modern browsers support the newer HTML5 elements such as main, header, nav, and footer as valid block display elements, Internet Explorer does not. Sometimes this causes a web page to render poorly in

Internet Explorer. If your layout depends on an element being treated as block display, add CSS to force Internet Explorer (and any other older browsers) to comply. For example, code the following CSS to force block display for the header, nav, main, and footer elements:

```
header, nav, main, footer { display: block; }
```

## 6.10 CSS Sprites

When browsers display web pages, they must make a separate http request for every file used by the page, including .css files and image files such as .gif, .jpg, and .png files. Each http request takes time and resources. As mentioned in [Chapter 4](#), a **sprite** is an image file that contains multiple small graphics. Using CSS to configure the small graphics combined in the sprite as background images for various web page elements is called **CSS sprites**, a technique made popular by David Shea (<http://www.alistapart.com/articles/sprites>).

The CSS sprites technique uses the CSS `background-image`, `background-repeat`, and `background-position` properties to manipulate the placement of the background image. The single graphics file saves download time because the browser only needs to make one http request for the combined image instead of many requests for the individual smaller images. [Figure 6.40](#) shows a sprite with two lighthouse images on a transparent background. These images are configured as background images for the navigation hyperlinks with CSS as shown in [Figure 6.41](#). You'll see this in action as you complete the next Hands-On Practice.

---

**Figure 6.40** The sprite consists of two images in a single graphics file

---

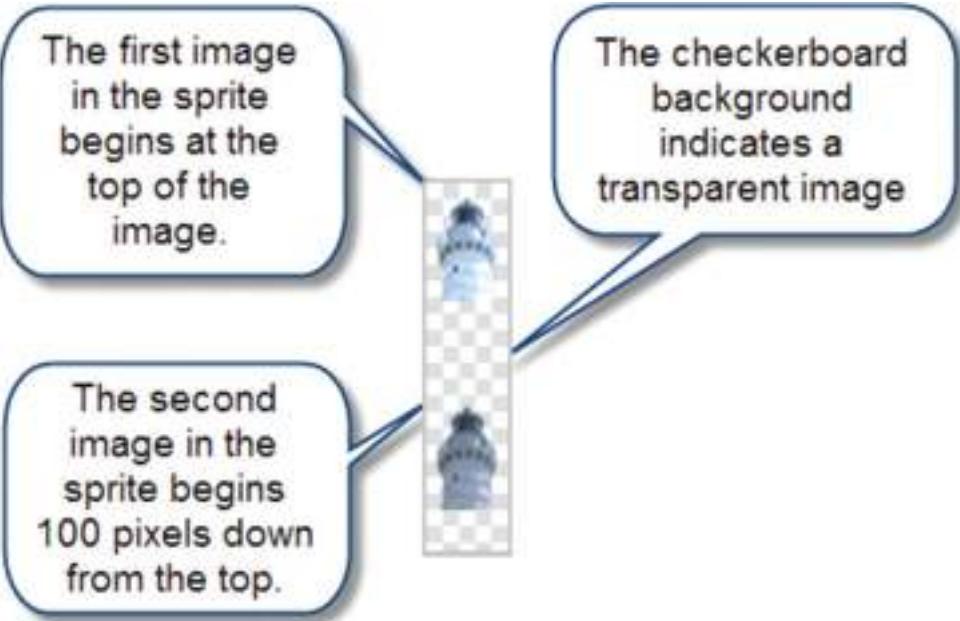


Figure 6.41 Sprites in action



## Hands-On Practice 6.7

You will work with CSS sprites in this Hands-On Practice as you create the web page shown in [Figure 6.41](#). Create a new folder named ch6sprites. Use your files from [Hands-On Practice 6.6](#) or in the chapter6/6.6 folder. Copy all the files into your ch6sprites folder. Copy the sprites.gif file from the chapter6/starters folder into your ch6sprites folder. The sprites.gif, shown in [Figure 6.40](#), contains two lighthouse images. The first lighthouse image starts at the top of the graphics file. The second lighthouse image begins 100 pixels down from the top of the graphics file. We'll use the value 100 when we configure the display of the second image.

Launch a text editor and open lighthouse.css. You will edit the styles to configure background images for the navigation hyperlinks.

**1. Configure the background image for navigation hyperlinks.**

Add the following styles to the `nav a` selector to set the background image to the sprites.gif with no repeat. The value `right` in the `background-position` property configures the lighthouse image to display at the right of the navigation element. The value `0` in the `background-position` property configures the display at offset `0` from the top (at the very top) so the first lighthouse image displays.

```
nav a { text-decoration: none;
         display: block;
         padding: 20px;
         background-color: #B3C7E6;
         border-bottom: 1px solid #FFFFFF;
         background-image: url(sprites.gif);
         background-repeat: no-repeat;
         background-position: right 0; }
```

**2.** Configure the second lighthouse image to display when the mouse pointer passes over the hyperlink. Add the following styles to the `nav a:hover` selector to display the second lighthouse image. The value `right` in the `background-position` property configures the lighthouse image to display at the right of the navigation element. The value `-100px` in the `background-position` property configures the display at an offset of 100 pixels down from the top so the second lighthouse image appears.

```
nav a:hover { background-color: #EAEAEA;  
              color: #869dc7;  
              background-position: right  
              -100px; }
```

Save the file and test it in a browser. Your page should look similar to [Figure 6.41](#). Move your mouse pointer over the navigation hyperlinks to see the background images change. Compare your work with the sample found in the student files (chapter6/6.7/index.html).

---

## FAQ

How can I create my own sprite graphics file?

Most web developers use a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, Adobe Fireworks, or GIMP to edit images and save them in a single graphics file for use as a sprite. Or, you could use a web-based sprite generator such as the ones listed below:

- CSS Sprites Generator: <https://www.toptal.com/developers/css/sprite-generator>
  - CSS Sprite Generator: <http://spritegen.website-performance.org>
  - Instant Sprite: <https://instantsprite.com/>
-

## 6.11 CSS for Printing

Even though the “paperless society” has been talked about for decades, the fact is that many people still love paper, and you can expect your web pages to be printed. CSS offers you some control over what gets printed and how the printouts are configured. This is easy to do using external style sheets. Create one external style sheet with the configurations for browser display and a second external style sheet with the special printing configurations. Associate both of the external style sheets to the web page using two link elements. Configure a **media attribute** on each link element. [Table 6.7](#) describes commonly used values of the media attribute.

---

**Table 6.7 The media Attribute**

Value	Purpose
screen	The default value; indicates the style sheet that configures typical browser viewport display on a color computer screen
print	Indicates the style sheet that configures the printed formatting

Modern browsers will use the correct style sheet depending on whether they are rendering a screen display or preparing to print a document. Use `media="screen"` to configure the link element for your browser display.

Use `media="print"` to configure the link element for your printout.

Sample HTML follows:

```
<link rel="stylesheet" href="lighthouse.css"
      media="screen">
    <link rel="stylesheet" href="lighthouseprint.css"
      media="print">
```

## Print Styling Best Practices

You might be wondering how a print style sheet should differ from the CSS used to display the web page in a browser. Let's explore some commonly used techniques for styling printed web pages.

- **HIDE NONESSENTIAL CONTENT.** It's common practice to prevent banner ads, navigation, or other extraneous areas from appearing on the printout. Use the `display: none;` style declaration to hide content that is not needed on a printout of the web page.
- **CONFIGURE FONT SIZE AND COLOR FOR PRINTING.** Another common practice is to configure the font sizes on the print style sheet to use pt units. This will better control the text on the printout. You might also consider configuring the text color to black (#000000) if you envision the need for visitors to print your pages often. The default setting on most browsers prevent background colors and background images from printing, but you can also prevent background image and background color display in your print style sheet.
- **CONTROL PAGE BREAKS.** Use the CSS `page-break-before` or `page-break-after` properties to control page breaks when printing the web page. Well-supported values for these properties are `always` (the page break will always occur as designated), `avoid` (if possible,

the page break will not occur before or after, as designated), and `auto` (default). For example, to configure a page break at a specific point in the document (in this case, right before an element assigned to the class named `newpage`), configure the CSS as shown below:

```
.newpage { page-break-before: always; }
```

## Hands-On Practice 6.8

In this Hands-On Practice, you'll rework the Lighthouse Island Bistro page from [Hands-On Practice 6.7](#) to be configured for optimal screen display and printing. Create a new folder named ch6print. Copy the files from either your ch6sprites folder or the student files chapter6/6.7 folder into the ch6print folder.

1. Edit the index.html file and add a link tag in the head section that associates the web page with the lightprint.css file for printing (use `media="print"`). Save the index.html file.
2. Launch a text editor and open lighthouse.css. Since you want to keep most of the styles for printing, you will start by creating a new version of the external style sheet. Save lighthouse.css with the name of lightprint.css in the ch6print folder. You will modify three areas on this style sheet: the header selector, the main selector, and the nav selector.
  - Modify the header styles to print using black text in 20 point font size:

```
header { color: #000000; font-size: 20pt;  
}
```

- Modify the main element area to print using a serif typeface in a 12 point font size:

```
main { font-family: "Times New Roman", serif; font-size: 12pt; }
```

- Modify the navigation area to not display:

```
nav { display: none; }
```

Save your file.

**3.** Test your work. Display your index.html file in a browser.

Select Print from the menu. Your display should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 6.42](#). The header and content font sizes have been configured. The navigation does not display. The student files contain a sample solution in the chapter6/6.8 folder.

**Figure 6.42** The print preview display of the web page.



## 6.12 Positioning with CSS

You've seen how normal flow causes the browser to render the elements in the order that they appear in the HTML source code. You have also experienced how floating elements can move and shift as the browser viewport is resized. When using CSS for page layout there are situations when you may want more control over the position of an element. The **position** property configures the type of positioning used when the browser renders an element. [Table 6.8](#) lists position property values and their purpose.

---

**Table 6.8 The position Property**

Value	Purpose
static	Default value; the element is rendered in normal flow
fixed	Configures the location of an element within the browser viewport; the element does not move when the page is scrolled
relative	Configures the location of an element relative to where it would otherwise render in normal flow
absolute	Precisely configures the location of an element outside of normal flow
sticky	Combines features of relative and fixed positioning. Not supported in Internet Explorer.

# Static Positioning

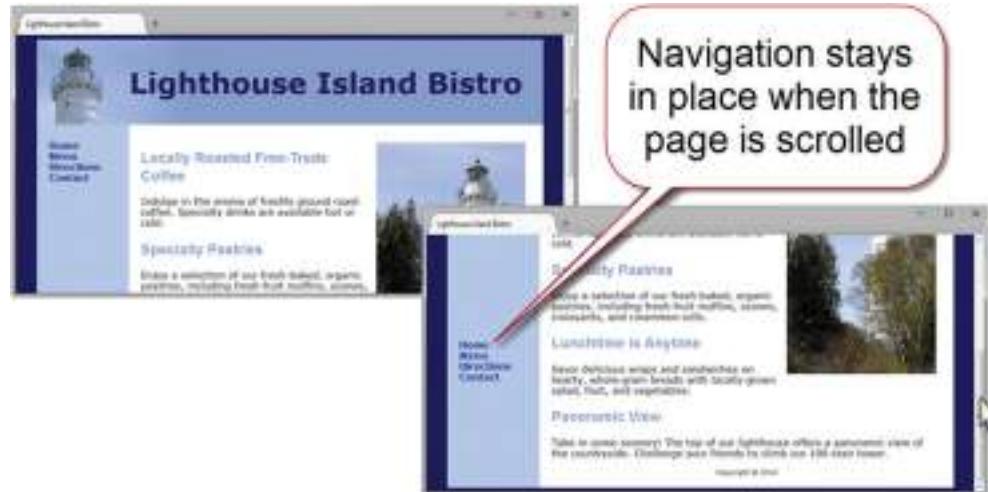
**Static positioning** is the default and causes the browser to render an element in normal flow. As you've worked through the exercises in this book, you have created web pages that the browser rendered using normal flow.

# Fixed Positioning

Use **fixed positioning** to cause an element to be removed from normal flow and to remain stationary, or "fixed in place," when the web page is scrolled in the browser viewport. Figure 6.43 shows a web page (see chapter6/fixed.html in the student files) with a navigation area configured with fixed position. The navigation stays in place even though the user has scrolled down the page. The CSS follows:

```
nav { position: fixed; }
```

Figure 6.43 The navigation is configured with fixed positioning



# Relative Positioning

Use **relative positioning** to change the location of an element slightly, relative to where it would otherwise appear in normal flow. However, the area in normal flow is still reserved for the element and other elements will flow around that reserved space. Configure relative positioning with the `position: relative;` property along with one or more of the following offset properties: `left`, `right`, `top`, `bottom`. [Table 6.9](#) lists the offset properties.

---

**Table 6.9 The Position Offset Properties**

Property	Value	Purpose
<code>left</code>	Numeric value or percentage	The position of the element offset from the left side of the container element
<code>right</code>	Numeric value or percentage	The position of the element offset from the right side of the container element
<code>top</code>	Numeric value or percentage	The position of the element offset from the top of the container element
<code>bottom</code>	Numeric value or percentage	The position of the element offset from the bottom of the container element

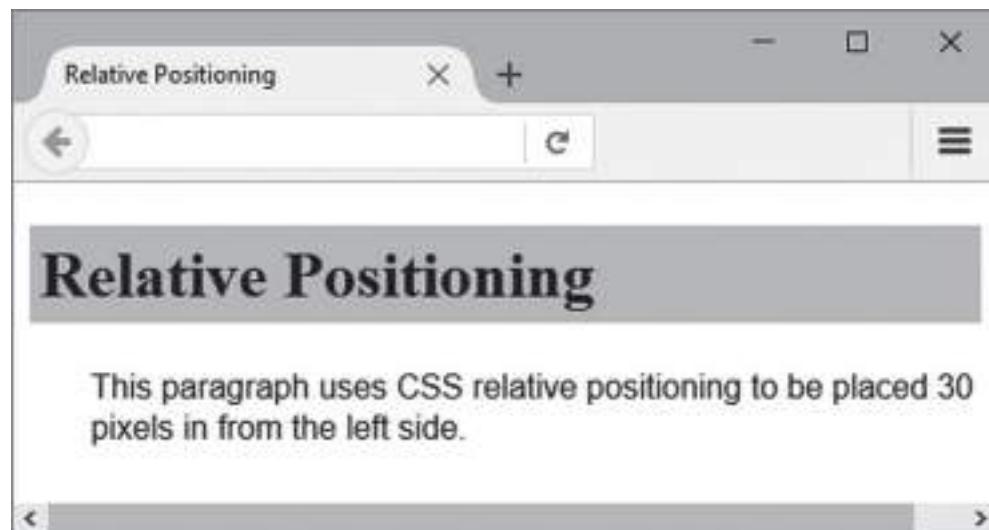
Figure 6.44 shows a web page (chapter6/relative.html in the student files) that uses relative positioning along with the **left** property to configure the placement of an element in relation to the normal flow. In this case, the container element is the body of the web page. The result is that the content of the element is rendered as being offset or shifted by 30 pixels from the left where it would normally be placed at the browser's left margin. Notice also how the background-color and padding properties configure the h1 element. The CSS is

```
p { position: relative;
    left: 30px;
    font-family: Arial, sans-serif; }
h1 { background-color: #cccccc;
    padding: 5px;
    color: #000000; }
```

---

Figure 6.44 The paragraph is configured using relative positioning

---



The HTML source code follows:

```
<h1>Relative Positioning</h1>
<p>This paragraph uses CSS relative positioning to be
placed 30 pixels
in from the left side.</p>
```

## Sticky Positioning

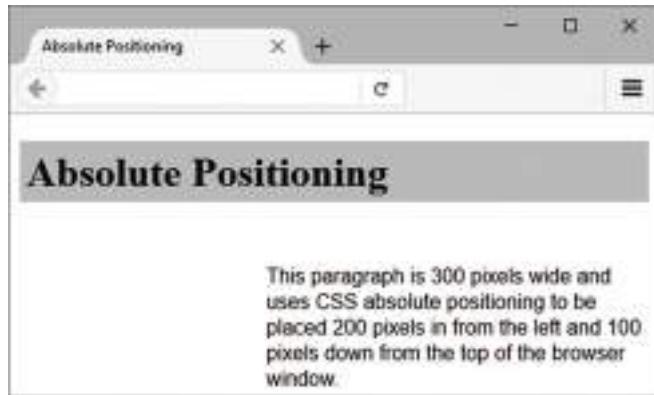
**Sticky positioning** combines features of relative and fixed positioning. With sticky positioning, the element initially displays relative to where it would be rendered in normal flow (which may even be its final sticky position, depending on where the element is located within the source code and other CSS that may be applied). If the element is not initially rendered at its final sticky position, as soon as the browser scrolls the element to the specified position the element gets “stuck,” remains there as a fixed position element, and no longer moves when the page is scrolled. If an element is initially rendered at its sticky position, it will remain there when the browser scrolls. Explore an example in the student files (chapter6/layout/sticky.html) of using sticky positioning to force a navigation bar to move up to the top of the page when scrolled. The positioning CSS follows:

```
nav { position: sticky;
      top: 0; }
```

---

**Figure 6.45** The paragraph is configured with absolute positioning

---



## Absolute Positioning

Use **absolute positioning** to precisely specify the location of an element outside of normal flow in relation to its first parent non-static element. If there is no non-static parent element, the absolute position is specified in relation to the body of the web page. Configure absolute positioning with the `position: absolute;` property along with one or more of the offset properties (`left`, `right`, `top`, `bottom`) listed in [Table 6.9](#).

[Figure 6.45](#) depicts a web page that configures an element with absolute positioning to display the content 200 pixels in from the left margin and 100 pixels down from the top of the web page document. An example is in the student files, (chapter6/absolute.html).

The CSS is

```
p { position: absolute;
    left: 200px;
    top: 100px;
    font-family: Arial, sans-serif;
    width: 300px; }
```

The HTML source code is

```
<h1>Absolute Positioning</h1>
    <p>This paragraph is 300 pixels wide and uses CSS
absolute
    positioning to be placed 200 pixels in from the left
and 100 pixels
    down from the top of the browser window.</p>
```

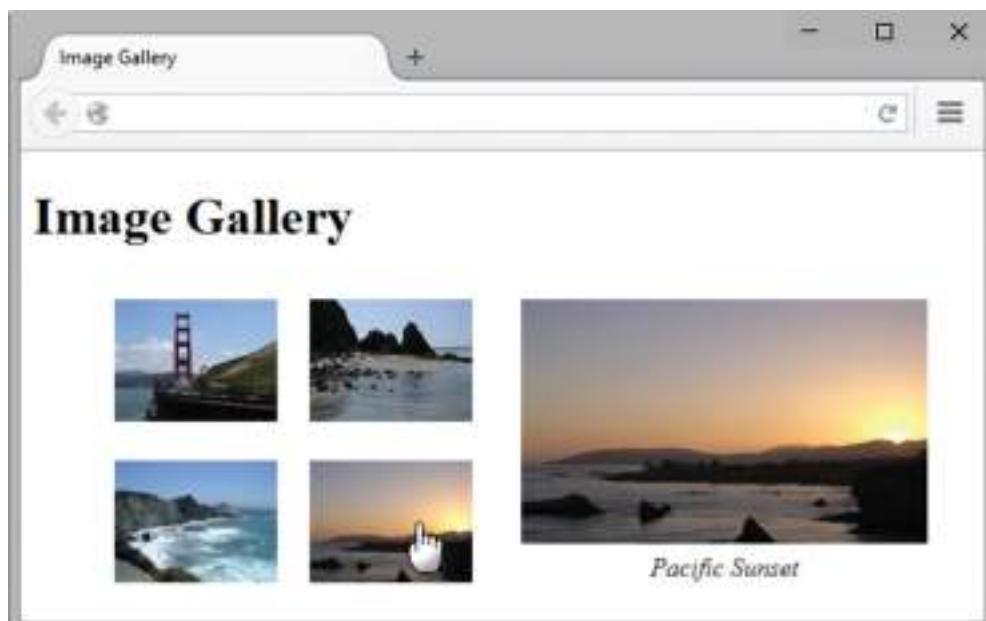
## Practice with Positioning

Recall that the CSS `:hover` pseudo-class provides a way to configure styles to display when the web page visitor moves the mouse over an element. You'll use this basic interactivity along with CSS positioning and display properties to configure an interactive image gallery with CSS and HTML. [Figure 6.46](#) shows the interactive image gallery in action (see chapter6/6.9/gallery.html in the student files). When you place the mouse over a thumbnail image, the larger version of the image is displayed along with a caption. If you click on the thumbnail, the larger version of the image displays in its own browser window.

---

**Figure 6.46 An interactive image gallery with CSS**

---



## Hands-On Practice 6.9

In this Hands-On Practice, you will create the interactive image gallery web page shown in [Figure 6.46](#). Copy the following images located in the student files chapter6/starters folder into a folder named gallery2: photo1.jpg, photo2.jpg, photo3.jpg, photo4.jpg, photo1thumb.jpg, photo2thumb.jpg, photo3thumb.jpg, and photo4thumb.jpg.

Launch a text editor and modify the chapter6/template.html file to configure a web page as indicated:

1. Configure the text, Image Gallery, within an h1 element, and within the title element.
  2. Code a div assigned to the id named `gallery`. This div will contain the thumbnail images, which will be configured within an unordered list.
  3. Configure an unordered list within the div. Code four li elements, one for each thumbnail image. The thumbnail images will function as image links with a :hover pseudo-class that causes the larger image to display on the page.
- We'll make this all happen by configuring an anchor element containing both the thumbnail image and a span element that comprises the larger image along with descriptive text.

An example of the first li element is

```
<li><a href="photo1.png">  
    <span><br>Golden Gate  
Bridge</span></a>  
</li>
```

4. Configure all four li elements in a similar manner. Substitute the actual name of each image file for the href and src values in the code. Write your own descriptive text for each image. Use photo2.jpg and photo2thumb.jpg in the second li element. Use photo3.jpg and photo3thumb.jpg in the third li element. Use photo4.jpg and photo4thumb.jpg for the fourth li element. Save the file as index.html in the gallery2 folder. Display your page in a browser. You'll see an unordered list with the thumbnail images, the larger images, and the descriptive text. **Figure 6.47** shows a partial screen capture.

---

**Figure 6.47** The web page display before CSS

---



5. Now, let's add embedded CSS. Open your index.html file in a text editor and code a style element in the head section. The gallery id will use relative positioning instead of the default static positioning. This does not change the location of the gallery but sets the stage to use absolute positioning on the span element in relation to its container (#gallery) instead

of in relation to the entire web page document. This won't matter too much for our very basic example, but it would be very helpful if the gallery were part of a more complex web page. Configure embedded CSS as follows:

- a. Set the gallery id to use relative positioning.

```
#gallery { position: relative; }
```

- b. The unordered list in the gallery should have a width of 250 pixels and no list marker.

```
#gallery ul { width: 250px; list-style-type: none; }
```

- c. Configure the list item elements in the gallery with inline display, left float, and 10 pixels of padding.

```
#gallery li { display: inline; float: left; padding: 10px; }
```

- d. The images in the gallery should not display a border.

```
#gallery img { border-style: none; }
```

- e. Configure anchor elements in the gallery to have no underline, #333 text color, and italic text.

```
#gallery a { text-decoration: none; color: #333; font-style: italic; }
```

- f. Configure span elements in the gallery not to display initially.

```
#gallery span { display: none; }
```

- g. Configure the span elements in the gallery to display *only* when the web visitor hovers the mouse over the thumbnail image link. Set the location of the span to use absolute positioning. Locate the span 10 pixels down from the top and 300 pixels in from the left. Center the text within the span:

```
#gallery a:hover span { display: block;
position: absolute;
top: 10px; left: 300px; text-
align: center; }
```

Save your page and display it in a browser. Your interactive image gallery should work well in modern browsers. Compare your work to [Figure 6.46](#) and the sample in the student files (chapter6/6.9/gallery.html).

## 6.13 Fixed Position Navigation Bar

You've probably seen web pages that feature a header area or navigation bar that is fixed in place across the top of the browser window. This popular page layout technique is easy to accomplish with CSS positioning and the CSS z-index property.

### The `z-index` property

CSS positioning allows us to configure the vertical and horizontal placement of an element. The **z-index** property provides a way to configure a third dimension—to configure the stacking of positioned elements on a web page. In order for z-index to apply, the element must be positioned with either absolute, relative, fixed, or sticky positioning. The default z-index for a positioned element is 0. To configure a different z-index use an integer value. Elements with higher z-index values will stack on top of elements with lower z-index values. Given two or more elements placed in overlapping space on a web page, the positioned element with the highest z-index value will stack on the top and display over the other element(s).

---

### Hands-On Practice 6.10

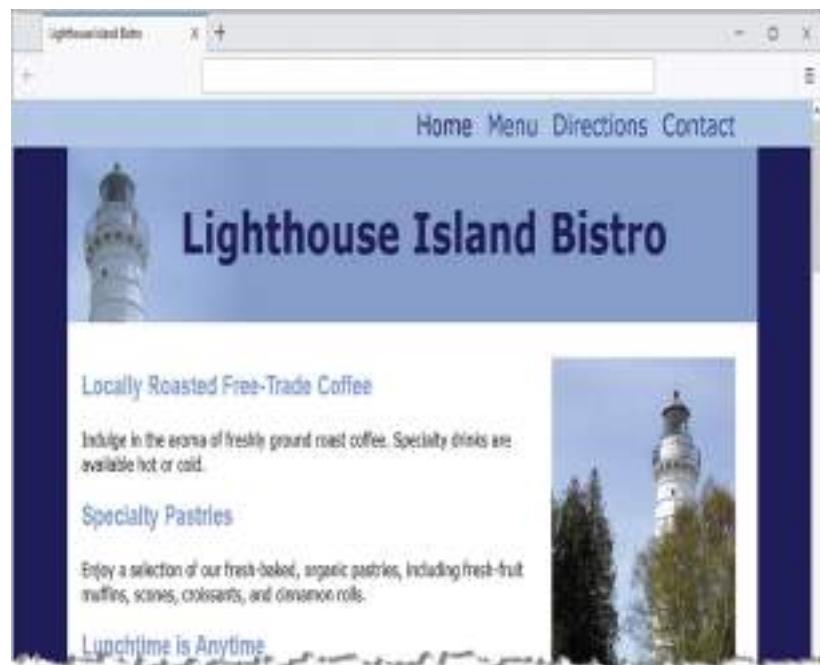
In this Hands-On Practice, you will configure a fixed navigation area across the top of a web page that remains in place when the page is vertically scrolled in a browser. Create a new folder named ch6z. Copy the following files from the chapter6/layout folder into the ch6z folder: lightlogo.jpg, lighthouse.jpg, and horizontal.html.

**1. Open the horizontal.html file in a browser.** The top of the page should consist of a horizontal navigation bar below the header area. You will modify the layout of this page so that it looks like [Figure 6.48](#)—with a fixed top navigation bar above the header area. When you scroll the page in the browser, the fixed navigation area remains in place as the rest of the page moves. Rename the file index.html.

---

**Figure 6.48 The web page has a fixed top navigation bar.**

---



**2. Launch a text editor and open the file.** You will edit the embedded CSS as follows.

- The nav element selector. Configure a new style rule that sets fixed position beginning at the top left of the page, 40px height, 40em minimum width, 100% width, #B3C7E6 background color, and z-index set to a high value, such as 9999.

```
nav { position: fixed; top: 0; left: 0;
      height: 40px; width: 100%; min-
      width: 40em;
      background-color: #B3C7E6;
      z-index: 9999; }
```

■ **The nav ul element selector.** Edit the style rule.

Configure new style declarations for right-aligned text, 5px margin, and 10% right padding.

```
nav ul { list-style-type: none;
          font-size: 1.5em;
          text-align: right;
          margin: 5px;
          padding-right: 10%; }
```

■ **The header element selector.** Edit the style rule. To allow room for the navigation bar at the top of the page, add a declaration for a 40px top margin.

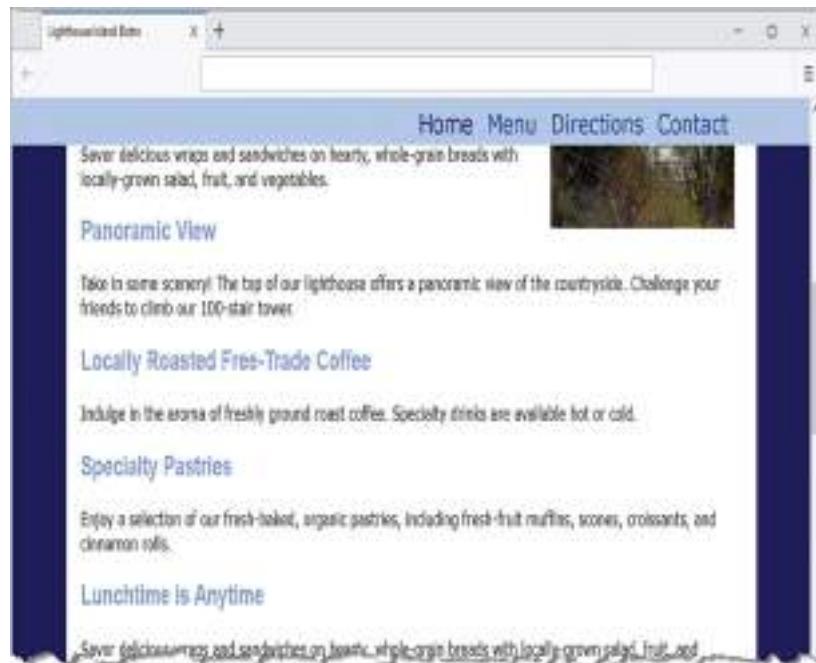
```
header { background-color: #869DC7;
          color: #00005D;
          font-size: 150%; padding: 10px
          10px 10px 155px;
          background-image:
          url(lightlogo.jpg);
          background-repeat: no-repeat;
          height: 130px;
          margin-top: 40px; }
```

3. Edit the HTML. The current page content is too short to showcase the fixed navigation bar. You will need to edit the content of the page to make it longer. Since this is a practice page, a quick way to get length is to copy and

paste the h2 and paragraph code three or four times on the page within the main element.

Save the file and test in a browser. Your page should be similar to [Figure 6.48](#). Scroll down the page and your display should be similar to [Figure 6.49](#). The navigation bar is fixed in place even though the rest of the page scrolls up and down. A sample solution is in the Student Files chapter6/6.10 folder.

**Figure 6.49 The navigation bar stays in place while the content is scrolled.**



4. You just configured a fixed navigation bar using `position: fixed`.

Next, explore what happens when you use the `position` property set to `sticky`.

Open your index.html file in a text editor. Edit the nav element style rule and change the position property value from fixed to sticky. Save your file as sticky1.html.

When you display sticky1.html in a browser, the nav area is shown below the header area (which is where it appears in

the source code). As you scroll the page down and the nav area shifts to the top of the browser viewport, the nav area gets “stuck” and remains there while you continue to scroll down. If you scroll up, the nav area will eventually revert to its initial position below the header. This is an interesting effect. An example is in the student files (chapter6/6.10/sticky1.html).

What if you wanted the nav to always be fixed in place at the top of the browser viewport and you wanted to use position: sticky? In this case, you would need to edit the HTML and move the nav element above the header element. An example is in the student files (chapter6/6.10/sticky2.html).

---

## 6.14 Single Page Website

Recall from [Chapter 5](#) that a single page website consists of one very long page (a single HTML file) with a clearly defined navigation area, typically at the top of the page. The navigation takes you to specific areas on the page because each hyperlink points to a specific element on the page indicated by a fragment identifier.

### Fragment Identifiers

Browsers begin the display of a web page at the top of the document. However, there are times when you need to provide the capability to link to a specific portion of a web page instead of the top. You can accomplish this by coding a hyperlink to a **fragment identifier** (sometimes called a named fragment or fragment id), which is simply an HTML element assigned to an id attribute.

---

#### Video Note

#### *Linking to a Named Fragment*

There are two components to your coding when using fragment identifiers:

1. The tag that identifies the **named fragment** of a web page: The tag must be assigned to an id. For example, `<div id="content">`
2. The anchor tag that links to the named fragment on a web page.

Linking to a named fragment is often used on long web pages, such as a single page website. Lists of frequently asked questions (FAQs) also often use fragment identifiers to jump to a specific part of the page and display the answer to a question. Another use of a fragment identifier is a “Back to top” hyperlink that a visitor could select to cause the browser to quickly scroll the page back to the top of the page. Fragment identifiers can help to provide for accessibility. Web pages may have a fragment identifier to indicate the beginning of the actual page content. When the visitor clicks on a “Skip to content” hyperlink, the browser links to the fragment identifier and shifts focus to the content area of the page. This “Skip to content” or “Skip navigation” link provides a way for screen reader users to skip repetitive navigation links (see Figure 6.50 □).

---

**Figure 6.50** The “Skip to Content” link in action

---



This is accomplished in two steps:

- 1. ESTABLISH THE TARGET.** Create the “Skip to content” fragment identifier by configuring an element that begins the page content with an id, for example, `<div id="content">`
- 2. REFERENCE THE TARGET.** At the point of the page where you want to place a hyperlink to the content, code an anchor element. Use the `href` attribute and place a # symbol (called a hash mark) before the name of the fragment identifier. The code for a hyperlink to the named fragment “content” is

```
<a href="#content">Skip to Content</a>
```

The hash mark indicates that the browser should search for an id on the same page. If you forget to type the hash mark, the browser will not look on the same web page; it will look for an external file.

There may be times when you need to link to a named fragment on another web page. To accomplish this, place a "#" followed by the fragment identifier id value after the file name in the anchor tag. For example, to link to a specific area, such as the Contact Info, configured with id="contact" in the index.html file from any other page on the same website, you could use the following HTML:

```
<a href="index.html#contact">Contact Info</a>
```

In the next Hands-On Practice, you’ll use fragment identifiers to configure the navigation on a single page website.



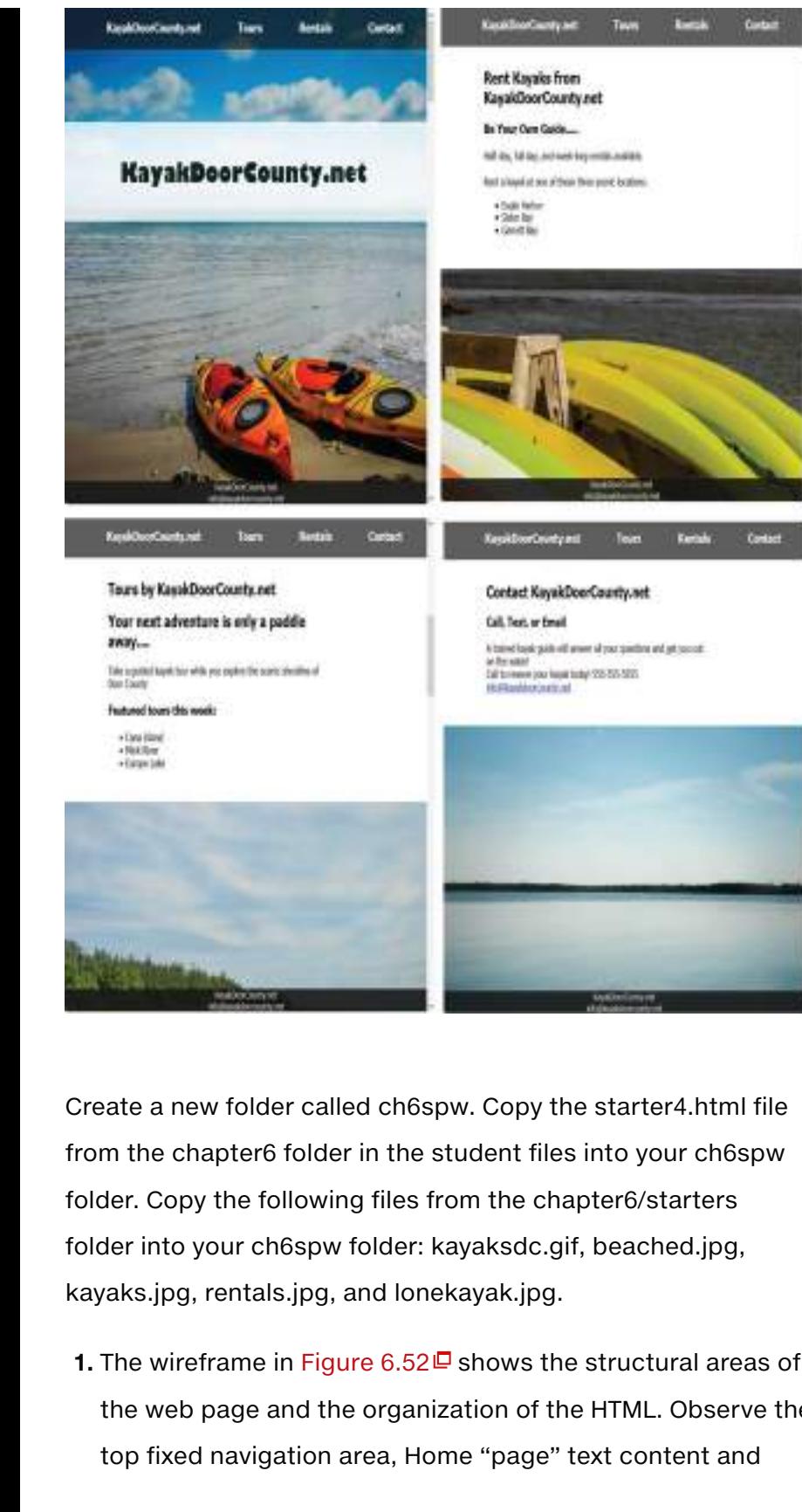
## Hands-On Practice 6.11

In this Hands-On Practice you'll configure a single page website that with a fixed top navigation bar, fixed bottom footer, and four sections: home, tours, rentals, and contact. Each of these sections will function as a "page" in the single page website, as shown in [Figure 6.51](#). Notice the fixed navigation is at the top of the browser viewport and the fixed footer is at the bottom of the browser viewport. The screen captures shown in [Figure 6.51](#) are all using a single HTML file—a single page website.

---

**Figure 6.51 Single page website**

---

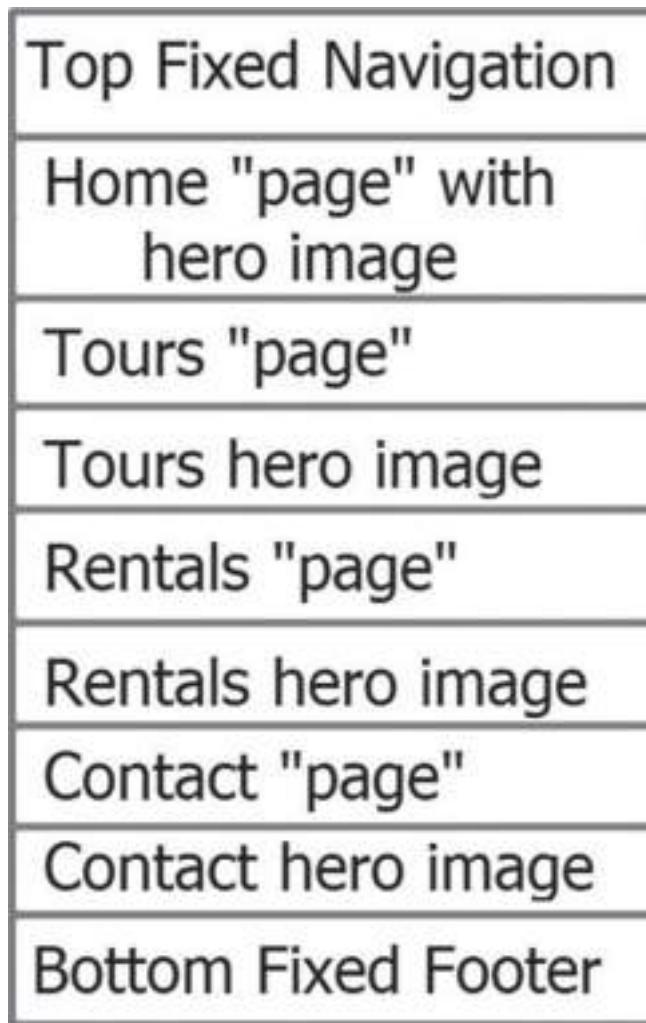


Create a new folder called ch6spw. Copy the starter4.html file from the chapter6 folder in the student files into your ch6spw folder. Copy the following files from the chapter6/starters folder into your ch6spw folder: kayaksdc.gif, beached.jpg, kayaks.jpg, rentals.jpg, and lonekayak.jpg.

1. The wireframe in [Figure 6.52](#) shows the structural areas of the web page and the organization of the HTML. Observe the top fixed navigation area, Home “page” text content and

hero image, Tours “page” text content, Tours hero image, Rentals “page” text content, Rentals hero image, Contact “page” text content, Contact hero image, and footer.

**Figure 6.52** Wireframe for single page website



Launch a text editor and open your starter4.html file. Scroll down to the HTML and notice that there are comments indicating Home Page, Tours Page, Rentals Page, and Contact Page. Notice that each page area begins with a section element. Configure a named fragment for each area.

- Assign the Home Page section to the named fragment home by coding `id="home"` on the opening section

tag.

- Assign the Tours Page section to the named fragment home by coding `id="tours"` on the opening section tag
- Assign the Rentals Page section to the named fragment home by coding `id="rentals"` on the opening section tag.
- Assign the Contact Page section to the named fragment home by coding `id="contact"` on the opening section tag

**2.** Continue editing the file and configure the navigation area.

Locate the `nav` element below the opening `body` tag. Code an ordered list to configure the navigation links within the `nav` element.

- The text “**KayakDoorCounty.net**” will hyperlink to `#home`
- The text “Tours” will hyperlink to `#tours`
- The text “Rentals” will hyperlink to `#rentals`
- The text “Contact” will hyperlink to `#contact`

The HTML is shown below:

```
<nav>
  <ul>
    <li><a href="#home">KayakDoorCounty.net</a>
  </li></p>
    <li><a href="#tours">Tours</a></li></p>
    <li><a href="#rentals">Rentals</a></li></p>
    <li><a href="#contact">Contact</a></li></p>
  </ul>
</nav>
```

Save your file as `index.html` and display it in a browser. Your display should be similar to the first browser screen shot in [Figure 6.51](#). Click the navigation hyperlinks view the other

page sections. Scroll down and up the single page website to view all the information and view the photographs. You can compare your work to chapter6/6.11/index.html in the student files. If you'd prefer that the footer does not always appear in the browser viewport, you can edit the CSS and remove the position and bottom style declarations (chapter6.11/index2.html in the student files).

---

## Parallax Scrolling

You may have noticed single page websites in which the background images scrolled at a different speed than the text content – this is a technique called **parallax scrolling**. There are many ways to accomplish this effect, some requiring the use of JavaScript or advanced CSS techniques. A very easy way to get the look of parallax scrolling on a single page website is to use the background-attachment property, which configures whether the background remains fixed in place or scrolls along with the page in the browser viewport.

---

## Hands-On Practice 6.12

In this Hands-On Practice you'll apply a parallax scrolling effect on your single page website from [Hands-On Practice 6.11](#).

Create a new folder named ch6plx. Copy all the files from either your ch6spw folder or the chapter6/6.11 folder in the student files.

Launch a text editor and open the index.html file. Locate the CSS in the head section and view the styles for the hero images. Each hero image is already configured with a minimum

height (`min-height` property), centered position (`background-position: center;`), no repeats (`background-repeat: no-repeat;`), and to scale (`background-size: cover;`). There is one more CSS property that needs to be in place to obtain the parallax scrolling effect: `background-attachment`. Recall from [Chapter 4](#) that setting the `background-attachment` property to the value `fixed` will prevent the background image from scrolling with the page.

Edit the CSS in the head section and add a `background-attachment: fixed;` style declaration to the style rules for the `hero`, `tourshero`, `rentalshero`, and `contacthero` class selectors.

Save your file as `index.html` and display it in a browser. Your display should be similar to the first browser screen shot in [Figure 6.53](#).

---

### Figure 6.53 Using the `background-attachment` property

---

The figure consists of three vertically stacked screenshots of the KayakDoorCounty.net website. Each screenshot shows a different background image for the main content area:

- Top Screenshot:** Shows two kayaks (one red, one yellow) resting on a sandy beach in the foreground, with a large body of water and a blue sky with white clouds in the background.
- Middle Screenshot:** Shows several colorful kayaks (yellow, orange, green) lined up on a grassy bank next to a body of water.
- Bottom Screenshot:** Shows a close-up view from the bow of a yellow kayak looking out over the water.

Each screenshot includes a header bar with the site's name and navigation links (Team, Rentals, Contact), and a footer bar with the same information. The background images are positioned differently in each version, illustrating the effect of the background-attachment property.

Click the navigation hyperlinks to view the other page sections. Notice Figures 6.51 and 6.53 are similar, but that the kayak photographs in Figure 6.53 are positioned slightly differently, due to the background-attachment property. Setting the background-attachment property to fixed creates a more noticeable difference when you begin to scroll the page. While the text sections move smoothly up and down as the page is scrolled, the background images appear and disappear as though the text is a window shade that's being rolled up or

down – that's a very subtle parallax scrolling effect. You can compare your work to chapter6/6.12/index.html in the student files.

---

## FAQ

Sometimes it takes me a while to find my CSS errors. Can you share some CSS debugging tips?

Using CSS for page layout requires some patience. It takes a while to get used to it. Fixing problems in code is called **debugging**. This term dates back to the early days of programming when an insect (a bug) lodged inside the computer and caused a malfunction. Debugging CSS can be frustrating and requires patience. One of the biggest issues is that even modern browsers implement CSS in slightly different ways. Browser support changes with each new browser version. Testing is crucial. Expect your pages to look slightly different in various browsers. The following are helpful techniques to use when your CSS isn't behaving properly:

### Verify Correct HTML Syntax

Invalid HTML code can cause issues with CSS. Use the W3C Markup Validation Service at <http://validator.w3.org> to verify the correct HTML syntax.

### Verify Correct CSS Syntax

Sometimes a CSS style does not apply because of a syntax error. Use the W3C CSS Validation Service at

<https://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator> to verify your CSS syntax. Carefully check your code. Many times, the error is in the line *above* the style that is not correctly applied.

## Configure Temporary Background Colors

Sometimes your code is valid but the page is not rendered in the way that you would expect. If you temporarily assign distinctive background colors such as red or yellow and test again, it should be easier to see where the boxes are ending up.

## Configure Temporary Borders

Similar to the temporary background colors, you could temporarily configure an element with a 3 pixel red solid border. This will really jump out at you and help you recognize the issue quickly.

## Use Comments to Find the Unexpected Cascade

Style rules and HTML attributes configured farther down the page can override earlier style rules. If your styles are misbehaving, try “commenting out” (see below) some styles and test with a smaller group of statements. Then add the styles back in one by one to see where or when the breakdown occurs. Work patiently and test the entire style sheet in this manner.

Browsers ignore code and text that is contained between comment markers. A CSS comment begins with `/*` and ends with `*/`. The comment below is an example of documentation that explains the purpose of a style rule.

```
/* Set Page Margins to Zero */  
body { margin: 0; }
```

Comments can span multiple lines. The following comment begins on the line above the style declaration for the `new` class and ends on the line below the style declaration for the `new` class. This causes the browser to skip the `new` class when applying the style sheet. This technique can be useful for testing when you are experimenting with a number of properties and may need to temporarily disable a style rule.

```
/* temporarily commented out during testing  
.new { font-weight: bold; }  
*/
```

A common mistake when using comments is to type the beginning `/*` without subsequently typing `*/` to end the comment. As a result, *everything* after the `/*` is treated as a comment by the browser.

## Checkpoint 6.2

1. State an advantage of using CSS to style for print.
2. State an advantage of using CSS sprites in a website.
3. Describe a technique to keep an HTML element, such as a nav element, displayed at the top of the browser viewport

even while the browser is scrolled.

# Chapter Summary

This chapter introduced CSS page layout techniques. Techniques for positioning elements, floating elements, and configuring two-column page layouts were demonstrated. You also worked with a single page website that used parallax scrolling. The topic of page layout is very deep and you have much to explore. Visit the resources cited in the chapter to continue learning about this technology.

Visit the textbook website at <https://www.webdevfoundations.net> for examples, the links listed in this chapter, and updated information.

# Key Terms

[:active](#)

[:focus](#)

[:hover](#)

[:link](#)

[:visited](#)

[absolute positioning](#)

[background-attachment](#) property

[border](#)

[bottom](#) property

[box model](#)

[box-sizing](#) property

[clear](#) property

[display](#) property

[fixed positioning](#)

[float](#) property

[fragment identifier](#)

[left](#) property

[list markers](#)

[list-style-image](#) property

[list-style-type](#) property

[margin](#)

[margin](#) property

[media attribute](#)

[normal flow](#)

[overflow](#) property

[padding](#)

[padding](#) property

[page-break-after](#) property

**page-break-before** property

parallax scrolling ②

**position** property ②

**pseudo-class** ①

relative positioning ②

**right** property

single page website

sprite ①

static positioning ①

sticky positioning ②

text-decoration property ②

**top** property

universal selector ②

visible width ①

width property ①

z-index property ②

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following, from outermost to innermost, are components of the box model?
  - a. margin, border, padding, content
  - b. content, padding, border, margin
  - c. content, margin, padding, border
  - d. margin, padding, border, content
2. Which of the following can be used to change the location of an element slightly in relation to where it would otherwise appear on the page?
  - a. relative positioning
  - b. the float property
  - c. absolute positioning
  - d. this cannot be done with CSS
3. Which of the following properties can be used to clear a float?
  - a. float or clear
  - b. clear or overflow
  - c. position or clear
  - d. overflow or float
4. Which of the following configures a class called side to float to the left?
  - a. `.side { left: float; }`
  - b. `.side { float: left; }`
  - c. `.side { float-left: 200px; }`
  - d. `.side { position: left; }`

5. Which of the following is the rendering flow used by a browser by default?

- a. regular flow
- b. normal display
- c. browser flow
- d. normal flow

6. Which of the following is an example of using a descendant selector to configure the anchor tags within the nav element?

- a. `nav. a`
- b. `a nav`
- c. `nav a`
- d. `a#nav`

7. Which property and value are used to configure an unordered list item with a square list marker?

- a. `list-bullet: none;`
- b. `list-style-type: square;`
- c. `list-style-image: square;`
- d. `list-marker: square;`

8. Which of the following causes an element to display as a block of content with white space above and below?

- a. `display: none;`
- b. `block: display;`
- c. `display: block;`
- d. `display: inline;`

9. Which of the following pseudo-classes is the default state for a hyperlink that has been clicked?

- a. `:hover`
- b. `:link`
- c. `:onclick`
- d. `:visited`

10. Which of the following is the attribute used to indicate whether the style sheet is for printing or screen display?

- a. rel
- b. media
- c. type
- d. content

## Fill in the Blank

11. Use a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to define a fragment identifier on a page.
12. If an element is configured with `float: right;`, the other content on the page will appear to its \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The \_\_\_\_\_ is always transparent.
14. The \_\_\_\_\_ pseudo-class can be used to modify the display of a hyperlink when a mouse pointer passes over it.
15. The \_\_\_\_\_ property configures the stacking of positioned elements on a web page.

# Apply Your Knowledge

**1. PREDICT THE RESULT.** Draw and write a brief description of the web page that will be created with the following HTML code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>CircleSoft Web Design</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
    h1 { border-bottom: 1px groove #333333;
        color: #006600;
        background-color: #cccccc }
    #goal { position: absolute;
        left: 200px;
        top: 75px;
        font-family: Arial, sans-serif;
        width: 300px; }
    nav a { font-weight: bold; }
</style>
</head>
<body>
<h1>CircleSoft Web Design</h1>
<div id="goal">
<p>Our professional staff takes pride in its
working relationship
with our clients by offering personalized
services that listen
to their needs, develop their target areas, and
incorporate these
items into a website that works.</p>
</div>
<nav>
<ul>
    <li>Home</li>
    <li><a href="about.html">About</a></li>
    <li><a href="services.html">Services</a></li>
</ul>
</nav>
</body>
</html>
```

**2. FILL IN THE MISSING CODE.** This web page should be configured as a two-column page layout with a right column (containing the navigation area) that is 150 pixels wide. The right column should have a 1 pixel border. The margin in the left-column main content area needs to allow for space that will be used by the right column. Some CSS selectors, properties, and values, indicated by `"_"`, are missing. Fill in the missing code.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Trillium Media Design</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
nav { "_": "_"
      width: "_";
      background-color: #cccccc;
      border: "_"; }
header { background-color: #cccccc;
          color: #663333;
          font-size: 4em;
          border-bottom: 1px solid #333333; }
main { margin-right: "_"; }
footer { font-size: x-small;
          text-align: center;
          clear: "_"; }
"_" a { color: #000066;
          text-decoration: none; }
ul {list-style-type: "_"; }
</style>
</head>
<body>
<nav>
<ul>
<li><a href="index.html">Home</a></li>
<li><a href="products.html">Products</a></li>
<li><a href="services.html">Services</a></li>
<li><a href="about.html">About</a></li>
</ul>
</nav>
<main>
<header>
<h1>Trillium Media Design</h1>
</header>
<p>Our professional staff takes pride in its
working relationship
with our clients by offering personalized
services that listen
```

```
to their needs, develop their target areas, and
incorporate these
items into a website that works.</p>
</main>
<footer>
Copyright &copy; 2020 Trillium Media Design<br>
Last Updated on 06/03/20
</footer>
</body>
</html>
```

- 3. FIND THE ERROR.** When this page is displayed in a browser, the heading information obscures the floating image and paragraph text. Correct the errors and describe the process that you followed.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>CSS Float</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
body { width: 500px; }
h1 { background-color: #eeeeee;
    padding: 5px;
    color: #666633;
    position: absolute;
    left: 200px;
    top: 20px; }
p { font-family: Arial, sans-serif;
    position: absolute;
    left: 100px;
    top: 100px; }
#yls { float: right;
    margin: 0 0 5px 5px;
    border: solid; }
</style>
</head>
<body>
<h1>Floating an Image</h1>

<p>The Yellow Lady Slipper pictured on the right
is a wildflower.
It grows in wooded areas and blooms in June each
year. The Yellow
Lady Slipper is a member of the orchid family.
```

```
</p>
</body>
</html>
```

# Hands-On Exercises

1. Write the CSS for an id with the following attributes: float to the left of the page, light tan background, Verdana or sans-serif large font, and 20 pixels of padding.
2. Write the CSS to configure a class that will produce a headline with a dotted line underneath it. Choose a color that you like for the text and dotted line.
3. Write the CSS for an id that will be absolutely positioned on a page 20 pixels from the top and 40 pixels from the right. This area should have a light gray background and a solid border.
4. Write the CSS for a class that is relatively positioned. This class should appear 15 pixels in from the left. Configure the class to have a light green background.
5. Write the CSS for an id with the following characteristics: fixed position at the top of the browser viewport, light gray background color, bold font weight, and 10 pixels of padding.
6. Write the CSS to configure an image file named myimage.gif as the list marker in an unordered list.
7. Write the CSS to configure an unordered list to display a square list marker.
8. Write the HTML to create a fragment identifier at the beginning of a web page designated by “top”.
9. Write the HTML to create a hyperlink to the named fragment designated by “top”.
10. Write the HTML to associate a web page with an external style sheet named myprint.css to configure a printout.
11. Write the CSS to configure a graphic named mysprite.gif to display as a background image on the left side of a hyperlink.  
Note that mysprite.gif contains two different images. Configure

the image that is located 67 pixels from the top of the mysprite.gif graphic to display.

12. Configure a web page with a list of hyperlinks to your favorite sites. Use an unordered list without any list markers to organize the hyperlinks. Refer to [Chapter 5](#) for color scheme resources. Choose a background color for the web page and a background color for the following states: unvisited hyperlink, hyperlink with a mouse pointer passing over it, and visited hyperlink. Use embedded CSS to configure the background and text colors. Also use CSS to configure the hyperlink's underline to not display when the mouse pointer is passing over it. Save the file as mylinks.html.
13. Use the mylinks.html file you created in 8 as a starting point. Modify the web page to use external rather than embedded CSS. Save the CSS file as links.css.
14. Create a single page website about a favorite location—it could be somewhere you have gone on vacation or somewhere you would like to visit. Use the coding techniques in [Hands-On Practice 6.11](#) and [6.12](#) as a guide. Make a list of things to do (activities) at this location. Make a list of things to see or famous places (sights) to visit at this location. The single page website should include three “pages”—Home, Activities, and Sights. Either use your own vacation photos or select relevant royalty-free photos from the Web (refer to [Chapter 4](#)). Use one photo for each “page”. If you use photos from the Web, be sure to provide appropriate credit in the footer area. Include your name in an e-mail address in the page footer area. Save the file as location.html.

# Web Research

This chapter introduced using CSS to configure web page layout. Use the resources listed in the textbook as a starting point. You can also use a search engine to search for CSS resources. Create a web page that provides a list of at least five CSS resources on the Web. For each CSS resource, provide the URL (configured as a hyperlink), the name of the website, a brief description, and a rating that indicates how helpful it is to beginning web developers.

## Focus on Web Design

There is still much for you to learn about CSS. A great place to learn about web technology is on the Web itself. Use a search engine to search for CSS page layout tutorials. Choose a tutorial that is easy to read. Select a section that discusses a CSS technique that was not covered in this chapter. Create a web page that uses this new technique. Consider how the suggested page layout follows (or does not follow) principles of design such as contrast, repetition, alignment, and proximity (see [Chapter 5](#)). The web page should provide the URL of your tutorial (configured as a hyperlink), the name of the website, a description of the new technique you discovered, and a discussion of how the technique follows (or does not follow) principles of design.

---

### Website Case Study Implementing a CSS Two-Column Page Layout

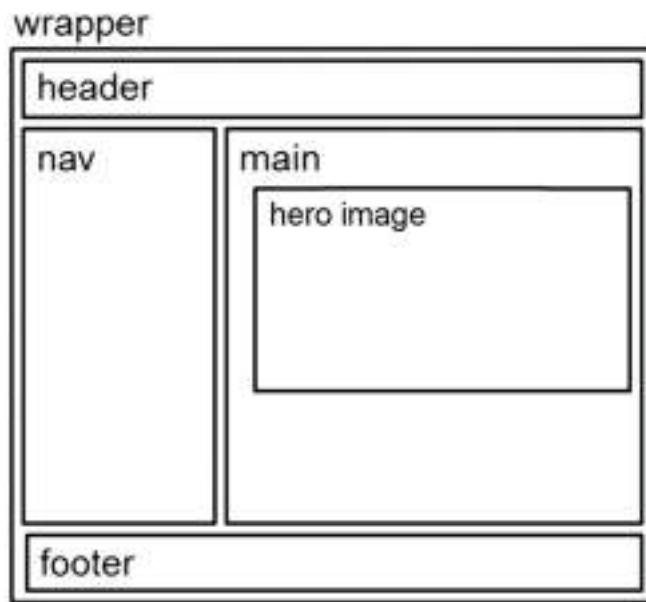
Each of the following case studies continues throughout most of the textbook. This chapter implements a CSS two-column page layout in the websites.

#### JavaJam Coffee Bar

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the JavaJam Coffee Bar case study. [Figure 2.32](#) shows a site map for the JavaJam. In this case study, you will implement a new two-column CSS page layout for JavaJam. [Figure 6.54](#) shows a wireframe for a two-column page layout with wrapper, header, navigation, main content, hero image, and footer areas.

---

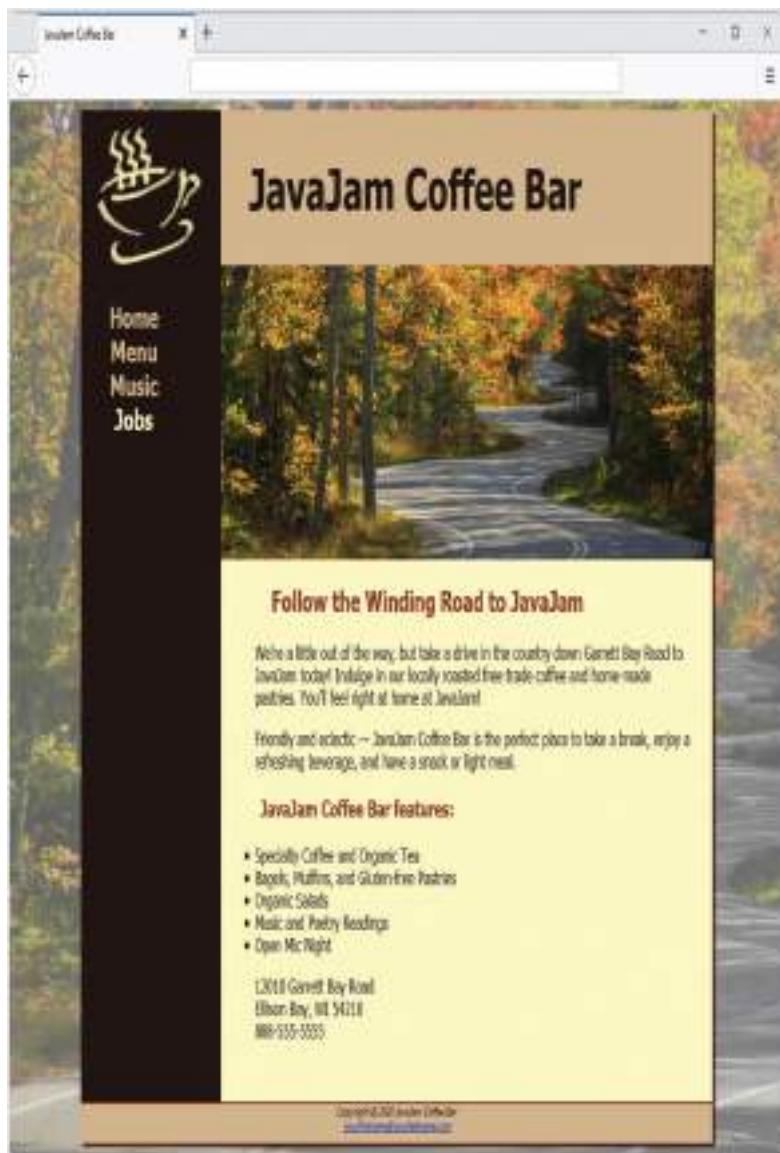
**Figure 6.54** Wireframe for a two-column page layout for the JavaJam website



You will modify the external style sheet and the Home, Menu, and Music pages. Use the [Chapter 4](#) JavaJam website as a starting point for this case study. You have five tasks in this case study:

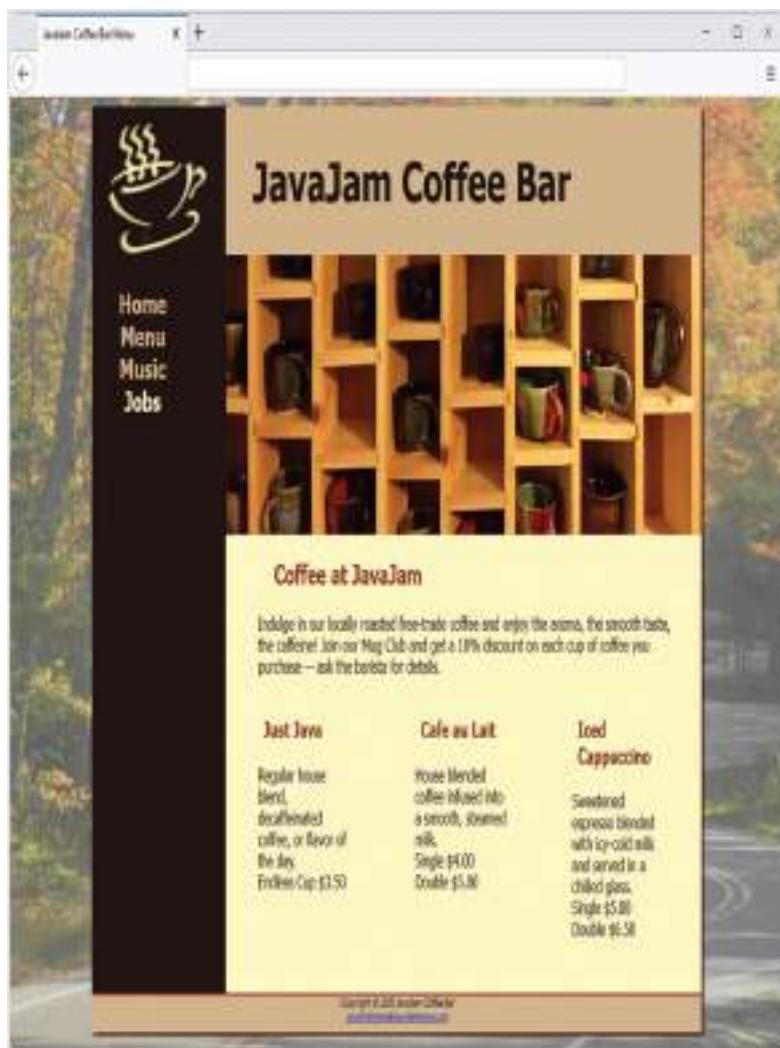
1. Create a new folder for this JavaJam case study.
2. Modify the style rules in the `javajam.css` file to configure a two-column page layout, as shown in [Figure 6.54](#).
3. Modify the Home page to implement the two-column page layout, as shown in [Figure 6.55](#).

**Figure 6.55** The new JavaJam two-column layout (`index.html`)



4. Modify the Menu page ([Figure 6.56](#)) to be consistent with the Home page.

**Figure 6.56 The new JavaJam Menu page**



5. Modify the Music page (Figure 6.57) to be consistent with the Home page.

**Figure 6.57** The new JavaJam Music Page



## Hands-On Practice Case

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called javajam6. Copy all of the files from your Chapter 4 □ javajam4 folder into the javajam6 folder. Copy all of the files from the chapter6/starters/javajam folder. You will modify the javajam.css file and each web page file (index.html, menu.html, and music.html) to implement the two-column page layout shown in Figure 6.54 □. See the new JavaJam Home page, as shown in Figure 6.55 □.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Open javajam.css in a text editor. Edit the style rules as follows:

1. Configure the universal selector with a `box-sizing: border-box` style declaration.

```
* { box-sizing: border-box; }
```

2. Configure styles for the hero image on each page.

- a. Configure styles for the id selector named

`homehero`. Set background-size to 100%  
100%.

- b. Configure an id selector named `heromugs`.

Configure the styles similar to the `homehero` id. Set the background image to `heromugs.jpg`.

- c. Configure an id selector named `heroguitar`.

Configure the styles similar to the `homehero` id. Set the background image to `heroguitar.jpg`.

3. Edit the style rules for the main selector. Change

left padding to 0. Change right padding to 0. Also  
configure a 200px left margin, 0 top padding, and  
`#FEF6C2` background color. To allow for the main  
element to contain floated elements, set overflow  
to auto.

4. Since the main content area no longer has any left  
or right padding, configure descendant selectors to  
configure style rules for the following elements  
within the main element: h2, h3, h4, p, div, ul, dl. Set  
left padding to 3em and right padding to 2em.

5. Configure the left-column navigation area. Add style declarations to the nav element selector to configure an area that floats to the left and is 200 pixels wide.
6. Configure the `:link`, `:visited`, and `:hover` pseudo-classes for the navigation hyperlinks. Use the following text colors: #FEF6C2 (unvisited hyperlinks), #D2B48C (visited hyperlinks), and #CC9933 (hyperlinks with `:hover`). For example,

```
nav a:link { color: #FEF6C2; }
```

7. You will organize the navigation hyperlinks within an unordered list in later tasks. The navigation area in [Figure 6.55](#) does not show list markers. Code a `nav ul` descendant selector to configure unordered lists in the navigation area to display without list markers and with 0 left padding.
8. Modify the `wrapper` id. Configure a dark background color (#231814) which will display behind the column with the navigation area. Also set padding to 0.
9. Modify the header element selector style rules. Remove the declaration for `text-align`. Set the background image to `coffeelogo.jpg`. Configure this image to not repeat. Set left padding to 240px. Change the text color to #231814.
10. Modify the `h4` element selector style rules. View the Music page shown in [Figure 6.57](#) and notice that the `<h4>` tags are styled differently, with all uppercase text (use `text-transform`), a bottom

border, and 0 bottom padding. Also configure a style declaration to clear floats on the left.

11. Refer to the Music page shown in [Figure 6.57](#) and notice how the images float on the left side of the paragraph description. Configure a new class named `floatleft` that floats to the left with 2em of right and bottom padding.
12. Modify the style rules for the `details` class and add the `overflow: auto;` style declaration.
13. Configure a style rule for a class named `onethird`. Set left float and 33% width.
14. Configure hyperlinks in the header area. Use descendant selectors to configure hyperlinks within the header element with no underline, dark brown (#231814) text color for the `:link` and `:visited` pseudo-classes, and rust (#FEF6C2) text color for the `:hover` pseudo-class.  
Save the javajam.css file.

**TASK 3: THE HOME PAGE.** Open index.html in a text editor. Edit the code as follows:

1. Configure the “JavaJam Coffee Bart” text in the header area to be a hyperlink to the Home page (index.html).
2. Configure the left-column navigation area, which is contained within the nav element. Remove any `&nbsp;` characters that may be present. Code an unordered list to organize the navigation hyperlinks. Each hyperlink should be contained within `<li>` tags.

3. Move the div assigned to the id homehero inside the main element as indicated in the [Figure 6.54](#) wireframe.

Save the index.html file. It should look similar to the web page shown in [Figure 6.55](#). Remember that validating your HTML and CSS can help you find syntax errors. Test and correct this page before you continue.

**TASK 4: THE MENU PAGE.** Open menu.html in a text editor.

1. Configure the header area and the left-column navigation area hyperlinks in the same manner as the home page.
2. Remove the img tag for the mugs.jpg image.  
Configure a div element assigned to the `heromugs` id between the opening main tag and the opening h2 tag.
3. Observe [Figure 6.56](#) and note that the menu information is formatted in three columns. Remove the tags that configure the description list from the page. Also remove the strong tags coded within the description list. Notice the text content is a series of menu item names and descriptions. Configure each menu item name within an h3 element.  
Configure each menu item description within a paragraph element. Code a section element to contain each menu item name and menu item description pair. Assign each section element to the CSS class named `onethird`.

Save your new menu.html page and test it in a browser. It should look similar to the web page shown in [Figure 6.56](#).

[6.56](#) Use the CSS and HTML validators to help you find syntax errors. Edit the page and add line break tags so that each price is on its own line. Save and test again.

**TASK 5: THE MUSIC PAGE.** Open music.html in a text editor.

1. Configure the header area and the left-column navigation area hyperlinks in the same manner as the home page.

2. Configure a div element assigned to the `heroguitar` id between the opening main tag and the opening h2 tag.

3. Configure the thumbnail images to float to the left. Add `class="floatleft"` to the img tag for each thumbnail image.

Save your new music.html page and test it in a browser. It should look similar to the web page shown in [Figure 6.57](#).

[6.57](#) Use the CSS and HTML validators to help you find syntax errors.

In this case study, you changed the page layout of the JavaJam website. Notice that with just a few changes in the CSS and HTML code, you configured a two-column page layout.

## Fish Creek Animal Clinic

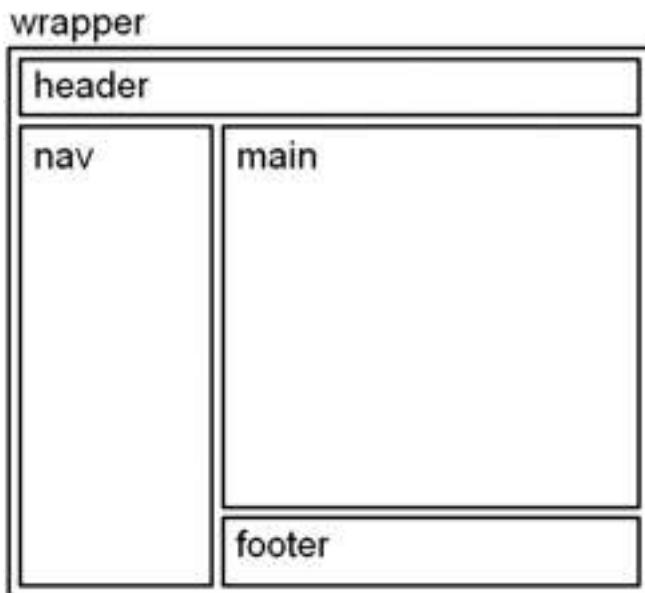
See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Fish Creek Animal Clinic case study. [Figure 2.36](#) shows a site map for Fish Creek. In this case study, you will implement a redesign with a new two-column CSS page layout. [Figure 6.58](#) displays a

wireframe for a two-column page layout with wrapper, header, navigation, main content, and footer areas.

---

**Figure 6.58** Wireframe for a two-column page layout for the Fish Creek website

---

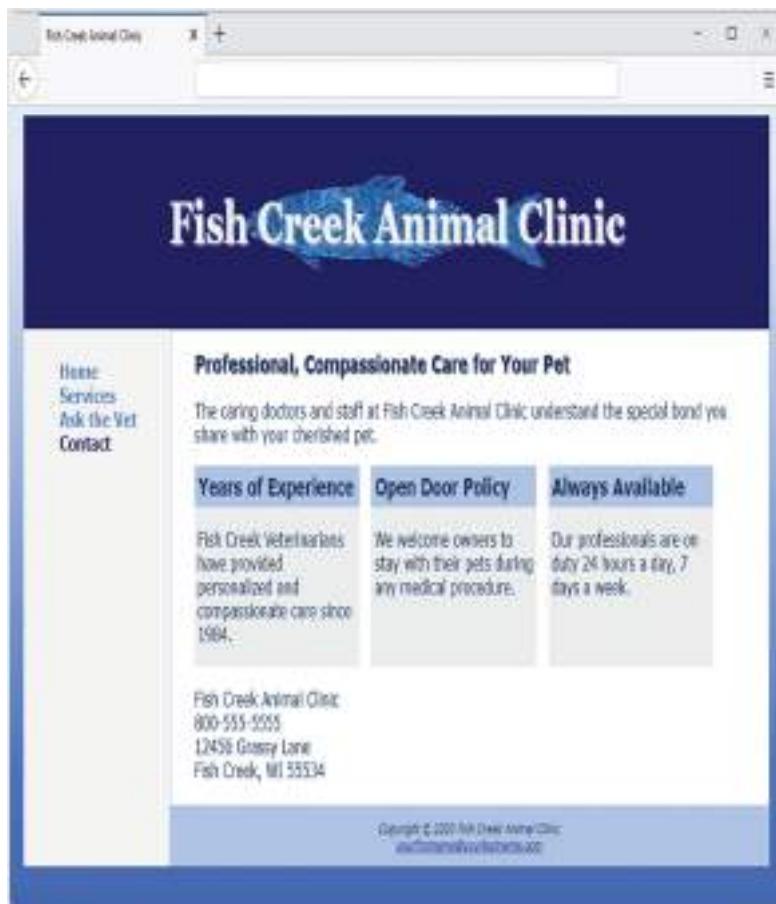


You will modify the external style sheet and the Home, Services, and Ask the Vet pages. Use the [Chapter 4](#) Fish Creek website as a starting point for this case study. You have five tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Fish Creek case study.
  2. Modify the style rules in the fishcreek.css file to configure a two-column page layout, as shown in [Figure 6.58](#).
  3. Modify the Home page to implement the two-column page layout, as shown in [Figure 6.59](#).
- 

**Figure 6.59** The new Fish Creek two-column home page (`index.html`)

---



4. Modify the Services page (Figure 6.60) to be consistent with the Home page.

---

**Figure 6.60 Fish Creek services.html**

---



5. Modify the Ask the Vet page ([Figure 6.61](#)) to be consistent with the Home page.

**Figure 6.61** Fish Creek askvet.html page



## Hands-On Practice Case

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called fishcreek6. Copy all of the files from your Chapter 4 fishcreek4 folder into the fishcreek6 folder. Copy all the files from the chapter6/starters/fishcreek folder. You will modify the fishcreek.css file and each web page file (index.html, services.html, and askvet.html) to implement the two-column page layout, as shown in Figure 6.58. See the new Fish Creek home page, as shown in Figure 6.59.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Open fishcreek.css in a text editor. Edit the style rules as follows:

1. Configure the universal selector with a `box-sizing: border-box` style declaration.

```
* { box-sizing: border-box; }
```

2. Modify the styles for the body element selector. Set the background color to #5280C5. Configure gradientblue.jpg as a background image.
3. Configure the header element selector. Change the background color to dark-blue (#000066). Change the background image to bigfish.gif.
4. Code an h1 element selector. Configure style declarations for 3em font-size, 0.2em padding, and gray text shadow (#CCCCCC).
5. Configure the left column area. Configure new style declarations for the nav element selector to configure an area that floats to the left and is 180 pixels wide. Remove the style declarations for text alignment and background color.
6. You will organize the navigation hyperlinks within an unordered list in later tasks. The navigation area in [Figure 6.59](#) does not show list markers. Code a `nav ul` descendant selector to configure unordered lists in the navigation area to display without list markers.
7. Configure the navigation anchor tags to display no underline.
8. Configure the `:link`, `:visited`, and `:hover` pseudo-classes for the navigation hyperlinks. Use the following text colors: #000066 (unvisited hyperlinks), #5280C5 (visited hyperlinks), and #3262A3 (hyperlinks with `:hover`). For example,

```
nav a:link { color: #000066; }
```

9. Configure the right column area. Add style declarations for the main element selector to configure an area with a 180 pixel left margin, a white background color, and a 1 pixel solid medium blue (#AEC3E3) border. Set overflow to auto (prevents display issues for floated elements within the main element). Set display to block (prevents an Internet Explorer display issue).
10. Remove the `footer nav` descendant selector and style declarations.
11. Configure the footer area. Remove the style declaration for bottom padding. Add style declarations to set 1em of padding and a 180px left margin.
12. Configure styles for a class named `address`. Set the clear property to left.
13. Configure styles for a class named `floatright`. Set float to right, 1em left padding, and 1em right padding.
14. Configure a section element selector. Code style declarations that set left float, 30% width, 1em right margin, 1em bottom margin, 0 padding, #EAEAEA background color, and minimum height set to 200px.
15. Configure headings within the section element. Add a new style rule for the `section h3` descendant selector that sets .25em padding, 0 top margin, 0

bottom margin, 110% font size, and #AEC3E3 background color.

**16.** Configure paragraphs within the section element.

Add a new style rule for the `section p` descendant selector that sets top padding to 0, left padding to .25em, right padding to .25em, and bottom padding to .25em.

**17.** Configure hyperlinks in the header area. Use descendant selectors to configure hyperlinks within the header element with no underline, light (#F0F0F0) text color for the `:link` and `:visited` pseudo-classes, and light blue (#AEC3E3) text color for the `:hover` pseudo-class.

Save the fishcreek.css file.

**TASK 3: MODIFY THE HOME PAGE.** Open index.html in a text editor and modify the code as follows:

1. Configure the “Fish Creek Animal Clinic” text in the header area to be a hyperlink to the Home page (index.html).
2. Rework the navigation area. Remove any `&nbsp;` characters that may be present. Replace the fish image links with text links. Then, code an unordered list to organize the navigation hyperlinks. Each hyperlink should be contained within `<li>` tags.
3. Assign the div that contains the address to a class named `address`.
4. Remove the nav element and navigation hyperlinks from the footer area.

5. Observe [Figure 6.59](#) and note that information is formatted in three columns. Remove the tags that configure the description list from the page. Notice the text content is a series of brief headings and sentences. Configure each heading within an h3 element. Configure each sentence within a paragraph element. Code a section element to contain each heading and paragraph pair.

Save the index.html file. It should look similar to the web page shown in [Figure 6.59](#). Remember that validating your HTML and CSS can help you find syntax errors. Test and correct this page before you continue.

**TASK 4: MODIFY THE SERVICES PAGE.** Open services.html in a text editor.

1. Configure the header area, navigation area, navigation hyperlinks, and footer area in the same manner as the home page.
2. Observe [Figure 6.60](#) and note that the page content is no longer displayed in an unordered list. Remove the tags that configure the unordered list from the page. Also remove the span and line break tags. Notice the text content is a series of brief headings and sentences. Configure each heading within an h3 element. Configure each sentence within a paragraph element. Code a section element to contain each h3 and paragraph pair.

Save your new services.html page and test it in a browser. Use the CSS and HTML validators to help you find syntax errors.

**TASK 5: MODIFY THE ASK THE VET PAGE.** Open askvet.html in a text editor.

1. Configure the header area, navigation area, navigation hyperlinks, and footer area in the same manner as the home page.
2. View [Figure 6.61](#) and notice that there is a new dog photo on the page. Add an img tag above the h2 tag to display dog.gif. Configure the height, width, and alt attributes. Assign this element to a class called `floatright`.

Save your new askvet.html page and test it in a browser. Use the CSS and HTML validators to help you find syntax errors.

In this case study, you changed the page layout of the Fish Creek website. Notice that with just a few changes in the CSS and HTML code, you configured a two-column page layout with a completely new visual aesthetic.

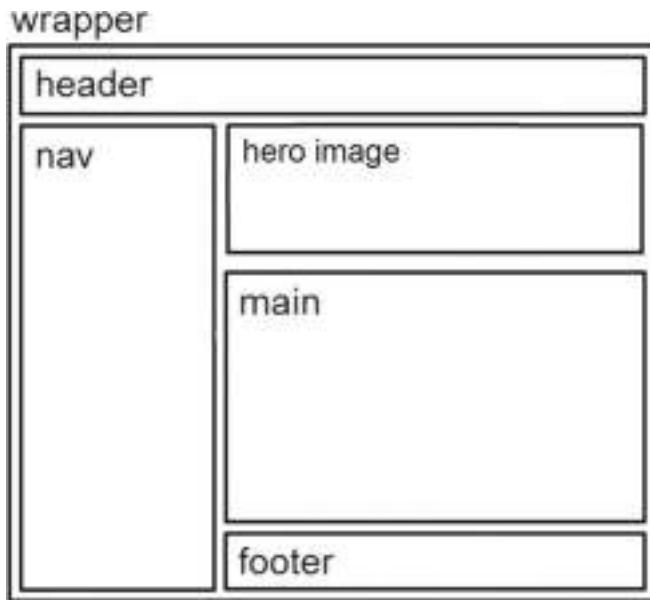
## Pacific Trails Resort

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Pacific Trails Resort case study. [Figure 2.40](#) shows a site map for Pacific Trails. The pages were created in earlier chapters. In this case study, you will implement a new two-column CSS page layout. [Figure 6.62](#) displays a wireframe for a two-column page layout with wrapper, header, nav, main content, hero image, and footer areas.

---

**Figure 6.62 Wireframe for a two-column page layout for the Pacific Trails website**

---



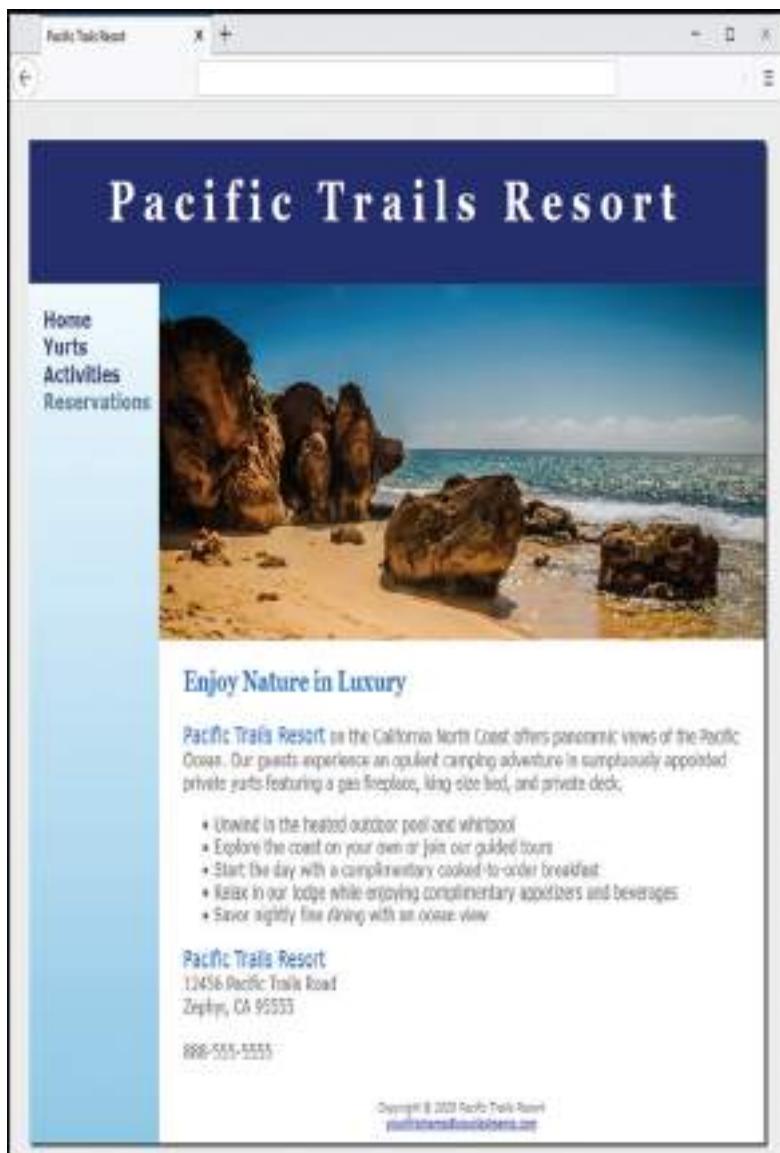
You will modify the external style sheet and the Home, Yurts, and Activities pages. Use the [Chapter 4](#) Pacific Trails website as a starting point for this case study. You have five tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for the Pacific Trails case study.
2. Modify the style rules in the pacific.css file to configure a two-column page layout, as shown in [Figure 6.62](#).
3. Modify the Home page to implement the two-column page layout, as shown in [Figure 6.63](#).

---

**Figure 6.63 The new Pacific Trails two-column home page (index.html)**

---



4. Modify the Yurts page to be consistent with the Home page.
5. Modify the Activities page to be consistent with the Home page.

### Hands-On Practice Case

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called `pacific6`. Copy all of the files from your `Chapter 4\pacific4` folder into the `pacific6` folder. You will modify the

pacific.css file and each web page file (index.html, yurts.html, and activities.html) to implement the two-column page layout, as shown in [Figure 6.62](#). See the new Pacific Trails home page, as shown in [Figure 6.63](#).

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Open pacific.css in a text editor. Edit the style rules as follows:

1. Configure the universal selector with a `box-sizing: border-box` style declaration.

```
* { box-sizing: border-box; }
```

2. Modify the `wrapper` id. Copy the linear gradient from the style rules for the body element selector. The wrapper background will display behind the navigation area.
3. Configure the body element selector. Change the background color to #EAEAEA. Remove the background-image and background-repeat style declarations.
4. Configure the header area. Remove the styles associated with the background image. Change the height to 120px.
5. Configure the h1 element selector. Add styles for 3em size font and 0.25em letter spacing.
6. Configure the left-column navigation area. Modify the styles for the nav element selector. Remove the text-align declaration. The nav area will inherit the background color of the `wrapper` id. Add style declarations to configure this area to float to the

left with a width of 160 pixels. Also set padding to 0 and font size to 1.2em.

7. Configure the `:link`, `:visited`, and `:hover` pseudo-classes for the navigation hyperlinks. Use the following text colors: #5C7FA3 (unvisited hyperlinks), #344873 (visited hyperlinks), and #A52A2A (hyperlinks with `:hover`). For example,

```
nav a:link { color: #5C7FA3; }
```

8. You will organize the navigation hyperlinks within an unordered list in later tasks. The navigation area in [Figure 6.59](#) does not show list markers. Code a `nav ul` descendant selector to configure unordered lists in the navigation area to display without list markers. Also configure the unordered list to have 1em left padding.
9. Configure the `nav` element to have a fixed position.
10. Configure the right-column main content area. Modify the styles for the `main` element selector. Add style declarations to configure a white (#FFFFFF) background and 170 pixels of left margin. Set overflow to auto (prevents display issues for floated elements within the main element).
11. Configure each hero image area (`#homehero`, `#yurthero`, and `#trailhero`) with a 170 pixel left margin.
12. Configure the footer area. Add style declarations to set a white (#FFFFFF) background color and a 170px left margin.

- 13.** Configure the section element selector. Add a new style rule for the section element with left float, 33% width, 2em left padding, and 2em right padding.
  - 14.** Configure hyperlinks in the header area. Use descendant selectors to configure hyperlinks within the header element with no underline, white (#FFFFFF) text color for the `:link` and `:visited` pseudo-classes, and light blue (#90C7E3) text color for the `:hover` pseudo-class.
- Save the pacific.css file.

**TASK 3: MODIFY THE HOME PAGE.** Open index.html in a text editor. Configure the left-column navigation area, which is contained within the nav element. Remove any `&ampnbsp` characters that may be present. Code an unordered list to organize the navigation hyperlinks. Each hyperlink should be contained within `<li>` tags. Configure the “Pacific Trails Resort” text in the header area to be a hyperlink to the Home page (index.html).

Save the index.html file and test it in a browser. Your page should look similar to [Figure 6.63](#). Remember that validating your HTML and CSS can help you find syntax errors. Test and correct this page before you continue.

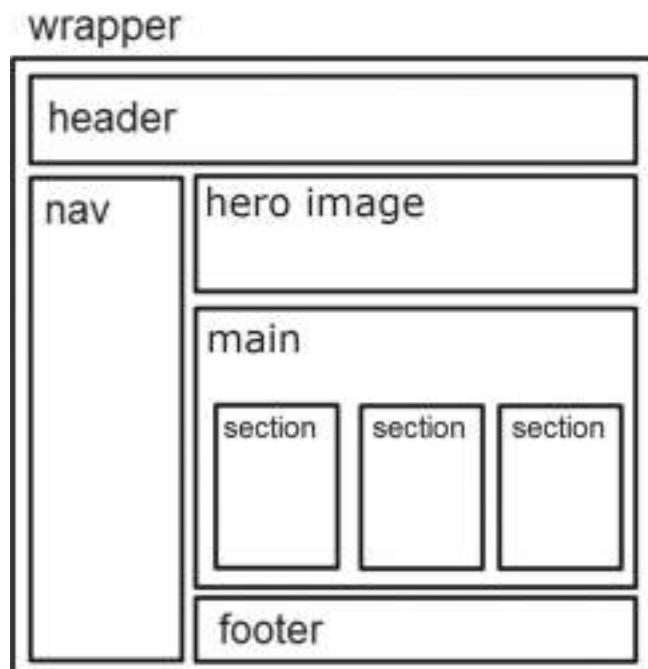
**TASK 4: MODIFY THE YURTS PAGE.** Open yurts.html in a text editor. Modify the page in the same manner as the home page. Examine the wireframe in [Figure 6.64](#) and notice that there are three sections within the main element. Remove the tags that configure the description list from the page. Notice the text content is a series of questions and answers. Configure each question within

an h3 element. Configure each answer within a paragraph element. Code a section element to contain each question and answer pair. Save your new yurts.html page and test it in a browser. Your page should be similar to [Figure 6.65](#). Use the CSS and HTML validators to help you find syntax errors.

---

**Figure 6.64** Wireframe for Pacific Trails content pages

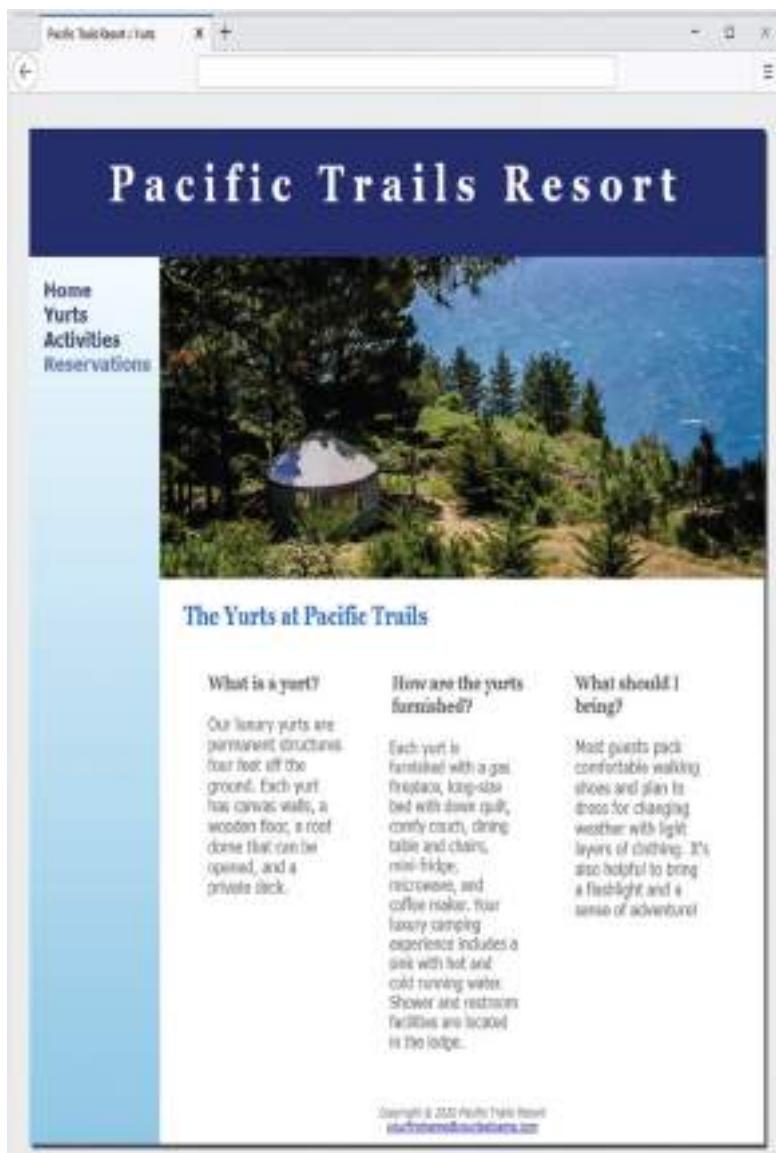
---



---

**Figure 6.65** Pacific Trails yurts.html page

---



**TASK 5: MODIFY THE ACTIVITIES PAGE.** Open `activities.html` in a text editor. Modify the page in the same manner as the home page. Examine the wireframe in [Figure 6.64](#) and notice that there are three sections within the main element. Code a section element to contain each pair of `h3` and `p` elements. Save your new `activities.html` page and test it in a browser. It should be similar to the overall page layout shown in [Figure 6.65](#).

Use the CSS and HTML validators to help you find syntax errors.

In this case study, you changed the page layout of the Pacific Trails Resort website. Notice that with just a few changes in the CSS and HTML code, you configured a two-column page layout.

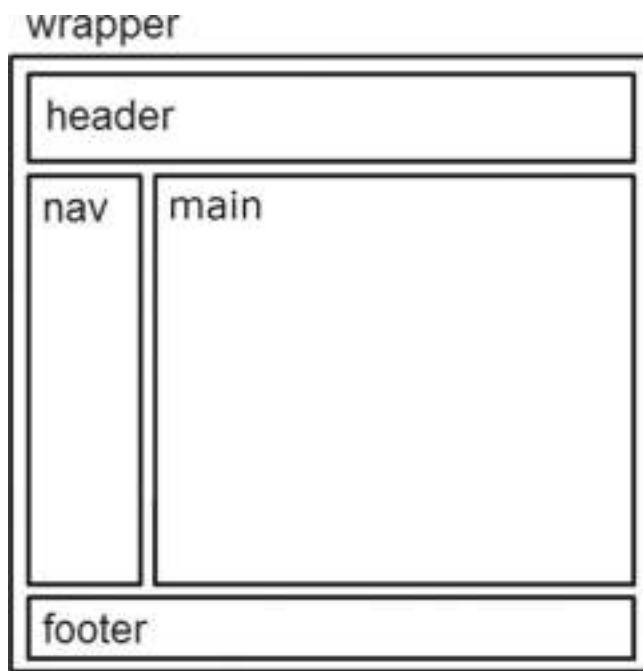
## Path of Light Yoga Studio

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Path of Light Yoga Studio case study. [Figure 2.44](#) shows a site map for the Path of Light Yoga Studio. In this case study, you will implement a new two-column CSS page layout for the Path of Light Yoga Studio. [Figure 6.66](#) displays a wireframe for a two-column page layout with a wrapper, header, navigation, main content, and footer area.

---

**Figure 6.66 Wireframe for a two-column page layout for the Path of Light Yoga Studio website**

---



You will modify the external style sheet and the Home, Classes, and Schedule pages. Use the [Chapter 4](#) Path of Light Yoga Studio website as a starting point for this case study. You have five tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for the Path of Light Yoga Studio case study.
2. Modify the style rules in the yoga.css file to configure a two-column page layout, as shown in [Figure 6.66](#).
3. Modify the Home page ([Figure 6.67](#)) to implement the two-column page layout.

---

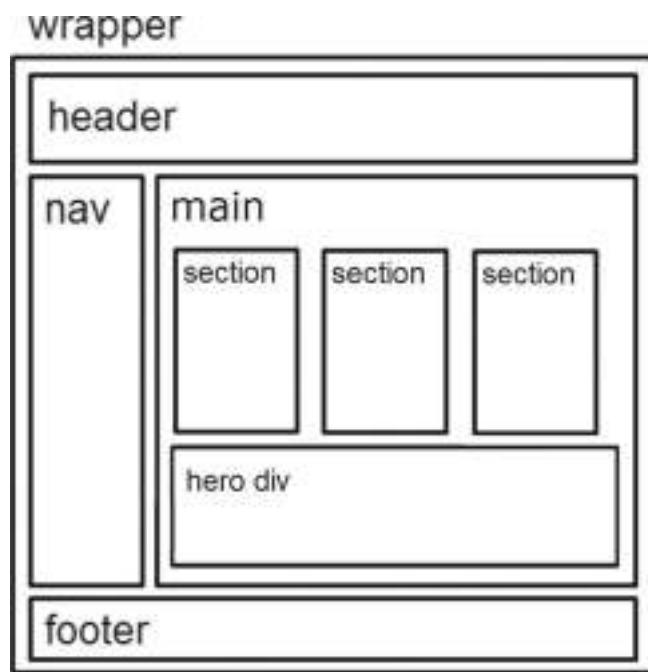
**Figure 6.67 The new Path of Light Yoga Studio two-column home page (index.html)**

---



4. Modify the Classes page ([Figure 6.69](#)) to implement the two-column content page layout, as shown in [Figure 6.68](#).

**Figure 6.68** Path of Light Yoga Studio content page layout



**Figure 6.69** The new Path of Light Yoga Studio two-column Classes page



5. Modify the Schedule page ([Figure 6.70](#)) to be consistent with the Classes page.

---

**Figure 6.70 The new Path of Light Yoga Studio Schedule page.**

---



## Hands-On Practice Case

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called `yoga6`. Copy all of the files from your [Chapter 4](#) `yoga4` folder into the `yoga6` folder. Copy the `yogadoor2.jpg` file from the `chapter6/starters/yoga` folder into your `yoga6` folder. You will modify the `yoga.css` file and each web page file (`index.html`, `classes.html`, and `schedule.html`) to implement the two-column page layout shown in [Figure 6.66](#). See the new Path of Light Yoga Studio home page in [Figure 6.67](#).

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Open `yoga.css` in a text editor. Edit the style rules as follows:

1. Configure the universal selector with a `box-sizing: border-box` style declaration.

```
* { box-sizing: border-box; }
```

2. Edit the styles for the `wrapper` id. Change min-width to 1200px. Change max-width to 1480px.
3. Configure the left-column navigation area. Modify the styles for the `nav` element selector. Remove the `text-align` declaration. The `nav` area will inherit the background color of the `wrapper` id. Add style declarations to configure this area to float to the left with a width of 160 pixels.
4. Configure the navigation hyperlinks to look like buttons. We'll set up the CSS in this step.

- a. Edit the styles for the `nav a` selector.

Configure new styles to use block display, centered text, a 3 pixel gray (#CCCCCC) outset border, 1em padding, and a 1em bottom margin.

- b. Configure the `:link`, `:visited`, and `:hover` pseudo-classes for the navigation hyperlinks. Use the following text colors: #3F2860 (unvisited hyperlinks), #497777 (visited hyperlinks), and #A26100 (hover). Also configure a 3 pixel inset #333333 border for hyperlinks in the hover state.

```
nav a:link { color: #3F2860; }
nav a:visited { color: #497777;
}
nav a:hover { color: #A26100;
border: 3px inset #333333; }
```

5. You will organize the navigation hyperlinks within an unordered list in later tasks. The navigation area in [Figure 6.65](#) does not show list markers. Code a `nav ul` descendant selector to configure unordered lists in the navigation area to display without list markers. Also configure the unordered list to have no left padding.
6. Edit the styles for the main element selector. Add new style declarations to configure a 170 pixel left margin and 1em top padding.
7. Remove the `img` element selector and style declarations.
8. Configure a new class named `floatleft` that floats to the left with right margin set to 4em and bottom margin set to 1em.
9. Edit the styles for the `#hero` selector. Remove the `text-align` style declaration. Configure 1em top and bottom padding.
10. Configure styles for a new class named `clear` with a `clear: both;` style declaration.
11. Configure a style rule for a class named `onehalf`. Set left float, 50% width, 2em left padding, and 2em right padding.
12. Configure a style rule for a class named `onethird`. Set left float, 33% width, 2em left padding, and 2em right padding.

**13.** Configure hyperlinks in the header area. Use descendant selectors to configure hyperlinks within the header element with no underline, purple (#40407A) text color for the `:link` and `:visited` pseudo-classes, and white (#FFFFFF) text color for the `:hover` pseudo-class.

Save the yoga.css file.

**TASK 3: MODIFY THE HOME PAGE.** Open index.html in a text editor and modify the code as follows:

- 1.** Configure the “Path of Light Yoga Studio” text in the header area to be a hyperlink to the Home page (index.html).
- 2.** Rework the navigation area. Remove any `&nbsp;` characters that may be present. Configure an unordered list to organize the navigation hyperlinks. Each hyperlink should be contained within `<li>` tags.
- 3.** Edit the img tag. Remove the `align="right"` attribute. Assign the img tag to the class named floatleft. Change the value of the src attribute to yogadoor2.jpg.
- 4.** Edit the div element that contains the address information. Assign the div to the class named `clear`.

Save the index.html file. It should look similar to the web page shown in [Figure 6.67](#). Remember that validating your HTML and CSS can help you find syntax errors. Test and correct this page before you continue.

**TASK 4: MODIFY THE CLASSES PAGE.** Open classes.html in a text editor and modify the code as follows.

1. Configure the header area and navigation hyperlinks in the same manner as the home page.
2. Move the div assigned to the `id="hero"` below the description list; just above the closing tag for the main element.
3. Examine the wireframe in [Figure 6.68](#) and notice that there are three sections within the main element. Remove the tags that configure the description list from the page. Also remove the strong tags. Notice the text content is a series of yoga class titles and yoga class descriptions. Configure each yoga class title within an h3 element. Configure each yoga class description within a paragraph element. Code a section element to contain each yoga class title and yoga class description pair. Assign each section to the CSS class named `onethird`.

Save your new classes.html page and test it in a browser. It should look similar to [Figure 6.69](#). Use the CSS and HTML validators to help you find syntax errors.

**TASK 5: MODIFY THE SCHEDULE PAGE.** Open schedule.html in a text editor and modify the code as follows.

1. Configure the header area and navigation hyperlinks in the same manner as the home page.
2. Move the div assigned to the `id="hero"` below the second unordered list; just above the closing tag

for the main element.

3. View the wireframe in [Figure 6.68](#) and notice that there are three sections within the main element. This web page is a little different, it will have only two sections. Use [Figure 6.69](#) as a guide. Code a section element to contain each pair of h3 and ul elements. Assign each section element to the CSS class named `onehalf`.

Save your new schedule.html page and test it in a browser. It should be similar to [Figure 6.70](#). Use the CSS and HTML validators to help you find syntax errors.

In this case study, you changed the page layout of the Path of Light Yoga Studio website. Notice that with just a few changes in the CSS and HTML code, you configured a two-column page layout.

## Web Project

See [Chapter 5](#) for an introduction to the Web Project case study. As you completed the [Chapter 5](#) Web Project case study activities, you completed a Web Project Topic Approval, Web Project Site Map, and Web Project Page Layout Design. In this case study, you will use your design documents as a guide as you develop the pages for your Web Project using CSS in an external style sheet for both formatting and page layout.

### Hands-On Practice Case

1. Create a folder called project. All of your project files and graphics will be organized in this folder and in subfolders as needed.

- 2.** Refer to your Site Map to view the pages that you need to create. Jot down a list of the file names. Add these to the Site Map.
- 3.** Refer to the Page Layout Design. Make a list of the common fonts and colors used on the pages. These may become the CSS you configure for the body element. Note where typical elements used for organization (such as headings, lists, paragraphs, and so on) may be used. You may want to configure CSS for these elements. Identify various page areas such as header, navigation, footer, and so on, and list any special formatting needed for these areas. These will also be configured in your CSS. Create an external style sheet, called project.css, which contains these configurations.
- 4.** Using your design documents as a guide, code a representative page for your site. Use CSS to format text, color, and layout. Apply classes and ids where appropriate. Associate the web page to the external style sheet.

Save and test the page. Modify both the web page and the project.css file as needed. Test and modify them until you have achieved the look you want.
- 5.** Using the completed page as a template wherever possible, code the rest of the pages on your site. Test and modify them as needed.
- 6.** Experiment with modifying the project.css file. Change the page background color, the font family, and so on. Test your pages in a browser. Notice how a change in a single file can affect multiple files when external style sheets are used.

# 7

## Responsive Page Layout

---





## Chapter Objectives

---

**IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .**

- Describe the purpose of CSS Flexible Box Layout
- Configure a Flexbox Container and Flexbox Items
- Create a web page that applies CSS Flexible Box Layout
- Describe the purpose of CSS Grid Layout
- Configure a Grid Container
- Configure grid rows, grid columns, and grid gaps, and grid areas
- Create responsive page layouts with CSS Grid Layout
- Configure web pages for mobile display using the viewport meta tag
- Apply responsive web design techniques with CSS media queries
- Apply responsive image techniques including the new HTML5 picture element

**Now that you've had some experience in coding HTML and CSS** you're ready to delve into designing web pages with responsive layouts that display well on both desktop and mobile browsers. You will explore new coding techniques, including CSS Flexible Box Layout, CSS Grid Layout, CSS media queries, CSS feature queries, and responsive images.

## 7.1 CSS Flexible Box Layout

Since the early days of the Web, designers have striven to configure multicolumn web pages. Back in the 1990s, it was common to use HTML tables to configure a two- or three-column page layout. As browsers offered increased support for CSS, web developers discovered CSS float property techniques like the one you used in [Chapter 6](#) to create the look of multicolumn pages. You will find many pages on the Web configured using CSS float techniques.

However, the quest for more robust and responsive multicolumn layout methods has continued. There are two new CSS layout systems that have recently gained widespread browser support: CSS Flexible Box Layout and CSS Grid Layout. This section introduces CSS Flexible Box Layout.

The purpose of **CSS Flexible Box Layout** (called **flexbox**) is to provide a flexible layout—elements contained within a flex container can be configured in *one* dimension (either horizontally or vertically) in a flexible manner with flexible sizing. In addition to changing the horizontal or vertical organization of elements, flexbox can also be used to change the order of display of the elements. Due to its flexibility, flexbox is well suited for responsive web design.

CSS Flexible Box Layout Module (<https://www.w3.org/TR/css-flexbox-1/>) has reached W3C Candidate Recommendation status and is well supported by recent versions of popular browsers.

### Configure a Flexible Container

Flexbox is typically used to configure a specific area of a web page rather than the entire page layout. To configure an area on a web page that uses flexbox layout, you need to indicate the **flex container**, which is the element that will contain the flexible area.

## The **display** Property

Use the CSS **display property** to configure a flex container. The value **flex** indicates a flexible block container. The value **inline-flex** indicates a flexible inline-display container.

For example, to configure an id named **gallery** as a flex container, code the following CSS:

```
#gallery { display: flex; }
```

Each child element of the flex container is a **flex item**. In the following HTML, each img tag is considered a flex item within the div element assigned to the **gallery** id.

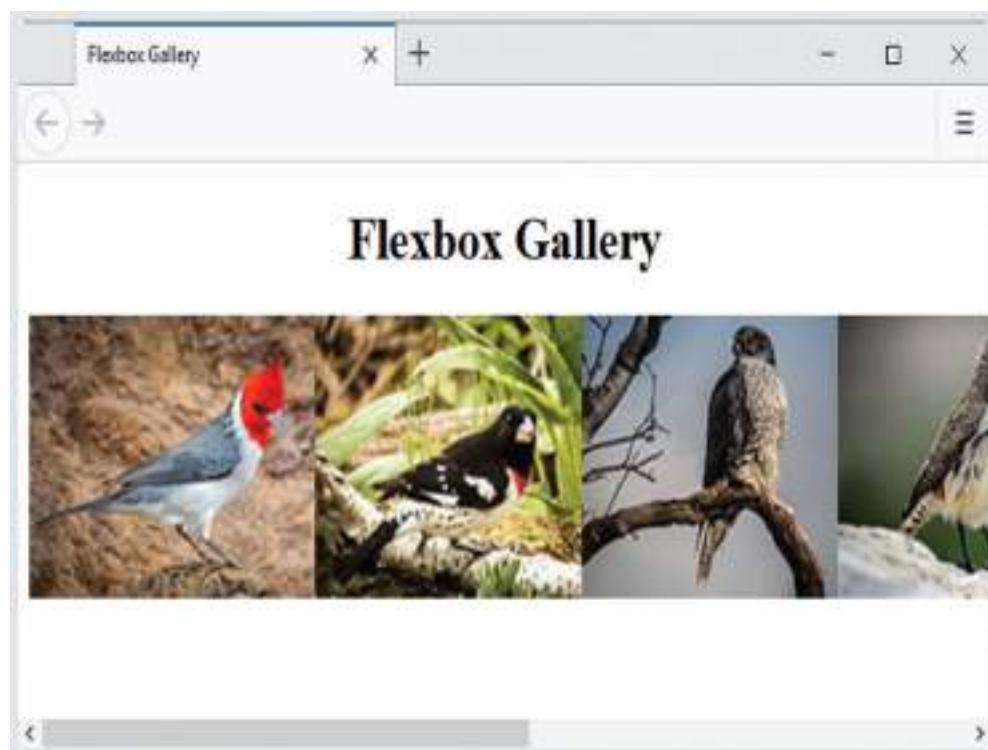
```
<div id="gallery">
  
  
  
  
  
  
</div>
```

[Figure 7.1](#) shows a page that uses flexbox to display an image gallery. By default, the flex area will have a horizontal flow direction and be configured as one horizontal row. If the content does not fit in the browser area, the browser may either try to reduce the size of some of the objects or display a scroll bar as shown in [Figure 7.1](#). To try this out, launch a browser to display the example in the student files (chapter7/flex1.html).

---

**Figure 7.1 A flex area with default properties.**

---



Even though there are six images within the flexible area, the items in the flex area will not automatically wrap to another line if the browser window is not large enough to display them all. Next, let's explore a property that will correct this issue.

## The `flex-wrap` Property

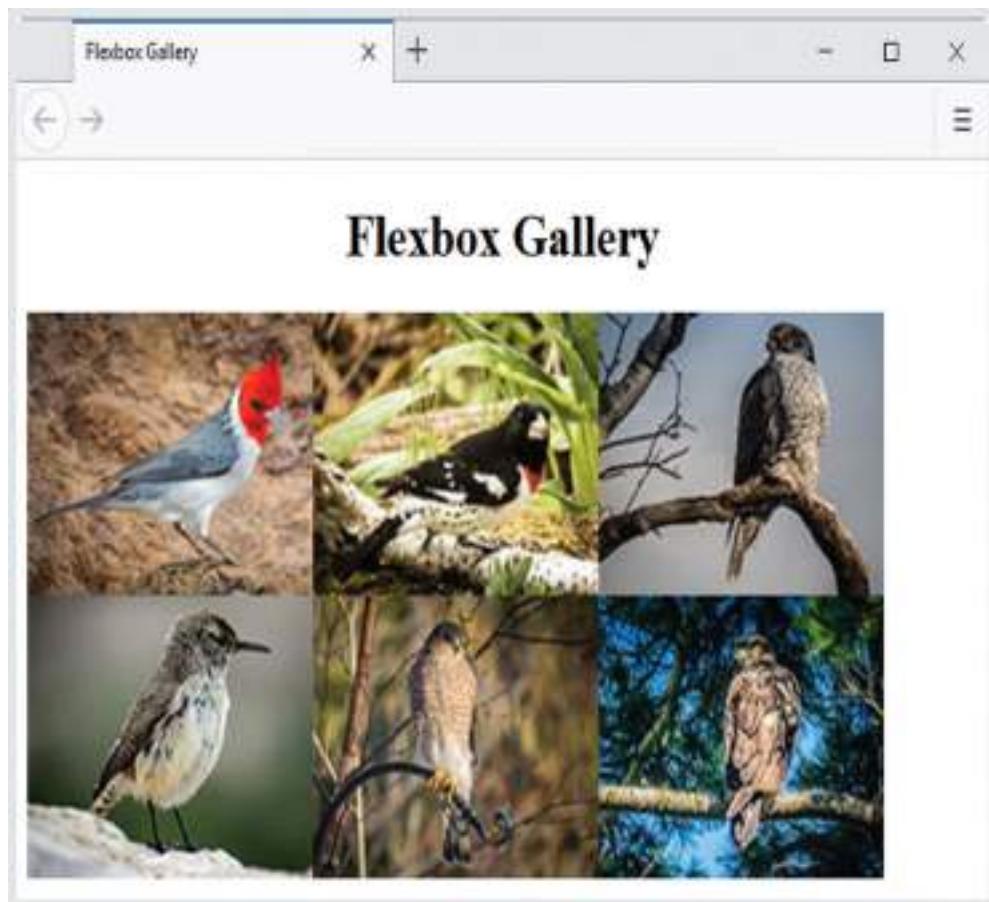
The `flex-wrap` property configures whether flex items are displayed on multiple lines. Values for this property include `nowrap`, `wrap`, and `wrap-reverse`. The default value is `nowrap`, which configures single-line display for horizontal flow flex containers and a single-column display for vertical flow flex containers. The value `wrap` will allow flex items to display on multiple lines for horizontal flow flex containers and to display on multiple columns for vertical flow flex containers. The `wrap-reverse` value provides for wrapping and displays the flex items in reverse order.

The flex items in [Figure 7.2](#) (student files chapter7/flex2.html) wrap to the next line. The following CSS configures the flex container:

---

**Figure 7.2 Flex Items wrap to the next line.**

---



```
#gallery { display: flex;  
          flex-wrap: wrap; }
```

## The `flex-direction` Property

Configure the flow direction of the flex items with the **`flex-direction` property**. The value `row` is the default and configures a horizontal flow direction, `column` configures a vertical flow direction, `row-reverse` configures a horizontal flow with the flex items in reverse order, and `column-reverse` configures a vertical flow with the flex items in reverse order.

## 7.2 More About Flex Containers

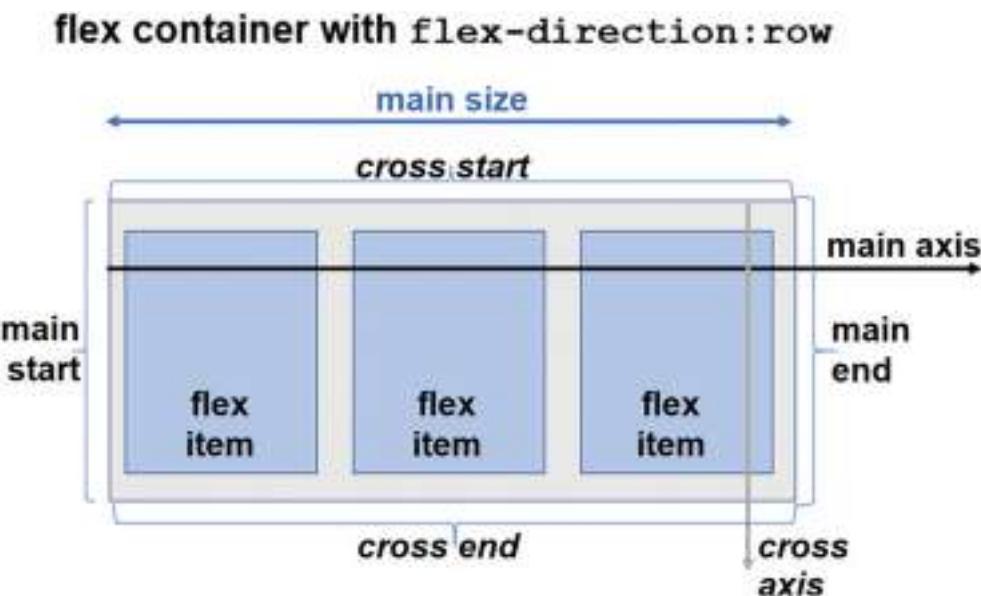
### Flow Direction

Flex containers can be configured with either horizontal flow or vertical flow. [Figure 7.3](#) shows a diagram of a flex container configured with horizontal flow direction. The **main size** is the width of the flex container content area. The **main axis** is the direction of the flow (in this case horizontal). The **main start** indicates the beginning of the flex area. The **main end** indicates the end of the flex area. The **cross axis** is the direction of the wrap (if any exists).

---

**Figure 7.3** Horizontal flow direction

---



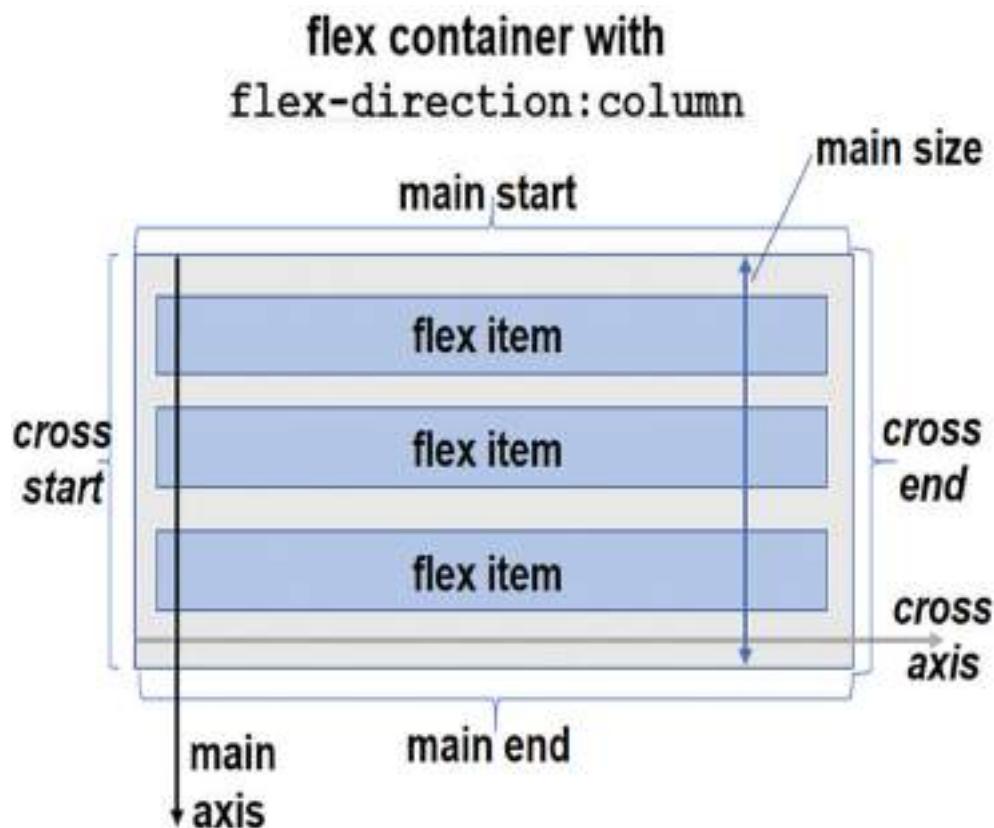
[Figure 7.4](#) shows a diagram of a flex container configured with vertical flow direction. The **main size** is the height of the flex container content. The **main axis** is the direction of the flow (in this case vertical). The **main**

**start** indicates the beginning of the flex area. The **main end** indicates the end of the flex area. The **cross axis** is the direction of the wrap (if any exists).

---

Figure 7.4 Vertical flow direction

---



## The **justify-content** Property

Use the **justify-content** property to configure how the browser should display extra space along the main axis in the flex container. Values for this property are shown in [Table 7.1](#).

---

Table 7.1 Values for the **justify-content** Property of a Flex Area

---

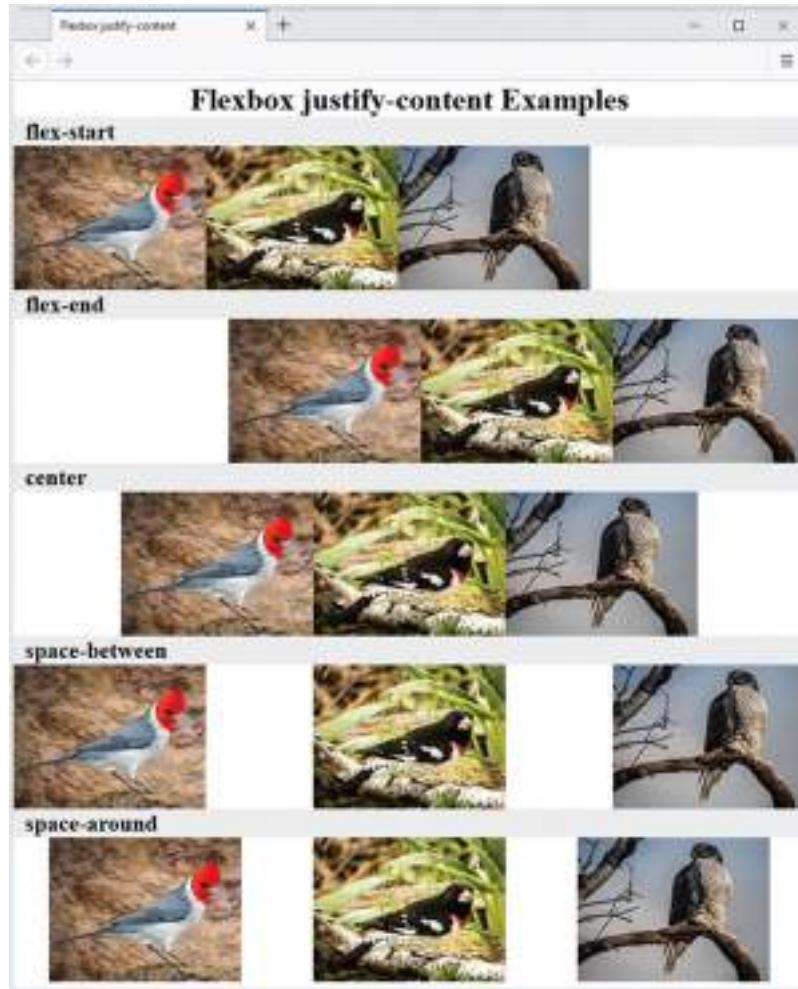
<b>Value</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
flex-start	Default. Flex items begin at main start
flex-end	Flex items begin at main end
center	Flex items display centered in the flex container with equal empty space before the first flex item and after the last flex item
space-between	Flex items are evenly distributed in the flex container. The first flex item begins at main start. The last flex item is placed at main end
space-around	Flex items are evenly distributed in the flex container with space before the first flex item and after the last flex item

As you examine [Figure 7.5](#), which displays a series of flex containers with horizontal flow, observe how each value of the `justify-content` property configures both the placement of the flex items and the space between the flex items. The student files (chapter7/flexj.html) contain the sample code.

---

**Figure 7.5 The justify-content property**

---



Setting the `justify-content` property to `space-between` or `space-around` causes the browser to automatically calculate and display empty space between the flex items.

## The `align-items` Property

The `align-items` property configures the way the browser displays extra space along the *cross-axis* of the container. Values include `flex-start`, `flex-end`, `center`, `baseline`, and `stretch`. The `align-items` property can be used along with the `justify-content` property to vertically and horizontally center content. For example, to configure a 400px high

header element with a vertically and horizontally centered flex item (chapter7/flex3.html in the student files), code the following CSS:

```
header { height: 400px;  
         display: flex;  
         justify-content: center;  
         align-items: center; }
```

## The **flex-flow** Property

The **flex-flow** property is a shorthand property that configures both the flex-direction and the flex-wrap. To configure an id named **demo** as a flexible container with a horizontal flow that wraps, code the following CSS:

```
#demo { display: flex; flex-flow: row wrap; }
```

At this point, you've been introduced to some of the many different ways that a flex container can be configured to display flex items. Don't be concerned if it seems a bit overwhelming at first. It is a new approach to page layout and you will begin to feel more comfortable after you use it in the hands-on practice exercises.

## Flexbox Image Gallery

### Hands-On Practice 7.1

You'll configure an image gallery with flexbox properties in this Hands-On Practice. Create a new folder called ch7flex1. Copy the starter1.html file from the chapter7 folder in the student files into your ch7flex1 folder. Copy the following files from the chapter7/starters folder into your ch7flex1 folder: bird1.jpg, bird2.jpg, bird3.jpg, bird4.jpg, bird5.jpg, and bird6.jpg.

1. Launch a text editor and open the starter1.html file. Add the following HTML below the opening main tag to create a div assigned to the `gallery` id that contains six images.

```
<div id="gallery">
  
  
  
  
  
  
</div>
```

The div is the flex container. Each img element is a flex item in the flex container. Save the file with the name index.html.

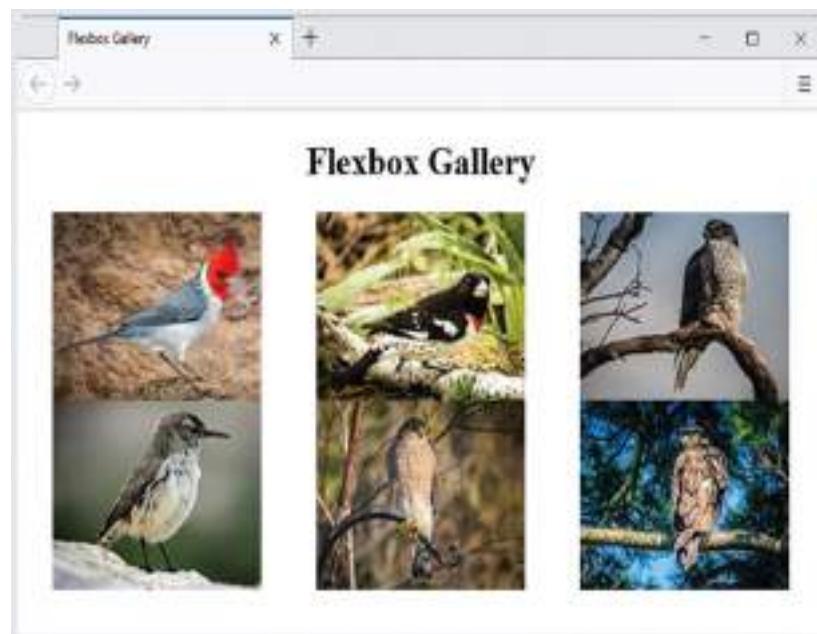
2. Edit the index.html file and configure CSS between the style tags in the head section. Configure an id named `gallery`. Set the `display` property to `flex`, `flex-direction` property to `row`, `flex-wrap` to `wrap`, and `justify-content` to `space-around`. The code follows:

```
#gallery { display: flex;
  flex-direction: row;
```

```
flex-wrap: wrap;  
justify-content: space-around; }
```

Save the file and test it in a browser. Your page should look similar to [Figure 7.6](#). Observe that while the browser configured empty space between the flex items on each row (the main axis), there is no empty space in the vertical (cross axis) area between each row element.

**Figure 7.6** The first version of the gallery

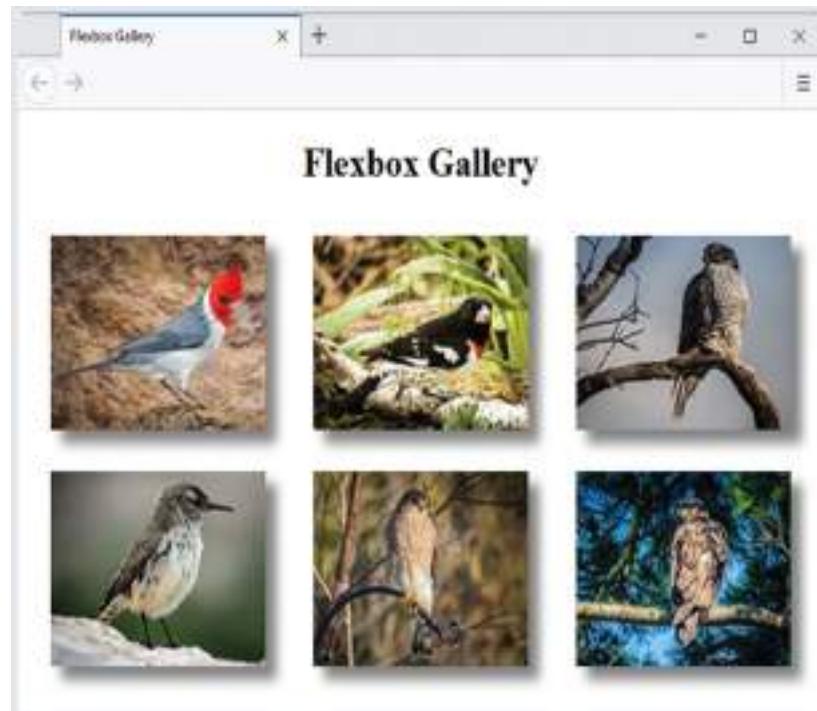


3. Next, you'll configure the flex items to have a margin, which will force some empty space between the rows. Recall that a flex item is a child element of the flex container. In our page, each img element is a flex item. Edit the index.html file and code CSS above the closing style tag for the img selector that sets a 1em margin and a box-shadow.

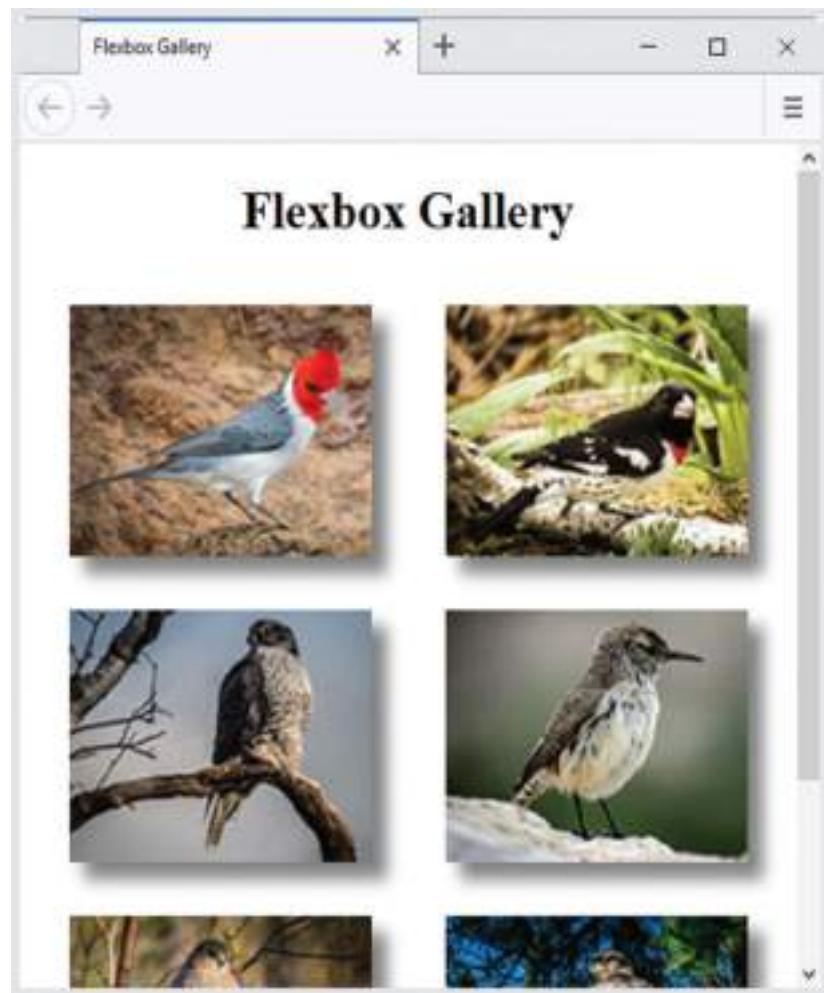
```
img { margin: 1em;  
      box-shadow: 10px 10px #777; }
```

Save the file and test in a browser. As you resize your browser smaller and larger, your page should be similar to Figures 7.7 , 7.8 , and 7.9 . A sample solution is in the student files chapter7/7.1 folder.

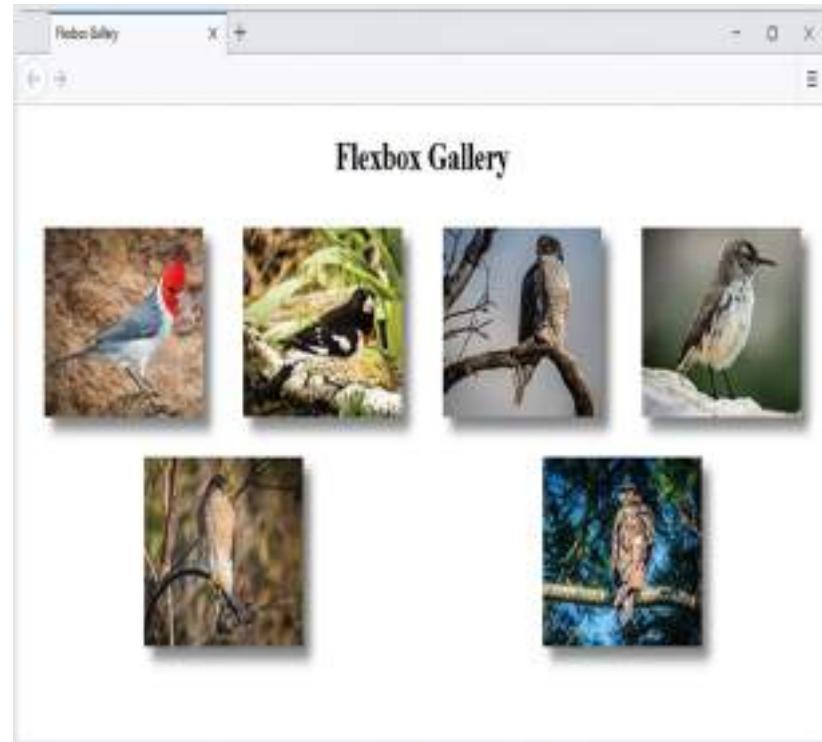
**Figure 7.7 Two rows of flex items**



**Figure 7.8 Each row now has two items**



**Figure 7.9** As the browser is resized, more items fit on the first row



Notice that the display is flexible and responsive to browser size, although the flex items are not necessarily displayed in a grid – that's what CSS Grid Layout can do and you'll explore that later in the chapter. In the next section, you'll delve more into configuring flexible sizes for flex items.

## 7.3 Configure Flex Items

By default, all elements contained within a flex container are flexible in size and are allocated the same amount of display area in the flex container. Use the **flex** property to customize the size of each flex item and indicate whether it can grow (flex grow factor) or shrink (flex shrink factor) depending on the size of the browser viewport. The flex property can be set to the keyword `none`, the keyword `initial`, or a list of up to three values that configure the `flex-grow`, `flex-shrink`, and `flex-basis` properties. Table 7.2 describes these properties.

---

**Table 7.2 The flex Properties**

Flex Properties	Description
Value	Purpose
<code>flex-grow</code>	A positive number that determines the growth of the flex item relative to the other items in the flex container. Default value is 0.
<code>flex-shrink</code>	A positive number that determines how much the flex item will shrink relative to the other items in the flex container. Default value is 1.
<code>flex-basis</code>	Configures the initial dimension along the main axis of the flex item.
Value	Purpose

Description	
content	Indicates the width of the item's content.
auto	Default value, a specified width or if there is no specified width, the width of the item's content.
Positive numeric value	A value indicating the width of the item in units or percentage.

It's not always necessary to list all three values when configuring the flex property. [Table 7.3](#) describes some common situations encountered when configuring a flex item (also see <https://www.w3.org/TR/css-flexbox-1/#flexibility>).

**Table 7.3 Flex Item Examples**

Flex Item Situation	Shorthand Notation	Equivalent
<b>Fully Flexible Item</b> <i>free space evenly distributed</i>	flex: auto;	flex: 1 1 auto;

Flex Item Situation	Shorthand Notation	Equivalent
<b>Fully Inflexible Item</b>	<code>flex: none;</code>	<code>flex: 0 0 auto;</code>
<b>Partially Inflexible Item</b>  <i>shrinks to minimum size if needed</i>	<code>flex:</code> <code>initial</code>	<code>flex: 0 1 auto;</code>
<b>Proportional Flexible Item</b>  <i>The item takes up the specified proportion of free space in the container.</i>	<code>flex:</code> positive number;  For example:  <code>flex: 3;</code>	<code>flex: 3 1 0;</code>

## Proportional Flexible Item

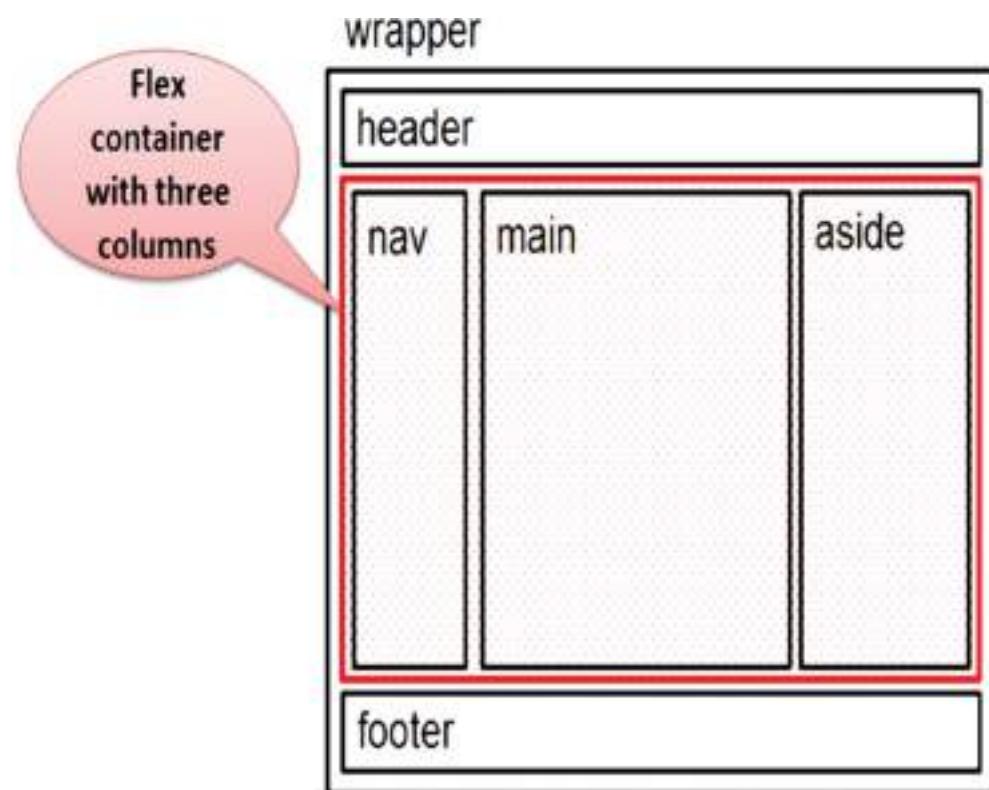
Let's focus on the last row of Table 7.3. One of the most powerful ways to use the flex property is to configure proportional flexible items. Setting one numeric value for the flex property sets the flex grow factor. If you configure an element with `flex: 2`; it will take up twice as much space within the container element as the others. Since the values work in proportion to the whole, you may find it helpful to use flex values that

add up to 10. Examine the three-column page layout in [Figure 7.10](#) and notice how the nav, main, and aside elements are organized in a row within another element that will serve as a flex container. The CSS to configure the proportion of the flexible area allocated to each column could be as follows:

---

**Figure 7.10 Three-column page layout with the flex container indicated**

---



```
nav { flex: 1; }
main { flex: 7; }
aside { flex: 2; }
```

## The `order` Property

Use the **order** property to display the flex items in a different order than they are coded. The order property accepts numeric values. The default value is 0.

Be aware that the W3C cautions that web designers should use the order property only for visual reordering. The change in order should not change the meaning or intent of the content because accessibility software such as screen readers will render the content in the order it was coded.

---

#### Focus on Accessibility

In the next section, you'll get to practice configuring a flex container and flex items.

## Practice with Flexbox

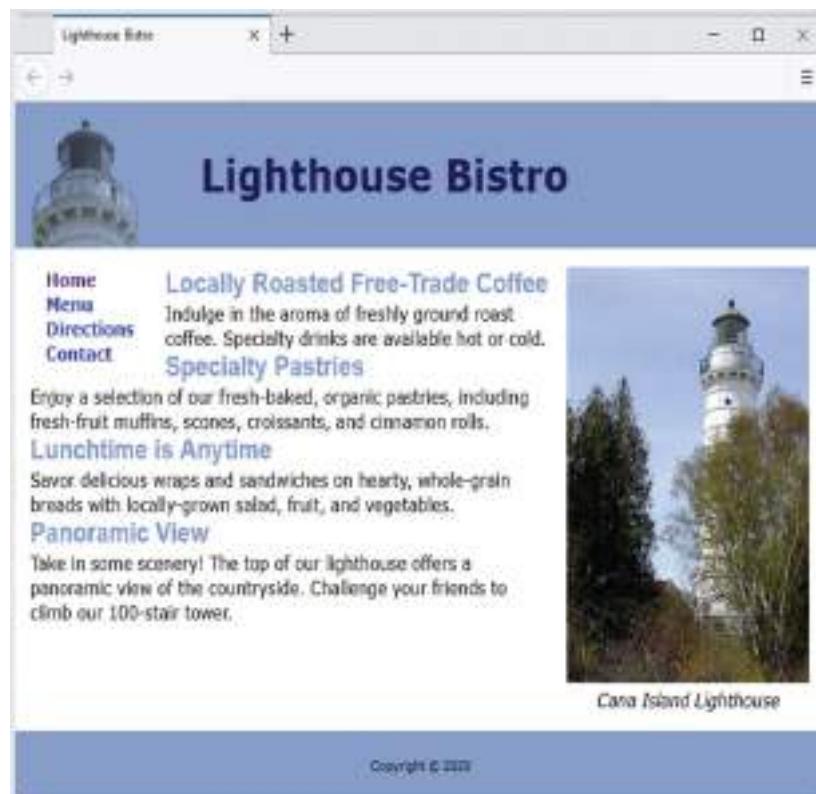
### Hands-On Practice 7.2

In this Hands-On Practice, you'll begin with a web page using the float layout technique from [Chapter 6](#) and apply flexbox properties to configure a three-column layout similar to [Figure 7.10](#).

Create a new folder called ch7flex2. Copy the starter2.html file from the chapter7 folder in the student files into your ch7flex2 folder. Copy the lighthouse.jpg and light.gif files from the chapter7/starters folder into your ch7flex2 folder.

1. Open the starter2.html file in a browser. It should look similar to [Figure 7.11](#). Launch a text editor and open the starter2.html file. Observe the HTML and notice that there is a div named `content` that contains the nav, aside, and main elements in that order.

**Figure 7.11** The web page before flexbox is configured



2. Your goal is to configure the layout of the `content` div with flexbox. Configure CSS with a flex container assigned to the id named `content`. The nav, main, and aside elements are children of the div and are the flex items. You'll configure them with different color backgrounds to emphasize the three columns. To prevent the nav element from growing in size, set the nav element's flex value to `none`. Set the main element's flex value to 6 and the aside element's flex value

to 4. Add the following CSS below the opening style tag to configure the flex container and flex items:

```
#content { display: flex; }
nav      { flex: none;
            background-color: #B3C7E6; }
main     { flex: 6;
            min-width: 20em;
            background-color: #FFFFFF; }
aside    { flex: 4;
            background-color: #EAEAEA; }
```

Save the file with the name index.html and test in a browser.

Your page should be similar to [Figure 7.12](#). Notice that there are three columns but that the aside (area with lighthouse image) displays to the left of the main content text area because that is the order of the HTML. If this is what the owners of Lighthouse Bistro want, that's great. However, if they would prefer the main content text to display between the nav area and the aside area, you'll need to use the `order` property to change the order of the display of the flexbox items.

---

**Figure 7.12 Flexbox properties have been applied**

---



3. Launch a text editor and open the index.html file. You will add CSS to configure the order of the left to right display of the flex items nav, main, and aside. You'll use the `order` property and assign values for each flex item. The CSS follows:

```
nav { order: 1; }
main { order: 2; }
aside { order: 3; }
```

Save the file and test in a browser. Your page should be similar to [Figure 7.13](#). A sample solution is in the student files chapter7/7.2 folder.

---

**Figure 7.13 The flexbox order property has been applied**



## FAQ

What happens to the old CSS float property when Flexbox layout is applied?

Browsers applying the flexbox layout system ignore the float property when it is applied to a flex item. However, any floats that are applied to content within a flex item are still rendered by the browser.

You've just been introduced to flexbox, but there is more to explore. Check out these resources:

- <https://css-tricks.com/snippets/css/a-guide-to-flexbox/>
- [https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/CSS/CSS\\_Flexible\\_Box\\_Layout](https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/CSS/CSS_Flexible_Box_Layout)

## 7.4 CSS Grid Layout

You have used both the CSS float property and CSS Flexible Box Layout (flexbox) to create multicolumn web pages. There is another new emerging layout system: CSS Grid Layout. The purpose of **CSS Grid Layout** is to configure a two-dimensional grid-based layout. The grid can be created as either fixed-size or flexible and contains one or more grid items that can be individually defined as fixed-size or flexible. Unlike flexbox which is intended for one-dimensional page layout, CSS Grid Layout is optimized for two-dimensional page layout.

CSS Grid Layout (<https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/>) has reached W3C Candidate Recommendation status and is well-supported by recent versions of popular browsers. Browsers that do not support grid layout ignore the style rules associated with grid properties.

### Configure a Grid Container

To configure an area on a web page that uses CSS Grid Layout, you need to define the **grid container**, which is the element that will contain the grid area.

### The **display** Property

Use the CSS **display** property to configure a grid container. The value **grid** indicates a block container. The value **inline-grid** indicates an inline-display container. For example, to configure an id named **gallery** as a grid container, code the following CSS:

```
#gallery { display: grid; }
```

## Designing a Grid

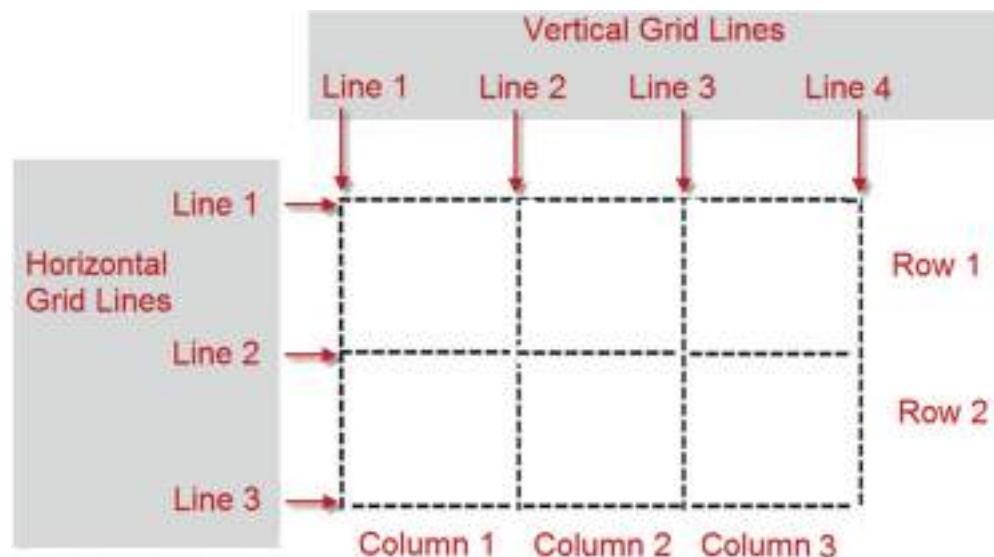
A **grid** is comprised of horizontal and vertical **grid lines** that delineate **grid rows** and **grid columns** (generically referred to as **grid tracks**). A **grid cell** (which is a **grid item**) is the intersection of a grid row and a grid column. A **grid area** is a rectangle that can contain one or more grid items. A **grid gap** is optional and indicates an empty area or gutter between items in the grid container.

A first step is to visualize the grid, usually by sketching out the layout. [Figure 7.14](#) shows a wireframe for a grid that shows grid lines, three columns, and two rows. A grid of this type could be used to display an image gallery.

---

**Figure 7.14** A grid with three columns and two rows

---



Each child element of the grid container is a **grid item**. In the following HTML, each img element within the `gallery` div is considered to be a grid item.

```
<div id="gallery">
  
  
  
  
  
  
</div>
```

## Configure Grid Columns and Grid Rows

A basic method to configure grid rows and columns is to use the `grid-template-columns` property and the `grid-template-rows` property to tell the browser how to reserve space for the columns and rows in the grid. These properties accept a variety of values which will be introduced in the next section. In this example, we'll use pixel units.

In our image gallery example, we'll configure the `grid-template-columns` property to display three columns with a fixed width in two rows with a fixed height. The CSS to configure the grid follows:

```
#gallery { display: grid;
  grid-template-columns: 220px 220px 220px;
```

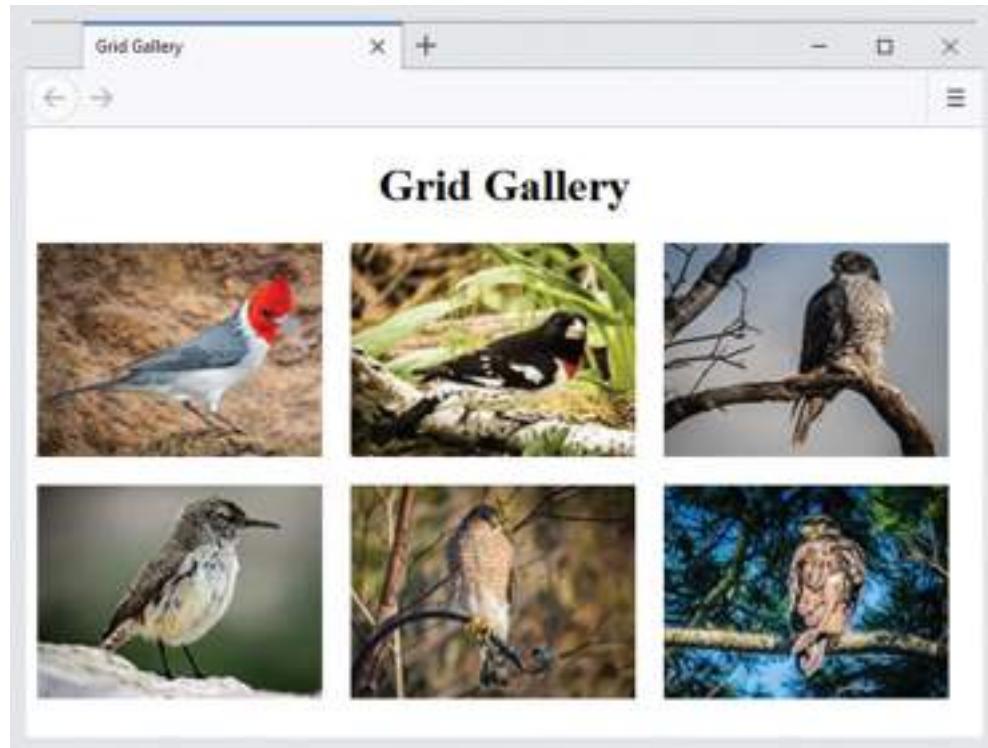
```
grid-template-rows: 170px 170px; }
```

The code above explicitly creates a grid with three columns and two rows. [Figure 7.15](#) shows a display of this grid in the browser (see the student files chapter7/grid1.html).

---

**Figure 7.15 A Basic Grid**

---



Observe that this very basic grid is fixed—it does not change when you resize the browser window. Grid layout becomes powerful when it is flexible, and the grid can change dimensions based on the browser viewport.

The empty space between the grid items in [Figure 7.15](#) is configured by setting the size of the rows and columns to be larger than the size of the images in the image gallery. For this basic image gallery grid, another

method to configure empty space could be to set padding and/or margin for the img element selector. Another method is to configure grid gap or gutter between items, which will be introduced in the next section along with techniques to configure a flexible grid.

## 7.5 Grid Columns, Rows, and Gap

You've used the `grid-template-columns` and `grid-template-rows` properties with pixel unit values to inform the browser to reserve space for each row and column in a grid. Table 7.4 lists other commonly used values for these properties. Visit <https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#propdef-grid-template-columns> for a complete list of values.

---

**Table 7.4 Commonly Used Values to Configure Columns and Rows**

Value	Description
numeric length unit	Configures a fixed size with a length unit such as px or em  Example: 220px
numeric percentage	Configures a percentage size; Example: 20%
numeric <code>fr</code> unit	Configures a <b>fractional unit</b> (denoted by <code>fr</code> ) that directs the browser to allocate a fractional part of the remaining space. The value <code>1fr</code> indicates one part of the remaining space in a grid container.
<code>auto</code>	Configures a size to hold the maximum content

Value	Description
minmax (min, max)	Configures a size range greater or equal to min value and less than or equal to max value. The max can be set to a fractional unit
repeat (repetition amount, format value)	Repeats the column or row the number of times specified by the repetition amount numeric value or keyword and uses the format value to configure the column or row. The auto-fill keyword indicates to repeat but stop before an overflow  Example: <code>repeat(autofill, 250px)</code>

## Grid Gap

The **grid-gap** property informs the browser to provide empty space or gutters between grid tracks. At the time this was written, the W3C was in the process of changing the syntax to configure this feature and it was recommended to code both the old and new properties. [Table 7.5](#) lists the old (currently supported) and new property names.

---

**Table 7.5 Changing Syntax for Grid Gap**

Property	Description

Property	Description
Old: <code>grid-column-gap</code>	Value: Numeric length or percentage
New: <code>column-gap</code>	Defines a gap between columns
Old: <code>grid-row-gap</code>	Value: Numeric length or percentage
New: <code>row-gap</code>	Defines a gap between rows
Old: <code>grid-gap</code>	Value: <code>row-gap value column-gap value</code>
New: <code>gap</code>	Shorthand property. Providing just one value sets both the <code>row-gap</code> and the <code>column-gap</code>

## The `order` Property

Focus on Accessibility

Use the **order** property to display the grid items in a different order than they are coded. The order property accepts a numeric value. The default value is 0. Be aware that the W3C cautions that web designers should use the order property only for visual reordering. The change in order should not change the meaning or intent of the content because accessibility software such as screen readers will render the content in the order it was coded.

---

## Hands-On Practice 7.3

You'll explore two more ways to configure the image gallery grid displayed in [Figure 7.15](#) in this Hands-On Practice. Create a new folder called ch7grid1. Copy the starter3.html file from the chapter7 folder in the student files into your ch7grid1 folder. Copy the following files from the chapter7/starters folder into your ch7grid1 folder: bird1.jpg, bird2.jpg, bird3.jpg, bird4.jpg, bird5.jpg, and bird6.jpg.

1. Launch a text editor and open the starter3.html file. Review the HTML and note that it contains a div assigned to the `gallery` id with six img elements for your image gallery. The div is the grid container. Each img element is a grid item since it is a child element of the div. Save the file with the name index.html.
2. Edit the index.html file and configure CSS between the style tags in the head section. Configure an id named `gallery`. Set the `display` property to `grid`. To divide the available browser space into three columns of 200 pixels each, set the `grid-template-columns` property to `repeat(3, 200px)`. To cause the browser to automatically generate rows as needed, set the `grid-template-rows` property to

`auto`. Configure the base size of the gutters between row and column tracks by setting the `grid-gap` (and `gap`) properties to 2em. The CSS code follows:

```
#gallery { display: grid;
            grid-template-columns: repeat(3,
200px);
            grid-template-rows: auto;
            grid-gap: 2em; gap: 2em; }
```

Save the file and test it in a browser. Your page should look similar to [Figure 7.15](#) (student files chapter7/7.3/a.html).

3. Configure the image gallery grid to be responsive and automatically change the number of columns and rows displayed as the browser viewport is resized. Use the `auto-fill` keyword in the `repeat()` function to direct the browser to fill the viewport with as many columns as it can without overflowing. Edit the index.html file and change `repeat(3, 200px)` to `repeat(auto-fill, 200px)`.
4. Save the file and test it in a browser. Your page will look like [Figure 7.15](#) when the browser viewport is just large enough to display three images in a row. As you widen the browser viewport, more columns will display in a single row, similar to [Figure 7.16](#). As you narrow the browser viewport, the number of columns will decrease as shown in [Figure 7.17](#). A sample solution is in the student files (chapter7/7.3/index.html).

---

**Figure 7.16 The grid stretches as you widen the browser**

---



---

**Figure 7.17** Responsive Grid

---



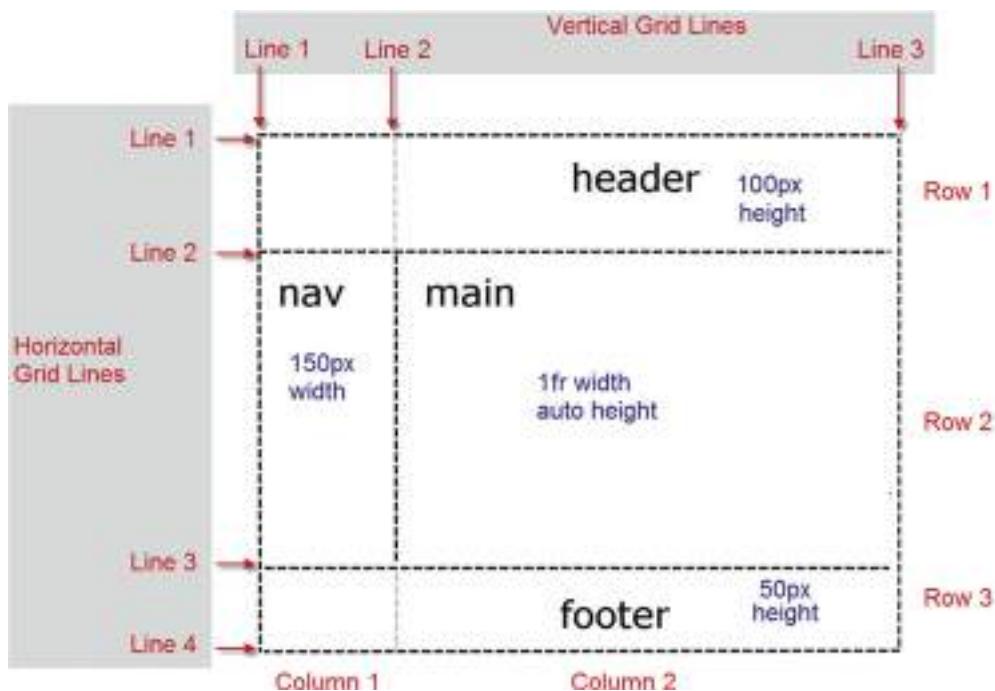
## 7.6 Two-Column Grid Page Layout

Figure 7.18 shows a sample grid wireframe for a two-column page layout with grid lines, rows, and columns indicated. The browser will use the content to automatically determine the column width and row height unless you otherwise configure it. As you can see in the wireframe, this layout requires some specific column widths and row heights, so we'll need to code CSS to configure grid columns and rows.

---

**Figure 7.18 Two-column CSS Grid Layout**

---



---

Video Note

*CSS Grid Layout*

# Configure Grid Columns and Rows

Using the wireframe as a guide, configure the `grid-template-columns` and `grid-template-rows` properties. Recall that values include pixel units, percentages, keywords such as `auto`, and fractional units. A new unit, `fr`, denotes a fractional unit and directs the browser to allocate portions of the remaining space. Use `1fr` to allocate all remaining space.

The grid wireframe shown in [Figure 7.18](#) contains two columns and three rows.

- The header is 100px in height, takes up the first row, and spans two columns.
- The nav is 150px wide and is located in the first column of the second row.
- The main content is located in the second column of the second row and needs to be large enough to hold whatever content is provided. The width of the main content is `1fr` and occupies all available space left after the nav element is rendered with a 150px width. The height of the main content is the `auto` value and will expand to contain whatever content is present.
- The footer takes up the third row, is 50px in height, and spans three columns.

Now you're ready to configure the grid for an id named `wrapper`. Set the `display` property to `grid`. Use the `grid-template-columns` property to set the first column to 150px and the second column to `1fr`. Use the `grid-template-rows` property to set the first row to 100px, the second row to `auto`, and the third row to 50px. The CSS follows:

```
#wrapper { display: grid;
            grid-template-columns: 150px 1fr;
            grid-template-rows: 100px auto 50px; }
```

## Configure Grid Items

Once you have declared the grid and coded a template for the columns and rows you need to indicate what elements should be placed in each grid item and grid area. There are a variety of techniques than can be used to configure grid items. One method uses the grid-row and grid-column properties. The **grid-row** property configures the area in rows that is reserved for the item in the grid. The **grid-column** property configures the area in columns that is reserved for the item in the grid. A variety of values are accepted by these properties, such as grid line numbers and grid line names. For a complete list of values, visit <https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#typedef-grid-row-start-grid-line>.

## Grid Line Numbers

In this example we will assign the **grid-row** and **grid-column** properties for each grid item with a starting grid line number and an ending grid line number separated by a / character. View [Figure 7.18](#) and observe that the header area begins at vertical grid line 1 and ends at vertical grid line 3 in the first row (the grid track between horizontal grid line 1 and horizontal grid line 2). The CSS to configure the header is:

```
header { grid-row: 1 / 2;
            grid-column: 1 / 3; }
```

Each grid item shown in [Figure 7.18](#) is configured in a similar manner. Configure the navigation, main, and footer elements with the following CSS:

```
nav { grid-row: 2 / 3; grid-column: 1 / 2; }
main { grid-row: 2 / 3; grid-column: 2 / 3; }
footer { grid-row: 3 / 4; grid-column: 1 / 3; }
```

[Figure 7.19](#) shows a web page that uses this grid layout. You will create this page in the next Hands-On Practice.

**Figure 7.19 Web page with CSS Grid Layout**



## Configure a Grid Page Layout with Grid Line Numbers

To create a grid page layout using grid line numbers, configure the following:

1. Use the display property to declare the grid container. Each child element of the grid container will be an item in the grid. If needed, use the grid-template-columns and grid-template-rows properties to specify the row and column dimensions. Recall that the browser will use the content to automatically determine the column width and row height unless you otherwise configure it.
2. Using your wireframe sketch as a guide, carefully determine the vertical grid lines and horizontal grid lines. Use the grid-rows and grid-column properties to indicate the vertical and horizontal grid lines for each grid item in the grid.

---

## Hands-On Practice 7.4

In this Hands-On Practice you'll configure the grid shown in [Figure 7.18](#) to create the layout for the web page shown in [Figure 7.20](#), which was configured using float methods from [Chapter 6](#) and is not yet using grid layout. Create a new folder called ch7grid2. Copy the starter4.html file from the chapter7 folder in the student files into your ch7grid2 folder. Copy light2.jpg file from the chapter7/starters folder into your ch7grid2 folder.

---

**Figure 7.20 The web page without grid layout**

---



1. Open your starter4.html file in a browser and the display should be similar to [Figure 7.20](#) – this is the display before any code for grid layout is added.
2. Launch a text editor and open the starter4.html file. Save the file as index.html. You will edit the CSS in the head section. Our grid layout will follow the two-column grid wireframe in [Figure 7.18](#). Use the horizontal grid lines to indicate the rows. Use the vertical grid lines to indicate the columns. Add style rules in the header section to configure an id named wrapper as a grid container with a two-column, three-row grid layout. The CSS follows

```
#wrapper { display: grid;
            grid-template-columns: 150px 1fr;
            grid-template-rows: 100px auto
            50px; }
```

3. Next, use the wireframe in [Figure 7.18](#) as a guide to configure the HTML element selectors and their starting and ending grid lines. Use the horizontal grid line numbers to configure the grid-row property. Use the vertical grid line numbers to configure the grid-column property. The CSS follows:

```
header { grid-row: 1 / 2; grid-column: 1 / 3;
}
nav     { grid-row: 2 / 3; grid-column: 1 / 2;
}
main    { grid-row: 2 / 3; grid-column: 2 / 3;
}
footer { grid-row: 3 / 4; grid-column: 1 / 3;
}
```

Save your file. Launch a browser that supports grid layout and test your page. Your page should look similar to [Figure 7.19](#). A sample solution is in the student files chapter7/7.4 folder.

As you completed this Hands-On Practice you may have noticed that it is a bit tedious to determine and code all those vertical and horizontal grid line numbers. Perhaps you wondered if there is another method to configure a grid with CSS. The next section introduces you to a method to configure a grid template without all those line numbers!

## 7.7 Layout with Grid Areas

Recall that a grid area is a rectangle that can contain one or more grid items. The rectangle is bounded by grid lines. In our previous examples, you have configured grid areas by indicating grid line numbers. CSS Grid Layout provides a way to name the grid areas which eliminates keeping track of all those grid line numbers! Let's take a closer look.

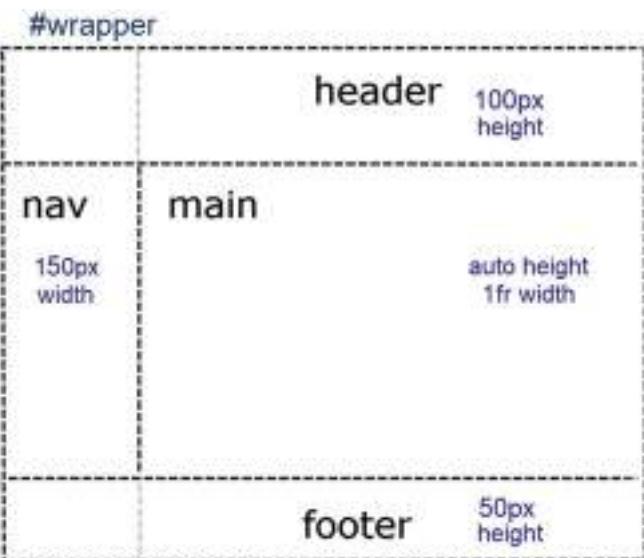
### The **grid-area** Property

The **grid-area** property (<https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#propdef-grid-area>) can be used to associate a grid item with a named area of the grid. The wireframe in [Figure 7.21](#) specifies the layout for the web page shown in [Figure 7.22](#). Note the four grid areas in [Figure 7.21](#): header, nav, main, and footer. Use the **grid-area** property to associate a CSS selector (either an HTML element selector, class selector or id selector) with each of these named grid areas. We will use HTML element selectors in this example. To associate the HTML elements header, nav, main, and footer with uniquely named grid areas, code the following CSS:

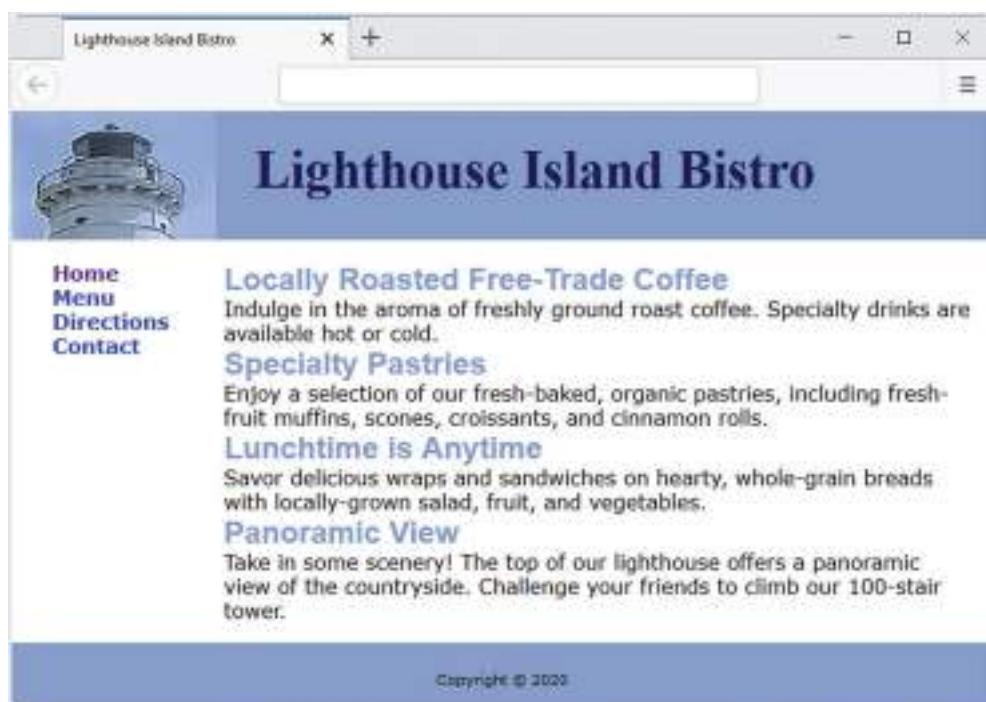
---

**Figure 7.21 A grid wireframe**

---



**Figure 7.22** Web page configured with grid template areas



```

header { grid-area: header; }
nav { grid-area: nav; }
main { grid-area: main; }
footer { grid-area: footer; }

```

## The grid-template-areas Property

Use the `grid-template-areas` property (<https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#grid-template-areas-property>) to visually indicate the placement of the named grid areas on the grid. The value is a series of strings that contain named grid areas. Each string is a row on the grid. The number of named grid areas in the string indicates the number of columns in the row. If a column in a row should be skipped, use the period ". ." symbol. Each row must indicate the same number of columns.

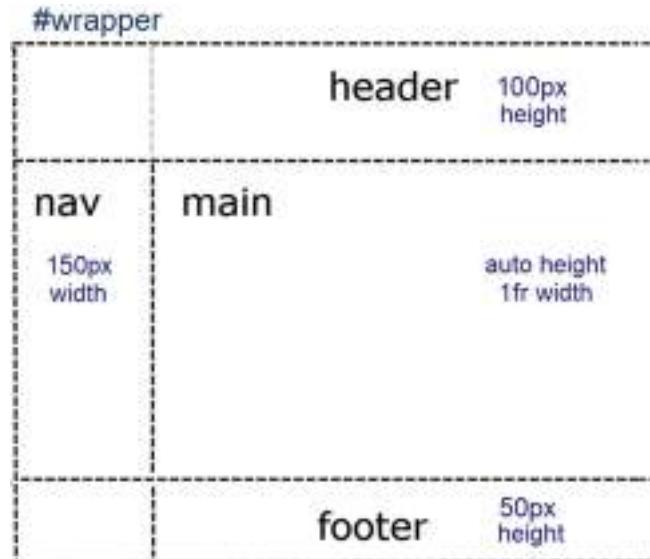
To configure the grid in [Figure 7.21](#), start out by declaring the grid and assigning the `grid-template-columns` and `grid-template-rows` properties. Then, use the `grid-template-areas` property to write the named grid area values row by row within quotation marks. The first row is the header named area which takes up two columns. The second row contains the nav area in the first column and the main area in the second column. The third row contains the footer area across two columns. The CSS follows:

```
#wrapper { display: grid;
            grid-template-columns: 150px 1fr;
            grid-template-rows: 100px auto 50px;
            grid-template-areas:
                "header header"
                "nav     main"
                "footer  footer"; }
```

It's possible to have empty areas within a grid layout, as shown in the wireframe in [Figure 7.23](#). The third row indicated the footer area in the second column and nothing in the first column. This a situation where

the “.” symbol comes in handy. The following CSS will configure the `grid-template-areas` property for the wireframe shown in [Figure 7.23](#):

**Figure 7.23 The first column in the third row is empty**



```
#wrapper { display: grid;
            grid-template-columns: 150px 1fr;
            grid-template-rows: 100px auto 50px;
            grid-template-areas:
                "header header"
                "nav     main"
                ".     footer" ; }
```

## Hands-On Practice 7.5

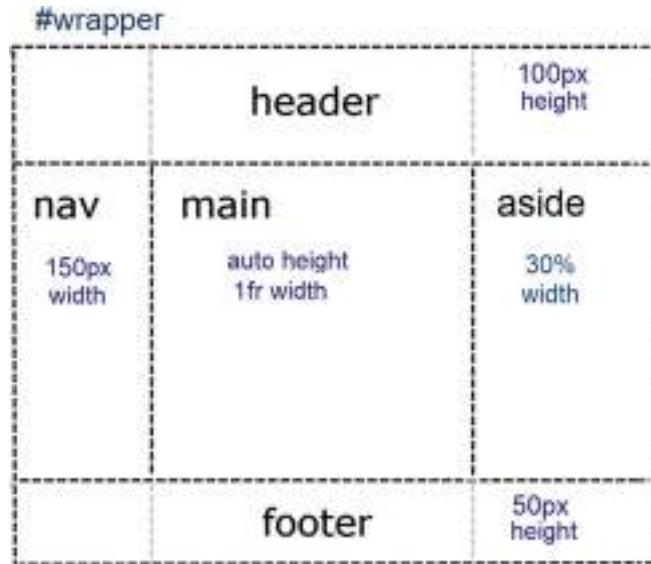
You will work with grid template areas in this Hands-On Practice. Create a new folder called ch7grid3. Copy the starter5.html file from the chapter7 folder in the student files into your ch7grid3 folder. Copy the following files from the chapter7/starters folder into your ch7grid3 folder: header.jpg

and `scenery.jpg`. You will configure a three-column grid layout based on the wireframe in [Figure 7.24](#) for the web page displayed in [Figure 7.25](#).

---

**Figure 7.24 Three column grid layout**

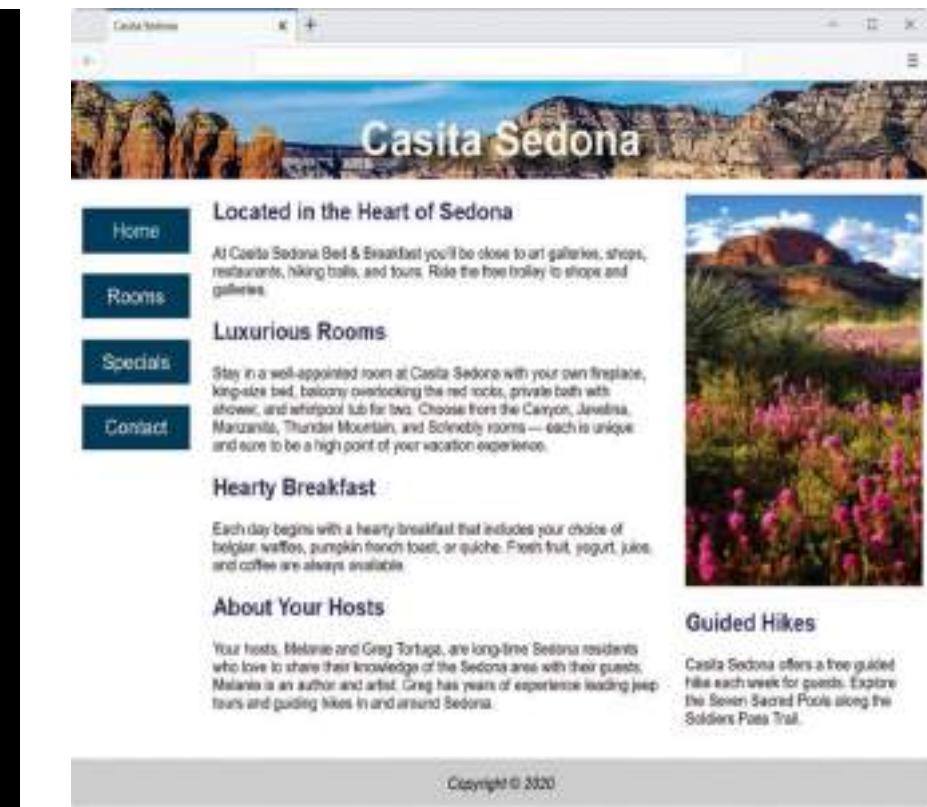
---



---

**Figure 7.25 The web page configured with grid layout**

---



Launch a text editor and open the starter5.html file. Save the file with the name index.html. You will edit the CSS in the head section: use the `grid-area` property to associate HTML elements with named grid areas, declare the grid, use the `grid-template-columns` and `grid-template-rows` properties to indicate the row and column dimensions, and use the `grid-template-areas` property to describe the layout of the grid.

1. With the [Figure 7.24](#) wireframe in mind, add style rules in the header section to associate the HTML elements with the named grid areas (header, nav, main, aside, and footer) using the `grid-area` property. The CSS follows:

```
header { grid-area: header; }
nav { grid-area: nav; }
main { grid-area: main; }
aside { grid-area: aside; }
footer { grid-area: footer; }
```

2. Configure a grid layout for the [Figure 7.24](#) wireframe. Add style rules in the header section to configure an id named `wrapper` as a grid container with a three-column, three-row grid layout. Specify three columns (width set to 150px, 1fr, and 30%) with the `grid-template-columns` property. Specify three rows (height set to 100px, auto, and 50px) with the `grid-template-rows` property. Also configure the `grid-template-areas` property with the placement of the header, nav, main, aside, and footer grid areas indicated. The CSS follows:

```
#wrapper { display: grid;
            grid-template-columns: 150px 1fr
            30%;
            grid-template-rows: 100px auto
            50px;
            grid-template-areas:
                "header      header"
            "nav        main     aside"
                "footer      footer"
            footer" ; }
```

Save the file. Launch a browser that supports grid layout and test your page. Your page should look similar to [Figure 7.25](#). A sample solution is in the student files (chapter7/7.5/index.html).

## The `grid-template` Property

The **grid-template** property (<https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#propdef-grid-template>) is a shorthand property that combines the grid-template-areas, grid-template-rows, and grid-template-columns properties. The value of this property begins with a series of strings for each row followed by the height of each row. The string for each row is the named grid areas for that row enclosed in quotation marks. The width of the columns is indicated on a final row that begins with a "/" symbol.

To create the grid for the wireframe in [Figure 7.24](#) (corresponding web page in [Figure 7.25](#)), the following steps are involved:

1. Configure each named grid area with the **grid-area** property.
2. Identify the **#wrapper** selector as the grid container.
3. Configure the **grid-template** property based on the [Figure 7.24](#) wireframe. The first row is the header area which takes up three columns and is 100px in height. The second row contains the nav area in the first column, main area in the second column, and the aside area in the third column. Configure the height of this row as **auto** to use up all available space. The third row contains the footer area across three columns and is 50 pixels high. Note that the named areas that comprise each row are contained within quotation marks. The last row begins with a "/" symbol followed by the actual values for the column widths (in this case 150px, 1fr, and 30%).

The CSS follows:

```
header { grid-area: header; }
nav   { grid-area: nav; }
main  { grid-area: main; }
aside { grid-area: aside; }
footer { grid-area: footer; }
#wrapper { display: grid;
```

```
grid-template:  
    "header header header" 100px  
    "nav     main     aside" auto  
    "footer footer footer" 50px  
    / 150px    1fr    30%; }
```

A sample page with this coding technique is in the student files (chapter7/7.5/grid3.html). This shorthand technique provides a convenient way to indicate not only the locations of the named grid areas but also the dimensions of the columns and rows in one property. There are many different methods available for configuring a CSS grid layout system. The rest of this chapter configures grid page layout with the grid-template property and named grid areas.

### Checkpoint 7.1

- 1.** Which CSS property is used to identify a CSS selector as a grid or flexbox container?
- 2.** The CSS justify-content property used in flexbox layout is quite versatile. Choose three values and describe their purpose.
- 3.** Which CSS property can be used to indicate the location and dimensions of named grid areas?

## 7.8 Progressive Enhancement with Grid

A design strategy for using grid layout is to first configure the web page layout so it displays well in nonsupporting browsers, next use a new technique called a CSS feature query to check for grid support, and then configure the grid layout to be used by supporting browsers.

### CSS Feature Query

A **feature query** is a conditional that can be used to test for support of a CSS property, and if support is found, apply the specified style rules.

Feature queries are part of the CSS Conditional Rules Module which was in Candidate Recommendation status at the time this was written (<https://www.w3.org/TR/css3-conditional/#at-supports>). If a browser does not support feature queries, it simply ignores the code.

A feature query is coded using the **@supports() rule**. You code the property and value you are checking for within the parentheses. For example, to check for grid layout support, code the following CSS:

```
@supports ( display: grid) {
```

All the style rules needed for grid layout are coded between the “{” opening brace and the “}” ending brace. You’ll get some experience with this in the next Hands-On Practice.



## Hands-On Practice 7.6

You'll use a feature query to progressively enhance an existing web page with grid layout in this Hands-On Practice. Create a new folder called ch7grid4. Copy the starter6.html file from the chapter7 folder in the student files into your ch7grid4 folder. Copy the lighthouse.jpg and light2.jpg files from the chapter7/starters folder into your ch7grid4 folder.

1. Open your starter6.html file in a browser and the display should be similar to [Figure 7.26](#), which is the display before any code for grid layout is added. This is a three-column layout with the nav, main, and aside elements floating next to each other.

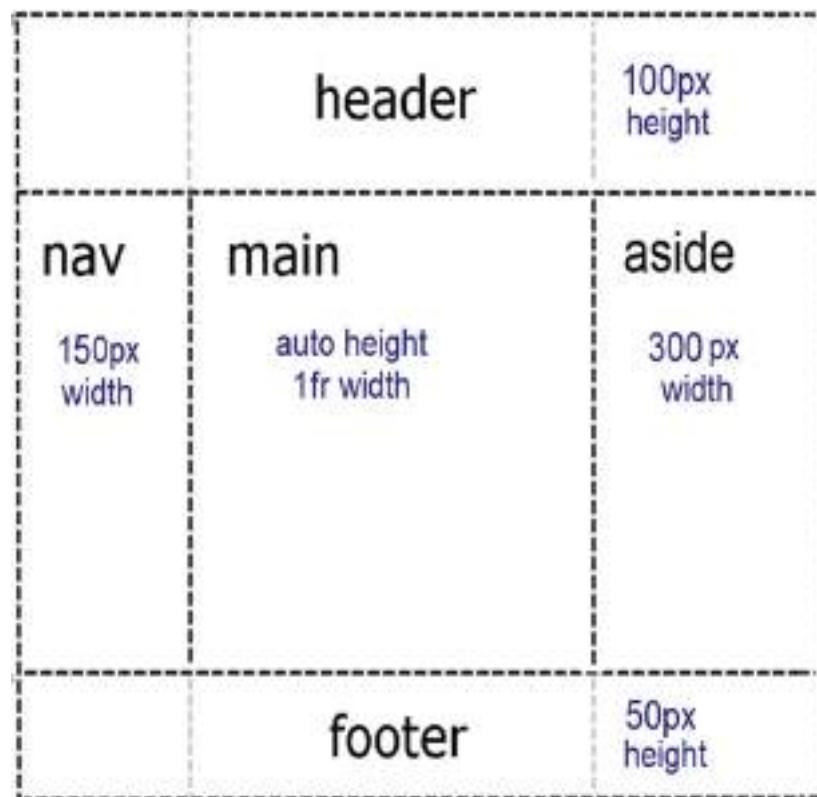
**Figure 7.26** The web page displayed in a browser



2. Next, launch a text editor and open the starter6.html file. Our grid layout will follow the wireframe in [Figure 7.27](#).

Notice that there are three rows and three columns. The header takes up the entire first row. The nav, main, and aside elements are in the second row. The footer takes up the entire third row. Observe [Figure 7.27](#) and note the heights and widths indicated. You will add an `@supports` rule to the CSS before the ending style tag to check for grid support. You will place code to configure a three-column grid layout. The CSS follows:

**Figure 7.27 Grid Layout**



```
@supports (display: grid) {  
    #wrapper { display: grid;  
        grid-template:  
            "header" header  
            "header" 100px  
            "nav"     main  
            "aside"   auto  
            "footer"  footer  
    }  
}
```

```
        footer" 50px  
                / 150px 1fr    300px ;  
}  
header { grid-area: header; }  
nav   { grid-area: nav; }  
main  { grid-area: main; }  
aside { grid-area: aside; }  
footer { grid-area: footer; }  
}
```

Save your file and test it in a browser that supports grid layout. Your page should look similar to [Figure 7.28](#). Notice that the page looks a bit odd with the main content area text taking up only part of the middle area.

**Figure 7.28 Grid layout**



3. Open your file in a text editor and notice that the main element selector has 50% width set—this is causing the awkward display in [Figure 7.28](#). You need to rework this when grid layout is implemented. It's easy to do this by adding a style rule to the `@supports` feature query that

resets the width. Add the following style rule to the styles within the `@supports` feature query:

```
main { width: 100%; }
```

Save your file. Launch a browser that supports grid layout and test your page. It should look similar to [Figure 7.26](#). Be mindful that sometimes when you work with this technique you might also need to reset margins or padding – it depends on the specific web page and CSS that was originally coded. Note that we didn't need to write any new styles resetting the float property because CSS grid layout ignores the float property.

To recap, we applied the principle of progressive enhancement. We began with a web page that was configured with old-fashioned three-column layout using the float property. Next, we configured grid layout within a feature query (which nonsupporting browsers will ignore). Then we looked for any styles that were causing a display issue (the `width` property for the main element in this case) and coded new styles within the feature query to correct the display. The result is a web page that looks good on both supporting and nonsupporting browsers. A sample solution is in the student files chapter7/7.6 folder.

---

## FAQ

What happens to the old CSS float property when Grid layout is applied?

Browsers applying the grid layout system ignore the float property when it is applied to a grid item. However, any floats that are applied to content within a grid item are still rendered by the browser.

You've just been introduced to grid layout, but there is more to explore. Check out these resources:

- <https://css-tricks.com/snippets/css/complete-guide-grid/>
  - [https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/CSS/CSS\\_Grid\\_Layout](https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/CSS/CSS_Grid_Layout)
-

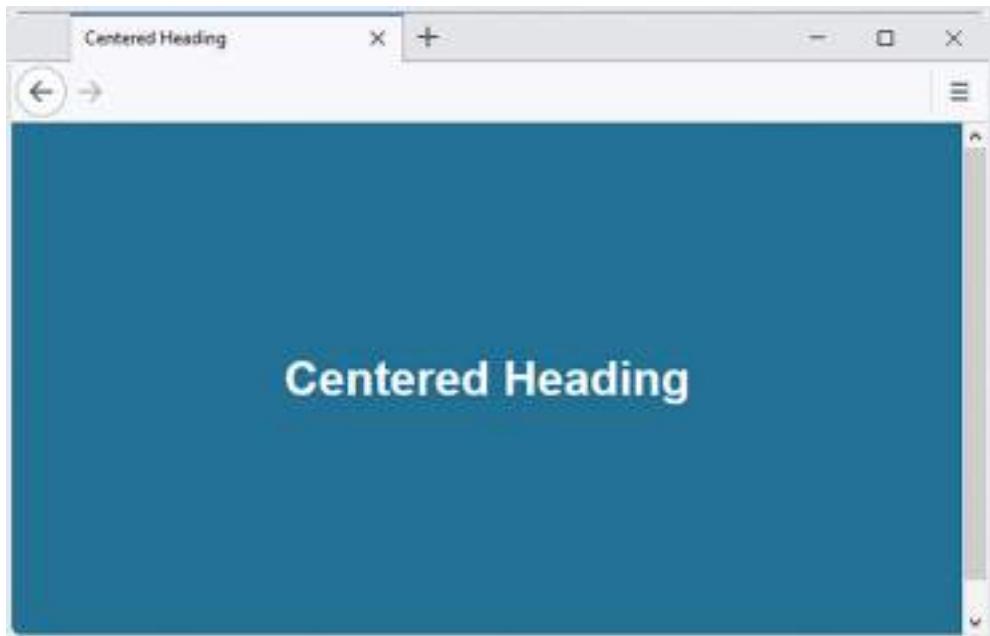
## 7.9 Centering with Flexbox and Grid

In [Chapter 3](#), you were introduced to the technique of horizontally centering a block display element with CSS by setting its margin property to the value `auto`. However, until flexbox and grid layout, it has been difficult to vertically center an element within a browser viewport. [Figures 7.29](#) shows a web page with text that is centered both vertically and horizontally. Locate the page in the student files (`chapter7/center.html`) and display it in a browser. As you resize the browser viewport, the text remains both vertically and horizontally centered.

---

**Figure 7.29** Centered text

---



To accomplish this layout, configure the container element with the following CSS:

- `display: flex;`

- `min-height: 100vh;` (This indicates 100% of the viewport height.)
  - `justify-content: center;`
  - `align-items: center;`
  - *Optional:* `flex-wrap: wrap;` (This will allow multiple centered flex items.)
- 

## Hands-On Practice 7.7

You'll explore creating web pages with both horizontally and vertically centered content in this Hands-On Practice. Create a new folder called ch7center. Copy the template.html file from the chapter7 folder in the student files into your ch7center folder. Copy the lake.jpg file from the chapter7/starters folder into your ch7center folder.

1. Launch a text editor and open your template.html file.

Change the title of the web page to “Centered Heading”. Edit the HTML and configure a header element, h1 element, and main element between the opening and closing body tags.

The code follows:

```
<header>
  <h1>Centered Heading</h1>
</header>
<main>
  Additional page content and navigation go
  here
</main>
```

2. Continue editing the file and configure the CSS. Code opening and closing style tags in the head section. Next, code style rules within the style tags. Configure the body element selector with zero margin. Configure the header

element selector as a flex container with `justify-content` set to `center`, `align-items` set to `center`, minimum height `100vh`, and `#227093` background color. Configure the `h1` element selector with white, Arial font. The code follows:

```
<style>
  body { margin: 0; }
  header { display: flex; min-height: 100vh;
            justify-content: center; align-
            items: center;
            background-color: #227093; }
  h1 { color: #FFFFFF; font-family: Arial,
        sans-serif; }
</style>
```

Save your file as `index.html` and display it in a browser. Your display should be similar to [Figure 7.29](#). Resize the browser window and see how the `h1` text remains centered in the viewport. Scroll down the page to see the text within the main element. You can compare your work to `chapter7/center.html` in the student files.

3. Next, add a background image that covers the entire browser viewport. Open `index.html` in a text editor and add styles for the `header` element selector that will configure the `lake.jpg` background image with 100% size that does not repeat. Remove the style rule for the background color. The code follows:

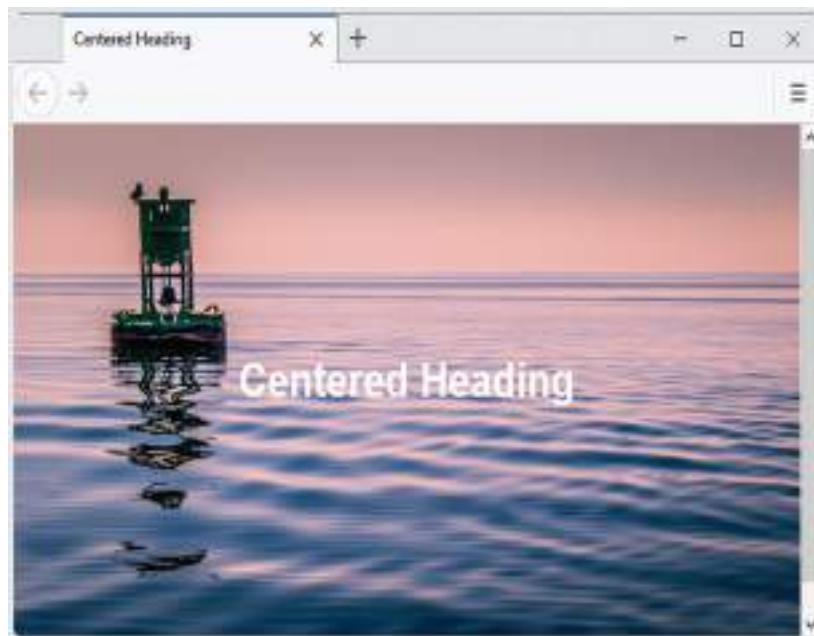
```
header { display: flex; min-height: 100vh;
          justify-content: center; align-items:
          center;
          background-color: #227093;
          background-image: url(lake.jpg);
          background-size: 100% 100%;
          background-repeat: no-repeat; }
```

Save your file and display it in a browser. Your display should be similar to [Figure 7.30](#). As you resize the browser window, notice how the h1 text remains centered and the background image changes in size. Scroll down the page to see the text within the main element. You can compare your work to chapter7/7.7/index.html in the student files.

---

**Figure 7.30 Centered text with background image**

---



4. There is another way to accomplish this layout when grid or flex layout is being used. Setting the margin property to `auto` causes the browser to both vertically and horizontally center an item. You will demonstrate this handy behavior as you rework the CSS.
  - a. Open index.html in a text editor. Remove the `justify-content` and `align-items` style rules. Add a style rule for the h1 element selector that sets margin to `auto`. Save your file and display it in a browser. Your display should still be similar to [Figure 7.30](#). You can

compare your work to the sample in the student files (chapter7/7.7/flex.html).

- b.** Open index.html in a text editor. Change the value of the display property from `flex` to `grid`. Save your file and display it in a browser. Your display should still be similar to [Figure 7.30](#). You can compare your work to chapter7/7.7/grid.html in the student files.

You explored several layout techniques in this Hands-On Practice. The new flexbox and grid layout systems offer a wide variety of page layout options for web developers.

---

## 7.10 Viewport Meta Tag

There are multiple uses for meta tags. You've used the meta tag since [Chapter 2](#) to configure the character encoding on a web page. Now, we'll explore the new **viewport meta tag**, which was created as an Apple extension that helps with displays on mobile devices such as iPhones and Android smartphones by setting the width and scale of the viewport.

[Figure 7.31](#) displays a screen shot of a web page displayed on an Android smartphone without the viewport meta tag. Examine [Figure 7.31](#) and notice that the mobile device zoomed out to display the entire web page on the tiny screen. The text on the web page is difficult to read.

---

**Figure 7.31 Mobile display of a typical desktop web page without the viewport meta tag**

---



[Figure 7.32](#) shows the same web page after the viewport meta tag was added to the head section of the document. The code is shown below:

Figure 7.32 The viewport meta tag helps with mobile displays



```
<meta name="viewport"  
content="width=device-width, initial-scale=1.0">
```

Code the viewport meta tag with the HTML **name="viewport"** and **content** attributes. The value of the HTML **content** attribute can be one or more **directives** (also referred to as properties by Apple), such as the

`device-width` directive and directives that control zooming and scale.

Table 7.6 lists viewport meta tag directives and their values.

**Table 7.6 Viewport meta tag directives**

Directive	Values	Purpose
width	Numeric value or <code>device-width</code> which indicates actual width of the device screen	The width of the viewport in pixels
height	Numeric value or <code>device-height</code> which indicates actual height of the device screen	The height of the viewport in pixels
initial-scale	Numeric multiplier; Set to 1 for 100% initial scale	Initial scale of the viewport
minimum-scale	Numeric multiplier; Mobile Safari default is 0.25	Minimum scale of the viewport
maximum-scale	Numeric multiplier; Mobile Safari default is 1.6	Maximum scale of the viewport
user-scalable	<code>yes</code> allows scaling, <code>no</code> disables scaling	Determines whether a user can zoom in or out

Now that you've scaled the page to be readable, what about styling it for optimal mobile use? That's where CSS comes into play. You'll explore CSS Media Queries in the next section.

## 7.11 CSS Media Queries

Recall from [Chapter 5](#) that the term **responsive web design** refers to progressively enhancing a web page for different viewing contexts (such as smartphones and tablets) through the use of coding techniques including fluid layouts, flexible images, and media queries.

For examples of the power of responsive web design techniques, review [Figures 5.44](#), [5.45](#), and [5.46](#), which are actually the same .html web page file that was configured with CSS to display differently, depending on the viewport size detected by media queries. Also visit the Media Queries website at <https://mediaqueri.es> to view a gallery of sites that demonstrate responsive web design. The screen captures in the gallery show web pages displayed with the following browser viewport widths: 320px (smartphone display), 768px (tablet portrait display), 1024px (netbook display and tablet landscape display), and 1600px (large desktop display).

### What's a Media Query?

According to the W3C (<https://www.w3.org/TR/css3-mediaqueries>) a **media query** is made up of a media type (such as screen) and a logical expression that determines the capability of the device that the browser is running on, such as screen resolution and orientation (portrait or landscape). When the media query evaluates as true, the media query directs browsers to CSS you have coded and configured specifically for those capabilities. Media queries are supported by current versions of popular browsers.

# Media Query Example Using a Link Element

Figure 7.33 shows the same web page as Figure 7.31, but it looks quite different because of a link element that includes a media query and is associated with a style sheet configured for optimal mobile display on a popular smartphone. The HTML is shown below:

---

**Figure 7.33 CSS media queries help to configure the page for mobile display**

---



```
<link href="lighthousemobile.css" rel="stylesheet"  
      media="(max-width: 480px)">
```

The code sample above will direct browsers to an external stylesheet that has been configured for optimal display on the most popular

smartphones. Commonly used media types and keywords are listed in [Table 7.7](#).

**Table 7.7 Media types**

Media Type	Value Purpose
all	All devices (default)
screen	Computer screen display of web page
speech	Devices that “read out” a web page such as screenreaders
print	Printout of web page

In the link element shown above, the `max-width` **media feature** is set to 480px. While there are many different screen sizes for smartphones these days, a maximum width of 480px will target the display size of many popular models. A maximum width of 768px will target many modern large smartphones and small tablets. A media query may test for both minimum and maximum values. For example,

```
<link href="lighthousetablet.css" rel="stylesheet"
      media="(min-width: 768px) and (max-width:
      1024px)">
```

# Media Query Example Using an @media Rule

A second method of using media queries is to code them directly in your CSS using an **@media rule**. Begin by coding **@media** followed by the media type and logical expression. Then enclose the desired CSS selector(s) and declaration(s) within a pair of braces. The sample code below configures a different background image specifically for mobile devices with small screens. [Table 7.8](#) lists commonly used media query features.

```
@media (max-width: 480px) {  
    header { background-image: url(mobile.gif);  
    }  
}
```

---

**Table 7.8 Commonly used media features**

Media Feature	Values	Criteria
max-device-height	Numeric value	The height of the screen size of the output device in pixels is smaller than or equal to the value
max-device-width	Numeric value	The width of the screen size of the output device in pixels is smaller than or equal to the value

<b>Media Feature</b>	<b>Values</b>	<b>Criteria</b>
<code>min-device-height</code>	Numeric value	The height of the screen size of the output device in pixels is greater than or equal to the value
<code>min-device-width</code>	Numeric value	The width of the screen size of the output device in pixels is greater than or equal to the value
<code>max-height</code>	Numeric value	The height of the viewport in pixels is smaller than or equal to the value; (reevaluated when screen is resized)
<code>min-height</code>	Numeric value	The height of the viewport in pixels is greater than or equal to the value; (reevaluated when screen is resized)
<code>max-width</code>	Numeric value	The width of the viewport in pixels is smaller than or equal to the value; (reevaluated when screen is resized)
<code>min-width</code>	Numeric value	The width of the viewport in pixels is greater than or equal to the value; (reevaluated when screen is resized)
<code>orientation</code>	Portrait or landscape	The orientation of the device

# Mobile First

Many web developers follow a responsive design layout strategy called Mobile First, a term coined by Luke Wroblewski almost a decade ago.

The Mobile First Process:

- 1.** Configure a single-column page layout optimized for small, narrow screens, Test with a small browser viewport if needed.
- 2.** Resize the browser viewport to be larger until the design “breaks” and needs to be reworked for a pleasing display—this is the point where you may need to code a media query.
- 3.** Continue resizing the browser viewport to be larger until the design breaks and code additional media queries.

## 7.12 Responsive Layout with Media Queries

---

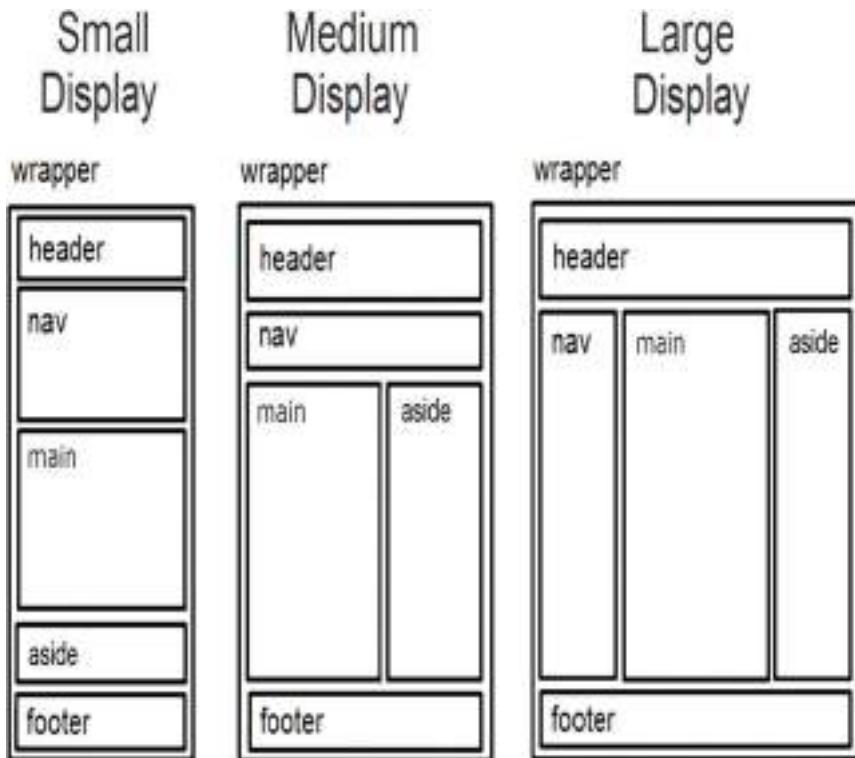
### Hands-On Practice 7.8

You'll practice a Mobile First strategy for responsive design in this Hands-On Practice. First, you will configure a page layout that works well in smartphones (test with a small browser window). Then you'll resize the browser viewport to be larger until the design "breaks" and code media queries and additional CSS as appropriate using traditional float layout techniques (as introduced in [Chapter 6](#)). [Figure 7.34](#) shows wireframes for three different layouts.

---

**Figure 7.34 Three wireframe layouts**

---



Create a new folder called ch7resp. Copy the starter7.html file from the chapter7 folder in the student files into your ch7resp folder. Copy the lighthouse.jpg and light.gif files from the chapter7/starters folder into your ch7resp folder.

1. Launch a text editor and open your starter7.html file. View the HTML and notice that a div assigned to the `wrapper` id has child elements of header, nav, main, aside, and footer as shown.

```

<div id="wrapper">
  <header> . . . </header>
  <nav> . . . </nav>
  <main> . . . </main>
  <aside> . . . </aside>
  <footer> . . . </footer>
</div>

```

Observe the CSS and note the `wrapper` id's child elements (header, nav, main, aside, and footer) do not have the float property associated with them. Browsers render this page using normal flow with each element displayed under the preceding element, similar to the Small Display wireframe in [Figure 7.33](#). Notice also that there are no minimum widths assigned. This layout will work well on a small display such as a smartphone. Save the file with the name index.html.

2. Display your index.html file in a desktop browser. If your browser viewport is a typical size, it will look a bit awkward and similar to [Figure 7.35](#). Don't worry though, we intend this layout to be displayed on narrow mobile screens—so resize your browser to be narrower until your display is similar to [Figure 7.36](#), which simulates the mobile display.

---

**Figure 7.35 Normal flow full width block elements**



Figure 7.36 Smartphone display simulation



3. There is one more item needed for a more pleasing and usable display on an actual mobile device: the viewport meta tag. Launch a text editor and open index.html. Add a viewport meta tag in the head section of the document below the meta tag. The HTML follows:

```
<meta name="viewport"  
content="width=device-width,  
initial-scale=1.0">
```

Save your file. If you display it in a desktop browser, it will look the same. See the student files (chapter7/7.8/step3.html) for an example. **Figure 7.37** shows a smartphone display of the page.

**Figure 7.37 Smartphone display**



4. In the past, web developers would try to target specific devices (such as smartphone and tablet). However, the modern process is to determine the condition for the media

query by widening the browser until the display begins to “break” or look awkward. Display your index.html file in a browser—first narrow it and then gradually widen it. The point where it starts to seem awkward is around 600px wide, so that’s what we’ll code for our media query.

You’ll configure the layout to follow the Medium Display wireframe in [Figure 7.34](#). Observe the layout: horizontal header, horizontal navigation, adjacent main and aside elements, and horizontal footer.

Launch a text editor and open index.html. Code a CSS media query after the other style rules to change the display when the `min-width` of the viewport is at least 600px. Add style rules within the media query that will create a horizontal navigation area with `inline-block` display, width, padding, centered text, and no border; configure the main element selector with a left float and a width of 55%, set a 55% left margin for the aside element selector, and configure the footer element selector to clear floats. The CSS follows:

```
@media (min-width: 600px) {  
    nav li { display: inline-block;  
             width: 7em;  
             padding: 0.5em;  
             border: none; }  
    nav ul { text-align: center; }  
    main { float: left;  
           width: 55%; }  
    aside { margin-left: 55%; }  
    footer { clear: both; }  
}
```

Save the file and launch it in a browser. You should be able to resize your browser viewport and obtain a display similar to [Figure 7.38](#). An example is in the Student Files (chapter7/7.8/step4.html).

**Figure 7.38 Implementing the Medium Display wireframe**



5. Repeat the process to determine the condition for the next breakpoint. When displayed in a browser, the web page seems to be a bit awkward around 1024px, so that's what you'll code for in the next media query. Configure the layout to follow the Large Display wireframe in [Figure 7.34](#). Observe the layout: horizontal header; adjacent nav, main and aside elements; and horizontal footer. Launch a text editor and open index.html. Code a CSS media query after the other style rules to change the display when the `min-width` of the viewport is at least 1024px. Add style rules within the media query that will set left float for the nav element, a centered `wrapper` id with 80% width and 1200px

maximum width, and a #000066 background color for the body element selector. The CSS follows:

```
@media (min-width: 1024px){  
    nav li { display: block; }  
    nav ul { text-align: left; }  
    nav { float: left; }  
    #wrapper { width: 80%; margin: auto; max-  
    width: 1200px; }  
    body { background-color: #000066; }  
}
```

Save the file and test it in a browser. You should be able to resize your browser viewport and obtain a display similar to [Figure 7.39](#). A sample solution is in the student files (chapter7/7.8/index.html). In this Hands-On Practice, you applied media queries to a web page and configured float layout. Since float layout will be in use for quite some time, it's good to be familiar with it. In the next Hands-On Practice, you will follow a more modern approach which is applying media queries and configuring grid layout.

---

**Figure 7.39 Implementing the Large Display wireframe on a desktop browser**

---



## FAQ

What values should I use in my media queries?

There is no single correct way to configure a media query. When web developers first began writing media queries, there were very few mobile devices and they could be targeted with pixel-perfect precision. While this is no longer the case, web developers often use the `max-width` and/or `min-width` features to determine the size of the viewport being used. Here is a typical media query to target a smartphone display which checks for a maximum width value of 480 pixels:

```
@media (max-width: 480px) {  
}
```

A list of media query breakpoints for common devices is available at <https://responsivedesign.is/develop/browser-feature-support/media-queries-for-common-device-breakpoints/>. However, today, there are a huge number of different mobile devices with various screen resolutions, so a modern approach is to focus on the responsive display of your content and then configure media queries as needed for your content to reflow on a variety of screen sizes. You will need to test your responsive web pages to find the best choices for your specific content. Check for long line lengths or too much empty space on the page—that's probably a signal that a new media query is needed.

Most of the examples in this chapter use pixel values for media query conditions, but some web developers prefer to use em unit values. The first media query in [Hands-On Practice 7.8](#) could have been written to check for `min-width` of 40em:

```
@media (min-width: 40em) {  
}
```

An example file with em unit media queries is in the student files (chapter7/7.8/ emunit.html).

---

## FAQ

Where can I find more information about media queries?

Visit the following resources for more information about media queries:

- <https://developers.google.com/web/fundamentals/design-and-ux/responsive/>
- <https://www.smashingmagazine.com/2018/02/media-queries-responsive-design-2018/>
- <https://css-tricks.com/snippets/css/media-queries-for-standard-devices/>

---

## FAQ

Can you suggest any other helpful tools for testing responsive web pages?

Google Chrome Dev Tools can be helpful when testing responsive web pages. Visit these resources to get started:

- <https://developers.google.com/web/tools/chrome-devtools/device-mode/>
- <https://developers.google.com/web/tools/chrome-devtools/device-mode/#responsive>

## 7.13 Responsive Grid Layout with Media Queries

---

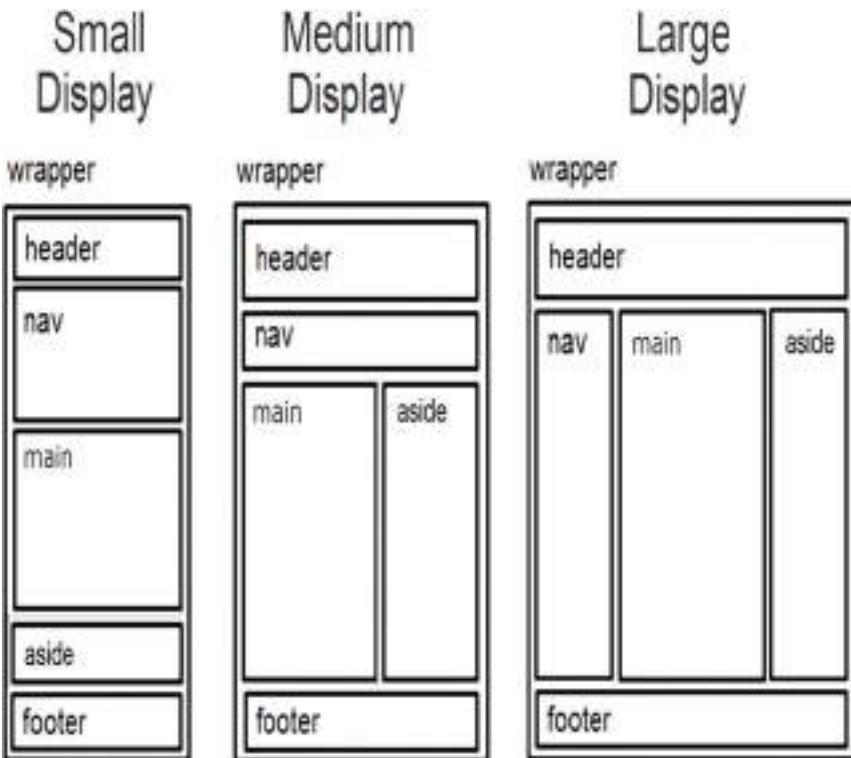
### Hands-On Practice 7.9

You'll practice a Mobile First strategy for responsive design using grid layout and media queries in this Hands-On Practice. First, you will configure a page layout that works well in smartphones (test with a small browser window). Then you'll resize the browser viewport to be larger until the design "breaks" and code media queries and additional CSS as appropriate using grid layout for the page and flexbox layout for the navigation area. [Figure 7.40](#) shows wireframes for three different layouts.

---

**Figure 7.40 Three wireframe layouts**

---



Create a new folder called ch7resp2. Copy the starter7.html file from the chapter7 folder in the student files into your ch7resp2 folder. Copy the lighthouse.jpg and light.gif files from the chapter7/starters folder into your ch7resp2 folder.

1. Launch a text editor and open your starter7.html file. View the HTML and notice that a div assigned to the `wrapper` id has child elements of header, nav, main, aside, and footer as shown. The `wrapper` id will be the grid container. The header, nav, main, aside, and footer elements are the grid items.

```

<div id="wrapper">
  <header> ... </header>
  <nav> ... </nav>
  <main> ... </main>
  <aside> ... </aside>
  <footer> ... </footer>
</div>

```

Observe the CSS and note that while there are styles that set the visual look of the elements, the CSS does not include any styles for layout. Browsers render this page using normal flow with each element displayed under the preceding element, similar to the Small Display wireframe in [Figure 7.40](#). Notice also that there are no minimum widths assigned. This layout will work well on a small display such as a smartphone. Save the file with the name index.html.

2. Display your index.html file in a desktop browser. If your browser viewport is a typical size, it will look a bit awkward and similar to [Figure 7.41](#). Don't worry though, we intend this layout to be displayed on narrow mobile screens—so resize your browser to be narrower until your display is similar to [Figure 7.42](#), which simulates the mobile display.

---

**Figure 7.41** The web page initial display

---



Figure 7.42 Smartphone display simulation



3. There is one more item needed for a more pleasing and usable display on an actual mobile device: the viewport meta tag. Launch a text editor and open index.html. Add a viewport meta tag in the head section of the document below the meta tag. The HTML follows:

```
<meta name="viewport"  
content="width=device-width,  
initial-scale=1.0">
```

Save your file. If you display it in a desktop browser, it will look the same. [Figure 7.37](#) shows a display of how a smartphone would render this page. An example is in the student files (chapter7/7.9/step3.html).

4. Since the initial display of the web page is rendered well in normal flow, you will only need to configure grid layout when the media queries are triggered. You will determine the condition for the media query by widening the browser until the display begins to “break” or look awkward. Display your index.html file in a browser—first narrow it and then gradually widen it. The point where it starts to seem awkward is around 600px wide, so that’s what we’ll code for our first media query and grid layout.

You’ll configure the layout to follow the Medium Display wireframe in [Figure 7.40](#). Observe the layout: horizontal header, horizontal navigation, adjacent main and aside elements, and horizontal footer.

Launch a text editor and open index.html. Since the browser display seems a bit awkward around 600px wide, code a media query below the existing CSS that checks for 600px `min-width`. You will add style rules within the media query.

[Figure 7.43](#) shows a grid layout wireframe that corresponds to the Medium Display shown in [Figure 7.39](#).

---

#### **Figure 7.43 Grid layout for Medium Display**

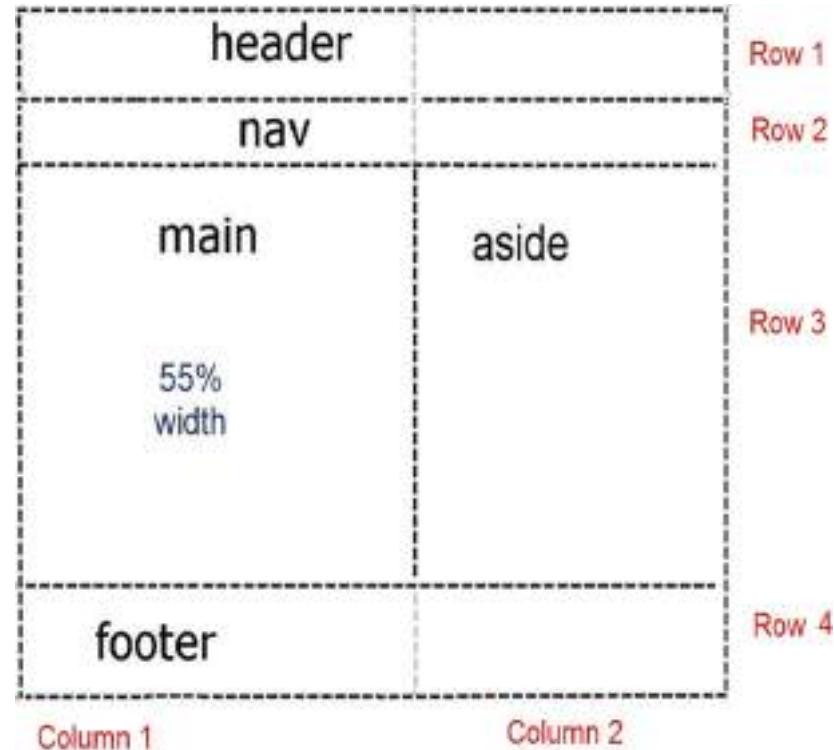


Figure 7.44 depicts the browser rendering of the page.

Notice that the navigation area is now horizontal instead of vertical. You will use flexbox layout to configure this.

Configure the `nav ul` element selector to be a flexbox container and set the `flex-direction` to `row`, `flex-wrap` to `nowrap`, and `justify-content` to `space-around`. Also code CSS to eliminate the bottom border on the `li` elements in the navigation area.

---

**Figure 7.44 Implementing the Medium Display wireframe in grid layout**

---



Next, assign grid areas for header, nav, aside, main, and footer to HTML element selectors. Configure a grid assigned to the `wrapper` id. Use the `grid-template` property to describe a grid that contains grid areas header, nav, main, aside, and footer. Use the grid layout in [Figure 7.43](#) as a guide. Set the first column in the grid to 55% width. The CSS follows:

```
@media (min-width: 600px) {  
    nav ul { display: flex;  
            flex-flow: row nowrap;  
            justify-content: space-around; }  
    nav ul li { border-bottom: none; }  
    header { grid-area: header; }  
    nav { grid-area: nav; }  
    main { grid-area: main; }  
    aside { grid-area: aside; }  
    footer { grid-area: footer; }  
    #wrapper { display: grid;  
              grid-template:  
                  "header header"  
                  "nav     nav"  
                  "main   aside"  
                  "footer footer"
```

```
    / 55% }  
}
```

Save your file and test it in a browser. It should look similar to [Figure 7.44](#). An example is in the student files (chapter 7/7.9/step4.html).

5. Repeat the process to determine the condition for the next breakpoint. When displayed in a browser, the web page seems to be a bit awkward around 1024px, so that's what you'll code for in the next media query. Configure the layout to follow the Large Display wireframe in [Figure 7.40](#). Observe the layout—horizontal header; adjacent nav, main and aside elements; and horizontal footer. [Figure 7.45](#) shows a grid layout wireframe for the Large Display.

**Figure 7.45 Grid layout for Large Display**

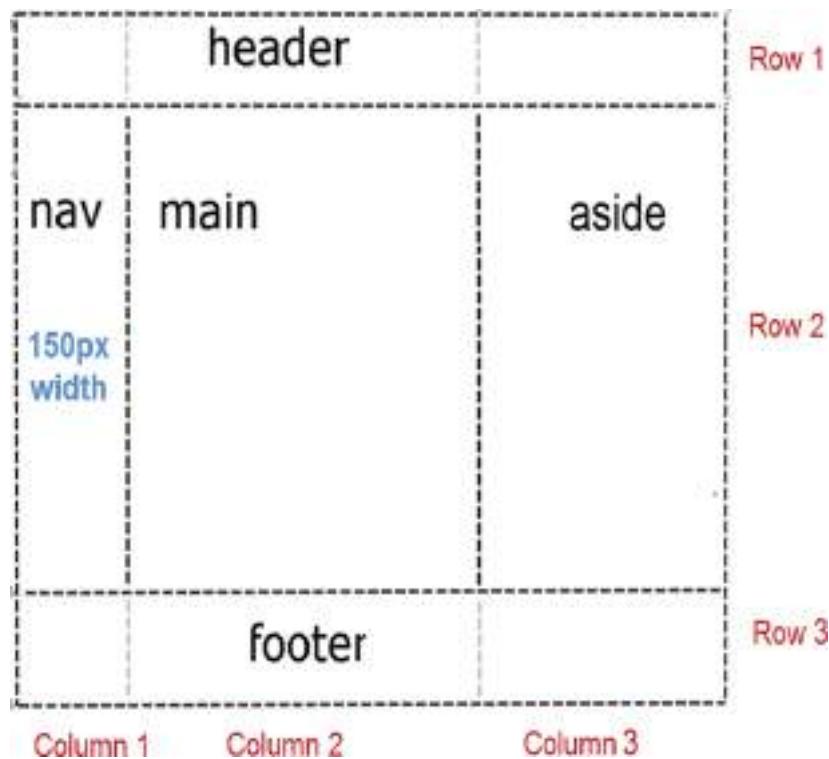


Figure 7.46  depicts the browser rendering of the page.

Notice the changes in the page: a dark blue background showing on either side of the centered web page and a vertical navigation area.

---

### Figure 7.46 Implementing the Large Display wireframe with grid layout on a desktop browser

---



Launch a text editor and open index.html. Code a CSS media query after the other style rules to change the display when the `max-width` of the viewport is at least 1024px. Add style rules within the media query that will set a dark blue background color for the body element selector, center the `wrapper` id, and configure the `nav ul` element selector as a flexbox container with `flex-direction` set to `column` and `flex-wrap` set to `nowrap`.

Next, assign grid areas for header, nav, aside, main, and footer to HTML element selectors. Configure a grid assigned

to the `wrapper` id. Use the `grid-template` property to describe a grid that contains grid areas header, nav, main, aside, and footer. Use the grid layout in [Figure 7.45](#) as a guide. Set the first column in the grid to 55% width. The CSS follows:

```
@media (min-width: 1024px) {
    body { background-color: #000066; }
    nav ul { display: flex;
              flex-direction: column;
              flex-wrap: nowrap; }
    header { grid-area: header; }
    nav { grid-area: nav; }
    main { grid-area: main; }
    aside { grid-area: aside; }
    footer { grid-area: footer; }
    #wrapper { width: 80%;
               margin: auto; max-width:
               1200px;
               display: grid;
               grid-template:
               "header   header
               header"
               "nav     main
               aside"
               "footer  footer
               footer"
               / 150px; }
}
```

Save the file and test it in a browser. You should be able to resize your browser viewport and obtain a display similar to [Figure 7.46](#). A sample solution is in the student files (chapter7/7.9/index.html).

## 7.14 Responsive Images

In his book, *Responsive Web Design*, Ethan Marcotte described a **flexible image** as a fluid image that will not break the page layout as the browser viewport is resized. Flexible images (often referred to as responsive images), along with fluid layouts and media queries, are the components of responsive web design. You will be introduced to several different coding techniques to configure a responsive image in this section.

### Flexible Images with CSS

The most widely supported technique to configure an image as flexible requires a change to the HTML and additional CSS to style the flexible image.

1. Edit the img elements in the HTML. Remove the height and width attributes.
2. Configure the `max-width: 100%;` style declaration in the CSS. If the width of the image is less than the width of the container element, the image will display with its actual dimensions. If the width of the image is greater than the width of the container element, the image will be resized by the browser to fit in the container (instead of hanging out over the margin).
3. To keep the dimensions of the image in proportion and maintain the aspect ratio of the image, Bruce Lawson suggests to also set the `height: auto;` style declaration in the CSS (see <https://brucelawson.co.uk/2012/responsive-web-design-preserving-images-aspect-ratio>).

Background images can also be configured for a more fluid display at various viewport sizes. Although it's common to code a height property when configuring a background image with CSS, the result is a somewhat non-responsive background image. Explore configuring other CSS properties for the container such as font-size, line-height, and padding in percentage values. The background-size: cover; property can also be useful. You'll typically see a more pleasing display of the background image in various-sized viewports. Another option is to configure different image files to use for backgrounds and use media queries to determine which background image is displayed. A disadvantage to this option is that multiple files are downloaded although only one file is displayed. You'll apply flexible image techniques in the next Hands-On Practice.

---

## Hands-On Practice 7.10

In this Hands-On Practice you'll work with a web page that demonstrates responsive web design. [Figure 7.47](#) depicts the single-column smartphone display and shows the effects of media queries which are configured to display a two-column page when the viewport width is at least 38em (a tablet display) and display a three-column page when the viewport width is at least 65em. You will edit the CSS to configure flexible images.

---

**Figure 7.47 The web page demonstrates responsive web design techniques**

---

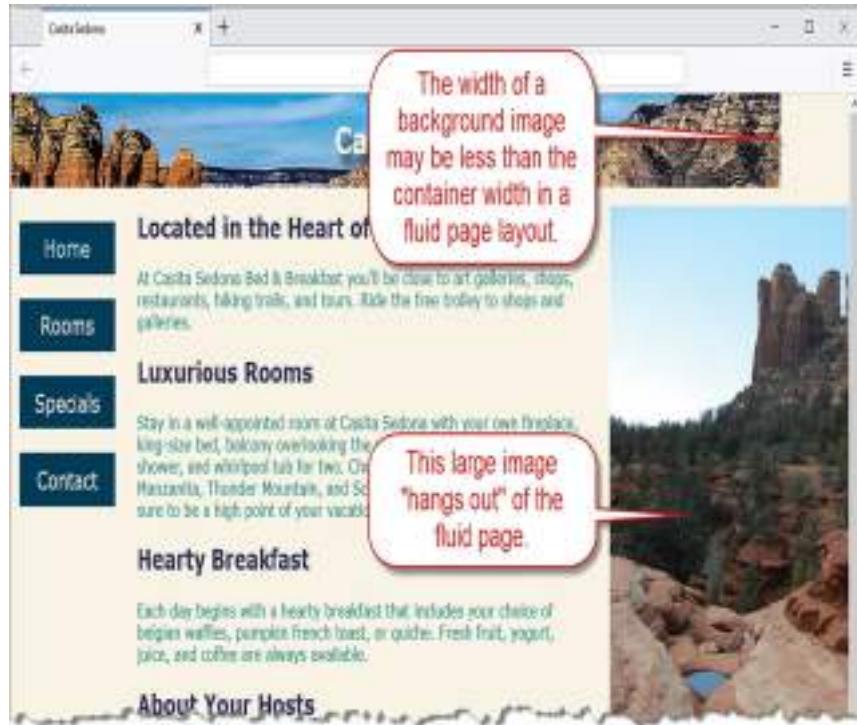


Create a folder named flexible7. Copy the starter8.html file from the chapter7 folder into the flexible7 folder and rename it index.html. Copy the following images from the student files chapter7/starters folder into the flexible7 folder: header.jpg and pools.jpg. Launch a browser and view index.html as shown in [Figure 7.48](#). View the code in a text editor and notice that the img tag's `height` and `width` attributes have already been removed from the HTML. View the CSS and notice that the web page uses a responsive grid layout. Edit the embedded CSS.

---

**Figure 7.48 The web page before the images are configured to be flexible**

---



1. Locate the header element selector. Add the `background-size: cover;` declaration to cause the browser to scale the background image to fill the container. The CSS follows:

```
header { background-image: url(header.jpg);  
        background-repeat: no-repeat;  
        background-size: cover; }
```

2. Add a style rule for the img element selector that sets maximum width to 100% and height to the value auto. The CSS follows:

```
img { max-width: 100%;  
      height: auto; }
```

**3.** Save the index.html file. Test your index.html file in a desktop browser. As you resize the browser window, you'll see your page respond and look similar to the screen captures in [Figure 7.47](#). The web page demonstrates responsive web design with the following techniques: fluid layout, media queries, and flexible images. A suggested solution is in the student files chapter7/7.10 folder.

---

You just applied basic techniques for configuring flexible, fluid images. These techniques should work well on popular browsers. Next, you'll explore two new HTML5.1 responsive image techniques which offer even more options when designing web pages with responsive images.

## Picture Element

New to HTML5.1 (<http://www.w3.org/TR/html51>), the purpose of the **picture element** is to provide a method for a browser to display different images depending on specific criteria indicated by the web developer.

The picture element is supported by current versions of modern browsers. The picture element begins with the `<picture>` tag and ends with the `</picture>` tag. The picture element is a container element that is coded along with source elements and a fallback img element to provide multiple image files that can be chosen for display by the browser.

## Source Element

The **source element** is a self-contained, or void, tag that is used together with a container element. The picture element is one of several elements (see the video and audio elements in [Chapter 11](#)) that can contain one

or more source elements. When used with a picture element, multiple source elements are typically configured to specify different images. Code the source elements between the opening and closing picture tags. [Table 7.9](#) lists attributes of the source element when coded within a picture element container.

---

**Table 7.9 Attributes of the source element**

Attribute	Value
<code>srcset</code>	Required. Provides image choices for the browser in a comma-separated list. Each item can contain the image URL (required), optional maximum viewport dimension, and optional pixel density for high resolution devices.
<code>media</code>	Optional. Media query to specify conditions for browser display.
<code>sizes</code>	Optional. Numeric or percentage value to specify the dimensions of the image display. May be further configured with a media query.
<code>value</code>	Optional. MIME type of the resource

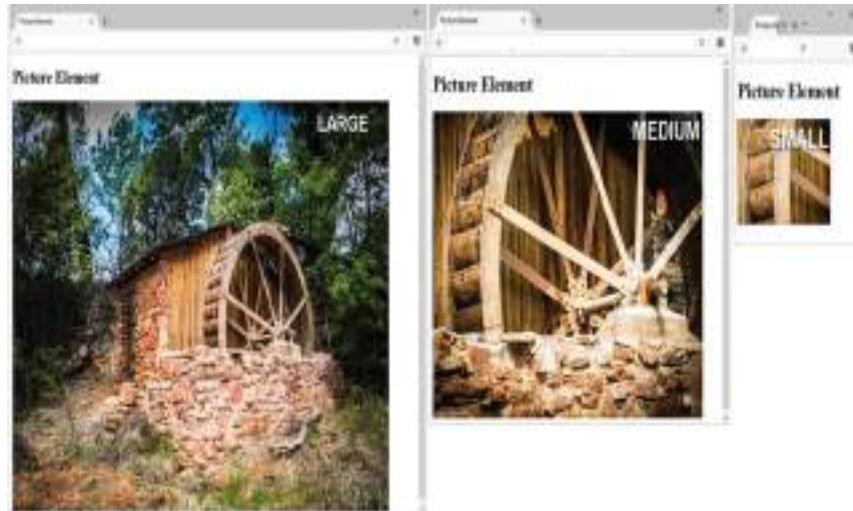
There are many potential ways to configure responsive images with the picture and source elements. We will focus on a basic technique that uses the media attribute to specify conditions for display.

---

## Hands-On Practice 7.11

In this Hands-On Practice you will configure responsive images with the picture, source, and img elements as you create the page shown in [Figure 7.49](#).

**Figure 7.49** Responsive image with the picture element



Create a new folder named ch7picture. Copy the large.jpg, medium.jpg, small.jpg, large.webp, medium.webp, small.webp, and fallback.jpg files from the chapter7/starters folder into your ch7picture folder. Launch a text editor and open the template file located at chapter7/template.html in the student files. Save the file as index.html in your ch7picture folder.

Modify the file to configure a web page as indicated:

1. Configure the text, Picture Element, within an h1 element and within the title element.
2. Code the following in the body of the web page:

```
<picture>
  <source media="(min-width: 1200px)"
srcset="large.jpg">
  <source media="(min-width: 800px)"
srcset="medium.jpg">
  <source media="(min-width: 320px)"
srcset="small.jpg">
```

```
  
</picture>
```

Save your file and test your page in a current version of Firefox or Chrome. Notice how a different image is displayed depending on the width of the browser viewport. If the viewport's minimum width is 1200px or greater, the large.jpg image is shown. If the viewport's minimum width is 800px or greater but less than 1200px, the medium.jpg image is displayed. If the viewport's minimum width is 320px greater but less than 800px, the small.jpg image is shown. If none of these criteria are met, the fallback.jpg image should be displayed. As you test, try resizing and refreshing the browser display. You may need to resize the browser, close it, and launch it again to test for display of the different images. Browsers that do not support the new picture element will process the img tag and display the fallback.jpg image. A suggested solution is in the student files chapter7/7.11 folder.

Next, you will configure the web page to also provide WebP images for supporting browsers. Recall from [Chapter 4](#) that the WebP image format is a relatively new image format which can provide improved image compression.

Launch a text editor and open index.html. Locate the picture element. Immediately below the opening picture tag, add three additional source elements for the WebP images. Edit the source element for each .jpg image and assign the type attribute to the value "image/jpeg" to indicate the MIME type for .jpg files. The HTML code is shown below.

```
<picture>  
  <source media="(min-width: 1200px)"  
        srcset="large.webp" type="image/webp">
```

```
<source media="(min-width: 800px)"  
srcset="medium.webp" type="image/webp">  
<source media="(min-width: 320px)"  
srcset="small.webp" type="image/webp">  
<source media="(min-width: 1200px)"  
srcset="large.jpg" type="image/jpeg">  
<source media="(min-width: 800px)"  
srcset="medium.jpg" type="image/jpeg">  
<source media="(min-width: 320px)"  
srcset="small.jpg" type="image/jpeg">  
  
</picture>
```

Save your file with the name index2.html. When you display your page in a modern browser, the browser will display the first image file that it supports. Modern browsers, such as Chrome, will display a WebP image of the appropriate size. Browsers with picture element support without WebP image support, will display the jpg images of the appropriate size. Other browsers will display the fallback image. Compare your work to the solution in the student files (chapter7/7.11/index2.html).

This Hands-On Practice provided a very basic example of responsive images with the picture element. The picture element responsive image technique is intended to eliminate multiple image downloads that can occur with CSS flexible image techniques. The browser downloads only the image it chose to display based on the criteria provided.

---

## Responsive Img Element Attributes

New to HTML5.1 (<http://www.w3.org/TR/html51>), the new **srcset** and **sizes** attributes have been created for the img element. Current versions

of modern browsers support these new attributes.

## The **sizes** Attribute

The purpose of the img element's **sizes** attribute is to inform the browser as it processes the srcset attribute about how much of the viewport should be used to display the image. The default value of the sizes attribute is `100vw`, which indicates 100% of the viewport width is available to display the image. The value of the sizes attribute can be a percentage of the viewport width or a specific pixel width (such as `400px`). The sizes attribute can also contain one or more media queries along with the width for each condition.

## The **srcset** Attribute

The purpose of the img element's **srcset** attribute is to provide a method for a browser to display different images depending on specific criteria indicated by the web developer. The value of the srcset attribute provides image choices for the browser in a comma-separated list. Each list item can contain the image URL (required), optional maximum viewport dimension, and optional pixel density for high resolution devices.

There are many potential ways to configure responsive images with the img element, sizes, attribute, and srcset attribute. We will focus on a basic technique that uses the browser viewport dimension to specify conditions for display.

---

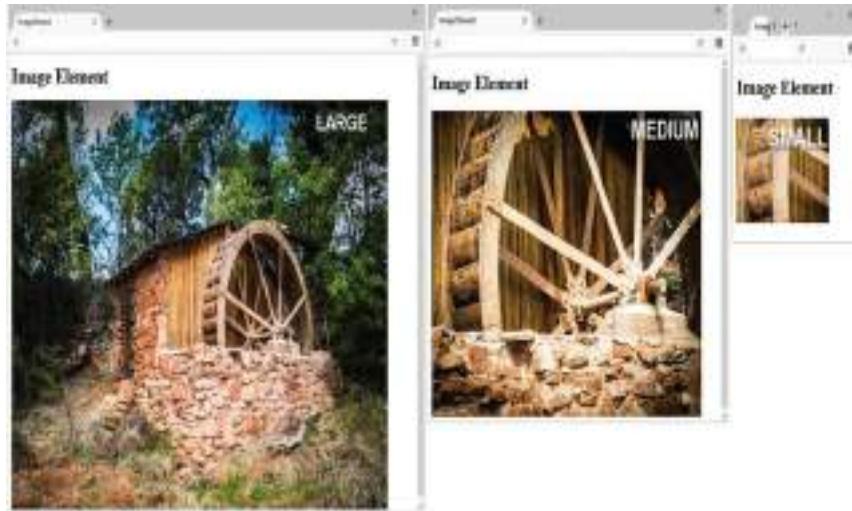
### Hands-On Practice 7.12

In this Hands-On Practice you will configure responsive images with the picture, source, and img elements as you create the page shown in [Figure 7.50](#).

---

**Figure 7.50 Responsive image with the image element's srcset attribute**

---



Create a new folder named ch7image. Copy the large.jpg, medium.jpg, small.jpg, and fallback.jpg files from the chapter7/starters folder into your ch7image folder. Launch a text editor and open the template file located at chapter7/template.html in the student files. Save the file as index.html in your ch7image folder. Modify the file to configure a web page as indicated:

1. Configure the text, Img Element, within an h1 element and within the title element.
2. Code the following in the body of the web page:

```

```

Save your file and test your page in a current version of Firefox or Chrome. Notice how a different image is displayed

depending on the width of the browser viewport. If the viewport's minimum width is 1200px or greater, the large.jpg image is shown. If the viewport's minimum width is 800px or greater but less than 1200px, the medium.jpg image is displayed. If the viewport's minimum width is 320px greater but less than 800px, the small.jpg image is shown. If none of these criteria are met, the fallback.jpg image should be displayed. As you test, try resizing and refreshing the browser display. You may need to resize the browser, close it, and launch it again to test for display of the different images. Browsers that do not support the image element's new sizes and srcset attributes will ignore these attributes and display the fallback.jpg image. A suggested solution is in the student files chapter7/7.12 folder.

This Hands-On Practice provided a very basic example of responsive images with the img element and new sizes and srcset attributes which (like the picture element responsive image technique) is intended to eliminate multiple image downloads that can occur with CSS flexible image techniques. The browser downloads only the image it chose to display based on the criteria provided.

---

## Explore Responsive Images

There is so much to learn about responsive image techniques! Visit the following resources to explore the topic of responsive images:

- <http://responsiveimages.org>
- [https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Learn/HTML/Multimedia\\_and\\_embedding/Responsive\\_images](https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Learn/HTML/Multimedia_and_embedding/Responsive_images)

- <http://blog.cloudfour.com/responsive-images-101-part-5-sizes>

## Checkpoint 7.2

1. What is meant by the phrase "Mobile First"?
2. Are there certain values that must be used in CSS media queries? Why or why not?
3. Describe coding techniques that will configure an image with a flexible display.

## 7.15 Testing Mobile Display

The best way to test the mobile display of a web page is to publish it to the Web and access it from mobile devices. (See the Appendix for an introduction to publishing a website with FTP.) However, not everyone has access to multiple mobile devices. Several options for emulating a mobile display are listed below:

- **OPERA MOBILE EMULATOR** (shown in [Figure 7.51](#)) Windows, Mac, and Linux download; Supports media queries <https://dev.opera.com/articles/opera-mobile-emulator/>

---

**Figure 7.51 Testing a web page with the Opera Mobile Emulator.**

---



---

© Opera Software 1995–2019.

- **GOOGLE CHROME DEV TOOLS** Runs in Chrome; Supports media queries <https://developers.google.com/web/tools/chrome-devtools/device-mode/>
- **IPHONE EMULATOR** Runs in a browser window; Supports media queries <http://www.testiphone.com>

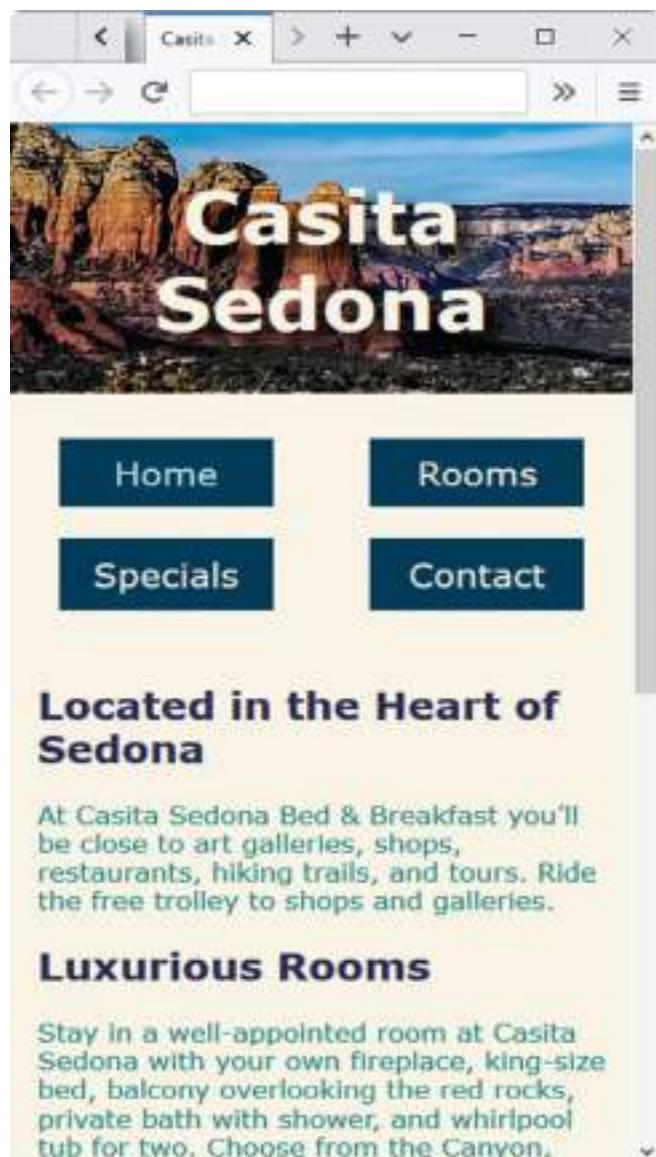
## Testing with a Desktop Browser

If you don't have a smartphone and/or are unable to publish your files to the Web-no worries-as you've seen in this chapter (also see [Figure 7.52](#)) you can approximate the mobile display of your web page using a desktop browser. Verify the placement of your media queries.

---

**Figure 7.52 Approximating the mobile display with a desktop browser**

---



- If you have coded media queries within your CSS, display your page in a desktop browser and then reduce the width and height of the viewport until it approximates a mobile screen size.
- If you have coded media queries within a link tag, edit the web page and temporarily modify the link tag to point to your mobile CSS style sheet. Then, display your page in a desktop browser and reduce the width and height of the viewport until it approximates a mobile screen size.

## Browser Viewport Size

It can be helpful to know the size of your browser viewport as you are testing a responsive web page. The following tools can help you determine your browser viewport size:

- **Chris Pederick's Web Developer Extension**

Available for Firefox and Chrome

<http://chrисpederick.com/work/web-developer>

*Select Resize > Display Window Size*

- **Viewport Dimensions Extension**

Available for Chrome at <https://github.com/CSWilson/Viewport-Dimensions>

## Responsive Testing Tools

Another option for testing your responsive web pages is to use one of the following online tools that provide instant views of your web page in a variety of screen sizes and devices:

- Mobile-Friendly Test <https://search.google.com/test/mobile-friendly>
- Sizzy <https://sizzy.co>

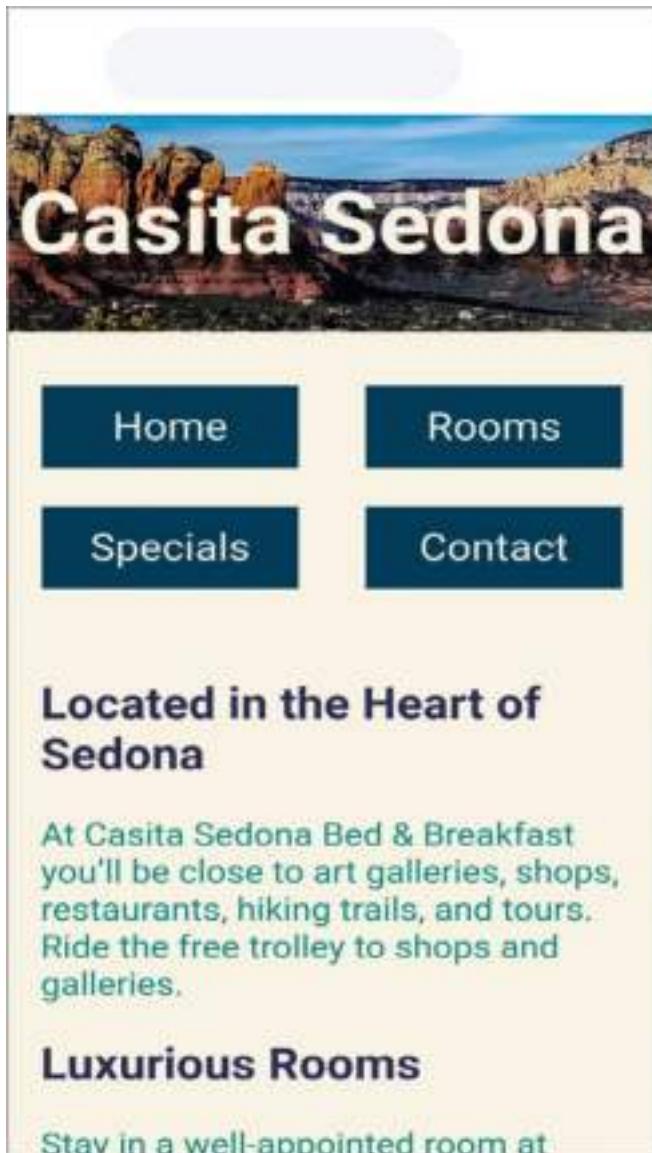
- Am I Responsive <http://ami.responsivedesign.is>
- Screenfly <http://quirktools.com/screenfly>

It's fun to view your responsive website on these browser tools. The true test, however, is to view your web pages on a variety of physical mobile devices. [Figure 7.53](#) shows a web page displayed on a smartphone.

---

**Figure 7.53 Testing the web page with a smartphone**

---



# For Serious Developers Only

If you are a software developer or information systems major, you may want to explore the SDKs (Software Developer Kits) for the iOS and Android platforms. Each SDK includes a mobile device emulator. Visit <http://developer.android.com/sdk/index.html> for information about the Android Studio SDK.

## FAQ

I would like to put a phone number on a web page so that a visitor with a mobile phone can tap on it and place a call. How do you do that?

It's very easy to configure a telephone hyperlink or SMS (short message service) text message hyperlink for use by smartphones.

According to RFC 3966, you can configure a telephone hyperlink by using a telephone scheme: Begin the `href` value with `tel:` followed by the phone number. For example, to configure a telephone hyperlink on a web page for use by mobile browsers, code as follows:

```
<a href="tel:888-555-5555">Call 888-555-5555</a>
```

RFC 5724 indicates that an SMS scheme hyperlink intended to send a text message can be configured by beginning the `href` value with `sms:` followed by the phone number, as shown in the following code:

```
<a href="sms:888-555-5555">Text 888-555-  
5555</a>
```

Not all mobile browsers and devices support telephone and text hyperlinks, but expect increased use of this technology in the future. You'll get a chance to practice using the `tel:` scheme in [Chapter 7](#) case study.

---

# Chapter Summary

This chapter introduced you to modern layout techniques which configure responsive web pages that display well on desktop browsers and mobile devices. Visit the textbook website at <https://www.webdevfoundations.net> for examples, the links listed in this chapter, and updated information.

# Key Terms

[\*\*<picture>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<source>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*@media rule\*\*](#)  
[\*\*@supports rule\*\*](#)  
[\*\*directive\*\*](#)  
[\*\*feature query\*\*](#)  
[\*\*flex container\*\*](#)  
[\*\*flex item\*\*](#)  
[\*\*flex property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*flex-direction property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*flex-wrap property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*flexbox\*\*](#)  
[\*\*flexible image\*\*](#)  
[\*\*fractional unit\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid area\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid column\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid container\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid item\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid line\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid row\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid track\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid-area property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid-column property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid-row property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid-template property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid-template-areas property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*grid-template-columns property\*\*](#)

[\*\*grid-template-rows\*\*](#) property ⓘ

[\*\*justify-content\*\*](#) property ⓘ

[\*\*media feature\*\*](#) ⓘ

[\*\*media query\*\*](#) ⓘ

[\*\*order\*\*](#) property ⓘ

[\*\*picture element\*\*](#) ⓘ

[\*\*responsive web design\*\*](#) ⓘ

[\*\*sizes\*\*](#) attribute ⓘ

[\*\*source element\*\*](#) ⓘ

[\*\*srcset\*\*](#) attribute ⓘ

[\*\*type\*\*](#) attribute

[\*\*viewport meta tag\*\*](#) ⓘ

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. Which meta tag is used to configure display for mobile devices?
  - a. viewport
  - b. handheld
  - c. mobile
  - d. screen
2. Which of the following properties configures proportional flexible items?
  - a. flex
  - b. flex-wrap
  - c. align-items
  - d. justify
3. Which of the following is a container element used to configure responsive images?
  - a. display
  - b. flex
  - c. picture
  - d. link
4. Which of the following values would you assign to the display property to configure a flexbox container?
  - a. grid
  - b. flex
  - c. flexbox
  - d. block
5. Which of the following is optimized for responsive two-dimensional page layout?

- a. CSS absolute positioning
  - b. CSS Display Layout
  - c. CSS Grid Layout
  - d. CSS Flexible Box Layout
6. Which of the following is a conditional that can be used to test for support of a CSS property?
- a. feature query
  - b. support query
  - c. media query
  - d. property query
7. Which of the following properties configures whether flex items are displayed on multiple lines?
- a. `flex-direction`
  - b. `flex-wrap`
  - c. `flex-template`
  - d. `flex-basis`
8. Which of the following properties identifies a CSS selector as a grid container?
- a. grid
  - b. directive
  - c. display
  - d. grid-template
9. Which of the following properties associates a grid item (HTML element) with a named area of the grid?
- a. grid-name
  - b. grid-item
  - c. grid-area
  - d. grid
10. Which of the following properties configures empty space between grid tracks?
- a. align
  - b. grid-gap

- c. gutter
- d. grid-template

## Fill in the Blank

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ property is a shorthand property that combines the grid-template-areas, grid-template-rows, and grid-template-columns properties.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ determine the capability of the mobile device, such as browser viewport dimensions and resolution.
3. When using flexbox to vertically and horizontally center text within an element, set both the \_\_ and \_\_ properties to the value center.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ property is a shorthand property that configures both the flex-direction and the flex-wrap.
5. The purpose of the \_\_\_\_\_ attribute is to provide a method for a browser to display different images depending on specific criteria.

# Apply Your Knowledge

**1. PREDICT THE RESULT.** Carefully examine the code below for a responsive web page. Consider how the web page will display in a browser with a narrow viewport (less than 600 pixels). Sketch a wireframe of the page and label it "Mobile." Consider how the web page will display in a typical desktop browser viewport. Sketch a wireframe of the page. Label it "Desktop."

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Predict the Result</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
body { background-color: #EAEAEA;
      color: #636363;
      font-family: Verdana, Arial, sans-serif;
}
#wrapper { background-color: #D5EDB3; }
header { color: #FFFFFF;
          text-shadow: 3px 3px 3px #333;
          padding: 1em; }
#content { background-color: #FFFFFF; }
nav { width: 150px; padding: 1em; }
main { padding: 1em 2em; }
aside { padding: 1em; }
@media (min-width: 600px) {
    #content { display: flex;
              flex-wrap: nowrap;     }
}
</style>
</head>
<body>
<div id="wrapper">
    <header>
        <h1>Trillium Media Design</h1>
    </header>
    <div id="content">
        <nav>
            <ul>
                <li><a href="index.html">Home</a></li>
                <li><a href="products.html">Products</a>
            </li>
        </ul>
    </div>
</div>
```

```

        <li><a href="services.html">Services</a>
    </li>
        <li><a href="clients.html">Clients</a>
    </li>
        <li><a href="contact.html">Contact</a>
    </li>
    </ul>
</nav>
<main>
    <p>Our professional staff takes pride in its
working
    relationship with our clients by offering
personalized
    services that listen to their needs, develop
their target
    areas, and incorporate these items into a
website that works. </p>
</main>
<aside>
    <p>Get monthly updates and free offers.
Contact <a
    href="mailto:me@trilliummediadesign.com">Trillium<
/a>
    to sign up for our newsletter.</p>
</aside>
</div>
</div>
</body>
</html>

```

- 2. FILL IN THE MISSING CODE.** This responsive web page should be configured so that the appearance of the main navigation changes depending on whether the page is displayed on a mobile device or on a typical desktop browser. When displayed on a viewport that is less than 600 pixels, the navigation should display above the main content with each navigation link on its own line. When displayed on a typical browser viewport, the navigation should display to the left of the main content using CSS grid layout. CSS properties and values, indicated by "\_" (underscore), are missing.

```

<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">

```

```

<head>
  <title>Predict the Result</title>
  <meta charset="utf-8">
  <style>
    body      { background-color: #EAEAEA; color:
#636363; }
    #wrapper  { background-color: #D5EDB3; height:
100vh; }
    header    { color: #FFFFFF; text-align: center;
text-shadow: 3px 3px 3px #333; }
    nav ul   { display: flex; flex-wrap: _____;
list-style-type: none; padding-left:
0; }
    nav ul li { width: 100%; padding: .5em; text-
align: center;
border-bottom: 1px solid #636363; }
    nav ul li a { display: block; text-decoration:
none; }
    main      { padding: 1em 2em; }
    @media    ( min-width: 600px ) {
      header    { grid-area: header; }
      nav       { _____ : nav; }
      main     { grid-area: main; }
      #wrapper { display: _____;
grid-template:
"_____ header" 100px
"nav      main"
/ 150px   1fr ; }
    }
  </style>
</head>
<body>
  <div id="wrapper">
    <header> <h1>Trillium Media Design</h1>
    </header>
    <nav>
      <ul>
        <li><a href="index.html">Home</a></li>
        <li><a href="products.html">Products</a>
</li>
        <li><a href="services.html">Services</a>
</li>
        <li><a href="clients.html">Clients</a></li>
        <li><a href="contact.html">Contact</a></li>
      </ul>
    </nav>
    <main>
      <p>Our professional staff takes pride in its
working
relationship with our clients by offering
personalized
services that listen to their needs, develop
their target
areas, and incorporate these items into a

```

```
website that works. </p>
</main>
</div>
</body>
</html>
```

- 3. FIND THE ERROR.** The page below is intended for the navigation area to display on the right side of the browser window. What needs to be changed to make this happen?

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Find the Error</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
body { background-color: #d5edb3; color: #636363; }
header { grid-area: header; }
nav { grid-area: nov; }
nav ul { list-style-type: none; }
nav ul a { text-decoration: none; }
main { grid-area: main;
padding: 1em 2em; background-color: #FFFFFF; }
#wrapper { display: grid;
grid-template:
"header header"
"nav main"
/ 1fr 120px; }

</style>
</head>
<body>
<div id="wrapper">
<header>
<h1>Trillium Media Design</h1>
</header>
<nav>
<ul>
<li><a href="index.html">Home</a></li>
<li><a href="services.html">Services</a>
</li>
<li><a href="contact.html">Contact</a></li>
</ul>
</nav>
<main>
<p>Our professional staff takes pride in its
working
```

```
    relationship with our clients by offering
    personalized
        services that listen to their needs, develop
        their target
            areas, and incorporate these items into a
            website that works.
    </p>
</main>
</div>
</body>
</html>
```

# Hands-On Exercises

1. Write the CSS to configure the nav element selector as a flex container with rows that wrap.
2. Write the CSS for a feature query that checks for support of CSS grid layout.
3. Write the CSS to configure a grid for an id named container that has two columns and two rows. The first row is 100 pixels high. The first grid item in the second row takes up 75% of the width. It may be helpful to draw a wireframe of the grid layout before you write the code.
4. Write the @media rule to target a typical smartphone device and configure the nav element selector with width set to auto.
5. Create a web page that displays eight of your favorite photos (or eight photos supplied by your instructor). Also include a header and footer area on the page. The page layout should implement flexbox layout to configure a responsive display. Include your name in an e-mail address in the page footer area.
6. Create a web page that displays eight of your favorite photos (or eight photos supplied by your instructor). Also include a header and footer area on the page. The page layout should implement grid layout to configure a responsive display. Include your name in an e-mail address in the page footer area.
7. Draw a wireframe for the home page of your school's website.  
Write the CSS to configure a grid layout for the wireframe.

# Web Research

The next development in CSS Grid Layout will be CSS Grid Layout Module Level 2 (<https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-2/>) which includes the introduction of subgrids. Use the resources listed below as a starting point to research the purpose of a subgrid. Write a one-page, double-spaced summary that describes the purpose of a subgrid, an example of code for a subgrid, and the current level of browser support.

- <https://www.smashingmagazine.com/2018/07/css-grid-2/>
- <https://css-tricks.com/why-we-need-css-subgrid/>
- <https://www.w3.org/blog/CSS/2018/08/04/subgrid-spec-completed/>
- <https://rachelandrew.co.uk/archives/2018/04/27/grid-level-2-and-subgrid/>
- <https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-2/#subgrid>

# Focus on Web Design

Now that you've had some practice creating responsive web pages, it's a good idea to explore resources on the web about responsive web design best practices. Use the following URLs as a starting point as you research this topic. Write a one-page, double-spaced summary that describes four recommended practices of responsive web design.

- <https://www.smashingmagazine.com/2018/02/media-queries-responsive-design-2018/>
- <https://www.uxpin.com/studio/blog/best-practices-examples-of-excellent-responsive-design/>
- <https://www.impactbnd.com/blog/responsive-design-best-practices>
- <https://crossbrowsertesting.com/blog/development/future-responsive-design-2019/>
- <https://fireart.studio/blog/how-to-design-responsive-website-best-practices/>

---

## Website Case Study Modern, Responsive Layout

Each of the following case studies continues throughout most of the text. This chapter configures the website with a modern, responsive layout.

### JavaJam Coffee Bar Case Study

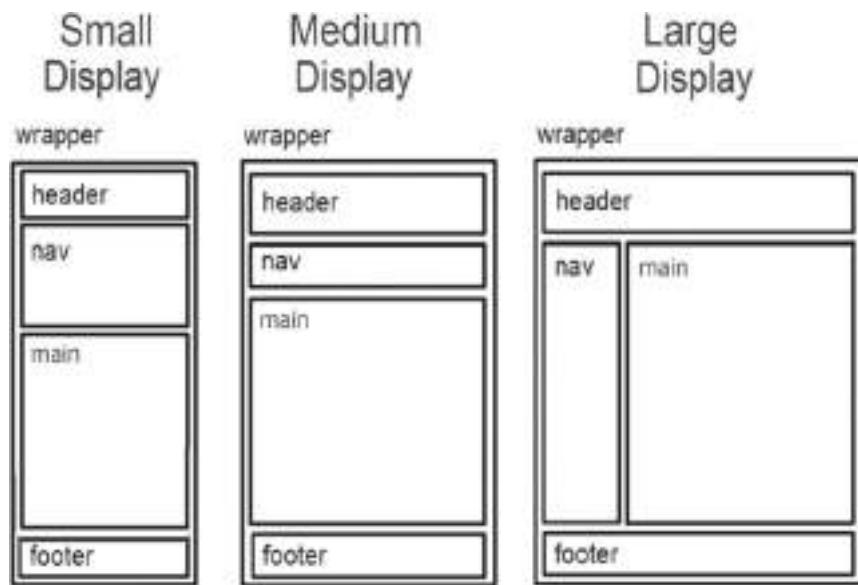
In this chapter's case study, you will use the existing JavaJam Coffee Bar ([Chapter 6](#)) website as a starting point to create a new version with a responsive layout that implements media

queries. You'll practice a Mobile First strategy for responsive design. First, you will configure a page layout that works well in smartphones (test with a small browser window). Then you'll resize the browser viewport to be larger until the design "breaks" and code media queries and additional CSS as needed. [Figure 7.54](#) shows wireframes for three different layouts. The Home page displays will be similar to [Figure 7.55](#).

---

**Figure 7.54 JavaJam Coffee Bar wireframes**

---



---

**Figure 7.55 The Home page**

---



You have four tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for the JavaJam Coffee Bar website.
2. Configure the HTML and CSS needed for pleasing display of a single-column (smartphone) display.
3. Configure the HTML and CSS needed for pleasing display of the web pages on medium sized mobile devices.
4. Configure the CSS needed for a pleasing display of the web pages on large mobile devices and desktops.

**TASK 1:** Create a folder called `javajam7` to contain your JavaJam Coffee Bar website files. Copy the files from the [Chapter 6 Case Study](#) `javajam6` folder into the `javajam7` folder. Copy the files from the `chapter7/starters/javajam` folder into the `javajam7` folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE A SMALL SINGLE-COLUMN LAYOUT.**

First, you will edit the CSS. Then you will edit the Home page and test each page in a browser.

**CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the javajam.css style sheet. Edit the styles to achieve a layout that displays well on small devices using normal flow (no floats) with full-width block elements.

1. Edit the styles for the body element selector.  
Remove all declarations for the background image.  
Set margin to 0 and background color to #D2B48C.
2. Edit the styles for the `wrapper` id selector. Remove all declarations associated with width, margin, and box-shadow.
3. Edit the styles for the header element selector.  
Change the background image to cup.jpg. Set left padding to 105px and height to 128px.
4. Edit the styles for the h1 element selector. Set the font size to 2em.
5. Edit the styles for the nav element selector.  
Remove the declarations that configure float, width, font-weight, and padding.
6. Edit the styles for the `nav ul` selector. Configure this selector as a flex container with `flex-direction` set to column. Set 0 margin, 0 padding, and 1.25em font size.
7. Code styles for the `nav li` selector. Set .5em top and bottom padding, 1em left and right padding, 100% width, and a 1px solid bottom border.
8. Remove the style declarations for the `onethird` class selector and `floatleft` class selector.
9. Edit the styles for the main element selector.  
Remove the declarations that configure margin and overflow.

- 10.** Edit the styles for the hero images. Set the background image for the `homehero` id selector to `road.jpg`. Set the background image for the `heroguitar` id selector to `guitar.jpg`. Set the background image for the `heromugs` id selector to `threemugs.jpg`.
- 11.** Edit the styles for the `h3`, `h3`, `h4`, `p`, `div`, and `dl` element selectors within the `main` element. Change the left and right padding to `1em`.
- 12.** Code styles for the `main ul` selector. Set left padding to `2em`;
- 13.** Configure styles for the telephone number to display a hyperlink when on the small display and display plain text otherwise.
  - a.** Code a style rule for the `mobile` id selector. Set display to `inline`.
  - b.** Code a style rule for the `desktop` id selector. Set display to `none`.

Save your `javajam.css` file. Use the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>) to check your syntax. Correct and retest if necessary.

**CONFIGURE THE HTML.** Modify the pages as indicated.

- 1.** Launch a text editor and open `index.html`. Save the file when you have completed the following edits.
  - a.** The home page displays a phone number in the contact information area. Wouldn't it be handy if a person using a smartphone could click on the phone number to call the resort? You can make that happen by using `tel:` in a hyperlink. Configure a hyperlink assigned to

an id named `mobile` that contains the phone number as shown:

```
<a id="mobile" href="tel:888-555-5555">888-555-5555</a>
```

However, a telephone link could confuse those visiting the site with a desktop browser. Code another phone number directly after the hyperlink. Code a `span` element assigned to an id named `desktop` around the phone number as shown:

```
<span id="desktop">888-555-5555</span>
```

- b.** Code a viewport meta tag in the head section that configures the width to the device-width and sets the initial-scale to 1.0.
- 2.** Add a viewport meta tag to the menu.html and music.html files in the same manner as the Home page. Save your files.

**TEST THE WEB PAGES.** Display your index.html file in a browser. This layout is intended for narrow mobile screens. Resize your browser to be narrower until your display is similar to the Small Display shown in [Figure 7.55](#), which simulates mobile display. Test the menu.html and music.html files in a similar manner.

**TASK 3: CONFIGURE A MEDIUM LAYOUT.** Edit the CSS and the content pages to configure a more pleasing

display on a wider viewport, setting 600px as the breakpoint for the first media query. When you test your web pages and trigger the media query, the layout in the Medium Display wireframe in [Figure 7.54](#) will be implemented and your pages should look similar to the Medium Display in [Figures 7.55](#), [7.56](#), and [7.57](#).

---

**Figure 7.56 The Menu page**

---



---

**Figure 7.57 The Music page**

---



**CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the javajam.css style sheet. Place your cursor below the existing styles. Code a media query that is triggered when the minimum width is 600px or greater. Code the following styles within the media query.

1. Code styles for the header element selector.  
Configure centered text and 0 left padding.
2. Code styles for the h1 element selector. Set font size to 3em.
3. Code styles for the `nav ul` selector. Configure the flex container with rows that do not wrap. Also set `justify-content` to `space-around`.
4. Code styles for the nav li selector. Set the bottom border to `none`.
5. Code styles for the hero images. Configure the `homehero` id selector with 50vh height and the

hero.jpg background image. Configure `heromugs` id selector with the heromugs.jpg background image. Configure the `heroguitar` id selector with the heroguitar.jpg background image.

6. Code styles for the `flow` id selector. Configure a flex container. The flex direction is `row`.
7. Code styles for the phone number. Configure the `mobile` id selector with display set to `none`. Configure the `desktop` id selector with display set to `inline`.
8. Code styles for the `details` class selector. Configure a flex container. The flex direction is row.
9. Code styles for the h4 element selector. Set left and right margin to 10%.

Save your javajam.css file. Use the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>) to check your syntax. Correct and retest if necessary.

**EDIT THE HTML.** You need to rework the content area on the Menu and Music pages

1. Launch a text editor and open menu.html. Locate the section elements and remove the `class="onethird"` code from each. Code a div assigned to an id named `flow` that contains all section elements. Save the file.
2. Launch a text editor and open music.html. Locate the img tags and remove the `class="floatleft"` code. Each img is followed by some descriptive text. Enclose each group of descriptive text within a paragraph element. Save the file.

**TEST THE WEB PAGES.** Display your menu.html file in a browser. You should be able to resize your browser viewport and obtain a display similar to the Medium Display in [Figure 7.56](#). Test the index.html and music.html files in a similar manner.

**TASK 4: CONFIGURE A LARGE LAYOUT.** Edit the CSS to configure a second media query with a 1024px breakpoint that will configure a grid layout with two columns. When you test your web pages and trigger the media query, the layout in the Large Display wireframe in [Figure 7.54](#) will be implemented and your pages should look similar to the Large Display in [Figures 7.55](#), [7.56](#), and [7.57](#).

**CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the javajam.css style sheet. Place your cursor below the existing styles. Configure a media query that is triggered when the minimum width is 1024px or greater. Within the media query, configure a feature query to check for support of grid layout. Code the following styles within the feature query.

1. Configure the grid areas.
  - a. Code styles for the header element selector:  
set `grid-area` to header.
  - b. Code styles for the nav element selector: set `grid-area` to nav.
  - c. Code styles for the main element selector:  
set `grid-area` to main.
  - d. Code styles for the footer element selector:  
set `grid-area` to footer.

2. Configure the `wrapper` id selector as a grid container. Use the `grid-template` property to describe the grid layout shown for large display in [Figure 7.54](#). Use 200px for the width of the navigation area. The CSS follows:

```
#wrapper { display: grid;
            grid-template:
                "header header"
                "nav     main"
                "footer  footer"
                / 200px; }
```

3. Configure the navigation area. Code styles for the `nav ul` selector to set the value `column` for `flex-direction`.
4. Configure the header area. Code styles for the `header` selector to set coffeeLogo.jpg as the background image.

Save your javajam.css file. Use the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>) to check your syntax. Correct and retest if necessary.

**TEST THE WEB PAGES.** Display your index.html file in a modern browser. You should be able to resize your browser viewport and obtain a display similar to the Large Display in [Figure 7.55](#). Browsers that do not support grid layout will render the pages similar to the Medium Display in [Figure 7.55](#). Test the Menu and Music pages in a similar manner.

You have accomplished a great deal as you completed this case study. The design is now responsive, utilizes

CSS Flexbox and CSS Grid layout, and displays well on devices with various size viewports. JavaJam Coffee Bar is responsive and mobile!

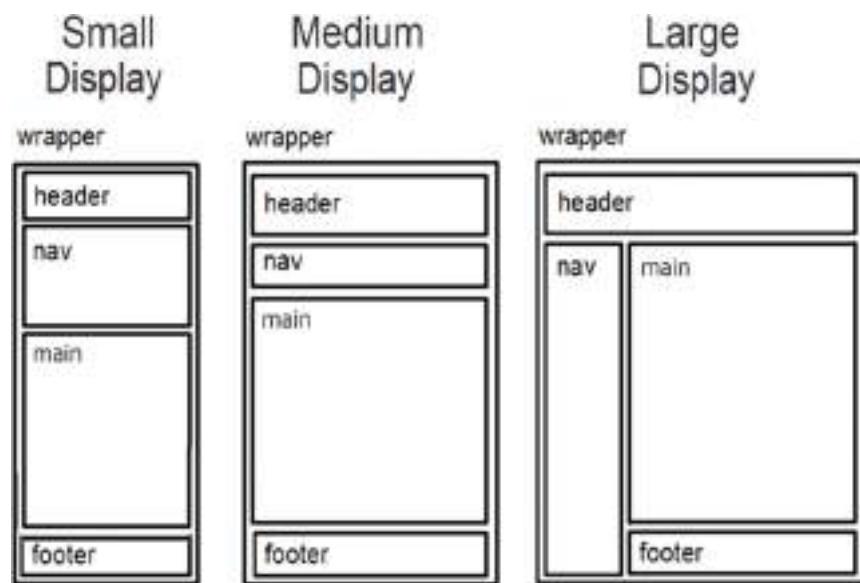
## Fish Creek Animal Clinic Case Study

In this chapter's case study, you will use the existing Fish Creek Animal Clinic ([Chapter 6](#)) website as a starting point to create a new version with a responsive layout that implements media queries. You'll practice a Mobile First strategy for responsive design. First, you will configure a page layout that works well in smartphones (test with a small browser window). Then you'll resize the browser viewport to be larger until the design "breaks" and code media queries and additional CSS as needed. [Figure 7.58](#) shows wireframes for three different layouts. The Home page displays will be similar to [Figure 7.59](#).

---

**Figure 7.58 Fish Creek Animal Clinic wireframes**

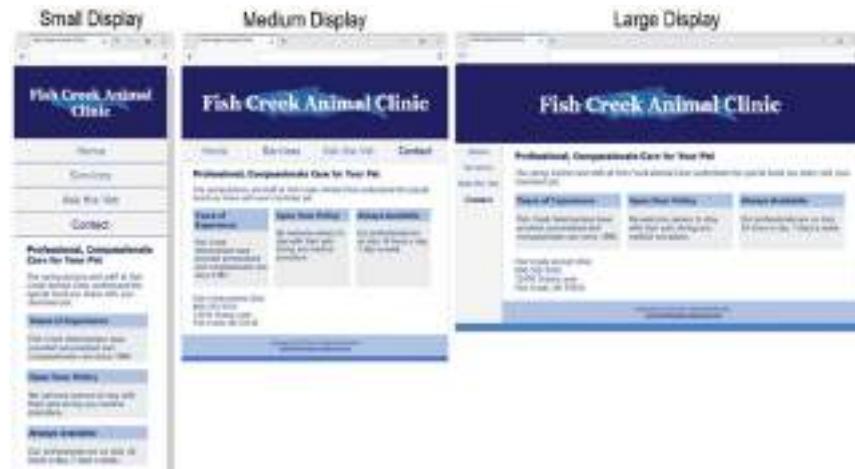
---



---

**Figure 7.59 The Home page**

---



You have four tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for the Fish Creek Animal Clinic website.
2. Configure the HTML and CSS needed for pleasing display of a single-column (smartphone) display.
3. Configure the HTML and CSS needed for pleasing display of the web pages on medium sized mobile devices.
4. Configure the CSS needed for a pleasing display of the web pages on large mobile devices and desktops.

**TASK 1:** Create a folder called fishcreek7 to contain your Fish Creek Animal Clinic website files. Copy the files from the [Chapter 6 Case Study](#) fishcreek6 folder into the fishcreek7 folder. Copy the *lilfish.gif* file from the chapter7/starters/fishcreek folder to the fishcreek7 folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE A SMALL SINGLE-COLUMN LAYOUT.**  
First, you will edit the CSS. Then you will edit the Home page and test each page in a browser.

**CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the fishcreek.css style sheet. Edit the styles to achieve a layout that displays well on small devices using normal flow (no floats) with full-width block elements.

1. Edit the styles for the body element selector.  
Remove the declaration for the background image.  
Set margin to 0.
2. Edit the styles for the `wrapper` id selector. Remove all declarations associated with width and margin.
3. Edit the styles for the header element selector.  
Change the background image to `lilfish.gif`.
4. Edit the styles for the h1 element selector. Change the font size to 2em.
5. Edit the styles for the nav element selector.  
Remove the declarations that configure float, width, font-weight, and padding. Set centered text.
6. Edit the styles for the `nav ul` selector. Configure this selector as a `flex container` with flex-direction set to column. Set 0 margin, 0 padding, and 1.5em font size.
7. Code styles for the `nav li` selector. Set .5em top and bottom padding, 100% width, and a 1px solid bottom border.
8. Edit the styles for the main element selector.  
Remove the declaration that configures the left margin.
9. Remove the style declarations for the `floatright` class selector.
10. Edit the styles for the section element selector.  
Remove the declarations that configures float, width, and height.

**11.** Edit the styles for the footer element selector.

Remove the declaration that configures the left margin.

**12.** Configure styles for the telephone number to display a hyperlink when on the small display and display plain text otherwise.

a. Code a style rule for the `mobile` id selector.

Set display to `inline`.

b. Code a style rule for the `desktop` id selector.

Set display to `none`.

Save your fishcreek.css file. Use the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>) to check your syntax.

Correct and retest if necessary.

**CONFIGURE THE HTML.** Modify the pages as indicated.

**1.** Launch a text editor and open index.html. Save the file when you have completed the following edits.

a. The home page displays a phone number in the contact information area. Wouldn't it be handy if a person using a smartphone could click on the phone number to call the resort? You can make that happen by using tel: in a hyperlink. Configure a hyperlink assigned to an id named `mobile` that contains the phone number as shown:

```
<a id="mobile" href="tel:800-555-5555">800-555-5555</a>
```

But wait a minute, a telephone link could confuse those visiting the site with a desktop browser. Code another phone number directly after the hyperlink. Code a span element assigned to an id named `desktop` around the phone number as shown:

```
<span id="desktop">800-555-  
5555</span>
```

- b.** Code a viewport meta tag in the head section that configures the width to the device-width and sets the initial-scale to 1.0.
2. Add a viewport meta tag to the services.html page in the same manner as the Home page. Save your file.
3. Add a viewport meta tag to the askvet.html page in the same manner as the Home page. Move the img tag after the description list. Remove the `floatright` class from the img tag. Save your file.

**TEST THE WEB PAGES.** Display your index.html file in a browser. This layout is intended for narrow mobile screens. Resize your browser to be narrower until your display is similar to the Small Display shown in [Figure 7.58](#), which simulates mobile display. Test the services.html and askvet.html files in a similar manner.

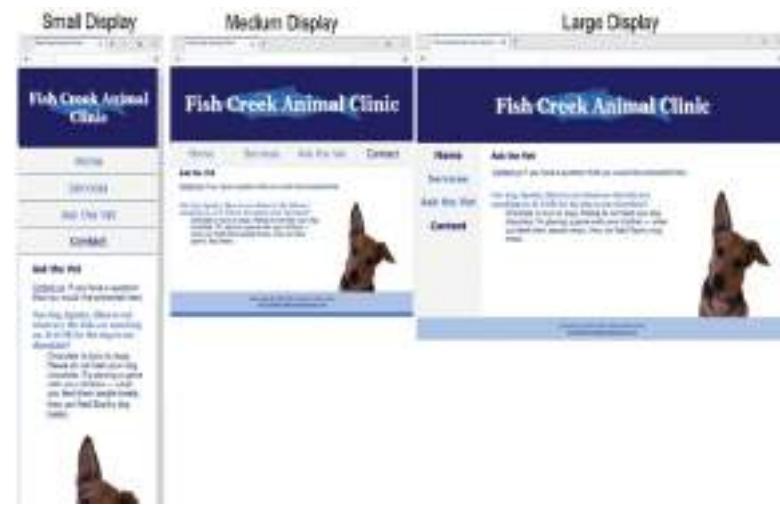
**TASK 3: CONFIGURE A MEDIUM LAYOUT.** Edit the CSS and the web pages to configure a more pleasing display on a wider viewport, setting 600px as the breakpoint for the first media query. When you test your web pages and

trigger the media query, the layout in the Medium Display wireframe in [Figure 7.58](#) will be implemented and your pages should look similar to the Medium Display in [Figures 7.59](#), [7.60](#), and [7.61](#).

**Figure 7.60** The Services page



**Figure 7.61** The Ask the Vet page



**CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the fishcreek.css style sheet. Place your cursor below the existing styles. Configure a media query that is triggered

when the minimum width is 600px or greater. Code the following styles within the media query.

1. Code styles for the header element selector.  
Configure bigfish.gif as the background image.
2. Code styles for the h1 element selector. Set font size to 3em.
3. Code styles for the `nav ul` selector. Configure the flex container with rows that do not wrap.  
Also set `justify-content` to `space-around`.
4. Code styles for the `nav li` selector. Set the bottom border to `none`.
5. Code styles for the `flow` id selector. Configure a flex container. The flex direction is `row`. Allow the content to wrap.
6. Code styles for the section element selector. Set minimum width to 30%. Set the `flex` property to 1. Setting the flex property to the value 1 will allocate equal areas for each section flex item.
7. The description list on the Ask the Vet page will be part of a flex layout. Code styles for the `dl` selector to set `flex` to 2.
8. The `img` element on the Ask the Vet page will be part of a flex layout. Code styles for the `img` selector to set `flex` to 1.
9. Code styles for the `mobile` id selector. Set display to `none`.
10. Code styles for the `desktop` id selector. Set display to `inline`.

Save your fishcreek.css file. Use the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>) to check your syntax.

Correct and retest if necessary.

**CONFIGURE THE HTML.** You need to rework the content area on the web pages

1. Launch a text editor and open index.html. Locate the section elements. Code a div assigned to an id named `flow` that contains all section elements. Save the file.
2. Launch a text editor and open services.html. Locate the section elements. Code a div that is assigned to an id named `flow` that contains all the section elements. Save the file.
3. Launch a text editor and open askvet.html. Code a div that is assigned to an id named `flow` that contains the dl and img elements. Save the file.

**TEST THE WEB PAGES.** Display your index.html file in a browser. You should be able to resize your browser viewport and obtain a display similar to the Medium Display in [Figure 7.58](#). Test the services.html and askvet.html files in a similar manner.

**TASK 4: CONFIGURE A LARGE LAYOUT.** Edit the CSS to configure a second media query with a 1024px breakpoint that will configure a grid layout with two columns. When you test your web pages and trigger the media query, the layout in the Large Display wireframe in [Figure 7.58](#) will be implemented and your pages should look similar to the Large Display in [Figures 7.59](#), [7.60](#), and [7.61](#).

**CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the fishcreek.css style sheet. Place your cursor below the

existing styles. Configure a media query that is triggered when the minimum width is 1024px or greater. Within the media query, configure a feature query to check for support of grid layout. Code the following styles within the feature query.

**1.** Configure the grid areas.

- a.** Code styles for the header element selector:

set `grid-area` to header.

- b.** Code styles for the nav element selector: set

`grid-area` to nav.

- c.** Code styles for the main element selector:

set `grid-area` to main.

- d.** Code styles for the footer element selector:

set `grid-area` to footer.

**2.** Configure the `wrapper` id selector as a grid container. Use the `grid-template` property to describe the grid layout shown for large display in [Figure 7.58](#). Use 180px for the width of the navigation area. The CSS follows:

```
#wrapper { display: grid;
            grid-template:
                "header header"
                "nav     main"
                " nav    footer"
                / 180px   ; }
```

**3.** Configure the navigation area. Code styles for the `nav ul` selector to set the `flex-direction` to `column`. Also configure 1.25em bold font.

Save your fishcreek.css file. Use the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>) to check your syntax. Correct and retest if necessary.

**TEST THE WEB PAGES.** Display your index.html file in a modern browser. You should be able to resize your browser viewport and obtain a display similar to the Large Display in [Figure 7.58](#). Browsers that do not support grid layout will render the pages similar to the Medium Display in [Figure 7.58](#). Test the Services and Ask the Vet pages in a similar manne.

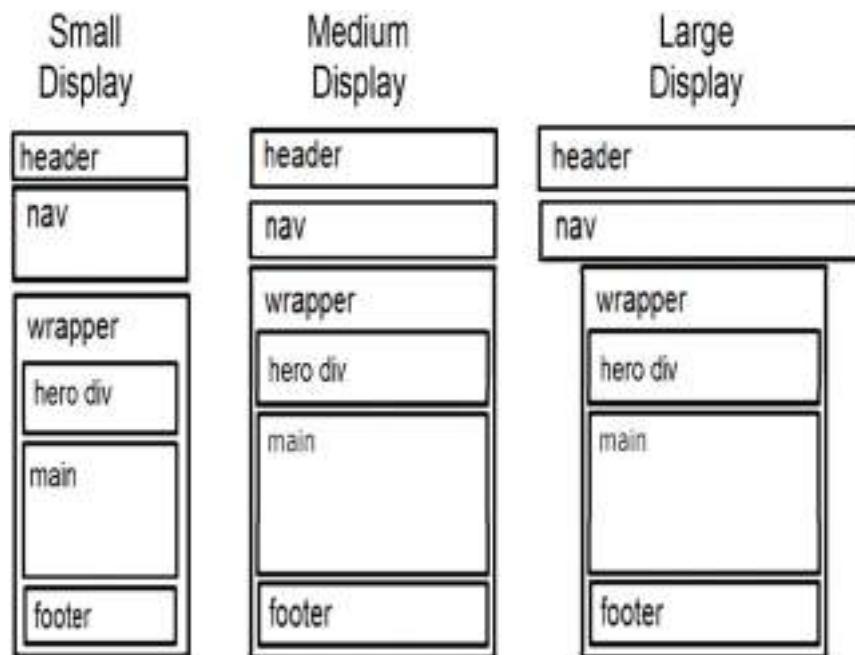
You have accomplished a great deal as you completed this case study. The design is now responsive, utilizes CSS Flexbox and CSS Grid layout, and displays well on devices with various size viewports. Fish Creek Animal Clinic is responsive and mobile!

## Pacific Trails Resort Case Study

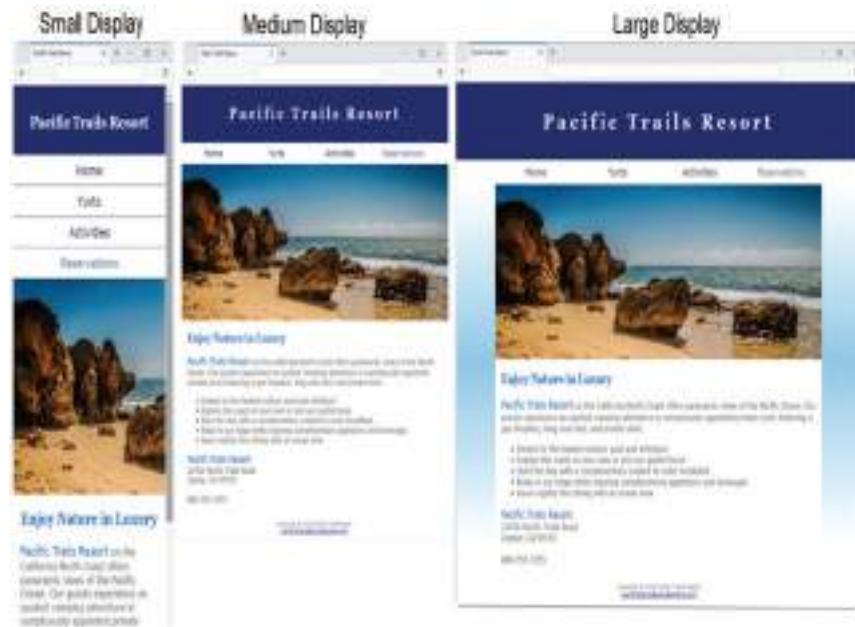
In this chapter's case study, you will use the existing Pacific Trails Resort ([Chapter 6](#)) website as a starting point to create a new responsive version of the website that utilizes media queries. The new design has full width header element, a full width nav element, and an 80% width centered div that contains the main element and footer element. You'll practice a Mobile First strategy for responsive design. First, you will configure a page layout that works well in smartphones (test with a small browser window). Then you'll resize the browser viewport to be larger until the design "breaks" and code media queries and additional CSS as needed. [Figure 7.62](#) shows wireframes for three different layouts. The Home page displays will be similar to [Figure 7.63](#).

---

**Figure 7.62 Pacific Trails Resort wireframes**



**Figure 7.63 The Home page**



You have four tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for the Pacific Trails Resort website.
2. Configure the HTML and CSS needed for pleasing display of a single-column (smartphone) display.
3. Configure the HTML and CSS needed for pleasing display of the web pages on medium sized mobile devices.
4. Configure the CSS needed for a pleasing display of the web pages on large mobile devices and desktops.

**TASK 1:** Create a folder called pacific7 to contain your Pacific Trails Resort website files. Copy the files from the [Chapter 6 Case Study](#) pacific6 folder into the pacific7 folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE A SMALL SINGLE-COLUMN LAYOUT.**

First, you will edit the CSS. Then you will edit each web page and test in a browser.

**CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the pacific.css style sheet. Edit the styles to achieve a layout that displays well on small devices using normal flow (no floats) with full-width block elements.

1. Edit the styles for the body element selector. Set margin to 0. Change the background color to #90C7E3.
2. Edit the styles for the `wrapper` id selector. Remove the declarations for the background image, width, margin, and box-shadow.
3. Edit the styles for the header element selector. Remove the declaration for height. Set 1em padding.
4. Edit the styles for the h1 element selector. Set 1.5em font size. Remove the declarations for letter

spacing and padding.

**5.** Edit the styles for the nav element selector.

Remove the declarations that configure float, position, width, font-weight, and padding. Set centered text and white background color.

**6.** Edit the styles for the `nav ul` selector. Configure

this selector as a flex container with `flex-direction` set to column. Set 0 margin and 0 left padding.

**7.** Code styles for the `nav li` selector. Set .5em top

and bottom padding, 1em left and right padding, 100% width, and a 1px solid bottom border.

**8.** Edit the styles for the main element selector.

Remove the style declarations for background color, margin, and overflow. Set 0 top and bottom padding. Set 1em left and right padding.

**9.** Edit styles for the section element selector.

Remove the declarations for float and width. Set left and right padding to .5em.

**10.** Edit the styles for the `homehero`, `yurthero`, and `trailhero` id selectors. Remove margin-left declaration from each style rule. Set background-size property to 200% 100%, to cause the browser to display cropped versions of the images which will be more pleasing on a small viewport.

**11.** Edit the styles for the footer element selector.

Remove the margin-left declaration.

**12.** Configure styles for the telephone number to display a hyperlink when on the small display and display plain text otherwise.

**a.** Code a style rule for the `mobile` id selector.

Set display to `inline`.

**b.** Code a style rule for the `desktop` id selector.

Set display to `none`.

Save your pacific.css file. Use the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>) to check your syntax.

Correct and retest if necessary.

**CONFIGURE THE HTML.** Modify the pages as indicated.

**1.** Launch a text editor and open index.html.

Complete the following edits and save the file.

**a.** Using the wireframe in [Figure 7.62](#) as a guide, move the opening div tag assigned to the `wrapper` id below the closing nav tag.

**b.** The home page displays a phone number in the contact information area. Wouldn't it be handy if a person using a smartphone could click on the phone number to call the resort? You can make that happen by using tel: in a hyperlink. Configure a hyperlink assigned to an id named mobile that contains the phone number as shown:

```
<a id="mobile" href="tel:888-555-  
5555">888-555-5555</a>
```

But wait a minute, a telephone link could confuse those visiting the site with a desktop browser. Code another phone number directly after the hyperlink. Code a span element assigned to an id named `desktop` around the phone number as shown:

```
<span id="desktop">888-555-  
5555</span>
```

- c. Code a viewport meta tag in the head section that configures the width to the device-width and sets the initial-scale to 1.0.
2. Launch a text editor and open yurts.html. Using the wireframe in [Figure 7.62](#) as a guide, move the opening div tag assigned to the `wrapper` id below the closing nav tag. Add a viewport meta tag to head section in the same manner as the Home page. Save the file.
3. Launch a text editor and open activities.html. Using the wireframe in [Figure 7.62](#) as a guide, move the opening div tag assigned to the `wrapper` id below the closing nav tag. Add a viewport meta tag to head section in the same manner as the Home page. Save the file.

**TEST THE WEB PAGES.** Display your index.html file in a browser. This layout is intended for narrow mobile screens. Resize your browser to be narrower until your display is similar to the Small Display shown in [Figure 7.63](#), which simulates mobile display. Test the yurts.html and activities.html files in a similar manner.

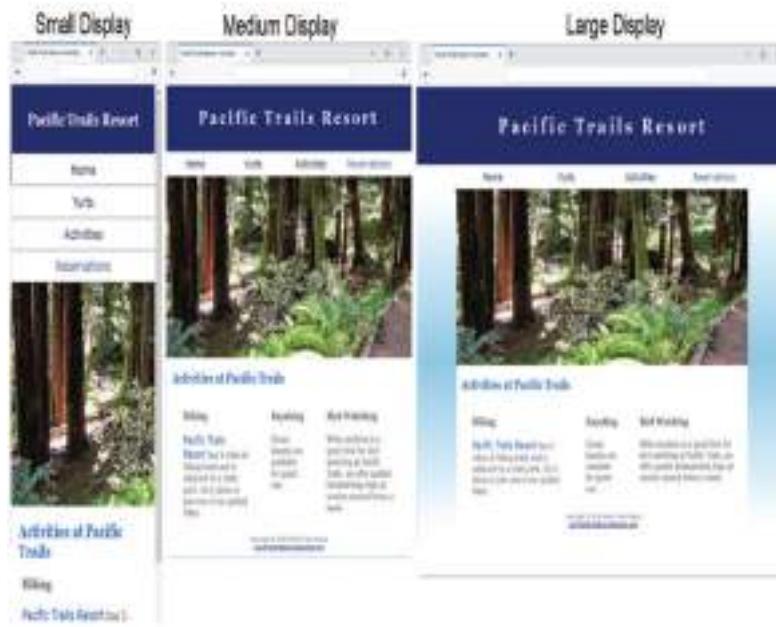
**TASK 3: CONFIGURE A MEDIUM LAYOUT.** Edit the CSS and web pages to configure a more pleasing display on a wider viewport, setting 600px as the breakpoint for the first media query. You will configure flexbox layout for two areas: the main navigation and the columns of

information on the content pages. When you test your web pages and trigger the media query, the layout in the Medium Display wireframe in [Figure 7.62](#) will be implemented and your pages should look similar to the Medium Display in [Figures 7.63](#), [7.64](#), and [7.65](#).

**Figure 7.64** The Yurts page



**Figure 7.65** The Activities page



**CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the pacific.css style sheet. Place your cursor below the existing styles. Configure a media query that is triggered when the minimum width is 600px or greater. Code the following styles within the media query.

1. Code styles for the h1 element selector. Set font-size to 2em and letter-spacing to .25em.
2. Code styles for the `nav ul` selector. Configure a flex container. The flex direction is row without wrapping. Set `justify-content` to `space-around`. Configure 2em padding on the right.
3. Code styles for the `nav li` selector. Set width to 12em. Set the bottom border to `none`.
4. Code styles for the section element selector. Set 2em left and right padding.
5. Code styles for the `flow` id selector. Configure a flex container. The flex direction is `row`.

- 6.** Code styles for the `mobile` id selector. Set display to `none`.
- 7.** Code styles for the `desktop` id selector. Set display to `inline`.
- 8.** Code styles for the `homehero`, `yurthero`, and `trailhero` id selectors. Set background-size to 100% 100%.

Save your pacific.css file. Use the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>) to check your syntax.

Correct and retest if necessary.

**CONFIGURE THE HTML.** You need to rework the content area on the Yurts and Activities pages.

- 1.** Launch a text editor and open yurts.html. Code a div assigned to an id named `flow` that contains all section elements. Save the file.
- 2.** Launch a text editor and open activities.html. Code a div assigned to an id named `flow` that contains all section elements. Save the file.

**TEST THE WEB PAGES.** Display your index.html file in a browser. You should be able to resize your browser viewport and obtain a display similar to the Medium Display in [Figure 7.63](#). Test the yurts.html and activities.html files in a similar manner.

**TASK 4: CONFIGURE A LARGE LAYOUT.** Edit the CSS to configure a second media query with a 1024px breakpoint. When you test your web pages and trigger the media query, the layout in the Large Display wireframe in [Figure 7.62](#) will be implemented and your

pages should look similar to the Large Display in Figures 7.63, 7.64, and 7.65.

**CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the pacific.css style sheet. Place your cursor below the existing styles. Configure a media query that is triggered when the minimum width is 1024px or greater. Code the following styles within the media query.

**1.** Code styles for the body element selector.

Configure a linear gradient as the background image that displays the color white for 20% of the viewport height, transitions to light blue, and transitions back to white. The CSS for the linear gradient follows:

```
linear-gradient(to bottom, #FFFFFF  
20%, #90C7E3 60%, #FFFFFF 100%);
```

**2.** Code styles for the `nav ul` selector. Set 10% right and left padding.

**3.** Code styles for the `#wrapper` id selector. Set the area to be horizontally centered (hint: `margin: auto;`) with 80% width.

Save your pacific.css file. Use the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>) to check your syntax.

Correct and retest if necessary.

**TEST THE WEB PAGES.** Display your index.html file in a browser. You should be able to resize your browser viewport and obtain a display similar to the Large Display

in [Figure 7.62](#). Test the `yurts.html` and `activities.html` files in a similar manner

You have accomplished a great deal as you completed this case study. The design is now responsive, utilizes CSS Flexbox, and displays well on devices with various size viewports. Pacific Trails Resort is responsive and mobile!

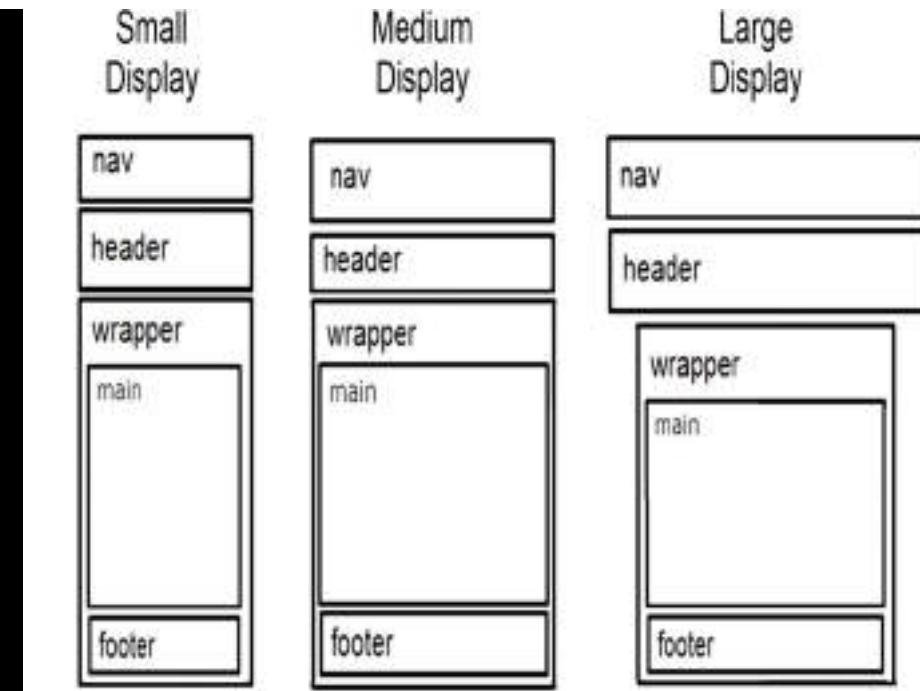
## Path of Light Yoga Studio Case Study

In this chapter's case study, you will use the existing Path of Light Yoga Studio ([Chapter 6](#)) website as a starting point to create a new responsive version of the website that utilizes media queries. The new design has a full width nav element, full width header element, and an 80% width centered div that contains the main element and footer element. The header area for the home page will be larger than the header area for the content pages. You'll practice a Mobile First strategy for responsive design. First, you will configure a page layout that works well in smartphones (test with a small browser window). Then you'll resize the browser viewport to be larger until the design "breaks" and code media queries and additional CSS as appropriate using flexbox layout for the navigation area. [Figure 7.66](#) shows wireframes for three different layouts. The Home page displays will be similar to [Figure 7.67](#).

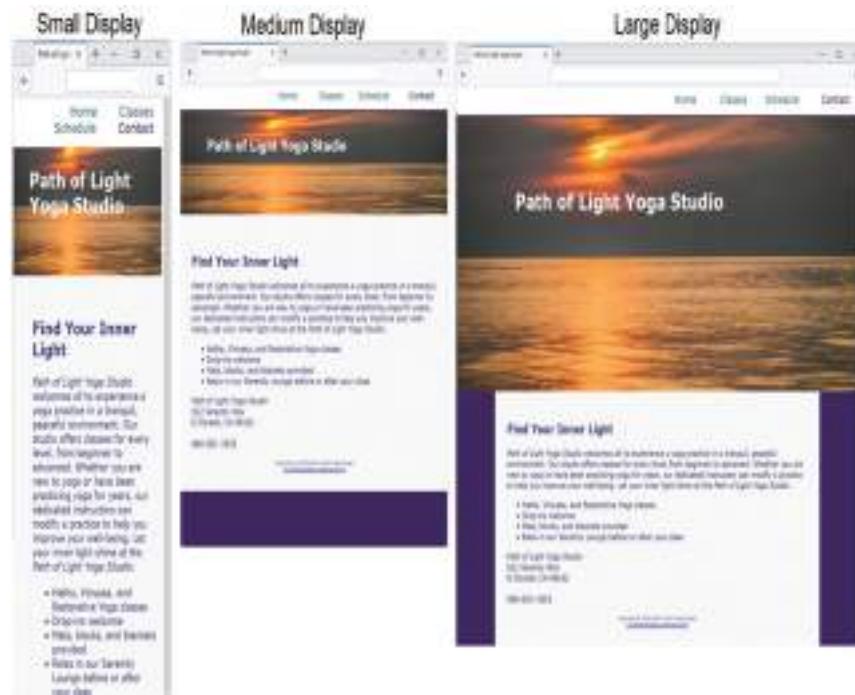
---

**Figure 7.66 Path of Light Yoga Studio wireframes**

---



**Figure 7.67 The Home Page**



You have four tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for the Path of Light Yoga Studio website.
2. Configure the HTML and CSS needed for pleasing display of a single-column (smartphone) display.
3. Configure the HTML and CSS needed for pleasing display of the web pages on medium sized mobile devices.
4. Configure the CSS needed for a pleasing display of the web pages on large mobile devices and desktops.

**TASK 1:** Create a folder called yoga7 to contain your Path of Light Yoga Studio website files. Copy the files from the [Chapter 6](#) Case Study yoga6 folder into the yoga7 folder. Copy the sunrise.jpg file from the chapter7/starters/yoga folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE A SMALL SINGLE-COLUMN LAYOUT.**

First, you will edit the CSS. Then you will edit each web page and test in a browser.

**CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the yoga.css style sheet. Edit the styles to achieve a layout that displays well on small devices using normal flow (no floats) with full-width block elements.

1. Edit the styles for the body element selector. Set margin to 0.
2. Edit the styles for the `wrapper` id selector. Remove all declarations associated with width and margin. Configure 2em padding.
3. Edit the styles for the header element selector. Change the background image to sunrise.jpg. Change the background color to #40407A. Remove the background-position, background-repeat, and

height declarations. Set background-size to 100%  
100%, text color to white, font size to 90%, top  
margin to 50px, and minimum height to 200px.

4. Edit the styles for hyperlinks in the header area.  
Change the text color to #FFF for both unvisited  
and visited hyperlinks. Set the `header a:hover`  
selector's text color to #EDF5F5.
5. Code styles for a `home` class selector and a `content`  
class selector. Both selectors will start with the  
same property values. Set the height to 20vh (20%  
of the viewport height), top padding to 2em, left  
padding to 10%.
6. Edit the styles for the `nav` element selector.  
Remove the styles that configure float and bold  
text. Set width to 100%, and padding-top to 0.5em.  
The navigation will be fixed at the top of the  
viewport. Set position to fixed, top to 0 and left to  
0. Also set right-aligned text, white background  
color, 0 margin, 0 right padding, and 9999 z-index.
7. Edit the styles for the `nav ul` selector. Remove the  
declaration for left padding. Configure this selector  
as a flex container which has rows that wrap. Set 0  
margin, 1.2em font size.
8. Code styles for the `nav li` selector. Set 40% width,  
0 top and bottom padding, 1em left and right  
padding, and inline display.
9. Edit the styles for the `nav a` selector. Remove the  
style declarations for text alignment, border,  
padding, and margin.
10. Edit the styles for `nav a:hover` selector. Remove  
the declaration that sets the border.

**11.** Remove the style declarations for the main element selector, h1 element selector, `onethird` class selector, `onehalf` class selector, `clear` class selector, `floatleft` class selector and `hero` id selector.

**12.** The hero images will be treated differently in this new version of the website. The home page will not display the hero image. The content pages will only display hero images on medium and larger viewports.

**a.** Code styles for the `mathero` id selector. Set the background image to `yogamat.jpg` with no repeats. Configure 300px height. Set `background-size` to cover. Set `display` to `none`.

**b.** Code styles for the `lounghero` id selector. Set the background image to `yogalounge.jpg` with no repeats. Configure 300px height. Set `background-size` to cover. Set `display` to `none`.

**13.** Code styles for the section element selector. Set left and right padding to .5em.

**14.** Edit the styles for the footer element selector. Remove the styles for background color, and padding.

**15.** Configure styles for the telephone number to display a hyperlink when on the small display and display plain text otherwise.

**a.** Code a style rule for the `mobile` id selector. Set `display` to `inline`.

**b.** Code a style rule for the `desktop` id selector. Set `display` to `none`.

Save your yoga.css file. Use the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>) to check your syntax. Correct and retest if necessary.

**CONFIGURE THE HTML.** Modify areas on the pages as indicated.

**1.** Launch a text editor and open index.html.

Complete the following edits and save the file.

- a.** Using the wireframe in [Figure 7.66](#) as a guide, move the opening div tag assigned to the `wrapper` id above the opening main tag. Remove the img tag. Assign the header element to the class named `home`.
- b.** The home page displays a phone number in the contact information area. Wouldn't it be handy if a person using a smartphone could click on the phone number to call the resort? You can make that happen by using tel: in a hyperlink. Configure a hyperlink assigned to an id named `mobile` that contains the phone number as shown:

```
<a id="mobile" href="tel:888-555-5555">888-555-5555</a>
```

But wait a minute, a telephone link could confuse those visiting the site with a desktop browser. Code another phone number directly after the hyperlink. Code a span element assigned to an id named `desktop` around the phone number as shown:

```
<span id="desktop">888-555-  
5555</span>
```

- c. Code a viewport meta tag in the head section that configures the width to the device-width and sets the initial-scale to 1.0.
2. Launch a text editor and open classes.html. Code a viewport meta tag in the head section in the same manner as the Home page. Use the wireframe in [Figure 7.66](#) as a guide, and move the opening div tag assigned to the `wrapper` id above the opening main tag. Assign the header element to the class named `content`. Locate the div assigned to the `hero` id. Replace the value `hero` with `mathero`. Remove the img tag. Save the file.
3. Launch a text editor and open schedule.html. Code a viewport meta tag in the head section in the same manner as the Home page. Use the wireframe in [Figure 7.66](#) as a guide and move the opening div tag assigned to the `wrapper` id above the opening main tag. Assign the header element to the class named `content`. Locate the div assigned to the `hero` id. Replace the value `hero` with `loungehero`. Remove the img tag. Save the file.

**TEST THE WEB PAGES.** Display your index.html file in a browser. This layout is intended for narrow mobile screens. Resize your browser to be narrower until your display is similar to the Small Display shown in [Figure](#)

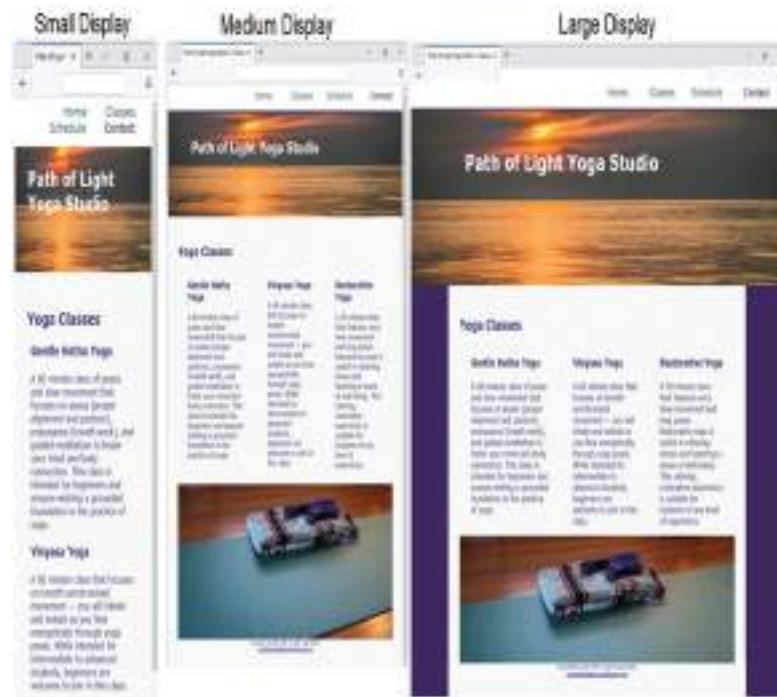
7.66<sup>□</sup>, which simulates mobile display. Test the classes.html and schedule.html files in a similar manner.

**TASK 3: CONFIGURE A MEDIUM LAYOUT.** Edit the CSS and web pages to configure a more pleasing display on a wider viewport, setting 600px as the breakpoint for the first media query. You will configure flexbox layout for two areas: the main navigation and the columns of information on the content pages. When you test your web pages and trigger the media query, the layout in the Medium Display wireframe in Figure 7.66<sup>□</sup> will be implemented and your pages should look similar to the Medium Display in Figures 7.67<sup>□</sup>, 7.68<sup>□</sup>, and 7.69<sup>□</sup>.

---

**Figure 7.68 The Classes page**

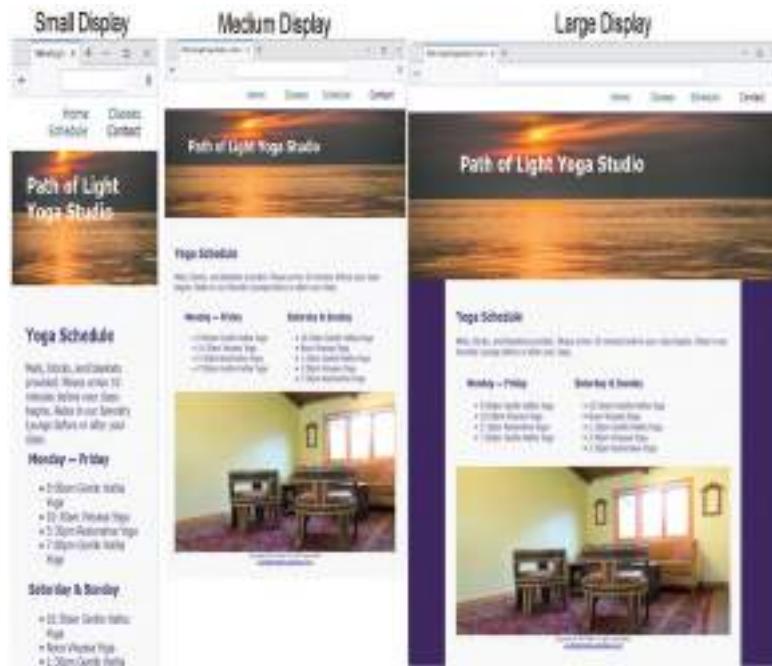
---



---

**Figure 7.69 The Schedule page**

---



**CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the `yoga.css` style sheet. Place your cursor below the existing styles. Configure a media query that is triggered when the minimum width is 600px or greater. Code the following styles within the media query.

1. Code styles for the `nav ul` selector. Configure the flex container with rows that do not wrap. Also set `justify-content` to `flex-end`.
2. Code styles for the `nav li` selector. Set width to 7em.
3. Code styles for the section element selector. Set 2em left and right padding.
4. The hero images will display on medium and large displays. Code styles for the `#mathero` and `loungehero` id selectors. Set display to `block` with 1em bottom padding.

- 5.** Code styles for the `flow` id selector. Configure a flex container. The flex direction is `row`.
- 6.** Code styles for the `mobile` id selector. Set display to `none`.
- 7.** Code styles for the `desktop` id selector. Set display to `inline`.

Save your `yoga.css` file. Use the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>) to check your syntax. Correct and retest if necessary.

**CONFIGURE THE HTML.** You need to rework the content area on the Classes and Schedule pages.

- 1.** Launch a text editor and open `classes.html`. Locate the section elements and remove the `class="onethird"` code from each. Code a div assigned to an id named `flow` that contains all section elements. Save the file.
- 2.** Launch a text editor and open `schedule.html`. Locate the section elements and remove the `class="onehalf"` code from each. Code a div assigned to an id named `flow` that contains both section elements. Save the file.

**TEST THE WEB PAGES.** Display your `index.html` file in a browser. You should be able to resize your browser viewport and obtain a display similar to the Medium Display in [Figure 7.66](#). Test the `classes.html` and `schedule.html` files in a similar manner.

**TASK 4: CONFIGURE A LARGE LAYOUT.** Edit the CSS and web pages to configure a second media query with a

1024px breakpoint. When you test your web pages and trigger the media query, the layout in the Large Display wireframe in [Figure 7.66](#) will be implemented and your pages should look similar to the Large Display in [Figures 7.67](#), [7.68](#), and [7.69](#).

**CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the yoga.css style sheet. Place your cursor below the existing styles. Configure a media query that is triggered when the minimum width is 1024px or greater. Code the following styles within the media query.

1. Code styles for the header element selector. Set font size to 120%.
2. Configure styles for the `home` class selector. Set the height to 50% of the viewport height (`50vh`), 5em top padding, and 8em left padding.
3. Code styles for the `content` class selector. Set the height to 30% of the viewport height (`30vh`), 1em top padding and 8em left padding.
4. Code styles for the `wrapper` id selector. Set the area to be horizontally centered (hint: `margin: auto;`) with 80% width.

Save your yoga.css file. Use the CSS validator (<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>) to check your syntax. Correct and retest if necessary.

**TEST THE WEB PAGES.** Display your index.html file in a browser. You should be able to resize your browser viewport and obtain a display similar to the Large Display in [Figure 7.67](#). Test the schedule.html and classes.html files in a similar manner

You have accomplished a great deal as you completed this case study. The design is now responsive, utilizes CSS Flexbox, and displays well on devices with various size viewports. Path of Light Yoga Studio is responsive and mobile!

---

# 8

## Tables

---





## Chapter Objectives

---

**IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .**

- Describe the recommended use of a table on a web page
- Create a basic table with the table, table row, table header, and table cell elements
- Configure table sections with the thead, tbody, and tfoot elements
- Increase the accessibility of a table
- Style an HTML table with CSS
- Describe the purpose of CSS structural pseudo-classes

**In this chapter** you'll become familiar with coding HTML tables to organize information on a web page.

## 8.1 Table Overview

The purpose of a table is to organize information. In the past, before CSS was well supported by browsers, tables were also used to format web page layouts. An HTML table is composed of rows and columns, like a spreadsheet. Each individual table **cell** is at the intersection of a specific row and column.

- Each table begins with a `<table>` tag and ends with a `</table>` tag.
- Each table row begins with a `<tr>` tag and ends with a `</tr>` tag.
- Each cell (table data) begins with a `<td>` tag and ends with a `</td>` tag.
- Table cells can contain text, graphics, and other HTML elements.

Video Note

**Configure a Table**

Figure 8.1  shows a sample table with three rows and three columns.

The sample HTML for this table is

```
<table>
  <tr>
    <td>Name</td>
    <td>Birthday</td>
    <td>Phone</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>Jack</td>
    <td>5/13</td>
    <td>857-555-5555</td>
```

```
</tr>
<tr>
    <td>Sparky</td>
    <td>11/28</td>
    <td>303-555-5555</td>
</tr>
</table>
```

---

**Figure 8.1** Table with three rows and three columns

---



Name	Birthday	Phone
Jack	5/13	857-555-5555
Sparky	11/28	303-555-5555

Notice how the table is coded row by row. Also, each row is coded cell by cell. This attention to detail is crucial for the successful use of tables. An example can be found in the student files (chapter8/table1.html).

## Table Element

A **table element** is a block display element that contains tabular information. The table begins with a **<table>** tag and ends with a **</table>** tag. See [Table 8.1](#) for common attributes of the table element.

Notice that most of the attributes listed in [Table 8.1](#) are obsolete in HTML5 and should be avoided. Although these attributes are obsolete in HTML5, as you work with the Web you'll see many web pages coded with earlier versions of HTML and it is useful to be aware of even obsolete attributes. Modern web developers prefer to configure the style of tables with CSS properties instead of with HTML attributes.

---

**Table 8.1** Table element attributes

---

<b>Attribute</b>	<b>Value</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
<b>align</b>	left (default), right, center	Horizontal alignment of the table (obsolete in HTML5)
<b>bgcolor</b>	Valid color value	Background color of the table (obsolete in HTML5)
<b>border</b>	(default; indicates no visible border)  Integer value (1- 100) indicating pixel width of border	Describes the table border (obsolete in HTML5)
<b>cellpadding</b>	Numeric value	Specifies the number of pixels of padding between the content of a table cell and its border (obsolete in HTML5)
<b>cellspacing</b>	Numeric value	Specifies the number of pixels of space between the borders of each cell in a table (obsolete in HTML5)

Attribute	Value	Purpose
<b>summary</b>	Text description	Provides accessibility with a text description that gives an overview of and the context for the information in the table (obsolete in HTML5)
<b>title</b>	Text description	A brief text description that provides an overview of the table; may be displayed by some browsers as a tooltip
<b>width</b>	Numeric value or percentage	Specifies the width of the table (obsolete in HTML5)

## The Border Attribute

In earlier versions of HTML (such as HTML4 and XHTML), the purpose of the border attribute was to indicate the presence and the width of a visible table border. The border attribute is obsolete in HTML5.

Configure CSS to style the border of a table. The following CSS configures a border around a table and around each table cell:

```
table, td, th { border: 1px solid #000; }
```

## Table Captions

The **caption element** is often used with a table to describe its contents.

The caption begins with a **<caption>** tag and ends with a **</caption>** tag. The text contained within the caption element displays on the web page above the table, although you'll see later in the chapter that you can configure the placement with CSS. The table shown in [Figure 8.2](#) uses the caption element to set the table caption to "Bird Sightings". Notice that the caption element is coded on the line immediately after the opening **<table>** tag. An example can be found in the student files (chapter8/table2.html). The HTML for the table is

```
<table>
<caption>Bird Sightings</caption>
<tr>
    <td>Name</td>
    <td>Date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
    <td>Bobolink</td>
    <td>5/25/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
    <td>Upland Sandpiper</td>
    <td>6/03/20</td>
</tr>
</table>
```

---

**Figure 8.2** The caption for this table is "Bird Sightings"

---

Bird Sightings	
Name	Date
Bobolink	5/25/20
Upland Sandpiper	6/03/20

## 8.2 Table Rows, Cells, and Headers

### Table Row Element

The **table row element** configures a row within a table on a web page.

The table row begins with a `<tr>` tag and ends with a `</tr>` tag. [Table 8.2](#) shows obsolete attributes of the table row element. Web pages coded with older versions of HTML may use these obsolete attributes. Modern web developers configure alignment and background color with CSS instead of with HTML.

---

**Table 8.2 Obsolete attributes of the table row element**

Attribute	Value	Purpose
align	left (default), right, center	Horizontal alignment of the table (obsolete in HTML5)
bgcolor	Valid color value	Background color of the table (obsolete in HTML5)

### Table Data Element

The **table data element** configures a cell within a row in a table on a web page. The table cell begins with a `<td>` tag and ends with a `</td>` tag. See [Table 8.3](#) for attributes of the table data cell element. Some attributes

are obsolete and should be avoided. You'll explore configuring table styles with CSS later in the chapter.

---

**Table 8.3 Attributes of the table data and table header cell elements**

Attribute	Value	Purpose
align	left (default), right, center	Horizontal alignment of the table (obsolete in HTML5)
bgcolor	Valid color value	Background color of the table (obsolete in HTML5)
colspan	Numeric value	The number of columns spanned by a cell
headers	The id value(s) of a column or row header cell	Associates the table data cells with table header cells; may be accessed by screen readers
height	Numeric value or percentage	Height of the cell (obsolete in HTML5)
rowspan	Numeric value	The number of rows spanned by a cell
scope	row, col	The scope of the table header cell contents (row or column); may be accessed by screen readers

Attribute	Value	Purpose
<b>valign</b>	top, middle (default), bottom	The vertical alignment of the contents of the cell (obsolete in HTML5)
<b>width</b>	Numeric value or percentage	Width of the cell (obsolete in HTML5)

## Table Header Element

The **table header element** is similar to a table data element and configures a cell within a row in a table on a web page. Its purpose is to configure column and row headings. Text displayed within a table header element is centered and bold. The table header element begins with a **<th>** tag and ends with a **</th>** tag. See [Table 8.3](#) for common attributes of the table header element. [Figure 8.3](#) shows a table with column headings configured by **<th>** tags. The HTML for the table shown in [Figure 8.3](#) is as follows (also see chapter8/table3.html in the student files). Notice that the first row uses **<th>** instead of **<td>** tags.

```

<table>
  <tr>
    <th>Name</th>
    <th>Birthday</th>
    <th>Phone</th>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>Jack</td>
    <td>5/13</td>
    <td>857-555-5555</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>

```

```
<td>Sparky</td>
<td>11/28</td>
<td>303-555-5555</td>
</tr>
</table>
```

---

**Figure 8.3** Using **<th>** tags to indicate column headings

---

Name	Birthday	Phone
Jack	5/13	857-555-5555
Sparky	11/28	303-555-5555

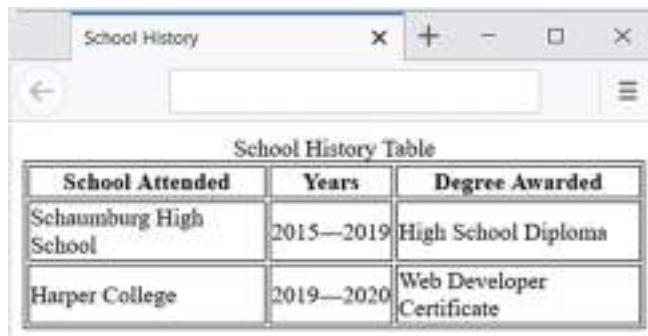
## Hands-On Practice 8.1

In this Hands-On Practice, you will create a web page similar to [Figure 8.4](#) that describes two schools you have attended. Use the caption “School History Table.” The table has three rows and three columns. The first row will have table header elements with the headings School Attended, Years, and Degree Awarded. You will complete the second and third rows with your own information within table data elements.

---

**Figure 8.4** School History Table

---



The screenshot shows a Microsoft Word document window titled "School History". Inside the document, there is a table with a title row and two data rows. The title row contains the column headers: "School Attended", "Years", and "Degree Awarded". The first data row contains the values: "Schaumburg High School", "2015–2019", and "High School Diploma". The second data row contains the values: "Harper College", "2019–2020", and "Web Developer Certificate".

School Attended	Years	Degree Awarded
Schaumburg High School	2015–2019	High School Diploma
Harper College	2019–2020	Web Developer Certificate

To get started, launch a text editor and open chapter8/template.html in the student files. Save the file as mytable.html. Modify the title element. Use table, table row, table header, table data, and caption elements to configure a table similar to [Figure 8.4](#).

Hints:

- The table has three rows and three columns.
- Use the table header element for the cells in the first row.
- Configure the table and cell borders with embedded CSS in the head section of the web page:

```
<style>
table, td, th { border: 1px solid #000; }
</style>
```

Save your file and display it in a browser. A sample solution is found in the student files (chapter8/8.1/index.html).

---

## 8.3 Span Rows and Columns

You can alter the gridlike look of a table by applying the `colspan` and `rowspan` attributes to table data or table header elements. As you get into more complex table configurations like these, be sure to sketch the table on paper before you start typing the HTML.

### The Colspan Attribute

The `colspan` attribute specifies the number of columns that a cell will occupy. [Figure 8.5](#) shows a table cell that spans two columns.

---

**Figure 8.5 Table with a row that spans two columns**

---

This spans two columns	
Column 1	Column 2

The HTML for the table is

```
<table>
  <tr>
    <td colspan="2">This spans two columns</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>Column 1</td>
    <td>Column 2</td>
  </tr>
</table>
```

### The Rowspan Attribute

The **rowspan** attribute specifies the number of rows that a cell will occupy. An example of a table cell that spans two rows is shown in [Figure 8.6](#).

---

**Figure 8.6 Table with a column that spans two rows**

---

This spans two rows	Row 1 Column 2
	Row 2 Column 2

The HTML for the table is

```
<table>
  <tr>
    <td rowspan="2">This spans two rows</td>
    <td>Row 1 Column 2</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>Row 2 Column 2</td>
  </tr>
</table>
```

---

An example of the tables in [Figures 8.5](#) and [8.6](#) can be found in the student files (chapter8/table4.html).

---

## Hands-On Practice 8.2

You will practice with the **rowspan** attribute in this Hands-On Practice. To create the web page shown in [Figure 8.7](#), launch a text editor and open chapter8/template.html in the student files. Save the file as myrowspan.html. Modify the title element. Use table, table row, table head, and table data elements to configure the table.

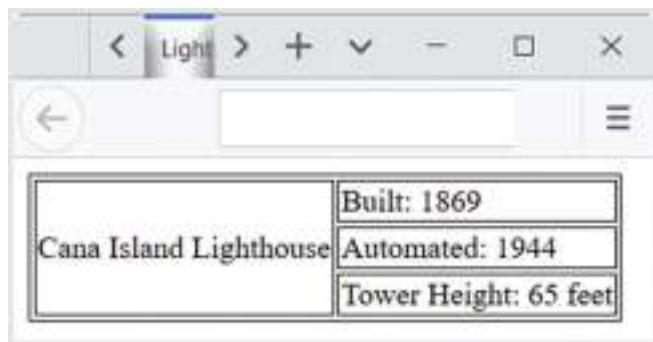
1. Code the opening `<table>` tag
2. Begin the first row with a `<tr>` tag.
3. The table data cell with “Cana Island Lighthouse” spans three rows. Code a table data element. Use the `rowspan="3"` attribute.
4. Code a table data element that contains the text “Built: 1869”.
5. End the first row with a `</tr>` tag.
6. Begin the second row with a `<tr>` tag. This row will only have one table data element because the cell in the first column is already reserved for “Cana Island Lighthouse”.
7. Code a table data element that contains the text “Automated: 1944”.
8. End the second row with a `</tr>` tag.
9. Begin the third row with a `<tr>` tag. This row will only have one table data element because the cell in the first column is already reserved for “Cana Island Lighthouse”.
10. Code a table data element that contains the text “Tower Height: 65 feet”.
11. End the third row with a `</tr>` tag.
12. Code the closing `</table>` tag.
13. Configure the table and cell borders with embedded CSS in the head section of the web page:

```
<style>
table, td, th { border: 1px solid #000; }
</style>
```

---

**Figure 8.7 Practice with the `rowspan` attribute**

---



Save the file and view it in a browser. A sample solution is found in the student files (chapter8/8.2/index.html). Notice how the “Cana Island Lighthouse” text is vertically aligned in the middle of the cell, which is the default vertical alignment. You can modify the vertical alignment using CSS—see section “8.5. Style a Table with CSS” later in this chapter.

---

## 8.4 Configure an Accessible Table

Tables can be useful to organize information on a web page, but what if you couldn't see the table and were relying on assistive technology like a screen reader to read the table to you? You'd hear the contents of the table just the way it is coded—row by row, cell by cell. This might be difficult to understand. This section discusses coding techniques to improve the accessibility of tables.

### Focus on Accessibility

For a simple informational data table like the one shown in [Figure 8.8](#), the W3C Web Accessibility Initiative (WAI) Web Content Accessibility Guidelines 2.0 (WCAG 2.0) recommend the following:

---

**Figure 8.8 This simple data table uses `<th>` tags and the `caption` element to provide accessibility**

---

Bird Sightings	
Name	Date
Bobolink	5/25/20
Upland Sandpiper	6/03/20

- Use table header elements (`<th>` tags) to indicate column or row headings.
- Use the caption element to provide a text title or caption for the table.

An example web page is in the student files (chapter8/table5.html). The HTML is

```
<table>
<caption>Bird Sightings</caption>
<tr>
    <th>Name</th>
    <th>Date</th>
</tr>
<tr>
    <td>Bobolink</td>
    <td>5/25/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
    <td>Upland Sandpiper</td>
    <td>6/03/20</td>
</tr>
</table>
```

However, for more complex tables, the W3C recommends specifically associating the table data cell values with their corresponding headers. The technique that is recommended uses the `id` attribute (usually in a `<th>` tag) to identify a specific header cell and the **headers attribute** in a `<td>` tag. The code to configure the table in [Figure 8.8](#) using headers and ids is as follows (also see chapter8/table6.html in the student files):

```
<table>
<caption>Bird Sightings</caption>
<tr>
    <th id="name">Name</th>
    <th id="date">Date</th>
</tr>
<tr>
    <td headers="name">Bobolink</td>
    <td headers="date">5/25/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
    <td headers="name">Upland Sandpiper</td>
    <td headers="date">6/03/20</td>
</tr>
</table>
```

## Focus on Accessibility

## FAQ

What about the **scope** attribute?

The **scope attribute** specifies the association of table cells and table row or column headers.

It is used to indicate whether a table cell is a header for a column (**scope="col"**) or row (**scope="row"**). An example of the code for the table in [Figure 8.8](#) that uses this attribute is as follows (also see chapter8/table7.html in the student files):

```
<table>
<caption>Bird Sightings</caption>
<tr>
    <th scope="col">Name</th>
    <th scope="col">Date</th>
</tr>
<tr>
    <td>Bobolink</td>
    <td>5/25/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
    <td>Upland Sandpiper</td>
    <td>6/03/20</td>
</tr>
</table>
```

As you reviewed the code sample in the previous page, you may have noticed that using the `scope` attribute to provide accessibility requires less coding than implementing the `headers` and `id` attributes. However, because of inconsistent screen reader support of the `scope` attribute, the WCAG recommendations for coding techniques encourage the use of `headers` and `id` attributes rather than the `scope` attribute.

### Checkpoint 8.1

1. What is the purpose of using a table on a web page?
2. How is the text contained within a `th` element displayed by the browser?
3. Describe one coding technique that increases the accessibility of an HTML table.

## 8.5 Style a Table with CSS

Before CSS was well supported by browsers, it was common practice to configure the visual aesthetic of a table with HTML attributes. The modern approach is to use CSS to style a table. In this section, you'll explore using CSS to style the border, padding, alignment, width, height, vertical alignment, and background of table elements. [Table 8.4](#) lists corresponding CSS properties with the HTML attributes used to style tables.

---

**Table 8.4** CSS properties used to style tables

HTML Attribute	CSS Property
align	To align a table, configure the width and margin properties for the table selector. For example, to center a table with a width of 75% of the container element, use <pre>table { width: 75%; margin: auto; }</pre>
width	To align items within table cells, use text-align

HTML Attribute	CSS Property
height	height
cellpadding	padding
cellspacing	<p><b>border-spacing</b>; a numeric value (px or em) or percentage. If you set a value to 0, omit the unit. One numeric value with unit (px or em) configures both horizontal and vertical spacing. Two numeric values with unit (px or em): The first value configures the horizontal spacing and the second value configures the vertical spacing.</p> <p><b>border-collapse</b> configures the border area. The values are <code>separate</code> (default) and <code>collapse</code>. Use <code>border-collapse: collapse;</code> to remove extra space between table and table cell borders.</p>
bgcolor	background-color
valign	<p><b>vertical-align</b> specifies the vertical placement of content. The values are numeric pixel or percentage, <code>baseline</code> (default), <code>sub</code> (subscript), <code>super</code> (superscript), <code>top</code>, <code>text-top</code>, <code>middle</code>, <code>bottom</code>, and <code>text-bottom</code></p>
border	<code>border</code> , <code>border-style</code> , <code>border-spacing</code>

HTML Attribute	CSS Property
none	<code>background-image</code>
none	<code>caption-side</code> specifies the placement of the caption. Values are <code>top</code> (default) and <code>bottom</code>

## Hands-On Practice 8.3

In this Hands-On Practice, you will code CSS style rules to configure an informational table on a web page. Create a folder named ch8table. Copy the starter.html file from the chapter8 folder to your ch8table folder. We'll use embedded styles for ease of editing and testing your page. Open the starter.html file in a browser. The display should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 8.9](#).

**Figure 8.9 This table is configured with HTML**

Lighthouse Island Bistro Specialty Coffee Menu		
Specialty Coffee	Description	Price
Lite Latte	Indulge in a shot of espresso with steamed, skim milk.	\$3.50
Mocha Latte	Choose dark or milk chocolate with steamed milk.	\$4.00
MCP Latte	A luscious mocha latte with caramel and pecan syrup.	\$4.50

Launch a text editor and open starter.html from your ch8table folder. Locate the style tags in the head section. You will code embedded CSS in this Hands-On Practice. Place your cursor on the blank line between the style tags.

1. Configure the table element selector to be centered, have a dark blue, 5 pixel border, and have a width of 600px.

```
table { margin: auto;
        border: 5px solid #000066;
        width: 600px; }
```

Save the file as menu.html. Open your page in a browser.

Notice that there is a border surrounding the entire table but not surrounding each table cell.

2. Configure the td and th element selectors with a border, padding, and Arial or the default sans-serif font typeface.

```
td, th { border: 1px solid #000066;
          padding: 0.5em;
          font-family: Arial, sans-serif; }
```

Save the file and open your page in a browser. Each table cell should now be outlined with a border and should display text in a sans-serif font.

3. Notice the empty space between the borders of the table cells. This empty space can be eliminated with the **border-spacing property**. Add a `border-spacing: 0;` declaration to the table element selector. Save the file and open your page in a browser to see the result.

4. Configure the caption to be displayed with Verdana or the default sans-serif font typeface, bold font weight, 1.2em font size, and 0.5em of bottom padding. Configure a style rule as follows:

```
caption { font-family: Verdana, sans-serif;
           font-weight: bold;
           font-size: 1.2em;
           padding-bottom: 0.5em; }
```

5. Let's experiment and configure background colors for the rows instead of cell borders. Modify the style rule for the td and th element selectors, remove the border declaration, and set `border-style` to none. The new style rule for the cells is

```
td, th { padding: 0.5em;  
border-style: none;  
font-family: Arial, sans-serif; }
```

6. Create a new class called `altrow` that sets a background color.

```
.altrow { background-color: #EAEAEA; }
```

7. Modify the `<tr>` tags in the HTML. Assign the second and fourth `<tr>` tags to the `altrow` class. Save the file and open your page in a browser. The table area should look similar to the one shown in Figure 8.10.

---

**Figure 8.10 Rows are configured with alternating background colors**

---

### Lighthouse Island Bistro Specialty Coffee Menu

Specialty Coffee	Description	Price
Lite Latte	Indulge in a shot of espresso with steamed, skim milk.	\$3.50
Mocha Latte	Choose dark or milk chocolate with steamed milk.	\$4.00
MCP Latte	A luscious mocha latte with caramel and pecan syrup.	\$4.50

Notice how the background color of the alternate rows adds subtle interest to the web page. In this Hands-On Practice, you configured the display of an HTML table using CSS. Compare your work with the sample in the student files (chapter8/8.3/index.html).

---

## 8.6 CSS Structural Pseudo-Classes

In the previous section, you configured CSS and applied a class to every other table row to configure alternating background colors, often referred to as “zebra striping.” You may have found this to be a bit inconvenient and wondered if there was a more efficient method. Well, there is! **CSS structural pseudo-class selectors** allow you to select and apply styles to elements based on their position in the structure of the document, such as every other row. [Table 8.5](#) lists common CSS structural pseudo-class selectors and their purpose.

---

**Table 8.5 Common CSS structural pseudo-classes**

Pseudo-class	Purpose
<code>:first-of-type</code>	Applies to the first element of the specified type
<code>:first-child</code>	Applies to the first child of an element
<code>:last-of-type</code>	Applies to the last element of the specified type
<code>:last-child</code>	Applies to the last child of an element
<code>:nth-of-type(n)</code>	Applies to the “nth” element of the specified type Values: a number, odd, or even

To apply a pseudo-class, write it after the selector. The following code sample will configure the first item in an unordered list to display with red text.

```
li:first-of-type { color: #FF0000; }
```

## Hands-On Practice 8.4

In this Hands-On Practice, you will rework the table you configured in [Hands-On Practice 8.3](#) to use structural pseudo-class selectors to configure color.

1. Launch a text editor and open menu.html in your ch8table folder (it can also be found as chapter8/8.3/index.html in the student files). Save the file as menu2.html.
2. View the source code and notice that the second and fourth tr elements are assigned to the `altrow` class. You won't need this class assignment when using CSS structural pseudo-class selectors. Delete `class="altrow"` from the tr elements.
3. Examine the embedded CSS and locate the `altrow` class. Change the selector to use a structural pseudo-class that will apply the style to the even-numbered table rows. Replace `.altrow` with `tr:nth-of-type(even)` as shown in the following CSS declaration:

```
tr:nth-of-type(even) { background-color: #eaeaea; }
```

4. Save the file and open your page in a browser. The table area should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 8.10](#) if you are using a modern browser that supports structural pseudo-classes.

5. Let's configure the first row to have a dark blue background (#006) and light gray text (#EAEAEA) with the **:first-of-type** structural pseudo-class. Add the following to the embedded CSS:

```
tr:first-of-type { background-color: #006;
                   color: #EAEAEA; }
```

6. Save the file and open your page in a browser. The table area should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 8.11](#) if you are using a modern browser that supports CSS structural pseudo-classes. A sample solution is available in the student files (chapter8/8.4/index.html).

---

**Figure 8.11 CSS pseudo-class selectors style the table rows**

---

### Lighthouse Island Bistro Specialty Coffee Menu

Specialty Coffee	Description	Price
Lite Latte	Indulge in a shot of espresso with steamed, skim milk.	\$3.50
Mocha Latte	Choose dark or milk chocolate with steamed milk.	\$4.00
MCP Latte	A licious mocha latte with caramel and pecan syrup.	\$4.50

## 8.7 Configure Table Sections

There are a lot of configuration options for coding tables. Table rows can be put together into three types of groups: table head with `<thead>`, table body with `<tbody>`, and table footer with `<tfoot>`.

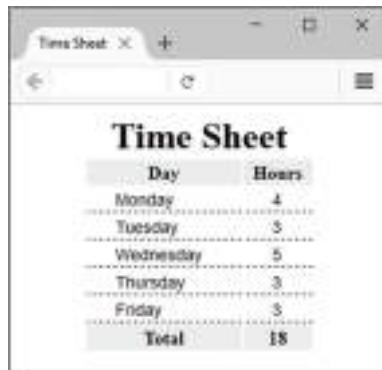
These groups can be useful when you need to configure the areas in the table in different ways, using either attributes or CSS. The `<tbody>` tag is required if you configure a `<thead>` or `<tfoot>` area, although you can omit either the table head or table footer if you like.

The following code sample (see chapter8/tfoot.html in the student files) configures the table shown in [Figure 8.12](#) and demonstrates the use of CSS to configure a table head, table body, and table footer with different styles.

---

**Figure 8.12 CSS configures the `thead`, `tbody`, and `tfoot` element selectors**

---



A screenshot of a web browser window titled "Time Sheet". The page contains a table with the following data:

Day	Hours
Monday	4
Tuesday	3
Wednesday	5
Thursday	3
Friday	3
Total	18

The CSS styles a centered 200-pixel-wide table with a caption that is rendered in large, bold font; a table head section with a light-gray (#EAEAEA) background color; a table body section styled with slightly

smaller text (.90em) using Arial or sans-serif font; table body td element selectors set to display with some left padding and a dashed bottom border; and a table footer section that has centered, bold text and a light-gray background color (#eaeaea). The CSS code is

```
table { width: 200px;
         margin: auto; }
caption { font-size: 2em;
           font-weight: bold; }
thead { background-color: #EAEAEA; }
tbody { font-family: Arial, sans-serif;
           font-size: .90em; }
tbody td { border-bottom: 1px #000033 dashed;
           padding-left: 25px; }
tfoot { background-color: #EAEAEA;
           font-weight: bold;
           text-align: center; }
```

The HTML for the table is

```
<table>
<caption>Time Sheet</caption>
<thead>
  <tr>
    <th id="day">Day</th>
    <th id="hours">Hours</th>
  </tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
  <tr>
    <td headers="day">Monday</td>
    <td headers="hours">4</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td headers="day">Tuesday</td>
    <td headers="hours">3</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td headers="day">Wednesday</td>
    <td headers="hours">5</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td headers="day">Thursday</td>
```

```
<td headers="hours">3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
    <td headers="day">Friday</td>
    <td headers="hours">3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
<tfoot>
    <tr>
        <td headers="day">Total</td>
        <td headers="hours">18</td>
    </tr>
</tfoot>
</table>
```

This example demonstrates the power of CSS in styling documents. The `<td>` tags within each table row group element selector (`thead`, `tbody`, and `tfoot`) inherited the font styles configured for their parent group element selector. Notice how a descendant selector configures the padding and border only for `<td>` tags that are contained within (actually, “children of”) the `<tbody>` element. Sample code is located in the student files (chapter8/tfoot.html). Take a few moments to explore the web page code and open the page in a browser.

## Checkpoint 8.2

1. Describe a reason to configure a table with CSS properties instead of HTML attributes.
2. List three elements that are used to group table rows.

# Chapter Summary

This chapter introduces both the HTML techniques used to code tables to organize information and the CSS properties that configure the display of tables on web pages. Visit the textbook website at <http://www.webdevfoundations.net> for examples, the links listed in this chapter, and updated information.

# Key Terms

[\*\*<caption>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<table>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<tbody>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<td>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<tfoot>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<th>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<thead>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<tr>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*:first-child\*\*](#)  
[\*\*:first-of-type\*\*](#)  
[\*\*:last-child\*\*](#)  
[\*\*:last-of-type\*\*](#)  
[\*\*:nth of type\*\*](#)  
[\*\*align attribute\*\*](#)  
[\*\*border attribute\*\*](#)  
[\*\*border-collapse property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*border-spacing property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*caption element\*\*](#)  
[\*\*caption-side property\*\*](#)  
[\*\*cell\*\*](#)  
[\*\*cellpadding attribute\*\*](#)  
[\*\*cellspacing attribute\*\*](#)  
[\*\*colspan attribute\*\*](#)  
[\*\*headers attribute\*\*](#)  
[\*\*rowspan attribute\*\*](#)  
[\*\*scope attribute\*\*](#)  
[\*\*structural pseudo-class selectors\*\*](#)  
[\*\*summary attribute\*\*](#)

[table element](#)<sup>①</sup>

[table data element](#)<sup>②</sup>

[table header element](#)<sup>①</sup>

[table row element](#)<sup>①</sup>

[vertical-align property](#)<sup>③</sup>

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. Which HTML tag pair is used to specify table headings?
  - a. `<td> </td>`
  - b. `<th> </th>`
  - c. `<head> </head>`
  - d. `<tr> </tr>`
2. Which CSS property specifies the background color of a table?
  - a. `background`
  - b. `bgcolor`
  - c. `background-color`
  - d. `table-color`
3. Which HTML tag pair is used to group rows in the footer of a table?
  - a. `<footer> </footer>`
  - b. `<tr> </tr>`
  - c. `<tfoot> </tfoot>`
  - d. `<td> </td>`
4. Which of the following describes the appearance of text within a `th` element?
  - a. the text is centered
  - b. the text is displayed one size larger
  - c. the text has bold font weight
  - d. the text has bold font weight and is centered
5. Which HTML attribute associates a table data cell with a table header cell?
  - a. `head`

b. align

c. headers

d. th

6. Which CSS property eliminates the space between the borders on table cells?

a. border-style

b. border-spacing

c. padding

d. cellspacing

7. Which HTML tag pair is used to begin and end a table row?

a. <td> </td>

b. <tbody> </tbody>

c. <table> </table>

d. <tr> </tr>

8. Which of the following is the intended use of tables on web pages?

a. configuring the layout of an entire page

b. organizing information

c. forming hyperlinks

d. configuring a resume

9. Which CSS property specifies the distance between the cell text and the cell border?

a. border-style

b. padding

c. border-spacing

d. cellpadding

10. Which CSS pseudo-class applies to the first element of a specified type?

a. :first-of-type

b. :first-type

c. :first-child

d. `:first`

## Fill in the Blank

11. The CSS \_\_\_\_\_ property can be used to configure the color and width of a table border.
12. The \_\_\_\_\_ CSS property specifies the vertical alignment of the contents of a cell in a table.
13. Use the \_\_\_\_\_ attribute to configure a table cell to occupy more than one row in the table.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ is an attribute of the td element that associates the table data cell with a table header cell.
15. Use the \_\_\_\_\_ element to provide a brief description of a table that displays on the web page.

# Apply Your Knowledge

- 1. PREDICT THE RESULT.** Draw and write a brief description of the web page that will be created with the following HTML code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Predict the Result</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<table>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>School</th>
<th>Major</th>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2014-2018</td>
<td>Schaumburg High School</td>
<td>College Prep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2018-2020</td>
<td>Harper College</td>
<td>Web Development Associates Degree</td>
</tr>
</table>
</body>
</html>
```

- 2. FILL IN THE MISSING CODE.** This web page should have a table with a background color of #cccccc and a border. Some CSS properties and values, indicated by "\_", are missing. Fill in the missing code.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>CircleSoft Web Design</title>
```

```

<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
table { border-collapse: collapse;
         border: 1px solid black; }
</style>
</head>
<body>
<h1>CircleSoft Web Design</h1>
<table>
<caption>Contact Information</caption>
<tr>
    <th>Name</th>
    <th>Phone</th>
</tr>
<tr>
    <td>Mike Circle</td>
    <td>920-555-5555</td>
</tr>
</table>
</body>
</html>

```

- 3. FIND THE ERROR.** Why doesn't the table information display in the order it was coded?

```

<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>CircleSoft Web Design</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<h1>CircleSoft Web Design</h1>
<table>
<caption>Contact Information</caption>
<tr>
    <th>Name</th>
    <th>Phone</th>
</tr>
<tr>
    <tr>Mike Circle</td>
    <td>920-555-5555</td>
</tr>
</table>
</body>
</html>

```

# Hands-On Exercises

1. Write the HTML for a two-column table that contains the names of your friends and their birthdays. The first row of the table should span two columns and contain the following heading: Birthday List. Include at least two people in your table.
2. Write the HTML for a three-column table to describe the courses you are taking this semester. The columns should contain the course number, course name, and instructor name. The first row of the table should use `th` tags and contain descriptive headings for the columns. Use the table row grouping tags `<thead>` and `<tbody>` in your table.
3. Write the HTML for a table with three rows, two columns, and no border. The cell in the first column of each row will contain the name of one of your favorite movies. The corresponding cell in the second column of each row will contain a description of the movie. Configure alternating rows to use the background color `#CCCCCC`.
4. Use CSS to configure a table that has a border around both the entire table and the table cells. Write the HTML to create a table with three rows and two columns. The cell in the first column of each row will contain the name of one of your favorite movies. The corresponding cell in the second column of each row will contain a description of the movie.
5. Modify the table you created in [Hands-On Exercise 1](#) to be centered on the page, use a background color of `#CCCC99`, and display text in Arial or the browser default sans-serif font. Configure this table using CSS instead of obsolete HTML attributes. Place an e-mail link to yourself on the web page. Save the file as `mytable.html`.

- 6.** Create a web page about your favorite sports team with a two-column table that lists the positions and starting players. Use embedded CSS to style the table border, background color, and center the table on the web page. Place an e-mail link to yourself on the web page. Save the file as sport8.html.
- 7.** Create a web page about your favorite movie that uses a two-column table containing details about the movie. Use CSS to style the table border and background color. Include the following in the table:
- Title of the movie
  - Director or producer
  - Leading actor
  - Leading actress
  - Rating (G, PG, PG-13, R, NC-17, NR)
  - A brief description of the movie
  - An absolute link to a review about the movie
- Place an e-mail link to yourself on the web page. Save the page as movie8.html.
- 8.** Create a web page about your favorite music album that uses a four-column table. The column headings should be as follows:
- **GROUP:** Place the name of the group and the names of its principal members in this column.
  - **TRACKS:** List the title of each music track or song.
  - **YEAR:** List the year the album was recorded.
  - **LINKS:** Place at least two absolute links to sites about the group in this column.
- Include an e-mail link to yourself on the web page. Save the page as band8.html.
- 9.** Create a web page about your favorite recipe. Organize the ingredients and directions in a single table. Use two columns for the ingredients. Use a row that spans two columns to contain the

instructions for creating your culinary delight. Place an e-mail link to yourself on the web page. Save the page as recipe8.html.

# Web Research

Search the Web and find a web page configured with one or more HTML tables. Print the browser view of the page. Print out the source code of the web page. On the printout, highlight or circle the tags related to tables. On a separate sheet of paper, create some HTML notes by listing the tags and attributes related to tables found on your sample page, along with a brief description of their purpose. Hand in the browser view of the page, source code printout, and your HTML notes page to your instructor.

# Focus on Web Design

Good artists view and analyze many paintings. Good writers read and evaluate many books. Similarly, good web designers view and scrutinize many web pages. Search the Web and find two web pages, one that is appealing to you and one that is unappealing to you. Print out each page. Create a web page that answers the following questions for each of your examples:

- a. What is the URL of the website?
- b. Does this page use tables? If so, for what purpose (page layout, organization of information, or another reason)?
- c. Does this page use CSS? If so, for what purpose (page layout, text and color configuration, or another reason)?
- d. Is this page appealing or unappealing? List three reasons for your answer.
- e. If this page is unappealing, what would you do to improve it?

---

## Website Case Study Using Tables

Each of the following case studies continues throughout most of the textbook. This chapter incorporates an HTML table in the case study websites.

### JavaJam Coffee Bar

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the JavaJam Coffee Bar case study. [Figure 2.32](#) shows a site map for JavaJam. Use the [Chapter 7](#) JavaJam website as a starting point for this case study. In this case study, you will modify the Menu page

(menu.html) to display information in an HTML table. You will use CSS to style the table. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this JavaJam case study.
2. Modify the style sheet (javajam.css) to configure style rules for the new table.
3. Modify the Menu page to use a table to display information as shown in [Figure 8.13](#).

---

**Figure 8.13 Menu page with a table**

---



## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called javajam8. Copy all the files from your [Chapter 7](#) javajam7 folder into the javajam8 folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Modify the external style sheet (javajam.css). Open javajam.css in a text editor. Review [Figure 8.13](#) and note the menu descriptions, which are coded in an HTML table. Add style rules above the media queries in the javajam.css external style sheet

to configure a table that is centered, takes up 90% the width of its container, and is configured with 0 `border-spacing`. Configure `td` and `th` selectors with 10 pixels of padding. Also configure a background color of #D2B48E in alternate rows (use a class or the `:nth-of-type` pseudo-class to configure odd table rows). Save the `javajam.css` file.

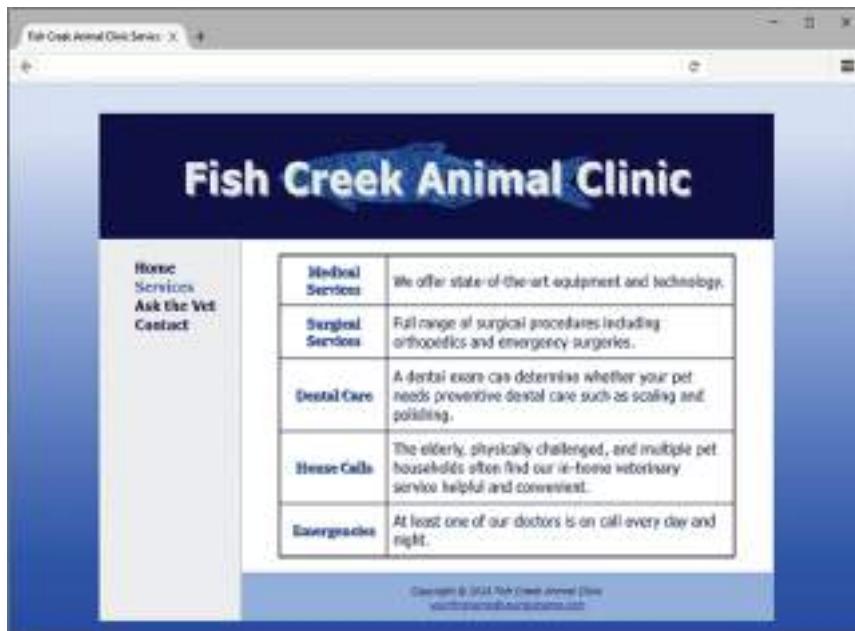
**TASK 3: MODIFY THE MENU PAGE.** Open `menu.html` in a text editor. Each menu item consists of a title (within `h3` tags) and a description (within `p` tags). You will format this information with a table that has three rows and two columns. Use `th` and `td` elements where appropriate. Delete the `h3`, `p`, and `section` tags that surround each menu item. Save your page and test it in a browser. If the page does not display as you intended, review your work, validate the CSS, validate the HTML, modify as needed, and test again.

## Fish Creek Animal Clinic

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Fish Creek Animal Clinic case study. [Figure 2.36](#) shows a site map for Fish Creek. Use the [Chapter 7](#) Fish Creek website as a starting point for this case study. You will modify the Services page (`services.html`) to display information in an HTML table. You will use CSS to style the table. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Fish Creek case study.
2. Modify the style sheet (`fishcreek.css`) to configure style rules for the new table.
3. Modify the Services page to use a table to display information as shown in [Figure 8.14](#).

**Figure 8.14 Services page with a table**



## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called fishcreek8. Copy all the files from your **Chapter 7** fishcreek7 folder into the fishcreek8 folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Modify the external style sheet (fishcreek.css). Open fishcreek.css in a text editor. Review **Figure 8.14** and note the services descriptions, which are coded in an HTML table. Add style rules above the media queries in the fishcreek.css external style sheet as indicated:

1. Configure a table that has a 1em margin and a dark blue, 2 pixel border.
2. Configure the borders in the table to collapse (use `border-collapse: collapse;`).
3. Configure td and th element selectors with 0.5em of padding and a dark blue 1 pixel border.

Save the fishcreek.css file.

**TASK 3: MODIFY THE SERVICES PAGE.** Open services.html in a text editor. Each service item consists of a title (within h3 tags) and a description (within p tags). You will format this information with a table that has five rows and two columns. Use th and td elements where appropriate. Delete the h3, p, and section tags that surround each service item. Save your page and test it in a browser. If the page does not display as you intended, review your work, validate the CSS, validate the HTML, modify as needed, and test again.

## Pacific Trails Resort

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Pacific Trails Resort case study. [Figure 2.40](#) shows a site map for Pacific Trails. Use the [Chapter 7](#) Pacific Trails website as a starting point for this case study. You will modify the Yurts page (yurts.html) to display additional information in an HTML table. You will use CSS to style the table. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Pacific Trails case study.
2. Modify the style sheet (pacific.css) to configure style rules for the new table.
3. Modify the Yurts page to use a table to display information as shown in [Figure 8.15](#).

---

**Figure 8.15 Yurts page with a table**

---

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Pacific Trails Resort". The main content area features a large image of a yurt nestled in a forested hillside overlooking a body of water. Below the image, the text "The Yurts at Pacific Trails" is displayed. Three columns of text provide information: "What is a yurt?", "How are the yurts furnished?", and "What should I bring?". A section titled "Yurt Packages" follows, with a table listing three package options: "Weekend Escape", "Zen Retreat", and "Cayak Away". Each package includes a description, the number of nights, and the cost per person. At the bottom of the page, there is a copyright notice: "Copyright © 2010 Pacific Trails Resort <http://www.pacifictrailsresort.com>".

Package Name	Description	Nights	Cost per Person
Weekend Escape	Two breakfasts, a trail map, a picnic lunch	2	\$450
Zen Retreat	Four breakfasts, a trail map, a pass for daily yoga	4	\$800
Cayak Away	Three breakfasts, two hours of kayak rental daily, a trail map	2	\$500

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called pacific8. Copy all the files from your Chapter 7 pacific7 folder into the pacific8 folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Modify the external style sheet (pacific.css). Open pacific.css in a text editor. Add styles above the media queries to configure the table on the Yurts page as shown in Figure 8.15.

1. Configure the table. Code a new style rule for the table element selector that configures a centered table with a 1 pixel blue border (#3399CC) and 90% width. Also configure the borders in the table to collapse (use `border-collapse: collapse;`).
2. Configure the table cells. Code a new style rule for the td and th element selectors that configure 5 pixels of padding and a 1 pixel blue border (#3399CC).
3. Center the td content. Code a new style rule for the td element selector that centers text (use `text-align: center;`).
4. Configure the `text` class. Notice that the content in the table data cells that contain the text description is not centered. Code a new style rule for a class named `text` that will override the td style rule and left-align the text (use `text-align: left;`).
5. Configure alternate-row background color. The table looks more appealing if the rows have alternate background colors, but it is still readable without them. Apply the `:nth-of-type` CSS pseudo-class to configure the even table rows with a light-blue background color (#DFEDF8).
6. Save the pacific.css file.

**TASK 3: MODIFY THE YURTS PAGE.** Open yurts.html in a text editor.

1. Configure an h3 element with the following text: “Yurt Packages” above the closing main tag.

- 2.** Below the new h3 element, configure a paragraph with the following text:

A variety of luxury yurt packages are available.

Choose a package below and contact us to begin your reservation. We're happy to build a custom package just for you!

- 3.** You are ready to configure the table. Code a table below the paragraph with four rows and four columns. Use the table, th, and td elements. Assign the td elements that contain the detailed descriptions to the class named `text`. The content for the table is as follows.

<b>Package Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Nights</b>	<b>Cost per Person</b>
Weekend Escape	Two breakfasts, a trail map, a picnic snack	2	\$450
Zen Retreat	Four breakfasts, a trail map, a pass for daily yoga	4	\$600

Package Name	Description	Nights	Cost per Person
Kayak	Two	2	\$500
Away	breakfasts, two hours of kayak rental daily, a trail map		

Save your page and test it in a browser. If the page does not display as you intended, review your work, validate the CSS, validate the HTML, modify as needed, and test again.

## Path of Light Yoga Studio

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Path of Light Yoga Studio case study. [Figure 2.44](#) shows a site map for Path of Light Yoga Studio. Use the [Chapter 7](#) Path of Light Yoga Studio website as a starting point for this case study. You will modify the Schedule page (schedule.html) to display the class schedule in an HTML table. You will use CSS to style the table. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Path of Light Yoga Studio case study.
2. Modify the style sheet (yoga.css) to configure style rules for the new table.
3. Modify the Schedule page to use a table to display information as shown in [Figure 8.16](#).

**Figure 8.16 Schedule page with tables**

The screenshot shows a website for "Path of Light Yoga Studio". The header features a sunset background and navigation links for Home, Classes, Schedule, and Contact. The main content area is titled "Yoga Schedule" and includes a note about mats, blocks, and blankets. It lists classes for Monday-Friday and Saturday-Sunday, each with a corresponding table.

**Monday – Friday**

Time	Class
8:00am	Gentle Hatha Yoga
10:15am	Vinyasa Yoga
5:00pm	Restorative Yoga
7:00pm	Gentle Hatha Yoga

**Saturday & Sunday**

Time	Class
10:15am	Gentle Hatha Yoga
11am	Vinyasa Yoga
1:30pm	Gentle Hatha Yoga
3:00pm	Vinyasa Yoga
5:30pm	Restorative Yoga

A photograph of a studio interior with a wooden floor, a large window, and a small round table is displayed below the schedule.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called yoga8. Copy all the files from your [Chapter 7](#) yoga7 folder into the yoga8 folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Modify the external style sheet (yoga.css). Open yoga.css in a text editor. Review

**Figure 8.16** and note the class schedule information, which is coded in two HTML tables. Add style rules above the media queries in the yoga.css external style sheet to configure the following:

1. A centered table with 60% width, a 1 pixel purple (#3F2860) border, collapsed borders (use `border-collapse: collapse;`), and a 1em bottom margin.
2. A style for the td and th element selectors that configures 5 pixels of padding and a 1 pixel purple border (#3F2860).
3. Configure alternate-row background color. The table looks more appealing if the rows have alternate background colors, but it is still readable without them. Apply the :nth-of-type CSS pseudo-class to configure the even table rows with a #DBE8E9 background color.
4. A caption element selector with a 1em margin, bold text, and 120% font size.

Save the yoga.css file.

**TASK 3: MODIFY THE SCHEDULE PAGE.** Open schedule.html in a text editor. You will rework the page to use two tables to display the schedule information instead of the section, h3, and unordered list tags. Remove the tags for the section elements, h3 elements, ul elements, li elements, and the div assigned to the flow id. Use a caption element within each table. Note that the table rows have two columns. Configure “Time” and “Class” table headings within each table. Refer to **Figure 8.16**.

Save your page and test it in a browser. If the page does not display as you intended, review your work, validate the CSS, validate the HTML, modify as needed, and test again.

## Web Project

See [Chapters 5](#) and [6](#) for an introduction to the Web Project case study. You will modify the design of one of the pages to display information in an HTML table. Use CSS to style the table.

### Hands-On Practice Case Study

1. Choose one of your project web pages to modify. Sketch a design of the table you plan to create. Decide on borders, background color, padding, alignment, and so on.
2. Modify your project's external CSS file (project.css) to configure the table (and table cells) as needed.
3. Update your chosen web page and add the HTML code for a table.

Save and test the page. Modify both the web page and the project.css file as needed. Test and modify until you have achieved the look you want.

# 9

## Forms



---

This section contains a large, empty white area for filling out forms. A vertical red bar on the left side features a white downward-pointing arrow at its top, indicating where to begin.



## Chapter Objectives

---

### IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .

- Describe common uses of forms on web pages
- Create forms on web pages using the form, input, textarea, and select elements
- Create forms that provide additional accessibility features using the accesskey and tabindex attributes
- Associate form controls and groups using the label, fieldset, and legend elements
- Create custom image buttons and use the button element
- Use the CSS float property to style a form
- Use CSS Grid Layout to style a form
- Configure form controls new to HTML5, including the e-mail address, URL, datalist, range, spinner, calendar, and color controls
- Describe the features and common uses of server-side processing
- Invoke server-side processing to handle form data
- Find free server-side processing resources on the Web

**Forms are used for many purposes all over the Web.** They are used by search engines to accept keywords and by online stores to process e-commerce shopping carts. Websites use forms to help with a variety of functions, including accepting visitor feedback, encouraging visitors to send a news story to a friend or colleague, collecting e-mail addresses for a newsletter, and accepting order information. This chapter introduces a

very powerful tool for web developers—forms that accept information from web page visitors.

## 9.1 Overview of Forms

Every time you use a search engine, place an order, or join an online mailing list, you use a **form**. A form is an HTML element that contains and organizes objects called **form controls**, including text boxes, check boxes, and buttons, that can accept information from website visitors.

For example, you may have used Google's search form (<https://www.google.com>) many times but never thought about how it works.

The form is quite simple; it contains just three form controls: the text box that accepts the keywords used in the search and two search buttons. The "Google Search" button submits the form and invokes a process to search the Google databases and display a results page. The whimsical "I'm Feeling Lucky" button submits the form and displays the top page for your keywords.

Figure 9.1 shows a form that is used to enter shipping information. This form contains text boxes to accept information such as name and address. Select lists (sometimes called drop-down boxes) are used to capture information with a limited number of correct values, such as state and country information.

---

**Figure 9.1 This form accepts shipping information**

---

## Shipping Address

Name:

Address Line 1:

Address Line 2:

City:

State:

Zip:

Country:

**Continue**

When a visitor clicks the continue button, the form information is submitted and the ordering process continues.

Whether a form is used to search for web pages or to order a publication, the form alone cannot do all of the processing. The form needs to invoke a program or script on the web server in order to search a database or record an order. There are usually two components of a form:

1. The HTML form itself, which is the web page user interface
2. The server-side processing, which works with the form data and sends e-mail, writes to a text file, updates a database, or performs some other type of processing on the server

## Form Element

Now that you have a basic understanding of what forms do, let's focus on the HTML code to create a form. The **form element** contains a form on a web page. The `<form>` tag specifies the beginning of a form area. The closing `</form>` tag specifies the end of a form area. There can be multiple forms on a web page, but they cannot be nested inside one another. The form element can be configured with attributes that specify which server-side program or file will process the form, how the form information will be sent to the server, and the name of the form. These attributes are listed in [Table 9.1](#).

---

**Table 9.1 Attributes of the form element**

Attribute	Value	Purpose
action	URL or file name/path of server-side processing script	Required; indicates where to send the form information when the form is submitted; mailto:e-mailaddress will launch the visitor's default e-mail application to send the form information

<b>Attribute</b>	<b>Value</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
autocomplete	on	Default value; browser will use autocomplete to fill form fields
	off	Browser will not use autocomplete to fill form fields
<code>id</code>	Alphanumeric, no spaces; the value must be unique and not used for other id values on the same web page document	Optional; provides a unique identifier for the form

Attribute	Value	Purpose
method	get post	<p>Default value; the value of get causes the form data to be appended to the URL and sent to the web server</p> <p>The post method is more private and transmits the form data in the body of the HTTP response; this method is preferred by the W3C; the post method must be used if enctype is set to multipart/form-data</p>
name	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter; choose a form name value that is descriptive but short (for example, OrderForm is better than Form1 or WidgetsRUsOrderForm)	Optional; names the form so that it can be easily accessed by client-side scripting languages to edit and verify the form information before the server-side processing is invoked

Attribute	Value	Purpose
enctype	application/x-www-form-urlencoded (default) multipart/form-data (required when uploading a file) text-plain (spaces are converted to "+")	Indicates how the data on the form should be encoded when sent to the server. The attribute is required when the form will upload one or more files.

For example, to configure a form with the `name` attribute set to the value "order", using the `post` method and invoking a script called `demo.php` on your web server, the code is

```
<form name="order" method="post" id="order"
action="demo.php">
. . . form controls go here . . .
</form>
```

## Form Controls

The purpose of a form is to gather information from a web page visitor. Form controls are the objects that accept the information. Types of form controls include text boxes, scrolling text boxes, select lists, radio buttons, check boxes, and buttons. HTML5 offers new form controls, including those that are customized for e-mail addresses, URLs, dates, times, numbers, and even date selection. HTML elements that configure form controls will be introduced in the following sections.

## 9.2 Input Element Form Controls

The **input element** is a stand-alone, or void, tag that is used to configure several different types of form controls. The input element is not coded as a pair of opening and closing tags. Use the **type** attribute to specify the type of form control that the browser should display.

### Text Box

The **<input>** tag with **type="text"** configures a **text box** form control. The text box form control accepts text or numeric information such as names, e-mail addresses, phone numbers, and other text. Common input element attributes for text boxes are listed in [Table 9.2](#). A text box is shown in [Figure 9.2](#).

---

**Table 9.2 Common text box attributes**

Attribute	Value	Purpose
type	text	Configures a text box
name	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Names the form element so that it can be easily accessed by client-side scripting languages or by server-side processing; the name should be unique

Attribute	Value	Purpose
<code>id</code>	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Provides a unique identifier for the form element
<code>size</code>	Numeric value	Configures the width of the text box as displayed by the browser; if <code>size</code> is omitted, the browser displays the text box with its own default size
<code>maxlength</code>	Numeric value	Configures the maximum length of data accepted by the text box
<code>value</code>	Text or numeric characters	Assigns an initial value to the text box that is displayed by the browser; accepts information typed in the text box; this value can be accessed by client-side scripting languages and by server-side processing
<code>disabled</code>		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, the form control is disabled

<b>Attribute</b>	<b>Value</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
readonly		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, the form control is for display; cannot be edited
autocomplete	on, off, token, value	Supporting browsers will use autocompletion to fill in the form control; See <a href="https://www.w3.org/TR/html51/sec-forms.html#autofilling-form-controls-the-autocomplete-attribute">https://www.w3.org/TR/html51/sec-forms.html#autofilling-form-controls-the-autocomplete-attribute</a>
autofocus		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, the browser places cursor in the form control and sets the focus
list	Datalist element id value	Associates the form control with a datalist element
placeholder	Text or numeric characters	Brief information intended to assist the user

Attribute	Value	Purpose
required		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, the browser verifies entry of information before submitting the form
accesskey	Keyboard character	Configures a hot key for the form control
tabindex	Numeric value	Configures the tab order of the form control

---

**Figure 9.2 The `<input>` tag with `type="text"` configures this form element**

---

## Sample Text Box

E-mail:

The code for the text box is shown below:

```
E-mail: <input type="text" name="email" id="email">
```

You may have noticed that there is no value indicated for the disabled, readonly, autofocus, and required attributes in [Table 9.2](#). These attributes are boolean attributes. A boolean attribute is not coded with a value. If a **boolean attribute** is present, the browser behavior is triggered. The **required attribute** is a boolean attribute that will cause supporting browsers to perform form validation. Browsers that support the required attribute will automatically verify that information has been entered in the text box and display an error message when the condition is not met. In the code sample below, the required attribute is coded without a value:

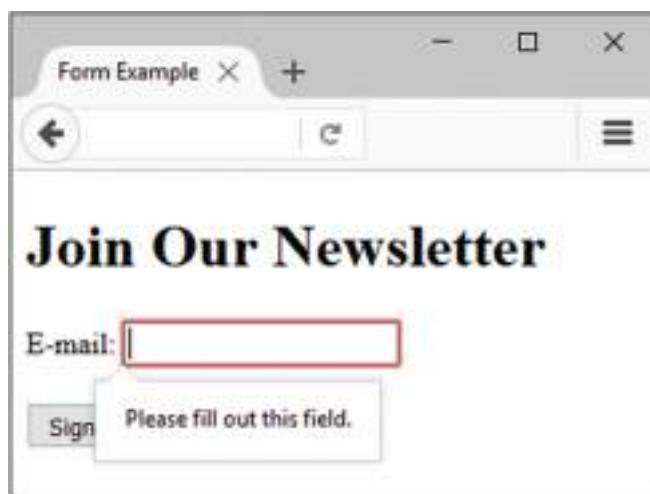
```
E-mail: <input type="text" name="email" id="email" required>
```

[Figure 9.3](#) shows an error message automatically generated by Firefox that is displayed after the user clicked the form's submit button without entering information in the required text box. Browsers that do not support the required attribute will ignore the attribute.

---

**Figure 9.3 The browser displayed an error message**

---



## FAQ

Why use both the name and id attributes on form controls?

The **name** attribute names the form element so that it can be easily accessed by client-side scripting languages such as JavaScript and by server-side processing languages such as PHP. The value given to a **name** attribute for a form element should be unique for that form. The **id** attribute is included for use with CSS and access by client-side scripting languages such as JavaScript. The value of the **id** attribute should be unique to the entire web page document that contains the form. Typically, the values assigned to the **name** and **id** attributes on a particular form element are the same.

## Submit Button

The **submit button** form control is used to submit the form. When clicked, it triggers the action method on the form element and causes the browser to send the form data (the name and value pairs for each form control) to the web server. The web server will invoke the server-side processing program or script listed on the form's action property.

The input element with **type="submit"** configures a submit button. For example,

```
<input type="submit">
```

## Reset Button

The **reset button** form control is used to reset the form fields to their initial values. A reset button does not submit the form.

The input element with `type="reset"` configures a reset button.

For example,

```
<input type="reset">
```

A form with a text box, a submit button, and a reset button is shown in [Figure 9.4](#).

---

**Figure 9.4 This form contains a text box, a submit button, and a reset button**

---

The image shows a simple HTML form titled "Sample Form". At the top, it has a text input field with the label "E-mail:" to its left. Below the input field are two buttons: "Submit Query" on the left and "Reset" on the right. All elements are contained within a single rectangular form structure.

Common attributes for submit buttons and reset buttons are listed in [Table 9.3](#).

---

**Table 9.3 Common attributes for submit and reset buttons**

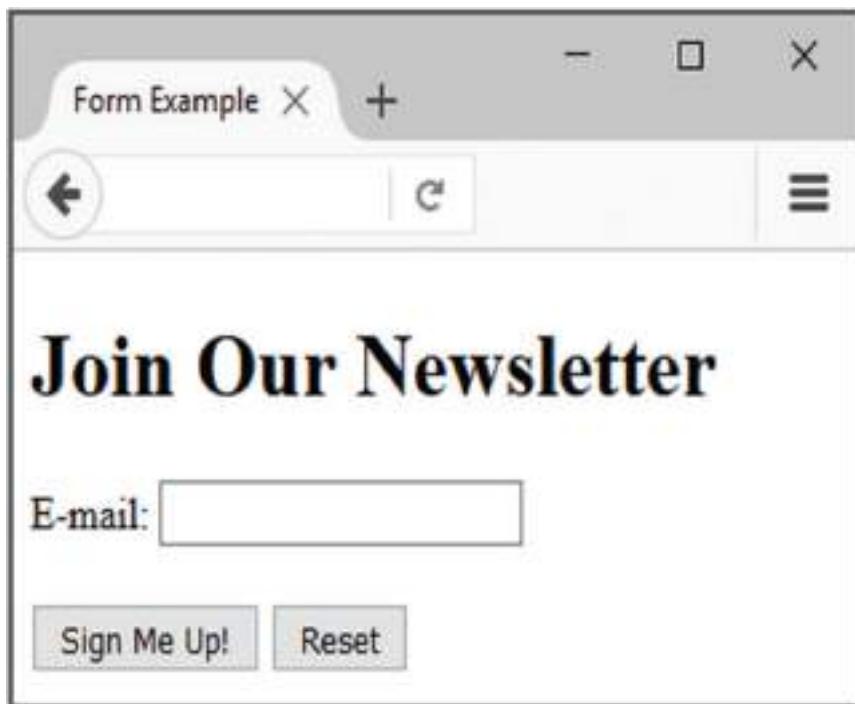
---

<b>Attribute</b>	<b>Value</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
type	submit	Configures a submit button
	reset	Configures a reset button
name	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Names the form element so that it can be easily accessed by client-side scripting languages (such as JavaScript) or by server-side processing; the name should be unique
id	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Provides a unique identifier for the form element
value	Text or numeric characters	Configures the text displayed on the button; a submit button displays the text “Submit Query” by default; a reset button displays “Reset” by default
accesskey	Keyboard character	Configures a hot key for the form control
tabindex	Numeric value	Configures the tab order of the form control

## Hands-On Practice 9.1

You will code a form in this Hands-On Practice. To get started, launch a text editor and open chapter9/template.html in the student files. Save the file as form1.html. You will create a web page with a form similar to the example in [Figure 9.5](#).

**Figure 9.5** The text on the submit button says “Sign Me Up!”



1. Modify the title element to display the text “Form Example”.
2. Configure an h1 element with the text “Join Our Newsletter”.

You are ready to configure the form area. A form begins with the `form` element. Insert a blank line under the heading you just added and type in a `<form>` tag as follows:

```
<form method="get">
```

In your first form, we are using the minimal HTML needed to create the form; we'll begin working with the `action` attribute later in the chapter.

3. To create the form control for the visitor's e-mail address to be entered, type the following code on a blank line below the form element:

```
E-mail: <input type="text" name="email" id="email"><br><br>
```

This places the text "E-mail:" in front of the text box used to enter the visitor's e-mail address. The `input` element has a `type` attribute with the value of `text` that causes the browser to display a text box. The `name` attribute assigns the name `e-mail` to the information entered into the text box (the `value`) and could be used by server-side processing. The `id` attribute uniquely identifies the element on the page. The `<br>` elements configure line breaks.

4. Now you are ready to add the submit button to the form on the next line. Add a `value` attribute set to "Sign Me Up!":

```
<input type="submit" value="Sign Me Up!">
```

This causes the browser to display a button with "Sign Me Up!" instead of the default value of "Submit Query".

5. Add a blank space after the submit button and code a reset button:

```
<input type="reset">
```

6. Next, code the closing form tag:

```
</form>
```

Save form1.html and test your web page in a browser. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 9.5](#).

You can compare your work with the solution found in the student files (chapter9/9.1/form.html). Try entering some information into your form. Try clicking the submit button. Don't worry if the form redisplays but nothing seems to happen when you click the button—you haven't configured this form to work with any server-side processing. Connecting forms to server-side processing is demonstrated later in this chapter. The next sections will introduce you to more form controls.

## Check Box

The **check box** form control allows the user to select one or more of a group of predetermined items. The input element with `type="checkbox"` configures a check box. Common check box attributes are listed in [Table 9.4](#).

**Table 9.4 Common check box attributes**

Attribute	Value	Purpose
<code>type</code>	<code>checkbox</code>	Configures a check box

<b>Attribute</b>	<b>Value</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
name	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Names the form element so that it can be easily accessed by client-side scripting languages (such as JavaScript) or by server-side processing; the name should be unique
id	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Provides a unique identifier for the form element
checked		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, the browser displays the check box as checked
value	Text or numeric characters	Assigns a value to the check box that is triggered when the check box is checked; this value can be accessed by client-side and server-side processing
disabled		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, form control is disabled

Attribute	Value	Purpose
readonly		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, form control is for display; cannot be edited
autofocus		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, browser places cursor in the form control and sets the focus
required		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, browser verifies entry of information before submitting the form
accesskey	Keyboard character	Configures a hot key for the form control
tabindex	Numeric value	Configures the tab order of the form control

Figure 9.6 shows an example with several check boxes. Note that more than one check box can be selected by the user. The HTML is

```
Choose the browsers you use: <br>
<input type="checkbox" name="GO" id="GO" value="yes">
Google Chrome<br>
<input type="checkbox" name="Firefox" id="Firefox">
```

```
value="yes"> Firefox<br>
<input type="checkbox" name="Edge" id="Edge"
value="yes"> Microsoft Edge<br>
```

---

Figure 9.6 Sample check box

---

## Sample Check Box

Choose the browsers you use:

- Google Chrome
- Firefox
- Microsoft Edge

## Radio Button

The **radio button** form control allows the user to select exactly one (and only one) choice from a group of predetermined items. Each radio button in a group is given the same `name` attribute and a unique `value` attribute. Because the name attribute is the same, the elements are identified as part of a group by the browsers and only one may be selected.

The input element with `type="radio"` configures a radio button. Figure 9.7 shows an example with a radio button group. Note that only one radio button can be selected at a time by the user. Common radio button attributes are listed in Table 9.5. The HTML is

```
Select your favorite browser:<br>
<input type="radio" name="favbrowser" id="favGO"
value="GO"> Google
```

```
Chrome<br>
<input type="radio" name="favbrowser" id="favFirefox">
value="Firefox">
Firefox<br>
<input type="radio" name="favbrowser" id="favEdge">
value="Edge">
Microsoft Edge<br>
```

---

**Figure 9.7** Use radio buttons when only one choice is an appropriate response

---

## Sample Radio Button

Select your favorite browser:

- Google Chrome
- Firefox
- Microsoft Edge

---

**Table 9.5** Common radio button attributes

---

Attribute	Value	Purpose
type	radio	Configures a radio button
name	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Names the form element so that it can be easily accessed by client-side scripting languages or by server-side processing

<b>Attribute</b>	<b>Value</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
<code>id</code>	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Provides a unique identifier for the form element
<code>checked</code>		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, the browser displays the radio button as selected
<code>value</code>	Text or numeric characters	Assigns a value to the radio button that is triggered when the radio button is selected; this should be a unique value for each radio button in a group
<code>disabled</code>		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, form control is disabled
<code>readonly</code>		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, form control is for display; cannot be edited

Attribute	Value	Purpose
autofocus		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, browser places cursor in the form control and sets the focus
required		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, browser verifies entry of information before submitting the form
accesskey	Keyboard character	Configures a hot key for the form control
tabindex	Numeric value	Configures the tab order of the form control

Notice that all the `name` attributes have the same value: `favbrowser`.

Radio buttons with the same `name` attribute are treated as a group by the browser. Each radio button in the same group can be uniquely identified by its `value` attribute. Common radio button attributes are listed in [Table 9.5](#).

## Hidden Input Control

The **hidden input control** stores text or numeric information, but it is not visible in the browser viewport. Hidden controls can be accessed by both client-side scripting and server-side processing.

The input element with `type="hidden"` configures a hidden input control. Common attributes for hidden input controls are listed in [Table 9.6](#). The HTML to create a hidden input control with the `name` attribute set to “sendto” and the `value` attribute set to an e-mail address is

```
<input type="hidden" name="sendto" id="sendto"
value="order@site.com">
```

---

**Table 9.6 Common hidden input control attributes**

Attribute	Value	Purpose
<code>type</code>	hidden	Configures a hidden element
<code>name</code>	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Names the form element so that it can be easily accessed by client-side scripting languages or by server-side processing; the name should be unique
<code>id</code>	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Provides a unique identifier for the form element
<code>value</code>	Text or numeric characters	Assigns a value to the hidden control; this value can be accessed by client-side scripting languages and server-side processing

Attribute	Value	Purpose
disabled		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, form control is disabled

## File Upload Control

The **file upload control** form control provides for files to be uploaded.

The input element with `type="file"` configures a file upload control. The form control display varies depending on the browser and operating system being used. The user is able to choose one or more files to upload. Common attributes for the file upload control are listed in [Table 9.7](#).

Note that `enctype="multipart/form-data"` must be coded on the form element when the form contains a file upload control. The HTML to create a form control that accepts a typical photograph file is

```
Profile Photo:  
<input type="file" name="photo" id="photo"  
accept="images/*"
```

**Table 9.7 Common file upload form control attributes**

Attribute	Value	Purpose
type	input	Configure a file upload control

Attribute	Value	Purpose
name	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Names the form element so that it can be easily accessed by client-side scripting languages or by server-side processing; the name should be unique
id	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Provides a unique identifier for the form element
accept	A comma delineated list of file extensions and/or MIME types	Indicates which file types are acceptable for upload. For example, the value "image/*" accepts any file with an image MIME type; See <a href="https://www.w3.org/TR/html-media-capture/">https://www.w3.org/TR/html-media-capture/</a>
capture	user  environment	File is captured from the inward-facing camera/microphone  File is captured from the outward-facing camera/microphone
multiple		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, more than one file can be uploaded

## Password Box

The **password box** form control is similar to the text box, but it is used to accept information that must be hidden as it is entered, such as a password.

The input element with `type="password"` configures a password box.

When the user types information in a password box, asterisks (or another symbol, depending on the browser) are displayed instead of the characters that have been typed, as shown in [Figure 9.8](#). This hides the information from someone looking over the shoulder of the person typing. The actual characters typed are sent to the server and the information is not really secret or hidden. See [Chapter 12](#) for a discussion of encryption and security.

---

**Figure 9.8** The characters `secret9` were typed, but the browser does not display them. (Note: Your browser may use a different symbol, such as a stylized circle, to hide the characters.)

---

### Sample Password Box

Password:

A password box is a specialized text box. See [Table 9.2](#) for a list of text box attributes.

The HTML is

```
Password: <input type="password" name="pword"  
id="pword">
```



## 9.3 Scrolling Text Box

### Textarea Element

The **scrolling text box** form control accepts free-form comments, questions, or descriptions. The **textarea element** configures a scrolling text box. The `<textarea>` tag denotes the beginning of the scrolling text box. The closing `</textarea>` tag denotes the end of the scrolling text box. Text contained between the tags will display in the scrolling text box area. A sample scrolling text box is shown in [Figure 9.9](#).

---

**Figure 9.9 Scrolling text box**

---

### Sample Scrolling Text Box

Comments:



Common attributes for scrolling text boxes are listed in [Table 9.8](#). The HTML is

```
Comments:<br>
<textarea name="comments" id="comments" cols="40"
rows="2"> Enter your
comments here</textarea>
```

**Table 9.8 Common scrolling text box attributes**

Attribute	Value	Purpose
name	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Names the form element so that it can be easily accessed by client-side scripting languages or by server-side processing; the name should be unique
id	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Provides a unique identifier for the form element
cols	Numeric value	Required; configures the width in character columns of the scrolling text box; if cols is omitted, the browser displays the scrolling text box with its own default width
rows	Numeric value	Required; configures the height in rows of the scrolling text box; if rows is omitted, the browser displays the scrolling text box with its own default height
maxlength	Numeric value	Configures the maximum length of data accepted by the text box

Attribute	Value	Purpose
disabled		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, form control is disabled
readonly		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, form control is for display; cannot be edited
autofocus		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, browser places cursor in the form control and sets the focus
placeholder	Text or numeric characters	Brief information intended to assist the user
required		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, browser verifies entry of information before submitting the form
wrap	hard OR soft (default)	Configures line breaks within the information entered

Attribute	Value	Purpose
accesskey	Keyboard character	Configures a hot key for the form control
tabindex	Numeric value	Configures the tab order of the form control

---

## Hands-On Practice 9.2

In this Hands-On Practice, you will create a contact form (see [Figure 9.10](#)) with the following form controls: a First Name text box, a Last Name text box, an E-mail text box, and a Comments scrolling text box. You'll use the form you created in [Hands-On Practice 9.1](#) (see [Figure 9.5](#)) as a starting point. Launch a text editor and open chapter9/9.1/form.html in the student files. Save the file as form2.html.

---

**Figure 9.10 A typical contact form**

---

The screenshot shows a web browser window with a title bar labeled "Contact Form". The main content area displays a "Contact Us" form. It includes fields for "First Name" (text input), "Last Name" (text input), "E-mail" (text input), and a larger "Comments" area (text area). At the bottom are "Contact" and "Reset" buttons.

1. Modify the title element to display the text “Contact Form”.
2. Configure the h1 element with the text “Contact Us”.
3. A form control for the e-mail address is already coded. Refer to [Figure 9.10](#) and note that you’ll need to add text box form controls for the first name and last name above the e-mail form control. Add the following code on new lines below the opening form tag to accept the name of your web page visitor:

```
First Name: <input type="text" name="fname"
id="fname"><br><br>
Last Name: <input type="text" name="lname"
id="lname"><br><br>
```

4. Now you are ready to add the scrolling text box form control to the form using a `<textarea>` tag on a new line below the e-mail form control. The code is

```
Comments:<br>
<textarea name="comments" id="comments">
</textarea><br><br>
```

5. Save your file and display your web page in a browser to view the default display of a scrolling text box. Note that this default display will differ by browser.
6. Let's configure the `rows` and `cols` attributes for the scrolling text box form control. Modify the `<textarea>` tag and set `rows="4"` and `cols="40"` as follows:

```
Comments:<br>
<textarea name="comments" id="comments"
  rows="4"
  cols="40"></textarea><br><br>
```

7. Next, modify the text displayed on the submit button. Set the value attribute to “Contact”. Save `form2.html` and test your web page in a browser. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 9.10](#).

You can compare your work with the solution found in the student files (`chapter9/9.2/form.html`). Try entering some information into your form. Try clicking the submit button. Don't worry if the form redisplayed but nothing seems to happen when you click the button—you haven't configured this form to work with any server-side processing. Connecting forms to server-side processing is demonstrated later in this chapter.

## FAQ

How can I send form information in an e-mail?

Forms usually need to invoke some type of server-side processing to perform functions such as sending e-mail, writing to text files, updating databases, and so on.

Another option is to set up a form to send information using the e-mail program configured to work with the web page visitor's browser. In what is sometimes called using a mailto: URL, the `<form>` tag is coded to use your e-mail address in the action attribute:

```
<form method="post"
action="mailto:me@webdevfoundations.net">
```

When a form is used in this manner, the web visitor will see a warning message. The warning message presents a nonprofessional image and is not the best way to inspire trust and confidence in your website or business.

Be aware that a person using a computer may choose to not use the default e-mail application. In this case, filling out a form that uses mailto: URL is a waste of their time. Even if the person using the computer also uses the default e-mail application, perhaps he or she may not want to divulge this particular e-mail address. Perhaps they have another e-mail address that is used for forms and newsletters, and do not want to waste time filling out your form. In either case, the result is an unhappy

website visitor. So, while using mailto: URL is easy, it does not always create the most usable web form for your visitors. What's a web developer to do? Use server-side processing (see [Hands-On Practice 9.5](#)) to handle form data instead of mailto: URL.

---

## 9.4 Select List

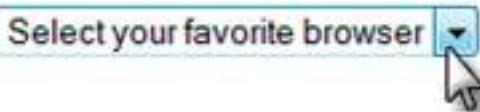
The **select list** form control shown in Figures 9.11 and 9.12 is also known by several other names, including select box, drop-down list, drop-down box, and option box. A select list is configured with one select element and multiple option elements.

---

**Figure 9.11** A select list with size set to 1 functions as a drop-down box when the arrow is clicked

---

### Select List: One Initial Visible Item

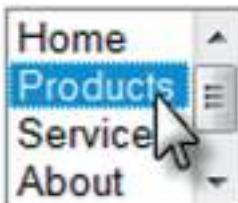


---

**Figure 9.12** Because there are more than four choices, the browser displays a scroll bar

---

### Select List: Four Items Visible



Select Element

The **select element** contains and configures the select list form control.

The `<select>` tag denotes the beginning of the select list. The closing `</select>` tag denotes the end of the select list. Attributes configure the number of options to display and whether more than one option item may be selected. Common attributes for select elements are listed in [Table 9.9](#).

---

**Table 9.9 Common select element attributes**

Attribute	Value	Purpose
<code>name</code>	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Names the form element so that it can be easily accessed by client-side scripting languages or by server-side processing; the name should be unique
<code>id</code>	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Provides a unique identifier for the form element
<code>size</code>	Numeric value	Configures the number of choices the browser will display; if set to 1, the element functions as a drop-down list (see <a href="#">Figure 9.12</a> ); scroll bars are automatically added by the browser if the number of options exceeds the space allowed

Attribute	Value	Purpose
multiple		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, configures a select list to accept more than one choice; by default, only one choice can be made from a select list
disabled		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, form control is disabled
tabindex	Numeric value	Configures the tab order of the form control

## Option Element

The **option element** contains and configures an option item displayed in the select list form control. The `<option>` tag denotes the beginning of the option item. The closing `</option>` tag denotes the end of the option item. Attributes configure the value of the option and whether they are preselected. Common attributes for option elements are listed in [Table 9.10](#).

---

**Table 9.10 Common option element attributes**

Attribute	Value	Purpose
-----------	-------	---------

Attribute	Value	Purpose
value	Text or numeric characters	Assigns a value to the option; this value can be accessed by client-side and server-side processing
selected		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, configures an option to be initially selected when displayed by a browser
disabled		A boolean attribute that is coded without any value; if present, form control is disabled

The HTML for the select list in [Figure 9.11](#) is

```
<select size="1" name="favbrowser" id="favbrowser">
    <option>Select your favorite browser</option>
    <option value="Edge">Edge</option>
    <option value="Firefox">Firefox</option>
    <option value="Chrome">Chrome</option>
</select>
```

The HTML for the select list in [Figure 9.12](#) is

```
<select size="4" name="jumpmenu" id="jumpmenu">
    <option value="index.html">Home</option>
    <option value="products.html">Products</option>
    <option value="services.html">Services</option>
    <option value="about.html">About</option>
```

```
<option value="contact.html">Contact</option>  
</select>
```

## FAQ

How does the menu in [Figure 9.12](#) display the selected page?

Well, it doesn't work, yet. It needs JavaScript (see [Chapter 14](#)) to check for the selected item and direct the browser to display the new document. Because it requires JavaScript to work, this type of menu would not be a good choice for your main navigation, but it might be useful for a secondary navigation area.

### Checkpoint 9.1

1. You are designing a website for a client who sells items in a retail store. They want to create a customer list for e-mail marketing purposes. Your client sells to consumers and needs a form that accepts a customer's name and e-mail address. Would you recommend using two input boxes (one for the name and one for the e-mail) or three input boxes (one each for the first name, last name, and e-mail address)? Explain your answer.
2. A question on a survey asks participants to indicate their favorite browsers. Most people will select more than one response. What type of form control would you use to

configure this question on the web page? Explain your answer.

3. True or False? In a radio button group, the value attribute is used by the browser to process the separate radio buttons as a group.

## 9.5 Image Buttons and the Button Element

As you have worked with forms in this chapter, you may have noticed that the standard submit button (see [Figure 9.10](#)) is a little plain. You can make the form control that visitors select to submit the form a bit more compelling and visually interesting in two ways:

1. Configure an image with the input element.
2. Create a custom image that is configured with the button element.

### Image Button

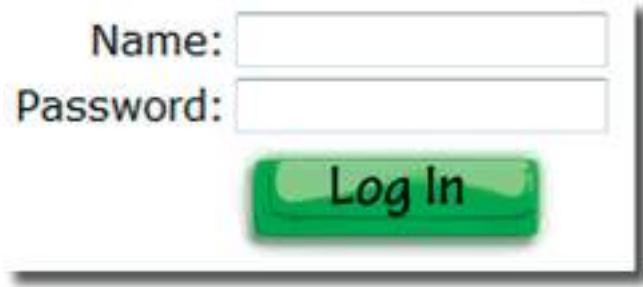
[Figure 9.13](#) shows an image used in place of the standard submit button. This is called an **image button**. When an image button is clicked or tapped, the form is submitted. The image button is coded using the `<input>` tag along with `type="image"` and a `src` attribute with the value of the name of the image file. For example, to use the image called `login.gif` as an image button, the HTML code is

```
<input type="image" src="login.gif" alt="Login  
Button">
```

---

**Figure 9.13** The web page visitor will select the image button to submit the form

---



## Button Element

Another way to add more interest to a form is to use the **button element**, which can be used to configure not only images but also blocks of text as the selectable area that can submit or reset a form. Any web page content that is between the `<button>` and `</button>` tags is configured to be part of the button. Common attributes for button elements are listed in [Table 9.11](#).

---

**Table 9.11 Common button element attributes**

Common Attributes	Values	Purpose
type	submit	Functions as a submit button
	reset	Functions as a reset button
	button	Functions as a button

---

Common Attributes	Values	Purpose
name	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Names the form element so that it can be easily accessed by client-side scripting languages or by server-side processing; the name should be unique
id	Alphanumeric, no spaces, begins with a letter	Provides a unique identifier for the form element
alt	Brief text description of the image	Provides accessibility to visitors who are unable to view the image
value	Text or numeric characters	A value given to a form element that is passed to the form handler

Figure 9.14 shows a form that has an image (signup.gif) configured as a submit button using the button element.

---

**Figure 9.14 The button element configured as a submit button**

---



The following HTML code creates the button shown in [Figure 9.14](#):

```
<button type="submit">
<br>Sign up for free newsletter
</button>
```

As you visit web pages and view their source code, you will find that the button element is not used as often as the standard submit button or the image button.

## 9.6 Accessibility and Forms

In this section, you'll explore techniques to increase the accessibility of form controls, including the `label` element, `fieldset` element, `legend` element, `tabindex` attribute, and `accesskey` attribute, which make it easier for individuals with vision and mobility challenges to use your form pages. The use of `label`, `fieldset`, and `legend` elements may increase the readability and usability of the web form for all visitors.

---

Focus on Accessibility

### Label Element

The **label element** is a container tag that associates a text description with a form control. This is helpful to visually challenged individuals who are using assistive technology such as a screen reader to match up the text descriptions on forms with their corresponding form controls. The `label` element also benefits individuals who have difficulty with fine motor control. Clicking anywhere on either a form control or its associated text label will set the cursor focus to the form control. The `<label>` tag specifies the beginning of the label. The closing `</label>` tag specifies the end of the label.

---

Focus on Accessibility

There are two different methods to associate a label with a form control.

1. The first method places the label element as a container around both the text description and the HTML form element. Notice that both the text label and the form control must be adjacent elements. The code is

```
<label>E-mail: <input type="text" name="email" id="email"></label>
```

2. The second method uses the `for` attribute to associate the label with a particular HTML form element. This is more flexible and does not require the text label and the form control to be adjacent. The code is

```
<label for="email">E-mail: </label>
<input type="text" name="email" id="email">
```

Notice that the value of the `for` attribute on the label element is the same as the value of the `id` attribute on the input element. This creates the association between the text label and the form control. The input element uses both the `name` and `id` attributes for different purposes. The `name` attribute can be used by client-side scripting and server-side processing. The `id` attribute creates an identifier that can be used by the label element, anchor element, and CSS selectors. The label element does not display on the web page—it works behind the scenes to provide for accessibility.

---

## Hands-On Practice 9.3

In this Hands-On Practice, you will add the label element to the text box and scrolling text area form controls on the form you created in [Hands-On Practice 9.2](#) (see [Figure 9.10](#)) as a starting point. Launch a text editor and open chapter9/9.2/form.html in the student files. Save the file as form3.html.

1. Locate the text box for the first name. Add a label element to wrap around the input tag as follows:

```
<label>First Name: <input type="text"  
name="fname"  
id="fname"></label>
```

2. In a similar manner, add a label element for the last name and the e-mail form controls.
3. Configure a label element to contain the text “Comments”. Associate the label with the scrolling text box form control.

The sample code is

```
<label for="comments">Comments:</label><br>  
<textarea name="comments" id="comments"  
rows="4"  
cols="40"></textarea>
```

Save form3.html and test your web page in a browser. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 9.10](#)—the label elements do not change the way that the page displays, but a web visitor with physical challenges should find the form easier to use.

You can compare your work with the solution found in the student files (chapter9/9.3/form.html). Try entering some

information into your form. Try clicking the submit button. Don't worry if the form redisplays but nothing seems to happen when you click the button—you haven't configured this form to work with any server-side processing. Connecting forms to server-side processing is demonstrated later in this chapter.

## Fieldset and Legend Elements

A technique that can be used to create a more visually pleasing form is to group elements of a similar purpose together using the **fieldset element**, which will cause the browser to render a visual cue, such as an outline or a border, around form elements grouped together within the fieldset. The `<fieldset>` tag denotes the beginning of the grouping. The closing `</fieldset>` tag denotes the end of the grouping.

The **legend element** provides a text description for the fieldset grouping. The `<legend>` tag denotes the beginning of the text description. New to HTML5.2 is that the description can also include heading tags. The closing `</legend>` tag denotes the end of the text description. The HTML to create the grouping shown in [Figure 9.15](#) is

```
<fieldset>
<legend>Billing Address</legend>
<label>Street: <input type="text" name="street"
id="street"
size="54"></label><br><br>
<label>City: <input type="text" name="city" id="city">
</label>
<label>State: <input type="text" name="state" id="state"
maxlength="2"
size="5"></label>
<label>Zip: <input type="text" name="zip" id="zip"
maxlength="5"
size="5"></label>
</fieldset>
```

---

**Figure 9.15 Form controls that are all related to a mailing address**

---

## Fieldset and Legend

The screenshot shows a 'Billing Address' form group. It includes a legend labeled 'Billing Address' and three input fields: 'Street' (a single input field), 'City' (a single input field), 'State' (a single input field), and 'Zip' (a single input field). The entire group is enclosed in a light gray border.

The grouping and visual effect of the fieldset element creates an organized and appealing web page containing a form. Using the fieldset and legend elements to group form controls enhances accessibility by organizing the controls both visually and semantically. The fieldset and legend elements can be accessed by screen readers and are useful tools for configuring groups of radio buttons and check boxes on web pages.

---

### Focus on Accessibility

---

## Hands-On Practice 9.4

In this Hands-On Practice, you will modify the contact form (form3.html) you worked with in [Hands-On Practice 9.3](#) to use the fieldset and legend elements (see [Figure 9.16](#)).

---

**Figure 9.16 The fieldset, legend, and label elements**

---

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Contact Form". The main content area has a heading "Contact Us". Below it is a "Customer Information" section enclosed in a `<fieldset>`. Inside this section are three text input fields labeled "First Name:", "Last Name:", and "E-mail:". Below this is a larger text area labeled "Comments:" with a scroll bar, also enclosed in a `<fieldset>`. At the bottom of the form are two buttons: "Contact" and "Reset".

Launch a text editor and open chapter9/9.3/form.html in the student files. Save the file as form4.html. Perform the following edits:

1. Add an opening `<fieldset>` tag after the opening `<form>` tag.
2. Immediately after the opening `<fieldset>` tag, code a legend element that contains the following text: "Customer Information".
3. Code the closing `</fieldset>` tag before the label element for the Comments scrolling text box.
4. Save your file and test your web page in a browser. It should look similar to the one shown in Figure 9.16. You can

compare your work with the solution found in the student files (chapter9/9.4/form4.html). You may notice that when you activate the submit button, the form redisplays. This is because there is no action property in the form element.

You'll work with setting the action property in [Section 9.8](#).

#### 5. How about a quick preview of styling a form with CSS?

[Figures 9.16](#) and [9.17](#) show the same form elements, but the form in [Figure 9.17](#) is styled with CSS, which gives it the same functionality with increased visual appeal.

**Figure 9.17 The fieldset, legend, and label elements are configured with CSS**

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Contact Form". Inside, the page title is "Contact Us". A "Customer Information" section is enclosed in a red-bordered `<fieldset>`. It contains three `<input>` fields for "First Name", "Last Name", and "E-mail". Below this is a large text area for "Comments". At the bottom are two buttons: "Contact" and "Reset".

Open form4.html in a text editor and add embedded styles to the head section as indicated below:

```
fieldset { width: 320px;  
    border: 2px ridge #FF0000;  
    padding: 10px;  
    margin-bottom: 10px; }  
legend { font-family: Georgia, "Times New  
Roman", serif;  
    font-weight: bold; }  
label { font-family: Arial, sans-serif; }
```

Save your file as form5.html and test your web page in a browser. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 9.17](#). You can compare your work with the solution found in the student files (chapter9/9.4/form5.html).

## The Tabindex Attribute

### Focus on Accessibility

Some of your website visitors may have difficulty using a mouse and will access your form with a keyboard. The Tab key can be used to move from one form control to another. The default action for the Tab key within a form is to move to the next form control in the order in which the form controls are coded in the web page document. This is usually appropriate. However, if the tab order needs to be changed for a form, use the **tabindex** attribute on each form control.

For each form tag (`<input>`, `<select>`, and `<textarea>`), code a `tabindex` attribute with a numeric value, beginning with 1, 2, 3, and so on in numerical order. The HTML code to configure the customer e-mail text box as the initial position of the cursor is

```
<input type="text" name="Email" id="Email" tabindex="1">
```

If you configure a form control with `tabindex="0"`, it will be visited after all of the other form controls that are assigned a `tabindex` attribute. If you happen to assign two form controls the same tabindex value, the one that is coded first in the HTML will be visited first.

You can configure the `tabindex` attribute for anchor tags in a similar manner. The default action for the Tab key and anchor tags is to move from hyperlink to hyperlink in the order they are coded on the page. Use the `tabindex` attribute if you need to modify this behavior.

## The Accesskey Attribute

---

### Focus on Accessibility

Another technique that can make your form keyboard-friendly is the use of the `accesskey` attribute on form controls. You can also configure the `accesskey` attribute on an anchor tag. Assigning the `accesskey` attribute a value of one of the characters (a letter or number) on the keyboard will

create a hot key that your website visitor can press to move the cursor immediately to a form control or hyperlink.

The method used to access this hot key varies depending on the operating system. Windows users will press the Alt key and the character key. Mac users will press the Ctrl key and the character key. For example, if the form shown in [Figure 9.10](#) had the customer e-mail text coded with `accesskey="E"`, the web page visitor using Windows could press the Alt and E keys to move the cursor immediately to the e-mail text box. The HTML code for this is

```
<input type="text" name="email" id="email"  
accesskey="E">
```

Note that you cannot rely on the browser to indicate that a character is an access key, also called a hot key. You will have to manually code information about the hot key. A visual cue may be helpful, such as displaying the hot key in bold or by placing a message such as (Alt+E) after a form control or hyperlink that uses a hot key. When choosing `accesskey` values, avoid combinations that are already used by the operating system (such as Alt+F to display the File menu). Testing hot keys is crucial.

## Checkpoint 9.2

1. Describe the purpose of the `fieldset` and `legend` elements.
2. Describe the purpose of the `accesskey` attribute and how it supports accessibility.
3. When designing a form, should you use the standard submit button, an image button, or a button tag? Are these

different in the way in which they provide for accessibility?

Explain your answer.

## 9.7 Style a Form with CSS

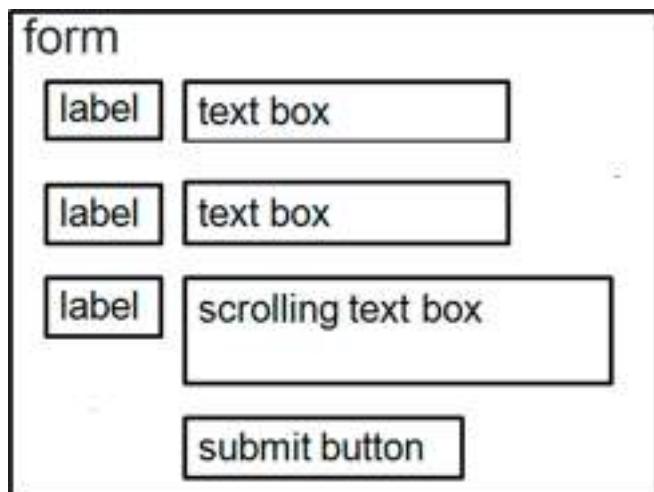
The form in [Figure 9.10](#) (from [Hands-On Practice 9.2](#)) looks a little “messy” and you might be wondering how that can be improved. In the time before CSS was well supported by browsers, web designers always used a table to configure the design of form elements, typically placing the text labels and form field elements in separate table data cells. However, the table approach is outdated, does not provide support for accessibility, and can be difficult to maintain over time. The modern approach is to style the form with CSS.

When styling a form with CSS, the box model is used to create a series of boxes, as shown in [Figure 9.18](#). The outermost box defines the form area. Other boxes indicate label elements and form controls. CSS is used to configure these components.

---

**Figure 9.18** Wireframe for a form

---



---

### Form with CSS Float

---

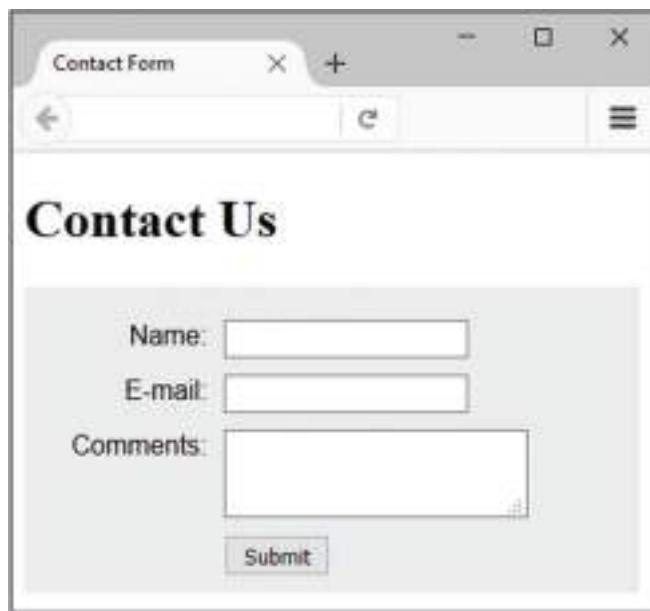
## Hands-On Practice 9.5

You will style a form in this Hands-On Practice. To get started, launch a text editor and open the starter.html file in the chapter9 folder in the student files. Save the file with the name contactus.html. When you have completed the Hands-On Practice, your form will be similar to **Figure 9.19**.

---

**Figure 9.19 This form is configured with CSS**

---



The HTML for the form is shown below for your reference:

```
<form>
  <label for="myName">Name:</label>
  <input type="text" name="myName" id="myName">
  <label for="myEmail">E-mail:</label>
  <input type="text" name="myEmail"
  id="myEmail">
  <label for="myComments">Comments:</label>
  <textarea name="myComments" id="myComments"
  rows="2" cols="20">
  </textarea>
```

```
<input type="submit" value="Submit">  
</form>
```

Configure embedded CSS within the style element as follows:

- 1. THE FORM ELEMENT SELECTOR.** Configure with a #EAEAEA background color, Arial or sans serif font, 350px width, and 10 pixels of padding:

```
form { background-color: #EAEAEA;  
      font-family: Arial, sans-serif;  
      width: 350px; padding: 10px; }
```

- 2. THE LABEL ELEMENT SELECTOR.** Configure to float to the left, clear left floats, and use block display. Also set width to 100px, 10 pixels of right padding, a 10px top margin, and right-aligned text:

```
label { float: left; clear: left; display:  
       block;  
       width: 100px; padding-right: 10px;  
       margin-top: 10px; text-align: right;  
 }
```

- 3. THE INPUT ELEMENT SELECTOR.** Configure with block display and a 10px top margin.

```
input { display: block; margin-top: 10px; }
```

- 4. THE TEXTAREA ELEMENT SELECTOR.** Configure with block display and a 10px top margin.

```
textarea { display: block; margin-top: 10px; }
```

**5. THE SUBMIT BUTTON.** The submit button needs to display under the other form controls, with a 110 pixel margin on the left. You could configure a new id or class and then edit the HTML but there is a more efficient method. You will configure an attribute selector, which allows you to select using both the element name and the attribute value as the criteria. In this case, we need to style input tags that have a `type` attribute with the value `submit` in a different manner than the other input tags, so we'll configure an attribute selector for that purpose. The CSS follows:

```
input[type="submit"] { margin-left: 110px; }
```

Save your file and test your page in a browser. It should look similar to [Figure 9.19](#). You can compare your work with the sample in the student files (chapter9/9.5).

## Form with CSS Grid Layout

CSS Grid Layout offers another method to configure the layout of a form.

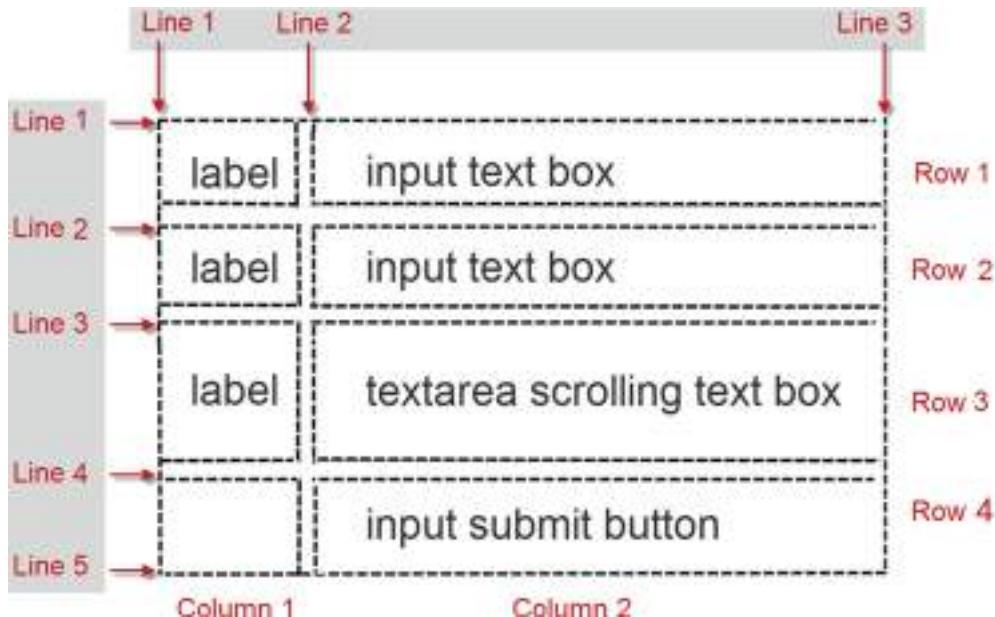
[Figure 9.18](#) shows a wireframe of a typical form.

When you work with grid layout, it is helpful to create a sketch of the grid, shown in [Figure 9.20](#). Notice how the actual element names were placed within the grid. This will help us when we code the CSS to configure the placement of the elements in the grid columns and rows. Notice that, except for the submit button, we can allow the browser to autofill the grid with the labels and form controls.

---

**Figure 9.20** The grid for the form

---



## Hands-On Practice 9.6

In this Hands-On Practice you will use form you created in [Hands-On Practice 9.5](#) and code a CSS feature query to configure grid layout in supporting browsers. Browsers that do not support grid layout will display the form as originally styled with CSS. Browsers that support grid will follow the grid layout styles. To get started, launch a text editor and open your [Hands-On Practice 9.5](#) file (chapter9/9.5/contactus.html in the student files). Save the file with the name contact2.html. When you have completed, your form will be similar to the example in [Figure 9.21](#).

---

**Figure 9.21** The form is styled with CSS grid layout

---

The screenshot shows a web browser window with a title bar labeled "Contact Form". Below the title bar is a toolbar with standard icons for back, forward, search, and refresh. The main content area displays a "Contact Us" form. The form has three input fields: "Name:" with a text input field, "E-mail:" with a text input field, and "Comments:" with a text area input field. Below these fields is a "Submit" button.

The HTML for the form is shown below for your reference:

```
<form>
  <label for="myName">Name:</label>
  <input type="text" name="myName" id="myName">
  <label for="myEmail">E-mail:</label>
  <input type="text" name="myEmail"
id="myEmail">
  <label for="myComments">Comments:</label>
  <textarea name="myComments" id="myComments"
rows="2" cols="20">
  </textarea>
  <input type="submit" value="Submit">
</form>
```

1. Locate the closing style tag. You will code CSS above the closing style tag and below the existing CSS in the file.  
Configure a feature query that will test for grid layout support:

```
@supports ( display: grid) {  
}
```

- 2.** Configure the following CSS within the feature query to configure the form using grid layout.

- a. THE FORM ELEMENT SELECTOR.** Configure declarations to set the display property to grid with auto rows and two columns (6em and 1fr). Also set 1em grid gap, #EAEAEA background color, Arial or sans serif font, 60% width, 20em minimum width, and 2em padding:

```
form { display: grid;
  grid-template-rows: auto;
  grid-template-columns: 6em 1fr;
  grid-gap: 1em; gap: 1em;
  background-color: #EAEAEA;
  font-family: Arial, sans-serif;
  width: 60%; min-width: 20em;
  padding: 1.5em; }
```

- b. THE SUBMIT BUTTON.** Review the grid sketch in Figure 10.19 and notice how the elements in the grid are placed one right after another to fill the grid except for the submit button, which is in the second column of the grid. Use an attribute selector to target the submit button and explicitly place it in the second column of the grid. Also set the width to 10em. Also set the left margin to 0. The CSS follows:

```
input[type="submit"] { grid-column: 2 / 3; width: 10em; margin-left: 0; }
```

Save your file and test your page in a browser. It should look similar to [Figure 9.21](#). You can compare your work with the sample in the student files (chapter9/9.6).

---

This section provided you with methods to style a form with CSS. As you've coded and displayed the forms in this chapter, you may have noticed that when you click the submit button, the form just redisplays—the form doesn't do anything. This is because there is no action attribute in the `<form>` tag. The next section focuses on the second component of using forms on web pages—server-side processing.

## 9.8 Server-Side Processing

Your web browser requests web pages and their related files from a web server. The web server locates the files and sends them to your web browser. Then the web browser renders the returned files and displays the requested web pages.

Sometimes a website needs more functionality than static web pages, possibly a site search, order form, e-mail list, database display, or other type of interactive, dynamic processing. This is when server-side processing is needed. Early web servers used a protocol called **Common Gateway Interface (CGI)** to provide this functionality. CGI is a protocol, or standard method, for a web server to pass a web page user's request (which is typically initiated through the use of a form) to an application program and to accept information to send to the user. The web server typically passes the form information to a small application program that is run by the operating system and that processes the data, usually sending back a confirmation web page or message. Perl and C are popular programming languages for CGI applications.

**Server-side scripting** is a technology by which a server-side script is run on a web server to dynamically generate web pages. Examples of server-side scripting technologies include PHP, Ruby on Rails, Microsoft Active Server Pages, Adobe ColdFusion, Oracle JavaServer Pages, and Microsoft .NET. Server-side scripting differs from CGI in that it uses **direct execution**: The script is run either by the web server itself or by an extension module to the web server.

A web page invokes server-side processing by either an attribute on a form or by a hyperlink (the URL of the script is used). Any form data that

exists is passed to the script. The script completes its processing and may generate a confirmation or response web page with the requested information. When invoking a server-side script, the web developer and the server-side programmer must communicate about the form **method attribute** (`get` or `post`), form **action attribute** (the URL of the server-side script), and any special form element control(s) expected by the server-side script.

The `method` attribute is used on the form tag to indicate the way in which the name and value pairs should be passed to the server. The method attribute value of `get` causes the form data to be appended to the URL, which is easily visible and not secure. The method attribute value of `post` does not pass the form information in the URL; it passes it in the entity body of the HTTP request, which makes it more private. The W3C recommends the `method="post"` method.

The `action` attribute is used on the `<form>` tag to invoke a server-side script. The `name` attribute and the `value` attribute associated with each form control are passed to the server-side script. The `name` attribute may be used as a variable name in the server-side processing. In the next Hands-On Practice, you will invoke a server-side script from a form.

---

#### Video Note

*Connect a Form to Server-Side Processing*

---

## Hands-On Practice 9.7

In this Hands-On Practice, you will configure a form to invoke a server-side script. Please note that your computer must be connected to the Internet when you test your work. When using a server-side script, you will need to obtain some information, or documentation, from the person or organization providing the script. You will need to know the location of the script, whether it requires any specific names for the form controls, and whether it requires any hidden form elements.

A server-side script has been created at the author's website (<https://webdevbasics.net>) for students to use for this exercise.

The documentation for the server-side script is listed below:

- Script URL: <https://webdevbasics.net/scripts/demo.php>
- Form method: `post`
- Script purpose: This script will accept form input and display the form control names and values in a web page.

This is a sample script for student assignments. It demonstrates that server-side processing has been invoked. A script used by an actual website would perform a function such as sending an e-mail message or updating a database.

Notice that the script's URL begins with https:// instead of http://. Coding https:// in the action value will cause the browser to use HTTPS, which stands for Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure. HTTPS combines HTTP with a security and encryption protocol called Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) – see [Chapter 12](#) for a brief introduction to SSL. Using HTTPS provides a more secure transaction because the browser encrypts the information entered in the form before sending it to the server.

Now you will add the configuration required to use the demo.php server-side processing with a form. Launch a text

editor and open your file from [Hands-On Practice 9.6](#) (found in the student files chapter9/9.6 folder). Modify the `<form>` tag by adding an `action` attribute with a value of “`https://webdevbasics.net/scripts/demo.php`” and a `method` attribute with a value of “`post`”. The HTML code for the revised `<form>` tag is

```
<form method="post"  
action="https://webdevbasics.net/scripts/demo.ph  
p">
```

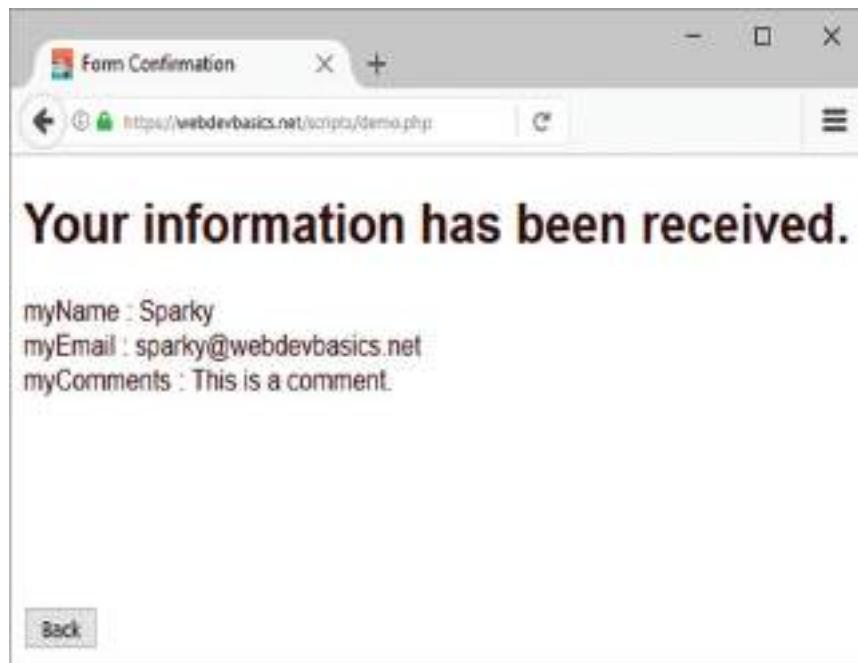
Save your file as contact.html and test your web page in a browser. Your screen should look similar to [Figure 9.21](#). Compare your work with the solution in the student files (chapter9/9.7/contact.html).

Now you are ready to test your form. You must be connected to the Internet to test your form successfully. Enter information in the form controls and click the submit button. You should see a confirmation page similar to the one shown in [Figure 9.22](#).

---

**Figure 9.22 The server-side script has created this web page in response to the form**

---



The demo.php script creates a web page that displays a message and the form information that you entered. Where did this confirmation page originate? This confirmation page was created by the server-side script on the `action` attribute in the form element. Sometimes students wonder what code is used in the demo.php file. Writing scripts for server-side processing is beyond the scope of this textbook. However, if you are curious, visit <https://webdevfoundations.net/10e/chapter9.html> to see the source code for this script.

## FAQ

What do I do if nothing happened when I tested my form?

Try these troubleshooting hints:

- 
- 
- Verify that your computer is connected to the Internet.
  - Verify the spelling of the script location in the `action` attribute.
  - Attention to detail is crucial!

## Privacy and Forms

You've just learned how to collect information from your website visitors. Do you think that your visitors may want to know how you plan to use the information that you collect? The guidelines that you develop to protect the privacy of your visitors' information is called a **privacy policy**. Websites either indicate this policy on the form page itself or create a separate page that describes the privacy policy (and other company policies).

If you browse popular sites such as [Amazon.com](#) or [eBay.com](#), you'll find links to their privacy policies (sometimes called a privacy notice) in the page footer area. The privacy policy of the Better Business Bureau can be found at <https://www.bbb.org/privacy-policy>. Include a privacy notice on your site to inform your visitors how you plan to use the information that they share with you. The Better Business Bureau offers a sample privacy policy template at <https://www.bbb.org/greater-san-francisco/businesses/understanding-privacy-policy/sample-privacy-policy-template>.

## Server-Side Processing Resources

## Sources of Free Remote-Hosted Form Processing

If your web host provider does not support server-side processing, free remotely hosted scripts may be an option. The script is not hosted on your server so you don't need to worry about installing it or whether your web host provider will support it. The disadvantage is that there may be some advertising displayed. The following are a few sites that offer this service:

- FormBuddy.com: <http://formbuddy.com>
- FormMail: <https://www.formmail.com>
- Formspree: <https://formspree.io>

## Sources of Free Server-Side Scripts

To use free scripts, you need to have access to a web server that supports the language used by the script. Contact your web host provider to determine what is supported. Be aware that many free web host providers do not support server-side processing (you get what you pay for!). Visit <http://scriptarchive.com> and <http://php.resourceindex.com> for free scripts and related resources.

## Exploring Server-Side Processing Technologies

Many types of technologies can be used for server-side scripting, form processing, and information sharing:

- PHP: <http://www.php.net>
- Oracle JavaServer Pages Technology: <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javaee/jsp>

- Adobe ColdFusion and Web Applications: <http://www.adobe.com/products/coldfusion>
- Ruby on Rails: <http://www.rubyonrails.org>
- Microsoft .NET: <http://www.microsoft.com/net>

Any of these technologies could be a good choice for future study. Web developers often learn the client side first (HTML, CSS, and JavaScript) and then progress to learning a server-side scripting or programming language.

### Checkpoint 9.3

1. Describe server-side processing.
2. Why is communication needed between the developer of a server-side script and the web page designer?

## 9.9 HTML5 Form Controls

HTML5 introduced a variety of new form controls for web developers that provide increased usability with built-in browser edits and validation. Recent versions of popular browsers support these form controls. Browsers that do not support the new input types will display the form controls as text boxes and ignore unsupported attributes or elements. In this section, you'll explore the HTML5 e-mail address, URL, telephone number, search field, datalist, slider, spinner, calendar, and color form controls.

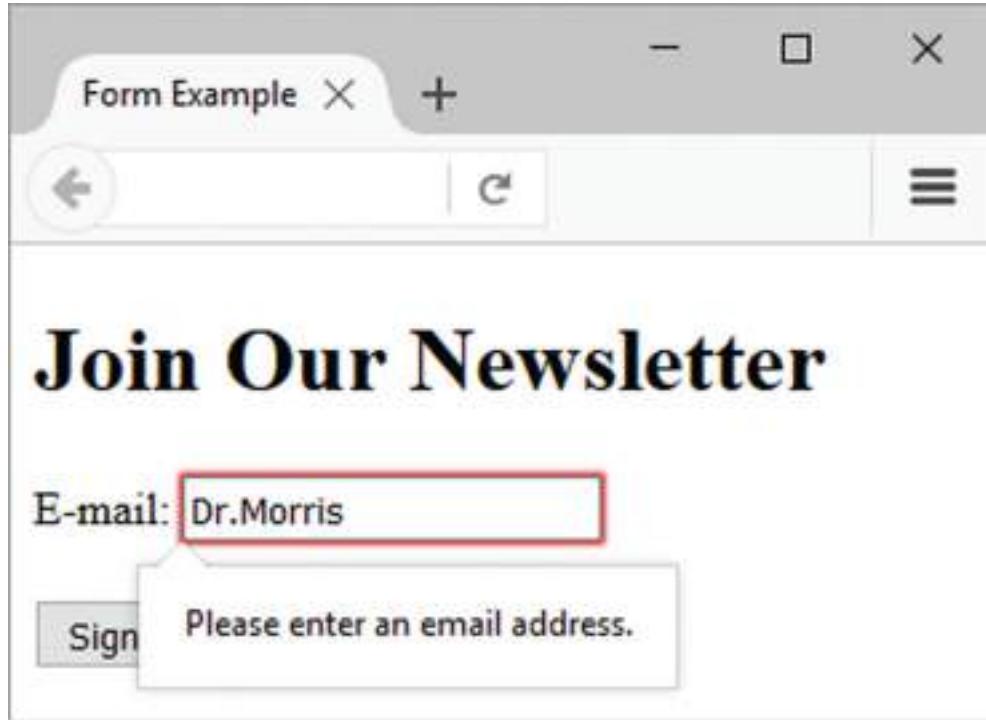
### E-mail Address Input

The **e-mail address input** form control is similar to the text box. Its purpose is to accept information that must be in e-mail format, such as “DrMorris2010@gmail.com”. The input element with `type="email"` configures an e-mail address input form control. Only browsers that support the HTML5 `email` attribute value will verify the format of the information. Other browsers will treat this form control as a text box. Attributes supported by the e-mail address input form control are listed in [Table 9.2](#).

[Figure 9.23](#) shows an error message displayed by Firefox when text other than an e-mail address is entered. Note that the browser does not verify that the e-mail address actually exists, just that the text entered is in the correct format. The HTML is

```
<label for="myEmail">E-mail:</label>
<input type="email" name="myEmail" id="myEmail">
```

**Figure 9.23** The browser displays an error message



## URL Input

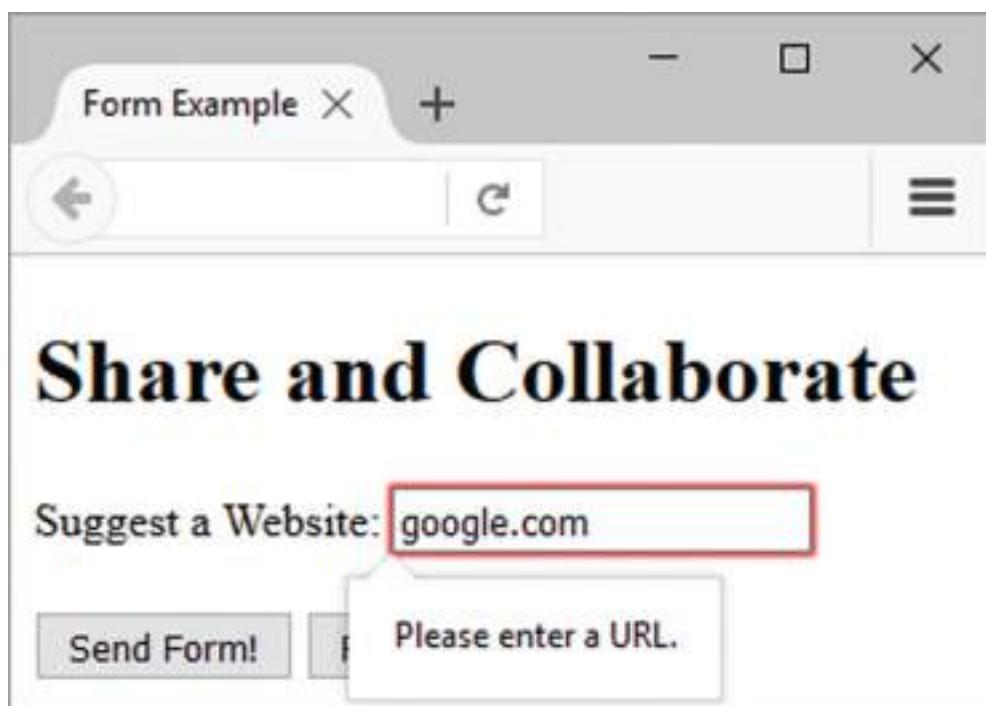
The **URL input** form control is similar to the text box. It is intended to accept any valid type of URL or URI, such as "<https://webdevfoundations.net>". The input element with `type="url"` configures a URL input form control. Only browsers that support the HTML5 `url` attribute value will verify the format of the information. Other browsers render this form control as a text box. Attributes supported by the URL input form control are listed in [Table 9.2](#).

[Figure 9.24](#) (see chapter9/url.html in the student files) shows an error message displayed by Firefox when text other than a URL is entered.

Note that the browser does not verify that the URL actually exists, just that the text entered is in the correct format. The HTML is

```
<label for="myWebsite">Suggest a Website:</label>
<input type="url" name="myWebsite" id="myWebsite">
```

Figure 9.24 The browser displays an error message



## Telephone Number Input

The **telephone number input** form control is similar to the text box. Its purpose is to accept a telephone number. The input element with `type="tel"` configures a telephone number input form control. An example is in the student files (chapter9/tel.html). Attributes supported by the telephone number input form control are listed in Table 9.2.

Browsers that do not support `type="tel"` will render this form control as a text box. The HTML is

```
<label for="mobile">Mobile Number:</label>
<input type="tel" name="mobile" id="mobile">
```

## Search Field Input

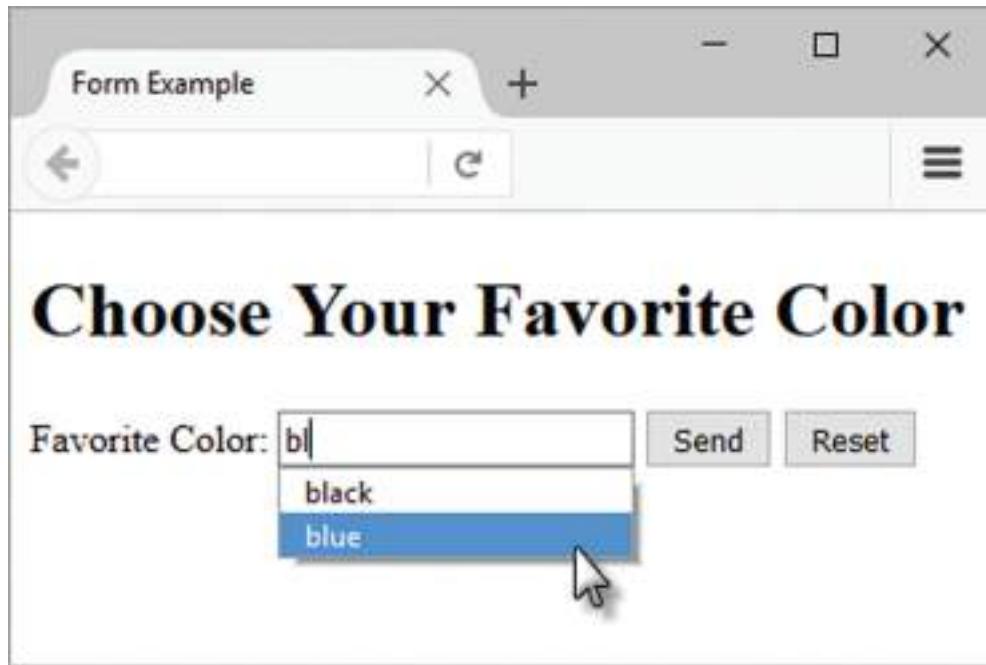
The **search field** is similar to the text box and is used to accept a search term. The input element with `type="search"` configures a search field input form control. An example is in the student files (chapter9/search.html). Attributes supported by the search field control are listed in [Table 9.2](#). Browsers that do not support `type="search"` will render this form control as a text box. The HTML is

```
<label for="keyword">Search:</label>
<input type="search" name="keyword" id="keyword">
```

## Datalist Form Control

[Figure 9.25](#) shows the **datalist form control** in action. Notice how a selection of choices is offered to the user along with a text box for entry. The datalist form control offers a convenient way to offer choices yet provide for flexibility on a form. The datalist is configured using three elements: an input element, the datalist element, and one or more option elements. Only browsers that support the HTML5 datalist element will display and process the datalist items. Other browsers ignore the datalist element and render the form control as a text box.

**Figure 9.25** Firefox displays the datalist form control



The source code for the datalist is available in the student files (chapter9/list.html). The HTML is

```
<label for="color">Favorite Color:</label>
<input type="text" name="color" id="color"
list="colors">
  <datalist id="colors">
    <option value="red"    label="red">
    <option value="green"   label="green">
    <option value="blue"    label="blue">
    <option value="yellow"   label="yellow">
    <option value="pink"    label="pink">
    <option value="black"   label="black">
  </datalist>
```

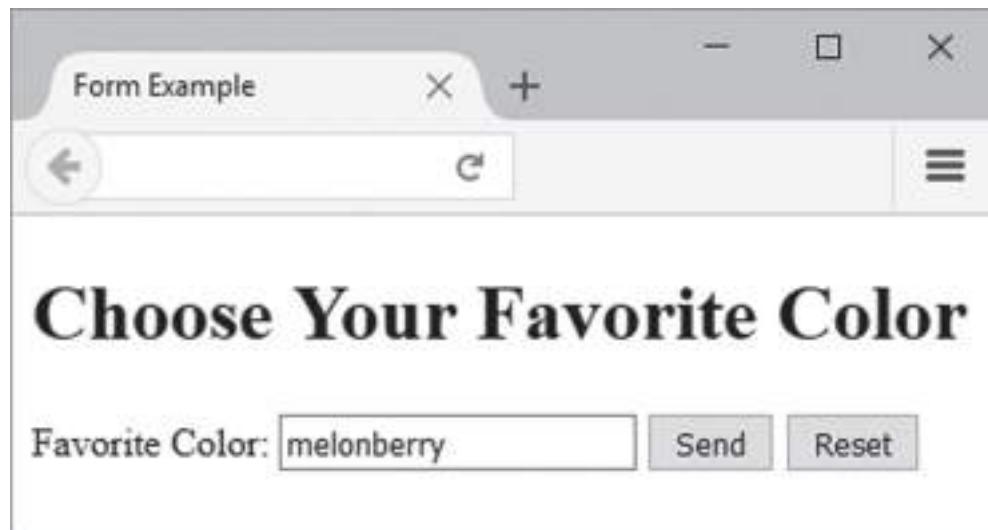
Notice that the value of the **list** attribute on the input element is the same as the value of the **id** attribute on the datalist element. This creates the association between the text box and the datalist form control. One or more option elements can be used to offer predefined choices to your

web page visitor. The option element's `label` attribute configures the text displayed in each list entry. The option element's `value` attribute configures the text sent to server-side processing when the form is submitted. The web page visitor can choose an option from the list (see Figure 9.25) or type directly in the text box, as shown in Figure 9.26.

---

**Figure 9.26 The user can choose to type any value into the text box**

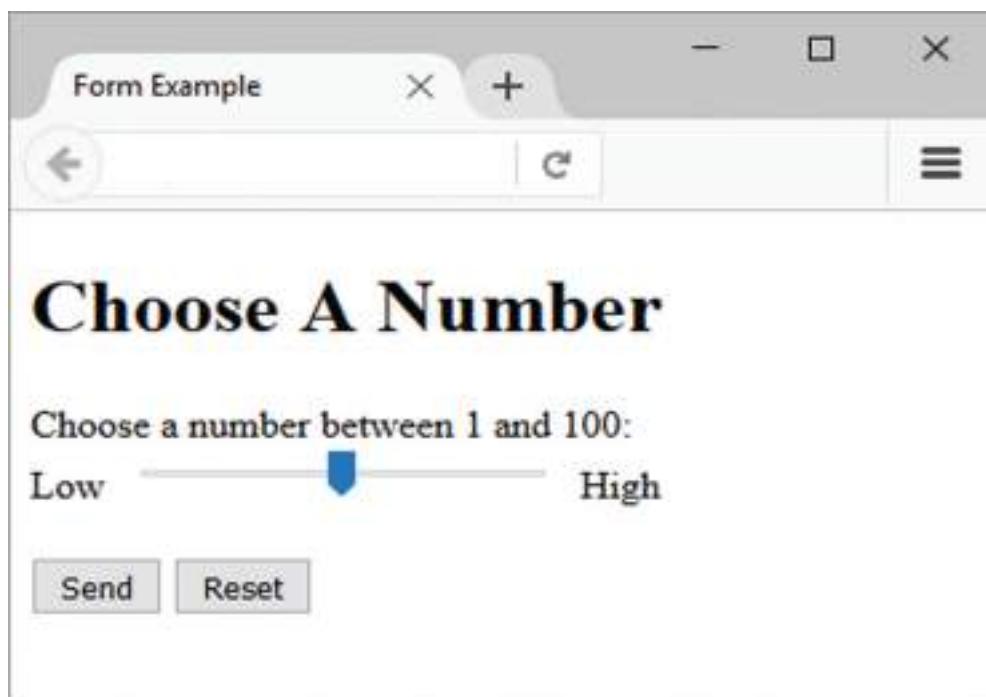
---



## Slider Form Control

The **slider form control** provides a visual, interactive user interface that accepts numerical information. The input element with `type="range"` configures a slider control in which a number within a specified range is chosen. The default range is from 1 to 100. Only browsers that support the HTML5 `range` attribute value will display the interactive slider control, shown in Figure 9.27 (see chapter9/range.html in the student files). Note the position of the slider in Figure 9.27; this resulted in the value 80 being chosen. The nondisplay of the value to the user may be a disadvantage of the slider control. Nonsupporting browsers render this form control as a text box.

**Figure 9.27** The Firefox browser displays the range form control.



The slider control accepts attributes listed in Tables 9.2 and 9.12. The `min`, `max`, and `step` attributes are new. Use the `min` attribute to configure the minimum range value. Use the `max` attribute to configure the maximum range value. The slider controls sets numeric values in increments, or steps, of 1. Use the `step` attribute to configure a value for the incremental steps between values to be other than 1.

**Table 9.12 Additional attributes for slider, spinner, and date/time form controls**

Attribute	Value	Purpose
<code>max</code>	Maximum numeric value	HTML5 attribute for range, number, and date/time input controls; specifies a maximum value

Attribute	Value	Purpose
min	Minimum numeric value	HTML5 attribute for range, number, and date/time input controls; specifies a minimum value
step	Incremental numeric step value	HTML5 attribute for range, number, and date/time input controls; specifies a value for incremental steps

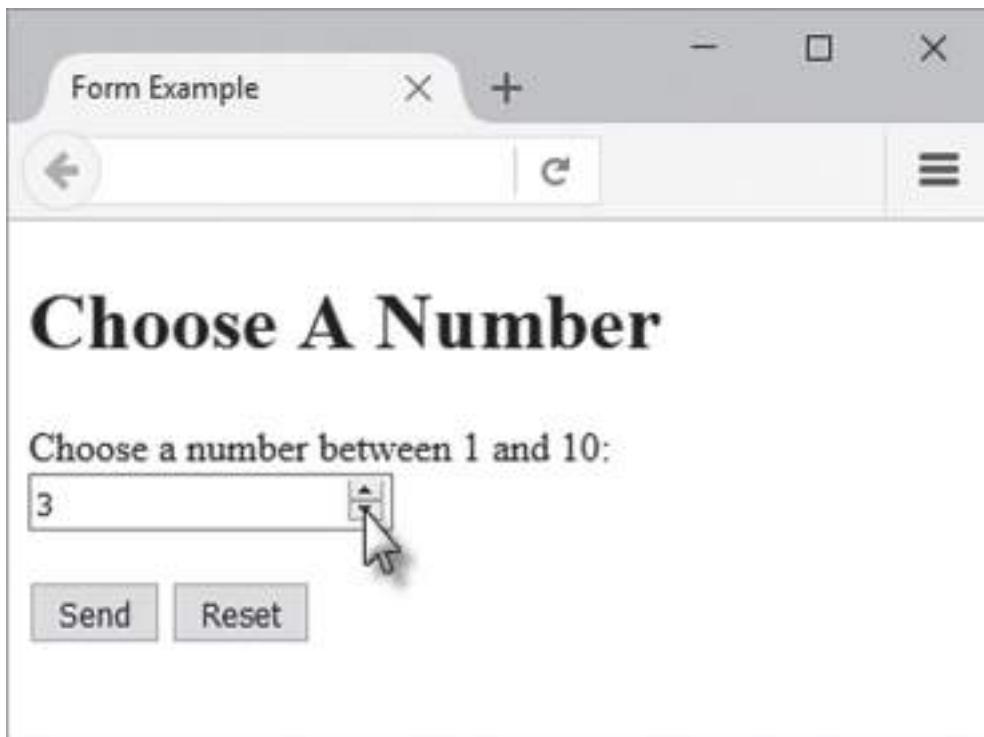
The HTML for the slider control rendered in [Figure 9.27](#) is

```
<label for="myChoice">Choose a number between 1 and 100:  
</label><br>  
Low <input type="range" name="myChoice" id="myChoice"  
min="1" max="100"> High
```

## Spinner Form Control

The **spinner form control** displays an interface that accepts numerical information and provides feedback to the user. The input element with `type="number"` configures a spinner control in which the user can either type a number into the text box or select a number from a specified range. Only browsers that support the HTML5 `number` attribute value will display the interactive spinner control, shown in [Figure 9.28](#) (see chapter9/spinner.html in the student files). Other browsers render this form control as a text box. You should expect increased support in the future.

**Figure 9.28 A spinner control displayed in the Firefox browser**



The spinner control accepts attributes listed in [Tables 9.2](#) and [9.12](#).

Use the `min` attribute to configure the minimum value. Use the `max` attribute to configure the maximum value. The spinner control sets numeric values in increments, or steps, of 1. Use the `step` attribute to configure a value for the incremental step between values to be other than 1. The HTML for the spinner control displayed in [Figure 9.28](#) is

```
<label for="myChoice">Choose a number between 1 and 10:</label>
<input type="number" name="myChoice" id="myChoice"
min="1" max="10">
```

## Date and Time Form Control

HTML5 provides a variety of **date and time form controls** to accept date-and time-related information. Use the input element and configure the type attribute to specify a date or time control. [Table 9.13](#) lists the date and time form controls.

---

**Table 9.13 Date and time form controls**

Type Attribute Value	Purpose	Format
date	A date	YYYY-MM-DD  Example:  January 2, 2020 is represented by “2020-01- 02”

Type	Purpose	Format
Attribute		
Value		
datetime	A date and time with time zone information; note that the time zone is indicated by the offset from UTC time	<p>YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM:SS-##:##Z</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>January 2, 2020, at exactly 9:58 a.m. Chicago time (CST) is represented by “2020-01-02T09:58:00-06:00Z”</p>
datetime-local	A date and time without time zone information	<p>YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM:SS</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>January 2, 2020, at exactly 9:58 a.m. is represented by “2020-01-02T09:58:00”</p>

Type	Purpose	Format
Attribute		
Value		
time	A time without time zone information	<p>HH:MM:SS</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>1:34 p.m. is represented by “13:34:00”</p>
month	A year and month	<p>YYYY-MM</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>January 2020 is represented by “2020-01”</p>

Type	Purpose	Format
Attribute		
Value		
week	A year and week	<p>YYYY-W##, where ## represents the week in the year</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>The third week in 2020 is represented by “2020-W03”</p>

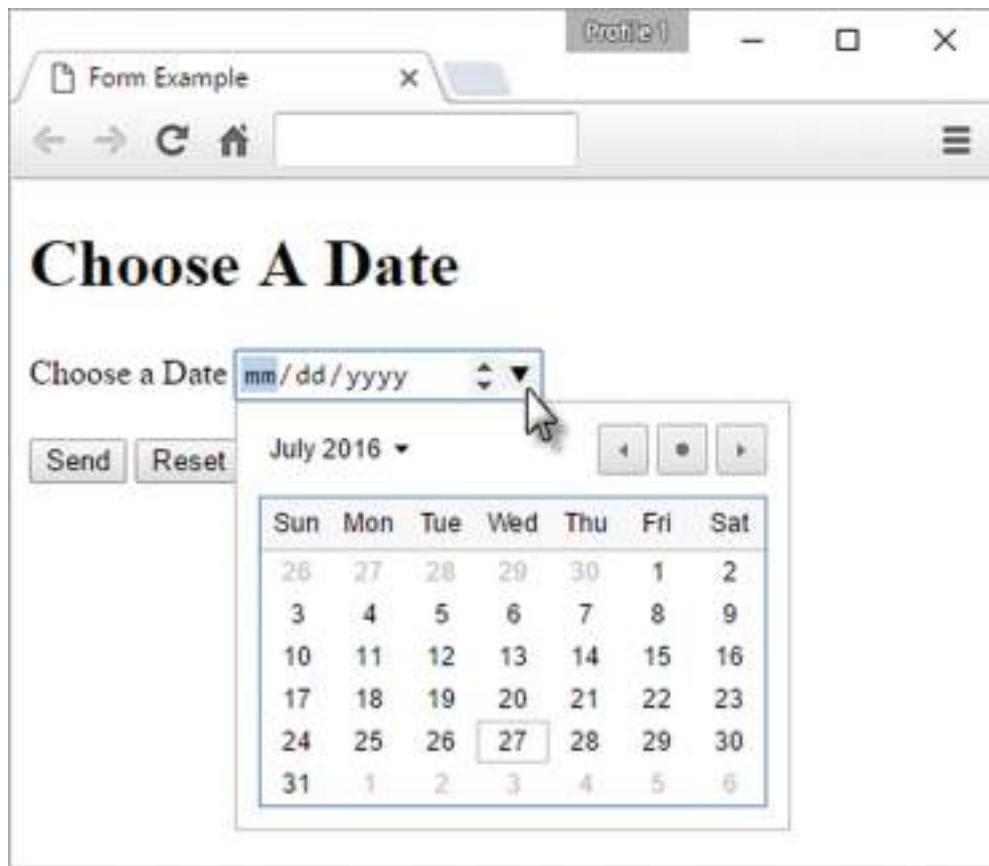
The form in [Figure 9.29](#) (see chapter9/date.html in the student files) uses the input element with `type="date"` to configure a calendar date-picker control with which the user can select a date. The HTML is

```
<label for="myDate">Choose a Date</label>
<input type="date" name="myDate" id="myDate">
```

---

**Figure 9.29 A date form control displayed in the Firefox browser**

---

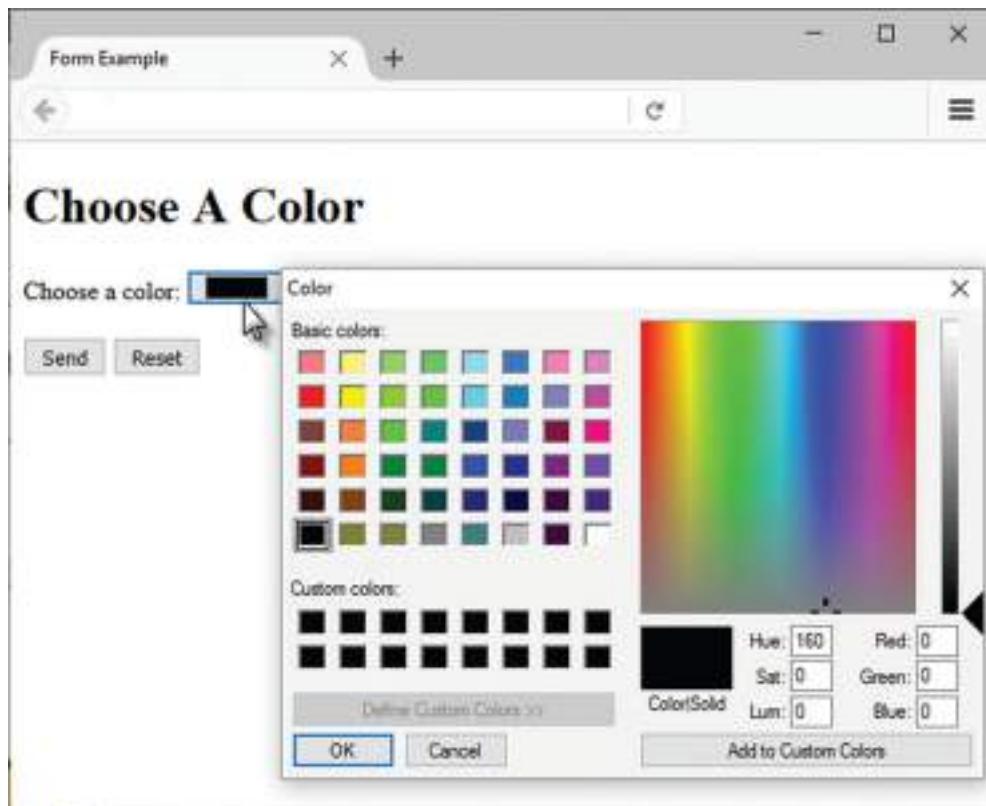


The date and time controls accept attributes listed in [Tables 9.2](#) and [9.13](#). Only browsers that support the HTML5 date form control will display a calendar interface for date and time controls. Other browsers currently render the date and time form controls as a text box, but you should expect increased support in the future.

## Color-well Form Control

The **color-well form control** displays an interface that offers a color-picker interface to the user. The `input` element with `type="color"` configures a control with which the user can choose a color. Only browsers that support the HTML5 `color` attribute value will display a color-picker interface, shown in [Figure 9.30](#) (see chapter9/color.html in the student files). Other browsers render this form control as a text box.

**Figure 9.30** The Firefox browser supports the color-well form control



The HTML for the color-well form control rendered in Figure 9.30 is

```
<label for="myColor">Choose a color:</label>
<input type="color" name="myColor" id="myColor">
```

In the next Hands-On Practice, you'll get some experience with the new HTML5 form controls.

## Hands-On Practice 9.8

In this Hands-On Practice, you will code HTML5 form controls as you configure a form that accepts a name, e-mail address, rating value, and comments from a website visitor. [Figure 9.31](#) displays the form in the Firefox browser, which supports the HTML5 features used in the Hands-On Practice.

**Figure 9.31 The form displayed in the Firefox browser**

The screenshot shows a Firefox browser window with the title bar "Comment Form". The main content area contains the following elements:

- Section Header:** "Send Us Your Comments"
- Text:** "Required fields are marked with an asterisk \*"
- Name:** Input field containing "your first and last name".
- E-mail:** Input field containing "you@yourdomain.com".
- Rating (1-10):** A horizontal slider with a blue arrowhead set at the midpoint.
- Comments:** A large input text area.
- Submit:** A button labeled "Submit" at the bottom of the form.

To get started, launch a text editor and open your file from [Hands-On Practice 9.7](#), found in the student files chapter9/9.7 folder. Save the file as comment.html. You will modify the file to create a web page similar to [Figure 9.31](#).

**1.** Modify the title element to display the text “Comment Form”.

Configure the text contained within the h1 element to be “Send Us Your Comments”. Add a paragraph to indicate “Required fields are marked with an asterisk \*.”

**2.** Modify labels and the form controls.

**a.** Configure the name, e-mail, and comment information to be required. Use an asterisk to inform your web page visitor about the required fields.

**b.** Code `type="email"` instead of `type="input"` for the e-mail address.

**c.** Use the `placeholder` attribute (refer to [Table 9.2](#)) to provide hints to the user in the name and e-mail form controls.

**3.** Add a slider control (use `type="range"`) to generate a value from 1 to 10 for the rating.

The HTML for the form follows:

```
<form method="post"
action="https://webdevbasics.net/scripts/demo.
php">
    <label for="myName">*Name:</label>
    <input type="text" name="myName" id="myName"
        required placeholder="your first and
        last name">
    <label for="myEmail">*E-mail:</label>
    <input type="email" name="myEmail"
        id="myEmail"
        required
        placeholder="you@yourdomain.com">
    <label for="myRating">Rating (1 - 10):
    </label>
    <input type="range" name="myRating"
        id="myRating" min="1" max="10">
    <label for="myComments">*Comments:</label>
    <textarea name="myComments" id="myComments"
        rows="2" cols="20"
        required></textarea>
    <input id="mySubmit" type="submit"
        value="Submit">
</form>
```

4. Save comment.html and test your web page in a browser. If you use a browser that supports the HTML5 features used in the form, your page should look similar to [Figure 9.31](#).

5. Try submitting the form without entering any information.

[Figure 9.32](#) shows the result when using Firefox. Note the error message which indicates that the name field is required. Compare your work with the solution in the student files (chapter9/9.8/comment.html).

**Figure 9.32 The Firefox browser displays an error message**

The screenshot shows a Firefox browser window with a title bar labeled "Comment Form". The main content area displays a form titled "Send Us Your Comments". Below the title, a note says "Required fields are marked with an asterisk \*". The form contains three input fields: a "Name" field containing "your first and last name", an "E-mail" field with the placeholder "Please fill out this field.", and a "Comments" field. The "E-mail" field is highlighted with a red border and has a blue arrow pointing downwards towards the "Comments" field. A "Submit" button is at the bottom of the form.

# Progressive Enhancement

Use HTML5 form elements with the concept of progressive enhancement in mind. Nonsupporting browsers will display text boxes in place of form elements that are not recognized. Supporting browsers will display and process the new form controls. This is progressive enhancement in action: Everyone sees a usable form and visitors who are using modern browsers benefit from the enhanced features.

# Chapter Summary

This chapter introduced the use of forms on web pages. You learned how to configure form controls, provide for accessibility, and configure a form to access server-side processing. Visit the textbook website at <https://www.webdevfoundations.net> for examples, the links listed in this chapter, and updated information.

# Key Terms

[\*\*<button>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<fieldset>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<form>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<input>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<label>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<legend>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<option>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<select>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<textarea>\*\*](#)

**accept** attribute  
**accesskey** attribute  
**action** attribute  
**autofocus** attribute  
**boolean** attribute  
**button element**  
**capture** attribute  
**check box**  
**color-well form control**  
**Common Gateway Interface (CGI)**  
**datalist form control**  
**date and time form controls**  
**direct execution**  
**e-mail address input**  
**fieldset element**  
**file upload control**  
**for** attribute  
**form**  
**form controls**

[form element](#) ①

[hidden input control](#) ①

[image button](#) ①

[input element](#) ①

[label element](#) ①

[legend element](#) ①

[list attribute](#) ①

[max attribute](#) ①

[method attribute](#) ①

[min attribute](#) ①

[multiple attribute](#)

[name attribute](#) ①

[option element](#) ①

[password box](#) ①

[placeholder attribute](#)

[privacy policy](#) ①

[radio button](#) ①

[required attribute](#) ①

[reset button](#) ①

[scrolling text box](#) ①

[search field](#) ①

[select element](#) ①

[select list](#) ①

[server-side scripting](#) ①

[slider form control](#) ①

[spinner form control](#) ①

[step attribute](#) ①

[submit button](#) ①

[tabindex attribute](#) ①

[telephone number input](#) ①

[text box](#) ①

[textarea element](#) ①

URL input ↗

**value** attribute

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. You would like to conduct a survey and ask your web page visitors to vote for their favorite search engine. Which of the following form controls is best to use for this purpose?
  - a. check box
  - b. radio button
  - c. text box
  - d. scrolling text box
  
2. You would like to conduct a survey and ask your web page visitors to indicate the web browsers that they use. Which of the following form controls is best to use for this purpose?
  - a. check box
  - b. radio button
  - c. text box
  - d. scrolling text box
  
3. Which attribute of the form element is used to specify the name and location of the script that will process the form field values?
  - a. action
  - b. process
  - c. method
  - d. id
  
4. Choose the HTML tag that would configure a text box with the name "city" and a width of 40 characters.
  - a. `<input type="text" id="city" width="40">`
  - b. `<input type="text" name="city" size="40">`
  - c. `<input type="text" name="city" space="40">`

d. `<input type="text" width="40">`

5. Which of the following form controls would be appropriate for an area that your visitors can use to type in their e-mail address?

- a. select list
- b. text box
- c. scrolling text box
- d. label

6. Which of the following form controls would be appropriate for an area that your visitors can use to type in comments about your website?

- a. text box
- b. select list
- c. radio button
- d. scrolling text box

7. Forms contain various types of \_\_\_\_\_, such as text boxes and buttons, which accept information from a web page visitor.

- a. hidden elements
- b. labels
- c. form controls
- d. legends

8. Which HTML tag would configure a scrolling text box with the name "comments", 2 rows, and 30 characters?

- a. `<textarea name="comments" width="30" rows="2">  
</textarea>`
- b. `<input type="textarea" size="30" name="comments" rows="2">`
- c. `<textarea name="comments" rows="2" cols="30">  
</textarea>`
- d. `<input type="comments" rows="2" name="comments" cols="30">`

9. You would like to accept a number that's in a range from 1 to 25.

The user needs visual verification of the number they selected.

Which of the following form controls is best to use for this purpose?

- a. spinner
- b. check box
- c. radio button
- d. slider

10. Choose the HTML that would associate a label displaying the text "E-mail:" with the e-mail text box.

- a. E-mail <input type="textbox" name="email" id="email">
- b. <label>E-mail: </label><input type="text" name="email" id="email">
- c. <label for="email">E-mail: </label><input type="text" name="email" id="emailaddress">
- d. <label for="email">E-mail: </label><input type="text" name="email" id="email">

11. What will happen when a browser encounters a form control that it does not support?

- a. The computer will shut down.
- b. The browser will crash.
- c. The browser will display an error message.
- d. The browser will display an input text box.

## Fill in the Blank

- 12. To limit the number of characters that a text box will accept, use the \_\_\_\_\_ attribute.
- 13. To group a number of form controls visually on the page, use the \_\_\_\_\_ element.

**14.** To cause a number of radio buttons to be treated as a single group, the value of the \_\_\_\_\_ attribute must be identical.

## Short Answer

**15.** Describe at least three form controls that could be used to allow a visitor to your web page to select a color.

# Apply Your Knowledge

**1. PREDICT THE RESULT.** Draw and write a brief description of the web page that will be created with the following HTML code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Predict the Result</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<h1>Contact Us</h1>
<form action="myscript.php">
<fieldset><legend>Complete the form and a
consultant will contact
you.</legend>
E-mail: <input type="text" name="email" id="email"
size="40">
<br>Please indicate which services you are
interested in:<br>
<select name="inquiry" id="inquiry" size="1">
<option value="development">Web
Development</option>
<option value="redesign">Web Redesign</option>
<option value="maintain">Web
Maintenance</option>
<option value="info">General
Information</option>
</select>
<br>
<input type="submit">
</fieldset>
</form>
<nav><a href="index.html">Home</a>
<a href="services.html">Services</a>
<a href="contact.html">Contact</a></nav>
</body>
</html>
```

**2. FILL IN THE MISSING CODE.** This web page configures a survey form to collect information on the favorite search engine used by web page visitors. The form action should submit the

form to the server-side script, called survey.php. Some HTML tags and their attributes, indicated by `<_>`, are missing. Some HTML attribute values, indicated by `"_"`, are missing.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Fill in the Missing Code</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<h1>Vote for your favorite Search Engine</h1>
<form method="_" action="_">
    <input type="radio" name="_" id="Ysurvey"
value="Yahoo">
    Yahoo!<br>
    <input type="radio" name="survey" id="Gsurvey"
value="Google">
    Google<br>
    <input type="radio" name="_" id="Bsurvey"
value="Bing"> Bing<br>
    <_>
</form>
</body>
</html>
```

**3. FIND THE ERROR.** Find the coding errors in the following subscription form:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Find the Error</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<p>Subscribe to our monthly newsletter and receive
free coupons!</p>
<form action="get" method="newsletter.php">
    <label>E-mail: <input type="textbox"
name="email" id="email"
        char="40"></label>
    <br>
    <input button="submit"> <input type="rest">
</form>
```

```
</body>  
</html>
```

# Hands-On Exercises

1. Write the HTML code to create the following:
  - a. A text box named user that will be used to accept the user name of web page visitors. The text box should allow a maximum of 30 characters to be entered.
  - b. A group of radio buttons that website visitors can check to vote for their favorite month of the year.
  - c. A select list that asks website visitors to select their favorite social networking site
  - d. A fieldset and legend with the text "Shipping Address" around the following form controls:  
AddressLine1, AddressLine2, City, State, ZIP
  - e. An image called signup.gif as an image button on a form
  - f. A hidden input control with the name userid
  - g. A password box form control with the name pword
  - h. A form tag to invoke server-side processing using <https://webdevbasics.net/scripts/demo.php> and the post method
2. Write the HTML to create a form that accepts requests for a brochure to be sent in the mail. Sketch out the form on paper before you begin.
3. Create a web page with a form that accepts feedback from website visitors. Use input `type="email"` along with the `required` attribute to configure the browser to verify the data entered. Also configure the browser to require user comments with a maximum length of 1600 characters accepted. Place your name and e-mail address at the bottom of the page. *Hint:* Sketch out the form on paper before you begin.
4. Create a web page with a form that accepts a website visitor's name, e-mail, and birthdate. Use input `type="date"` to configure

a calendar date-picker control. Place your name and e-mail address at the bottom of the page. *Hint:* Sketch out the form on paper before you begin.

5. Write a web page that contains a music survey form similar to the example shown in [Figure 9.33](#).

**Figure 9.33 Sample music survey form**

## Music Survey

Name:

E-Mail:

Select Your Favorite Types of Music:

- Pop
- Classical
- Rock
- Folk
- Rap
- Other

Select how often you purchase Music:

- Weekly
- A few CDs each year
- Monthly
- Never purchase

Select the locations you listen to Music:

- At home
- In the car
- Anywhere

What role does music play in your life?

Include the following form controls:

- Text box for name

- E-mail address input form control for the e-mail address
- A scrolling text box that is 60 characters wide and 3 rows high
- A radio button group with at least three choices
- A check box group with at least three choices
- A select box that initially shows three items but contains at least four items
- A submit button
- A reset button
- Use the fieldset and legend elements as shown in [Figure 9.33](#) to configure the display of form areas with radio buttons and checkboxes.

Use a CSS to configure the display of your form. Place your name and e-mail address at the bottom of the page.

# Web Research

1. This chapter mentioned a number of sources of free remotely hosted scripts, including FormBuddy.com (<http://formbuddy.com>) and FormMail (<https://www.formmail.com>). Visit these sites or use a search engine to find other resources for free remotely hosted scripts. Register (if necessary) and examine the website to see exactly what is offered. Most sites that provide remotely hosted scripts have a demo you can view or try. If you have time (or your instructor asks you to), follow the directions and access a remotely hosted script from one of your web pages. Now that you've at least been through a demo of the product or tried it yourself (even better!), it's time to write your review.

Create a web page that lists the two resource sites you chose and provides a comparison of what they offer. List the following for each website:

- Ease of registration
- Number of scripts or services offered
- Types of scripts or services offered
- Site banner or advertisement
- Ease of use
- Your recommendation

Provide links to the resource sites you reviewed and place your name and e-mail address at the bottom of the page.

2. Search the Web for a web page that uses an HTML form. Print the browser view of the page. Print out the source code of the web page. Using the printout, highlight or circle the tags related to forms. On a separate sheet of paper, create some HTML notes by listing the tags and attributes related to the forms found on your sample page along with a brief description of their purpose.

**3.** Choose one server-side technology mentioned in this chapter such as PHP, JSP, or Ruby on Rails. Use the resources listed in the chapter as a starting point, but also search the Web for additional resources on the server-side technology you have chosen. Create a web page that lists at least five useful resources along with information about each that provides the name of the site, the URL, a brief description of what is offered, and a recommended page (such as a tutorial, free script, and so on). Place your name in an e-mail link on the web page.

# Focus on Web Design

The design of a form, such as the justification of the labels, the use of background colors, and even the order of the form elements can either increase or decrease the usability of a form. Visit some of the following resources to explore form design:

- Designing Efficient Web Forms: <https://www.smashingmagazine.com/2017/06/designing-efficient-web-forms/>
- Form Design Best Practices: <https://blog.hubspot.com/marketing/form-design>
- Best Practices for Mobile Form Design: <https://www.smashingmagazine.com/2018/08/best-practices-for-mobile-form-design/>

Feel free to search on your own and locate additional resources. Create a web page that lists the URLs of at least two useful resources along with a brief description of the information you found most interesting or valuable. Design a form on the web page that applies what you've just learned in your exploration of form design. Place your name in an e-mail link on the web page.

---

## Website Case Study Adding a Form

Each of the following case studies continues throughout most of the textbook. This chapter adds a page containing a form that invokes server-side processing to the websites.

## JavaJam Coffee Bar

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the JavaJam Coffee Bar case study. [Figure 2.32](#) shows a site map for the JavaJam site. Use the [Chapter 8](#) JavaJam website as a starting point for this case study. You will create the new Jobs page that contains a form. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this JavaJam case study.
2. Modify the style sheet (javajam.css) to configure style rules for the new form.
3. Create the new Jobs page shown in [Figure 9.34](#).

**Figure 9.34 JavaJam Jobs page**



## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called javajam9. Copy all of the files from your [Chapter 8](#)  javajam8 folder into the javajam9 folder. Copy the herojobs.jpg and coffeecup.jpg files from the chapter9/starters folder in the student files.

**Task 2: Configure the CSS.** Modify the external style sheet (javajam.css). Review [Figure 9.34](#)  and the grid layout sketch in [Figure 9.35](#) . Notice how the text labels for the form controls are on the left side of the content area. Notice the empty space between each form control. When displaying on a narrow viewport, the display will be more pleasing if there is only one column, as shown in [Figure 9.36](#) . Open javajam.css in a text editor. Configure the CSS as follows:

1. Format the hero image. Code a selector above the media queries for an id named `herojobs` with 300px height. Set the background image to coffeecup.jpg. The background image will not repeat. Also configure `background-size: 100% 100%`.
2. Configure the single column display for narrow viewports using flexbox. Add the following CSS above the media queries to configure the `form` element selector as a flex container with one column, 1em left padding, and 80% width. Also set a .5em bottom margin on the `input` and `textarea` element selectors.

```
form { display: flex;
        flex-direction: column;
        padding-left: 1em; width: 80%;
    }
```

```
input, textarea { margin-bottom: .5em; }
```

3. Configure the two-column display with grid layout and format a larger hero image. Add CSS to the first media query to accomplish this.

a. Configure a form element selector. Set 40% width, grid display with 1em grid gap, and two columns (6em width and 1 fr width).

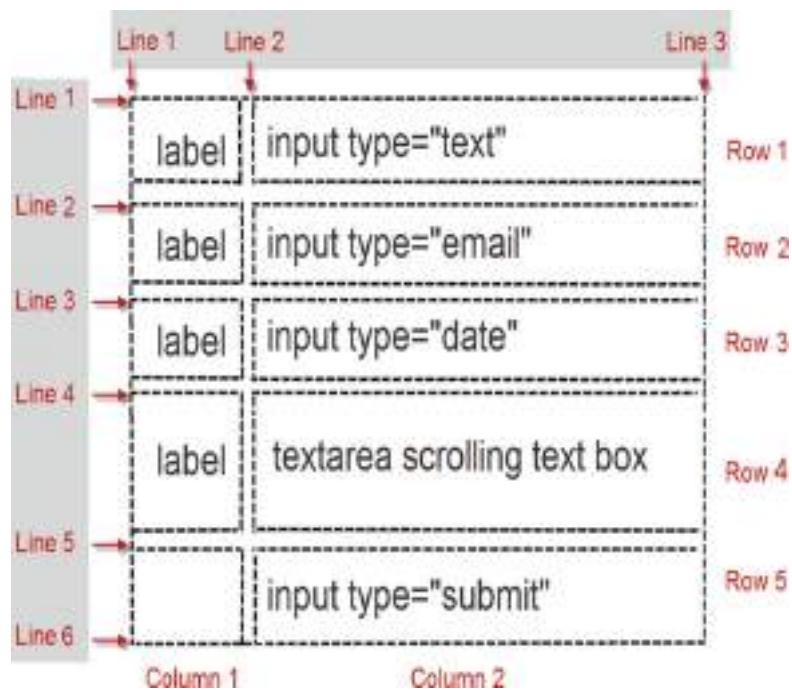
b. Configure an attribute selector for the submit button. Use the `grid-column` property to place this in the second column. Set width to 9em.

c. Configure a selector for an id named `herojobs`. Set the background image to `herojobs.jpg`.

---

**Figure 9.35 The grid layout sketch of the form**

---



---

**Figure 9.36 Single column form in a narrow viewport**

---



Save the javajam.css file.

**TASK 3: CREATE THE JOBS PAGE.** Use the Menu page as the starting point for the Jobs page. Launch a text editor and open menu.html. Save the file as jobs.html. Modify your jobs.html file to look similar to the Jobs page (shown in Figure 9.34) as follows:

- 1.** Change the page title to an appropriate phrase.
- 2.** The Jobs page will contain an h2, a paragraph, and a form in the main element. Assign the first div to an id named `herojobs`.
- 3.** Edit the text within the h2 element to say “Jobs at JavaJam”. Replace the text in the paragraph with the following: “Want to work at JavaJam? Fill out the form below to start your application. All information is required.”
- 4.** Delete the remaining menu-related content from the page: the table and the div assigned to the `flow` id.
- 5.** Prepare to code the HTML for the form area. Begin with a form element that uses the post method and the action attribute to invoke server-side processing. Unless directed otherwise by your instructor, configure the action attribute to send the form data to <https://webdevbasics.net/scripts/javajam8.php>.
- 6.** Configure the form control for the Name information. Create a label element that contains the text “Name:”. Create a text box named `myName`. Configure the browser to require entry in the text box. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control.
- 7.** Configure the form control for the E-mail information. Create a label element that contains the text “E-mail:”. Create e-mail address input form control named `myEmail`. Configure the browser to require entry in the text box. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control.

- 8.** Configure the form control for the date available to start work. Create a label element that contains the text “Start Date:” Create a calendar date-picker form control named myStart. Configure the browser to require the user to enter or select this information. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control.
- 9.** Configure the Experience area on the form. Create a label element that contains the text “Experience:”. Create a textarea element named myExperience with `rows` set to 2 and `cols` set to 20. Configure the browser to require entry in the textarea. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control.
- 10.** Configure the submit button. Code an input element with `type="submit"` and `value="Apply Now"`. Assign the input element to an id named mySubmit.
- 11.** Code an ending `</form>` tag on a blank line after the submit button.

Save your file and test your web page in a browser. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 9.34](#). If you resize the browser viewport to be narrower, the display should be similar to [Figure 9.36](#). If you are connected to the Internet, enter all the information and submit the form. This will send your form information to the server-side script configured in the form tag. A confirmation page that lists the form information and their corresponding names will be displayed.

Next, submit the form with missing information or only a partial e-mail address. Depending on the browser's level of HTML5 support, the browser may perform form validation and display an error message. **Figure 9.37** shows the Jobs page rendered in the Firefox browser with an incorrectly formatted e-mail address.

**Figure 9.37** The Jobs page shows an error message

The screenshot shows a Firefox browser window displaying the JavaJam Coffee Bar website. The title bar reads "JavaJam Coffee Bar". The main content area features a large image of a coffee cup with latte art. To the left is a sidebar with a coffee cup icon and links for "Home", "Menu", "Music", and "Jobs". The "Jobs" link is highlighted. Below the sidebar, the main content area has a yellow header "Jobs at JavaJam" and a sub-header "Want to work at JavaJam? Fill out the form below to start your application. All information is required." The form fields are as follows:

Name:	Espy Felipe
Email:	<input type="text" value=""/>
Start Date:	<input type="text" value="Please enter an email address"/>
Experience:	One year (equals 12 months) experience

At the bottom of the form is a blue "Apply Now" button. The footer of the page includes the text "Copyright 2010 JavaJam Coffee Bar" and a link "www.javajamcoffeebar.com".

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Fish Creek Animal Clinic case study. [Figure 2.36](#) shows a site map for Fish Creek. Use the [Chapter 8](#) Fish Creek website as a starting point for this case study. You will create the new Contact page that contains a form. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Fish Creek case study.
2. Modify the fishcreek.css style sheet to configure style rules for the new form.
3. Create the new Contact page shown in [Figure 9.38](#).

**Figure 9.38 Fish Creek Contact page**

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Contact Fish Creek". The main content area has a blue header with the text "Fish Creek Animal Clinic". On the left, there is a vertical navigation menu with links: Home, Services, Ask the Vet, and Contact. The "Contact" link is currently selected and highlighted in blue. The main content area has a heading "Contact Fish Creek" and a sub-instruction "Fill out the form below to contact Fish Creek. All information is required." Below this, there are four input fields: "Name:" with a text input field, "E-mail:" with a text input field, "Reason for Contact:" with a text input field, and "Comments:" with a text input field. At the bottom of the form is a "Send Form" button. A small copyright notice at the bottom right of the page reads "Copyright © 2010 Fish Creek Animal Clinic [www.fishcreekanimalclinic.com](#)".

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called fishcreek9. Copy all of the files from your [Chapter 8](#) fishcreek8 folder into the fishcreek9 folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Modify the external style sheet (fischcreek.css). Open fishcreek.css in a text editor. Review [Figure 9.38](#) and the grid layout sketch in [Figure 9.39](#). Notice how the text labels for the form controls are on the left side of the content area but contain right-aligned text. Notice the empty vertical space between each form control. When displaying on a narrow viewport, the display will be more pleasing if there is only one column, as shown in [Figure 9.40](#). Configure CSS as follows:

1. Configure the single column display for narrow viewports using flexbox. Add the following CSS above the media queries to configure the form element selector as a flex container with one column, 1em left padding, and 80% width. Also set a .5em bottom margin on the input and textarea element selectors.

```
form { display: flex;
        flex-direction: column;
        padding-left: 1em; width:
80%; }
input, textarea { margin-bottom: .5em;
}
```

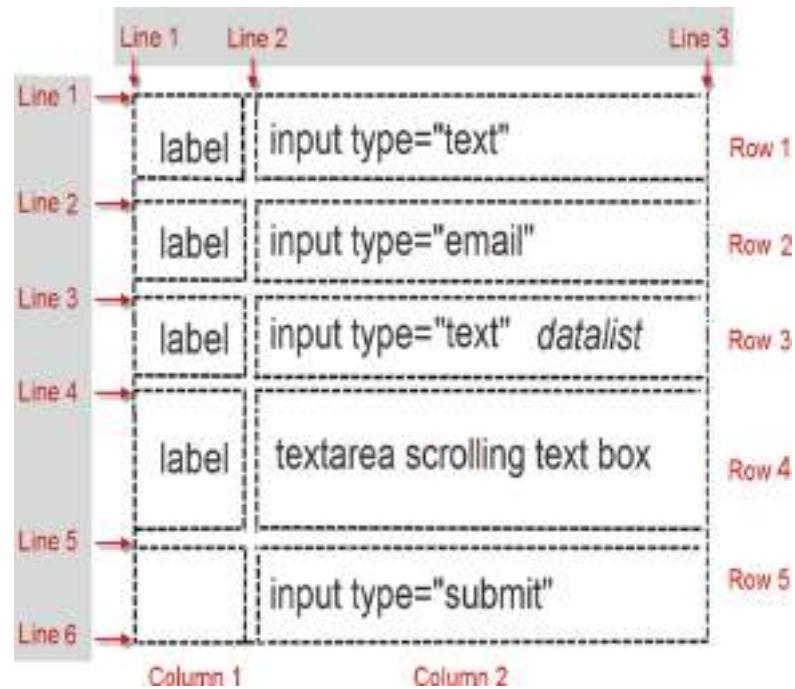
2. Configure the two-column display with grid layout.

Add CSS to the first media query.

- a. Configure a form element selector. Set 40% width, grid display with 1em grid gap, and two columns (6em width and 1 fr width).
- b. Configure an attribute selector for the submit button. Place this in the second column using the `grid-column` property. Set width to 9em.

- c. Configure a label element selector with right alignment.

**Figure 9.39** The grid layout sketch of the form



**Figure 9.40** Single-column form in a narrow viewport

The screenshot shows a website for Fish Creek Animal Clinic. The header features the clinic's name in white text on a dark blue background. Below the header is a vertical navigation menu with four items: Home, Services, Ask the Vet, and Contact. The Contact item is highlighted with a light blue background. The main content area has a light blue background and contains a heading 'Contact Fish Creek' in bold. A sub-instruction says 'Fill out the form below to contact Fish Creek. All information is required.' Below this are four input fields: 'Name:' with a text input field, 'E-mail:' with a text input field, 'Reason for Contact:' with a text input field, and 'Comments:' with a text input field. At the bottom of the form is a grey button labeled 'Send Now'. At the very bottom of the page, there is a copyright notice: 'Copyright © 2020 Fish Creek Animal Clinic' and an email address 'yourfirstname@yourlastname.com'.

**Fish Creek  
Animal Clinic**

Home

Services

Ask the Vet

Contact

**Contact Fish Creek**

Fill out the form below to contact Fish Creek. All information is required.

Name:

E-mail:

Reason for Contact:

Comments:

**Send Now**

Copyright © 2020 Fish Creek Animal Clinic  
yourfirstname@yourlastname.com

Save the fishcreek.css file.

**TASK 3: CREATE THE CONTACT PAGE.** Use the Ask the Vet page as the starting point for the Contact page. Launch a text editor and open askvet.html. Save the file as contact.html. Modify your contact.html file to look similar to the Contact page (shown in Figure 9.36) as follows:

1. Change the page title to an appropriate phrase.

2. Delete the description list, img element, and div assigned to the id `flow`.
3. Replace the text within the h2 element with following: “Contact Fish Creek”.
4. Replace the text in the paragraph with the following:

Fill out the form below to contact Fish Creek.  
All information is required.
5. Prepare to code the HTML for the form area. Begin with a form element that uses the post method and the action attribute to invoke server-side processing. Unless directed otherwise by your instructor, configure the action attribute to send the form data to <https://webdevbasics.net/scripts/fishcreek.php>.
6. Configure the form control for the Name information. Create a label element that contains the text “Name:”. Create a text box named myName. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control. Configure the browser to require entry in the text box.
7. Configure the form control for the E-mail information. Create a label element that contains the text “E-mail:”. Create e-mail address input form control named myEmail. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control. Configure the browser to require entry in the text box.
8. Configure the form control to accept the reason for contacting Fish Creek. Create a label element that contains the text “Reason for Contact:”. Create a text box named myReason. Use the `for` attribute to

associate the label element with the textbox. Configure the browser to require entry in the text box. Associate the text box with a datalist named reasons. Configure datalist and option elements to display the following reasons: New Patient, Appointment, House Call, Information, Ask the Vet.

9. Configure the Comments area on the form. Create a label element that contains the text “Comments:”. Create a textarea element named myComments with `rows` set to 2 and `cols` set to 20. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control. Configure the browser to require entry in the textarea.
10. Configure the submit button on the form. Configure “Send Now” to display on the button. Assign the input element to the id named `mySubmit`.
11. Code an ending `</form>` tag on a blank line after the submit button.

Save your file and test your web page in a browser. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 9.38](#). If you resize the browser viewport to be narrower, the display should be similar to [Figure 9.40](#). If you are connected to the Internet, submit the form. This will send your form information to the server-side script configured in the form tag. A confirmation page that lists the form information and their corresponding names will be displayed.

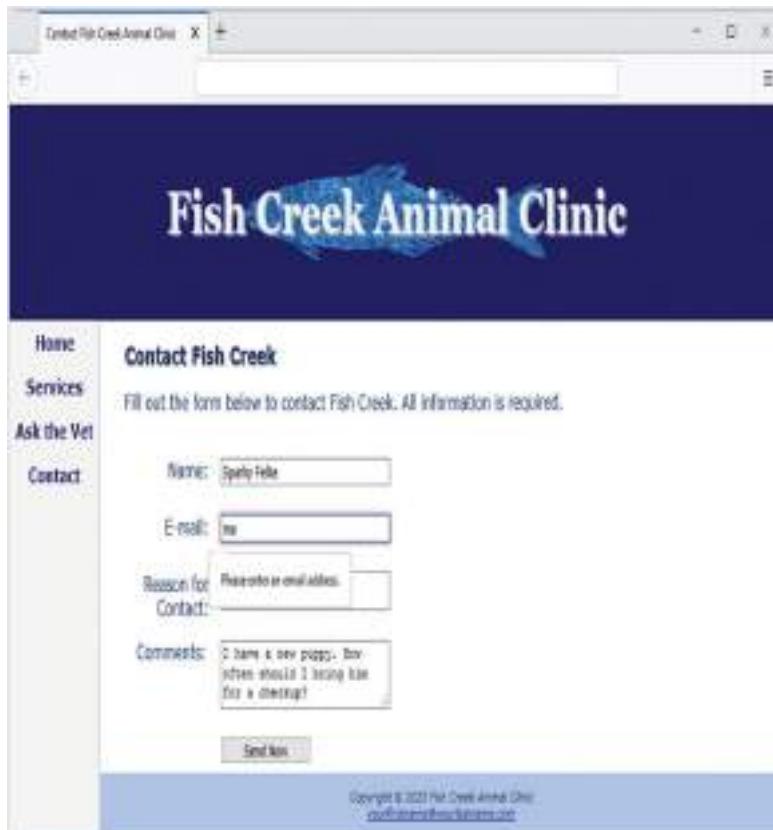
Next, save your file and display your web page in a browser. Submit the form with missing information or only a partial e-mail address. Depending on the browser’s

level of HTML5 support, the browser may perform form validation and display an error message. [Figure 9.41](#) shows the Contact page rendered in the Firefox browser with missing required information.

---

**Figure 9.41 The Contact page shows an error message**

---



The screenshot shows a Firefox browser window with the title bar "Contact Fish Creek Animal Clinic". The main content area displays the "Fish Creek Animal Clinic" logo. On the left, a vertical menu bar lists "Home", "Services", "Ask the Vet", and "Contact". The "Contact" menu item is currently selected. The main content area has a heading "Contact Fish Creek" and a sub-instruction "Fill out the form below to contact Fish Creek. All information is required." Below this, there are four input fields: "Name" (containing "Spotty Paws"), "E-mail" (empty), "Reason for Contact" (empty), and "Comments" (containing "I have a new puppy. How often should I bring him for a checkup?"). A "Send Now" button is at the bottom. At the very bottom of the page, a footer bar contains the text "Copyright © 2021 Fish Creek Animal Clinic" and the URL "www.fishcreekanimalclinic.com".

## Pacific Trails Resort

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Pacific Trails Resort case study. [Figure 2.40](#) shows a site map for Pacific Trails. Use the [Chapter 8](#) Pacific Trails website as a starting point for this case study. You will create the new Reservations page that contains a form. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Pacific Trails case study.

**2.** Modify the style sheet (pacific.css) to configure style rules for the new form.

**3.** Create the new Reservations page shown in [Figure 9.42](#).

**Figure 9.42 Pacific Trails Reservations page**

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Pacific Trails Resort Reservations". The main header is "Pacific Trails Resort" with a blue background. Below it is a navigation bar with links for "Home", "Yurts", "Activities", and "Reservations". The main content area features a large, scenic photograph of a rocky coastline with waves crashing against the rocks under a clear blue sky. Below the photo, the heading "Reservations at Pacific Trails" is displayed in blue text. A "Contact Us" section follows, with a note that required fields are marked with an asterisk (\*). The form includes fields for "First Name", "Last Name", "E-mail", "Phone", "Arrival Date" (set to "04/22/2022"), "Nights" (set to "3"), and "Comments". A "Submit" button is located at the bottom of the form. At the very bottom of the page, there is a copyright notice: "Copyright © 2022 Pacific Trails Resort" and a link "www.pacistrails.com/Reservations.aspx".

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called pacific9. Copy all of the files from your [Chapter 8](#).

pacific8 folder into the pacific9 folder. Copy the ocean.jpg file from the student files chapter9/starters folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Modify the external style sheet (pacific.css). Open pacific.css in a text editor.

Review [Figure 9.42](#) and the grid layout sketch in [Figure 9.43](#). Notice how the text labels for the form controls are on the left side of the content area. Notice the empty vertical space between each form control. When displaying on a narrow viewport, the display will be more pleasing if there is only one column, as shown in [Figure 9.44](#). Configure CSS as indicated below:

1. Configure the single column display for narrow viewports using flexbox. Add the following CSS above the media queries.
  - a. Configure the form element selector as a flex container with one column, 1em left padding, and 80% width.

```
form { display: flex;
        flex-direction: column;
        padding-left: 1em;
        width: 80%; }
```

- b. Set a .5em bottom margin on the input and textarea element selectors.
  - c. Configure an id named `reshero` to with 300px height, ocean.jpg background image, background-size 200% 100%, and no background image repeat.

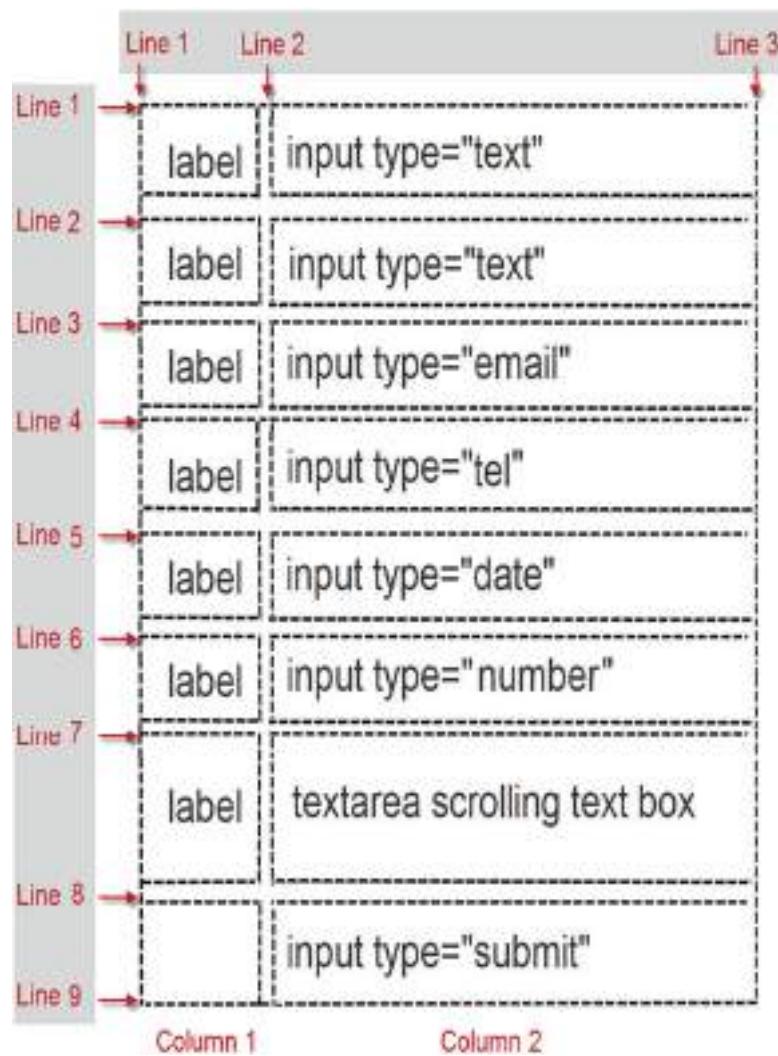
2. Configure the two-column display with grid layout.

Add CSS to the first media query.

- a. Configure a form element selector. Set 60% width, grid display with 1em grid gap, and two columns (10em width and 1 fr width).
- b. Configure an attribute selector for the submit button. Place this in the second column with the `grid-column` property. Set width to 9em.
- c. Configure the `reshero` id with background size: 100% 100%.

---

**Figure 9.43 The grid layout sketch of the form**



**Figure 9.44 Single-column form in a narrow viewport**

The screenshot shows a single-column layout for the Pacific Trails Resort website. At the top is a dark blue header bar with the text "Pacific Trails Resort". Below the header is a navigation menu with four items: "Home", "Yurts", "Activities", and "Reservations". The main content area features a large, scenic photograph of a rocky coastline under a clear blue sky. Below the photo, the title "Reservations at Pacific Trails" is displayed in bold blue text. Underneath the title is the heading "Contact Us". A note states: "Required fields are marked with an asterisk \*." Following this are several input fields: "First Name:" with an input field, "Last Name:" with an input field, "E-mail:" with an input field, "Phone:" with an input field, "Arrival Date:" with an input field containing "mm / dd / yyyy", "Nights:" with an input field containing "1", and "Comments:" with a larger input field. At the bottom of the form is a "Submit" button. At the very bottom of the page, there is a copyright notice: "Copyright © 2020 Pacific Trails Resort" and an email address: "yourfirstnamelastname@outlook.com".

Save the pacific.css file.

**TASK 3: CREATE THE RESERVATIONS PAGE.** Use the Home page as the starting point for the Reservations page. Launch a text editor and open index.html. Save the file as reservations.html. Modify your reservations.html

file to look similar to the Reservations page (shown in [Figure 9.42](#)) as follows:

1. Change the page title to an appropriate phrase.
2. Locate the div assigned to the `homehero` id. Replace `homehero` with `reshero`.
3. Delete all HTML tags and content within the main element except for the `h2` element and text.
4. Replace the text contained within the `<h2>` tags with: “Reservations at Pacific Trails”.
5. Configure an `h3` element on a line under the `h2` with the following text: “Contact Us”.
6. Configure a paragraph with the following text:  
Required fields are marked with an asterisk\*.
7. Prepare to code the HTML for the form area. Begin with a `form` element that uses the `post` method and the `action` attribute to invoke server-side processing. Unless directed otherwise by your instructor, configure the `action` attribute to send the form data to <https://webdevbasics.net/scripts/pacific.php>.
8. Configure the form control for the First Name information. Create a `label` element that contains the text “\*First Name:”. Create a text box named `myFName`. Use the `for` attribute to associate the `label` element with the form control. Configure the browser to require entry in the text box.
9. Configure the form control for the Last Name information. Create a `label` element that contains the text “\*Last Name:”. Create a text box named `myLName`. Use the `for` attribute to associate the

label element with the form control. Configure the browser to require entry in the text box.

- 10.** Configure the form control for the E-mail information. Create a label element that contains the text “\*E-mail:”. Create e-mail address input form control named myEmail. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control. Configure the browser to require entry in the text box.
- 11.** Configure the form control for the Phone information. Create a label element that contains the text “Phone:”. Create a text box named myPhone. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control. Configure the browser to require entry in the text box.
- 12.** Configure the form control for the reservation arrival date. Create a label element that contains the text “Arrival Date:” Create a calendar date-picker form control named myDate. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control.
- 13.** Configure the form control for the number of nights. Create a label element that contains the text “Nights:” Create a spinner input form control (use `type=“number”`) named myNights. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control. Configure the spinner form control to process a value between 1 and 14 to indicate the number of nights for the length of stay. Use the `min` and `max` attributes to configure the range of values.

- 14.** Configure the Comments area on the form. Create a label element that contains the text “Comments:”. Create a textarea element named myComments with `rows` set to 2 and `cols` set to 20. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control. Configure the browser to require entry in the textarea.
- 15.** Configure the submit button on the form. Configure “Submit” to display on the button. Assign the input element to the id named `mySubmit`.
- 16.** Code an ending `</form>` tag on a blank line after the submit button.

Save your file and test your web page in a browser. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 9.42](#). If you resize the browser viewport to be narrower, the display should be similar to [Figure 9.44](#). If you are connected to the Internet, submit the form. This will send your form information to the server-side script configured in the form tag. A confirmation page that lists the form information and their corresponding names will be displayed.

Next, submit the form with missing information or only a partial e-mail address. Depending on the browser’s level of HTML5 support, the browser may perform form validation and display an error message. [Figure 9.45](#) shows part of the Reservations page rendered with an incorrectly formatted e-mail address.

---

**Figure 9.45** The Reservations page shows an error message

---

**Reservations at Pacific Trails**

Contact Us

Required fields are marked with an asterisk.\*

\*First Name:

\*Last Name:

\*E-mail:

Phone:  Please fill out this field.

Arrival Date:

Nights:

\*Comments:

## Path of Light Yoga Studio

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Path of Light Yoga Studio case study. [Figure 2.44](#) shows a site map for Path of Light Yoga Studio. Use the [Chapter 8](#) Path of Light Yoga Studio website as a starting point for this case study. You will create the new Contact page that uses a form. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Path of Light Yoga Studio case study.
2. Modify the style sheet (yoga.css) to configure style rules for the new form.
3. Create the Contact page shown in [Figure 9.42](#).

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called yoga9. Copy all of the files from your [Chapter 8](#) yoga8

folder into the yoga9 folder.

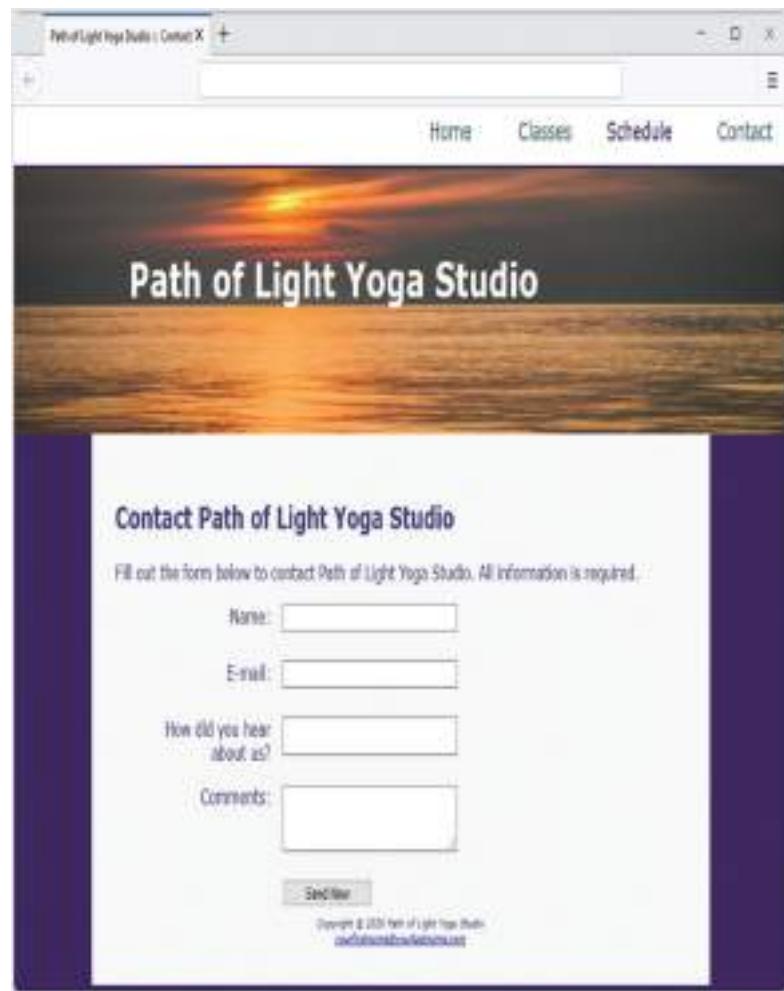
**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Modify the external style sheet. Open yoga.css in a text editor. Review Figure 9.46 and the grid layout sketch in Figure 9.47. Notice how the text labels for the form controls are on the left side of the content area but contain right-aligned text. Notice the empty vertical space between each form control. When displaying on a narrow viewport, the display will be more pleasing if there is only one column, as shown in Figure 9.48. Configure CSS as indicated below:

1. Configure the single column display for narrow viewports using flexbox. Add the following CSS above the media queries to configure the form element selector as a flex container with one column, 1em left padding, and 80% width. Also set a .5em bottom margin on the input and textarea element selectors.
2. Configure the two-column display with grid layout.  
Add CSS to the first media query.
  - a. Configure a form element selector. Set 60% width, grid display with 1em grid gap, and two columns (12em width and 1 fr width).
  - b. Configure an attribute selector for the submit button. Use the grid-column property to place this in the second column. Set width to 9em.
  - c. Configure a label element selector with right alignment.

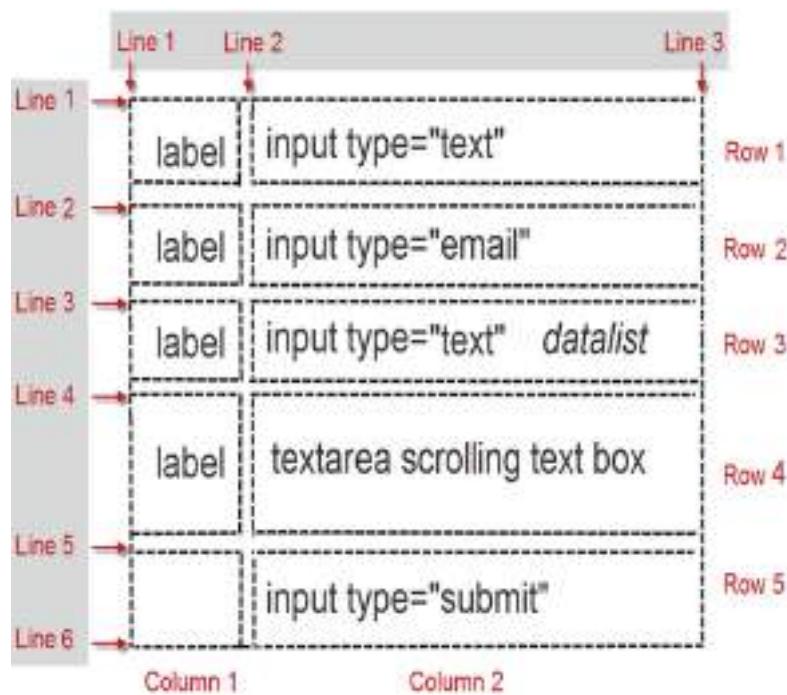
---

**Figure 9.46 Path of Light Yoga Studio Contact page**

---



**Figure 9.47** The grid layout sketch of the form



Save the yoga.css file.

---

**Figure 9.48 Single-column form in a narrow viewport**

---

[Home](#)   [Schedule](#)   [Classes](#)   [Contact](#)

# Path of Light Yoga Studio

## Contact Path of Light Yoga Studio

Fill out the form below to contact Path of Light Yoga Studio. All information is required.

Name:

E-mail:

How did you hear about us?

Comments:

Copyright © 2020 Path of Light Yoga Studio  
[yourfirstname@yourlastname.com](mailto:yourfirstname@yourlastname.com)

**TASK 3: CREATE THE CONTACT PAGE.** Use the Classes page as the starting point for the Contact page. Launch a text editor and open classes.html. Save the file as contact.html. Modify your contact.html file to look similar to the Contact page (shown in Figure 9.42) as follows:

1. Change the page title to an appropriate phrase.
2. The Contact page will display a form in the main element. Delete all HTML and content within the

main element except for the h2 element and its text.

3. Change the text in the h2 element to “Contact Path of Light Yoga Studio”.
4. Configure a paragraph that contains the following:

Fill out the form below to contact Path of Light Yoga Studio. All information is required.
5. Prepare to code the HTML for the form area. Begin with a form element that uses the post method and the action attribute to invoke server-side processing. Unless directed otherwise by your instructor, configure the action attribute to send the form data to <https://webdevbasics.net/scripts/yoga.php>.
6. Configure the form control for the Name information. Create a label element that contains the text “Name:”. Create a text box named myName. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control. Configure the browser to require entry in the text box.
7. Configure the form control for the E-mail information. Create a label element that contains the text “E-mail:”. Create a text box named myEmail. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control. Configure the browser to require entry in the text box.
8. Configure the form control to collect information about how the visitor heard about the yoga studio. Create a label element that contains the text “How did you hear about us?”. Create a text box named myRefer. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the textbox. Configure the browser to

require entry in the text box. Associate the text box with a datalist named referral. Configure datalist and option elements to display the following referral types: Google, Bing, Facebook, Friend, Radio Ad.

9. Configure the Comments area on the form. Create a label element that contains the text “Comments:”. Create a textarea element named myComments with `rows` set to 2 and `cols` set to 20. Use the `for` attribute to associate the label element with the form control. Configure the browser to require entry in the text box.
10. Configure the submit button on the form. Configure “Send Now” to display on the button. Assign the input element to the id named `mySubmit`.
11. Code an ending `</form>` tag on a blank line after the submit button.

Save your file and test your web page in a browser. It should look similar to the page shown in [Figure 9.46](#). If you resize the browser viewport to be narrower, the display should be similar to [Figure 9.48](#). If you are connected to the Internet, submit the form. This will send your form information to the server-side script configured in the form tag. A confirmation page that lists the form information and their corresponding names will be displayed.

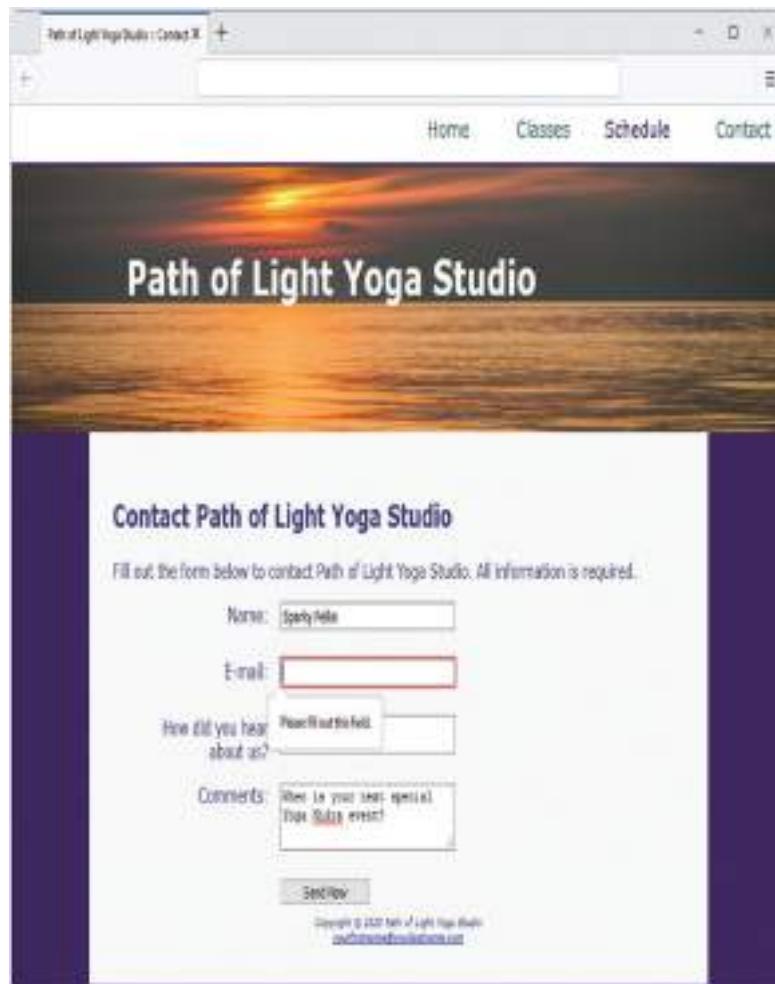
Next, submit the form with missing information or only a partial e-mail address. Depending on the browser’s level of HTML5 support, the browser may perform form validation and display an error message. [Figure 9.49](#)

shows the Contact page rendered in the Firefox browser with missing required information.

---

**Figure 9.49 Contact page shows an error message**

---



## Web Project

See [Chapters 5](#) and [6](#) for an introduction to the Web Project case study. You will either add a form to an existing page in your website or create a new page that contains a form. Use CSS to style the form.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

1. Choose one of your project web pages to contain the form. Sketch a design of the form you plan to create.
2. Modify your project's external CSS file (project.css) to configure the form areas as needed.
3. Update your chosen web page and add the HTML code for the form.
4. The form element should use the post method and action attributes to invoke server-side processing. Unless directed otherwise by your instructor, configure the action attribute to send the form data to <https://webdevbasics.net/scripts/demo.php>.

Save and test the page. If you are connected to the Internet, submit the form. This will send your form information to the server-side script configured in the form element.

A confirmation page that lists the form information and their corresponding names will be displayed.

---

# 10

## Web Development

---





## Chapter Objectives

---

### IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .

- Describe the skills, functions, and job roles needed to develop a successful web project
- Utilize the stages in the standard System Development Life Cycle
- Identify other common system development methodologies
- Apply the System Development Life Cycle to the development of web projects
- Identify opportunities and determine goals during the Conceptualization phase
- Determine information topics and site requirements during the Analysis phase
- Create the site map, page layout, prototype, and documentation as part of the Design phase
- Complete the web pages and associated files during the Production phase
- Verify the functionality of the website and use a test plan during the Testing phase
- Obtain client approval and launch a website
- Modify and enhance the website during the Maintenance phase
- Compare the goals of the website to the results as part of the Evaluation phase
- Describe best practices for website file organization

- Find the right web hosting provider for your website
- Choose a domain name for your website

**This chapter discusses the skills needed** for successful large-scale project development and introduces you to common web development methods, choosing a domain name, and options for hosting a website.

# 10.1 Successful Large-Scale Project Development

Large-scale projects are not completed by only one or two individuals. They are created by a group of people working together as a team. The job roles of project manager, information architect, marketing representative, copywriter, editor, content manager, graphic designer, database administrator, network administrator, and web developer/designer are usually needed for large projects. In smaller companies or organizations, each person can wear many hats and juggle his or her job roles. For a smaller-scale project, one of the web developers may double as the project manager, web designer, graphic designer, database administrator, and/or information architect. It is important to realize that each project is unique; each has its own needs and requirements. Choosing the right people to work on a web project team can make it or break it.

## Project Job Roles

### Project Manager

The **project manager** oversees the website development process and coordinates team activities. The project manager creates the project plan and schedule. This individual is accountable for reaching project milestones and producing results. Excellent organizational, managerial, and communication skills are required.

### Information Architect

The **information architect** clarifies the mission and goals of the site; assists in determining the functionality of the site; and is instrumental in defining the site organization, navigation, and labeling. Web developers and/or the project manager sometimes take on this role.

## User Experience Designer

User experience (UX) is the user's interaction with a product, application, or website. A **user experience designer**, referred to as a **UX designer**, focuses on the user's interaction with the website. The UX designer may be involved with prototypes, conduct usability testing, and in some cases may work with information architecture. In a small project the project manager, web developer, or web designer may also take on the role of a UX designer.

## Marketing Representative

The **marketing representative** handles the organization's marketing plan and goals. He or she works with the web designers to create a **web presence**, or a look and feel, that aligns with the marketing goals of the organization. The marketing representative also helps to coordinate the website with other media used for marketing, such as print, radio, and television marketing.

## Copywriter and Editor

The **copywriter** prepares and evaluates copy. When material from existing brochures, newsletters, and white papers will be used on the website, it must be repurposed or reworked for the web media. An **editor** may work with the copywriter to check the text for correct grammar and consistency.

## Content Manager

The **content manager** participates in the strategic and creative development and enhancement of the website. He or she oversees changes in content. The skill set of a successful content manager includes editing, copywriting, marketing, technology, and communications. The person in this dynamic job role must be able to facilitate change.

## Graphic Designer

The **graphic designer** determines the appropriate use of color and graphics on the site, designs wireframes and page layouts, creates logos and graphic images, and optimizes images for display on the Web.

## Database Administrator

A **database administrator** is needed if the site accesses information stored in databases. Database administrators create databases, create procedures to maintain databases (including backup and recovery), and control access to databases.

## Network Administrator

The **network administrator** configures and maintains the **web server**, installs and maintains system hardware and software, and controls access security.

## Web Developer/Web Designer

The job titles of web developer and web designer are often used interchangeably, but typically a web developer has more of a coding and scripting focus and a web designer has more of a design and graphics focus. The **web designer** writes HTML and CSS code and may fulfill some graphic designer job duties, such as determining the appropriate use of color, designing wireframes and page layouts, creating logos and graphics, and optimizing images for display on the Web. The **web**

**developer**, sometimes referred to as a **front-end web developer**, writes HTML, CSS, and client-side scripting such as JavaScript. Some web developers, often referred to as **back-end web developers**, may specialize in writing server-side scripting with database access. Typically, there are multiple web designers and web developers assigned to a large project, each with his or her area of expertise.

## Project Staffing Criteria

Whether the project is large or small, finding the right people to work on it is crucial. When selecting staff for a project, consider each individual's work experience, portfolio, formal education, and industry certifications.

Another option for staffing a web project (or developing an entire website) is to outsource the project—that is, hire another company to do the work for you. Sometimes portions of a project are outsourced, such as graphics creation, multimedia animation, or server-side scripting. When this option is chosen, communication between the project manager and the external organization is crucial. The outsourcing team needs to be aware of the project goals and deadlines.

Large or small, developed in-house or outsourced, the success of a website project depends on planning and communication. Formal project development methodology is used to coordinate and facilitate the planning and communication needed for a successful web project.

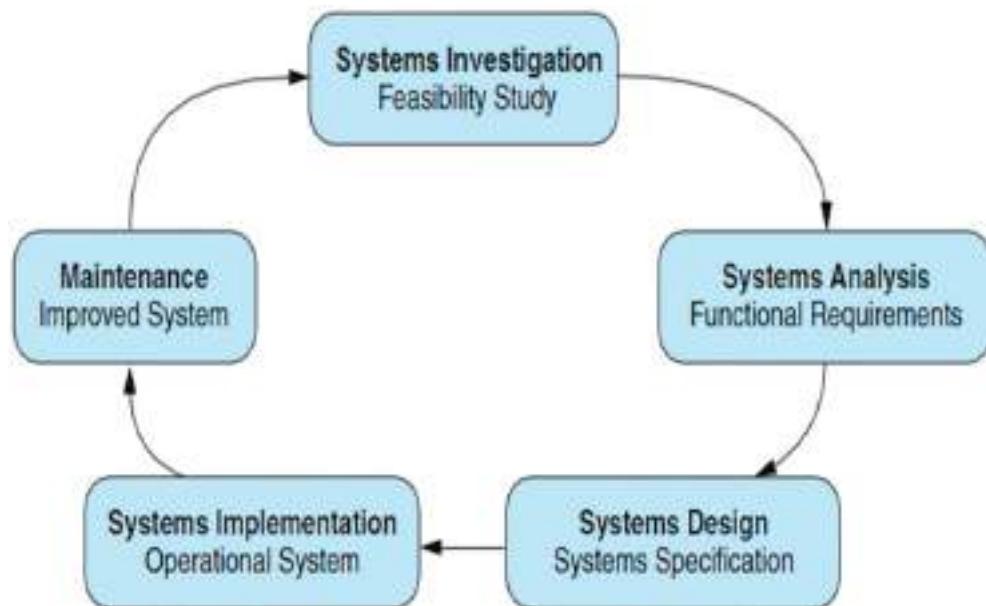
## 10.2 The Development Process

Large corporate and commercial websites don't just happen. They are carefully built, usually by following a project development methodology. A methodology is a step-by-step plan that encompasses the life cycle of a project from start to finish. It comprises a series of phases, each having specific activities and deliverables. Most modern methodologies have their roots in the **System Development Life Cycle (SDLC)**, a process that has been used for several decades to build large-scale information systems. The SDLC comprises a set of phases, sometimes called steps or stages. Each phase is usually completed before beginning the activities in the next phase. The basic phases of the standard SDLC (see [Figure 10.1](#)) are systems investigation, systems analysis, systems design, systems implementation, and maintenance.

---

**Figure 10.1 The System Development Life Cycle (SDLC)**

---



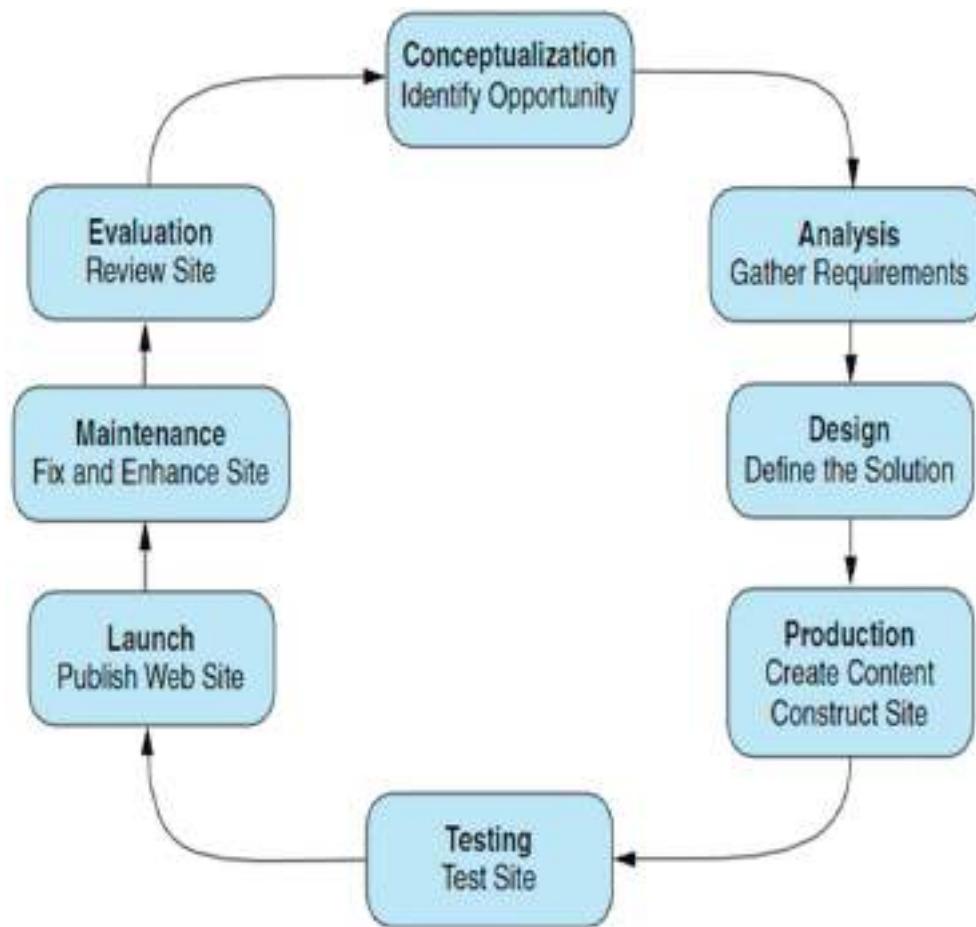
Websites are often developed using a variation of the SDLC that is modified to apply to web projects. Large companies and web design firms usually create their own special methodology for use on projects. The Website Development Cycle is a guide to successful web project management. Depending on the scope and complexity of a particular project, some steps can be completed in a single meeting; other steps can take weeks or months.

The Website Development Cycle, shown in [Figure 10.2](#), usually consists of the following steps: Conceptualization, Analysis, Design, Production, Testing, Launch, Maintenance, and Evaluation.

---

**Figure 10.2 The Website Development Cycle**

---



## FAQ

What about other development methodologies?

The development methodology presented in this chapter is a version of the traditional SDLC modified for website development. Other development methods include the following:

- **PROTOTYPING.** A small working model is created and shown to the client. It is continually revised by the developer until it is usable for the intended purpose. This method can easily be included in the Website Development Cycle during the Design phase.
- **SPIRAL SYSTEM DEVELOPMENT.** This is excellent for very-large-scale or phased projects where it is important to reduce risk. Small portions of the project are completed one after another in a spiral system of development.
- **JOINT APPLICATION DEVELOPMENT (JAD).** This type of development focuses on group meetings and collaboration between the users and developers of a website or system. It is generally used only with in-house development.
- **AGILE SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT.** This development methodology is viewed as innovative in that it stresses responsiveness based on generating and sharing knowledge within a development team and with the client. The philosophy emphasizes code over documentation

and results in the project being developed in many small, iterative steps.

- **ORGANIZATION-SPECIFIC DEVELOPMENT**

**METHODOLOGIES.** Large companies and web development firms often create their own version or interpretation of a site development methodology to be used for projects.

---

An important aspect of website development is that you are never finished—your site needs to be kept fresh and up-to-date, there will be errors or omissions that need to be corrected, and new components and pages will be needed. The first step is to decide why the website is needed in the first place.

## Conceptualization

What opportunity or issue is the site addressing? What is the motivation for the site? Perhaps your client owns a retail store and wishes to sell products over the Internet. Perhaps your client's competitor just launched a website and your client needs to create one just to keep up. Perhaps you have a great idea that will be the next eBay!

Because the focus of your work is to make the site usable and appealing to your target audience, you must determine the site's intended audience. It is crucial to be aware of who your audience is and what their preferences are.

Another task during **conceptualization** is to determine the site's long-term and short-term goals or mission. Perhaps a short-term goal is simply to publish a home page. Perhaps a long-term goal is for 20% of a

company's product sales to be made on the website or you may simply want a certain number of website visitors each month. Whatever they are, it is better if the objectives are measurable. Decide how you will measure the success (or failure) of your website.

Determining the purpose and goals of a site is usually done with the cooperation of the client, project manager, and information architect. In a formal project environment, a document that details the results of this step is created and then approved by the client before development can proceed.

## Analysis

The Analysis phase involves meetings and interviews with key client personnel. **Analysis** is usually completed by the project manager, information architect or other analyst, and the client's marketing representative and related personnel. The network administrator and database administrator may be interviewed depending on the scope of the project. Common tasks completed during the Analysis phase are as follows:

- **DETERMINE INFORMATION TOPICS.** Organize the information to be presented on the site into categories and create a hierarchy. These **information topics** will be used later as a starting point for developing the site navigation.
- **DETERMINE FUNCTIONALITY REQUIREMENTS.** State what the site will do, not how it will do it. For example, state that "the site will accept credit card orders from customers," not "the site will perform order processing using PHP to look up each price and sales tax information in MySQL databases and use real-time credit card verification supplied by [somewebsite.com](#)." Note the difference in the level of detail in these **functionality requirements**.

- **DETERMINE ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS.** What **environmental requirements**, such as hardware, operating system, memory capacity, screen resolution, and bandwidth, will your site visitors use? What type of hardware and software requirements will the web server need?
- **DETERMINE CONTENT REQUIREMENTS.** Does content already exist in another format (for example, brochures, catalogs, white papers)? Determine who is responsible for creating and repurposing the content for the site. Does the client company or marketing department have any **content requirements** that must be met? For example, is there a specific visual aesthetic or corporate branding component that must be present on the site?
- **COMPARE THE OLD APPROACH TO THE NEW APPROACH.**  
Perhaps you are not creating a new website, but modifying an existing one. What benefits or added value will the new version provide?
- **REVIEW YOUR COMPETITORS' SITES.** A careful review of your competitors' web presence will help you design a site that will stand out from the crowd and be more appealing to your shared customer base. Note the good and bad components of these sites.
- **ESTIMATE COSTS.** Create an estimate of the costs and time involved to create the site. A formal project plan is often created or modified at this point. Often, an application such as Microsoft Project is used to estimate costs and plan project schedules.
- **DO A COST/BENEFIT ANALYSIS.** Create a document that compares the costs and benefits of the site. Measurable benefits are the most useful and most appealing to clients. In a formal project environment, a document that details the results of this **cost/benefit analysis** must be approved by the client before the team can proceed.

## Design

Once everyone knows what is needed, it is time to determine how it can be accomplished. The Design phase involves meetings and interviews with key client personnel. **Design** tasks are usually completed by the project manager, information architect or other analyst, graphic designer(s), senior web developer(s), and the client's marketing representative and related personnel. Common tasks during the Design phase include the following:

- **CHOOSE A SITE ORGANIZATION.** As discussed in [Chapter 5](#), common website organizational forms are hierarchical, linear, and random. Determine which is best for the project site and create a site map.
- **DESIGN THE PROTOTYPE.** As a starting point, sketch out the design on paper. Sometimes it's useful to sketch within an empty browser frame (see sketch.doc in the student files chapter10 folder). Often, a graphics application is used to create sample web page mock-ups, or wireframes. These can be shown to clients as a prototype, or working model, of the system for approval. They can also be shown to focus groups for usability testing.
- **DESIGN A PAGE LAYOUT.** Determine the visual aesthetic and layout with wireframes and sample page mock-ups. Items such as the site color scheme, the size of logo graphics, button graphics, and text should be determined. Using the page layout design and site map, create sample layouts for the home page and content pages. Use a graphic application to create mock-ups of these pages to get a good idea of how the site will function. If you use a web authoring tool at this early stage, you run the risk of your manager or client thinking that you already have the site half done and insisting on early delivery.
- **DOCUMENT EACH PAGE.** While this may seem unnecessary, lack of content is a frequent cause of website project delays. Prepare a content sheet for each page, such as the one shown in [Figure 10.3](#)

(see chapter10/contentsheet.doc in the student files), which describes the functionality of the document, text and graphic content requirements, source of content, and approver of content.

---

**Figure 10.3 Sample content sheet**

---

<b>Content Documentation</b>
<b>Page Title:</b>
<b>File Name:</b>
<b>Purpose of Page</b>
<b>Suggested Graphic Elements</b>
<b>Other Special Features</b>
<b>Information Needs</b>
<b>Information Sources</b>
<hr/>
<b>Content Providers</b>
<i>List name, e-mail, and phone number of each content provider</i>
<b>File Format of Content</b>
<b>Date Required:</b>
<b>Date Provided:</b>
<b>Content Approval</b> _____

The site map and page design prototypes are usually approved by the client before the team can progress to the Production phase.

## Production

During **production**, all the previous work comes together (hopefully) in a usable and effective website. During the Production phase, the web designers and web developers are on the critical path—their work must be completed as scheduled or the project will be late. The other project members are consulted, as needed, for clarification and approval.

Common tasks of the Production phase include the following:

- **CHOOSE A WEB AUTHORIZING TOOL.** The use of a web authoring tool, such as Adobe Dreamweaver, can greatly increase productivity. Specific productivity aids include designer notes, page templates, task management, and web page check-in and check-out to avoid overlapping page updates. The use of an authoring tool will serve to standardize the HTML used in the project pages. Any standards related to indentation, comments, and so on should be determined at this time.
- **ORGANIZE YOUR SITE FILES.** Consider placing images and media in their own folder. (see [Section 10.3](#) File Organization). Also, place server-side scripts in a separate folder. Determine naming conventions for web pages, images, and media.
- **DEVELOP AND INDIVIDUALLY TEST COMPONENTS.** During this task, the graphic designers and web developers create and individually test their contributions to the site. As the images, web pages, and server-side scripting are developed, they are individually tested. This is called **unit testing**. On some projects, a senior web developer or the project manager will review the components for quality and standards compliance.

Once all components have been created and unit tested, it's time to put them together and begin the Testing phase.

## Testing

The components should be published to a test web server. This test web server should have the same operating system and web server software that the production (actual) web server will be using. Some common site **testing** considerations follow:

- **TEST ON DIFFERENT BROWSERS AND BROWSER VERSIONS.** It is very important to test your pages on commonly used browsers and

versions of those browsers.

- **TEST WITH DIFFERENT SCREEN RESOLUTIONS.** Although, as a web developer, you may use a very high screen resolution, not everyone uses 2560×1440 screen resolution. The most commonly used screen resolutions at the time of this writing are 1366×768, 1920×1080, and 1024×768. Be sure to test your web pages on various resolutions—you might be surprised at the results.
- **TEST USING DIFFERENT BANDWIDTHS.** If you live and work in a metropolitan area, everyone you know may have broadband access to the Internet. However, many people still use dial-up connections to access the Web. It is important to test your site on both slow and fast connections. Images that look great over your school's T3 line may load very slowly over a mobile hotspot.
- **TEST FROM ANOTHER LOCATION.** Be sure to test your website using a computer other than the one the website was developed on, in order to simulate the web page visitor's experience more closely.
- **TEST USING MOBILE DEVICES.** Mobile use of the Web is increasing all the time—test your site on one or more of the currently popular smartphones. Visit <https://www.browserstack.com/test-on-the-right-mobile-devices> for a list of popular mobile devices. See [Chapter 7](#) for an overview of mobile web testing tools.
- **TEST, TEST, TEST.** There is no such thing as too much testing. Humans make mistakes. It is much better for you and your team to find the errors than for your client to point them out to you when they review the website.

Does this sound like a lot to keep track of? It is. That's why it's a good idea to create a **test plan**, which is a document that describes what will be tested on each page of a website. A sample test plan for a web page, shown in [Figure 10.4](#) (see chapter10/testplan.xls in the student files), can help you organize your testing as you check your document in different browsers and screen resolutions. The document validation

section covers content, links, and any forms or scripting that are required for the page. Search engine optimization meta tags are discussed in [Chapter 13](#). However, at this point, you should be able to verify that the page title is descriptive and includes the company or organization's name. Testing your page using different bandwidths is important because web pages that take too long to download are often abandoned.

**Figure 10.4 Sample test plan**

Web Page Document Test Plan													
File Name:						Date:							
Page Title:						Tester:							
Browser Compatibility													
	1366x768	1920x1080	1440x900	Other	PC	Mac	Linux	Images	CSS	JavaScript	Notes		
Internet Explorer (Version #)													
Microsoft Edge (Version #)													
Firefox (Version #)													
Safari (Version #)													
Opera (Version #)													
Chrome (Version #)													
JAWS Screen Reader													
Tablet (Device Name)													
Smartphone 1 (Device Name)													
Smartphone 2 (Device Name)													
Document Validation											Search Engine Optimization		
	Pass	Fail	Notes									Notes	
HTML Validation												Meta tag (description)	
CSS Validation												Keywords in page title	
Check Spelling												Keywords in headings	
Check for Required Content												Keywords in content	
Check for Required Graphics												Other	
Check all Attributes												Download Time Check	
Test Hyperlinks												Time	Notes
Accessibility Testing												56.6Kbps	
Form Processing												128Kbps	
Scripting/Dynamic Effects												312Kbps	
Usability Testing												T1.0B1 (1544Mbps)	
Other												Other	
Notes													

## Automated Testing Tools and Validators

The web authoring tool you use for your project will provide some built-in site reporting and testing features. Web authoring applications such as Adobe Dreamweaver provide functions such as spell-check, link checks, and load time calculations. Each application has unique features.

Dreamweaver's reporting includes link checking, accessibility, and code validation. There are other **automated testing** tools and **validators** available. The W3C Markup Validation Service (<https://validator.w3.org>) can be used to validate both HTML and XHTML. Test CSS for proper syntax using the W3C CSS Validation Service (<https://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator>). Analyze the download speed of your page using the Web Page Analyzer (<http://www.websiteoptimization.com/services/analyze>). Google's Mobile-Friendly automated test at <https://search.google.com/test/mobile-friendly> checks for common issues on mobile devices. The automated tool at <https://web.dev/measure> reviews your website according to performance, accessibility, best practices, and search engine optimization criteria.

## Accessibility Testing

**Accessible** web pages can be used by all individuals, including those with visual, hearing, mobility, and cognitive challenges. As you've worked through this book, accessibility has been an integral part of your web page design and coding rather than an afterthought. You've configured headings and subheadings, navigation within unordered lists, images with alternate text, and associations between text and form controls. These techniques all increase the accessibility of a web page.

---

Focus on Accessibility

### Web Accessibility Standards

#### **SECTION 508 OF THE REHABILITATION ACT.** Section 508

(<https://www.section508.gov/>) requires electronic and information technology, including web pages, that are used by U.S. federal agencies to

be accessible to people with disabilities. The U.S. Access Board released a revision of Section 508 requirements (referred to as the Section 508 Refresh) in January 2017. The Section 508 refresh updates Section 508 requirements to harmonize with WCAG 2.0 Success Criteria.

### **WEB CONTENT ACCESSIBILITY GUIDELINES (WCAG 2.1).**

The most recent version of WCAG is WCAG 2.1 (<https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/>), which extends WCAG 2.0 and introduces additional success criteria including accessibility. WCAG considers an accessible web page to be perceivable, operable, and understandable for people with a wide range of abilities. The page should be robust enough to work with a variety of browsers and other user agents, such as assistive technologies (for example, screen readers) and mobile devices. The guiding principles of WCAG are known as POUR:

- 1. Content must be Perceivable.**
- 2. Interface components in the content must be Operable.**
- 3. Content and controls must be Understandable.**
- 4. Content should be Robust enough to work with current and future user agents, including assistive technologies.**

Prove your compliance with accessibility standards by performing **accessibility testing** on your site. A complete list of WCAG 2.1 Success Criteria is provided at <https://www.w3.org/WAI/WCAG21/quickref/>. As a starting point, go through the Easy Checks listed at <https://www.w3.org/WAI/eval/preliminary>. There are a variety of automated accessibility checkers available. WebAIM Wave (<http://wave.webaim.org>) and ATRC AChecker (<https://www.achecker.ca/checker>) are two popular free online accessibility evaluation tools. The Web Developer Extension is a browser toolbar that can be used to assess accessibility of a web page (<https://chrispederick.com/work/web-developer-extension/>).

developer). The ARC Toolkit (<https://www.paciellogroup.com/toolkit>) is an extension for Chrome that checks for WCAG 2.1 compliance.

It's important not to rely completely on automated tests—you'll want to review the pages yourself. For example, while an automated test can check for the presence of an alt attribute, it takes a human to critically think and decide whether the text of the alt attribute is an appropriate description for a person who cannot view the image.

## Usability Testing

Usability is the measure of the quality of a user's experience when interacting with a website. It's about making a website that is easy, efficient, and pleasant for your visitors. Usability.gov (<https://www.usability.gov/what-and-why/usability-evaluation.html>) describes factors that affect the user's experience:

- **INTUITIVE DESIGN.** How easy is it for a new visitor to understand the organization of the site? Is the navigation intuitive for a new user?
- **EASE OF LEARNING.** How easy is it to learn to use the website? Does a new visitor consider it easy to learn to perform basic tasks on the website or is he or she frustrated?
- **EFFICIENCY OF USE.** How do experienced users perceive the website? Once they are comfortable, are they able to complete tasks efficiently and quickly or are they frustrated?
- **MEMORABILITY.** When a visitor returns to a website, does he or she remember enough to use it productively or is the visitor back at the beginning of the learning curve (and frustrated)?
- **ERROR FREQUENCY AND SEVERITY.** Do website visitors make errors when navigating or filling in forms on the website? Are they serious errors? Is it easy to recover from errors or are visitors frustrated?

- **SUBJECTIVE SATISFACTION.** Do users like using the website? Are they satisfied? Why or why not?

Testing how actual web page visitors use a website is called **usability testing**. It can be conducted at any phase of a website's development and is often performed more than once. A usability test is conducted by asking users to complete tasks on a website, such as placing an order, looking up the phone number of a company, or finding a product. The exact tasks will vary depending on the website being tested. The users are monitored while they try to perform these tasks. They are asked to think out loud about their doubts and hesitations. The results are recorded and discussed with the web design team. Often, changes are made to the navigation and page layouts based on these tests. Perform the small-scale usability test in [Hands-On Exercise 5](#) at the end of this chapter to become more familiar with this technique.

If usability testing is done early in the development phase of a website, it may use the paper page layouts and site map. If the development team is struggling with a design issue, sometimes a usability test can help to determine which design idea is the better choice. When usability is done during a later phase, such as the Testing phase, the actual website is tested. This can lead to confirmation that the site is easy to use and well designed, to last minute changes in the website, or to a plan for website enhancements in the near future.

## Launch

Your client—whether another company or another department in your organization—needs to review and approve the test website before the files are published to the live site. Sometimes this approval takes place at a face-to-face meeting. Other times, the test URL is given to the client and the client e-mails approval or requested changes.

Once the test website has been approved, it is published to your live production website (this is called a **launch**). If you think you are finished, think again! It is crucial to test all site components after publishing to make sure the site functions properly in its new environment. Marketing and promotional activities for the website (see [Chapter 13](#)) usually take place at this time.

## Maintenance

A website is never finished. There are always errors or omissions that were overlooked during the development process. Clients usually find many new uses for a website once they have one and request modifications, additions, and new sections (this is called **site - maintenance**). At this point, the project team identifies the new opportunity or enhancement and begins another loop through the development process.

Other types of updates needed may be relatively small—perhaps a link is broken, a word is misspelled, or a graphic needs to be changed. These small changes are usually made as soon as they are noticed. The question of who makes the changes and who approves them is often a matter of company policy. If you are a freelance web developer, the situation is more straightforward—you will make the changes and your client will approve them.

## Evaluation

Remember the goals set for the website in the Conceptualization phase? During the **evaluation** phase, it's time to review them and determine whether your website meets them. If not, consider how you can enhance the site and begin another loop through the development process.

## Checkpoint 10.1

1. Describe the role of the project manager.
2. Explain why many different roles are needed on a large-scale web project.
3. List three different techniques used to test a website.

Describe each technique in one or two sentences.

## 10.3 File Organization

An unorganized website often contains a long list of files, which can become difficult to maintain over time. It's common practice to create a separate folder for images on a website. It's also a good idea to organize your web pages into folders by purpose or subject. This section introduces you to coding relative hyperlinks for a website with multiple folders.

As discussed in [Chapter 2](#), a relative hyperlink is used to link to web pages within your site. You've been coding relative links to display web pages that are all inside the same folder. Let's consider a website for a bed and breakfast that features rooms and events. The folder and file listing is shown in [Figure 10.5](#). The main folder for this website is called casita, and the web developer has created separate subfolders—named images, rooms, and events—to organize the site.

---

**Figure 10.5** The web page files are organized in folders.

---



## Relative Hyperlink Examples

Recall that when linking to a file located in the same folder or directory, the value of the `href` attribute is the name of the file. For example, to link from the home page (`index.html`) to the `contact.html` page, code the anchor element as follows:

```
<a href="contact.html">Contact</a>
```

When linking to a file that is inside a folder within the current directory, use both the folder name and the file name in the relative link. For example, to link from the home page (`index.html`) to the `canyon.html` page (located in the `rooms` folder), code the anchor element as follows:

```
<a href="rooms/canyon.html">Canyon</a>
```

---

As shown in [Figure 10.5](#), the canyon.html page is located in the rooms subfolder of the casita folder. The home page for the site (index.html) is located in the casita folder. When linking to a file that is up one directory level from the current page, use the “.. /” notation. To link to the home page for the site from the canyon.html page, code the anchor element as follows:

```
<a href="../index.html">Home</a>
```

When linking to a file that is in a folder on the same level as the current folder, the href value will use the “.. /” notation to indicate moving up one level; then specify the desired folder. For example, to link to the weekend.html page in the events folder from the canyon.html page in the rooms folder, code the anchor element as follows:

```
<a href="../events/weekend.html">Weekend Events</a>
```

Don't worry if the use of “.. /” notation and linking to files in different folders seems new and different. You can explore the example of the bed and breakfast website located in the student files (see chapter10/CasitaExample) to become more familiar with coding references to files in different folders.

---

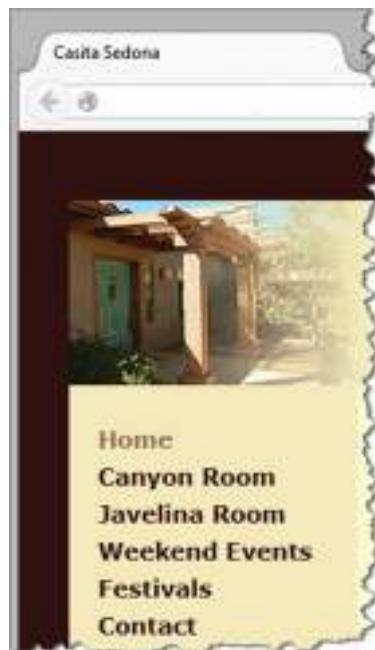
## Hands-On Practice 10.1

This Hands-On Practice provides an opportunity to practice coding hyperlinks to files in different folders. The website you'll be working with has pages in prototype form—the navigation and layout of the pages are configured, but the specific content has not yet been added. You'll focus on the navigation area in this Hands-On Practice. [Figure 10.6](#) shows a partial screen shot of the bed and breakfast's home page with a navigation area on the left side of the page.

---

**Figure 10.6 The navigation area.**

---



Examine [Figure 10.7](#) and notice the new juniper.html file listed within the rooms folder. You will create a new web page (Juniper Room) named juniper.html and save it in the rooms folder. Then, you will update the navigation area on each existing web page to link to the new Juniper Room page.

1. Copy the CasitaExample folder (chapter10/CasitaExample) from the student files. Rename the folder casita.

2. Display the index.html file in a browser and click through the navigation links. View the source code of the pages and notice how the `href` values of the anchor tags are configured to link to and from files within different folders.
3. Launch a text editor and open the canyon.html file. You'll use this file as a starting point for your new Juniper Room page. Save the file as juniper.html in the rooms folder.

  - a. Edit the page title and h2 text: change "Canyon" to "Juniper".
  - b. Add a new li element in the navigation area that contains a hyperlink to the juniper.html file.

```
<li><a href="juniper.html">Juniper Room</a></li>
```

Place this hyperlink between the Javelina Room and Weekend Events navigation hyperlinks as shown in [Figure 10.8](#). Save the file.

4. Use the coding for the Canyon and Javelina hyperlinks as a guide as you add the Juniper Room link to the navigation area on each of the following pages:

index.html  
contact.html  
rooms/canyon.html  
rooms/javelina.html  
events/weekend.html  
events/festival.html

---

**Figure 10.7 New juniper.html file is in the rooms folder.**

---

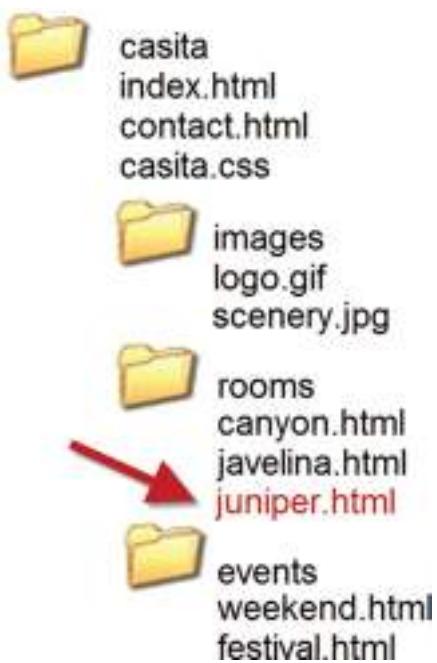
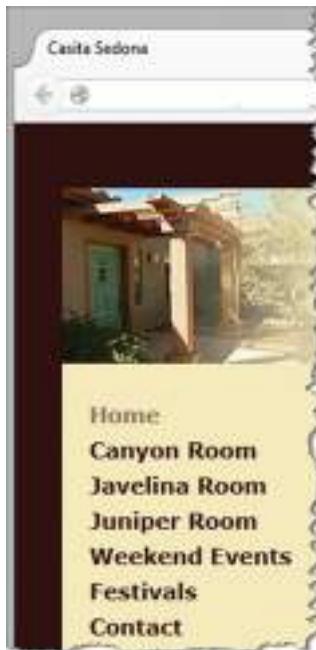


Figure 10.8 The new navigation area.



Save all the .html files and test your pages in a browser. The navigation hyperlink to the new Juniper Room page should work from every other page. The hyperlinks on the new Juniper

Room page should function well and open other pages as expected. A solution is in the student files (chapter10/10.1 folder).

---

## 10.4 Domain Name Overview

A crucial part of establishing an effective web presence is choosing a **domain name**; it serves to locate your website on the Internet. If your business or organization is new, then it's often convenient to select a domain name while you are deciding on a company name. If your organization is well established, choose a domain name that relates to your existing business presence. Although many domain names have already been purchased, there are still a lot of available options.

---

### Video Note

#### Choosing a Domain Name

## Choosing a Domain Name

- **DESCRIBE YOUR BUSINESS.** Although there is a long-standing trend to use “fun” words as domain names (for example, [yahoo.com](#), [google.com](#), [bing.com](#), [woofoo.com](#), and so on), think carefully before doing so. Domain names for traditional businesses and organizations are the foundation of the organization’s web presence and should include the business name or purpose.
- **BE BRIEF, IF POSSIBLE.** While most people find new websites with search engines, some of your website visitors will type your domain name in a browser. A shorter domain name is preferable to a longer one—it’s easier for your visitors to remember.
- **AVOID HYPHENS (-).** Using the hyphen character (commonly called a dash) in a domain name makes it difficult to pronounce the name.

Also, someone typing your domain name may forget the dash and end up at a competitor's site! If you can, avoid the use of dashes in a domain name.

- **THERE'S MORE THAN .COM.** While the .com top-level domain name (TLD) is still the most popular for commercial and personal websites, consider also registering your domain name with other TLDs, such as .biz, .net, .us, .mobi, and so on. Commercial businesses should avoid the .org TLD, which is the first choice for nonprofit organizations. You don't have to create a website for each domain name that you register. You can arrange with your domain name registrar, for example, [Register.com](https://www.register.com) (<https://www.register.com>), for the extra domain names to point visitors to the domain name where your website is located. This is called **domain name redirection**.
- **BRAINSTORM POTENTIAL KEYWORDS.** Think about words that a potential visitor might type into a search engine when looking for your type of business or organization. This is the starting point for your list of **keywords**. If possible, work one or more keywords into your domain name (but still keep it as short as possible).
- **AVOID TRADEMARKED WORDS OR PHRASES.** The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) defines a **trademark** as a word, phrase, symbol, or design, or a combination of words, phrases, symbols, or designs, that identifies and distinguishes the source of the goods of one party from those of others. A starting point in researching trademarks is the USPTO Trademark Electronic Search System (TESS); visit <http://tess2.uspto.gov>. See <https://www.uspto.gov> for more information about trademarks.
- **KNOW THE TERRITORY.** Explore the way your potential domain name and keywords are already used on the Web. It's a good idea to type your potential domain names (and related words) into a search engine to see what may already exist.
- **VERIFY AVAILABILITY.** Check with one of the many **domain name registrars** to determine whether your domain name choices are

available. A few of the many sites that offer domain name registration services are listed below:

- Register.com: <https://www.register.com>
- Network Solutions: <https://www.networksolutions.com>
- GoDaddy.com: <https://www.godaddy.com>

Each of these sites offers a search feature that provides you with a way to determine whether a potential domain name is available, and if it is owned, who owns it. Often the domain name is already taken. If that's the case, the sites listed previously will provide you with alternate suggestions that may be appropriate. Don't give up; a domain name is out there waiting for your business.

## Registering a Domain Name

Once you've found your perfect domain name, don't waste any time in registering it. The cost to register a domain name varies, but it is quite reasonable. There are numerous opportunities for discounts with multiyear packages or bundled web hosting services. It's perfectly okay to register a domain name even if you are not ready to publish your website immediately. There are many companies that provide domain name registration services, as listed previously. When you register a domain name, your contact information (your name, phone number, mailing address, and e-mail address) will be entered into the WHOIS database and is available to anyone unless you choose the option for private registration. While there is usually a small annual fee for **private registration**, it shields your personal information from unwanted spam and curiosity seekers.

Obtaining a domain name is just one part of establishing a web presence. You also need to host your website somewhere. The next section introduces you to the factors involved in choosing a web host.

## 10.5 Web Hosting

Where is the appropriate place for your web project to “live”? Choosing the most appropriate web hosting provider for your business or client could be one of the most important decisions you make. A good web hosting service will provide a robust, reliable home for your website. A poor web hosting service will be a source of problems and complaints. Which would you prefer?

### Web Hosting Providers

A **web hosting provider** is an organization that offers storage for your website files along with the service of making them available on the Internet. Your domain name, such as [webdevfoundations.net](http://webdevfoundations.net), is associated with an IP address that points to your website on the web server at the web hosting provider. It is common for web hosting providers to charge a setup fee in addition to the monthly hosting fee.

Hosting fees vary widely. The cheapest hosting company is not necessarily the one to use. Never consider using a free web hosting provider for a business website. These free sites are great for kids, college students, and hobbyists, but they are unprofessional. The last thing you or your client wants is to be perceived as unprofessional or not serious about the business at hand. As you consider different web hosting providers, try contacting their support phone numbers and e-mail addresses to determine just how responsive they really are. Word of mouth, web searches, and online directories such as Hosting Review (<https://www.hosting-review.com>) are all resources in your quest for the perfect web hosting provider.

## Types of Web Hosting

- **Virtual Hosting**, or shared hosting, is a popular choice for small websites. The web hosting provider's physical web server is divided into a number of virtual domains and multiple websites are set up on the same computer. You have the authority to update files in your own website space, while the web hosting provider maintains the web server computer and Internet connectivity.
- **Dedicated Hosting** is the rental and exclusive use of a computer and connection to the Internet that is housed on the web hosting company's premises. A dedicated server is usually needed for a website that could have a considerable amount of traffic, such as tens of millions of hits a day. The server can usually be configured and operated remotely from the client's company, or you can pay the web hosting provider to administer it for you.
- **Co-Located Hosting** uses a computer that your organization has purchased and configured. Your web server is housed and connected to the Internet at the web host's physical location, but your organization typically administers this computer.

## 10.6 Choosing a Virtual Host

A number of factors to consider when choosing a web host have been discussed, including bandwidth, disk storage space, technical support, and the availability of e-commerce packages. For a handy list of these factors and others to consider in your quest for a virtual web host, review the web host checklist shown in [Table 10.1](#).

---

**Table 10.1 Web host checklist**

Operating System	<input type="checkbox"/> UNIX <input type="checkbox"/> Linux <input type="checkbox"/> Windows	Some web hosts offer a choice of these platforms. If you need to integrate your website with your business systems, choose the same operating system for both.
Web Server	<input type="checkbox"/> Apache <input type="checkbox"/> IIS	These two web server applications are the most popular. Apache usually runs on a UNIX or Linux operating system. Internet Information Services (IIS) is bundled with selected versions of Microsoft Windows.
Bandwidth	<input type="checkbox"/> _____ GB per month	Some web hosts carefully monitor your data transfer bandwidth and charge you for overages. While unlimited bandwidth is great, it is not always available. A typical low-traffic website

	<input type="checkbox"/> _____ Charge for overage	may transfer between 100 and 500MB per month. A medium-traffic site should be okay with about 20GB of data transfer bandwidth per month.
Technical Support	<input type="checkbox"/> E-mail <input type="checkbox"/> Chat <input type="checkbox"/> Forum <input type="checkbox"/> Phone	Review the description of technical support on the web host's site. Is it available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week? E-mail or phone a question to test it. If the organization is not responsive to you as a prospective customer, be leery about the availability of its technical support later.
Service Agreement	<input type="checkbox"/> Uptime guarantee <input type="checkbox"/> Automatic monitoring	A web host that offers a <b>Service Level Agreement (SLA)</b> with an uptime guarantee shows that they value service and reliability. The use of automatic monitoring will inform the web host technical support staff when a server is not functioning.
Disk Space	<input type="checkbox"/> _____ GB	Many virtual hosts routinely offer several gigabytes of disk storage space. If you have a small site that is not graphics-intensive, you may never even use 100MB of disk storage space.
E-mail	<input type="checkbox"/> _____	Most virtual hosts offer multiple e-mail

	Mailboxes	boxes per site. These can be used to filter messages (customer service, technical support, general inquiries, and so on).
Uploading Files	<input type="checkbox"/> FTP Access <input type="checkbox"/> Web-based File Manager	A web host that offers FTP access will allow you the most flexibility. Others only allow updates through a web-based file manager application. Some web hosts offer both options.
Canned Scripts	<input type="checkbox"/> Form processing	Many web hosts supply canned, pre-written scripts to process form information.
Scripting Support	<input type="checkbox"/> PHP <input type="checkbox"/> .NET <input type="checkbox"/> _____ Other	If you plan to use server-side scripting on your site, determine which, if any, scripting is supported by your web host.
Database Support	<input type="checkbox"/> MySQL <input type="checkbox"/> SQL Server	If you plan to access a database with your scripting, determine which, if any, database is supported by your web host.

E-Commerce Packages	<input type="checkbox"/> _____	If you plan to enter into ecommerce (see <a href="#">Chapter 12</a> ), it may be easier if your web host offers a shopping cart package. Check to see if one is available.
SSL	<input type="checkbox"/> \$_____ setup fee  <input type="checkbox"/> \$_____ per month	Determine if your web host offers SSL (see <a href="#">Chapter 12</a> ). You may want to use https in the future to prevent security issues.
Scalability	<input type="checkbox"/> Scripting  <input type="checkbox"/> Database  <input type="checkbox"/> E-commerce	You probably will choose a basic (low-end) plan for your first website. Note the scalability of your web host: Are there other available plans with scripting, database, e-commerce packages, and additional bandwidth or disk space as your site grows?
Backups	<input type="checkbox"/> Daily  <input type="checkbox"/> Periodic  <input type="checkbox"/> No backups	Most web hosts will back up your files regularly. Check to see how often the backups are made and if they are accessible to you. Be sure to make your own site backups as well.
Site	<input type="checkbox"/> Raw log	The web server log contains useful

Statistics	<input type="checkbox"/> file <input type="checkbox"/> Log reports <input type="checkbox"/> No log access	information about your visitors, how they find your site, and what pages they visit. Check to see if the log is available to you. Some web hosts provide reports about the log. See <a href="#">Chapter 13</a> for more information on web server logs.
Domain Name	<input type="checkbox"/> Required to register with host <input type="checkbox"/> OK to register on your own	Some web hosts offer a package that includes registering your domain name. However, you will retain control of your domain name account if you register it yourself.
Price	<input type="checkbox"/> \$_____ setup fee <input type="checkbox"/> \$_____ per month	Price is last in this list for a reason. Do not choose a web host based on price alone—the old adage “you get what you pay for” is definitely true here. It is not unusual to pay a one-time setup fee and then a periodic fee—monthly, quarterly, or annually.

---

## FAQ

Why do I care about knowing which operating system my web hosting provider uses?

Knowing the operating system used by your web hosting provider is important because it can help you with troubleshooting your website. Often, students' websites work great on their own PC (usually with a Windows-based operating system) but fall apart (with broken links and images that do not load) after being published on a free web server that uses a different operating system.

Some operating systems, such as Windows, treat uppercase and lowercase letters in exactly the same way. Other operating systems, such as UNIX and Linux, consider uppercase and lowercase letters to be different. This is called being **case-sensitive**. For example, when a web server running on a Windows operating system receives a request generated by an anchor tag coded as `<a href="Index.html">Home</a>`, it will return a file named with any combination of uppercase or lowercase letters. File names such as Index.html, index.html, and INDEX.HTML can all be used. However, when the request generated by the same anchor tag is received by a web server running on a UNIX system (which is case-sensitive), the file would only be found if it were really saved as Index.html. If the file were named index.html, a 404 Not Found error would result. This is a good reason to be consistent when naming files; consider always using lowercase letters for file names.

---

Checkpoint 10.2

1. Describe the type of web host that would meet the needs of a small company for its initial web presence.
2. What is the difference between a dedicated web server and a co-located web server?
3. Explain why price is not the most important consideration when choosing a web host.

# Chapter Summary

This chapter introduced the System Development Life Cycle and its application to web development projects. The job roles related to website development were discussed. The chapter also included an introduction to choosing a domain name and a website host provider. Visit the textbook website at <https://www.webdevfoundations.net> for examples, the links listed in this chapter, and updated information.

# Key Terms

**accessibility testing** ⓘ

**accessible** ⓘ

**analysis** ⓘ

**automated testing** ⓘ

**back-end web developer** ⓘ

**case-sensitive** ⓘ

**co-located hosting** ⓘ

**conceptualization** ⓘ

**content manager** ⓘ

**content requirements** ⓘ

**copywriter** ⓘ

**cost-benefit analysis** ⓘ

**database administrator** ⓘ

**dedicated hosting** ⓘ

**design** ⓘ

**domain name** ⓘ

**domain name redirection** ⓘ

**domain name registrars** ⓘ

**editor** ⓘ

**environmental requirements** ⓘ

**evaluation** ⓘ

**front-end web developer** ⓘ

**functionality requirements** ⓘ

**graphic designer** ⓘ

**information architect** ⓘ

**information topics** ⓘ

**keywords** ⓘ

**launch** ⓘ

[maintenance](#) ⓘ  
[marketing representative](#) ⓘ  
[network administrator](#) ⓘ  
[private registration](#) ⓘ  
[production](#) ⓘ  
[project manager](#) ⓘ  
[Service Level Agreement \(SLA\)](#) ⓘ  
[System Development Life Cycle \(SDLC\)](#) ⓘ  
[test plan](#) ⓘ  
[testing](#) ⓘ  
[trademark](#) ⓘ  
[unit testing](#) ⓘ  
[user experience designer](#) ⓘ  
[usability](#) ⓘ  
[usability testing](#) ⓘ  
[UX designer](#) ⓘ  
[validators](#) ⓘ  
[virtual hosting](#) ⓘ  
[web designer](#) ⓘ  
[web developer](#) ⓘ  
[web hosting provider](#) ⓘ  
[web presence](#) ⓘ  
[web server](#) ⓘ

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. In which phase is a prototype of the website often created?
  - a. Design phase
  - b. Conceptualization phase
  - c. Production phase
  - d. Analysis phase
2. Which of the following are included in the role of an information architect?
  - a. being instrumental in defining the site organization, navigation, and labeling
  - b. attending all meetings and collecting all information
  - c. managing the project
  - d. none of the above
3. What is the purpose of private registration for a domain name?
  - a. It protects the privacy of your website.
  - b. It is the cheapest form of domain name registration.
  - c. It protects the privacy of your contact information.
  - d. none of the above
4. Which methodology is often used by web project teams?
  - a. the SDLC
  - b. a derivative of the SDLC that is similar to the one discussed in this chapter
  - c. a methodology that is decided as the project is built
  - d. no development methodology is necessary
5. Which of the following should be included when testing a website?

- a. checking all of the hyperlinks within the site
  - b. viewing the site in a variety of web browsers
  - c. viewing the site in a variety of screen resolutions
  - d. all of the above
- 6. What do team members do during the Analysis phase of a website project?
  - a. determine what the site will do—not how it will be done
  - b. determine the information topics of the site
  - c. determine the content requirements of the site
  - d. all of the above
- 7. Which of the following occurs during the Production phase?
  - a. A web authoring tool is often used.
  - b. The graphics, web pages, and other components are created.
  - c. The web pages are individually tested.
  - d. all of the above
- 8. Which of the following occurs during the Evaluation phase?
  - a. The goals for the site are reviewed.
  - b. The web designers are evaluated.
  - c. The competition is evaluated.
  - d. none of the above
- 9. Which of the following is true about domain names?
  - a. It is recommended to register multiple domain names that are redirected to your website.
  - b. It is recommended to use long, descriptive domain names.
  - c. It is recommended to use hyphens in domain names.
  - d. There is no reason to check for trademarks when you are choosing a domain name.
- 10. Which web hosting option is appropriate for the initial web presence of an organization?
  - a. dedicated hosting

- b.** free web hosting
- c.** virtual hosting
- d.** co-located hosting

## Fill in the Blank

- 11.** \_\_\_\_\_ can be described as testing how actual web page visitors use a website.
- 12.** The \_\_\_\_\_ determines the appropriate use of graphics on the site and creates and edits graphics.
- 13.** The \_\_\_\_\_ operating system(s) treat uppercase and lowercase letters differently.

## Short Answer

- 14.** Why should the websites of competitors be reviewed when designing a website?
- 15.** Why should you try to contact the technical support staff of a web hosting provider before you become one of its customers?

# Hands-On Exercises

1. Skip this exercise if you have completed **Hands-On Practice**

[2.15](#) in [Chapter 2](#). In this exercise, you will validate a web page. Choose one of the web pages that you have created.

Launch a browser and visit the W3C Markup Validation Service (<https://validator.w3.org>). Click on the Validate by File Upload tab. Click the Browse button, select a file from your computer, and click the Check button to upload the file to the W3C site.

Your page will be analyzed and a Results page will be generated that shows a report of violations of the doctype that is used by your web page. The error messages display the offending code along with the line number, column number, and a description of the error. Don't worry if your web page does not pass the validation the first time. Many well-known websites have pages that do not validate—even Yahoo! (<https://www.yahoo.com>) had validation errors at the time this was written. Modify your web page document and revalidate it until you see a message that states. "Document checking completed. No errors or warnings to show".

You can also validate pages directly from the Web. Try validating the W3C's home page (<https://www.w3.org>), Yahoo! (<https://www.yahoo.com>), and your school's home page. Visit the W3C Markup Validation Service (<https://validator.w3.org>) and notice the Validate by URI area. Enter the URL of the web page you would like to validate in the Address text box. Click the Check button and view the results. Experiment with the character encoding and doctype options. The W3C's page should pass the validation. Don't worry if the other pages do not validate.

Validation is not required for web pages. However, web pages

that pass the validation should display well in most browsers.

(*Note:* If you have published pages to the web, try validating one of them instead of your school's home page.)

2. Run an automated accessibility test on the home page of your school's website. Use both the WebAIM Wave (<http://wave.webaim.org>) and ATRC AChecker (<https://www.achecker.ca/checker>) automated tests. Describe the differences in the way these tools report the results of the test. Did both tests find similar errors? Write a one-page report that describes the results of the tests. Include your recommendations for improving the website.
3. The Web Page Analyzer (<http://www.websiteoptimization.com/services/analyze>) calculates download times for a web page and associated assets, along with providing suggestions for improvement. Visit this site and test your school's home page (or a page assigned by your instructor). After the test is run, a web page speed report will display file sizes and include suggestions for improvement. Print out the browser view of this results page and write a one-page report that describes the results of the test and your own recommendations for improvement.
4. The Dr. Watson site (<http://watson.addy.com>) offers free web page validation. Visit this site and test your school's home page (or a page assigned by your instructor). After the test is run, a report is displayed with categories such as server response, estimated download speed, syntax and style analysis, spell-check, link verification, images, search engine compatibility (see [Chapter 13](#)), site link popularity (see [Chapter 13](#)), and source code. Print out the browser view of this results page and write a one-page report that describes the results of the test and your own recommendations for improvement.
5. Perform a small-scale usability test with a group of other students. Decide who will be the typical users, the tester, and the

observer. You will perform a usability test on your school's website.

- The typical users are the test subjects.
- The tester oversees the usability test and emphasizes that the users are not being tested; the website is being tested.
- The observer takes notes on the user's reactions and comments.

**Step 1** The tester welcomes the users and introduces them to the website that they will be testing.

**Step 2** For each of the following scenarios, the tester introduces the scenario and questions the users as they work through the task. The tester should ask the users to indicate when they are in doubt, confused, or frustrated. The observer takes notes.

- Scenario 1: Find the phone number of the contact person for the web development program at your school.
- Scenario 2: Determine when to register for the next semester.
- Scenario 3: Find the requirements for earning a degree or certificate in web development or a related area.

**Step 3** The tester and the observer organize the results and write a brief report. If this were a usability test for a website that you were developing, the development team would meet to review the results and discuss the necessary improvements to the site.

**Step 4** Hand in a report with your group's usability test results.

Complete the report using a word processor. Write no more than one page about each scenario. Write one page of recommendations for improving your school's website.

*Note:* For more information on usability testing, see <https://www.usability.gov/how-to-and-tools/methods/running-usability-tests.html> and Keith Instone's classic presentation at <http://instone.org/files/KEI-Howtotest-19990721.pdf>. Another good resource is Steven Krug's book, *Don't Make Me Think*.

**6.** See the description of usability testing in [Hands-On Exercise 5](#).

In a small group, perform usability tests on two similar websites, such as the following:

- Barnes and Noble (<https://www.bn.com>) and Powell's Books (<https://powells.com>)
- AccuWeather.com (<https://accuweather.com>) and Weather Underground (<https://www.wunderground.com>)
- Runner's World (<https://www.runnersworld.com>) and Cool Running (<https://www.coolrunning.com>)

Select and list three scenarios to test. Decide who will be the users, the tester, and the observer. Follow the steps listed in [Hands-On Exercise 5](#).

**7.** Pretend that you are on a job interview. Choose a role on a web project team that interests you. In three or four sentences, describe why you would be an excellent addition to a web development team in that role.

# Web Research

1. This chapter discussed options for hosting websites. In this research exercise, you will search for web hosting providers and report on three that meet the following criteria:

- Support PHP and MySQL.
- Offer e-commerce capabilities.
- Provide at least 1GB disk space.

Use your favorite search engine to find web hosting providers or visit web host directories such as Hosting Review (<https://www.hosting-review.com>) and HostIndex.com (<http://www.hostindex.com>). The web server survey results provided by Netcraft (<http://uptime.netcraft.com/perf/reports/Hosters>) may also be useful. Create a web page that presents your findings. Include links to your three web hosting providers. Your web page should include a table of information such as the setup fees, monthly fees, domain name registration costs, amount of disk space, type of e-commerce package, and cost of e-commerce package. Use color and graphics appropriately on your web page. Place your name and e-mail address at the bottom of your web page.

2. This chapter discussed the different job functions that are needed to develop large websites. Choose a job role that interests you. Search for information about available jobs in your geographical area. Search for technology jobs with your favorite search engine or visit a job site such as Monster.com (<https://www.monster.com>), Dice (<https://www.dice.com>), Indeed (<https://www.indeed.com>), or CareerBuilder.com (<http://www.careerbuilder.com>) and search for your desired location and job type. Find three possible job positions that interest you and

report on them. Create a web page that includes a brief description of the job role you have chosen, a description of the three available positions, a description of the types of experience and/or educational background required for the positions, and the salary range (if available). Use color and graphics appropriately on your web page. Place your name and e-mail address at the bottom of your web page.

# Focus on Web Design

The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services provides a collection of researched-based usability guidelines at <https://webstandards.hhs.gov/guidelines/>. The website suggests guidelines for a variety of topics organized into chapters, including navigation, text appearance, scrolling and paging, writing content, usability testing, and accessibility. Choose one chapter topic that interests you. Read the chapter. Note four guidelines that you find intriguing or useful. In a one-page report, describe why you chose the chapter topic and the four guidelines you noted.

## Website Case Study Testing Phase

This case study continues throughout the rest of the text. In this chapter, you will test the Web Project case study.

### Web Project

See [Chapter 5](#) for an introduction to the Web Project. In this chapter, you will develop a test plan for the project. You will review the documents created in the previous chapters' Web Project and create a test plan.

### Hands-On Practice Case Study

**PART 1: REVIEW THE DESIGN DOCUMENTS AND COMPLETED WEB PAGES.** Review the Topic Approval, Site Map, and Page Layout Design documents that you created in the [Chapter 5](#) Web Project. Review the web

pages that you have created and/or modified in the [Chapter 6](#) through [Chapter 9](#) Web Project activities.

**PART 2: PREPARE A TEST PLAN.** See [Figure 10.4](#) for a sample test plan document (chapter10/testplan.pdf in the student files). Create a test plan document for your website, including CSS validation, HTML validation, and accessibility testing.

**PART 3: TEST YOUR WEBSITE.** Implement your test plan and test each page that you have developed for your Web Project. Record the results. Create a list of suggested improvements.

**PART 4: PERFORM USABILITY TESTING.** Describe three scenarios that typical visitors to your site may encounter. Using [Hands-On Exercise 5](#) as a guide, conduct a usability test for these scenarios. Write a one-page report about your findings. What improvements would you suggest for the website?

---

# 11

## Web Multimedia and Interactivity

---





## Chapter Objectives

---

### IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .

- Describe the purpose of media containers and codecs
- Describe the types of multimedia files used on the Web
- Configure hyperlinks to multimedia files
- Configure audio and video on a web page
- Create an interactive drop down navigation menu with CSS
- Configure the CSS transform, transition, animation properties
- Create an interactive image gallery menu with CSS
- Configure an interactive widget with the details and summary elements
- Describe features and common uses of JavaScript
- Describe the purpose of HTML5 APIs such as geolocation, web storage, manifest, service workers, and canvas
- Describe features and common uses of Ajax
- Describe features and common uses of jQuery

**Video and sounds on your web pages** can make them more interesting and informative. In this chapter, you'll work with multimedia and interactive elements on web pages.

You began to work with **interactivity** in [Chapter 6](#) when you used CSS pseudo-classes to respond to mouse movements over hyperlinks. You'll

expand your CSS skill set as you configure an interactive image gallery, an interactive drop down navigation menu, and explore CSS transition, transform, and animation properties. Adding the right touch of interactivity to a web page can make it engaging and compelling for your visitors.

In addition to CSS, other technologies commonly used to add interactivity to web pages include JavaScript, Ajax, jQuery, and HTML APIs. Each of these topics is explored more fully in other books; each technology could be the sole subject of an entire book or college course. As you read this chapter and try the examples, concentrate on learning the features and capabilities of each technology, rather than trying to master the details.

## 11.1 Containers and Codecs

When working with native HTML5 audio and video, it's useful to be aware of the **container** (which is designated by the file extension) and the **codec** (which is the algorithm used to compress the media). There is no single codec that is supported by popular browsers. See <https://caniuse.com> for current information about browser support for HTML5 video and codecs.

Explore [Table 11.1](#) and [Table 11.2](#), which list common media file extensions and a description with codec information (if applicable for HTML5). Note that there is not always a one-to-one correspondence between file extensions and codecs. In some cases, multiple codecs may use the same file extension as their container.

---

**Table 11.1 Common audio file types**

<b>File Extension</b>	<b>Description</b>
.aiif, .aif	Audio Interchange; popular audio file format on the Mac platform; also supported on the PC platform
.au	Sun UNIX Sound File; older type of sound file that generally has poorer sound quality than the newer audio file formats
.m4a, .aac	MPEG-4 Audio; audio-only MPEG-4 format that uses the Advanced Audio Coding (AAC) codec

<b>File Extension</b>	<b>Description</b>
.mid	Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI); contains instructions to recreate a musical sound rather than a digital recording of the sound itself; a limited number of types of sounds can be reproduced
.mp3	MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3; popular for music files because of the MP3 codec, which supports two channels and advanced compression
.ogg	Open-source audio file format (see <a href="https://www.vorbis.com">https://www.vorbis.com</a> ), Vorbis codec; Opus codec
.wav	Wave; Waveform Audio File format for uncompressed sound files; a standard on the PC platform

**Table 11.2 Common video file types**

<b>File Extension</b>	<b>Description</b>
.3gp	3GPP Multimedia; H.264 codec; A standard for delivery of multimedia over 3G; also supported on some 2G and 4G phones

<b>File Extension</b>	<b>Description</b>
.av1, .mp4	Newer open-source, royalty-free AV1 video codec; Alliance for Open Media ( <a href="https://aomedia.org">https://aomedia.org</a> );
.avi	Audio Video Interleaved; Microsoft's original video format for the PC platform
.m4v, .mp4	MPEG-4 (MP4) codec; H.264 codec
.mov	Developed by Apple and originally indicated a video with a MPEG-4 codec used in Apple's Quicktime application
.mov, .mp4, .hevc	Newer High-efficiency Video Coding HEVC codec (also called H.265 codec);  Apple has begun using the .mov file extension HEVC video
.mpg	Developed under the sponsorship of the Moving Picture Experts Group (MPEG) ( <a href="https://mpeg.chiariglione.org">https://mpeg.chiariglione.org</a> ); MPEG-2 codec
.ogv, .ogg	Open-source video file format ( <a href="https://www.theora.org">https://www.theora.org</a> ); Theora codec

<b>File Extension</b>	<b>Description</b>
.webm	Open media file format ( <a href="https://www.webmproject.org">https://www.webmproject.org</a> ); VP9 and VP9 video codecs; Vorbis and Opus audio codecs

## 11.2 Getting Started with Audio and Video

As you read this chapter, you'll explore several ways to provide audio and video for your website visitors, including a hyperlink, the audio element, and the video element. We'll get started with the easiest method, which is coding a hyperlink.

### Provide a Hyperlink

The easiest way to give your website visitors access to an audio or a video file is to create a simple hyperlink to the file. For example, the code to hyperlink to a sound file named WDFpodcast.mp3 is

```
<a href="WDFpodcast.mp3">Podcast Episode 1</a> (MP3)
```

When your website visitor clicks on the hyperlink, the plug-in for MP3 files that is installed on the computer typically will display embedded in a new browser window or tab. Your web page visitor can then use the plug-in to play the sound. If your website visitor right-clicks on the hyperlink, the media file can be downloaded and saved.

### Hands-On Practice 11.1

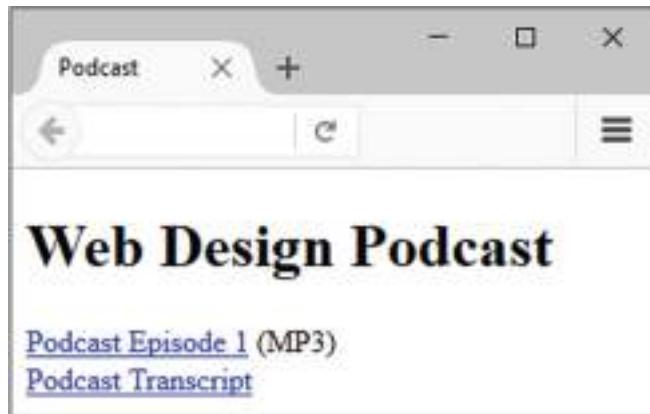
In this Hands-On Practice, you will create a web page similar to [Figure 11.1](#) that contains an h1 tag and a hyperlink to an MP3 file. The web page will also provide a hyperlink to a text

transcript of that file to provide for accessibility. It's useful to your web page visitors to also indicate the type of file (such as an MP3) and, optionally, the size of the file to be accessed.

---

**Figure 11.1 The default MP3 player will launch in the browser when the visitor clicks on Podcast Episode 1**

---



Copy the podcast.mp3 and podcast.txt files from the chapter11/starters folder in the student files and save them to a folder named podcast. Launch a text editor and open chapter11/template.html in the student files. Edit the web page with the heading “Web Design Podcast”, a hyperlink to the MP3 file, and a hyperlink to the text transcript. Save your web page as podcast2.html and display it in a browser. Test your web page in different browsers, using different versions. When you click on the MP3 hyperlink, an audio player (whichever player or plug-in is configured for the browser) will launch to play the file. When you click on the hyperlink for the text transcript, the text will display in the browser. Compare your work to chapter11/11.1/index.html in the student files.

---

## Working with Multimedia on the Web

## More About Audio Files

There are a number of ways that you can obtain audio files. You can record your own sounds, download sounds or music from a free site, record music from a CD, or purchase a DVD of sounds. There are some ethical issues related to using sounds and music created by others. You may only publish sounds or music that you have created yourself or for which you have obtained the rights (sometimes called a license) to publish. When you purchase a CD or DVD, you have not purchased the rights for publishing to the Web. Contact the owner of the copyright to request permission to use the music. There are many sources of audio files on the Web, including websites that sell subscriptions for the use of royalty-free music.

### Focus on Ethics

The Windows and Mac operating systems contain audio recording utilities. Audacity is a free cross-platform digital audio editor (available at <http://sourceforge.net/projects/audacity> for both Windows and Mac).

## More About Video Files

Just as with audio files, there are a number of ways that you can obtain video files, including recording your own, downloading videos, purchasing a DVD that contains videos, or searching for video files on the Web. Be aware that there are ethical issues related to using videos that you did not create yourself. You must obtain the rights or license to publish videos created by other individuals before publishing them on your website.

---

### Focus on Ethics

Many digital cameras and smartphones have the capability to take still photographs as well as short MP4 movies. This can be an easy way to create short video clips. Digital video cameras and webcams record digital videos. Once you have created your video, software such as Adobe Premiere Pro, Adobe Spark, and Nero Video can be used to edit and configure your video masterpiece. Many digital cameras and smartphones provide the ability record to videos and immediately upload them to YouTube to share with the world. You'll work with a YouTube video in [Chapter 13](#).

## Multimedia and Accessibility Issues

Provide alternate content for the media files you use on your website in transcript, caption, or printable PDF format. Provide a text transcript for audio files such as podcasts. Often, you can use the podcast script as the basis of the text transcript file that you create as a PDF and upload to your website. Provide captions for video files. When you upload a video to YouTube (<https://www.youtube.com>), captions can be automatically generated (although you'll probably want to make some corrections). You can also create a transcript or text captions for an existing YouTube video (see <https://support.google.com/youtube/topic/3014331>).

---

### Focus on Accessibility

## 11.3 Audio and Video Elements

The HTML5 audio and video elements enable browsers to natively play media files. When working with HTML5 audio and video, you need to be aware of the container (which is designated by the file extension) and the codec (which is the algorithm used to compress the media). Refer to [Table 11.1](#) and [Table 11.2](#), which list common media file extensions, the container file type, and a description with codec information (if applicable for HTML5). Let's get started using the audio element.

### Audio Element

The **audio element** supports native play of audio files in the browser. The audio element begins with the `<audio>` tag and ends with the `</audio>` tag. [Table 11.3](#) lists the attributes of the audio element.

You'll need to supply multiple versions of the audio file because of the browser support of different codecs. Plan to supply audio files in at least two different containers, including OGG and MP3. It is typical to omit the `src` and `type` attributes from the audio tag and, instead, configure multiple versions of the audio file with the source element.

---

**Table 11.3 Audio element attributes**

Attribute	Value	Usage
<code>src</code>	File name	Optional; audio file name

Attribute	Value	Usage
<code>type</code>	MIME type	Optional; the MIME type of the audio file, such as <code>audio/mpeg</code> or <code>audio/ogg</code>
<code>autoplay</code>	<code>autoplay</code>	Optional; indicates whether audio should start playing automatically; use with caution
<code>controls</code>	<code>controls</code>	Optional; indicates whether controls should be displayed; recommended
<code>loop</code>	<code>loop</code>	Optional; indicates whether audio should be played over and over
<code>preload</code>	<code>none</code> , <code>metadata</code> , <code>auto</code>	Optional; values: <code>none</code> (no preload), <code>metadata</code> (only download media file metadata), and <code>auto</code> (download the media file)
<code>title</code>	Text description	Optional; specifies a brief text description that may be displayed by browsers or assistive technologies

## Source Element

When used with an audio element, the **source element** specifies a media file and a MIME type. The `src` attribute identifies the file name of the media file. The `type` attribute indicates the MIME type of the file. Code

`type="audio/mpeg"` for an MP3 file. Code `type="audio/ogg"` for audio files using the Vorbis codec. Configure a source element for each version of the audio file. Place the source element before the closing audio tag.

## Audio on a Web Page

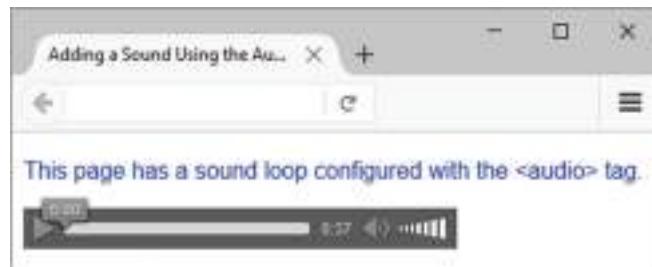
The following code sample configures the web page shown in [Figure 11.2](#) (see chapter11/audio.html in the student files) to display a controller for an audio file:

```
<audio controls="controls">
    <source src="soundloop.mp3" type="audio/mpeg">
    <source src="soundloop.ogg" type="audio/ogg">
        <a href="soundloop.mp3">Download the Audio
        File</a> (MP3)
    </audio>
```

---

**Figure 11.2 The Firefox browser supports the HTML5 audio element.**

---



Current versions of popular browsers support the audio element. The controls displayed by each browser are different.

Review the previous code and note the hyperlink placed between the second source element and the closing audio tag. Any HTML elements or text placed in this area is rendered by browsers that do not support the

audio element. This is referred to as fallback content; if the audio element is not supported, the MP3 version of the file is made available for download.

---

## Hands-On Practice 11.2

In this Hands-On Practice, you will launch a text editor and create a web page (see [Figure 11.3](#)) that displays an audio control to play a podcast.

---

**Figure 11.3 Using the audio element to provide access to a podcast**

---



Copy the podcast.mp3, podcast.ogg, and podcast.txt files from the chapter11/starters folder in the student files and save them to a folder named audio5. Use the chapter11/template.html file as a starting point and create a web page with the heading "Web Design Podcast", an audio control (use the audio element and two source elements), and a hyperlink to the podcast.txt transcript file. Configure a hyperlink to the MP3 file as the fallback content. The code for the audio element is

```
<audio controls="controls">
    <source src="podcast.mp3" type="audio/mpeg">
    <source src="podcast.ogg" type="audio/ogg">
    <a href="podcast.mp3">Download the
```

`Podcast</a> (MP3)  
</audio>`

Save your web page as index.html in the audio5 folder and display it in a browser. Test your web page in different browsers, using different versions. When you click on the hyperlink for the text transcript, the text will display in the browser. Compare your work to chapter11/11.2/index.html in the student files.

## FAQ

How can I convert an audio file to the Ogg Vorbis codec?

The open-source Audacity application supports Ogg Vorbis. See <https://sourceforge.net/projects/audacity> for download information. If you're looking for a free Web-based converter, you can upload and share an audio file at the Internet Archive (<https://www.archive.org>) and an OGG format file will automatically be generated.

## Video Element

The HTML5 **video element** supports native play of video files in the browser. The video element begins with the `<video>` tag and ends with the `</video>` tag. [Table 11.4](#) lists the attributes of the video element.

---

**Table 11.4 Video element attributes**

<b>Attribute</b>	<b>Value</b>	<b>Usage</b>
<code>src</code>	File name	Optional; video file name
<code>type</code>	MIME type	Optional; the MIME type of the video file, such as <code>video/mp4</code> or <code>video/ogg</code>
<code>autoplay</code>	<code>autoplay</code>	Optional; indicates whether video should start playing automatically; use with caution
<code>controls</code>	<code>controls</code>	Optional; indicates whether controls should be displayed; recommended
<code>height</code>	<code>number</code>	Optional; video height in pixels
<code>loop</code>	<code>loop</code>	Optional; indicates whether video should be played over and over
<code>poster</code>	File name	Optional; specifies an image to display when downloading and if the browser cannot play the video
<code>preload</code>	<code>none</code> , <code>metadata</code> , <code>auto</code>	Optional; values: <code>none</code> (no preload), <code>metadata</code> (only download media file metadata), and <code>auto</code> (download the media file)

Attribute	Value	Usage
title	Text description	Optional; specifies a brief text description that may be displayed by browsers or assistive technologies
width	Number	Optional; video width in pixels

You'll need to supply multiple versions of the video file because of the browser support of different codecs. Plan to supply video files in at least two different containers, including MP4 and OGG (or OGV). It is typical to omit the `src` and `type` attributes from the video tag and, instead, configure multiple versions of the audio file with the source element.

## Source Element

When used with a video element, the source element specifies a media file and a MIME type. The `src` attribute identifies the file name of the media file. The `type` attribute indicates the MIME type of the file. Code `type="video/mp4"` for video files using the MP4 codec. Code `type="video/ogg"` for video files using the Theora codec. Configure a source element for each version of the video file. Place the source elements before the closing video tag.

## Video on a Web Page

The following code configures the web page shown in [Figure 11.4](#) (chapter11/sparky2.html in the student files) with the native HTML5 browser controls to display and play a video:

```
<video controls="controls" poster="sparky.jpg"
width="160"
height="150">
  <source src="sparky.m4v" type="video/mp4">
  <source src="sparky.ogv" type="video/ogg">
  <a href="sparky.mov">Sparky the Dog</a> (.mov)
</video>
```

---

**Figure 11.4** The Firefox browser. Screenshots of Mozilla Firefox.  
Courtesy of Mozilla Foundation.

---



Current versions of popular browsers support the HTML5 video element. The controls displayed by each browser are different. Review the code just given and note the anchor element placed between the second source element and the closing video tag. Any HTML elements or text placed in this area is rendered by browsers that do not support the HTML5 video element. This is referred to as fallback content. In this case, a hyperlink to a .mov version of the file is supplied for the user to download.

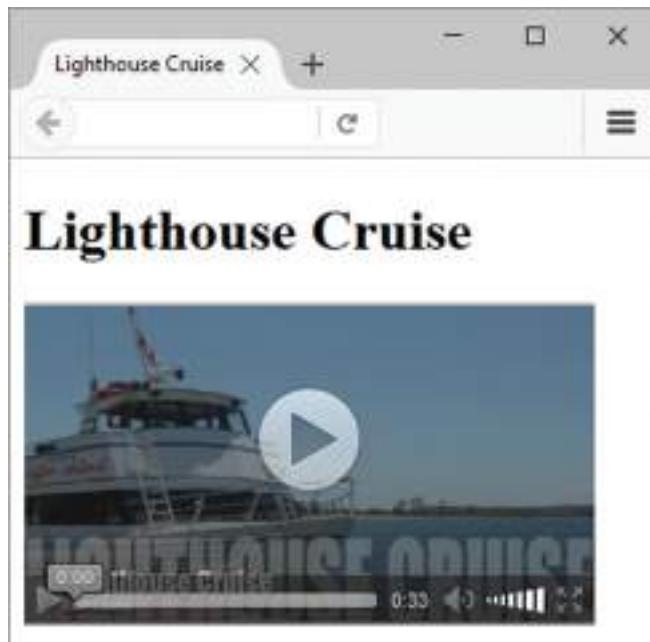
In the past, another fallback option was to configure an embed element to play a Flash (.swf) version of the video. Adobe Flash multimedia content was once quite popular. Although the Flash Player is installed in many desktop web browsers, users of mobile devices cannot view Flash content. The lack of mobile support contributed to the decrease in the use

of Flash on web pages and Adobe has announced that it is planning to end-of-life Flash. The Adobe Flash Player will no longer be updated and distributed by the end of 2020.

## Hands-On Practice 11.3

In this Hands-On Practice, you will launch a text editor and create the web page in [Figure 11.5](#), which displays a video control to play a movie.

**Figure 11.5** HTML5 video element



Video Note

**HTML5 Video.**

Copy the lighthouse.m4v, lighthouse.ogv, lighthouse.mov, and lighthouse.jpg files from the chapter11/starters folder in the student files and save them to a folder named video. Open chapter11/template.html in a text editor and configure a web page with the heading “Lighthouse Cruise” and a video control (use the video element and two source elements). Configure a hyperlink to a video file (lighthouse.mov) as fallback content. Configure the lighthouse.jpg file as a poster image, which will display if the browser supports the video element, but it cannot play any of the video files. The code for the video element is

```
<video controls="controls"
poster="lighthouse.jpg" width="320"
height="240">
    <source src="lighthouse.m4v"
type="video/mp4">
    <source src="lighthouse.ogv"
type="video/ogg">
    <a href="lighthouse.mov">Lighthouse
Cruise</a> (.mov)
</video>
```

Save your web page as index.html in the video folder and display it in a browser. Test your web page in different browsers. Compare your work to [Figure 11.5](#) and chapter11/11.3/index.html in the student files.

## FAQ

How can I convert a video file to the new codecs?

Online-Convert offers free conversion to WebM (<https://video.online-convert.com/convert-to-webm>) and to Ogg Theora (<https://video.online-convert.com/convert-to-ogg>). The free, open-source MiroVideoConverter (<http://www.mirovideoconverter.com>) can convert most video files to MP4, WebM, or OGG formats.

---

## 11.4 Multimedia Files and Copyright Law

It is very easy to copy and download an image, audio, or video file from a website. It may be very tempting to place someone else's file in one of your own projects, but that may not be ethical or lawful. Only publish web pages, images, and other media that you have personally created or have obtained the rights or license to use. If another individual has created an image, sound, video, or document that you think would be useful on your own website, ask permission to use the material instead of simply taking it. All work (web pages, images, sounds, videos, and so on) is **copyrighted**, even if there is no copyright symbol and date on the material.

---

### Focus on Ethics

Be aware that there are times when students and educators can use portions of another's work and not be in violation of copyright law. This is called **fair use**. Fair use is the use of a copyrighted work for purposes such as criticism, reporting, teaching, scholarship, or research. The criteria used to determine fair use are as follows:

- The use must be educational rather than commercial.
- The nature of the work copied should be factual rather than creative.
- The amount copied must be as small a portion of the work as possible.
- The copy does not impede the marketability of the original work.

Visit the U.S. Copyright Office (<https://copyright.gov>) and Copyright Website (<http://www.copyrightwebsite.com>) for some additional information about copyright issues.

Some individuals may want to retain ownership of their work, but make it easy for others to use or adapt it. Creative Commons (<https://creativecommons.org>) provides a free service that allows authors and artists to register a type of copyright license called a **Creative Commons license**. There are several licenses to choose from, depending on the rights you wish to grant as the author. The Creative Commons license informs others exactly what they can and cannot do with the creative work.

### Checkpoint 11.1

1. Describe the HTML needed to display a video on a web page, including what happens if the browser or device does not support the video file.
2. Describe the purpose of the poster attribute on the video element.
3. Students can use anything they find on the Web for school assignments. Do you agree with this statement? Justify your answer.

## 11.5 CSS and Interactivity

### CSS Drop Down Menu

Recall from [Chapter 6](#) that the CSS `:hover` pseudo-class provides a way to configure styles to display when the web page visitor moves the mouse over an element. You'll use this basic interactivity, along with CSS positioning and display properties, to configure an interactive navigation menu with CSS and HTML in the next Hands-On Practice.

---

#### Hands-On Practice 11.4

In this Hands-On Practice you will configure a drop down menu that displays when a visitor hovers over the Cuisine navigation hyperlink as shown in [Figure 11.6](#). The main menu has hyperlinks for Home, Coffee, Cuisine, Directions, and Contact. As shown in the site map ([Figure 11.7](#)) the Cuisine page has three subpages: Breakfast, Lunch, and Dinner. Create a folder named mybistro. Copy the files from the chapter11/bistro folder in the student files into your mybistro folder. You will modify the CSS and edit each page to configure a Cuisine submenu that provides hyperlinks to three pages (Breakfast, Lunch, and Dinner).

---

**Figure 11.6 An interactive navigation menu with CSS**

---



**Figure 11.7 Site map**



**TASK 1: CONFIGURE THE HTML.** Launch a text editor and open the index.html file. Modify the nav area to contain a new unordered list with hyperlinks to the Breakfast, Lunch, and Dinner pages. Configure a new ul element that is contained *within* the Cuisine li element. The new ul element will contain an li element for each meal. The HTML follows with the new code displayed in blue.

```
<nav>
<ul>
    <li><a href="index.html">Home</a></li>
    <li><a href="coffee.html">Coffee</a></li>
    <li><a href="cuisine.html">Cuisine</a>
```

```
<ul>
  <li><a href="breakfast.html">Breakfast</a></li>
    <li><a href="lunch.html">Lunch</a></li>
    <li><a href="dinner.html">Dinner</a>
  </li>
</ul>
</li>
<li><a href="directions.html">Directions</a>
</li>
<li><a href="contact.html">Contact</a></li>
</ul>
</nav>
```

Save the file and display it in a browser. Don't worry if the navigation area seems a bit garbled—you'll configure the submenu CSS in Step 2. Next, edit each page (coffee.html, cuisine.html, breakfast.html, lunch.html, dinner.html, directions.html and contact.html) and edit the nav area as you did in the index.html file.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the bistro.css file.

- a. The submenu will be configured with absolute positioning. Recall from [Chapter 7](#) that absolute positioning precisely specifies the location of an element outside of normal flow in relation to its first parent non-static element. The nav element's position is static by default so add the following declaration to the styles for the nav element selector:

```
position: relative;
```

- b. The submenu that displays the hyperlinks for the Breakfast, Lunch, and Dinner pages is configured

using a new ul element that is contained within the existing ul element in the nav area. Configure a descendant `nav ul ul` selector and code style declarations to use absolute positioning, #5564A0 background color, 0 padding, left text alignment and display set to none. The CSS follows:

```
nav ul ul { position: absolute;
            background-color: #5564A0;
            padding: 0;
            text-align: left;
            display: none; }
```

c. To style each li element within the submenu, use a descendant `nav ul ul li` selector and configure the li elements in the submenu with a border, block display, 8em width, 1em left padding, and 0 left margin. The CSS follows:

```
nav ul ul li { border: 1px solid #00005D;
                display: block;
                width: 8em;
                padding-left: 1em;
                margin-left: 0; }
```

d. Configure the submenu ul to display when the `:hover` is triggered for the li elements in the nav area. The CSS follows:

```
nav li:hover ul { display: block; }
```

Test your pages in a browser. The drop down menu should look similar to [Figure 11.6](#). You can compare your work to the sample in the student files (chapter11/11.4/horizontal). An example of a web page with a vertical fly-out menu is available in the student files (chapter11/11.4/vertical).

## The `transform` Property

CSS transforms (<https://www.w3.org/TR/css-transforms-1/>) allow you to change the display of an element and provide functions to rotate, scale, skew, and reposition an element. Both two-dimensional (2D) and three-dimensional (3D) transforms are possible.

[Table 11.5](#) lists commonly used 2D transform property function values and their purpose. See <https://www.w3.org/TR/css3-transforms/#transform-property> for a complete list. We'll focus on the rotate and scale transforms in this section.

**Table 11.5 Transform Functions and Purpose**

Transform Function	Purpose
<code>rotate (degree)</code>	Rotates the element by the angle
<code>scale (number, number)</code>	Scales or resizes the element along the X and Y axis (X,Y)

Transform Function	Purpose
<code>scaleX (number)</code>	Scales or resizes the element along the X axis
<code>scaleY (number)</code>	Scales or resizes the element along the Y axis
<code>skewX (number)</code>	Distorts the display of the element along the X axis
<code>skewY (number)</code>	Distorts the display of the element along the Y axis
<code>translate (number, number)</code>	Repositions the element along the X and Y axis (X,Y)
<code>translateX (number)</code>	Repositions the element along the X axis
<code>translateY (number)</code>	Repositions the element along the Y axis

## Rotate Transform

The **rotate()** transform function takes a value in degrees (like an angle in geometry). Rotate to the right with a positive value. Rotate to the left with a negative value. The rotation is around the origin, which, by default, is the middle of the element. The web page in [Figure 11.8](#) demonstrates the use of the transform property to slightly rotate the figure.

---

**Figure 11.8** The transform property in action

---



## Scale Transform

The **scale()** transform function resizes an element in three different ways: along the X-axis, along the Y-axis, and along both the X- and Y-axes. Specify the amount of resizing using a number without units. For example, scale(1) does not change the element's size, scale(2) indicates the element should render two times as large, scale(3) indicates the element should render three times as large, and scale(0) indicates the element should not display.

---

### Hands-On Practice 11.5

In this Hands-On Practice you will configure the rotation and scale transforms shown in [Figure 11.8](#). Create a new folder named transform. Copy the lighthouse.jpg and light.gif images from the chapter11/starters folder in the student files to your transform folder. Launch a text editor and open the starter.html file in the chapter11 folder. Save the file as index.html in your

transform folder. Launch the file in a browser and it will look similar to Figure 11.9.

**Figure 11.9 Before the transform property**



Open index.html in a text editor and view the embedded CSS.

1. Locate the figure element selector. You will add new style declarations to the figure element selector that will configure a three-degree rotation transform. The CSS follows:

```
figure { margin: auto; background-color: #FFF;  
         padding: 8px; border: 1px solid #CCC;  
         box-shadow: 5px 5px 5px #828282;  
width: 265px;  
         transform: rotate(3deg); }
```

- Locate the `#offer` selector. This configures the “Special Offer” div displayed above the page footer. You will add a style declaration to the `#offer` selector that configures the browser to display the element two times larger. The CSS follows:

```
#offer { background-color: #EAEAEA;  
width: 10em;  
margin: 2em auto 0 auto;  
text-align: center;  
transform: scale(2); }
```

Save the file and display it in a browser. You should see the figure displayed on a slight angle and the “Special Offer” text displayed in large text. Compare your work to [Figure 11.8](#) and the sample in the student files (chapter11/11.5/index.html).

## Explore Transforms

This section provided an overview of the rotate and scale transforms. Visit <http://www.westciv.com/tools/transforms/index.html> to generate the CSS for rotate, scale, translate, and skew transforms. Find out more about transforms at <http://www.css3files.com/transform> and [https://developer.mozilla.org/en/CSS/Using\\_CSS\\_transforms](https://developer.mozilla.org/en/CSS/Using_CSS_transforms).

## The transition Property

CSS transitions provide for changes in property values to display in a smoother manner over a specified time. You can apply a transition to a variety of CSS properties including `color`, `background-color`, `border`, `font-size`, `font-weight`, `margin`, `padding`, `opacity`, and `text-shadow`. A full list of applicable properties is available at [https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/CSS/CSS\\_animated\\_properties](https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/CSS/CSS_animated_properties).

When you configure a transition for a property, you need to configure

values for the `transition-property`, `transition-duration`, – `transition-timing-function`, and `transition-delay` properties. These can be combined in a single **transition property**. Table 11.6 lists the transition properties and their purpose. Table 11.7 lists commonly used transition-timing-function values and their purpose.

---

**Table 11.6 CSS transition properties**

Property	Description
<code>transition-property</code>	Indicates the CSS property to which the transition applies
<code>transition-duration</code>	Indicates the length of time to apply the transition; default value 0 configures an immediate transition; a numeric value specifies time (usually in seconds)
<code>transition-timing-function</code>	Configures changes in the speed of the transition by describing how intermediate property values are calculated; common values include <code>ease</code> (default), <code>linear</code> , <code>ease-in</code> , <code>ease-out</code> , <code>ease-in-out</code>
<code>transition-delay</code>	Indicates the beginning of the transition; default value 0 configures no delay; a numeric value specifies time (usually in seconds)

Property	Description
transition	Shorthand property; list the value for transition-property, transition-duration, transition-timing-function, and transition-delay separated by spaces; default values can be omitted, but the first time unit applies to transition-duration

**Table 11.7 Commonly used transition-timing-function values**

Value	Purpose
ease	Default; transition effect begins slowly, speeds up, and ends slowly
linear	Transition effect has a constant speed
ease-in	Transition effect begins slowly and speeds up to a constant speed
ease-out	Transition effect begins at a constant speed and slows down
ease-in-out	Transition effect is slightly slower; Begins slowly, speeds up, and slows down

## Hands-On Practice 11.6

Recall that the CSS `:hover` pseudo-class provides a way to configure styles to display when the web page visitor moves the mouse over an element. The change in display happens somewhat abruptly. Web designers can use a CSS transition to create a more gradual change to the hover state. You'll try this out in this Hands-On Practice when you configure a transition for the navigation hyperlinks on a web page.

Create a new folder named transition. Copy the lighthouse.jpg and light.gif images from the chapter11/starters folder in the student files to your transition folder. Launch a text editor and open the starter.html file in the chapter11 folder. Save the file as index.html in your transition folder. Open index.html in a browser and it will look similar to [Figure 11.9](#). Place your mouse over one of the navigation hyperlinks and notice that the background color and text color change immediately.

Open index.html in a text editor and view the embedded CSS. Locate the `nav a:hover` selector and notice that the color and background-color properties are configured. You will add new style declarations to the `nav a` selector to cause a more gradual change in the background color when the user places the mouse over the hyperlink. The CSS follows:

```
nav a { text-decoration: none; display: block;
padding: 1em 2em;
transition: background-color 2s linear;
}
```

Save the file and display it in a browser. Place your mouse over one of the navigation hyperlinks and notice that while the text color changes immediately, the background color changes in a

more gradual manner—the transition is working! Compare your work to [Figure 11.10](#) and the student files (chapter11/11.6/index.html).

**Figure 11.10 The transition in action**



## Explore Transitions

If you'd like more control over the transition than what is provided by the values listed in [Table 11.8](#), explore using the cubic-bezier value for the transition-timing-function. A Bezier curve is a mathematically defined curve often used in graphic applications to describe motion. Explore the following resources:

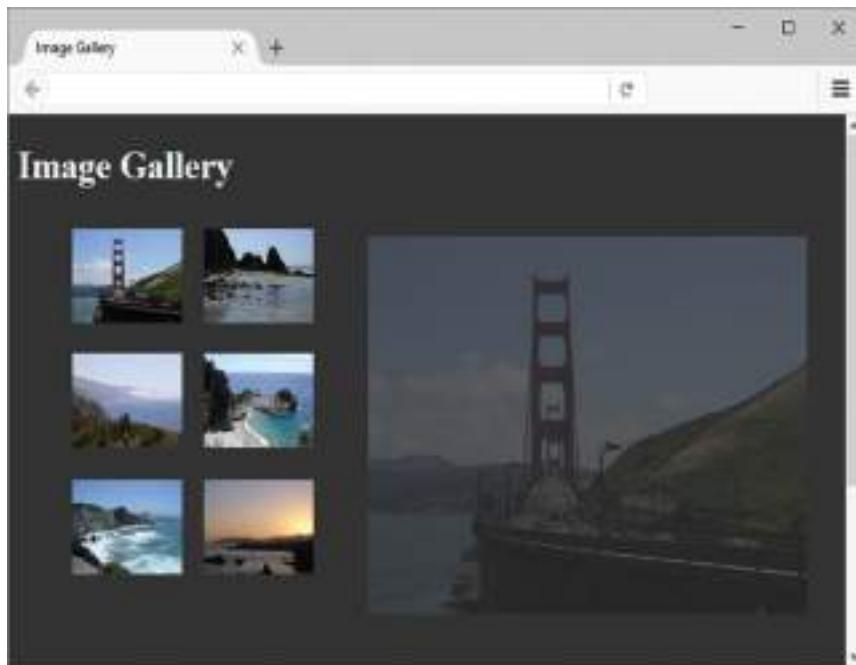
- <http://www.the-art-of-web.com/css/timing-function>
- <http://roblaplaca.com/blog/2011/03/11/understanding-css-cubic-bezier>
- <http://cubic-bezier.com>

## Hands-On Practice 11.7

In this Hands-On Practice you will use CSS `positioning`, `opacity`, and `transition` properties to configure an interactive image gallery with CSS and HTML. This is a slightly different version of the image gallery than the web page you created in [Hands-On Practice 6.9](#).

[Figure 11.11](#) shows the initial display of the gallery (see the student files chapter11/11.7/index.html) with a semi-opaque placeholder image. When you place the mouse over a thumbnail image, the larger version of that image is gradually displayed along with a caption (see [Figure 11.12](#)). If you click the thumbnail, the image will display in its own browser window.

**Figure 11.11 Initial display of the gallery**



**Figure 11.12 The new photo gradually displays**

---



Create a new folder called gallery2. Copy all the images from the chapter11/starters/gallery folder in the student files to the new gallery2 folder.

Launch a text editor and modify the chapter11/template.html file to configure a web page as indicated:

1. Configure the text, “Image Gallery”, within an h1 element and within the title element.
2. Code a div element assigned to the id named `gallery`. This div will contain a placeholder figure element and an unordered list that contains the thumbnail images.
3. Configure a figure element within the div. The figure element will contain a placeholder img element that displays `photo1.jpg`.
4. Configure an unordered list within the div. Code six li elements, one for each thumbnail image. The thumbnail images will function as image links with a `:hover` pseudo-class that causes the larger image to display on the page. We'll make this all happen by configuring an anchor element containing both the thumbnail image and a span element

that comprises the larger image along with descriptive text.

An example of the first li element is

```
<li><a href="photo1.jpg">  
<span><br>Golden Gate  
Bridge</span></a>  
</li>
```

5. Configure all six li elements in a similar manner. Substitute the actual name of each image file for the href and src values in the code. Write your own descriptive text for each image. Use photo2.jpg and photo2thumb.jpg in the second li element. Use photo3.jpg and photo3thumb.jpg in the third li element, and so on for all six images. Save the file as index.html in the gallery2 folder. Display your page in a browser. You'll see the placeholder image followed by an unordered list with the thumbnail images, the larger images, and the descriptive text.

6. Now, let's add CSS. Open your file in a text editor and code a style element in the head section. Configure embedded CSS as follows:

a. Configure the body element selector with a dark background color (#333333) and a light gray text color (#eaeaea).

b. Configure the `gallery` id selector. Set `position` to `relative`. This does not change the location of the gallery but sets the stage to use absolute positioning on the span element relative to its container

(`#gallery`) instead of relative to the entire web page document.

- c. Configure the figure element selector. Set `position` to `absolute`, `left` to `280px`, `text-align` to center, and `opacity` to `.25`. This will cause the figure to initially be semi-opaque.
- d. Configure the unordered list within the `#gallery` with a width of 300 pixels and no list marker.
- e. Configure the list item elements within the `#gallery` with inline display, left float, and 10 pixels of padding.
- f. Configure the img elements within the `#gallery` to not display a border.
- g. Configure anchor elements within the `#gallery` with no underline, `#eaeaea` text color, and italic text.
- h. Configure span elements within the `#gallery`. Set `position` to `absolute`, `left` to `-1000px` (which causes them not to display initially in the browser viewport), and `opacity` to 0. Also configure a three second `ease-in-out transition`.

```
#gallery span { position: absolute; left: -1000px; opacity: 0;
                transition: opacity 3s
                ease-in-out; }
```

- i. Configure the span elements within the `#gallery` to display when the web visitor hovers the mouse over the thumbnail image link. Set `position` to `absolute`, `top` to `16px`, `left` to `320px`, centered text, and `opacity` to 1.

```
#gallery a:hover span { position:  
    absolute; top: 16px; left: 320px;  
        text-align:  
    center; opacity: 1; }
```

Save your file in the gallery2 folder and display it in a browser.

Compare your work to [Figure 11.11](#), [Figure 11.12](#), and the student files (chapter11/11.7/index.html).

---

See the following resources for more examples:

- CSS Transitions 101:

<https://www.webdesignerdepot.com/2010/01/css-transitions-101>

- Using CSS Transitions:

[https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/Guide/CSS/  
Using\\_CSS\\_transitions](https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/Guide/CSS/Using_CSS_transitions)

## CSS Animations

CSS animations (<https://www.w3.org/TR/css-animations-1/>) provide a way to animate the values of CSS properties over time. There are two steps to configuring a CSS animation:

- define the animation using the `@keyframes` rule
- apply the animation using the CSS `animation` property

## Define an Animation with `@keyframes` Rule

When working with animation, a **keyframe** is a point of change. The purpose of the **@keyframes rule** is to define an animation – naming the animation and grouping the keyframes. At least two keyframes are required, a **from** keyframe (the starting state) and a **to** keyframe (the ending state). The timing duration for a series of keyframes can be indicated by percentages; such as 0% for the first keyframe, 25% for the second keyframe, 50% for the third keyframe, and 100% for the last keyframe. These indicate how far into the animation duration the keyframe should be triggered. One or more CSS properties are listed within each keyframe block. The @keyframes rule below configures the name of the animation to be the value **test** and causes the scale of an element to change from 50% to 200% while changing the color from blue to red.

```
@keyframes test {  
    from { transform: scale(0.5);  
           background-color: blue; }  
    to   { transform: scale(2);  
           background-color: red; }  
}
```

## Apply the Animation

Next, apply the animation by indicating the name of the animation and how long the animation should last. Use the CSS **animation property**, which is a shorthand property that typically accepts values for the **animation-name** and **animation-duration** properties.

To apply the animation named **test** for five seconds to a class called **myAnimate** (which also configures a horizontally centered blue square with a border), code the following CSS:

```
.myAnimate { width: 100px; height: 100px;  
            background-color: blue; border: 3px solid  
#000;  
            margin: auto;  
            animation: test 5s; }
```

The student files (chapter11/animate1.html) has an example of this animation in action. When you display the page in a browser you will see the animation and notice that the square returns to its original state when the animation completes. You can change this by setting the `animation-fill-mode` property to the value `forwards`, as demonstrated in the student files (chapter11/animate2.html). **Table 11.8** lists animation properties and their purpose.

---

**Table 11.8 Animation Properties**

Property	Description
animation	Shorthand property; minimum requirements are the value for <code>animation-name</code> and <code>animation-duration</code> separated by spaces
animation-name	Indicates the associated <code>@keyframes</code> rule for the animation
animation-duration	Length of animation; default value <code>0s</code> configures no animation; a numeric value specifies length of animation in seconds or milliseconds

Property	Description
animation-delay	Delay before beginning animation; default value <code>0s</code> configures an immediate animation; a numeric value specifies delay time in seconds or milliseconds
animation-timing-function	Configures changes in the speed of the animation by describing how intermediate property values are calculated; common values include <code>ease</code> (default), <code>linear</code> , <code>ease-in</code> , <code>ease-out</code> , <code>ease-in-out</code> (see <a href="#">Table 11.7</a> )
animation-iteration-count	Configures the number of times to repeat the animation; default value is 1; values include a positive number or keyword <code>infinite</code>
animation-direction	Configures if animation should play forward, backwards or alternating; values include <code>normal</code> (default), <code>reverse</code> , <code>alternate</code> , <code>alternate-reverse</code>
animation-play-state	Indicates if animation is playing or paused; values are <code>running</code> (default) and <code>paused</code>

Property	Description
animation-fill-mode	Configures what CSS properties apply when the animation is not running; values are <code>none</code> (default), <code>forwards</code> (last keyframe), <code>backwards</code> (first keyframe), <code>both</code> (apply styles for both forwards and backwards)

## Hands-On Practice 11.8

In this Hands-On Practice you will configure a CSS animation that slides the h1 text “Lighthouse Bistro” in from the right while it increases in size. Create a new folder named `animate`. Copy the `lighthouse.jpg` and `light.gif` images from the `chapter11/starters` folder in the student files to your `animate` folder. Copy the `starter.html` file from the `chapter11` folder into your `animate` folder.

Launch a text editor and open the `starter.html` file. View the CSS and notice that there is a media query – this is a responsive web page. We will configure the animation to play only when the viewport is at least 768 pixels wide and the media query is triggered. Save the file as `index.html` in your `animate` folder. Launch the file in a browser and it will look similar to [Figure 11.9](#). Resize the browser and notice how the page changes along with the browser viewport.

Open `index.html` in a text editor and view the embedded CSS.

1. Place your cursor under the opening style tag and add a blank line. You will define the animation and code a `@keyframes` rule with the name of `slideme`. The first keyframe will have margin-left set to 100% and width set to 300%. The last keyframe sets 300% font-size, 0% left margin, and 100% width. The CSS follows:

```
@keyframes slideme {  
    from { margin-left: 100%;  
           width: 300%; }  
    to { font-size: 300%;  
         margin-left: 0%;  
         width: 100%; }  
}
```

2. Locate the media query. We will add code within the media query to apply the animation. Configure a style rule for an h1 element selector that sets `animation-name` to the value `slideme` and the `animation-duration` to five seconds. The CSS follows.

```
h1 { animation-duration: 5s;  
     animation-name: slideme; }
```

3. The animation slides text into the page, which can cause the page to become wider than the browser window and trigger a horizontal scroll bar. To prevent this, configure the container of the h1 (which is the header element) with the overflow property set to hidden. Locate the header element selector within the media query and add the `overflow: hidden` style declaration. Also set the height of the header to 160px. The CSS follows.

```
header { padding-left: 10em;  
         overflow: hidden;  
         height: 160px;     }
```

Save your file and display it in a browser. Since this is a responsive web page, if the browser viewport is narrow, the animation will not occur. If the browser viewport is at least 768 pixels wide and the media query is triggered, you should see the heading text slide in from the right, grow larger, and then suddenly reduce in size. The size reduction occurs because the element returns to its initial state by default after an animation. You can compare your work to chapter11/11.8/step3.html in the student files.

4. To freeze the animation at the ending frame, locate the h1 element selector within the media query and set the `animation-fill-mode` to `forwards` as indicated below:

```
h1 {   animation-duration: 5s;  
       animation-name: slideme;  
       animation-fill-mode: forwards; }
```

Save your file and display it in a browser. You should see the heading text slide in from the right, grow larger, and remain large. Compare your work to [Figure 11.13](#) and chapter11/11.8/step4.html in the student files.

---

**Figure 11.13 The animation has been applied**



5. Just for fun, let's add another keyframe to the animation.

Locate the `@keyframes` rule and add a keyframe at 50% of the duration that sets font-size to 250% and margin-left to 50%, as indicated below:

```
@keyframes slideme {
    from { margin-left: 100%;
            width: 300%; }
    50% { margin-left: 50%;
           font-size: 250%; }
    to {   font-size: 300%;
           margin-left: 0%;
           width: 100%; }
}
```

6. Save your file and display it in a browser. You should see the

heading text slide in from the right and increase in size.

Then, when the heading begins at about 50% in, the animation will slow and then speed up again as the heading continues to slide and grow larger. The change in speed is due to the default value (`ease`) of the `animation-timing-`

`function` property. Compare your work to chapter11/11.8/step5.html.

7. To cause the animation to run at a constant speed, locate the `h1` element selector within the media query and set the `animation-timing-function` to `linear` as indicated below

```
h1 {    animation-duration: 5s;  
        animation-name: slideme;  
        animation-fill-mode: forwards;  
        animation-timing-function: linear; }
```

Save your file and display it in a browser. You should see the heading text slide in from the right in a smooth fashion. Compare your work to chapter11/11.8/index.html in the student files.

## Explore CSS Animation

This section provided an introduction to animation with CSS. To get started exploring this topic further, check out the following resources:

- [https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/CSS/CSS\\_Animations](https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/CSS/CSS_Animations)
- <https://daneden.github.io/animate.css/>
- <https://medium.freecodecamp.org/a-simple-css-animation-tutorial-8a35aa8e87ff>

## 11.6 Details and Summary Elements

The details element and summary element are used together to configure an interactive widget that will hide and show information.

### Details Element

The purpose of the **details** element is to configure the browser to render an interactive widget which contains one summary element and detailed information (which can be a combination of text and HTML tags). The details element begins with the `<details>` tag and ends with the `</details>` tag.

### Summary Element

The **summary element** is coded within the details element. The purpose of the summary element is to contain the text summary shown in the interactive widget. The summary element begins with the `<summary>` tag and ends with the `</summary>` tag.

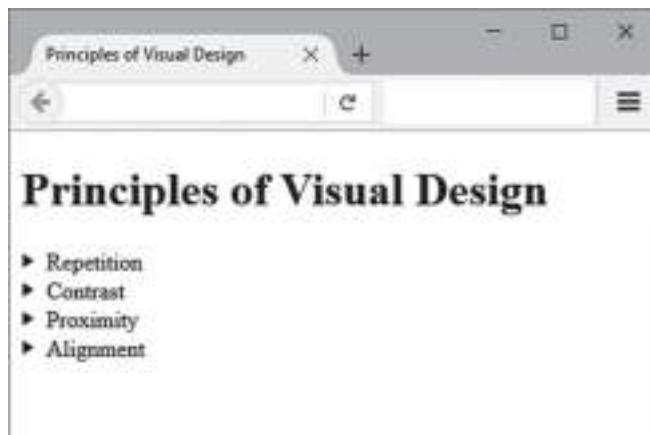
### Details & Summary Widget

Figures 11.14 and 11.15 show the details and summary elements in action. Figure 11.14 shows the initial display of the web page with each summary item (in this case the terms Repetition, Contrast, Proximity, and Alignment) visible and displayed next to a triangle rendered automatically by the Chrome browser.

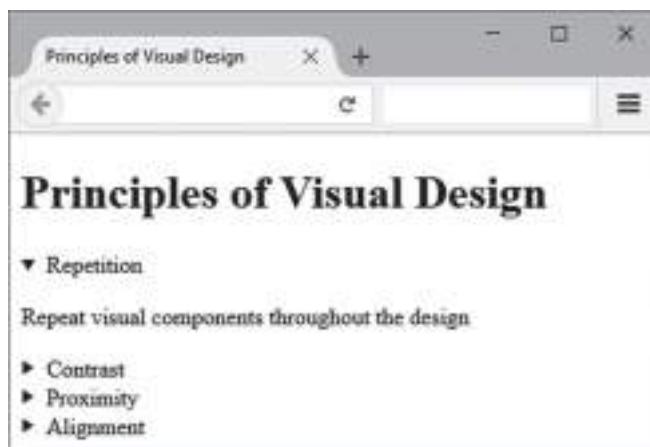
---

Figure 11.14 Initial browser display

---



**Figure 11.15 Detailed information displays**



In Figure 11.15, the visitor has selected the first summary item (Repetition) which caused browser to display the detailed information for that item. The visitor can select the same summary item again to hide the details or can select another summary item to also show its corresponding detailed information.

Browsers that do not support the details and summary elements display all the information immediately and do not provide interactivity.

## Hands-On Practice 11.9

In this Hands-On Practice you will configure an interactive widget with the details and summary elements as you create the page shown in [Figures 11.14](#) and [11.15](#). Create a new folder named ch11details. Launch a text editor and open chapter11/template.html in the student files. Save the file as index.html in your ch11details folder. Modify the file to configure a web page as indicated:

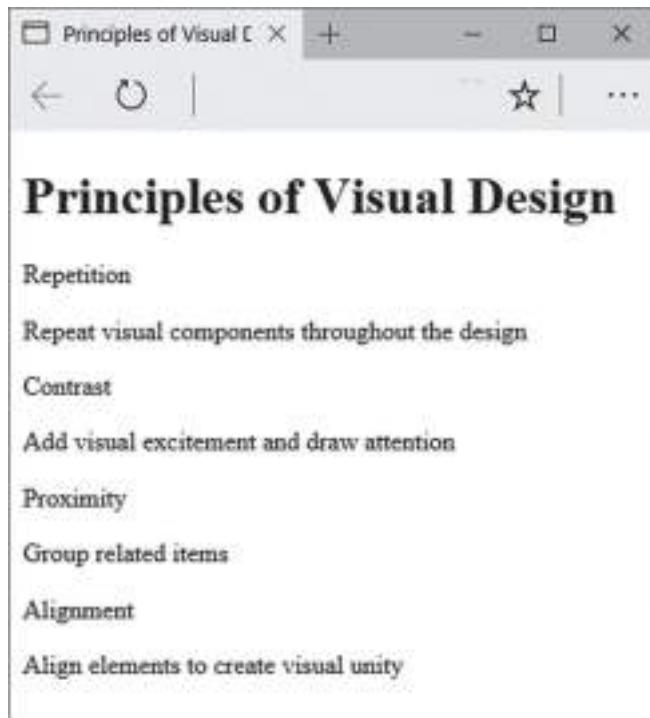
1. Configure the text, Principles of Visual Design, within an h1 element and within the title element.
2. Code the following in the body of the web page:

```
<details>
  <summary>Repetition</summary>
  <p>Repeat visual components throughout the
design</p>
</details>
<details>
  <summary>Contrast</summary>
  <p>Add visual excitement and draw
attention</p>
</details>
<details>
  <summary>Proximity</summary>
  <p>Group related items</p>
</details>
<details>
  <summary>Alignment</summary>
  <p>Align elements to create visual unity</p>
</details>
```

Save your file and test your page in Firefox or Chrome. The initial display should be similar to [Figure 11.15](#). Try selecting or clicking on one of the terms or arrows to display the information you coded within the details element. If you select the term “Repetition” your browser should be similar to [Figure 11.15](#).

If you are using a browser that does not support the details and summary elements, your display will be similar to [Figure 11.16](#).

**Figure 11.16 Display in a nonsupporting browser.**



©2018 Google LLC, used with permission. Google and the Google logo are registered trademarks of Google LLC.

A suggested solution is in the student files chapter11/11.9 folder. Visit <http://caniuse.com/#feat=details> to check the current level of browser support for the details and summary elements.

## Checkpoint 11.2

1. What is the purpose of the transform property?

- 2.** What is a keyframe?
- 3.** What is the purpose of the details and summary elements?

## 11.7 JavaScript

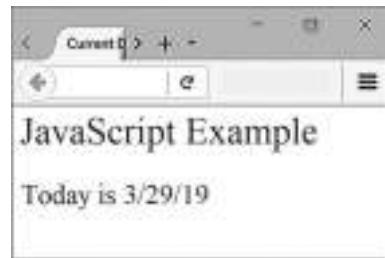
Although some interactivity on web pages can be achieved with CSS, JavaScript powers much of the interactivity on the Web. **JavaScript**, developed initially by Brendan Eich at Netscape, is an object-based, **client-side scripting** language interpreted by a web browser. JavaScript is considered to be **object-based** because it's used to manipulate the objects associated with a web page document: the browser window, the document itself, and elements such as forms, images, and hyperlinks.

JavaScript statements can be coded directly in a web page within an HTML script element or placed in a separate file (with a .js extension) that is accessed by a web browser. The purpose of the **script element** is to either contain scripting statements or to indicate a file that contains scripting statements. Some JavaScript also can be coded within HTML tags. In all cases, the web browser interprets the JavaScript statements. Because JavaScript is interpreted by a browser, it is considered to be a client-side scripting language.

JavaScript can be used to respond to events such as moving the mouse, clicking a button, and loading a web page. This technology is also often utilized to edit and verify information on HTML form controls such as text boxes, check boxes, and radio buttons. Other uses for JavaScript include pop-up windows, image slideshows, animation, date manipulation, and calculations. [Figure 11.18](#) shows a web page (found in the student files at chapter11/date.html) that uses JavaScript to determine and display the current date. The JavaScript statements are enclosed within an HTML script element and coded directly in the .html file. The code sample is below:

---

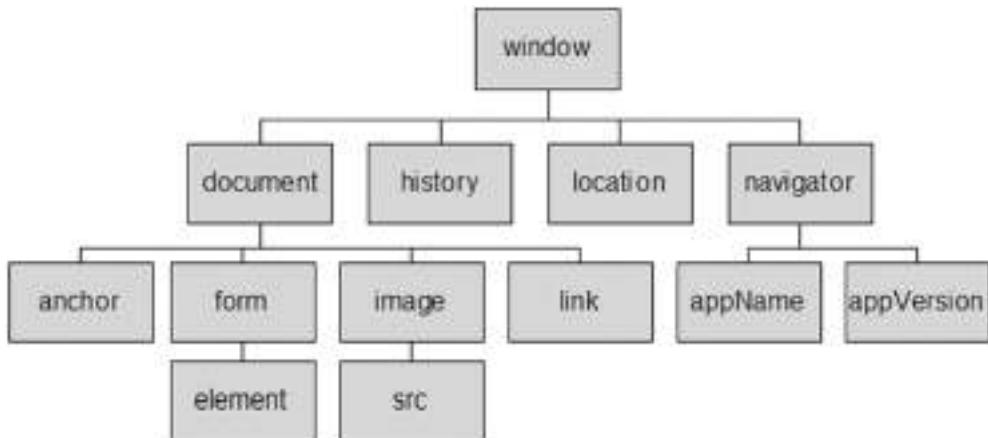
**Figure 11.17** JavaScript in action



```
<h2>Today is
<script>
var myDate = new Date()
var month = myDate.getMonth() + 1
var day = myDate.getDate()
var year = myDate.getFullYear()
document.write(month + "/" + day + "/" + year)
</script>
</h2>
```

There is an introduction to coding JavaScript in [Chapter 14](#). An important part of working with JavaScript is manipulating the **Document Object Model (DOM)**. The DOM defines every object and element on a web page. Its hierarchical structure can be used to access page elements and apply styles to page elements. A portion of a basic DOM that is common to most browsers is shown in [Figure 11.18](#).

**Figure 11.18** The Document Object Model (DOM)



## JavaScript Resources

There is a lot to learn about JavaScript, but there are many free resources for JavaScript code and JavaScript tutorials on the Web. Here are a few sites that offer free tutorials:

- JavaScript Tutorial: <http://echoecho.com/javascript.htm>
- Mozilla Developer Network JavaScript Guide: <https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Guide>
- JavaScript Tutorial: <http://www.w3schools.com/JS>

Once you are comfortable with HTML and CSS, the JavaScript language is a good technology to learn as you continue your studies. Try some of the resources listed and get your feet wet. See [Chapter 14](#) for a more detailed introduction to JavaScript. The next section introduces Ajax, a technology that uses JavaScript.

## 11.8 Ajax

The term **Ajax** stands for Asynchronous JavaScript and XML. These technologies are not new, but recently have been used together to provide a better experience for web visitors and create interactive web applications. The technologies utilized in Ajax to provide a better experience for web visitors and create interactive web applications are as follows:

- Standards-based HTML and CSS
- The Document Object Model
- XML (and the related XSLT technology)
- Asynchronous data retrieval using XMLHttpRequest
- JavaScript

Some of these technologies may be unfamiliar to you. That's okay at this point in your web development career. You're currently creating a strong foundation in HTML and CSS and may decide to continue your studies in the future and learn additional web technologies. Right now, it's enough to know that these technologies exist and what they can be used for.

Ajax is a web development technique for creating interactive web applications. Recall the client/server model discussed in [Chapters 1](#) and [9](#). The browser makes a request to the server (often triggered by clicking a link or a submit button), and the server returns an entire new web page for the browser to display. Ajax pushes more of the processing on the client (browser) using JavaScript and XML and often uses behind-the-scenes asynchronous requests to the server to refresh a portion of the browser display instead of the entire web page. The key is that when using Ajax technology, JavaScript code (which runs on the client

computer within the confines of the browser) can communicate directly with the server, exchanging data and modifying parts of the web page display without reloading the entire web page. For example, as soon as a website visitor types a zip code into a form, the value could be looked up in a zip code database and the city/state automatically populated using Ajax—and all of this takes place while the visitor is entering the form information before they click the submit button. The result is that the visitor perceives the web page as being more responsive and has a more interactive experience.

## Ajax Resources

Although you'll probably want to become familiar with scripting before you tackle Ajax, there are many resources and articles available. Some helpful sites are listed here:

- Getting Started with Ajax: <https://www.alistapart.com/articles/gettingstartedwithajax>
- Ajax Tutorial: <http://www.tizag.com/ajaxTutorial>

## 11.9 jQuery

You're already aware that JavaScript is a client-side scripting language that adds interactivity and functionality to web pages. Web developers need to configure the same type of common interactive features (such as slideshows, form validation, and animation) on web pages. One approach is for each person to write their own JavaScript code and test it in a wide variety of browsers and operating systems. As you might guess, this can become quite time consuming. John Resig developed the free, open-source **jQuery** JavaScript library to simplify client-side scripting.

An **application programming interface (API)** is a protocol that allows software components to communicate—interacting and sharing data. The jQuery API can be used to configure many interactive features, including:

- image slideshows
- animation (moving, hiding, fading)
- event handling (mouse movements and mouse clicking)
- document manipulation
- Ajax

Many web developers and designers have found that jQuery is easier to learn and work with than writing their own JavaScript, although a basic understanding of JavaScript is needed to be efficient when using jQuery. An advantage of the jQuery library is its compatibility with all current browsers.

jQuery is an open source library, so anyone can extend the jQuery library by writing a new plugin that provides a new or enhanced interactive feature. For example, the jQuery Cycle plugin (<http://>

[jquery.malsup.com/cycle](http://jquery.malsup.com/cycle)) supports a variety of transition effects.

Figure 11.19 (see <https://webdevfoundations.net/jquery/index.html>)

shows an example of using jQuery and the Cycle plugin to create an image slideshow. Chapter 14 includes a brief introduction to working with jQuery.

---

**Figure 11.19 jQuery is used to configure a slideshow**

---



## jQuery Resources

There are many free resources and tutorials that can help you learn about jQuery. If you'd like to find out more about jQuery, visit the following resources:

- jQuery Tutorials for Web Designers: <https://webdesignerwall.com/tutorials/jquery-tutorials-for-designers>
- jQuery Fundamentals: <http://jqfundamentals.com/chapter/jquery-basics>
- How jQuery Works: <https://learn.jquery.com/about-jquery/how-jquery-works/>

---

## FAQ

Is jQuery the only JavaScript library or API?

No. jQuery was one of the first JavaScript libraries and is still used on websites today. Other JavaScript APIs include React (<https://reactjs.org>), Vue (<https://vuejs.org>), and Angular (<https://angularjs.org>).

---

## 11.10 HTML5 APIs

You've already been introduced to the term, application programming interface (API), which is a protocol that allows software components to communicate—interacting and sharing data. A variety of APIs that are intended to work with HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript have been developed and approved by the W3C. We'll explore some of the new APIs in this section, including geolocation, web storage, progressive web applications, and two-dimensional drawing.

### Geolocation

The **geolocation** API (<http://www.w3.org/TR/geolocation-API/>) allows your web page visitors to share their geographic location. The browser will first confirm that your visitor wants to share their location. Then, their location may be determined by the IP address, wireless network connection, local cell tower, or GPS hardware depending on the type of device and browser. JavaScript is used to work with the latitude and longitude coordinates provided by the browser. Visit <https://developers.google.com/maps/documentation/javascript/examples/map-geolocation> for an example of geolocation in action.

### Web Storage

Web developers have traditionally used the JavaScript cookie object to store information in key-value pairs on the client (the website visitor's computer). The **Web Storage** API (<http://www.w3.org/TR/webstorage>) provides two new ways to store information on the client side: local storage and session storage. An advantage to using web storage is the increase in the amount of data that can be stored (5MB per domain). The

**localStorage** object stores data without an expiration date. The **sessionStorage** object stores data only for the duration of the current browser session. JavaScript is used to work with the values stored in the localStorage and sessionStorage objects. Visit <http://webdevfoundations.net/storage> and <http://html5demos.com/storage> for examples of web storage.

## Progressive Web Application

You've most likely used native applications (apps) for mobile phones. A native app must be built and distributed specifically for the platform it will be installed on. If your client would like a native mobile app for both an iPhone and an Android, you would need to create two different apps! In contrast, a web application can be written with HTML, CSS, and JavaScript and can run in any browser—as long as you are online. A **progressive web application (PWA)** offers a rich experience similar to a native app on a mobile device—the user can choose to add the website's icon to the home screen, and the website has some level of functionality even when the device is not connected to the Internet.

An early approach to progressive web applications (<https://www.w3.org/TR/2011/WD-html5-20110525/offline.html>) utilized an application cache that informed the browser about files to automatically download and update, fallback files to display when a resource has not been cached, and files that are only available online. However, there were issues with this approach and the W3C is developing a combination of new APIs to power PWAs including Manifest and Service Workers.

The **Manifest API** (<https://www.w3.org/TR/appmanifest>) contains information about the PWA; including the data needed for the PWA's icon to be added to the home screen of a device. The **Service Workers API** (<https://www.w3.org/TR/service-workers-1/>) provides a way for

Websites can use service workers to perform persistent background processing such as push notifications and background data syncing. A service worker is JavaScript that runs in the background, separate from a web page, and listens for events such as install, activate, message, fetch, sync, and push. To provide more security, service workers must run over HTTPS.

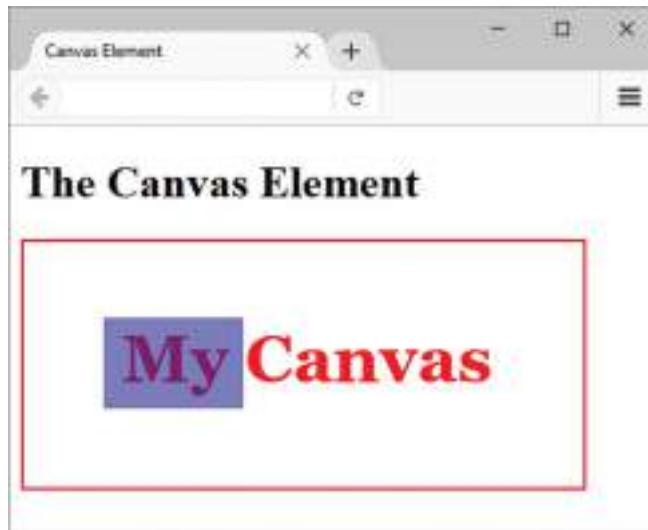
For more information about PWAs, visit the following resources:

- <https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/Apps/Progressive/Introduction>
- <https://developers.google.com/web/progressive-web-apps/>
- <https://medium.com/samsung-internet-dev/a-beginners-guide-to-making-progressive-web-apps-beb56224948e>
- <https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/microsoft-edge/progressive-web-apps/get-started>

## Drawing with the Canvas Element

The HTML5 **canvas element** is a container for dynamic graphics. The canvas element begins with the `<canvas>` tag and ends with the `</canvas>` tag. The canvas element is configured with the Canvas 2D Context API (<http://www.w3.org/TR/2dcontext2>), which provides a way to dynamically draw and transform lines, shapes, images, and text on web pages. If that wasn't enough, the canvas API also provides for interaction with actions taken by the user, like moving the mouse. The canvas offers methods for two-dimensional (2D) bitmap drawing, including lines, strokes, arcs, fills, gradients, images, and text. However, instead of drawing visually using a graphics application, you draw programmatically by writing JavaScript statements. A very basic example of using JavaScript to draw within the canvas element is shown in [Figure 11.20](#) (see - chapter11/canvas.html in the student files). The code is

**Figure 11.20** The canvas element



```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Canvas Element</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
canvas { border: 2px solid red; }
</style>
<script type="text/javascript">
function drawMe() {
    var canvas = document.getElementById("myCanvas");
    if (canvas.getContext) {
        var ctx = canvas.getContext("2d");
        ctx.fillStyle = "rgb(255, 0, 0)";
        ctx.font = "bold 3em Georgia";
        ctx.fillText("My Canvas", 70, 100);
        ctx.fillStyle = "rgba(0, 0, 200, 0.50)";
        ctx.fillRect(57, 54, 100, 65);
    }
}
</script>
</head>
<body onload="drawMe()">
<h1>The Canvas Element</h1>
<canvas id="myCanvas" width="400" height="175">
My Canvas</canvas>
</body>
</html>
```

---

If some of the code looks like a foreign language to you, don't worry: JavaScript IS a different language than CSS and HTML; it has its own syntax and rules. Here's a quick overview of the code:

- The red outline was created by applying CSS to the canvas selector.
- The JavaScript function drawMe() is invoked when the browser loads the page. JavaScript looks for a canvas element assigned to the "myCanvas" id. JavaScript tests for browser support of canvas and, if true, performs the following actions:
  - Sets the canvas context to 2D.
  - Draws the "My Canvas" text.
  - Uses the fillStyle attribute to set the drawing color to red.
  - Uses the font attribute to configure font weight, font size, and font family.
  - Uses the fillText method to specify the text to display, followed by the x-value (pixels in from the left) and y-value (pixels down from the top).
  - Draws the rectangle.
  - Uses the fillStyle attribute to set the drawing color to blue with 50% opacity.
  - Uses the fillRect method to set the x-value (pixels in from the left), y-value (pixels down from the top), width, and height of the rectangle.

The promise of the canvas element is that it can be used to provide sophisticated interactions. Experience virtuoso examples of the canvas element in action at <https://davidwalsh.name/canvas-demos>.

---



## FAQ

## What is SVG?

SVG (Scalable Vector Graphics) is a markup language that describes vector-based, two-dimensional graphics in XML (<https://www.w3.org/Graphics/SVG/>). Vector graphic shapes, images, and text objects can be included in an SVG, which can scale to increase or decrease in size without losing clarity. Advantages of using SVG images include scalability and small file size. SVG content is stored in the .svg file extension and can be interactive and animated.

You can write the XML code for an SVG yourself, but it's common to use a vector graphics editor, such as Adobe Illustrator, Adobe Animate CC, open-source Inkscape (<https://inkscape.org>), or the online app <http://editor.method.ac> to generate an SVG file.

There are several methods commonly used to display an SVG on a web page: an img element with an .svg file as the src attribute value, a CSS background image, and an svg element that contains the XML code for the SVG graphic. See the chapter11/svg folder in the student files for examples of SVG in use.

To learn more about SVG visit the following resources:

- <https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/SVG/Tutorial>
- <https://css-tricks.com/using-svg>
- <https://css-tricks.com/lodge/svg/06-using-svg-svg-background-image>

## HTML5 API Resources

This section provided a brief overview of several of HTML5 APIs. Visit the following resources for more information, tutorials, and demos.

- <https://bestvpn.org/html5demos/>
- <https://developers.google.com/web/progressive-web-apps/>
- <https://blog.bitsrc.io/what-is-a-pwa-and-why-should-you-care-388afb6c0bad>

### Checkpoint 11.3

1. What are two uses of JavaScript?
2. Describe some features of a PWA.
3. What is the purpose of the HTML5 canvas element?

## 11.11 Multimedia, Animation, and Interactivity Accessibility Issues

### Focus on Accessibility

Multimedia, animation, and interactivity can help to create a compelling, engaging experience for your website visitors. Please keep in mind that not every web visitor will be able to experience these features, so incorporate the following into your website:

- Text descriptions and equivalent content (such as captions) of audio and video will provide access for those with hearing challenges and will also assist visitors using mobile devices or slow Internet connections.
- When you work with multimedia developers and software developers to create animations for your site, request features that provide accessibility, such as keyboard access, text descriptions, and so on.
- WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.2.2 recommends providing a way to pause, stop and/or hide moving, blinking, or scrolling information if it begins automatically and lasts more than five seconds. A further recommendation is to provide a way to pause, stop or hide auto-updating information if it begins automatically and is presented along with other content (<https://www.w3.org/WAI/WCAG21/quickref/#pause-stop-hide>). The duration of the animation you created in **Hands-On Practice 11.8** was set to five seconds in order to meet this success criterion.

- WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.3.1 recommends that a web page not contain any item that flashes more than three times per second (<https://www.w3.org/WAI/WCAG21/quickref/#three-flashes-or-below-threshold>). The purpose of this guideline is to prevent optically induced seizures. You may need to work with your animation developer to ensure that dynamic effects perform within a safe range.
- If you use JavaScript, be aware that some visitors may have JavaScript disabled or are unable to manipulate the mouse. A website should be functional at a basic level, even if your visitor's browser does not support JavaScript. A site using Ajax to redisplay a portion of the browser window may have issues when accessed using an assistive technology or text browser. The importance of testing cannot be overemphasized. The W3C has developed ARIA (Accessible Rich Internet Applications), which is a protocol that supports accessibility for scripted and dynamic content, such as the web applications created using Ajax. See WAI-ARIA Overview (<https://www.w3.org/WAI/standards-guidelines/aria/>) for more information about ARIA.

When you design multimedia, animation, and interactivity with accessibility in mind, you help those visitors who have physical challenges, as well as those who are using low bandwidth or who may be missing plug-ins on their browser. As a last resort, consider creating a separate text-only version of the page if the multimedia, animation, and/or interactivity used on a page cannot comply with accessibility guidelines.

# Chapter Summary

This chapter introduced technologies to add media and interactivity to web pages. HTML techniques used to configure sound and video were discussed. JavaScript, Ajax, and HTML5 APIs were introduced. You configured an interactive CSS menu, an interactive CSS image gallery, a widget with the details and summary elements, and explored the CSS transition, transform, and animate properties. Accessibility and copyright issues related to these technologies were addressed. Visit the textbook website at <https://www.webdevfoundations.net> for examples, the links listed in this chapter, and updated information.

# Key Terms

.aiff

.au

.av1

.avi

.class

.m4a

.m4v

.mid

.mov

.mp3

.mp4

.mpg

.ogg

.ogv

.swf

.wav

.webm

.wmv

<audio><sup>①</sup>

<canvas><sup>②</sup>

<details><sup>③</sup>

<script>

<source>

<summary><sup>④</sup>

<video><sup>⑤</sup>

@keyframes rule<sup>⑥</sup>

Ajax<sup>⑦</sup>

animation property<sup>⑧</sup>

[application programming interface \(API\)](#) ①

[audio element](#) ①

[canvas element](#) ①

[client-side scripting](#) ①

[codec](#) ①

[container](#) ①

[copyright](#) ①

[Creative Commons license](#) ①

[details element](#) ①

[Document Object Model \(DOM\)](#) ①

[fair use](#) ①

[geolocation](#) ①

[interactivity](#) ①

[JavaScript](#) ①

[jQuery](#) ①

[keyframe](#) ①

[localStorage](#) ①

[manifest](#)

[media](#)

[object-based](#) ①

[progressive web application](#) ①

[rotate\(\) transform](#) ①

[scale\(\) transform](#) ①

[script element](#) ①

[sessionStorage](#) ①

[service worker](#) ①

[source element](#) ①

[summary element](#) ①

[transform property](#)

[transition property](#) ①

[video element](#) ①

[web storage](#) ①

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. Which property provides a way for you to rotate, scale, skew, or move an element?
  - a. display
  - b. transition
  - c. transform
  - d. relative
2. Which code provides a hyperlink to an audio file called hello.mp3?
  - a. `<audio data="hello.mp3"> </audio>`
  - b. `<a href="hello.mp3">Hello (Audio File)</a>`
  - c. `<canvas data="hello.mp3"></canvas>`
  - d. `<link src="hello.mp3">`
3. What type of files are .wav, .aiff, .mid, and .au?
  - a. audio files
  - b. video files
  - c. both audio and video files
  - d. image files
4. Which of the following should you do to provide for usability and accessibility?
  - a. Use video and sound whenever possible.
  - b. Supply text descriptions of audio and video files that appear on your web pages.
  - c. Never use audio and video files.
  - d. none of the above

**5.** What happens when a browser does not support the video or audio element?

- a.** The computer crashes.
- b.** The web page does not display.
- c.** The fallback content, if it exists, will display.
- d.** The browser closes.

**6.** Which of the following is an object-based, client-side scripting language?

- a.** JavaScript
- b.** HTML
- c.** CSS
- d.** API

**7.** Which is an HTML API that stores information on the client?

- a.** web storage
- b.** geolocation
- c.** canvas
- d.** client storage

**8.** Which of the following is an open-source video codec?

- a.** Theora
- b.** Vorbis
- c.** MP3
- d.** Wave

**9.** Which elements can be used to configure an interactive widget?

- a.** hide and show
- b.** details and summary
- c.** display and hidden
- d.** title and summary

**10.** Which of the following can describe Ajax?

- a.** It is an object-based scripting language.
- b.** It is a useful HTML element.
- c.** It is a web development technique for creating interactive web applications.

**d.** It is a CSS property.

## Fill in the Blank

- 11.** A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a protocol that allows software components to communicate—interacting and sharing data.
- 12.** Use of a copyrighted work for purposes such as criticism, reporting, teaching, scholarship, or research is called \_\_\_\_\_.
- 13.** The file extensions .webm, .ogv, and .m4v indicate types of \_\_\_\_\_ files.
- 14.** CSS animations provide a way to animate the values of \_\_\_\_\_ over time.
- 15.** The \_\_\_\_\_ defines every object and element on a web page.

## Short Answer

- 16.** List at least two reasons not to use audio or video on a web page.
- 17.** Describe a type of copyright license that empowers the author/artist to grant some, but not all, rights for using his or her work.

# Apply Your Knowledge

- 1. PREDICT THE RESULT.** Draw and write a brief description of the web page that will be created with the following HTML code:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>CircleSoft Designs</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
body { background-color: #FFFFCC; color: #330000;
       font-family: Arial,Helvetica,sans-serif; }
#wrapper { width: 80%; }
</style>
</head>
<body>
<div id="wrapper">
<h1>CircleSoft Design</h1>
<div><strong>CircleSoft Designs will </strong>
<ul>
  <li>work with you to create a Web presence that
      fits your company</li>
  <li>listen to you and answer your questions</li>
  <li>utilize the most appropriate technology for
      your website</li>
</ul>
<p><a href="podcast.mp3" title="CircleSoft Client
Testimonial">Listen to what our clients say</a>
</p>
</div>
</div>
</body>
</html>
```

- 2. FILL IN THE MISSING CODE.** This web page should display a details and summary widget. Some HTML element names, indicated by `<_>` and `</_>`, are missing. Fill in the missing code.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
```

```
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Fill in the Missing Code</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<_>
<_>Transition Property</_>
<p>A CSS transition provides for changes in
property values to display in a smoother manner
over a specified time.</p>
</_>
</body>
</html>
```

- 3. FIND THE ERROR.** The purpose of the following web page is to display a video. The video does not display on the Safari browser. Why?

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Find the Error</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<video controls="controls" width="160"
height="150">
    <source src="sparky.webm" type="video/webm">
    <p>You are missing a great video.</p>
</video>
</body>
</html>
```

# Hands-On Exercises

1. Write the HTML for a hyperlink to a video called sparky.mov on a web page.
2. Write the HTML to allow a web visitor to control the playback of an audio file named lesson1.mp3.
3. Write the HTML to play a video on a web page. The video source files are prime.m4v, prime.ogv, and prime.webm. The dimensions of the video are 213 pixels wide by 163 pixels high.
4. Write the HTML to display a details and summary widget with three items on a web page.
5. Create a web page about your favorite movie or music CD that plays an audio file (use Windows Sound Recorder or a similar program to record your voice) and includes your review and recommendation. Remember to consider accessibility and provide a transcript of your audio file. Choose to either include the transcript text directly on the page or provide access to it with a hyperlink. Place an e-mail link to yourself on the web page.  
Save the page as audio11.html.
6. Create a web page about your favorite movie or music CD that plays a video file (use a digital camera, smartphone, or one of the applications listed in this chapter to record yourself) and includes your review and recommendation. Remember to consider accessibility and either provide a transcript of your video file or caption the video file. Place an e-mail link to yourself on the web page. Save the page as video11.html.

# Web Research

1. Issues related to copyright law were discussed in this chapter.

With the resources provided as a starting point, search for additional information related to copyright law and the Web.

Create a web page that provides five helpful facts about copyright law and the Web. Provide the URLs of the websites you used as resources. Place a media console on the page to allow visitors to play an audio file while they read your web page. Include an audio file (soundloop.mp3) from this chapter, record your own, or find an appropriate sound file on the Web. Place your name in an e-mail link on the web page.

2. Choose one of the following to research: JavaScript, jQuery or

Progressive Web Applications. Use the resources listed in the chapter as a starting point, but also search the Web for additional resources on the topic you have chosen. Create a web page that lists at least five useful resources along with a brief description of each. Organize your web page with a list that provides the name of the site, the URL, a brief description of what is offered, and a recommended page (such as a tutorial or free script) for each resource. Place your name in an e-mail link on the web page.

3. Choose one of the following to research: JavaScript, Canvas

Element API, or jQuery. Use the resources listed in the chapter as a starting point, but also search the Web for additional resources on the topic you have chosen. Find either a tutorial or a free download that uses the method of web interactivity you are researching. Create a web page that uses the code or download that you found. Describe the effect and list the URL of the resource on the web page. Place your name in an e-mail link on the web page.

# Focus on Web Design

There are web design usability and accessibility issues associated with HTML5 video. Visit the following sites to become aware of these issues:

- <https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Learn/Accessibility/Multimedia>
- [https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Learn/Tools\\_and\\_testing/Cross\\_browser\\_testing/Accessibility](https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Learn/Tools_and_testing/Cross_browser_testing/Accessibility)
- <http://www.afb.org/blog/afb-blog/an-accessible-html5-video-player-from-the-american-foundation-for-the-blind/12>

Write a one-page report that describes HTML5 Video usability issues that web designers should be mindful of. Cite the URLs of the resources you used.

---

## Website Case Study Adding Multimedia

Each of the following case studies continues throughout most of the text. This chapter adds media and interactivity to the websites.

### JavaJam Coffee Bar

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the JavaJam Coffee Bar case study. [Figure 2.32](#) shows a site map for the JavaJam website. Use the [Chapter 9](#) JavaJam website as a starting point for this case study. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this JavaJam case study.

2. Modify the style sheet (javajam.css) to configure style rules for an audio element.
3. Configure the Music page (music.html) to play audio files.

Figure 11.21 shows the Music page with the audio players.

**Figure 11.21 The audio element on the Music page**



## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called javajam11. Copy all the files from your Chapter 9 folder into the javajam11 folder. Copy the files from the chapter11/starters/javajam folder in the student files and save them to your javajam11 folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Modify the external style sheet (javajam.css). Open javajam.css in a text editor. Code an audio element selector above the media queries with block display and 1em of top margin. Save the javajam.css file.

**TASK 3: UPDATE THE MUSIC PAGE.** Open music.html in a text editor. Modify music.html so that two HTML5 audio controls display (see [Figure 11.21](#)). Refer to [Hands-On Practice 11.2](#) when you create the audio control.

Configure an audio control within the div about Melanie to play the melanie.mp3 or melanie.ogg file and provide a hyperlink to the melanie.mp3 file as a fallback if the audio element is not supported. Configure an audio control within the div about Greg to play the greg.mp3 or greg.ogg file and provide a hyperlink to the greg.mp3 file as a fallback if the audio element is not supported. Save the web page. Check your HTML syntax using the W3C validator (<https://validator.w3.org>). Correct and retest if necessary. Display the page in different browsers and play the audio files.

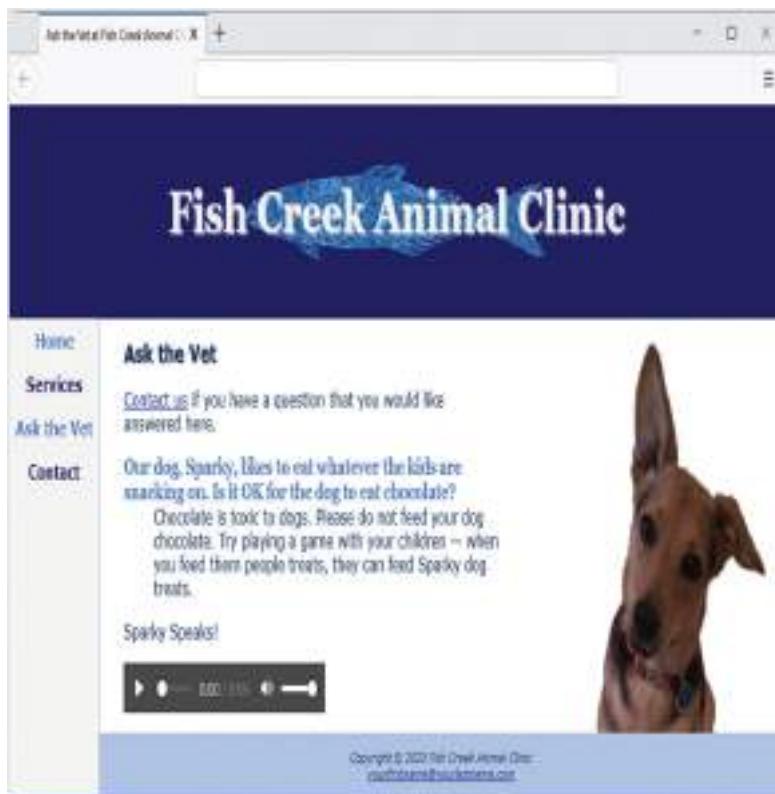
## Fish Creek Animal Clinic

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Fish Creek Animal Clinic case study. [Figure 2.36](#) shows a site map for the Fish Creek website. Use the [Chapter 9](#) Fish Creek website as a starting point for this case study. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Fish Creek case study.
2. Modify fishcreek.css to configure an animated page heading and the placement of an audio control.

**3.** Add an audio control to the Ask the Vet page (askvet.html). See [Figure 11.22](#) for a sample screenshot.

**Figure 11.22** Fish Creek Ask the Vet page with an audio element



## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called fishcreek11. Copy all the files from your [Chapter 9](#) fishcreek9 folder into the fishcreek11 folder. Copy the files from the chapter11/starters/fishcreek folder in the student files and save them to your fishcreek11 folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Modify the external style sheet (fishcreek.css). Open fishcreek.css in a text editor. First, configure the animation style rules above the media queries. Code a @keyframes rule named `fadein` that

begins with opacity set to 0 and ends with opacity set to 1. Code a style rule for the h1 element selector that configures the `fadein` animation with a five second duration and ease-out timing. Next, prepare for a new flex item on the Ask the Vet page. Locate the first media query and add a style rule for the article element selector that configures `flex: 2`. Save the fishcreek.css file.

### **TASK 3: CONFIGURE AN AUDIO CONTROL ON THE ASK**

**THE VET PAGE.** Launch a text editor and edit the Ask the Vet page (askvet.html). Add the text "Sparky Speaks!" within an h3 element below the description list. Configure an audio control (sparky.mp3 and sparky.ogg files) to display below the h3 element. Use the HTML5 audio and source elements. Code an article element that contains the description list, h3, and audio elements. Check your HTML syntax using the W3C validator (<https://validator.w3.org>). Correct and retest if necessary. Save your web page and test it using several browsers.

## Pacific Trails Resort

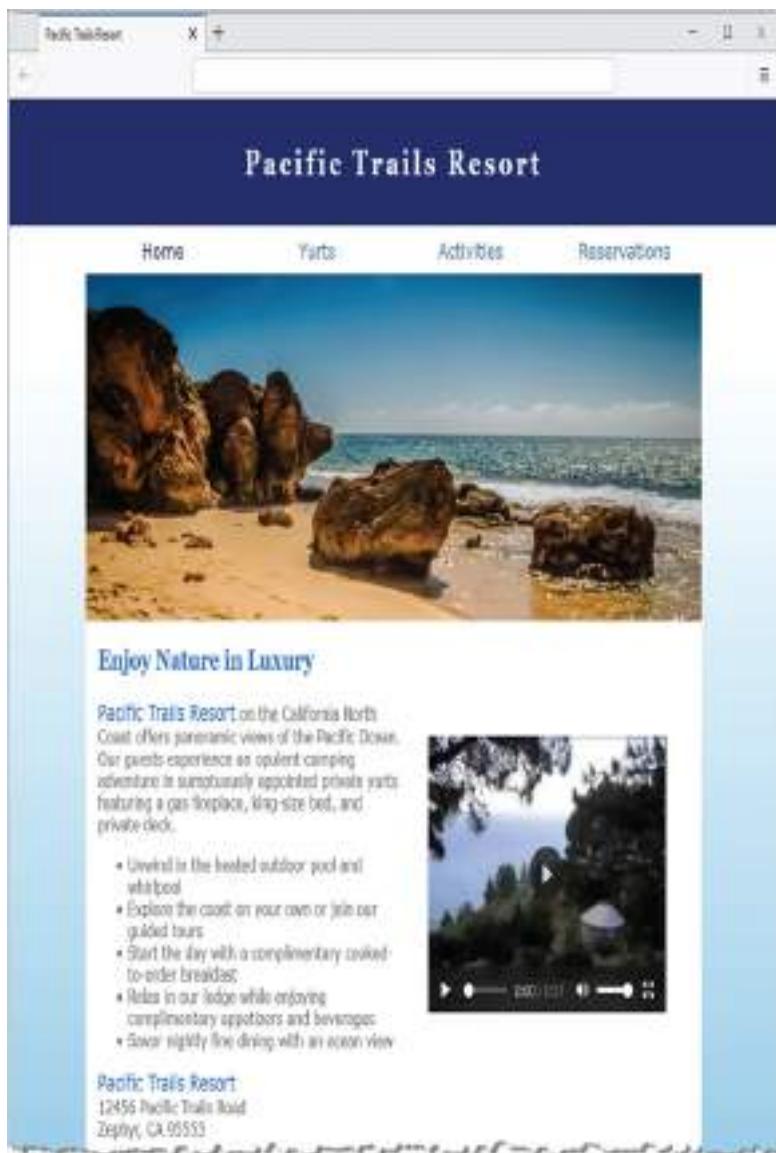
See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Pacific Trails Resort case study. [Figure 2.40](#) shows a site map for the Pacific Trails website. Use the [Chapter 9](#) Pacific Trails website as a starting point for this case study. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Pacific Trails case study.
2. Modify pacific.css to configure the placement of a video.
3. Add a video to the home page (index.html). See [Figure 11.23](#) for a sample screenshot.

---

**Figure 11.23 Pacific Trails Resort home page**

---



## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called pacific11. Copy all of the files from your Chapter 9 pacific9 folder into the pacific11 folder. Copy the files from the chapter11/starters/pacific folder in the student files and save them in your pacific11 folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Modify the external style sheet (pacific.css). Open pacific.css in a text editor. Edit

the CSS and configure a new video element selector above the media queries with style declarations to float to the right and margin set to 2em. Save the pacific.css file.

**TASK 3: CONFIGURE THE VIDEO.** Launch a text editor and open the home page (index.html). Code the HTML5 video control below the h2 element and above the paragraph. Configure the video, and source elements to work with the following files: pacific.mp4, pacific.ogv, and pacific.jpg. The dimensions of the video are 320 pixels wide by 240 pixels high. Save the file. Check your HTML syntax using the W3C validator (<https://validator.w3.org>). Launch a browser and test your new Home page (index.html). It should look similar to [Figure 11.23](#).

## Path of Light Yoga Studio

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Path of Light Yoga Studio case study. [Figure 2.44](#) shows a site map for the Path of Light Yoga Studio website. Use the [Chapter 9](#) Path of Light Yoga Studio website as a starting point for this case study. You have three tasks:

1. Create a new folder for this Path of Light Yoga Studio case study.
2. Modify yoga.css to configure the placement of an audio element.
3. Configure the Classes page (classes.html) to display an audio control.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called yoga11. Copy all of the files from your Chapter 9□ yoga9 folder into the yoga11 folder. Copy the files from the chapter11/starters/yoga folder in the student files and save them in your yoga11 folder.

**TASK 2: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Modify the external style sheet (yoga.css). Open yoga.css in a text editor. Edit the CSS and code a new audio element selector above the media queries with block display and 1em margins. Save the yoga.css file.

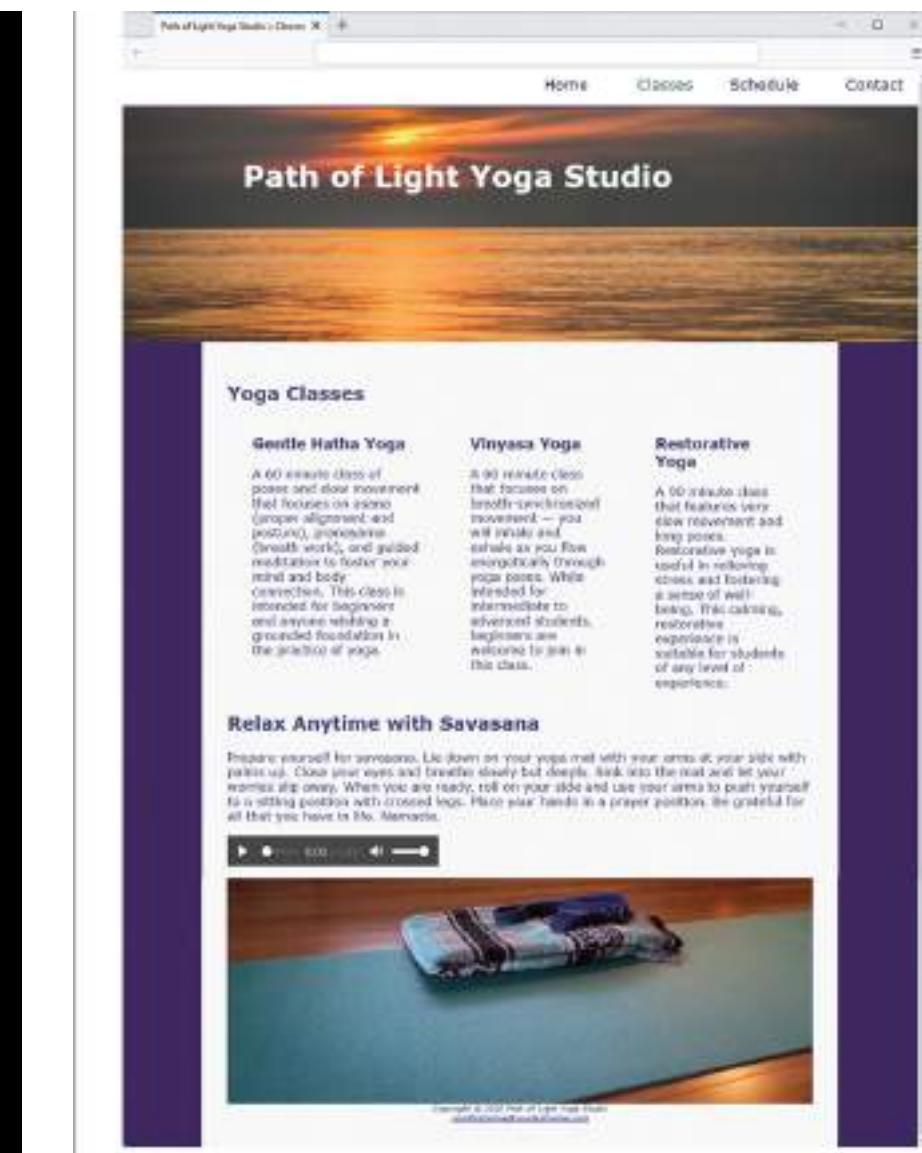
**TASK 3: CONFIGURE THE AUDIO.** Open the Classes page (classes.html) in a text editor. Modify classes.html so that a heading, a paragraph, and an HTML5 audio control displays below the div assigned to the id named flow (see Figure 11.24□). Use an h2 element to display the text “Relax Anytime with Savasana”. Add a paragraph that contains the following text:

“Prepare yourself for savasana. Lie down on your yoga mat with your arms at your side with palms up. Close your eyes and breathe slowly but deeply. Sink into the mat and let your worries slip away. When you are ready, roll on your side and use your arms to push yourself to a sitting position with crossed legs. Place your hands in a prayer position. Be grateful for all that you have in life. Namaste.”

---

**Figure 11.24 The classes page displays an HTML5 audio control**

---



Refer to [Hands-On Practice 11.2](#) when you create the audio control. Configure the audio and source elements to work with the following files: savasana.mp3 and savasana.ogg. Configure a hyperlink to the savasana.mp3 file as a fallback if the audio element is not supported. Save the file. Check your HTML syntax using the W3C validator (<https://validator.w3.org>). Correct and retest if necessary. Launch a browser and test your new Classes page (classes.html). It should look similar to [Figure 11.24](#).

## Web Project

See [Chapter 5](#) for an introduction to the Web Project case study. Review the goals of your website and determine whether the use of media or interactivity would add value to your site. If so, you will add either media and/or interactivity to your project site. Check with your instructor regarding the required use of any specific media or technology that supports interactivity in your web project.

Select one or more from the following:

- 1. Media:** Choose one of the examples from the chapter, record your own audio or media file, or search the Web for royalty-free media.
- 2. CSS image gallery:** Create or locate images that relate to your web project. Using [Hands-On Practice 11.7](#) as an example, configure a CSS image gallery.
- 3. Details & Summary Widget:** Choose a web page in your project that contains definitions or descriptions of items that could be enhanced with a details and summary widget. Using [Hands-On Practice 11.9](#) as an example, configure a details and summary widget.
- 4. Decide where to apply the media and/or interactive technology to your site.** Modify, save the page(s), and test in various browsers.

# 12

## E-Commerce Overview

---





## Chapter Objectives

---

IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .

- Define e-commerce
- Identify the benefits and risks of e-commerce
- Describe e-commerce business models
- Describe e-commerce security and encryption
- Define Electronic Data Interchange (EDI)
- Identify trends and projections for e-commerce
- Describe issues related to e-commerce
- Describe options for order and payment processing

**E-commerce is the buying and selling of goods and services on the Internet.** Whether business-to-business, business-to-consumer, or consumer-to-consumer, websites that support e-commerce are everywhere. This chapter provides an overview of this topic.

## 12.1 What Is E-Commerce?

A formal definition of **e-commerce** is the integration of communications, data management, and security technologies, which allows individuals and organizations to exchange information related to the sale of goods and services. The major functions of e-commerce include the buying of goods, the selling of goods, and the performance of financial transactions on the Internet.

---

### Video Note

#### *E-Commerce Benefits and Risks*

## Advantages of E-Commerce

There are a number of advantages for both businesses and consumers when engaging in e-commerce. For businesses, the many advantages include the following:

- **REDUCED COSTS.** Online businesses can stay open 24 hours a day without the overhead of a brick-and-mortar facility. Many businesses establish a website before attempting e-commerce. When they add e-commerce functions to their website, the site becomes a source of revenue and, in many cases, pays for itself in short order.
- **INCREASED CUSTOMER SATISFACTION.** Businesses can use their websites to improve communication with customers and increase customer satisfaction. E-commerce sites often contain a page for frequently asked questions (FAQs). The availability of customer

service representatives by e-mail, discussion forums, or even online chats (see LivePerson at <http://www.liveperson.com>) can improve customer relations.

- **MORE EFFECTIVE DATA MANAGEMENT.** Depending on the level of automation, e-commerce sites can perform credit card verification and authorization, update inventory levels, and interface with order fulfillment systems, thereby managing the organization's data more efficiently.
- **POTENTIALLY HIGHER SALES.** An e-commerce store that is open 24 hours a day, 7 days a week and is available to everyone on the planet has the potential for higher sales than a traditional brick-and-mortar storefront.

Businesses aren't the only beneficiaries of e-commerce; consumers see some advantages as well, including the following:

- **CONVENIENCE.** Consumers can shop at any time of the day. There is no travel time to get to the store. Some consumers prefer website shopping over traditional catalog shopping because they can view additional images and join discussion forums about the products.
- **EASIER COMPARISON SHOPPING.** There is no driving from store to store to check the price of an item. Customers can easily surf the Web to compare prices and value.
- **WIDER SELECTION OF GOODS.** Because it is convenient to shop and compare, consumers have a wider selection of goods available for purchase.

As you can see, e-commerce provides a number of advantages for both businesses and consumers.

## Risks of E-Commerce

There are risks involved in any business transaction and e-commerce is no exception. The possible risks for businesses include the following:

- **LOSS OF SALES IF TECHNOLOGY FAILS.** If your website isn't available or your e-commerce form processing doesn't work, customers may not return to your site. It is always important to have a user-friendly, reliable website, but when you engage in e-commerce, reliability and ease of use are critical factors in the success of your business.
- **FRAUDULENT TRANSACTIONS.** Fraudulent credit card purchases or crank orders placed by vandals (or 13-year-olds with time on their hands) are risks that businesses need to deal with.
- **CUSTOMER RELUCTANCE.** Although more and more consumers are willing to purchase on the Web, the target market of your business may not be. However, by offering incentives such as free shipping or a "no questions asked" returns policy, your business may be able to attract these consumers.
- **INCREASED COMPETITION.** Because the overhead for an e-commerce site can be much lower than that of a traditional brick-and-mortar store, a company operating out of a basement can be just as impressive as a long-standing business if its website looks professional. Because it is much easier to enter the marketplace with an e-commerce store, your business will have increased competition.

Businesses are not alone in needing to deal with the risks associated with e-commerce. Consumers may perceive the following risks:

- **SECURITY ISSUES.** Later in this chapter, you will learn how to determine whether a website uses a Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol for the encryption and security of information. The general public may not know how to determine whether a website is using this encryption method and be wary of placing a credit card order.

Another, possibly more important, issue is what the site does with information after it is transmitted over the Internet. Is the database secure? Are the database backups secure? These questions are difficult to answer. It's a good idea to purchase only from sites that you consider to be reputable.

- **PRIVACY ISSUES.** Many sites post privacy policy statements. These describe what the site will do (or will not do) with the information they receive. Some sites use the data for internal marketing purposes only. Other sites sell the data to outside companies. Websites can and do change their privacy policies over time. Consumers may be leery of purchasing online because of the potential lack of privacy.
- **PURCHASING BASED ON PHOTOS AND DESCRIPTIONS.** There is nothing like holding and touching an item before you purchase it. Consumers run the risk of purchasing a product that they will not be happy with because they are making purchasing decisions based on photographs and written descriptions. If an e-commerce site has a generous returns policy, consumers will feel more confident about making a purchase.
- **RETURNS.** It is often more difficult to return an item to an e-commerce store than to a brick-and-mortar store. Consumers may not want to risk this inconvenience.

## 12.2 E-Commerce Business Models

Both businesses and consumers are riding the e-commerce wave. There are four common e-commerce business models: business-to-consumer, business-to-business, consumer-to-consumer, and business-to-government.

- **Business-to-Consumer (B2C).** Most of the business-to-consumer selling takes place at online stores. Some, like [Amazon.com](http://www.amazon.com) (<http://www.amazon.com>), are online only. Others are click-and-mortar—electronic storefronts for well-known brick-and-mortar stores such as Sears (<http://www.sears.com>).
- **Business-to-Business (B2B).** E-commerce between two businesses often takes the form of exchanging business supply chain information among vendors, partners, and business customers. Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) is also included in this category.
- **Consumer-to-Consumer (C2C).** Individuals are selling to each other on the Internet. The most common format is that of the auction. The most well-known auction site is eBay (<http://www.ebay.com>), which was founded in 1995.
- **Business-to-Government (B2G).** Businesses are selling to the government on the Internet. There are very strict usability standards for businesses that target governmental agencies. Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act requires that electronic and information technology (including web pages) used by federal agencies is accessible to people with disabilities. See <http://www.section508.gov> for more information.

Businesses began exchanging information electronically using EDI many years before the Web came into existence.

## 12.3 Electronic Data Interchange (EDI)

**Electronic Data Interchange (EDI)** is the transfer of structured data between companies over a network. This facilitates the exchange of standard business documents, including purchase orders and invoices. EDI predates the Internet and has been in existence since the 1960s. Organizations that exchange EDI transmissions are called trading partners.

The Accredited Standards Committee X12 (ASC X12) is chartered by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) to develop and maintain EDI standards. These standards include transaction sets for common business forms, such as requisitions and invoices. This allows businesses to reduce paperwork and communicate electronically.

EDI messages are placed in transaction sets, which consist of a header; one or more data segments, which are strings of data elements separated by delimiters; and a trailer. Newer technologies such as XML and web services are allowing trading partners virtually unlimited opportunities to customize their information exchange over the Internet.

Now that you are aware of the possibilities of e-commerce and the types of business models, you may be wondering where the most money is being made. The next section discusses some statistics related to e-commerce.

## 12.4 E-Commerce Statistics

Although e-commerce growth stalled during the recent economic downturn, it is again demonstrating growth. Statista reports that worldwide retail e-commerce sales are expected to grow from \$2.3 trillion in 2017 to \$4.9 trillion in 2021 (<https://www.statista.com/statistics/379046/worldwide-retail-e-commerce-sales/>).

You may be wondering what people are buying online. A report compiled by the U.S. Census Bureau (<https://www2.census.gov/programs-surveys/arts/tables/2016/supercommerce4541.xlsa>) indicated that the top eight categories for online retail sales in 2016 (the most recent year reported) were the following:

1. General merchandise (\$27.3 billion)
2. Electronics and appliances (\$22.3 billion)
3. Clothing and accessories (\$21.2 billion)
4. Building material and garden supplies (\$7.6 billion)
5. Furniture and home furnishings (\$7 billion)
6. Sporting goods, hobby, musical instruments, and books (\$5.8 billion)
7. Health and personal care (\$3.2 billion)
8. Food and beverage (\$1.4 billion)

Now that you know what is selling the best online, who are your potential online consumers? A survey by the PEW Internet and American Life Project (<https://www.pewresearch.org/fact-tank/2018/03/14/about-a-quarter-of-americans-report-going-online-almost-constantly/>) indicated that 39% of Americans aged 18-29 go online “almost constantly.” **Table 12.1** shows an excerpt from this research.

**Table 12.1 Americans online “almost constantly” Data from Pew Research Center Internet Project Survey.**

Category	Percentage Online “Almost Constantly”
U.S. Adults	26%
Men	25%
Women	27%
Age: 18–29	39%
Age: 30–49	36%
Age: 50–64	17%
Age: 65 and older	8%
Household Income: Less than \$30,000	24%
Household Income: \$30,000 to \$49,999	27%
Household Income: \$50,000 to \$74,999	23%

Category	Percentage Online “Almost Constantly”
Household Income: \$75,000 or higher	35%
Education: High school graduate	20%
Education: Some college	28%
Education: College graduate	34%

## 12.5 E-Commerce Issues

Doing business on the Internet is not without its problems. The following are some common issues:

- **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY.** There has been some recent controversy regarding intellectual property rights and domain names. **Cybersquatting** is the practice of registering a domain name that is a trademark of another entity in the hopes of profiting by selling the domain name to the entity. The Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers (ICANN) sponsors the Uniform Domain Name Dispute Policy (<https://www.icann.org/resources/pages/help/dndr/udrp-en>), which can be used to combat cybersquatters.
- **SECURITY.** Security is a constant issue on the Internet. Distributed denial of service (DDoS) attacks, which are malicious attempts to make a website unavailable by flooding it with requests from multiple computers, have shut down popular e-commerce sites.
- **FRAUD.** Fraudulent websites that ask for credit card numbers without any intent of delivering products or with fraudulent intent are an understandable source of concern for consumers.
- **TAXATION.** State governments and local municipalities use sales tax to fund education, public safety, health, and many other essential services. When an item is purchased at a retail store, the sales tax is collected from the purchaser by the seller at the time of the sale and periodically remitted by the seller to the state in which the sale occurred.

When an item is purchased on the Internet and the seller does not have a physical presence in the consumer's state, the seller often does not collect and remit the sales tax. In this situation, many states require that consumers file a use tax and pay the amount that would

have been collected. In reality, few consumers do this and few states attempt to enforce it. Nolo.com provides information on Internet sales tax laws for each state (<https://www.nolo.com/legal-encyclopedia/50-state-guide-internet-sales-tax-laws.html>). A 2018 U.S. Supreme Court ruling ([https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/17pdf/17-494\\_j4el.pdf](https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/17pdf/17-494_j4el.pdf)) upheld a law enacted in the State of South Dakota, which requires sellers that engage in over 200 transactions or \$100,000 in sales within South Dakota to collect and remit sales tax.

- **INTERNATIONAL COMMERCE.** Websites that target a global audience have additional concerns. If a site will be offered in multiple languages, there are options of automatic translation solutions such as SYSTRAN (<http://www.systransoft.com>) and companies that provide customized website translation services such as WorldLingo (<http://www.worldlingo.com>). Be aware that the graphical user interface (GUI) that works with English may not work with other languages. For example, comparable words and phrases often take quite a few more letters in German than in English. If your GUI has minimal white space in the English version of the site, how will it look in the German version?

How will your international customers pay you? If you accept credit cards, the credit card company will perform the currency conversion. What about the culture of your target international audience? Have you studied the target countries and made certain that your site is appealing and not offensive? Another issue related to international commerce is the cost of shipping and the availability of delivery to remote destinations.

Now that you are familiar with e-commerce concepts and terms, let's take a closer look at encryption methods and security. The next section introduces encryption methods, SSL, and digital certificates.

## 12.6 E-Commerce Security

### Encryption

Encryption is used to ensure privacy within an organization and on the Internet. **Encryption** is the conversion of data into an unreadable form, called a **ciphertext**. Ciphertext cannot be easily understood by unauthorized individuals. **Decryption** is the process of converting the ciphertext into its original form, called plain text or **clear text**, so that it can be understood. The process of encryption and decryption requires an algorithm and a key. An **algorithm** involves a mathematical calculation. A **key** is a numeric code that should be long enough so that its value cannot easily be guessed.

Encryption is important on the Internet because information in a packet can be intercepted as it travels the communications media. If a hacker or business competitor intercepts an encrypted packet, he or she will not be able to use the information (such as a credit card number or business strategy) because it cannot be read.

A number of types of encryption are commonly used on the Internet, including **symmetric-key encryption** and **asymmetric-key encryption**.

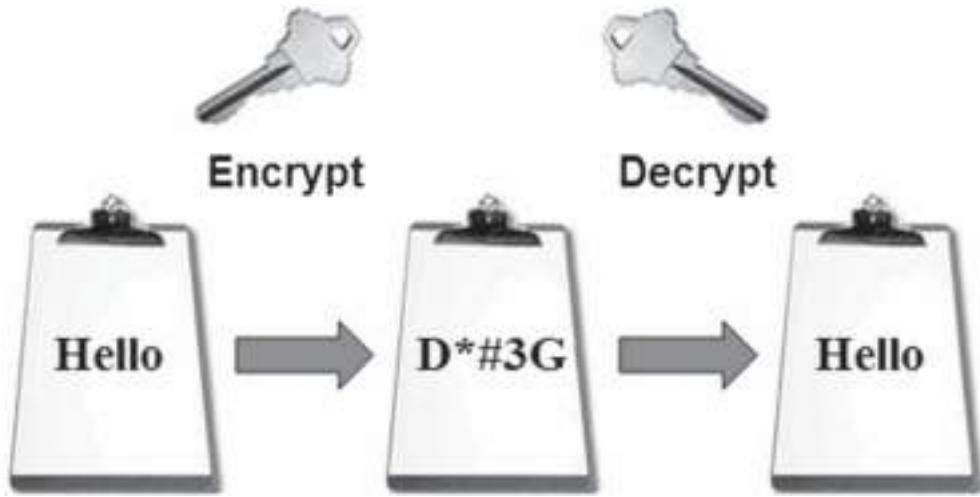
### Symmetric-Key Encryption

**Symmetric-key encryption**, shown in [Figure 12.1](#), is also called single-key encryption because both the encryption and decryption use the same key. Because the key must be kept secret from others, both the sender and the receiver must know the key before communicating using encryption. An advantage of symmetric-key encryption is speed.

---

**Figure 12.1 Symmetric-key encryption uses a single key**

---



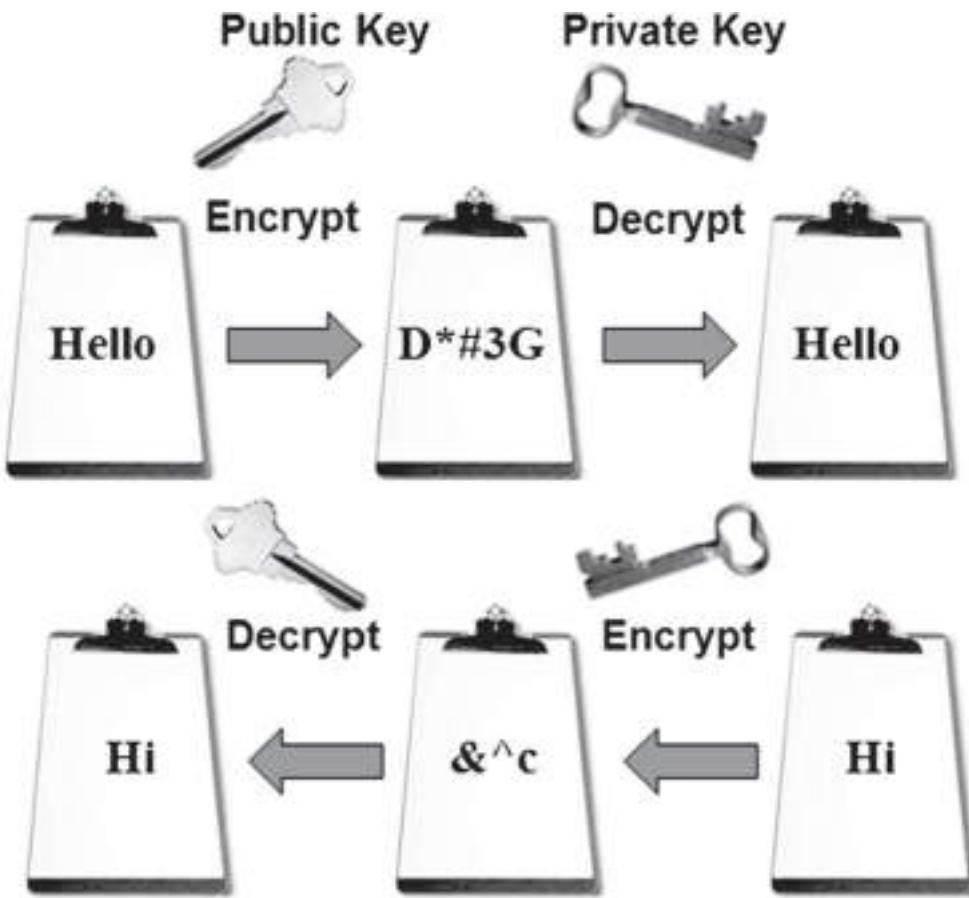
## Asymmetric-Key Encryption

**Asymmetric-key encryption** is also called public-key encryption because there is no shared secret. Instead, two keys are created at the same time. This key pair contains a public key and a private key. The public key and the private key are mathematically related in such a way that it is unlikely that anyone would guess one of the pair even with knowledge of the other. Only the public key can decrypt a message encrypted with the private key and only the private key can decrypt a message encrypted with the public key (see [Figure 12.2](#)). The public key is available via a digital certificate (more on that later). The private key should be kept secure and secret. It is stored on the web server (or other computer) of the key owner. Asymmetric-key encryption is much slower than symmetric-key encryption.

---

**Figure 12.2 Asymmetric-key encryption uses a key pair**

---



## Integrity

The encryption methods described above help to keep the contents of a message secret. However, e-commerce security is also concerned with making sure that messages have not been altered or damaged during transmission. A message is said to have **integrity** if it can be proven that it has not been altered. **Hash functions** provide a way to ensure the integrity of messages. A hash function, or hash algorithm, transforms a string of characters into a usually shorter, fixed-length value or key, called a **digest**, which represents the original string.

These security methods—especially the techniques of symmetric-key and asymmetric-key encryption—are used as part of SSL, the technology that

helps to make commerce on the Internet secure. The next section introduces this technology.

## Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)

**Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)** is a protocol that allows data to be privately exchanged over public networks. It was developed by Netscape in 1994 to encrypt data sent between a client (usually a web browser) and a web server. SSL utilizes both symmetric and asymmetric keys.

**Transport Layer Security (TLS)** was later developed and implemented as an improvement and replacement for Secure Sockets Layer. However, the acronym SSL is commonly used to indicate encrypted secure communication between a web browser and a web server.

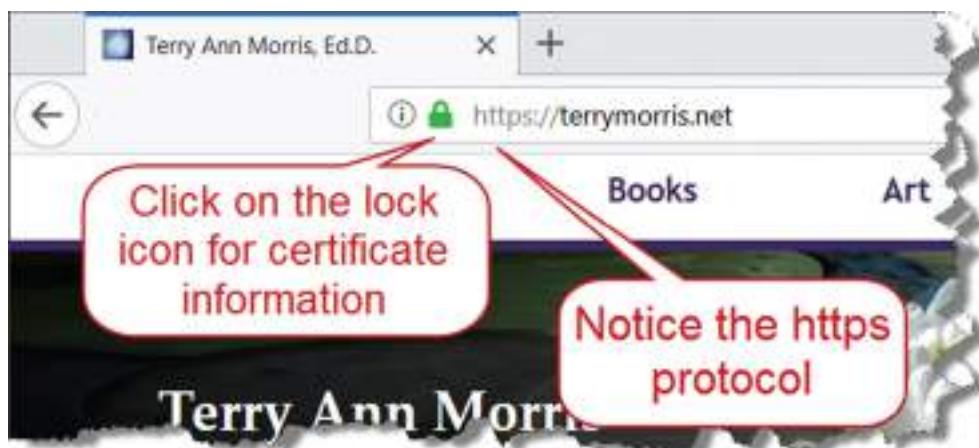
SSL provides secure communication between a client and a server by using the following:

- Server and (optionally) client digital certificates for authentication
- Symmetric-key cryptography with a “session key” for bulk encryption
- Public-key cryptography for transfer of the session key
- Message digests (hash functions) to verify the integrity of the transmission

You can tell that a website is using SSL by the protocol in the web browser address text box—it shows https instead of http. When a URL begins with https://, it indicates that the browser is using **HTTPS**, which stands for **Hypertext Transport Protocol Secure**. HTTPS combines HTTP with SSL. In addition to displaying the https protocol, browsers typically display a lock icon or other indicator of SSL, as shown in [Figure 12.3](#).

---

**Figure 12.3** The browser indicates that SSL is being used.



Screenshots of Mozilla Firefox. Courtesy of Mozilla Foundation.

## FAQ

When some websites are displayed in a browser, there is a color bar in the address area. What's up?

If a website displays a color bar in the address area of the browser in addition to the lock icon in the status bar, you know that it is using **Extended Validation SSL (EV SSL)**. EV SSL signifies that the business has undergone more rigorous background checks to obtain its digital certificate, including verification of the following:

- The applicant owns the domain.
- The applicant works for the organization.
- The applicant has the authority to update the website.
- The organization is a valid, recognized place of business.

# Digital Certificate

SSL enables two computers to communicate securely by posting a digital certificate for authentication. A **digital certificate** is a form of an asymmetric key that also contains information about the certificate, the holder of the certificate, and the issuer of the certificate. The contents of a digital certificate include the following:

- The public key
- The effective date of the certificate
- The expiration date of the certificate
- Details about the certificate authority (the issuer of the certificate)
- Details about the certificate holder
- A digest of the certificate content

VeriSign (<https://www.verisign.com>), Thawte (<https://thawte.com>), and Entrust (<https://thawte.com>) are well-known certificate authorities.

To obtain your own certificate, you will need to generate a certificate signing request (CSR) and a private/public key pair (see <https://www.digitalocean.com/community/tutorials/how-to-install-an-ssl-certificate-from-a-commercial-certificate-authority>) for an overview of this process. Next, you request a certificate from a certificate authority, pay the application fee, and provide your CSR and public key. The certificate authority verifies your identity. There may be a waiting period, and you will need to pay an annual fee. After verification, the certificate authority signs and issues your certificate. You store the certificate in your software, such as a web server, web browser, or e-mail application. When linking to your secure web pages, use “https” instead of “http” on your absolute hyperlinks.

---

## FAQ

Do I have to apply for a certificate?

If you are accepting any personal information on your website such as credit card numbers, you should be using SSL. Using SSL not only improves the security of your website, it may also help with marketing your website. Google's PageRank algorithm ranks secure pages higher than nonsecure pages. However, you may not need to apply for your own certificate; other options exist. Cloudflare (<https://www.cloudflare.com/ssl/>) offers an online content delivery network (CDN) service that will route copies of your web pages through their servers and encrypt via SSL. There are several levels of service plans at varying costs, including a free starter plan. Also, many web hosts offer basic SSL with their web hosting packages. Check with your web host provider to determine if they offer this feature.

---

## SSL and Digital Certificates

A number of steps are involved in the SSL authentication process. The web browser and web server go through initial handshaking steps, exchanging information about the server certificate and keys. Once trust is established, the web browser generates and encrypts the session key (symmetric key) that will be used for the rest of the communication. From this point on, all data is encrypted through the session key. [Table 12.2](#) shows this process.

---

**Table 12.2 SSL encryption process overview**

Browser	→	“hello”	→	Server
Browser	←	“hello” + server certificate (with public key)	←	Server

*The browser now verifies the identity of the web server. It obtains the certificate of certificate authority (CA) that signed the server's certificate. Then the browser decrypts the certificate digest using the CA's public key (held in a root CA certificate). Next, the browser authenticates the server's certificate and checks the expiration date of the certificate. If all is valid, the next step occurs.*

Browser	→	The browser randomly generates a session key encrypted with server's public key.	→	Server
---------	---	--	---	--------

*Server decrypts the session key with private key.*

Browser	←	The server sends a message that is encrypted with the session key.	←	Server
---------	---	--	---	--------

*All future transmissions between the browser and the server are encrypted with the session key.*

---

At this point, you have a general idea of how SSL works to protect the integrity of information on the Internet, including the information exchanged in e-commerce transactions. The next section takes a closer look at order and payment processing in e-commerce.

## Checkpoint 12.1

1. What are three advantages of e-commerce for an entrepreneur who is just starting a business?
2. What are three risks that businesses face when engaging in e-commerce?
3. Define SSL. How can an online shopper tell that an e-commerce site is using SSL.

## 12.7 Order and Payment Processing

In B2C e-commerce, the products for sale are displayed in an online catalog. On large sites, these catalog pages are dynamically created using server-side scripts to access databases. Each item usually has a button or image that invites visitors to "Buy Me" or "Add to Cart". Items selected are placed in a virtual shopping cart. When visitors are finished shopping, they click a button or image link which indicates that they want to "Check Out" or "Place Order". At this point, the items in their shopping cart are usually displayed on a web page with an order form.

Secure ordering is facilitated through the use of SSL. Once an order is placed, there are a number of commonly used payment methods by which to pay for the merchandise or service, including credit card, stored-value card, digital wallet, and digital cash.

### Credit Card

Credit card payment processing is a very important component of an e-commerce website. Funds from the customer need to be transferred to the merchant's bank. In order to accept credit cards, the site owner must apply for a merchant account and be approved. A **merchant account** is a type of business bank account that allows a business to accept credit card payments. You may also need real-time credit card verification using a payment gateway or third party such as [Authorize.Net](https://www.authorizenet.com) (<https://www.authorizenet.com>). While merchant accounts can be expensive, PayPal (<https://www.paypal.com>) offers a low-cost solution. Originally intended for consumer-to-consumer credit card sales, PayPal now offers credit card and shopping cart services for business website owners. You can add an online shopping experience to your website in a day with a

PayPal shopping cart (<https://www.paypal.com/us/webapps/mpp/shopping-cart>).

## Stored-value Card

A **stored-value card**, such as a gift card for a major department store, holds information, including cash. Magnetic stripe stored-value cards can hold a limited amount of information. A stored-value **smart card** has an integrated circuit embedded within and offers more capacity to store information. Smart cards are widely used in Europe, Australia, and Japan. Visit Smart Card Alliance (<http://www.smartcardbasics.com/smart-card-overview.html>) for more information about smart cards.

## Digital Wallet

A **digital wallet**, also called an e-wallet, is a virtual wallet that can be used for mobile or online payments. A digital wallet may store information about one or more credit cards along with personal identification and contact information. Examples of this popular technology include Visa Checkout (<https://www.v.me/>), Google Pay (<https://pay.google.com>), and Apple Pay (<https://www.apple.com/apple-pay>). **Near field communication (NFC)** is described by Techspot (<http://www.techspot.com/guides/385-everything-about-nfc/>) as a short-range wireless communication that uses a radio frequency to share information between NFC devices in close proximity, such as an NFC-equipped smartphone and an NFC-ready credit card readers or NFC-ready ticket gate. Purchasers using the Apple Pay and Google Pay digital wallets only have to tap their phone on a compatible NFC device to share information and complete a purchase.

## Digital Cash

**Digital cash** serves as a substitute for government-issued currency. A currently popular digital cash provider is **Bitcoin** (<http://bitcoin.org>), which is not a company, but can be described as a peer-to-peer payment network for digital money with no central authority. No single person owns or controls Bitcoin. Government-issued currency is not deposited or exchanged. Instead, the currency is bitcoins. Bitcoin is easy to use – a Bitcoin user can send or receive bitcoins using a mobile app or digital wallet. A public ledger, called the blockchain, is kept of all Bitcoin transactions. Bitcoins are accepted at a growing number of businesses, including [Overstock.com](#) and Dell.

## 12.8 E-Commerce Technology Solutions

You have probably shopped at online stores and found some easy to work with and others difficult. A large problem for e-commerce sites is abandoned shopping carts—visitors who begin to shop but never place an order. This section explores types of e-commerce technology solutions and shopping carts. A number of different options are available to business owners and web developers. They range from a simple, instant online storefront supplied by another website to a sophisticated e-commerce platform. This section examines some of the options.

### Instant Online Storefront

You supply the products, the **instant online storefront** does the rest. There is no need to install software. All you do is use your web browser to point and click your way to a virtual store. You use a template provided by the online storefront and choose features, configure settings, and add your products, uploading images, descriptions, prices, and captions.

There are some disadvantages to this approach. You are limited to the templates offered by the online storefront provider. The number of products that you can sell may also be limited. Your store may have a look and feel that is similar to the other instant stores hosted by the provider. However, this method provides a low-overhead, low-risk approach for a small business owner who has limited technical expertise. The storefront provider will often offer merchant accounts and payment automation.

Some instant storefront solutions are free, with limited service or a limited number of products. Others are fee-based and may charge hosting fees, processing fees, and monthly fees. Two popular instant storefront solutions are Shopify (<https://www.shopify.com>) and BigCommerce (<https://www.bigcommerce.com>). Artists and crafters have found a home on Etsy (<https://www.etsy.com>) to create instant e-storefronts to display and sell their wares.

There are also a number of free shopping cart scripts available on the Web. Check out JustAddCommerce (<http://www.richmediatech.com>) and Mal's e-commerce (<https://www.mals-e.com>) for some alternate solutions. The level of difficulty and the exact processing of these solutions vary. Each website has instructions and documentation for its product. Some may require you to register before they provide you with specific HTML. Others may require you to download and install the scripts on your own web server. PayPal (<https://www.paypal.com>) offers a shopping cart and payment verification for businesses at a very low cost. PayPal writes the code that you need to place on your web pages in order to interface with them. You only need to copy and paste it in. Budget-wise solutions such as PayPal, Mal's e-commerce, or JustAddCommerce work best for businesses that fit the standard business model and do not require special processing needs.

## Shopping Cart Software

With this approach, software that provides a standardized set of e-commerce features is purchased, installed on your web server, and customized. Many web host providers offer this option, which usually includes a shopping cart, order processing, and optional credit card payment processing. **Shopping cart software** provides an online catalog where your visitors can browse, add items to their virtual shopping cart, and check out through an order form when they are ready to make a

purchase. Popular options offered by web host providers are AgoraCart (<http://agoracart.com>), osCommerce (<https://oscommerce.com>), and ZenCart (<https://www.zen-cart.com>).

## E-Commerce Platform

Custom building a large-scale e-commerce website entirely from scratch usually requires expertise, time, and a sizable budget! The advantage is that you get exactly what you need. Software development tools for a custom-built site include development tools such as Adobe Dreamweaver or Microsoft Visual Studio, a database management system (DBMS), and server-side scripting. An **e-commerce platform** is a software application that provides sophisticated features needed for B2C or B2B e-commerce, including website management, product management, customer management, order management, shopping cart, shipping and tax calculations. Two well-known e-commerce platforms are Microsoft Azure Commerce (<https://azure.microsoft.com/en-us/solutions/ecommerce/>) and Adobe Commerce Cloud (<https://www.adobe.com/commerce/magento.html>).

### Checkpoint 12.2

1. Name three payment methods that are commonly used on the Web.
2. Have you made purchases online? If so, think about the last item that you purchased. Why did you purchase it online instead of at a store? Did you check to see if the transaction was secure? Why or why not? How will your shopping habits be different in the future?
3. Describe three types of available e-commerce solutions. Which one provides the easiest entry to e-commerce? Why?

| \_\_\_\_\_|

# Chapter Summary

This chapter introduced basic e-commerce concepts and implementation. Consider taking an e-commerce course to continue your study of this dynamic and growing area of web development. Visit the textbook website at <https://www.webdevfoundations.net> for examples, the links listed in this chapter, and updated information.

# Key Terms

asymmetric-key encryption ⓘ

Bitcoin ⓘ

Business-to-Business (B2B) ⓘ

Business-to-Consumer (B2C) ⓘ

Business-to-Government (B2G) ⓘ

ciphertext ⓘ

clear text ⓘ

Consumer-to-Consumer (C2C) ⓘ

cybersquatting ⓘ

decryption ⓘ

digest ⓘ

digital cash ⓘ

digital certificate ⓘ

digital wallet ⓘ

e-commerce ⓘ

e-commerce platform ⓘ

Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) ⓘ

encryption ⓘ

Extended Validation SSL (EV SSL) ⓘ

hash functions ⓘ

Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) ⓘ

instant online storefront ⓘ

integrity ⓘ

international commerce ⓘ

key ⓘ

merchant account ⓘ

near field communication (NFC) ⓘ

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) ⓘ

**shopping cart software** ⓘ

**smart card** ⓘ

**stored-value card** ⓘ

**symmetric-key encryption** ⓘ

**taxation** ⓘ

**Transport Layer Security (TLS)** ⓘ

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following acronyms refer to the business-to-consumer e-commerce business model?
  - a. B2B
  - b. BTC
  - c. B2C
  - d. C2B
2. What is a short-range wireless communication that uses a radio frequency to share information between electronic devices?
  - a. NFC
  - b. SSL
  - c. EDI
  - d. FTP
3. For businesses, which is a potential risk of using e-commerce?
  - a. increased customer satisfaction
  - b. the possibility of fraudulent transactions
  - c. lower overhead costs
  - d. none of the above
4. For businesses, which is an advantage of using e-commerce?
  - a. the potential for fraudulent transactions
  - b. reduced costs
  - c. using shopping carts
  - d. increased costs
5. Which of the following options best describes how a website owner can obtain a digital certificate?

- a. Digital certificates are automatically created when you register for a domain name.
  - b. Contact a certificate authority and apply for a digital certificate.
  - c. Digital certificates are automatically created when you are listed in a search engine.
  - d. none of the above
- 6. Which of the following issues are uniquely related to international e-commerce?
  - a. language and currency conversion
  - b. browser version and screen resolution
  - c. bandwidth and Internet service provider
  - d. none of the above
- 7. Which of the following is a major function of e-commerce?
  - a. using SSL to encrypt orders
  - b. adding items to a shopping cart
  - c. buying and selling goods
  - d. none of the above
- 8. Which of the following is a disadvantage of an instant online storefront?
  - a. The store is based on a template and may look very similar to other online stores.
  - b. The store can be ready in minutes.
  - c. The store cannot accept credit cards.
  - d. none of the above
- 9. Which of the following include(s) an online catalog, a shopping cart, and a secure order form?
  - a. web host providers
  - b. shopping cart software
  - c. web server software
  - d. shopping cart script
- 10. Which of the following is true?

- a. A merchant account allows you to use SSL on your website.
- b. A digital wallet is a virtual wallet that can be used for mobile or online payments.
- c. Instant storefronts are what most large-scale e-commerce sites use.
- d. none of the above

## Fill in the Blank

- 11. \_\_\_\_\_ is a protocol that allows data to be privately exchanged over public networks.
- 12. \_\_\_\_\_ can be described as the transfer of structured data between different companies using networks.
- 13. A digital certificate is a form of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ that also contains additional information about the entity holding the certificate.
- 14. An encryption method that uses a single, shared private key is \_\_\_\_\_.

## Short Answer

- 15. List one option for a website that needs to reach audiences that speak different languages.

# Hands-On Exercises

1. In this Hands-On Exercise, you will create an instant storefront.

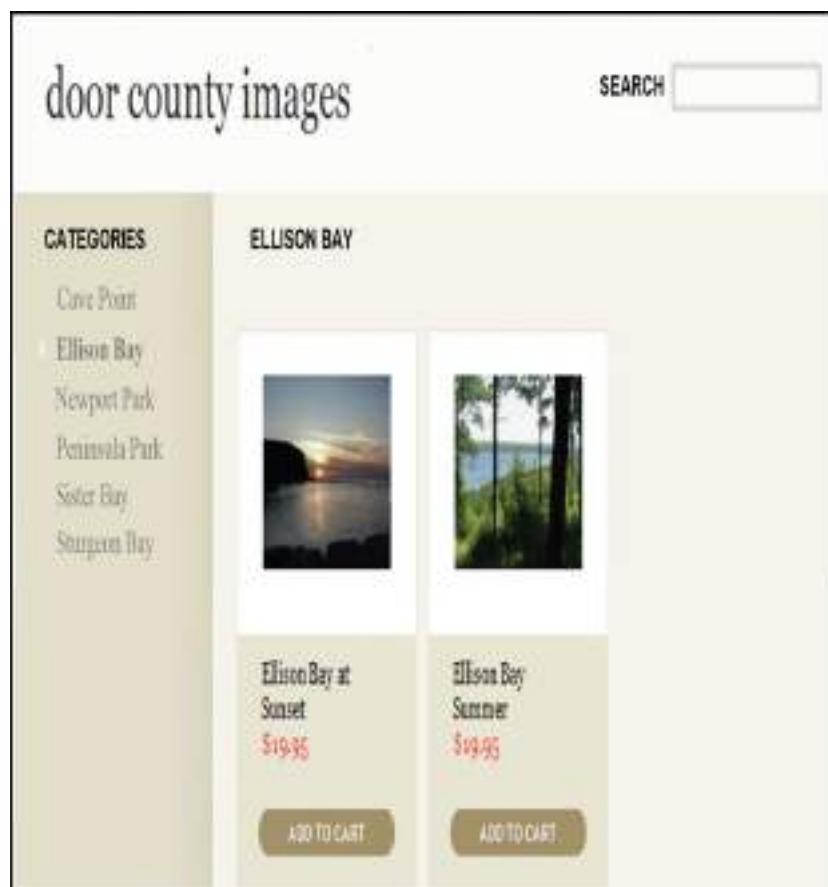
Choose one of the following websites that offer free trial online stores: InstanteStore (<http://www.instantestore.com>), Shopify (<https://www.shopify.com>), and BigCommerce (<https://www.bigcommerce.com>). Websites are constantly changing their policies, so these sites may no longer offer free trials when you do this assignment. If this is the case, check the textbook's website for updated information, ask your instructor for assistance, or search the Web for free online storefronts or trial stores. If you are certain that you have found a website that offers a free trial store, continue with this exercise and create a store that meets the following criteria:

- Name: Door County Images
- Purpose: To sell fine quality prints of Door County scenery
- Target Audience: Adults age 40+ who have visited Door County; are middle to upper class; and who enjoy nature, boating, hiking, cycling, and fishing
- Item 1: Print of Ellison Bay at Sunset, Size: 11 inches by 14 inches, Price: \$19.95
- Item 2: Print of Ellison Bay in Summer, Size: 11 inches by 14 inches, Price: \$19.95

Create a folder called doorcounty. Copy the following images from the [chapter 12](#) folder in the student files to your doorcounty folder: summer.jpg, summer\_small.jpg, sunset.jpg, and sunset\_small.jpg. Once you are organized, visit the website you have chosen to host your free store. You will have to log in, choose options, and upload your images. Follow the instructions provided. Most free online store sites

have an FAQ section or technical support to help you. [Figure 12.4](#) shows a page from an instant storefront. After you have completed your store, print out the browser view of the home page and catalog page.

**Figure 12.4 An instant store**



# Web Research

1. Just how popular is e-commerce? How many of your friends, family members, coworkers, and classmates purchase on the Web? Survey at least 20 people. Determine the following:

  - a. How many have purchased an item online?
  - b. How many have shopped but not purchased online?
  - c. How many purchase online once a year? Once a month?  
Once a week?
  - d. What is their age range (18–25, 26–39, 40–50, or over 50)?
  - e. What is their gender?
  - f. What is their level of education (high school, some college, college graduate, or graduate school)?
  - g. What is their favorite online shopping site?

Create a web page that illustrates your findings. Also comment on the results and draw some conclusions. Search the Web for statistics that support your conclusions. Use the Pew Internet and American Life Project (<https://pewinternet.org>), eMarketer (<https://www.emarketer.com/Articles>), ClickZ (<https://www.clickz.com>), and E-Commerce Times (<https://www.ecommercetimes.com>) as starting points for your research. Place your name in an e-mail link on the web page.

2. This chapter provided a number of resources for e-commerce shopping cart and ordering systems. Use them as a starting point. Search the Web for additional resources. Find at least three shopping cart systems that you feel would be easy to use. Create a web page that reports your findings. Organize your page and list the information along with the URLs of the websites you used as resources. Include information such as the product name, a

brief description, the cost, and the web server requirements (if any). Place your name in an e-mail link on the web page.

# Focus on Web Design

Visit the following sites as a starting point as you explore the web design topic of shopping cart usability:

- E-commerce Shopping Cart Usability Research Findings: <https://www.uxteam.com/blog/e-commerce-shopping-cart-usability-research-findings/>
- Dos and Don'ts of Mobile Shopping Cart Design: <https://www.growcode.com/blog/mobile-shopping-cart-design/>
- New E-Commerce Checkout Research: <https://baymard.com/blog/ecommerce-checkout-usability-report-and-benchmark>
- 10 Best Practices for Shopping Cart Page Optimization: <https://www.abtasty.com/blog/shopping-cart-optimization/>
- Optimizing Shopping Cart Page Design and Usability: <http://www.ecommerceillustrated.com/optimizing-shopping-cart-pages-reducing-cart-abandonment/>

Write a one-page report that describes shopping cart usability issues that web designers should be aware of. Cite the URLs of the resources you used.

---

## Website Case Study Adding a Catalog Page for an Online Store

Each of the following case studies has continued throughout most of the text. This chapter adds a catalog page for an online store to the websites. This catalog page will connect to a

placeholder shopping cart page on the textbook website at <https://www.webdevfoundations.net>.

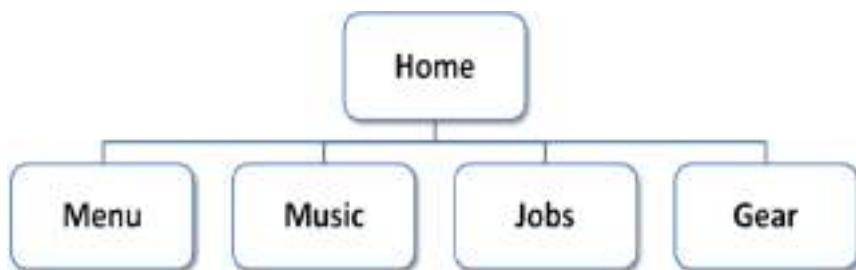
## JavaJam Coffee Bar

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the JavaJam Coffee Bar case study. Use the [Chapter 9](#) JavaJam website as a starting point for this case study. As frequently happens with websites, the client, Julio Perez, is pleased with the response to the site and has an idea about a new use for it—selling JavaJam gear, such as T-shirts and coffee mugs. This new page, gear.html, will be part of the main navigation of the site. All pages should link to it. A revised site map is shown in [Figure 12.5](#).

---

**Figure 12.5 Revised JavaJam site map**

---



The Gear page should contain a description, image, and price for each product. It should link to a shopping cart system when the visitor wants to purchase an item. You may access a placeholder page provided by the textbook's website. If you have access to a different shopping cart system, check with your instructor and ask if you can use it instead.

You have four tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this JavaJam case study.
2. Modify the main navigation on each page to include a link to the new Gear page.

3. Modify the javajam.css external CSS file.
4. Create the new Gear page (gear.html) shown in **Figure 12.6**.

**Figure 12.6** New JavaJam Gear page



## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called javajam12. Copy all of the files from your **Chapter 9**.

javajam9 folder into the javajam12 folder. Copy the javamug.jpg, javashirt.jpg, and herocouch.jpg images from the **chapter 12** folder in the student files and save them to your javajam12 folder.

**TASK 2: UPDATE THE NAVIGATION ON EACH PAGE.**

Launch a text editor and open the home page (index.html). Add a new list item and hyperlink in the main navigation area that displays the text “Gear” and links to the file gear.html. See **Figure 12.6** for an example of the navigation area. Save the file. Edit the Menu (menu.html), Music (music.html), and Jobs (jobs.html) pages in a similar manner and save each file.

**TASK 3: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open javajam.css. Configure the following styles above the media queries.

- a. Add a new style rule to configure a class named `item` that has a `#FAF9F7` background color, 1em margin, 1em padding, and set the overflow property to auto.
- b. Add a new style rule to configure the img elements within the item class to float to the right.
- c. Configure a new id named `#herocouch` with 300px height that displays the herocouch.jpg image in 100% of the background. Use the `#heroguitar` id as a guide as you code the styles.

Save your javajam.css file.

**TASK 4: CREATE THE NEW GEAR PAGE.** One way to be productive is to create pages based on your earlier work. Launch a text editor and open the Menu page

(menu.html). Save the file as gear.html. This will give you a head start and ensure that the pages on the website are similar. Perform the following modifications:

- a. Change the page title to an appropriate phrase.
- b. Locate the div assigned to the `heromugs` id. Assign to an id named `herocouch`.
- c. Change the text within the h2 element to “JavaJam Gear”.
- d. Delete the existing paragraph and place each sentence below in a separate paragraph:

JavaJam gear not only looks good, it's good to your wallet, too.

Get a 10% discount when you wear a JavaJam shirt or bring in your JavaJam mug!

- e. Locate the div assigned to the id named `flow`.  
Delete all the HTML elements and their contents within this div. You will code the shopping cart items in this area.
- f. Configure a div element assigned to the class named `item`. Code the following img, h3, and paragraph tags in the div.

1. Configure an img element to display the `javashirt.jpg` graphic.

2. Configure the text “JavaJam Shirt” within an h3 element.

3. Configure the following text in a paragraph:  
“JavaJam shirts are comfortable to wear to school and around town. 100% cotton. XL only. \$14.95”

- g. Configure a div element assigned to the class named `item`. Code the following img, h3, and

paragraph tags in the div.

1. Configure an img element to display the javamug.jpg graphic.
  2. Configure the text “JavaJam Mug” within an h3 element.
  3. Configure the following text in a paragraph:

“JavaJam mugs carry a full load of caffeine (12 oz.) to jump-start your morning. \$9.95”.
- h.** Each item for sale has an “Add to Cart” button, which is contained within a form with an action attribute set to <https://webdevbasics.net/cart.html>, a placeholder shopping cart page.  
To place the shopping cart button for the T-shirt, add the following code below the paragraph that describes the T-shirt and above the closing div tag.

```
<form method="post">  
  action="https://webdevbasics.net/cart.  
  html">  
    <input type="submit" value="Add to  
    Cart">  
</form>
```

The process for adding the shopping cart button for the mug is the same. Add the following code below the paragraph that contains the description of the mug.

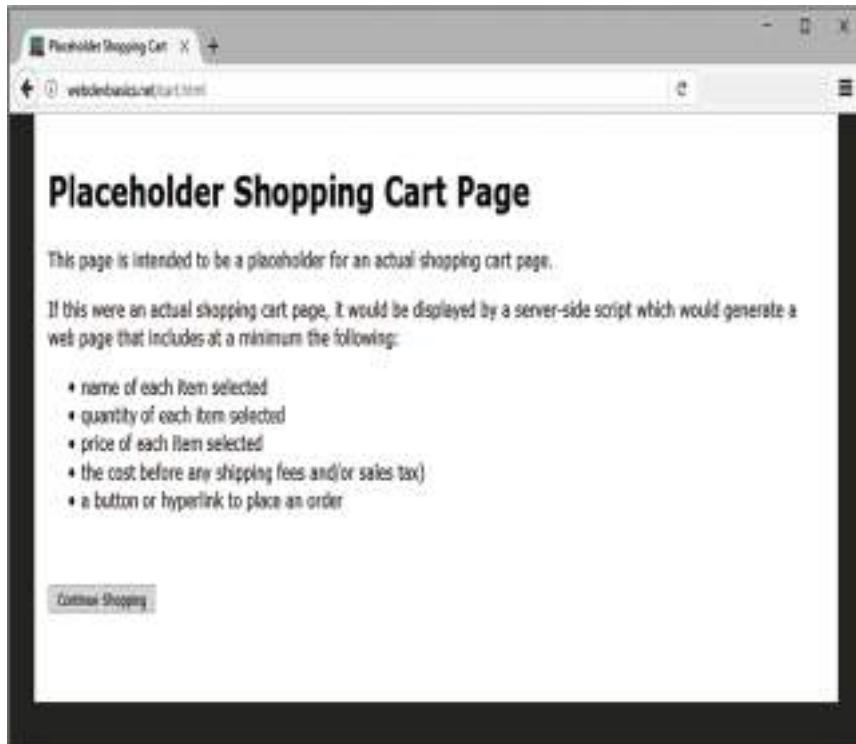
```
<form method="post">  
  action="https://webdevbasics.net/cart.  
  html">  
    <input type="submit" value="Add to  
    Cart">  
</form>
```

Save your page and test it in a browser. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 12.6](#). Click the Add to Cart buttons for one of the items. The placeholder shopping cart will display and your screen should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 12.7](#).

---

**Figure 12.7 A placeholder shopping cart page**

---



## Fish Creek Animal Clinic

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Fish Creek Animal Clinic case study. You will use the [Chapter 9](#) fishcreek9 folder as the starting point for this case study.

After a site is initially created, it's typical for a client to think of new ideas for the website. The owner of Fish Creek, Magda Patel, is pleased with the response to the site and has a new

use for it—selling sweatshirts and tote bags with the Fish Creek logo. She already has these materials for sale at her front desk in the animal hospital and her customers seem to like them. This new Shop page (shop.html) will be part of the main navigation of the site. All pages should link to it. A revised site map is shown in [Figure 12.8](#).

---

**Figure 12.8 Revised Fish Creek site map**

---



The Shop page should contain the description, image, and price of each product. It should link to a shopping cart system when the visitor wants to purchase an item. You may access a placeholder page provided by the textbook's website. If you have access to a different shopping cart system, check with your instructor and ask if you can use it instead.

You have four tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Fish Creek case study.
2. Modify the main navigation on each page to include a link to the new Shop page.
3. Modify the fishcreek.css external CSS file.
4. Create the new Shop page (shop.html) shown in [Figure 12.9](#).

## Hands-On Practice Case

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called fishcreek12. Copy all of the files from your Chapter 9 fishcreek9 folder into the fishcreek12 folder. Copy the fishtote.gif and fishsweat.gif images from the chapter12 folder in the student files and save them to your fishcreek12 folder.

**TASK 2: UPDATE THE NAVIGATION ON EACH PAGE.**

Launch a text editor and open the home page (index.html). Add a new list item and hyperlink in the main navigation area that displays the text “Shop” and links to the file shop.html. See Figure 12.9 for an example of the navigation area. Save the file. Edit the Services (services.html), Ask the Vet (askvet.html), and Contact (contact.html) pages in a similar manner. Save each file.

**TASK 3: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the fishcreek.css file. Configure the following styles above the media queries.

- a. Configure a class named `shop` with a 1px solid #AEC3E3 border and white background.
- b. Add a style rule for the img elements within the shop class. Configure right float.
- c. Add a style rule for the form elements within the shop class. Set clear to right.

Save your fishcreek.css file.

**TASK 4: CREATE THE NEW SHOP PAGE.** One way to be productive is to create pages based on your earlier work. Launch a text editor and open the home page (index.html). Save the file as shop.html. This will give you

a head start and ensure that the pages on the website are similar. Perform the following modifications:

- a. Change the page title to an appropriate phrase.
- b. Change the text within the h2 element to “Shop at Fish Creek Animal Clinic”.
- c. Delete the paragraph element and its content.
- d. Delete the contents of the first section element.

Assign the section element to the class named `shop`. The section will contain an h3, an image, a description and a form that will process the Add to Cart button. Code an h3 element with the text “Fish Creek Tote Bag”. Configure the `fishtote.gif` image below the h3. You will configure the description below the image. Type the following descriptive text in a paragraph: “Carry your pet supplies and accessories in a special tote from Fish Creek. 100% cotton. \$14.95”.
- e. Delete the contents of the second section element.

Assign the section element to the class named `shop`. The section will contain an h3, an image, a description and a form that will process the Add to Cart button. Code an h3 element with the text “Fish Creek Sweatshirt”. Configure the `fishsweat.gif` image below the h3. You will configure the description below the image. Type the following descriptive text in a paragraph: “A Fish Creek sweatshirt will warm you up on cool morning walks with your pet. 100% cotton. Size XL. \$29.95”.
- f. Delete the third section element and its contents.
- g. Delete the div assigned to the `address` class and its contents.

**h.** Next, we will add a shopping cart button to each item for sale. This shopping cart button is placed in a form after the paragraph in each section. The action for the form is <https://webdevbasics.net/cart.html>, a placeholder shopping cart page.

To place the shopping cart button for the tote, add the following code below the paragraph with the tote's description and above the closing section tag:

```
<form method="post"
action="https://webdevbasics.net/cart.html"
>
<input type="submit" value="Add to Cart">
</form>
```

The process for adding the shopping cart button for the sweatshirt is the same. The HTML is

```
<form method="post"
action="https://webdevbasics.net/cart.html"
>
<input type="submit" value="Add to
Cart">
</form>
```

Save your page and test it in a browser. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 12.9](#). Click the Add to Cart button for the tote. The placeholder shopping cart will display and your screen should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 12.7](#).

---

**Figure 12.9 New Fish Creek Shop page**

---



## Pacific Trails Resort

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Pacific Trails case study. You will use the [Chapter 9](#) pacific9 folder as the starting point for this case study.

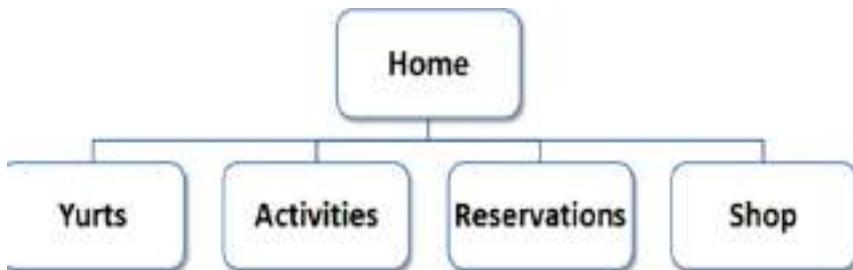
As often happens with websites, the client, Melanie Bowie, is pleased with the response to the site and has an idea about a new use for it—selling books that she's written about yoga and hiking at Pacific Trails Resort. She already has these for sale at the resort front desk and her customers seem to like them. This new Shop page (shop.html) will be part of the main navigation

of the site. All pages should link to it. A revised site map is shown in [Figure 12.10](#).

---

**Figure 12.10 Revised Pacific Trails site map**

---



The Shop page should contain the description, image, and price of each book. It should link to a shopping cart system when the visitor wants to purchase an item. You may access a placeholder page provided by the textbook's website. If you have access to a different shopping cart system, check with your instructor and ask if you can use it instead.

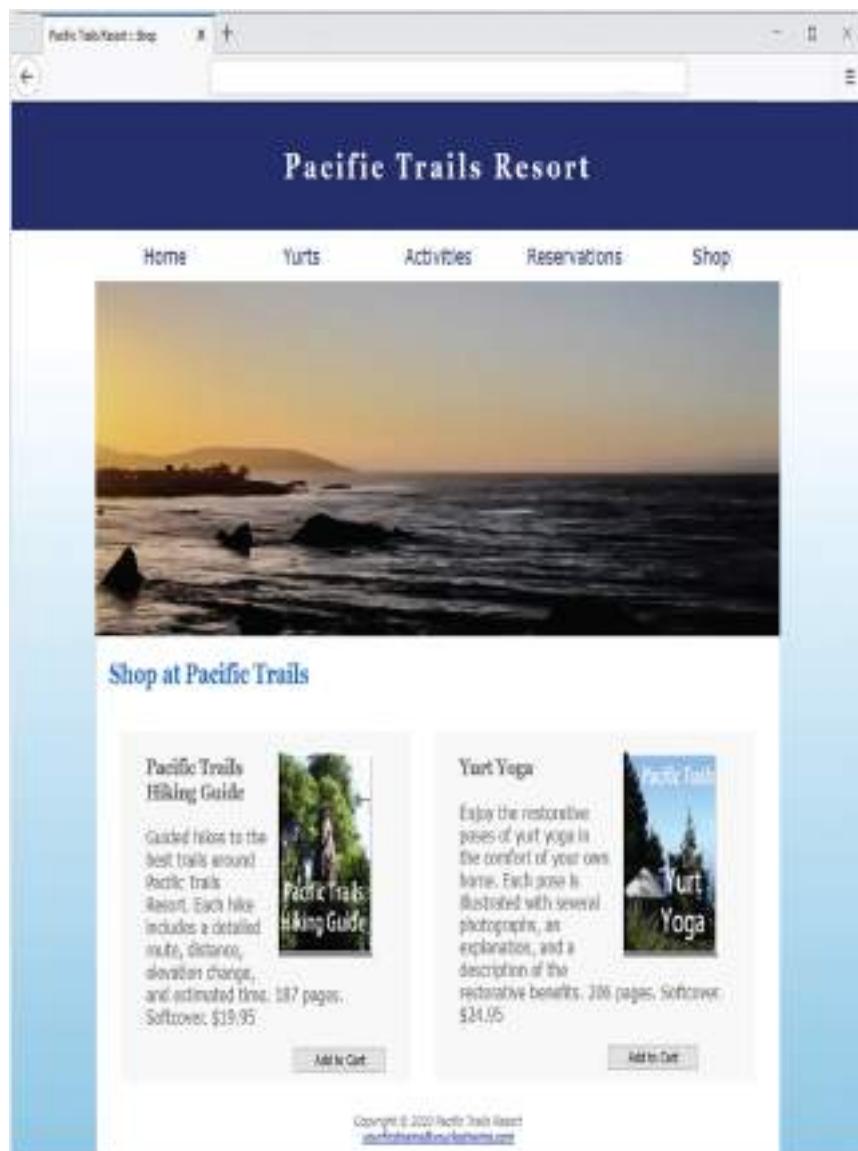
You have four tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Pacific Trails case study.
2. Modify the main navigation on each page to include a link to the new Shop page.
3. Modify the pacific.css external CSS file.
4. Create the new Shop page (shop.html) shown in [Figure 12.11](#).

---

**Figure 12.11 New Pacific Trails Resort Shop page**

---



## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called pacific12. Copy all of the files from your **Chapter 9** pacific9 folder into the pacific12 folder. Copy the psunset.jpg, trailguide.jpg, and yurtyoga.jpg images from the **Chapter12** folder in the student files and save them to your pacific12 folder.

**TASK 2: UPDATE THE NAVIGATION ON EACH PAGE.**

Launch a text editor and open the home page (index.html). Add a new list item and hyperlink in the main navigation area that displays the text “Shop” and links to the file shop.html. See [Figure 12.11](#) for an example of the navigation area. Save the file. Edit the Yurts (yurts.html), Activities (activities.html), and Reservations (reservations.html) pages in a similar manner. Save each file.

**TASK 3: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the pacific.css file. Configure the following styles above the media queries.

- a. Configure a style rule for an id named `shophero` that displays psunset.jpg as a background image. Use the `#trailhero` style rule as a guide.
- b. Configure a style rule for a class named `shop` with 1em margin and background color set to #F4F4F4.
- c. Configure a style rule for img elements contained within a class named shop that sets right float and 1em padding.
- d. Configure a style rule for form elements within a class named shop that clears right float.  
Locate the first media query and add a style rule that configures the `shophero` id selector with background-size set to 100% 100%.

Save your pacific.css file.

**TASK 4: CREATE THE NEW SHOP PAGE.** One way to be productive is to create pages based on your earlier work. Launch a text editor and open the Activities page

(activities.html). Save the file as shop.html. This will give you a head start and ensure that the pages on the website are similar. Perform the following modifications:

- a. Change the page title to an appropriate phrase.
- b. Change the text within the h2 element to “Shop at Pacific Trails”.
- c. Locate the div assigned to the `trailhero` id. Assign it to an id named `shophero`.
- d. Delete the contents of the first section element. The section will contain an img, h3, paragraph, and shopping cart form. Assign the section element to a class named `shop`.
- e. Write the HTML to display the trailguide.jpg image.
- f. Configure an h3 element to display “Pacific Trails Hiking Guide”.
- g. Code a paragraph that will display the text description: “Guided hikes to the best trails around Pacific Trails Resort. Each hike includes a detailed route, distance, elevation change, and estimated time. 187 pages. Softcover. \$19.95”
- h. Each item for sale has an “Add to Cart” button, which is contained within a form with an action attribute set to <https://webdevbasics.net/cart.html>, a placeholder shopping cart page. To add the shopping cart button for the Hiking Guide book below the description paragraph, write the following code:

```
<form method="post">  
  action="https://webdevbasics.net/cart.  
  html">  
    <input type="submit" value="Add to
```

```
Cart">  
</form>
```

- i. Delete the contents of the second section element.

The section will contain an img, h3, paragraph, and shopping cart form. Assign the section element to a class named `shop`.

- j. Write the HTML to display the `yurtyoga.jpg` image.

- k. Configure an h3 element to display “Yurt Yoga”.

l. Code a paragraph that will display the text  
description: “Enjoy the restorative poses of yurt  
yoga in the comfort of your own home. Each pose  
is illustrated with several photographs, an  
explanation, and a description of the restorative  
benefits. 206 pages. Softcover. \$24.95”

- m. Configure the Add to Cart button by writing the  
following HTML for the form with the shopping cart  
button:

```
<form method="post"  
      action="https://webdevbasics.net/cart.  
      html">  
    <input type="submit" value="Add to  
    Cart">  
</form>
```

- n. Delete the third section element and its contents.

Save your page and test it in a browser. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 12.11](#). Click the Add to Cart button for one of the books. The placeholder

shopping cart will display and your screen should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 12.7](#).

## Path of Light Yoga Studio

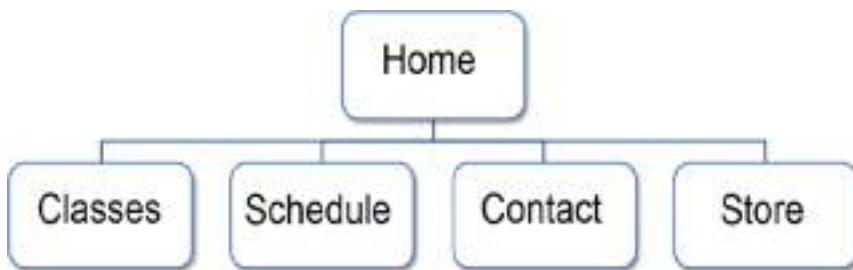
See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Path of Light Yoga Studio case study. You will use the [Chapter 9](#) yoga9 folder as the starting point for this case study.

The owner, Ariana Starrweaver is thrilled with the new website and would like to add an online store to sell her preferred yoga mats, blankets, and blocks. The new Store page (store.html) will be part of the main navigation of the site. All pages should link to it. A revised site map is shown in [Figure 12.12](#).

---

**Figure 12.12 Revised Path of Light Yoga Studio site map**

---

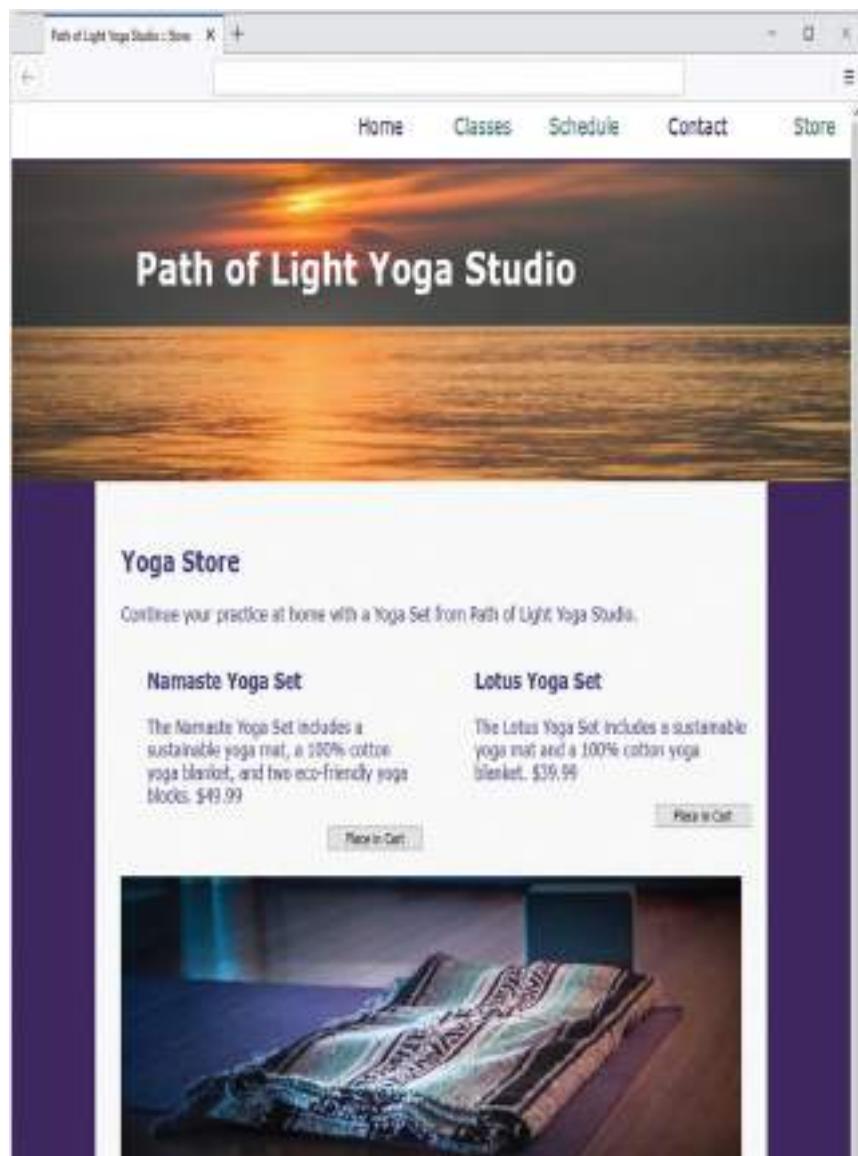


The Store page, shown in [Figure 12.13](#), should display a photo and provide information about the two yoga sets available for purchase (with the description and price of each set). You may access a placeholder page provided by the textbook's website. If you have access to a different shopping cart system, check with your instructor and ask if you can use it instead.

---

**Figure 12.13 New Path of Light Yoga Studio Store page**

---



You have four tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Path of Light Yoga Studio case study.
2. Modify the main navigation on each page to include a link to the new Store page.
3. Modify the `yoga.css` external CSS file.
4. Create the new Store page (`store.html`) shown in **Figure 12.13**.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called yoga12. Copy all of the files from your **Chapter 9** yoga9 folder into the yoga12 folder. Copy the store.jpg image from the **Chapter12** folder in the student files and save it to your yoga12 folder.

**TASK 2: UPDATE THE NAVIGATION ON EACH PAGE.**

Launch a text editor and open the home page (index.html). Add a new list item and hyperlink in the main navigation area that displays the text “Store” and links to the file store.html. See **Figure 12.13** for an example of the navigation area. Save the file. Edit the Classes (classes.html), Schedule (schedule.html), and Contact (contact.html) pages in a similar manner. Save each file.

**TASK 3: CONFIGURE THE CSS.** Launch a text editor and open the yoga.css file. Configure the following styles above the media queries.

- a. Configure an id named `storehero` that displays store.jpg as a background image. Use the CSS for `#lougehero` as a guide.
- b. Code a style rule that configures 1em bottom padding for form elements contained within section elements.

Locate the first media query and configure the `#storehero` id in the same way as the other hero images.

Save your yoga.css file.

**TASK 4: CREATE THE NEW STORE PAGE.** One way to be productive is to create pages based on your earlier work.

Launch a text editor and open the Classes page (classes.html). Save the file as store.html. This will give you a head start and ensure that the pages on the website are similar. Perform the following modifications:

- a. Change the page title to an appropriate phrase.
- b. Scroll down the page. Assign the div above the closing main tag to the id named `storehero`.
- c. Locate the h2 at the top of the main element. Change the Yoga Classes heading to Yoga Store.
- d. Place your cursor on the line after the Yoga Store heading. Create a paragraph with the following text:

“Continue your practice at home with a Yoga Set from Path of Light Yoga Studio.”
- e. Locate the first section element. The section element will contain an h3, a paragraph and a form. Configure the h3 element to display the text “Namaste Yoga Set”.
- f. Configure the paragraph with the following text:

“The Namaste Yoga Set includes a sustainable yoga mat, a 100% cotton yoga blanket, and two eco-friendly yoga blocks. \$49.99”
- g. Next, we will add a shopping cart button. The action on the form is <https://webdevbasics.net/cart.html>, a placeholder shopping cart page. To place the shopping cart button for the Namaste Yoga Set, add the following code below the paragraph:

```
<form method="post"
action="https://webdevbasics.net/cart.
html">
<input type="submit" value="Place
```

```
in Cart">  
</form>
```

- h.** Locate the second section element. The section element will contain an h3, a paragraph and a form. Configure the h3 element to display the text “Lotus Yoga Set”.
- i.** Configure the paragraph with the following text:  
“The Lotus Yoga Set includes a sustainable yoga mat and a 100% cotton yoga blanket. \$39.99”
- j.** Configure the shopping cart button for the Lotus Yoga Set. The HTML is

```
<form method="post"  
action="http://webdevbasics.net/cart.h  
tml">  
    <input type="submit" value="Place  
in Cart">  
</form>
```

- k.** Delete the third section element and its contents.

Save your page and test it in a browser. It should look similar to the one shown in [Figure 12.13](#). Click the Place in Cart button for the Lotus Yoga Set. The placeholder shopping cart will display and your screen should be similar to the one pictured in [Figure 12.7](#).

## Web Project

See [Chapter 5](#) for an introduction to the Web Project. Review the goals of your website and determine whether they include an e-commerce component. If so, you will add this component to your web project.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

Revise the site map as needed to include the e-commerce component. Perhaps you will add a Products page to your website. Perhaps the Products page already exists and you are just adding functionality to the page. In either case, make sure that the site map and content sheets reflect the new processing.

There are a number of free or low-cost shopping cart providers on the Web. Some are provided in the following list. Your instructor may have additional resources or suggestions. Choose one of the providers from the list in order to add a shopping cart to your website. When you subscribe or sign up for these services, be sure to note any potential costs.

- Mal's e-commerce (free and low-cost service): <https://www.mals-e.com>
- PayPal (there is a cost per transaction for this service):  
<https://www.paypal.com>
- JustAddCommerce (free trial): <http://www.richmediatech.com>

Save and test your page. Experiment with the shopping cart. Welcome to the world of e-commerce!

---

# 13

## Web Promotion



---



## Chapter Objectives

---

**IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .**

- Identify commonly used search engines and search indexes
- Describe the components of a search engine
- Design web pages that are friendly to search engines
- Submit a website for inclusion in a search engine
- Monitor a search engine listing
- Describe other website promotion activities
- Use the iframe element to create an inline frame

**You've built it—now what can you do to attract visitors to your website?**

Once you have visitors, how do you encourage them to return? Getting listed on search engines, site affiliations, and banner ads are some of the topics that are discussed in this chapter.

## 13.1 Search Engine Overview

What do you do when you need to find a website? Using a **search engine** is a popular way to navigate the Web and find websites.

A search engine listing helps customers find your site and increases the chances that they will make a purchase. Search engine listings can be an excellent marketing tool for your business. To harness the power of search engines, it helps to know how they work.

## 13.2 Popular Search Engines

According to NetMarketShare (<https://www.netmarketshare.com/search-engine-market-share.aspx?qprid=4&qpcustomd=0>), Google was the most popular search engine during a recent month. Google was reported to have an overwhelming desktop market share of 76%, while the closest competitors were Baidu (9.64%), Bing (8.59%), and Yahoo! (3.16%). Google's popularity has continued to grow since it was founded in the late 1990s.

## 13.3 Components of a Search Engine

Search engines have the following components:

- Robot
- Database
- Search form

### Robot

A **robot** (sometimes called a spider or bot) is a program that automatically traverses the hypertext structure of the Web by retrieving a web page document and following the hyperlinks on the page. It moves like a robot spider on the Web, accessing and documenting web pages. The robot categorizes the pages and stores information about the website and the web pages in a database. Various robots may work differently, but, in general, they access and may store the following sections of web pages: title, meta tag descriptions, and some of the text on the page (usually either the first few sentences or the text contained in heading tags). Visit Web Robots Pages (<https://www.robotstxt.org>) if you'd like more details about web robots.

### Database

A **database** is a collection of information which is organized so that its contents can easily be accessed, managed, and updated. A database management system (DBMS), such as Oracle, SQL Server, MySQL, or IBM DB2, is used to configure and manage the database. The web page that displays the results of your search has information from the database accessed by the search engine site. According to Bruce Clay (<https://>

[www.bruceclay.com/searchenginerelationshipchart.htm](http://www.bruceclay.com/searchenginerelationshipchart.htm)), some search engines receive portions of their content from other search engines. For example, Yahoo! receives its primary search results from Google.

## Search Form

The **search form** is the component of a search engine that you are most familiar with. You have probably used a search engine many times but haven't thought about what goes on "under the hood." The search form is the graphical user interface that allows a user to type in a word or phrase to search for. It is usually simply a text box and a submit button. The visitor to the search engine types in words (called keywords) related to his or her search into the text box. When the form is submitted, the data typed into the text box is sent to a server-side script that searches the database using the keywords entered. The **search results** (also called a result set) are a list of information, such as the URLs for web pages, that meets your criteria. This result set is formatted with a link to each page, along with additional information which might include the page title, a brief description, the first few lines of text, or the size of the page. The type of additional information varies by search engine. Next, the web server at the search engine site sends the **search engine results page (SERP)** to your browser for display.

The order in which the pages are displayed may depend on paid advertisements, alphabetical order, and link popularity (more on this later). Each search engine has its own policy for ordering the search results. Be aware that these policies can change over time.

The components of a search engine (robot, database, and search form) work together to obtain information about web pages, store information about web pages, and provide a graphical user interface to facilitate searching for and displaying a list of web pages that are relevant to the

given keywords. Now that you are aware of the components of search engines, let's get to the most important part: how to design your pages to promote your website.

## 13.4 Search Engine Optimization

If you have followed recommended web design practices, you've already designed your website so that the pages are appealing and compelling to your target audience. How can you also make your site work with search engines? This section provides some suggestions and hints on designing your pages for search engines—a process called **search engine optimization (SEO)**.

### Keywords

Spend some time brainstorming about terms and phrases that people may use when searching for your site. Make a list of them. These terms or phrases that describe your website or business are your **keywords**.

### Page Titles

A descriptive page title (the text between the `<title>` tags), which includes your company and/or website name, will help your site market itself. It's common for search engines to display the text in the page title in the SERP. The page title is also saved by default when a visitor bookmarks your site and is often included when a visitor prints a page of your site. Avoid using the exact same title for every page; include keywords in the page title that are appropriate for the page. For example, instead of just "Trillium Media Design," configure the page title to include both the company name and the purpose of the page: "Trillium Media Design: Custom E-Commerce Solutions."

### Heading Tags

Use structural tags, such as `<h1>`, `<h2>`, and so on, to organize your page content. If it is appropriate for the web page content, also include some keywords in the text contained within the heading tags. Some search engines will give a higher list position if keywords are included in a page title or heading. Also include keywords, as appropriate, within the page text content. However, avoid spamming keywords—that is, do not list them over and over again. The programs behind search engines are becoming more sophisticated all the time and you can actually be prevented from being listed if it is perceived that you are not being honest or are trying to cheat the system.

## Description

What is special about your website that would make someone want to visit? With this in mind, write a few sentences about your website or business. This description should be inviting and interesting so that a person searching the Web will choose your site from the list provided by a search engine. Some search engines will display your description in their search engine results. You might be wondering how these are applied to the actual web pages. The description is placed on a web page by adding an HTML meta tag to the head section.

## Description Meta Tag

A meta tag is a self-contained tag that is placed in the head section of a web page. You've been using a meta tag to indicate character encoding. There are a number of other uses for meta tags. We'll focus here on providing a description of a website for use by search engines. The **description meta tag** content is displayed on the SERP by some search engines, such as Google. The `name` attribute indicates the use of the meta tag. The `content` attribute indicates the values needed for that specific

use. The `description` value for the `name` attribute indicates that the use of the meta tag is to provide a description. For example, a description meta tag for a website about a web development consulting firm called Acme Design could be configured as follows:

```
<meta name="description" content="Acme Design, a premier  
web consulting  
group that specializes in e-commerce, web design, web  
development, and  
website redesign.">
```

## FAQ

What if I do not want a search engine to index a page?

Sometimes there will be pages that you do not want indexed, perhaps test pages or pages only meant for a small group of individuals (such as family or coworkers). Meta tags can be used for this purpose also. To indicate to a search engine robot that a page should not be indexed and the links should not be followed, do not code a description meta tag in the page. Instead, add a **robots meta tag** to the page as follows:

```
<meta name="robots" content="noindex,  
nofollow">
```

## Linking

Verify that all hyperlinks are working. Each page on your website should be reachable by a text hyperlink. The text should be descriptive (avoid phrases like “More info” and “Click here”) and should include keywords as appropriate. Inbound links (sometimes called incoming links) are also a factor in SEO; see the link popularity section later in this chapter.

## Images and Multimedia

Be mindful that search engine robots do not “see” the text embedded within your images and multimedia. Configure meaningful alternate text for images. Include relevant keywords in the alternate text.

## Valid Code

Search engines do not require that your HTML and CSS code pass validation tests. However, code that is valid and well structured is likely to be more easily processed by search engine robots. This may help with your placement in the search engine results.

## Content of Value

Probably the most basic, but often overlooked, component of SEO is providing content of value contained within a website that follows web design best practices (see [Chapter 5](#)). Your website should contain high-quality, well-organized content that is of value to your visitors.

## HTTPS Protocol

As part of Google's support for security on the Web, the search engine has begun to consider the HTTPS protocol (see [Chapter 12](#)) in its page rank algorithms. You may consider adopting HTTPS for your website.

## 13.5 Submitting your Website to a Search Engine

Although search engines bring visitors to your website, it is not always easy to get listed in a search engine. Before you even *think* about submitting your website to a search engine, be sure that it is complete and that you have followed basic SEO techniques (as described in the previous section). Once you're confident that your website is ready, it is time to submit your site for consideration by a search engine.

Back in the day, all you needed to do to submit your website to Google or Bing was to anonymously fill out a form on their website. Now, the process is more complex.

To work with Google, visit <https://search.google.com/search-console>. Sign in with your Google account and look for the “add property” option. You'll provide the URL of your website and follow instructions provided by Google to verify that you are the actual site owner. Once verified, visit <https://www.google.com/webmasters/tools/submit-url> and follow the instructions to either submit a Sitemap or use the Fetch as Google tool.

To work with Bing, visit <https://www.bing.com/toolbox/webmaster>. Sign in with an account of your choice (Microsoft, Google, or Facebook). You'll provide the URL of your website and follow instructions provided by Bing to verify that you are the actual site owner. Once verified, you will be able to submit URLs to Bing (in the Dashboard, select “Configure My Site” and “Submit URLs”) by filling out a form. You can also submit a Sitemap to Bing using the Dashboard.

After you submit your URL, it's time to wait for the search engine's spider or bot to visit your website. This may take several weeks. Try to be patient.

Several weeks after you submit your website, check the search engine to see if your site is listed. If it is not listed, review your pages and check whether they are optimized for search engines (see the previous section) and display in common browsers.

If the website is for a business, you may want to consider paying for preferential placement in search engine displays (called sponsoring or advertising), and paying each time a visitor clicks the search engine's link to your site. Many businesses regard payment for these types of services as another marketing expense, such as paying for a newspaper ad.

---

## FAQ

Is advertising on a search engine worth the cost?

It depends. How much is it worth to your client to appear on the first page of the search engine results? You select the keywords that will trigger the display of your ad. You also set your monthly budget and the maximum amount to pay for each click. While costs and charges vary by search engine, at this time, Google charges are based on cost per click—you'll be charged each time a visitor to Google clicks on your advertisement. Visit <https://ads.google.com/home/> for more information about their program.

If you explore the paid advertising programs that search engines offer, you'll encounter a number of acronyms

related to marketing. The most common are listed below:

- **CPC: Cost per click**

CPC (also referred to as PPC, pay per click) is the price you are charged if you have signed up for a paid sponsor or ad program and a visitor clicks on a link to your website.

- **CPM: Cost per thousand impressions**

CPM is your cost for every 1,000 times that your ad is displayed on a web page (whether or not the visitor clicks on your ad).

- **CTR: Click-through rate**

CTR is the ratio of the number of times an ad is clicked on to the number of times an ad is viewed. For example, if your ad was shown 100 times and 20 people clicked on it, your CTR would be 20/100, or 20%.

---

## Map Your Site

Google's Webmaster Guidelines describe two types of site maps that are useful for SEO:

- An HTML site map is a web page with a map of the site that contains a hierarchical list of hyperlinks to the major pages in your website.

For an example, view the site map web page at <https://webdevbasics.net/sitemap.html>. The information on the site map page is not only helpful for your website visitors, but also may assist search engine robots as they follow hyperlinks on your site.

- An XML **Sitemap** is an XML file that is used by search engines, but it is not accessed by your web page visitors. A Sitemap provides information to a search engine, such as Google, about your website and is essentially a list of pages, along with the following information: date that each page was last modified, an indicator of how frequently each page changes, and a priority level for each page. See <https://www.sitemaps.org/protocol.html> for more information about manually coding a Sitemap. An excerpt from a Sitemap file (sitemap.xml) is shown below:

```
<url>
  <loc>http://webdevfoundations.net/</loc>
  <lastmod>2018-07-03T08:10:09+00:00</lastmod>
  <changefreq>monthly</changefreq>
  <priority>1.00</priority>
</url>
<url>
  <loc>http://webdevfoundations.net/index.html</loc>
  <lastmod>2018-07-03T08:10:09+00:00</lastmod>
  <changefreq>monthly</changefreq>
  <priority>1.00</priority>
</url>
<url>

  <loc>http://webdevfoundations.net/8e/chapter1.html</loc>
  <lastmod>2018-08-22T15:09:07+00:00</lastmod>
  <changefreq>monthly</changefreq>
  <priority>0.800</priority>
</url>
```

Online Sitemap generators, such as <https://www.xml-sitemaps.com> will automatically create a Sitemap file, named sitemap.xml, for you. You will need to upload the Sitemap to your website and notify Google and/or Bing of its URL. Visit <https://support.google.com/webmasters/answer/183668?hl=en> for more information about Sitemaps.

Checkpoint 13.1

- 1.** Describe the three components of a search engine.
- 2.** What is the purpose of the description meta tag?
- 3.** Is it beneficial for a business to pay for preferential listing?  
Why or why not?

## 13.6 Monitoring Search Listings

Although you may want your website to appear instantaneously in search engines, some time may be required before your site appears in the SERPs. Also, be mindful that there is no guarantee when you submit your site that it will be listed; however, it is rare that a quality website with content of value is not indexed and included in search engine listings.

As your sites get listed, it becomes important to determine which keywords are working. Usually, you need to fine-tune and modify your keywords over time. Here are a few methods for determining which keywords are working:

- **Manual Checking.** Visit search engines and type in the keywords. Assess the results. You might consider keeping a record of the search engine, keyword(s), and page ranking.
- **Web Analytics.** Every visitor to your website, including those who were referred by search engines, is recorded in your website log files. A **website log** consists of one or more text files that record each visit to your site, capturing information about your visitors and about referring websites. You can discover whether your keywords are successful and which search engines are being used by analyzing your log. You can also determine the days and times that your site is visited, the operating systems and browsers being used, the paths that visitors take through the site, and much more. The log is a rather cryptic text file. See [Figure 13.1](#) for a partial log.

---

**Figure 13.1 A website log file contains useful information, but can be difficult to read.**

---

```
#Software: Microsoft Internet Information Services 7.0
#Version: 1.0
#Date: 2018-07-13 09:50:57
#Fields: date time s-sitename s-computername s-ip cs-method cs-uri-stem
cs-uri-query s-port cs-username c-ip cs-version cs(User-Agent) cs-
(Referer) cs-host sc-status sc-substatus sc-win32-status sc-bytes cs-
bytes time-taken
2018-07-13 09:50:57 W3SVC724 ORF-PREMIUM1B 65.182.100.116 GET
/chapter5/index.htm - 80 - 74.6.73.82 HTTP/1.0 Mozilla/5.0+(compatible;
+Yahoo!+Slurp;+http://help.yahoo.com/help/us/ysearch/slurp) -
webdevfoundations.net 304 0 0 232 256 78
#Software: Microsoft Internet Information Services 7.0
#Version: 1.0
#Date: 2018-07-13 10:16:55
#Fields: date time s-sitename s-computername s-ip cs-method cs-uri-stem
cs-uri-query s-port cs-username c-ip cs-version cs(User-Agent) cs-
(Referer) cs-host sc-status sc-substatus sc-win32-status sc-bytes cs-
bytes time-taken
2018-07-13 10:16:55 W3SVC724 ORF-PREMIUM1B 65.182.100.116 GET
/fireworks8/page3.10.gif - 80 - 65.55.212.239 HTTP/1.0 membot-media/1.0
(+http://search.msn.com/msnbot.htm) - Webdevfoundations.net 200 0 0
25665 283 406
```

Web analytics software can analyze your log file and create easy-to-use charts and reports to provide you with information to help you improve and optimize your website for your target visitor. If you have your own website and domain name, many web host providers allow free access to the log and may even run web analysis reports as part of the monthly hosting fee. By checking information in the log, you can determine not only what keywords are working, but also which search engines your visitors are using. See [Figure 13.2](#) for information from a log analysis report listing the top 10 keywords used by actual web visitors when searching Google to find a particular website.

---

**Figure 13.2 Partial log file analysis report**

---

Keyword	Visits	Pages Per Visit	Average Time on Site
web design best practices	27,097	1.75	00:01:17
web design best practice	21,773	6.08	00:07:32
web development and design foundations	15,751	5.71	00:04:56
basics of web design: HTML5 & CSS3	14,346	5.96	00:05:43
html5 basics	6,859	5.32	00:04:05
basic html5 template	4,943	5.98	00:06:24
basic html5 page	4,023	8.20	00:05:23
html5 basic code	3,198	4.17	00:05:02
basic html5 tags	3,141	5.06	00:04:46
html5 basics pdf	3,120	4.94	00:04:27

Website log analysis is a powerful marketing tool because you can determine exactly how visitors are finding your site. This lets you know which keywords are working and which are not. Perhaps the developers of this website might consider adding additional content related to the popular keywords.

Google offers a free web analytics service at <https://marketingplatform.google.com/about/analytics/>. The type of information provided includes:

- Audience (including a geographical map and browser information)
- Traffic Sources (such as referring sites, keywords, and AdWords)
- Content (including landing pages, paths through the site, and exit pages)
- Conversions (tracks business objectives)

## 13.7 Link Popularity

**Link popularity** is a rating determined by a search engine based on the number of sites that link to a particular website and the quality of those sites. For example, a link from a well-known site such as Oprah Winfrey's website (<http://www.oprah.com>) would be considered a higher quality link than one from your friend's home page on a free web server. The link popularity of your website can determine its order in the search engine results page. One way to check which sites link to yours is to analyze your log file. Another method is to visit particular search engines and check for yourself. At Google, type "link:[yourdomainname.com](http://yourdomainname.com)" into the search box and the sites that link to [yourdomainname.com](http://yourdomainname.com) will be listed. Search engines are not the only tools you can use to bring visitors to your website. The next section looks at some other options.

## 13.8 Social Media Optimization

Reach out to your current and potential website visitors with **social media optimization (SMO)** by creating content of value that is easily sharable. The benefits of SMO include increased awareness of your brand and/or site, along with an increase in the number of inbound links (which can help with SEO). Social bookmarking sites such as Digg (<https://digg.com>), Reddit (<https://reddit.com>), and Pinterest (<https://pinterest.com>) provide a way for people to store, share, and categorize website content. Make it easy for your visitors to add your site to social bookmarking sites and social networking sites like Twitter and Facebook. You can code hyperlinks to these yourself or use a content-sharing service such as AddThis (<https://www.addthis.com>).

Visit the following resources for more information about SMO:

- The Beginners Guide to Social Media:

<https://moz.com/beginners-guide-to-social-media>

- The 5 NEW Rules of Social Media Optimization (SMO):

<http://www.rohitbhargava.com/2010/08/the-5-new-rules-of-social-media-optimization-smo.html>

- Free Tools for Social Media Optimization:

<http://www.socialmediaexaminer.com/social-media-seo/>

## Blogs

**Chapter 1** introduced blogs, which are easily updatable and readily available journals on the Web. The power of the blog to share information and elicit comments is being used by businesses of various types (ranging from Nike to Adobe) to build and expand customer relationships. Popular blog hosting sites include Google's Blogger (<http://blogger.com>) and WordPress (<http://wordpress.com>). To see a blog in action, visit this textbook's blog at <http://webdevfoundations.blogspot.com>.

## Social Networking

Join groups on social networking sites such as Facebook (<https://www.facebook.com>) or LinkedIn (<https://www.linkedin.com>) to find and connect with current and potential visitors. Create portable content that promotes your website and publish it on YouTube (<https://www.youtube.com>), SlideShare (<https://www.slideshare.net>), Instagram (<https://www.instagram.com>), and other similar sites. Think of your own use of social media—you are probably more likely to follow a post that includes a photo or a video. Hubspot.com (<http://bit.ly/wdadf1>) kept track of their video posts and found that the following lengths generated the most visitor engagement: two minute videos on YouTube, one minute videos on Facebook, and 30 second videos on Instagram. Animoto (<https://animoto.com>) and Adobe Spark (<https://spark.adobe.com>) are easy to use to quickly generate promotional videos.

Be active on microblogging sites such as Twitter (<https://twitter.com>). Twitter is not limited to personal use. The business world has also discovered the marketing reach that Twitter can provide. Visit <https://business.twitter.com/basics> for insights on how to use Twitter to promote your business and communicate with customers. Let viral marketing go to work for you as current and potential visitors find and share your content,

which should increase awareness and bring new and returning visitors to your site.

## 13.9 Other Site Promotion Activities

There are a number of other ways you can promote your website, including **Quick Response (QR) codes**, affiliate programs, banner ads, banner exchanges, reciprocal link agreements, newsletters, personal recommendations, traditional media advertising, and placement of the URL on all promotional materials.

### Quick Response (QR) Codes

A QR code is a two-dimensional barcode in a square pattern that is readable by a smartphone camera scan application or a QR barcode reader. The data encoded can be text, a telephone number, or even the URL of a website. There are many free online QR code generators, including <https://qrcode.kaywa.com> and <https://www.qrstuff.com>. Free apps, such as ScanLife and QR Code Scanner, are available for smartphones that use the camera feature to scan the QR code, typically a URL for a website, which is then displayed by the smartphone's web browser. QR codes are useful for promoting a website; include it on your business card or even a T-shirt! The QR code in [Figure 13.3](#) displays the home page of the textbook's website (<http://webdevfoundations.net>).

---

**Figure 13.3** QR code for <http://webdevfoundations.net>

---



## Affiliate Programs

The essence of **affiliate programs** is that one website (the affiliate) promotes another website's products or services (the merchant) in exchange for a commission. Both websites benefit from this association. [Amazon.com](#) reportedly began the first affiliate marketing program and its [Amazon.com](#) Associates program is still going strong. By joining this program, your website can feature books and other products with a link to the Amazon website. If one of your visitors makes a purchase, you get a commission. Amazon benefits because you have delivered an interested visitor who may buy items now or in the future. Your site benefits from the prestige of being affiliated with a known site such as Amazon and the potential for income from the program.

View the CJ Affiliate website (<https://www.cj.com>) to see a program that matches websites with potential affiliate programs. Their service allows publishers (website owners and developers) to choose from a wide range of advertisers and affiliate programs. The benefits to web developers include the opportunity to partner with leading advertisers, earn additional revenue from website visitors or ad space, and view real-time tracking and reporting. Visit [AssociatePrograms.com](https://www.associateprograms.com) (<https://www.associateprograms.com>) for a directory of affiliate, associate, and referral programs.

## Banner Ads

A **banner ad** is typically a graphic image that is used to announce and advertise the name or identity of a site. Banner ads are image hyperlinks that display the advertised site when clicked. You probably see them many times as you surf the Web. They've been around for quite some time; *HotWired*, the first commercial web magazine, introduced the first banner ad in 1994 to promote AT&T.

There is no official size for a banner ad. However, the Interactive Advertising Bureau (IAB) provides guidelines for standard ad dimensions. Dimensions have traditionally been pixel-based, such as a leaderboard ( $728 \times 90$  pixels) and a wide skyscraper ( $160 \times 600$  pixels). The IAB is overhauling the standards and planning to move to aspect-ratio sizes that work well on multiple devices (<https://www.iab.com/newadportfolio>). The cost to display your banner ad can vary. Some websites charge by the impression (usually in terms of cost per thousand impressions, or CPM). Others charge for click-throughs only (when the banner ad is clicked). Most search engines sell ads and will display your ad on a results page for a keyword that relates to your site.

## Banner Exchange

While the details of **banner exchange** programs vary, the idea is that you agree to show banners from other sites and they will show your banner. Information on banner exchanges may be found at The Banner Exchange (<http://www.thebannerexchange.com>). Banner exchanges can be beneficial to all parties because of the free advertising.

## Reciprocal Link Agreements

A **reciprocal link agreement** is usually between two sites with related or complementary content. You agree to link to each other. The result should be more visitors for each site. If you find a site that you'd like to set up a reciprocal link agreement with, contact its webmaster (usually by e-mail) and ask! Because some search engines partially determine rankings based on the number of quality links to a website, a well-placed reciprocal link can help both sites.

## Newsletters

A **newsletter** can bring return visitors to your site. The first step is to collect e-mail addresses. Allow website visitors to opt-in to receive your newsletter by filling out a form that typically collects the visitor's name and e-mail address.

Offer your visitors some perceived value—timely information on a topic, discounts, and so on. Send out the newsletter with fresh, compelling content regularly. This helps to remind your previous visitors about your site. They may even forward the newsletter to a colleague and bring a new visitor to your site.

## Sticky Site Features

Updating your website often and keeping your content fresh will encourage visitors to return to your site. How can you keep them there? Make your website sticky. **Stickiness** is the ability to keep visitors at your site. Display your interesting and compelling content along with features that encourage stickiness, such as news updates, polls and surveys, and chats or message boards.

## Personal Recommendations

While forwarding a newsletter is a form of **personal recommendation**, some sites make it even easier to tell a friend about them. They offer a link that is used with a phrase such as "E-mail this article", "Send this page to a friend", or "Tell a colleague about this site". This personal recommendation brings a new visitor who is likely to be interested in the content of your site.

## Website Forum Postings

Subscribe to forums related to your website content. Do not reply to postings with an advertisement of your site. Instead, reply to postings when your response can offer assistance or advice. Include a signature line with your website URL. Be subtle! You can get banned from some forums if the moderator perceives that you are merely advertising. However, by offering friendly, helpful advice in a forum you can market your website in a subtle, positive manner at no cost other than your Internet connection.

## Traditional Media Ads and Existing Marketing Materials

Don't forget to mention your website in any print, TV, or radio ads that your organization runs. Include the URL of your website on all brochures, stationery, and business cards. This will help make your website easy to find by your current and potential customers. Depending upon your target audience, also consider including a QR code for your website on printed materials.

### Checkpoint 13.2

1. Are the results returned by various search engines really different? Choose a place, music group, or movie to search for. Enter the same search terms, such as "Door County" into the following three search engines: Google, Yahoo!, and Bing. List the URLs of the top three sites returned by each. Comment on your findings.
2. How can you determine whether your website has been indexed by a search engine? How can you determine which search engines are being used to find your site?

**3.** List four website promotion methods that do not use search engines. Which would be your first choice? Why?

## 13.10 Serving Dynamic Content with Inline Frames

How does a website display a banner ad on its home page that is hosted and controlled by another organization? How can a web page easily display a variety of multimedia clips? How are the potential customer referrals provided by the [Amazon.com](#) Associates program initiated and tracked? How does Google facilitate Ad Sense advertisement displays and click-throughs on third-party websites? At the time this was written, the answer to all of these questions is inline frames. Inline frames are widely used on the Web for a variety of marketing and promotional purposes, including displaying banner ads, playing multimedia that may be hosted on a separate web server, and serving content for associate and partner sites to display. The advantage is separation of control. The dynamic content—such as the banner ad or multimedia clip—can be changed by a project team without allowing them access to change the rest of the website. For example, in the case of the banner ad, a third-party organization (such as DoubleClick) has control over the ad content, but is prevented from updating the other items on the page. This is accomplished by configuring the dynamic content (in the form of banner ads) within an inline frame. Let's explore how inline frames are configured.

### Iframe Element

An **inline frame**, also called a floating frame, can be placed on the body of any web page, similar to the way you would place an image on a web page. The **iframe element** configures an inline frame that displays the contents of another web page within your web page document, which is

referred to as *nested browsing*. The iframe element begins with the <iframe> tag and ends with the </iframe> tag. Fallback content that should be displayed if the browser does not support inline frames (such as a text description or hyperlink to the actual web page) should be placed between the tags. Figure 13.4 shows the use of an inline frame (chapter13/dcwildflowers/index.html in the student files). The white background area is the inline frame; it displays another web page that contains the image of the flower and a text description.

---

**Figure 13.4 The white scrolling area on the page is an inline frame that displays a separate web page**

---



The code for the inline frame that creates this effect is

```
<iframe src="trillium.html" title="Trillium Wild Flower"
        height="160" width="350" name="flower">
    Description of the lovely Spring wild flower, the
    <a href="trillium.html" target="_blank">Trillium</a>
</iframe>
```

The screenshots shown in Figure 13.5 are of the same web page with different pages displayed in the inline frame area.

**Figure 13.5** The same page with different content in the inline frame area



Table 13.1 lists iframe element attributes. Commonly used attributes are shown in bold.

**Table 13.1** Commonly used iframe element attributes

Attribute	Description
<b>src</b>	URL of the web page to be displayed in the inline frame
<b>height</b>	Inline frame height in pixels
<b>width</b>	Inline frame width in pixels

Attribute	Description
<code>id</code>	Optional; text name, alphanumeric, beginning with a letter, no spaces; the value must be unique and not used for other id values on the same web page document
<code>name</code>	Optional; text name, alphanumeric, beginning with a letter, no spaces; this attribute names the inline frame
<code>sandbox</code>	Optional; disallow/disable features such as plug-ins, scripts, forms
<code>title</code>	Optional; specifies a brief text description that may be displayed by browsers or assistive technologies

## Video in an Inline Frame

YouTube (<https://www.youtube.com>) is a popular website for sharing videos for both personal and business use. When a video is uploaded to YouTube, the creator can choose to share their video with others. It's easy to display a YouTube video on your web page; just select Share and then copy and paste the HTML into your web page source code. The code uses an iframe element to display a web page file within your web page. YouTube detects the browser and operating system of your web page visitor and serves the content in an appropriate video format.

---

## Hands-On Practice 13.1

In this Hands-On Practice, you will launch a text editor and create a web page that displays a YouTube video within an iframe element.

Video Note

***Configure an Inline frame***

This example embeds the video found at <https://youtu.be/2CuOug8KDWI>. You can choose to display this video or select a different video. The process is to visit the YouTube page for the video, select Share, and copy the URL provided. Take note of the video identifier, which is after the / symbol. In this example, the video identifier is `2CuOug8KDWI`.

Use the chapter13/template.html file as a starting point and configure a web page with the heading “Inline Frame” and an iframe element that displays the video. Code the src attribute to display <http://www.youtube.com/embed/> followed by the video identifier. In this example, set the src attribute to the value <http://www.youtube.com/embed/2CuOug8KDWI>.

Configure a hyperlink to the YouTube video page as fallback content. The code to display the video is

```
<iframe  
src="http://www.youtube.com/embed/2CuOug8KDWI"  
width="640"  
height="395">  
    View the <a  
    href="https://youtu.be/2CuOug8KDWI">YouTube  
    Video</a>  
</iframe>
```

Save your page as `iframe.html` and display it in a browser. Test your page in several browsers. Compare your work to `chapter13/13.1/iframe.html` in the student files.

---

# Chapter Summary

This chapter introduced concepts related to promoting your website. The activities involved in submitting websites to search engines were discussed, along with techniques for optimizing your website for search engines. Other website promotion activities, such as social media optimization, QR codes, banner ads, and newsletters, were also introduced. At this point, you should have an idea of what is involved in the other side of website development—marketing and promotion. You can help the marketing staff by creating websites that work with search engines by following the suggestions in this chapter. For examples, chapter links, and updated information visit the textbook website at <https://webdevfoundations.net>

# Key Terms

[\*\*<iframe>\*\*](#)①

[\*\*affiliate programs\*\*](#)①

[\*\*banner ad\*\*](#)①

[\*\*banner exchange\*\*](#)①

[\*\*click-through rate \(CTR\)\*\*](#)①

[\*\*cost per click \(CPC\)\*\*](#)①

[\*\*cost per thousand impressions \(CPM\)\*\*](#)①

[\*\*database\*\*](#)①

[\*\*description meta tag\*\*](#)①

[\*\*iframe element\*\*](#)①

[\*\*inline frame\*\*](#)①

[\*\*keywords\*\*](#)①

[\*\*link popularity\*\*](#)①

[\*\*meta tag\*\*](#)

[\*\*newsletter\*\*](#)①

[\*\*personal recommendation\*\*](#)①

[\*\*Quick Response \(QR\) codes\*\*](#)①

[\*\*reciprocal link agreement\*\*](#)①

[\*\*robot\*\*](#)①

[\*\*robots meta tag\*\*](#)①

[\*\*search engine\*\*](#)①

[\*\*search engine optimization \(SEO\)\*\*](#)①

[\*\*search engine results page \(SERP\)\*\*](#)①

[\*\*search form\*\*](#)①

[\*\*search results\*\*](#)①

[\*\*Sitemap\*\*](#)①

[\*\*social media optimization \(SMO\)\*\*](#)①

[\*\*stickiness\*\*](#)①

**web analytics** 

**website log** 

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following contains information about which keywords are bringing visitors to your website?
  - a. web position log
  - b. website log
  - c. search engine file
  - d. none of the above
2. In which section of a web page should meta tags be placed?
  - a. head
  - b. body
  - c. comment
  - d. CSS
3. What is a first step for search engine optimization?
  - a. Join an affiliate program.
  - b. Start a blog.
  - c. Add a description meta tag to each page.
  - d. Create a QR code.
4. In which of the following does one website promote another site's products or services in exchange for a commission?
  - a. newsletter
  - b. affiliate program
  - c. search engine optimization
  - d. stickiness
5. Which of the following is a collection of information which is organized so that its contents can easily be accessed, managed, and updated?

- a. SERP
  - b. database
  - c. robot
  - d. QR Code
- 6. Which of the following is a rating determined by a search engine based on the number of links to a particular site and the qualities of those links?
  - a. line checking
  - b. reciprocal linking
  - c. link popularity
  - d. social media optimization
- 7. Which of the following is the most popular search engine?
  - a. Iframe
  - b. Yahoo!
  - c. Google
  - d. Bing
- 8. Which of the following is a promotion method whose main purpose is to bring return visitors to your website?
  - a. newsletter
  - b. banner exchange
  - c. TV ad
  - d. none of the above
- 9. Which of the following is a term for creating content that is easily sharable?
  - a. search engine optimization
  - b. social media optimization
  - c. link popularity
  - d. search engine optimization
- 10. Typically, how long can it take between the time you submit your website and the time it is listed in a search engine?
  - a. several hours
  - b. several weeks

- c. several months
- d. a year

## Fill in the Blank

11. The ability to keep web page visitors at your site is called \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Use \_\_\_\_\_ to indicate that you do not want a web page to be indexed.
13. Frequently used information research resources are \_\_\_\_\_.
14. In addition to a search engine listing, a website can be promoted by \_\_\_\_\_.
15. Two-dimensional barcodes that can be scanned by smartphones to access a website are called \_\_\_\_\_ codes.

# Hands-On Exercises

1. Practice writing description meta tags. For each scenario described here, write the HTML to create an appropriate meta tag that includes keywords which may be used by visitors to search for the business.
  - a. Lanwell Publishing is a small independent publisher of English as a second language (ESL) books used for secondary school and adult continuing education learners. The website offers textbooks and teacher's manuals.
  - b. RevGear is a small specialty truck and auto repair shop in Schaumburg, Illinois. The company sponsors a local drag racing team.
  - c. Morris Accounting is a small accounting firm that specializes in tax return preparation and accounting for small businesses. The owner, Greg Morris, is a CPA and Certified Financial Planner.
2. Choose one of the company scenarios listed in [Hands-On Exercise 1](#) (Lanwell Publishing, RevGear, or Morris Accounting). Create a home page for the site that includes a description meta tag, appropriate page titles, and keywords used appropriately in headings. Place an e-mail link to yourself on the web page. Save the page as scenario.html.
3. Choose one of the company scenarios listed in [Hands-On Exercise 1](#). Create a web page that lists at least three possible activities that could be used to promote the site in addition to search engine submission. For each activity, explain why it could be helpful for the website. Place an e-mail link to yourself on the web page. Save the page as promotion.html.

**4.** Write the HTML and CSS to create a page named inline.html that is configured to display the heading "Web Promotion Techniques", an inline frame that is 400 pixels wide and 200 pixels high, and an e-mail link with your name. Code a web page named marketing.html that lists your three favorite web promotion techniques. Configure the inline frame to display the marketing.html file.

# Web Research

1. This chapter discussed a number of website promotion techniques. Choose one technique described in the chapter to research. Obtain information from at least three different websites about the promotion technique you chose. Create a web page that lists at least five hints or facts about the promotion method, along with helpful links that provide additional information on the hint or fact. Provide the URLs of the websites that you used as resources. Place your name in an e-mail link on the web page.
2. Using a single page website for a small business or an event is trendy but offers challenges for search engine optimization. Visit the following resources as a starting point as you search for three recommendations for single page website SEO:
  - <https://www.awwwards.com/seo-tricks-for-one-page-websites.html>
  - <https://yoast.com/one-page-website-seo/>
  - <https://www.99signals.com/single-page-websites-seo/>
  - [https://www.popwebdesign.net/popart\\_blog/en/2018/05/how-to-optimize-a-one-page-website/](https://www.popwebdesign.net/popart_blog/en/2018/05/how-to-optimize-a-one-page-website/)

Create a web page that describes your findings. Provide URLs of the websites you used as resources. Place your name in an e-mail link on the web page.

# Focus on Web Design

Explore how to design your website so that it is optimized for search engines (search engine optimization, or SEO). Visit the following sites as a starting point as you search for three SEO tips or hints:

- Old Skool Search Engine Success, Step-by-Step:

<https://www.sitepoint.com/article/skool-search-engine-success>

- The 10 Most Important SEO Tips You Need to Know:

<https://neilpatel.com/blog/10-most-important-seo-tips-you-need-to-know/>

- The Definitive Guide to SEO in 2019:

<https://backlinko.com/seo-this-year>

Write a one-page report that describes three tips which you found interesting or potentially useful. Cite the URLs of the resources that you used.

---

## Website Case Study Meta Tags to Promote Websites

Each of the following case studies continues throughout most of the text. This chapter case study focuses on description meta tags.

JavaJam Coffee Bar

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the JavaJam Coffee Bar case study. Use the [Chapter 9](#) JavaJam website as a starting point for this case study. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this JavaJam case study.
2. Write a description of the JavaJam Coffee Bar business.
3. Code a description meta tag on each page in the website.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called javajam13. Copy all of the files from your [Chapter 9](#) javajam9 folder into the javajam13 folder.

**TASK 2: WRITE A DESCRIPTION.** Review the JavaJam pages that you created in earlier chapters. Write a brief paragraph that describes the JavaJam site. Edit the paragraph down to a description that is only a few sentences and less than 25 words in length.

**TASK 3: UPDATE EACH PAGE.** Open each page in a text editor and add a description meta tag to the head section. Save the files and test them in a browser. They will not look different, but they are much friendlier to search engines!

## Fish Creek Animal Clinic

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Fish Creek Animal Clinic case study. Use the [Chapter 9](#) Fish Creek website as a starting point for this case study. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Fish Creek case study.
2. Write a description of the Fish Creek Animal Clinic business.
3. Code a description meta tag on each page in the website.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called fishcreek13. Copy all of the files from your [Chapter 9](#) fishcreek9 folder into the fishcreek13 folder.

**TASK 2: WRITE A DESCRIPTION.** Review the Fish Creek pages that you created in earlier chapters. Write a brief paragraph that describes the Fish Creek site. Edit the paragraph down to a description that is only a few sentences and less than 25 words in length.

**TASK 3: UPDATE EACH PAGE.** Open each page in a text editor and add a description meta tag to the head section. Save the files and test them in a browser. They will not look different, but they are much friendlier to search engines!

## Pacific Trails Resort

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Pacific Trails Resort case study. Use the [Chapter 9](#) Pacific Trails website as a starting point for this case study. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Pacific Trails case study.
2. Write a description of the Pacific Trails Resort business.
3. Code a description meta tag on each page in the website.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called pacific13. Copy all of the files from your [Chapter 9](#) pacific9 folder into the pacific13 folder.

**TASK 2: WRITE A DESCRIPTION.** Review the Pacific Trails pages that you created in earlier chapters. Write a brief paragraph that describes the Pacific Trails site. Edit the paragraph down to a description that is only a few sentences and less than 25 words in length.

**TASK 3: UPDATE EACH PAGE.** Open each page in a text editor and add a description meta tag to the head section. Save the files and test them in a browser. They will not look different, but they are much friendlier to search engines!

## Path of Light Yoga Studio

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Path of Light Yoga Studio case study. Use the [Chapter 9](#) Path of Light Yoga Studio website as a starting point for this case study. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Path of Light Yoga Studio case study.
2. Write a description of the Path of Light Yoga Studio business.
3. Code a description meta tag on each page in the website.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called yoga13. Copy all of the files from your [Chapter 9](#) yoga9

folder into the yoga13 folder.

**TASK 2: WRITE A DESCRIPTION.** Review the Path of Light Yoga Studio pages that you created in earlier chapters. Write a brief paragraph that describes the Path of Light Yoga Studio site. Edit the paragraph down to a description that is only a few sentences and less than 25 words in length.

**TASK 3: UPDATE EACH PAGE.** Open each page in a text editor and add a description meta tag to the head section. Save the files and test them in a browser. They will not look different, but they are much friendlier to search engines!

## Web Project

See [Chapter 5](#) for an introduction to the Web Project case study. Your task is to add an appropriate description meta tag to each page in the website.

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

1. Review the Project Topic Approval document that you created in the [Chapter 9](#) case study. Take a moment to view the pages that you created in earlier chapters. Write a brief paragraph that describes the Web Project website.
2. Launch a text editor and edit the web pages in the project folder. Add a description meta tag to each page. Save your pages and test them in a browser. They will not look different, but they are now friendlier to search engines!

## 14

# A Brief Look at JavaScript and jQuery

---





## Chapter Objectives

---

IN THIS CHAPTER, YOU WILL LEARN HOW TO . . .

- Describe common uses of JavaScript in web pages
- Describe the purpose of the Document Object Model (DOM) and list some common events
- Code JavaScript methods, properties, event handlers, and event listeners
- Use JavaScript variables, operators, and the if control structure
- Create a basic JavaScript form data validation script
- Describe common uses of jQuery
- Describe how to obtain jQuery
- Use jQuery selectors and methods
- Configure an image gallery with jQuery
- Describe the purpose of jQuery plugins

If a **popup window mysteriously appears while you are surfing the Web**, you're experiencing the effects of JavaScript. JavaScript is a scripting language and JavaScript commands can be included in an HTML file. Using JavaScript, you can incorporate techniques and effects that will make your web pages come alive! You can display an alert box containing an important message for the user. You can display an image when a user moves the mouse pointer over a link and much more. jQuery is a JavaScript library that provides an easier way to code interactive effects with JavaScript. This chapter introduces JavaScript and jQuery while

providing some examples that you can build on to create your own web pages.

## 14.1 Overview of JavaScript

There are a variety of methods for adding interactivity to a web page. As you learned in [Chapter 6](#), CSS can be used to achieve a hover effect as you position your mouse pointer over a hypertext link. CSS can also be used for interactive effects, including an image gallery and the new CSS3 transitions and transforms. In [Chapter 11](#), you saw examples of how JavaScript can be used to add interactivity and functionality to web pages.

So, what is JavaScript? It's an object-based, client-side scripting language interpreted by a web browser. JavaScript is considered to be **object-based** because it's used to work with the objects associated with a web page **document**: the browser window, the document itself, and elements such as forms, images, and links. Because JavaScript is interpreted by a browser, it is considered to be a client-side scripting language. A **scripting language** is a type of programming language, but no need to worry! You don't have to be a computer programmer to understand this.

Let's review clients and servers. In [Chapter 10](#), we discussed hosting a website on a web server. As you learned, a web host provider allows you to transfer your files to the web server and stores your website. Visitors to your site (also called users) are able to point their web browsers to your website using the URL provided by your web host provider. As you may recall, the user's web browser is called a client.

JavaScript is interpreted by the client. This means that the JavaScript code, embedded in the HTML document, will be rendered by the browser. The server's job is to provide the HTML document. The web browser's job is to interpret the code in the HTML file and display the web page accordingly. Because all the processing is performed by the

client (in this case, the web browser), this is referred to as **client-side processing**. There are programming languages that are executed on the server, which are referred to as server-side programming languages. **Server-side processing** may involve sending e-mail, storing items in a database, or tracking items in a shopping cart. In [Chapter 9](#), you learned how to set the action of a form to point to a server-side script.

In summary, JavaScript is an object-based, client-side scripting language interpreted by a web browser. The JavaScript code is embedded in the HTML file and the web browser interprets it and displays the results as needed.

## 14.2 The Development of JavaScript

There is a popular misconception that Java and JavaScript are the same. Java and JavaScript are completely separate languages with very little in common. Java is a robust object-oriented programming language that can be used to build large applications for businesses, such as inventory control systems and payroll systems. Sun Microsystems developed Java in the 1990s and designed the language to run on an operating system such as Windows or Unix. JavaScript, developed initially by Brendan Eich at Netscape, was originally called LiveScript. When Netscape collaborated with Sun Microsystems on modifications to the language, it was renamed JavaScript. However, JavaScript is not the same as the Java programming language. JavaScript is much simpler than Java. The two languages have more differences than similarities.

## 14.3 Popular Uses for JavaScript

The uses of JavaScript range from providing some “bells and whistles,” such as simple animation and fancy menus, to functionality, such as popping up a new window that contains product information and detecting errors in a form. Let’s look at some examples of some of these uses.

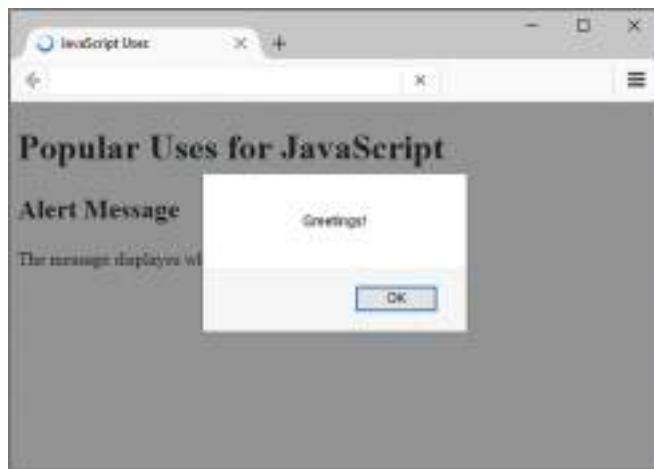
### Alert Message

An alert message is a popular technique used to draw the user’s attention to something that is happening. For instance, a retail website may use an alert message to list errors in an order form or remind the user about an upcoming sale. [Figure 14.1](#) illustrates an alert message that thanks the user for visiting the page. This alert message is displayed when the user is leaving the website and going to a new site.

---

**Figure 14.1 Alert message is displayed when the user leaves the website**

---



Notice that the user must click the OK button before the next page will load. This effectively grabs the user's attention, but it quickly becomes annoying if it is overused.

## Popup Windows

And speaking of annoying, a **popup window** is a web browser window that may appear when you interact with a web page by clicking on an image or hovering over a page area, or it may seem to appear somewhat mysteriously. This technique has some legitimate uses, such as popping up an information window that contains a larger picture and description of a product when the user clicks on the product in the main window. Unfortunately, the use of popup windows has been so abused that most browsers allow users to disable popup windows. This also means that the useful popup windows are not displayed. [Figure 14.2](#) shows a popup window that appears when the user clicks the link on the main page.

---

**Figure 14.2** The smaller popup window appears when the user clicks on the link in the larger window.

---



---

Screenshots of Mozilla Firefox. Courtesy of Mozilla Foundation.

---

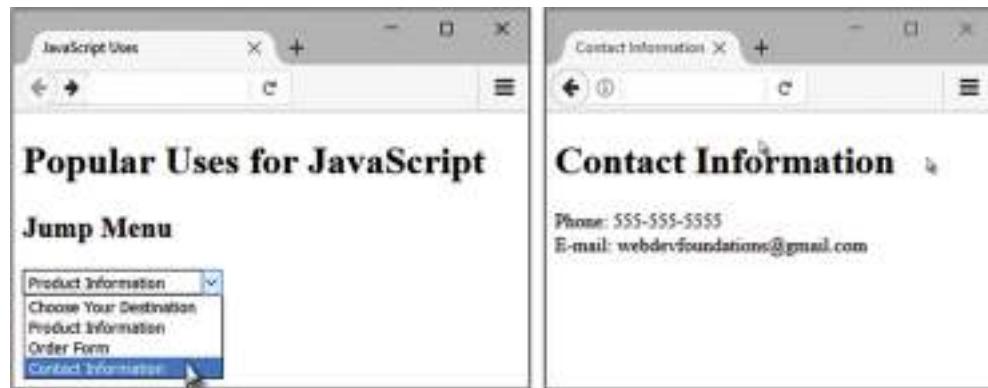
## Jump Menus

JavaScript can also be used to create **jump menus** based on a select list as introduced in [Chapter 9](#). The user can select a web page from a select list and click a button to load the selected Web page. [Figure 14.3](#) shows this technique.

---

**Figure 14.3 Jump menu that shows the selection of the Contact Information menu option**

---



In this example, the user selected the Contact Information option from the select list. The Contact Information page will load in the browser window.

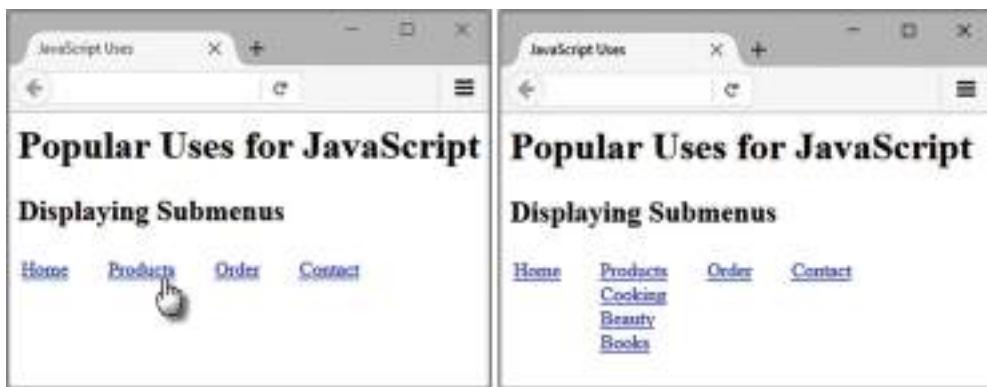
## Mouse Movement Techniques

JavaScript can be used to perform a task based on mouse movement in the browser window. One popular technique is to display a submenu when the user hovers the mouse pointer over a menu item. [Figure 14.4](#) shows this technique.

---

**Figure 14.4 The submenu is displayed when the user hovers over the Products menu item**

---

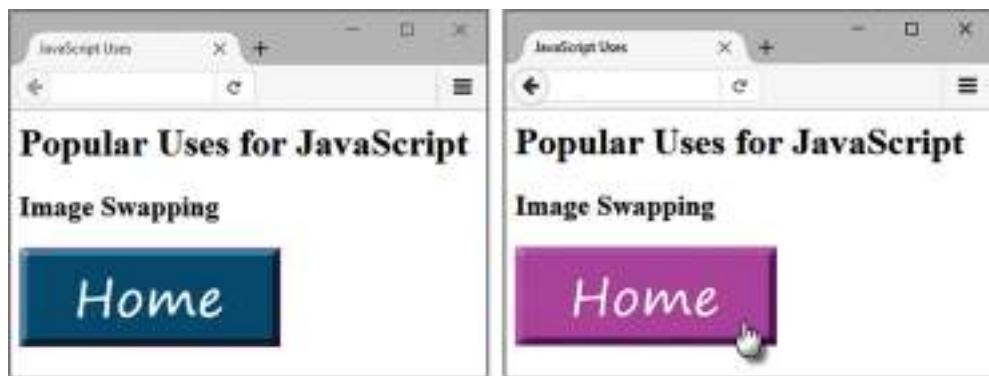


The window on the left shows the main menu and the window on the right shows the submenu displayed when the user hovers the mouse pointer over the Products menu item. When the user moves the mouse away from the Products menu item, the submenu disappears. Mouse movements also trigger **image swapping**, often referred to as rollover images. An image is displayed on the web page when the page initially loads. When the user positions the mouse pointer on top of the image, the original image is swapped for a new image. When the user moves the mouse away from the image, the original image reappears. **Figure 14.5** shows the image-swapping technique. For many years, this technique was commonly used for navigation button bars. However, modern web developers typically use CSS to configure similar effects with the `:hover` pseudo-class, such as changing the background color or background image of an element.

---

**Figure 14.5** The original image is on the left and the swapped image is on the right with the mouse pointer hovering on the image

---



In this chapter, we will touch on some of the highlights and concepts involved in using JavaScript. We will create some scripts to demonstrate the use of the alert message, mouseovers, and some of the techniques involved in checking a form for input errors. This chapter offers just a taste of JavaScript, but it will give you an overview of how some of the techniques are developed.

## 14.4 Adding JavaScript to a Web Page

JavaScript code is embedded in an HTML web page and is interpreted by the web browser. This means that the web browser is capable of understanding the code and running it. Most modern browsers include developer options that provide JavaScript error messages generated when running the code. The examples in this textbook use the Mozilla Firefox browser. If you have not already installed Mozilla Firefox on your computer, visit <https://www.mozilla.com/firefox> for a free download.

### Script Element

When JavaScript code is embedded in an HTML document, it needs to be contained, or encapsulated, in a script element. The JavaScript is typed between the opening `<script>` tag and the closing `</script>` tag. Web pages are rendered by the browser from top to bottom. The impact on our scripts is that they will execute wherever they are located in the document. The script element can be coded within the head element or the body element.

### Alert Message Box

The alert message box is displayed using the `alert()` method. The structure is

```
alert("message to be displayed");
```

Each JavaScript command line generally ends with a semicolon (;). Also, JavaScript is **case-sensitive**, which means that there's a difference between uppercase and lowercase characters and it will be important to be precise when typing JavaScript code.

---

Video Note

*JavaScript Message Box*

---

## Hands-On Practice 14.1

In this Hands-On Practice, you will create a simple script with an alert message box. Launch a text editor and type the following HTML and JavaScript code. Note that `alert()` does not contain a space between alert and the opening parenthesis.

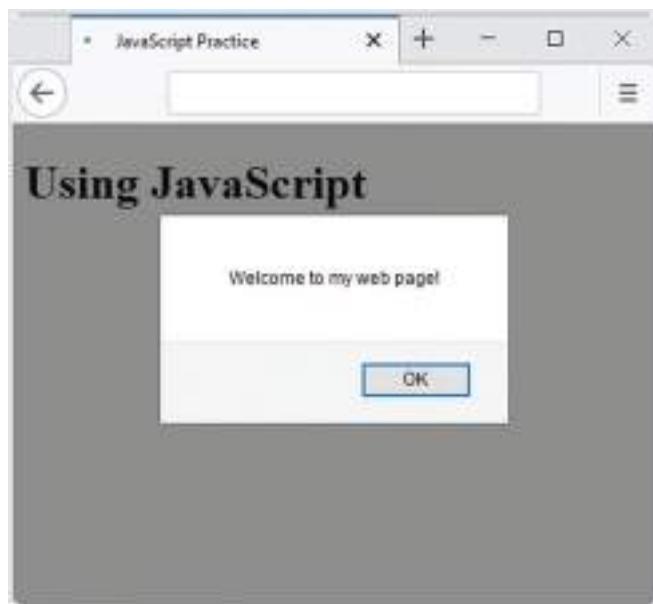
```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
  <title>JavaScript Practice</title>
  <meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
  <h1>Using JavaScript</h1>
  <script>
    alert("Welcome to my web page!");
  </script>
  <h2>When does this display?</h2>
</body>
</html>
```

Save this file as alert.html. Display your file in a browser. Notice that the first heading appears and then the alert message pops up (see [Figure 14.6](#)). After you click the OK button, the second heading appears. This illustrates the top-down processing of the web page and the embedded JavaScript. The JavaScript block is between the headings and that's where the alert message appears as well.

---

**Figure 14.6** JavaScript displays the alert message box (alert.html)

---



## Practice with Debugging

Sometimes your JavaScript code does not work the first time you test it. When this happens, you'll need to **debug** the code—find the errors and correct them.

Let's look at a debugging technique. Edit the JavaScript alert to introduce a typing error:

```
aalert("Welcome to my web page!");
```

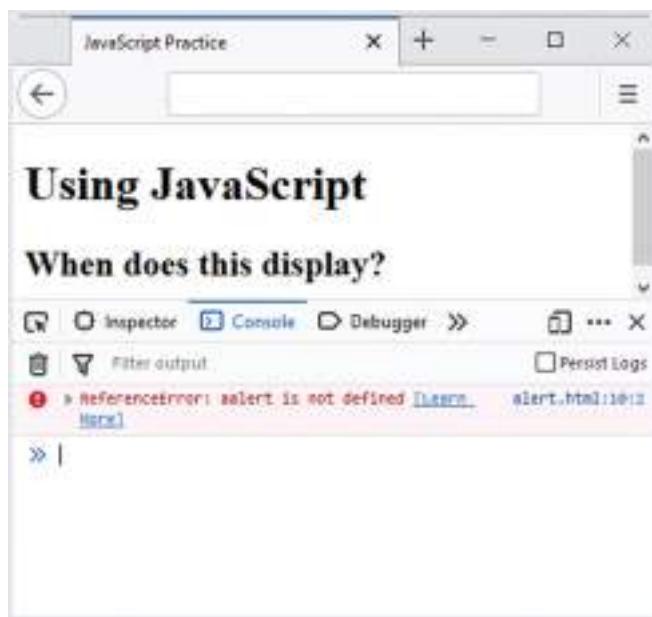
Save the file and view it in the browser. Notice that the alert box does not display this time. Firefox will point out some errors in JavaScript code, but we need to open the Web Console in order to see them.

In Firefox, select the top right menu icon > Web Developer > Web Console. The Web Console panel will display and the error message will appear (see [Figure 14.7](#)).

---

**Figure 14.7 The Web Console displays an error**

---



Notice that the error is displayed, along with the file name and line number where the error was detected. It's useful to create your documents in a text editor that displays the line numbers, but it's not necessary. If you are using Notepad, make use of the Go To feature in the Edit menu. This will allow you to specify a line number and the insertion point will be positioned at the beginning of that line.

Edit the alert.html file to correct the error and test it in the browser. This time the alert box should display after the first heading. Compare your work to chapter14/14.1/alert.html in the student files.

---

## FAQ

Will the Firefox Web Console display all of the errors in my JavaScript code?

The Web Console will display the syntax errors, which include things like missing quotes and items that it does not recognize. Sometimes the error is above the line indicated, particularly if there is a missing parenthesis or quote. The errors displayed indicate that there is something wrong and they serve as a guide as to where the error might be located. Start by looking at the line indicated; if that line looks correct, look at the lines above it.

### Checkpoint 14.1

1. Describe at least three popular uses for JavaScript.
2. How many JavaScript code blocks can be embedded in an HTML document?
3. Describe a method that can be used to find an error in a JavaScript code block.

| \_\_\_\_\_|

## 14.5 Document Object Model Overview

JavaScript can manipulate the elements of an HTML document, such as container tags like paragraphs, spans, and div elements. Elements also include images, forms, and individual form elements such as text boxes and select lists. In order to access these elements, we need to understand a little bit about the Document Object Model (DOM).

In general, an **object** is an entity or a “thing”. When using the DOM, the browser window, web page document, and any HTML element are considered to be objects. The browser window is an object. When a web page loads in the browser, the web page is considered to be a document. The document itself is an object. The document can contain objects such as images, headings, paragraphs, and individual form elements such as text boxes. The objects may have properties that can be detected or manipulated. For example, a property of the document is its title. Another property of the document is its background color.

There are actions that can be performed on some objects. For example, the **window object** can display the alert message box or a prompt box. This type of action is called a **method**. The command to display an alert message is referred to as a method of the window object. The DOM is the collection of objects, properties, and methods. JavaScript uses the DOM to detect and manipulate the elements in the HTML document.

Let's look at this system of objects, properties, and methods differently. Let's say that your car is an object. It has properties such as color, manufacturer, and year. Your car has elements such as the hood and trunk. The hood and trunk can be opened and closed. If we were to use a

programming language to open and close the hood and trunk, the commands might look something like the following:

```
car.hood.open()  
car.hood.close()  
car.trunk.open()  
car.trunk.close()
```

If we wanted to know the color, year, and manufacturer of the car, the commands might look something like the following:

```
car.color  
car.year  
car.model  
car.manufacturer
```

When we use the values, `car.color` might be equal to “silver”, `car.manufacturer` might be equal to “Nissan”, and `car.model` might be equal to “370Z”. We might be able to change the values or only read them without changing them. In this example, car is an object and its properties are hood, trunk, color, year, model, and manufacturer. Hood and trunk could be considered properties as well. Open and close are methods of hood and are also methods of trunk.

With respect to the DOM, we can write to the document using the `write()` method of the document object. The structure is

```
document.write("text to be written to the document");
```

We can use this in JavaScript to write text and HTML tags to a document and the browser will render it. The `alert()` method used in the previous Hands-On Practice is a method of the window object. It can be written as

```
window.alert("message");
```

The window object is assumed to exist and can be omitted. If the window doesn't exist, the script doesn't exist either.

One property of the document is `lastModified`. This property contains the date on which the file was most recently saved or modified and we can access it using `document.lastModified`. This is a read-only property that we can display in the browser window or use for some other purpose.

---

## Hands-On Practice 14.2

In this Hands-On Practice, you will practice using the `write()` method of the document and the `lastModified` property of the document. You will use `document.write()` to add text and some HTML tags to an HTML document. You will also use `document.write()` to write the date the file was last saved to the document.

Open the `alert.html` file (found at `chapter14/14.1/alert.html` in the student files) and edit the code as indicated:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
    <title>JavaScript Practice</title>
```

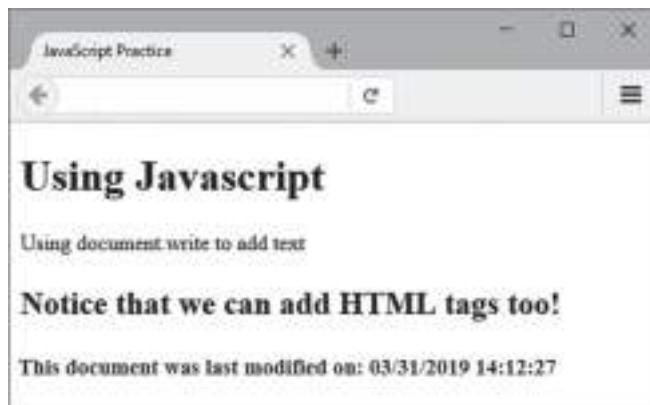
```
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<h1>Using JavaScript</h1>
<script>
document.write("<p>Using document.write to add
text</p>");
document.write("<h2>Notice that we can add HTML
tags too!</h2>");
</script>
<h3>This document was last modified on:
<script>
document.write(document.lastModified);
</script>
</h3>
</body>
</html>
```

Save this file as write.html and view it in the browser. The text should display (see [Figure 14.8](#)). If the text does not display, open the Web Console and correct any errors that appear.

---

**Figure 14.8** The Firefox browser displays write.html

---



JavaScript can be seen in the source code. To confirm this, select the top right menu icon > Web Developer > Page Source to see the source code. Close the source code window when you have finished viewing the code. A suggested solution is located at chapter14/14.2/write.html in the student files.

---



## FAQ

Why would I use `document.write` when I can just type the HTML code by itself?

In practice, you typically wouldn't use `document.write` to generate your web page if you could just type the HTML code by itself. You would use `document.write` in conjunction with other techniques. For instance, you might use JavaScript to detect the time of day and, if it is before noon, use `document.write` to write "Good morning" to the document. If it is afternoon, write "Good afternoon" to the document, and if it is after 6:00 p.m., write "Good evening" to the document.

---

## 14.6 Events and Event Handlers

As the user is viewing a web page, the browser detects mouse movement and events. An **event** is an action taken by the web page visitor, such as clicking the mouse, loading pages, or submitting forms. For instance, when you move your mouse pointer over a hypertext link, the browser detects a mouseover event. [Table 14.1](#) lists a few of the events and their descriptions.

---

**Table 14.1 Events and their descriptions**

Event	Description
click	The user clicks on an item. This could be an image, hypertext link, or button.
load	The browser displays a web page.
mouseover	The mouse pointer hovers over an item. The mouse pointer does not have to rest on the object. This could be a hypertext link, image, paragraph, or another object.
mouseout	The mouse pointer is moved away from an item that it had previously hovered over.
submit	The user clicks the submit button on a form.

Event	Description
unload	The web page unloads in the browser. This event occurs just before a new web page loads.

When an event occurs, this can trigger some JavaScript code to execute. One widely used technique is to detect the mouseover and mouseout events and swap images or display a menu.

We need to indicate which events will be acted upon and what will be done when an event occurs. We can use an **event handler** to property indicate which event to target. An event handler is embedded in an HTML tag as an attribute and indicates some JavaScript code to execute when the event occurs. Event handlers use the event name with the prefix "on". [Table 14.2](#) shows the event handlers that correspond to the events described in [Table 14.1](#). For example, the **onload** event is triggered when browser renders (loads) a web page. When you move your mouse pointer over a text hyperlink, a **mouseover** event occurs and is detected by the browser. If that hyperlink contains an **onmouseover** event handler, the JavaScript code indicated by the event handler will execute. This code might pop up an alert message, display an image, or display a menu. Other event handlers such as **onclick** and **onmouseout** can cause JavaScript code to execute when their corresponding event occurs.

---

**Table 14.2 Events and event handler properties**

Event	Event Handler
click	onclick

Event	Event Handler
load	onload
mouseover	onmouseover
mouseout	onmouseout
submit	onsubmit
unload	onunload

## Hands-On Practice 14.3

Let's practice using the `onmouseover` and `onmouseout` event handlers and alert messages to indicate when the event handler has been triggered. We will use simple hypertext links and embed the event handlers in the anchor tags. We will not need the `<script>` block because event handlers are placed as attributes within the HTML tags. We'll place the hypertext links in an unordered list so that there's a lot of room in the browser window to move the mouse pointer and test our script.

Open a text editor and enter the code shown below. Note the use of the double and single quotes in the `onmouseover` and `onmouseout` event handlers. We need quotes around the message in the `alert()` method and we need quotes that encapsulate the JavaScript for the event handler. HTML and JavaScript will allow us to use either double quotes or single

quotes. The rule is that they must match in pairs. So when you have a situation where you need two sets of quotes, you can use both double and single quotes. Use double quotes for the outer set and single quotes for the inner set. In the anchor tag, the `#` symbol is used for the href value because we don't need the functionality of loading another web page. We need the hypertext link to sense mouseover and mouseout events.

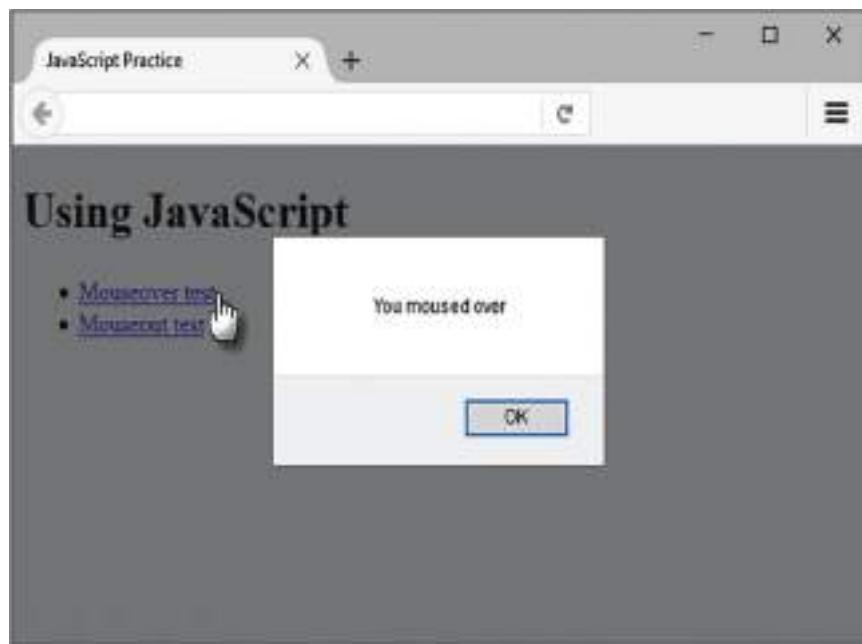
```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
  <title>JavaScript Practice</title>
  <meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
  <h1>Using JavaScript</h1>
  <ul>
    <li><a href="#" onmouseover="alert('You moused over');">Mouseover test</a></li>
    <li><a href="#" onmouseout="alert('You moused out');">Mouseout test</a></li>
  </ul>
</body>
</html>
```

Save this file as mouse.html and load it in the browser. Move your mouse on top of the Mouseover test link. As soon as your mouse touches the link, the mouseover event occurs and the `onmouseover` event handler is triggered. This displays the alert box (see [Figure 14.9](#)).

---

**Figure 14.9 Demonstration of onmouseover**

---



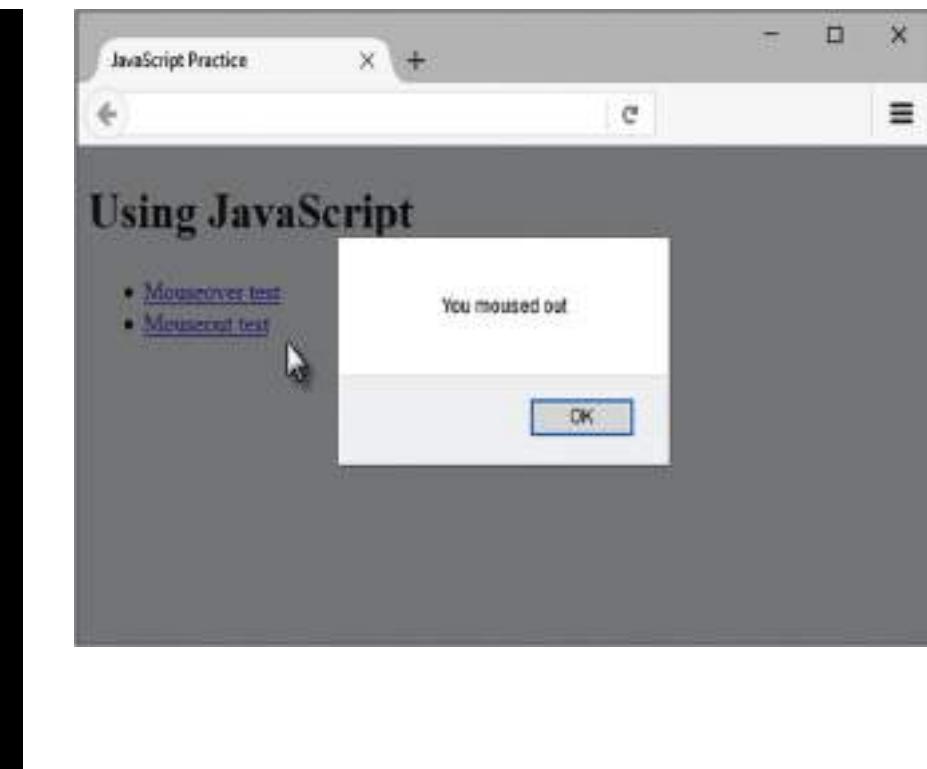
Click the OK button and position your mouse pointer over the Mouseout test link. Notice that nothing happens. This is because the mouseout event has not occurred yet.

Move the mouse pointer away from the link. As soon as the mouse pointer is no longer on the link, the mouseout event occurs and the `onmouseout` event handler is triggered. This displays the alert box (see [Figure 14.10](#)). A suggested solution can be found in the student files (chapter14/14.3/mouse.html).

---

**Figure 14.10 Demonstration of `onmouseout`**

---



## Checkpoint 14.2

1. When referring to objects, describe the difference between a property and a method. Feel free to use words like thing, action, description, attribute, and so on.
2. What is the difference between an event and an event handler?
3. Where are event handlers placed in the HTML document?

## 14.7 Variables

Sometimes we need to be able to collect information from the user. A simple example is prompting the user for a name and writing the name to the document. We would store the name in a **variable**. You probably took a math course at some point and used  $x$  and  $y$  as variables in equations as placeholders for values. The same principle applies when using variables in JavaScript. (We won't do any tricky math here, so relax!) JavaScript variables are also placeholders for data and the value of the variable can change. Robust programming languages like C++ and Java have all kinds of rules for variables and their data types. JavaScript is very loose that way. We won't have to worry about what type of data is contained in a variable.

---

### FAQ

Are there any tips for creating variable names?

Creating the name of a variable is really something of an art form. First of all, you want to create a variable name that describes the data it contains. The underscore, or an uppercase character, can be used for readability to indicate more than one word. Do not use other special characters, though. Stick to letters and numbers. Be careful not to use a JavaScript **reserved word** or keyword, such as `var`, `return`, `function`, and so on. Visit [https://webplatform.github.io/docs/javascript/reserved\\_words/](https://webplatform.github.io/docs/javascript/reserved_words/) for a list of JavaScript keywords. The following are some variable names that could be used for a product code:

- `productCode`
  - `prodCode`
  - `product_code`
- 

## Writing a Variable to a Web Page

Before we use a variable, we can declare it with the JavaScript `var` keyword. This step isn't necessary, but it is good programming practice. We can assign data to a variable using the assignment operator, the equal sign (`=`). A variable can contain a number or a string. A **string** is encapsulated in quotes and can contain alphabetic characters, spaces, numbers, and special characters. For instance, a string can be a last name, e-mail address, street address, product code, or paragraph of information. Let's do a practice exercise that assigns data to a variable and writes it to the document.

---

### Hands-On Practice 14.4

In this Hands-On Practice, you will declare a variable, assign string data to it, and write it to the document.

Open a text editor and type the following:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
  <title>JavaScript Practice</title>
  <meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
  <h1>Using JavaScript</h1>
```

```
<h2>Hello
<script>
var userName;
userName = "Karen";
document.write(userName);
</script>
</h2>
</body>
</html>
```

Notice that the `<h2>` tag is placed before the script block and the `</h2>` tag is placed after the script block. This renders the value of `userName` in the `<h2>` heading format. There is also a single space after the “o” in “Hello”. If you miss this space, you’ll see the `userName` value displayed right after the “o”.

Notice that the variable is mixed case. This is a convention used in many programming languages to make the variable readable. Some developers might use an underscore, like `user_name`. Selecting a variable name is somewhat of an art form, but try to select names that indicate the contents of the variable.

Also notice that the `document.write()` method does not contain quotes. The contents of the variable will be written to the document. If we had used quotes around the variable name, the variable name itself would be written to the document and not the contents of the variable.

Save this document as `var.html` and load it in the browser.

Figure 14.11 shows the `var.html` file in the browser. Compare your work to chapter14/14.4/`var.html` in the student files.

---

**Figure 14.11 Browser with `var.html` displayed**

---



Chopping up the `<h2>` heading so that it is placed before and after the script is a bit cumbersome. We can combine strings using the plus (+) symbol. You'll see later in this chapter that the plus symbol can also be used to add numbers. The practice of combining strings using the plus symbol is called **concatenation**. Let's concatenate the `<h2>` information as a string with the `userName` value and the `</h2>` tag.

Edit the var.html document as follows:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
  <title>JavaScript Practice</title>
  <meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<h1>Using JavaScript</h1>
<script>
var userName;
userName = "Karen";
document.write("<h2>Hello " + userName + "
</h2>");
</script>
</body>
</html>
```

Be sure to remove the `<h2>` and `</h2>` information above and below the script block. Save the file as var2.html and display it in the browser window. You should not see any difference in

the document in the browser. Compare your work to chapter14/14.4/var2.html in the student files.

---

## Collecting Variable Values Using a Prompt

To demonstrate the interactive aspect of JavaScript and variables, we can use the `prompt()` method to request data from the user and write this data to the web page. For example, we will build on [Hands-On Practice 14.4](#) and prompt the user for a name rather than hard code this data in the `userName` variable.

The `prompt()` method is a method of the `window` object. We could use `window.prompt()`, but the `window` object is assumed, so we can write this simply as `prompt()`. The `prompt()` method can provide a message to the user. This method is generally used in conjunction with a variable so that the incoming data is stored in a variable. The structure is

```
someVariable = prompt("prompt message");
```

When this command executes, a prompt box pops up that displays the message and an input box for data entry. The user types in the prompt box, clicks the OK button, and the data is assigned to the variable. Let's add this feature to the `var2.html` file.

---

### Hands-On Practice 14.5

In this Hands-On Practice, you will use the `prompt()` method to gather data from the user and write it to the document.

Edit your file from [Hands-On Practice 14.4](#) (also found in the student files at chapter14/14.4/var2.html) as follows:

```
<script>
var userName;
userName = prompt("Please enter your name");
document.write("<h2>Hello " + userName + "
</h2>");
</script>
```

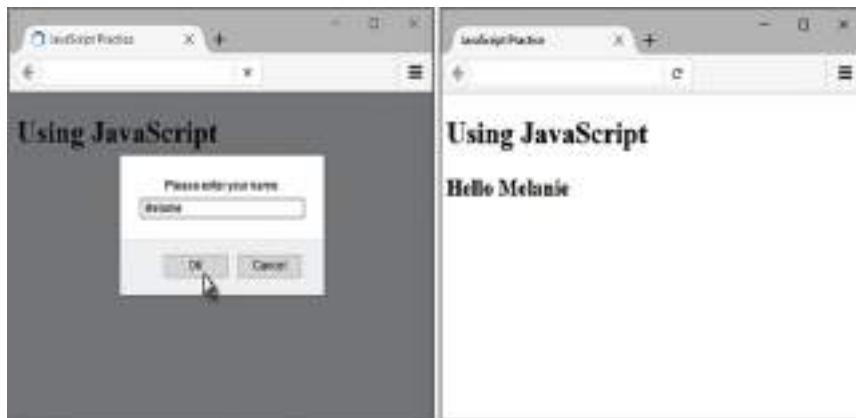
Only the `userName` variable assignment command has changed. The data typed by the user will be assigned to the variable `userName`.

Save the file as var3.html and display it in the browser. The prompt box will appear and you can type a name in the input box and click the OK button (see [Figure 14.12](#)). The name should appear in the browser window. Compare your work to chapter14/14.5/var3.html in the student files.

---

**Figure 14.12** The prompt box is displayed in the browser when the web page is loaded. The visitor types their name and clicks OK. Next, the browser accepts the input and writes a welcome message on the page.

---



Let's do a variation on this and allow the user to type a color name. The user's preference will be used as the background color of the document. We will use the `bgColor` property of the document object and set it to the user's color preference. Be sure that an uppercase C is used when typing `bgColor`.

Edit the var3.html document as follows and save it as var4.html:

```
<script>
var userColor;
userColor = prompt("Please type the color name
blue or red");
document.bgColor = userColor;
</script>
```

We are prompting the user to type the color name “blue” or “red”. You know from your HTML experience that there are more options for color names. Feel free to experiment!

Save the document and display it in the browser. The prompt box will appear and you can type a color name and click the OK button. You should notice the background color change immediately. Compare your work to chapter14/14.5/var4.html in the student files.

## 14.8 Introduction to Programming Concepts

Until now, we have used the DOM to access properties and methods for the window and document. We have also used some simple event handlers. There is another aspect of JavaScript that is more like programming. In this section, we'll touch on just a small part of this to get a feel for the power of using programming concepts and build on this later to test input on a form.

### Arithmetic Operators

When working with variables, it is often useful to be able to do some arithmetic. For instance, you may be creating a web page that calculates the tax on a product. Once the user has selected a product, you can use JavaScript to calculate the tax and write the result to the document. [Table 14.3](#) shows a list of **arithmetic operators**, descriptions, and some examples.

---

**Table 14.3 Commonly used arithmetic operators**

Operator	Description	Example	Value of Quantity
=	Assign	quantity = 10	10
+	Addition	quantity = 10 + 6	16

Operator	Description	Example	Value of Quantity
-	Subtraction	quantity = 10 - 6	4
×	Multiplication	quantity = 10 × 2	20
/	Division	quantity = 10 / 2	5

Programming languages differ greatly in capabilities, but they all have a few things in common. They all allow the use of variables and have commands for decision making, command repetition, and reusable code blocks. Decision making would be used when different outcomes are required, depending on the input or action of the user. In the next Hands-On Practice, we will prompt the user to enter a number and write different text on the web page document based on the value entered. Repetition of commands comes in handy when performing a similar task many times. For instance, it is tedious to create a select list containing the numbers 1 through 31 for the days of the months. We can use JavaScript to do this with a few lines of code. Reusable code blocks are handy when you want to refer to a block of code in an event handler rather than typing many commands in the HTML tag's event handler. Because this chapter is meant to be a very brief introduction, it is beyond our scope to elaborate further. We will touch on decision making and reusable code in the Hands-On Practice.

## Decision Making

As we've seen, we can use variables in JavaScript. We may wish to test the value of a variable and perform different tasks based on the value of

the variable. For instance, perhaps an order form requires that the user enter a quantity greater than `0`. We could test the quantity input box to verify that the number entered is greater than `0`. If the quantity is not greater than `0`, we could pop up an alert message that instructs the user to enter a quantity greater than `0`. The `if` control structure will be

```
if (condition) {  
  ... commands to execute if condition is true  
} else {  
  ... commands to execute if condition is false  
}
```

Notice that there are two types of grouping symbols used: parentheses and brackets. The parentheses are placed around the condition and the brackets are used to encapsulate a block of commands. The `if` statement includes a block of commands to execute if the condition is true and a block of commands to execute if the condition is false. The brackets are aligned so that you can easily see the opening brackets and closing brackets. It's very easy to miss a bracket when you're typing and then you would have to hunt for the missing bracket. Aligning them makes it much easier to track them visually. As you are typing JavaScript code, remember that parentheses, brackets, and quotes always are used in pairs. If a script isn't working as intended, verify that each of these items has a "partner."

If the condition evaluates as true, the first command block will be executed and the `else` block will be skipped. If the condition is false, the first command block will be skipped and the `else` block will execute.

This overview should give you a sense of how conditions and the `if` control structure can be useful. The condition must be something that can be evaluated as either true or false. We can think of this as a

mathematical condition. The condition will generally make use of an operator. [Table 14.4](#) lists commonly used **comparison operators**. The examples in [Table 14.4](#) could be used as conditions in an `if` control structure.

---

**Table 14.4 Commonly used comparison operators**

Operator	Description	Example	Sample Values of a Quantity that Would Result in True
<code>==</code>	Double equal signs (equivalent); “is exactly equal to”	<code>quantity == 10</code>	10
<code>&gt;</code>	Greater than	<code>quantity &gt; 10</code>	11, 12 (but not 10)
<code>&gt;=</code>	Greater than or equal to	<code>quantity &gt;= 10</code>	10, 11, 12
<code>&lt;</code>	Less than	<code>quantity &lt; 10</code>	9, 8 (but not 10)
<code>&lt;=</code>	Less than or equal to	<code>quantity &lt;= 10</code>	10, 9, 8

---

## FAQ

What can I do when my JavaScript code doesn't seem to be working?

You can try the following debugging techniques:

- Open the Web Console in Firefox (Tools > Web Developer > Web Console) to see if there are any errors. Common errors include missing a semicolon at the end of a line and typing errors in commands.
- Use `alert()` to print variables to verify the contents. For instance, if you have a variable named `quantity`, try `alert(quantity);` to see what is contained in the variable.
- Ask a classmate to look at your code. It's difficult to edit your own code because you tend to see what you think you wrote rather than what you actually wrote. It's easier to edit someone else's code.
- Try to explain your code to a classmate. Often, talking through the code will help you uncover errors.
- Verify that you are not using any JavaScript reserved words as variable names or function names.

---

## Hands-On Practice 14.6

In this Hands-On Practice, you will code the quantity example described earlier. The user will be prompted for a quantity and must enter a quantity greater than 0. We will assume that the user will enter a number. If the user enters a value of 0 or a negative number, there will be an error message displayed. If the user enters a value greater than 0, a message will be displayed thanking the user for the order. We will use a prompt and will write messages to the document.

Open a text editor and enter the following:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
  <title>JavaScript Practice</title>
  <meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
  <h1>Using JavaScript</h1>
  <script>
    var quantity;
    quantity = prompt("Type a quantity greater than 0");
    if (quantity <= 0) {
      document.write("<p>Quantity is not greater than 0.</p>");
      document.write("<p>Please refresh the web page.</p>");
    } else {
      document.write("<p>Quantity is greater than 0.</p>");
    }
  </script>
</body>
</html>
```

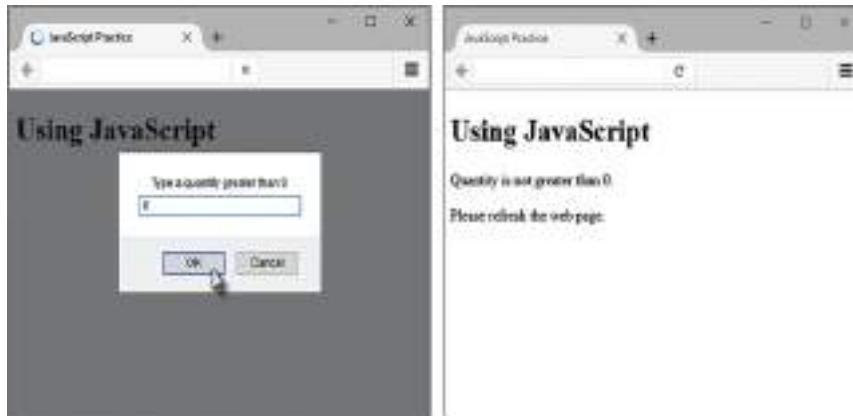
Save this document as quantityif.html and display it in a browser. If the prompt box does not appear, remember to check the Web Console for errors. When the prompt box appears, type the number 0 and click the OK button. You

should see the error message you have created in the browser window (see [Figure 14.13](#)).

---

**Figure 14.13** The browser on the left shows the prompt box with input of 0 and the browser on the right shows the result

---



Now, refresh the page and enter a value greater than 0 (see [Figure 14.14](#)). Compare your work to chapter14/14.6/if.html in the student files.

---

**Figure 14.14** The browser on the left shows the prompt box with an input value that is greater than 0 and the browser on the right shows the result

---



# Functions

In [Hands-On Practice 14.6](#), you coded a prompt box that pops up as soon as the page loads. What if we prefer to allow the user to decide when a particular script should be interpreted or run by the browser?

Perhaps we could use an `onmouseover` event handler and run the script when the user moves the mouse pointer over a link or image. Another method, perhaps more intuitive for the user, is to make use of a button and direct the user to click the button to run the script. The web page visitor doesn't need to be aware that a script will run, but can click a button to initiate some sort of functionality.

Form submit and reset buttons were introduced in [Chapter 9](#):

- A submit button, `<input type="submit">`, is used to submit a form.
- A reset button, `<input type="reset">`, is used to clear values entered on a form.

In this section, we will use the `button` element and the `onclick` event handler to run JavaScript. The sample HTML is

```
<button onclick="alert('Welcome');">Click to see a message</button>
```

In this sample, the button will display the text "Click to see a message". When the user clicks the button, the click event occurs and the `onclick` event handler executes the `alert('Welcome!');` statement. The message box appears. This method is very effective when there is only one JavaScript statement to execute. It quickly becomes unmanageable when there are more statements to execute. When that happens, it makes sense

to place all JavaScript statements in a block and somehow point to the block to execute. If the statement block has a name, we can execute the block by pointing to the name. In addition to providing a shortcut name, this code is also easily reused. We can provide a name for a statement block by creating a function.

A **function** is a block of JavaScript statements with a specific purpose that can be run when needed. A function can contain a single statement or a group of statements and is defined as

```
function function_name() {  
...  JavaScript statements  
}
```

The function definition starts with the keyword **function** followed by the name of the function. The parentheses are required and more advanced functions make use of them. You can choose a name for the function just like you choose a name for a variable. The function name should indicate the purpose of the function. The statements are contained within the brackets. The block of statements will execute when you **invoke**, or call, the function.

Here's an example of a function definition:

```
function showAlerts() {  
    alert("Please click OK to continue.");  
    alert("Please click OK again.");  
    alert("Click OK for the last time to continue.");  
}
```

The function can be invoked using

```
showAlerts();
```

Now, we could include the `showAlerts()` function call in a button as

```
<button onclick="showAlerts();">Click to see  
alerts</button>
```

When the user clicks the button, the `showAlerts()` function will be called and the three alert messages will appear one after the other. Try out the example in the student files (chapter14/function.html) to see this in action.

Function definitions are typically placed in the head section of the HTML document. This loads the function definition code, but it does not execute or run until it is invoked. This ensures that the function definition is loaded and ready to use before the function is called. Another feature of a function is that variables declared within the function are only available within that function; they have limited **scope** and are not available outside of the function. In contrast, variables that are declared outside of functions have global scope and can be available to all JavaScript associated with the page. Limiting scope prevents conflicts with variable names when using JavaScript libraries such as jQuery.

---

## Hands-On Practice 14.7

In this Hands-On Practice, you will edit your file from [Hands-On Practice 14.6](#) (found in the student files at chapter14/14.6/if.html) to move the prompting script into a

function and call it with an `onclick` event handler. There are a few things to note. The script has been moved into the head section and is included in a function definition. The `document.write()` methods have been changed to `alert()` methods and the messages have been altered slightly. The `document.write()` methods will not work well after the page has already been written, as is the case in this exercise. Also, there have been some comments added to the end brackets for the `if` statement and the function definition. These comments can help you keep track of the code blocks within the script. The indentation of the code blocks also helps to identify which brackets begin and end various statements.

Launch a text editor and edit the if.html file as follows:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
    <title>JavaScript Practice</title>
    <meta charset="utf-8">
    <script>
        function promptQuantity() {
            var quantity;
            quantity = prompt("Please type a quantity
greater than 0");
            if (quantity <= 0) {
                alert("Quantity is not greater than
0.");
            } else {
                alert("Thank you for entering a quantity
greater than 0.");
            } // end if
        } // end function promptQuantity
    </script>
</head>
<body>
    <h1>Using JavaScript</h1>
    <button onclick="promptQuantity();">Click to
enter quantity</button>
</body>
</html>
```

Save the document as if2.html and display it in a browser. Open the Web Console to check whether there are typing errors when you run the script.

Click the button to test the script. If the prompt box does not appear, check the Web Console and correct any errors. [Figure 14.15](#) shows the browser and the prompt box after the button has been clicked, as well as the resulting alert box. Be sure to test for a value larger than 0 and a value of 0 or less. Compare your work to chapter14/14.7/if2.html in the student files.

---

**Figure 14.15 The browser on the left shows the prompt box and input; the browser on the right shows the alert box displayed after the input**

---



---

As you've been working with JavaScript, you may have noticed that you have been coding event handlers, such as onclick, directly in the HTML tags. In the next section, you'll be introduced to a more modern approach that avoids embedding JavaScript within HTML tags.

## The addEventListener Method

In section 14.6 you began to work with events (such as `click` and `mouseover`) and coded event handler properties (such as `onclick` and `onmouseover`) directly within HTML tags. While this technique works, there are disadvantages: you are limited to only one event handler for an element (if you happen to write more than one event handler for the same element, only the last one will run) and the JavaScript code is mixed in with the HTML code, which could increase the complexity of maintenance. A more modern approach is to code an **event listener**, using the `addEventListener` method in the JavaScript block. The event listener will wait (or listen) for an event (such as click and mouseover) and cause code to be run, typically calling a function. When using this coding technique, the script element is typically placed before the closing body tag.

The syntax for an event listener uses the document object model and precisely identifies the id of the target element, the event, and the name of the function to be run when the event occurs. For example, the following JavaScript configures an event listener for a `click` event that occurs on an element assigned to the `myB` id and calls a function named `showMe`.

```
document.getElementById("myB").addEventListener("click",
showMe);
```

The function is listed below.

```
function showMe() {
    alert("Thank you for clicking the button");
}
```

When the user clicks the button, the `showMe()` function will be called and the alert message will appear. Try out the example in the student files (chapter14/listen.html) to see this in action.

## Hands-On Practice 14.8

In this Hands-On Practice, you will use your file from [Hands-On Practice 14.7](#) (found in the student files at chapter14/14.7/if2.html) and revise the code to use an event listener. There are a few things to note. The script has been moved into the body section before the closing body tag. The button element in the HTML has been modified: the `onclick` has been removed and the `myB` id was assigned. The event listener was added. Note that a variable was used so that the `addEventListener` statement would fit on this page. Launch a text editor and modify the if.html file as shown below.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>JavaScript Practice</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<h1>Using JavaScript</h1>
<button id="myB">Click to enter
quantity</button>
<script>
var myButton = document.getElementById("myB");
myButton.addEventListener("click",promptQuantity
);
function promptQuantity() {
    var quantity;
    quantity = prompt("Please type a quantity
greater than 0");
    if (quantity <= 0) {
        alert("Quantity is not greater than 0.");
    } else {
        alert("Thank you for entering a quantity
")</script>
```

```
greater than 0.");
    } // end if
} // end function promptQuantity
</script>
</body>
</html>
```

Save the document as if3.html and display it in a browser. Open the Web Console to check whether there are typing errors when you run the script. Click the button to test the script. If the prompt box does not appear, check the Web Console and correct any errors. [Figure 14.15](#) shows the browser and the prompt box after the button has been clicked, as well as the resulting alert box. Be sure to test for a value larger than 0 and a value of 0 or less. Compare your work to chapter14/14.8/if3.html in the student files.

### Checkpoint 14.3

1. Describe a method that can be used to gather a piece of data such as the user's age.
2. Write the JavaScript code to display an alert message for users who are under 18 years old and a different alert message for users who are 18 years or older.
3. What is a function definition?

## 14.9 Form Handling

As you discovered in [Chapter 9](#), the data from a web form can be submitted to a CGI or a server-side script. This data can be added to a database or used for some other purpose; therefore, it is important that the data submitted by a user is as accurate as possible. When the user enters information in a form, there is always a chance that the information will be incorrect or inaccurate. Often, the form data is checked for invalid data before it is submitted. Form data validation can be done by the server-side script, but it can also be done client-side, using JavaScript. Again, this topic is simplified here, but we can get a sense of how this might be done.

When the user clicks the form's submit button, the `submit` event occurs. We can use the `onsubmit` event handler or an event listener to call a function that tests form data for validation. This technique is referred to as **form handling**. The web developer can validate all form input, some input, or just one form input. Examples of items that might be validated include:

- Required fields such as name and e-mail address
- A required check box to acknowledge a license agreement
- A radio button that indicates a method of payment or a delivery option
- A value entered that is numeric and must be within a particular range

When the user clicks the submit button, the `onsubmit` event handler invokes a function that tests all of the appropriate form elements for valid data. Then the validation function confirms that the data is valid (true) or not valid (false). The form is submitted to the URL indicated in the form

action attribute if the data is valid (true). The form would not be submitted if the data is not valid (false) and some indication to the user regarding errors would be displayed. The overall structure of the web page code related to declaring the function and handling the onsubmit event is

```
... HTML begins the web page
function validateForm() {
    ... JavaScript commands to test form data go here
    if form data is valid
        return true
    else
        return false
}
... HTML continues
<form method="post" action="URL" onsubmit="return
validateForm();">
    ... form elements go here
    <input type="submit" value="submit form">
</form>
... HTML continues
```

A new concept with regard to functions is indicated here. A function can encapsulate a group of statements, but it can also send a value back to where it was invoked, or called. This is referred to as “returning a value” and the JavaScript keyword **return** is used in the JavaScript code to indicate the value that will be sent back. Our example will return a value of true if the data is valid and a value of false if the data does not pass our validation tests. Notice that the onsubmit event handler also contains the keyword **return**. It works like this: If the validateForm() function returns a value of true, the onsubmit event handler becomes return true and the form is submitted. If the validateForm() function returns a value of false, the onsubmit event handler becomes return false and the form is not submitted. Once a function returns a value, it is finished executing, even if there are more statements in the function.

## Hands-On Practice 14.9

In this Hands-On Practice, you will create a form with inputs for name and age, and use JavaScript to validate: verify data in the name field and a value for age of 18 or greater. If there is nothing in the name field, an alert message will be displayed that indicates an error. If the age value entered is less than 18, an alert message will be displayed that indicates an error. If all data is valid, an alert message will be displayed indicating that the data is valid and the form will be submitted.

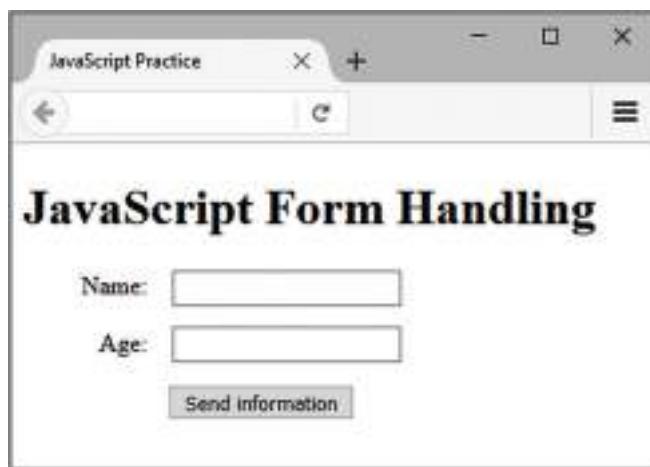
Let's start by creating the form. Open a text editor and type the HTML below. Notice that the `onsubmit` form handler is embedded in the `<form>` tag and we will add the JavaScript code later. CSS is used to align and add space around the form elements.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
  <title>JavaScript Practice</title>
  <meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
  input { display: block;
          margin-bottom: 1em;
  }
  label { float: left;
          width: 5em;
          padding-right: 1em;
          text-align: right;
  }
  input[type="submit"] { margin-left: 7em; }
</style>
</head>
<body>
  <h1>JavaScript Form Handling</h1>
  <form method="post"
        action="https://webdevbasics.net/scripts/demo.php">
```

```
onsubmit="return validateForm();">
<label for="userN&gt;Name: </label>
<input type="text" name="userN&gt;
id="userN&gt;
<label for="userAge">Age: </label>
<input type="text" name="userAge" id="userAge">
<input type="submit" value="Send information">
</form>
</body>
</html>
```

Save the file as form.html and view it in the browser. Figure 14.16 shows the form in the browser.

**Figure 14.16 The form.html file displayed in the browser**



Feel free to click the submit button. You will notice that the inputs will be submitted. For the moment, we have not coded the `validateForm()` function, so the form simply submits.

Accessing form inputs is a little tricky. The form is a property of the document object. Each form element is a property of the form object. A property of a form element can be a value. So, the HTML for accessing the contents of an input box could look something like this:

```
document.forms[0].inputbox_name.value
```

The form is identified by `forms[0]` to indicate which form will be used. An HTML document can contain multiple forms. Note that there is an `s` in `forms[0]`. The first form is `forms[0]`. To access the value in the `userAge` input box, we will need to use `document.forms[0].userAge.value`. This is a mouthful, for sure.

Also, notice that the values `true` and `false` are not enclosed in quotes. This is important because `true` and `false` are not strings, they are JavaScript reserved words, or keywords, and represent special values. If you add quotes to them, they become strings and this function will not work properly.

Let's start by adding the code to validate the age. Edit the `form.html` file to add the following script block in the head section above the `</head>` tag:

```
<script>
function validateForm() {
    if (document.forms[0].userAge.value < 18) {
        alert ("Age is less than 18. You are not an
adult.");
        return false;
    } // end if
    alert ("Age is valid.");
    return true;
} // end function validateForm
</script>
```

The `validateForm()` function will check the age in the `userAge` input box. If it is less than 18, the alert message will be

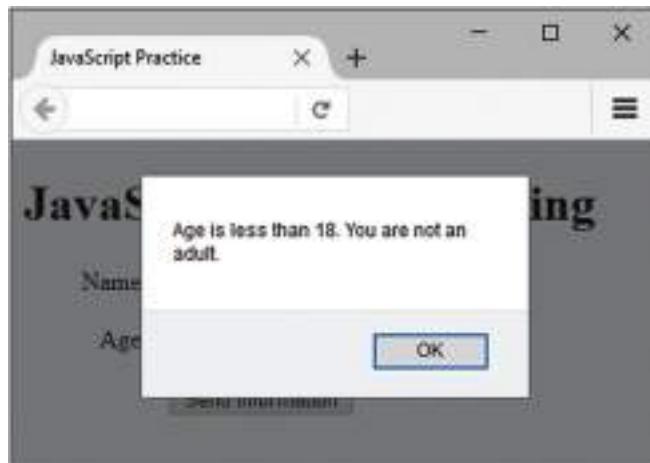
displayed and a value of false will be returned and the function will finish executing. The onsubmit event handler will become return false and the form will not be submitted. If the value for age is 18 or greater, the statements in the `if` structure will be skipped and the `alert("Age is valid.");` will execute. After the user clicks the OK button in the alert message, the statement `return true;` will execute and the onsubmit event handler will become `return true;` thus, the form will be submitted. Let's test this out!

Type a value less than 18 in the `userAge` input box and click the submit button. If the form submits right away, there is likely an error in the JavaScript code. If this happens, open the Error Console and correct the errors indicated. [Figure 14.17](#) shows the alert message displayed after clicking the submit button.

---

**Figure 14.17** The `form.html` file displayed in a browser with input for age that is less than 18 (notice the alert message)

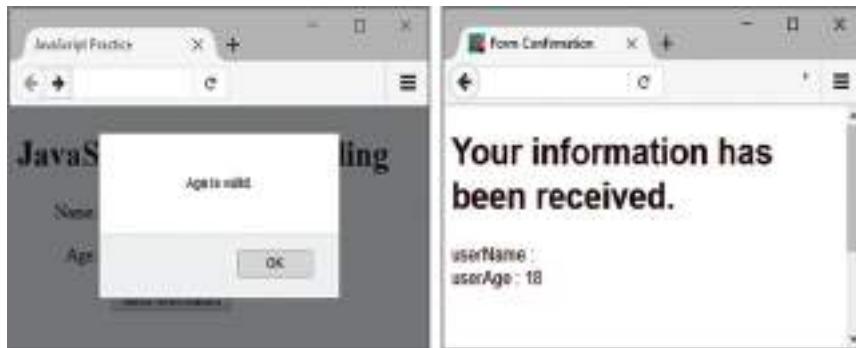
---



Click the OK button and type a value for age that is 18 or greater in the `userAge` input box. Click the submit button.

[Figure 14.18](#) shows the alert message and the resulting web page after the form has been submitted.

**Figure 14.18** The form.html file displayed in a browser with input for age greater than or equal to 18 (notice the alert message); the browser on the right shows the resulting web page after the form is submitted



Now, let's add another if statement to validate the name. To ensure that something has been entered in the `userName` input box, we will test to see if the value of the input box is empty. The **null** string (no characters) is represented by two double quotes ("") or two single quotes ('') without a space or any other character in between. We can compare the value of the `userName` text box to the null string. If the value of the `userName` box is equal to the null string, then we know that the user did not enter any information in this box. In our example, we will be sending only one error message at a time. If the user does not have a name in the `userName` box and also does not have an appropriate age in the `userAge` box, the user will only see the `userName` error message displayed. After the user corrects the name and resubmits the information, the user will see the `userAge` error message displayed. This is very basic form processing, but it gives you an idea of how form handling might be accomplished. More sophisticated form processing would verify each form field and indicate all errors each time the form is submitted.

Let's add the code to validate the `userName` data. Edit the `formvalidation.html` file and modify the following script block. Note that two equal signs represent equivalency in the `if` statement. Some students find it helpful to read the two equal signs (`==`) as "is exactly equal to".

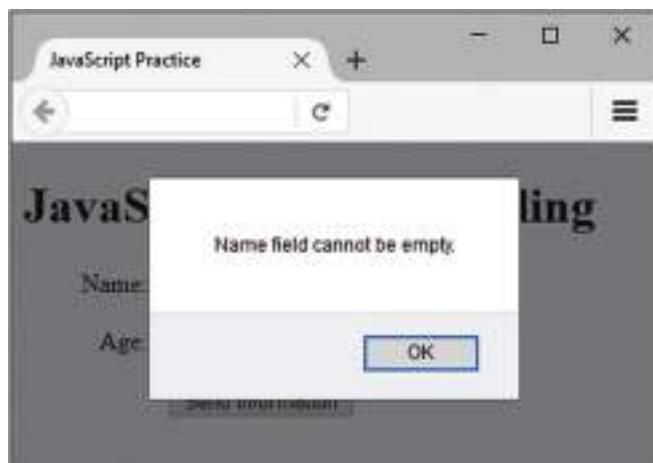
```
<script>
function validateForm() {
    if (document.forms[0].userName.value == "") {
        alert("Name field cannot be empty.");
        return false;
    } // end if
    if (document.forms[0].userAge.value < 18) {
        alert("Age is less than 18. You are not an
adult.");
        return false;
    } // end if
    alert("Name and age are valid.");
    return true;
} // end function validateForm
</script>
```

Save the document and refresh it in the browser window. Click the submit button without entering data in the Name or Age input boxes. [Figure 14.19](#) shows the alert message displayed when no data has been input and the submit button has been clicked.

---

**Figure 14.19 The form.html file displayed in the browser without input in the Name and Age boxes; the alert message appears after the form is submitted**

---

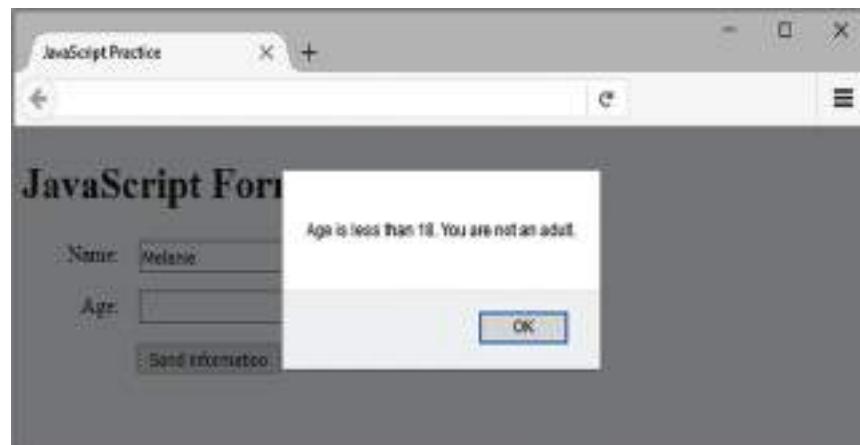


Click the OK button, enter some text in the Name input box, and submit the form again. **Figure 14.20** shows data in the Name input box and the alert message that appears as a result of validating the age when no value for age is entered.

---

**Figure 14.20** The form.html file displayed in the browser with input in the Name box and without input in the Age box; the alert message appears after the submit button is clicked

---



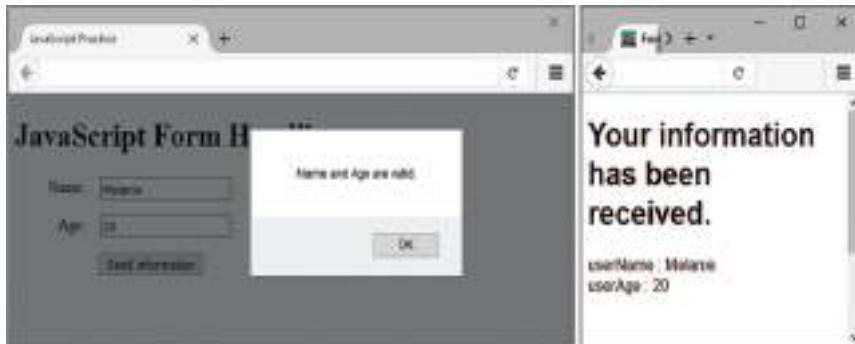
Click the OK button and enter a value for age that is 18 or greater. Click the submit button. **Figure 14.21** shows data in the Name and Age input boxes and the alert message that displays after the submit button has been clicked. It also shows the resulting web page after successful submission

when all data is valid. Compare your work to chapter14/14.9/form.html in the student files.

---

**Figure 14.21** The form.html file displayed in the browser with valid input in the Name and Age boxes and alert message; the browser on the right shows the web page displayed after valid input has been submitted

---



#### Checkpoint 14.4

1. What is meant by the term “form data validation”?
2. Give three examples of form data that may require validation.
3. An HTML document contains the <form> tag as follows:

```
<form method="post"
action="https://webdevbasics.net/scripts/demo
.php"
onsubmit="return validateForm();">
```

What happens when the user clicks the submit button?

## 14.10 Accessibility and JavaScript

### Focus on Accessibility

The interactivity and functionality that JavaScript can add to a web page is exciting. However, be aware that some visitors may have JavaScript disabled, may not be able to see your visual effect, or may be unable to manipulate the mouse. WCAG 2.1 and Section 508 require that your site is functional at a basic level, even if your visitor's browser does not support JavaScript. If you use JavaScript to handle mouse events in your site navigation, you should also provide plain-text navigation that does not require a mouse and can be easily accessed by a screen reader. If you use JavaScript for form validation, provide an e-mail address to allow physically challenged visitors to contact your organization and obtain assistance.

## 14.11 JavaScript Resources

This chapter has barely scratched the surface regarding the uses of JavaScript in web development. You may wish to do further research using some of the following online resources:

- JavaScript Tutorial: <https://www.w3schools.com/JS>
- JavaScript Tutorial: <http://echoecho.com/javascript.htm>
- Mozilla Developer Network JavaScript Reference: <https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference>
- Mozilla Developer Network JavaScript Guide: <https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Guide>

## 14.12 Overview of jQuery

Many websites use jQuery to provide interaction and dynamic effects on web pages. The free, open-source **jQuery** JavaScript library was developed by John Resig in 2006 to simplify client-side scripting. The jQuery Foundation is a volunteer organization that contributes to the continued development of jQuery and provides jQuery documentation at <http://api.jquery.com>.

So, what can you do with jQuery? The jQuery API (application programming interface) works along with JavaScript and provides easy ways to dynamically manipulate the CSS properties of elements, detect and react to events (such as mouse movements), and animate elements on a web page, such as image slideshows. And there's more—the jQuery JavaScript library has been thoroughly tested and is compatible with all current browsers. Many web developers and designers have found that jQuery is easier to learn to work with than trying to write and test their own complex JavaScript interactions. However, a basic understanding of JavaScript is useful when working with jQuery.

## 14.13 Adding jQuery to a Web Page

The jQuery library is stored in a .js JavaScript file. There are two ways to access the jQuery library. You can either download the jQuery JavaScript library file and save it to your hard drive or you can access a version of the jQuery JavaScript library file online through a Content Delivery Network (CDN).

### Download jQuery

Visit <http://jquery.com/download> to download one of the jQuery library .js files. There are several versions of jQuery to choose from. When you visit the download page, right click on “Download the compressed, production jQuery 3.4.1” and save the file with the name of jquery-3.4.1.min.js in your website folder. You can make jQuery available to your web page by adding the following script tag to the head section of your web page document:

```
<script src="jquery-3.4.1.min.js"></script>
```

### Access jQuery via a Content Delivery Network

Google, Microsoft, Amazon, and Media Temple have created free **Content Delivery Network (CDN)** repositories of frequently used code and scripts, such as jQuery. There is no cost for you or your web page visitor to use a CDN. An advantage of using a CDN is that your pages may load faster because your visitor’s browser most likely has accessed

the CDN in the past and already saved the file in its cache. A disadvantage of using a CDN is that you will always need to have a live Internet connection when you are coding and testing your pages. We'll use Google's CDN in this chapter. To access the jQuery library that is stored in Google's Content Delivery Network (CDN), add the following script tag in the head section of your web page document:

```
<script  
src="https://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/libs/jquery/3.4.1/  
jquery.min.js">  
</script>
```

## The Ready Event

You need to inform the jQuery library when your web page's Document Object Model (DOM) has been completely loaded by the browser. A jQuery statement referred to as the **ready event** is used for this purpose. A jQuery statement consists of a jQuery alias, a selector, and a method in the following format:

```
$(selector).method()
```

The **jQuery alias** is your choice of either the text “**jQuery**” or the **\$** character. Most people use the **\$** character because it is shorter. The **selector** indicates the DOM element(s) that jQuery will work with. The **method** is an action that jQuery can take. The **ready()** method indicates the code the browser should execute when the DOM is fully loaded.

In this case, the selector is the document itself, so the syntax for the ready event is as follows:

```
$(document).ready(function() {
    Your JavaScript statements and other jQuery
    statements go here
});
```

Place your JavaScript statements and additional jQuery statements after the opening line in the ready event. For example, to display an alert box when the DOM is ready for jQuery, code the following:

```
$(document).ready(function() {
    alert("Ready for jQuery");
});
```

## FAQ

What's the `function()` part of the ready event?

The `function()` creates an unnamed, anonymous function that defines a block of code, and, for example, limits the scope of variables declared within the code block. This prevents conflicts, such as those caused by duplicate variable names, that can occur when you are using multiple libraries of code.

## Hands-On Practice 14.10

Let's practice using the jQuery ready event. Open a text editor and enter the code shown below.

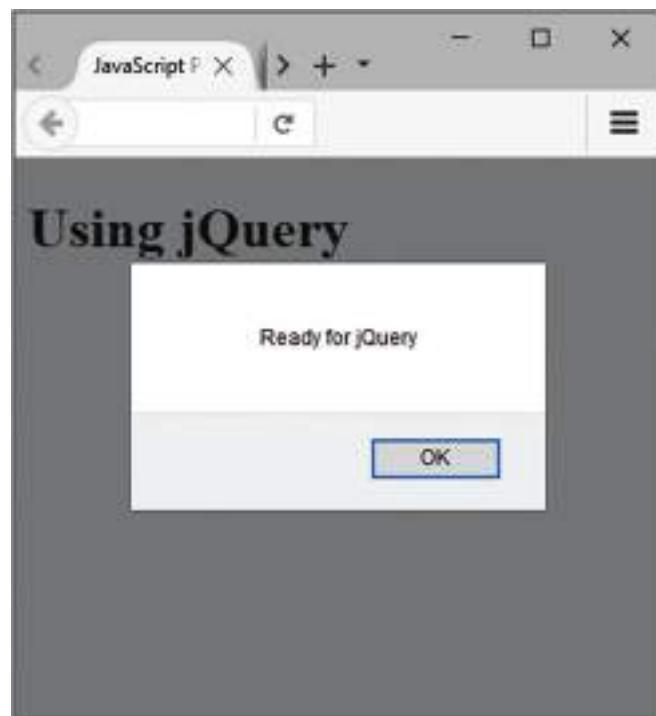
```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>JavaScript Practice</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<script
src="https://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/libs/jquery/3.4.1/jquery.min.js">
</script>
<script>
$(document).ready(function() {
  alert("Ready for jQuery");
});
</script>
</head>
<body>
<h1>Using jQuery</h1>
</body>
</html>
```

Save this file as ready.html and open it in the browser. If you are connected to the Internet, the jQuery library at the CDN will be accessed and the alert message will display (see [Figure 14.22](#)) when the web page's DOM is fully loaded by the browser. Compare your work with the solution in the student files chapter14/14.10/ready.html.

---

**Figure 14.22 Ready for jQuery**

---



---

## 14.14 jQuery Selectors

Configure a **jQuery selector** to indicate which DOM elements jQuery will affect. There are a wide variety of selectors—similar to the types of selectors you can configure in CSS. A wildcard selector will cause jQuery to act upon all elements. You could also specify a class, id, or html element selector. In addition, filters, such as `:first` and `:odd` can be applied to selectors. A complete list of jQuery selectors is available at <http://api.jquery.com/category/selectors>. Table 14.5 shows examples of some commonly used jQuery selectors and their purpose.

---

**Table 14.5 Commonly used jQuery selectors**

Selector	Purpose
<code>\$( '*')</code>	wildcard—selects all elements
<code>\$( 'li')</code>	HTML element selector—selects all li elements
<code>\$( '.myclass')</code>	Class selector—selects all elements assigned to the class named myclass
<code>\$( '#myid')</code>	Id selector—selects the element assigned to the id named myid
<code>\$( 'nav a')</code>	HTML element selector—selects all anchor elements contained within the nav element

<b>Selector</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
<code>\$('#resources a')</code>	Id selector and HTML element selector—selects all anchor elements contained within the id named resources
<code>('li:first')</code>	Positional selector that selects the first element of that type on the page
<code>('li:odd')</code>	Positional selector—selects every other li element on the page

## 14.15 jQuery Methods

Configure a **jQuery method** to act upon the DOM element(s) you have selected. There are several categories of methods including methods that work with CSS, Effects, Events, Forms, Traversing, Data, Ajax, and Manipulation. The jQuery documentation at <http://api.jquery.com> provides a somewhat overwhelming list—it takes a while to explore the methods available in the jQuery library. [Table 14.6](#) lists some commonly used jQuery methods.

---

**Table 14.6 Commonly used jQuery methods**

Method	Purpose
<code>attr()</code>	Gets or sets attributes for the selected element(s)
<code>click()</code>	Binds a jQuery event handler to the JavaScript click event
<code>css()</code>	Sets the specified CSS property for the selected element(s)
<code>fadeToggle()</code>	Displays or hides the selected element(s) by animating their opacity
<code>hover()</code>	Binds a jQuery event handler to the JavaScript onmouseover event

Method	Purpose
<code>html()</code>	Gets or sets HTML contents for the selected element(s)
<code>slideToggle()</code>	Displays or hides the selected element(s) with a sliding motion
<code>toggle()</code>	Displays or hides the selected element(s)

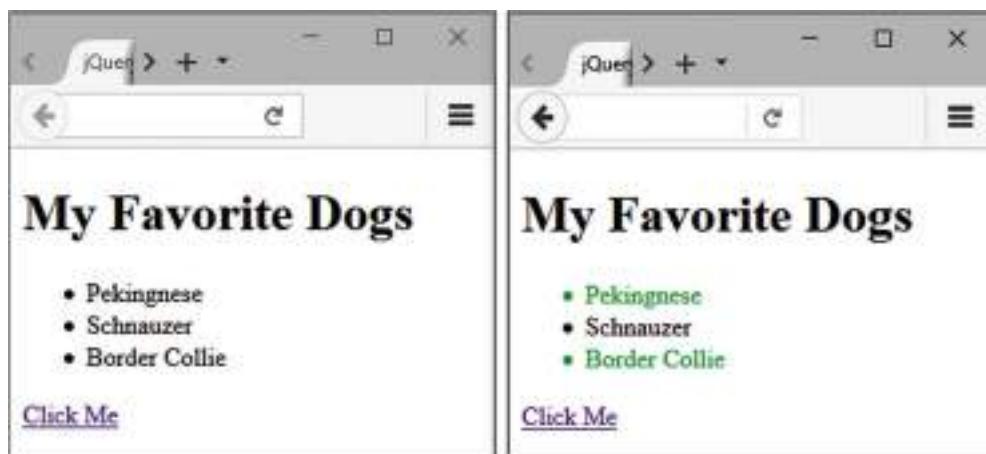
Let's start by delving into the `css()` and `click()` methods. Use the `css()` method to set a CSS property for the selector. The `css()` method accepts a pair of string expressions that indicate the CSS property and value. For example, the following script, found in the student files (chapter14/color.html), will select all li elements on a page and configure them with a text color of red, use the `$('.li')` selector along with the `css()` method to set the `color` property to `#FF0000`.

```
$(document).ready(function(){
  $('.li').css('color', '#FF0000');
});
```

Use the `click()` method to bind, or associate, a JavaScript click event for the selected element(s) with an event handler action in jQuery. jQuery will execute the event handler when the event occurs. The web page shown in [Figure 14.23](#) (see the student files chapter14/changeme.html) demonstrates the click event. The click event has been bound to the anchor element and causes the text color of every other li element to change when the click event fires. The script is as follows:

```
$(document).ready(function() {
    $('a').click(function(){
        $('li:even').css('color', '#006600');
    });
});
```

**Figure 14.23** The changeme.html file displayed in a browser; the browser on the right shows the resulting web page after the “Click Me” hyperlink is clicked.



## Hands-On Practice 14.11

The best way to learn to use jQuery is to practice coding. You'll work with the `click()` and `toggle()` methods in this Hands-On Practice. You'll configure CSS to initially hide a block of text by setting the `display` property to `none`. Then, you'll use jQuery to bind a click event to an event handler that invokes the `toggle()` method to swap back and forth between displaying and hiding a block of text. Open a text editor and enter the code shown below.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>jQuery Toggle Practice</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<style>
#details { display: none; }
</style>
<script
src="https://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/libs/jquery/3.4.1/jquery.min.js">
</script>
<script>
$(document).ready(function() {
    $('#more').click(function(){
        $('#details').toggle();
    });
});
</script>
</head>
<body>
<h1>jQuery</h1>
<p>Many websites, including Amazon and Google, use jQuery, to provide interaction and dynamic effects on web pages. <a href="#" id="more">More</a></p>
<div id="details"><p>The jQuery API (application programming interface) works along with JavaScript and provides easy ways to dynamically manipulate the CSS properties of elements, detect and react to events (such as mouse movements), and animate elements on a web page, such as image slideshows.</p>
</div>
</body>
</html>
```

Save this file as toggle.html and open it in the browser. As shown in [Figure 14.24](#), the second paragraph does not initially display. Click on the “More” hyperlink to display the second paragraph. Next, click on the “More” hyperlink again to hide the second paragraph. The “More” hyperlink works as a

toggle to hide and show the div assigned to the id details.

Compare your work with the solution in the student files - chapter14/14.11/toggle.html.

**Figure 14.24** The toggle.html file displayed in a browser; the browser on the right shows the resulting web page after the “More” hyperlink is clicked.



Experiment with the `fadeToggle()` and `slideToggle()` methods. You can control the speed of the effect of these methods by passing a duration parameter—valid values are `'slow'`, `'fast'`, and a number indicating the milliseconds. Configure the duration of the `fadeToggle()` to be 1000 milliseconds. Open your file in a text editor and replace the `$('#details').toggle();` statement with the following:

```
$( '#details' ).fadeToggle(10000);
```

Test in a browser. Did you notice the text fade in? Feel free to experiment with other values for the duration parameter.

Next, open your file in a text editor and replace the `fadeToggle()` method with the `slideToggle()` method with slow duration as follows:

```
$( '#details' ).slideToggle('slow');
```

Test in a browser. Did you notice the text slide in? Feel free to experiment with other values for the duration parameter.

You can find out more about these methods at <http://api.jquery.com/fadeToggle> and <http://api.jquery.com/slideToggle>.

---

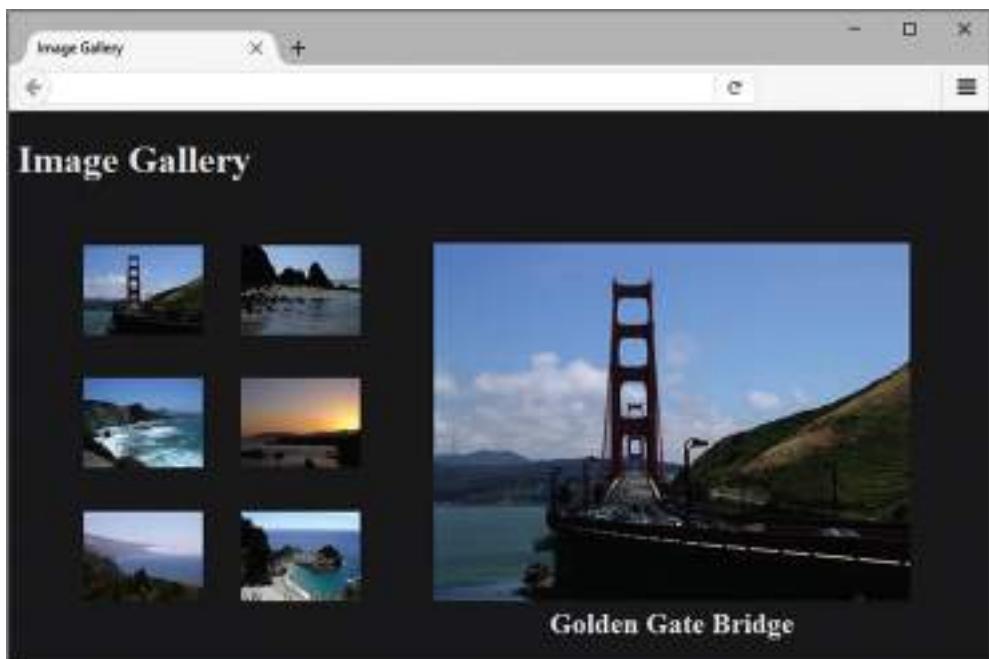
## 14.16 jQuery Image Gallery

You created an interactive image gallery with CSS in [Chapter 11](#). In the next Hands-On Practice you'll explore using jQuery and JavaScript along with CSS to create three versions of the image gallery (shown in [Figure 14.25](#)) with different interactions.

---

**Figure 14.25** Image gallery with jQuery interactions

---



You'll work with some jQuery methods you have already used, the `click()`, `css()`, and `fadeToggle()` methods. You'll also explore the `hover()`, `html()`, and `attr()` methods. Use the `hover()` method to bind, or associate, the jQuery `mouseenter` and `mouseleave` events for the selected element(s) with an event handler action in jQuery. jQuery will execute the event handler when the event occurs.

The `html()` method allows you to dynamically configure the content of an HTML element. You'll use the `html()` to change the text that is displayed within a figcaption element. The `attr()` method allows you to configure the value of HTML attributes. You'll use the `attr()` method to change the `src` and `alt` attributes of the large gallery image.

---

## Hands-On Practice 14.12

Create a new folder called gallery14. Copy all the images from the chapter14/starters/gallery folder in the student files to the new gallery14 folder. Launch a text editor and modify the chapter14/template.html file to configure a web page as indicated:

1. Configure the text, “Image Gallery”, within an `h1` element and within the `title` element.
2. Code a `div` element assigned to the `id` named `gallery`. This `div` will consist of an unordered list and a `figure` element. The unordered list will contain the thumbnail image links. The `figure` element will contain the large gallery image and a `figcaption` element.
3. Configure an unordered list within the `div`. Code six `li` elements, one for each thumbnail image. The thumbnail images will function as image links. Each anchor tag will include a `title` attribute with a descriptive text title. An example of the first `li` element is

```
<li>
<a href="photo1.jpg" title="Golden Gate
Bridge"></a>
</li>
```

4. Configure all six li elements in a similar manner. Substitute the actual name of each image file for the href and src values in the code. Write your own descriptive text for each image. Use photo2.jpg and photo2thumb.jpg in the second li element. Use photo3.jpg and photo3thumb.jpg in the third li element, and so on for all six images. Save the file as index.html in the gallery14 folder.
5. Configure a figure element below the unordered list within the div. The figure element will contain an img tag that displays photo1.jpg and a figcaption element that contains the text “Golden Gate Bridge”.
6. Code a style element in the head section of your document. Configure embedded CSS as follows:

  - a. Configure the body element selector with a dark background color (#333333) and a light gray text color (#EAEAEA).
  - b. Configure the `gallery` id selector. Set the width to 800px.
  - c. Configure the unordered list within the `#gallery` with a width of 300 pixels, no list marker, and left float.
  - d. Configure the list item elements within the `#gallery` with inline display, left float, and 16 pixels of padding.
  - e. Configure the img elements within the `#gallery` to not display a border.
  - f. Configure the figure element selector with 30 pixels of top padding and center text alignment.
  - g. Configure the figcaption element selector with bold font and 1.5em font size.
7. Code a script element in the head section of your document that accesses the Google jQuery CDN.

```
<script  
src="https://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/libs/jqu  
ery/3.4.1/jquery.min.js">  
</script>
```

8. Code jQuery and JavaScript statements in the head section of your document that determine when a mouse is placed over a thumbnail image link and change the gallery image and description.

- a. Code a pair of script tags that contain the jQuery ready event.

```
<script>  
$(document).ready(function(){  
  
});  
</script>
```

- b. Add the following code within the ready event to listen for the hover event on anchor elements in the `#gallery` div.

```
$('#gallery a').hover(function(){  
  
});
```

- c. Code JavaScript statements within the hover method's function to store href value and title value from the anchor tag in JavaScript variables. The Javascript keyword `this` indicates that the attributes refer to the current selector.

```
var galleryHref = $(this).attr('href');
var galleryAlt = $(this).attr('title');
```

- d. Use the jQuery `attr()` method to set the `src` and `alt` attributes on the large gallery image. Add the following statement below the variable assignment.

```
$('.figure img').attr({ src: galleryHref,
alt: galleryAlt });
```

- e. Use the jQuery `html()` method to change the text displayed within the `figcaption` element: Add the following statement below the `attr()` method statement.

```
$('.figcaption').html(galleryAlt);
```

- f. The entire jQuery code block is

```
<script>
$(document).ready(function(){
  $('#gallery a').hover(function(){
    var galleryHref =
$(this).attr('href');
    var galleryAlt =
$(this).attr('title');
    $('.figure img').attr({ src:
galleryHref, alt: galleryAlt });
    $('.figcaption').html(galleryAlt);
  });
});
</script>
```

- 9.** Save your file in the gallery14 folder as hover.html and display it in a browser. The large gallery image will change when you hover on an image link. Compare your work with the student files (chapter14/14.12/hover.html).
- 10.** Next, create a new version of the image gallery that will change the large gallery image and description when a web page visitor clicks on a thumbnail image instead of placing the mouse over a thumbnail image. Launch a text editor and open hover.html. Save the file with a new name: click.html. Edit the jQuery code block. Replace `hover` with `click`. By default, the hyperlink will open the larger image in a new window. To prevent this from happening, code `return false;` after the `html()` method statement. The entire jQuery code block is:

```
<script>
$(document).ready(function(){
    $('#gallery a').click(function(){
        var galleryHref = $(this).attr('href');
        var galleryAlt = $(this).attr('title');
        $('figure img').attr({ src: galleryHref,
        alt: galleryAlt });
        $('figcaption').html(galleryAlt);
        return false;
    });
});
</script>
```

- 11.** Save your file in the gallery14 folder and display it in a browser. The large gallery image will change when you click on an image link. Compare your work with the student files (- chapter14/14.12/click.html).
- 12.** Now, let's experiment with a slightly different jQuery interaction for the image gallery, using the `fadeToggle()` method, which either displays or hides selected elements. In

order to force the `fadeToggle()` method to always fade in and display the large gallery image when a thumbnail image is clicked, you need to hide the figure element before invoking `fadeToggle()`. Launch a text editor, open the click.html file, save the file with a new name: toggle.html, and add two new statements to the jQuery code block as shown below:

```
<script>
$(document).ready(function(){
    $('#gallery a').click(function(){
        var galleryHref =
        $(this).attr('href');
        var galleryAlt =
        $(this).attr('title');
        $('figure').css('display','none');
        $('figure img').attr({ src:
        galleryHref, alt: galleryAlt });
        $('figcaption').html(galleryAlt);
        $('figure').fadeToggle(1000);
        return false;
    });
});
</script>
```

13. Save your file in the gallery14 folder and display it in a browser. When you click on a thumbnail image link, the large gallery image area will briefly fade to black and then fade in with the new gallery image. Experiment with different duration values for the `fadeToggle`. Compare your work the student files (chapter14/14.12/toggle.html).

## 14.17 jQuery Plugins

jQuery is open-source and designed for continued enhancement and extension. An experienced web developer can create a new jQuery method and build a **plugin** that extends the functionality of jQuery. There are many jQuery plugins available, providing interactions and functionality such as slideshows, tooltips, and form validation. Visit the jQuery Plugin Registry at <http://plugins.jquery.com/> for a list. You can also find jQuery plugins by searching the Web.

When you find a plugin that you think you may want to use, check the plugin documentation which will explain the purpose of the plugin, describe how to work with the plugin, and often provide examples of using the plugin. Check the documentation to verify that it is compatible with the version of jQuery you are using. Verify the terms of the license for use of the plugin—many plugins use an MIT license (<https://opensource.org/licenses/MIT>), which freely allows use and distribution of both noncommercial and commercial work. Also, search the Web and see what types of comments and/or questions others have written about the plugin. If there are a lot of people struggling with using a plugin, you may want to choose a different one! You'll work with two popular jQuery plugins in the following Hands-On Practice exercises.

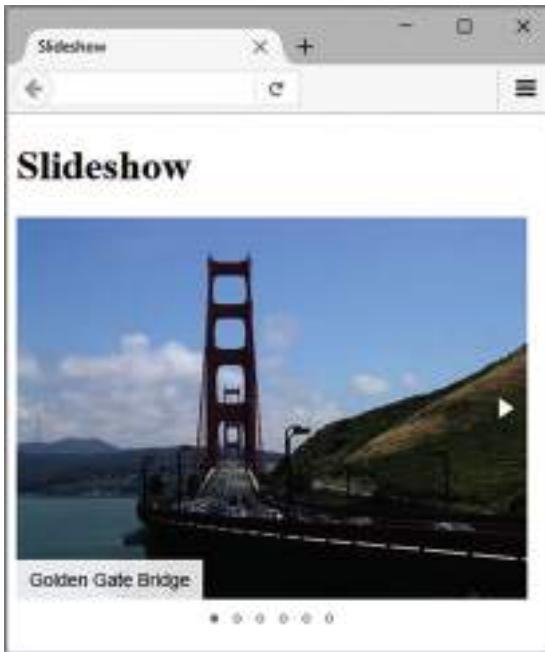
---

### Hands-On Practice 14.13

In this Hands-On Practice you'll create the web page shown in [Figure 14.26](#) as you work with the very easy to use fotorama plugin for jQuery (<https://fotorama.io>), which configures a slideshow.

---

**Figure 14.26** jQuery plugin slideshow



Create a new folder called slideshow. Copy the following images from the chapter14/starters/gallery folder in the student files to the new slideshow folder: photo1.jpg, photo2.jpg, photo3.jpg, photo4.jpg, photo5.jpg, and photo6.jpg. Launch a text editor and modify the chapter14/template.html file to configure a web page as indicated:

1. Configure the text, "Slideshow," within an h1 element and within the title element.
2. Code a div element assigned to the class named fotorama below the h1 element. The slideshow will not automatically play by default. The plugin's documentation specifies that adding the `data-autoplay="true"` attribute to the fotorama div element will configure automatic play. Code the opening div tag as follows:

```
<div class="fotorama" data-autoplay="true">
```

3. Code an img tag for each photograph within the div.

Configure both the `alt` and the `data-caption` attribute with a description of the image. The plugin requires the `data-caption` attribute to display a caption for the image in the slideshow. An example of the first img element is

```

```

Configure the other images in a similar manner.

4. Code the following link tag in the head section of your document to access the CSS needed by the fotorama plugin:

```
<link  
href="https://cdnjs.cloudflare.com/ajax/libs/f  
otorama/4.6.4/fotorama.css"  
rel="stylesheet">
```

5. Code the following script element in the head section of your document to access the jQuery library:

```
<script src=  
"https://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/libs/jquery/  
3.4.1/jquery.min.js">  
</script>
```

6. Code the following script element in the head section of your document to access the fotorama library:

```
<script src=
"https://cdnjs.cloudflare.com/ajax/libs/fotorama/4.6.4/fotorama.js">
</script>
```

7. That's all there is to it! Save your file with the name index.html in the slideshow folder and display it in a browser. The slideshow will automatically start to play. Place your mouse over the image to trigger the caption and side arrows to appear. Select the side arrow or bottom image indicator to move directly to a specific image. Compare your work with the student files (chapter14/14.13/index.html).

---

## Hands-On Practice 14.14

In this Hands-On Practice you'll work with the jQuery validation plugin (<https://jqueryvalidation.org>), which performs basic form validation. This plugin has many features listed in its documentation. For example when you configure a form control, such as an input element, with one of class names specified in the documentation, the plugin will automatically perform the corresponding edit. In addition the plugin is configured to assign the class named error to the error messages it generates. A partial list of class names supported by the plugin for data validation is shown in [Table 14.7](#).

---

**Table 14.7 Selected jQuery validate plugin class names and actions**

Class Name	Action
required	Verifies whether data is entered
email	Verifies whether data is in e-mail format
digits	Verifies whether data is a positive integer
url	Verifies whether data is in url format

To get started, create a new folder called jform. You'll work with the web page shown in [Figure 14.27](#). Launch a text editor and open the chapter14/formstarter.html file. Edit the code as indicated:

---

**Figure 14.27 Newsletter signup form**

---



1. Style error messages. Edit the embedded CSS and configure styles for a class named `error` with a `1em` left margin and red, italic, `.90em` size, Arial or sans-serif font typeface:

```
.error { font-family: Arial, sans-serif;  
font-style: italic; font-size: .90em;  
color: #FF0000; margin-left: 1em; }
```

2. Code the following script element in the head section of your document to access the jQuery library:

```
<script src=  
"https://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/libs/jquery/  
3.4.1/jquery.min.js">  
</script>
```

3. Code the following script element in the head section of your document to access the Validate plugin:

```
<script src=  
"https://cdnjs.cloudflare.com/ajax/libs/jquery  
-validate/1.19.0/jquery.validate.js">  
</script>
```

4. Code script tags, the jQuery ready event, and a jQuery statement that will invoke form validation in the head section of the document:

```
<script>  
$(document).ready(function(){  
  $('form').validate();  
});  
</script>
```

5. Edit the HTML to configure the form validation. The Name is required. The e-mail address is required and should be in e-mail format.

- a.** Add `class="required"` to the input tag for the Name textbox.
- b.** Add `class="required_email"` to the input tag for the e-mail textbox.
6. Save your file with the name index.html in the jform folder and display it in a browser. Try clicking the Sign Up button without entering any data. The jQuery Validation plugin will check for the errors you specified and it will display two error messages as shown in [Figure 14.28](#).

---

**Figure 14.28** jQuery validate plugin error messages



7. Next, enter information in both textboxes but do not enter a correct e-mail address. The jQuery Validation plugin will display an error message as shown in [Figure 14.29](#).

---

**Figure 14.29** jQuery validate plugin e-mail error message

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Newsletter Sign Up". Inside, there's a form with two fields: "Name:" containing "Sparky" and "E-mail:" containing "Feik". A red error message "Please enter a valid email address." is displayed next to the E-mail field. Below the fields is a "Sign Up" button.

8. Finally, submit the form with both a name and a valid e-mail address entered. With all specified edits passed, the browser will send the form information to the server-side script configured in the form's action attribute and you'll see a confirmation page display. Compare your work with the student files (chapter14/14.14/index.html).

## 14.18 jQuery Resources

This chapter has just touched on some of the power and functionality of jQuery. There is so much more to learn! You may wish to do further research using some of the following online resources:

- jQuery  
<http://jquery.com>
- jQuery Documentation  
<http://docs.jquery.com>
- How jQuery Works  
<http://learn.jquery.com/about-jquery/how-jquery-works>
- jQuery Fundamentals  
<http://jqfundamentals.com/chapter/jquery-basics>
- jQuery Tutorials for Web Designers  
<https://webdesignerwall.com/tutorials/jquery-tutorials-for-designers>

### Checkpoint 14.5

1. Describe the two ways the web developers can obtain the jQuery JavaScript Library.
2. Explain the purpose of the `css()` method.
3. Describe the purpose of the ready event.

# Chapter Summary

This chapter introduced the use of JavaScript as a client-side scripting language in web pages. You learned how to embed script blocks in web pages, display an alert message, use an event handler, and validate a form. Visit the textbook web site at <https://www.webdevfoundations.net> for examples, the links listed in this chapter, and updated information.

# Key Terms

[\*\*alert\(\)\*\*](#)  
[\*\*attr\(\)\*\*](#)  
[\*\*click\(\)\*\*](#)  
[\*\*css\(\)\*\*](#)  
[\*\*hover\(\)\*\*](#)  
[\*\*html\(\)\*\*](#)  
[\*\*fadeToggle\(\)\*\*](#)  
[\*\*prompt\(\)\*\*](#)  
[\*\*slideToggle\(\)\*\*](#)  
[\*\*toggle\(\)\*\*](#)  
[\*\*<script>\*\*](#)  
[\*\*write\(\)\*\*](#)  
[\*\*arithmetic operators\*\*](#)  
[\*\*case-sensitive\*\*](#)  
[\*\*client-side processing\*\*](#)  
[\*\*comments\*\*](#)  
[\*\*comparison operators\*\*](#)  
[\*\*concatenation\*\*](#)  
[\*\*Content Delivery Network \(CDN\)\*\*](#)  
[\*\*debug\*\*](#)  
[\*\*document\*\*](#)  
[\*\*event\*\*](#)  
[\*\*event handler\*\*](#)  
[\*\*event listener\*\*](#)  
[\*\*form handling\*\*](#)  
[\*\*function\*\*](#)  
[\*\*image swapping\*\*](#)  
[\*\*invoke\*\*](#)

[jQuery](#)  
[jQuery alias](#)  
[jQuery method](#)  
[jQuery selector](#)  
[jump menus](#)  
[method](#)  
[mouseover](#)  
[null](#)  
[object](#)  
[object-based](#)  
[onclick](#)  
[onload](#)  
[onmouseout](#)  
[onmouseover](#)  
[onsubmit](#)  
[plugin](#)  
[popup window](#)  
[ready event](#)  
[reserved word](#)  
[scripting language](#)  
[scope](#)  
[server-side processing](#)  
[string](#)  
[var](#)  
[variable](#)  
[window object](#)

# Review Questions

## Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following is a technique for creating reusable JavaScript code?
  - a. define a function
  - b. create a script block
  - c. define an if statement
  - d. use an onclick event handler
2. When the user positions the mouse pointer on a link, the browser detects which one of these events?
  - a. mouseon
  - b. mousehover
  - c. mouseover
  - d. mousedown
3. When the user moves the mouse pointer away from a link it had been hovering over, the browser detects which one of these events?
  - a. mouseoff
  - b. mouseout
  - c. mouseaway
  - d. mouseup
4. Which method of the window can be used to display a message to the user?
  - a. `alert()`
  - b. `message()`
  - c. `status()`
  - d. `display()`

5. Which of the following will assign the value 5 to the variable `productCost`?

- a. `productCost => 5;`
- b. `productCost <= 5;`
- c. `productCost == 5;`
- d. `productCost = 5;`

6. A condition (`productCost > 5`) is used in an if statement. Which of the following values of `productCost` will result in this condition being evaluated as true?

- a. 4
- b. 5
- c. 5.1
- d. none of the above

7. Which of the following can describe JavaScript as used in a web page?

- a. a scripting language
- b. a markup language
- c. an easy form of Java
- d. a language created by Microsoft

8. Which of the following is the code for accessing the contents of an input box named `userData` on a form?

- a. `document.forms[0].userData`
- b. `document.forms[0].userData.value`
- c. `document.forms[0].userData.contents`
- d. `document.forms[0].userData.data`

9. Which of the following is the code to invoke a function called `isValid()` when the user clicks the submit button?

- a. `<input type="text" onmouseout="isValid();">`

b. 

```
<input type="submit"
onsubmit="isValid();">
```

c. 

```
<form method="post" action="URL"
onsubmit="return isValid();">
```

d. 

```
<form method="post" action="URL"
onclick="return isValid();">
```

10. A web page document is considered to be which of the following in the Document Object Model?

- a. object
- b. property
- c. method
- d. attribute

11. What does the jQuery code snippet `$( 'div' )` select?

- a. the element assigned to an id named div
- b. all div elements
- c. the first div element
- d. the last div element

## Fill in the Blank

12. The comparison operator that checks for the exactly equal to condition is \_\_\_\_\_.

- 13.** Use the \_\_\_\_\_ jQuery method to configure the value of HTML attributes.
- 14.** The \_\_\_\_\_ object is assumed to exist and it is not necessary to include it as an object when referring to its methods and properties.
- 15.** The jQuery \_\_\_\_\_ is triggered when the DOM of a web page is completely loaded by a browser.
- 16.** A form control button can be used with a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ event handler to run a script when the user clicks a button.
- 17.** jQuery is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ library.
- 18.** Use the \_\_\_\_\_ jQuery method to configure CSS styles.

## Short Answer

- 19.** Describe at least three popular uses for JavaScript.
- 20.** Describe how you could debug JavaScript code when it is not working properly.

# Apply Your Knowledge

- 1. PREDICT THE RESULT.** Given the following code, what will happen when the user clicks the button?

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>JavaScript Practice</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<script>
function mystory() {
    alert('hello');
}
</script>
</head>
<body>
<h1>Using JavaScript</h1>
<button onclick="mystery()">Click Me</button>
</body>
</html>
```

- 2. FILL IN THE MISSING CODE.** This web page should prompt the user for the name of a song and print the song name in the document. The missing code is indicated by `"_"`. Fill in the missing code.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>JavaScript Practice</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<h1>Using JavaScript</h1>
<script>
var userSong;
userSong = _("Please enter your favorite song
title.");
document._(_);
</script>
```

```
</body>
</html>
```

- 3. FIND THE ERROR.** When this page is loaded in the web browser, it is supposed to display an error message if the user has not typed any data in the Name input box. It is not working properly, so the form is submitted regardless of the missing input. Fix the errors so that the form does not submit if there is no information in the Name input box. Correct the errors and describe the process you followed.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>JavaScript Practice</title>
<meta charset="utf-8">
<script>
function validateForm() {
if (document.forms[0].userName.value == "") {
    aert("Name field cannot be empty.");
    return false;
} // end if
aert("Name and age are valid.");
return true;
} // end function validateForm
</script>
</head>
<body>
<h1>JavaScript Form Handling</h1>
<form method="post"
action="http://webdevbasics.net/scripts/demo.php"
onsubmit="return validateUser();">
    <label>Name: <input type="text" name="userName">
</label>
    <br>
    <input type="submit" value="Send information">
</form>
</body>
</html>
```

# Hands-On Exercises

- 1.** Practice writing event handlers.
  - a.** Write the HTML tag and event handler to pop up an alert message that says "Welcome" when the user clicks a button.
  - b.** Write the HTML tag and event handler to pop up an alert message that says "Welcome" when the user moves the mouse pointer over a hypertext link that says "Hover for a welcome message".
  - c.** Write the HTML tag and event handler to pop up an alert message that says "Welcome" when the user moves the mouse pointer away from a hypertext link that says "Move your mouse pointer here for a welcome message".
- 2.** Practice writing jQuery selectors:
  - a.** Write the jQuery selector that will select all anchor tags in the main element.
  - b.** Write the jQuery selector that will select the first div on a web page.
- 3.** Create a web page that will pop up an alert message that welcomes the user to the web page. Use a script block in the head section for this task.
- 4.** Create a web page that will prompt the user for a name and age, and write a message using the name and age in the message. Use the `prompt()` method and variables to accomplish this.
- 5.** Create a web page that will prompt the user for a color name. Use this color name to write the text "This is your favorite color!". The `fgColor` property of the document changes the text color of all text in a document. Use the `fgColor` property to accomplish this task.

- 6.** Continue with [Hands-On Practice 14.9](#). Add a text box for the user's city. Ensure that this text box is not empty when the form is submitted. If the city text box is empty, pop up an appropriate alert message and do not submit the form. If the city text box is not empty and the other data is valid, submit the form.
- 7.** Using [Hands-On Practice 14.12](#) as a guide, create an image gallery web page with your own favorite photos. Remember to optimize each photo for web display.
- 8.** Using [Hands-On Practice 14.13](#) as a guide, create a slideshow web page with your own favorite photos. Remember to optimize each photo for web display. If the jQuery plugin is not available for some reason, search for and use an alternate jQuery slideshow plugin.

# Web Research

1. Use the resources listed in this chapter as a starting point, but also search the Web for additional resources on JavaScript. Create a web page that lists at least five useful resources, along with a brief description of each. Organize your web page with a list that provides the name of the site, the URL, a brief description of what is offered, and a recommended page (such as a tutorial, free script, and so on) for each resource. Place your name in an e-mail link on the web page.
2. Use the resources listed in the chapter as a starting point, but also search the Web for additional resources on JavaScript. Find either a tutorial or a free download that uses JavaScript. Create a web page that uses the code or download that you found. Describe the effect and list the URL of the resource on the web page. Place your name in an e-mail link on the web page.
3. Use the resources listed in the chapter as a starting point, but also search the Web for additional resources on jQuery. Locate a jQuery plugin that is appealing and/or useful to you. Create a web page that uses the jQuery plugin. Describe the purpose of the plugin and list the URL of the plugin documentation on the web page. Place your name in an e-mail link on the web page.

---

## Website Case Study Adding JavaScript

Each of the following case studies has continued throughout most of the text. This chapter adds JavaScript to selected web pages from each of the case studies.

## JavaJam Coffee Bar

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the JavaJam Coffee Bar case study. [Figure 2.32](#) shows a site map for the JavaJam website. The pages were created in earlier chapters. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this JavaJam case study.
2. Add the date that the document was last modified to the bottom of the Home page (index.html).
3. Add an alert message to the Menu page (menu.html).

### Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called javajam14. Copy all the files from your [Chapter 9](#) javajam9 folder into the javajam14 folder.

**TASK 2: ADD A DATE TO THE HOME PAGE.** Launch a text editor and open the index.html file. You will add the date that the document was last modified to the bottom of the index.html page.

You have the option to complete this task with JavaScript or to complete this task with jQuery.

**OPTION 1: USING JAVASCRIPT.** Modify the page as follows:

- In the footer area after the e-mail link, add a script block contained within a div element that will write the following message to the document:  
This page was last modified on: date”
- Use the `document.lastModified` property to print the date.

Save the index.html page and test it in the browser. You should see the new information in the footer area below the e-mail address.

**OPTION 2: USING JAVASCRIPT AND JQUERY.** Modify the page as follows:

- In the footer area after the e-mail link, code a div element.
- Add a script tag in the head section to access a jQuery CDN.
- Code a jQuery script block that includes the ready event and uses the `html()` method to display the message “This page was last modified on:” and the `document.lastModified` value within the new div.

Save the index.html page and test it in the browser. You should see the new information in the footer area below the e-mail address.

### **TASK 3: DISPLAY AN ALERT MESSAGE ON THE MENU**

**PAGE.** Launch a text editor and open the menu.html file.

You will add JavaScript to the menu.html page so that an alert message will pop up when the user places the mouse over the phrase “Mug Club”. The alert message will indicate “JavaJam Mug Club Members get a 10% discount on each cup of coffee!”

You have the option to complete this task with JavaScript or to complete this task with jQuery.

**OPTION 1: USING JAVASCRIPT.** Modify the page as follows:

- Add a hypertext link to the first paragraph with an onmouseover event handler as follows:

```
<a href="#" onmouseover="alert('JavaJam Mug Club Members get a 10% discount on each cup of coffee!');">Mug Club</a>
```

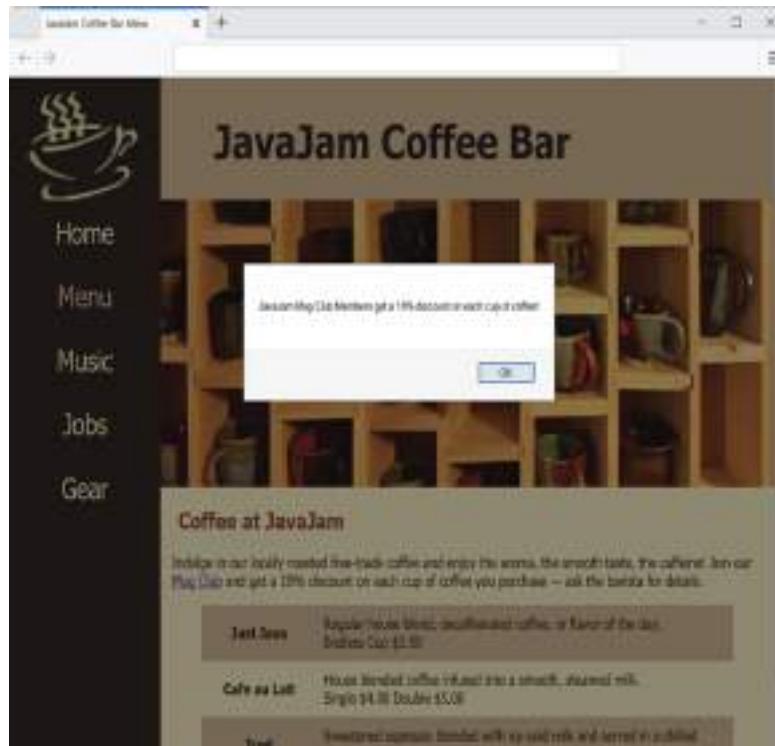
Save the menu.html page and test it in the browser.

Figure 14.30 shows the alert message when users place their mouse pointer over the hyperlinked phrase.

---

**Figure 14.30 JavaJam Menu page with the mouseover alert**

---



**OPTION 2: USING JAVASCRIPT AND JQUERY.** Modify the page as follows:

- Configure a hyperlink in the paragraph for the text "Mug Club".

- Code # as the value of the href attribute in the anchor tag.
- Add a script tag in the head section to access a jQuery CDN
- Code a jQuery script block that includes the ready event.
- Code a jQuery statement to listen for the hover event on anchor tags in the main element. Code JavaScript to display an alert box with the message “JavaJam Mug Club Members get a 10% discount on each cup of coffee!” when the hover occurs.

Save the menu.html page and test it in the browser.

Figure 14.30 shows the alert message when users place their mouse pointer over the hyperlinked phrase.

## Fish Creek Animal Clinic

See Chapter 2 for an introduction to the Fish Creek Animal Clinic case study. Figure 2.36 shows a site map for the Fish Creek website. The pages were created in earlier chapters. You have three tasks in this case study:

1. Create a new folder for this Fish Creek case study.
2. Add the date last modified to the Home page (index.html).
3. Add an alert message to the Ask the Vet page (menu.html).

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called fishcreek14. Copy all the files from your Chapter 9 fishcreek9 folder into the fishcreek14 folder.

**TASK 2: ADD A DATE TO THE HOME PAGE.** Launch a text editor and open the index.html file. You will add the date that the document was last modified to the bottom of the index.html page.

You have the option to complete this task with JavaScript or to complete this task with jQuery.

**OPTION 1: USING JAVASCRIPT.** Modify the page as follows:

- In the page footer section after the e-mail link, add div element that contains a script block that will write the following message to the document:  
“This page was last modified on: date”
- Use the `document.lastModified` property to print the date.

Save the index.html page and test it in the browser. You should see the new information in the footer area below the e-mail address.

**OPTION 2: USING JAVASCRIPT AND JQUERY.** Modify the page as follows:

- In the footer area after the e-mail link, code a div element.
- Add a script tag in the head section to access a jQuery CDN.
- Code a jQuery script block that includes the ready event and uses the `html()` method to display the message “This page was last modified on:” and the `document.lastModified` value within the new div.

Save the index.html page and test it in the browser. You should see the new information in the footer area below

the e-mail address.

**TASK 3: DISPLAY AN ALERT MESSAGE ON THE ASK THE VET PAGE.** Launch a text editor and open the askvet.html file. You will configure the askvet.html page so that an alert message will pop up when the page is displayed in the browser.

You have the option to complete this task with JavaScript or to complete this task with jQuery.

#### **OPTION 1: USING JAVASCRIPT.**

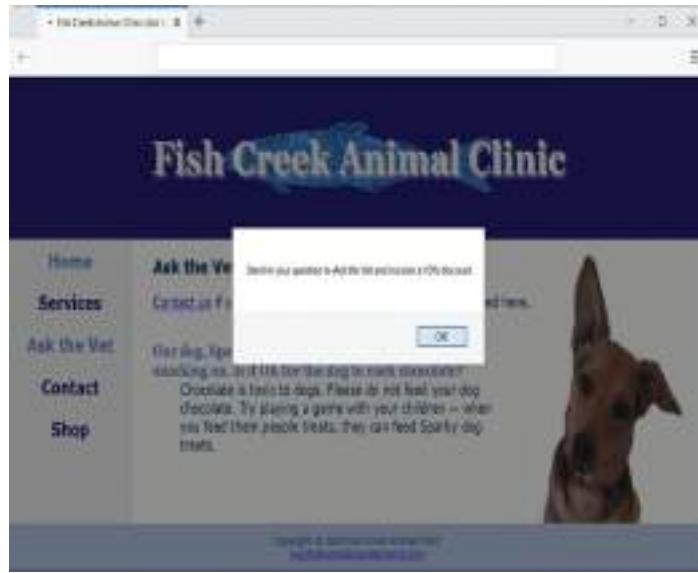
- Edit the body tag as follows:

```
<body onload="alert('Send in your question to Ask the Vet and receive a 10% discount');">
```

- The load event occurs when the web page begins to load in the browser. The `onload` event handler in this case pops up an alert message.
- Save the file and test it in the browser. Your display should be similar to [Figure 14.31](#).

---

**Figure 14.31 Fish Creek Animal Hospital Ask the Vet page**



**OPTION 2: USING JAVASCRIPT AND JQUERY.** Modify the page as follows:

- Add a script tag in the head section to access a jQuery CDN.
- Code a jQuery script block that includes the ready event. Code JavaScript within the ready event to display an alert box with the message, “Send in your question to Ask the Vet and receive a 10% discount!”.
- Save the file and test it in the browser. Your display should be similar to [Figure 14.31](#).

## Pacific Trails Resort

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Pacific Trails case study. [Figure 2.40](#) shows a site map for the Pacific Trails Resort website. The pages were created in earlier chapters. You have three tasks:

1. Create a new folder for this Pacific Trails case study.

- 2.** Add an alert message that displays a message when the browser renders the Yurts page (yurts.html).
- 3.** Add the date that the document was last modified to the bottom of the Home page (index.html).

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called pacific14. Copy all of the files from your [Chapter 9](#) pacific9 folder into the pacific14 folder.

**TASK 2: DISPLAY AN ALERT MESSAGE ON THE YURTS**

**PAGE.** Launch a text editor and open the yurts.html file. You will configure the yurts.html page so that an alert message will pop up when the page is displayed in the browser.

You have the option to complete this task with JavaScript or to complete this task with jQuery.

**OPTION 1: USING JAVASCRIPT.**

- Edit the body tag as follows:

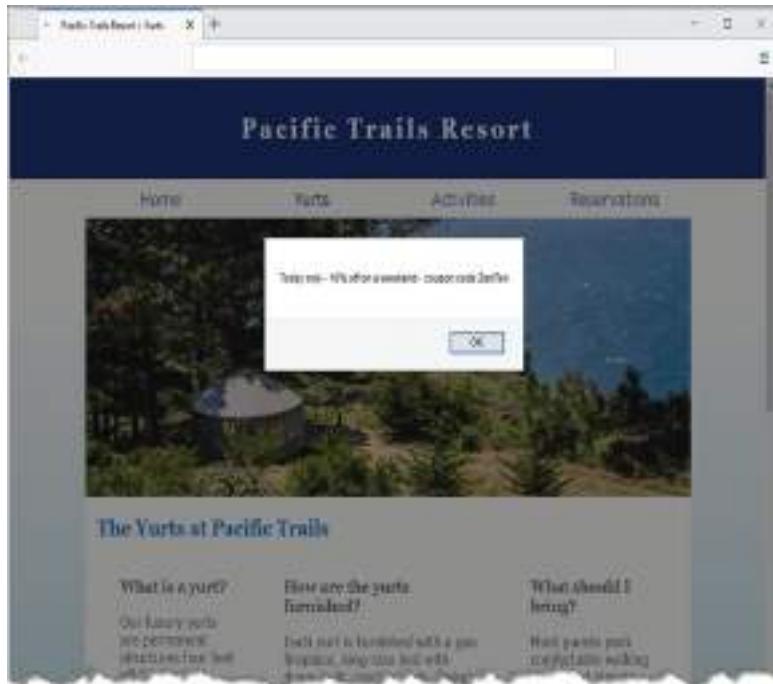
```
<body onload="alert('Today only - 10%  
off on a weekend - coupon code  
ZenTen');">
```

- The load event occurs when the web page begins to load in the browser. The onload event handler in this case pops up an alert message.

Save the file and test it in the browser. Your display should be similar to [Figure 14.32](#).

---

**Figure 14.32 A message displays when the Yurts page is loaded by the browser**



**OPTION 2: USING JAVASCRIPT AND JQUERY.** Modify the page as follows:

- Add a script tag in the head section to access a jQuery CDN.
- Code a jQuery script block that includes the ready event. Code JavaScript within the ready event to display an alert box with the message, “Today only –10% off on a weekend—coupon code ZenTen”.

Save the file and test it in the browser. Your display should be similar to [Figure 14.32](#).

**TASK 3: ADD A DATE TO THE HOME PAGE.** Launch a text editor and open the index.html file. You will add the date that the document was last modified to the bottom of the index.html page.

You have the option to complete this task with JavaScript or to complete this task with jQuery.

#### **OPTION 1: USING JAVASCRIPT.**

- In the footer area after the e-mail link, add a script block contained within a div element that will write the following message to the document: “This page was last modified on: date”
- Use the `document.lastModified` property to print the date.
- Save the index.html page and test it in the browser. You should see the new information in the footer area below the e-mail address.

#### **OPTION 2: USING JAVASCRIPT AND JQUERY.** Modify the page as follows:

- In the footer area after the e-mail link, code a div element.
- Add a script tag in the head section to access a jQuery CDN.
- Code a jQuery script block that includes the ready event and uses the `html()` method to display the message “This page was last modified on:” and the `document.lastModified` value within the new div.
- Save the index.html page and test it in the browser. You should see the new information in the footer area below the e-mail address.

## Path of Light Yoga Studio

See [Chapter 2](#) for an introduction to the Path of Light Yoga Studio case study. [Figure 2.44](#) shows a site map for the Path

of Light Yoga Studio website. The pages were created in earlier chapters. You have three tasks in this case study.

- 1.** Create a new folder for this Path of Light Yoga Studio case study.
- 2.** Add the date last modified to the footer section of the Schedule page (schedule.html).
- 3.** Add an alert message that displays a message when the browser renders the Classes page (classes.html).

## Hands-On Practice Case Study

**TASK 1: THE WEBSITE FOLDER.** Create a folder called yoga14. Copy all the files from your [Chapter 9](#) yoga9 folder into the yoga14 folder.

**TASK 2: ADD A DATE TO THE SCHEDULE PAGE.** Launch a text editor and open the schedule.html file. You will add the date that the document was last modified to the bottom of the schedule.html page. You have the option to complete this task with JavaScript or to complete this task with jQuery.

**OPTION 1: USING JAVASCRIPT.** Modify the page as follows:

- In the page footer section after the e-mail link, add a div element containing a script block that will write the following message to the document:  
This page was last modified on: date”
- Use the `document.lastModified` property to print the date.

Save the file and test it in a browser.

You should see the new information in the footer area below the e-mail address.

**OPTION 2: USING JAVASCRIPT AND JQUERY.** Modify the page as follows:

- In the footer area after the e-mail link, code a div element.
- Add a script tag in the head section to access a jQuery CDN.
- Code a jQuery script block that includes the ready event and uses the `html()` method to display the message “This page was last modified on:” and the `document.lastModified` value within the new div.

Save the schedule.html page and test it in the browser.

You should see the new information in the footer area below the e-mail address.

### **TASK 3: DISPLAY AN ALERT MESSAGE ON THE CLASSES**

**PAGE.** Launch a text editor and open the classes.html file. You will configure the classes.html page so that an alert message will pop up when the page is displayed in the browser.

You have the option to complete this task with JavaScript or to complete this task with jQuery.

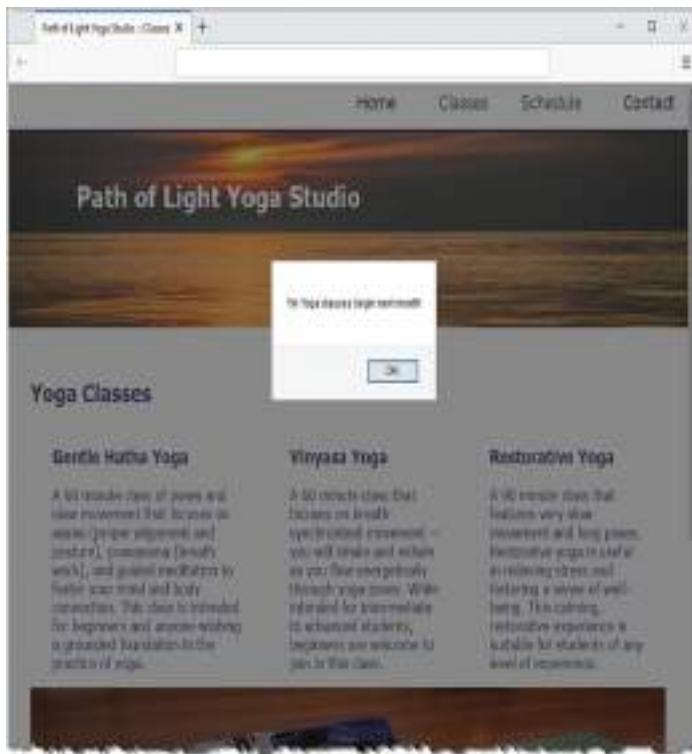
#### **OPTION 1: USING JAVASCRIPT.**

- Edit the body tag as follows:

```
<body onload="alert('Yin Yoga classes  
begin next month!');">
```

- The load event occurs when the web page begins to load in the browser. The onload event handler in this case pops up an alert message.
- Save the file and test it in the browser. Your display should be similar to [Figure 14.33](#).

**Figure 14.33 A message displays when the Classes page is loaded by the browser.**



Copyright © 2016 Path Of Light Yoga.

**OPTION 2: USING JAVASCRIPT AND JQUERY.** Modify the page as follows:

- Add a script tag in the head section to access a jQuery CDN.
- Code a jQuery script block that includes the ready event. Code JavaScript within the ready event to

display an alert box with the message, “Yin Yoga classes begin next month!”.

- Save the file and test it in the browser. Your display should be similar to [Figure 14.33](#).

## Web Project

See [Chapter 5](#) for an introduction to the Web Project case study. Review the goals of your website and determine whether the use of JavaScript in order to add interactivity would add value to your site. If so, add it appropriately. Check with your instructor regarding the required use of interactivity (with or without jQuery) in your Web project.

Select one or more from the following:

- Choose one of the examples from the chapter to add an alert message to grab the user’s attention with regard to important information.
- Choose one of the examples from the chapter to add data validation to a form on your website.
- Display a slideshow of images using a jQuery plugin
- Locate a JavaScript or jQuery tutorial on the Web and adapt the code for your web project

Decide where to apply the interactive technology to your site.

Modify the page(s), save the page(s), and test it in a browser.

---

# Web Developer's Handbook

In the following Appendices you will find a variety of resources that can help you be a more productive web developer.

## Appendices

Appendix A. HTML5 Quick Reference contains a list of commonly used HTML5 elements and attributes [□](#)

Appendix B. Special Entity Characters contains a list of codes needed to display symbols and other special characters on web pages [□](#)

Appendix C. CSS Property Reference contains a list of commonly used properties and values [□](#)

Appendix D. WCAG 2.1 Quick Reference lists the WCAG 2.1 accessibility principles and the textbook chapters that discuss related coding or design techniques [□](#)

Appendix E. Landmark Roles with ARIA [□](#)

Appendix F. FTP Tutorial provides a brief introduction to using File Transfer Protocol [□](#)

Appendix G. The Web-Safe Color Palette provides examples of each color along with hexadecimal and decimal RGB values [□](#)

# A HTML5 Quick Reference

## Commonly Used HTML5 Elements

Element	Purpose	Commonly Used Attributes
<!-- -->	Comment	<i>Not applicable</i>
<a>	Anchor tag: configures hyperlinks	accesskey, class, href, id, name, rel, style, tabindex, target, title
<abbr>	Configures an abbreviation	class, id, style
<address>	Configures contact information	class, id, style
<area>	Configures an area in an image map	accesskey, alt, class, href, hreflang, id, media, shape, style, tabindex, target

Element	Purpose	Commonly Used Attributes
<article>	Configures an independent section of a document as an article	class, id, style
<aside>	Configures tangential content	class, id, style
<audio>	Configures an audio control native to the browser	autoplay, class, controls, id, loop, preload, src, style, title
<b>	Configures bold text with no implied importance	class, id, style
<blockquote>	Configures a long quotation	class, id, style
<body>	Configures the body section	class, id, style
 	Configures a line break	class, id, style

<b>Element</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Commonly Used Attributes</b>
<button>	Configures a button	<code>accesskey,</code> <code>autofocus, class,</code> <code>disabled, form,</code> <code>formaction,</code> <code>formenctype,</code> <code>formmethod,</code> <code>formtarget,</code> <code>formnovalidate,</code> <code>id, name, type,</code> <code>style, value</code>
<canvas>	Configures dynamic graphics	<code>class, height, id,</code> <code>style, title,</code> <code>width</code>
<caption>	Configures a caption for a table	<code>align (obsolete),</code> <code>class, id, style</code>
<cite>	Configures the title of a cited work	<code>class, height, id,</code> <code>style, title,</code> <code>width</code>
<code>	Configures a fragment of computer code	<code>class, id, style</code>

Element	Purpose	Commonly Used Attributes
<col>	Configures a table column	class, id, span, style
<colgroup>	Configures a group of one or more columns in a table	class, id, span, style
<command>	Configures an area to represent commands	class, id, style, type
<data>	Provides a machine-readable format for text content	class, id, style, value
<datalist>	Configures a control that contains one or more option elements	class, id, style
<dd>	Configures a description area in a description list	class, id, style
<del>	Configures deleted text (with strikethrough)	cite, class, datetime, id, style
<details>	Configures a widget to provide additional information to the user on demand	class, id, open, style

Element	Purpose	Commonly Used Attributes
<dfn>	Configures the definition of a term	class, id, style
<dialog>	Configures a dialog box	class, id, open, style
<div>	Configures a generic section or division in a document	align (obsolete), class, id, style
<dl>	Configures a description list (formerly called a definition list)	class, id, style
<dt>	Configures a term in a description list	class, id, style
<em>	Configures emphasized text (usually displays in italics)	class, id, style
<fieldset>	Configures a grouping of form elements with a border	class, id, style
<figcaption>	Configures a caption for a figure	class, id, style
<figure>	Configures a figure	class, id, style

<b>Element</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Commonly Used Attributes</b>
<footer>	Configures a footer area	<code>class, id, style</code>
<form>	Configures a form	<code>accept-charset,</code> <code>action,</code> <code>autocomplete,</code> <code>class, enctype,</code> <code>id, method, name,</code> <code>novalidate, style,</code> <code>target</code>
<h1> ... <h6>	Configures headings	<code>align (obsolete),</code> <code>class, id, style</code>
<head>	Configures the head section	Not applicable
<header>	Configures a header area	<code>class, id, style</code>
<hr>	Configures a horizontal line; indicates a thematic break in HTML5	<code>class, id, style</code>
<html>	Configures the root element of a web page document	<code>lang, manifest</code>

Element	Purpose	Commonly Used Attributes
<i>	Configures italic text with no particular emphasis or importance	class, id, style
<iframe>	Configures an inline frame	class, height, id, name, sandbox, src, style, title, width
<img>	Configures an image	alt, class, height, id, ismap, longdesc, name, sizes, src, srcset, style, usemap, width

Element	Purpose	Commonly Used Attributes
<input>	Configures an input control: text box, email text box, URL text box, search text box, telephone number text box, scrolling text box, submit button, reset button, password box, calendar control, slider control, spinner control, color-well control, or hidden field form control	accesskey, autocomplete, class, checked, disabled, form, id, list, max, maxlength, min, name, pattern, placeholder, readonly, required, size, step, style, tabindex, type, value
<ins>	Configures text that has been inserted into a document	cite, class, datetime, id, style
<kbd>	Configures a representation of user input	class, id, style
<keygen>	Configures a control that generates a public-private key pair or submits the public key	autofocus, challenge, class, disabled, form, id, keytype, style

<b>Element</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Commonly Used Attributes</b>
<label>	Configures a label for a form control	<code>class, for, form, id, style</code>
<legend>	Configures a caption for a fieldset element	<code>class, id, style</code>
<li>	Configures a list item in an unordered or ordered list	<code>class, id, style, value</code>
<link>	Associates a web page document with an external resource	<code>class, href, hreflang, id, rel, media, sizes, style, type</code>
<main>	Configures the main content area of a web page	<code>class, id, style</code>
<map>	Configures an image map	<code>class, id, name, style</code>
<mark>	Configures text as marked (or highlighted) for easy reference	<code>class, id, style</code>
<menu>	Configures a list of commands	<code>class, id, label, style</code>

<b>Element</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Commonly Used Attributes</b>
<meta>	Configures metadata	charset, content, http-equiv, name
<meter>	Configures a visual gauge of a value	class, id, high, low, max, min, optimum, style, value
<nav>	Configures an area with navigation hyperlinks	class, id, style
<noscript>	Configures content for browsers that do not support client-side scripting	
<object>	Configures an embedded object	classid, codebase, data, form, height, name, id, style, title, tabindex, type, width
<ol>	Configures an ordered list	class, id, reversed, start, style, type

<b>Element</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Commonly Used Attributes</b>
<optgroup>	Configures a group of related options in a select list	class, disabled, id, label, style
<option>	Configures an option in a select list	class, disabled, id, selected, style, value
<output>	Configures the results of a calculation	class, for, form, id, name, style
<p>	Configures a paragraph	class, id, style
<param>	Configures a parameter for plug-ins	name, value
<picture>	Configures display of different images depending on specific	class, id, style
<pre>	Configures preformatted text	class, id, style
<progress>	Configures a visual progress indicator	class, id, max, style, value
<q>	Configures quoted text	class, id, style
<rp>	Configures a ruby parenthesis	class, id, style

<b>Element</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Commonly Used Attributes</b>
<rt>	Configures ruby text component of a ruby annotation	class, id, style
<ruby>	Configures a ruby annotation	class, id, style
<s>	Configures text that is no longer accurate or relevant	class, id, style
<samp>	Configures sample output from a computer program or system	class, id, style
<script>	Configures a client-side script (typically, JavaScript)	async, charset, defer, src, type
<section>	Configures a section of a document	class, id, style
<select>	Configures a select list form control	class, disabled, form, id, multiple, name, size, style, tabindex

Element	Purpose	Commonly Used Attributes
<small>	Configures a disclaimer in small text size	class, id, style
<source>	Configures a media file and MIME type	class, id, media, sizes, src, srcset, style, type
<span>	Configures a generic section of a document with inline display	class, id, style
<strong>	Configures text with strong importance (typically displayed as bold)	class, id, style
<style>	Configures embedded styles in a document	media, scoped, type
<sub>	Configures subscript text	class, id, style
<summary>	Configures text as a summary, caption, or legend for a details control	class, id, style
<sup>	Configures superscript text	class, id, style

<b>Element</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Commonly Used Attributes</b>
<table>	Configures a table	class, id, style, summary
<tbody>	Configures the body section of a table	class, id, style
<td>	Configures a table data cell in a table	class, colspan, id, headers, rowspan
<textarea>	Configures a scrolling text box form control	accesskey, autofocus, class, cols, disabled, id, maxlength, name, placeholder, readonly, required, rows, style, tabindex, wrap
<tfoot>	Configures the footer section of a table	class, id, style

<b>Element</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Commonly Used Attributes</b>
<th>	Configures a table header cell in a table	class, colspan, id, headers, rowspan, scope, style
<thead>	Configures the head section of a table	class, id, style
<time>	Configures a date and/or time	class, datetime, id, style
<title>	Configures the title of a web page document	
<tr>	Configures a row in a table	class, id, style
<track>	Configures a subtitle or caption track for media	class, default, id, kind, label, src, srclang, style
<u>	Configures text conventionally styled with an underline	class, id, style
<ul>	Configures an unordered list	class, id, style

<b>Element</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Commonly Used Attributes</b>
<var>	Configures text as a variable or placeholder	class, id, style
<video>	Configures a video control native to the browser	autoplay, class, controls, height, id, loop, poster, preload, src, style, width
<wbr>	Configures a line-break opportunity	class, id, style

## B Special Entity Characters

The table that follows lists a selection of special entity characters in order of numeric code. The most commonly used special characters are shown in bold. The W3Cs list of special characters is found at [http://www.w3.org/MarkUp/html-spec/html-spec\\_13.html](http://www.w3.org/MarkUp/html-spec/html-spec_13.html).

Entity Name	Numeric Code	Descriptive Code	Character
<b>Quotation mark</b>	&#34;	&quot;	"
<b>Ampersand</b>	&#38;	&amp;	&
<b>Apostrophe</b>	&#39;		,
<b>Less than sign</b>	&#60;	&lt;	<
<b>Greater than sign</b>	&#62;	&gt;	>
Vertical bar	&#124;		
<b>Left single quotation mark</b>	&#145;	&lsquo;	'
<b>Right single quotation mark</b>	&#146;	&rsquo;	,

Entity Name	Numeric Code	Descriptive Code	Character
<b>Nonbreaking space</b>	&#160;	&nbsp;	a blank space
Inverted exclamation	&#161;	&iexcl;	¡
Cent sign	&#162;	&cent;	¢
Pound sterling sign	&#163;	&pound;	£
General currency sign	&#164;	&curren;	‡
Yen sign	&#165;	&yen;	¥
Broken vertical bar	&#166;	&brvbar;	⋮
Section sign	&#167;	&sect;	§
Umlaut	&#168;	&uml;	“
<b>Copyright symbol</b>	&#169;	&copy;	©
Feminine ordinal	&#170;	&ordf;	ª
Left angle quote	&#171;	&laquo;	<<
Not sign	&#172;	&not;	¬

Entity Name	Numeric Code	Descriptive Code	Character
Soft hyphen	&#173;	&shy;	-
<b>Registered trademark symbol</b>	&#174;	&reg;	®
Macron	&#175;	&macr;	—
Degree sign	&#176;	&deg;	°
Plus or minus	&#177;	&plusmn;	±
Superscript two	&#178;	&sup2;	²
Superscript three	&#179;	&sup3;	³
Acute accent	&#180;	&acute;	'
Micro (Mu)	&#181;	&micro;	μ
Paragraph sign	&#182;	&para;	¶
Middle dot	&#183;	&middot;	·
Cedilla	&#184;	&cedil;	¸
Superscript one	&#185;	&sup1;	¹

Entity Name	Numeric Code	Descriptive Code	Character
Masculine ordinal	&#186;	&ordm;	º
Right angle quote	&#187;	&raquo;	»
Fraction one-fourth	&#188;	&frac14;	¼
Fraction one-half	&#189;	&frac12;	½
Fraction three-fourths	&#190;	&frac34;	¾
Inverted question mark	&#191;	&iquest;	¿
Small e, grave accent	&#232;	&egrave;	è
Small e, acute accent	&#233;	&eacute;	é
En dash	&#8211;	&ndash;	–
<b>Em dash</b>	&#8212;	&mdash;	—

# C CSS Property Reference

## Commonly Used CSS Properties

Property	Description
align-items	<p>Configures the way the browser displays extra space along the cross-axis of the container.</p> <p>Value: <code>baseline</code>, <code>center</code>, <code>flex-end</code>, <code>flex-start</code>, <code>stretch</code></p>
animation	<p>Shorthand property that describes the way an pre-configured animation is applied.</p> <p>Value: List the value for <code>animation-name</code> and <code>animation-duration</code> separated by spaces (required). Other animation property values are optional.</p>
animation-delay	<p>Delay before beginning animation</p> <p>Value: Default value 0s configures an immediate animation; a numeric value specifies delay time in seconds or milliseconds</p>

Property	Description
animation-direction	<p>Configures if animation should play forward, backwards or alternating</p> <p>Value: normal (default), <code>reverse</code>, <code>alternate</code>, <code>alternate-reverse</code></p>
animation-duration	<p>Length of animation</p> <p>Value: Default value 0s configures no animation; a numeric value specifies length of animation in seconds or milliseconds</p>
animation-fill-mode	<p>Configures what CSS properties apply when the animation is not running</p> <p>Value: none (default), <code>forwards</code>, <code>backwards</code>, <code>both</code></p>
animation-iteration-count	<p>Configures the number of times to repeat the animation;</p> <p>Value: 1 (default), positive number, <code>infinite</code></p>

Property	Description
<code>animation-name</code>	<p>Indicates the associated @keyframes rule for the animation</p> <p>Value: name of a @keyframes rule</p>
<code>animation-play-state</code>	<p>Indicates if animation is playing or paused</p> <p>Value: <code>running</code> (default), <code>paused</code></p>
<code>animation-timing-function</code>	<p>Configures changes in the speed of the animation by describing how intermediate property values are calculated</p> <p>Value: <code>ease</code> (default), <code>linear</code>, <code>ease-in</code>, <code>ease-out</code>, <code>ease-in-out</code></p>
<code>background</code>	<p>Shorthand to configure all the background properties of an element</p> <p>Value: <code>background-attachment</code> <code>background-clip</code> <code>background-color</code> <code>background-image</code> <code>background-origin</code> <code>background-position</code> <code>background-repeat</code> <code>background-size</code></p>

Property	Description
background-attachment	<p>Configures a background image as fixed in place or scrolling</p> <p>Value: scroll (default), fixed, or local</p>
background-clip	<p>Configures the area to display the background</p> <p>Value: border-box, padding-box, or content-box</p>
background-color	<p>Configures the background color of an element</p> <p>Value: Valid color value</p>
background-image	<p>Configures a background image for an element</p> <p>Value: <i>url(file name or path to the image)</i>, none (default)</p> <p>Optional functions: linear-gradient() and radial-gradient()</p>

Property	Description
<code>background-origin</code>	<p>Configures the background positioning area</p> <p>Value: <code>padding-box</code>, <code>border-box</code>, or <code>content-box</code></p>
<code>background-position</code>	<p>Configures the position of a background image</p> <p>Value: Two percentages, pixel values, or position values (<code>left</code>, <code>top</code>, <code>center</code>, <code>bottom</code>, <code>right</code>)</p>
<code>background-repeat</code>	<p>Configures how the background image will be repeated</p> <p>Value: <code>repeat</code> (default), <code>repeat-y</code>, <code>repeat-x</code>, or <code>no-repeat</code></p>
<code>background-size</code>	<p>Configures the size of the background images</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, <code>contain</code>, <code>cover</code></p>
<code>border</code>	<p>Shorthand to configure the border of an element</p> <p>Value: <code>border-width</code> <code>border-style</code> <code>border-color</code></p>

Property	Description
<code>border-bottom</code>	<p>Configures the bottom border of an element</p> <p>Value: <code>border-width border-style border-color</code></p>
<code>border-collapse</code>	<p>Configures the display of borders in a table</p> <p>Value: <code>separate</code> (default) or <code>collapse</code></p>
<code>border-color</code>	<p>Configures the border color of an element</p> <p>Value: Valid color value</p>
<code>border-image</code>	<p>Configures an image in the border of an element</p> <p>See <a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/css3-background/#the-border-image">http://www.w3.org/TR/css3-background/#the-border-image</a></p>
<code>border-left</code>	<p>Configures the left border of an element</p> <p>Value: <code>border-width border-style border-color</code></p>

Property	Description
border-radius	<p>Configures rounded corners</p> <p>Value: One to four numeric values (px or em) or percentages that configure the radius of the corners. If a single value is provided, it configures all four corners. The corners are configured in order of top left, top right, bottom right, and bottom left.</p> <p>Related properties: <code>border-top-left-radius</code>, <code>border-top-right-radius</code>, <code>border-bottom-left-radius</code>, and <code>border-bottom-right-radius</code></p>
border-right	<p>Configures the right border of an element</p> <p>Value: <code>border-width border-style border-color</code></p>
border-spacing	<p>Configures the space between table cells in a table</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em)</p>
border-style	<p>Configures the style of the borders around an element</p> <p>Value: <code>none</code> (default), <code>inset</code>, <code>outset</code>, <code>double</code>, <code>groove</code>, <code>ridge</code>, <code>solid</code>, <code>dashed</code>, or <code>dotted</code></p>

Property	Description
<code>border-top</code>	<p>Configures the top border of an element</p> <p>Value: <code>border-width border-style border-color</code></p>
<code>border-width</code>	<p>Configures the width of an element's border</p> <p>Value: numeric pixel value (such as <code>1px</code>), <code>thin</code>, <code>medium</code>, or <code>thick</code></p>
<code>bottom</code>	<p>Configures the offset position from the bottom of a containing element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (<code>px</code> or <code>em</code>), percentage, or auto (default)</p>
<code>box-shadow</code>	<p>Configures a drop shadow on an element</p> <p>Values: Three or four numerical values (<code>px</code> or <code>em</code>) to indicate horizontal offset, vertical offset, blur radius, spread distance (optional), and a valid color value.</p> <p>Use the <code>inset</code> keyword to configure an inner shadow.</p>

Property	Description
<code>box-sizing</code>	<p>Alters the default CSS box model that calculates widths and heights of elements</p> <p>Values: <code>content-box</code> (default), <code>padding-box</code>, <code>border-box</code></p>
<code>caption-side</code>	<p>Configures the placement of a table caption</p> <p>Value: <code>top</code> (default) or <code>bottom</code></p>
<code>clear</code>	<p>Configures the display of an element in relation to floating elements</p> <p>Value: <code>none</code> (default), <code>left</code>, <code>right</code>, or <code>both</code></p>
<code>color</code>	<p>Configures the color of text within an element</p> <p>Value: Valid color value</p>
<code>column-gap</code>	<p>Configures the space between grid columns</p> <p>Value: Numeric length or percentage</p>

Property	Description
display	<p>Configures how and whether an element will display</p> <p>Value: <code>inline</code>, <code>none</code>, <code>block</code>, <code>flex</code>, <code>grid</code>, <code>inline-flex</code>, <code>list-item</code>, <code>table</code>, <code>table-row</code>, or <code>table-cell</code></p>
flex	<p>Configures proportional size and flexibility of a flex item</p> <p>Values: numeric value sets the proportional flexible size of the item. See <a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/css3-flexbox/#flex-common">http://www.w3.org/TR/css3-flexbox/#flex-common</a></p>
flex-basis	<p>Configures the initial dimension along the main axis of the flex item</p> <p>Value: <code>content</code>, <code>auto</code>, numeric or percentage</p>
flex-direction	<p>Configures direction of flex items within a flex container</p> <p>Values: <code>row</code> (default), <code>column</code>, <code>row-reverse</code>, <code>column-reverse</code></p>

Property	Description
<code>flex-grow</code>	<p>Determines the growth of the flex item relative to other items in the flex container</p> <p>Value: 0 (default), positive number</p>
<code>flex-shrink</code>	<p>Determines how much the flex item will shrink relative to the other items in the flex container</p> <p>Value: 1 (default), positive number</p>
<code>flex-wrap</code>	<p>Configures whether flex items are displayed on multiple lines within a flex container</p> <p>Value: nowrap (default), wrap, wrap-reverse</p>
<code>float</code>	<p>Configures the horizontal placement (left or right) of an element</p> <p>Value: none (default), left, or right</p>

Property	Description
<code>font-family</code>	<p>Configures the font typeface of text</p> <p>Value: List of valid font names or generic font family names</p>
<code>font-size</code>	<p>Configures the font size of text</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px, pt, em) percentage value, <code>xx-small</code>, <code>x-small</code>, <code>small</code>, <code>medium</code> (default), <code>large</code>, <code>x-large</code>, <code>xx-large</code>, <code>smaller</code>, or <code>larger</code></p>
<code>font-stretch</code>	<p>Configures a normal, condensed, or expanded face from a font family</p> <p>Value: <code>normal</code> (default), <code>wider</code>, <code>narrower</code>, <code>condensed</code>, <code>semi-condensed</code>, <code>expanded</code>, or <code>ultra-expanded</code></p>
<code>font-style</code>	<p>Configures the font style of text</p> <p>Value: <code>normal</code> (default), <code>italic</code>, or <code>oblique</code></p>

Property	Description
<code>font-variant</code>	<p>Configures whether text is displayed in small-caps font</p> <p>Value: <code>normal</code> (default) or <code>small-caps</code></p>
<code>font-weight</code>	<p>Configures the weight (boldness) of text</p> <p>Value: <code>normal</code> (default), <code>bold</code>, <code>bolder</code>, <code>lighter</code>, <code>100</code>, <code>200</code>, <code>300</code>, <code>400</code>, <code>500</code>, <code>600</code>, <code>700</code>, <code>800</code>, or <code>900</code></p>
<code>grid-area</code>	<p>Associates a grid item with a named area of the grid</p> <p>Value: Name of a grid area</p>
<code>grid-column</code>	<p>Configures one or more columns in the grid for an item or area</p> <p>Value: See <a href="https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#typedef-grid-row-start-grid-line">https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#typedef-grid-row-start-grid-line</a></p>
<code>grid-column-gap</code>	<p>Configures the space between grid columns</p> <p>Value: Numeric length or percentage</p>

Property	Description
<code>grid-gap</code>	<p>Configures the space between grid columns and grid rows</p> <p>Value: Numeric length or percentage</p>
<code>grid-row-gap</code>	<p>Configures the space between grid rows</p> <p>Value: Numeric length or percentage</p>
<code>grid-row</code>	<p>Configures one or more rows in the grid for an item or area</p> <p>Value: See <a href="https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#typedef-grid-row-start-grid-line">https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#typedef-grid-row-start-grid-line</a></p>

Property	Description
grid-template	<p>Shorthand property that combines the <code>grid-template-areas</code>, <code>grid-template-rows</code>, and <code>grid-template-columns</code> properties</p> <p>Value: A series of strings for each row that indicate placement of named grid areas; the last row describes the columns widths</p> <p>See <a href="https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#propdef-grid-template">https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#propdef-grid-template</a></p>
grid-template-areas	<p>Visually indicates the placement of the named grid areas on the grid</p> <p>Value: A series of strings for each row that indicate placement of named grid areas See <a href="https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#grid-template-areas-property">https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#grid-template-areas-property</a></p>
grid-template-columns	<p>Specifies how much space to reserve for each column in the grid</p> <p>Value: Numeric pixels, percentage, auto, and fr units; see <a href="https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#propdef-grid-template-columns">https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#propdef-grid-template-columns</a></p>

Property	Description
grid-template-rows	<p>Specifies how much space to reserve for each row in the grid</p> <p>Value: Numeric pixels, percentage, auto, and fr units; see <a href="https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#propdef-grid-template-rows">https://www.w3.org/TR/css-grid-1/#propdef-grid-template-rows</a></p>
height	<p>Configures the height of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, or auto (default)</p>
justify-content	<p>Configures how the browser should display any extra space that may exist in the flex container</p> <p>Values: flex-start (default), flex-end, center, space-between, space-around</p>
left	<p>Configures the offset position from the left of a containing element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, or auto (default)</p>

Property	Description
<code>letter-spacing</code>	<p>Configures the space between text characters</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em) or <code>normal</code> (default)</p>
<code>line-height</code>	<p>Configures the line height of the text</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, multiplier numeric value, or <code>normal</code> (default)</p>
<code>list-style</code>	<p>Shorthand to configure the properties of a list</p> <p>Value: <code>list-style-type</code> <code>list-style-position</code> <code>list-style-image</code></p>
<code>list-style-image</code>	<p>Configures an image as a list marker</p> <p>Value: <code>url(file name or path to the image)</code> or <code>none</code> (default)</p>
<code>list-style-position</code>	<p>Configures the position of the list markers</p> <p>Value: <code>inside</code> or <code>outside</code> (default)</p>

Property	Description
list-style-type	<p>Configures the type of list marker displayed</p> <p>Value: none, circle, disc (default), square, decimal, decimal-leading-zero, georgian, lower-alpha, lower-roman, upper-alpha, or upper-roman</p>
margin	<p>Shorthand to configure the margin of an element</p> <p>Value: One to four numeric values (px or em) or percentages, auto, or 0</p>
margin-bottom	<p>Configures the bottom margin of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, auto, or 0</p>
margin-left	<p>Configures the left margin of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, auto, or 0</p>

Property	Description
margin-right	<p>Configures the right margin of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, auto, or 0</p>
margin-top	<p>Configures the top margin of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, auto, or 0</p>
max-height	<p>Configures the maximum height of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, or none (default)</p>
max-width	<p>Configures the maximum width of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, or none (default)</p>

Property	Description
<code>min-height</code>	<p>Configures the minimum height of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, or <code>none</code> (default)</p>
<code>min-width</code>	<p>Configures the minimum width of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, or <code>none</code> (default)</p>
<code>opacity</code>	<p>Configures the transparency of an element and its child elements</p> <p>Value: Numeric value between 1 (fully opaque) and 0 (completely transparent)</p>
<code>order</code>	<p>Display the flex items or grid items in a different order than they are coded</p> <p>Value: Numeric value</p>

Property	Description
outline	<p>Shorthand to configure an outline of an element</p> <p>Value: <code>outline-width</code>, <code>outline-style</code>, <code>outline-color</code></p>
outline-color	<p>Configures the outline color of an element</p> <p>Value: Valid color value</p>
outline-style	<p>Configures the style of the outline around an element</p> <p>Value: <code>none</code> (default), <code>inset</code>, <code>outset</code>, <code>double</code>, <code>groove</code>, <code>ridge</code>, <code>solid</code>, <code>dashed</code>, or <code>dotted</code></p>
outline-width	<p>Configures the width of an element's outline</p> <p>Value: Numeric pixel value (such as <code>1px</code>), <code>thin</code>, <code>medium</code>, or <code>thick</code></p>
overflow	<p>Configures how content should display if it is too large for the area allocated</p> <p>Value: <code>visible</code> (default), <code>hidden</code>, <code>auto</code>, or <code>scroll</code></p>

Property	Description
<code>padding</code>	<p>Shorthand to configure the padding of an element</p> <p>Value: One to four numeric values (px or em) or percentages, or 0</p>
<code>padding-bottom</code>	<p>Configures the bottom padding of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, or 0</p>
<code>padding-left</code>	<p>Configures the left padding of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, or 0</p>
<code>padding-right</code>	<p>Configures the right padding of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, or 0</p>
<code>padding-top</code>	<p>Configures the top padding of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, or 0</p>
<code>page-break-after</code>	<p>Configures the page break after an element</p> <p>Value: auto (default), always, avoid, left, or right</p>

Property	Description
<code>page-break-before</code>	<p>Configures the page break before an element</p> <p>Value: <code>auto</code> (default), <code>always</code>, <code>avoid</code>, <code>left</code>, or <code>right</code></p>
<code>page-break-inside</code>	<p>Configures the page break inside an element</p> <p>Value: <code>auto</code> (default) or <code>avoid</code></p>
<code>position</code>	<p>Configures the type of positioning used to display an element</p> <p>Value: <code>static</code> (default), <code>absolute</code>, <code>fixed</code>, <code>relative</code>, or <code>sticky</code></p>
<code>right</code>	<p>Configures the offset position from the right of a containing element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, or <code>auto</code> (default)</p>

Property	Description
<code>text-align</code>	<p>Configures the horizontal alignment of text within an element</p> <p>Value: <code>left</code> (default), <code>right</code>, <code>center</code>, or <code>justify</code></p>
<code>text-decoration</code>	<p>Configures the decoration added to text</p> <p>Value: <code>none</code> (default), <code>underline</code>, <code>overline</code>, <code>line-through</code>, or <code>blink</code></p>
<code>text-indent</code>	<p>Configures the indentation of the first line of text</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em) or percentage</p>
<code>text-outline</code>	<p>Configures an outline around text displayed within an element</p> <p>Value: One or two numerical values (px or em) to indicate thickness and (optionally) blur radius, and a valid color value</p>

Property	Description
<code>text-shadow</code>	<p>Configures a drop shadow on the text displayed within an element</p> <p>Values: Three or four numerical values (px or em) to indicate horizontal offset, vertical offset, blur radius, or spread distance (optional), and a valid color value</p>
<code>text-transform</code>	<p>Configures the capitalization of text</p> <p>Value: <code>none</code> (default), <code>capitalize</code>, <code>uppercase</code>, or <code>lowercase</code></p>
<code>top</code>	<p>Configures the offset position from the top of a containing element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, or <code>auto</code> (default)</p>
<code>transform</code>	<p>Configures change or transformation in the display of an element</p> <p>Value: A transform function such as <code>scale()</code>, <code>translate()</code>, <code>matrix()</code>, <code>rotate()</code>, <code>skew()</code>, or <code>perspective()</code></p>

Property	Description
<code>transition</code>	<p>Shorthand property to configure the presentational transition of a CSS property</p> <p>Value: List the value for the <code>transition-property</code>, <code>transition-duration</code>, <code>transition-timing-function</code>, and <code>transition-delay</code>, separated by spaces; default values can be omitted, but the first time unit applies to <code>transition-duration</code></p>
<code>transition-delay</code>	<p>Indicates the beginning of the transition</p> <p>Value: 0 (default) configures no delay; otherwise use a numeric value to specify time (usually in seconds)</p>
<code>transition-duration</code>	<p>Indicates the length of time to apply the transition</p> <p>Value: 0 (default) configures an immediate transition; otherwise use a numeric value to specify time (usually in seconds)</p>

Property	Description
transition-property	<p>Indicates the CSS property that the transition applies to</p> <p>Value: A list of applicable properties is available at <a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/css3-transitions">http://www.w3.org/TR/css3-transitions</a></p>
transition-timing-function	<p>Configures changes in the speed of the transition by describing how intermediate property values are calculated</p> <p>Value: <code>ease</code> (default), <code>linear</code>, <code>ease-in</code>, <code>ease-out</code>, or <code>ease-in-out</code></p>
vertical-align	<p>Configures the vertical alignment of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, baseline (default), <code>sub</code>, <code>super</code>, <code>top</code>, <code>text-top</code>, <code>middle</code>, <code>bottom</code>, or <code>text-bottom</code></p>
visibility	<p>Configures the visibility of an element</p> <p>Value: <code>visible</code> (default), <code>hidden</code>, or <code>collapse</code></p>

Property	Description
white-space	<p>Configures white space inside an element</p> <p>Value: <code>normal</code> (default), <code>nowrap</code>, <code>pre</code>, <code>pre-line</code>, or <code>pre-wrap</code></p>
width	<p>Configures the width of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em), percentage, or <code>auto</code> (default)</p>
word-spacing	<p>Configures the space between words within text</p> <p>Value: Numeric value (px or em) or <code>auto</code> (default)</p>
z-index	<p>Configures the stacking order of an element</p> <p>Value: Numeric value or <code>auto</code> (default)</p>

# D WCAG 2.1 Quick Reference

Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG) 2.1 reached W3C Recommendation status in June 2018. WCAG 2.1 includes all WCAG 2.0 success criteria. WCAG 2.1 also introduces new success criteria.

# Perceivable

- **1.1 TEXT ALTERNATIVES:** Provide text alternatives for any nontext content so that it can be changed into other forms people need, such as large print, Braille, speech, symbols, or simpler language. *You configure images (Chapter 4) and multimedia (Chapter 11) on web pages and provide for alternative text content.*
- **1.2 TIME-BASED MEDIA:** Provide alternatives for time-based media. *You don't create time-based media in this textbook, but keep this option in mind for the future if you create animation.* You create a jQuery slideshow in Chapter 14, which includes an option for the user to manually advance or reverse the slide display.
- **1.3 ADAPTABLE:** Create content that can be presented in different ways (for example, simpler layout) without losing information or structure. In Chapter 2, you use *block elements (such as headings, paragraphs, and lists) to create single-column web pages.* You create multicolumn web pages in Chapter 6 and Chapter 7. You use HTML tables in Chapter 8 to configure information.
- **1.4 DISTINGUISHABLE:** Make it easier for users to see and hear content, including separating foreground from background. *You are aware of the importance of good contrast between text and background.*

# Operable

- **2.1 KEYBOARD ACCESSIBLE:** Make all functionality available from a keyboard. In [Chapter 6](#), you configure hyperlinks to named fragment identifiers on a web page. The label element is introduced in [Chapter 9](#).
- **2.2 ENOUGH TIME:** Provide users enough time to read and use content. Provide a way to pause, stop and/or hide moving, blinking, or scrolling information if it begins automatically and lasts more than five seconds. In [Chapter 11](#), you limit the duration of animation to five seconds.
- **2.3 SEIZURES:** Do not design content in a way that is known to cause seizures. *Be careful when you use animation created by others; web pages should not contain elements that flash more than three times in a one-second period.*
- **2.4 NAVIGABLE:** Provide ways to help users navigate, find content, and determine where they are. *In Chapter 2, you use block elements (such as headings and lists) to organize web page content. In Chapter 6, you learn to structure navigation links within an unordered list and you configure hyperlinks to named fragment identifiers on a web page.*
- **2.5 INPUT MODALITIES:** Design to support input via other devices than a keyboard. In [Chapter 7](#), you create responsive web pages that work well on both desktop and mobile devices.

# Understandable

- **3.1 READABLE:** Make text content readable and understandable.

You explore techniques used in writing for the Web in [Chapter 5](#).

- **3.2 PREDICTABLE:** Make web pages appear and operate in predictable ways. *The web pages you create are predictable, with clearly labeled and functioning hyperlinks.*

- **3.3 INPUT ASSISTANCE:** Help users avoid and correct mistakes.

You learn to use *HTML form controls* in [Chapter 9](#) that cause a supporting browser to validate basic form information and display error messages. In [Chapter 14](#), you configure client-side scripting to edit web page forms and provide additional feedback to users.

# Robust

- **4.1 COMPATIBLE:** Maximize compatibility with current and future user agents, including assistive technologies. *You provide for future compatibility by writing code that follows W3C Recommendations (standards).*

The How to Meet WCAG 2 (Quick Reference) (<https://www.w3.org/WAI/WCAG21/quickref/>) entries are copyright © 2019 World Wide Web Consortium, (MIT, ERCIM, Keio, Beihang). <https://www.w3.org/Consortium/Legal/2002/ipr-notice-20021231>.

# Resources

Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG) 2.1 reached W3C Recommendation status in June 2018. WCAG 2.1 includes all WCAG 2.0 success criteria. WCAG 2.1 also introduces new success criteria, described at <https://www.w3.org/WAI/standards-guidelines/wcag/new-in-21/>. You'll find the most up-to-date information about WCAG 2.1 at the following resources:

- Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG) 2.1 <https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/>
- Understanding WCAG 2.1 <https://www.w3.org/WAI/WCAG21/Understanding/>
- How to Meet WCAG 2 <https://www.w3.org/WAI/WCAG21/quickref/>

# E Landmark Roles with ARIA

The W3C's Web Accessibility Initiative (WAI) has developed a standard to provide for additional accessibility, called **Accessible Rich Internet Applications (ARIA)**. ARIA provides methods intended to increase the accessibility of web pages and web applications by identifying the role or purpose of an element on a web page (<https://www.w3.org/WAI/intro/aria>).

We'll focus on ARIA landmark roles in this appendix. A **landmark** on a web page is a major section such as a banner, navigation, main content, and so on. **ARIA landmark roles** allow web developers to configure semantic descriptions of HTML elements using the **role attribute** to indicate landmarks on the web page. For example, to indicate the landmark role of main on an element containing the main content of a web page document, code `role="main"` on the opening tag.

People visiting a web page with a screen reader or other assistive technology can access the landmark roles to quickly skip to specific areas on a web page (watch the video at [https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IhWMou12\\_Vk](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IhWMou12_Vk) for a demonstration). Visit <https://www.w3.org/TR/wai-aria-practices/#landmark-roles> for a complete list of ARIA landmark roles.

Commonly used ARIA landmark roles include:

- **banner** (a header/logo area)
- **navigation** (a collection of navigation elements)
- **main** (the main content of a document)

- **complementary** (a supporting part of the web page document, designed to be complementary to the main content)
- **contentinfo** (an area that contains information about the content such as copyright)
- **form** (an area that contains a form)
- **search** (an area of a web page that provides search functionality)

The code for the body section of sample web page with the banner, navigation, main, and contentinfo roles configured is shown below.

Notice that while the role attribute will not change the way the web page displays, it offers additional information about the document that can be used by assistive technologies.

```
<body>
    <header role="banner">
        <h1>Heading Logo Banner</h1>
    </header>
    <nav role="navigation">
        <a href="index.html">Home</a> <a
        href="contact.html">Contact</a>
    </nav>
    <main role="main">
        This is the main content area.
    </main>
    <footer role="contentinfo">
        Copyright © 2020 Your Name Here
    </footer>
</body>
```

## F FTP Tutorial

### Publish with File Transfer Protocol (FTP)

Once you obtain your web hosting space, you'll need to upload your files. Although your web host may offer a web-based file manager application for client use, a common method of transferring files is to use File Transfer Protocol (FTP). A protocol is a convention or standard that enables computers to speak to one another. FTP is used to copy and manage files and folders over the Internet. FTP uses two ports to communicate over a network—one for the data (typically port 20) and one for control commands (typically port 21). See <https://www.iana.org/assignments/service-names-port-numbers/service-names-port-numbers.xhtml> for a list port numbers used on the Internet.

### FTP Applications

There are many FTP applications available for download or purchase on the Web, including the following:

- **FILEZILLA**
  - Windows, Mac, Linux Platform
  - <https://filezilla-project.org>
  - Free download
- **SMARTFTP**
  - Windows
  - <https://www.smartftp.com>

- Free download
- **CUTEFTP**
  - Windows, Mac
  - <https://www.globalscape.com/cuteftp>
  - Free trial download, academic pricing available

## Connecting with FTP

Your web host will provide you with the following information along with any other specifications, such as whether the FTP server requires the use of active mode or passive mode:

FTP Host: Your FTP Host

Username: Your Account Username

Password: Your Account Password

## Overview of Using an FTP Application

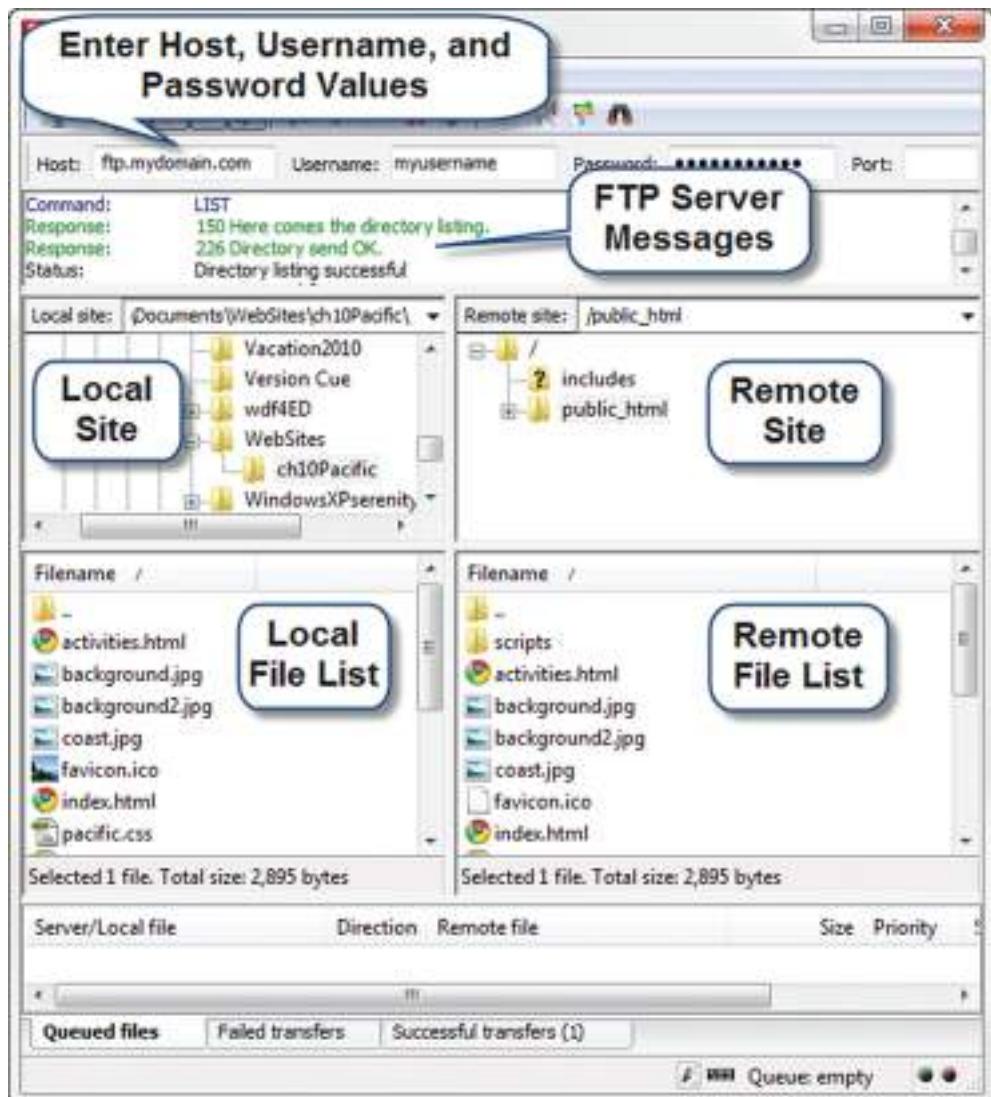
This section focuses on FileZilla, a free FTP application with versions for the Windows, Mac, and Linux platforms. A free download of FileZilla is available at <https://filezilla-project.org/download.php>. After you download an FTP application of your choice, install the program on your computer, using the instructions provided.

## Launch and Login

Launch FileZilla or another FTP application. Enter the information required by your web host (such as FTP host, username, and password) and initiate the connection. An example screenshot of FileZilla after a connection is shown in [Figure F.1](#)

---

**Figure F.1**



The FileZilla FTP application.

Terry Felke-Morris

As you examine **Figure F.1**, notice the text boxes near the top of the application for the Host, Username, and Password information. Under this area is a display of messages from the FTP server. Review the area to confirm a successful connection and the results of file transfers. Next, notice that the application is divided into a left panel and a right panel. The left panel is the local site—it displays information about your local

computer and allows you to navigate to your drives, folders, and files. The right panel is the remote site—it displays information about your website and provides a way to navigate to its folders and files.

## Uploading a File

It's really easy to transfer a file from your local computer to your remote website: Just select the file with your mouse in the left panel (local site list) and drag it to the right panel (remote site list).

## Downloading a File

If you need to download a file from your website to your local computer, just drag the file with your mouse from the right panel (remote site list) to the left panel (local site list).

## Deleting a File

To delete a file on your website, right-click on the file name (in the right panel) and select Delete from the context-sensitive menu.

## And There's More!

Feel free to explore the other functions offered by FileZilla (and most FTP applications). Right-click on a file in the remote site list to display a context-sensitive menu with several options, including renaming a file, creating a new directory (also known as a folder), and viewing a file.

# G Web-Safe Color Palette



Web-safe colors look the most similar on various computer platforms and computer monitors. Back in the day of eight-bit color it was crucial to use web-safe colors. Since most modern video drivers support millions of colors the use of web-safe colors is now optional. The hexadecimal and

decimal RGB values are shown for each web-safe color in the palette above.

# Answers

# Chapter 1

## Checkpoint 1.1

- 1.** The Internet is a public, globally connected network of computer networks. The Web is a graphical user interface to information stored on computers running web servers connected to the Internet. The Web is a subset of the Internet.
- 2.** The commercialization and exponential growth of the Internet that began in the early 1990s was due largely to a convergence of technologies, including the development of personal computers with graphical operating systems, widespread availability of Internet connection services, the removal of the restriction of commercial use on NSFnet, the development of the World Wide Web by Tim Berners-Lee at CERN, and the development of a graphical browser (called Mosaic) at the NCSA. These events combined to provide the commercial incentive and an easy way to share and access information in a manner that had never been experienced.
- 3.** Universal design is a very important concept for web developers because the websites that they create should be usable by all people. Not only is this the right thing to do, but in developing websites for the government or for educational institutions, access to technology (including websites) is mandated by law.

## Checkpoint 1.2

- 1.** An example of a web client is a computer running a browser software application such as Internet Explorer. Typically, the computer is connected to the Internet only when needed. The web browser software uses HTTP to request web pages and related resources from a web server. A web server is a computer that is continually connected to the Internet and that runs some type of web server software application. It uses the HTTP protocol to receive requests for web pages and related resources. It responds to these requests and sends the resources.
- 2.** In this chapter, several protocols are discussed that use the Internet but not the Web. E-mail messages are transmitted via the Internet. SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) is used to send e-mail messages. POP (Post Office Protocol) and IMAP (Internet Message Access Protocol) can be used to receive e-mail messages. FTP (File Transfer Protocol) can be used to exchange (send and receive) files with a computer connected to the Internet.
- 3.** A URL (Uniform Resource Locator) represents the address of a resource that is available on the Internet. A URL consists of a protocol, a domain name, and the hierarchical location of the file or resource. An example of a URL is <http://www.webdevfoundations.net/9e/chapter1.html>. A domain name locates an organization or other entity on the Internet and is associated with a unique numeric IP address. A domain name is part of a URL. An example of a domain name is [webdevfoundations.net](http://www.webdevfoundations.net).

## Review Questions

1.  b

2.  b

3.  c

4.  a

5.  a

6.  True

7.  True

8.  False

9.  False

10.  True

11.  HTML

12.  subdomain

13.  SGML

14.  microblogging

15.  TCP

## Chapter 2

## Checkpoint 2.1

1. □ HTML (Hypertext Markup Language) was developed by Tim Berners-Lee at CERN, using SGML. HTML is the set of markup symbols or codes placed in a file intended for display on a web browser.

HTML configures a platform-independent display of information. Each markup code is referred to as an element (or tag).

2. □ No expensive software is required to create and code web pages. You can use a Windows or Mac text editor application that is part of the operating system. Free text editors and web browsers are also available for download.

3. □ The head section is located between the `<head>` and `</head>` tags on a web page. This area is used to contain information that describes the web page, such as the title of the page that will display in the menu bar of the browser window. The body section is located between the `<body>` and `</body>` tags. This area is used to code text and tags that show directly in the browser's display of the web page. The purpose of the body section is to describe the contents of the web page.

## Checkpoint 2.2

- 1.** The heading element is used to display headings and subheadings of documents. The size of the heading is configured with the particular heading level used—ranging from 1 to 6. `<h1>` is the largest heading. `<h6>` is the smallest heading. Text contained between heading tags will be displayed in a bold font and will have a line break above and below.
- 2.** Ordered lists and unordered lists can be used to organize information on a web page. Unordered lists display a small symbol or bullet in front of each item. Use the `<ul>` tag to configure an unordered list. By default, ordered lists display a sequence of numbers in front of each item. Use the `<ol>` tag to configure an ordered list. Configure individual items in both ordered and unordered lists using the `<li>` tag.
- 3.** The purpose of the blockquote element is to format a long quotation by indenting a section of text on a web page. Empty space is placed above and below the text contained in the blockquote element. The text is indented from both the left and right margins.

## Checkpoint 2.3

1.  Special characters are used to display items such as quotation marks, greater than (>), less than (<), and the copyright symbol © on a web page. These special characters, sometimes called entity characters, are interpreted by the browser when the page is rendered.

2.  Use an absolute link to display a web page document from a website other than your own. The http protocol is used in the href value. Example:

```
<a href = "http://www.google.com">Google</a>
```

3.  Use a relative link to display a web page document from your website. The http protocol is not used in the href value.

## Review Questions

1.  b

2.  c

3.  c

4.  a

5.  b

6.  c

7.  d

8.  b

9.  b

10.  b

11.  strong

12.  article

13.  describe a characteristic of a web page, such as the character encoding.

14.  &nbsp;

15.  em

16.  It is good practice to place the e-mail address both on the web page and within the anchor tag. Not everyone has an e-mail program configured with his or her browser. By placing the e-mail address in both places, you increase usability for all your visitors.

# Chapter 3

## Checkpoint 3.1

- 1.** Reasons to use CSS on a web page include the following:  
greater control of typography and page layout, separation of style from structure, potentially smaller web page documents, and easier site maintenance.
- 2.** Because visitors may set their browsers to certain colors, it is a good idea when changing a text or background color to configure both the text color and the background color properties to provide good contrast between text and background.
- 3.** Embedded styles are coded once in the header section of the web page and apply to the entire page. This practice is more efficient than using inline styles to code individual styles on HTML elements.

## Checkpoint 3.2

1.  Embedded styles can be used to configure the text and color formatting for an entire web page. Embedded styles are placed in the head section of a web page. The `<style>` tag is used to contain the CSS selectors and properties that configure the embedded styles.
2.  External styles can be used to configure the text and color formatting for some or all of the pages on a website in one file. This single file can be changed, and all the web pages associated with it will display the new styles the next time they are rendered in a browser. External styles are placed in a separate text file that uses a .css file extension. Web pages use the `<link>` tag to indicate that they are using an external style sheet.
3.  `<link rel="stylesheet" href="mystyles.css">`

## Review Questions

1.  b

2.  b

3.  a

4.  c

5.  c

6.  c

7.  d

8.  d

9.  a

10.  b

11.  c

12.  span

13.  text-align

14.  text-indent

15.  font-weight

# Chapter 4

## Checkpoint 4.1

1.  It is reasonable to code pages that look similar on various browsers; it is not reasonable to try to code pages that look exactly the same on various browsers and operating systems. Modern web developers code pages to look satisfactory in commonly used browsers and may add enhancements that are applied by the most recent browser versions. This approach is called “progressive enhancement.” Look for more web design tips in [Chapter 5](#).
2.  The first style rule is missing an ending semicolon (;).
3.  True. CSS can be utilized to configure color, text, and even visual elements such as rectangular shapes (with the background-color property) and lines (with the border property).

## Checkpoint 4.2

1. □ The CSS background-image property configures the file that is displayed. The CSS background-repeat property configures the way the image is displayed on the page.

Suggested solution:

```
h1 { background-image: url(circle.jpg);  
     background-repeat: no-repeat;  
}
```

2. □ The CSS background-image property configures the file that is displayed. The CSS background-repeat property configures the way the image is displayed on the page.

Suggested solution:

```
body { background-image: url(bg.gif);  
      background-repeat: repeat-y;  
}
```

3. □ The browser will display the background color immediately. Then, the browser will render the background image and repeat the image as specified in the CSS. The background color will appear in areas not covered by the background image.

## Checkpoint 4.3

1.  Answers will vary with the site that you choose to review.

There should be good contrast between the navigation text and image background. Alt attributes should be descriptive and contain the text displayed in the image. A row of plain text navigation links in the footer section of the web page could help provide for accessibility.

2.  The image, map, and area elements work together to create a functioning image map. The `<img>` tag configures the image that will be used for the map and contains a `usemap` attribute whose value corresponds to the `id` value on the `<map>` tag associated with the image. The `<map>` tag is a container tag and surrounds one or more `<area>` tags. There is one self-contained `<area>` tag for each clickable hotspot on the image map.

3.  False. There is a trade-off between the quality of the image and the file size. The goal should be to save images that use the smallest file size which provides acceptable display quality.

## Review Questions

1.  d

2.  b

3.  b

4.  b

5.  a

6.  c

7.  d

8.  b

9.  c

10.  d

11.  tiled

12.  text links

13.  thumbnail

14.  box-shadow

15.  meter

# Chapter 5

## Checkpoint 5.1

1. □ The four basic principles of design are repetition, contrast, proximity, and alignment. Descriptions of school home pages and how these principles are applied will vary.
2. □ Answers will vary. Best practices for writing for the Web include the following: short paragraphs, bullet points, common fonts, white space, multiple columns if possible, bold or emphasized important text, and correct spelling and grammar. The chosen best practice, URL of each example website, and description of how the website exemplifies the best practice will vary.
3. □ <https://www.walmart.com> is an e-commerce site. It is designed to appeal to the general public—note the white background and high contrast and the use of tabbed navigation, product hierarchy, and site search. This design meets the needs of its target audience: teen and adult shoppers. <https://www.sesamestreet.org/art-maker> is geared toward young children and their parents. It is bright and colorful with much interactivity and animation, all of which is appealing to the target audience. <http://www.willyporter.com> is a musician's site designed to appeal to everyone. The home page features a compelling photo of the musician along with a grouping of small sections that point you to the new album, gigs, and related social media sites. This site appeals to its audience.

## Checkpoint 5.2

1.  Answers will vary.
2.  Answers will vary.
3.  Best practices for using graphics on web pages include the following: careful choice of colors, use of necessary images only, use of images optimized for display on web pages, a usable site even if images are not displayed, and use of the alt attribute to configure text descriptions for images. Recommendations for school home pages will vary.

## Review Questions

1.  d

2.  b

3.  b

4.  b

5.  c

6.  d

7.  c

8.  a

9.  c

10.  b

11.  hierarchical

12.  do not

13.  Web Accessibility Initiative (WAI)

14.  Student answers will vary. Issues to be aware of in designing for the mobile web include small screen size, low bandwidth, awkward controls, limited processor and memory, and reduced support of font typefaces and color.

15.  Student answers will vary. The four principles that are essential to complying with WCAG 2.0 are as follows:

**Perceivable, Operable, Understandable, and Robust.**

1. Content must be **Perceivable**
2. Interface components in the content must be **Operable**
3. Content and controls must be **Understandable**
4. Content should be **Robust** enough to work with current and future user agents, including assistive technologies

# Chapter 6

## Checkpoint 6.1

1.  The components of the box model, from innermost to outermost, are the content, padding, border, and margin.
2.  The purpose of the float property is to shift the display of an element to the right or left side of the container element outside of normal flow.
3.  The clear property and the overflow property can be used to “clear” a float.

## Checkpoint 6.2

**1.** Web page areas can be configured specifically for hard copy.

For example, navigation areas can be hidden, page breaks can be configured, font typeface can be configured in serif fonts. In addition, other properties can be adjusted such as margin, padding, width, and float, for the printed hard copy.

**2.** Advantages of using CSS sprites on a website include reduced bandwidth (a condensed sprite image typically will have lower file size than multiple individual images will have), reduced number of http requests by the browser (only one request must be made for the sprite image, instead of multiple requests for individual image files), and quick display of individual images in the sprite, which are configured to display in response to mouse movement.

**3.** Configure CSS for the element that should remain at the top of the browser viewport with the position property set to the value fixed or the value sticky, top set to 0, left set to 0, and z-index set to a high positive integer.

## Review Questions

1.  a

2.  a

3.  b

4.  b

5.  d

6.  c

7.  b

8.  c

9.  d

10.  b

11.  id attribute

12.  left

13.  margin

14.  :hover

15.  z-index

# Chapter 7

## Checkpoint 7.1

1.  Use the CSS display property to configure a CSS selector as a grid container (`display: grid;`) or a flexbox container (`display: flex;`).
2.  The `justify-content` property set to the value “center” causes the flex items to be centered in the flex container along the main axis with equal empty space before the first flex item and after the last flex item. The `justify-content` property set to the value “space-between” causes the flex items to be evenly distributed in the flex container along the main axis. The first item begins at the start of the flex container. The last item is placed at the end of the flex container. The `justify-content` property set to the value “space-around” causes the flex items to be evenly distributed in the flex container along the main axis with space before the first flex item and space after the last flex item.
3.  The `grid-template` property is a shorthand property that combines the `grid-template-areas`, `grid-template-rows`, and `grid-template-columns` properties. The `grid-template` property can be used to indicate the location of named grid areas on each row, the height of each row, and the width of each column.

## Checkpoint 7.2

**1.** The Mobile First process begins by first configuring a page layout that works well in smartphones (you can test with a small browser window). This provides the quickest display for mobile devices. Next, resize the browser viewport to be larger until the design “breaks” and needs to be reworked for a pleasing display—this is the point where you need to code a media query. If appropriate, continue resizing the browser viewport to be larger until the design breaks and code additional media queries.

**2.** There are so many different types of devices and viewport sizes that there are no values that “must” be used in media queries. When following mobile first strategy, you configure the CSS for a narrow viewport. Then, increase the size of the viewport. When the design looks awkward (or “breaks”) it is time for a media query.

Use the following well-supported techniques to configure flexible images with CSS:

- a. Remove the height and width attributes from the HTML
- b. Set the CSS max-width property to 100%
- c. Set the CSS height property to auto

Other techniques available to configure responsive images include using the picture element (and companion source element) and configuring the img element with the sizes and srcset attributes.

## Review Questions

1.  a
2.  a
3.  c
4.  b
5.  c
6.  a
7.  b
8.  c
9.  c
10.  b
11.  grid-template
12.  media queries
13.  justify-content, align-items
14.  flex-flow
15.  srcset

# Chapter 8

## Checkpoint 8.1

1.  Tables are often used to organize tabular information on a web page.
2.  The default browser rendering of the text contained within a `th` element is bold and centered.
3.  Coding a caption element with a relevant description and configuring headers for columns or rows are among the various coding techniques that improve the accessibility of a table.

## Checkpoint 8.2

- 1.**  Using CSS properties instead of HTML attributes to configure table characteristics provides for flexibility and easier maintenance.
- 2.**  The thead, tbody, and tfoot elements are used to group table rows.

## Review Questions

1.  b

2.  c

3.  c

4.  d

5.  c

6.  b

7.  d

8.  b

9.  b

10.  a

11.  border

12.  vertical-align

13.  rowspan

14.  headers

15.  caption

# Chapter 9

## Checkpoint 9.1

1.  Although either solution would be appropriate, the solution that uses three input boxes (first name, last name, and e-mail address) is the more flexible solution. These separate values could be stored in a database by server-side processing, where they could easily be selected and placed into personalized e-mail messages. This approach provides the most useful functionality of the collected information in future manipulations.
2.  There are a number of possible solutions for this design question. If the responses are short and of about equal length, perhaps a group of radio buttons would be appropriate. If the responses are lengthy or of widely varying lengths, a select list would be a good choice. Radio button groups can accept only one response per group. By default, select lists accept only one response. Check boxes would not be appropriate because they allow more than one response to be selected.
3.  False. In a radio button group, the name attribute is used by the browser to process separate elements as a group.

## Checkpoint 9.2

**1.** The fieldset element creates a visual border around the elements contained within the fieldset. The border can help to organize form elements and increase the usability of the form. The legend element is used to provide a text description of the area bounded by the fieldset element, further increasing the usability of the form for visitors using browsers that support these tags.

**2.** The accesskey attribute allows a visitor to select an element immediately by using the keyboard instead of a mouse. This approach improves the accessibility of the page and can be very helpful to mobility-impaired visitors. The W3C recommends providing a visual cue of an underlined letter, bold letter, or message that indicates the hot keys to press to activate an element.

**3.** The web designer and client decide which is used: standard submit button, image button, or button tag. However, it makes sense to use the simplest possible technology that provides the needed functionality. In most cases, this is the standard submit button. Visually challenged visitors using a screen reader will hear that a submit button has been encountered. Submit buttons automatically invoke the server-side processing configured in the form tag.

An image button will also automatically invoke the server-side processing configured for the form and can be more accessible if configured with the alt and accesskey attributes. Unless there is a very good reason or a very insistent client, avoid the button element for standard web forms. Avoid choosing a complex solution when a basic submit button can be used.

## Checkpoint 9.3

**1.** A web browser requests web pages and their related files from a web server. The web server locates the files and sends them to your web browser. Then the web browser renders the returned files and displays the requested web pages. Server-side processing is required to save and handle information entered by web page visitors. The action attribute on a form element

specifies the script or program that the web server should invoke and pass the form data to. The script or program returns a result (often a web page) that is sent from the web server to the browser for display.

**2.** The server-side script developer and the web page designer must work together to get both parts of the form processing—the front-end web page and the back-end server-side script—working together. They need to communicate regarding the method (get or post) to be used by the form and the location of the server-side script. Because the names of the form elements are often used by the server-side script as variable names, the form element names are usually specified at this time.

## Review Questions

1.  b

2.  a

3.  a

4.  b

5.  b

6.  d

7.  c

8.  c

9.  a

10.  d

11.  d

12.  maxlength

13.  fieldset

14.  name

15.  The following form controls could provide a way for a web page visitor to select a color: an input text box for free-form entry of a color value, an HTML5 datalist with one option element for each color choice, a radio button group with one radio button for each color choice, a select list with one option element for each color choice, and an HTML5 color-well form control (although this is not yet well supported by browsers and will usually result in the display of an input text box).

# Chapter 10

## Checkpoint 10.1

- 1.□** The project manager directs the website development process—creating the project plan and schedule. He or she must keep the big picture in mind while communicating with the staff and coordinating team activities. The project manager is accountable for meeting project milestones and producing results.
- 2.□** A large-scale web project is much more than brochure-ware—it is often a complex information application that the company depends on. Such an application needs the special talents of a wide variety of individuals—including experts in graphics, organization, writing, marketing, coding, database administration, and so on—one or two people simply cannot fulfill all these roles and create a quality website.
- 3.□** Answers will vary. Different testing techniques include the unit testing done by individual web developers, automated testing performed by link checker programs, code testing and validation performed by code validation programs, and usability testing achieved by watching typical web visitors use a website to perform tasks.

## Checkpoint 10.2

- 1.□** A virtual web host that offers reliability and scalability would meet the needs of a small company for its initial web presence. The web host chosen should offer higher-end packages with scripting, database, and e-commerce capabilities to allow for future growth.
- 2.□** A dedicated web server is owned and supported by the web host company. The client company may choose to administer it or may pay the web host company to perform this task. A co-located server is owned by the client company and housed at the web host provider. This configuration offers both the advantage of a reliable Internet connection at the web host and full control of the administration and support of the web server.
- 3.□** If your website is down and your web host is not responding to technical support requests, it doesn't matter that you are saving \$5.00 per month. When comparing web host plans, check prices to know the currently prevailing fees. If the charges of a particular Web host seem abnormally low, the company is probably cutting corners. Do not base your choice on price alone.

## Review Questions

1.  a

2.  a

3.  c

4.  b

5.  d

6.  d

7.  d

8.  a

9.  a

10.  c

11.  usability testing

12.  graphic designer

13.  UNIX and Linux

14.  A careful review of your competitor's web presence helps you design a site that will stand out from the rest and be more appealing to your shared customer base. Note both the good and bad components of your competitors' sites.

15.  Contacting technical support can give you a general idea of the responsiveness of the web host provider to issues and problems. If the technical support staff is slow getting back to you at this point, don't be surprised if you get the same type of service when you have a problem and need immediate help. While not fail-safe, a quick response to a simple question at least gives the appearance of a well-organized, professional, and responsive technical support staff.

# Chapter 11

## Checkpoint 11.1

1.  Use the HTML video and source elements to configure a video to play on a web page. It's a good idea to code multiple source elements and offer multiple versions of the video in various formats. Also include text or a hyperlink to the video to display if the browser cannot play the video. This is coded after the source elements but before the closing video tag.
2.  The poster element configures an image to display before the video is downloaded by the browser. This avoids an awkward empty area while waiting for a video to play.
3.  Fair use is the use of a copyrighted work for purposes such as criticism, reporting, teaching, scholarship, or research. So, while students can use resources found on the Web, they need to be sure to comply with fair use: educational, factual (not creative such as passing off someone else's photograph as your own), a small portion, and use does not impede the original work's marketability. Also the source of the original work should be cited. If the original work has been granted a Creative Commons license by the originator, then the student must comply with the specific license requirements (see <https://creativecommons.org>).

## Checkpoint 11.2

1.  The purpose of the transform property is to provide a means to change the display of an element with functions that can rotate, scale, skew, and reposition an element.
2.  When working with animation, a keyframe is a point of change. The purpose of the @keyframes rule is to define an animation – naming the animation and grouping the keyframes.
3.  The details element and summary element are used together to configure an interactive widget that will hide and show information.

## Checkpoint 11.3

- 1.**  JavaScript can be used to add a wide range of interactive effects to a web page, including form validation, popup windows, jump menus, message boxes, image rollovers, status message changes, calculations, and so on.
- 2.**  A PWA is a Progressive Web Application, which is configured as web page and “lives” in a browser, but has features associated with native smartphone apps, such as offering some offline functionality and the ability to be added to the device home screen. PWAs use the Manifest API and ServiceWorkers API. PWAs use the HTTPS protocol.
- 3.**  The HTML5 canvas element provides an API to web developers that allows them to configure dynamic graphics with JavaScript.

## Review Questions

1.  c

2.  b

3.  a

4.  b

5.  c

6.  a

7.  a

8.  a

9.  b

10.  c

11.  application programming interface (API)

12.  fair use

13.  video

14.  CSS properties

15.  Document Object Model (DOM)

16.  Answers will vary but may include the following: large file size to download, accessibility issues, and the time, talent, and software required to create audio or video content.

17.  Creative Commons at <https://creativecommons.org>

provides a free service that allows authors and artists to register a type of a copyright license. The Creative Commons license informs others exactly what they can and cannot do with the creative work.

# Chapter 12

## Checkpoint 12.1

- 1.** There are many advantages to engaging in e-commerce, especially for a small business owner who must watch costs carefully. Advantages include very low overhead, 24/7 business hours, and global sales potential.
- 2.** There are risks in any business venture, including e-commerce. Risks associated with e-commerce include increased competition, fraudulent transactions, and security issues.
- 3.** SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) is a protocol that allows data to be privately exchanged over public networks such as the Internet. SSL has been replaced by the TLS (Transport Layer Secure) protocol, but the term "SSL" remains in common use to describe secure transfer of information on the Web. An online shopper can check the following to determine whether SSL is being used:
  - The https protocol, rather than http, will display in the browser address bar.
  - The browser may display a lock icon. If this icon is clicked, information about the digital certificate and encryption level being used will display.

## Checkpoint 12.2

- 1.** Commonly used payment methods include credit card, stored-value card, digital wallet, and digital cash.
- 2.** Answers will vary. People make online purchases for many reasons, including the following: convenience, lower cost, and ease of shipping. If you did not check for SSL the last time you purchased an item on the Web, most likely you'll look for it in the future.
- 3.** E-commerce solutions include instant storefronts, off-the-shelf shopping cart software that you or your web host installs, and e-commerce platforms. The easiest entry to e-commerce is an instant storefront. Although this solution does not provide the most flexibility, you can get a store up and running in an afternoon.

## Review Questions

1.  c

2.  a

3.  b

4.  b

5.  b

6.  a

7.  c

8.  a

9.  b

10.  b

11.  Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)

12.  EDI

13.  asymmetric key

14.  symmetric encryption

15.  The website developers may use an automatic translation program or other customized web translation service.

# Chapter 13

## Checkpoint 13.1

1.  Three components of a search engine are the robot, database, and search form. The robot is a special program that “walks” the Web and follows links to sites. The robot updates the search engine’s database with the information it finds. The search form is the graphical user interface that is used to request a search by a visitor to the search engine site.
2.  Use the description meta tag to provide a brief description of the website. The information in the description meta tag may be used by search engines when they index your website. Some search engines, such as Google, display the description meta tag information on the search engine results page (SERP).
3.  Yes, it may be beneficial for a business to pay for preferential listing. If your business is listed in the first page of search results, visitors are more likely to find your site than if you are in the hundredth page of search results. Paid programs for preferential listing such as Google’s AdWords should be carefully considered and may be a good match for the marketing goals of an organization.

## Checkpoint 13.2

**1.**  Answers will vary. In most cases, the top three sites returned for a particular search phrase will not be the same. Consider optimizing your site so that currently the most popular search engine displays the site as high as possible in its results list.

**2.**  A brute force method is to experiment by visiting a search engine, typing in keywords, and checking for your site in the search results. If your web site host provides you with web log reports, you can easily tell by examining the reports. You'll see the names of the robot/spider programs—Googlebot is the name of Google's spider (see <https://www.robotstxt.org> for more information on search engine robots). The web log reports will also itemize both the search engines used by visitors and the keywords used to locate your site.

**3.**  Answers will vary. Website promotion methods that do not use search engines include the following: affiliate programs, banner ads, banner exchanges, reciprocal link agreements, newsletters, sticky site features such as polls, forums, surveys, QR codes, personal recommendations, newsgroup/listserv postings, social media marketing techniques, blog postings, traditional media ads, and existing paper marketing materials. Any of these are valid as a first choice—depending on the needs of the organization.

The newsletter technique is an interesting promotion method. Place a form on a web page to allow visitors to opt into your newsletter. Send them a periodic e-mail with information of value related to your site (possibly even special offers). This approach encourages visitors to return to your site. They may even forward your e-mail to a friend.

**NOTE:** Be sure to provide a way for visitors to opt out of the newsletter. For example, newsletters sent by TechLearning News include the following message:

"UNSUBSCRIBE

To unsubscribe from this type of e-mail, please reply to this message. [unsubtechlearning@news.techlearning.com](mailto:unsubtechlearning@news.techlearning.com)"

## Review Questions

1.  b

2.  a

3.  c

4.  b

5.  b

6.  c

7.  c

8.  a

9.  b

10.  b

11.  stickiness

12.  <meta name="robots" description="noindex,  
nofollow">

13.  search engines

14.  a variety of methods, including affiliate programs, banner ads, banner exchanges, reciprocal link agreements, blog posting, RSS feeds, newsletters, personal recommendations, social bookmarking, and traditional media advertising, or including a URL or QR code on all promotional materials

15.  QR codes

# Chapter 14

## Checkpoint 14.1

1.  JavaScript can be used for rollover images, form data validation, popup windows, interactivity such as alert messages and prompts, and mathematical calculations for tasks such as determining tax.
2.  There is no limit to the number of script blocks that can be embedded in an HTML document.
3.  You can use the JavaScript Console in Firefox to find an error. You could also look through your code, paying particular attention to names of objects, properties, methods and statements, and missing semicolons.

## Checkpoint 14.2

- 1.□** An object is a thing, a property is an attribute, and a method is an action.
- 2.□** An event is an occurrence such as clicking a mouse, loading a page, or placing the mouse over an area on the page. An event handler is an attribute embedded in an HTML tag such as onclick, onload, and onmouseover, that points to JavaScript code to execute when the corresponding event occurs.
- 3.□** Event handlers are embedded in HTML tags and are not placed in separate script blocks.

## Checkpoint 14.3

1.  The `prompt()` method could be used to gather a piece of data such as the user's age. The `prompt()` method should be used in conjunction with a variable so that the data will be stored in the variable.

2.  The code might look something like the following:

```
if (userAge < 18) {  
    alert("You are under 18");  
} else {  
    alert("You are 18 or older");  
}
```

3.  A function definition begins with the keyword `function`, followed by the name of the function and some JavaScript statements. It defines a function, and calling that function results in the execution of the statements within it.

## Checkpoint 14.4

1.  Form data validation refers to checking form input against validation rules and not allowing the form to be submitted if the data does not conform to the rules.
2.  Answers may vary, but may include required fields such as name, e-mail address, and phone number. Numeric fields may require validation to ensure that they are within particular bounds—for example, order quantity greater than 0 and age between 1 and 120.
3.  When the user clicks the submit button, the submit event occurs and the onsubmit event handler executes the `return validateForm()` statement. The `validateForm` function runs and tests the form data for validation. If the data is valid, `validateForm()` returns the value of true, and the form is submitted. If the data is not valid, `validateForm()` returns the value of false and the form is not submitted.

## Checkpoint 14.5

1.  You can either download the .js file for the jQuery library from <http://jquery.com/download> or you can access the jQuery library stored at a CDN using a script tag with the src value set to the URL of the jQuery CDN.
2.  The `css()` method allows you to set css properties dynamically within jQuery.
3.  The ready event is a jQuery statement that determines when the Document object model (DOM) has been completely loaded by the browser.

## Review Questions

1.  a

2.  c

3.  b

4.  a

5.  d

6.  c

7.  a

8.  b

9.  c

10.  a

11.  b

12.  ==

13.  attr()

14.  window

15.  ready event

16.  onclick

17.  JavaScript

18.  css()

19.  Common uses for JavaScript include rollover images, form data validation, popup windows, interactivity such as alert messages and prompts, and mathematical calculations.

20.  The following techniques can be used in debugging JavaScript: Check the JavaScript code carefully for syntax errors. Verify that quotation marks, braces, and parentheses are used in pairs. Check for missing semicolons. Verify that your code uses the correct case (uppercase and lowercase characters) in variable, object, property, and method names. Use the Console to help with debugging—it will provide some information about the

error. Use an `alert()` to display the values of variables or to display messages as your script is running.

# Index

# A

- Absolute hyperlink, 54–55
- Absolute positioning, 277
- Accessibility
  - forms, 429–433
  - testing, 478
  - visual element and, 170
  - web multimedia and interactivity, 497, 524
- Accessible Rich Internet Applications (ARIA) landmark roles, 663–664
- Accessible table configuring, 392–393
- accesskey attribute, 433
- action attribute, 438
- addEventListener method, 610–611
- Adobe Flash, 500
- Affiliate programs, 575–576
- Ajax, 518
- Alert message, 589
- Alert message box, 592–594
- align-items property, 315
- alt attribute, 147
- Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), 5
- Analogous color scheme, 216
- Analysis, web development, 474
- Anchor element, 53
- Animation, 144, 511–514
- animation property, 511
- Antialiasing, 220
- Application programming interface (API)

- geolocation, 520
- HTML5 canvas element, 521–523
- jQuery, 519
- progressive web application, 520–521
- web storage, 520
- Area element, 165
- Arithmetic operators, 604
- Asymmetric-key encryption, 543–544
- Audio element, 497–499
- Audio file types, 494
- Automated testing tools, 477–478

# B

- background-attachment property, 159, 285
- background-clip property, 160
- background-color property, 85
- background-image property, 156
- Background images, 155–164
  - background-attachment property, 159
  - background-clip property, 160
  - background-image property, 156
  - background-origin property, 160
  - background-position property, 159
  - background-repeat property, 157–159
  - background-size property, 161–162
  - browser display, 156
  - multiple images, 162–164
- background-origin property, 160
- background-position property, 159
- background-repeat property, 157–159
- background-size property, 161–162
- Banner ads, 576
- Banner exchange, 576
- Bitcoin, 548
- Blockquote element, 38–39
- Blogs, 18, 574
- Body element, 29
- border attribute, 387
- border property, 139
- border-style property, 139
- Bot. See **Robot**

- Box model
  - in action, 249–250
  - border, 248
  - content, 248
  - definition, 248
  - margin, 248–249
  - padding, 248–250
- box-shadow property, 173–177
- box-sizing property, 257–258
- Breadcrumb navigation, 224
- Browser
  - background image display, 156
  - web design, 222

# C

- Canvas element, 521–523
- Caption element, 387
- Cascade (rules of precedence), 114–116
- Cascading style sheets (CSS).
  - advantages, 84
  - animations, 511–514
  - background-color property, 85, 86
  - background images, 155–164
  - box-shadow property, 173–177
  - box-sizing property, 257–258
  - cascade (rules of precedence), 114–116
  - center HTML elements with, 112–114
  - class selector, 102–103
  - clearing a float, 254–256
  - color property, 86
  - color syntax, 88–89
  - configuration of, 85
  - descendant selector, 104
  - embedded with style element, 91–94
  - external style sheet, 107–112
  - feature query, 333–335
  - fixed position navigation bar, 279–281
  - flexible box layout, 312–313
  - float, 252–254
  - font-family property, 94–96
  - font-size property, 96–97
  - font-style property, 97
  - font-weight property, 97

- forms styling
  - with float, 434–435
  - with Grid Layout, 436–438
- gradients, 183–184
- grid layout, 322–324
- hexadecimal color value, 88
- HSLA color, 180–182
- hyperlinks, unordered list, 262–265
- id selector, 103–104
- inline with style attribute, 89–91
- line-height property, 97
- lines and border configuration, 138–139
- media queries, 340–342
- opacity property, 177–178
- positioning with, 275–279
- for printing, 273–274
- properties, 87, 653–658
- pseudo-classes, 265–271
- RGBA color, 178–180
- RGB color, 87
- rotate transform function, 505
- rounded corners, 171–173
- scale transform function, 505
- selector and declaration, 85
- span element, 106–107
- sprites, 168, 271–272
- structural pseudo-classes, 396–398
- Style a Table with CSS, 394–396
- table styling, 394–396
- technology, 85
- text-align property, 97–98
- text-decoration property, 98

- `text-shadow` property, 99–102
- `transform` property, 504–505
- `transition` property, 506–507
- two-column page layout, 258–262, 268–271, 326–329
- validation, 117–118
- web-safe color, 88
- width and height, 246–247
- Case-sensitive, 485
- Center HTML elements with CSS, 112–114
- Character encoding, 29
- `charset` attribute, 29
- Check box attribute, 419–420
- Chunking, 207
- Cinemagraph, 163
- Ciphertext, 543
- Class selector, 102–103
- `clear` property, 254–256
- Click-through rate (CTR), 571
- Client/server model, 9–10
- Cloud computing, 19
- Codec, 494–495
- Co-located hosting, 485
- Color
  - accessibility and, 217
  - based on image, 214–215
  - children and preteens, 218–219
  - `color` property, 86
  - HSLA, 180–182
  - implementation, 217
  - older adults, 219
  - RGBA, 178–180
  - teens and young adults, 218

- using on web pages, 87–89
- wheel, 215
- Color-well input form control, 448
- colspan attribute, 390
- Common Gateway Interface (CGI), 438
- Comparison operators, 605
- Complementary color scheme, 216
- Concatenation, 601
- Conceptualization, 473
- Constant change, 19
- Container, 494–495
- Content delivery network (CDN), 619
- Content manager, 470–471
- Content of value, 569, 572
- Copyright law, 502
- Copywriter, 470
- Cost/benefit analysis, web development, 474
- Cost per click (CPC), 570
- Cost per thousand impressions (CPM), 571
- Creative Commons, 502
- Credit card, 547
- CSS3, 83
- CSS. See *Cascading style sheets (CSS)*
- CSS sprites, 271–272
- CuteFTP, 665
- Cybersquatting, 541

# D

- Database administrator, 471
- Datalist input form control, 443–444
- Date and time form controls, 446–448
- debugging, 286
- Debugging, JavaScript, 593–594
- Decryption, 543
- Dedicated hosting, 485
- Descendant selector, 104
- Description list, 44–45
- Description meta tag, 568–569
- Desktop and mobile website, 233
- Details element, 514–516
- Digest, 544
- Digital cash, 548
- Digital certificate, 545–546
- Digital wallet, 547
- display property, 264, 312–313, 322
- Distributed denial of service (DDoS) attack, 542
- Div element, 48
- Doctype statement, 27
- Document object model (DOM), 517, 594–597
- Document type definition (DTD), 27
- Domain names
  - choosing, 482–483
  - country-code TLD names, 15
  - DNS, 15–16
  - fully qualified domain name (FQDN), 14
  - registering, 484

- subdomain, 14
- top-level domain (TLD), 14–15
- Domain name system (DNS), 12, 15–16
- Drop down menu, 502–504
- Dynamic navigation, 225

# E

- E-commerce, 17
  - advantages, 538
  - business-to-business (B2B), 540
  - business-to-consumer (B2C), 540
  - business-to-government (B2G), 540
  - consumer-to-consumer (C2C), 540
  - credit card, 547
  - definition, 538
  - digital cash, 548
  - digital certificate, 545–546
  - digital wallet, 547
  - EDI, 540
  - encryption, 543–544
  - fraudulent websites, 542
  - instant online storefront, 548
  - integrity, 544
  - intellectual property, 541–542
  - international commerce, 542
  - platform, 549
  - risks, 539
  - security, 542
  - shopping cart software, 549
  - smart card, 547
  - SSL, 544–545, 546
  - statistics, 540–541
  - stored-value card, 547
  - taxation, 542
- Editor, 470

- Electronic data interchange (EDI), 540
- E-mail address input form control, 442
- E-mail hyperlink, 59–60
- E-mail protocols, 11
- Embedded styles, 85
- Embed element, 500
- Em unit, 97
- Encryption, 543–544
- Environmental requirements, web development, 474
- Evaluation, web development, 480
- Event handlers, 597–599
- Events, 597–599
- Extensible hypertext markup language (XHTML), 17, 26
- Extensible markup language (XML), 16–17, 26
- External styles, 85
- External style sheet, 107–112
- Extranets, 4

# F

- Fair use, 502
- Favicon, 166
- Feature query, 333–335
- Fieldset and legend elements, 430–431
- Figcaption element, 153–154
- Figure element, 153–154
- File organization, 480–482
- File transfer protocol (FTP), 10–11
  - applications, 665
  - connecting with, 666
  - overview, 666–667
- File upload control, 422
- Filezilla, 665
- Fixed positioning, 275
- Flat web design, 222–223
- Flexbox and grid centering, 336–338
- Flexbox Image Gallery, 316–317
- flex-direction property, 313
- flex-flow property, 315
- Flexible box layout, 312–313
- Flexible container configuring, 312–313
- Flexible images, 352–353
- Flex items configuring, 318–322
- flex property, 318
- flex-wrap property, 313
- float property, 252–254
- Flow direction, 314–315
- font-family property, 94–96

- *font-size* property, 96–97
- *font-style* property, 97
- *font-weight* property, 97
- Footer element, 48
- for attribute, 429
- Form element, 414–415
- Form handling, 612–617
- Forms
  - button element, 428–429
  - form controls, 414–415
  - form element, 414–415
  - HTML5 form controls, 415, 442–450
  - input element, 415–422, 442–450
  - select list, 425–427
  - server-side processing, 414, 438–441
  - styling with CSS, 434–438
    - with float, 434–435
    - with Grid Layout, 436–438
- Fragment identifier, 282–284
- Front-end web developer, 471
- Functionality requirements, web development, 474

# G

- Gamma, 170
- Geolocation, 520
- Gradients, 183–184
- Graphic designer, 471
- Graphic interchange format (GIF) images
  - animation, 144
  - compression, 145
  - interlacing, 145
  - transparency, 144
  - on web, 144–147
- Graphics and multimedia
  - antialiased/aliased text, 220
  - file size, 220
  - image dimensions, 220
  - navigation, 224
  - necessary multimedia only, 220–221
  - providing alternate text, 221
- grid area, 322, 329–333
- grid-area property, 329–330
- grid column, 322, 324–326
- grid-column property, 327
- Grid columns and rows configuring, 323–324, 327
- Grid container configuring, 322
- Grid designing, 322–323
- grid gap, 322, 324–326
- grid-gap property, 324
- grid item, 323
- Grid items configuring, 327

- Grid line numbers, 327–329
- grid lines, 322
- grid row, 322, 324–326
- grid-row property, 327
- grid-template-areas property, 330–331
- grid-template-columns property, 323
- grid-template property, 332–333
- grid-template-rows property, 323
- grid track, 322

# H

- Hash function, 544
- Head element, 29
- Header element, 48
- Heading element, 33–35
- Heading tags, 568
- height property, 247
- Hexadecimal color, 88
- Hidden input control, 421
- Hierarchical organization, 207–208
- Horizontal navigation, 264–265
- HotWired, 576
- href attribute, 53–54, 107–108
- HSLA color, 180–182
- HTML5, 17
  - attributes, 647–650
  - audio element, 497–499
  - canvas element, 521–523
  - Color-well Form Control, 448
  - datalist input form control, 443–444
  - date and time form controls, 446–448
  - elements, 647–650
  - e-mail address input form control, 442
  - overview, 27
  - structural elements, 47–53
  - URL input form control, 442–443
  - video element, 499–501
  - visual elements, 152–155
- HTTPS protocol, 569

- Hyperlinks, 495, 569
  - absolute hyperlink, 54–55
  - accessibility and hyperlinks, 61
  - anchor tag, 53
  - e-mail hyperlink, 59–60
  - href attribute, 53–54
  - image hyperlink, 149–151
  - relative hyperlink, 55
  - site map, 55–58
  - unordered list, 262–265
- Hypertext markup language (HTML), 2, 16. See also **HTML5**
  - blockquote element, 38–39
  - body section, 29
  - description list, 44–45
  - DTD, 27
  - element, 28
  - heading element, 33–35
  - head section, 28–29
  - hyperlinks, 53–61
  - line break element, 37–38
  - ordered list, 40–42
  - overview, 26–27
  - paragraph element, 35–36
  - pharse element, 39–40
  - special characters, 46–47
  - structural element, 47–53
  - unordered list, 42–43
  - validation, 61–63
  - web page creation, 29–33
  - web page template, 28
- Hypertext transfer protocol (HTTP), 2, 11

# I

- Id selector, 103–106
- Iframe element, 578–579
- Illinois Information Technology Accessibility Act (IITAA), 5
- Images. See also [Background images](#)
  - accessibility and, 148–149
  - attributes, 147
  - gallery, 624–627
  - hyperlinks, 149–151
  - swapping, 591
- img element, 147–151
- Imported styles, 85
- Inbound links, 569
- Incoming links, 569
- Information architect, 470
- Inline display, 39
- Inline frames, 578–580
- Inline styles, 85
- Input element form controls, 415–422
  - check box, 419–420
  - file upload control, 422
  - hidden input control, 421
  - password box, 422
  - Radio Button, 420–421
  - reset button, 417–418
  - submit button, 417, 418
  - text box, 416–417
- Instant online storefront, 548
- Integrity, 544

- Intellectual property, 541–542
- Interlaced image, 145
- Internal styles. See [Embedded styles](#)
- International commerce, 542
- Internet
  - birth, 2
  - growth, 2
  - IAB, 3, 4
  - IANA, 4
  - ICANN, 4
  - IETF, 3–4
  - intranets and extranets, 4
  - technology convergence, 3
- Internet Architecture Board (IAB), 3–4
- Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA), 4
- Internet Corporation for Assigned Numbers and Names (ICANN), 4
- Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), 3–4
- Internet protocols, 10–13
- Internet Protocol Version 4 (IPv4), 12
- Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6), 12
- Intranets, 4

# J

- JavaScript, 516–518, 588
  - accessibility and, 617
  - addEventListener method, 610–611
  - adding to web page, 591–594
  - alert message, 589
  - arithmetic operators, 604
  - collecting values using prompt, 602–603
  - decision making, 604–607
  - development, 588
  - document object model (DOM), 594–597
  - events and event handlers, 597–599
  - form handling, 612–617
  - functions, 607–610
  - jump menus, 590
  - mouse movement techniques, 590–591
  - overview, 588
  - popup windows, 589–590
  - resources, 618
  - variables, 600–603
  - writing to web page, 600–602
- Joint photographic experts group (JPEG) image
  - compression, 145
  - optimization, 145–146
  - progressive JPEG, 146
- jQuery, 519, 618
  - access via content delivery network, 619
  - alias, 619
  - download, 618–619

- *image gallery*, 624–627
  - *methods*, 621–624
  - *overview*, 618
  - *plugins*, 628–631
  - *ready event*, 619–620
  - *resources*, 632
  - *selectors*, 621
- *Jump menus*, 590
  - *justify-content property*, 314–315

# K

- *@keyframes rule*, 511
- *Keywords*, 568

# L

- Label element, 429
- lang attribute, 28
- Launch, web development, 479
- Linear gradient, 183
- Linear organization, 208
- Line break element, 37–38
- line-height property, 97
- Link element, 107–108
- Link popularity, 574
- list attribute, 444
- List markers
  - configure an image, 263
  - configure with CSS, 263
- list-style-image property, 263
- Local area network (LAN), 9
- LocalStorage, 520
- Lossless compression, 144
- Lossy compression, 145

# M

- Main element, 48
- Maintenance, web development, 480
- Manifest API, 521
- Map element, 165
- margin property, 249
- Marketing representative, 470
- Markup languages
  - HTML, 16
  - HTML5, 17
  - SGML, 16
  - XHTML, 17
  - XML, 16–17
- max attribute, 445
- max-width property, 247
- media attribute, 273
- Media queries, 340–342
  - definition, 340
  - link element, 340–341
  - @media rule, 341
  - Mobile First Process, 342
  - responsive grid layout with, 347–351
  - responsive layout with, 342–346
  - responsive web design, 233–234
- @media rule, 341
- Merchant account, 547
- Meta element, 29
- Meta tag, 568
- Meter element, 155

- method attribute, 438
- min attribute, 445
- min-width property, 246
- Mobile access, 18
- Mobile display testing, 358–359
- Mobile web design
  - awkward controls, 231
  - font, color, and media issues, 231
  - functionality, 231
  - graphics, 232
  - layout, 231
  - limited processor and memory, 231
  - low bandwidth, 231
  - navigation, 231–232
  - quick checklist, 232
  - responsive web design, 233–234
  - small screen size, 231
  - text for, 232
- Monitoring search listings, 572–573
- Monochromatic color scheme, 216
- Mouse movement techniques, 590–591
- Multimedia. See [Web multimedia and interactivity](#)
- Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME), 10

# N

- named fragment, 282
- Nav element, 48
- Navigation bar, 224, 279–281
- Navigation design
  - breadcrumb navigation, 224
  - dynamic navigation, 225
  - ease of navigation, 223
  - navigation bar, 224
  - site map, 226
  - site search feature, 226
  - skip repetitive navigation, 225
  - using graphics, 224–225
- Near field communication (NFC), 547
- Network administrator, 471
- Networks, 8–9
  - client/server model and, 9–10
  - components of, 8–9
  - internet protocols, 10–12
- Newsletters, 576
- Normal flow, 250–252

# O

- Object, 594
- Object-based language, 588
- Onclick event handler, 597
- One page website, 223
- Onload event, 597
- Onmouseout event handler, 597
- Onsubmit event handler, 612
- Option element, 426–427
- Order and payment processing
  - credit card, 547
  - digital cash, 548
  - digital wallet, 547
  - smart card, 547
  - stored-value card, 547
- Ordered list, 40–42
- order property, 319, 325
- overflow property, 255–256

# P

- Packets, transmission control protocol, 11
- padding property, 139, 248
- Page layout
  - box model, 248–250
  - clearing a float, 254–256
  - CSS float, 252–254
  - fixed layout technique, 228–229
  - flexbox and grid centering, 336–338
  - flexible box layout, 312–313
  - fluid layout technique, 229–230
  - grid area, 329–333
  - grid layout, 322–324
  - hyperlinks, unordered list, 262–265
  - normal flow, 250–252
  - positioning with CSS, 275–279
  - progressive enhancement, 333–334
  - pseudo-classes, 265–271
  - two-column page layout, 258–262, 268–271, 326–329
  - wireframes and, 226–228
- Page titles, 568
- Paragraph element, 35–36
- Parallax scrolling, 285–287
- Password box, 422
- Payment processing. See [Order and payment processing](#)
- Perceivable, operable, understandable, and robust (POUR), 211–212
- Perceived load time, 222
- Phases development process, 471–472
- Phrase element, 39–40

- Picture element, 354–356
- Pixelation, 146
- Podcasts, 19, 495–496
- Popup windows, 589–590
- Portable network graphic (PNG) images, 146
- Positioning (CSS)
  - absolute positioning, 277–279
  - fixed positioning, 275
  - relative positioning, 275–276
  - static positioning, 275
  - sticky positioning, 276
- position offset property, 276
- position property, 275
- Post Office Protocol (POP3), 11
- Privacy policy, 440
- Private registration, 484
- Production, web development, 476
- Progress element, 155
- Progressive enhancement
  - CSS feature query, 333–335
  - CSS gradients, 183
  - HTML5 form elements, 450
  - mobile devices, 221
- Progressive JPEG, 146
- Progressive web application (PWA), 520–521
- Project manager, 470
- Pseudo-classes, 265–271
- Public-key encryption, 543

# Q

- Quick response (QR) codes, 575

# R

- Radial gradient, 183
- Radio Button, 420–421
- Random organization, 208
- Ready event, 619–620
- Really simple syndication/Rich site summary (RSS), 19
- Reciprocal link agreements, 576
- Rectangular image map, 165–166
- Relative hyperlink, 55
- Relative positioning, 275–276
- rel attribute, 108
- required attribute, 416
- Reserved word/keyword, 600
- Reset button, 417–418
- Responsive images, 352–357
- Responsive web design, 233–234
- Returning a value, 612
- reversed attribute, 41
- RGBA color, 178–180
- RGB color, 87–88
- Robot, 566
- Robots meta tag, 569
- Rotate transform function, 505
- rowspan attribute, 390–391

# S

- Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG), 523
- Scale transform function, 505
- Script element, 591
- Scripting language, 588
- Scrolling text box, 423–425
- Search engine optimization (SEO), 567–569
  - content of value, 569
  - description, 568
  - description meta tag, 568–569
  - heading tags, 568
  - HTTPS protocol, 569
  - images and multimedia, 569
  - keywords, 568
  - linking, 569
  - meta tag, 568
  - page titles, 568
  - valid code, 569
- Search engine results page (SERP), 567
- Search engines
  - affiliate programs, 575–576
  - banner ads, 576
  - banner exchange, 576
  - components, 566–567
  - dynamic content with inline frames, 578–580
  - existing marketing materials, 577
  - link popularity, 574
  - listings, 211
  - newsletters, 576

- overview, 566
- personal recommendation, 577
- popular, 566
- quick response codes, 575
- reciprocal link agreements, 576
- search engine optimization (SEO), 567–569
- social media optimization (SMO), 574–575
- sticky site features, 577
- submitting, 570–572
- traditional media ads, 577
- website forum postings, 577
- Search field input form control, 443
- Search form, 567
- Search results, 567
- Search set. See **Search results**
- Section 508 of the Federal Rehabilitation Act, 5
- Secure sockets layer (SSL), 544–545, 546
- Security
  - DDoS attack, 542
  - digital certificate, 545–546
  - encryption, 543–544
  - integrity, 544
  - risks, 539
  - SSL, 544–545, 546
- Select element, 426
- Select list, 425–427
- Server-side processing, 414, 438–441, 588
  - CGI, 438
  - privacy and forms, 440
  - resources, 441
  - server-side scripting, 438
- Server-side scripting, 438

- Service Workers API, 521
- SessionStorage, 520
- Shade, color, 215
- Shopping cart software, 549
- Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP), 11
- Single-key encryption, 543
- Single page website, 223
  - fragment identifiers, 282–284
  - parallax scrolling, 285–287
- Site map, 207, 226, 571–572
- Site search feature, 226
- sizes attribute, 356
- Skip repetitive navigation, 225
- Slider input form control, 445
- Smart card, 547
- SmartFTP, 665
- Social bookmarking, 574
- Social media optimization (SMO), 574–575
- Social networking, 18–19, 574–575
- Source element, 354–356
- Span element, 106–107
- Special entity characters, 651–652
- Spider. See **Robot**
- Spinner Form Control, 446
- Spinner input form control, 446
- Split complementary color scheme, 216
- Sprites, 271–272
- src attribute, 147
- srcset attribute, 356–357
- Stand-alone element, 37
- Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML), 16
- start attribute, 41

- Static positioning, 275
- step attribute, 445
- Sticky positioning, 276
- Sticky site features, 577
- Stored-value card, 547
- String, 600
- Structural element, 47–53
  - structural pseudo-classes, 396–398
  - style attribute, 89–91
  - Style element, 91–94
- Submit button, 417, 418
- Submitting, search engines
  - click-through rate (CTR), 571
  - cost per click (CPC), 570
  - cost per thousand impressions (CPM), 571
  - sitemap, 571–572
  - site submission, 570
- Summary element, 514–516
- Symmetric-key encryption, 543
- System development life cycle (SDLC), 472

# T

- tabindex attribute, 433
- Table data element, 388
- Table element, 386–387
- Table element attributes, 386–387
- Table header element, 388–390
- Table row element, 388
- Tables
  - accessible table configuring, 392–393
  - border attribute, 387
  - caption element, 387
  - colspan attribute, 390
  - CSS3 structural pseudo-classes, 396–398
  - rowspan attribute, 390–391
  - sample table, 386
  - sections configuring, 398–400
  - Style a Table with CSS, 394–396
  - table data element, 388
  - table element, 386
  - table element attributes, 386–387
  - table header element, 388–390
  - table row element, 388
- Taxation, 542
- Telephone number input form control, 443
- Testing
  - accessibility testing, 478
  - automated testing tools, 477–478
  - operating system, 476
  - test plan, 477

- Test plan, 477
- Tetradic color scheme, 216
- Text
  - font-size property, 96–97
  - font-weight property, 97
  - letter-spacing property, 98
  - line-height property, 97
  - text-align property, 97–98
  - text-decoration property, 98
  - text-indent property, 98
  - text-shadow property, 99–102
  - text-transform property, 98
  - white-space property, 99
  - word-spacing property, 98
- text-align property, 97–98
- Textarea element, 423
- Text box attributes, 416–417
- text-decoration property, 263
- text-shadow property, CSS3
  - blur radius, 99
  - color value, 99
  - horizontal offset, 99
  - vertical offset, 99
- Thumbnail image, 146
- Tint, color, 215
- Title element, 29
  - type attribute, 41
- Tone, color, 215
- transform property, 504–505
- transition property, 506–507
- Transmission control protocol/Internet protocol (TCP/IP), 11–12
- Triadic color scheme, 216

- Two-column page layout (CSS), 258–262, 268–271, 326–329
  - case study, 293–310
  - pseudo-classes, 266–267

# U

- Uniform resource identifiers (URI), 13
- Uniform resource locators (URL), 13
  - input form control, 442–443
- Universal design, 5–6
- Universal selector, 258
- Unordered list, 42–43
- Usability testing, 479
- User experience (UX) designer, 470

# V

- Validation
  - CSS, 117–118
  - HTML, 61–63
- Validators, 477–478
- Variables, 600–603
- Vertical navigation
  - configure with CSS, 263
  - remove the underline, 263
- Video element, 499–501
- Video file types, 494
- Viewport meta tag, 338–339
- Virtual hosting, 484–486
- Visual design principles
  - alignment, 210
  - contrast, 209
  - proximity, 210
  - repetition, 209
- Visual element and graphics
  - accessibility, 170
  - background images, 155–164
  - CSS rounded corners, 171–173
  - CSS sprites, 168
  - favorites icon, 166–167
  - graphic sources, 168–169
  - HTML5 visual element, 152–155
  - image map, 164–166
  - image usage guidelines, 169–170
  - img element, 147–151

- lines and border configuration, 138–139
- optimization, 145
- usage guidelines, 169–170
- on web, 144–147
- Void element, 29, 37

# W

- Web
  - information on, 6–8
  - popular uses, 17–19
- Web Accessibility Initiative (WAI), 5, 211
- Web analytics, 572
- Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG), 5, 659–661
  - operable, 660
  - perceivable, 659
  - resources, 661
  - robust, 660
  - understandable, 660
- Web design
  - accessibility, 210–212
  - best practices checklist, 234–236
  - browser, 222
  - checklist, 234–236
  - color scheme, 214–220
  - flat web design, 222–223
  - graphics and multimedia, 220–221
  - mobile devices, 221–222
  - mobile web, 230–232
  - navigation design, 223–226
  - page layout design, 226–230
  - single page website, 223
  - target audience, 206–207
  - visual design principles, 209–210
  - website organization, 207–208
  - white space, 222

- writing for web, 212–214
- Web designer, 471
- Web developer, 471
- Web development. See also [Testing](#)
  - analysis, 474
  - conceptualization, 473
  - content manager, 470–471
  - copywriter, 470
  - database administrator, 471
  - design phase, 474–475
  - domain name, 482–484
  - editor, 470
  - evaluation, 480
  - file organization, 480–482
  - graphic designer, 471
  - information architect, 470
  - launch, 479
  - maintenance, 480
  - marketing representative, 470
  - network administrator, 471
  - phases, 471–472
  - production, 476
  - project manager, 470
  - project staffing, 471
  - testing, 476–479
  - UX designer, 470
  - web designer, 471
  - web developer, 471
  - website development cycle, 472
- Web hosting
  - co-located hosting, 485
  - dedicated hosting, 485

- virtual hosting, 484–486
- Web multimedia and interactivity
  - accessibility, 497, 524
  - Ajax, 518
  - API, 520–523
  - audio files, 496
  - container/codec, 494–495
  - copyright law, 502
  - CSS3, 502–514
  - HTML5 audio and video element, 497–501
  - hyperlink, 495
  - JavaScript, 516–518
  - jQuery, 519
  - video files, 496–497
- WebP image format, 146
- Web presence, 470
- Web promotion. See **Search engines**
- Web-safe color palette, 669
- Web-safe colors, 88
- Web server, 471
- Website forum postings, 577
- Web storage, 520
- white-space property, 99
- Wide area network (WAN), 9
- width property, 246, 248
- Wiki, 18
- Window object, 594
- World Wide Web
  - ADA, 5
  - birth, 2
  - blogs, 18
  - cloud computing, 19

- constant change, 19
- e-commerce, 17
- ethical use, 7–8
- graphical web browser, 2–3
- IITAA, 5
- mobile access, 18
- podcasts, 19
- reliability and information, 6–7
- RSS, 19
- Section 508 of the Federal Rehabilitation Act, 5
- social networking, 18–19
- standards and accessibility, 5
- technology convergence, 3
- universal design, 5–6
- wikis, 18
- World Wide Web Consortium (W3C), 4–5
- Writing for web
  - alignment, 214
  - content organization, 212, 213
  - font color contrast, 213
  - font selection, 213
  - font size and weight, 213
  - line length, 214
  - reading level, 214
  - spelling and grammar, 214
  - text in hyperlinks, 214

X

- XHTML. See Extensible hypertext markup language (XHTML)

Y

- YouTube video, 580

# Z

- zebra striping, 396
- z-index property, 279–281

# Contents

- 1. Web Development & Design Foundations with HTML5**
- 2. Web Development & Design Foundations with HTML5**
- 3. Preface**
  - A. New to This Edition**
  - B. Organization of the Text**
  - C. Brief Overview of Each Chapter**
  - D. Features of the Text**
  - E. Supplemental Materials**
  - F. About the Author**
- 4. Contents**
- 5. 1 Introduction to the Internet and World Wide Web**
  - A. Chapter Objectives**
  - B. 1.1 The Internet and the Web**
    - 1. The Internet**
    - 2. Birth of the Internet**
    - 3. Growth of the Internet**
    - 4. Birth of the Web**
    - 5. The First Graphical Browser**
    - 6. Convergence of Technologies**
    - 7. Who Runs the Internet?**
    - 8. Intranets and Extranets**
  - C. 1.2 Web Standards and Accessibility**
    - 1. W3C Recommendations**
    - 2. Web Standards and Accessibility**
    - 3. Accessibility and the Law**
    - 4. Universal Design for the Web**
  - D. 1.3 Information on the Web**
    - 1. Reliability and Information on the Web**

**2. Ethical Use of Information on the Web**

**E. 1.4 Network Overview**

**F. 1.5 The Client/Server Model**

**G. 1.6 Internet Protocols**

**1. File Transfer Protocol (FTP)**

**2. E-mail Protocols**

**3. Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)**

**4. Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS)**

**5. Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)**

**a. TCP**

**b. IP**

**H. 1.7 Uniform Resource Identifiers and Domain Names**

**1. URIs and URLs**

**2. Domain Names**

**a. Top-Level Domain Names**

**b. Generic Top-Level Domain Names (gTLDs)**

**c. Country-Code Top-Level Domain Names**

**d. Domain Name System (DNS)**

**I. 1.8 Markup Languages**

**1. Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML)**

**2. Hypertext Markup Language (HTML)**

**3. Extensible Markup Language (XML)**

**4. Extensible Hypertext Markup Language (XHTML)**

**5. HTML5—the Newest Version of HTML**

**J. 1.9 Popular Uses of the Web**

**1. E-Commerce**

**2. Mobile Access**

**3. Blogs**

**4. Wikis**

**5. Social Networking**

**6. Cloud Computing**

**7. RSS**

- 8. Podcasts**
  - 9. Constant Change**
  - K. Chapter Summary**
  - L. Key Terms**
  - M. Review Questions**
    - 1. Multiple Choice**
    - 2. True or False**
    - 3. Fill in the Blank**
  - N. Hands-On Exercise**
  - O. Web Research**
  - P. Focus on Web Design**
- 6. 2 HTML Basics**
- A. Chapter Objectives**
  - B. 2.1 HTML Overview**
    - 1. HTML**
    - 2. XML**
    - 3. XHTML**
    - 4. HTML5**
  - C. 2.2 Document Type Definition**
  - D. 2.3 Web Page Template**
  - E. 2.4 HTML Element**
  - F. 2.5 Head, Title, Meta, and Body Elements**
    - 1. The Head Section**
      - a. The Head Element**
      - b. The Title Element**
      - c. The Meta Element**
    - 2. The Body Section**
      - a. The Body Element**
  - G. 2.6 Your First Web Page**
  - H. 2.7 Heading Element**
    - 1. Accessibility and Headings**
  - I. 2.8 Paragraph Element**

- 1. Alignment**
- J. 2.9 Line Break Element**
- K. 2.10 Blockquote Element**
- L. 2.11 Phrase Elements**
- M. 2.12 Ordered List**
  - 1. The Type, Start, and Reversed Attributes**
- N. 2.13 Unordered List**
- O. 2.14 Description List**
- P. 2.15 Special Characters**
- Q. 2.16 Structural Elements**
  - 1. Div Element**
  - 2. Header Element**
  - 3. Nav Element**
  - 4. Main Element**
  - 5. Footer Element**
  - 6. Section Element**
  - 7. Article Element**
  - 8. Aside Element**
  - 9. Time Element**
- R. 2.17 Hyperlinks**
  - 1. The A Element**
  - 2. The Href Attribute**
  - 3. Absolute Hyperlinks**
  - 4. Relative Hyperlinks**
  - 5. Site Map**
  - 6. The Target Attribute**
  - 7. Block Anchor**
  - 8. E-Mail Hyperlinks**
  - 9. Accessibility and Hyperlinks**
- S. 2.18 HTML Validation**
- T. Chapter Summary**
- U. Key Terms**

**V. Review Questions**

- 1. Multiple Choice**
- 2. Fill in the Blank**
- 3. Short Answer**

**W. Apply Your Knowledge**

- X. Hands-On Exercises**
- Y. Web Research**
- Z. Focus on Web Design**

**7. 3 Configuring Color and Text with CSS**

- A. Chapter Objectives**
- B. 3.1 Overview of Cascading Style Sheets**
  - 1. Advantages of Cascading Style Sheets**
  - 2. Configuring Cascading Style Sheets**
  - 3. CSS Selectors and Declarations**
  - 4. The background-color Property**
  - 5. The color Property**
  - 6. Configure Background and Text Color**
- C. 3.2 Using Color on Web Pages**
  - 1. Hexadecimal Color Values**
  - 2. Web-Safe Colors**
  - 3. CSS Color Syntax**
- D. 3.3 Inline CSS with the Style Attribute**
  - 1. The Style Attribute**
- E. 3.4 Embedded CSS with the Style Element**
  - 1. Style Element**
- F. 3.5 Configuring Text with CSS**
  - 1. The font-family Property**
  - 2. More CSS Text Properties**
    - a. The font-size Property**
    - b. The font-weight Property**
    - c. The font-style Property**
    - d. The line-height Property**

- e. The `text-align` Property
- f. The `text-indent` Property
- g. The `text-decoration` Property
- h. The `text-transform` Property
- i. The `letter-spacing` Property
- j. The `word-spacing` Property
- k. The `white-space` Property
- l. The `text-shadow` Property

#### G. 3.6 CSS Class, Id, and Descendant Selectors

- 1. The Class Selector
- 2. The Id Selector
- 3. The Descendant Selector

#### H. 3.7 Span Element

#### I. 3.8 Using External Style Sheets

- 1. Link Element

#### J. 3.9 Center HTML Elements with CSS

#### K. 3.10 The “Cascade”

#### L. 3.11 CSS Validation

#### M. Chapter Summary

#### N. Key Terms

#### O. Review Questions

- 1. Multiple Choice
- 2. Fill in the Blank

#### P. Apply Your Knowledge

#### Q. Hands-On Exercises

#### R. Web Research

#### S. Focus on Web Design

### 8. 4 Visual Elements and Graphics

#### A. Chapter Objectives

#### B. 4.1 Configuring Lines and Borders

- 1. Horizontal Rule Element
- 2. The `border` and `padding` Properties

- a. **The border Property**
  - b. **The border-style Property**
  - c. **The padding Property**
- C. 4.2 Graphics on the Web**
- 1. **Graphic Interchange Format (GIF)**
    - a. Transparency
    - b. Animation
    - c. Compression
    - d. Optimization
    - e. Interlacing
  - 2. **Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG)**
    - a. Compression
    - b. Optimization
    - c. Progressive JPEG
  - 3. **Portable Network Graphic (PNG)**
  - 4. **WebP Image Format**
  - 5. **Popular Graphics Applications**
- D. 4.3 Img Element**
- 1. **Accessibility and Images**
  - 2. **Image Hyperlinks**
  - 3. **Accessibility and Image Hyperlinks**
- E. 4.4 More Visual Elements**
- 1. **Figure and Figcaption Elements**
  - 2. **Meter Element**
  - 3. **Progress Element**
- F. 4.5 Background Images**
- 1. **The background-image Property**
    - a. Using Both Background Color and a Background Image
  - 2. **Browser Display of a Background Image**
  - 3. **The background-repeat Property**
  - 4. **The background-position Property**
  - 5. **The background-attachment Property**

- 6. The background-clip Property**
- 7. The background-origin Property**
- 8. The background-size Property**
- 9. Multiple Background Images**

## **G. 4.6 More About Images**

- 1. Image Maps**
  - a. Map Element**
  - b. Area Element**
  - c. Exploring a Rectangular Image Map**
- 2. The Favorites Icon**
- 3. Configuring a Favorites Icon**
- 4. CSS Sprites**

## **H. 4.7 Sources and Guidelines for Graphics**

- 1. Sources of Graphics**
- 2. Guidelines for Using Images**
  - a. Reuse Images**
  - b. Consider the Size vs. Quality Issue**
  - c. Consider Image Load Time**
  - d. Use Appropriate Resolution**
  - e. Specify Dimensions**
  - f. Be Aware of Brightness and Contrast**
- 3. Accessibility and Visual Elements**

## **I. 4.8 CSS Visual Effects**

- 1. CSS Rounded Corners**
- 2. The box-shadow Property**
- 3. The opacity Property**
- 4. CSS RGBA Color**
- 5. CSS HSLA Color**
  - a. Hue, Saturation, Lightness, and Alpha**
  - b. HSLA Color Examples**
- 6. CSS Gradients**
  - a. Linear Gradient Syntax**



- 5. Font Color Contrast**
- 6. Line Length**
- 7. Alignment**
- 8. Text in Hyperlinks**
- 9. Reading Level**
- 10. Spelling and Grammar**

#### **G. 5.6 Use of Color**

- 1. Color Scheme Based on an Image**
- 2. Color Wheel**
  - a. Shades, Tints, and Tones**
- 3. Color Scheme Based on the Color Wheel**
  - a. Monochromatic Color Scheme**
  - b. Analogous Color Scheme**
  - c. Complementary Color Scheme**
  - d. Split Complementary Color Scheme**
  - e. Triadic Color Scheme**
  - f. Tetradic Color Scheme**
- 4. Implementing a Color Scheme**
- 5. Accessibility and Color**
- 6. Colors and Your Target Audience**

#### **H. 5.7 Use of Graphics and Multimedia**

- 1. File Size and Image Dimensions Matter**
- 2. Antialiased/Aliased Text in Media**
- 3. Use Only Necessary Multimedia**
- 4. Provide Alternate Text**

#### **I. 5.8 More Design Considerations**

- 1. Mobile Devices**
- 2. Browsers**
- 3. Screen Resolution**
- 4. White Space**
- 5. Flat Web Design**
- 6. Single Page Website**

**J. 5.9 Navigation Design**

- 1. Ease of Navigation**
- 2. Navigation Bars**
- 3. Breadcrumb Navigation**
- 4. Using Graphics for Navigation**
- 5. Skip Repetitive Navigation**
- 6. Dynamic Navigation**
- 7. Site Map**
- 8. Site Search Feature**

**K. 5.10 Page Layout Design**

- 1. Wireframes and Page Layout**
- 2. Page Layout Design Techniques**
  - a. Fixed Layout**
  - b. Fluid Layout**

**L. 5.11 Design for the Mobile Web**

- 1. Mobile Web Design Considerations**
- 2. Optimize Layout for Mobile Use**
- 3. Optimize Navigation for Mobile Use**
- 4. Optimize Graphics for Mobile Use**
- 5. Optimize Text for Mobile Use**
- 6. Mobile Design Quick Checklist**

**M. 5.12 Responsive Web Design**

**N. 5.13 Web Design Best Practices Checklist**

**O. Chapter Summary**

**P. Key Terms**

**Q. Review Questions**

- 1. Multiple Choice**
- 2. Fill in the Blank**
- 3. Short Answer**

**R. Hands-On Exercises**

**S. Web Research**

**T. Focus on Web Design**

## 10. 6 Page Layout

### A. Chapter Objectives

### B. 6.1 Width and Height with CSS

1. The `width` Property
2. The `min-width` Property
3. The `max-width` Property
4. The `height` Property

### C. 6.2 The Box Model

1. Content
2. Padding
3. Border
4. Margin
  - a. The `margin` Property
5. The Box Model in Action

### D. 6.3 Normal Flow

### E. 6.4 CSS Float

### F. 6.5 CSS Clearing a Float

1. The `clear` Property
  - a. Clear a Float with a Line Break
  - b. Another Technique to Clear a Float
2. The `overflow` Property
  - a. Clear a Float
  - b. Configure Scrollbars

### G. 6.6 CSS Box Sizing

### H. 6.7 CSS Two-Column Layout

1. Your First Two-Column Layout
2. Two-Column Layout Example
  - a. Not Yet Ready for Prime Time

### I. 6.8 Hyperlinks in an Unordered List

1. Configure List Markers with CSS
  - a. Configure an Image as a List Marker
2. Vertical Navigation with an Unordered List

- a. Configure with CSS
    - b. Remove the Underline with CSS
  - 3. The `display` Property
  - 4. Horizontal Navigation with an Unordered List
    - a. Configure with CSS
  - J. 6.9 CSS Interactivity with Pseudo-Classes
    - 1. CSS Button
  - K. 6.10 CSS Sprites
  - L. 6.11 CSS for Printing
    - 1. Print Styling Best Practices
  - M. 6.12 Positioning with CSS
    - 1. Static Positioning
    - 2. Fixed Positioning
    - 3. Relative Positioning
    - 4. Sticky Positioning
    - 5. Absolute Positioning
    - 6. Practice with Positioning
  - N. 6.13 Fixed Position Navigation Bar
    - 1. The `z-index` property
  - O. 6.14 Single Page Website
    - 1. Fragment Identifiers
    - 2. Parallax Scrolling
  - P. Chapter Summary
  - Q. Key Terms
  - R. Review Questions
    - 1. Multiple Choice
    - 2. Fill in the Blank
  - S. Apply Your Knowledge
  - T. Hands-On Exercises
  - U. Web Research
  - V. Focus on Web Design
11. 7 Responsive Page Layout

**A. Chapter Objectives**

**B. 7.1 CSS Flexible Box Layout**

1. Configure a Flexible Container
2. The `display` Property
3. The `flex-wrap` Property
4. The `flex-direction` Property

**C. 7.2 More About Flex Containers**

1. Flow Direction
2. The `justify-content` Property
3. The `align-items` Property
4. The `flex-flow` Property
5. Flexbox Image Gallery

**D. 7.3 Configure Flex Items**

1. Proportional Flexible Item
2. The `order` Property
3. Practice with Flexbox

**E. 7.4 CSS Grid Layout**

1. Configure a Grid Container
2. The `display` Property
3. Designing a Grid
4. Configure Grid Columns and Grid Rows

**F. 7.5 Grid Columns, Rows, and Gap**

1. Grid Gap
2. The `order` Property

**G. 7.6 Two-Column Grid Page Layout**

1. Configure Grid Columns and Rows
2. Configure Grid Items
3. Grid Line Numbers
  - a. Configure a Grid Page Layout with Grid Line Numbers

**H. 7.7 Layout with Grid Areas**

1. The `grid-area` Property<sup>¶</sup>
2. The `grid-template-areas` Property

- 3. The `grid-template` Property**
- I. 7.8 Progressive Enhancement with Grid**
  - 1. CSS Feature Query**
  - J. 7.9 Centering with Flexbox and Grid**
  - K. 7.10 Viewport Meta Tag**
  - L. 7.11 CSS Media Queries**
    - 1. What's a Media Query?**
    - 2. Media Query Example Using a Link Element**
    - 3. Media Query Example Using an `@media` Rule**
    - 4. Mobile First**
  - M. 7.12 Responsive Layout with Media Queries**
  - N. 7.13 Responsive Grid Layout with Media Queries**
  - O. 7.14 Responsive Images**
    - 1. Flexible Images with CSS**
    - 2. Picture Element**
      - a. Source Element**
    - 3. Responsive Img Element Attributes**
      - a. The `sizes` Attribute**
      - b. The `srcset` Attribute**
      - c. Explore Responsive Images**
  - P. 7.15 Testing Mobile Display**
    - 1. Testing with a Desktop Browser**
    - 2. Browser Viewport Size**
    - 3. Responsive Testing Tools**
    - 4. For Serious Developers Only**
  - Q. Chapter Summary**
  - R. Key Terms**
  - S. Review Questions**
    - 1. Multiple Choice**
    - 2. Fill in the Blank**
  - T. Apply Your Knowledge**
  - U. Hands-On Exercises**

**V. Web Research**

**W. Focus on Web Design**

**12. 8 Tables**

**A. Chapter Objectives**

**B. 8.1 Table Overview**

**1. Table Element**

**2. The Border Attribute**

**3. Table Captions**

**C. 8.2 Table Rows, Cells, and Headers**

**1. Table Row Element**

**2. Table Data Element**

**3. Table Header Element**

**D. 8.3 Span Rows and Columns**

**1. The Colspan Attribute**

**2. The Rowspan Attribute**

**E. 8.4 Configure an Accessible Table**

**F. 8.5 Style a Table with CSS**

**G. 8.6 CSS Structural Pseudo-Classes**

**H. 8.7 Configure Table Sections**

**I. Chapter Summary**

**J. Key Terms**

**K. Review Questions**

**1. Multiple Choice**

**2. Fill in the Blank**

**L. Apply Your Knowledge**

**M. Hands-On Exercises**

**N. Web Research**

**O. Focus on Web Design**

**13. 9 Forms**

**A. Chapter Objectives**

**B. 9.1 Overview of Forms**

**1. Form Element**

## **2. Form Controls**

### **C. 9.2 Input Element Form Controls**

- 1. Text Box**
- 2. Submit Button**
- 3. Reset Button**
- 4. Check Box**
- 5. Radio Button**
- 6. Hidden Input Control**
- 7. File Upload Control**
- 8. Password Box**

### **D. 9.3 Scrolling Text Box**

- 1. Textarea Element**

### **E. 9.4 Select List**

- 1. Select Element**
- 2. Option Element**

### **F. 9.5 Image Buttons and the Button Element**

- 1. Image Button**
- 2. Button Element**

### **G. 9.6 Accessibility and Forms**

- 1. Label Element**
- 2. Fieldset and Legend Elements**
- 3. The Tabindex Attribute**
- 4. The Accesskey Attribute**

### **H. 9.7 Style a Form with CSS**

- 1. Form with CSS Float**
- 2. Form with CSS Grid Layout**

### **I. 9.8 Server-Side Processing**

- 1. Privacy and Forms**
- 2. Server-Side Processing Resources**
  - a. Sources of Free Remote-Hosted Form Processing**
  - b. Sources of Free Server-Side Scripts**
  - c. Exploring Server-Side Processing Technologies**

**J. 9.9 HTML5 Form Controls**

- 1. E-mail Address Input**
- 2. URL Input**
- 3. Telephone Number Input**
- 4. Search Field Input**
- 5. Datalist Form Control**
- 6. Slider Form Control**
- 7. Spinner Form Control**
- 8. Date and Time Form Control**
- 9. Color-well Form Control**
- 10. Progressive Enhancement**

**K. Chapter Summary**

**L. Key Terms**

**M. Review Questions**

- 1. Multiple Choice**
- 2. Fill in the Blank**
- 3. Short Answer**

**N. Apply Your Knowledge**

**O. Hands-On Exercises**

**P. Web Research**

**Q. Focus on Web Design**

**14. 10 Web Development**

**A. Chapter Objectives**

**B. 10.1 Successful Large-Scale Project Development**

- 1. Project Job Roles**
  - a. Project Manager**
  - b. Information Architect**
  - c. User Experience Designer**
  - d. Marketing Representative**
  - e. Copywriter and Editor**
  - f. Content Manager**
  - g. Graphic Designer**

- h. Database Administrator**
- i. Network Administrator**
- j. Web Developer/Web Designer**

**2. Project Staffing Criteria**

**C. 10.2 The Development Process**

- 1. Conceptualization**
- 2. Analysis**
- 3. Design**
- 4. Production**
- 5. Testing**
  - a. Automated Testing Tools and Validators**
  - b. Accessibility Testing**
  - c. Usability Testing**
- 6. Launch**
- 7. Maintenance**
- 8. Evaluation**

**D. 10.3 File Organization**

- 1. Relative Hyperlink Examples**

**E. 10.4 Domain Name Overview**

- 1. Choosing a Domain Name**
- 2. Registering a Domain Name**

**F. 10.5 Web Hosting**

- 1. Web Hosting Providers**
  - a. Types of Web Hosting**

**G. 10.6 Choosing a Virtual Host**

**H. Chapter Summary**

- I. Key Terms**
- J. Review Questions**

- 1. Multiple Choice**
- 2. Fill in the Blank**
- 3. Short Answer**

**K. Hands-On Exercises**

**L. Web Research**

**M. Focus on Web Design**

**15. 11 Web Multimedia and Interactivity**

**A. Chapter Objectives**

**B. 11.1 Containers and Codecs**

**C. 11.2 Getting Started with Audio and Video**

**1. Provide a Hyperlink**

**2. Working with Multimedia on the Web**

**a. More About Audio Files**

**b. More About Video Files**

**c. Multimedia and Accessibility Issues**

**D. 11.3 Audio and Video Elements**

**1. Audio Element**

**2. Source Element**

**3. Audio on a Web Page**

**4. Video Element**

**5. Source Element**

**6. Video on a Web Page**

**E. 11.4 Multimedia Files and Copyright Law**

**F. 11.5 CSS and Interactivity**

**1. CSS Drop Down Menu**

**2. The transform Property**

**3. Rotate Transform**

**4. Scale Transform**

**a. Explore Transforms**

**5. The transition Property**

**a. Explore Transitions**

**6. CSS Animations**

**7. Define an Animation with @keyframes Rule**

**8. Apply the Animation**

**a. Explore CSS Animation**

**G. 11.6 Details and Summary Elements**

**1. Details Element**

**2. Summary Element**

**3. Details & Summary Widget**

**H. 11.7 JavaScript**

**1. JavaScript Resources**

**I. 11.8 Ajax**

**1. Ajax Resources**

**J. 11.9 jQuery**

**1. jQuery Resources**

**K. 11.10 HTML5 APIs**

**1. Geolocation**

**2. Web Storage**

**3. Progressive Web Application**

**4. Drawing with the Canvas Element**

**a. HTML5 API Resources**

**L. 11.11 Multimedia, Animation, and Interactivity Accessibility Issues**

**M. Chapter Summary**

**N. Key Terms**

**O. Review Questions**

**1. Multiple Choice**

**2. Fill in the Blank**

**3. Short Answer**

**P. Apply Your Knowledge**

**Q. Hands-On Exercises**

**R. Web Research**

**S. Focus on Web Design**

**16. 12 E-Commerce Overview**

**A. Chapter Objectives**

**B. 12.1 What Is E-Commerce?**

**1. Advantages of E-Commerce**

**2. Risks of E-Commerce**

**C. 12.2 E-Commerce Business Models**

**D. 12.3 Electronic Data Interchange (EDI)**

**E. 12.4 E-Commerce Statistics**

**F. 12.5 E-Commerce Issues**

**G. 12.6 E-Commerce Security**

**1. Encryption**

**a. Symmetric-Key Encryption**

**b. Asymmetric-Key Encryption**

**2. Integrity**

**3. Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)**

**4. Digital Certificate**

**5. SSL and Digital Certificates**

**H. 12.7 Order and Payment Processing**

**1. Credit Card**

**2. Stored-value Card**

**3. Digital Wallet**

**4. Digital Cash**

**I. 12.8 E-Commerce Technology Solutions**

**1. Instant Online Storefront**

**2. Shopping Cart Software**

**3. E-Commerce Platform**

**J. Chapter Summary**

**K. Key Terms**

**L. Review Questions**

**1. Multiple Choice**

**2. Fill in the Blank**

**3. Short Answer**

**M. Hands-On Exercises**

**N. Web Research**

**O. Focus on Web Design**

**17. 13 Web Promotion**

**A. Chapter Objectives**

**B. 13.1 Search Engine Overview**

- C. 13.2 Popular Search Engines**
- D. 13.3 Components of a Search Engine**
  - 1. Robot**
  - 2. Database**
  - 3. Search Form**
- E. 13.4 Search Engine Optimization**
  - 1. Keywords**
  - 2. Page Titles**
  - 3. Heading Tags**
  - 4. Description**
  - 5. Description Meta Tag**
  - 6. Linking**
  - 7. Images and Multimedia**
  - 8. Valid Code**
  - 9. Content of Value**
  - 10. HTTPS Protocol**
- F. 13.5 Submitting your Website to a Search Engine**
  - 1. Map Your Site**
- G. 13.6 Monitoring Search Listings**
- H. 13.7 Link Popularity**
- I. 13.8 Social Media Optimization**
  - 1. Blogs**
  - 2. Social Networking**
- J. 13.9 Other Site Promotion Activities**
  - 1. Quick Response (QR) Codes**
  - 2. Affiliate Programs**
  - 3. Banner Ads**
  - 4. Banner Exchange**
  - 5. Reciprocal Link Agreements**
  - 6. Newsletters**
  - 7. Sticky Site Features**
  - 8. Personal Recommendations**

- 9. Website Forum Postings**
  - 10. Traditional Media Ads and Existing Marketing Materials**
  - K. 13.10 Serving Dynamic Content with Inline Frames**
    - 1. Iframe Element**
    - 2. Video in an Inline Frame**
  - L. Chapter Summary**
  - M. Key Terms**
  - N. Review Questions**
    - 1. Multiple Choice**
      - a. Fill in the Blank**
  - O. Hands-On Exercises**
  - P. Web Research**
  - Q. Focus on Web Design**
- 18. 14 A Brief Look at JavaScript and jQuery**
- A. Chapter Objectives**
  - B. 14.1 Overview of JavaScript**
  - C. 14.2 The Development of JavaScript**
  - D. 14.3 Popular Uses for JavaScript**
    - 1. Alert Message**
    - 2. Popup Windows**
    - 3. Jump Menus**
    - 4. Mouse Movement Techniques**
  - E. 14.4 Adding JavaScript to a Web Page**
    - 1. Script Element**
    - 2. Alert Message Box**
  - F. 14.5 Document Object Model Overview**
  - G. 14.6 Events and Event Handlers**
  - H. 14.7 Variables**
    - 1. Writing a Variable to a Web Page**
    - 2. Collecting Variable Values Using a Prompt**
  - I. 14.8 Introduction to Programming Concepts**
    - 1. Arithmetic Operators**

- 2. Decision Making**
  - 3. Functions**
  - 4. The addEventListener Method**
  - J. 14.9 Form Handling**
  - K. 14.10 Accessibility and JavaScript**
  - L. 14.11 JavaScript Resources**
  - M. 14.12 Overview of jQuery**
  - N. 14.13 Adding jQuery to a Web Page**
    - 1. Download jQuery**
    - 2. Access jQuery via a Content Delivery Network**
    - 3. The Ready Event**
  - O. 14.14 jQuery Selectors**
  - P. 14.15 jQuery Methods**
  - Q. 14.16 jQuery Image Gallery**
  - R. 14.17 jQuery Plugins**
  - S. 14.18 jQuery Resources**
  - T. Chapter Summary**
  - U. Key Terms**
  - V. Review Questions**
    - 1. Multiple Choice**
    - 2. Fill in the Blank**
    - 3. Short Answer**
  - W. Apply Your Knowledge**
  - X. Hands-On Exercises**
  - Y. Web Research**
- 19. Web Developer's Handbook**
- A. A HTML5 Quick Reference**
    - 1. Commonly Used HTML5 Elements**
  - B. B Special Entity Characters**
  - C. C CSS Property Reference**
    - 1. Commonly Used CSS Properties**
  - D. D WCAG 2.1 Quick Reference**

- 1. Perceivable**
  - 2. Operable**
  - 3. Understandable**
  - 4. Robust**
  - 5. Resources**
- E. E Landmark Roles with ARIA**
- F. F FTP Tutorial**
- 1. Publish with File Transfer Protocol (FTP)**
    - a. FTP Applications**
    - b. Connecting with FTP**
    - c. Overview of Using an FTP Application**
      - a. Launch and Login**
      - b. Uploading a File**
      - c. Downloading a File**
      - d. Deleting a File**
      - e. And There's More!**
- G. G Web-Safe Color Palette**
- 20. Answers**
- A. Chapter 1**
- 1. Checkpoint 1.1**
  - 2. Checkpoint 1.2**
  - 3. Review Questions**
- B. Chapter 2**
- 1. Checkpoint 2.1**
  - 2. Checkpoint 2.2**
  - 3. Checkpoint 2.3**
  - 4. Review Questions**
- C. Chapter 3**
- 1. Checkpoint 3.1**
  - 2. Checkpoint 3.2**
  - 3. Review Questions**
- D. Chapter 4**

- 1. Checkpoint 4.1
    - 2. Checkpoint 4.2
    - 3. Checkpoint 4.3
    - 4. Review Questions
  - E. Chapter 5
    - 1. Checkpoint 5.1
    - 2. Checkpoint 5.2
    - 3. Review Questions
  - F. Chapter 6
    - 1. Checkpoint 6.1
    - 2. Checkpoint 6.2
    - 3. Review Questions
  - G. Chapter 7
    - 1. Checkpoint 7.1
    - 2. Checkpoint 7.2
    - 3. Review Questions
  - H. Chapter 8
    - 1. Checkpoint 8.1
    - 2. Checkpoint 8.2
    - 3. Review Questions
  - I. Chapter 9
    - 1. Checkpoint 9.1
    - 2. Checkpoint 9.2
    - 3. Checkpoint 9.3
    - 4. Review Questions
  - J. Chapter 10
    - 1. Checkpoint 10.1
    - 2. Checkpoint 10.2
    - 3. Review Questions
  - K. Chapter 11
    - 1. Checkpoint 11.1
    - 2. Checkpoint 11.2

- [3. Checkpoint 11.3](#)
- [4. Review Questions](#)
- [\*\*L. Chapter 12\*\*](#)
  - [1. Checkpoint 12.1](#)
  - [2. Checkpoint 12.2](#)
  - [3. Review Questions](#)
- [\*\*M. Chapter 13\*\*](#)
  - [1. Checkpoint 13.1](#)
  - [2. Checkpoint 13.2](#)
  - [3. Review Questions](#)
- [\*\*N. Chapter 14\*\*](#)
  - [1. Checkpoint 14.1](#)
  - [2. Checkpoint 14.2](#)
  - [3. Checkpoint 14.3](#)
  - [4. Checkpoint 14.4](#)
  - [5. Checkpoint 14.5](#)
  - [6. Review Questions](#)
- [\*\*21. Index\*\*](#)
  - [A. A](#)
  - [B. B](#)
  - [C. C](#)
  - [D. D](#)
  - [E. E](#)
  - [F. F](#)
  - [G. G](#)
  - [H. H](#)
  - [I. I](#)
  - [J. J](#)
  - [K. K](#)
  - [L. L](#)
  - [M. M](#)
  - [N. N](#)

O. O

P. P

Q. Q

R. R

S. S

T. T

U. U

V. V

W. W

X. X

Y. Y

Z. Z

## List of Illustrations

1. Figure 1.2 A smooth ride is a benefit of universal design
2. Figure 1.3 Who really updated that web page you are viewing?
3. Figure 1.5 Web client and web server
4. Figure 1.6 TCP packet
5. Figure 1.7 Entering an IP address in a web browser
6. Figure 2.1 It's what is under the hood that matters.
7. Figure 2.2 Your first webpage
8. Figure 2.4 The Save As dialog box. Courtesy of Microsoft Corporation.
9. Figure 2.5 Web page displayed by Microsoft Edge. Courtesy of Microsoft Corporation.
10. Figure 2.6 Sample headings
11. Figure 2.12 Sample ordered list
12. Figure 2.18 Structural elements
13. Figure 2.20 Wireframe for Casita Sedona

- 14.** Figure 2.23 Sample hyperlink
- 15.** Figure 2.24 Site map
- 16.** Figure 2.32 JavaJam site map
- 17.** Figure 2.33 JavaJam wireframe
- 18.** Figure 2.36 Fish Creek site map
- 19.** Figure 2.37 Fish Creek wireframe
- 20.** Figure 2.40 Pacific Trails Resort site map
- 21.** Figure 2.41 Pacific Trails Resort wireframe
- 22.** Figure 2.44 Path of Light Yoga Studio site map
- 23.** Figure 2.45 Path of Light Yoga Studio wireframe
- 24.** Figure 3.2 Using CSS to set the text color to blue
- 25.** Figure 3.3 A web page with orchid background color and white text color
- 26.** Figure 3.7 The second paragraph's inline styles override the global styles configured on the body tag
- 27.** Figure 3.8 Web page with embedded styles
- 28.** Figure 3.14 CSS configures color and text properties on the web page
- 29.** Figure 3.15 Using a class selector
- 30.** Figure 3.16 The new home page
- 31.** Figure 3.17 This web page uses the span element
- 32.** Figure 3.19 This page is associated with an external style sheet
- 33.** Figure 3.24 The "cascade" of Cascading Style Sheets
- 34.** Figure 3.25 Mixing external, embedded, and inline styles
- 35.** Figure 3.27 The validation displays one error. Screenshots of W3C. Courtesy of W3C (World Wide Web Consortium).
- 36.** Figure 3.28 The CSS is valid! Screenshots of W3C. Courtesy of W3C (World Wide Web Consortium).
- 37.** Figure 4.2 Examples of the various border-style values rendered by Firefox
- 38.** Figure 4.5 This logo is a GIF
- 39.** Figure 4.6 Comparison of transparent and nontransparent GIFs

- 40.** Figure 4.7 A JPEG saved at 80% quality (55KB file size) displays well on a web page
- 41.** Figure 4.8 JPEG saved at 20% quality (19KB file size)
- 42.** Figure 4.9 This small thumbnail image is only 5KB
- 43.** Figure 4.11 The new Home page navigation with image links
- 44.** Figure 4.12 The image is displayed on the web page
- 45.** Figure 4.13 CSS configures the placement of the border and figure caption
- 46.** Figure 4.14 The figure and figcaption elements were used in this web page
- 47.** Figure 4.15 The meter element
- 48.** Figure 4.16 The progress element
- 49.** Figure 4.17 A long, thin background image tiles down the page
- 50.** Figure 4.18 A small rectangular background is repeated to fill the web page window
- 51.** Figure 4.22 The flower background image was configured to display on the right side with CSS
- 52.** Figure 4.24 The CSS background-origin property
- 53.** Figure 4.26 Examples of background-size: cover; and background-size: contain
- 54.** Figure 4.27 The browser displays multiple background images.
- 55.** Figure 4.28 Multiple background images.
- 56.** Figure 4.29 Sample image map
- 57.** Figure 4.30 The favorites icon displays in the browser tab and address bar
- 58.** Figure 4.31 The favorites icon displays in the Firefox browser tab
- 59.** Figure 4.32 Rounded corners were configured with CSS
- 60.** Figure 4.34 The web page with the logo area configured
- 61.** Figure 4.35 The centered neutral background along with shadow properties add dimension
- 62.** Figure 4.37 The background of the h1 area is transparent
- 63.** Figure 4.39 CSS RGBA color configures the transparent text

- 64.** Figure 4.40 A color wheel
- 65.** Figure 4.41 HSLA color examples
- 66.** Figure 4.42 Shades of cyan blue
- 67.** Figure 4.43 HSLA color
- 68.** Figure 4.44 The gradient in the background was configured with CSS without an image file
- 69.** Figure 4.45 Linear gradient background
- 70.** Figure 4.46 Radial gradient background
- 71.** Figure 4.48 Home page wireframe
- 72.** Figure 4.53 New Pacific Trails wireframe
- 73.** Figure 4.57 New Path of Light Yoga Studio wireframe
- 74.** Figure 5.3 Hierarchical site organization
- 75.** Figure 5.6 Linear site organization
- 76.** Figure 5.7 Random site organization
- 77.** Figure 5.9 The web page content is well organized with headings
- 78.** Figure 5.10 A color scheme selected from a photo
- 79.** Figure 5.11 Color wheel
- 80.** Figure 5.12 Yellow with a shade, tint, and tone
- 81.** Figure 5.13 Monochromatic color scheme
- 82.** Figure 5.14 Analogous color scheme
- 83.** Figure 5.15 Complementary color scheme
- 84.** Figure 5.16 Split complementary color scheme
- 85.** Figure 5.17 Triadic color scheme
- 86.** Figure 5.18 Tetradic color scheme
- 87.** Figure 5.19 Some color combinations are difficult to read
- 88.** Figure 5.24 Antialiased text
- 89.** Figure 5.25 This graphic was not antialiased: The letter "A" has a jagged look
- 90.** Figure 5.30 Press the tab key to access the "Skip to content" link for this web page
- 91.** Figure 5.33 An adequate page layout

- 92.** Figure 5.38 This fixed-width centered content is balanced on the page by left and right margins
- 93.** Figure 5.39 This fluid layout expands to fill 100% of the browser viewport
- 94.** Figure 5.40 This fluid layout also has a maximum width value configured for the centered content area
- 95.** Figure 5.43 Wireframe for a typical single-column page layout.
- 96.** Figure 6.2 As the browser is resized, the “Coffee House” and navigation text wrap.
- 97.** Figure 6.3 The min-width property avoids display issues.
- 98.** Figure 6.4 The background image is truncated.
- 99.** Figure 6.5 The height property value corresponds to the height of the background image.
- 100.** Figure 6.6 The CSS box model
- 101.** Figure 6.7 Examples of the box model
- 102.** Figure 6.8 Two div elements
- 103.** Figure 6.9 Nested div elements
- 104.** Figure 6.15 The browser displays scrollbars
- 105.** Figure 6.18 Single-column layout.
- 106.** Figure 6.19 Two-column layout.
- 107.** Figure 6.20 Web page with single-column layout.
- 108.** Figure 6.24 Alternate wireframe
- 109.** Figure 6.26 The unordered list markers are square
- 110.** Figure 6.27 The ordered list markers use uppercase letters
- 111.** Figure 6.28 The list markers are replaced with an image
- 112.** Figure 6.29 Navigation in an unordered list
- 113.** Figure 6.30 The list markers have been eliminated with CSS
- 114.** Figure 6.31 The CSS text-decoration property has been applied
- 115.** Figure 6.32 Navigation in an unordered list
- 116.** Figure 6.36 CSS button
- 117.** Figure 6.37 Wireframe for a two-column layout with navigation in the right-side column.

- 118.** Figure 6.43 The navigation is configured with fixed positioning
- 119.** Figure 6.45 The paragraph is configured with absolute positioning
- 120.** Figure 6.48 The web page has a fixed top navigation bar.
- 121.** Figure 6.49 The navigation bar stays in place while the content is scrolled.
- 122.** Figure 6.58 Wireframe for a two-column page layout for the Fish Creek website
- 123.** Figure 6.66 Wireframe for a two-column page layout for the Path of Light Yoga Studio website
- 124.** Figure 7.1 A flex area with default properties.
- 125.** Figure 7.2 Flex Items wrap to the next line.
- 126.** Figure 7.6 The first version of the gallery
- 127.** Figure 7.7 Two rows of flex items
- 128.** Figure 7.8 Each row now has two items
- 129.** Figure 7.9 As the browser is resized, more items fit on the first row
- 130.** Figure 7.12 Flexbox properties have been applied
- 131.** Figure 7.13 The flexbox order property has been applied
- 132.** Figure 7.15 A Basic Grid
- 133.** Figure 7.16 The grid stretches as you widen the browser
- 134.** Figure 7.17 Responsive Grid
- 135.** Figure 7.20 The web page without grid layout
- 136.** Figure 7.29 Centered text
- 137.** Figure 7.30 Centered text with background image
- 138.** Figure 7.32 The viewport meta tag helps with mobile displays
- 139.** Figure 7.36 Smartphone display simulation
- 140.** Figure 7.37 Smartphone display
- 141.** Figure 7.39 Implementing the Large Display wireframe on a desktop browser
- 142.** Figure 7.42 Smartphone display simulation
- 143.** Figure 7.45 Grid layout for Large Display

- 144.** Figure 7.50 Responsive image with the image element's srcset attribute
- 145.** Figure 7.52 Approximating the mobile display with a desktop browser
- 146.** Figure 7.53 Testing the web page with a smartphone
- 147.** Figure 8.1 Table with three rows and three columns
- 148.** Figure 8.2 The caption for this table is "Bird Sightings"
- 149.** Figure 8.3 Using <th> tags to indicate column headings
- 150.** Figure 8.4 School History Table
- 151.** Figure 8.5 Table with a row that spans two columns
- 152.** Figure 8.6 Table with a column that spans two rows
- 153.** Figure 8.7 Practice with the rowspan attribute
- 154.** Figure 8.8 This simple data table uses <th> tags and the caption element to provide accessibility
- 155.** Figure 8.10 Rows are configured with alternating background colors
- 156.** Figure 9.2 The <input> tag with type="text" configures this form element
- 157.** Figure 9.3 The browser displayed an error message
- 158.** Figure 9.4 This form contains a text box, a submit button, and a reset button
- 159.** Figure 9.5 The text on the submit button says "Sign Me Up!"
- 160.** Figure 9.6 Sample check box
- 161.** Figure 9.7 Use radio buttons when only one choice is an appropriate response
- 162.** Figure 9.8 The characters secret9 were typed, but the browser does not display them. (Note: Your browser may use a different symbol, such as a stylized circle, to hide the characters.)
- 163.** Figure 9.9 Scrolling text box
- 164.** Figure 9.10 A typical contact form
- 165.** Figure 9.11 A select list with size set to 1 functions as a drop-down box when the arrow is clicked

- 166.** Figure 9.12 Because there are more than four choices, the browser displays a scroll bar
- 167.** Figure 9.13 The web page visitor will select the image button to submit the form
- 168.** Figure 9.14 The button element configured as a submit button
- 169.** Figure 9.15 Form controls that are all related to a mailing address
- 170.** Figure 9.21 The form is styled with CSS grid layout
- 171.** Figure 9.22 The server-side script has created this web page in response to the form
- 172.** Figure 9.23 The browser displays an error message
- 173.** Figure 11.1 The default MP3 player will launch in the browser when the visitor clicks on Podcast Episode 1
- 174.** Figure 11.4 The Firefox browser. Screenshots of Mozilla Firefox.  
Courtesy of Mozilla Foundation.
- 175.** Figure 11.5 HTML5 video element
- 176.** Figure 11.17 JavaScript in action
- 177.** Figure 11.19 jQuery is used to configure a slideshow
- 178.** Figure 11.20 The canvas element
- 179.** Figure 12.1 Symmetric-key encryption uses a single key
- 180.** Figure 12.5 Revised JavaJam site map
- 181.** Figure 12.8 Revised Fish Creek site map
- 182.** Figure 12.10 Revised Pacific Trails site map
- 183.** Figure 12.12 Revised Path of Light Yoga Studio site map
- 184.** Figure 13.1 A website log file contains useful information, but can be difficult to read.
- 185.** Figure 13.3 QR code for <http://webdevfoundations.net>
- 186.** Figure 14.1 Alert message is displayed when the user leaves the website
- 187.** Figure 14.6 JavaScript displays the alert message box (alert.html)
- 188.** Figure 14.7 The Web Console displays an error
- 189.** Figure 14.8 The Firefox browser displays write.html
- 190.** Figure 14.9 Demonstration of onmouseover

- 191.** Figure 14.10 Demonstration of onmouseout
- 192.** Figure 14.11 Browser with var.html displayed
- 193.** Figure 14.16 The form.html file displayed in the browser
- 194.** Figure 14.17 The form.html file displayed in a browser with input for age that is less than 18 (notice the alert message)
- 195.** Figure 14.19 The form.html file displayed in the browser without input in the Name and Age boxes; the alert message appears after the form is submitted
- 196.** Figure 14.22 Ready for jQuery
- 197.** Figure 14.27 Newsletter signup form

## List of Tables

- 1.** Table 1.1 Top-level domains
- 2.** Table 1.2 Country codes
- 3.** Table 2.1 Phrase elements
- 4.** Table 2.2 The type attribute for ordered lists
- 5.** Table 2.3 Common special characters
- 6.** Table 3.1 CSS properties introduced in this chapter
- 7.** Table 3.2 CSS color syntax examples
- 8.** Table 3.3 Configuring font size
- 9.** Table 4.1 New CSS properties introduced in this chapter
- 10.** Table 4.2 Overview of common web graphic file formats
- 11.** Table 4.3 Attributes of the img element
- 12.** Table 4.4 Values for the background-repeat property
- 13.** Table 4.5 Shape coordinates
- 14.** Table 4.6
- 15.** Table 5.1 Web design best practices checklist Note: Web Design Best Practices Checklist is copyrighted by Terry Ann Morris, Ed.D. (<https://terrymorris.net/bestpractices>). Used with permission.

- 16. Table 6.1 Unit Types and Purpose**
- 17. Table 6.2 Configuring margins with CSS**
- 18. Table 6.3 The overflow property**
- 19. Table 6.4 CSS properties for ordered and unordered list markers**
- 20. Table 6.5 The display property**
- 21. Table 6.6 Commonly used CSS pseudo-classes**
- 22. Table 6.7 The media Attribute**
- 23. Table 6.8 The position Property**
- 24. Table 6.9 The Position Offset Properties**
- 25. Table 7.1 Values for the justify-content Property of a Flex Area**
- 26. Table 7.2 The flex Properties**
- 27. Table 7.3 Flex Item Examples**
- 28. Table 7.4 Commonly Used Values to Configure Columns and Rows**
- 29. Table 7.5 Changing Syntax for Grid Gap**
- 30. Table 7.6 Viewport meta tag directives**
- 31. Table 7.7 Media types**
- 32. Table 7.8 Commonly used media features**
- 33. Table 7.9 Attributes of the source element**
- 34. Table 8.1 Table element attributes**
- 35. Table 8.2 Obsolete attributes of the table row element**
- 36. Table 8.3 Attributes of the table data and table header cell elements**
- 37. Table 8.4 CSS properties used to style tables**
- 38. Table 8.5 Common CSS structural pseudo-classes**
- 39. Table 9.1 Attributes of the form element**
- 40. Table 9.2 Common text box attributes**
- 41. Table 9.3 Common attributes for submit and reset buttons**
- 42. Table 9.4 Common check box attributes**
- 43. Table 9.5 Common radio button attributes**
- 44. Table 9.6 Common hidden input control attributes**
- 45. Table 9.7 Common file upload form control attributes**

- 46. Table 9.8 Common scrolling text box attributes**
- 47. Table 9.9 Common select element attributes**
- 48. Table 9.10 Common option element attributes**
- 49. Table 9.11 Common button element attributes**
- 50. Table 9.12 Additional attributes for slider, spinner, and date/time form controls**
- 51. Table 9.13 Date and time form controls**
- 52. Table 10.1 Web host checklist**
- 53. Table 11.1 Common audio file types**
- 54. Table 11.2 Common video file types**
- 55. Table 11.3 Audio element attributes**
- 56. Table 11.4 Video element attributes**
- 57. Table 11.5 Transform Functions and Purpose**
- 58. Table 11.6 CSS transition properties**
- 59. Table 11.7 Commonly used transition-timing-function values**
- 60. Table 11.8 Animation Properties**
- 61. Table 12.1 Americans online “almost constantly” Data from Pew Research Center Internet Project Survey.**
- 62. Table 12.2 SSL encryption process overview**
- 63. Table 13.1 Commonly used iframe element attributes**
- 64. Table 14.1 Events and their descriptions**
- 65. Table 14.2 Events and event handler properties**
- 66. Table 14.3 Commonly used arithmetic operators**
- 67. Table 14.4 Commonly used comparison operators**
- 68. Table 14.5 Commonly used jQuery selectors**
- 69. Table 14.6 Commonly used jQuery methods**
- 70. Table 14.7 Selected jQuery validate plugin class names and actions**

## Landmarks

- 1. Frontmatter**
- 2. Start of Content**
- 3. backmatter**
- 4. List of Illustrations**
- 5. List of Tables**

## Long description

# PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND

DAVID DICKIE

# PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND



DAVID ICKE

**PERCEPTIONS  
OF A  
RENEGADE  
MIND**

**ickonic**  
publishing

First published in July 2021.



**New Enterprise House  
St Helens Street  
Derby  
DE1 3GY  
UK**

*email:* [gareth.icke@davidicke.com](mailto:gareth.icke@davidicke.com)

Copyright © 2021 David Icke

No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without permission from the Publisher, except for the quotation of brief passages in criticism

*Cover Design:* Gareth Icke  
*Book Design:* Neil Hague

**British Library Cataloguing-in  
Publication Data**  
A catalogue record for this book is  
available from the British Library

eISBN 978-18384153-1-0

PERCEPTIONS  
OF A  
RENEGADE  
MIND



**DAVID ICKE**

**Dedication:**

To *Freeeeeedom!*

# **ICKONIC**



## **THE ALTERNATIVE**

**NEW. DIFFERENT. REVOLUTIONARY**

HUNDREDS OF CUTTING EDGE DOCUMENTARIES,  
FEATURE FILMS, SERIES & PODCASTS.

**SIGN UP NOW AT [ICKONIC.COM](http://ICKONIC.COM)**

THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE  
**RENEGADE**  
THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM



**AVAILABLE NOW AT DAVIDICKE.COM**

**Renegade:**

Adjective

'Having rejected tradition: Unconventional.'

**Merriam-Webster Dictionary**

## **Acquiescence to tyranny is the death of the spirit**

You may be 38 years old, as I happen to be. And one day, some great opportunity stands before you and calls you to stand up for some great principle, some great issue, some great cause. And you refuse to do it because you are afraid

... You refuse to do it because you want to live longer ...

You're afraid that you will lose your job, or you are afraid that you will be criticised or that you will lose your popularity, or you're afraid that somebody will stab you, or shoot at you or bomb your house; so you refuse to take the stand.

Well, you may go on and live until you are 90, but you're just as dead at 38 as you would be at 90. And the cessation of breathing in your life is but the belated announcement of an earlier death of the spirit.

**Martin Luther King**

**How the few control the many and always have – the many do  
whatever they're told**

'Forward, the Light Brigade!'  
Was there a man dismayed?  
Not though the soldier knew  
    Someone had blundered.  
Theirs not to make reply,  
Theirs not to reason why,  
Theirs but to do and die.  
    Into the valley of Death  
        Rode the six hundred.

Cannon to right of them,  
Cannon to left of them,  
Cannon in front of them  
    Volleyed and thundered;  
Stormed at with shot and shell,  
    Boldly they rode and well,  
        Into the jaws of Death,  
        Into the mouth of hell  
            Rode the six hundred

**Alfred Lord Tennyson (1809-1892)**

The mist is lifting slowly  
I can see the way ahead  
And I've left behind the empty streets  
That once inspired my life  
And the strength of the emotion  
Is like thunder in the air  
'Cos the promise that we made each other  
Haunts me to the end

The secret of your beauty  
And the mystery of your soul  
I've been searching for in everyone I meet  
And the times I've been mistaken  
It's impossible to say  
And the grass is growing  
Underneath our feet

The words that I remember  
From my childhood still are true  
That there's none so blind  
As those who will not see  
And to those who lack the courage  
And say it's dangerous to try  
Well they just don't know  
That love eternal will not be denied

I know you're out there somewhere  
Somewhere, somewhere  
I know you're out there somewhere

Somewhere you can hear my voice  
I know I'll find you somehow  
Somehow, somehow  
I know I'll find you somehow  
And somehow I'll return again to you

**The Moody Blues**

## **Are you a gutless wonder - or a Renegade Mind?**

Monuments put from pen to paper,  
Turns me into a gutless wonder,  
And if you tolerate this,  
Then your children will be next.  
Gravity keeps my head down,  
Or is it maybe shame ...

**Manic Street Preachers**

Rise like lions after slumber  
In unvanquishable number.  
Shake your chains to earth like dew  
Which in sleep have fallen on you.  
Ye are many – they are few.

**Percy Shelley**

# **Contents**

<b>CHAPTER 1</b>	<b>'I'm thinking' – Oh, but <i>are you?</i></b>
<b>CHAPTER 2</b>	<b>Renegade perception</b>
<b>CHAPTER 3</b>	<b>The Pushbacker sting</b>
<b>CHAPTER 4</b>	<b>'Covid': The calculated catastrophe</b>
<b>CHAPTER 5</b>	<b>There <i>is no</i> 'virus'</b>
<b>CHAPTER 6</b>	<b>Sequence of deceit</b>
<b>CHAPTER 7</b>	<b>War on your mind</b>
<b>CHAPTER 8</b>	<b>'Reframing' insanity</b>
<b>CHAPTER 9</b>	<b>We must have it? So what is it?</b>
<b>CHAPTER 10</b>	<b>Human 2.0</b>
<b>CHAPTER 11</b>	<b>Who controls the Cult?</b>
<b>CHAPTER 12</b>	<b>Escaping Wetiko</b>
<b>POSTSCRIPT</b>	
<b>APPENDIX</b>	<b>Cowan-Kaufman-Morell Statement on Virus Isolation</b>
<b>BIBLIOGRAPHY</b>	
<b>INDEX</b>	

# CHAPTER ONE

## I'm thinking' – Oh, but are you?

*Think for yourself and let others enjoy the privilege of doing so too*  
Voltaire

French-born philosopher, mathematician and scientist René Descartes became famous for his statement in Latin in the 17th century which translates into English as: 'I think, therefore I am.'

On the face of it that is true. Thought reflects perception and perception leads to both behaviour and self-identity. In that sense 'we' are what we think. But who or what is doing the thinking and is thinking the only route to perception? Clearly, as we shall see, 'we' are not always the source of 'our' perception, indeed with regard to humanity as a whole this is rarely the case; and thinking is far from the only means of perception. Thought is the village idiot compared with other expressions of consciousness that we all have the potential to access and tap into. This has to be true when we *are* those other expressions of consciousness which are infinite in nature. We have forgotten this, or, more to the point, been manipulated to forget.

These are not just the esoteric musings of the navel. The whole foundation of human control and oppression is control of perception. Once perception is hijacked then so is behaviour which is dictated by perception. Collective perception becomes collective behaviour and collective behaviour is what we call human society. Perception is all and those behind human control know that which is

why perception is the target 24/7 of the psychopathic manipulators that I call the Global Cult. They know that if they dictate perception they will dictate behaviour and collectively dictate the nature of human society. They are further aware that perception is formed from information received and if they control the circulation of information they will to a vast extent direct human behaviour.

Censorship of information and opinion has become globally Nazi-like in recent years and never more blatantly than since the illusory ‘virus pandemic’ was triggered out of China in 2019 and across the world in 2020. Why have billions submitted to house arrest and accepted fascistic societies in a way they would have never believed possible? Those controlling the information spewing from government, mainstream media and Silicon Valley (all controlled by the same Global Cult networks) told them they were in danger from a ‘deadly virus’ and only by submitting to house arrest and conceding their most basic of freedoms could they and their families be protected. This monumental and provable lie became the *perception* of the billions and therefore the *behaviour* of the billions. In those few words you have the whole structure and modus operandi of human control. Fear is a perception – False Emotion Appearing Real – and fear is the currency of control. In short ... get them by the balls (or give them the impression that you have) and their hearts and minds will follow. Nothing grips the dangly bits and freezes the rear-end more comprehensively than fear.

## **World number 1**

There are two ‘worlds’ in what appears to be one ‘world’ and the prime difference between them is knowledge. First we have the mass of human society in which the population is maintained in coldly-calculated ignorance through control of information and the ‘education’ (indoctrination) system. That’s all you really need to control to enslave billions in a perceptual delusion in which what are perceived to be *their* thoughts and opinions are ever-repeated mantras that the system has been downloading all their lives through ‘education’, media, science, medicine, politics and academia

in which the personnel and advocates are themselves overwhelmingly the perceptual products of the same repetition. Teachers and academics in general are processed by the same programming machine as everyone else, but unlike the great majority they never leave the ‘education’ program. It gripped them as students and continues to grip them as programmers of subsequent generations of students. The programmed become the programmers – the programmed programmers. The same can largely be said for scientists, doctors and politicians and not least because as the American writer Upton Sinclair said: ‘It is difficult to get a man to understand something when his salary depends upon his not understanding it.’ If your career and income depend on thinking the way the system demands then you will – bar a few free-minded exceptions – concede your mind to the Perceptual Mainframe that I call the Postage Stamp Consensus. This is a tiny band of perceived knowledge and possibility ‘taught’ (downloaded) in the schools and universities, pounded out by the mainstream media and on which all government policy is founded. Try thinking, and especially speaking and acting, outside of the ‘box’ of consensus and see what that does for your career in the Mainstream Everything which bullies, harasses, intimidates and ridicules the population into compliance. Here we have the simple structure which enslaves most of humanity in a perceptual prison cell for an entire lifetime and I’ll go deeper into this process shortly. Most of what humanity is taught as fact is nothing more than programmed belief. American science fiction author Frank Herbert was right when he said: ‘Belief can be manipulated. Only knowledge is dangerous.’ In the ‘Covid’ age belief is promoted and knowledge is censored. It was always so, but never to the extreme of today.

## **World number 2**

A ‘number 2’ is slang for ‘doing a poo’ and how appropriate that is when this other ‘world’ is doing just that on humanity every minute of every day. World number 2 is a global network of secret societies and semi-secret groups dictating the direction of society via

governments, corporations and authorities of every kind. I have spent more than 30 years uncovering and exposing this network that I call the Global Cult and knowing its agenda is what has made my books so accurate in predicting current and past events. Secret societies are secret for a reason. They want to keep their hoarded knowledge to themselves and their chosen initiates and to hide it from the population which they seek through ignorance to control and subdue. The whole foundation of the division between World 1 and World 2 is *knowledge*. What number 1 knows number 2 must not. Knowledge they have worked so hard to keep secret includes (a) the agenda to enslave humanity in a centrally-controlled global dictatorship, and (b) the nature of reality and life itself. The latter (b) must be suppressed to allow the former (a) to prevail as I shall be explaining. The way the Cult manipulates and interacts with the population can be likened to a spider's web. The 'spider' sits at the centre in the shadows and imposes its will through the web with each strand represented in World number 2 by a secret society, satanic or semi-secret group, and in World number 1 – the world of the seen – by governments, agencies of government, law enforcement, corporations, the banking system, media conglomerates and Silicon Valley ([Fig 1](#) overleaf). The spider and the web connect and coordinate all these organisations to pursue the same global outcome while the population sees them as individual entities working randomly and independently. At the level of the web governments *are* the banking system *are* the corporations *are* the media *are* Silicon Valley *are* the World Health Organization working from their inner cores as one unit. Apparently unconnected countries, corporations, institutions, organisations and people are on the *same team* pursuing the same global outcome. Strands in the web immediately around the spider are the most secretive and exclusive secret societies and their membership is emphatically restricted to the Cult inner-circle emerging through the generations from particular bloodlines for reasons I will come to. At the core of the core you would get them in a single room. That's how many people are dictating the direction of human society and its transformation

through the ‘Covid’ hoax and other means. As the web expands out from the spider we meet the secret societies that many people will be aware of – the Freemasons, Knights Templar, Knights of Malta, Opus Dei, the inner sanctum of the Jesuit Order, and such like. Note how many are connected to the Church of Rome and there is a reason for that. The Roman Church was established as a revamp, a rebranding, of the relocated ‘Church’ of Babylon and the Cult imposing global tyranny today can be tracked back to Babylon and Sumer in what is now Iraq.



**Figure 1:** The global web through which the few control the many. (Image Neil Hague.)

Inner levels of the web operate in the unseen away from the public eye and then we have what I call the cusp organisations located at the point where the hidden meets the seen. They include a series of satellite organisations answering to a secret society founded in London in the late 19th century called the Round Table and among them are the Royal Institute of International Affairs (UK, founded in 1920); Council on Foreign Relations (US, 1921); Bilderberg Group (worldwide, 1954); Trilateral Commission (US/worldwide, 1972); and the Club of Rome (worldwide, 1968) which was created to exploit environmental concerns to justify the centralisation of global power to ‘save the planet’. The Club of Rome instigated with others the human-caused climate change hoax which has led to all the ‘green

new deals' demanding that very centralisation of control. Cusp organisations, which include endless 'think tanks' all over the world, are designed to coordinate a single global policy between political and business leaders, intelligence personnel, media organisations and anyone who can influence the direction of policy in their own sphere of operation. Major players and regular attenders will know what is happening – or some of it – while others come and go and are kept overwhelmingly in the dark about the big picture. I refer to these cusp groupings as semi-secret in that they can be publicly identified, but what goes on at the inner-core is kept very much 'in house' even from most of their members and participants through a fiercely-imposed system of compartmentalisation. Only let them know what they need to know to serve your interests and no more. The structure of secret societies serves as a perfect example of this principle. Most Freemasons never get higher than the bottom three levels of 'degree' (degree of knowledge) when there are 33 official degrees of the Scottish Rite. Initiates only qualify for the next higher 'compartment' or degree if those at that level choose to allow them. Knowledge can be carefully assigned only to those considered 'safe'. I went to my local Freemason's lodge a few years ago when they were having an 'open day' to show how cuddly they were and when I chatted to some of them I was astonished at how little the rank and file knew even about the most ubiquitous symbols they use. The mushroom technique – keep them in the dark and feed them bullshit – applies to most people in the web as well as the population as a whole. Sub-divisions of the web mirror in theme and structure transnational corporations which have a headquarters somewhere in the world dictating to all their subsidiaries in different countries. Subsidiaries operate in their methodology and branding to the same centrally-dictated plan and policy in pursuit of particular ends. The Cult web functions in the same way. Each country has its own web as a subsidiary of the global one. They consist of networks of secret societies, semi-secret groups and bloodline families and their job is to impose the will of the spider and the global web in their particular country. Subsidiary networks control and manipulate the national political system, finance, corporations, media, medicine, etc. to

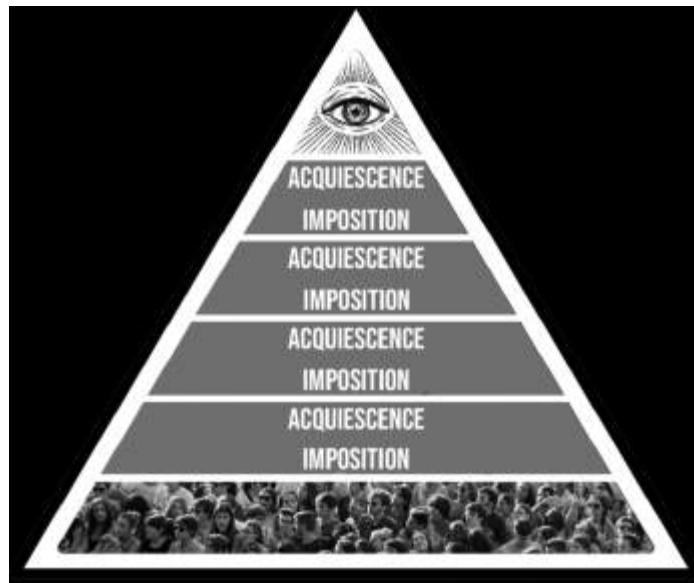
ensure that they follow the globally-dictated Cult agenda. These networks were the means through which the ‘Covid’ hoax could be played out with almost every country responding in the same way.

## **The ‘Yessir’ pyramid**

Compartmentalisation is the key to understanding how a tiny few can dictate the lives of billions when combined with a top-down sequence of imposition and acquiescence. The inner core of the Cult sits at the peak of the pyramidal hierarchy of human society ([Fig 2](#) overleaf). It imposes its will – its agenda for the world – on the level immediately below which acquiesces to that imposition. This level then imposes the Cult will on the level below them which acquiesces and imposes on the next level. Very quickly we meet levels in the hierarchy that have no idea there even is a Cult, but the sequence of imposition and acquiescence continues down the pyramid in just the same way. ‘I don’t know why we are doing this but the order came from “on-high” and so we better just do it.’ Alfred Lord Tennyson said of the cannon fodder levels in his poem *The Charge of the Light Brigade*: ‘Theirs not to reason why; theirs but to do and die.’ The next line says that ‘into the valley of death rode the six hundred’ and they died because they obeyed without question what their perceived ‘superiors’ told them to do. In the same way the population capitulated to ‘Covid’. The whole hierarchical pyramid functions like this to allow the very few to direct the enormous many.

Eventually imposition-acquiescence-imposition-acquiescence comes down to the mass of the population at the foot of the pyramid. If they acquiesce to those levels of the hierarchy imposing on them (governments/law enforcement/doctors/media) a circuit is completed between the population and the handful of super-psychopaths in the Cult inner core at the top of the pyramid. Without a circuit-breaking refusal to obey, the sequence of imposition and acquiescence allows a staggeringly few people to impose their will upon the entirety of humankind. We are looking at the very sequence that has subjugated billions since the start of 2020. Our freedom has not been taken from us. Humanity has given it

away. Fascists do not impose fascism because there are not enough of them. Fascism is imposed by the population acquiescing to fascism. Put another way allowing their perceptions to be programmed to the extent that leads to the population giving their freedom away by giving their perceptions – their mind – away. If this circuit is not broken by humanity ceasing to cooperate with their own enslavement then nothing can change. For that to happen people have to critically think and see through the lies and window dressing and then summon the backbone to act upon what they see. The Cult spends its days working to stop either happening and its methodology is systematic and highly detailed, but it can be overcome and that is what this book is all about.



**Figure 2:** The simple sequence of imposition and compliance that allows a handful of people at the peak of the pyramid to dictate the lives of billions.

## The Life Program

Okay, back to world number 1 or the world of the ‘masses’. Observe the process of what we call ‘life’ and it is a perceptual download from cradle to grave. The Cult has created a global structure in which perception can be programmed and the program continually topped-up with what appears to be constant confirmation that the program is indeed true reality. The important word here is ‘appears’.

This is the structure, the fly-trap, the Postage Stamp Consensus or Perceptual Mainframe, which represents that incredibly narrow band of perceived possibility delivered by the ‘education’ system, mainstream media, science and medicine. From the earliest age the download begins with parents who have themselves succumbed to the very programming their children are about to go through. Most parents don’t do this out of malevolence and mostly it is quite the opposite. They do what they believe is best for their children and that is what the program has told them is best. Within three or four years comes the major transition from parental programming to full-blown state (Cult) programming in school, college and university where perceptually-programmed teachers and academics pass on their programming to the next generations. Teachers who resist are soon marginalised and their careers ended while children who resist are called a problem child for whom Ritalin may need to be prescribed. A few years after entering the ‘world’ children are under the control of authority figures representing the state telling them when they have to be there, when they can leave and when they can speak, eat, even go to the toilet. This is calculated preparation for a lifetime of obeying authority in all its forms. Reflex-action fear of authority is instilled by authority from the start. Children soon learn the carrot and stick consequences of obeying or defying authority which is underpinned daily for the rest of their life. Fortunately I daydreamed through this crap and never obeyed authority simply because it told me to. This approach to my alleged ‘bettters’ continues to this day. There can be consequences of pursuing open-minded freedom in a world of closed-minded conformity. I spent a lot of time in school corridors after being ejected from the classroom for not taking some of it seriously and now I spend a lot of time being ejected from Facebook, YouTube and Twitter. But I can tell you that being true to yourself and not compromising your self-respect is far more exhilarating than bowing to authority for authority’s sake. You don’t have to be a sheep to the shepherd (authority) and the sheep dog (fear of not obeying authority).

The perceptual download continues throughout the formative years in school, college and university while script-reading ‘teachers’, ‘academics’ ‘scientists’, ‘doctors’ and ‘journalists’ insist that ongoing generations must be as programmed as they are. Accept the program or you will not pass your ‘exams’ which confirm your ‘degree’ of programming. It is tragic to think that many parents pressure their offspring to work hard at school to download the program and qualify for the next stage at college and university. The late, great, American comedian George Carlin said: ‘Here’s a bumper sticker I’d like to see: We are proud parents of a child who has resisted his teachers’ attempts to break his spirit and bend him to the will of his corporate masters.’ Well, the best of luck finding many of those, George. Then comes the moment to leave the formal programming years in academia and enter the ‘adult’ world of work. There you meet others in your chosen or prescribed arena who went through the same Postage Stamp Consensus program before you did. There is therefore overwhelming agreement between almost everyone on the basic foundations of Postage Stamp reality and the rejection, even contempt, of the few who have a mind of their own and are prepared to use it. This has two major effects. Firstly, the consensus confirms to the programmed that their download is really how things are. I mean, everyone knows that, right? Secondly, the arrogance and ignorance of Postage Stamp adherents ensure that anyone questioning the program will have unpleasant consequences for seeking their own truth and not picking their perceptions from the shelf marked: ‘Things you must believe without question and if you don’t you’re a dangerous lunatic conspiracy theorist and a harebrained nutter’.

Every government, agency and corporation is founded on the same Postage Stamp prison cell and you can see why so many people believe the same thing while calling it their own ‘opinion’. Fusion of governments and corporations in pursuit of the same agenda was the definition of fascism described by Italian dictator Benito Mussolini. The pressure to conform to perceptual norms downloaded for a lifetime is incessant and infiltrates society right

down to family groups that become censors and condemners of their own ‘black sheep’ for not, ironically, being sheep. We have seen an explosion of that in the ‘Covid’ era. Cult-owned global media unleashes its propaganda all day every day in support of the Postage Stamp and targets with abuse and ridicule anyone in the public eye who won’t bend their mind to the will of the tyranny. Any response to this is denied (certainly in my case). They don’t want to give a platform to expose official lies. Cult-owned-and-created Internet giants like Facebook, Google, YouTube and Twitter delete you for having an unapproved opinion. Facebook boasts that its AI censors delete 97-percent of ‘hate speech’ before anyone even reports it. Much of that ‘hate speech’ will simply be an opinion that Facebook and its masters don’t want people to see. Such perceptual oppression is widely known as fascism. Even Facebook executive Benny Thomas, a ‘CEO Global Planning Lead’, said in comments secretly recorded by investigative journalism operation Project Veritas that Facebook is ‘too powerful’ and should be broken up:

I mean, no king in history has been the ruler of two billion people, but Mark Zuckerberg is ... And he's 36. That's too much for a 36-year-old ... You should not have power over two billion people. I just think that's wrong.

Thomas said Facebook-owned platforms like Instagram, Oculus, and WhatsApp needed to be separate companies. ‘It’s too much power when they’re all one together’. That’s the way the Cult likes it, however. We have an executive of a Cult organisation in Benny Thomas that doesn’t know there is a Cult such is the compartmentalisation. Thomas said that Facebook and Google ‘are no longer companies, they’re countries’. Actually they are more powerful than countries on the basis that if you control information you control perception and control human society.

## **I love my oppressor**

Another expression of this psychological trickery is for those who realise they are being pressured into compliance to eventually

convince themselves to believe the official narratives to protect their self-respect from accepting the truth that they have succumbed to meek and subservient compliance. Such people become some of the most vehement defenders of the system. You can see them everywhere screaming abuse at those who prefer to think for themselves and by doing so reminding the compliers of their own capitulation to conformity. ‘You are talking dangerous nonsense you Covidiot!!’ Are you trying to convince me or yourself? It is a potent form of Stockholm syndrome which is defined as: ‘A psychological condition that occurs when a victim of abuse identifies and attaches, or bonds, positively with their abuser.’ An example is hostages bonding and even ‘falling in love’ with their kidnappers. The syndrome has been observed in domestic violence, abused children, concentration camp inmates, prisoners of war and many and various Satanic cults. These are some traits of Stockholm syndrome listed at [goodtherapy.org](http://goodtherapy.org):

- Positive regard towards perpetrators of abuse or captor [see ‘Covid’].
- Failure to cooperate with police and other government authorities when it comes to holding perpetrators of abuse or kidnapping accountable [or in the case of ‘Covid’ cooperating with the police to enforce and defend their captors’ demands].
- Little or no effort to escape [see ‘Covid’].
- Belief in the goodness of the perpetrators or kidnappers [see ‘Covid’].
- Appeasement of captors. This is a manipulative strategy for maintaining one’s safety. As victims get rewarded – perhaps with less abuse or even with life itself – their appeasing behaviours are reinforced [see ‘Covid’].
- Learned helplessness. This can be akin to ‘if you can’t beat ‘em, join ‘em’. As the victims fail to escape the abuse or captivity, they may start giving up and soon realize it’s just easier for everyone if they acquiesce all their power to their captors [see ‘Covid’].

- Feelings of pity toward the abusers, believing they are actually victims themselves. Because of this, victims may go on a crusade or mission to 'save' [protect] their abuser [see the venom unleashed on those challenging the official 'Covid' narrative].
- Unwillingness to learn to detach from their perpetrators and heal. In essence, victims may tend to be less loyal to themselves than to their abuser [*definitely* see 'Covid'].

Ponder on those traits and compare them with the behaviour of great swathes of the global population who have defended governments and authorities which have spent every minute destroying their lives and livelihoods and those of their children and grandchildren since early 2020 with fascistic lockdowns, house arrest and employment deletion to 'protect' them from a 'deadly virus' that their abusers' perceptually created to bring about this very outcome. We are looking at mass Stockholm syndrome. All those that agree to concede their freedom will believe those perceptions are originating in their own independent 'mind' when in fact by conceding their reality to Stockholm syndrome they have by definition conceded any independence of mind. Listen to the 'opinions' of the acquiescing masses in this 'Covid' era and what gushes forth is the repetition of the official version of everything delivered unprocessed, unfiltered and unquestioned. The whole programming dynamic works this way. I must be free because I'm told that I am and so I think that I am.

You can see what I mean with the chapter theme of 'I'm thinking – Oh, but *are you?*' The great majority are not thinking, let alone for themselves. They are repeating what authority has told them to believe which allows them to be controlled. Weaving through this mentality is the fear that the 'conspiracy theorists' are right and this again explains the often hysterical abuse that ensues when you dare to contest the official narrative of anything. Denial is the mechanism of hiding from yourself what you don't want to be true. Telling people what they want to hear is easy, but it's an infinitely greater challenge to tell them what they would rather not be happening.

One is akin to pushing against an open door while the other is met with vehement resistance no matter what the scale of evidence. I don't want it to be true so I'll convince myself that it's not. Examples are everywhere from the denial that a partner is cheating despite all the signs to the reflex-action rejection of any idea that world events in which country after country act in exactly the same way are centrally coordinated. To accept the latter is to accept that a force of unspeakable evil is working to destroy your life and the lives of your children with nothing too horrific to achieve that end. Who the heck wants that to be true? But if we don't face reality the end is duly achieved and the consequences are far worse and ongoing than breaking through the walls of denial today with the courage to make a stand against tyranny.

## **Connect the dots – but how?**

A crucial aspect of perceptual programming is to portray a world in which everything is random and almost nothing is connected to anything else. Randomness cannot be coordinated by its very nature and once you perceive events as random the idea they could be connected is waved away as the rantings of the tinfoil-hat brigade. You can't plan and coordinate random you idiot! No, you can't, but you can hide the coldly-calculated and long-planned behind the *illusion* of randomness. A foundation manifestation of the Renegade Mind is to scan reality for patterns that connect the apparently random and turn pixels and dots into pictures. This is the way I work and have done so for more than 30 years. You look for similarities in people, modus operandi and desired outcomes and slowly, then ever quicker, the picture forms. For instance: There would seem to be no connection between the 'Covid pandemic' hoax and the human-caused global-warming hoax and yet they are masks (appropriately) on the same face seeking the same outcome. Those pushing the global warming myth through the Club of Rome and other Cult agencies are driving the lies about 'Covid' – Bill Gates is an obvious one, but they are endless. Why would the same people be involved in both when they are clearly not connected? Oh, but they

are. Common themes with personnel are matched by common goals. The ‘solutions’ to both ‘problems’ are centralisation of global power to impose the will of the few on the many to ‘save’ humanity from ‘Covid’ and save the planet from an ‘existential threat’ (we need ‘zero Covid’ and ‘zero carbon emissions’). These, in turn, connect with the ‘dot’ of globalisation which was coined to describe the centralisation of global power in every area of life through incessant political and corporate expansion, trading blocks and superstates like the European Union. If you are the few and you want to control the many you have to centralise power and decision-making. The more you centralise power the more power the few at the centre will have over the many; and the more that power is centralised the more power those at the centre have to centralise even quicker. The momentum of centralisation gets faster and faster which is exactly the process we have witnessed. In this way the hoaxed ‘pandemic’ and the fakery of human-caused global warming serve the interests of globalisation and the seizure of global power in the hands of the Cult inner-circle which is behind ‘Covid’, ‘climate change’ and globalisation. At this point random ‘dots’ become a clear and obvious picture or pattern.

Klaus Schwab, the classic Bond villain who founded the Cult’s Gates-funded World Economic Forum, published a book in 2020, *The Great Reset*, in which he used the ‘problem’ of ‘Covid’ to justify a total transformation of human society to ‘save’ humanity from ‘climate change’. Schwab said: ‘The pandemic represents a rare but narrow window of opportunity to reflect, reimagine, and reset our world.’ What he didn’t mention is that the Cult he serves is behind both hoaxes as I show in my book *The Answer*. He and the Cult don’t have to reimagine the world. They know precisely what they want and that’s why they destroyed human society with ‘Covid’ to ‘build back better’ in their grand design. Their job is not to imagine, but to get humanity to imagine and agree with their plans while believing it’s all random. It must be pure coincidence that ‘The Great Reset’ has long been the Cult’s code name for the global imposition of fascism and replaced previous code-names of the ‘New World

'Order' used by Cult frontmen like Father George Bush and the 'New Order of the Ages' which emerged from Freemasonry and much older secret societies. New Order of the Ages appears on the reverse of the Great Seal of the United States as 'Novus ordo seclorum' underneath the Cult symbol used since way back of the pyramid and all seeing-eye ([Fig 3](#)). The pyramid is the hierarchy of human control headed by the illuminated eye that symbolises the force behind the Cult which I will expose in later chapters. The term 'Annuit Coeptis' translates as 'He favours our undertaking'. We are told the 'He' is the Christian god, but 'He' is not as I will be explaining.



**Figure 3:** The all-seeing eye of the Cult 'god' on the Freemason-designed Great Seal of the United States and also on the dollar bill.

## Having you on

Two major Cult techniques of perceptual manipulation that relate to all this are what I have called since the 1990s Problem-Reaction-Solution (PRS) and the Totalitarian Tiptoe (TT). They can be uncovered by the inquiring mind with a simple question: Who benefits? The answer usually identifies the perpetrators of a given action or happening through the concept of 'he who most benefits from a crime is the one most likely to have committed it'. The Latin 'Cue bono?' – Who benefits? – is widely attributed to the Roman orator and statesman Marcus Tullius Cicero. No wonder it goes back so far when the concept has been relevant to human behaviour since

history was recorded. Problem-Reaction-Solution is the technique used to manipulate us every day by covertly creating a problem (or the illusion of one) and offering the solution to the problem (or the illusion of one). In the first phase you create the problem and blame someone or something else for why it has happened. This may relate to a financial collapse, terrorist attack, war, global warming or pandemic, anything in fact that will allow you to impose the ‘solution’ to change society in the way you desire at that time. The ‘problem’ doesn’t have to be real. PRS is manipulation of perception and all you need is the population to believe the problem is real. Human-caused global warming and the ‘Covid pandemic’ only have to be *perceived* to be real for the population to accept the ‘solutions’ of authority. I refer to this technique as NO-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Billions did not meekly accept house arrest from early 2020 because there was a real deadly ‘Covid pandemic’ but because they perceived – believed – that to be the case. The antidote to Problem-Reaction-Solution is to ask who benefits from the proposed solution. Invariably it will be anyone who wants to justify more control through deletion of freedom and centralisation of power and decision-making.

The two world wars were Problem-Reaction-Solutions that transformed and realigned global society. Both were manipulated into being by the Cult as I have detailed in books since the mid-1990s. They dramatically centralised global power, especially World War Two, which led to the United Nations and other global bodies thanks to the overt and covert manipulations of the Rockefeller family and other Cult bloodlines like the Rothschilds. The UN is a stalking horse for full-blown world government that I will come to shortly. The land on which the UN building stands in New York was donated by the Rockefellers and the same Cult family was behind Big Pharma scalpel and drug ‘medicine’ and the creation of the World Health Organization as part of the UN. They have been stalwarts of the eugenics movement and funded Hitler’s race-purity expert Ernst Rudin. The human-caused global warming hoax has been orchestrated by the Club of Rome through the UN which is

manufacturing both the ‘problem’ through its Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change and imposing the ‘solution’ through its Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030 which demand the total centralisation of global power to ‘save the world’ from a climate hoax the United Nations is itself perpetrating. What a small world the Cult can be seen to be particularly among the inner circles. The bedfellow of Problem-Reaction-Solution is the Totalitarian Tiptoe which became the Totalitarian Sprint in 2020. The technique is fashioned to hide the carefully-coordinated behind the cover of apparently random events. You start the sequence at ‘A’ and you know you are heading for ‘Z’. You don’t want people to know that and each step on the journey is presented as a random happening while all the steps strung together lead in the same direction. The speed may have quickened dramatically in recent times, but you can still see the incremental approach of the Tiptoe in the case of ‘Covid’ as each new imposition takes us deeper into fascism. Tell people they have to do this or that to get back to ‘normal’, then this and this and this. With each new demand adding to the ones that went before the population’s freedom is deleted until it disappears. The spider wraps its web around the flies more comprehensively with each new diktat. I’ll highlight this in more detail when I get to the ‘Covid’ hoax and how it has been pulled off. Another prime example of the Totalitarian Tiptoe is how the Cult-created European Union went from a ‘free-trade zone’ to a centralised bureaucratic dictatorship through the Tiptoe of incremental centralisation of power until nations became mere administrative units for Cult-owned dark suits in Brussels.

The antidote to ignorance is knowledge which the Cult seeks vehemently to deny us, but despite the systematic censorship to that end the Renegade Mind can overcome this by vociferously seeking out the facts no matter the impediments put in the way. There is also a method of thinking and perceiving – *knowing* – that doesn’t even need names, dates, place-type facts to identify the patterns that reveal the story. I’ll get to that in the final chapter. All you need to know about the manipulation of human society and to what end is still out there – *at the time of writing* – in the form of books, videos

and websites for those that really want to breach the walls of programmed perception. To access this knowledge requires the abandonment of the mainstream media as a source of information in the awareness that this is owned and controlled by the Cult and therefore promotes mass perceptions that suit the Cult. Mainstream media lies all day, every day. That is its function and very reason for being. Where it does tell the truth, here and there, is only because the truth and the Cult agenda very occasionally coincide. If you look for fact and insight to the BBC, CNN and virtually all the rest of them you are asking to be conned and perceptually programmed.

### **Know the outcome and you'll see the journey**

Events seem random when you have no idea where the world is being taken. Once you do the random becomes the carefully planned. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey is a phrase I have been using for a long time to give context to daily happenings that appear unconnected. Does a problem, or illusion of a problem, trigger a proposed 'solution' that further drives society in the direction of the outcome? Invariably the answer will be yes and the random – *abracadabra* – becomes the clearly coordinated. So what is this outcome that unlocks the door to a massively expanded understanding of daily events? I will summarise its major aspects – the fine detail is in my other books – and those new to this information will see that the world they thought they were living in is a very different place. The foundation of the Cult agenda is the incessant centralisation of power and all such centralisation is ultimately in pursuit of Cult control on a global level. I have described for a long time the planned world structure of top-down dictatorship as the Hunger Games Society. The term obviously comes from the movie series which portrayed a world in which a few living in military-protected hi-tech luxury were the overlords of a population condemned to abject poverty in isolated 'sectors' that were not allowed to interact. 'Covid' lockdowns and travel bans anyone? The 'Hunger Games' pyramid of structural control has the inner circle of the Cult at the top with pretty much the entire

population at the bottom under their control through dependency for survival on the Cult. The whole structure is planned to be protected and enforced by a military-police state ([Fig 4](#)).

Here you have the reason for the global lockdowns of the fake pandemic to coldly destroy independent incomes and livelihoods and make everyone dependent on the ‘state’ (the Cult that controls the ‘states’). I have warned in my books for many years about the plan to introduce a ‘guaranteed income’ – a barely survivable pittance – designed to impose dependency when employment was destroyed by AI technology and now even more comprehensively at great speed by the ‘Covid’ scam. Once the pandemic was played and lockdown consequences began to delete independent income the authorities began to talk right on cue about the need for a guaranteed income and a ‘Great Reset’. Guaranteed income will be presented as benevolent governments seeking to help a desperate people – desperate as a direct result of actions of the same governments. The truth is that such payments are a trap. You will only get them if you do exactly what the authorities demand including mass vaccination (genetic manipulation). We have seen this theme already in Australia where those dependent on government benefits have them reduced if parents don’t agree to have their children vaccinated according to an insane health-destroying government-dictated schedule. Calculated economic collapse applies to governments as well as people. The Cult wants rid of countries through the creation of a world state with countries broken up into regions ruled by a world government and super states like the European Union. Countries must be bankrupted, too, to this end and it’s being achieved by the trillions in ‘rescue packages’ and furlough payments, trillions in lost taxation, and money-no-object spending on ‘Covid’ including constant all-medium advertising (programming) which has made the media dependent on government for much of its income. The day of reckoning is coming – as planned – for government spending and given that it has been made possible by printing money and not by production/taxation there is inflation on the way that has the

potential to wipe out monetary value. In that case there will be no need for the Cult to steal your money. It just won't be worth anything (see the German Weimar Republic before the Nazis took over). Many have been okay with lockdowns while getting a percentage of their income from so-called furlough payments without having to work. Those payments are dependent, however, on people having at least a theoretical job with a business considered non-essential and ordered to close. As these business go under because they are closed by lockdown after lockdown the furlough stops and it will for everyone eventually. Then what? The 'then what?' is precisely the idea.



**Figure 4:** The Hunger Games Society structure I have long warned was planned and now the 'Covid' hoax has made it possible. This is the real reason for lockdowns.

## Hired hands

Between the Hunger Games Cult elite and the dependent population is planned to be a vicious military-police state (a fusion of the two into one force). This has been in the making for a long time with police looking ever more like the military and carrying weapons to match. The pandemic scam has seen this process accelerate so fast as

lockdown house arrest is brutally enforced by carefully recruited fascist minds and gormless system-servers. The police and military are planned to merge into a centrally-directed world army in a global structure headed by a world government which wouldn't be elected even by the election fixes now in place. The world army is not planned even to be human and instead wars would be fought, primarily against the population, using robot technology controlled by artificial intelligence. I have been warning about this for decades and now militaries around the world are being transformed by this very AI technology. The global regime that I describe is a particular form of fascism known as a technocracy in which decisions are not made by clueless and co-opted politicians but by unelected technocrats – scientists, engineers, technologists and bureaucrats. Cult-owned-and-controlled Silicon Valley giants are examples of technocracy and they already have far more power to direct world events than governments. They are with their censorship *selecting* governments. I know that some are calling the 'Great Reset' a Marxist communist takeover, but fascism and Marxism are different labels for the same tyranny. Tell those who lived in fascist Germany and Stalinist Russia that there was a difference in the way their freedom was deleted and their lives controlled. I could call it a fascist technocracy or a Marxist technocracy and they would be equally accurate. The Hunger Games society with its world government structure would oversee a world army, world central bank and single world cashless currency imposing its will on a microchipped population ([Fig 5](#)). Scan its different elements and see how the illusory pandemic is forcing society in this very direction at great speed. Leaders of 23 countries and the World Health Organization (WHO) backed the idea in March, 2021, of a global treaty for 'international cooperation' in 'health emergencies' and nations should 'come together as a global community for peaceful cooperation that extends beyond this crisis'. Cut the Orwellian bullshit and this means another step towards global government. The plan includes a cashless digital money system that I first warned about in 1993. Right at the start of 'Covid' the deeply corrupt Tedros

Adhanom Ghebreyesus, the crooked and merely gofer ‘head’ of the World Health Organization, said it was possible to catch the ‘virus’ by touching cash and it was better to use cashless means. The claim was ridiculous nonsense and like the whole ‘Covid’ mind-trick it was nothing to do with ‘health’ and everything to do with pushing every aspect of the Cult agenda. As a result of the Tedros lie the use of cash has plummeted. The Cult script involves a single world digital currency that would eventually be technologically embedded in the body. China is a massive global centre for the Cult and if you watch what is happening there you will know what is planned for everywhere. The Chinese government is developing a digital currency which would allow fines to be deducted immediately via AI for anyone caught on camera breaking its fantastic list of laws and the money is going to be programmable with an expiry date to ensure that no one can accrue wealth except the Cult and its operatives.



**Figure 5:** The structure of global control the Cult has been working towards for so long and this has been enormously advanced by the ‘Covid’ illusion.

## **Serfdom is so smart**

The Cult plan is far wider, extreme, and more comprehensive than even most conspiracy researchers appreciate and I will come to the true depths of deceit and control in the chapters ‘Who controls the

Cult?' and 'Escaping Wetiko'. Even the world that we know is crazy enough. We are being deluged with ever more sophisticated and controlling technology under the heading of 'smart'. We have smart televisions, smart meters, smart cards, smart cars, smart driving, smart roads, smart pills, smart patches, smart watches, smart skin, smart borders, smart pavements, smart streets, smart cities, smart communities, smart environments, smart growth, smart planet ... smart *everything* around us. Smart technologies and methods of operation are designed to interlock to create a global Smart Grid connecting the entirety of human society including human minds to create a centrally-dictated 'hive' mind. 'Smart cities' is code for densely-occupied megacities of total surveillance and control through AI. Ever more destructive frequency communication systems like 5G have been rolled out without any official testing for health and psychological effects (colossal). 5G/6G/7G systems are needed to run the Smart Grid and each one becomes more destructive of body and mind. Deleting independent income is crucial to forcing people into these AI-policed prisons by ending private property ownership (except for the Cult elite). The Cult's Great Reset now openly foresees a global society in which no one will own any possessions and everything will be rented while the Cult would own literally everything under the guise of government and corporations. The aim has been to use the lockdowns to destroy sources of income on a mass scale and when the people are destitute and in unrepayable amounts of debt (problem) Cult assets come forward with the pledge to write-off debt in return for handing over all property and possessions (solution). Everything – literally everything including people – would be connected to the Internet via AI. I was warning years ago about the coming Internet of Things (IoT) in which all devices and technology from your car to your fridge would be plugged into the Internet and controlled by AI. Now we are already there with much more to come. The next stage is the Internet of Everything (IoE) which is planned to include the connection of AI to the human brain and body to replace the human mind with a centrally-controlled AI mind. Instead of perceptions

being manipulated through control of information and censorship those perceptions would come direct from the Cult through AI. What do you think? You think whatever AI decides that you think. In human terms there would be no individual 'think' any longer. Too incredible? The ravings of a lunatic? Not at all. Cult-owned crazies in Silicon Valley have been telling us the plan for years without explaining the real motivation and calculated implications. These include Google executive and 'futurist' Ray Kurzweil who highlights the year 2030 for when this would be underway. He said:

Our thinking ... will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking ... humans will be able to extend their limitations and 'think in the cloud' ... We're going to put gateways to the cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being human – we transcend our limitations.

As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.

The sales-pitch of Kurzweil and Cult-owned Silicon Valley is that this would make us 'super-human' when the real aim is to make us post-human and no longer 'human' in the sense that we have come to know. The entire global population would be connected to AI and become the centrally-controlled 'hive-mind' of externally-delivered perceptions. The Smart Grid being installed to impose the Cult's will on the world is being constructed to allow particular locations – even one location – to control the whole global system. From these prime control centres, which absolutely include China and Israel, anything connected to the Internet would be switched on or off and manipulated at will. Energy systems could be cut, communication via the Internet taken down, computer-controlled driverless autonomous vehicles driven off the road, medical devices switched off, the potential is limitless given how much AI and Internet connections now run human society. We have seen nothing yet if we allow this to continue. Autonomous vehicle makers are working with law enforcement to produce cars designed to automatically pull over if they detect a police or emergency vehicle flashing from up to 100 feet away. At a police stop the car would be unlocked and the

window rolled down automatically. Vehicles would only take you where the computer (the state) allowed. The end of petrol vehicles and speed limiters on all new cars in the UK and EU from 2022 are steps leading to electric computerised transport over which ultimately you have no control. The picture is far bigger even than the Cult global network or web and that will become clear when I get to the nature of the ‘spider’. There is a connection between all these happenings and the instigation of DNA-manipulating ‘vaccines’ (which aren’t ‘vaccines’) justified by the ‘Covid’ hoax. That connection is the unfolding plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic biological state and this is why synthetic biology is such a fast-emerging discipline of mainstream science. ‘Covid vaccines’ are infusing self-replicating synthetic genetic material into the cells to cumulatively take us on the Totalitarian Tiptoe from Human 1.0 to the synthetic biological Human 2.0 which will be physically and perceptually attached to the Smart Grid to one hundred percent control every thought, perception and deed.

Humanity needs to wake up and *fast*.

This is the barest explanation of where the ‘outcome’ is planned to go but it’s enough to see the journey happening all around us. Those new to this information will already see ‘Covid’ in a whole new context. I will add much more detail as we go along, but for the minutiae evidence see my mega-works, *The Answer*, *The Trigger* and *Everything You Need to Know But Have Never Been Told*.

Now – how does a Renegade Mind see the ‘world’?

## CHAPTER TWO

### Renegade Perception

*It is one thing to be clever and another to be wise*

George R.R. Martin

A simple definition of the difference between a programmed mind and a Renegade Mind would be that one sees only dots while the other connects them to see the picture. Reading reality with accuracy requires the observer to (a) know the planned outcome and (b) realise that everything, but *everything*, is connected.

The entirety of infinite reality is connected – that's its very nature – and with human society an expression of infinite reality the same must apply. Simple cause and effect is a connection. The effect is triggered by the cause and the effect then becomes the cause of another effect. Nothing happens in isolation because it *can't*. Life in whatever reality is simple choice and consequence. We make choices and these lead to consequences. If we don't like the consequences we can make different choices and get different consequences which lead to other choices and consequences. The choice and the consequence are not only connected they are indivisible. You can't have one without the other as an old song goes. A few cannot control the world unless those being controlled allow that to happen – cause and effect, choice and consequence. Control – who has it and who doesn't – is a two-way process, a symbiotic relationship, involving the controller and controlled. 'They took my freedom away!!' Well, yes, but you also gave it to them. Humanity is

subjected to mass control because humanity has acquiesced to that control. This is all cause and effect and literally a case of give and take. In the same way world events of every kind are connected and the Cult works incessantly to sell the illusion of the random and coincidental to maintain the essential (to them) perception of dots that hide the picture. Renegade Minds know this and constantly scan the world for patterns of connection. This is absolutely pivotal in understanding the happenings in the world and without that perspective clarity is impossible. First you know the planned outcome and then you identify the steps on the journey – the day-by-day apparently random which, when connected in relation to the outcome, no longer appear as individual events, but as the proverbial *chain* of events leading in the same direction. I'll give you some examples:

## **Political puppet show**

We are told to believe that politics is 'adversarial' in that different parties with different beliefs engage in an endless tussle for power. There may have been some truth in that up to a point – and only a point – but today divisions between 'different' parties are rhetorical not ideological. Even the rhetorical is fusing into one-speak as the parties eject any remaining free thinkers while others succumb to the ever-gathering intimidation of anyone with the 'wrong' opinion. The Cult is not a new phenomenon and can be traced back thousands of years as my books have documented. Its intergenerational initiates have been manipulating events with increasing effect the more that global power has been centralised. In ancient times the Cult secured control through the system of monarchy in which 'special' bloodlines (of which more later) demanded the right to rule as kings and queens simply by birthright and by vanquishing others who claimed the same birthright. There came a time, however, when people had matured enough to see the unfairness of such tyranny and demanded a say in who governed them. Note the word – *governed* them. Not served them – *governed* them, hence government defined as 'the political direction and control exercised over the

actions of the members, citizens, or inhabitants of communities, societies, and states; direction of the affairs of a state, community, etc.' Governments exercise control over rather than serve just like the monarchies before them. Bizarrely there are still countries like the United Kingdom which are ruled by a monarch *and* a government that officially answers to the monarch. The UK head of state and that of Commonwealth countries such as Canada, Australia and New Zealand is 'selected' by who in a *single family* had unprotected sex with whom and in what order. Pinch me it can't be true. Ouch! Shit, it is. The demise of monarchies in most countries offered a potential vacuum in which some form of free and fair society could arise and the Cult had that base covered. Monarchies had served its interests but they couldn't continue in the face of such widespread opposition and, anyway, replacing a 'royal' dictatorship that people could see with a dictatorship 'of the people' hiding behind the concept of 'democracy' presented far greater manipulative possibilities and ways of hiding coordinated tyranny behind the illusion of 'freedom'.

Democracy is quite wrongly defined as government selected by the population. This is not the case at all. It is government selected by *some* of the population (and then only in theory). This 'some' doesn't even have to be the majority as we have seen so often in first-past-the-post elections in which the so-called majority party wins fewer votes than the 'losing' parties combined. Democracy can give total power to a party in government from a minority of the votes cast. It's a sleight of hand to sell tyranny as freedom. Seventy-four million Trump-supporting Americans didn't vote for the 'Democratic' Party of Joe Biden in the distinctly dodgy election in 2020 and yet far from acknowledging the wishes and feelings of that great percentage of American society the Cult-owned Biden government set out from day one to destroy them and their right to a voice and opinion. Empty shell Biden and his Cult handlers said they were doing this to 'protect democracy'. Such is the level of lunacy and sickness to which politics has descended. Connect the dots and relate them to the desired outcome – a world government run by self-appointed technocrats and no longer even elected

politicians. While operating through its political agents in government the Cult is at the same time encouraging public distain for politicians by putting idiots and incompetents in theoretical power on the road to deleting them. The idea is to instil a public reaction that says of the technocrats: 'Well, they couldn't do any worse than the pathetic politicians.' It's all about controlling perception and Renegade Minds can see through that while programmed minds cannot when they are ignorant of both the planned outcome and the manipulation techniques employed to secure that end. This knowledge can be learned, however, and fast if people choose to get informed.

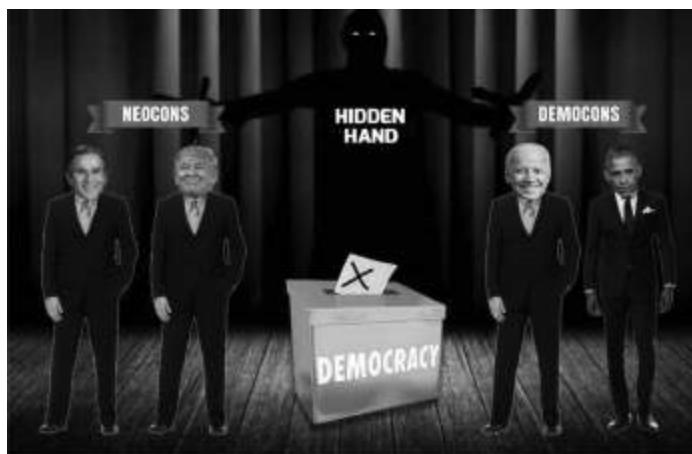
Politics may at first sight appear very difficult to control from a central point. I mean look at the 'different' parties and how would you be able to oversee them all and their constituent parts? In truth, it's very straightforward because of their structure. We are back to the pyramid of imposition and acquiescence. Organisations are structured in the same way as the system as a whole. Political parties are not open forums of free expression. They are hierarchies. I was a national spokesman for the British Green Party which claimed to be a different kind of politics in which influence and power was devolved; but I can tell you from direct experience – and it's far worse now – that Green parties are run as hierarchies like all the others however much they may try to hide that fact or kid themselves that it's not true. A very few at the top of all political parties are directing policy and personnel. They decide if you are elevated in the party or serve as a government minister and to do that you have to be a yes man or woman. Look at all the maverick political thinkers who never ascended the greasy pole. If you want to progress within the party or reach 'high-office' you need to fall into line and conform. Exceptions to this are rare indeed. Should you want to run for parliament or Congress you have to persuade the local or state level of the party to select you and for that you need to play the game as dictated by the hierarchy. If you secure election and wish to progress within the greater structure you need to go on conforming to what is acceptable to those running the hierarchy

from the peak of the pyramid. Political parties are perceptual gulags and the very fact that there are party 'Whips' appointed to 'whip' politicians into voting the way the hierarchy demands exposes the ridiculous idea that politicians are elected to serve the people they are supposed to represent. Cult operatives and manipulation has long seized control of major parties that have any chance of forming a government and at least most of those that haven't. A new party forms and the Cult goes to work to infiltrate and direct. This has reached such a level today that you see video compilations of 'leaders' of all parties whether Democrats, Republicans, Conservative, Labour and Green parroting the same Cult mantra of 'Build Back Better' and the 'Great Reset' which are straight off the Cult song-sheet to describe the transformation of global society in response to the Cult-instigated hoaxes of the 'Covid pandemic' and human-caused 'climate change'. To see Caroline Lucas, the Green Party MP that I knew when I was in the party in the 1980s, speaking in support of plans proposed by Cult operative Klaus Schwab representing the billionaire global elite is a real head-shaker.

### **Many parties – one master**

The party system is another mind-trick and was instigated to change the nature of the dictatorship by swapping 'royalty' for dark suits that people believed – though now ever less so – represented their interests. Understanding this trick is to realise that a single force (the Cult) controls all parties either directly in terms of the major ones or through manipulation of perception and ideology with others. You don't need to manipulate Green parties to demand your transformation of society in the name of 'climate change' when they are obsessed with the lie that this is essential to 'save the planet'. You just give them a platform and away they go serving your interests while believing they are being environmentally virtuous. America's political structure is a perfect blueprint for how the two or multi-party system is really a one-party state. The Republican Party is controlled from one step back in the shadows by a group made up of billionaires and their gofers known as neoconservatives or Neocons.

I have exposed them in fine detail in my books and they were the driving force behind the policies of the imbecilic presidency of Boy George Bush which included 9/11 (see *The Trigger* for a comprehensive demolition of the official story), the subsequent ‘war on terror’ (war of terror) and the invasions of Afghanistan and Iraq. The latter was a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution based on claims by Cult operatives, including Bush and British Prime Minister Tony Blair, about Saddam Hussein’s ‘weapons of mass destruction’ which did not exist as war criminals Bush and Blair well knew.



**Figure 6:** Different front people, different parties – same control system.

The Democratic Party has its own ‘Neocon’ group controlling from the background which I call the ‘Democons’ and here’s the penny-drop – the Neocons and Democons answer to the same masters one step further back into the shadows (Fig 6). At that level of the Cult the Republican and Democrat parties are controlled by the same people and no matter which is in power the Cult is in power. This is how it works in almost every country and certainly in Britain with Conservative, Labour, Liberal Democrat and Green parties now all on the same page whatever the rhetoric may be in their feeble attempts to appear different. Neocons operated at the time of Bush through a think tank called The Project for the New American Century which in September, 2000, published a document entitled *Rebuilding America’s Defenses: Strategies, Forces, and Resources*

*For a New Century* demanding that America fight ‘multiple, simultaneous major theatre wars’ as a ‘core mission’ to force regime-change in countries including Iraq, Libya and Syria. Neocons arranged for Bush (‘Republican’) and Blair (‘Labour Party’) to front-up the invasion of Iraq and when they departed the Democons orchestrated the targeting of Libya and Syria through Barack Obama (‘Democrat’) and British Prime Minister David Cameron (‘Conservative Party’). We have ‘different’ parties and ‘different’ people, but the same unfolding script. The more the Cult has seized the reigns of parties and personnel the more their policies have transparently pursued the same agenda to the point where the fascist ‘Covid’ impositions of the Conservative junta of Jackboot Johnson in Britain were opposed by the Labour Party because they were not fascist enough. The Labour Party is likened to the US Democrats while the Conservative Party is akin to a British version of the Republicans and on both sides of the Atlantic they all speak the same language and support the direction demanded by the Cult although some more enthusiastically than others. It’s a similar story in country after country because it’s all centrally controlled. Oh, but what about Trump? I’ll come to him shortly. Political ‘choice’ in the ‘party’ system goes like this: You vote for Party A and they get into government. You don’t like what they do so next time you vote for Party B and they get into government. You don’t like what they do when it’s pretty much the same as Party A and why wouldn’t that be with both controlled by the same force? Given that only two, sometimes three, parties have any chance of forming a government to get rid of Party B that you don’t like you have to vote again for Party A which ... you don’t like. This, ladies and gentlemen, is what they call ‘democracy’ which we are told – wrongly – is a term interchangeable with ‘freedom’.

## **The cult of cults**

At this point I need to introduce a major expression of the Global Cult known as Sabbatian-Frankism. Sabbatian is also spelt as Sabbatean. I will summarise here. I have published major exposés

and detailed background in other works. Sabbatian-Frankism combines the names of two frauds posing as 'Jewish' men, Sabbatai Zevi (1626-1676), a rabbi, black magician and occultist who proclaimed he was the Jewish messiah; and Jacob Frank (1726-1791), the Polish 'Jew', black magician and occultist who said he was the reincarnation of 'messiah' Zevi and biblical patriarch Jacob. They worked across two centuries to establish the Sabbatian-Frankist cult that plays a major, indeed central, role in the manipulation of human society by the Global Cult which has its origins much further back in history than Sabbatai Zevi. I should emphasise two points here in response to the shrill voices that will scream 'anti-Semitism': (1) Sabbatian-Frankists are NOT Jewish and only pose as such to hide their cult behind a Jewish façade; and (2) my information about this cult has come from Jewish sources who have long realised that their society and community has been infiltrated and taken over by interloper Sabbatian-Frankists. Infiltration has been the foundation technique of Sabbatian-Frankism from its official origin in the 17th century. Zevi's Sabbatian sect attracted a massive following described as the biggest messianic movement in Jewish history, spreading as far as Africa and Asia, and he promised a return for the Jews to the 'Promised Land' of Israel. Sabbatianism was not Judaism but an inversion of everything that mainstream Judaism stood for. So much so that this sinister cult would have a feast day when Judaism had a fast day and whatever was forbidden in Judaism the Sabbatians were encouraged and even commanded to do. This included incest and what would be today called Satanism. Members were forbidden to marry outside the sect and there was a system of keeping their children ignorant of what they were part of until they were old enough to be trusted not to unknowingly reveal anything to outsiders. The same system is employed to this day by the Global Cult in general which Sabbatian-Frankism has enormously influenced and now largely controls.

Zevi and his Sabbatians suffered a setback with the intervention by the Sultan of the Islamic Ottoman Empire in the Middle East and what is now the Republic of Turkey where Zevi was located. The

Sultan gave him the choice of proving his ‘divinity’, converting to Islam or facing torture and death. Funnily enough Zevi chose to convert or at least appear to. Some of his supporters were disillusioned and drifted away, but many did not with 300 families also converting – only in theory – to Islam. They continued behind this Islamic smokescreen to follow the goals, rules and rituals of Sabbatianism and became known as ‘crypto-Jews’ or the ‘Dönmeh’ which means ‘to turn’. This is rather ironic because they didn’t ‘turn’ and instead hid behind a fake Islamic persona. The process of appearing to be one thing while being very much another would become the calling card of Sabbatianism especially after Zevi’s death and the arrival of the Satanist Jacob Frank in the 18th century when the cult became Sabbatian-Frankism and plumbed still new depths of depravity and infiltration which included – still includes – human sacrifice and sex with children. Wherever Sabbatians go paedophilia and Satanism follow and is it really a surprise that Hollywood is so infested with child abuse and Satanism when it was established by Sabbatian-Frankists and is still controlled by them? Hollywood has been one of the prime vehicles for global perceptual programming and manipulation. How many believe the version of ‘history’ portrayed in movies when it is a travesty and inversion (again) of the truth? Rabbi Marvin Antelman describes Frankism in his book, *To Eliminate the Opiate*, as ‘a movement of complete evil’ while Jewish professor Gershom Scholem said of Frank in *The Messianic Idea in Judaism*: ‘In all his actions [he was] a truly corrupt and degenerate individual ... one of the most frightening phenomena in the whole of Jewish history.’ Frank was excommunicated by traditional rabbis, as was Zevi, but Frank was undeterred and enjoyed vital support from the House of Rothschild, the infamous banking dynasty whose inner-core are Sabbatian-Frankists and not Jews. Infiltration of the Roman Church and Vatican was instigated by Frank with many Dönmeh ‘turning’ again to convert to Roman Catholicism with a view to hijacking the reins of power. This was the ever-repeating modus operandi and continues to be so. Pose as an advocate of the religion, culture or country that you want to control and then

manipulate your people into the positions of authority and influence largely as advisers, administrators and Svengalis for those that appear to be in power. They did this with Judaism, Christianity (Christian Zionism is part of this), Islam and other religions and nations until Sabbatian-Frankism spanned the world as it does today.

## **Sabbatian Saudis and the terror network**

One expression of the Sabbatian-Frankist Dönme within Islam is the ruling family of Saudi Arabia, the House of Saud, through which came the vile distortion of Islam known as Wahhabism. This is the violent creed followed by terrorist groups like Al-Qaeda and ISIS or Islamic State. Wahhabism is the hand-chopping, head-chopping ‘religion’ of Saudi Arabia which is used to keep the people in a constant state of fear so the interloper House of Saud can continue to rule. Al-Qaeda and Islamic State were lavishly funded by the House of Saud while being created and directed by the Sabbatian-Frankist network in the United States that operates through the Pentagon, CIA and the government in general of whichever ‘party’. The front man for the establishment of Wahhabism in the middle of the 18th century was a Sabbatian-Frankist ‘crypto-Jew’ posing as Islamic called Muhammad ibn Abd al-Wahhab. His daughter would marry the son of Muhammad bin Saud who established the first Saudi state before his death in 1765 with support from the British Empire. Bin Saud’s successors would establish modern Saudi Arabia in league with the British and Americans in 1932 which allowed them to seize control of Islam’s major shrines in Mecca and Medina. They have dictated the direction of Sunni Islam ever since while Iran is the major centre of the Shiite version and here we have the source of at least the public conflict between them. The Sabbatian network has used its Wahhabi extremists to carry out Problem-Reaction-Solution terrorist attacks in the name of ‘Al-Qaeda’ and ‘Islamic State’ to justify a devastating ‘war on terror’, ever-increasing surveillance of the population and to terrify people into compliance. Another insight of the Renegade Mind is the streetwise understanding that

just because a country, location or people are attacked doesn't mean that those apparently representing that country, location or people are not behind the attackers. Often they are *orchestrating* the attacks because of the societal changes that can be then justified in the name of 'saving the population from terrorists'.

I show in great detail in *The Trigger* how Sabbatian-Frankists were the real perpetrators of 9/11 and not '19 Arab hijackers' who were blamed for what happened. Observe what was justified in the name of 9/11 alone in terms of Middle East invasions, mass surveillance and control that fulfilled the demands of the Project for the New American Century document published by the Sabbatian Neocons. What appear to be enemies are on the deep inside players on the same Sabbatian team. Israel and Arab 'royal' dictatorships are all ruled by Sabbatians and the recent peace agreements between Israel and Saudi Arabia, the United Arab Emirates (UAE) and others are only making formal what has always been the case behind the scenes. Palestinians who have been subjected to grotesque tyranny since Israel was bombed and terrorised into existence in 1948 have never stood a chance. Sabbatian-Frankists have controlled Israel (so the constant theme of violence and war which Sabbatians love) and they have controlled the Arab countries that Palestinians have looked to for real support that never comes. 'Royal families' of the Arab world in Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, UAE, etc., are all Sabbatians with allegiance to the aims of the cult and not what is best for their Arabic populations. They have stolen the oil and financial resources from their people by false claims to be 'royal dynasties' with a genetic right to rule and by employing vicious militaries to impose their will.

## **Satanic 'illumination'**

The Satanist Jacob Frank formed an alliance in 1773 with two other Sabbatians, Mayer Amschel Rothschild (1744-1812), founder of the Rothschild banking dynasty, and Jesuit-educated fraudulent Jew, Adam Weishaupt, and this led to the formation of the Bavarian Illuminati, firstly under another name, in 1776. The Illuminati would

be the manipulating force behind the French Revolution (1789-1799) and was also involved in the American Revolution (1775-1783) before and after the Illuminati's official creation. Weishaupt would later become (in public) a Protestant Christian in archetypal Sabbatian style. I read that his name can be decoded as Adam-Weishaupt or 'the first man to lead those who know'. He wasn't a leader in the sense that he was a subordinate, but he did lead those below him in a crusade of transforming human society that still continues today. The theme was confirmed as early as 1785 when a horseman courier called Lanz was reported to be struck by lighting and extensive Illuminati documents were found in his saddlebags. They made the link to Weishaupt and detailed the plan for world takeover. Current events with 'Covid' fascism have been in the making for a very long time. Jacob Frank was jailed for 13 years by the Catholic Inquisition after his arrest in 1760 and on his release he headed for Frankfurt, Germany, home city and headquarters of the House of Rothschild where the alliance was struck with Mayer Amschel Rothschild and Weishaupt. Rothschild arranged for Frank to be given the title of Baron and he became a wealthy nobleman with a big following of Jews in Germany, the Austro-Hungarian Empire and other European countries. Most of them would have believed he was on their side.

The name 'Illuminati' came from the Zohar which is a body of works in the Jewish mystical 'bible' called the Kabbalah. 'Zohar' is the foundation of Sabbatian-Frankist belief and in Hebrew 'Zohar' means 'splendour', 'radiance', 'illuminated', and so we have 'Illuminati'. They claim to be the 'Illuminated Ones' from their knowledge systematically hidden from the human population and passed on through generations of carefully-chosen initiates in the global secret society network or Cult. Hidden knowledge includes an awareness of the Cult agenda for the world and the nature of our collective reality that I will explore later. Cult 'illumination' is symbolised by the torch held by the Statue of Liberty which was gifted to New York by French Freemasons in Paris who knew exactly what it represents. 'Liberty' symbolises the goddess worshipped in

Babylon as Queen Semiramis or Ishtar. The significance of this will become clear. Notice again the ubiquitous theme of inversion with the Statue of 'Liberty' really symbolising mass control ([Fig 7](#)). A mirror-image statute stands on an island in the River Seine in Paris from where New York Liberty originated ([Fig 8](#)). A large replica of the Liberty flame stands on top of the Pont de l'Alma tunnel in Paris where Princess Diana died in a Cult ritual described in *The Biggest Secret*. Lucifer 'the light bringer' is related to all this (and much more as we'll see) and 'Lucifer' is a central figure in Sabbatian-Frankism and its associated Satanism. Sabbatians reject the Jewish Torah, or Pentateuch, the 'five books of Moses' in the Old Testament known as Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy which are claimed by Judaism and Christianity to have been dictated by 'God' to Moses on Mount Sinai. Sabbatians say these do not apply to them and they seek to replace them with the Zohar to absorb Judaism and its followers into their inversion which is an expression of a much greater global inversion. They want to delete all religions and force humanity to worship a one-world religion – Sabbatian Satanism that also includes worship of the Earth goddess. Satanic themes are being more and more introduced into mainstream society and while Christianity is currently the foremost target for destruction the others are planned to follow.



**Figure 7:** The Cult goddess of Babylon disguised as the Statue of Liberty holding the flame of Lucifer the 'light bringer'.



**Figure 8:** Liberty's mirror image in Paris where the New York version originated.

## **Marx brothers**

Rabbi Marvin Antelman connects the Illuminati to the Jacobins in *To Eliminate the Opiate* and Jacobins were the force behind the French Revolution. He links both to the Bund der Gerechten, or League of the Just, which was the network that inflicted communism/Marxism on the world. Antelman wrote:

The original inner circle of the Bund der Gerechten consisted of born Catholics, Protestants and Jews [Sabbatian-Frankist infiltrators], and those representatives of respective subdivisions formulated schemes for the ultimate destruction of their faiths. The heretical Catholics laid plans which they felt would take a century or more for the ultimate destruction of the church; the apostate Jews for the ultimate destruction of the Jewish religion.

Sabbatian-created communism connects into this anti-religion agenda in that communism does not allow for the free practice of religion. The Sabbatian 'Bund' became the International Communist Party and Communist League and in 1848 'Marxism' was born with the Communist Manifesto of Sabbatian assets Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels. It is absolutely no coincidence that Marxism, just a different name for fascist and other centrally-controlled tyrannies, is being imposed worldwide as a result of the 'Covid' hoax and nor that Marxist/fascist China was the place where the hoax originated. The reason for this will become very clear in the chapter 'Covid: The calculated catastrophe'. The so-called 'Woke' mentality has hijacked

traditional beliefs of the political left and replaced them with far-right make-believe ‘social justice’ better known as Marxism. Woke will, however, be swallowed by its own perceived ‘revolution’ which is really the work of billionaires and billionaire corporations feigning being ‘Woke’. Marxism is being touted by Wokers as a replacement for ‘capitalism’ when we don’t have ‘capitalism’. We have cartelism in which the market is stitched up by the very Cult billionaires and corporations bankrolling Woke. Billionaires love Marxism which keeps the people in servitude while they control from the top.

Terminally naïve Wokers think they are ‘changing the world’ when it’s the Cult that is doing the changing and when they have played their vital part and become surplus to requirements they, too, will be targeted. The Illuminati-Jacobins were behind the period known as ‘The Terror’ in the French Revolution in 1793 and 1794 when Jacobin Maximillian de Robespierre and his Orwellian ‘Committee of Public Safety’ killed 17,000 ‘enemies of the Revolution’ who had once been ‘friends of the Revolution’. Karl Marx (1818-1883), whose Sabbatian creed of Marxism has cost the lives of at least 100 million people, is a hero once again to Wokers who have been systematically kept ignorant of real history by their ‘education’ programming. As a result they now promote a Sabbatian ‘Marxist’ abomination destined at some point to consume them. Rabbi Antelman, who spent decades researching the Sabbatian plot, said of the League of the Just and Karl Marx:

Contrary to popular opinion Karl Marx did not originate the Communist Manifesto. He was paid for his services by the League of the Just, which was known in its country of origin, Germany, as the Bund der Gaeachteten.

Antelman said the text attributed to Marx was the work of other people and Marx ‘was only repeating what others already said’. Marx was ‘a hired hack – lackey of the wealthy Illuminists’. Marx famously said that religion was the ‘opium of the people’ (part of the Sabbatian plan to demonise religion) and Antelman called his books, *To Eliminate the Opiate*. Marx was born Jewish, but his family converted to Christianity (Sabbatian modus operandi) and he

attacked Jews, not least in his book, *A World Without Jews*. In doing so he supported the Sabbatian plan to destroy traditional Jewishness and Judaism which we are clearly seeing today with the vindictive targeting of orthodox Jews by the Sabbatian government of Israel over 'Covid' laws. I don't follow any religion and it has done much damage to the world over centuries and acted as a perceptual straightjacket. Renegade Minds, however, are always asking *why* something is being done. It doesn't matter if they agree or disagree with what is happening – *why* is it happening is the question. The 'why?' can be answered with regard to religion in that religions create interacting communities of believers when the Cult wants to dismantle all discourse, unity and interaction (see 'Covid' lockdowns) and the ultimate goal is to delete all religions for a one-world religion of Cult Satanism worshipping their 'god' of which more later. We see the same 'why?' with gun control in America. I don't have guns and don't want them, but why is the Cult seeking to disarm the population at the same time that law enforcement agencies are armed to their molars and why has every tyrant in history sought to disarm people before launching the final takeover? They include Hitler, Stalin, Pol Pot and Mao who followed confiscation with violent seizing of power. You know it's a Cult agenda by the people who immediately race to the microphones to exploit dead people in multiple shootings. Ultra-Zionist Cult lackey Senator Chuck Schumer was straight on the case after ten people were killed in Boulder, Colorado in March, 2021. Simple rule ... if Schumer wants it the Cult wants it and the same with his ultra-Zionist mate the wild-eyed Senator Adam Schiff. At the same time they were calling for the disarmament of Americans, many of whom live a long way from a police response, Schumer, Schiff and the rest of these pampered clowns were sitting on Capitol Hill behind a razor-wired security fence protected by thousands of armed troops in addition to their own armed bodyguards. Mom and pop in an isolated home? They're just potential mass shooters.

## Zion Mainframe

Sabbatian-Frankists and most importantly the Rothschilds were behind the creation of 'Zionism', a political movement that demanded a Jewish homeland in Israel as promised by Sabbatai Zevi. The very symbol of Israel comes from the German meaning of the name Rothschild. Dynasty founder Mayer Amschel Rothschild changed the family name from Bauer to Rothschild, or 'Red-Shield' in German, in deference to the six-pointed 'Star of David' hexagram displayed on the family's home in Frankfurt. The symbol later appeared on the flag of Israel after the Rothschilds were centrally involved in its creation. Hexagrams are not a uniquely Jewish symbol and are widely used in occult ('hidden') networks often as a symbol for Saturn (see my other books for why). Neither are Zionism and Jewishness interchangeable. Zionism is a political movement and philosophy and not a 'race' or a people. Many Jews oppose Zionism and many non-Jews, including US President Joe Biden, call themselves Zionists as does Israel-centric Donald Trump. America's support for the Israel government is pretty much a gimme with ultra-Zionist billionaires and corporations providing fantastic and dominant funding for both political parties. Former Congresswoman Cynthia McKinney has told how she was approached immediately she ran for office to 'sign the pledge' to Israel and confirm that she would always vote in that country's best interests. All American politicians are approached in this way. Anyone who refuses will get no support or funding from the enormous and all-powerful Zionist lobby that includes organisations like mega-lobby group AIPAC, the American Israel Public Affairs Committee. Trump's biggest funder was ultra-Zionist casino and media billionaire Sheldon Adelson while major funders of the Democratic Party include ultra-Zionist George Soros and ultra-Zionist financial and media mogul, Haim Saban. Some may reel back at the suggestion that Soros is an Israel-firster (Sabbatian-controlled Israel-firster), but Renegade Minds watch the actions not the words and everywhere Soros donates his billions the Sabbatian agenda benefits. In the spirit of Sabbatian inversion Soros pledged \$1 billion for a new university network to promote 'liberal values and tackle intolerance'. He made the announcement during his annual speech

at the Cult-owned World Economic Forum in Davos, Switzerland, in January, 2020, after his ‘harsh criticism’ of ‘authoritarian rulers’ around the world. You can only laugh at such brazen mendacity. How *he* doesn’t laugh is the mystery. Translated from the Orwellian ‘liberal values and tackle intolerance’ means teaching non-white people to hate white people and for white people to loathe themselves for being born white. The reason for that will become clear.

### **The ‘Anti-Semitism’ fraud**

Zionists support the Jewish homeland in the land of Palestine which has been the Sabbatian-Rothschild goal for so long, but not for the benefit of Jews. Sabbatians and their global Anti-Semitism Industry have skewed public and political opinion to equate opposing the violent extremes of Zionism to be a blanket attack and condemnation of all Jewish people. Sabbatians and their global Anti-Semitism Industry have skewed public and political opinion to equate opposing the violent extremes of Zionism to be a blanket attack and condemnation of all Jewish people. This is nothing more than a Sabbatian protection racket to stop legitimate investigation and exposure of their agendas and activities. The official definition of ‘anti-Semitism’ has more recently been expanded to include criticism of Zionism – a *political movement* – and this was done to further stop exposure of Sabbatian infiltrators who created Zionism as we know it today in the 19th century. Renegade Minds will talk about these subjects when they know the shit that will come their way. People must decide if they want to know the truth or just cower in the corner in fear of what others will say. Sabbatians have been trying to label me as ‘anti-Semitic’ since the 1990s as I have uncovered more and more about their background and agendas. Useless, gutless, fraudulent ‘journalists’ then just repeat the smears without question and on the day I was writing this section a pair of unquestioning repeaters called Ben Quinn and Archie Bland (how appropriate) outright called me an ‘anti-Semite’ in the establishment propaganda sheet, the London *Guardian*, with no supporting evidence. The

Sabbatian Anti-Semitism Industry said so and who are they to question that? They wouldn't dare. Ironically 'Semitic' refers to a group of languages in the Middle East that are almost entirely Arabic. 'Anti-Semitism' becomes 'anti-Arab' which if the consequences of this misunderstanding were not so grave would be hilarious. Don't bother telling Quinn and Bland. I don't want to confuse them, bless 'em. One reason I am dubbed 'anti-Semitic' is that I wrote in the 1990s that Jewish operatives (Sabbatians) were heavily involved in the Russian Revolution when Sabbatians overthrew the Romanov dynasty. This apparently made me 'anti-Semitic'. Oh, really? Here is a section from *The Trigger*:

British journalist Robert Wilton confirmed these themes in his 1920 book *The Last Days of the Romanovs* when he studied official documents from the Russian government to identify the members of the Bolshevik ruling elite between 1917 and 1919. The Central Committee included 41 Jews among 62 members; the Council of the People's Commissars had 17 Jews out of 22 members; and 458 of the 556 most important Bolshevik positions between 1918 and 1919 were occupied by Jewish people. Only 17 were Russian. Then there were the 23 Jews among the 36 members of the vicious Cheka Soviet secret police established in 1917 who would soon appear all across the country.

Professor Robert Service of Oxford University, an expert on 20th century Russian history, found evidence that ['Jewish'] Leon Trotsky had sought to make sure that Jews were enrolled in the Red Army and were disproportionately represented in the Soviet civil bureaucracy that included the Cheka which performed mass arrests, imprisonment and executions of 'enemies of the people'. A US State Department Decimal File (861.00/5339) dated November 13th, 1918, names [Rothschild banking agent in America] Jacob Schiff and a list of ultra-Zionists as funders of the Russian Revolution leading to claims of a 'Jewish plot', but the key point missed by all is they were not 'Jews' – they were Sabbatian-Frankists.

Britain's Winston Churchill made the same error by mistake or otherwise. He wrote in a 1920 edition of the *Illustrated Sunday Herald* that those behind the Russian revolution were part of a 'worldwide conspiracy for the overthrow of civilisation and for the reconstitution of society on the basis of arrested development, of envious malevolence, and impossible equality' (see 'Woke' today because that has been created by the same network). Churchill said there was no need to exaggerate the part played in the creation of Bolshevism and in the actual bringing about of the Russian

Revolution 'by these international and for the most part atheistical Jews' ['atheistical Jews' = Sabbatians]. Churchill said it is certainly a very great one and probably outweighs all others: 'With the notable exception of Lenin, the majority of the leading figures are Jews.' He went on to describe, knowingly or not, the Sabbatian modus operandi of placing puppet leaders nominally in power while they control from the background:

Moreover, the principal inspiration and driving power comes from the Jewish leaders. Thus Tchitcherin, a pure Russian, is eclipsed by his nominal subordinate, Litvinoff, and the influence of Russians like Bukharin or Lunacharski cannot be compared with the power of Trotsky, or of Zinovieff, the Dictator of the Red Citadel (Petrograd), or of Krassin or Radek – all Jews. In the Soviet institutions the predominance of Jews is even more astonishing. And the prominent, if not indeed the principal, part in the system of terrorism applied by the Extraordinary Commissions for Combatting Counter-Revolution has been taken by Jews, and in some notable cases by Jewesses.

What I said about seriously disproportionate involvement in the Russian Revolution by Jewish 'revolutionaries' (Sabbatians) is provable fact, but truth is no defence against the Sabbatian Anti-Semitism Industry, its repeater parrots like Quinn and Bland, and the now breathtaking network of so-called 'Woke' 'anti-hate' groups with interlocking leaderships and funding which have the role of discrediting and silencing anyone who gets too close to exposing the Sabbatians. We have seen 'truth is no defence' confirmed in legal judgements with the Saskatchewan Human Rights Commission in Canada decreeing this: 'Truthful statements can be presented in a manner that would meet the definition of hate speech, and not all truthful statements must be free from restriction.' Most 'anti-hate' activists, who are themselves consumed by hatred, are too stupid and ignorant of the world to know how they are being used. They are far too far up their own virtue-signalling arses and it's far too dark for them to see anything.

## **The 'revolution' game**

The background and methods of the 'Russian' Revolution are straight from the Sabbatian playbook seen in the French Revolution

and endless others around the world that appear to start as a revolution of the people against tyrannical rule and end up with a regime change to more tyrannical rule overtly or covertly. Wars, terror attacks and regime overthrows follow the Sabbatian cult through history with its agents creating them as Problem-Reaction-Solutions to remove opposition on the road to world domination. Sabbatian dots connect the Rothschilds with the Illuminati, Jacobins of the French Revolution, the 'Bund' or League of the Just, the International Communist Party, Communist League and the Communist Manifesto of Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels that would lead to the Rothschild-funded Russian Revolution. The sequence comes under the heading of 'creative destruction' when you advance to your global goal by continually destroying the status quo to install a new status quo which you then also destroy. The two world wars come to mind. With each new status quo you move closer to your planned outcome. Wars and mass murder are to Sabbatians a collective blood sacrifice ritual. They are obsessed with death for many reasons and one is that death is an inversion of life. Satanists and Sabbatians are obsessed with death and often target churches and churchyards for their rituals. Inversion-obsessed Sabbatians explain the use of inverted symbolism including the *inverted* pentagram and *inverted* cross. The inversion of the cross has been related to targeting Christianity, but the cross was a religious symbol long before Christianity and its inversion is a statement about the Sabbatian mentality and goals more than any single religion.

Sabbatians operating in Germany were behind the rise of the occult-obsessed Nazis and the subsequent Jewish exodus from Germany and Europe to Palestine and the United States after World War Two. The Rothschild dynasty was at the forefront of this both as political manipulators and by funding the operation. Why would Sabbatians help to orchestrate the horrors inflicted on Jews by the Nazis and by Stalin after they organised the Russian Revolution? Sabbatians hate Jews and their religion, that's why. They pose as Jews and secure positions of control within Jewish society and play the 'anti-Semitism' card to protect themselves from exposure

through a global network of organisations answering to the Sabbatian-created-and-controlled globe-spanning intelligence network that involves a stunning web of military-intelligence operatives and operations for a tiny country of just nine million. Among them are Jewish assets who are not Sabbatians but have been convinced by them that what they are doing is for the good of Israel and the Jewish community to protect them from what they have been programmed since childhood to believe is a Jew-hating hostile world. The Jewish community is just a highly convenient cover to hide the true nature of Sabbatians. Anyone getting close to exposing their game is accused by Sabbatian place-people and gofers of 'anti-Semitism' and claiming that all Jews are part of a plot to take over the world. I am not saying that. I am saying that Sabbatians – the *real* Jew-haters – have infiltrated the Jewish community to use them both as a cover and an 'anti-Semitic' defence against exposure. Thus we have the Anti-Semitism Industry targeted researchers in this way and most Jewish people think this is justified and genuine. They don't know that their 'Jewish' leaders and institutions of state, intelligence and military are not controlled by Jews at all, but cultists and stooges of Sabbatian-Frankism. I once added my name to a pro-Jewish freedom petition online and the next time I looked my name was gone and text had been added to the petition blurb to attack me as an 'anti-Semite' such is the scale of perceptual programming.

## **Moving on America**

I tell the story in *The Trigger* and a chapter called 'Atlantic Crossing' how particularly after Israel was established the Sabbatians moved in on the United States and eventually grasped control of government administration, the political system via both Democrats and Republicans, the intelligence community like the CIA and National Security Agency (NSA), the Pentagon and mass media. Through this seriously compartmentalised network Sabbatians and their operatives in Mossad, Israeli Defense Forces (IDF) and US agencies pulled off 9/11 and blamed it on 19 'Al-Qaeda hijackers' dominated by men from, or connected to, Sabbatian-ruled Saudi

Arabia. The '19' were not even on the planes let alone flew those big passenger jets into buildings while being largely incompetent at piloting one-engine light aircraft. 'Hijacker' Hani Hanjour who is said to have flown American Airlines Flight 77 into the Pentagon with a turn and manoeuvre most professional pilots said they would have struggled to do was banned from renting a small plane by instructors at the Freeway Airport in Bowie, Maryland, just *six weeks* earlier on the grounds that he was an incompetent pilot. The Jewish population of the world is just 0.2 percent with even that almost entirely concentrated in Israel (75 percent Jewish) and the United States (around two percent). This two percent and globally 0.2 percent refers to *Jewish* people and not Sabbatian interlopers who are a fraction of that fraction. What a sobering thought when you think of the fantastic influence on world affairs of tiny Israel and that the Project for the New America Century (PNAC) which laid out the blueprint in September, 2000, for America's war on terror and regime change wars in Iraq, Libya and Syria was founded and dominated by Sabbatians known as 'Neocons'. The document conceded that this plan would not be supported politically or publicly without a major attack on American soil and a Problem-Reaction-Solution excuse to send troops to war across the Middle East. Sabbatian Neocons said:

... [The] process of transformation ... [war and regime change] ... is likely to be a long one, absent some catastrophic and catalysing event – like a new Pearl Harbor.

Four months later many of those who produced that document came to power with their inane puppet George Bush from the long-time Sabbatian Bush family. They included Sabbatian Dick Cheney who was officially vice-president, but really de-facto president for the entirety of the 'Bush' government. Nine months after the 'Bush' inauguration came what Bush called at the time 'the Pearl Harbor of the 21st century' and with typical Sabbatian timing and symbolism 2001 was the 60th anniversary of the attack in 1941 by the Japanese Air Force on Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, which allowed President Franklin Delano Roosevelt to take the United States into a Sabbatian-

instigated Second World War that he said in his election campaign that he never would. The evidence is overwhelming that Roosevelt and his military and intelligence networks knew the attack was coming and did nothing to stop it, but they did make sure that America's most essential naval ships were not in Hawaii at the time. Three thousand Americans died in the Pearl Harbor attacks as they did on September 11th. By the 9/11 year of 2001 Sabbatians had widely infiltrated the US government, military and intelligence operations and used their compartmentalised assets to pull off the 'Al-Qaeda' attacks. If you read *The Trigger* it will blow your mind to see the utterly staggering concentration of 'Jewish' operatives (Sabbatian infiltrators) in essential positions of political, security, legal, law enforcement, financial and business power before, during, and after the attacks to make them happen, carry them out, and then cover their tracks – and I do mean *staggering* when you think of that 0.2 percent of the world population and two percent of Americans which are Jewish while Sabbatian infiltrators are a fraction of that. A central foundation of the 9/11 conspiracy was the hijacking of government, military, Air Force and intelligence computer systems in real time through 'back-door' access made possible by Israeli (Sabbatian) 'cyber security' software. Sabbatian-controlled Israel is on the way to rivalling Silicon Valley for domination of cyberspace and is becoming the dominant force in cyber-security which gives them access to entire computer systems and their passcodes across the world. Then add to this that Zionists head (officially) Silicon Valley giants like Google (Larry Page and Sergey Brin), Google-owned YouTube (Susan Wojcicki), Facebook (Mark Zuckerberg and Sheryl Sandberg), and Apple (Chairman Arthur D. Levinson), and that ultra-Zionist hedge fund billionaire Paul Singer has a \$1 billion stake in Twitter which is only nominally headed by 'CEO' pothead Jack Dorsey. As cable news host Tucker Carlson said of Dorsey: 'There used to be debate in the medical community whether dropping a ton of acid had permanent effects and I think that debate has now ended.' Carlson made the comment after Dorsey told a hearing on Capitol Hill (if you cut through his bullshit) that he

believed in free speech so long as he got to decide what you can hear and see. These 'big names' of Silicon Valley are only front men and women for the Global Cult, not least the Sabbatians, who are the true controllers of these corporations. Does anyone still wonder why these same people and companies have been ferociously censoring and banning people (like me) for exposing any aspect of the Cult agenda and especially the truth about the 'Covid' hoax which Sabbatians have orchestrated?

The Jeffrey Epstein paedophile ring was a Sabbatian operation. He was officially 'Jewish' but he was a Sabbatian and women abused by the ring have told me about the high number of 'Jewish' people involved. The Epstein horror has Sabbatian written all over it and matches perfectly their modus operandi and obsession with sex and ritual. Epstein was running a Sabbatian blackmail ring in which famous people with political and other influence were provided with young girls for sex while everything was being filmed and recorded on hidden cameras and microphones at his New York house, Caribbean island and other properties. Epstein survivors have described this surveillance system to me and some have gone public. Once the famous politician or other figure knew he or she was on video they tended to do whatever they were told. Here we go again ...when you've got them by the balls their hearts and minds will follow. Sabbatians use this blackmail technique on a wide scale across the world to entrap politicians and others they need to act as demanded. Epstein's private plane, the infamous 'Lolita Express', had many well-known passengers including Bill Clinton while Bill Gates has flown on an Epstein plane and met with him four years after Epstein had been jailed for paedophilia. They subsequently met many times at Epstein's home in New York according to a witness who was there. Epstein's infamous side-kick was Ghislaine Maxwell, daughter of Mossad agent and ultra-Zionist mega-crooked British businessman, Bob Maxwell, who at one time owned the *Daily Mirror* newspaper. Maxwell was murdered at sea on his boat in 1991 by Sabbatian-controlled Mossad when he became a liability with his

business empire collapsing as a former Mossad operative has confirmed (see *The Trigger*).

### **Money, money, money, funny money ...**

Before I come to the Sabbatian connection with the last three US presidents I will lay out the crucial importance to Sabbatians of controlling banking and finance. Sabbatian Mayer Amschel Rothschild set out to dominate this arena in his family's quest for total global control. What is freedom? It is, in effect, choice. The more choices you have the freer you are and the fewer your choices the more you are enslaved. In the global structure created over centuries by Sabbatians the biggest decider and restrictor of choice is ... money. Across the world if you ask people what they would like to do with their lives and why they are not doing that they will reply 'I don't have the money'. This is the idea. A global elite of multi-billionaires are described as 'greedy' and that is true on one level; but control of money – who has it and who doesn't – is not primarily about greed. It's about control. Sabbatians have seized ever more control of finance and sucked the wealth of the world out of the hands of the population. We talk now, after all, about the 'One-percent' and even then the wealthiest are a lot fewer even than that. This has been made possible by a money scam so outrageous and so vast it could rightly be called the scam of scams founded on creating 'money' out of nothing and 'loaning' that with interest to the population. Money out of nothing is called 'credit'. Sabbatians have asserted control over governments and banking ever more completely through the centuries and secured financial laws that allow banks to lend hugely more than they have on deposit in a confidence trick known as fractional reserve lending. Imagine if you could lend money that doesn't exist and charge the recipient interest for doing so. You would end up in jail. Bankers by contrast end up in mansions, private jets, Malibu and Monaco.

Banks are only required to keep a fraction of their deposits and wealth in their vaults and they are allowed to lend 'money' they don't have called 'credit'. Go into a bank for a loan and if you succeed

the banker will not move any real wealth into your account. They will type into your account the amount of the agreed 'loan' – say £100,000. This is not wealth that really exists; it is non-existent, fresh-air, created-out-of-nothing 'credit' which has never, does not, and will never exist except in theory. Credit is backed by nothing except wind and only has buying power because people think that it has buying power and accept it in return for property, goods and services. I have described this situation as like those cartoon characters you see chasing each other and when they run over the edge of a cliff they keep running forward on fresh air until one of them looks down, realises what's happened, and they all crash into the ravine. The whole foundation of the Sabbatian financial system is to stop people looking down except for periodic moments when they want to crash the system (as in 2008 and 2020 ongoing) and reap the rewards from all the property, businesses and wealth their borrowers had signed over as 'collateral' in return for a 'loan' of fresh air. Most people think that money is somehow created by governments when it comes into existence from the start as a debt through banks 'lending' illusory money called credit. Yes, the very currency of exchange is a *debt* from day one issued as an interest-bearing loan. Why don't governments create money interest-free and lend it to their people interest-free? Governments are controlled by Sabbatians and the financial system is controlled by Sabbatians for whom interest-free money would be a nightmare come true. Sabbatians underpin their financial domination through their global network of central banks, including the privately-owned US Federal Reserve and Britain's Bank of England, and this is orchestrated by a privately-owned central bank coordination body called the Bank for International Settlements in Basle, Switzerland, created by the usual suspects including the Rockefellers and Rothschilds. Central bank chiefs don't answer to governments or the people. They answer to the Bank for International Settlements or, in other words, the Global Cult which is dominated today by Sabbatians.

## **Built-in disaster**

There are so many constituent scams within the overall banking scam. When you take out a loan of thin-air credit only the amount of that loan is theoretically brought into circulation to add to the amount in circulation; but you are paying back the principle plus interest. The additional interest is not created and this means that with every 'loan' there is a shortfall in the money in circulation between what is borrowed and what has to be paid back. There is never even close to enough money in circulation to repay all outstanding public and private debt including interest. Coldly weaved in the very fabric of the system is the certainty that some will lose their homes, businesses and possessions to the banking 'lender'. This is less obvious in times of 'boom' when the amount of money in circulation (and the debt) is expanding through more people wanting and getting loans. When a downturn comes and the money supply contracts it becomes painfully obvious that there is not enough money to service all debt and interest. This is less obvious in times of 'boom' when the amount of money in circulation (and the debt) is expanding through more people wanting and getting loans. When a downturn comes and the money supply contracts and it becomes painfully obvious – as in 2008 and currently – that there is not enough money to service all debt and interest.

Sabbatian banksters have been leading the human population through a calculated series of booms (more debt incurred) and busts (when the debt can't be repaid and the banks get the debtor's tangible wealth in exchange for non-existent 'credit'). With each 'bust' Sabbatian bankers have absorbed more of the world's tangible wealth and we end up with the One-percent. Governments are in bankruptcy levels of debt to the same system and are therefore owned by a system they do not control. The Federal Reserve, 'America's central bank', is privately-owned and American presidents only nominally appoint its chairman or woman to maintain the illusion that it's an arm of government. It's not. The 'Fed' is a cartel of private banks which handed billions to its associates and friends after the crash of 2008 and has been Sabbatian-controlled since it was manipulated into being in 1913 through the covert trickery of Rothschild banking agents Jacob Schiff and Paul

Warburg, and the Sabbatian Rockefeller family. Somehow from a Jewish population of two-percent and globally 0.2 percent (Sabbatian interlopers remember are far smaller) ultra-Zionists headed the Federal Reserve for 31 years between 1987 and 2018 in the form of Alan Greenspan, Bernard Bernanke and Janet Yellen (now Biden's Treasury Secretary) with Yellen's deputy chairman a Israeli-American dual citizen and ultra-Zionist Stanley Fischer, a former governor of the Bank of Israel. Ultra-Zionist Fed chiefs spanned the presidencies of Ronald Reagan ('Republican'), Father George Bush ('Republican'), Bill Clinton ('Democrat'), Boy George Bush ('Republican') and Barack Obama ('Democrat'). We should really add the pre-Greenspan chairman, Paul Adolph Volcker, 'appointed' by Jimmy Carter ('Democrat') who ran the Fed between 1979 and 1987 during the Carter and Reagan administrations before Greenspan took over. Volcker was a long-time associate and business partner of the Rothschilds. No matter what the 'party' officially in power the United States economy was directed by the same force. Here are members of the Obama, Trump and Biden administrations and see if you can make out a common theme.

## **Barack Obama ('Democrat')**

Ultra-Zionists Robert Rubin, Larry Summers, and Timothy Geithner ran the US Treasury in the Clinton administration and two of them reappeared with Obama. Ultra-Zionist Fed chairman Alan Greenspan had manipulated the crash of 2008 through deregulation and jumped ship just before the disaster to make way for ultra-Zionist Bernard Bernanke to hand out trillions to Sabbatian 'too big to fail' banks and businesses, including the ubiquitous ultra-Zionist Goldman Sachs which has an ongoing staff revolving door operation between itself and major financial positions in government worldwide. Obama inherited the fallout of the crash when he took office in January, 2009, and fortunately he had the support of his ultra-Zionist White House Chief of Staff Rahm Emmanuel, son of a terrorist who helped to bomb Israel into being in 1948, and his ultra-Zionist senior adviser David Axelrod, chief strategist in Obama's two

successful presidential campaigns. Emmanuel, later mayor of Chicago and former senior fundraiser and strategist for Bill Clinton, is an example of the Sabbatian policy after Israel was established of migrating insider families to America so their children would be born American citizens. ‘Obama’ chose this financial team throughout his administration to respond to the Sabbatian-instigated crisis:

Timothy Geithner (ultra-Zionist) Treasury Secretary; Jacob J. Lew, Treasury Secretary; Larry Summers (ultra-Zionist), director of the White House National Economic Council; Paul Adolph Volcker (Rothschild business partner), chairman of the Economic Recovery Advisory Board; Peter Orszag (ultra-Zionist), director of the Office of Management and Budget overseeing all government spending; Penny Pritzker (ultra-Zionist), Commerce Secretary; Jared Bernstein (ultra-Zionist), chief economist and economic policy adviser to Vice President Joe Biden; Mary Schapiro (ultra-Zionist), chair of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC); Gary Gensler (ultra-Zionist), chairman of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (CFTC); Sheila Bair (ultra-Zionist), chair of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC); Karen Mills (ultra-Zionist), head of the Small Business Administration (SBA); Kenneth Feinberg (ultra-Zionist), Special Master for Executive [bail-out] Compensation. Feinberg would be appointed to oversee compensation (with strings) to 9/11 victims and families in a campaign to stop them having their day in court to question the official story. At the same time ultra-Zionist Bernard Bernanke was chairman of the Federal Reserve and these are only some of the ultra-Zionists with allegiance to Sabbatian-controlled Israel in the Obama government. Obama’s biggest corporate donor was ultra-Zionist Goldman Sachs which had employed many in his administration.

## **Donald Trump ('Republican')**

Trump claimed to be an outsider (he wasn’t) who had come to ‘drain the swamp’. He embarked on this goal by immediately appointing ultra-Zionist Steve Mnuchin, a Goldman Sachs employee for 17

years, as his Treasury Secretary. Others included Gary Cohn (ultra-Zionist), chief operating officer of Goldman Sachs, his first Director of the National Economic Council and chief economic adviser, who was later replaced by Larry Kudlow (ultra-Zionist). Trump's senior adviser throughout his four years in the White House was his sinister son-in-law Jared Kushner, a life-long friend of Israel Prime Minister Benjamin Netanyahu. Kushner is the son of a convicted crook who was pardoned by Trump in his last days in office. Other ultra-Zionists in the Trump administration included: Stephen Miller, Senior Policy Adviser; Avrahm Berkowitz, Deputy Adviser to Trump and his Senior Adviser Jared Kushner; Ivanka Trump, Adviser to the President, who converted to Judaism when she married Jared Kushner; David Friedman, Trump lawyer and Ambassador to Israel; Jason Greenblatt, Trump Organization executive vice president and chief legal officer, who was made Special Representative for International Negotiations and the Israeli-Palestinian Conflict; Rod Rosenstein, Deputy Attorney General; Elliot Abrams, Special Representative for Venezuela, then Iran; John Eisenberg, National Security Council Legal Adviser and Deputy Council to the President for National Security Affairs; Anne Neuberger, Deputy National Manager, National Security Agency; Ezra Cohen-Watnick, Acting Under Secretary of Defense for Intelligence; Elan Carr, Special Envoy to monitor and combat anti-Semitism; Len Khodorkovsky, Deputy Special Envoy to monitor and combat anti-Semitism; Reed Cordish, Assistant to the President, Intragovernmental and Technology Initiatives. Trump Vice President Mike Pence and Secretary of State Mike Pompeo, both Christian Zionists, were also vehement supporters of Israel and its goals and ambitions.

Donald 'free-speech believer' Trump pardoned a number of financial and violent criminals while ignoring calls to pardon Julian Assange and Edward Snowden whose crimes are revealing highly relevant information about government manipulation and corruption and the widespread illegal surveillance of the American people by US 'security' agencies. It's so good to know that Trump is on the side of freedom and justice and not mega-criminals with

allegiance to Sabbatian-controlled Israel. These included a pardon for Israeli spy Jonathan Pollard who was jailed for life in 1987 under the Espionage Act. Aviem Sella, the Mossad agent who recruited Pollard, was also pardoned by Trump while Assange sat in jail and Snowden remained in exile in Russia. Sella had 'fled' (was helped to escape) to Israel in 1987 and was never extradited despite being charged under the Espionage Act. A Trump White House statement said that Sella's clemency had been 'supported by Benjamin Netanyahu, Ron Dermer, Israel's US Ambassador, David Friedman, US Ambassador to Israel and Miriam Adelson, wife of leading Trump donor Sheldon Adelson who died shortly before. Other friends of Jared Kushner were pardoned along with Sholom Weiss who was believed to be serving the longest-ever white-collar prison sentence of more than 800 years in 2000. The sentence was commuted of Ponzi-schemer Eliyahu Weinstein who defrauded Jews and others out of \$200 million. I did mention that Assange and Snowden were ignored, right? Trump gave Sabbatians almost everything they asked for in military and political support, moving the US Embassy from Tel Aviv to Jerusalem with its critical symbolic and literal implications for Palestinian statehood, and the 'deal of the Century' designed by Jared Kushner and David Friedman which gave the Sabbatian Israeli government the green light to substantially expand its already widespread program of building illegal Jewish-only settlements in the occupied land of the West Bank. This made a two-state 'solution' impossible by seizing all the land of a potential Palestinian homeland and that had been the plan since 1948 and then 1967 when the Arab-controlled Gaza Strip, West Bank, Sinai Peninsula and Syrian Golan Heights were occupied by Israel. All the talks about talks and road maps and delays have been buying time until the West Bank was physically occupied by Israeli real estate. Trump would have to be a monumentally ill-informed idiot not to see that this was the plan he was helping to complete. The Trump administration was in so many ways the Kushner administration which means the Netanyahu administration which means the Sabbatian administration. I understand why many opposing Cult fascism in all its forms gravitated to Trump, but he

was a crucial part of the Sabbatian plan and I will deal with this in the next chapter.

## **Joe Biden ('Democrat')**

A barely cognitive Joe Biden took over the presidency in January, 2021, along with his fellow empty shell, Vice-President Kamala Harris, as the latest Sabbatian gofers to enter the White House. Names on the door may have changed and the 'party' – the force behind them remained the same as Zionists were appointed to a stream of pivotal areas relating to Sabbatian plans and policy. They included: Janet Yellen, Treasury Secretary, former head of the Federal Reserve, and still another ultra-Zionist running the US Treasury after Mnuchin (Trump), Lew and Geithner (Obama), and Summers and Rubin (Clinton); Anthony Blinken, Secretary of State; Wendy Sherman, Deputy Secretary of State (so that's 'Biden's' Sabbatian foreign policy sorted); Jeff Zients, White House coronavirus coordinator; Rochelle Walensky, head of the Centers for Disease Control; Rachel Levine, transgender deputy health secretary (that's 'Covid' hoax policy under control); Merrick Garland, Attorney General; Alejandro Mayorkas, Secretary of Homeland Security; Cass Sunstein, Homeland Security with responsibility for new immigration laws; Avril Haines, Director of National Intelligence; Anne Neuberger, National Security Agency cybersecurity director (note, cybersecurity); David Cohen, CIA Deputy Director; Ronald Klain, Biden's Chief of Staff (see Rahm Emanuel); Eric Lander, a 'leading geneticist', Office of Science and Technology Policy director (see Smart Grid, synthetic biology agenda); Jessica Rosenworcel, acting head of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) which controls Smart Grid technology policy and electromagnetic communication systems including 5G. How can it be that so many pivotal positions are held by two-percent of the American population and 0.2 percent of the world population administration after administration no matter who is the president and what is the party? It's a coincidence? Of course it's not and this is why Sabbatians have built their colossal global web of interlocking 'anti-

hate' hate groups to condemn anyone who asks these glaring questions as an 'anti-Semite'. The way that Jewish people horrifically abused in Sabbatian-backed Nazi Germany are exploited to this end is stomach-turning and disgusting beyond words.

## **Political fusion**

Sabbatian manipulation has reversed the roles of Republicans and Democrats and the same has happened in Britain with the Conservative and Labour Parties. Republicans and Conservatives were always labelled the 'right' and Democrats and Labour the 'left', but look at the policy positions now and the Democrat-Labour 'left' has moved further to the 'right' than Republicans and Conservatives under the banner of 'Woke', the Cult-created far-right tyranny. Where once the Democrat-Labour 'left' defended free speech and human rights they now seek to delete them and as I said earlier despite the 'Covid' fascism of the Jackboot Johnson Conservative government in the UK the Labour Party of leader Keir Starmer demanded even more extreme measures. The Labour Party has been very publicly absorbed by Sabbatians after a political and media onslaught against the previous leader, the weak and inept Jeremy Corbyn, over made-up allegations of 'anti-Semitism' both by him and his party. The plan was clear with this 'anti-Semite' propaganda and what was required in response was a swift and decisive 'fuck off' from Corbyn and a statement to expose the Anti-Semitism Industry (Sabbatian) attempt to silence Labour criticism of the Israeli government (Sabbatians) and purge the party of all dissent against the extremes of ultra-Zionism (Sabbatians). Instead Corbyn and his party fell to their knees and appeased the abusers which, by definition, is impossible. Appeasing one demand leads only to a new demand to be appeased until takeover is complete. Like I say – 'fuck off' would have been a much more effective policy and I have used it myself with great effect over the years when Sabbatians are on my case which is most of the time. I consider that fact a great compliment, by the way. The outcome of the Labour Party capitulation is that we now have a Sabbatian-controlled

Conservative Party ‘opposed’ by a Sabbatian-controlled Labour Party in a one-party Sabbatian state that hurtles towards the extremes of tyranny (the Sabbatian cult agenda). In America the situation is the same. Labour’s Keir Starmer spends his days on his knees with his tongue out pointing to Tel Aviv, or I guess now Jerusalem, while Boris Johnson has an ‘anti-Semitism czar’ in the form of former Labour MP John Mann who keeps Starmer company on his prayer mat.

Sabbatian influence can be seen in Jewish members of the Labour Party who have been ejected for criticism of Israel including those from families that suffered in Nazi Germany. Sabbatians despise real Jewish people and target them even more harshly because it is so much more difficult to dub them ‘anti-Semitic’ although in their desperation they do try.

## CHAPTER THREE

### The Pushbacker sting

*Until you realize how easy it is for your mind to be manipulated, you remain the puppet of someone else's game*

Evita Ochel

I will use the presidencies of Trump and Biden to show how the manipulation of the one-party state plays out behind the illusion of political choice across the world. No two presidencies could – on the face of it – be more different and apparently at odds in terms of direction and policy.

A Renegade Mind sees beyond the obvious and focuses on outcomes and consequences and not image, words and waffle. The Cult embarked on a campaign to divide America between those who blindly support its agenda (the mentality known as 'Woke') and those who are pushing back on where the Cult and its Sabbatians want to go. This presents infinite possibilities for dividing and ruling the population by setting them at war with each other and allows a perceptual ring fence of demonisation to encircle the Pushbackers in a modern version of the Little Big Horn in 1876 when American cavalry led by Lieutenant Colonel George Custer were drawn into a trap, surrounded and killed by Native American tribes defending their land of thousands of years from being seized by the government. In this modern version the roles are reversed and it's those defending themselves from the Sabbatian government who are surrounded and the government that's seeking to destroy them. This trap was set years ago and to explain how we must return to 2016

and the emergence of Donald Trump as a candidate to be President of the United States. He set out to overcome the best part of 20 other candidates in the Republican Party before and during the primaries and was not considered by many in those early stages to have a prayer of living in the White House. The Republican Party was said to have great reservations about Trump and yet somehow he won the nomination. When you know how American politics works – politics in general – there is no way that Trump could have become the party's candidate unless the Sabbatian-controlled 'Neocons' that run the Republican Party wanted that to happen. We saw the proof in emails and documents made public by WikiLeaks that the Democratic Party hierarchy, or Democons, systematically undermined the campaign of Bernie Sanders to make sure that Sabbatian gofer Hillary Clinton won the nomination to be their presidential candidate. If the Democons could do that then the Neocons in the Republican Party could have derailed Trump in the same way. But they didn't and at that stage I began to conclude that Trump could well be the one chosen to be president. If that was the case the 'why' was pretty clear to see – the goal of dividing America between Cult agenda-supporting Wokers and Pushbackers who gravitated to Trump because he was telling them what they wanted to hear. His constituency of support had been increasingly ignored and voiceless for decades and profoundly through the eight years of Sabbatian puppet Barack Obama. Now here was someone speaking their language of pulling back from the incessant globalisation of political and economic power, the exporting of American jobs to China and elsewhere by 'American' (Sabbatian) corporations, the deletion of free speech, and the mass immigration policies that had further devastated job opportunities for the urban working class of all races and the once American heartlands of the Midwest.

### **Beware the forked tongue**

Those people collectively sighed with relief that at last a political leader was apparently on their side, but another trait of the Renegade Mind is that you look even harder at people telling you

what you want to hear than those who are telling you otherwise. Obviously as I said earlier people wish what they want to hear to be true and genuine and they are much more likely to believe that than someone saying what they don't want to here and don't want to be true. Sales people are taught to be skilled in eliciting by calculated questioning what their customers want to hear and repeating that back to them as their own opinion to get their targets to like and trust them. Assets of the Cult are also sales people in the sense of selling perception. To read Cult manipulation you have to play the long and expanded game and not fall for the Vaudeville show of party politics. Both American parties are vehicles for the Cult and they exploit them in different ways depending on what the agenda requires at that moment. Trump and the Republicans were used to be the focus of dividing America and isolating Pushbackers to open the way for a Biden presidency to become the most extreme in American history by advancing the full-blown Woke (Cult) agenda with the aim of destroying and silencing Pushbackers now labelled Nazi Trump supporters and white supremacists.

Sabbatians wanted Trump in office for the reasons described by ultra-Zionist Saul Alinsky (1909-1972) who was promoting the Woke philosophy through 'community organising' long before anyone had heard of it. In those days it still went by its traditional name of Marxism. The reason for the manipulated Trump phenomenon was laid out in Alinsky's 1971 book, *Rules for Radicals*, which was his blueprint for overthrowing democratic and other regimes and replacing them with Sabbatian Marxism. Not surprisingly his to-do list was evident in the Sabbatian French and Russian 'Revolutions' and that in China which will become very relevant in the next chapter about the 'Covid' hoax. Among Alinsky's followers have been the deeply corrupt Barack Obama, House Speaker Nancy Pelosi and Hillary Clinton who described him as a 'hero'. All three are Sabbatian stooges with Pelosi personifying the arrogant corrupt idiocy that so widely fronts up for the Cult inner core. Predictably as a Sabbatian advocate of the 'light-bringer' Alinsky features Lucifer on the dedication page of his book as the original radical who gained

his own kingdom ('Earth' as we shall see). One of Alinsky's golden radical rules was to pick an individual and focus all attention, hatred and blame on them and not to target faceless bureaucracies and corporations. *Rules for Radicals* is really a Sabbatian handbook with its contents repeatedly employed all over the world for centuries and why wouldn't Sabbatians bring to power their designer-villain to be used as the individual on which all attention, hatred and blame was bestowed? This is what they did and the only question for me is how much Trump knew that and how much he was manipulated. A bit of both, I suspect. This was Alinsky's Trump technique from a man who died in 1972. The technique has spanned history:

Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, polarize it. Don't try to attack abstract corporations or bureaucracies. Identify a responsible individual. Ignore attempts to shift or spread the blame.

From the moment Trump came to illusory power everything was about him. It wasn't about Republican policy or opinion, but all about Trump. Everything he did was presented in negative, derogatory and abusive terms by the Sabbatian-dominated media led by Cult operations such as CNN, MSNBC, *The New York Times* and the Jeff Bezos-owned *Washington Post* – 'Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, polarize it.' Trump was turned into a demon to be vilified by those who hated him and a demi-god loved by those who worshipped him. This, in turn, had his supporters, too, presented as equally demonic in preparation for the punchline later down the line when Biden was about to take office. It was here's a Trump, there's a Trump, everywhere a Trump, Trump. Virtually every news story or happening was filtered through the lens of 'The Donald'. You loved him or hated him and which one you chose was said to define you as Satan's spawn or a paragon of virtue. Even supporting some Trump policies or statements and not others was enough for an assault on your character. No shades of grey were or are allowed. Everything is black and white (literally and figuratively). A Californian I knew had her head utterly scrambled by her hatred for Trump while telling people they should love each other. She was so totally consumed by

Trump Derangement Syndrome as it became to be known that this glaring contradiction would never have occurred to her. By definition anyone who criticised Trump or praised his opponents was a hero and this lady described Joe Biden as 'a kind, honest gentleman' when he's a provable liar, mega-crook and vicious piece of work to boot. Sabbatians had indeed divided America using Trump as the fall-guy and all along the clock was ticking on the consequences for his supporters.

### **In hock to his masters**

Trump gave Sabbatians via Israel almost everything they wanted in his four years. Ask and you shall receive was the dynamic between himself and Benjamin Netanyahu orchestrated by Trump's ultra-Zionist son-in-law Jared Kushner, his ultra-Zionist Ambassador to Israel, David Friedman, and ultra-Zionist 'Israel adviser', Jason Greenblatt. The last two were central to the running and protecting from collapse of his business empire, the Trump Organisation, and colossal business failures made him forever beholden to Sabbatian networks that bailed him out. By the start of the 1990s Trump owed \$4 billion to banks that he couldn't pay and almost \$1 billion of that was down to him personally and not his companies. This mega-disaster was the result of building two new casinos in Atlantic City and buying the enormous Taj Mahal operation which led to crippling debt payments. He had borrowed fantastic sums from 72 banks with major Sabbatian connections and although the scale of debt should have had him living in a tent alongside the highway they never foreclosed. A plan was devised to lift Trump from the mire by BT Securities Corporation and Rothschild Inc. and the case was handled by Wilber Ross who had worked for the Rothschilds for 27 years. Ross would be named US Commerce Secretary after Trump's election. Another crucial figure in saving Trump was ultra-Zionist 'investor' Carl Icahn who bought the Taj Mahal casino. Icahn was made special economic adviser on financial regulation in the Trump administration. He didn't stay long but still managed to find time to make a tidy sum of a reported \$31.3 million when he sold his

holdings affected by the price of steel three days before Trump imposed a 235 percent tariff on steel imports. What amazing bits of luck these people have. Trump and Sabbatian operatives have long had a close association and his mentor and legal adviser from the early 1970s until 1986 was the dark and genetically corrupt ultra-Zionist Roy Cohn who was chief counsel to Senator Joseph McCarthy's 'communist' witch-hunt in the 1950s. *Esquire* magazine published an article about Cohn with the headline 'Don't mess with Roy Cohn'. He was described as the most feared lawyer in New York and 'a ruthless master of dirty tricks ... [with] ... more than one Mafia Don on speed dial'. Cohn's influence, contacts, support and protection made Trump a front man for Sabbatians in New York with their connections to one of Cohn's many criminal employers, the 'Russian' Sabbatian Mafia. Israel-centric media mogul Rupert Murdoch was introduced to Trump by Cohn and they started a long friendship. Cohn died in 1986 weeks after being disbarred for unethical conduct by the Appellate Division of the New York State Supreme Court. The wheels of justice do indeed run slow given the length of Cohn's crooked career.

## **QAnon-sense**

We are asked to believe that Donald Trump with his fundamental connections to Sabbatian networks and operatives has been leading the fight to stop the Sabbatian agenda for the fascistic control of America and the world. Sure he has. A man entrapped during his years in the White House by Sabbatian operatives and whose biggest financial donor was casino billionaire Sheldon Adelson who was Sabbatian to his DNA?? Oh, do come on. Trump has been used to divide America and isolate Pushbackers on the Cult agenda under the heading of 'Trump supporters', 'insurrectionists' and 'white supremacists'. The US Intelligence/Mossad Psyop or psychological operation known as QAnon emerged during the Trump years as a central pillar in the Sabbatian campaign to lead Pushbackers into the trap set by those that wished to destroy them. I knew from the start that QAnon was a scam because I had seen the same scenario many

times before over 30 years under different names and I had written about one in particular in the books. ‘Not again’ was my reaction when QAnon came to the fore. The same script is pulled out every few years and a new name added to the letterhead. The story always takes the same form: ‘Insiders’ or ‘the good guys’ in the government-intelligence-military ‘Deep State’ apparatus were going to instigate mass arrests of the ‘bad guys’ which would include the Rockefellers, Rothschilds, Barack Obama, Hillary Clinton, George Soros, etc., etc. Dates are given for when the ‘good guys’ are going to move in, but the dates pass without incident and new dates are given which pass without incident. The central message to Pushbackers in each case is that they don’t have to do anything because there is ‘a plan’ and it is all going to be sorted by the ‘good guys’ on the inside. ‘Trust the plan’ was a QAnon mantra when the only plan was to misdirect Pushbackers into putting their trust in a Psyop they believed to be real. Beware, beware, those who tell you what you want to hear and always check it out. Right up to Biden’s inauguration QAnon was still claiming that ‘the Storm’ was coming and Trump would stay on as president when Biden and his cronies were arrested and jailed. It was never going to happen and of course it didn’t, but what did happen as a result provided that punchline to the Sabbatian Trump/QAnon Psyop.

On January 6th, 2021, a very big crowd of Trump supporters gathered in the National Mall in Washington DC down from the Capitol Building to protest at what they believed to be widespread corruption and vote fraud that stopped Trump being re-elected for a second term as president in November, 2020. I say as someone that does not support Trump or Biden that the evidence is clear that major vote-fixing went on to favour Biden, a man with cognitive problems so advanced he can often hardly string a sentence together without reading the words written for him on the Teleprompter. Glaring ballot discrepancies included serious questions about electronic voting machines that make vote rigging a comparative cinch and hundreds of thousands of paper votes that suddenly appeared during already advanced vote counts and virtually all of

them for Biden. Early Trump leads in crucial swing states suddenly began to close and disappear. The pandemic hoax was used as the excuse to issue almost limitless numbers of mail-in ballots with no checks to establish that the recipients were still alive or lived at that address. They were sent to streams of people who had not even asked for them. Private organisations were employed to gather these ballots and who knows what they did with them before they turned up at the counts. The American election system has been manipulated over decades to become a sick joke with more holes than a Swiss cheese for the express purpose of dictating the results. Then there was the criminal manipulation of information by Sabbatian tech giants like Facebook, Twitter and Google-owned YouTube which deleted pro-Trump, anti-Biden accounts and posts while everything in support of Biden was left alone. Sabbatians wanted Biden to win because after the dividing of America it was time for full-on Woke and every aspect of the Cult agenda to be unleashed.

### **Hunter gatherer**

Extreme Silicon Valley bias included blocking information by the *New York Post* exposing a Biden scandal that should have ended his bid for president in the final weeks of the campaign. Hunter Biden, his monumentally corrupt son, is reported to have sent a laptop to be repaired at a local store and failed to return for it. Time passed until the laptop became the property of the store for non-payment of the bill. When the owner saw what was on the hard drive he gave a copy to the FBI who did nothing even though it confirmed widespread corruption in which the Joe Biden family were using his political position, especially when he was vice president to Obama, to make multiple millions in countries around the world and most notably Ukraine and China. Hunter Biden's one-time business partner Tony Bobulinski went public when the story broke in the *New York Post* to confirm the corruption he saw and that Joe Biden not only knew what was going on he also profited from the spoils. Millions were handed over by a Chinese company with close

connections – like all major businesses in China – to the Chinese communist party of President Xi Jinping. Joe Biden even boasted at a meeting of the Cult's World Economic Forum that as vice president he had ordered the government of Ukraine to fire a prosecutor. What he didn't mention was that the same man just happened to be investigating an energy company which was part of Hunter Biden's corrupt portfolio. The company was paying him big bucks for no other reason than the influence his father had. Overnight Biden's presidential campaign should have been over given that he had lied publicly about not knowing what his son was doing. Instead almost the entire Sabbatian-owned mainstream media and Sabbatian-owned Silicon Valley suppressed circulation of the story. This alone went a mighty way to rigging the election of 2020. Cult assets like Mark Zuckerberg at Facebook also spent hundreds of millions to be used in support of Biden and vote 'administration'.

The Cult had used Trump as the focus to divide America and was now desperate to bring in moronic, pliable, corrupt Biden to complete the double-whammy. No way were they going to let little things like the will of the people thwart their plan. Silicon Valley widely censored claims that the election was rigged because it *was* rigged. For the same reason anyone claiming it was rigged was denounced as a 'white supremacist' including the pathetically few Republican politicians willing to say so. Right across the media where the claim was mentioned it was described as a 'false claim' even though these excuses for 'journalists' would have done no research into the subject whatsoever. Trump won seven million more votes than any sitting president had ever achieved while somehow a cognitively-challenged soon to be 78-year-old who was hidden away from the public for most of the campaign managed to win more votes than any presidential candidate in history. It makes no sense. You only had to see election rallies for both candidates to witness the enthusiasm for Trump and the apathy for Biden. Tens of thousands would attend Trump events while Biden was speaking in empty car parks with often only television crews attending and framing their shots to hide the fact that no one was there. It was pathetic to see

footage come to light of Biden standing at a podium making speeches only to TV crews and party fixers while reading the words written for him on massive Teleprompter screens. So, yes, those protestors on January 6th had a point about election rigging, but some were about to walk into a trap laid for them in Washington by the Cult Deep State and its QAnon Psyop. This was the Capitol Hill riot ludicrously dubbed an ‘insurrection’.

## **The spider and the fly**

Renegade Minds know there are not two ‘sides’ in politics, only one side, the Cult, working through all ‘sides’. It’s a stage show, a puppet show, to direct the perceptions of the population into focusing on diversions like parties and candidates while missing the puppeteers with their hands holding all the strings. The Capitol Hill ‘insurrection’ brings us back to the Little Big Horn. Having created two distinct opposing groupings – Woke and Pushbackers – the trap was about to be sprung. Pushbackers were to be encircled and isolated by associating them all in the public mind with Trump and then labelling Trump as some sort of Confederate leader. I knew immediately that the Capitol riot was a set-up because of two things. One was how easy the rioters got into the building with virtually no credible resistance and secondly I could see – as with the ‘Covid’ hoax in the West at the start of 2020 – how the Cult could exploit the situation to move its agenda forward with great speed. My experience of Cult techniques and activities over more than 30 years has showed me that while they do exploit situations they haven’t themselves created this never happens with events of fundamental agenda significance. Every time major events giving cultists the excuse to rapidly advance their plan you find they are manipulated into being for the specific reason of providing that excuse – Problem-Reaction-Solution. Only a tiny minority of the huge crowd of Washington protestors sought to gain entry to the Capitol by smashing windows and breaching doors. That didn’t matter. The whole crowd and all Pushbackers, even if they did not support Trump, were going to be lumped together as dangerous

insurrectionists and conspiracy theorists. The latter term came into widespread use through a CIA memo in the 1960s aimed at discrediting those questioning the nonsensical official story of the Kennedy assassination and it subsequently became widely employed by the media. It's still being used by inept 'journalists' with no idea of its origin to discredit anyone questioning anything that authority claims to be true. When you are perpetrating a conspiracy you need to discredit the very word itself even though the dictionary definition of conspiracy is merely 'the activity of secretly planning with other people to do something bad or illegal' and 'a general agreement to keep silent about a subject for the purpose of keeping it secret'. On that basis there are conspiracies almost wherever you look. For obvious reasons the Cult and its lapdog media have to claim there are no conspiracies even though the word appears in state laws as with conspiracy to defraud, to murder, and to corrupt public morals.

Agent provocateurs are widely used by the Cult Deep State to manipulate genuine people into acting in ways that suit the desired outcome. By genuine in this case I mean protestors genuinely supporting Trump and claims that the election was stolen. In among them, however, were agents of the state wearing the garb of Trump supporters and QAnon to pump-prime the Capitol riot which some genuine Trump supporters naively fell for. I described the situation as 'Come into my parlour said the spider to the fly'. Leaflets appeared through the Woke paramilitary arm Antifa, the anti-fascist fascists, calling on supporters to turn up in Washington looking like Trump supporters even though they hated him. Some of those arrested for breaching the Capitol Building were sourced to Antifa and its stable mate Black Lives Matter. Both organisations are funded by Cult billionaires and corporations. One man charged for the riot was according to his lawyer a former FBI agent who had held top secret security clearance for 40 years. Attorney Thomas Plofchan said of his client, 66-year-old Thomas Edward Caldwell:

He has held a Top Secret Security Clearance since 1979 and has undergone multiple Special Background Investigations in support of his clearances. After retiring from the Navy, he

worked as a section chief for the Federal Bureau of Investigation from 2009-2010 as a GS-12 [mid-level employee].

He also formed and operated a consulting firm performing work, often classified, for U.S government customers including the US Drug Enforcement Agency, Department of Housing and Urban Development, the US Coast Guard, and the US Army Personnel Command.

A judge later released Caldwell pending trial in the absence of evidence about a conspiracy or that he tried to force his way into the building. *The New York Post* reported a 'law enforcement source' as saying that 'at least two known Antifa members were spotted' on camera among Trump supporters during the riot while one of the rioters arrested was John Earle Sullivan, a seriously extreme Black Lives Matter Trump-hater from Utah who was previously arrested and charged in July, 2020, over a BLM-Antifa riot in which drivers were threatened and one was shot. Sullivan is the founder of Utah-based Insurgence USA which is an affiliate of the Cult-created-and-funded Black Lives Matter movement. Footage appeared and was then deleted by Twitter of Trump supporters calling out Antifa infiltrators and a group was filmed changing into pro-Trump clothing before the riot. Security at the building was *pathetic* – as planned. Colonel Leroy Fletcher Prouty, a man with long experience in covert operations working with the US security apparatus, once described the tell-tale sign to identify who is involved in an assassination. He said:

No one has to direct an assassination – it happens. The active role is played secretly by permitting it to happen. This is the greatest single clue. Who has the power to call off or reduce the usual security precautions?

This principle applies to many other situations and certainly to the Capitol riot of January 6th, 2021.

## **The sting**

With such a big and potentially angry crowd known to be gathering near the Capitol the security apparatus would have had a major police detail to defend the building with National Guard troops on

standby given the strength of feeling among people arriving from all over America encouraged by the QAnon Psyop and statements by Donald Trump. Instead Capitol Police ‘security’ was flimsy, weak, and easily breached. The same number of officers was deployed as on a regular day and that is a blatant red flag. They were not staffed or equipped for a possible riot that had been an obvious possibility in the circumstances. No protective and effective fencing worth the name was put in place and there were no contingency plans. The whole thing was basically a case of standing aside and waving people in. Once inside police mostly backed off apart from one Capitol police officer who ridiculously shot dead unarmed Air Force veteran protestor Ashli Babbitt without a warning as she climbed through a broken window. The ‘investigation’ refused to name or charge the officer after what must surely be considered a murder in the circumstances. They just lifted a carpet and swept. The story was endlessly repeated about five people dying in the ‘armed insurrection’ when there was no report of rioters using weapons. Apart from Babbitt the other four died from a heart attack, strokes and apparently a drug overdose. Capitol police officer Brian Sicknick was reported to have died after being bludgeoned with a fire extinguisher when he was alive after the riot was over and died later of what the Washington Medical Examiner’s Office said was a stroke. Sicknick had no external injuries. The lies were delivered like rapid fire. There was a narrative to build with incessant repetition of the lie until the lie became the accepted ‘everybody knows that’ truth. The ‘Big Lie’ technique of Nazi Propaganda Minister Joseph Goebbels is constantly used by the Cult which was behind the Nazis and is today behind the ‘Covid’ and ‘climate change’ hoaxes. Goebbels said:

If you tell a lie big enough and keep repeating it, people will eventually come to believe it. The lie can be maintained only for such time as the State can shield the people from the political, economic and/or military consequences of the lie. It thus becomes vitally important for the State to use all of its powers to repress dissent, for the truth is the mortal enemy of the lie, and thus by extension, the truth is the greatest enemy of the State.

Most protestors had a free run of the Capitol Building. This allowed pictures to be taken of rioters in iconic parts of the building including the Senate chamber which could be used as propaganda images against all Pushbackers. One Congresswoman described the scene as ‘the worst kind of non-security anybody could ever imagine’. Well, the first part was true, but someone obviously did imagine it and made sure it happened. Some photographs most widely circulated featured people wearing QAnon symbols and now the Psyop would be used to dub all QAnon followers with the ubiquitous fit-all label of ‘white supremacist’ and ‘insurrectionists’. When a Muslim extremist called Noah Green drove his car at two police officers at the Capitol Building killing one in April, 2021, there was no such political and media hysteria. They were just disappointed he wasn’t white.

## **The witch-hunt**

Government prosecutor Michael Sherwin, an aggressive, dark-eyed, professional Rottweiler led the ‘investigation’ and to call it over the top would be to underestimate reality a thousand fold. Hundreds were tracked down and arrested for the crime of having the wrong political views and people were jailed who had done nothing more than walk in the building, committed no violence or damage to property, took a few pictures and left. They were labelled a ‘threat to the Republic’ while Biden sat in the White House signing executive orders written for him that were dismantling ‘the Republic’. Even when judges ruled that a mother and son should not be in jail the government kept them there. Some of those arrested have been badly beaten by prison guards in Washington and lawyers for one man said he suffered a fractured skull and was made blind in one eye. Meanwhile a woman is shot dead for no reason by a Capitol Police officer and we are not allowed to know who he is never mind what has happened to him although that will be *nothing*. The Cult’s QAnon/Trump sting to identify and isolate Pushbackers and then target them on the road to crushing and deleting them was a resounding success. You would have thought the Russians had

invaded the building at gunpoint and lined up senators for a firing squad to see the political and media reaction. Congresswoman Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez is a child in a woman's body, a terrible-twos, me, me, me, Woker narcissist of such proportions that words have no meaning. She said she thought she was going to die when 'insurrectionists' banged on her office door. It turned out she wasn't even in the Capitol Building when the riot was happening and the 'banging' was a Capitol Police officer. She referred to herself as a 'survivor' which is an insult to all those true survivors of violent and sexual abuse while she lives her pampered and privileged life talking drivel for a living. Her Woke colleague and fellow mega-narcissist Rashida Tlaib broke down describing the devastating effect on her, too, of *not being* in the building when the rioters were there. Ocasio-Cortez and Tlaib are members of a fully-Woke group of Congresswomen known as 'The Squad' along with Ilhan Omar and Ayanna Pressley. The Squad from what I can see can be identified by its vehement anti-white racism, anti-white men agenda, and, as always in these cases, the absence of brain cells on active duty.

The usual suspects were on the riot case immediately in the form of Democrat ultra-Zionist senators and operatives Chuck Schumer and Adam Schiff demanding that Trump be impeached for 'his part in the insurrection'. The same pair of prats had led the failed impeachment of Trump over the invented 'Russia collusion' nonsense which claimed Russia had helped Trump win the 2016 election. I didn't realise that Tel Aviv had been relocated just outside Moscow. I must find an up-to-date map. The Russia hoax was a Sabbatian operation to keep Trump occupied and impotent and to stop any rapport with Russia which the Cult wants to retain as a perceptual enemy to be pulled out at will. Puppet Biden began attacking Russia when he came to office as the Cult seeks more upheaval, division and war across the world. A two-year stage show 'Russia collusion inquiry' headed by the not-very-bright former 9/11 FBI chief Robert Mueller, with support from 19 lawyers, 40 FBI agents plus intelligence analysts, forensic accountants and other

staff, devoured tens of millions of dollars and found no evidence of Russia collusion which a ten-year-old could have told them on day one. Now the same moronic Schumer and Schiff wanted a second impeachment of Trump over the Capitol ‘insurrection’ (riot) which the arrested development of Schumer called another ‘Pearl Harbor’ while others compared it with 9/11 in which 3,000 died and, in the case of CNN, with the Rwandan genocide in the 1990s in which an estimated 500,000 to 600,000 were murdered, between 250, 000 and 500,000 women were raped, and populations of whole towns were hacked to death with machetes. To make those comparisons purely for Cult political reasons is beyond insulting to those that suffered and lost their lives and confirms yet again the callous inhumanity that we are dealing with. Schumer is a monumental idiot and so is Schiff, but they serve the Cult agenda and do whatever they’re told so they get looked after. Talking of idiots – another inane man who spanned the Russia and Capitol impeachment attempts was Senator Eric Swalwell who had the nerve to accuse Trump of collusion with the Russians while sleeping with a Chinese spy called Christine Fang or ‘Fang Fang’ which is straight out of a Bond film no doubt starring Klaus Schwab as the bloke living on a secret island and controlling laser weapons positioned in space and pointing at world capitals. Fang Fang plays the part of Bond’s infiltrator girlfriend which I’m sure she would enjoy rather more than sharing a bed with the brainless Swalwell, lying back and thinking of China. The FBI eventually warned Swalwell about Fang Fang which gave her time to escape back to the Chinese dictatorship. How very thoughtful of them. The second Trump impeachment also failed and hardly surprising when an impeachment is supposed to remove a sitting president and by the time it happened Trump was no longer president. These people are running your country America, well, officially anyway. Terrifying isn’t it?

## **Outcomes tell the story - always**

The outcome of all this – and it’s the *outcome* on which Renegade Minds focus, not the words – was that a vicious, hysterical and

obviously pre-planned assault was launched on Pushbackers to censor, silence and discredit them and even targeted their right to earn a living. They have since been condemned as 'domestic terrorists' that need to be treated like Al-Qaeda and Islamic State. 'Domestic terrorists' is a label the Cult has been trying to make stick since the period of the Oklahoma bombing in 1995 which was blamed on 'far-right domestic terrorists'. If you read *The Trigger* you will see that the bombing was clearly a Problem-Reaction-Solution carried out by the Deep State during a Bill Clinton administration so corrupt that no dictionary definition of the term would even nearly suffice. Nearly 30,000 troops were deployed from all over America to the empty streets of Washington for Biden's inauguration. Ten thousand of them stayed on with the pretext of protecting the capital from insurrectionists when it was more psychological programming to normalise the use of the military in domestic law enforcement in support of the Cult plan for a police-military state. Biden's fascist administration began a purge of 'wrong-thinkers' in the military which means anyone that is not on board with Woke. The Capitol Building was surrounded by a fence with razor wire and the Land of the Free was further symbolically and literally dismantled. The circle was completed with the installation of Biden and the exploitation of the QAnon Psyop.

America had never been so divided since the civil war of the 19th century, Pushbackers were isolated and dubbed terrorists and now, as was always going to happen, the Cult immediately set about deleting what little was left of freedom and transforming American society through a swish of the hand of the most controlled 'president' in American history leading (officially at least) the most extreme regime since the country was declared an independent state on July 4th, 1776. Biden issued undebated, dictatorial executive orders almost by the hour in his opening days in office across the whole spectrum of the Cult wish-list including diluting controls on the border with Mexico allowing thousands of migrants to illegally enter the United States to transform the demographics of America and import an election-changing number of perceived Democrat

voters. Then there were Biden deportation amnesties for the already illegally resident (estimated to be as high as 20 or even 30 million). A bill before Congress awarded American citizenship to anyone who could prove they had worked in agriculture for just 180 days in the previous two years as 'Big Ag' secured its slave labour long-term. There were the plans to add new states to the union such as Puerto Rico and making Washington DC a state. They are all parts of a plan to ensure that the Cult-owned Woke Democrats would be permanently in power.

## **Border – what border?**

I have exposed in detail in other books how mass immigration into the United States and Europe is the work of Cult networks fuelled by the tens of billions spent to this and other ends by George Soros and his global Open Society (open borders) Foundations. The impact can be seen in America alone where the population has increased by *100 million* in little more than 30 years mostly through immigration. I wrote in *The Answer* that the plan was to have so many people crossing the southern border that the numbers become unstoppable and we are now there under Cult-owned Biden. El Salvador in Central America puts the scale of what is happening into context. A third of the population now lives in the United States, much of it illegally, and many more are on the way. The methodology is to crush Central and South American countries economically and spread violence through machete-wielding psychopathic gangs like MS-13 based in El Salvador and now operating in many American cities. Biden-imposed lax security at the southern border means that it is all but open. He said before his 'election' that he wanted to see a surge towards the border if he became president and that was the green light for people to do just that after election day to create the human disaster that followed for both America and the migrants. When that surge came the imbecilic Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez said it wasn't a 'surge' because they are 'children, not insurgents' and the term 'surge' (used by Biden) was a claim of 'white supremacists'.

This disingenuous lady may one day enter the realm of the most basic intelligence, but it won't be any time soon.

Sabbatians and the Cult are in the process of destroying America by importing violent people and gangs in among the genuine to terrorise American cities and by overwhelming services that cannot cope with the sheer volume of new arrivals. Something similar is happening in Europe as Western society in general is targeted for demographic and cultural transformation and upheaval. The plan demands violence and crime to create an environment of intimidation, fear and division and Soros has been funding the election of district attorneys across America who then stop prosecuting many crimes, reduce sentences for violent crimes and free as many violent criminals as they can. Sabbatians are creating the chaos from which order – their order – can respond in a classic Problem-Reaction-Solution. A Freemasonic moto says ‘Ordo Ab Chao’ (Order out of Chaos) and this is why the Cult is constantly creating chaos to impose a new ‘order’. Here you have the reason the Cult is constantly creating chaos. The ‘Covid’ hoax can be seen with those entering the United States by plane being forced to take a ‘Covid’ test while migrants flooding through southern border processing facilities do not. Nothing is put in the way of mass migration and if that means ignoring the government’s own ‘Covid’ rules then so be it. They know it’s all bullshit anyway. Any pushback on this is denounced as ‘racist’ by Wokers and Sabbatian fronts like the ultra-Zionist Anti-Defamation League headed by the appalling Jonathan Greenblatt which at the same time argues that Israel should not give citizenship and voting rights to more Palestinian Arabs or the ‘Jewish population’ (in truth the Sabbatian network) will lose control of the country.

## **Society-changing numbers**

Biden’s masters have declared that countries like El Salvador are so dangerous that their people must be allowed into the United States for humanitarian reasons when there are fewer murders in large parts of many Central American countries than in US cities like

Baltimore. That is not to say Central America cannot be a dangerous place and Cult-controlled American governments have been making it so since way back, along with the dismantling of economies, in a long-term plan to drive people north into the United States. Parts of Central America are very dangerous, but in other areas the story is being greatly exaggerated to justify relaxing immigration criteria. Migrants are being offered free healthcare and education in the United States as another incentive to head for the border and there is no requirement to be financially independent before you can enter to prevent the resources of America being drained. You can't blame migrants for seeking what they believe will be a better life, but they are being played by the Cult for dark and nefarious ends. The numbers since Biden took office are huge. In February, 2021, more than 100,000 people were known to have tried to enter the US illegally through the southern border (it was 34,000 in the same month in 2020) and in March it was 170,000 – a 418 percent increase on March, 2020. These numbers are only known people, not the ones who get in unseen. The true figure for migrants illegally crossing the border in a single month was estimated by one congressman at 250,000 and that number will only rise under Biden's current policy. Gangs of murdering drug-running thugs that control the Mexican side of the border demand money – thousands of dollars – to let migrants cross the Rio Grande into America. At the same time gun battles are breaking out on the border several times a week between rival Mexican drug gangs (which now operate globally) who are equipped with sophisticated military-grade weapons, grenades and armoured vehicles. While the Capitol Building was being 'protected' from a non-existent 'threat' by thousands of troops, and others were still deployed at the time in the Cult Neocon war in Afghanistan, the southern border of America was left to its fate. This is not incompetence, it is cold calculation.

By March, 2021, there were 17,000 unaccompanied children held at border facilities and many of them are ensnared by people traffickers for paedophile rings and raped on their journey north to America. This is not conjecture – this is fact. Many of those designated

children are in reality teenage boys or older. Meanwhile Wokers posture their self-purity for encouraging poor and tragic people to come to America and face this nightmare both on the journey and at the border with the disgusting figure of House Speaker Nancy Pelosi giving disingenuous speeches about caring for migrants. The woman's evil. Wokers condemned Trump for having children in cages at the border (so did Obama, *Shhhh*), but now they are sleeping on the floor without access to a shower with one border facility 729 percent over capacity. The Biden insanity even proposed flying migrants from the southern border to the northern border with Canada for 'processing'. The whole shambles is being overseen by ultra-Zionist Secretary of Homeland Security, the moronic liar Alejandro Mayorkas, who banned news cameras at border facilities to stop Americans seeing what was happening. Mayorkas said there was not a ban on news crews; it was just that they were not allowed to film. Alongside him at Homeland Security is another ultra-Zionist Cass Sunstein appointed by Biden to oversee new immigration laws. Sunstein despises conspiracy researchers to the point where he suggests they should be banned or *taxed* for having such views. The man is not bonkers or anything. He's perfectly well-adjusted, but adjusted to what is the question. Criticise what is happening and you are a 'white supremacist' when earlier non-white immigrants also oppose the numbers which effect their lives and opportunities. Black people in poor areas are particularly damaged by uncontrolled immigration and the increased competition for work opportunities with those who will work for less. They are also losing voting power as Hispanics become more dominant in former black areas. It's a downward spiral for them while the billionaires behind the policy drone on about how much they care about black people and 'racism'. None of this is about compassion for migrants or black people – that's just wind and air. Migrants are instead being mercilessly exploited to transform America while the countries they leave are losing their future and the same is true in Europe. Mass immigration may now be the work of Woke Democrats, but it can be traced back to the 1986 Immigration Reform and Control Act (it

wasn't) signed into law by Republican hero President Ronald Reagan which gave amnesty to millions living in the United States illegally and other incentives for people to head for the southern border. Here we have the one-party state at work again.

## **Save me syndrome**

Almost every aspect of what I have been exposing as the Cult agenda was on display in even the first days of 'Biden' with silencing of Pushbackers at the forefront of everything. A Renegade Mind will view the Trump years and QAnon in a very different light to their supporters and advocates as the dots are connected. The QAnon/Trump Psyop has given the Cult all it was looking for. We may not know how much, or little, that Trump realised he was being used, but that's a side issue. This pincer movement produced the desired outcome of dividing America and having Pushbackers isolated. To turn this around we have to look at new routes to empowerment which do not include handing our power to other people and groups through what I will call the 'Save Me Syndrome' – 'I want someone else to do it so that I don't have to'. We have seen this at work throughout human history and the QAnon/Trump Psyop is only the latest incarnation alongside all the others. Religion is an obvious expression of this when people look to a 'god' or priest to save them or tell them how to be saved and then there are 'save me' politicians like Trump. Politics is a diversion and not a 'saviour'. It is a means to block positive change, not make it possible.

Save Me Syndrome always comes with the same repeating theme of handing your power to whom or what you believe will save you while your real 'saviour' stares back from the mirror every morning. Renegade Minds are constantly vigilant in this regard and always asking the question 'What can I do?' rather than 'What can someone else do for me?' Gandhi was right when he said: 'You must be the change you want to see in the world.' We are indeed the people we have been waiting for. We are presented with a constant raft of reasons to concede that power to others and forget where the real power is. Humanity has the numbers and the Cult does not. It has to

use diversion and division to target the unstoppable power that comes from unity. Religions, governments, politicians, corporations, media, QAnon, are all different manifestations of this power-diversion and dilution. Refusing to give your power to governments and instead handing it to Trump and QAnon is not to take a new direction, but merely to recycle the old one with new names on the posters. I will explore this phenomenon as we proceed and how to break the cycles and recycles that got us here through the mists of repeating perception and so repeating history.

For now we shall turn to the most potent example in the entire human story of the consequences that follow when you give your power away. I am talking, of course, of the 'Covid' hoax.

## CHAPTER FOUR

### 'Covid': Calculated catastrophe

*Facts are threatening to those invested in fraud*  
DaShanne Stokes

We can easily unravel the real reason for the 'Covid pandemic' hoax by employing the Renegade Mind methodology that I have outlined this far. We'll start by comparing the long-planned Cult outcome with the 'Covid pandemic' outcome. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey.

I have highlighted the plan for the Hunger Games Society which has been in my books for so many years with the very few controlling the very many through ongoing dependency. To create this dependency it is essential to destroy independent livelihoods, businesses and employment to make the population reliant on the state (the Cult) for even the basics of life through a guaranteed pittance income. While independence of income remained these Cult ambitions would be thwarted. With this knowledge it was easy to see where the 'pandemic' hoax was going once talk of 'lockdowns' began and the closing of all but perceived 'essential' businesses to 'save' us from an alleged 'deadly virus'. Cult corporations like Amazon and Walmart were naturally considered 'essential' while mom and pop shops and stores had their doors closed by fascist decree. As a result with every new lockdown and new regulation more small and medium, even large businesses not owned by the Cult, went to the wall while Cult giants and their frontmen and women grew financially fatter by the second. Mom and pop were

denied an income and the right to earn a living and the wealth of people like Jeff Bezos (Amazon), Mark Zuckerberg (Facebook) and Sergei Brin and Larry Page (Google/Alphabet) have reached record levels. The Cult was increasing its own power through further dramatic concentrations of wealth while the competition was being destroyed and brought into a state of dependency. Lockdowns have been instigated to secure that very end and were never anything to do with health. My brother Paul spent 45 years building up a bus repair business, but lockdowns meant buses were running at a fraction of normal levels for months on end. Similar stories can told in their hundreds of millions worldwide. Efforts of a lifetime coldly destroyed by Cult multi-billionaires and their lackeys in government and law enforcement who continued to earn their living from the taxation of the people while denying the right of the same people to earn theirs. How different it would have been if those making and enforcing these decisions had to face the same financial hardships of those they affected, but they never do.

## **Gates of Hell**

Behind it all in the full knowledge of what he is doing and why is the psychopathic figure of Cult operative Bill Gates. His puppet Tedros at the World Health Organization declared 'Covid' a pandemic in March, 2020. The WHO had changed the definition of a 'pandemic' in 2009 just a month before declaring the 'swine flu pandemic' which would not have been so under the previous definition. The same applies to 'Covid'. The definition had included... 'an infection by an infectious agent, occurring simultaneously in different countries, with a significant mortality rate relative to the proportion of the population infected'. The new definition removed the need for 'significant mortality'. The 'pandemic' has been fraudulent even down to the definition, but Gates demanded economy-destroying lockdowns, school closures, social distancing, mandatory masks, a 'vaccination' for every man, woman and child on the planet and severe consequences and restrictions for those that refused. Who gave him this power? The

Cult did which he serves like a little boy in short trousers doing what his daddy tells him. He and his psychopathic missus even smiled when they said that much worse was to come (what they knew was planned to come). Gates responded in the matter-of-fact way of all psychopaths to a question about the effect on the world economy of what he was doing:

Well, it won't go to zero but it will shrink. Global GDP is probably going to take the biggest hit ever [Gates was smiling as he said this] ... in my lifetime this will be the greatest economic hit. But you don't have a choice. People act as if you have a choice. People don't feel like going to the stadium when they might get infected ... People are deeply affected by seeing these stats, by knowing they could be part of the transmission chain, old people, their parents and grandparents, could be affected by this, and so you don't get to say ignore what is going on here.

There will be the ability to open up, particularly in rich countries, if things are done well over the next few months, but for the world at large normalcy only returns when we have largely vaccinated the entire population.

The man has no compassion or empathy. How could he when he's a psychopath like all Cult players? My own view is that even beyond that he is very seriously mentally ill. Look in his eyes and you can see this along with his crazy flailing arms. You don't do what he has done to the world population since the start of 2020 unless you are mentally ill and at the most extreme end of psychopathic. You especially don't do it when to you know, as we shall see, that cases and deaths from 'Covid' are fakery and a product of monumental figure massaging. 'These stats' that Gates referred to are based on a 'test' that's not testing for the 'virus' as he has known all along. He made his fortune with big Cult support as an infamously ruthless software salesman and now buys global control of 'health' (death) policy without the population he affects having any say. It's a breathtaking outrage. Gates talked about people being deeply affected by fear of 'Covid' when that was because of *him* and his global network lying to them minute-by-minute supported by a lying media that he seriously influences and funds to the tune of hundreds of millions. He's handed big sums to media operations including the BBC, NBC, Al Jazeera, Univision, *PBS NewsHour*,

*ProPublica, National Journal, The Guardian, The Financial Times, The Atlantic, Texas Tribune, USA Today* publisher Gannett, Washington Monthly, Le Monde, Center for Investigative Reporting, Pulitzer Center on Crisis Reporting, National Press Foundation, International Center for Journalists, Solutions Journalism Network, the Poynter Institute for Media Studies, and many more. Gates is everywhere in the ‘Covid’ hoax and the man must go to prison – or a mental facility – for the rest of his life and his money distributed to those he has taken such enormous psychopathic pleasure in crushing.

## **The Muscle**

The Hunger Games global structure demands a police-military state – a fusion of the two into one force – which viciously imposes the will of the Cult on the population and protects the Cult from public rebellion. In that regard, too, the ‘Covid’ hoax just keeps on giving. Often unlawful, ridiculous and contradictory ‘Covid’ rules and regulations have been policed across the world by moronic automatons and psychopaths made faceless by face-nappy masks and acting like the Nazi SS and fascist blackshirts and brownshirts of Hitler and Mussolini. The smallest departure from the rules decreed by the psychos in government and their clueless gofers were jumped upon by the face-nappy fascists. Brutality against public protestors soon became commonplace even on girls, women and old people as the brave men with the batons – the Face-Nappies as I call them – broke up peaceful protests and handed out fines like confetti to people who couldn’t earn a living let alone pay hundreds of pounds for what was once an accepted human right. Robot Face-Nappies of Nottingham police in the English East Midlands fined one group £11,000 for attending a child’s birthday party. For decades I charted the transformation of law enforcement as genuine, decent officers were replaced with psychopaths and the brain dead who would happily and brutally do whatever their masters told them. Now they were let loose on the public and I would emphasise the point that none of this just happened. The step-by-step change in the dynamic between police and public was orchestrated from the shadows by

those who knew where this was all going and the same with the perceptual reframing of those in all levels of authority and official administration through ‘training courses’ by organisations such as Common Purpose which was created in the late 1980s and given a massive boost in Blair era Britain until it became a global phenomenon. Supposed public ‘servants’ began to view the population as the enemy and the same was true of the police. This was the start of the explosion of behaviour manipulation organisations and networks preparing for the all-war on the human psyche unleashed with the dawn of 2020. I will go into more detail about this later in the book because it is a core part of what is happening.

Police desecrated beauty spots to deter people gathering and arrested women for walking in the countryside alone ‘too far’ from their homes. We had arrogant, clueless sergeants in the Isle of Wight police where I live posting on Facebook what they insisted the population must do or else. A schoolmaster sergeant called Radford looked young enough for me to ask if his mother knew he was out, but he was posting what he *expected* people to do while a Sergeant Wilkinson boasted about fining lads for meeting in a McDonald’s car park where they went to get a lockdown takeaway. Wilkinson added that he had even cancelled their order. What a pair of prats these people are and yet they have increasingly become the norm among Jackboot Johnson’s Yellowshirts once known as the British police. This was the theme all over the world with police savagery common during lockdown protests in the United States, the Netherlands, and the fascist state of Victoria in Australia under its tyrannical and again moronic premier Daniel Andrews. Amazing how tyrannical and moronic tend to work as a team and the same combination could be seen across America as arrogant, narcissistic Woke governors and mayors such as Gavin Newsom (California), Andrew Cuomo (New York), Gretchen Whitmer (Michigan), Lori Lightfoot (Chicago) and Eric Garcetti (Los Angeles) did their Nazi and Stalin impressions with the full support of the compliant brutality of their enforcers in uniform as they arrested small business owners defying

fascist shutdown orders and took them to jail in ankle shackles and handcuffs. This happened to bistro owner Marlena Pavlos-Hackney in Gretchen Whitmer's fascist state of Michigan when police arrived to enforce an order by a state-owned judge for 'putting the community at risk' at a time when other states like Texas were dropping restrictions and migrants were pouring across the southern border without any 'Covid' questions at all. I'm sure there are many officers appalled by what they are ordered to do, but not nearly enough of them. If they were truly appalled they would not do it. As the months passed every opportunity was taken to have the military involved to make their presence on the streets ever more familiar and 'normal' for the longer-term goal of police-military fusion.

Another crucial element to the Hunger Games enforcement network has been encouraging the public to report neighbours and others for 'breaking the lockdown rules'. The group faced with £11,000 in fines at the child's birthday party would have been dobbed-in by a neighbour with a brain the size of a pea. The technique was most famously employed by the Stasi secret police in communist East Germany who had public informants placed throughout the population. A police chief in the UK says his force doesn't need to carry out 'Covid' patrols when they are flooded with so many calls from the public reporting other people for visiting the beach. Dorset police chief James Vaughan said people were so enthusiastic about snitching on their fellow humans they were now operating as an auxiliary arm of the police: 'We are still getting around 400 reports a week from the public, so we will respond to reports ... We won't need to be doing hotspot patrols because people are very quick to pick the phone up and tell us.' Vaughan didn't say that this is a pillar of all tyrannies of whatever complexion and the means to hugely extend the reach of enforcement while spreading distrust among the people and making them wary of doing anything that might get them reported. Those narcissistic Isle of Wight sergeants Radford and Wilkinson never fail to add a link to their Facebook posts where the public can inform on their fellow slaves.

Neither would be self-aware enough to realise they were imitating the Stasi which they might well never have heard of. Government psychologists that I will expose later laid out a policy to turn communities against each other in the same way.

## **A coincidence? Yep, and I can knit fog**

I knew from the start of the alleged pandemic that this was a Cult operation. It presented limitless potential to rapidly advance the Cult agenda and exploit manipulated fear to demand that every man, woman and child on the planet was ‘vaccinated’ in a process never used on humans before which infuses self-replicating *synthetic* material into human cells. Remember the plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic biological state. I’ll deal with the ‘vaccine’ (that’s not actually a vaccine) when I focus on the genetic agenda. Enough to say here that mass global ‘vaccination’ justified by this ‘new virus’ set alarms ringing after 30 years of tracking these people and their methods. The ‘Covid’ hoax officially beginning in China was also a big red flag for reasons I will be explaining. The agenda potential was so enormous that I could dismiss any idea that the ‘virus’ appeared naturally. Major happenings with major agenda implications never occur without Cult involvement in making them happen. My questions were twofold in early 2020 as the media began its campaign to induce global fear and hysteria: Was this alleged infectious agent released on purpose by the Cult or did it even exist at all? I then did what I always do in these situations. I sat, observed and waited to see where the evidence and information would take me. By March and early April synchronicity was strongly – and ever more so since then – pointing me in the direction of *there is no ‘virus’*. I went public on that with derision even from swathes of the alternative media that voiced a scenario that the Chinese government released the ‘virus’ in league with Deep State elements in the United States from a top-level bio-lab in Wuhan where the ‘virus’ is said to have first appeared. I looked at that possibility, but I didn’t buy it for several reasons. Deaths from the ‘virus’ did not in any way match what they

would have been with a ‘deadly bioweapon’ and it is much more effective if you sell the *illusion* of an infectious agent rather than having a real one unless you can control through injection who has it and who doesn’t. Otherwise you lose control of events. A made-up ‘virus’ gives you a blank sheet of paper on which you can make it do whatever you like and have any symptoms or mutant ‘variants’ you choose to add while a real infectious agent would limit you to what it actually does. A phantom disease allows you to have endless ludicrous ‘studies’ on the ‘Covid’ dollar to widen the perceived impact by inventing ever more ‘at risk’ groups including one study which said those who walk slowly may be almost four times more likely to die from the ‘virus’. People are in psychiatric wards for less.

A real ‘deadly bioweapon’ can take out people in the hierarchy that are not part of the Cult, but essential to its operation. Obviously they don’t want that. Releasing a real disease means you immediately lose control of it. Releasing an illusory one means you don’t. Again it’s vital that people are extra careful when dealing with what they want to hear. A bioweapon unleashed from a Chinese laboratory in collusion with the American Deep State may fit a conspiracy narrative, but is it true? Would it not be far more effective to use the excuse of a ‘virus’ to justify the real bioweapon – the ‘vaccine’? That way your disease agent does not have to be transmitted and arrives directly through a syringe. I saw a French virologist Luc Montagnier quoted in the alternative media as saying he had discovered that the alleged ‘new’ severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus , or SARS-CoV-2, was made artificially and included elements of the human immunodeficiency ‘virus’ (HIV) and a parasite that causes malaria. SARS-CoV-2 is alleged to trigger an alleged illness called Covid-19. I remembered Montagnier’s name from my research years before into claims that an HIV ‘retrovirus’ causes AIDS – claims that were demolished by Berkeley virologist Peter Duesberg who showed that no one had ever proved that HIV causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or AIDS. Claims that become accepted as fact, publicly and medically, with no proof whatsoever are an ever-recurring story that profoundly applies to

'Covid'. Nevertheless, despite the lack of proof, Montagnier's team at the Pasteur Institute in Paris had a long dispute with American researcher Robert Gallo over which of them discovered and isolated the HIV 'virus' and with *no evidence* found it to cause AIDS. You will see later that there is also no evidence that any 'virus' causes any disease or that there is even such a thing as a 'virus' in the way it is said to exist. The claim to have 'isolated' the HIV 'virus' will be presented in its real context as we come to the shocking story – and it is a story – of SARS-CoV-2 and so will Montagnier's assertion that he identified the full SARS-CoV-2 genome.

## **Hoax in the making**

We can pick up the 'Covid' story in 2010 and the publication by the Rockefeller Foundation of a document called 'Scenarios for the Future of Technology and International Development'. The inner circle of the Rockefeller family has been serving the Cult since John D. Rockefeller (1839-1937) made his fortune with Standard Oil. It is less well known that the same Rockefeller – the Bill Gates of his day – was responsible for establishing what is now referred to as 'Big Pharma', the global network of pharmaceutical companies that make outrageous profits dispensing scalpel and drug 'medicine' and are obsessed with pumping vaccines in ever-increasing number into as many human arms and backsides as possible. John D. Rockefeller was the driving force behind the creation of the 'education' system in the United States and elsewhere specifically designed to program the perceptions of generations thereafter. The Rockefeller family donated exceptionally valuable land in New York for the United Nations building and were central in establishing the World Health Organization in 1948 as an agency of the UN which was created from the start as a Trojan horse and stalking horse for world government. Now enter Bill Gates. His family and the Rockefellers have long been extremely close and I have seen genealogy which claims that if you go back far enough the two families fuse into the same bloodline. Gates has said that the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation was inspired by the Rockefeller Foundation and why not

when both are serving the same Cult? Major tax-exempt foundations are overwhelmingly criminal enterprises in which Cult assets fund the Cult agenda in the guise of 'philanthropy' while avoiding tax in the process. Cult operatives can become mega-rich in their role of front men and women for the psychopaths at the inner core and they, too, have to be psychopaths to knowingly serve such evil. Part of the deal is that a big percentage of the wealth gleaned from representing the Cult has to be spent advancing the ambitions of the Cult and hence you have the Rockefeller Foundation, Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (and so many more) and people like George Soros with his global Open Society Foundations spending their billions in pursuit of global Cult control. Gates is a global public face of the Cult with his interventions in world affairs including Big Tech influence; a central role in the 'Covid' and 'vaccine' scam; promotion of the climate change shakedown; manipulation of education; geoengineering of the skies; and his food-control agenda as the biggest owner of farmland in America, his GMO promotion and through other means. As one writer said: 'Gates monopolizes or wields disproportionate influence over the tech industry, global health and vaccines, agriculture and food policy (including biopiracy and fake food), weather modification and other climate technologies, surveillance, education and media.' The almost limitless wealth secured through Microsoft and other not-allowed-to-fail ventures (including vaccines) has been ploughed into a long, long list of Cult projects designed to enslave the entire human race. Gates and the Rockefellers have been working as one unit with the Rockefeller-established World Health Organization leading global 'Covid' policy controlled by Gates through his mouth-piece Tedros. Gates became the WHO's biggest funder when Trump announced that the American government would cease its donations, but Biden immediately said he would restore the money when he took office in January, 2021. The Gates Foundation (the Cult) owns through limitless funding the world health system and the major players across the globe in the 'Covid' hoax.

Okay, with that background we return to that Rockefeller Foundation document of 2010 headed ‘Scenarios for the Future of Technology and International Development’ and its ‘imaginary’ epidemic of a virulent and deadly influenza strain which infected 20 percent of the global population and killed eight million in seven months. The Rockefeller scenario was that the epidemic destroyed economies, closed shops, offices and other businesses and led to governments imposing fierce rules and restrictions that included mandatory wearing of face masks and body-temperature checks to enter communal spaces like railway stations and supermarkets. The document predicted that even after the height of the Rockefeller-envisioned epidemic the authoritarian rule would continue to deal with further pandemics, transnational terrorism, environmental crises and rising poverty. Now you may think that the Rockefellers are our modern-day seers or alternatively, and rather more likely, that they well knew what was planned a few years further on. Fascism had to be imposed, you see, to ‘protect citizens from risk and exposure’. The Rockefeller scenario document said:

During the pandemic, national leaders around the world flexed their authority and imposed airtight rules and restrictions, from the mandatory wearing of face masks to body-temperature checks at the entries to communal spaces like train stations and supermarkets. Even after the pandemic faded, this more authoritarian control and oversight of citizens and their activities stuck and even intensified. In order to protect themselves from the spread of increasingly global problems – from pandemics and transnational terrorism to environmental crises and rising poverty – leaders around the world took a firmer grip on power.

At first, the notion of a more controlled world gained wide acceptance and approval. Citizens willingly gave up some of their sovereignty – and their privacy – to more paternalistic states in exchange for greater safety and stability. Citizens were more tolerant, and even eager, for top-down direction and oversight, and national leaders had more latitude to impose order in the ways they saw fit.

In developed countries, this heightened oversight took many forms: biometric IDs for all citizens, for example, and tighter regulation of key industries whose stability was deemed vital to national interests. In many developed countries, enforced cooperation with a suite of new regulations and agreements slowly but steadily restored both order and, importantly, economic growth.

There we have the prophetic Rockefellers in 2010 and three years later came their paper for the Global Health Summit in Beijing, China, when government representatives, the private sector, international organisations and groups met to discuss the next 100 years of 'global health'. The Rockefeller Foundation-funded paper was called 'Dreaming the Future of Health for the Next 100 Years' and more prophecy ensued as it described a dystopian future: 'The abundance of data, digitally tracking and linking people may mean the 'death of privacy' and may replace physical interaction with transient, virtual connection, generating isolation and raising questions of how values are shaped in virtual networks.' Next in the 'Covid' hoax preparation sequence came a 'table top' simulation in 2018 for another 'imaginary' pandemic of a disease called Clade X which was said to kill 900 million people. The exercise was organised by the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins University's Center for Health Security in the United States and this is the very same university that has been compiling the disgustingly and systematically erroneous global figures for 'Covid' cases and deaths. Similar Johns Hopkins health crisis scenarios have included the Dark Winter exercise in 2001 and Atlantic Storm in 2005.

## **Nostradamus 201**

For sheer predictive genius look no further prophecy-watchers than the Bill Gates-funded Event 201 held only six weeks before the 'coronavirus pandemic' is supposed to have broken out in China and Event 201 was based on a scenario of a global 'coronavirus pandemic'. Melinda Gates, the great man's missus, told the BBC that he had 'prepared for years' for a coronavirus pandemic which told us what we already knew. Nostradamugates had predicted in a TED talk in 2015 that a pandemic was coming that would kill a lot of people and demolish the world economy. My god, the man is a machine – possibly even literally. Now here he was only weeks before the real thing funding just such a simulated scenario and involving his friends and associates at Johns Hopkins, the World Economic Forum Cult-front of Klaus Schwab, the United Nations,

Johnson & Johnson, major banks, and officials from China and the Centers for Disease Control in the United States. What synchronicity – Johns Hopkins would go on to compile the fraudulent ‘Covid’ figures, the World Economic Forum and Schwab would push the ‘Great Reset’ in response to ‘Covid’, the Centers for Disease Control would be at the forefront of ‘Covid’ policy in the United States, Johnson & Johnson would produce a ‘Covid vaccine’, and everything would officially start just weeks later in China. Spooky, eh? They were even accurate in creating a simulation of a ‘virus’ pandemic because the ‘real thing’ would also be a simulation. Event 201 was not an exercise preparing for something that might happen; it was a rehearsal for what those in control knew was *going* to happen and very shortly. Hours of this simulation were posted on the Internet and the various themes and responses mirrored what would soon be imposed to transform human society. News stories were inserted and what they said would be commonplace a few weeks later with still more prophecy perfection. Much discussion focused on the need to deal with misinformation and the ‘anti-vax movement’ which is exactly what happened when the ‘virus’ arrived – was said to have arrived – in the West.

Cult-owned social media banned criticism and exposure of the official ‘virus’ narrative and when I said there *was* no ‘virus’ in early April, 2020, I was banned by one platform after another including YouTube, Facebook and later Twitter. The mainstream broadcast media in Britain was in effect banned from interviewing me by the Tony-Blair-created government broadcasting censor Ofcom headed by career government bureaucrat Melanie Dawes who was appointed just as the ‘virus’ hoax was about to play out in January, 2020. At the same time the Ickonic media platform was using Vimeo, another ultra-Zionist-owned operation, while our own player was being created and they deleted in an instant hundreds of videos, documentaries, series and shows to confirm their unbelievable vindictiveness. We had copies, of course, and they had to be restored one by one when our player was ready. These people have no class. Sabbatian Facebook promised free advertisements for the Gates-

controlled World Health Organization narrative while deleting ‘false claims and conspiracy theories’ to stop ‘misinformation’ about the alleged coronavirus. All these responses could be seen just a short while earlier in the scenarios of Event 201. Extreme censorship was absolutely crucial for the Cult because the official story was so ridiculous and unsupportable by the evidence that it could never survive open debate and the free-flow of information and opinion. If you can’t win a debate then don’t have one is the Cult’s approach throughout history. Facebook’s little boy front man – front boy – Mark Zuckerberg equated ‘credible and accurate information’ with official sources and exposing their lies with ‘misinformation’.

## **Silencing those that can see**

The censorship dynamic of Event 201 is now the norm with an army of narrative-supporting ‘fact-checker’ organisations whose entire reason for being is to tell the public that official narratives are true and those exposing them are lying. One of the most appalling of these ‘fact-checkers’ is called NewsGuard founded by ultra-Zionist Americans Gordon Crovitz and Steven Brill. Crovitz is a former publisher of *The Wall Street Journal*, former Executive Vice President of Dow Jones, a member of the Council on Foreign Relations (CFR), and on the board of the American Association of Rhodes Scholars. The CFR and Rhodes Scholarships, named after Rothschild agent Cecil Rhodes who plundered the gold and diamonds of South Africa for his masters and the Cult, have featured widely in my books. NewsGuard don’t seem to like me for some reason – I really can’t think why – and they have done all they can to have me censored and discredited which is, to quote an old British politician, like being savaged by a dead sheep. They are, however, like all in the censorship network, very well connected and funded by organisations themselves funded by, or connected to, Bill Gates. As you would expect with anything associated with Gates NewsGuard has an offshoot called HealthGuard which ‘fights online health care hoaxes’. How very kind. Somehow the NewsGuard European Managing Director Anna-Sophie Harling, a remarkably young-

looking woman with no broadcasting experience and little hands-on work in journalism, has somehow secured a position on the ‘Content Board’ of UK government broadcast censor Ofcom. An executive of an organisation seeking to discredit dissidents of the official narratives is making decisions for the government broadcast ‘regulator’ about content?? Another appalling ‘fact-checker’ is Full Fact funded by George Soros and global censors Google and Facebook.

It’s amazing how many activists in the ‘fact-checking’, ‘anti-hate’, arena turn up in government-related positions – people like UK Labour Party activist Imran Ahmed who heads the Center for Countering Digital Hate founded by people like Morgan McSweeney, now chief of staff to the Labour Party’s hapless and useless ‘leader’ Keir Starmer. Digital Hate – which is what it really is – uses the American spelling of Center to betray its connection to a transatlantic network of similar organisations which in 2020 shapeshifted from attacking people for ‘hate’ to attacking them for questioning the ‘Covid’ hoax and the dangers of the ‘Covid vaccine’. It’s just a coincidence, you understand. This is one of Imran Ahmed’s hysterical statements: ‘I would go beyond calling anti-vaxxers conspiracy theorists to say they are an extremist group that pose a national security risk.’ No one could ever accuse this prat of understatement and he’s including in that those parents who are now against vaccines after their children were damaged for life or killed by them. He’s such a nice man. Ahmed does the rounds of the Woke media getting soft-ball questions from spineless ‘journalists’ who never ask what right he has to campaign to destroy the freedom of speech of others while he demands it for himself. There also seems to be an overrepresentation in Ofcom of people connected to the narrative-worshipping BBC. This incredible global network of narrative-support was super-vital when the ‘Covid’ hoax was played in the light of the mega-whopper lies that have to be defended from the spotlight cast by the most basic intelligence.

## **Setting the scene**

The Cult plays the long game and proceeds step-by-step ensuring that everything is in place before major cards are played and they don't come any bigger than the 'Covid' hoax. The psychopaths can't handle events where the outcome isn't certain and as little as possible – preferably nothing – is left to chance. Politicians, government and medical officials who would follow direction were brought to illusory power in advance by the Cult web whether on the national stage or others like state governors and mayors of America. For decades the dynamic between officialdom, law enforcement and the public was changed from one of service to one of control and dictatorship. Behaviour manipulation networks established within government were waiting to impose the coming 'Covid' rules and regulations specifically designed to subdue and rewire the psyche of the people in the guise of protecting health. These included in the UK the Behavioural Insights Team part-owned by the British government Cabinet Office; the Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours (SPI-B); and a whole web of intelligence and military groups seeking to direct the conversation on social media and control the narrative. Among them are the cyberwarfare (on the people) 77th Brigade of the British military which is also coordinated through the Cabinet Office as civilian and military leadership continues to combine in what they call the Fusion Doctrine. The 77th Brigade is a British equivalent of the infamous Israeli (Sabbatian) military cyberwarfare and Internet manipulation operation Unit 8200 which I expose at length in *The Trigger*. Also carefully in place were the medical and science advisers to government – many on the payroll past or present of Bill Gates – and a whole alternative structure of unelected government stood by to take control when elected parliaments were effectively closed down once the 'Covid' card was slammed on the table. The structure I have described here and so much more was installed in every major country through the Cult networks. The top-down control hierarchy looks like this: The Cult – Cult-owned Gates – the World Health Organization and Tedros – Gates-funded or controlled chief medical officers and science 'advisers' (dictators) in each country –

political ‘leaders’ – law enforcement – The People. Through this simple global communication and enforcement structure the policy of the Cult could be imposed on virtually the entire human population so long as they acquiesced to the fascism. With everything in place it was time for the button to be pressed in late 2019/early 2020.

These were the prime goals the Cult had to secure for its will to prevail:

- 1) Locking down economies, closing all but designated ‘essential’ businesses (Cult-owned corporations were ‘essential’), and putting the population under house arrest was an imperative to destroy independent income and employment and ensure dependency on the Cult-controlled state in the Hunger Games Society. Lockdowns had to be established as the global blueprint from the start to respond to the ‘virus’ and followed by pretty much the entire world.
- 2) The global population had to be terrified into believing in a deadly ‘virus’ that didn’t actually exist so they would unquestioningly obey authority in the belief that authority must know how best to protect them and their families. Software salesman Gates would suddenly morph into the world’s health expert and be promoted as such by the Cult-owned media.
- 3) A method of testing that wasn’t testing for the ‘virus’, but was only claimed to be, had to be in place to provide the illusion of ‘cases’ and subsequent ‘deaths’ that had a very different cause to the ‘Covid-19’ that would be scribbled on the death certificate.
- 4) Because there was no ‘virus’ and the great majority testing positive with a test not testing for the ‘virus’ would have no symptoms of anything the lie had to be sold that people without symptoms (without the ‘virus’) could still pass it on to others. This was crucial to justify for the first time quarantining – house arresting – healthy people. Without this the economy-destroying lockdown of *everybody* could not have been credibly sold.
- 5) The ‘saviour’ had to be seen as a vaccine which beyond evil drug companies were working like angels of mercy to develop as quickly as possible, with all corners cut, to save the day. The public must absolutely not know that the ‘vaccine’ had nothing to do with a ‘virus’ or that the contents were ready and waiting with a very different motive long before the ‘Covid’ card was even lifted from the pack.

I said in March, 2020, that the ‘vaccine’ would have been created way ahead of the ‘Covid’ hoax which justified its use and the following December an article in the New York *Intelligencer* magazine said the Moderna ‘vaccine’ had been ‘designed’ by

January, 2020. This was ‘before China had even acknowledged that the disease could be transmitted from human to human, more than a week before the first confirmed coronavirus case in the United States’. The article said that by the time the first American death was announced a month later ‘the vaccine had already been manufactured and shipped to the National Institutes of Health for the beginning of its Phase I clinical trial’. The ‘vaccine’ was actually ‘designed’ long before that although even with this timescale you would expect the article to ask how on earth it could have been done that quickly. Instead it asked why the ‘vaccine’ had not been rolled out then and not months later. Journalism in the mainstream is truly dead. I am going to detail in the next chapter why the ‘virus’ has never existed and how a hoax on that scale was possible, but first the foundation on which the Big Lie of ‘Covid’ was built.

## **The test that doesn’t test**

Fraudulent ‘testing’ is the bottom line of the whole ‘Covid’ hoax and was the means by which a ‘virus’ that did not exist *appeared* to exist. They could only achieve this magic trick by using a test not testing for the ‘virus’. To use a test that *was* testing for the ‘virus’ would mean that every test would come back negative given there was no ‘virus’. They chose to exploit something called the RT-PCR test invented by American biochemist Kary Mullis in the 1980s who said publicly that his PCR test … *cannot detect infectious disease*. Yes, the ‘test’ used worldwide to detect infectious ‘Covid’ to produce all the illusory ‘cases’ and ‘deaths’ compiled by Johns Hopkins and others *cannot detect infectious disease*. This fact came from the mouth of the man who invented PCR and was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1993 for doing so. Sadly, and incredibly conveniently for the Cult, Mullis died in August, 2019, at the age of 74 just before his test would be fraudulently used to unleash fascism on the world. He was said to have died from pneumonia which was an irony in itself. A few months later he would have had ‘Covid-19’ on his death certificate. I say the timing of his death was convenient because had he lived Mullis, a brilliant, honest and decent man, would have been

vociferously speaking out against the use of his test to detect 'Covid' when it was never designed, or able, to do that. I know that to be true given that Mullis made the same point when his test was used to 'detect' – not detect – HIV. He had been seriously critical of the Gallo/Montagnier claim to have isolated the HIV 'virus' and shown it to cause AIDS for which Mullis said there was no evidence. AIDS is actually not a disease but a series of diseases from which people die all the time. When they die from those *same diseases* after a positive 'test' for HIV then AIDS goes on their death certificate. I think I've heard that before somewhere. Countries instigated a policy with 'Covid' that anyone who tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' and died of any other cause within 28 days and even longer 'Covid-19' had to go on the death certificate. Cases have come from the test that can't test for infectious disease and the deaths are those who have died of *anything* after testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'. I'll have much more later about the death certificate scandal.

Mullis was deeply dismissive of the now US 'Covid' star Anthony Fauci who he said was a liar who didn't know anything about anything – 'and I would say that to his face – nothing.' He said of Fauci: 'The man thinks he can take a blood sample, put it in an electron microscope and if it's got a virus in there you'll know it – he doesn't understand electron microscopy and he doesn't understand medicine and shouldn't be in a position like he's in.' That position, terrifyingly, has made him the decider of 'Covid' fascism policy on behalf of the Cult in his role as director since 1984 of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) while his record of being wrong is laughable; but being wrong, so long as it's the *right kind* of wrong, is why the Cult loves him. He'll say anything the Cult tells him to say. Fauci was made Chief Medical Adviser to the President immediately Biden took office. Biden was installed in the White House by Cult manipulation and one of his first decisions was to elevate Fauci to a position of even more control. This is a coincidence? Yes, and I identify as a flamenco dancer called Lola. How does such an incompetent criminal like Fauci remain in that

pivotal position in American health since *the 1980s*? When you serve the Cult it looks after you until you are surplus to requirements. Kary Mullis said prophetically of Fauci and his like: ‘Those guys have an agenda and it’s not an agenda we would like them to have ... they make their own rules, they change them when they want to, and Tony Fauci does not mind going on television in front of the people who pay his salary and lie directly into the camera.’ Fauci has done that almost daily since the ‘Covid’ hoax began. Lying is in Fauci’s DNA. To make the situation crystal clear about the PCR test this is a direct quote from its inventor Kary Mullis:

It [the PCR test] doesn’t tell you that you’re sick and doesn’t tell you that the thing you ended up with was really going to hurt you ...’

Ask yourself why governments and medical systems the world over have been using this very test to decide who is ‘infected’ with the SARS-CoV-2 ‘virus’ and the alleged disease it allegedly causes, ‘Covid-19’. The answer to that question will tell you what has been going on. By the way, here’s a little show-stopper – the ‘new’ SARS-CoV-2 ‘virus’ was ‘identified’ as such right from the start using ... *the PCR test not testing for the ‘virus’*. If you are new to this and find that shocking then stick around. I have hardly started yet. Even worse, other ‘tests’, like the ‘Lateral Flow Device’ (LFD), are considered so useless that they have to be *confirmed* by the PCR test! Leaked emails written by Ben Dyson, adviser to UK ‘Health’ Secretary Matt Hancock, said they were ‘dangerously unreliable’. Dyson, executive director of strategy at the Department of Health, wrote: ‘As of today, someone who gets a positive LFD result in (say) London has at best a 25 per cent chance of it being a true positive, but if it is a self-reported test potentially as low as 10 per cent (on an optimistic assumption about specificity) or as low as 2 per cent (on a more pessimistic assumption).’ These are the ‘tests’ that schoolchildren and the public are being urged to have twice a week or more and have to isolate if they get a positive. Each fake positive goes in the statistics as a ‘case’ no matter how ludicrously inaccurate and the

'cases' drive lockdown, masks and the pressure to 'vaccinate'. The government said in response to the email leak that the 'tests' were accurate which confirmed yet again what shocking bloody liars they are. The real false positive rate is *100 percent* as we'll see. In another 'you couldn't make it up' the UK government agreed to pay £2.8 billion to California's Innova Medical Group to supply the irrelevant lateral flow tests. The company's primary test-making centre is in China. Innova Medical Group, established in March, 2020, is owned by Pasaca Capital Inc, chaired by Chinese-American millionaire Charles Huang who was born in Wuhan.

## **How it works – and how it doesn't**

The RT-PCR test, known by its full title of Polymerase chain reaction, is used across the world to make millions, even billions, of copies of a DNA/RNA genetic information sample. The process is called 'amplification' and means that a tiny sample of genetic material is amplified to bring out the detailed content. I stress that it is not testing for an infectious disease. It is simply amplifying a sample of genetic material. In the words of Kary Mullis: 'PCR is ... just a process that's used to make a whole lot of something out of something.' To emphasise the point companies that make the PCR tests circulated around the world to 'test' for 'Covid' warn on the box that it can't be used to detect 'Covid' or infectious disease and is for research purposes only. It's okay, rest for a minute and you'll be fine. This is the test that produces the 'cases' and 'deaths' that have been used to destroy human society. All those global and national medical and scientific 'experts' demanding this destruction to 'save us' KNOW that the test is not testing for the 'virus' and the cases and deaths they claim to be real are an almost unimaginable fraud. Every one of them and so many others including politicians and psychopaths like Gates and Tedros must be brought before Nuremberg-type trials and jailed for the rest of their lives. The more the genetic sample is amplified by PCR the more elements of that material become sensitive to the test and by that I don't mean sensitive for a 'virus' but for elements of the genetic material which

is naturally in the body or relates to remnants of old conditions of various kinds lying dormant and causing no disease. Once the amplification of the PCR reaches a certain level *everyone* will test positive. So much of the material has been made sensitive to the test that everyone will have some part of it in their body. Even lying criminals like Fauci have said that once PCR amplifications pass 35 cycles everything will be a false positive that cannot be trusted for the reasons I have described. I say, like many proper doctors and scientists, that 100 percent of the ‘positives’ are false, but let’s just go with Fauci for a moment.

He says that any amplification over 35 cycles will produce false positives and yet the US Centers for Disease Control (CDC) and Food and Drug Administration (FDA) have recommended up to 40 cycles and the National Health Service (NHS) in Britain admitted in an internal document for staff that it was using 45 cycles of amplification. A long list of other countries has been doing the same and at least one ‘testing’ laboratory has been using 50 cycles. Have you ever heard a doctor, medical ‘expert’ or the media ask what level of amplification has been used to claim a ‘positive’. The ‘test’ comes back ‘positive’ and so you have the ‘virus’, end of story. Now we can see how the government in Tanzania could send off samples from a goat and a pawpaw fruit under human names and both came back positive for ‘Covid-19’. Tanzania president John Magufuli mocked the ‘Covid’ hysteria, the PCR test and masks and refused to import the DNA-manipulating ‘vaccine’. The Cult hated him and an article sponsored by the Bill Gates Foundation appeared in the London *Guardian* in February, 2021, headed ‘It’s time for Africa to rein in Tanzania’s anti-vaxxer president’. Well, ‘reined in’ he shortly was. Magufuli appeared in good health, but then, in March, 2021, he was dead at 61 from ‘heart failure’. He was replaced by Samia Hassan Suhulu who is connected to Klaus Schwab’s World Economic Forum and she immediately reversed Magufuli’s ‘Covid’ policy. A sample of cola tested positive for ‘Covid’ with the PCR test in Germany while American actress and singer-songwriter Erykah Badu tested positive in one nostril and negative in the other. Footballer Ronaldo called

the PCR test ‘bullshit’ after testing positive three times and being forced to quarantine and miss matches when there was nothing wrong with him. The mantra from Tedros at the World Health Organization and national governments (same thing) has been test, test, test. They know that the more tests they can generate the more fake ‘cases’ they have which go on to become ‘deaths’ in ways I am coming to. The UK government has its Operation Moonshot planned to test multiple millions every day in workplaces and schools with free tests for everyone to use twice a week at home in line with the Cult plan from the start to make testing part of life. A government advertisement for an ‘Interim Head of Asymptomatic Testing Communication’ said the job included responsibility for delivering a ‘communications strategy’ (propaganda) ‘to support the expansion of asymptomatic testing that *“normalises testing as part of everyday life”*. More tests means more fake ‘cases’, ‘deaths’ and fascism. I have heard of, and from, many people who booked a test, couldn’t turn up, and yet got a positive result through the post for a test they’d never even had. The whole thing is crazy, but for the Cult there’s method in the madness. Controlling and manipulating the level of amplification of the test means the authorities can control whenever they want the number of apparent ‘cases’ and ‘deaths’. If they want to justify more fascist lockdown and destruction of livelihoods they keep the amplification high. If they want to give the illusion that lockdowns and the ‘vaccine’ are working then they lower the amplification and ‘cases’ and ‘deaths’ will appear to fall. In January, 2021, the Cult-owned World Health Organization suddenly warned laboratories about over-amplification of the test and to lower the threshold. Suddenly headlines began appearing such as: ‘Why ARE “Covid” cases plummeting?’ This was just when the vaccine rollout was underway and I had predicted months before they would make cases appear to fall through amplification tampering when the ‘vaccine’ came. These people are so predictable.

## Cow vaccines?

The question must be asked of what is on the test swabs being poked far up the nose of the population to the base of the brain? A nasal swab punctured one woman's brain and caused it to leak fluid. Most of these procedures are being done by people with little training or medical knowledge. Dr Lorraine Day, former orthopaedic trauma surgeon and Chief of Orthopaedic Surgery at San Francisco General Hospital, says the tests are really a '*vaccine*'. Cows have long been vaccinated this way. She points out that masks have to cover the nose and the mouth where it is claimed the 'virus' exists in saliva. Why then don't they take saliva from the mouth as they do with a DNA test instead of pushing a long swab up the nose towards the brain? The ethmoid bone separates the nasal cavity from the brain and within that bone is the cribriform plate. Dr Day says that when the swab is pushed up against this plate and twisted the procedure is 'depositing things back there'. She claims that among these 'things' are nanoparticles that can enter the brain. Researchers have noted that a team at the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins have designed tiny, star-shaped micro-devices that can latch onto intestinal mucosa and release drugs into the body. Mucosa is the thin skin that covers the inside surface of parts of the body such as *the nose* and mouth and produces mucus to protect them. The Johns Hopkins micro-devices are called 'theragrippers' and were 'inspired' by a parasitic worm that digs its sharp teeth into a host's intestines. Nasal swabs are also coated in the sterilisation agent ethylene oxide. The US National Cancer Institute posts this explanation on its website:

At room temperature, ethylene oxide is a flammable colorless gas with a sweet odor. It is used primarily to produce other chemicals, including antifreeze. In smaller amounts, ethylene oxide is used as a pesticide and a sterilizing agent. The ability of ethylene oxide to damage DNA makes it an effective sterilizing agent but also accounts for its cancer-causing activity.

The Institute mentions lymphoma and leukaemia as cancers most frequently reported to be associated with occupational exposure to ethylene oxide along with stomach and breast cancers. How does anyone think this is going to work out with the constant testing

regime being inflicted on adults and children at home and at school that will accumulate in the body anything that's on the swab?

## **Doctors know best**

It is vital for people to realise that 'hero' doctors 'know' only what the Big Pharma-dominated medical authorities tell them to 'know' and if they refuse to 'know' what they are told to 'know' they are out the door. They are mostly not physicians or healers, but repeaters of the official narrative – or else. I have seen alleged professional doctors on British television make shocking statements that we are supposed to take seriously. One called 'Dr' Amir Khan, who is actually telling patients how to respond to illness, said that men could take the birth pill to 'help slow down the effects of Covid-19'. In March, 2021, another ridiculous 'Covid study' by an American doctor proposed injecting men with the female sex hormone progesterone as a 'Covid' treatment. British doctor Nighat Arif told the BBC that face coverings were now going to be part of ongoing normal. Yes, the vaccine protects you, she said (evidence?) ... but the way to deal with viruses in the community was always going to come down to hand washing, face covering and keeping a physical distance. That's not what we were told before the 'vaccine' was circulating. Arif said she couldn't imagine ever again going on the underground or in a lift without a mask. I was just thanking my good luck that she was not my doctor when she said – in March, 2021 – that if 'we are *behaving* and we are doing all the right things' she thought we could 'have our nearest and dearest around us at home ... around *Christmas* and *New Year!*' Her patronising delivery was the usual school teacher talking to six-year-olds as she repeated every government talking point and probably believed them all. If we have learned anything from the 'Covid' experience surely it must be that humanity's perception of doctors needs a fundamental rethink. NHS 'doctor' Sara Kayat told her television audience that the 'Covid vaccine' would '100 percent prevent hospitalisation and death'. Not even Big Pharma claimed that. We have to stop taking 'experts' at their word without question when so many of them are

clueless and only repeating the party line on which their careers depend. That is not to say there are not brilliant doctors – there are and I have spoken to many of them since all this began – but you won't see them in the mainstream media or quoted by the psychopaths and yes-people in government.

## **Remember the name – Christian Drosten**

German virologist Christian Drosten, Director of Charité Institute of Virology in Berlin, became a national star after the pandemic hoax began. He was feted on television and advised the German government on 'Covid' policy. Most importantly to the wider world Drosten led a group that produced the 'Covid' testing protocol for the PCR test. What a remarkable feat given the PCR cannot test for infectious disease and even more so when you think that Drosten said that his method of testing for SARS-CoV-2 was developed 'without having virus material available'. *He developed a test for a 'virus' that he didn't have and had never seen.* Let that sink in as you survey the global devastation that came from what he did. The whole catastrophe of Drosten's 'test' was based on the alleged genetic sequence published by Chinese scientists on the Internet. We will see in the next chapter that this alleged 'genetic sequence' has never been produced by China or anyone and cannot be when there is no SARS-CoV-2. Drosten, however, doesn't seem to let little details like that get in the way. He was the lead author with Victor Corman from the same Charité Hospital of the paper 'Detection of 2019 novel coronavirus (2019-nCoV) by real-time PCR' published in a magazine called *Eurosurveillance*. This became known as the Corman-Drosten paper. In November, 2020, with human society devastated by the effects of the Corman-Drosten test baloney, the protocol was publicly challenged by 22 international scientists and independent researchers from Europe, the United States, and Japan. Among them were senior molecular geneticists, biochemists, immunologists, and microbiologists. They produced a document headed 'External peer review of the RTPCR test to detect SARS-Cov-2 Reveals 10 Major Flaws At The Molecular and Methodological Level: Consequences

For False-Positive Results'. The flaws in the Corman-Drosten test included the following:

- The test is non-specific because of erroneous design
- Results are enormously variable
- The test is unable to discriminate between the whole 'virus' and viral fragments
- It doesn't have positive or negative controls
- The test lacks a standard operating procedure
- It is unsupported by proper peer view

The scientists said the PCR 'Covid' testing protocol was not founded on science and they demanded the Corman-Drosten paper be retracted by *Eurosurveillance*. They said all present and previous Covid deaths, cases, and 'infection rates' should be subject to a massive retroactive inquiry. Lockdowns and travel restrictions should be reviewed and relaxed and those diagnosed through PCR to have 'Covid-19' should not be forced to isolate. Dr Kevin Corbett, a health researcher and nurse educator with a long academic career producing a stream of peer-reviewed publications at many UK universities, made the same point about the PCR test debacle. He said of the scientists' conclusions: 'Every scientific rationale for the development of that test has been totally destroyed by this paper. It's like Hiroshima/Nagasaki to the Covid test.' He said that China hadn't given them an isolated 'virus' when Drosten developed the test. Instead they had developed the test from *a sequence in a gene bank.*' Put another way ... *they made it up!* The scientists were supported in this contention by a Portuguese appeals court which ruled in November, 2020, that PCR tests are unreliable and it is unlawful to quarantine people based solely on a PCR test. The point about China not providing an isolated virus must be true when the 'virus' has never been isolated to this day and the consequences of that will become clear. Drosten and company produced this useless 'protocol' right on cue in January, 2020, just as the 'virus' was said to

be moving westward and it somehow managed to successfully pass a peer-review in 24 hours. In other words there was no peer-review for a test that would be used to decide who had 'Covid' and who didn't across the world. The Cult-created, Gates-controlled World Health Organization immediately recommended all its nearly 200 member countries to use the Drosten PCR protocol to detect 'cases' and 'deaths'. The sting was underway and it continues to this day.

So who is this Christian Drosten that produced the means through which death, destruction and economic catastrophe would be justified? His education background, including his doctoral thesis, would appear to be somewhat shrouded in mystery and his track record is dire as with another essential player in the 'Covid' hoax, the Gates-funded Professor Neil Ferguson at the Gates-funded Imperial College in London of whom more shortly. Drosten predicted in 2003 that the alleged original SARS 'virus' (SARS-1') was an epidemic that could have serious effects on economies and an effective vaccine would take at least two years to produce. Drosten's answer to every alleged 'outbreak' is a vaccine which you won't be shocked to know. What followed were just 774 official deaths worldwide and none in Germany where there were only nine cases. That is even if you believe there ever was a SARS 'virus' when the evidence is zilch and I will expand on this in the next chapter. Drosten claims to be co-discoverer of 'SARS-1' and developed a test for it in 2003. He was screaming warnings about 'swine flu' in 2009 and how it was a widespread infection far more severe than any dangers from a vaccine could be and people should get vaccinated. It would be helpful for Drosten's vocal chords if he simply recorded the words 'the virus is deadly and you need to get vaccinated' and copies could be handed out whenever the latest made-up threat comes along. Drosten's swine flu epidemic never happened, but Big Pharma didn't mind with governments spending hundreds of millions on vaccines that hardly anyone bothered to use and many who did wished they hadn't. A study in 2010 revealed that the risk of dying from swine flu, or H1N1, was no higher than that of the annual seasonal flu which is what at least most of 'it' really was as in

the case of 'Covid-19'. A media investigation into Drosten asked how with such a record of inaccuracy he could be *the* government adviser on these issues. The answer to that question is the same with Drosten, Ferguson and Fauci – they keep on giving the authorities the 'conclusions' and 'advice' they want to hear. Drosten certainly produced the goods for them in January, 2020, with his PCR protocol garbage and provided the foundation of what German internal medicine specialist Dr Claus Köhnlein, co-author of *Virus Mania*, called the 'test pandemic'. The 22 scientists in the *Eurosurveillance* challenge called out conflicts of interest within the Drosten 'protocol' group and with good reason. Olfert Landt, a regular co-author of Drosten 'studies', owns the biotech company TIB Molbiol Syntheselabor GmbH in Berlin which manufactures and sells the tests that Drosten and his mates come up with. They have done this with SARS, Enterotoxigenic E. coli (ETEC), MERS, Zika 'virus', yellow fever, and now 'Covid'. Landt told the *Berliner Zeitung* newspaper:

The testing, design and development came from the Charité [Drosten and Corman]. We simply implemented it immediately in the form of a kit. And if we don't have the virus, which originally only existed in Wuhan, we can make a synthetic gene to simulate the genome of the virus. That's what we did very quickly.

This is more confirmation that the Drosten test was designed without access to the 'virus' and only a synthetic simulation which is what SARS-CoV-2 really is – a computer-generated synthetic fiction. It's quite an enterprise they have going here. A Drosten team decides what the test for something should be and Landt's biotech company flogs it to governments and medical systems across the world. His company must have made an absolute fortune since the 'Covid' hoax began. Dr Reiner Fuellmich, a prominent German consumer protection trial lawyer in Germany and California, is on Drosten's case and that of Tedros at the World Health Organization for crimes against humanity with a class-action lawsuit being prepared in the United States and other legal action in Germany.

## **Why China?**

Scamming the world with a ‘virus’ that doesn’t exist would seem impossible on the face of it, but not if you have control of the relatively few people that make policy decisions and the great majority of the global media. Remember it’s not about changing ‘real’ reality it’s about controlling *perception* of reality. You don’t have to make something happen you only have to make people *believe* that it’s happening. Renegade Minds understand this and are therefore much harder to swindle. ‘Covid-19’ is not a ‘real’ ‘virus’. It’s a mind virus, like a computer virus, which has infected the minds, not the bodies, of billions. It all started, publically at least, in China and that alone is of central significance. The Cult was behind the revolution led by its asset Mao Zedong, or Chairman Mao, which established the People’s Republic of China on October 1st, 1949. It should have been called The Cult’s Republic of China, but the name had to reflect the recurring illusion that vicious dictatorships are run by and for the people (see all the ‘Democratic Republics’ controlled by tyrants). In the same way we have the ‘Biden’ Democratic Republic of America officially ruled by a puppet tyrant (at least temporarily) on behalf of Cult tyrants. The creation of Mao’s merciless communist/fascist dictatorship was part of a frenzy of activity by the Cult at the conclusion of World War Two which, like the First World War, it had instigated through its assets in Germany, Britain, France, the United States and elsewhere. Israel was formed in 1948; the Soviet Union expanded its ‘Iron Curtain’ control, influence and military power with the Warsaw Pact communist alliance in 1955; the United Nations was formed in 1945 as a Cult precursor to world government; and a long list of world bodies would be established including the World Health Organization (1948), World Trade Organization (1948 under another name until 1995), International Monetary Fund (1945) and World Bank (1944). Human society was redrawn and hugely centralised in the global Problem-Reaction-Solution that was World War Two. All these changes were significant. Israel would become the headquarters of the Sabbatians

and the revolution in China would prepare the ground and control system for the events of 2019/2020.

Renegade Minds know there are no borders except for public consumption. The Cult is a seamless, borderless global entity and to understand the game we need to put aside labels like borders, nations, countries, communism, fascism and democracy. These delude the population into believing that countries are ruled within their borders by a government of whatever shade when these are mere agencies of a global power. America's illusion of democracy and China's communism/fascism are subsidiaries – vehicles – for the same agenda. We may hear about conflict and competition between America and China and on the lower levels that will be true; but at the Cult level they are branches of the same company in the way of the McDonald's example I gave earlier. I have tracked in the books over the years support by US governments of both parties for Chinese Communist Party infiltration of American society through allowing the sale of land, even military facilities, and the acquisition of American business and university influence. All this is underpinned by the infamous stealing of intellectual property and technological know-how. Cult-owned Silicon Valley corporations waive their fraudulent 'morality' to do business with human-rights-free China; Cult-controlled Disney has become China's PR department; and China in effect owns 'American' sports such as basketball which depends for much of its income on Chinese audiences. As a result any sports player, coach or official speaking out against China's horrific human rights record is immediately condemned or fired by the China-worshipping National Basketball Association. One of the first acts of China-controlled Biden was to issue an executive order telling federal agencies to stop making references to the 'virus' by the 'geographic location of its origin'. Long-time Congressman Jerry Nadler warned that criticising China, America's biggest rival, leads to hate crimes against Asian people in the United States. So shut up you bigot. China is fast closing in on Israel as a country that must not be criticised which is apt, really, given that Sabbatians control them both. The two countries have

developed close economic, military, technological and strategic ties which include involvement in China's 'Silk Road' transport and economic initiative to connect China with Europe. Israel was the first country in the Middle East to recognise the establishment of Mao's tyranny in 1950 months after it was established.

### **Project Wuhan – the 'Covid' Psyop**

I emphasise again that the Cult plays the long game and what is happening to the world today is the result of centuries of calculated manipulation following a script to take control step-by-step of every aspect of human society. I will discuss later the common force behind all this that has spanned those centuries and thousands of years if the truth be told. Instigating the Mao revolution in China in 1949 with a 2020 'pandemic' in mind is not only how they work – the 71 years between them is really quite short by the Cult's standards of manipulation preparation. The reason for the Cult's Chinese revolution was to create a fiercely-controlled environment within which an extreme structure for human control could be incubated to eventually be unleashed across the world. We have seen this happen since the 'pandemic' emerged from China with the Chinese control-structure founded on AI technology and tyrannical enforcement sweep across the West. Until the moment when the Cult went for broke in the West and put its fascism on public display Western governments had to pay some lip-service to freedom and democracy to not alert too many people to the tyranny-in-the-making. Freedoms were more subtly eroded and power centralised with covert government structures put in place waiting for the arrival of 2020 when that smokescreen of 'freedom' could be dispensed with. The West was not able to move towards tyranny before 2020 anything like as fast as China which was created as a tyranny and had no limits on how fast it could construct the Cult's blueprint for global control. When the time came to impose that structure on the world it was the same Cult-owned Chinese communist/fascist government that provided the excuse – the 'Covid pandemic'. It was absolutely crucial to the Cult plan for the Chinese response to the 'pandemic' –

draconian lockdowns of the entire population – to become the blueprint that Western countries would follow to destroy the livelihoods and freedom of their people. This is why the Cult-owned, Gates-owned, WHO Director-General Tedros said early on:

The Chinese government is to be congratulated for the extraordinary measures it has taken to contain the outbreak. China is actually setting a new standard for outbreak response and it is not an exaggeration.

*Forbes* magazine said of China: ‘... those measures protected untold millions from getting the disease’. The Rockefeller Foundation ‘epidemic scenario’ document in 2010 said ‘prophetically’:

However, a few countries did fare better – China in particular. The Chinese government’s quick imposition and enforcement of mandatory quarantine for all citizens, as well as its instant and near-hermetic sealing off of all borders, saved millions of lives, stopping the spread of the virus far earlier than in other countries and enabling a swifter post-pandemic recovery.

Once again – *spooky*.

The first official story was the ‘bat theory’ or rather the bat diversion. The source of the ‘virus outbreak’ we were told was a “wet market” in Wuhan where bats and other animals are bought and eaten in horrifically unhygienic conditions. Then another story emerged through the alternative media that the ‘virus’ had been released on purpose or by accident from a BSL-4 (biosafety level 4) laboratory in Wuhan not far from the wet market. The lab was reported to create and work with lethal concoctions and bioweapons. Biosafety level 4 is the highest in the World Health Organization system of safety and containment. Renegade Minds are aware of what I call designer manipulation. The ideal for the Cult is for people to buy its prime narrative which in the opening salvos of the ‘pandemic’ was the wet market story. It knows, however, that there is now a considerable worldwide alternative media of researchers sceptical of anything governments say and they are often given a version of events in a form they can perceive as credible while misdirecting them from the real truth. In this case let them

think that the conspiracy involved is a ‘bioweapon virus’ released from the Wuhan lab to keep them from the real conspiracy – *there is no ‘virus’*. The WHO’s current position on the source of the outbreak at the time of writing appears to be: ‘We haven’t got a clue, mate.’ This is a good position to maintain mystery and bewilderment. The inner circle will know where the ‘virus’ came from – *nowhere*. The bottom line was to ensure the public believed there *was* a ‘virus’ and it didn’t much matter if they thought it was natural or had been released from a lab. The belief that there was a ‘deadly virus’ was all that was needed to trigger global panic and fear. The population was terrified into handing their power to authority and doing what they were told. They had to or they were ‘all gonna die’.

In March, 2020, information began to come my way from real doctors and scientists and my own additional research which had my intuition screaming: ‘Yes, that’s it! *There is no virus.*’ The ‘bioweapon’ was not the ‘virus’; it was the ‘vaccine’ already being talked about that would be the bioweapon. My conclusion was further enhanced by happenings in Wuhan. The ‘virus’ was said to be sweeping the city and news footage circulated of people collapsing in the street (which they’ve never done in the West with the same ‘virus’). The Chinese government was building ‘new hospitals’ in a matter of ten days to ‘cope with demand’ such was the virulent nature of the ‘virus’. Yet in what seemed like no time the ‘new hospitals’ closed – even if they even opened – and China declared itself ‘virus-free’. It was back to business as usual. This was more propaganda to promote the Chinese draconian lockdowns in the West as the way to ‘beat the virus’. Trouble was that we subsequently had lockdown after lockdown, but never business as usual. As the people of the West and most of the rest of the world were caught in an ever-worsening spiral of lockdown, social distancing, masks, isolated old people, families forced apart, and livelihood destruction, it was party-time in Wuhan. Pictures emerged of thousands of people enjoying pool parties and concerts. It made no sense until you realised there never was a ‘virus’ and the

whole thing was a Cult set-up to transform human society out of one its major global strongholds – China.

How is it possible to deceive virtually the entire world population into believing there is a deadly virus when there is not even a ‘virus’ let alone a deadly one? It’s nothing like as difficult as you would think and that’s clearly true because it happened.

**Postscript:** See end of book Postscript for more on the ‘Wuhan lab virus release’ story which the authorities and media were pushing heavily in the summer of 2021 to divert attention from the truth that the ‘Covid virus’ is pure invention.

## CHAPTER FIVE

### **There is no ‘virus’**

***You can fool some of the people all of the time, and all of the people some of the time, but you cannot fool all of the people all of the time***

**Abraham Lincoln**

The greatest form of mind control is repetition. The more you repeat the same mantra of alleged ‘facts’ the more will accept them to be true. It becomes an ‘everyone knows that, mate’. If you can also censor any other version or alternative to your alleged ‘facts’ you are pretty much home and cooking.

By the start of 2020 the Cult owned the global mainstream media almost in its entirety to spew out its ‘Covid’ propaganda and ignore or discredit any other information and view. Cult-owned social media platforms in Cult-owned Silicon Valley were poised and ready to unleash a campaign of ferocious censorship to obliterate all but the official narrative. To complete the circle many demands for censorship by Silicon Valley were led by the mainstream media as ‘journalists’ became full-out enforcers for the Cult both as propagandists and censors. Part of this has been the influx of young people straight out of university who have become ‘journalists’ in significant positions. They have no experience and a headful of programmed perceptions from their years at school and university at a time when today’s young are the most perceptually-targeted generations in known human history given the insidious impact of technology. They enter the media perceptually prepared and ready to repeat the narratives of the system that programmed them to

repeat its narratives. The BBC has a truly pathetic ‘specialist disinformation reporter’ called Marianna Spring who fits this bill perfectly. She is clueless about the world, how it works and what is really going on. Her role is to discredit anyone doing the job that a proper journalist would do and system-serving hacks like Spring wouldn’t dare to do or even see the need to do. They are too busy licking the arse of authority which can never be wrong and, in the case of the BBC propaganda programme, *Panorama*, contacting payments systems such as PayPal to have a donations page taken down for a film company making documentaries questioning vaccines. Even the BBC soap opera *EastEnders* included a disgracefully biased scene in which an inarticulate white working class woman was made to look foolish for questioning the ‘vaccine’ while a well-spoken black man and Asian woman promoted the government narrative. It ticked every BBC box and the fact that the black and minority community was resisting the ‘vaccine’ had nothing to do with the way the scene was written. The BBC has become a disgusting tyrannical propaganda and censorship operation that should be defunded and disbanded and a free media take its place with a brief to stop censorship instead of demanding it. A BBC ‘interview’ with Gates goes something like: ‘Mr Gates, sir, if I can call you sir, would you like to tell our audience why you are such a great man, a wonderful humanitarian philanthropist, and why you should absolutely be allowed as a software salesman to decide health policy for approaching eight billion people? Thank you, sir, please sir.’ Propaganda programming has been incessant and merciless and when all you hear is the same story from the media, repeated by those around you who have only heard the same story, is it any wonder that people on a grand scale believe absolute mendacious garbage to be true? You are about to see, too, why this level of information control is necessary when the official ‘Covid’ narrative is so nonsensical and unsupportable by the evidence.

## **Structure of Deceit**

The pyramid structure through which the ‘Covid’ hoax has been manifested is very simple and has to be to work. As few people as possible have to be involved with full knowledge of what they are doing – and why – or the real story would get out. At the top of the pyramid are the inner core of the Cult which controls Bill Gates who, in turn, controls the World Health Organization through his pivotal funding and his puppet Director-General mouthpiece, Tedros.

Before he was appointed Tedros was chair of the Gates-founded Global Fund to ‘fight against AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria’, a board member of the Gates-funded ‘vaccine alliance’ GAVI, and on the board of another Gates-funded organisation. Gates owns him and picked him for a specific reason – Tedros is a crook and worse. ‘Dr’ Tedros (he’s not a medical doctor, the first WHO chief not to be) was a member of the tyrannical Marxist government of Ethiopia for decades with all its human rights abuses. He has faced allegations of corruption and misappropriation of funds and was exposed three times for covering up cholera epidemics while Ethiopia’s health minister. Tedros appointed the mass-murdering genocidal Zimbabwe dictator Robert Mugabe as a WHO goodwill ambassador for public health which, as with Tedros, is like appointing a psychopath to run a peace and love campaign. The move was so ridiculous that he had to drop Mugabe in the face of widespread condemnation. American economist David Steinman, a Nobel peace prize nominee, lodged a complaint with the International Criminal Court in The Hague over alleged genocide by Tedros when he was Ethiopia’s foreign minister. Steinman says Tedros was a ‘crucial decision maker’ who directed the actions of Ethiopia’s security forces from 2013 to 2015 and one of three officials in charge when those security services embarked on the ‘killing’ and ‘torturing’ of Ethiopians. You can see where Tedros is coming from and it’s sobering to think that he has been the vehicle for Gates and the Cult to direct the global response to ‘Covid’. Think about that. A psychopathic Cult dictates to psychopath Gates who dictates to psychopath Tedros who dictates how countries of the world must respond to a ‘Covid virus’ never scientifically shown to exist. At the same time psychopathic Cult-owned Silicon Valley information

giants like Google, YouTube, Facebook and Twitter announced very early on that they would give the Cult/Gates/Tedros/WHO version of the narrative free advertising and censor those who challenged their intelligence-insulting, mendacious story.

The next layer in the global ‘medical’ structure below the Cult, Gates and Tedros are the chief medical officers and science ‘advisers’ in each of the WHO member countries which means virtually all of them. Medical officers and arbiters of science (they’re not) then take the WHO policy and recommended responses and impose them on their country’s population while the political ‘leaders’ say they are deciding policy (they’re clearly not) by ‘following the science’ on the advice of the ‘experts’ – the same medical officers and science ‘advisers’ (dictators). In this way with the rarest of exceptions the entire world followed the same policy of lockdown, people distancing, masks and ‘vaccines’ dictated by the psychopathic Cult, psychopathic Gates and psychopathic Tedros who we are supposed to believe give a damn about the health of the world population they are seeking to enslave. That, amazingly, is all there is to it in terms of crucial decision-making. Medical staff in each country then follow like sheep the dictates of the shepherds at the top of the national medical hierarchies – chief medical officers and science ‘advisers’ who themselves follow like sheep the shepherds of the World Health Organization and the Cult. Shepherds at the national level often have major funding and other connections to Gates and his Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation which carefully hands out money like confetti at a wedding to control the entire global medical system from the WHO down.

## **Follow the money**

Christopher Whitty, Chief Medical Adviser to the UK Government at the centre of ‘virus’ policy, a senior adviser to the government’s Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE), and Executive Board member of the World Health Organization, was gifted a grant of \$40 million by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation for malaria research in Africa. The BBC described the unelected Whitty as ‘the

official who will probably have the greatest impact on our everyday lives of any individual policymaker in modern times' and so it turned out. What Gates and Tedros have said Whitty has done like his equivalents around the world. Patrick Vallance, co-chair of SAGE and the government's Chief Scientific Adviser, is a former executive of Big Pharma giant GlaxoSmithKline with its fundamental financial and business connections to Bill Gates. In September, 2020, it was revealed that Vallance owned a deferred bonus of shares in GlaxoSmithKline worth £600,000 while the company was 'developing' a 'Covid vaccine'. Move along now – nothing to see here – what could possibly be wrong with that? Imperial College in London, a major player in 'Covid' policy in Britain and elsewhere with its 'Covid-19' Response Team, is funded by Gates and has big connections to China while the now infamous Professor Neil Ferguson, the useless 'computer modeller' at Imperial College is also funded by Gates. Ferguson delivered the dramatically inaccurate excuse for the first lockdowns (much more in the next chapter). The Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation (IHME) in the United States, another source of outrageously false 'Covid' computer models to justify lockdowns, is bankrolled by Gates who is a vehement promotor of lockdowns. America's version of Whitty and Vallance, the again now infamous Anthony Fauci, has connections to 'Covid vaccine' maker Moderna as does Bill Gates through funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Fauci is director of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), a major recipient of Gates money, and they are very close. Deborah Birx who was appointed White House Coronavirus Response Coordinator in February, 2020, is yet another with ties to Gates. Everywhere you look at the different elements around the world behind the coordination and decision making of the 'Covid' hoax there is Bill Gates and his money. They include the World Health Organization; Centers for Disease Control (CDC) in the United States; National Institutes of Health (NIH) of Anthony Fauci; Imperial College and Neil Ferguson; the London School of Hygiene where Chris Whitty worked; Regulatory agencies like the UK Medicines & Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)

which gave emergency approval for ‘Covid vaccines’; Wellcome Trust; GAVI, the Vaccine Alliance; the Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI); Johns Hopkins University which has compiled the false ‘Covid’ figures; and the World Economic Forum. A [Nationalfile.com](#) article said:

Gates has a lot of pull in the medical world, he has a multi-million dollar relationship with Dr. Fauci, and Fauci originally took the Gates line supporting vaccines and casting doubt on [the drug hydroxychloroquine]. Coronavirus response team member Dr. Deborah Birx, appointed by former president Obama to serve as United States Global AIDS Coordinator, also sits on the board of a group that has received billions from Gates’ foundation, and Birx reportedly used a disputed Bill Gates-funded model for the White House’s Coronavirus effort. Gates is a big proponent for a population lockdown scenario for the Coronavirus outbreak.

Another funder of Moderna is the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the technology-development arm of the Pentagon and one of the most sinister organisations on earth. DARPA had a major role with the CIA covert technology-funding operation In-Q-Tel in the development of Google and social media which is now at the centre of global censorship. Fauci and Gates are extremely close and openly admit to talking regularly about ‘Covid’ policy, but then why wouldn’t Gates have a seat at every national ‘Covid’ table after his Foundation committed \$1.75 billion to the ‘fight against Covid-19’. When passed through our Orwellian Translation Unit this means that he has bought and paid for the Cult-driven ‘Covid’ response worldwide. Research the major ‘Covid’ response personnel in your own country and you will find the same Gates funding and other connections again and again. Medical and science chiefs following World Health Organization ‘policy’ sit atop a medical hierarchy in their country of administrators, doctors and nursing staff. These ‘subordinates’ are told they must work and behave in accordance with the policy delivered from the ‘top’ of the national ‘health’ pyramid which is largely the policy delivered by the WHO which is the policy delivered by Gates and the Cult. The whole ‘Covid’ narrative has been imposed on medical staff by a climate of fear although great numbers don’t even need that to comply. They do so through breathtaking levels of ignorance and

include doctors who go through life simply repeating what Big Pharma and their hierarchical masters tell them to say and believe. No wonder Big Pharma ‘medicine’ is one of the biggest killers on Planet Earth.

The same top-down system of intimidation operates with regard to the Cult Big Pharma cartel which also dictates policy through national and global medical systems in this way. The Cult and Big Pharma agendas are the same because the former controls and owns the latter. ‘Health’ administrators, doctors, and nursing staff are told to support and parrot the dictated policy or they will face consequences which can include being fired. How sad it’s been to see medical staff meekly repeating and imposing Cult policy without question and most of those who can see through the deceit are only willing to speak anonymously off the record. They know what will happen if their identity is known. This has left the courageous few to expose the lies about the ‘virus’, face masks, overwhelmed hospitals that aren’t, and the dangers of the ‘vaccine’ that isn’t a vaccine. When these medical professionals and scientists, some renowned in their field, have taken to the Internet to expose the truth their articles, comments and videos have been deleted by Cult-owned Facebook, Twitter and YouTube. What a real head-shaker to see YouTube videos with leading world scientists and highly qualified medical specialists with an added link underneath to the notorious Cult propaganda website *Wikipedia* to find the ‘facts’ about the same subject.

### **HIV – the ‘Covid’ trial-run**

I’ll give you an example of the consequences for health and truth that come from censorship and unquestioning belief in official narratives. The story was told by PCR inventor Kary Mullis in his book *Dancing Naked in the Mind Field*. He said that in 1984 he accepted as just another scientific fact that Luc Montagnier of France’s Pasteur Institute and Robert Gallo of America’s National Institutes of Health had independently discovered that a ‘retrovirus’ dubbed HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) caused AIDS. They

were, after all, Mullis writes, specialists in retroviruses. This is how the medical and science pyramids work. Something is announced or *assumed* and then becomes an everybody-knows-that purely through repetition of the assumption as if it is fact. Complete crap becomes accepted truth with no supporting evidence and only repetition of the crap. This is how a 'virus' that doesn't exist became the 'virus' that changed the world. The HIV-AIDS fairy story became a multi-billion pound industry and the media poured out propaganda terrifying the world about the deadly HIV 'virus' that caused the lethal AIDS. By then Mullis was working at a lab in Santa Monica, California, to detect retroviruses with his PCR test in blood donations received by the Red Cross. In doing so he asked a virologist where he could find a reference for HIV being the cause of AIDS. 'You don't need a reference,' the virologist said ... '*Everybody knows it.*' Mullis said he wanted to quote a reference in the report he was doing and he said he felt a little funny about not knowing the source of such an important discovery when everyone else seemed to. The virologist suggested he cite a report by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) on morbidity and mortality. Mullis read the report, but it only said that an organism had been identified and did not say how. The report did not identify the original scientific work. Physicians, however, *assumed* (key recurring theme) that if the CDC was convinced that HIV caused AIDS then proof must exist. Mullis continues:

I did computer searches. Neither Montagnier, Gallo, nor anyone else had published papers describing experiments which led to the conclusion that HIV probably caused AIDS. I read the papers in Science for which they had become well known as AIDS doctors, but all they had said there was that they had found evidence of a past infection by something which was probably HIV in some AIDS patients.

They found antibodies. Antibodies to viruses had always been considered evidence of past disease, not present disease. Antibodies signaled that the virus had been defeated. The patient had saved himself. There was no indication in these papers that this virus caused a disease. They didn't show that everybody with the antibodies had the disease. In fact they found some healthy people with antibodies.

Mullis asked why their work had been published if Montagnier and Gallo hadn't really found this evidence, and why had they been fighting so hard to get credit for the discovery? He says he was hesitant to write 'HIV is the probable cause of AIDS' until he found published evidence to support that. 'Tens of thousands of scientists and researchers were spending billions of dollars a year doing research based on this idea,' Mullis writes. 'The reason had to be there somewhere; otherwise these people would not have allowed their research to settle into one narrow channel of investigation.' He said he lectured about PCR at numerous meetings where people were always talking about HIV and he asked them how they knew that HIV was the cause of AIDS:

Everyone said something. Everyone had the answer at home, in the office, in some drawer. They all knew, and they would send me the papers as soon as they got back. But I never got any papers. Nobody ever sent me the news about how AIDS was caused by HIV.

Eventually Mullis was able to ask Montagnier himself about the reference proof when he lectured in San Diego at the grand opening of the University of California AIDS Research Center. Mullis says this was the last time he would ask his question without showing anger. Montagnier said he should reference the CDC report. 'I read it', Mullis said, and it didn't answer the question. 'If Montagnier didn't know the answer who the hell did?' Then one night Mullis was driving when an interview came on National Public Radio with Peter Duesberg, a prominent virologist at Berkeley and a California Scientist of the Year. Mullis says he finally understood why he could not find references that connected HIV to AIDS – *there weren't any!* No one had ever proved that HIV causes AIDS even though it had spawned a multi-billion pound global industry and the media was repeating this as fact every day in their articles and broadcasts terrifying the shit out of people about AIDS and giving the impression that a positive test for HIV (see 'Covid') was a death sentence. Duesberg was a threat to the AIDS gravy train and the agenda that underpinned it. He was therefore abused and castigated after he told the Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences

there was no good evidence implicating the new ‘virus’. Editors rejected his manuscripts and his research funds were deleted. Mullis points out that the CDC has defined AIDS as one of more than 30 diseases *if accompanied* by a positive result on a test that detects antibodies to HIV; but those same diseases are not defined as AIDS cases when antibodies are not detected:

If an HIV-positive woman develops uterine cancer, for example, she is considered to have AIDS. If she is not HIV positive, she simply has uterine cancer. An HIV-positive man with tuberculosis has AIDS; if he tests negative he simply has tuberculosis. If he lives in Kenya or Colombia, where the test for HIV antibodies is too expensive, he is simply presumed to have the antibodies and therefore AIDS, and therefore he can be treated in the World Health Organization’s clinic. It’s the only medical help available in some places. And it’s free, because the countries that support WHO are worried about AIDS.

Mullis accuses the CDC of continually adding new diseases (see ever more ‘Covid symptoms’) to the grand AIDS definition and of virtually doctoring the books to make it appear as if the disease continued to spread. He cites how in 1993 the CDC enormously broadened its AIDS definition and county health authorities were delighted because they received \$2,500 per year from the Federal government for every reported AIDS case. Ladies and gentlemen, I have just described, via Kary Mullis, the ‘Covid pandemic’ of 2020 and beyond. Every element is the same and it’s been pulled off in the same way by the same networks.

### **The ‘Covid virus’ exists? Okay – prove it. Er ... still waiting**

What Kary Mullis described with regard to ‘HIV’ has been repeated with ‘Covid’. A claim is made that a new, or ‘novel’, infection has been found and the entire medical system of the world repeats that as fact exactly as they did with HIV and AIDS. No one in the mainstream asks rather relevant questions such as ‘How do you know?’ and ‘Where is your proof?’ The SARS-CoV-2 ‘virus’ and the ‘Covid-19 disease’ became an overnight ‘everybody-knows-that’. The origin could be debated and mulled over, but what you could not suggest was that ‘SARS-CoV-2’ didn’t exist. That would be

ridiculous. ‘Everybody knows’ the ‘virus’ exists. Well, I didn’t for one along with American proper doctors like Andrew Kaufman and Tom Cowan and long-time American proper journalist Jon Rappaport. We dared to pursue the obvious and simple question: ‘Where’s the evidence?’ The overwhelming majority in medicine, journalism and the general public did not think to ask that. After all, *everyone knew* there was a new ‘virus’. Everyone was saying so and I heard it on the BBC. Some would eventually argue that the ‘deadly virus’ was nothing like as deadly as claimed, but few would venture into the realms of its very existence. Had they done so they would have found that the evidence for that claim had gone AWOL as with HIV causes AIDS. In fact, not even that. For something to go AWOL it has to exist in the first place and scientific proof for a ‘SARS-Cov-2’ can be filed under nothing, nowhere and zilch.

Dr Andrew Kaufman is a board-certified forensic psychiatrist in New York State, a Doctor of Medicine and former Assistant Professor and Medical Director of Psychiatry at SUNY Upstate Medical University, and Medical Instructor of Hematology and Oncology at the Medical School of South Carolina. He also studied biology at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) and trained in Psychiatry at Duke University. Kaufman is retired from allopathic medicine, but remains a consultant and educator on natural healing, I saw a video of his very early on in the ‘Covid’ hoax in which he questioned claims about the ‘virus’ in the absence of any supporting evidence and with plenty pointing the other way. I did everything I could to circulate his work which I felt was asking the pivotal questions that needed an answer. I can recommend an excellent pull-together interview he did with the website The Last Vagabond entitled *Dr Andrew Kaufman: Virus Isolation, Terrain Theory and Covid-19* and his website is [andrewkaufmanmd.com](http://andrewkaufmanmd.com). Kaufman is not only a forensic psychiatrist; he is forensic in all that he does. He always reads original scientific papers, experiments and studies instead of second-third-fourth-hand reports about the ‘virus’ in the media which are repeating the repeated repetition of the narrative. When he did so with the original Chinese ‘virus’ papers Kaufman

realised that there was no evidence of a ‘SARS-Cov-2’. They had never – from the start – shown it to exist and every repeat of this claim worldwide was based on the accepted existence of proof that was nowhere to be found – see Kary Mullis and HIV. Here we go again.

## **Let's postulate**

Kaufman discovered that the Chinese authorities immediately concluded that the cause of an illness that broke out among about 200 initial patients in Wuhan was a ‘new virus’ when there were no grounds to make that conclusion. The alleged ‘virus’ was not isolated from other genetic material in their samples and then shown through a system known as Koch’s postulates to be the causative agent of the illness. The world was told that the SARS-Cov-2 ‘virus’ caused a disease they called ‘Covid-19’ which had ‘flu-like’ symptoms and could lead to respiratory problems and pneumonia. If it wasn’t so tragic it would almost be funny. *‘Flu-like’ symptoms?* *Pneumonia? Respiratory disease?* What in CHINA and particularly in Wuhan, one of the most polluted cities in the world with a resulting epidemic of respiratory disease?? Three hundred thousand people get pneumonia in China every year and there are nearly a billion cases worldwide of ‘flu-like symptoms’. These have a whole range of causes – including pollution in Wuhan – but no other possibility was credibly considered in late 2019 when the world was told there was a new and deadly ‘virus’. The global prevalence of pneumonia and ‘flu-like systems’ gave the Cult networks unlimited potential to re-diagnose these other causes as the mythical ‘Covid-19’ and that is what they did from the very start. Kaufman revealed how Chinese medical and science authorities (all subordinates to the Cult-owned communist government) took genetic material from the lungs of only a few of the first patients. The material contained their own cells, bacteria, fungi and other microorganisms living in their bodies. The only way you could prove the existence of the ‘virus’ and its responsibility for the alleged ‘Covid-19’ was to isolate the virus from all the other material – a process also known as ‘purification’ – and

then follow the postulates sequence developed in the late 19th century by German physician and bacteriologist Robert Koch which became the ‘gold standard’ for connecting an alleged causation agent to a disease:

1. The microorganism (bacteria, fungus, virus, etc.) must be present in every case of the disease and all patients must have the same symptoms. It must also *not be present in healthy individuals*.
2. The microorganism must be isolated from the host with the disease. If the microorganism is a bacteria or fungus it must be grown in a pure culture. If it is a virus, it must be purified (i.e. containing no other material except the virus particles) from a clinical sample.
3. The specific disease, with all of its characteristics, must be reproduced when the infectious agent (the purified virus or a pure culture of bacteria or fungi) is inoculated into a healthy, susceptible host.
4. The microorganism must be recoverable from the experimentally infected host as in step 2.

*Not one* of these criteria has been met in the case of ‘SARS-Cov-2’ and ‘Covid-19’. Not ONE. EVER. Robert Koch refers to bacteria and not viruses. What are called ‘viral particles’ are so minute (hence masks are useless by any definition) that they could only be seen after the invention of the electron microscope in the 1930s and can still only be observed through that means. American bacteriologist and virologist Thomas Milton Rivers, the so-called ‘Father of Modern Virology’ who was very significantly director of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research in the 1930s, developed a less stringent version of Koch’s postulates to identify ‘virus’ causation known as ‘Rivers criteria’. ‘Covid’ did not pass that process either. Some even doubt whether any ‘virus’ can be isolated from other particles containing genetic material in the Koch method. Freedom of Information requests in many countries asking for scientific proof that the ‘Covid virus’ has been purified and isolated and shown to exist have all come back with a ‘we don’t have that’ and when this happened with a request to the UK Department of Health they added this comment:

However, outside of the scope of the [Freedom of Information Act] and on a discretionary basis, the following information has been advised to us, which may be of interest. Most infectious diseases are caused by viruses, bacteria or fungi. Some bacteria or fungi have the capacity to grow on their own in isolation, for example in colonies on a petri dish. Viruses are different in that they are what we call 'obligate pathogens' – that is, they cannot survive or reproduce without infecting a host ...

... For some diseases, it is possible to establish causation between a microorganism and a disease by isolating the pathogen from a patient, growing it in pure culture and reintroducing it to a healthy organism. These are known as 'Koch's postulates' and were developed in 1882. However, as our understanding of disease and different disease-causing agents has advanced, these are no longer the method for determining causation [Andrew Kaufman asks why in that case are there two published articles falsely claiming to satisfy Koch's postulates].

It has long been known that viral diseases cannot be identified in this way as viruses cannot be grown in 'pure culture'. When a patient is tested for a viral illness, this is normally done by looking for the presence of antigens, or viral genetic code in a host with molecular biology techniques [Kaufman asks how you could know the origin of these chemicals without having a pure culture for comparison].

For the record 'antigens' are defined so:

Invading microorganisms have antigens on their surface that the human body can recognise as being foreign – meaning not belonging to it. When the body recognises a foreign antigen, lymphocytes (white blood cells) produce antibodies, which are complementary in shape to the antigen.

Notwithstanding that this is open to question in relation to 'SARS-CoV-2' the presence of 'antibodies' can have many causes and they are found in people that are perfectly well. Kary Mullis said: 'Antibodies ... had always been considered evidence of past disease, not present disease.'

## **'Covid' really is a computer 'virus'**

Where the UK Department of Health statement says 'viruses' are now 'diagnosed' through a 'viral genetic code in a host with molecular biology techniques', they mean ... *the PCR test* which its inventor said cannot test for infectious disease. They have no credible method of connecting a 'virus' to a disease and we will see that there is no scientific proof that any 'virus' causes any disease or there is any such thing as a 'virus' in the way that it is described. Tenacious Canadian researcher Christine Massey and her team made

some 40 Freedom of Information requests to national public health agencies in different countries asking for proof that SARS-CoV-2 has been isolated and not one of them could supply that information. Massey said of her request in Canada: 'Freedom of Information reveals Public Health Agency of Canada has no record of 'SARS-CoV-2' isolation performed by anyone, anywhere, ever.' If you accept the comment from the UK Department of Health it's because they can't isolate a 'virus'. Even so many 'science' papers claimed to have isolated the 'Covid virus' until they were questioned and had to admit they hadn't. A reply from the Robert Koch Institute in Germany was typical: 'I am not aware of a paper which purified isolated SARS-CoV-2.' So what the hell was Christian Drosten and his gang using to design the 'Covid' testing protocol that has produced all the illusory Covid' cases and 'Covid' deaths when the head of the Chinese version of the CDC admitted there was a problem right from the start in that the 'virus' had never been isolated/purified? Breathe deeply: What they are calling 'Covid' is actually created by a *computer program* i.e. *they made it up* – er, that's it. They took lung fluid, with many sources of genetic material, from one single person alleged to be infected with Covid-19 by a PCR test which they *claimed*, without clear evidence, contained a 'virus'. They used several computer programs to create a model of a theoretical virus genome sequence from more than fifty-six million small sequences of RNA, each of an unknown source, assembling them like a puzzle with no known solution. The computer filled in the gaps with sequences from bits in the gene bank to make it look like a bat SARS-like coronavirus! A wave of the magic wand and poof, an *in silico* (computer-generated) genome, a scientific fantasy, was created. UK health researcher Dr Kevin Corbett made the same point with this analogy:

... It's like giving you a few bones and saying that's your fish. It could be any fish. Not even a skeleton. Here's a few fragments of bones. That's your fish ... It's all from gene bank and the bits of the virus sequence that weren't there they made up.

They synthetically created them to fill in the blanks. That's what genetics is; it's a code. So it's ABBBCCDDDD and you're missing some what you think is EEE so you put it in. It's all

synthetic. You just manufacture the bits that are missing. This is the end result of the geneticization of virology. This is basically a computer virus.

Further confirmation came in an email exchange between British citizen journalist Frances Leader and the government's Medicines & Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency (the Gates-funded MHRA) which gave emergency permission for untested 'Covid vaccines' to be used. The agency admitted that the 'vaccine' is not based on an isolated 'virus', but comes from a *computer-generated model*. Frances Leader was naturally banned from Cult-owned fascist Twitter for making this exchange public. The process of creating computer-generated alleged 'viruses' is called 'in silico' or 'in silicon' – computer chips – and the term 'in silico' is believed to originate with biological experiments using only a computer in 1989. 'Vaccines' involved with 'Covid' are also produced 'in silico' or by computer not a natural process. If the original 'virus' is nothing more than a made-up computer model how can there be 'new variants' of something that never existed in the first place? They are not new 'variants'; they are new *computer models* only minutely different to the original program and designed to further terrify the population into having the 'vaccine' and submitting to fascism. You want a 'new variant'? Click, click, enter – there you go. Tell the medical profession that you have discovered a 'South African variant', 'UK variants' or a 'Brazilian variant' and in the usual HIV-causes-AIDS manner they will unquestioningly repeat it with no evidence whatsoever to support these claims. They will go on television and warn about the dangers of 'new variants' while doing nothing more than repeating what they have been told to be true and knowing that any deviation from that would be career suicide. Big-time insiders will know it's a hoax, but much of the medical community is clueless about the way they are being played and themselves play the public without even being aware they are doing so. What an interesting 'coincidence' that AstraZeneca and Oxford University were conducting 'Covid vaccine trials' in the three countries – the UK, South Africa and Brazil – where the first three 'variants' were claimed to have 'broken out'.

## **Here's your 'virus' – it's a unicorn**

Dr Andrew Kaufman presented a brilliant analysis describing how the 'virus' was imagined into fake existence when he dissected an article published by *Nature* and written by 19 authors detailing *alleged* 'sequencing of a complete viral genome' of the 'new SARS-CoV-2 virus'. This computer-modelled *in silico* genome was used as a template for all subsequent genome sequencing experiments that resulted in the so-called variants which he said now number more than 6,000. The fake genome was constructed from more than 56 million individual short strands of RNA. Those little pieces were assembled into longer pieces by finding areas of overlapping sequences. The computer programs created over two million possible combinations from which the authors simply chose the longest one. They then compared this to a 'bat virus' and the computer 'alignment' rearranged the sequence and filled in the gaps! They called this computer-generated abomination the 'complete genome'. Dr Tom Cowan, a fellow medical author and collaborator with Kaufman, said such computer-generation constitutes scientific fraud and he makes this superb analogy:

Here is an equivalency: A group of researchers claim to have found a unicorn because they found a piece of a hoof, a hair from a tail, and a snippet of a horn. They then add that information into a computer and program it to re-create the unicorn, and they then claim this computer re-creation is the real unicorn. Of course, they had never actually seen a unicorn so could not possibly have examined its genetic makeup to compare their samples with the actual unicorn's hair, hooves and horn.

The researchers claim they decided which is the real genome of SARS-CoV-2 by 'consensus', sort of like a vote. Again, different computer programs will come up with different versions of the imaginary 'unicorn', so they come together as a group and decide which is the real imaginary unicorn.

This is how the 'virus' that has transformed the world was brought into fraudulent 'existence'. Extraordinary, yes, but as the Nazis said the bigger the lie the more will believe it. Cowan, however, wasn't finished and he went on to identify what he called the real blockbuster in the paper. He quotes this section from a paper written

by virologists and published by the CDC and then explains what it means:

Therefore, we examined the capacity of SARS-CoV-2 to infect and replicate in several common primate and human cell lines, including human adenocarcinoma cells (A549), human liver cells (HUH 7.0), and human embryonic kidney cells (HEK-293T). In addition to Vero E6 and Vero CCL81 cells. ... Each cell line was inoculated at high multiplicity of infection and examined 24h post-infection.

No CPE was observed in any of the cell lines except in Vero cells, which grew to greater than 10 to the 7th power at 24 h post-infection. In contrast, HUH 7.0 and 293T showed only modest viral replication, and A549 cells were incompatible with SARS CoV-2 infection.

Cowan explains that when virologists attempt to prove infection they have three possible 'hosts' or models on which they can test. The first was humans. Exposure to humans was generally not done for ethical reasons and has never been done with SARS-CoV-2 or any coronavirus. The second possible host was animals. Cowan said that forgetting for a moment that they never actually use purified virus when exposing animals they do use solutions that they *claim* contain the virus. Exposure to animals has been done with SARS-CoV-2 in an experiment involving mice and this is what they found: *None of the wild (normal) mice got sick*. In a group of genetically-modified mice, a statistically insignificant number lost weight and had slightly bristled fur, but they experienced nothing like the illness called 'Covid-19'. Cowan said the third method – the one they mostly rely on – is to inoculate solutions they *say* contain the virus onto a variety of tissue cultures. This process had never been shown to kill tissue *unless* the sample material was starved of nutrients and poisoned as *part of the process*. Yes, incredibly, in tissue experiments designed to show the 'virus' is responsible for killing the tissue they starve the tissue of nutrients and add toxic drugs including antibiotics and they do not have control studies to see if it's the starvation and poisoning that is degrading the tissue rather than the 'virus' they allege to be in there somewhere. You want me to pinch you? Yep, I understand. Tom Cowan said this about the whole nonsensical farce as he explains what that quote from the CDC paper really means:

The shocking thing about the above quote is that using their own methods, the virologists found that solutions containing SARS-CoV-2 – even in high amounts – were NOT, I repeat NOT, infective to any of the three human tissue cultures they tested. In plain English, this means they proved, on their terms, that this ‘new coronavirus’ is not infectious to human beings. It is ONLY infective to monkey kidney cells, and only then when you add two potent drugs (gentamicin and amphotericin), known to be toxic to kidneys, to the mix.

My friends, read this again and again. These virologists, published by the CDC, performed a clear proof, on their terms, showing that the SARS-CoV-2 virus is harmless to human beings. That is the only possible conclusion, but, unfortunately, this result is not even mentioned in their conclusion. They simply say they can provide virus stocks cultured only on monkey Vero cells, thanks for coming.

Cowan concluded: ‘If people really understood how this “science” was done, I would hope they would storm the gates and demand honesty, transparency and truth.’ Dr Michael Yeadon, former Vice President and Chief Scientific Adviser at drug giant Pfizer has been a vocal critic of the ‘Covid vaccine’ and its potential for multiple harm. He said in an interview in April, 2021, that ‘not one [vaccine] has the virus. He was asked why vaccines normally using a ‘dead’ version of a disease to activate the immune system were not used for ‘Covid’ and instead we had the synthetic methods of the ‘mRNA Covid vaccine’. Yeadon said that to do the former ‘you’d have to have some of [the virus] wouldn’t you?’ He added: ‘No-one’s got any – seriously.’ Yeadon said that surely they couldn’t have fooled the whole world for a year without having a virus, ‘but oddly enough ask around – no one’s got it’. He didn’t know why with all the ‘great labs’ around the world that the virus had not been isolated – ‘Maybe they’ve been too busy running bad PCR tests and vaccines that people don’t need.’ What is today called ‘science’ is not ‘science’ at all. Science is no longer what is, but whatever people can be manipulated to *believe* that it is. Real science has been hijacked by the Cult to dispense and produce the ‘expert scientists’ and contentions that suit the agenda of the Cult. How big-time this has happened with the ‘Covid’ hoax which is entirely based on fake science delivered by fake ‘scientists’ and fake ‘doctors’. The human-caused climate change hoax is also entirely based on fake science delivered by fake ‘scientists’ and fake ‘climate experts’. In both cases real

scientists, climate experts and doctors have their views suppressed and deleted by the Cult-owned science establishment, media and Silicon Valley. This is the ‘science’ that politicians claim to be ‘following’ and a common denominator of ‘Covid’ and climate are Cult psychopaths Bill Gates and his mate Klaus Schwab at the Gates-funded World Economic Forum. But, don’t worry, it’s all just a coincidence and absolutely nothing to worry about. Zzzzzzzz.

## **What is a ‘virus’ REALLY?**

Dr Tom Cowan is one of many contesting the very existence of viruses let alone that they cause disease. This is understandable when there is no scientific evidence for a disease-causing ‘virus’. German virologist Dr Stefan Lanka won a landmark case in 2017 in the German Supreme Court over his contention that there is no such thing as a measles virus. He had offered a big prize for anyone who could prove there is and Lanka won his case when someone sought to claim the money. There is currently a prize of more than 225,000 euros on offer from an Isolate Truth Fund for anyone who can prove the isolation of SARS-CoV-2 and its genetic substance. Lanka wrote in an article headed ‘The Misconception Called Virus’ that scientists think a ‘virus’ is causing tissue to become diseased and degraded when in fact it is the *processes they are using* which do that – not a ‘virus’. Lanka has done an important job in making this point clear as Cowan did in his analysis of the CDC paper. Lanka says that all claims about viruses as disease-causing pathogens are wrong and based on ‘easily recognisable, understandable and verifiable misinterpretations.’ Scientists believed they were working with ‘viruses’ in their laboratories when they were really working with ‘typical particles of specific dying tissues or cells ...’ Lanka said that the tissue decaying process claimed to be caused by a ‘virus’ still happens when no alleged ‘virus’ is involved. It’s the *process* that does the damage and not a ‘virus’. The genetic sample is deprived of nutrients, removed from its energy supply through removal from the body and then doused in toxic antibiotics to remove any bacteria. He confirms again that establishment scientists do not (pinch me)

conduct control experiments to see if this is the case and if they did they would see the claims that 'viruses' are doing the damage is nonsense. He adds that during the measles 'virus' court case he commissioned an independent laboratory to perform just such a control experiment and the result was that the tissues and cells died in the exact same way as with alleged 'infected' material. This is supported by a gathering number of scientists, doctors and researchers who reject what is called 'germ theory' or the belief in the body being infected by contagious sources emitted by other people. Researchers Dawn Lester and David Parker take the same stance in their highly-detailed and sourced book *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong* which was recommended to me by a number of medical professionals genuinely seeking the truth. Lester and Parker say there is no provable scientific evidence to show that a 'virus' can be transmitted between people or people and animals or animals and people:

The definition also claims that viruses are the cause of many diseases, as if this has been definitively proven. But this is not the case; there is no original scientific evidence that definitively demonstrates that any virus is the cause of any disease. The burden of proof for any theory lies with those who proposed it; but none of the existing documents provides 'proof' that supports the claim that 'viruses' are pathogens.

Dr Tom Cowan employs one of his clever analogies to describe the process by which a 'virus' is named as the culprit for a disease when what is called a 'virus' is only material released by cells detoxing themselves from infiltration by chemical or radiation poisoning. The tidal wave of technologically-generated radiation in the 'smart' modern world plus all the toxic food and drink are causing this to happen more than ever. Deluded 'scientists' misread this as a gathering impact of what they wrongly label 'viruses'.

## Paper can infect houses

Cowan said in an article for [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com) – with his tongue only mildly in his cheek – that he believed he had made a tremendous

discovery that may revolutionise science. He had discovered that small bits of paper are alive, ‘well alive-ish’, can ‘infect’ houses, and then reproduce themselves inside the house. The result was that this explosion of growth in the paper inside the house causes the house to explode, blowing it to smithereens. His evidence for this new theory is that in the past months he had carefully examined many of the houses in his neighbourhood and found almost no scraps of paper on the lawns and surrounds of the house. There was an occasional stray label, but nothing more. Then he would return to these same houses a week or so later and with a few, not all of them, particularly the old and decrepit ones, he found to his shock and surprise they were littered with stray bits of paper. He knew then that the paper had infected these houses, made copies of itself, and blew up the house. A young boy on a bicycle at one of the sites told him he had seen a demolition crew using dynamite to explode the house the previous week, but Cowan dismissed this as the idle thoughts of silly boys because ‘I was on to something big’. He was on to how ‘scientists’ mistake genetic material in the detoxifying process for something they call a ‘virus’. Cowan said of his house and paper story:

If this sounds crazy to you, it’s because it should. This scenario is obviously nuts. But consider this admittedly embellished, for effect, current viral theory that all scientists, medical doctors and virologists currently believe.

He takes the example of the ‘novel SARS-Cov2’ virus to prove the point. First they take someone with an undefined illness called ‘Covid-19’ and don’t even attempt to find any virus in their sputum. Never mind the scientists still describe how this ‘virus’, which they have not located attaches to a cell receptor, injects its genetic material, in ‘Covid’s’ case, RNA, into the cell. The RNA once inserted exploits the cell to reproduce itself and makes ‘thousands, nay millions, of copies of itself ... Then it emerges victorious to claim its next victim’:

If you were to look in the scientific literature for proof, actual scientific proof, that uniform SARS-CoV2 viruses have been properly isolated from the sputum of a sick person, that actual spike proteins could be seen protruding from the virus (which has not been found), you would find that such evidence doesn't exist.

If you go looking in the published scientific literature for actual pictures, proof, that these spike proteins or any viral proteins are ever attached to any receptor embedded in any cell membrane, you would also find that no such evidence exists. If you were to look for a video or documented evidence of the intact virus injecting its genetic material into the body of the cell, reproducing itself and then emerging victorious by budding off the cell membrane, you would find that no such evidence exists.

The closest thing you would find is electron micrograph pictures of cellular particles, possibly attached to cell debris, both of which to be seen were stained by heavy metals, a process that completely distorts their architecture within the living organism. This is like finding bits of paper stuck to the blown-up bricks, thereby proving the paper emerged by taking pieces of the bricks on its way out.

## **The Enders baloney**

Cowan describes the 'Covid' story as being just as make-believe as his paper story and he charts back this fantasy to a Nobel Prize winner called John Enders (1897-1985), an American biomedical scientist who has been dubbed 'The Father of Modern Vaccines'. Enders is claimed to have 'discovered' the process of the viral culture which 'proved' that a 'virus' caused measles. Cowan explains how Enders did this 'by using the EXACT same procedure that has been followed by every virologist to find and characterize every new virus since 1954'. Enders took throat swabs from children with measles and immersed them in 2ml of milk. Penicillin (100u/ml) and the antibiotic streptomycin (50,g/ml) were added and the whole mix was centrifuged – rotated at high speed to separate large cellular debris from small particles and molecules as with milk and cream, for example. Cowan says that if the aim is to find little particles of genetic material ('viruses') in the snot from children with measles it would seem that the last thing you would do is mix the snot with other material – milk –that also has genetic material. 'How are you ever going to know whether whatever you found came from the snot or the milk?' He points out that streptomycin is a 'nephrotoxic' or poisonous-to-the-kidney drug. You will see the relevance of that

shortly. Cowan says that it gets worse, much worse, when Enders describes the culture medium upon which the virus 'grows': 'The culture medium consisted of bovine amniotic fluid (90%), beef embryo extract (5%), horse serum (5%), antibiotics and phenol red as an indicator of cell metabolism.' Cowan asks incredulously: 'Did he just say that the culture medium also contained fluids and tissues that are themselves rich sources of genetic material?' The genetic cocktail, or 'medium', is inoculated onto tissue and cells from rhesus monkey *kidney* tissue. This is where the importance of streptomycin comes in and currently-used antimicrobials and other drugs that are *poisonous to kidneys* and used in ALL modern viral cultures (e.g. gentamicin, streptomycin, and amphotericin). Cowan asks: 'How are you ever going to know from this witch's brew where any genetic material comes from as we now have five different sources of rich genetic material in our mix?' Remember, he says, that all genetic material, whether from monkey kidney tissues, bovine serum, milk, etc., is made from the exact same components. The same central question returns: 'How are you possibly going to know that it was the virus that killed the kidney tissue and not the toxic antibiotic and starvation rations on which you are growing the tissue?' John Enders answered the question himself – *you can't*:

A second agent was obtained from an uninoculated culture of monkey kidney cells. The cytopathic changes [death of the cells] it induced in the unstained preparations could not be distinguished with confidence from the viruses isolated from measles.

The death of the cells ('cytopathic changes') happened in exactly the same manner, whether they inoculated the kidney tissue with the measles snot or not, Cowan says. 'This is evidence that the destruction of the tissue, the very proof of viral causation of illness, was not caused by anything in the snot because they saw the same destructive effect when the snot was not even used ... the cytopathic, i.e., cell-killing, changes come from the process of the culture itself, not from any virus in any snot, period.' Enders quotes in his 1957 paper a virologist called Ruckle as reporting similar findings 'and in addition has isolated an agent from monkey kidney tissue that is so

far indistinguishable from human measles virus'. In other words, Cowan says, these particles called 'measles viruses' are simply and clearly breakdown products of the starved and poisoned tissue. For measles 'virus' see all 'viruses' including the so-called 'Covid virus'. Enders, the 'Father of Modern Vaccines', also said:

There is a potential risk in employing cultures of primate cells for the production of vaccines composed of attenuated virus, since the presence of other agents possibly latent in primate tissues cannot be definitely excluded by any known method.

Cowan further quotes from a paper published in the journal *Viruses* in May, 2020, while the 'Covid pandemic' was well underway in the media if not in reality. 'EVs' here refers to particles of genetic debris from our own tissues, such as exosomes of which more in a moment: 'The remarkable resemblance between EVs and viruses has caused quite a few problems in the studies focused on the analysis of EVs released during viral infections.' Later the paper adds that to date a reliable method that can actually guarantee a complete separation (of EVs from viruses) DOES NOT EXIST. This was published at a time when a fairy tale 'virus' was claimed in total certainty to be causing a fairy tale 'viral disease' called 'Covid-19' – a fairy tale that was already well on the way to transforming human society in the image that the Cult has worked to achieve for so long. Cowan concludes his article:

To summarize, there is no scientific evidence that pathogenic viruses exist. What we think of as 'viruses' are simply the normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues and cells. When we are well, we make fewer of these particles; when we are starved, poisoned, suffocated by wearing masks, or afraid, we make more.

There is no engineered virus circulating and making people sick. People in laboratories all over the world are making genetically modified products to make people sick. These are called vaccines. There is no virome, no 'ecosystem' of viruses, viruses are not 8%, 50% or 100 % of our genetic material. These are all simply erroneous ideas based on the misconception called a virus.

## **What is 'Covid'? Load of bollocks**

The background described here by Cowan and Lanka was emphasised in the first video presentation that I saw by Dr Andrew Kaufman when he asked whether the ‘Covid virus’ was in truth a natural defence mechanism of the body called ‘exosomes’. These are released by cells when in states of toxicity – see the same themes returning over and over. They are released ever more profusely as chemical and radiation toxicity increases and think of the potential effect therefore of 5G alone as its destructive frequencies infest the human energetic information field with a gathering pace (5G went online in Wuhan in 2019 as the ‘virus’ emerged). I’ll have more about this later. Exosomes transmit a warning to the rest of the body that ‘Houston, we have a problem’. Kaufman presented images of exosomes and compared them with ‘Covid’ under an electron microscope and the similarity was remarkable. They both attach to the same cell receptors (*claimed* in the case of ‘Covid’), contain the same genetic material in the form of RNA or ribonucleic acid, and both are found in ‘viral cell cultures’ with damaged or dying cells. James Hildreth MD, President and Chief Executive Officer of the Meharry Medical College at Johns Hopkins, said: ‘The virus is fully an exosome in every sense of the word.’ Kaufman’s conclusion was that there is no ‘virus’: ‘This entire pandemic is a completely manufactured crisis … there is no evidence of anyone dying from [this] illness.’ Dr Tom Cowan and Sally Fallon Morell, authors of *The Contagion Myth*, published a statement with Dr Kaufman in February, 2021, explaining why the ‘virus’ does not exist and you can read it that in full in the Appendix.

‘Virus’ theory can be traced to the ‘cell theory’ in 1858 of German physician Rudolf Virchow (1821-1920) who contended that disease originates from a single cell infiltrated by a ‘virus’. Dr Stefan Lanka said that findings and insights with respect to the structure, function and central importance of tissues in the creation of life, which were already known in 1858, comprehensively refute the cell theory. Virchow ignored them. We have seen the part later played by John Enders in the 1950s and Lanka notes that infection theories were only established as a global dogma through the policies and

eugenics of the Third Reich in Nazi Germany (creation of the same Sabbatian cult behind the ‘Covid’ hoax). Lanka said: ‘Before 1933, scientists dared to contradict this theory; after 1933, these critical scientists were silenced’. Dr Tom Cowan’s view is that ill-health is caused by too much of something, too little of something, or toxification from chemicals and radiation – not contagion. We must also highlight as a major source of the ‘virus’ theology a man still called the ‘Father of Modern Virology’ – Thomas Milton Rivers (1888-1962). There is no way given the Cult’s long game policy that it was a coincidence for the ‘Father of Modern Virology’ to be director of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research from 1937 to 1956 when he is credited with making the Rockefeller Institute a leader in ‘viral research’. Cult Rockefellers were the force behind the creation of Big Pharma ‘medicine’, established the World Health Organisation in 1948, and have long and close associations with the Gates family that now runs the WHO during the pandemic hoax through mega-rich Cult gofer and psychopath Bill Gates.

Only a Renegade Mind can see through all this bullshit by asking the questions that need to be answered, not taking ‘no’ or prevarication for an answer, and certainly not hiding from the truth in fear of speaking it. Renegade Minds have always changed the world for the better and they will change this one no matter how bleak it may currently appear to be.

## CHAPTER SIX

### Sequence of deceit

*If you tell the truth, you don't have to remember anything*

Mark Twain

**A**gainst the background that I have laid out this far the sequence that took us from an invented 'virus' in Cult-owned China in late 2019 to the fascist transformation of human society can be seen and understood in a whole new context.

We were told that a deadly disease had broken out in Wuhan and the world media began its campaign (coordinated by behavioural psychologists as we shall see) to terrify the population into unquestioning compliance. We were shown images of Chinese people collapsing in the street which never happened in the West with what was supposed to be the same condition. In the earliest days when alleged cases and deaths were few the fear register was hysterical in many areas of the media and this would expand into the common media narrative across the world. The real story was rather different, but we were never told that. The Chinese government, one of the Cult's biggest centres of global operation, said they had discovered a new illness with flu-like and pneumonia-type symptoms in a city with such toxic air that it is overwhelmed with flu-like symptoms, pneumonia and respiratory disease. Chinese scientists said it was a new – 'novel' – coronavirus which they called Sars-Cov-2 and that it caused a disease they labelled 'Covid-19'. There was no evidence for this and the 'virus' has never to this day been isolated, purified and its genetic code established from that. It

was from the beginning a computer-generated fiction. Stories of Chinese whistleblowers saying the number of deaths was being suppressed or that the ‘new disease’ was related to the Wuhan bio-lab misdirected mainstream and alternative media into cul-de-sacs to obscure the real truth – there was no ‘virus’.

Chinese scientists took genetic material from the lung fluid of just a few people and said they had found a ‘new’ disease when this material had a wide range of content. There was no evidence for a ‘virus’ for the very reasons explained in the last two chapters. The ‘virus’ has never been shown to (a) exist and (b) cause any disease. People were diagnosed on symptoms that are so widespread in Wuhan and polluted China and with a PCR test that can’t detect infectious disease. On this farce the whole global scam was sold to the rest of the world which would also diagnose respiratory disease as ‘Covid-19’ from symptoms alone or with a PCR test not testing for a ‘virus’. Flu miraculously disappeared *worldwide* in 2020 and into 2021 as it was redesignated ‘Covid-19’. It was really the same old flu with its ‘flu-like’ symptoms attributed to ‘flu-like’ ‘Covid-19’. At the same time with very few exceptions the Chinese response of draconian lockdown and fascism was the chosen weapon to respond across the West as recommended by the Cult-owned Tedros at the Cult-owned World Health Organization run by the Cult-owned Gates. All was going according to plan. Chinese scientists – everything in China is controlled by the Cult-owned government – compared their contaminated RNA lung-fluid material with other RNA sequences and said it appeared to be just under 80 percent identical to the SARS-CoV-1 ‘virus’ claimed to be the cause of the SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome) ‘outbreak’ in 2003. They decreed that because of this the ‘new virus’ had to be related and they called it SARS-CoV-2. There are some serious problems with this assumption and *assumption* was all it was. Most ‘factual’ science turns out to be assumptions repeated into everyone-knows-that. A match of under 80-percent is meaningless. Dr Kaufman makes the point that there’s a 96 percent genetic correlation between humans and chimpanzees, but ‘no one would say our genetic material is part

of the chimpanzee family'. Yet the Chinese authorities were claiming that a much lower percentage, less than 80 percent, proved the existence of a new 'coronavirus'. For goodness sake human DNA is 60 percent similar to a *banana*.

## **You are feeling sleepy**

The entire 'Covid' hoax is a global Psyop, a psychological operation to program the human mind into believing and fearing a complete fantasy. A crucial aspect of this was what *appeared* to happen in Italy. It was all very well streaming out daily images of an alleged catastrophe in Wuhan, but to the Western mind it was still on the other side of the world in a very different culture and setting. A reaction of 'this could happen to me and my family' was still nothing like as intense enough for the mind-doctors. The Cult needed a Western example to push people over that edge and it chose Italy, one of its major global locations going back to the Roman Empire. An Italian 'Covid' crisis was manufactured in a particular area called Lombardy which just happens to be notorious for its toxic air and therefore respiratory disease. Wuhan, China, *déjà vu*. An hysterical media told horror stories of Italians dying from 'Covid' in their droves and how Lombardy hospitals were being overrun by a tidal wave of desperately ill people needing treatment after being struck down by the 'deadly virus'. Here was the psychological turning point the Cult had planned. Wow, if this is happening in Italy, the Western mind concluded, this indeed could happen to me and my family. Another point is that Italian authorities responded by following the Chinese blueprint so vehemently recommended by the Cult-owned World Health Organization. They imposed fascistic lockdowns on the whole country viciously policed with the help of surveillance drones sweeping through the streets seeking out anyone who escaped from mass house arrest. Livelihoods were destroyed and psychology unravelled in the way we have witnessed since in all lockdown countries. Crucial to the plan was that Italy responded in this way to set the precedent of suspending freedom and imposing fascism in a 'Western liberal democracy'. I emphasised in an

animated video explanation on [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com) posted in the summer of 2020 how important it was to the Cult to expand the Chinese lockdown model across the West. Without this, and the bare-faced lie that non-symptomatic people could still transmit a ‘disease’ they didn’t have, there was no way locking down the whole population, sick and not sick, could be pulled off. At just the right time and with no evidence Cult operatives and gofers claimed that people without symptoms could pass on the ‘disease’. In the name of protecting the ‘vulnerable’ like elderly people, who lockdowns would kill by the tens of thousands, we had for the first time healthy people told to isolate as well as the sick. The great majority of people who tested positive had no symptoms because there was nothing wrong with them. It was just a trick made possible by a test not testing for the ‘virus’.

Months after my animated video the Gates-funded Professor Neil Ferguson at the Gates-funded Imperial College confirmed that I was right. He didn’t say it in those terms, naturally, but he did say it. Ferguson will enter the story shortly for his outrageously crazy ‘computer models’ that led to Britain, the United States and many other countries following the Chinese and now Italian methods of response. Put another way, following the Cult script. Ferguson said that SAGE, the UK government’s scientific advisory group which has controlled ‘Covid’ policy from the start, wanted to follow the Chinese lockdown model (while they all continued to work and be paid), but they wondered if they could possibly, in Ferguson’s words, ‘get away with it in Europe’. ‘Get away with it’? Who the hell do these moronic, arrogant people think they are? This appalling man Ferguson said that once Italy went into national lockdown they realised they, too, could mimic China:

It’s a communist one-party state, we said. We couldn’t get away with it in Europe, we thought ... and then Italy did it. And we realised we could. Behind this garbage from Ferguson is a simple fact: Doing the same as China in every country was the plan from the start and Ferguson’s ‘models’ would play a central role in achieving that. It’s just a coincidence, of course, and absolutely nothing to worry your little head about.

## **Oops, sorry, our mistake**

Once the Italian segment of the Psyop had done the job it was designed to do a very different story emerged. Italian authorities revealed that 99 percent of those who had 'died from Covid-19' in Italy had one, two, three, or more 'co-morbidities' or illnesses and health problems that could have ended their life. The US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) published a figure of 94 percent for Americans dying of 'Covid' while having other serious medical conditions – on average two to three (some five or six) other potential causes of death. In terms of death from an unproven 'virus' I say it is 100 percent. The other one percent in Italy and six percent in the US would presumably have died from 'Covid's' flu-like symptoms with a range of other possible causes in conjunction with a test not testing for the 'virus'. Fox News reported that even more startling figures had emerged in one US county in which 410 of 422 deaths attributed to 'Covid-19' had other potentially deadly health conditions. The Italian National Health Institute said later that the average age of people dying with a 'Covid-19' diagnosis in Italy was about 81. Ninety percent were over 70 with ten percent over 90. In terms of other reasons to die some 80 percent had two or more chronic diseases with half having three or more including cardiovascular problems, diabetes, respiratory problems and cancer. Why is the phantom 'Covid-19' said to kill overwhelmingly old people and hardly affect the young? Old people continually die of many causes and especially respiratory disease which you can re-diagnose 'Covid-19' while young people die in tiny numbers by comparison and rarely of respiratory disease. Old people 'die of Covid' because they die of other things that can be redesignated 'Covid' and it really is that simple.

## **Flu has flown**

The blueprint was in place. Get your illusory 'cases' from a test not testing for the 'virus' and redesignate other causes of death as 'Covid-19'. You have an instant 'pandemic' from something that is nothing more than a computer-generated fiction. With near-on a

billion people having ‘flu-like’ symptoms every year the potential was limitless and we can see why flu quickly and apparently miraculously disappeared *worldwide* by being diagnosed ‘Covid-19’. The painfully bloody obvious was explained away by the childlike media in headlines like this in the UK *‘Independent’*: ‘Not a single case of flu detected by Public Health England this year as Covid restrictions suppress virus’. I kid you not. The masking, social distancing and house arrest that did not make the ‘Covid virus’ disappear somehow did so with the ‘flu virus’. Even worse the article, by a bloke called Samuel Lovett, suggested that maybe the masking, sanitising and other ‘Covid’ measures should continue to keep the flu away. With a ridiculousness that disturbs your breathing (it’s ‘Covid-19’) the said Lovett wrote: ‘With widespread social distancing and mask-wearing measures in place throughout the UK, the usual routes of transmission for influenza have been blocked.’ He had absolutely no evidence to support that statement, but look at the consequences of him acknowledging the obvious. With flu not disappearing at all and only being relabelled ‘Covid-19’ he would have to contemplate that ‘Covid’ was a hoax on a scale that is hard to imagine. You need guts and commitment to truth to even go there and that’s clearly something Samuel Lovett does not have in abundance. He would never have got it through the editors anyway.

Tens of thousands die in the United States alone every winter from flu including many with pneumonia complications. CDC figures record *45 million* Americans diagnosed with flu in 2017-2018 of which 61,000 died and some reports claim 80,000. Where was the same hysteria then that we have seen with ‘Covid-19’? Some 250,000 Americans are admitted to hospital with pneumonia every year with about 50,000 cases proving fatal. About 65 million suffer respiratory disease every year and three million deaths makes this the third biggest cause of death worldwide. You only have to redesignate a portion of all these people ‘Covid-19’ and you have an instant global pandemic or the *appearance* of one. Why would doctors do this? They are told to do this and all but a few dare not refuse those who must be obeyed. Doctors in general are not researching their own

knowledge and instead take it direct and unquestioned from the authorities that own them and their careers. The authorities say they must now diagnose these symptoms ‘Covid-19’ and not flu, or whatever, and they do it. Dark suits say put ‘Covid-19’ on death certificates no matter what the cause of death and the doctors do it. Renegade Minds don’t fall for the illusion that doctors and medical staff are all highly-intelligent, highly-principled, seekers of medical truth. *Some are*, but not the majority. They are repeaters, gofers, and yes sir, no sir, purveyors of what the system demands they purvey. The ‘Covid’ con is not merely confined to diseases of the lungs. Instructions to doctors to put ‘Covid-19’ on death certificates for anyone dying of *anything* within 28 days (or much more) of a positive test not testing for the ‘virus’ opened the floodgates. The term dying *with* ‘Covid’ and not *of* ‘Covid’ was coined to cover the truth. Whether it was a *with* or an *of* they were all added to the death numbers attributed to the ‘deadly virus’ compiled by national governments and globally by the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins operation in the United States that was so involved in those ‘pandemic’ simulations. Fraudulent deaths were added to the ever-growing list of fraudulent ‘cases’ from false positives from a false test. No wonder Professor Walter Ricciardi, scientific advisor to the Italian minister of health, said after the Lombardy hysteria had done its job that ‘Covid’ death rates were due to Italy having the second oldest population in the world and to *how hospitals record deaths*:

The way in which we code deaths in our country is very generous in the sense that all the people who die in hospitals with the coronavirus are deemed to be dying of the coronavirus. On re-evaluation by the National Institute of Health, only 12 per cent of death certificates have shown a direct causality from coronavirus, while 88 per cent of patients who have died have at least one pre-morbidity – many had two or three.

This is extraordinary enough when you consider the propaganda campaign to use Italy to terrify the world, but how can they even say twelve percent were genuine when the ‘virus’ has not been shown to exist, its ‘code’ is a computer program, and diagnosis comes from a test not testing for it? As in China, and soon the world, ‘Covid-19’ in

Italy was a redesignation of diagnosis. Lies and corruption were to become the real ‘pandemic’ fuelled by a pathetically-compliant medical system taking its orders from the tiny few at the top of their national hierarchy who answered to the World Health Organization which answers to Gates and the Cult. Doctors were told – ordered – to diagnose a particular set of symptoms ‘Covid-19’ and put that on the death certificate for any cause of death if the patient had tested positive with a test not testing for the virus or had ‘Covid’ symptoms like the flu. The United States even introduced big financial incentives to manipulate the figures with hospitals receiving £4,600 from the Medicare system for diagnosing someone with regular pneumonia, \$13,000 if they made the diagnosis from the same symptoms ‘Covid-19’ pneumonia, and \$39, 000 if they put a ‘Covid’ diagnosed patient on a ventilator that would almost certainly kill them. A few – painfully and pathetically few – medical whistleblowers revealed (before Cult-owned YouTube deleted their videos) that they had been instructed to ‘let the patient crash’ and put them straight on a ventilator instead of going through a series of far less intrusive and dangerous methods as they would have done before the pandemic hoax began and the financial incentives kicked in. We are talking cold-blooded murder given that ventilators are so damaging to respiratory systems they are usually the last step before heaven awaits. Renegade Minds never fall for the belief that people in white coats are all angels of mercy and cannot be full-on psychopaths. I have explained in detail in *The Answer* how what I am describing here played out across the world coordinated by the World Health Organization through the medical hierarchies in almost every country.

## **Medical scientist calls it**

Information about the non-existence of the ‘virus’ began to emerge for me in late March, 2020, and mushroomed after that. I was sent an email by Sir Julian Rose, a writer, researcher, and organic farming promotor, from a medical scientist friend of his in the United States. Even at that early stage in March the scientist was able to explain

how the ‘Covid’ hoax was being manipulated. He said there were no reliable tests for a specific ‘Covid-19 virus’ and nor were there any reliable agencies or media outlets for reporting numbers of actual ‘Covid-19’ cases. We have seen in the long period since then that he was absolutely right. ‘Every action and reaction to Covid-19 is based on totally flawed data and we simply cannot make accurate assessments,’ he said. Most people diagnosed with ‘Covid-19’ were showing nothing more than cold and flu-like symptoms ‘because most coronavirus strains *are* nothing more than cold/flu-like symptoms’. We had farcical situations like an 84-year-old German man testing positive for ‘Covid-19’ and his nursing home ordered to quarantine only for him to be found to have a common cold. The scientist described back then why PCR tests and what he called the ‘Mickey Mouse test kits’ were useless for what they were claimed to be identifying. ‘The idea these kits can isolate a specific virus like Covid-19 is nonsense,’ he said. Significantly, he pointed out that ‘if you want to create a totally false panic about a totally false pandemic – pick a coronavirus’. This is exactly what the Cult-owned Gates, World Economic Forum and Johns Hopkins University did with their Event 201 ‘simulation’ followed by their real-life simulation called the ‘pandemic’. The scientist said that all you had to do was select the sickest of people with respiratory-type diseases in a single location – ‘say Wuhan’ – and administer PCR tests to them. You can then claim that anyone showing ‘viral sequences’ similar to a coronavirus ‘which will inevitably be quite a few’ is suffering from a ‘new’ disease:

Since you already selected the sickest flu cases a fairly high proportion of your sample will go on to die. You can then say this ‘new’ virus has a CFR [case fatality rate] higher than the flu and use this to infuse more concern and do more tests which will of course produce more ‘cases’, which expands the testing, which produces yet more ‘cases’ and so on and so on. Before long you have your ‘pandemic’, and all you have done is use a simple test kit trick to convert the worst flu and pneumonia cases into something new that doesn’t ACTUALLY EXIST [my emphasis].

He said that you then ‘just run the same scam in other countries’ and make sure to keep the fear message running high ‘so that people

will feel panicky and less able to think critically'. The only problem to overcome was the fact *there is no* actual new deadly pathogen and only regular sick people. This meant that deaths from the 'new deadly pathogen' were going to be way too low for a real new deadly virus pandemic, but he said this could be overcome in the following ways – all of which would go on to happen:

1. You can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent [you underpin this with fantasy 'computer projections']. Use this as an excuse to quarantine everyone and then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead.
2. You can [say that people] 'minimizing' the dangers are irresponsible and bully them into not talking about numbers.
3. You can talk crap about made up numbers hoping to blind people with pseudoscience.
4. You can start testing well people (who, of course, will also likely have shreds of coronavirus [RNA] in them) and thus inflate your 'case figures' with 'asymptomatic carriers' (you will of course have to spin that to sound deadly even though any virologist knows the more symptom-less cases you have the less deadly is your pathogen).

The scientist said that if you take these simple steps 'you can have your own entirely manufactured pandemic up and running in weeks'. His analysis made so early in the hoax was brilliantly prophetic of what would actually unfold. Pulling all the information together in these recent chapters we have this is simple 1, 2, 3, of how you can delude virtually the entire human population into believing in a 'virus' that doesn't exist:

- A 'Covid case' is someone who tests positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'.
- A 'Covid death' is someone who dies of *any cause* within 28 days (or much longer) of testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'.
- Asymptomatic means there is nothing wrong with you, but they claim you can pass on what you don't have to justify locking

down (quarantining) healthy people in totality.

The foundations of the hoax are that simple. A study involving ten million people in Wuhan, published in November, 2020, demolished the whole lie about those without symptoms passing on the ‘virus’. They found ‘300 asymptomatic cases’ and traced their contacts to find that not one of them was detected with the ‘virus’.

‘Asymptomatic’ patients and their contacts were isolated for no less than two weeks and nothing changed. I know it’s all crap, but if you are going to claim that those without symptoms can transmit ‘the virus’ then you must produce evidence for that and they never have. Even World Health Organization official Dr Maria Van Kerkhove, head of the emerging diseases and zoonosis unit, said as early as June, 2020, that she doubted the validity of asymptomatic transmission. She said that ‘from the data we have, it still seems to be rare that an asymptomatic person actually transmits onward to a secondary individual’ and by ‘rare’ she meant that she couldn’t cite any case of asymptomatic transmission.

## **The Ferguson factor**

The problem for the Cult as it headed into March, 2020, when the script had lockdown due to start, was that despite all the manipulation of the case and death figures they still did not have enough people alleged to have died from ‘Covid’ to justify mass house arrest. This was overcome in the way the scientist described: ‘You can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent ... Use this as an excuse to quarantine everyone and then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead.’ Enter one Professor Neil Ferguson, the Gates-funded ‘epidemiologist’ at the Gates-funded Imperial College in London. Ferguson is Britain’s Christian Drosten in that he has a dire record of predicting health outcomes, but is still called upon to advise government on the next health outcome when another ‘crisis’ comes along. This may seem to be a strange and ridiculous thing to do. Why would you keep turning for policy guidance to people who have a history of being

monumentally wrong? Ah, but it makes sense from the Cult point of view. These ‘experts’ keep on producing predictions that suit the Cult agenda for societal transformation and so it was with Neil Ferguson as he revealed his horrific (and clearly insane) computer model predictions that allowed lockdowns to be imposed in Britain, the United States and many other countries. Ferguson does not have even an A-level in biology and would appear to have no formal training in computer modelling, medicine or epidemiology, according to Derek Winton, an MSc in Computational Intelligence. He wrote an article somewhat aghast at what Ferguson did which included taking no account of respiratory disease ‘seasonality’ which means it is far worse in the winter months. Who would have thought that respiratory disease could be worse in the winter? Well, certainly not Ferguson.

The massively China-connected Imperial College and its bizarre professor provided the excuse for the long-incubated Chinese model of human control to travel westward at lightning speed. Imperial College confirms on its website that it collaborates with the Chinese Research Institute; publishes more than 600 research papers every year with Chinese research institutions; has 225 Chinese staff; 2,600 Chinese students – the biggest international group; 7,000 former students living in China which is the largest group outside the UK; and was selected for a tour by China’s President Xi Jinping during his state visit to the UK in 2015. The college takes major donations from China and describes itself as the UK’s number one university collaborator with Chinese research institutions. The China communist/fascist government did not appear phased by the woeful predictions of Ferguson and Imperial when during the lockdown that Ferguson induced the college signed a five-year collaboration deal with China tech giant Huawei that will have Huawei’s indoor 5G network equipment installed at the college’s West London tech campus along with an ‘AI cloud platform’. The deal includes Chinese sponsorship of Imperial’s Venture Catalyst entrepreneurship competition. Imperial is an example of the enormous influence the Chinese government has within British and North American

universities and research centres – and further afield. Up to 200 academics from more than a dozen UK universities are being investigated on suspicion of ‘unintentionally’ helping the Chinese government build weapons of mass destruction by ‘transferring world-leading research in advanced military technology such as aircraft, missile designs and cyberweapons’. Similar scandals have broken in the United States, but it’s all a coincidence. Imperial College serves the agenda in many other ways including the promotion of every aspect of the United Nations Agenda 21/2030 (the Great Reset) and produced computer models to show that human-caused ‘climate change’ is happening when in the real world it isn’t. Imperial College is driving the climate agenda as it drives the ‘Covid’ agenda (both Cult hoaxes) while Patrick Vallance, the UK government’s Chief Scientific Adviser on ‘Covid’, was named Chief Scientific Adviser to the UN ‘climate change’ conference known as COP26 hosted by the government in Glasgow, Scotland. ‘Covid’ and ‘climate’ are fundamentally connected.

## **Professor Woeful**

From Imperial’s bosom came Neil Ferguson still advising government despite his previous disasters and it was announced early on that he and other key people like UK Chief Medical Adviser Chris Whitty had caught the ‘virus’ as the propaganda story was being sold. Somehow they managed to survive and we had Prime Minister Boris Johnson admitted to hospital with what was said to be a severe version of the ‘virus’ in this same period. His whole policy and demeanour changed when he returned to Downing Street. It’s a small world with these government advisors – especially in their communal connections to Gates – and Ferguson had partnered with Whitty to write a paper called ‘Infectious disease: Tough choices to reduce Ebola transmission’ which involved another scare-story that didn’t happen. Ferguson’s ‘models’ predicted that up to 150, 000 could die from ‘mad cow disease’, or BSE, and its version in sheep if it was transmitted to humans. BSE was not transmitted and instead triggered by an organophosphate pesticide used to treat a pest on

cows. Fewer than 200 deaths followed from the human form. Models by Ferguson and his fellow incompetents led to the unnecessary culling of millions of pigs, cattle and sheep in the foot and mouth outbreak in 2001 which destroyed the lives and livelihoods of farmers and their families who had often spent decades building their herds and flocks. Vast numbers of these animals did not have foot and mouth and had no contact with the infection. Another ‘expert’ behind the cull was Professor Roy Anderson, a computer modeller at Imperial College specialising in the epidemiology of *human*, not animal, disease. Anderson has served on the Bill and Melinda Gates Grand Challenges in Global Health advisory board and chairs another Gates-funded organisation. Gates is everywhere.

In a precursor to the ‘Covid’ script Ferguson backed closing schools ‘for prolonged periods’ over the swine flu ‘pandemic’ in 2009 and said it would affect a third of the world population if it continued to spread at the speed he claimed to be happening. His mates at Imperial College said much the same and a news report said: ‘One of the authors, the epidemiologist and disease modeller Neil Ferguson, who sits on the World Health Organisation’s emergency committee for the outbreak, said the virus had “full pandemic potential”.’ Professor Liam Donaldson, the Chris Whitty of his day as Chief Medical Officer, said the worst case could see 30 percent of the British people infected by swine flu with 65,000 dying. Ferguson and Donaldson were indeed proved correct when at the end of the year the number of deaths attributed to swine flu was 392. The term ‘expert’ is rather liberally applied unfortunately, not least to complete idiots. Swine flu ‘projections’ were great for GlaxoSmithKline (GSK) as millions rolled in for its Pandemrix influenza vaccine which led to brain damage with children most affected. The British government (taxpayers) paid out more than £60 million in compensation after GSK was given immunity from prosecution. Yet another ‘Covid’ déjà vu. Swine flu was supposed to have broken out in Mexico, but Dr Wolfgang Wodarg, a German doctor, former member of parliament and critic of the ‘Covid’ hoax, observed ‘the spread of swine flu’ in Mexico City at the time. He

said: 'What we experienced in Mexico City was a very mild flu which did not kill more than usual – which killed even fewer people than usual.' Hyping the fear against all the facts is not unique to 'Covid' and has happened many times before. Ferguson is reported to have over-estimated the projected death toll of bird flu (H5N1) by some three million-fold, but bird flu vaccine makers again made a killing from the scare. This is some of the background to the Neil Ferguson who produced the perfectly-timed computer models in early 2020 predicting that half a million people would die in Britain without draconian lockdown and 2.2 million in the United States. Politicians panicked, people panicked, and lockdowns of alleged short duration were instigated to 'flatten the curve' of cases gleaned from a test not testing for the 'virus'. I said at the time that the public could forget the 'short duration' bit. This was an agenda to destroy the livelihoods of the population and force them into mass control through dependency and there was going to be nothing 'short' about it. American researcher Daniel Horowitz described the consequences of the 'models' spewed out by Gates-funded Ferguson and Imperial College:

What led our government and the governments of many other countries into panic was a single Imperial College of UK study, funded by global warming activists, that predicted 2.2 million deaths if we didn't lock down the country. In addition, the reported 8-9% death rate in Italy scared us into thinking there was some other mutation of this virus that they got, which might have come here.

Together with the fact that we were finally testing and had the ability to actually report new cases, we thought we were headed for a death spiral. But again ... we can't flatten a curve if we don't know when the curve started.

How about it *never* started?

## **Giving them what they want**

An investigation by German news outlet *Welt Am Sonntag* (*World on Sunday*) revealed how in March, 2020, the German government gathered together 'leading scientists from several research institutes and universities' and 'together, they were to produce a [modelling]

paper that would serve as legitimization for further tough political measures'. The Cult agenda was justified by computer modelling not based on evidence or reality; it was specifically constructed to justify the Cult demand for lockdowns all over the world to destroy the independent livelihoods of the global population. All these modellers and everyone responsible for the 'Covid' hoax have a date with a trial like those in Nuremberg after World War Two when Nazis faced the consequences of their war crimes. These corrupt-beyond-belief 'modellers' wrote the paper according to government instructions and it said that if lockdown measures were lifted then up to one million Germans would die from 'Covid-19' adding that some would die 'agonizingly at home, gasping for breath' unable to be treated by hospitals that couldn't cope. All lies. No matter – it gave the Cult all that it wanted. What did long-time government 'modeller' Neil Ferguson say? If the UK and the United States didn't lockdown half a million would die in Britain and 2.2 million Americans. Anyone see a theme here? 'Modellers' are such a crucial part of the lockdown strategy that we should look into their background and follow the money. Researcher Rosemary Frei produced an excellent article headlined 'The Modelling-paper Mafiosi'. She highlights a guy called John Edmunds, a British epidemiologist, and professor in the Faculty of Epidemiology and Population Health at the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine. He studied at Imperial College. Edmunds is a member of government 'Covid' advisory bodies which have been dictating policy, the New and Emerging Respiratory Virus Threats Advisory Group (NERVTAG) and the Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE).

Ferguson, another member of NERVTAG and SAGE, led the way with the original 'virus' and Edmunds has followed in the 'variant' stage and especially the so-called UK or Kent variant known as the 'Variant of Concern' (VOC) B.1.1.7. He said in a co-written report for the Centre for Mathematical modelling of Infectious Diseases at the London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, with input from the Centre's 'Covid-19' Working Group, that there was 'a realistic

possibility that VOC B.1.1.7 is associated with an increased risk of death compared to non-VOC viruses'. Fear, fear, fear, get the vaccine, fear, fear, fear, get the vaccine. Rosemary Frei reveals that almost all the paper's authors and members of the modelling centre's 'Covid-19' Working Group receive funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and/or the associated Gates-funded Wellcome Trust. The paper was published by e-journal *Medr* <sup>xiv</sup> which only publishes papers not peer-reviewed and the journal was established by an organisation headed by Facebook's Mark Zuckerberg and his missus. What a small world it is. Frei discovered that Edmunds is on the Scientific Advisory Board of the Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI) which was established by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, Klaus Schwab's Davos World Economic Forum and Big Pharma giant Wellcome. CEPI was 'launched in Davos [in 2017] to develop vaccines to stop future epidemics', according to its website. 'Our mission is to accelerate the development of vaccines against emerging infectious diseases and enable equitable access to these vaccines for people during outbreaks.' What kind people they are. Rosemary Frei reveals that Public Health England (PHE) director Susan Hopkins is an author of her organisation's non-peer-reviewed reports on 'new variants'. Hopkins is a professor of infectious diseases at London's Imperial College which is gifted tens of millions of dollars a year by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Gates-funded modelling disaster Neil Ferguson also co-authors Public Health England reports and he spoke in December, 2020, about the potential danger of the B.1.1.7. 'UK variant' promoted by Gates-funded modeller John Edmunds. When I come to the 'Covid vaccines' the 'new variants' will be shown for what they are – bollocks.

## **Connections, connections**

All these people and modellers are lockdown-obsessed or, put another way, they demand what the Cult demands. Edmunds said in January, 2021, that to ease lockdowns too soon would be a disaster and they had to 'vaccinate much, much, much more widely than the

elderly'. Rosemary Frei highlights that Edmunds is married to Jeanne Pimenta who is described in a LinkedIn profile as director of epidemiology at GlaxoSmithKline (GSK) and she held shares in the company. Patrick Vallance, co-chair of SAGE and the government's Chief Scientific Adviser, is a former executive of GSK and has a deferred bonus of shares in the company worth £600,000. GSK has serious business connections with Bill Gates and is collaborating with mRNA-'vaccine' company CureVac to make 'vaccines' for the new variants that Edmunds is talking about. GSK is planning a 'Covid vaccine' with drug giant Sanofi. Puppet Prime Minister Boris Johnson announced in the spring of 2021 that up to 60 million vaccine doses were to be made at the GSK facility at Barnard Castle in the English North East. Barnard Castle, with a population of just 6,000, was famously visited in breach of lockdown rules in April, 2020, by Johnson aide Dominic Cummings who said that he drove there 'to test his eyesight' before driving back to London. Cummings would be better advised to test his integrity – not that it would take long. The GSK facility had nothing to do with his visit then although I'm sure Patrick Vallance would have been happy to arrange an introduction and some tea and biscuits. Ruthless psychopath Gates has made yet another fortune from vaccines in collaboration with Big Pharma companies and gushes at the phenomenal profits to be made from vaccines – more than a 20-to-1 return as he told one interviewer. Gates also tweeted in December, 2019, with the foreknowledge of what was coming: 'What's next for our foundation? I'm particularly excited about what the next year could mean for one of the best buys in global health: vaccines.'

Modeller John Edmunds is a big promotor of vaccines as all these people appear to be. He's the dean of the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine's Faculty of Epidemiology and Population Health which is primarily funded by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and the Gates-established and funded GAVI vaccine alliance which is the Gates vehicle to vaccinate the world. The organisation Doctors Without Borders has described GAVI as being 'aimed more at supporting drug-industry desires to promote new

products than at finding the most efficient and sustainable means for fighting the diseases of poverty'. But then that's why the psychopath Gates created it. John Edmunds said in a video that the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine is involved in every aspect of vaccine development including large-scale clinical trials. He contends that mathematical modelling can show that vaccines protect individuals and society. That's on the basis of shit in and shit out, I take it. Edmunds serves on the UK Vaccine Network as does Ferguson and the government's foremost 'Covid' adviser, the grim-faced, dark-eyed Chris Whitty. The Vaccine Network says it works 'to support the government to identify and shortlist targeted investment opportunities for the most promising vaccines and vaccine technologies that will help combat infectious diseases with epidemic potential, and to address structural issues related to the UK's broader vaccine infrastructure'. Ferguson is acting Director of the Imperial College Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium which has funding from the Bill and Melina Gates Foundation and the Gates-created GAVI 'vaccine alliance'. Anyone wonder why these characters see vaccines as the answer to every problem? Ferguson is wildly enthusiastic in his support for GAVI's campaign to vaccine children en masse in poor countries. You would expect someone like Gates who has constantly talked about the need to reduce the population to want to fund vaccines to keep more people alive. I'm sure that's why he does it. The John Edmunds London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine (LSHTM) has a Vaccines Manufacturing Innovation Centre which develops, tests and commercialises vaccines. Rosemary Frei writes:

The vaccines centre also performs affiliated activities like combating 'vaccine hesitancy'. The latter includes the Vaccine Confidence Project. The project's stated purpose is, among other things, 'to provide analysis and guidance for early response and engagement with the public to ensure sustained confidence in vaccines and immunisation'. The Vaccine Confidence Project's director is LSHTM professor Heidi Larson. For more than a decade she's been researching how to combat vaccine hesitancy.

How the bloody hell can blokes like John Edmunds and Neil Ferguson with those connections and financial ties model 'virus' case

and death projections for the government and especially in a way that gives their paymasters like Gates exactly what they want? It's insane, but this is what you find throughout the world.

## **'Covid' is not dangerous, oops, wait, yes it is**

Only days before Ferguson's nightmare scenario made Jackboot Johnson take Britain into a China-style lockdown to save us from a deadly 'virus' the UK government website gov.uk was reporting something very different to Ferguson on a page of official government guidance for 'high consequence infectious diseases (HCID)'. It said this about 'Covid-19':

As of 19 March 2020, COVID-19 *is no longer considered to be a high consequence infectious diseases (HCID) in the UK* [my emphasis]. The 4 nations public health HCID group made an interim recommendation in January 2020 to classify COVID-19 as an HCID. This was based on consideration of the UK HCID criteria about the virus and the disease with information available during the early stages of the outbreak.

Now that more is known about COVID-19, the public health bodies in the UK have reviewed the most up to date information about COVID-19 against the UK HCID criteria. They have determined that several features have now changed; in particular, more information is available about mortality rates (low overall), and there is now greater clinical awareness and a specific and sensitive laboratory test, the availability of which continues to increase. The Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens (ACDP) is also of the opinion that COVID-19 should no longer be classified as an HCID.

Soon after the government had been exposed for downgrading the risk they upgraded it again and everyone was back to singing from the same Cult hymn book. Ferguson and his fellow Gates clones indicated that lockdowns and restrictions would have to continue until a Gates-funded vaccine was developed. Gates said the same because Ferguson and his like were repeating the Gates script which is the Cult script. 'Flatten the curve' became an ongoing nightmare of continuing lockdowns with periods in between of severe restrictions in pursuit of destroying independent incomes and had nothing to do with protecting health about which the Cult gives not a shit. Why wouldn't Ferguson be pushing a vaccine 'solution' when he's owned by vaccine-obsessive Gates who makes a fortune from them and

when Ferguson heads the Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium at Imperial College funded by the Gates Foundation and GAVI, the ‘vaccine alliance’, created by Gates as his personal vaccine promotion operation? To compound the human catastrophe that Ferguson’s ‘models’ did so much to create he was later exposed for breaking his own lockdown rules by having sexual liaisons with his married girlfriend Antonia Staats at his home while she was living at another location with her husband and children. Staats was a ‘climate’ activist and senior campaigner at the Soros-funded Avaaz which I wouldn’t trust to tell me that grass is green. Ferguson had to resign as a government advisor over this hypocrisy in May, 2020, but after a period of quiet he was back being quoted by the ridiculous media on the need for more lockdowns and a vaccine rollout. Other government-advising ‘scientists’ from Imperial College held the fort in his absence and said lockdown could be indefinite until a vaccine was found. The Cult script was being sung by the payrolled choir. I said there was no intention of going back to ‘normal’ when the ‘vaccine’ came because the ‘vaccine’ is part of a very different agenda that I will discuss in Human 2.0. Why would the Cult want to let the world go back to normal when destroying that normal forever was the whole point of what was happening? House arrest, closing businesses and schools through lockdown, (un)social distancing and masks all followed the Ferguson fantasy models. Again as I predicted (these people are so predictable) when the ‘vaccine’ arrived we were told that house arrest, lockdown, (un)social distancing and masks would still have to continue. I will deal with the masks in the next chapter because they are of fundamental importance.

## **Where's the 'pandemic'?**

Any mildly in-depth assessment of the figures revealed what was really going on. Cult-funded and controlled organisations still have genuine people working within them such is the number involved. So it is with Genevieve Briand, assistant program director of the Applied Economics master’s degree program at Johns Hopkins

University. She analysed the impact that 'Covid-19' had on deaths from *all* causes in the United States using official data from the CDC for the period from early February to early September, 2020. She found that allegedly 'Covid' *related*-deaths exceeded those from heart disease which she found strange with heart disease always the biggest cause of fatalities. Her research became even more significant when she noted the sudden decline in 2020 of *all* non-'Covid' deaths: 'This trend is completely contrary to the pattern observed in all previous years ... the total decrease in deaths by other causes almost exactly equals the increase in deaths by Covid-19.' This was such a game, set and match in terms of what was happening that Johns Hopkins University deleted the article on the grounds that it 'was being used to support false and dangerous inaccuracies about the impact of the pandemic'. No – because it exposed the scam from official CDC figures and this was confirmed when those figures were published in January, 2021. Here we can see the effect of people dying from heart attacks, cancer, road accidents and gunshot wounds – *anything* – having 'Covid-19' on the death certificate along with those diagnosed from 'symptoms' who had even not tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'. I am not kidding with the gunshot wounds, by the way. Brenda Bock, coroner in Grand County, Colorado, revealed that two gunshot victims tested positive for the 'virus' within the previous 30 days and were therefore classified as 'Covid deaths'. Bock said: 'These two people had tested positive for Covid, but that's not what killed them. A gunshot wound is what killed them.' She said she had not even finished her investigation when the state listed the gunshot victims as deaths due to the 'virus'. The death and case figures for 'Covid-19' are an absolute joke and yet they are repeated like parrots by the media, politicians and alleged medical 'experts'. The official Cult narrative is the only show in town.

Genevieve Briand found that deaths from all causes were not exceptional in 2020 compared with previous years and a Spanish magazine published figures that said the same about Spain which was a 'Covid' propaganda hotspot at one point. *Discovery Salud*, a

health and medicine magazine, quoted government figures which showed how 17,000 *fewer* people died in Spain in 2020 than in 2019 and more than 26,000 fewer than in 2018. The age-standardised mortality rate for England and Wales when age distribution is taken into account was significantly lower in 2020 than the 1970s, 80s and 90s, and was only the ninth highest since 2000. Where is the ‘pandemic’?

Post mortems and autopsies virtually disappeared for ‘Covid’ deaths amid claims that ‘virus-infected’ bodily fluids posed a risk to those carrying out the autopsy. This was rejected by renowned German pathologist and forensic doctor Klaus Püschel who said that he and his staff had by then done 150 autopsies on ‘Covid’ patients with no problems at all. He said they were needed to know why some ‘Covid’ patients suffered blood clots and not severe respiratory infections. The ‘virus’ is, after all, called SARS or ‘severe acute respiratory syndrome’. I highlighted in the spring of 2020 this phenomenon and quoted New York intensive care doctor Cameron Kyle-Sidell who posted a soon deleted YouTube video to say that they had been told to prepare to treat an infectious disease called ‘Covid-19’, but that was not what they were dealing with. Instead he likened the lung condition of the most severely ill patients to what you would expect with cabin depressurisation in a plane at 30,000 feet or someone dropped on the top of Everest without oxygen or acclimatisation. I have never said this is not happening to a small minority of alleged ‘Covid’ patients – I am saying this is not caused by a phantom ‘contagious virus’. Indeed Kyle-Sidell said that ‘Covid-19’ was not the disease they were told was coming their way. ‘We are operating under a medical paradigm that is untrue,’ he said, and he believed they were treating the wrong disease: ‘These people are being slowly starved of oxygen.’ Patients would take off their oxygen masks in a state of fear and stress and while they were blue in the face on the brink of death. They did not look like patients dying of pneumonia. You can see why they don’t want autopsies when their virus doesn’t exist and there is another condition in some people that they don’t wish to be uncovered. I should add here that

the 5G system of millimetre waves was being rapidly introduced around the world in 2020 and even more so now as they fire 5G at the Earth from satellites. At 60 gigahertz within the 5G range that frequency interacts with the oxygen molecule and stops people breathing in sufficient oxygen to be absorbed into the bloodstream. They are installing 5G in schools and hospitals. The world is not mad or anything. 5G can cause major changes to the lungs and blood as I detail in *The Answer* and these consequences are labelled 'Covid-19', the alleged symptoms of which can be caused by 5G and other electromagnetic frequencies as cells respond to radiation poisoning.

## **The 'Covid death' scam**

Dr Scott Jensen, a Minnesota state senator and medical doctor, exposed 'Covid' Medicare payment incentives to hospitals and death certificate manipulation. He said he was sent a seven-page document by the US Department of Health 'coaching' him on how to fill out death certificates which had never happened before. The document said that he didn't need to have a laboratory test for 'Covid-19' to put that on the death certificate and that shocked him when death certificates are supposed to be about facts. Jensen described how doctors had been 'encouraged, if not pressured' to make a diagnosis of 'Covid-19' if they thought it was probable or '*presumed*'. No positive test was necessary – not that this would have mattered anyway. He said doctors were told to diagnose 'Covid' by symptoms when these were the same as colds, allergies, other respiratory problems, and certainly with influenza which 'disappeared' in the 'Covid' era. A common sniffle was enough to get the dreaded verdict. Ontario authorities decreed that a single care home resident with *one* symptom from a long list must lead to the isolation of the entire home. Other courageous doctors like Jensen made the same point about death figure manipulation and how deaths by other causes were falling while 'Covid-19 deaths' were rising at the same rate due to re-diagnosis. Their videos rarely survive long on YouTube with its Cult-supporting algorithms courtesy of CEO Susan Wojcicki and her bosses at Google. Figure-tampering was so glaring

and ubiquitous that even officials were letting it slip or outright saying it. UK chief scientific adviser Patrick Vallance said on one occasion that ‘Covid’ on the death certificate doesn’t mean ‘Covid’ was the cause of death (so why the hell is it there?) and we had the rare sight of a BBC reporter telling the truth when she said: ‘Someone could be successfully treated for Covid, in say April, discharged, and then in June, get run over by a bus and die ... That person would still be counted as a Covid death in England.’ Yet the BBC and the rest of the world media went on repeating the case and death figures as if they were real. Illinois Public Health Director Dr Ngozi Ezike revealed the deceit while her bosses must have been clenching their buttocks:

If you were in a hospice and given a few weeks to live and you were then found to have Covid that would be counted as a Covid death. [There might be] a clear alternate cause, but it is still listed as a Covid death. So everyone listed as a Covid death doesn’t mean that was the cause of the death, but that they had Covid at the time of death.

Yes, a ‘Covid virus’ never shown to exist and tested for with a test not testing for the ‘virus’. In the first period of the pandemic hoax through the spring of 2020 the process began of designating almost everything a ‘Covid’ death and this has continued ever since. I sat in a restaurant one night listening to a loud conversation on the next table where a family was discussing in bewilderment how a relative who had no symptoms of ‘Covid’, and had died of a long-term problem, could have been diagnosed a death by the ‘virus’. I could understand their bewilderment. If they read this book they will know why this medical fraud has been perpetrated the world over.

## **Some media truth shock**

The media ignored the evidence of death certificate fraud until eventually one columnist did speak out when she saw it first-hand. Bel Mooney is a long-time national newspaper journalist in Britain currently working for the *Daily Mail*. Her article on February 19th, 2021, carried this headline: ‘My dad Ted passed three Covid tests

and died of a chronic illness yet he's officially one of Britain's 120,000 victims of the virus and is far from alone ... so how many more are there?' She told how her 99-year-old father was in a care home with a long-standing chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and vascular dementia. Maybe, but he was still aware enough to tell her from the start that there was no 'virus' and he refused the 'vaccine' for that reason. His death was not unexpected given his chronic health problems and Mooney said she was shocked to find that 'Covid-19' was declared the cause of death on his death certificate. She said this was a 'bizarre and unacceptable untruth' for a man with long-time health problems who had tested negative twice at the home for the 'virus'. I was also shocked by this story although not by what she said. I had been highlighting the death certificate manipulation for ten months. It was the confirmation that a professional full-time journalist only realised this was going on when it affected her directly and neither did she know that whether her dad tested positive or negative was irrelevant with the test not testing for the 'virus'. Where had she been? She said she did not believe in 'conspiracy theories' without knowing I'm sure that this and 'conspiracy theorists' were terms put into widespread circulation by the CIA in the 1960s to discredit those who did not accept the ridiculous official story of the Kennedy assassination. A blanket statement of 'I don't believe in conspiracy theories' is always bizarre. The dictionary definition of the term alone means the world is drowning in conspiracies. What she said was even more daft when her dad had just been affected by the 'Covid' conspiracy. Why else does she think that 'Covid-19' was going on the death certificates of people who died of something else?

To be fair once she saw from personal experience what was happening she didn't mince words. Mooney was called by the care home on the morning of February 9th to be told her father had died in his sleep. When she asked for the official cause of death what came back was 'Covid-19'. Mooney challenged this and was told there had been deaths from Covid on the dementia floor (confirmed by a test not testing for the 'virus') so they considered it 'reasonable

to assume'. 'But doctor,' Mooney rightly protested, 'an assumption isn't a diagnosis.' She said she didn't blame the perfectly decent and sympathetic doctor – 'he was just doing his job'. Sorry, but that's *bullshit*. He wasn't doing his job at all. He was putting a false cause of death on the death certificate and that is a criminal offence for which he should be brought to account and the same with the millions of doctors worldwide who have done the same. They were not doing their job they were following orders and that must not wash at new Nuremberg trials any more than it did at the first ones. Mooney's doctor was 'assuming' (presuming) as he was told to, but 'just following orders' makes no difference to his actions. A doctor's job is to serve the patient and the truth, not follow orders, but that's what they have done all over the world and played a central part in making the 'Covid' hoax possible with all its catastrophic consequences for humanity. Shame on them and they must answer for their actions. Mooney said her disquiet worsened when she registered her father's death by telephone and was told by the registrar there had been very many other cases like hers where 'the deceased' had not tested positive for 'Covid' yet it was recorded as the cause of death. The test may not matter, but those involved at their level *think* it matters and it shows a callous disregard for accurate diagnosis. The pressure to do this is coming from the top of the national 'health' pyramids which in turn obey the World Health Organization which obeys Gates and the Cult. Mooney said the registrar agreed that this must distort the national figures adding that 'the strangest thing is that every winter we record countless deaths from flu, and this winter there have been none. Not one!' She asked if the registrar thought deaths from flu were being misdiagnosed and lumped together with 'Covid' deaths. The answer was a 'puzzled yes'. Mooney said that the funeral director said the same about 'Covid' deaths which had nothing to do with 'Covid'. They had lost count of the number of families upset by this and other funeral companies in different countries have had the same experience. Mooney wrote:

The nightly shroud-waving and shocking close-ups of pain imposed on us by the TV news bewildered and terrified the population into eager compliance with lockdowns. We were invited to ‘save the NHS’ and to grieve for strangers – the real-life loved ones behind those shocking death counts. Why would the public imagine what I now fear, namely that the way Covid-19 death statistics are compiled might make the numbers seem greater than they are?

Oh, just a little bit – like 100 percent.

## **Do the maths**

Mooney asked why a country would wish to skew its mortality figures by wrongly certifying deaths? What had been going on? Well, if you don’t believe in conspiracies you will never find the answer which is that *it’s a conspiracy*. She did, however, describe what she had discovered as a ‘national scandal’. In reality it’s a global scandal and happening everywhere. Pillars of this conspiracy were all put into place before the button was pressed with the Drosten PCR protocol and high amplifications to produce the cases and death certificate changes to secure illusory ‘Covid’ deaths.

Mooney notes that normally two doctors were needed to certify a death, with one having to know the patient, and how the rules were changed in the spring of 2020 to allow one doctor to do this. In the same period ‘Covid deaths’ were decreed to be all cases where Covid-19 was put on the death certificate even without a positive test or any symptoms. Mooney asked: ‘How many of the 30,851 (as of January 15) care home resident deaths with Covid-19 on the certificate (32.4 per cent of all deaths so far) were based on an assumption, like that of my father? And what has that done to our national psyche?’ All of them is the answer to the first question and it has devastated and dismantled the national psyche, actually the global psyche, on a colossal scale. In the UK case and death data is compiled by organisations like Public Health England (PHE) and the Office for National Statistics (ONS). Mooney highlights the insane policy of counting a death from any cause as ‘Covid-19’ if this happens within 28 days of a positive test (with a test not testing for the ‘virus’) and she points out that ONS statistics reflect deaths ‘involving Covid’ ‘or due to Covid’ which meant in practice any

death where ‘Covid-19’ was mentioned on the death certificate. She described the consequences of this fraud:

Most people will accept the narrative they are fed, so panicky governments here and in Europe witnessed the harsh measures enacted in totalitarian China and jumped into lockdown. Headlines about Covid deaths tolled like the knell that would bring doomsday to us all. Fear stalked our empty streets. Politicians parroted the frankly ridiculous aim of ‘zero Covid’ and shut down the economy, while most British people agreed that lockdown was essential and (astonishingly to me, as a patriotic Brit) even wanted more restrictions.

For what? Lies on death certificates? Never mind the grim toll of lives ruined, suicides, schools closed, rising inequality, depression, cancelled hospital treatments, cancer patients in a torture of waiting, poverty, economic devastation, loneliness, families kept apart, and so on. How many lives have been lost as a direct result of lockdown?

She said that we could join in a national chorus of shock and horror at reaching the 120,000 death toll which was surely certain to have been totally skewed all along, but what about the human cost of lockdown justified by these ‘death figures’? *The British Medical Journal* had reported a 1,493 percent increase in cases of children taken to Great Ormond Street Hospital with abusive head injuries alone and then there was the effect on families:

Perhaps the most shocking thing about all this is that families have been kept apart – and obeyed the most irrational, changing rules at the whim of government – because they believed in the statistics. They succumbed to fear, which his generation rejected in that war fought for freedom. Dad (God rest his soul) would be angry. And so am I.

Another theme to watch is that in the winter months when there are more deaths from all causes they focus on ‘Covid’ deaths and in the summer when the British Lung Foundation says respiratory disease plummets by 80 percent they rage on about ‘cases’. Either way fascism on population is always the answer.

## **Nazi eugenics in the 21st century**

Elderly people in care homes have been isolated from their families month after lonely month with no contact with relatives and grandchildren who were banned from seeing them. We were told

that lockdown fascism was to ‘protect the vulnerable’ like elderly people. At the same time Do Not Resuscitate (DNR) orders were placed on their medical files so that if they needed resuscitation it wasn’t done and ‘Covid-19’ went on their death certificates. Old people were not being ‘protected’ they were being culled – murdered in truth. DNR orders were being decreed for disabled and young people with learning difficulties or psychological problems. The UK Care Quality Commission, a non-departmental body of the Department of Health and Social Care, found that 34 percent of those working in health and social care were pressured into placing ‘do not attempt cardiopulmonary resuscitation’ orders on ‘Covid’ patients who suffered from disabilities and learning difficulties without involving the patient or their families in the decision. UK judges ruled that an elderly woman with dementia should have the DNA-manipulating ‘Covid vaccine’ against her son’s wishes and that a man with severe learning difficulties should have the jab despite his family’s objections. Never mind that many had already died. The judiciary always supports doctors and government in fascist dictatorships. They wouldn’t dare do otherwise. A horrific video was posted showing fascist officers from Los Angeles police forcibly giving the ‘Covid’ shot to women with special needs who were screaming that they didn’t want it. The same fascists are seen giving the jab to a sleeping elderly woman in a care home. This is straight out of the Nazi playbook. Hitler’s Nazis committed mass murder of the mentally ill and physically disabled throughout Germany and occupied territories in the programme that became known as Aktion T4, or just T4. Sabbatian-controlled Hitler and his grotesque crazies set out to kill those they considered useless and unnecessary. The Reich Committee for the Scientific Registering of Hereditary and Congenital Illnesses registered the births of babies identified by physicians to have ‘defects’. By 1941 alone more than 5,000 children were murdered by the state and it is estimated that in total the number of innocent people killed in Aktion T4 was between 275,000 and 300,000. Parents were told their children had been sent away for ‘special treatment’ never to return. It is rather pathetic to see claims about plans for new extermination camps being dismissed today

when the same force behind current events did precisely that 80 years ago. Margaret Sanger was a Cult operative who used 'birth control' to sanitise her programme of eugenics. Organisations she founded became what is now Planned Parenthood. Sanger proposed that 'the whole dysgenic population would have its choice of segregation or sterilization'. These included epileptics, 'feeble-minded', and prostitutes. Sanger opposed charity because it perpetuated 'human waste'. She reveals the Cult mentality and if anyone thinks that extermination camps are a 'conspiracy theory' their naivety is touching if breathtakingly stupid.

If you don't believe that doctors can act with callous disregard for their patients it is worth considering that doctors and medical staff agreed to put government-decreed DNR orders on medical files and do nothing when resuscitation is called for. I don't know what you call such people in your house. In mine they are Nazis from the Josef Mengele School of Medicine. Phenomenal numbers of old people have died worldwide from the effects of lockdown, depression, lack of treatment, the 'vaccine' (more later) and losing the will to live. A common response at the start of the manufactured pandemic was to remove old people from hospital beds and transfer them to nursing homes. The decision would result in a mass cull of elderly people in those homes through lack of treatment – *not* 'Covid'. Care home whistleblowers have told how once the 'Covid' era began doctors would not come to their homes to treat patients and they were begging for drugs like antibiotics that often never came. The most infamous example was ordered by New York governor Andrew Cuomo, brother of a moronic CNN host, who amazingly was given an Emmy Award for his handling of the 'Covid crisis' by the ridiculous Wokers that hand them out. Just how ridiculous could be seen in February, 2021, when a Department of Justice and FBI investigation began into how thousands of old people in New York died in nursing homes after being discharged from hospital to make way for 'Covid' patients on Cuomo's say-so – and how he and his staff covered up these facts. This couldn't have happened to a nicer psychopath. Even then there was a 'Covid' spin. Reports said that

thousands of old people who tested positive for ‘Covid’ in hospital were transferred to nursing homes to both die of ‘Covid’ and transmit it to others. No – they were in hospital because they were ill and the fact that they tested positive with a test not testing for the ‘virus’ is irrelevant. They were ill often with respiratory diseases ubiquitous in old people near the end of their lives. Their transfer out of hospital meant that their treatment stopped and many would go on to die.

### **They're old. Who gives a damn?**

I have exposed in the books for decades the Cult plan to cull the world’s old people and even to introduce at some point what they call a ‘demise pill’ which at a certain age everyone would take and be out of here by law. In March, 2021, Spain legalised euthanasia and assisted suicide following the Netherlands, Belgium, Luxembourg and Canada on the Tiptoe to the demise pill. Treatment of old people by many ‘care’ homes has been a disgrace in the ‘Covid’ era. There are many, many, caring staff – I know some. There have, however, been legions of stories about callous treatment of old people and their families. Police were called when families came to take their loved ones home in the light of isolation that was killing them. They became prisoners of the state. Care home residents in insane, fascist Ontario, Canada, were not allowed to leave their *room* once the ‘Covid’ hoax began. UK staff have even wheeled elderly people away from windows where family members were talking with them. Oriana Criscuolo from Stockport in the English North West dropped off some things for her 80-year-old father who has Parkinson’s disease and dementia and she wanted to wave to him through a ground-floor window. She was told that was ‘illegal’. When she went anyway they closed the curtains in the middle of the day. Oriana said:

It’s just unbelievable. I cannot understand how care home staff – people who are being paid to care – have become so uncaring. Their behaviour is inhumane and cruel. It’s beyond belief.

She was right and this was not a one-off. What a way to end your life in such loveless circumstances. UK registered nurse Nicky Millen, a proper old school nurse for 40 years, said that when she started her career care was based on dignity, choice, compassion and empathy. Now she said ‘the things that are important to me have gone out of the window.’ She was appalled that people were dying without their loved ones and saying goodbye on iPads. Nicky described how a distressed 89-year-old lady stroked her face and asked her ‘how many paracetamol would it take to finish me off’. Life was no longer worth living while not seeing her family. Nicky said she was humiliated in front of the ward staff and patients for letting the lady stroke her face and giving her a cuddle. Such is the dehumanisation that the ‘Covid’ hoax has brought to the surface. Nicky worked in care homes where patients told her they were being held prisoner. ‘I want to live until I die’, one said to her. ‘I had a lady in tears because she hadn’t seen her great-grandson.’ Nicky was compassionate old school meeting psychopathic New Normal. She also said she had worked on a ‘Covid’ ward with no ‘Covid’ patients. Jewish writer Shai Held wrote an article in March, 2020, which was headlined ‘The Staggering, Heartless Cruelty Toward the Elderly’. What he described was happening from the earliest days of lockdown. He said ‘the elderly’ were considered a group and not unique individuals (the way of the Woke). Shai Held said:

Notice how the all-too-familiar rhetoric of dehumanization works: ‘The elderly’ are bunched together as a faceless mass, all of them considered culprits and thus effectively deserving of the suffering the pandemic will inflict upon them. Lost entirely is the fact that the elderly are individual human beings, each with a distinctive face and voice, each with hopes and dreams, memories and regrets, friendships and marriages, loves lost and loves sustained.

‘The elderly’ have become another dehumanised group for which anything goes and for many that has resulted in cold disregard for their rights and their life. The distinctive face that Held talks about is designed to be deleted by masks until everyone is part of a faceless mass.

## **'War-zone' hospitals myth**

Again and again medical professionals have told me what was really going on and how hospitals 'overrun like war zones' according to the media were virtually empty. The mantra from medical whistleblowers was please don't use my name or my career is over. Citizen journalists around the world sneaked into hospitals to film evidence exposing the 'war-zone' lie. They really *were* largely empty with closed wards and operating theatres. I met a hospital worker in my town on the Isle of Wight during the first lockdown in 2020 who said the only island hospital had never been so quiet. Lockdown was justified by the psychopaths to stop hospitals being overrun. At the same time that the island hospital was near-empty the military arrived here to provide *extra beds*. It was all propaganda to ramp up the fear to ensure compliance with fascism as were never-used temporary hospitals with thousands of beds known as Nightingales and never-used make-shift mortuaries opened by the criminal UK government. A man who helped to install those extra island beds attributed to the army said they were never used and the hospital was empty. Doctors and nurses 'stood around talking or on their phones, wandering down to us to see what we were doing'. There were no masks or social distancing. He accused the useless local island paper, the *County Press*, of 'pumping the fear as if our hospital was overrun and we only have one so it should have been'. He described ambulances parked up with crews outside in deck chairs. When his brother called an ambulance he was told there was a two-hour backlog which he called 'bullshit'. An old lady on the island fell 'and was in a bad way', but a caller who rang for an ambulance was told the situation wasn't urgent enough. Ambulance stations were working under capacity while people would hear ambulances with sirens blaring driving through the streets. When those living near the stations realised what was going on they would follow them as they left, circulated around an urban area with the sirens going, and then came back without stopping. All this was to increase levels of fear and the same goes for the 'ventilator shortage crisis' that cost tens of millions for hastily produced ventilators never to be used.

Ambulance crews that agreed to be exploited in this way for fear propaganda might find themselves a mirror. I wish them well with that. Empty hospitals were the obvious consequence of treatment and diagnoses of non-'Covid' conditions cancelled and those involved handed a death sentence. People have been dying at home from undiagnosed and untreated cancer, heart disease and other life-threatening conditions to allow empty hospitals to deal with a 'pandemic' that wasn't happening.

## **Death of the innocent**

'War-zones' have been laying off nursing staff, even doctors where they can. There was no work for them. Lockdown was justified by saving lives and protecting the vulnerable they were actually killing with DNR orders and preventing empty hospitals being 'overrun'. In Britain the mantra of stay at home to 'save the NHS' was everywhere and across the world the same story was being sold when it was all lies. Two California doctors, Dan Erickson and Artin Massihi at Accelerated Urgent Care in Bakersfield, held a news conference in April, 2020, to say that intensive care units in California were 'empty, essentially', with hospitals shutting floors, not treating patients and laying off doctors. The California health system was working at minimum capacity 'getting rid of doctors because we just don't have the volume'. They said that people with conditions such as heart disease and cancer were not coming to hospital out of fear of 'Covid-19'. Their video was deleted by Susan Wojcicki's Cult-owned YouTube after reaching five million views. Florida governor Ron Desantis, who rejected the severe lockdowns of other states and is being targeted for doing so, said that in March, 2020, every US governor was given models claiming they would run out of hospital beds in days. That was never going to happen and the 'modellers' knew it. Deceit can be found at every level of the system. Urgent children's operations were cancelled including fracture repairs and biopsies to spot cancer. Eric Nicholls, a consultant paediatrician, said 'this is obviously concerning and we need to return to normal operating and to increase capacity as soon as possible'. Psychopaths

in power were rather less concerned *because* they are psychopaths. Deletion of urgent care and diagnosis has been happening all over the world and how many kids and others have died as a result of the actions of these cold and heartless lunatics dictating ‘health’ policy? The number must be stratospheric. Richard Sullivan, professor of cancer and global health at King’s College London, said people feared ‘Covid’ more than cancer such was the campaign of fear. ‘Years of lost life will be quite dramatic’, Sullivan said, with ‘a huge amount of avoidable mortality’. Sarah Woolnough, executive director for policy at Cancer Research UK, said there had been a 75 percent drop in urgent referrals to hospitals by family doctors of people with suspected cancer. Sullivan said that ‘a lot of services have had to scale back – we’ve seen a dramatic decrease in the amount of elective cancer surgery’. Lockdown deaths worldwide has been absolutely fantastic with the *New York Post* reporting how data confirmed that ‘lockdowns end more lives than they save’:

There was a sharp decline in visits to emergency rooms and an increase in fatal heart attacks because patients didn’t receive prompt treatment. Many fewer people were screened for cancer. Social isolation contributed to excess deaths from dementia and Alzheimer’s.

Researchers predicted that the social and economic upheaval would lead to tens of thousands of “deaths of despair” from drug overdoses, alcoholism and suicide. As unemployment surged and mental-health and substance-abuse treatment programs were interrupted, the reported levels of anxiety, depression and suicidal thoughts increased dramatically, as did alcohol sales and fatal drug overdoses.

This has been happening while nurses and other staff had so much time on their hands in the ‘war-zones’ that Tic-Tok dancing videos began appearing across the Internet with medical staff dancing around in empty wards and corridors as people died at home from causes that would normally have been treated in hospital.

## **Mentions in dispatches**

One brave and truth-committed whistleblower was Louise Hampton, a call handler with the UK NHS who made a viral Internet video saying she had done ‘fuck all’ during the ‘pandemic’

which was ‘a load of bollocks’. She said that ‘Covid-19’ was rebranded flu and of course she lost her job. This is what happens in the medical and endless other professions now when you tell the truth. Louise filmed inside ‘war-zone’ accident and emergency departments to show they were empty and I mean *empty* as in no one there. The mainstream media could have done the same and blown the gaff on the whole conspiracy. They haven’t to their eternal shame. Not that most ‘journalists’ seem capable of manifesting shame as with the psychopaths they slavishly repeat without question. The relative few who were admitted with serious health problems were left to die alone with no loved ones allowed to see them because of ‘Covid’ rules and they included kids dying without the comfort of mum and dad at their bedside while the evil behind this couldn’t give a damn. It was all good fun to them. A Scottish NHS staff nurse publicly quit in the spring of 2021 saying: ‘I can no longer be part of the lies and the corruption by the government.’ She said hospitals ‘aren’t full, the beds aren’t full, beds have been shut, wards have been shut’. Hospitals were never busy throughout ‘Covid’. The staff nurse said that Nicola Sturgeon, tragically the leader of the Scottish government, was on television saying save the hospitals and the NHS – ‘but the beds are empty’ and ‘we’ve not seen flu, we always see flu every year’. She wrote to government and spoke with her union Unison (the unions are Cult-compromised and *useless*, but nothing changed. Many of her colleagues were scared of losing their jobs if they spoke out as they wanted to. She said nursing staff were being affected by wearing masks all day and ‘my head is splitting every shift from wearing a mask’. The NHS is part of the fascist tyranny and must be dismantled so we can start again with human beings in charge. (Ironically, hospitals were reported to be busier again when official ‘Covid’ cases *fell* in spring/summer of 2021 and many other conditions required treatment at the same time as *the fake vaccine rollout*.)

I will cover the ‘Covid vaccine’ scam in detail later, but it is another indicator of the sickening disregard for human life that I am highlighting here. The DNA-manipulating concoctions do not fulfil

the definition of a ‘vaccine’, have never been used on humans before and were given only emergency approval because trials were not completed and they continued using the unknowing public. The result was what a NHS senior nurse with responsibility for ‘vaccine’ procedure said was ‘genocide’. She said the ‘vaccines’ were not ‘vaccines’. They had not been shown to be safe and claims about their effectiveness by drug companies were ‘poetic licence’. She described what was happening as a ‘horrid act of human annihilation’. The nurse said that management had instigated a policy of not providing a Patient Information Leaflet (PIL) before people were ‘vaccinated’ even though health care professionals are supposed to do this according to protocol. Patients should also be told that they are taking part in an ongoing clinical trial. Her challenges to what is happening had seen her excluded from meetings and ridiculed in others. She said she was told to ‘watch my step … or I would find myself surplus to requirements’. The nurse, who spoke anonymously in fear of her career, said she asked her NHS manager why he/she was content with taking part in genocide against those having the ‘vaccines’. The reply was that everyone had to play their part and to ‘put up, shut up, and get it done’. Government was ‘leaning heavily’ on NHS management which was clearly leaning heavily on staff. This is how the global ‘medical’ hierarchy operates and it starts with the Cult and its World Health Organization.

She told the story of a doctor who had the Pfizer jab and when questioned had no idea what was in it. The doctor had never read the literature. We have to stop treating doctors as intellectual giants when so many are moral and medical pygmies. The doctor did not even know that the ‘vaccines’ were not fully approved or that their trials were ongoing. They were, however, asking their patients if they minded taking part in follow-ups for research purposes – yes, the *ongoing clinical trial*. The nurse said the doctor’s ignorance was not rare and she had spoken to a hospital consultant who had the jab without any idea of the background or that the ‘trials’ had not been completed. Nurses and pharmacists had shown the same ignorance.

'My NHS colleagues have forsaken their duty of care, broken their code of conduct – Hippocratic Oath – and have been brainwashed just the same as the majority of the UK public through propaganda ...' She said she had not been able to recruit a single NHS colleague, doctor, nurse or pharmacist to stand with her and speak out. Her union had refused to help. She said that if the genocide came to light she would not hesitate to give evidence at a Nuremberg-type trial against those in power who could have affected the outcomes but didn't.

## **And all for what?**

To put the nonsense into perspective let's say the 'virus' does exist and let's go completely crazy and accept that the official manipulated figures for cases and deaths are accurate. *Even then* a study by Stanford University epidemiologist Dr John Ioannidis published on the World Health Organization website produced an average infection to fatality rate of ... 0.23 percent! Ioannidis said: 'If one could sample equally from all locations globally, the median infection fatality rate might even be substantially lower than the 0.23% observed in my analysis.' For healthy people under 70 it was ... 0.05 percent! This compares with the 3.4 percent claimed by the Cult-owned World Health Organization when the hoax was first played and maximum fear needed to be generated. An updated Stanford study in April, 2021, put the 'infection' to 'fatality' rate at just 0.15 percent. Another team of scientists led by Megan O'Driscoll and Henrik Salje studied data from 45 countries and published their findings on the Nature website. For children and young people the figure is so small it virtually does not register although authorities will be hyping dangers to the young when they introduce DNA-manipulating 'vaccines' for children. The O'Driscoll study produced an average infection-fatality figure of 0.003 for children from birth to four; 0.001 for 5 to 14; 0.003 for 15 to 19; and it was still only 0.456 up to 64. To claim that children must be 'vaccinated' to protect them from 'Covid' is an obvious lie and so there must be another reason and there is. What's more the average age of a 'Covid' death is akin

to the average age that people die in general. The average age of death in England is about 80 for men and 83 for women. The average age of death from alleged 'Covid' is between 82 and 83. California doctors, Dan Erickson and Artin Massihi, said at their April media conference that projection models of millions of deaths had been 'woefully inaccurate'. They produced detailed figures showing that Californians had a 0.03 chance of dying from 'Covid' based on the number of people who tested positive (with a test not testing for the 'virus'). Erickson said there was a 0.1 percent chance of dying from 'Covid' in the *state* of New York, not just the city, and a 0.05 percent chance in Spain, a centre of 'Covid-19' hysteria at one stage. The Stanford studies supported the doctors' data with fatality rate estimates of 0.23 and 0.15 percent. How close are these figures to my estimate of *zero*? Death-rate figures claimed by the World Health Organization at the start of the hoax were some 15 times higher. The California doctors said there was no justification for lockdowns and the economic devastation they caused. Everything they had ever learned about quarantine was that you quarantine the *sick* and not the healthy. They had never seen this before and it made no medical sense.

Why in the light of all this would governments and medical systems the world over say that billions must go under house arrest; lose their livelihood; in many cases lose their mind, their health and their life; force people to wear masks dangerous to health and psychology; make human interaction and even family interaction a criminal offence; ban travel; close restaurants, bars, watching live sport, concerts, theatre, and any activity involving human togetherness and discourse; and closing schools to isolate children from their friends and cause many to commit suicide in acts of hopelessness and despair? The California doctors said lockdown consequences included increased child abuse, partner abuse, alcoholism, depression, and other impacts they were seeing every day. Who would do that to the entire human race if not mentally-ill psychopaths of almost unimaginable extremes like Bill Gates? We must face the reality of what we are dealing with and come out of

denial. Fascism and tyranny are made possible only by the target population submitting and acquiescing to fascism and tyranny. The whole of human history shows that to be true. Most people naively and unquestioning believed what they were told about a ‘deadly virus’ and meekly and weakly submitted to house arrest. Those who didn’t believe it – at least in total – still submitted in fear of the consequences of not doing so. For the rest who wouldn’t submit draconian fines have been imposed, brutal policing by psychopaths *for* psychopaths, and condemnation from the meek and weak who condemn the Pushbackers on behalf of the very force that has them, too, in its gunsights. ‘Pathetic’ does not even begin to suffice.

Britain’s brainless ‘Health’ Secretary Matt Hancock warned anyone lying to border officials about returning from a list of ‘hotspot’ countries could face a jail sentence of up to ten years which is more than for racially-aggravated assault, incest and attempting to have sex with a child under 13. Hancock is a lunatic, but he has the state apparatus behind him in a Cult-led chain reaction and the same with UK ‘Vaccine Minister’ Nadhim Zahawi, a prominent member of the mega-Cult secret society, Le Cercle, which featured in my earlier books. The Cult enforces its will on governments and medical systems; government and medical systems enforce their will on business and police; business enforces its will on staff who enforce it on customers; police enforce the will of the Cult on the population and play their essential part in creating a world of fascist control that their own children and grandchildren will have to live in their entire lives. It is a hierarchical pyramid of imposition and acquiescence and, yes indeedy, of clinical insanity.

Does anyone bright enough to read this book have to ask what the answer is? I think not, but I will reveal it anyway in the fewest of syllables: Tell the psychos and their moronic lackeys to fuck off and let’s get on with our lives. We are many – They are few.

## CHAPTER SEVEN

### War on your mind

***One believes things because one has been conditioned to believe them***

**Aldous Huxley, *Brave New World***

I have described the ‘Covid’ hoax as a ‘Psyop’ and that is true in every sense and on every level in accordance with the definition of that term which is psychological warfare. Break down the ‘Covid pandemic’ to the foundation themes and it is psychological warfare on the human individual and collective mind.

The same can be said for the entire human belief system involving every subject you can imagine. Huxley was right in his contention that people believe what they are conditioned to believe and this comes from the repetition throughout their lives of the same falsehoods. They spew from government, corporations, media and endless streams of ‘experts’ telling you what the Cult wants you to believe and often believing it themselves (although *far* from always). ‘Experts’ are rewarded with ‘prestigious’ jobs and titles and as agents of perceptual programming with regular access to the media. The Cult has to control the narrative – control *information* – or they lose control of the vital, crucial, without-which-they-cannot-prevail public perception of reality. The foundation of that control today is the Internet made possible by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the incredibly sinister technological arm of the Pentagon. The Internet is the result of military technology.

DARPA openly brags about establishing the Internet which has been a long-term project to lasso the minds of the global population. I have said for decades the plan is to control information to such an extreme that eventually no one would see or hear anything that the Cult does not approve. We are closing in on that end with ferocious censorship since the ‘Covid’ hoax began and in my case it started back in the 1990s in terms of books and speaking venues. I had to create my own publishing company in 1995 precisely because no one else would publish my books even then. I think they’re all still running.

## **Cult Internet**

To secure total control of information they needed the Internet in which pre-programmed algorithms can seek out ‘unclean’ content for deletion and even stop it being posted in the first place. The Cult had to dismantle print and non-Internet broadcast media to ensure the transfer of information to the appropriate-named ‘Web’ – a critical expression of the *Cult* web. We’ve seen the ever-quickenning demise of traditional media and control of what is left by a tiny number of corporations operating worldwide. Independent journalism in the mainstream is already dead and never was that more obvious than since the turn of 2020. The Cult wants all information communicated via the Internet to globally censor and allow the plug to be pulled any time. Lockdowns and forced isolation has meant that communication between people has been through electronic means and no longer through face-to-face discourse and discussion. Cult psychopaths have targeted the bars, restaurants, sport, venues and meeting places in general for this reason. None of this is by chance and it’s to stop people gathering in any kind of privacy or number while being able to track and monitor all Internet communications and block them as necessary. Even private messages between individuals have been censored by these fascists that control Cult fronts like Facebook, Twitter, Google and YouTube which are all officially run by Sabbatian place-people and from the background by higher-level Sabbatian place people.

Facebook, Google, Amazon and their like were seed-funded and supported into existence with money-no-object infusions of funds either directly or indirectly from DARPA and CIA technology arm In-Q-Tel. The Cult plays the long game and prepares very carefully for big plays like 'Covid'. Amazon is another front in the psychological war and pretty much controls the global market in book sales and increasingly publishing. Amazon's limitless funds have deleted fantastic numbers of independent publishers to seize global domination on the way to deciding which books can be sold and circulated and which cannot. Moves in that direction are already happening. Amazon's leading light Jeff Bezos is the grandson of Lawrence Preston Gise who worked with DARPA predecessor ARPA. Amazon has big connections to the CIA and the Pentagon. The plan I have long described went like this:

1. Employ military technology to establish the Internet.
2. Sell the Internet as a place where people can freely communicate without censorship and allow that to happen until the Net becomes the central and irreversible pillar of human society. If the Internet had been highly censored from the start many would have rejected it.
3. Fund and manipulate major corporations into being to control the circulation of information on your Internet using cover stories about geeks in garages to explain how they came about. Give them unlimited funds to expand rapidly with no need to make a profit for years while non-Cult companies who need to balance the books cannot compete. You know that in these circumstances your Googles, YouTubes, Facebooks and Amazons are going to secure near monopolies by either crushing or buying up the opposition.
4. Allow freedom of expression on both the Internet and communication platforms to draw people in until the Internet is the central and irreversible pillar of human society and your communication corporations have reached a stage of near monopoly domination.
5. Then unleash your always-planned frenzy of censorship on the basis of 'where else are you going to go?' and continue to expand that until nothing remains that the Cult does not want its human targets to see.

The process was timed to hit the 'Covid' hoax to ensure the best chance possible of controlling the narrative which they knew they had to do at all costs. They were, after all, about to unleash a 'deadly virus' that didn't really exist. If you do that in an environment of free-flowing information and opinion you would be dead in the

water before you could say Gates is a psychopath. The network was in place through which the Cult-created-and-owned World Health Organization could dictate the ‘Covid’ narrative and response policy slavishly supported by Cult-owned Internet communication giants and mainstream media while those telling a different story were censored. Google, YouTube, Facebook and Twitter openly announced that they would do this. What else would we expect from Cult-owned operations like Facebook which former executives have confirmed set out to make the platform more addictive than cigarettes and coldly manipulates emotions of its users to sow division between people and groups and scramble the minds of the young? If Zuckerberg lives out the rest of his life without going to jail for crimes against humanity, and most emphatically against the young, it will be a travesty of justice. Still, no matter, cause and effect will catch up with him eventually and the same with Sergey Brin and Larry Page at Google with its CEO Sundar Pichai who fix the Google search results to promote Cult narratives and hide the opposition. Put the same key words into Google and other search engines like DuckDuckGo and you will see how different results can be. Wikipedia is another intensely biased ‘encyclopaedia’ which skews its content to the Cult agenda. YouTube links to Wikipedia’s version of ‘Covid’ and ‘climate change’ on video pages in which experts in their field offer a different opinion (even that is increasingly rare with Wojcicki censorship). Into this ‘Covid’ silence-them network must be added government media censors, sorry ‘regulators’, such as Ofcom in the UK which imposed tyrannical restrictions on British broadcasters that had the effect of banning me from ever appearing. Just to debate with me about my evidence and views on ‘Covid’ would mean breaking the fascistic impositions of Ofcom and its CEO career government bureaucrat Melanie Dawes. Gutless British broadcasters tremble at the very thought of fascist Ofcom.

## **Psychos behind ‘Covid’**

The reason for the ‘Covid’ catastrophe in all its facets and forms can be seen by whom and what is driving the policies worldwide in such a coordinated way. Decisions are not being made to protect health, but to target psychology. The dominant group guiding and ‘advising’ government policy are not medical professionals. They are psychologists and behavioural scientists. Every major country has its own version of this phenomenon and I’ll use the British example to show how it works. In many ways the British version has been affecting the wider world in the form of the huge behaviour manipulation network in the UK which operates in other countries. The network involves private companies, government, intelligence and military. The Cabinet Office is at the centre of the government ‘Covid’ Psyop and part-owns, with ‘innovation charity’ Nesta, the Behavioural Insights Team (BIT) which claims to be independent of government but patently isn’t. The BIT was established in 2010 and its job is to manipulate the psyche of the population to acquiesce to government demands and so much more. It is also known as the ‘Nudge Unit’, a name inspired by the 2009 book by two ultra-Zionists, Cass Sunstein and Richard Thaler, called *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness*. The book, as with the Behavioural Insights Team, seeks to ‘nudge’ behaviour (manipulate it) to make the public follow patterns of action and perception that suit those in authority (the Cult). Sunstein is so skilled at this that he advises the World Health Organization and the UK Behavioural Insights Team and was Administrator of the White House Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs in the Obama administration. Biden appointed him to the Department of Homeland Security – another ultra-Zionist in the fold to oversee new immigration laws which is another policy the Cult wants to control. Sunstein is desperate to silence anyone exposing conspiracies and co-authored a 2008 report on the subject in which suggestions were offered to ban ‘conspiracy theorizing’ or impose ‘some kind of tax, financial or otherwise, on those who disseminate such theories’. I guess a psychiatrist’s chair is out of the question?

Sunstein's mate Richard Thaler, an 'academic affiliate' of the UK Behavioural Insights Team, is a proponent of 'behavioural economics' which is defined as the study of 'the effects of psychological, cognitive, emotional, cultural and social factors on the decisions of individuals and institutions'. Study the effects so they can be manipulated to be what you want them to be. Other leading names in the development of behavioural economics are ultra-Zionists Daniel Kahneman and Robert J. Shiller and they, with Thaler, won the Nobel Memorial Prize in Economic Sciences for their work in this field. The Behavioural Insights Team is operating at the heart of the UK government and has expanded globally through partnerships with several universities including Harvard, Oxford, Cambridge, University College London (UCL) and Pennsylvania. They claim to have 'trained' (reframed) 20,000 civil servants and run more than 750 projects involving 400 randomised controlled trials in dozens of countries' as another version of mind reframers Common Purpose. BIT works from its office in New York with cities and their agencies, as well as other partners, across the United States and Canada – this is a company part-owned by the British government Cabinet Office. An executive order by President Cult-servant Obama established a US Social and Behavioral Sciences Team in 2015. They all have the same reason for being and that's to brainwash the population directly and by brainwashing those in positions of authority.

### **'Covid' mind game**

Another prime aspect of the UK mind-control network is the 'independent' [joke] Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours (SPI-B) which 'provides behavioural science advice aimed at anticipating and helping people adhere to interventions that are recommended by medical or epidemiological experts'. That means manipulating public perception and behaviour to do whatever government tells them to do. It's disgusting and if they really want the public to be 'safe' this lot should all be under lock and key. According to the government website SPI-B consists of

'behavioural scientists, health and social psychologists, anthropologists and historians' and advises the Whitty-Vallance-led Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE) which in turn advises the government on 'the science' (it doesn't) and 'Covid' policy. When politicians say they are being guided by 'the science' this is the rabble in each country they are talking about and that 'science' is dominated by behaviour manipulators to enforce government fascism through public compliance. The Behaviour Insight Team is headed by psychologist David Solomon Halpern, a visiting professor at King's College London, and connects with a national and global web of other civilian and military organisations as the Cult moves towards its goal of fusing them into one fascistic whole in every country through its 'Fusion Doctrine'. The behaviour manipulation network involves, but is not confined to, the Foreign Office; National Security Council; government communications headquarters (GCHQ); MI5; MI6; the Cabinet Office-based Media Monitoring Unit; and the Rapid Response Unit which 'monitors digital trends to spot emerging issues; including misinformation and disinformation; and identifies the best way to respond'.

There is also the 77th Brigade of the UK military which operates like the notorious Israeli military's Unit 8200 in manipulating information and discussion on the Internet by posing as members of the public to promote the narrative and discredit those who challenge it. Here we have the military seeking to manipulate *domestic* public opinion while the Nazis in government are fine with that. Conservative Member of Parliament Tobias Ellwood, an advocate of lockdown and control through 'vaccine passports', is a Lieutenant Colonel reservist in the 77th Brigade which connects with the military operation jHub, the 'innovation centre' for the Ministry of Defence and Strategic Command. jHub has also been involved with the civilian National Health Service (NHS) in 'symptom tracing' the population. The NHS is a key part of this mind control network and produced a document in December, 2020, explaining to staff how to use psychological manipulation with different groups and ages to get them to have the DNA-manipulating 'Covid vaccine'

that's designed to cumulatively rewrite human genetics. The document, called 'Optimising Vaccination Roll Out – Do's and Dont's for all messaging, documents and "communications" in the widest sense', was published by NHS England and the NHS Improvement *Behaviour Change Unit* in partnership with Public Health England and Warwick Business School. I hear the mantra about 'save the NHS' and 'protect the NHS' when we need to scrap the NHS and start again. The current version is far too corrupt, far too anti-human and totally compromised by Cult operatives and their assets. UK government broadcast media censor Ofcom will connect into this web – as will the BBC with its tremendous Ofcom influence – to control what the public see and hear and dictate mass perception. Nuremberg trials must include personnel from all these organisations.

## **The fear factor**

The 'Covid' hoax has led to the creation of the UK Cabinet Office-connected Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) which is officially described as providing 'expert advice on pandemics' using its independent [all Cult operations are 'independent'] analytical function to provide real-time analysis about infection outbreaks to identify and respond to outbreaks of Covid-19'. Another role is to advise the government on a response to spikes in infections – 'for example by closing schools or workplaces in local areas where infection levels have risen'. Put another way, promoting the Cult agenda. The Joint Biosecurity Centre is modelled on the Joint Terrorism Analysis Centre which analyses intelligence to set 'terrorism threat levels' and here again you see the fusion of civilian and military operations and intelligence that has led to military intelligence producing documents about 'vaccine hesitancy' and how it can be combated. Domestic civilian matters and opinions should not be the business of the military. The Joint Biosecurity Centre is headed by Tom Hurd, director general of the Office for Security and Counter-Terrorism from the establishment-to-its-fingertips Hurd family. His father is former Foreign Secretary Douglas Hurd. How coincidental that Tom

Hurd went to the elite Eton College and Oxford University with Boris Johnson. Imperial College with its ridiculous computer modeller Neil Ferguson will connect with this gigantic web that will itself interconnect with similar set-ups in other major and not so major countries. Compared with this Cult network the politicians, be they Boris Johnson, Donald Trump or Joe Biden, are bit-part players ‘following the science’. The network of psychologists was on the ‘Covid’ case from the start with the aim of generating maximum fear of the ‘virus’ to ensure compliance by the population. A government behavioural science group known as SPI-B produced a paper in March, 2020, for discussion by the main government science advisory group known as SAGE. It was headed ‘Options for increasing adherence to social distancing measures’ and it said the following in a section headed ‘Persuasion’:

- A substantial number of people still do not feel sufficiently personally threatened; it could be that they are reassured by the low death rate in their demographic group, although levels of concern may be rising. Having a good understanding of the risk has been found to be positively associated with adoption of COVID-19 social distancing measures in Hong Kong.
- The perceived level of personal threat needs to be increased among those who are complacent, using hard-hitting evaluation of options for increasing social distancing emotional messaging. To be effective this must also empower people by making clear the actions they can take to reduce the threat.
- Responsibility to others: There seems to be insufficient understanding of, or feelings of responsibility about, people’s role in transmitting the infection to others ... Messaging about actions need to be framed positively in terms of protecting oneself and the community, and increase confidence that they will be effective.
- Some people will be more persuaded by appeals to play by the rules, some by duty to the community, and some to personal risk.

All these different approaches are needed. The messaging also needs to take account of the realities of different people's lives. Messaging needs to take account of the different motivational levers and circumstances of different people.

All this could be achieved the SPI-B psychologists said by *using the media to increase the sense of personal threat* which translates as terrify the shit out of the population, including children, so they all do what we want. That's not happened has it? Those excuses for 'journalists' who wouldn't know journalism if it bit them on the arse (the great majority) have played their crucial part in serving this Cult-government Psyop to enslave their own kids and grandkids. How they live with themselves I have no idea. The psychological war has been underpinned by constant government 'Covid' propaganda in almost every television and radio ad break, plus the Internet and print media, which has pounded out the fear with taxpayers footing the bill for their own programming. The result has been people terrified of a 'virus' that doesn't exist or one with a tiny fatality rate even if you believe it does. People walk down the street and around the shops wearing face-nappies damaging their health and psychology while others report those who refuse to be that naïve to the police who turn up in their own face-nappies. I had a cameraman come to my flat and he was so frightened of 'Covid' he came in wearing a mask and refused to shake my hand in case he caught something. He had – naïveitis – and the thought that he worked in the mainstream media was both depressing and made his behaviour perfectly explainable. The fear which has gripped the minds of so many and frozen them into compliance has been carefully cultivated by these psychologists who are really psychopaths. If lives get destroyed and a lot of young people commit suicide it shows our plan is working. SPI-B then turned to compulsion on the public to comply. 'With adequate preparation, rapid change can be achieved', it said. Some countries had introduced mandatory self-isolation on a wide scale without evidence of major public unrest and a large majority of the UK's population appeared to be supportive of more coercive measures with 64 percent of adults saying they would

support putting London under a lockdown (watch the ‘polls’ which are designed to make people believe that public opinion is in favour or against whatever the subject in hand).

For ‘aggressive protective measures’ to be effective, the SPI-B paper said, special attention should be devoted to those population groups that are more at risk. Translated from the Orwellian this means making the rest of population feel guilty for not protecting the ‘vulnerable’ such as old people which the Cult and its agencies were about to kill on an industrial scale with lockdown, lack of treatment and the Gates ‘vaccine’. Psychopath psychologists sold their guilt-trip so comprehensively that Los Angeles County Supervisor Hilda Solis reported that children were apologising (from a distance) to their parents and grandparents for bringing ‘Covid’ into their homes and getting them sick. ‘... These apologies are just some of the last words that loved ones will ever hear as they die alone,’ she said. Gut-wrenchingly Solis then used this childhood tragedy to tell children to stay at home and ‘keep your loved ones alive’. Imagine heaping such potentially life-long guilt on a kid when it has absolutely nothing to do with them. These people are deeply disturbed and the psychologists behind this even more so.

## **Uncivil war – divide and rule**

Professional mind-controllers at SPI-B wanted the media to increase a sense of responsibility to others (do as you’re told) and promote ‘positive messaging’ for those actions while in contrast to invoke ‘social disapproval’ by the unquestioning, obedient, community of anyone with a mind of their own. Again the compliant Goebbels-like media obliged. This is an old, old, trick employed by tyrannies the world over throughout human history. You get the target population to keep the target population in line – *your* line. SPI-B said this could ‘play an important role in preventing anti-social behaviour or discouraging failure to enact pro-social behaviour’. For ‘anti-social’ in the Orwellian parlance of SPI-B see any behaviour that government doesn’t approve. SPI-B recommendations said that ‘social disapproval’ should be accompanied by clear messaging and

promotion of strong collective identity – hence the government and celebrity mantra of ‘we’re all in this together’. Sure we are. The mind doctors have such contempt for their targets that they think some clueless comedian, actor or singer telling them to do what the government wants will be enough to win them over. We have had UK comedian Lenny Henry, actor Michael Caine and singer Elton John wheeled out to serve the propagandists by urging people to have the DNA-manipulating ‘Covid’ non-‘vaccine’. The role of Henry and fellow black celebrities in seeking to coax a ‘vaccine’ reluctant black community into doing the government’s will was especially stomach-turning. An emotion-manipulating script and carefully edited video featuring these black ‘celebs’ was such an insult to the intelligence of black people and where’s the self-respect of those involved selling their souls to a fascist government agenda? Henry said he heard black people’s ‘legitimate worries and concerns’, but people must ‘trust the facts’ when they were doing exactly that by not having the ‘vaccine’. They had to include the obligatory reference to Black Lives Matter with the line ... ‘Don’t let coronavirus cost even more black lives – because we matter’. My god, it was pathetic. ‘I know the vaccine is safe and what it does.’ How? ‘I’m a comedian and it says so in my script.’

SPI-B said social disapproval needed to be carefully managed to avoid victimisation, scapegoating and misdirected criticism, but they knew that their ‘recommendations’ would lead to exactly that and the media were specifically used to stir-up the divide-and-conquer hostility. Those who conform like good little baa, baas, are praised while those who have seen through the tidal wave of lies are ‘Covidiots’. The awake have been abused by the fast asleep for not conforming to fascism and impositions that the awake know are designed to endanger their health, dehumanise them, and tear asunder the very fabric of human society. We have had the curtain-twitchers and morons reporting neighbours and others to the face-nappied police for breaking ‘Covid rules’ with fascist police delighting in posting links and phone numbers where this could be done. The Cult cannot impose its will without a compliant police

and military or a compliant population willing to play their part in enslaving themselves and their kids. The words of a pastor in Nazi Germany are so appropriate today:

First they came for the socialists and I did not speak out because I was not a socialist.

Then they came for the trade unionists and I did not speak out because I was not a trade unionist.

Then they came for the Jews and I did not speak out because I was not a Jew.

Then they came for me and there was no one left to speak for me.

Those who don't learn from history are destined to repeat it and so many are.

### **'Covid' rules: Rewiring the mind**

With the background laid out to this gigantic national and global web of psychological manipulation we can put 'Covid' rules into a clear and sinister perspective. Forget the claims about protecting health. 'Covid' rules are about dismantling the human mind, breaking the human spirit, destroying self-respect, and then putting Humpty Dumpty together again as a servile, submissive slave. Social isolation through lockdown and distancing have devastating effects on the human psyche as the psychological psychopaths well know and that's the real reason for them. Humans need contact with each other, discourse, closeness and touch, or they eventually, and literally, go crazy. Masks, which I will address at some length, fundamentally add to the effects of isolation and the Cult agenda to dehumanise and de-individualise the population. To do this while knowing – in fact *seeking* – this outcome is the very epitome of evil and psychologists involved in this *are* the epitome of evil. They must like all the rest of the Cult demons and their assets stand trial for crimes against humanity on a scale that defies the imagination. Psychopaths in uniform use isolation to break enemy troops and agents and make them subservient and submissive to tell what they know. The technique is rightly considered a form of torture and

torture is most certainly what has been imposed on the human population.

Clinically-insane American psychologist Harry Harlow became famous for his isolation experiments in the 1950s in which he separated baby monkeys from their mothers and imprisoned them for months on end in a metal container or ‘pit of despair’. They soon began to show mental distress and depression as any idiot could have predicted. Harlow put other monkeys in steel chambers for three, six or twelve months while denying them any contact with animals or humans. He said that the effects of total social isolation for six months were ‘so devastating and debilitating that we had assumed initially that twelve months of isolation would not produce any additional decrement’; but twelve months of isolation ‘almost obliterated the animals socially’. This is what the Cult and its psychopaths are doing to you and your children. Even monkeys in partial isolation in which they were not allowed to form relationships with other monkeys became ‘aggressive and hostile, not only to others, but also towards their own bodies’. We have seen this in the young as a consequence of lockdown. UK government psychopaths launched a public relations campaign telling people not to hug each other even after they received the ‘Covid-19 vaccine’ which we were told with more lies would allow a return to ‘normal life’. A government source told *The Telegraph*: ‘It will be along the lines that it is great that you have been vaccinated, but if you are going to visit your family and hug your grandchildren there is a chance you are going to infect people you love.’ The source was apparently speaking from a secure psychiatric facility. Janet Lord, director of Birmingham University’s Institute of Inflammation and Ageing, said that parents and grandparents should avoid hugging their children. Well, how can I put it, Ms Lord? Fuck off. Yep, that’ll do.

## **Destroying the kids – where are the parents?**

Observe what has happened to people enslaved and isolated by lockdown as suicide and self-harm has soared worldwide,

particularly among the young denied the freedom to associate with their friends. A study of 49,000 people in English-speaking countries concluded that almost half of young adults are at clinical risk of mental health disorders. A national survey in America of 1,000 currently enrolled high school and college students found that 5 percent reported attempting suicide during the pandemic. Data from the US CDC's National Syndromic Surveillance Program from January 1st to October 17th, 2020, revealed a 31 percent increase in mental health issues among adolescents aged 12 to 17 compared with 2019. The CDC reported that America in general suffered the biggest drop in life expectancy since World War Two as it fell by a year in the first half of 2020 as a result of 'deaths of despair' – overdoses and suicides. Deaths of despair have leapt by more than 20 percent during lockdown and include the highest number of fatal overdoses ever recorded in a single year – 81,000. Internet addiction is another consequence of being isolated at home which lowers interest in physical activities as kids fall into inertia and what's the point? Children and young people are losing hope and giving up on life, sometimes literally. A 14-year-old boy killed himself in Maryland because he had 'given up' when his school district didn't reopen; an 11-year-old boy shot himself during a zoom class; a teenager in Maine succumbed to the isolation of the 'pandemic' when he ended his life after experiencing a disrupted senior year at school. Children as young as nine have taken their life and all these stories can be repeated around the world. Careers are being destroyed before they start and that includes those in sport in which promising youngsters have not been able to take part. The plan of the psycho-psychologists is working all right. Researchers at Cambridge University found that lockdowns cause significant harm to children's mental health. Their study was published in the *Archives of Disease in Childhood*, and followed 168 children aged between 7 and 11. The researchers concluded:

During the UK lockdown, children's depression symptoms have increased substantially, relative to before lockdown. The scale of this effect has direct relevance for the continuation of different elements of lockdown policy, such as complete or partial school closures ...

... Specifically, we observed a statistically significant increase in ratings of depression, with a medium-to-large effect size. Our findings emphasise the need to incorporate the potential impact of lockdown on child mental health in planning the ongoing response to the global pandemic and the recovery from it.

Not a chance when the Cult's psycho-psychologists were getting exactly what they wanted. The UK's Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health has urged parents to look for signs of eating disorders in children and young people after a three to four fold increase. Specialists say the 'pandemic' is a major reason behind the rise. You don't say. The College said isolation from friends during school closures, exam cancellations, loss of extra-curricular activities like sport, and an increased use of social media were all contributory factors along with fears about the virus (psycho-psychologists again), family finances, and students being forced to quarantine. Doctors said young people were becoming severely ill by the time they were seen with 'Covid' regulations reducing face-to-face consultations. Nor is it only the young that have been devastated by the psychopaths. Like all bullies and cowards the Cult is targeting the young, elderly, weak and infirm. A typical story was told by a British lady called Lynn Parker who was not allowed to visit her husband in 2020 for the last ten and half months of his life 'when he needed me most' between March 20th and when he died on December 19th. This vacates the criminal and enters the territory of evil. The emotional impact on the immune system alone is immense as are the number of people of all ages worldwide who have died as a result of Cult-demanded, Gates-demanded, lockdowns.

## **Isolation is torture**

The experience of imposing solitary confinement on millions of prisoners around the world has shown how a large percentage become 'actively psychotic and/or acutely suicidal'. Social isolation has been found to trigger 'a specific psychiatric syndrome, characterized by hallucinations; panic attacks; overt paranoia; diminished impulse control; hypersensitivity to external stimuli; and difficulties with thinking, concentration and memory'. Juan Mendez,

a United Nations rapporteur (investigator), said that isolation is a form of torture. Research has shown that even after isolation prisoners find it far more difficult to make social connections and I remember chatting to a shop assistant after one lockdown who told me that when her young son met another child again he had no idea how to act or what to do. Hannah Flanagan, Director of Emergency Services at Journey Mental Health Center in Dane County, Wisconsin, said: ‘The specificity about Covid social distancing and isolation that we’ve come across as contributing factors to the suicides are really new to us this year.’ But they are not new to those that devised them. They are getting the effect they want as the population is psychologically dismantled to be rebuilt in a totally different way. Children and the young are particularly targeted. They will be the adults when the full-on fascist AI-controlled technocracy is planned to be imposed and they are being prepared to meekly submit. At the same time older people who still have a memory of what life was like before – and how fascist the new normal really is – are being deleted. You are going to see efforts to turn the young against the old to support this geriatric genocide. Hannah Flanagan said the big increase in suicide in her county proved that social isolation is not only harmful, but deadly. Studies have shown that isolation from others is one of the main risk factors in suicide and even more so with women. Warnings that lockdown could create a ‘perfect storm’ for suicide were ignored. After all this was one of the *reasons* for lockdown. Suicide, however, is only the most extreme of isolation consequences. There are many others. Dr Dhruv Khullar, assistant professor of healthcare policy at Weill Cornell Medical College, said in a *New York Times* article in 2016 long before the fake ‘pandemic’:

A wave of new research suggests social separation is bad for us. Individuals with less social connection have disrupted sleep patterns, altered immune systems, more inflammation and higher levels of stress hormones. One recent study found that isolation increases the risk of heart disease by 29 percent and stroke by 32 percent. Another analysis that pooled data from 70 studies and 3.4 million people found that socially isolated individuals had a 30 percent higher risk of dying in the next seven years, and that this effect was largest in middle age.

Loneliness can accelerate cognitive decline in older adults, and isolated individuals are twice as likely to die prematurely as those with more robust social interactions. These effects start early: Socially isolated children have significantly poorer health 20 years later, even after controlling for other factors. All told, loneliness is as important a risk factor for early death as obesity and smoking.

There you have proof from that one article alone four years before 2020 that those who have enforced lockdown, social distancing and isolation knew what the effect would be and that is even more so with professional psychologists that have been driving the policy across the globe. We can go back even further to the years 2000 and 2003 and the start of a major study on the effects of isolation on health by Dr Janine Gronewold and Professor Dirk M. Hermann at the University Hospital in Essen, Germany, who analysed data on 4,316 people with an average age of 59 who were recruited for the long-term research project. They found that socially isolated people are more than 40 percent more likely to have a heart attack, stroke, or other major cardiovascular event and nearly 50 percent more likely to die from any cause. Given the financial Armageddon unleashed by lockdown we should note that the study found a relationship between increased cardiovascular risk and lack of financial support. After excluding other factors social isolation was still connected to a 44 percent increased risk of cardiovascular problems and a 47 percent increased risk of death by any cause. Lack of financial support was associated with a 30 percent increase in the risk of cardiovascular health events. Dr Gronewold said it had been known for some time that feeling lonely or lacking contact with close friends and family can have an impact on physical health and the study had shown that having strong social relationships is of high importance for heart health. Gronewold said they didn't understand yet why people who are socially isolated have such poor health outcomes, but this was obviously a worrying finding, particularly during these times of prolonged social distancing. Well, it can be explained on many levels. You only have to identify the point in the body where people feel loneliness and missing people they are parted from – it's in the centre of the chest where they feel the ache of loneliness and the ache of missing people. 'My heart aches for

you' ... 'My heart aches for some company.' I will explain this more in the chapter Escaping Wetiko, but when you realise that the body is the mind – they are expressions of each other – the reason why state of the mind dictates state of the body becomes clear.

American psychologist Ranjit Powar was highlighting the effects of lockdown isolation as early as April, 2020. She said humans have evolved to be social creatures and are wired to live in interactive groups. Being isolated from family, friends and colleagues could be unbalancing and traumatic for most people and could result in short or even long-term psychological and physical health problems. An increase in levels of anxiety, aggression, depression, forgetfulness and hallucinations were possible psychological effects of isolation. 'Mental conditions may be precipitated for those with underlying pre-existing susceptibilities and show up in many others without any pre-condition.' Powar said personal relationships helped us cope with stress and if we lost this outlet for letting off steam the result can be a big emotional void which, for an average person, was difficult to deal with. 'Just a few days of isolation can cause increased levels of anxiety and depression' – so what the hell has been the effect on the global population of *18 months* of this at the time of writing? Powar said: 'Add to it the looming threat of a dreadful disease being repeatedly hammered in through the media and you have a recipe for many shades of mental and physical distress.' For those with a house and a garden it is easy to forget that billions have had to endure lockdown isolation in tiny overcrowded flats and apartments with nowhere to go outside. The psychological and physical consequences of this are unimaginable and with lunatic and abusive partners and parents the consequences have led to tremendous increases in domestic and child abuse and alcoholism as people seek to shut out the horror. Ranjit Powar said:

Staying in a confined space with family is not all a rosy picture for everyone. It can be extremely oppressive and claustrophobic for large low-income families huddled together in small single-room houses. Children here are not lucky enough to have many board/electronic games or books to keep them occupied.

Add to it the deep insecurity of running out of funds for food and basic necessities. On the other hand, there are people with dysfunctional family dynamics, such as domineering, abusive or alcoholic partners, siblings or parents which makes staying home a period of trial. Incidence of suicide and physical abuse against women has shown a worldwide increase. Heightened anxiety and depression also affect a person's immune system, making them more susceptible to illness.

To think that Powar's article was published on April 11th, 2020.

## **Six-feet fantasy**

Social (unsocial) distancing demanded that people stay six feet or two metres apart. UK government advisor Robert Dingwall from the New and Emerging Respiratory Virus Threats Advisory Group said in a radio interview that the two-metre rule was 'conjured up out of nowhere' and was not based on science. No, it was not based on *medical* science, but it didn't come out of nowhere. The distance related to *psychological* science. Six feet/two metres was adopted in many countries and we were told by people like the criminal Anthony Fauci and his ilk that it was founded on science. Many schools could not reopen because they did not have the space for six-feet distancing. Then in March, 2021, after a year of six-feet 'science', a study published in the *Journal of Infectious Diseases* involving more than 500,000 students and almost 100,000 staff over 16 weeks revealed no significant difference in 'Covid' cases between six feet and three feet and Fauci changed his tune. Now three feet was okay. There is no difference between six feet and three *inches* when there is no 'virus' and they got away with six feet for psychological reasons for as long as they could. I hear journalists and others talk about 'unintended consequences' of lockdown. They are not *unintended* at all; they have been coldly-calculated for a specific outcome of human control and that's why super-psychopaths like Gates have called for them so vehemently. Super-psychopath psychologists have demanded them and psychopathic or clueless, spineless, politicians have gone along with them by 'following the science'. But it's not science at all. 'Science' is not what is; it's only what people can be manipulated to believe it is. The whole 'Covid' catastrophe is

founded on mind control. Three word or three statement mantras issued by the UK government are a well-known mind control technique and so we've had 'Stay home/protect the NHS/save lives', 'Stay alert/control the virus/save lives' and 'hands/face/space'. One of the most vocal proponents of extreme 'Covid' rules in the UK has been Professor Susan Michie, a member of the British Communist Party, who is not a medical professional. Michie is the director of the Centre for Behaviour Change at University College London. She is a *behavioural psychologist* and another filthy rich 'Marxist' who praised China's draconian lockdown. She was known by fellow students at Oxford University as 'Stalin's nanny' for her extreme Marxism. Michie is an influential member of the UK government's Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE) and behavioural manipulation groups which have dominated 'Covid' policy. She is a consultant adviser to the World Health Organization on 'Covid-19' and behaviour. Why the hell are lockdowns anything to do with her when they are claimed to be about health? Why does a behavioural psychologist from a group charged with changing the behaviour of the public want lockdown, human isolation and mandatory masks? Does that question really need an answer? Michie *absolutely* has to explain herself before a Nuremberg court when humanity takes back its world again and even more so when you see the consequences of masks that she demands are compulsory. This is a Michie classic:

The benefits of getting primary school children to wear masks is that regardless of what little degree of transmission is occurring in those age groups it could help normalise the practice. Young children wearing masks may be more likely to get their families to accept masks.

Those words alone should carry a prison sentence when you ponder on the callous disregard for children involved and what a statement it makes about the mind and motivations of Susan Michie. What a lovely lady and what she said there encapsulates the mentality of the psychopaths behind the 'Covid' horror. Let us compare what Michie said with a countrywide study in Germany published at [researchsquare.com](https://www.researchsquare.com) involving 25,000 school children and 17,854 health complaints submitted by parents. Researchers

found that masks are harming children physically, psychologically, and behaviourally with 24 health issues associated with mask wearing. They include: shortness of breath (29.7%); dizziness (26.4%); increased headaches (53%); difficulty concentrating (50%); drowsiness or fatigue (37%); and malaise (42%). Nearly a third of children experienced more sleep issues than before and a quarter developed new fears. Researchers found health issues and other impairments in 68 percent of masked children covering their faces for an average of 4.5 hours a day. Hundreds of those taking part experienced accelerated respiration, tightness in the chest, weakness, and short-term impairment of consciousness. A reminder of what Michie said again:

The benefits of getting primary school children to wear masks is that regardless of what little degree of transmission is occurring in those age groups it could help normalise the practice. Young children wearing masks may be more likely to get their families to accept masks.

Psychopaths in government and psychology now have children and young people – plus all the adults – wearing masks for hours on end while clueless teachers impose the will of the psychopaths on the young they should be protecting. What the hell are parents doing?

## **Cult lab rats**

We have some schools already imposing on students microchipped buzzers that activate when they get ‘too close’ to their pals in the way they do with lab rats. How apt. To the Cult and its brain-dead servants our children *are* lab rats being conditioned to be unquestioning, dehumanised slaves for the rest of their lives.

Children and young people are being weaned and frightened away from the most natural human instincts including closeness and touch. I have tracked in the books over the years how schools were banning pupils from greeting each other with a hug and the whole Cult-induced Me Too movement has terrified men and boys from a relaxed and natural interaction with female friends and work colleagues to the point where many men try never to be in a room

alone with a woman that's not their partner. Airhead celebrities have as always played their virtue-signalling part in making this happen with their gross exaggeration. For every monster like Harvey Weinstein there are at least tens of thousands of men that don't treat women like that; but everyone must be branded the same and policy changed for them as well as the monster. I am going to be using the word 'dehumanise' many times in this chapter because that is what the Cult is seeking to do and it goes very deep as we shall see. Don't let them kid you that social distancing is planned to end one day. That's not the idea. We are seeing more governments and companies funding and producing wearable gadgets to keep people apart and they would not be doing that if this was meant to be short-term. A tech start-up company backed by GCHQ, the British Intelligence and military surveillance headquarters, has created a social distancing wrist sensor that alerts people when they get too close to others. The CIA has also supported tech companies developing similar devices. The wearable sensor was developed by Tended, one of a number of start-up companies supported by GCHQ (see the CIA and DARPA). The device can be worn on the wrist or as a tag on the waistband and will vibrate whenever someone wearing the device breaches social distancing and gets anywhere near natural human contact. The company had a lucky break in that it was developing a distancing sensor when the 'Covid' hoax arrived which immediately provided a potentially enormous market. How fortunate. The government in big-time Cult-controlled Ontario in Canada is investing \$2.5 million in wearable contact tracing technology that 'will alert users if they may have been exposed to the Covid-19 in the workplace and will beep or vibrate if they are within six feet of another person'. Facedrive Inc., the technology company behind this, was founded in 2016 with funding from the Ontario Together Fund and obviously they, too, had a prophet on the board of directors. The human surveillance and control technology is called TraceSCAN and would be worn by the human cyborgs in places such as airports, workplaces, construction sites, care homes and ... schools.

I emphasise schools with children and young people the prime targets. You know what is planned for society as a whole if you keep your eyes on the schools. They have always been places where the state program the next generation of slaves to be its compliant worker-ants – or Woker-ants these days; but in the mist of the ‘Covid’ madness they have been transformed into mind laboratories on a scale never seen before. Teachers and head teachers are just as programmed as the kids – often more so. Children are kept apart from human interaction by walk lanes, classroom distancing, staggered meal times, masks, and the rolling-out of buzzer systems. Schools are now physically laid out as a laboratory maze for lab-rats. Lunatics at a school in Anchorage, Alaska, who should be prosecuted for child abuse, took away desks and forced children to kneel (know your place) on a mat for five hours a day while wearing a mask and using their chairs as a desk. How this was supposed to impact on a ‘virus’ only these clinically insane people can tell you and even then it would be clap-trap. The school banned recess (interaction), art classes (creativity), and physical exercise (getting body and mind moving out of inertia). Everyone behind this outrage should be in jail or better still a mental institution. The behavioural manipulators are all for this dystopian approach to schools.

Professor Susan Michie, the mind-doctor and British Communist Party member, said it was wrong to say that schools were safe. They had to be made so by ‘distancing’, masks and ventilation (sitting all day in the cold). I must ask this lady round for dinner on a night I know I am going to be out and not back for weeks. She probably wouldn’t be able to make it, anyway, with all the visits to her own psychologist she must have block-booked.

## **Masking identity**

I know how shocking it must be for you that a behaviour manipulator like Michie wants everyone to wear masks which have long been a feature of mind-control programs like the infamous MKUltra in the United States, but, there we are. We live and learn. I spent many years from 1996 to right across the millennium

researching mind control in detail on both sides of the Atlantic and elsewhere. I met a large number of mind-control survivors and many had been held captive in body and mind by MKUltra. MK stands for mind-control, but employs the German spelling in deference to the Nazis spirited out of Germany at the end of World War Two by Operation Paperclip in which the US authorities, with help from the Vatican, transported Nazi mind-controllers and engineers to America to continue their work. Many of them were behind the creation of NASA and they included Nazi scientist and SS officer Wernher von Braun who swapped designing V-2 rockets to bombard London with designing the Saturn V rockets that powered the NASA moon programme's Apollo craft. I think I may have mentioned that the Cult has no borders. Among Paperclip escapees was Josef Mengele, the Angel of Death in the Nazi concentration camps where he conducted mind and genetic experiments on children often using twins to provide a control twin to measure the impact of his 'work' on the other. If you want to observe the Cult mentality in all its extremes of evil then look into the life of Mengele. I have met many people who suffered mercilessly under Mengele in the United States where he operated under the name Dr Greene and became a stalwart of MKUltra programming and torture. Among his locations was the underground facility in the Mojave Desert in California called the China Lake Naval Weapons Station which is almost entirely below the surface. My books *The Biggest Secret*, *Children of the Matrix* and *The Perception Deception* have the detailed background to MKUltra.

The best-known MKUltra survivor is American Cathy O'Brien. I first met her and her late partner Mark Phillips at a conference in Colorado in 1996. Mark helped her escape and deprogram from decades of captivity in an offshoot of MKUltra known as Project Monarch in which 'sex slaves' were provided for the rich and famous including Father George Bush, Dick Cheney and the Clintons. Read Cathy and Mark's book *Trance-Formation of America* and if you are new to this you will be shocked to the core. I read it in 1996 shortly before, with the usual synchronicity of my life, I found

myself given a book table at the conference right next to hers. MKUltra never ended despite being very publicly exposed (only a small part of it) in the 1970s and continues in other guises. I am still in touch with Cathy. She contacted me during 2020 after masks became compulsory in many countries to tell me how they were used as part of MKUltra programming. I had been observing 'Covid regulations' and the relationship between authority and public for months. I saw techniques that I knew were employed on individuals in MKUltra being used on the global population. I had read many books and manuals on mind control including one called *Silent Weapons for Quiet Wars* which came to light in the 1980s and was a guide on how to perceptually program on a mass scale. 'Silent Weapons' refers to mind-control. I remembered a line from the manual as governments, medical authorities and law enforcement agencies have so obviously talked to – or rather at – the adult population since the 'Covid' hoax began as if they are children. The document said:

If a person is spoken to by a T.V. advertiser as if he were a twelve-year-old, then, due to suggestibility, he will, with a certain probability, respond or react to that suggestion with the uncritical response of a twelve-year-old and will reach in to his economic reservoir and deliver its energy to buy that product on impulse when he passes it in the store.

That's why authority has spoken to adults like children since all this began.

### **Why did Michael Jackson wear masks?**

Every aspect of the 'Covid' narrative has mind-control as its central theme. Cathy O'Brien wrote an article for [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com) about the connection between masks and mind control. Her daughter Kelly who I first met in the 1990s was born while Cathy was still held captive in MKUltra. Kelly was forced to wear a mask as part of her programming from the age of *two* to dehumanise her, target her sense of individuality and reduce the amount of oxygen her brain and body received. *Bingo*. This is the real reason for compulsory

masks, why they have been enforced en masse, and why they seek to increase the number they demand you wear. First one, then two, with one disgraceful alleged ‘doctor’ recommending four which is nothing less than a death sentence. Where and how often they must be worn is being expanded for the purpose of mass mind control and damaging respiratory health which they can call ‘Covid-19’. Canada’s government headed by the man-child Justin Trudeau, says it’s fine for children of two and older to wear masks. An insane ‘study’ in Italy involving just 47 children concluded there was no problem for babies as young as *four months* wearing them. Even after people were ‘vaccinated’ they were still told to wear masks by the criminal that is Anthony Fauci. Cathy wrote that mandating masks is allowing the authorities literally to control the air we breathe which is what was done in MKUltra. You might recall how the singer Michael Jackson wore masks and there is a reason for that. He was subjected to MKUltra mind control through Project Monarch and his psyche was scrambled by these simpletons. Cathy wrote:

In MKUltra Project Monarch mind control, Michael Jackson had to wear a mask to silence his voice so he could not reach out for help. Remember how he developed that whisper voice when he wasn’t singing? Masks control the mind from the outside in, like the redefining of words is doing. By controlling what we can and cannot say for fear of being labeled racist or beaten, for example, it ultimately controls thought that drives our words and ultimately actions (or lack thereof).

Likewise, a mask muffles our speech so that we are not heard, which controls voice ... words ... mind. This is Mind Control. Masks are an obvious mind control device, and I am disturbed so many people are complying on a global scale. Masks depersonalize while making a person feel as though they have no voice. It is a barrier to others. People who would never choose to comply but are forced to wear a mask in order to keep their job, and ultimately their family fed, are compromised. They often feel shame and are subdued. People have stopped talking with each other while media controls the narrative.

The ‘no voice’ theme has often become literal with train passengers told not to speak to each other in case they pass on the ‘virus’, singing banned for the same reason and bonkers California officials telling people riding roller coasters that they cannot shout and scream. Cathy said she heard every day from healed MKUltra survivors who cannot wear a mask without flashing back on ways

their breathing was controlled – ‘from ball gags and penises to water boarding’. She said that through the years when she saw images of people in China wearing masks ‘due to pollution’ that it was really to control their oxygen levels. ‘I knew it was as much of a population control mechanism of depersonalisation as are burkas’, she said. Masks are another Chinese communist/fascist method of control that has been swept across the West as the West becomes China at lightning speed since we entered 2020.

## **Mask-19**

There are other reasons for mandatory masks and these include destroying respiratory health to call it ‘Covid-19’ and stunting brain development of children and the young. Dr Margarite Griesz-Brisson MD, PhD, is a Consultant Neurologist and Neurophysiologist and the Founder and Medical Director of the London Neurology and Pain Clinic. Her CV goes down the street and round the corner. She is clearly someone who cares about people and won’t parrot the propaganda. Griesz-Brisson has a PhD in pharmacology, with special interest in neurotoxicology, environmental medicine, neuroregeneration and neuroplasticity (the way the brain can change in the light of information received). She went public in October, 2020, with a passionate warning about the effects of mask-wearing laws:

The reinhalation of our exhaled air will without a doubt create oxygen deficiency and a flooding of carbon dioxide. We know that the human brain is very sensitive to oxygen deprivation. There are nerve cells for example in the hippocampus that can’t be longer than 3 minutes without oxygen – they cannot survive. The acute warning symptoms are headaches, drowsiness, dizziness, issues in concentration, slowing down of reaction time – reactions of the cognitive system.

Oh, I know, let’s tell bus, truck and taxi drivers to wear them and people working machinery. How about pilots, doctors and police? Griesz-Brisson makes the important point that while the symptoms she mentions may fade as the body readjusts this does not alter the fact that people continue to operate in oxygen deficit with long list of

potential consequences. She said it was well known that neurodegenerative diseases take years or decades to develop. 'If today you forget your phone number, the breakdown in your brain would have already started 20 or 30 years ago.' She said degenerative processes in your brain are getting amplified as your oxygen deprivation continues through wearing a mask. Nerve cells in the brain are unable to divide themselves normally in these circumstances and lost nerve cells will no longer be regenerated. 'What is gone is gone.' Now consider that people like shop workers and *schoolchildren* are wearing masks for hours every day. What in the name of sanity is going to be happening to them? 'I do not wear a mask, I need my brain to think', Griesz-Brisson said, 'I want to have a clear head when I deal with my patients and not be in a carbon dioxide-induced anaesthesia'. If you are told to wear a mask anywhere ask the organisation, police, store, whatever, for their risk assessment on the dangers and negative effects on mind and body of enforcing mask-wearing. They won't have one because it has never been done not even by government. All of them must be subject to class-action lawsuits as the consequences come to light. They don't do mask risk assessments for an obvious reason. They know what the conclusions would be and independent scientific studies that *have* been done tell a horror story of consequences.

### **'Masks are criminal'**

Dr Griesz-Brisson said that for children and adolescents, masks are an absolute no-no. They had an extremely active and adaptive immune system and their brain was incredibly active with so much to learn. 'The child's brain, or the youth's brain, is thirsting for oxygen.' The more metabolically active an organ was, the more oxygen it required; and in children and adolescents every organ was metabolically active. Griesz-Brisson said that to deprive a child's or adolescent's brain of oxygen, or to restrict it in any way, was not only dangerous to their health, it was absolutely criminal. 'Oxygen deficiency inhibits the development of the brain, and the damage that has taken place as a result CANNOT be reversed.' Mind

manipulators of MKUltra put masks on two-year-olds they wanted to neurologically rewire and you can see why. Griesz-Brisson said a child needs the brain to learn and the brain needs oxygen to function. 'We don't need a clinical study for that. This is simple, indisputable physiology.' Consciously and purposely induced oxygen deficiency was an absolutely deliberate health hazard, and an absolute medical contraindication which means that 'this drug, this therapy, this method or measure should not be used, and is not allowed to be used'. To coerce an entire population to use an absolute medical contraindication by force, she said, there had to be definite and serious reasons and the reasons must be presented to competent interdisciplinary and independent bodies to be verified and authorised. She had this warning of the consequences that were coming if mask wearing continued:

When, in ten years, dementia is going to increase exponentially, and the younger generations couldn't reach their god-given potential, it won't help to say 'we didn't need the masks'. I know how damaging oxygen deprivation is for the brain, cardiologists know how damaging it is for the heart, pulmonologists know how damaging it is for the lungs. Oxygen deprivation damages every single organ. Where are our health departments, our health insurance, our medical associations? It would have been their duty to be vehemently against the lockdown and to stop it and stop it from the very beginning.

Why do the medical boards issue punishments to doctors who give people exemptions? Does the person or the doctor seriously have to prove that oxygen deprivation harms people? What kind of medicine are our doctors and medical associations representing? Who is responsible for this crime? The ones who want to enforce it? The ones who let it happen and play along, or the ones who don't prevent it?

All of the organisations and people she mentions there either answer directly to the Cult or do whatever hierarchical levels above them tell them to do. The outcome of both is the same. 'It's not about masks, it's not about viruses, it's certainly not about your health', Griesz-Brisson said. 'It is about much, much more. I am not participating. I am not afraid.' They were taking our air to breathe and there was no unfounded medical exemption from face masks. Oxygen deprivation was dangerous for every single brain. It had to be the free decision of every human being whether they want to

wear a mask that was absolutely ineffective to protect themselves from a virus. She ended by rightly identifying where the responsibility lies for all this:

The imperative of the hour is personal responsibility. We are responsible for what we think, not the media. We are responsible for what we do, not our superiors. We are responsible for our health, not the World Health Organization. And we are responsible for what happens in our country, not the government.

Halle-bloody-lujah.

## **But surgeons wear masks, right?**

Independent studies of mask-wearing have produced a long list of reports detailing mental, emotional and physical dangers. What a definition of insanity to see police officers imposing mask-wearing on the public which will cumulatively damage their health while the police themselves wear masks that will cumulatively damage *their* health. It's utter madness and both public and police do this because 'the government says so' – yes a government of brain-donor idiots like UK Health Secretary Matt Hancock reading the 'follow the science' scripts of psychopathic, lunatic psychologists. The response you get from Stockholm syndrome sufferers defending the very authorities that are destroying them and their families is that 'surgeons wear masks'. This is considered the game, set and match that they must work and don't cause oxygen deficit. Well, actually, scientific studies have shown that they *do* and oxygen levels are monitored in operating theatres to compensate. Surgeons wear masks to stop spittle and such like dropping into open wounds – not to stop 'viral particles' which are so minuscule they can only be seen through an electron microscope. Holes in the masks are significantly bigger than 'viral particles' and if you sneeze or cough they will breach the mask. I watched an incredibly disingenuous 'experiment' that claimed to prove that masks work in catching 'virus' material from the mouth and nose. They did this with a slow motion camera and the mask did block big stuff which stayed inside the mask and

against the face to be breathed in or cause infections on the face as we have seen with many children. ‘Viral particles’, however, would never have been picked up by the camera as they came through the mask when they are far too small to be seen. The ‘experiment’ was therefore disingenuous *and* useless.

Studies have concluded that wearing masks in operating theatres (and thus elsewhere) make no difference to preventing infection while the opposite is true with toxic shite building up in the mask and this had led to an explosion in tooth decay and gum disease dubbed by dentists ‘mask mouth’. You might have seen the Internet video of a furious American doctor urging people to take off their masks after a four-year-old patient had been rushed to hospital the night before and nearly died with a lung infection that doctors sourced to mask wearing. A study in the journal *Cancer Discovery* found that inhalation of harmful microbes can contribute to advanced stage lung cancer in adults and long-term use of masks can help breed dangerous pathogens. Microbiologists have said frequent mask wearing creates a moist environment in which microbes can grow and proliferate before entering the lungs. The Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health, or CADTH, a Canadian national organisation that provides research and analysis to healthcare decision-makers, said this as long ago as 2013 in a report entitled ‘Use of Surgical Masks in the Operating Room: A Review of the Clinical Effectiveness and Guidelines’. It said:

- No evidence was found to support the use of surgical face masks to reduce the frequency of surgical site infections
- No evidence was found on the effectiveness of wearing surgical face masks to protect staff from infectious material in the operating room.
- Guidelines recommend the use of surgical face masks by staff in the operating room to protect both operating room staff and patients (despite the lack of evidence).

We were told that the world could go back to ‘normal’ with the arrival of the ‘vaccines’. When they came, fraudulent as they are, the story changed as I knew that it would. We are in the midst of transforming ‘normal’, not going back to it. Mary Ramsay, head of immunisation at Public Health England, echoed the words of US criminal Anthony Fauci who said masks and other regulations must stay no matter if people are vaccinated. The Fauci idiot continued to wear two masks – different colours so both could be clearly seen – after he *claimed* to have been vaccinated. Senator Rand Paul told Fauci in one exchange that his double-masks were ‘theatre’ and he was right. It’s all theatre. Mary Ramsay back-tracked on the vaccine-return-to-normal theme when she said the public may need to wear masks and social-distance for years despite the jabs. ‘People have got used to those lower-level restrictions now, and [they] can live with them’, she said telling us what the idea has been all along. ‘The vaccine does not give you a pass, even if you have had it, you must continue to follow all the guidelines’ said a Public Health England statement which reneged on what we had been told before and made having the ‘vaccine’ irrelevant to ‘normality’ even by the official story. Spain’s fascist government trumped everyone by passing a law mandating the wearing of masks on the beach and even when swimming in the sea. The move would have devastated what’s left of the Spanish tourist industry, posed potential breathing dangers to swimmers and had Northern European sunbathers walking around with their forehead brown and the rest of their face white as a sheet. The ruling was so crazy that it had to be retracted after pressure from public and tourist industry, but it confirmed where the Cult wants to go with masks and how clinically insane authority has become. The determination to make masks permanent and hide the serious dangers to body and mind can be seen in the censorship of scientist Professor Denis Rancourt by Bill Gates-funded academic publishing website ResearchGate over his papers exposing the dangers and uselessness of masks. Rancourt said:

ResearchGate today has permanently locked my account, which I have had since 2015. Their reasons graphically show the nature of their attack against democracy, and their corruption of

science ... By their obscene non-logic, a scientific review of science articles reporting on harms caused by face masks has a 'potential to cause harm'. No criticism of the psychological device (face masks) is tolerated, if the said criticism shows potential to influence public policy.

This is what happens in a fascist world.

## **Where are the 'greens' (again)?**

Other dangers of wearing masks especially regularly relate to the inhalation of minute plastic fibres into the lungs and the deluge of discarded masks in the environment and oceans. Estimates predicted that more than 1.5 billion disposable masks will end up in the world's oceans every year polluting the water with tons of plastic and endangering marine wildlife. Studies project that humans are using 129 billion face masks each month worldwide – about three million a minute. Most are disposable and made from plastic, non-biodegradable microfibers that break down into smaller plastic particles that become widespread in ecosystems. They are littering cities, clogging sewage channels and turning up in bodies of water. I have written in other books about the immense amounts of microplastics from endless sources now being absorbed into the body. Rolf Halden, director of the Arizona State University (ASU) Biodesign Center for Environmental Health Engineering, was the senior researcher in a 2020 study that analysed 47 human tissue samples and found microplastics in all of them. 'We have detected these chemicals of plastics in every single organ that we have investigated', he said. I wrote in *The Answer* about the world being deluged with microplastics. A study by the Worldwide Fund for Nature (WWF) found that people are consuming on average every week some 2,000 tiny pieces of plastic mostly through water and also through marine life and the air. Every year humans are ingesting enough microplastics to fill a heaped dinner plate and in a life-time of 79 years it is enough to fill two large waste bins. Marco Lambertini, WWF International director general said: 'Not only are plastics polluting our oceans and waterways and killing marine life – it's in all of us and we can't escape consuming plastics,' American

geologists found tiny plastic fibres, beads and shards in rainwater samples collected from the remote slopes of the Rocky Mountain National Park near Denver, Colorado. Their report was headed: 'It is raining plastic.' Rachel Adams, senior lecturer in Biomedical Science at Cardiff Metropolitan University, said that among health consequences are internal inflammation and immune responses to a 'foreign body'. She further pointed out that microplastics become carriers of toxins including mercury, pesticides and dioxins (a known cause of cancer and reproductive and developmental problems). These toxins accumulate in the fatty tissues once they enter the body through microplastics. Now this is being compounded massively by people putting plastic on their face and throwing it away.

Workers exposed to polypropylene plastic fibres known as 'flock' have developed 'flock worker's lung' from inhaling small pieces of the flock fibres which can damage lung tissue, reduce breathing capacity and exacerbate other respiratory problems. Now ... commonly used surgical masks have three layers of melt-blown textiles made of ... polypropylene. We have billions of people putting these microplastics against their mouth, nose and face for hours at a time day after day in the form of masks. How does anyone think that will work out? I mean – what could possibly go wrong? We posted a number of scientific studies on this at [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com), but when I went back to them as I was writing this book the links to the science research website where they were hosted were dead. Anything that challenges the official narrative in any way is either censored or vilified. The official narrative is so unsupportable by the evidence that only deleting the truth can protect it. A study by Chinese scientists still survived – with the usual twist which it why it was still active, I guess. Yes, they found that virtually all the masks they tested increased the daily intake of microplastic fibres, but people should still wear them because the danger from the 'virus' was worse said the crazy 'team' from the Institute of Hydrobiology in Wuhan. Scientists first discovered microplastics in lung tissue of some patients who died of lung cancer

in the 1990s. Subsequent studies have confirmed the potential health damage with the plastic degrading slowly and remaining in the lungs to accumulate in volume. Wuhan researchers used a machine simulating human breathing to establish that masks shed up to nearly 4,000 microplastic fibres in a month with reused masks producing more. Scientists said some masks are laced with toxic chemicals and a variety of compounds seriously restricted for both health and environmental reasons. They include cobalt (used in blue dye) and formaldehyde known to cause watery eyes, burning sensations in the eyes, nose, and throat, plus coughing, wheezing and nausea. No – that must be 'Covid-19'.

### **Mask 'worms'**

There is another and potentially even more sinister content of masks. Mostly new masks of different makes filmed under a microscope around the world have been found to contain strange black fibres or 'worms' that appear to move or 'crawl' by themselves and react to heat and water. The nearest I have seen to them are the self-replicating fibres that are pulled out through the skin of those suffering from Morgellons disease which has been connected to the phenomena of 'chemtrails' which I will bring into the story later on. Morgellons fibres continue to grow outside the body and have a form of artificial intelligence. Black 'worm' fibres in masks have that kind of feel to them and there is a nanotechnology technique called 'worm micelles' which carry and release drugs or anything else you want to deliver to the body. For sure the suppression of humanity by mind altering drugs is the Cult agenda big time and the more excuses they can find to gain access to the body the more opportunities there are to make that happen whether through 'vaccines' or masks pushed against the mouth and nose for hours on end.

So let us summarise the pros and cons of masks:

**Against masks:** Breathing in your own carbon dioxide; depriving the body and brain of sufficient oxygen; build-up of toxins in the mask that can be breathed into the lungs and cause rashes on the face and ‘mask-mouth’; breathing microplastic fibres and toxic chemicals into the lungs; dehumanisation and deleting individualisation by literally making people faceless; destroying human emotional interaction through facial expression and deleting parental connection with their babies which look for guidance to their facial expression.

**For masks:** They don’t protect you from a ‘virus’ that doesn’t exist and even if it did ‘viral’ particles are so minute they are smaller than the holes in the mask.

Governments, police, supermarkets, businesses, transport companies, and all the rest who seek to impose masks have done no risk assessment on their consequences for health and psychology and are now open to group lawsuits when the impact becomes clear with a cumulative epidemic of respiratory and other disease. Authorities will try to exploit these effects and hide the real cause by dubbing them ‘Covid-19’. Can you imagine setting out to force the population to wear health-destroying masks without doing any assessment of the risks? It is criminal and it is evil, but then how many people targeted in this way, who see their children told to wear them all day at school, have asked for a risk assessment? Billions can’t be imposed upon by the few unless the billions allow it. Oh, yes, with just a tinge of irony, 85 percent of all masks made worldwide come from *China*.

## **Wash your hands in toxic shite**

‘Covid’ rules include the use of toxic sanitisers and again the health consequences of constantly applying toxins to be absorbed through the skin is obvious to any level of Renegade Mind. America’s Food and Drug Administration (FDA) said that sanitisers are drugs and issued a warning about 75 dangerous brands which contain

methanol used in antifreeze and can cause death, kidney damage and blindness. The FDA circulated the following warning even for those brands that it claims to be safe:

Store hand sanitizer out of the reach of pets and children, and children should use it only with adult supervision. Do not drink hand sanitizer. This is particularly important for young children, especially toddlers, who may be attracted by the pleasant smell or brightly colored bottles of hand sanitizer.

Drinking even a small amount of hand sanitizer can cause alcohol poisoning in children. (However, there is no need to be concerned if your children eat with or lick their hands after using hand sanitizer.) During this coronavirus pandemic, poison control centers have had an increase in calls about accidental ingestion of hand sanitizer, so it is important that adults monitor young children's use.

Do not allow pets to swallow hand sanitizer. If you think your pet has eaten something potentially dangerous, call your veterinarian or a pet poison control center right away. Hand sanitizer is flammable and should be stored away from heat and flames. When using hand sanitizer, rub your hands until they feel completely dry before performing activities that may involve heat, sparks, static electricity, or open flames.

There you go, perfectly safe, then, and that's without even a mention of the toxins absorbed through the skin. Come on kids – sanitise your hands everywhere you go. It will save you from the 'virus'. Put all these elements together of the 'Covid' normal and see how much health and psychology is being cumulatively damaged, even devastated, to 'protect your health'. Makes sense, right? They are only imposing these things because they care, right? *Right?*

## **Submitting to insanity**

Psychological reframing of the population goes very deep and is done in many less obvious ways. I hear people say how contradictory and crazy 'Covid' rules are and how they are ever changing. This is explained away by dismissing those involved as idiots. It is a big mistake. The Cult is delighted if its cold calculation is perceived as incompetence and idiocy when it is anything but. Oh, yes, there are idiots within the system – lots of them – but they are *administering* the Cult agenda, mostly unknowingly. They are not deciding and dictating it. The bulwark against tyranny is self-

respect, always has been, always will be. It is self-respect that has broken every tyranny in history. By its very nature self-respect will not bow to oppression and its perpetrators. There is so little self-respect that it's always the few that overturn dictators. Many may eventually follow, but the few with the iron spines (self-respect) kick it off and generate the momentum. The Cult targets self-respect in the knowledge that once this has gone only submission remains. Crazy, contradictory, ever-changing 'Covid' rules are systematically applied by psychologists to delete self-respect. They *want* you to see that the rules make no sense. It is one thing to decide to do something when *you* have made the choice based on evidence and logic. You still retain your self-respect. It is quite another when you can see what you are being told to do is insane, ridiculous and makes no sense, and *yet you still do it*. Your self-respect is extinguished and this has been happening as ever more obviously stupid and nonsensical things have been demanded and the great majority have complied even when they can see they are stupid and nonsensical.

People walk around in face-nappies knowing they are damaging their health and make no difference to a 'virus'. They do it in fear of not doing it. I know it's daft, but I'll do it anyway. When that happens something dies inside of you and submissive reframing has begun. Next there's a need to hide from yourself that you have conceded your self-respect and you convince yourself that you have not really submitted to fear and intimidation. You begin to believe that you are complying with craziness because it's the right thing to do. When first you concede your self-respect of  $2+2 = 4$  to  $2+2 = 5$  you *know* you are compromising your self-respect. Gradually to avoid facing that fact you begin to *believe* that  $2+2=5$ . You have been reframed and I have been watching this process happening in the human psyche on an industrial scale. The Cult is working to break your spirit and one of its major tools in that war is humiliation. I read how former American soldier Bradley Manning (later Chelsea Manning after a sex-change) was treated after being jailed for supplying WikiLeaks with documents exposing the enormity of

government and elite mendacity. Manning was isolated in solitary confinement for eight months, put under 24-hour surveillance, forced to hand over clothing before going to bed, and stand naked for every roll call. This is systematic humiliation. The introduction of anal swab 'Covid' tests in China has been done for the same reason to delete self-respect and induce compliant submission. Anal swabs are mandatory for incoming passengers in parts of China and American diplomats have said they were forced to undergo the indignity which would have been calculated humiliation by the Cult-owned Chinese government that has America in its sights.

### **Government-people: An abusive relationship**

Spirit-breaking psychological techniques include giving people hope and apparent respite from tyranny only to take it away again. This happened in the UK during Christmas, 2020, when the psycho-psychologists and their political lackeys announced an easing of restrictions over the holiday only to reimpose them almost immediately on the basis of yet another lie. There is a big psychological difference between getting used to oppression and being given hope of relief only to have that dashed. Psychologists know this and we have seen the technique used repeatedly. Then there is traumatising people before you introduce more extreme regulations that require compliance. A perfect case was the announcement by the dark and sinister Whitty and Vallance in the UK that 'new data' predicted that 4,000 could die every day over the winter of 2020/2021 if we did not lockdown again. I think they call it lying and after traumatising people with that claim out came Jackboot Johnson the next day with new curbs on human freedom. Psychologists know that a frightened and traumatised mind becomes suggestable to submission and behaviour reframing. Underpinning all this has been to make people fearful and suspicious of each other and see themselves as a potential danger to others. In league with deleted self-respect you have the perfect psychological recipe for self-loathing. The relationship between authority and public is now demonstrably the same as that of

subservience to an abusive partner. These are signs of an abusive relationship explained by psychologist Leslie Becker-Phelps:

**Psychological and emotional abuse:** Undermining a partner's self-worth with verbal attacks, name-calling, and belittling. Humiliating the partner in public, unjustly accusing them of having an affair, or interrogating them about their every behavior. Keeping partner confused or off balance by saying they were just kidding or blaming the partner for 'making' them act this way ... Feigning in public that they care while turning against them in private. This leads to victims frequently feeling confused, incompetent, unworthy, hopeless, and chronically self-doubting. [Apply these techniques to how governments have treated the population since New Year, 2020, and the parallels are obvious.]

**Physical abuse:** The abuser might physically harm their partner in a range of ways, such as grabbing, hitting, punching, or shoving them. They might throw objects at them or harm them with a weapon. [Observe the physical harm imposed by masks, lockdown, and so on.]

**Threats and intimidation:** One way abusers keep their partners in line is by instilling fear. They might be verbally threatening, or give threatening looks or gestures. Abusers often make it known that they are tracking their partner's every move. They might destroy their partner's possessions, threaten to harm them, or threaten to harm their family members. Not surprisingly, victims of this abuse often feel anxiety, fear, and panic. [No words necessary.]

**Isolation:** Abusers often limit their partner's activities, forbidding them to talk or interact with friends or family. They might limit access to a car or even turn off their phone. All of this might be done by physically holding them against their will, but is often accomplished through psychological abuse and intimidation. The more isolated a person feels, the fewer resources they have to help gain perspective on their situation and to escape from it. [No words necessary.]

**Economic abuse:** Abusers often make their partners beholden to them for money by controlling access to funds of any kind. They might prevent their partner from getting a job or withhold access to money they earn from a job. This creates financial dependency that makes leaving the relationship very difficult. [See destruction of livelihoods and the proposed meagre 'guaranteed income' so long as you do whatever you are told.]

**Using children:** An abuser might disparage their partner's parenting skills, tell their children lies about their partner, threaten to take custody of their children, or threaten to harm their children. These tactics instil fear and often elicit compliance. [See reframed social service mafia and how children are being mercilessly abused by the state over 'Covid' while their parents look on too frightened to do anything.]

A further recurring trait in an abusive relationship is the abused blaming themselves for their abuse and making excuses for the abuser. We have the public blaming each other for lockdown abuse by government and many making excuses for the government while attacking those who challenge the government. How often we have heard authorities say that rules are being imposed or reimposed only because people have refused to 'behave' and follow the rules. We don't want to do it – it's *you*.

Renegade Minds are an antidote to all of these things. They will never concede their self-respect no matter what the circumstances. Even when apparent humiliation is heaped upon them they laugh in its face and reflect back the humiliation on the abuser where it belongs. Renegade Minds will never wear masks they know are only imposed to humiliate, suppress and damage both physically and psychologically. Consequences will take care of themselves and they will never break their spirit or cause them to concede to tyranny. UK newspaper columnist Peter Hitchens was one of the few in the mainstream media to speak out against lockdowns and forced vaccinations. He then announced he had taken the jab. He wanted to see family members abroad and he believed vaccine passports were inevitable even though they had not yet been introduced. Hitchens

has a questioning and critical mind, but not a Renegade one. If he had no amount of pressure would have made him concede. Hitchens excused his action by saying that the battle has been lost. Renegade Minds never accept defeat when freedom is at stake and even if they are the last one standing the self-respect of not submitting to tyranny is more important than any outcome or any consequence.

That's why Renegade Minds are the only minds that ever changed anything worth changing.

## CHAPTER EIGHT

### 'Reframing' insanity

*Insanity is relative. It depends on who has who locked in what cage*

Ray Bradbury

'Reframing' a mind means simply to change its perception and behaviour. This can be done subconsciously to such an extent that subjects have no idea they have been 'reframed' while to any observer changes in behaviour and attitudes are obvious.

Human society is being reframed on a ginormous scale since the start of 2020 and here we have the reason why psychologists rather than doctors have been calling the shots. Ask most people who have succumbed to 'Covid' reframing if they have changed and most will say 'no'; but they *have* and fundamentally. The Cult's long-game has been preparing for these times since way back and crucial to that has been to prepare both population and officialdom mentally and emotionally. To use the mind-control parlance they had to reframe the population with a mentality that would submit to fascism and reframe those in government and law enforcement to impose fascism or at least go along with it. The result has been the fact-deleted mindlessness of 'Wokeness' and officialdom that has either enthusiastically or unquestioningly imposed global tyranny demanded by reframed politicians on behalf of psychopathic and deeply evil cultists. 'Cognitive reframing' identifies and challenges the way someone sees the world in the form of situations, experiences and emotions and then restructures those perceptions to view the same set of circumstances in a different way. This can have

benefits if the attitudes are personally destructive while on the other side it has the potential for individual and collective mind control which the subject has no idea has even happened.

Cognitive therapy was developed in the 1960s by Aaron T. Beck who was born in Rhode Island in 1921 as the son of Jewish immigrants from the Ukraine. He became interested in the techniques as a treatment for depression. Beck's daughter Judith S. Beck is prominent in the same field and they founded the Beck Institute for Cognitive Behavior Therapy in Philadelphia in 1994. Cognitive reframing, however, began to be used worldwide by those with a very dark agenda. The Cult reframes politicians to change their attitudes and actions until they are completely at odds with what they once appeared to stand for. The same has been happening to government administrators at all levels, law enforcement, military and the human population. Cultists love mind control for two main reasons: It allows them to control what people think, do and say to secure agenda advancement and, by definition, it calms their legendary insecurity and fear of the unexpected. I have studied mind control since the time I travelled America in 1996. I may have been talking to next to no one in terms of an audience in those years, but my goodness did I gather a phenomenal amount of information and knowledge about so many things including the techniques of mind control. I have described this in detail in other books going back to *The Biggest Secret* in 1998. I met a very large number of people recovering from MKUltra and its offshoots and successors and I began to see how these same techniques were being used on the population in general. This was never more obvious than since the 'Covid' hoax began.

## **Reframing the enforcers**

I have observed over the last two decades and more the very clear transformation in the dynamic between the police, officialdom and the public. I tracked this in the books as the relationship mutated from one of serving the public to seeing them as almost the enemy and certainly a lower caste. There has always been a class divide

based on income and always been some psychopathic, corrupt, and big-I-am police officers. This was different. Wholesale change was unfolding in the collective dynamic; it was less about money and far more about position and perceived power. An us-and-them was emerging. Noses were lifted skyward by government administration and law enforcement and their attitude to the public they were *supposed* to be serving changed to one of increasing contempt, superiority and control. The transformation was so clear and widespread that it had to be planned. Collective attitudes and dynamics do not change naturally and organically that quickly on that scale. I then came across an organisation in Britain called Common Purpose created in the late 1980s by Julia Middleton who would work in the office of Deputy Prime Minister John Prescott during the long and disastrous premiership of war criminal Tony Blair. When Blair speaks the Cult is speaking and the man should have been in jail a long time ago. Common Purpose proclaims itself to be one of the biggest 'leadership development' organisations in the world while functioning as a *charity* with all the financial benefits which come from that. It hosts 'leadership development' courses and programmes all over the world and claims to have 'brought together' what it calls 'leaders' from more than 100 countries on six continents. The modus operandi of Common Purpose can be compared with the work of the UK government's reframing network that includes the Behavioural Insights Team 'nudge unit' and 'Covid' reframing specialists at SPI-B. WikiLeaks described Common Purpose long ago as 'a hidden virus in our government and schools' which is unknown to the general public: 'It recruits and trains "leaders" to be loyal to the directives of Common Purpose and the EU, instead of to their own departments, which they then undermine or subvert, the NHS [National Health Service] being an example.' This is a vital point to understand the 'Covid' hoax. The NHS, and its equivalent around the world, has been utterly reframed in terms of administrators and much of the medical personnel with the transformation underpinned by recruitment policies. The outcome has been the criminal and psychopathic behaviour of the

NHS over ‘Covid’ and we have seen the same in every other major country. WikiLeaks said Common Purpose trainees are ‘learning to rule without regard to democracy’ and to usher in a police state (current events explained). Common Purpose operated like a ‘glue’ and had members in the NHS, BBC, police, legal profession, church, many of Britain’s 7,000 quangos, local councils, the Civil Service, government ministries and Parliament, and controlled many RDA’s (Regional Development Agencies). Here we have one answer for how and why British institutions and their like in other countries have changed so negatively in relation to the public. This further explains how and why the beyond-disgraceful reframed BBC has become a propaganda arm of ‘Covid’ fascism. They are all part of a network pursuing the same goal.

By 2019 Common Purpose was quoting a figure of 85,000 ‘leaders’ that had attended its programmes. These ‘students’ of all ages are known as Common Purpose ‘graduates’ and they consist of government, state and local government officials and administrators, police chiefs and officers, and a whole range of others operating within the national, local and global establishment. Cressida Dick, Commissioner of the London Metropolitan Police, is the Common Purpose graduate who was the ‘Gold Commander’ that oversaw what can only be described as the murder of Brazilian electrician Jean Charles de Menezes in 2005. He was held down by psychopathic police and shot seven times in the head by a psychopathic lunatic after being mistaken for a terrorist when he was just a bloke going about his day. Dick authorised officers to pursue and keep surveillance on de Menezes and ordered that he be stopped from entering the underground train system. Police psychopaths took her at her word clearly. She was ‘disciplined’ for this outrage by being *promoted* – eventually to the top of the ‘Met’ police where she has been a disaster. Many Chief Constables controlling the police in different parts of the UK are and have been Common Purpose graduates. I have heard the ‘graduate’ network described as a sort of Mafia or secret society operating within the fabric of government at all levels pursuing a collective policy

ingrained at Common Purpose training events. Founder Julia Middleton herself has said:

Locally and internationally, Common Purpose graduates will be 'lighting small fires' to create change in their organisations and communities ... The Common Purpose effect is best illustrated by the many stories of small changes brought about by leaders, who themselves have changed.

A Common Purpose mission statement declared:

Common Purpose aims to improve the way society works by expanding the vision, decision-making ability and influence of all kinds of leaders. The organisation runs a variety of educational programmes for leaders of all ages, backgrounds and sectors, in order to provide them with the inspirational, information and opportunities they need to change the world.

Yes, but into what? Since 2020 the answer has become clear.

### **NLP and the Delphi technique**

Common Purpose would seem to be a perfect name or would common programming be better? One of the foundation methods of reaching 'consensus' (group think) is by setting the agenda theme and then encouraging, cajoling or pressuring everyone to agree a 'consensus' in line with the core theme promoted by Common Purpose. The methodology involves the 'Delphi technique', or an adaption of it, in which opinions are expressed that are summarised by a 'facilitator or change agent' at each stage. Participants are 'encouraged' to modify their views in the light of what others have said. Stage by stage the former individual opinions are merged into group consensus which just happens to be what Common Purpose wants them to believe. A key part of this is to marginalise anyone refusing to concede to group think and turn the group against them to apply pressure to conform. We are seeing this very technique used on the general population to make 'Covid' group-thinkers hostile to those who have seen through the bullshit. People can be reframed by using perception manipulation methods such as Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP) in which you change perception with the use of

carefully constructed language. An NLP website described the technique this way:

... A method of influencing brain behaviour (the 'neuro' part of the phrase) through the use of language (the 'linguistic' part) and other types of communication to enable a person to 'recode' the way the brain responds to stimuli (that's the 'programming') and manifest new and better behaviours. Neuro-Linguistic Programming often incorporates hypnosis and self-hypnosis to help achieve the change (or 'programming') that is wanted.

British alternative media operation UKColumn has done very detailed research into Common Purpose over a long period. I quoted co-founder and former naval officer Brian Gerrish in my book *Remember Who You Are*, published in 2011, as saying the following years before current times:

It is interesting that many of the mothers who have had children taken by the State speak of the Social Services people being icily cool, emotionless and, as two ladies said in slightly different words, '... like little robots'. We know that NLP is cumulative, so people can be given small imperceptible doses of NLP in a course here, another in a few months, next year etc. In this way, major changes are accrued in their personality, but the day by day change is almost unnoticeable.

In these and other ways 'graduates' have had their perceptions uniformly reframed and they return to their roles in the institutions of government, law enforcement, legal profession, military, 'education', the UK National Health Service and the whole swathe of the establishment structure to pursue a common agenda preparing for the 'post-industrial', 'post-democratic' society. I say 'preparing' but we are now there. 'Post-industrial' is code for the Great Reset and 'post-democratic' is 'Covid' fascism. UKColumn has spoken to partners of those who have attended Common Purpose 'training'. They have described how personalities and attitudes of 'graduates' changed very noticeably for the worse by the time they had completed the course. They had been 'reframed' and told they are the 'leaders' – the special ones – who know better than the population. There has also been the very demonstrable recruitment of psychopaths and narcissists into government administration at all

levels and law enforcement. If you want psychopathy hire psychopaths and you get a simple cause and effect. If you want administrators, police officers and 'leaders' to perceive the public as lesser beings who don't matter then employ narcissists. These personalities are identified using 'psychometrics' that identifies knowledge, abilities, attitudes and personality traits, mostly through carefully-designed questionnaires and tests. As this policy has passed through the decades we have had power-crazy, power-trippers appointed into law enforcement, security and government administration in preparation for current times and the dynamic between public and law enforcement/officialdom has been transformed. UKColumn's Brian Gerrish said of the narcissistic personality:

Their love of themselves and power automatically means that they will crush others who get in their way. I received a major piece of the puzzle when a friend pointed out that when they made public officials re-apply for their own jobs several years ago they were also required to do psychometric tests. This was undoubtedly the start of the screening process to get 'their' sort of people in post.

How obvious that has been since 2020 although it was clear what was happening long before if people paid attention to the changing public-establishment dynamic.

## **Change agents**

At the centre of events in 'Covid' Britain is the National Health Service (NHS) which has behaved disgracefully in slavishly following the Cult agenda. The NHS management structure is awash with Common Purpose graduates or 'change agents' working to a common cause. Helen Bevan, a Chief of Service Transformation at the NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement, co-authored a document called 'Towards a million change agents, a review of the social movements literature: implications for large scale change in the NHS'. The document compared a project management approach to that of change and social movements where 'people change

themselves and each other – peer to peer'. Two definitions given for a 'social movement' were:

*A group of people who consciously attempt to build a radically new social order; involves people of a broad range of social backgrounds; and deploys politically confrontational and socially disruptive tactics* – Cyrus Zirakzadeh 1997

*Collective challenges, based on common purposes and social solidarities, in sustained interaction with elites, opponents, and authorities* – Sidney Tarrow 1994

Helen Bevan wrote another NHS document in which she defined 'framing' as 'the process by which leaders construct, articulate and put across their message in a powerful and compelling way in order to win people to their cause and call them to action'. I think I could come up with another definition that would be rather more accurate. The National Health Service and institutions of Britain and the wider world have been taken over by reframed 'change agents' and that includes everything from the United Nations to national governments, local councils and social services which have been kidnapping children from loving parents on an extraordinary and gathering scale on the road to the end of parenthood altogether. Children from loving homes are stolen and kidnapped by the state and put into the 'care' (inversion) of the local authority through council homes, foster parents and forced adoption. At the same time children are allowed to be abused without response while many are under council 'care'. UKColumn highlighted the Common Purpose connection between South Yorkshire Police and Rotherham council officers in the case of the scandal in that area of the sexual exploitation of children to which the authorities turned not one blind eye, but both:

We were alarmed to discover that the Chief Executive, the Strategic Director of Children and Young People's Services, the Manager for the Local Strategic Partnership, the Community Cohesion Manager, the Cabinet Member for Cohesion, the Chief Constable and his predecessor had all attended Leadership training courses provided by the pseudo-charity Common Purpose.

Once 'change agents' have secured positions of hire and fire within any organisation things start to move very quickly. Personnel are then hired and fired on the basis of whether they will work towards the agenda the change agent represents. If they do they are rapidly promoted even though they may be incompetent. Those more qualified and skilled who are pre-Common Purpose 'old school' see their careers stall and even disappear. This has been happening for decades in every institution of state, police, 'health' and social services and all of them have been transformed as a result in their attitudes to their jobs and the public. Medical professions, including nursing, which were once vocations for the caring now employ many cold, callous and couldn't give a shit personality types. The UKColumn investigation concluded:

By blurring the boundaries between people, professions, public and private sectors, responsibility and accountability, Common Purpose encourages 'graduates' to believe that as new selected leaders, they can work together, outside of the established political and social structures, to achieve a paradigm shift or CHANGE – so called 'Leading Beyond Authority'. In doing so, the allegiance of the individual becomes 'reframed' on CP colleagues and their NETWORK.

## **Reframing the Face-Nappies**

Nowhere has this process been more obvious than in the police where recruitment of psychopaths and development of unquestioning mind-controlled group-thinkers have transformed law enforcement into a politically-correct 'Woke' joke and a travesty of what should be public service. Today they wear their face-nappies like good little gofers and enforce 'Covid' rules which are fascism under another name. Alongside the specifically-recruited psychopaths we have software minds incapable of free thought. Brian Gerrish again:

An example is the policeman who would not get on a bike for a press photo because he had not done the cycling proficiency course. Normal people say this is political correctness gone mad. Nothing could be further from the truth. The policeman has been reframed, and in his reality it is perfect common sense not to get on the bike ‘because he hasn’t done the cycling course’.

Another example of this is where the police would not rescue a boy from a pond until they had taken advice from above on the ‘risk assessment’. A normal person would have arrived, perhaps thought of the risk for a moment, and dived in. To the police now ‘reframed’, they followed ‘normal’ procedure.

There are shocking cases of reframed ambulance crews doing the same. Sheer unthinking stupidity of London Face-Nappies headed by Common Purpose graduate Cressida Dick can be seen in their behaviour at a vigil in March, 2021, for a murdered woman, Sarah Everard. A police officer had been charged with the crime. Anyone with a brain would have left the vigil alone in the circumstances. Instead they ‘manhandled’ women to stop them breaking ‘Covid rules’ to betray classic reframing. Minds in the thrall of perception control have no capacity for seeing a situation on its merits and acting accordingly. ‘Rules is rules’ is their only mind-set. My father used to say that rules and regulations are for the guidance of the intelligent and the blind obedience of the idiot. Most of the intelligent, decent, coppers have gone leaving only the other kind and a few old school for whom the job must be a daily nightmare. The combination of psychopaths and rule-book software minds has been clearly on public display in the ‘Covid’ era with automaton robots in uniform imposing fascistic ‘Covid’ regulations on the population without any personal initiative or judging situations on their merits. There are thousands of examples around the world, but I’ll make my point with the infamous Derbyshire police in the English East Midlands – the ones who think pouring dye into beauty spots and using drones to track people walking in the countryside away from anyone is called ‘policing’. To them there are rules decreed by the government which they have to enforce and in their bewildered state a group gathering in a closed space and someone walking alone in the countryside are the same thing. It is beyond idiocy and enters the realm of clinical insanity.

Police officers in Derbyshire said they were ‘horrified’ – *horrified* – to find 15 to 20 ‘irresponsible’ kids playing a football match at a closed leisure centre ‘in breach of coronavirus restrictions’. When they saw the police the kids ran away leaving their belongings behind and the reframed men and women of Derbyshire police were seeking to establish their identities with a view to fining their parents. The most natural thing for youngsters to do – kicking a ball about – is turned into a criminal activity and enforced by the moronic software programs of Derbyshire police. You find the same mentality in every country. These barely conscious ‘horrified’ officers said they had to take action because ‘we need to ensure these rules are being followed’ and ‘it is of the utmost importance that you ensure your children are following the rules and regulations for Covid-19’. Had any of them done ten seconds of research to see if this parroting of their masters’ script could be supported by any evidence? Nope. Reframed people don’t think – others think for them and that’s the whole idea of reframing. I have seen police officers one after the other repeating without question word for word what officialdom tells them just as I have seen great swathes of the public doing the same. Ask either for ‘their’ opinion and out spews what they have been told to think by the official narrative. Police and public may seem to be in different groups, but their mentality is the same. Most people do whatever they are told in fear not doing so or because they believe what officialdom tells them; almost the entirety of the police do what they are told for the same reason. Ultimately it’s the tiny inner core of the global Cult that’s telling both what to do.

So Derbyshire police were ‘horrified’. Oh, really? Why did they think those kids were playing football? It was to relieve the psychological consequences of lockdown and being denied human contact with their friends and interaction, touch and discourse vital to human psychological health. Being denied this month after month has dismantled the psyche of many children and young people as depression and suicide have exploded. Were Derbyshire police *horrified by that?* Are you kidding? Reframed people don’t have those

mental and emotional processes that can see how the impact on the psychological health of youngsters is far more dangerous than any 'virus' even if you take the mendacious official figures to be true. The reframed are told (programmed) how to act and so they do. The Derbyshire Chief Constable in the first period of lockdown when the black dye and drones nonsense was going on was Peter Goodman. He was the man who severed the connection between his force and the Derbyshire Constabulary *Male Voice* Choir when he decided that it was not inclusive enough to allow women to join. The fact it was a male voice choir making a particular sound produced by male voices seemed to elude a guy who terrifyingly ran policing in Derbyshire. He retired weeks after his force was condemned as disgraceful by former Supreme Court Justice Jonathan Sumption for their behaviour over extreme lockdown impositions. Goodman was replaced by his deputy Rachel Swann who was in charge when her officers were 'horrified'. The police statement over the boys committing the hanging-offence of playing football included the line about the youngsters being 'irresponsible in the times we are all living through' missing the point that the real relevance of the 'times we are all living through' is the imposition of fascism enforced by psychopaths and reframed minds of police officers playing such a vital part in establishing the fascist tyranny that their own children and grandchildren will have to live in their entire lives. As a definition of insanity that is hard to beat although it might be run close by imposing masks on people that can have a serious effect on their health while wearing a face nappy all day themselves. Once again public and police do it for the same reason – the authorities tell them to and who are they to have the self-respect to say no?

## **Wokers in uniform**

How reframed do you have to be to arrest a *six-year-old* and take him to court for *picking a flower* while waiting for a bus? Brain dead police and officialdom did just that in North Carolina where criminal proceedings happen regularly for children under nine. Attorney Julie Boyer gave the six-year-old crayons and a colouring book

during the ‘flower’ hearing while the ‘adults’ decided his fate. County Chief District Court Judge Jay Corpening asked: ‘Should a child that believes in Santa Claus, the Easter Bunny and the tooth fairy be making life-altering decisions?’ Well, of course not, but common sense has no meaning when you have a common purpose and a reframed mind. Treating children in this way, and police operating in American schools, is all part of the psychological preparation for children to accept a police state as normal all their adult lives. The same goes for all the cameras and biometric tracking technology in schools. Police training is focused on reframing them as snowflake Wokers and this is happening in the military. Pentagon top brass said that ‘training sessions on extremism’ were needed for troops who asked why they were so focused on the Capitol Building riot when Black Lives Matter riots were ignored. What’s the difference between them some apparently and rightly asked. Actually, there is a difference. Five people died in the Capitol riot, only one through violence, and that was a police officer shooting an unarmed protestor. BLM riots killed at least 25 people and cost billions. Asking the question prompted the psychopaths and reframed minds that run the Pentagon to say that more ‘education’ (programming) was needed. Troop training is all based on psychological programming to make them fodder for the Cult – ‘Military men are just dumb, stupid animals to be used as pawns in foreign policy’ as Cult-to-his-DNA former Secretary of State Henry Kissinger famously said. Governments see the police in similar terms and it’s time for those among them who can see this to defend the people and stop being enforcers of the Cult agenda upon the people.

The US military, like the country itself, is being targeted for destruction through a long list of Woke impositions. Cult-owned gaga ‘President’ Biden signed an executive order when he took office to allow taxpayer money to pay for transgender surgery for active military personnel and veterans. Are you a man soldier? No, I’m a LGBTQIA+ with a hint of Skoliosexual and Spectrasexual. Oh, good man. Bad choice of words you bigot. The Pentagon announced in March, 2021, the appointment of the first ‘diversity and inclusion

officer' for US Special Forces. Richard Torres-Estrada arrived with the publication of a 'D&I Strategic Plan which will guide the enterprise-wide effort to institutionalize and sustain D&I'. If you think a Special Forces 'Strategic Plan' should have something to do with defending America you haven't been paying attention.

Defending Woke is now the military's new role. Torres-Estrada has posted images comparing Donald Trump with Adolf Hitler and we can expect no bias from him as a representative of the supposedly non-political Pentagon. Cable news host Tucker Carlson said: 'The Pentagon is now the Yale faculty lounge but with cruise missiles.' Meanwhile Secretary of Defense Lloyd Austin, a board member of weapons-maker Raytheon with stock and compensation interests in October, 2020, worth \$1.4 million, said he was purging the military of the 'enemy within' – anyone who isn't Woke and supports Donald Trump. Austin refers to his targets as 'racist extremists' while in true Woke fashion being himself a racist extremist. Pentagon documents pledge to 'eradicate, eliminate and conquer all forms of racism, sexism and homophobia'. The definitions of these are decided by 'diversity and inclusion committees' peopled by those who see racism, sexism and homophobia in every situation and opinion. Woke (the Cult) is dismantling the US military and purging testosterone as China expands its military and gives its troops 'masculinity training'. How do we think that is going to end when this is all Cult coordinated? The US military, like the British military, is controlled by Woke and spineless top brass who just go along with it out of personal career interests.

## **'Woke' means fast asleep**

Mind control and perception manipulation techniques used on individuals to create group-think have been unleashed on the global population in general. As a result many have no capacity to see the obvious fascist agenda being installed all around them or what 'Covid' is really all about. Their brains are firewalled like a computer system not to process certain concepts, thoughts and realisations that are bad for the Cult. The young are most targeted as the adults they

will be when the whole fascist global state is planned to be fully implemented. They need to be prepared for total compliance to eliminate all pushback from entire generations. The Cult has been pouring billions into taking complete control of 'education' from schools to universities via its operatives and corporations and not least Bill Gates as always. The plan has been to transform 'education' institutions into programming centres for the mentality of 'Woke'. James McConnell, professor of psychology at the University of Michigan, wrote in *Psychology Today* in 1970:

The day has come when we can combine sensory deprivation with drugs, hypnosis, and astute manipulation of reward and punishment, to gain almost absolute control over an individual's behaviour. It should then be possible to achieve a very rapid and highly effective type of brainwashing that would allow us to make dramatic changes in a person's behaviour and personality ...

... We should reshape society so that we all would be trained from birth to want to do what society wants us to do. We have the techniques to do it... no-one owns his own personality you acquired, and there's no reason to believe you should have the right to refuse to acquire a new personality if your old one is anti-social.

This was the potential for mass brainwashing in 1970 and the mentality there displayed captures the arrogant psychopathy that drives it forward. I emphasise that not all young people have succumbed to Woke programming and those that haven't are incredibly impressive people given that today's young are the most perceptually-targeted generations in history with all the technology now involved. Vast swathes of the young generations, however, have fallen into the spell – and that's what it is – of Woke. The Woke mentality and perceptual program is founded on *inversion* and you will appreciate later why that is so significant. Everything with Woke is inverted and the opposite of what it is claimed to be. Woke was a term used in African-American culture from the 1900s and referred to an awareness of social and racial justice. This is not the meaning of the modern version or 'New Woke' as I call it in *The Answer*. Oh, no, Woke today means something very different no matter how much Wokers may seek to hide that and insist Old Woke and New

Woke are the same. See if you find any 'awareness of social justice' here in the modern variety:

- Woke demands 'inclusivity' while excluding anyone with a different opinion and calls for mass censorship to silence other views.
- Woke claims to stand against oppression when imposing oppression is the foundation of all that it does. It is the driver of political correctness which is nothing more than a Cult invention to manipulate the population to silence itself.
- Woke believes itself to be 'liberal' while pursuing a global society that can only be described as fascist (see 'anti-fascist' fascist Antifa).
- Woke calls for 'social justice' while spreading injustice wherever it goes against the common 'enemy' which can be easily identified as a differing view.
- Woke is supposed to be a metaphor for 'awake' when it is solid-gold asleep and deep in a Cult-induced coma that meets the criteria for 'off with the fairies'.

I state these points as obvious facts if people only care to look. I don't do this with a sense of condemnation. We need to appreciate that the onslaught of perceptual programming on the young has been incessant and merciless. I can understand why so many have been reframed, or, given their youth, framed from the start to see the world as the Cult demands. The Cult has had access to their minds day after day in its 'education' system for their entire formative years. Perception is formed from information received and the Cult-created system is a life-long download of information delivered to elicit a particular perception, thus behaviour. The more this has expanded into still new extremes in recent decades and ever-increasing censorship has deleted other opinions and information why wouldn't that lead to a perceptual reframing on a mass scale? I

have described already cradle-to-grave programming and in more recent times the targeting of young minds from birth to adulthood has entered the stratosphere. This has taken the form of skewing what is ‘taught’ to fit the Cult agenda and the omnipresent techniques of group-think to isolate non-believers and pressure them into line. There has always been a tendency to follow the herd, but we really are in a new world now in relation to that. We have parents who can see the ‘Covid’ hoax told by their children not to stop them wearing masks at school, being ‘Covid’ tested or having the ‘vaccine’ in fear of the peer-pressure consequences of being different. What is ‘peer-pressure’ if not pressure to conform to group-think? Renegade Minds never group-think and always retain a set of perceptions that are unique to them. Group-think is always underpinned by consequences for not group-thinking. Abuse now aimed at those refusing DNA-manipulating ‘Covid vaccines’ are a potent example of this. The biggest pressure to conform comes from the very group which is itself being manipulated. ‘I am programmed to be part of a hive mind and so you must be.’

Woke control structures in ‘education’ now apply to every mainstream organisation. Those at the top of the ‘education’ hierarchy (the Cult) decide the policy. This is imposed on governments through the Cult network; governments impose it on schools, colleges and universities; their leadership impose the policy on teachers and academics and they impose it on children and students. At any level where there is resistance, perhaps from a teacher or university lecturer, they are targeted by the authorities and often fired. Students themselves regularly demand the dismissal of academics (increasingly few) at odds with the narrative that the students have been programmed to believe in. It is quite a thought that students who are being targeted by the Cult become so consumed by programmed group-think that they launch protests and demand the removal of those who are trying to push back against those targeting the students. Such is the scale of perceptual inversion. We see this with ‘Covid’ programming as the Cult imposes the rules via psycho-psychologists and governments on

shops, transport companies and businesses which impose them on their staff who impose them on their customers who pressure Pushbackers to conform to the will of the Cult which is in the process of destroying them and their families. Scan all aspects of society and you will see the same sequence every time.

## **Fact free Woke and hijacking the 'left'**

There is no more potent example of this than 'Woke', a mentality only made possible by the deletion of factual evidence by an 'education' system seeking to produce an ever more uniform society. Why would you bother with facts when you don't know any? Deletion of credible history both in volume and type is highly relevant. Orwell said: 'Who controls the past controls the future: who controls the present controls the past.' They who control the perception of the past control the perception of the future and they who control the present control the perception of the past through the writing and deleting of history. Why would you oppose the imposition of Marxism in the name of Wokeism when you don't know that Marxism cost at least 100 million lives in the 20th century alone? Watch videos and read reports in which Woker generations are asked basic historical questions – it's mind-blowing. A survey of 2,000 people found that six percent of millennials (born approximately early 1980s to early 2000s) believed the Second World War (1939-1945) broke out with the assassination of President Kennedy (in 1963) and one in ten thought Margaret Thatcher was British Prime Minister at the time. She was in office between 1979 and 1990. We are in a post-fact society. Provable facts are no defence against the fascism of political correctness or Silicon Valley censorship. Facts don't matter anymore as we have witnessed with the 'Covid' hoax. Sacrificing uniqueness to the Woke group-think religion is all you are required to do and that means thinking for yourself is the biggest Woke no, no. All religions are an expression of group-think and censorship and Woke is just another religion with an orthodoxy defended by group-think and censorship. Burned at

the stake becomes burned on Twitter which leads back eventually to burned at the stake as Woke humanity regresses to ages past.

The biggest Woke inversion of all is its creators and funders. I grew up in a traditional left of centre political household on a council estate in Leicester in the 1950s and 60s – you know, the left that challenged the power of wealth-hoarding elites and threats to freedom of speech and opinion. In those days students went on marches defending freedom of speech while today's Wokers march for its deletion. What on earth could have happened? Those very elites (collectively the Cult) that we opposed in my youth and early life have funded into existence the antithesis of that former left and hijacked the 'brand' while inverting everything it ever stood for. We have a mentality that calls itself 'liberal' and 'progressive' while acting like fascists. Cult billionaires and their corporations have funded themselves into control of 'education' to ensure that Woke programming is unceasing throughout the formative years of children and young people and that non-Wokers are isolated (that word again) whether they be students, teachers or college professors. The Cult has funded into existence the now colossal global network of Woke organisations that have spawned and promoted all the 'causes' on the Cult wish-list for global transformation and turned Wokers into demanders of them. Does anyone really think it's a coincidence that the Cult agenda for humanity is a carbon (sorry) copy of the societal transformations desired by Woke?? These are only some of them:

**Political correctness:** The means by which the Cult deletes all public debates that it knows it cannot win if we had the free-flow of information and evidence.

**Human-caused 'climate change':** The means by which the Cult seeks to transform society into a globally-controlled dictatorship imposing its will over the fine detail of everyone's lives 'to save the planet' which doesn't actually need saving.

**Transgender obsession:** Preparing collective perception to accept the ‘new human’ which would not have genders because it would be created technologically and not through procreation. I’ll have much more on this in Human 2.0.

**Race obsession:** The means by which the Cult seeks to divide and rule the population by triggering racial division through the perception that society is more racist than ever when the opposite is the case. Is it perfect in that regard? No. But to compare today with the racism of apartheid and segregation brought to an end by the civil rights movement in the 1960s is to insult the memory of that movement and inspirations like Martin Luther King. Why is the ‘anti-racism’ industry (which it is) so dominated by privileged white people?

**White supremacy:** This is a label used by privileged white people to demonise poor and deprived white people pushing back on tyranny to marginalise and destroy them. White people are being especially targeted as the dominant race by number within Western society which the Cult seeks to transform in its image. If you want to change a society you must weaken and undermine its biggest group and once you have done that by using the other groups you next turn on them to do the same ... ‘Then they came for the Jews and I was not a Jew so I did nothing.’

**Mass migration:** The mass movement of people from the Middle East, Africa and Asia into Europe, from the south into the United States and from Asia into Australia are another way the Cult seeks to dilute the racial, cultural and political influence of white people on Western society. White people ask why their governments appear to be working against them while being politically and culturally biased towards incoming cultures. Well, here’s your answer. In the same way sexually ‘straight’ people, men and women, ask why the

authorities are biased against them in favour of other sexualities. The answer is the same – that's the way the Cult wants it to be for very sinister motives.

These are all central parts of the Cult agenda and central parts of the Woke agenda and Woke was created and continues to be funded to an immense degree by Cult billionaires and corporations. If anyone begins to say 'coincidence' the syllables should stick in their throat.

### **Billionaire 'social justice warriors'**

Joe Biden is a 100 percent-owned asset of the Cult and the Wokers' man in the White House whenever he can remember his name and for however long he lasts with his rapidly diminishing cognitive function. Even walking up the steps of an aircraft without falling on his arse would appear to be a challenge. He's not an empty-shell puppet or anything. From the minute Biden took office (or the Cult did) he began his executive orders promoting the Woke wish-list. You will see the Woke agenda imposed ever more severely because it's really the *Cult* agenda. Woke organisations and activist networks spawned by the Cult are funded to the extreme so long as they promote what the Cult wants to happen. Woke is funded to promote 'social justice' by billionaires who become billionaires by destroying social justice. The social justice mantra is only a cover for dismantling social justice and funded by billionaires that couldn't give a damn about social justice. Everything makes sense when you see that. One of Woke's premier funders is Cult billionaire financier George Soros who said: 'I am basically there to make money, I cannot and do not look at the social consequences of what I do.' This is the same Soros who has given more than \$32 billion to his Open Society Foundations global Woke network and funded Black Lives Matter, mass immigration into Europe and the United States, transgender activism, climate change activism, political correctness and groups targeting 'white supremacy' in the form of privileged white thugs that dominate Antifa. What a scam it all is and when

you are dealing with the unquestioning fact-free zone of Woke scamming them is child's play. All you need to pull it off in all these organisations are a few in-the-know agents of the Cult and an army of naïve, reframed, uninformed, narcissistic, know-nothings convinced of their own self-righteousness, self-purity and virtue.

Soros and fellow billionaires and billionaire corporations have poured hundreds of millions into Black Lives Matter and connected groups and promoted them to a global audience. None of this is motivated by caring about black people. These are the billionaires that have controlled and exploited a system that leaves millions of black people in abject poverty and deprivation which they do absolutely nothing to address. The same Cult networks funding BLM were behind the *slave trade!* Black Lives Matter hijacked a phrase that few would challenge and they have turned this laudable concept into a political weapon to divide society. You know that BLM is a fraud when it claims that *All Lives Matter*, the most inclusive statement of all, is 'racist'. BLM and its Cult masters don't want to end racism. To them it's a means to an end to control all of humanity never mind the colour, creed, culture or background. What has destroying the nuclear family got to do with ending racism? Nothing – but that is one of the goals of BLM and also happens to be a goal of the Cult as I have been exposing in my books for decades. Stealing children from loving parents and giving schools ever more power to override parents is part of that same agenda. BLM is a Marxist organisation and why would that not be the case when the Cult created Marxism *and* BLM? Patrisse Cullors, a BLM co-founder, said in a 2015 video that she and her fellow organisers, including co-founder Alicia Garza, are 'trained Marxists'. The lady known after marriage as Patrisse Khan-Cullors bought a \$1.4 million home in 2021 in one of the whitest areas of California with a black population of just 1.6 per cent and has so far bought *four* high-end homes for a total of \$3.2 million. How very Marxist. There must be a bit of spare in the BLM coffers, however, when Cult corporations and billionaires have handed over the best part of \$100 million. Many black people can see that Black Lives Matter is not

working for them, but against them, and this is still more confirmation. Black journalist Jason Whitlock, who had his account suspended by Twitter for simply linking to the story about the ‘Marxist’s’ home buying spree, said that BLM leaders are ‘making millions of dollars off the backs of these dead black men who they wouldn’t spit on if they were on fire and alive’.

## **Black Lies Matter**

Cult assets and agencies came together to promote BLM in the wake of the death of career criminal George Floyd who had been jailed a number of times including for forcing his way into the home of a black woman with others in a raid in which a gun was pointed at her stomach. Floyd was filmed being held in a Minneapolis street in 2020 with the knee of a police officer on his neck and he subsequently died. It was an appalling thing for the officer to do, but the same technique has been used by police on peaceful protestors of lockdown without any outcry from the Woke brigade. As unquestioning supporters of the Cult agenda Wokers have supported lockdown and all the ‘Covid’ claptrap while attacking anyone standing up to the tyranny imposed in its name. Court documents would later include details of an autopsy on Floyd by County Medical Examiner Dr Andrew Baker who concluded that Floyd had taken a fatal level of the drug fentanyl. None of this mattered to fact-free, question-free, Woke. Floyd’s death was followed by worldwide protests against police brutality amid calls to defund the police. Throwing babies out with the bathwater is a Woke speciality. In the wake of the murder of British woman Sarah Everard a Green Party member of the House of Lords, Baroness Jones of Moulsecoomb (Nincompoopia would have been better), called for a 6pm curfew for all men. This would be in breach of the Geneva Conventions on war crimes which ban collective punishment, but that would never have crossed the black and white Woke mind of Baroness Nincompoopia who would have been far too convinced of her own self-righteousness to compute such details. Many American cities did defund the police in the face of Floyd riots

and after \$15 million was deleted from the police budget in Washington DC under useless Woke mayor Muriel Bowser car-jacking alone rose by 300 percent and within six months the US capital recorded its highest murder rate in 15 years. The same happened in Chicago and other cities in line with the Cult/Soros plan to bring fear to streets and neighbourhoods by reducing the police, releasing violent criminals and not prosecuting crime. This is the mob-rule agenda that I have warned in the books was coming for so long. Shootings in the area of Minneapolis where Floyd was arrested increased by 2,500 percent compared with the year before. Defunding the police over George Floyd has led to a big increase in dead people with many of them black. Police protection for politicians making these decisions stayed the same or increased as you would expect from professional hypocrites. The Cult doesn't actually want to abolish the police. It wants to abolish local control over the police and hand it to federal government as the psychopaths advance the Hunger Games Society. Many George Floyd protests turned into violent riots with black stores and businesses destroyed by fire and looting across America fuelled by Black Lives Matter. Woke doesn't do irony. If you want civil rights you must loot the liquor store and the supermarket and make off with a smart TV. It's the only way.

### **It's not a race war – it's a class war**

Black people are patronised by privileged blacks and whites alike and told they are victims of white supremacy. I find it extraordinary to watch privileged blacks supporting the very system and bloodline networks behind the slave trade and parroting the same Cult-serving manipulative crap of their privileged white, often billionaire, associates. It is indeed not a race war but a class war and colour is just a diversion. Black Senator Cory Booker and black Congresswoman Maxine Waters, more residents of Nincompoopia, personify this. Once you tell people they are victims of someone else you devalue both their own responsibility for their plight and the power they have to impact on their reality and experience. Instead

we have: 'You are only in your situation because of whitey – turn on them and everything will change.' It won't change. Nothing changes in our lives unless *we* change it. Crucial to that is never seeing yourself as a victim and always as the creator of your reality. Life is a simple sequence of choice and consequence. Make different choices and you create different consequences. *You* have to make those choices – not Black Lives Matter, the Woke Mafia and anyone else that seeks to dictate your life. Who are they these Wokers, an emotional and psychological road traffic accident, to tell you what to do? Personal empowerment is the last thing the Cult and its Black Lives Matter want black people or anyone else to have. They claim to be defending the underdog while *creating* and perpetuating the underdog. The Cult's worst nightmare is human unity and if they are going to keep blacks, whites and every other race under economic servitude and control then the focus must be diverted from what they have in common to what they can be manipulated to believe divides them. Blacks have to be told that their poverty and plight is the fault of the white bloke living on the street in the same poverty and with the same plight they are experiencing. The difference is that your plight black people is due to him, a white supremacist with 'white privilege' living on the street. Don't unite as one human family against your mutual oppressors and suppressors – fight the oppressor with the white face who is as financially deprived as you are. The Cult knows that as its 'Covid' agenda moves into still new levels of extremism people are going to respond and it has been spreading the seeds of disunity everywhere to stop a united response to the evil that targets *all of us*.

Racist attacks on 'whiteness' are getting ever more outrageous and especially through the American Democratic Party which has an appalling history for anti-black racism. Barack Obama, Joe Biden, Hillary Clinton and Nancy Pelosi all eulogised about Senator Robert Byrd at his funeral in 2010 after a nearly 60-year career in Congress. Byrd was a brutal Ku Klux Klan racist and a violent abuser of Cathy O'Brien in MKUltra. He said he would never fight in the military 'with a negro by my side' and 'rather I should die a thousand times,

and see Old Glory trampled in the dirt never to rise again, than to see this beloved land of ours become degraded by race mongrels, a throwback to the blackest specimen from the wilds'. Biden called Byrd a 'very close friend and mentor'. These 'Woke' hypocrites are not anti-racist they are anti-poor and anti-people not of their perceived class. Here is an illustration of the scale of anti-white racism to which we have now descended. Seriously Woke and moronic *New York Times* contributor Damon Young described whiteness as a 'virus' that 'like other viruses will not die until there are no bodies left for it to infect'. He went on: '... the only way to stop it is to locate it, isolate it, extract it, and kill it.' Young can say that as a black man with no consequences when a white man saying the same in reverse would be facing a jail sentence. *That's* racism. We had super-Woke numbskull senators Tammy Duckworth and Mazie Hirono saying they would object to future Biden Cabinet appointments if he did not nominate more Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders. Never mind the ability of the candidate what do they look like? Duckworth said: 'I will vote for racial minorities and I will vote for LGBTQ, but anyone else I'm not voting for.' Appointing people on the grounds of race is illegal, but that was not a problem for this ludicrous pair. They were on-message and that's a free pass in any situation.

## Critical race racism

White children are told at school they are intrinsically racist as they are taught the divisive 'critical race theory'. This claims that the law and legal institutions are inherently racist and that race is a socially constructed concept used by white people to further their economic and political interests at the expense of people of colour. White is a 'virus' as we've seen. Racial inequality results from 'social, economic, and legal differences that white people create between races to maintain white interests which leads to poverty and criminality in minority communities'. I must tell that to the white guy sleeping on the street. The principal of East Side Community School in New York sent white parents a manifesto that called on

them to become ‘white traitors’ and advocate for full ‘white abolition’. These people are teaching your kids when they urgently need a psychiatrist. The ‘school’ included a chart with ‘eight white identities’ that ranged from ‘white supremacist’ to ‘white abolition’ and defined the behaviour white people must follow to end ‘the regime of whiteness’. Woke blacks and their privileged white associates are acting exactly like the slave owners of old and Ku Klux Klan racists like Robert Byrd. They are too full of their own self-purity to see that, but it’s true. Racism is not a body type; it’s a state of mind that can manifest through any colour, creed or culture.

Another racial fraud is ‘*equity*’. Not equality of treatment and opportunity – equity. It’s a term spun as equality when it means something very different. Equality in its true sense is a raising up while ‘*equity*’ is a race to the bottom. Everyone in the same level of poverty is ‘*equity*’. Keep everyone down – that’s equity. The Cult doesn’t want anyone in the human family to be empowered and BLM leaders, like all these ‘anti-racist’ organisations, continue their privileged, pampered existence by perpetuating the perception of gathering racism. When is the last time you heard an ‘anti-racist’ or ‘anti-Semitism’ organisation say that acts of racism and discrimination have *fallen*? It’s not in the interests of their fund-raising and power to influence and the same goes for the professional soccer anti-racism operation, Kick It Out. Two things confirmed that the Black Lives Matter riots in the summer of 2020 were Cult creations. One was that while anti-lockdown protests were condemned in this same period for ‘transmitting ‘Covid’ the authorities supported mass gatherings of Black Lives Matter supporters. I even saw self-deluding people claiming to be doctors say the two types of protest were not the same. No – the non-existent ‘Covid’ was in favour of lockdowns and attacked those that protested against them while ‘Covid’ supported Black Lives Matter and kept well away from its protests. The whole thing was a joke and as lockdown protestors were arrested, often brutally, by reframed Face-Nappies we had the grotesque sight of police officers taking the knee to Black Lives Matter, a Cult-funded Marxist

organisation that supports violent riots and wants to destroy the nuclear family and white people.

## **He's not white? Shucks!**

Woke obsession with race was on display again when ten people were shot dead in Boulder, Colorado, in March, 2021. Cult-owned Woke TV channels like CNN said the shooter appeared to be a white man and Wokers were on Twitter condemning 'violent white men' with the usual mantras. Then the shooter's name was released as Ahmad Al Aliwi Alissa, an anti-Trump Arab-American, and the sigh of disappointment could be heard five miles away. Never mind that ten people were dead and what that meant for their families. Race baiting was all that mattered to these sick Cult-serving people like Barack Obama who exploited the deaths to further divide America on racial grounds which is his job for the Cult. This is the man that 'racist' white Americans made the first black president of the United States and then gave him a second term. Not-very-bright Obama has become filthy rich on the back of that and today appears to have a big influence on the Biden administration. Even so he's still a downtrodden black man and a victim of white supremacy. This disingenuous fraud reveals the contempt he has for black people when he puts on a Deep South Alabama accent whenever he talks to them, no, *at* them.

Another BLM red flag was how the now fully-Woke (fully-Cult) and fully-virtue-signalled professional soccer authorities had their teams taking the knee before every match in support of Marxist Black Lives Matter. Soccer authorities and clubs displayed 'Black Lives Matter' on the players' shirts and flashed the name on electronic billboards around the pitch. Any fans that condemned what is a Freemasonic taking-the-knee ritual were widely condemned as you would expect from the Woke virtue-signallers of professional sport and the now fully-Woke media. We have reverse racism in which you are banned from criticising any race or culture except for white people for whom anything goes – say what you like, no problem. What has this got to do with racial harmony and

equality? We've had black supremacists from Black Lives Matter telling white people to fall to their knees in the street and apologise for their white supremacy. Black supremacists acting like white supremacist slave owners of the past couldn't breach their self-obsessed, race-obsessed sense of self-purity. Joe Biden appointed a race-obsessed black supremacist Kristen Clarke to head the Justice Department Civil Rights Division. Clarke claimed that blacks are endowed with 'greater mental, physical and spiritual abilities' than whites. If anyone reversed that statement they would be vilified. Clarke is on-message so no problem. She's never seen a black-white situation in which the black figure is anything but a virtuous victim and she heads the Civil Rights Division which should treat everyone the same or it isn't civil rights. Another perception of the Renegade Mind: If something or someone is part of the Cult agenda they will be supported by Woke governments and media no matter what. If they're not, they will be condemned and censored. It really is that simple and so racist Clarke prospers despite (make that because of) her racism.

## **The end of culture**

Biden's administration is full of such racial, cultural and economic bias as the Cult requires the human family to be divided into warring factions. We are now seeing racially-segregated graduations and everything, but everything, is defined through the lens of perceived 'racism. We have 'racist' mathematics, 'racist' food and even 'racist' *plants*. World famous Kew Gardens in London said it was changing labels on plants and flowers to tell its pre-'Covid' more than two million visitors a year how racist they are. Kew director Richard Deverell said this was part of an effort to 'move quickly to decolonise collections' after they were approached by one Ajay Chhabra 'an actor with an insight into how sugar cane was linked to slavery'. They are *plants* you idiots. 'Decolonisation' in the Woke manual really means colonisation of society with its mentality and by extension colonisation by the Cult. We are witnessing a new Chinese-style 'Cultural Revolution' so essential to the success of all

Marxist takeovers. Our cultural past and traditions have to be swept away to allow a new culture to be built-back-better. Woke targeting of long-standing Western cultural pillars including historical monuments and cancelling of historical figures is what happened in the Mao revolution in China which ‘purged remnants of capitalist and traditional elements from Chinese society’ and installed Maoism as the dominant ideology’. For China see the Western world today and for ‘dominant ideology’ see Woke. Better still see Marxism or Maoism. The ‘Covid’ hoax has specifically sought to destroy the arts and all elements of Western culture from people meeting in a pub or restaurant to closing theatres, music venues, sports stadiums, places of worship and even banning *singing*. Destruction of Western society is also why criticism of any religion is banned except for Christianity which again is the dominant religion as white is the numerically-dominant race. Christianity may be fading rapidly, but its history and traditions are weaved through the fabric of Western society. Delete the pillars and other structures will follow until the whole thing collapses. I am not a Christian defending that religion when I say that. I have no religion. It’s just a fact. To this end Christianity has itself been turned Woke to usher its own downfall and its ranks are awash with ‘change agents’ – knowing and unknowing – at every level including Pope Francis (*definitely* knowing) and the clueless Archbishop of Canterbury Justin Welby (possibly not, but who can be sure?). Woke seeks to coordinate attacks on Western culture, traditions, and ways of life through ‘intersectionality’ defined as ‘the complex, cumulative way in which the effects of multiple forms of discrimination (such as racism, sexism, and classism) combine, overlap, or intersect especially in the experiences of marginalised individuals or groups’. Wade through the Orwellian Woke-speak and this means coordinating disparate groups in a common cause to overthrow freedom and liberal values.

The entire structure of public institutions has been infested with Woke – government at all levels, political parties, police, military, schools, universities, advertising, media and trade unions. This abomination has been achieved through the Cult web by appointing

Wokers to positions of power and battering non-Wokers into line through intimidation, isolation and threats to their job. Many have been fired in the wake of the empathy-deleted, vicious hostility of 'social justice' Wokers and the desire of gutless, spineless employers to virtue-signal their Wokeness. Corporations are filled with Wokers today, most notably those in Silicon Valley. Ironically at the top they are not Woke at all. They are only exploiting the mentality their Cult masters have created and funded to censor and enslave while the Wokers cheer them on until it's their turn. Thus the Woke 'liberal left' is an inversion of the traditional liberal left. Campaigning for justice on the grounds of power and wealth distribution has been replaced by campaigning for identity politics. The genuine traditional left would never have taken money from today's billionaire abusers of fairness and justice and nor would the billionaires have wanted to fund that genuine left. It would not have been in their interests to do so. The division of opinion in those days was between the haves and have nots. This all changed with Cult manipulated and funded identity politics. The division of opinion today is between Wokers and non-Wokers and not income brackets. Cult corporations and their billionaires may have taken wealth disparity to cataclysmic levels of injustice, but as long as they speak the language of Woke, hand out the dosh to the Woke network and censor the enemy they are 'one of us'. Billionaires who don't give a damn about injustice are laughing at them till their bellies hurt. Wokers are not even close to self-aware enough to see that. The transformed 'left' dynamic means that Wokers who drone on about 'social justice' are funded by billionaires that have destroyed social justice the world over. It's *why* they are billionaires.

## **The climate con**

Nothing encapsulates what I have said more comprehensively than the hoax of human-caused global warming. I have detailed in my books over the years how Cult operatives and organisations were the pump-primers from the start of the climate con. A purpose-built vehicle for this is the Club of Rome established by the Cult in 1968

with the Rockefellers and Rothschilds centrally involved all along. Their gofer frontman Maurice Strong, a Canadian oil millionaire, hosted the Earth Summit in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, in 1992 where the global ‘green movement’ really expanded in earnest under the guiding hand of the Cult. The Earth Summit established Agenda 21 through the Cult-created-and-owned United Nations to use the illusion of human-caused climate change to justify the transformation of global society to save the world from climate disaster. It is a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution sold through governments, media, schools and universities as whole generations have been terrified into believing that the world was going to end in their lifetimes unless what old people had inflicted upon them was stopped by a complete restructuring of how everything is done. Chill, kids, it’s all a hoax. Such restructuring is precisely what the Cult agenda demands (purely by coincidence of course). Today this has been given the codename of the Great Reset which is only an updated term for Agenda 21 and its associated Agenda 2030. The latter, too, is administered through the UN and was voted into being by the General Assembly in 2015. Both 21 and 2030 seek centralised control of all resources and food right down to the raindrops falling on your own land. These are some of the demands of Agenda 21 established in 1992. See if you recognise this society emerging today:

- End national sovereignty
- State planning and management of all land resources, ecosystems, deserts, forests, mountains, oceans and fresh water; agriculture; rural development; biotechnology; and ensuring ‘*equity*’
- The state to ‘define the role’ of business and financial resources
- Abolition of private property
- ‘Restructuring’ the family unit (see BLM)
- Children raised by the state
- People told what their job will be
- Major restrictions on movement
- Creation of ‘human settlement zones’

- Mass resettlement as people are forced to vacate land where they live
- Dumbing down education
- Mass global depopulation in pursuit of all the above

The United Nations was created as a Trojan horse for world government. With the climate con of critical importance to promoting that outcome you would expect the UN to be involved. Oh, it's involved all right. The UN is promoting Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030 justified by 'climate change' while also driving the climate hoax through its Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), one of the world's most corrupt organisations. The IPCC has been lying ferociously and constantly since the day it opened its doors with the global media hanging unquestioningly on its every mendacious word. The Green movement is entirely Woke and has long lost its original environmental focus since it was co-opted by the Cult. An obsession with 'global warming' has deleted its values and scrambled its head. I experienced a small example of what I mean on a beautiful country walk that I have enjoyed several times a week for many years. The path merged into the fields and forests and you felt at one with the natural world. Then a 'Green' organisation, the Hampshire and Isle of Wight Wildlife Trust, took over part of the land and proceeded to cut down a large number of trees, including mature ones, to install a horrible big, bright steel 'this-is-ours-stay-out' fence that destroyed the whole atmosphere of this beautiful place. No one with a feel for nature would do that. Day after day I walked to the sound of chainsaws and a magnificent mature weeping willow tree that I so admired was cut down at the base of the trunk. When I challenged a Woke young girl in a green shirt (of course) about this vandalism she replied: 'It's a weeping willow – it will grow back.' This is what people are paying for when they donate to the Hampshire and Isle of Wight Wildlife Trust and many other 'green' organisations today. It is not the environmental movement that I knew and instead has become a support-system – as with Extinction Rebellion – for a very dark agenda.

## **Private jets for climate justice**

The Cult-owned, Gates-funded, World Economic Forum and its founder Klaus Schwab were behind the emergence of Greta Thunberg to harness the young behind the climate agenda and she was invited to speak to the world at ... the UN. Schwab published a book, *Covid-19: The Great Reset* in 2020 in which he used the 'Covid' hoax and the climate hoax to lay out a new society straight out of Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030. Bill Gates followed in early 2021 when he took time out from destroying the world to produce a book in his name about the way to save it. Gates flies across the world in private jets and admitted that 'I probably have one of the highest greenhouse gas footprints of anyone on the planet ... my personal flying alone is gigantic.' He has also bid for the planet's biggest private jet operator. Other climate change saviours who fly in private jets include John Kerry, the US Special Presidential Envoy for Climate, and actor Leonardo DiCaprio, a 'UN Messenger of Peace with special focus on climate change'. These people are so full of bullshit they could corner the market in manure. We mustn't be sceptical, though, because the Gates book, *How to Avoid a Climate Disaster: The Solutions We Have and the Breakthroughs We Need*, is a genuine attempt to protect the world and not an obvious pile of excrement attributed to a mega-psychopath aimed at selling his masters' plans for humanity. The Gates book and the other shite-pile by Klaus Schwab could have been written by the same person and may well have been. Both use 'climate change' and 'Covid' as the excuses for their new society and by coincidence the Cult's World Economic Forum and Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation promote the climate hoax and hosted Event 201 which pre-empted with a 'simulation' the very 'coronavirus' hoax that would be simulated for real on humanity within weeks. The British 'royal' family is promoting the 'Reset' as you would expect through Prince 'climate change caused the war in Syria' Charles and his hapless son Prince William who said that we must 'reset our relationship with nature and our trajectory as a species' to avoid a climate disaster. Amazing how many promoters of the 'Covid' and 'climate change' control

systems are connected to Gates and the World Economic Forum. A ‘study’ in early 2021 claimed that carbon dioxide emissions must fall by the equivalent of a global lockdown roughly every two years for the next decade to save the planet. The ‘study’ appeared in the same period that the Schwab mob claimed in a video that lockdowns destroying the lives of billions are good because they make the earth ‘quieter’ with less ‘ambient noise’. They took down the video amid a public backlash for such arrogant, empathy-deleted stupidity You see, however, where they are going with this. Corinne Le Quéré, a professor at the Tyndall Centre for Climate Change Research, University of East Anglia, was lead author of the climate lockdown study, and she writes for ... the World Economic Forum. Gates calls in ‘his’ book for changing ‘every aspect of the economy’ (long-time Cult agenda) and for humans to eat synthetic ‘meat’ (predicted in my books) while cows and other farm animals are eliminated.

Australian TV host and commentator Alan Jones described what carbon emission targets would mean for farm animals in Australia alone if emissions were reduced as demanded by 35 percent by 2030 and zero by 2050:

Well, let’s take agriculture, the total emissions from agriculture are about 75 million tonnes of carbon dioxide, equivalent. Now reduce that by 35 percent and you have to come down to 50 million tonnes, I’ve done the maths. So if you take for example 1.5 million cows, you’re going to have to reduce the herd by 525,000 [by] 2030, nine years, that’s 58,000 cows a year. The beef herd’s 30 million, reduce that by 35 percent, that’s 10.5 million, which means 1.2 million cattle have to go every year between now and 2030. This is insanity!

There are 75 million sheep. Reduce that by 35 percent, that’s 26 million sheep, that’s almost 3 million a year. So under the Paris Agreement over 30 million beasts. dairy cows, cattle, pigs and sheep would go. More than 8,000 every minute of every hour for the next decade, do these people know what they’re talking about?

Clearly they don’t at the level of campaigners, politicians and administrators. The Cult *does* know; that’s the outcome it wants. We are faced with not just a war on humanity. Animals and the natural world are being targeted and I have been saying since the ‘Covid’ hoax began that the plan eventually was to claim that the ‘deadly virus’ is able to jump from animals, including farm animals and

domestic pets, to humans. Just before this book went into production came this story: 'Russia registers world's first Covid-19 vaccine for cats & dogs as makers of Sputnik V warn pets & farm animals could spread virus'. The report said 'top scientists warned that the deadly pathogen could soon begin spreading through homes and farms' and 'the next stage is the infection of farm and domestic animals'. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey. Think what that would mean for animals and keep your eye on a term called zoonosis or zoonotic diseases which transmit between animals and humans. The Cult wants to break the connection between animals and people as it does between people and people. Farm animals fit with the Cult agenda to transform food from natural to synthetic.

### **The gas of life is killing us**

There can be few greater examples of Cult inversion than the condemnation of carbon dioxide as a dangerous pollutant when it is the gas of life. Without it the natural world would be dead and so we would all be dead. We breathe in oxygen and breathe out carbon dioxide while plants produce oxygen and absorb carbon dioxide. It is a perfect symbiotic relationship that the Cult wants to dismantle for reasons I will come to in the final two chapters. Gates, Schwab, other Cult operatives and mindless repeaters, want the world to be 'carbon neutral' by at least 2050 and the earlier the better. 'Zero carbon' is the cry echoed by lunatics calling for 'Zero Covid' when we already have it. These carbon emission targets will deindustrialise the world in accordance with Cult plans – the post-industrial, post-democratic society – and with so-called renewables like solar and wind not coming even close to meeting human energy needs blackouts and cold are inevitable. Texans got the picture in the winter of 2021 when a snow storm stopped wind turbines and solar panels from working and the lights went down along with water which relies on electricity for its supply system. Gates wants everything to be powered by electricity to ensure that his masters have the kill switch to stop all human activity, movement, cooking, water and warmth any time they like. The climate lie is so

stupendously inverted that it claims we must urgently reduce carbon dioxide when we *don't have enough*.

Co<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere is a little above 400 parts per million when the optimum for plant growth is 2,000 ppm and when it falls anywhere near 150 ppm the natural world starts to die and so do we. It fell to as low as 280 ppm in an 1880 measurement in Hawaii and rose to 413 ppm in 2019 with industrialisation which is why the planet has become *greener* in the industrial period. How insane then that psychopathic madman Gates is not satisfied only with blocking the rise of Co<sub>2</sub>. He's funding technology to suck it out of the atmosphere. The reason why will become clear. The industrial era is not destroying the world through Co<sub>2</sub> and has instead turned around a potentially disastrous ongoing fall in Co<sub>2</sub>. Greenpeace co-founder and scientist Patrick Moore walked away from Greenpeace in 1986 and has exposed the green movement for fear-mongering and lies. He said that 500 million years ago there was *17 times* more Co<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere than we have today and levels have been falling for hundreds of millions of years. In the last 150 million years Co<sub>2</sub> levels in Earth's atmosphere had reduced by *90 percent*. Moore said that by the time humanity began to unlock carbon dioxide from fossil fuels we were at '38 seconds to midnight' and in that sense: 'Humans are [the Earth's] salvation.' Moore made the point that only half the Co<sub>2</sub> emitted by fossil fuels stays in the atmosphere and we should remember that all pollution pouring from chimneys that we are told is carbon dioxide is in fact nothing of the kind. It's pollution. Carbon dioxide is an invisible gas.

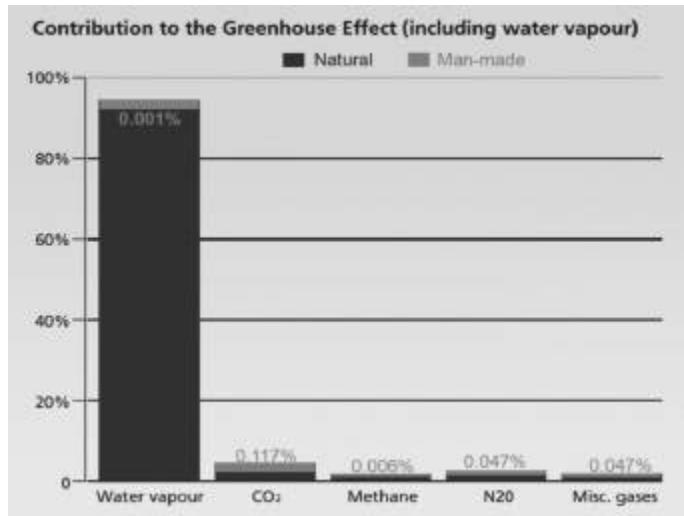
William Happer, Professor of Physics at Princeton University and long-time government adviser on climate, has emphasised the Co<sub>2</sub> deficiency for maximum growth and food production. Greenhouse growers don't add carbon dioxide for a bit of fun. He said that most of the warming in the last 100 years, after the earth emerged from the super-cold period of the 'Little Ice Age' into a natural warming cycle, was over by 1940. Happer said that a peak year for warming in 1988 can be explained by a 'monster El Nino' which is a natural and cyclical warming of the Pacific that has nothing to do with 'climate

change'. He said the effect of Co2 could be compared to painting a wall with red paint in that once two or three coats have been applied it didn't matter how much more you slapped on because the wall will not get much redder. Almost all the effect of the rise in Co2 has already happened, he said, and the volume in the atmosphere would now have to *double* to increase temperature by a single degree. Climate hoaxers know this and they have invented the most ridiculously complicated series of 'feedback' loops to try to overcome this rather devastating fact. You hear puppet Greta going on cluelessly about feedback loops and this is why.

### **The Sun affects temperature? No you *climate denier***

Some other nonsense to contemplate: Climate graphs show that rises in temperature do not follow rises in Co2 – *it's the other way round* with a lag between the two of some 800 years. If we go back 800 years from present time we hit the Medieval Warm Period when temperatures were higher than now without any industrialisation and this was followed by the Little Ice Age when temperatures plummeted. The world was still emerging from these centuries of serious cold when many climate records began which makes the ever-repeated line of the 'hottest year since records began' meaningless when you are not comparing like with like. The coldest period of the Little Ice Age corresponded with the lowest period of sunspot activity when the Sun was at its least active. Proper scientists will not be at all surprised by this when it confirms the obvious fact that earth temperature is affected by the scale of Sun activity and the energetic power that it subsequently emits; but when is the last time you heard a climate hoaxter talking about the Sun as a source of earth temperature?? Everything has to be focussed on Co2 which makes up just 0.117 percent of so-called greenhouse gases and only a fraction of even that is generated by human activity. The rest is natural. More than 90 percent of those greenhouse gases are water vapour and clouds ([Fig 9](#)). Ban moisture I say. Have you noticed that the climate hoaxers no longer use the polar bear as their promotion image? That's because far from becoming extinct polar

bear communities are stable or thriving. Joe Bastardi, American meteorologist, weather forecaster and outspoken critic of the climate lie, documents in his book *The Climate Chronicles* how weather patterns and events claimed to be evidence of climate change have been happening since long before industrialisation: 'What happened before naturally is happening again, as is to be expected given the cyclical nature of the climate due to the design of the planet.' If you read the detailed background to the climate hoax in my other books you will shake your head and wonder how anyone could believe the crap which has spawned a multi-trillion dollar industry based on absolute garbage (see HIV causes AIDS and Sars-Cov-2 causes 'Covid-19'). Climate and 'Covid' have much in common given they have the same source. They both have the contradictory *everything* factor in which everything is explained by reference to them. It's hot – 'it's climate change'. It's cold – 'it's climate change'. I got a sniffle – 'it's Covid'. I haven't got a sniffle – 'it's Covid'. Not having a sniffle has to be a symptom of 'Covid'. Everything is and not having a sniffle is especially dangerous if you are a slow walker. For sheer audacity I offer you a Cambridge University 'study' that actually linked 'Covid' to 'climate change'. It had to happen eventually. They concluded that climate change played a role in 'Covid-19' spreading from animals to humans because ... wait for it ... I kid you not ... *the two groups were forced closer together as populations grow.* Er, that's it. The whole foundation on which this depended was that 'Bats are the likely zoonotic origin of SARS-CoV-1 and SARS-CoV-2'. Well, they are not. They are nothing to do with it. Apart from bats not being the origin and therefore 'climate change' effects on bats being irrelevant I am in awe of their academic insight. Where would we be without them? Not where we are that's for sure.



**Figure 9:** The idea that the gas of life is disastrously changing the climate is an insult to brain cell activity.

One other point about the weather is that climate modification is now well advanced and not every major weather event is natural – or earthquake come to that. I cover this subject at some length in other books. China is openly planning a rapid expansion of its weather modification programme which includes changing the climate in an area more than one and a half times the size of India. China used weather manipulation to ensure clear skies during the 2008 Olympics in Beijing. I have quoted from US military documents detailing how to employ weather manipulation as a weapon of war and they did that in the 1960s and 70s during the conflict in Vietnam with Operation Popeye manipulating monsoon rains for military purposes. Why would there be international treaties on weather modification if it wasn't possible? Of course it is. Weather is energetic information and it can be changed.

## How was the climate hoax pulled off? See 'Covid'

If you can get billions to believe in a 'virus' that doesn't exist you can get them to believe in human-caused climate change that doesn't exist. Both are being used by the Cult to transform global society in the way it has long planned. Both hoaxes have been achieved in pretty much the same way. First you declare a lie is a fact. There's a

'virus' you call SARS-Cov-2 or humans are warming the planet with their behaviour. Next this becomes, via Cult networks, the foundation of government, academic and science policy and belief. Those who parrot the mantra are given big grants to produce research that confirms the narrative is true and ever more 'symptoms' are added to make the 'virus'/'climate change' sound even more scary. Scientists and researchers who challenge the narrative have their grants withdrawn and their careers destroyed. The media promote the lie as the unquestionable truth and censor those with an alternative view or evidence. A great percentage of the population believe what they are told as the lie becomes an everybody-knows-that and the believing-masses turn on those with a mind of their own. The technique has been used endlessly throughout human history. Wokers are the biggest promotorrs of the climate lie *and* 'Covid' fascism because their minds are owned by the Cult; their sense of self-righteous self-purity knows no bounds; and they exist in a bubble of reality in which facts are irrelevant and only get in the way of looking without seeing.

Running through all of this like veins in a blue cheese is control of information, which means control of perception, which means control of behaviour, which collectively means control of human society. The Cult owns the global media and Silicon Valley fascists for the simple reason that it *has* to. Without control of information it can't control perception and through that human society. Examine every facet of the Cult agenda and you will see that anything supporting its introduction is never censored while anything pushing back is always censored. I say again: Psychopaths that know why they are doing this must go before Nuremberg trials and those that follow their orders must trot along behind them into the same dock. 'I was just following orders' didn't work the first time and it must not work now. Nuremberg trials must be held all over the world before public juries for politicians, government officials, police, compliant doctors, scientists and virologists, and all Cult operatives such as Gates, Tedros, Fauci, Vallance, Whitty, Ferguson, Zuckerberg, Wojcicki, Brin, Page, Dorsey, the whole damn lot of

them – including, no *especially*, the psychopath psychologists. Without them and the brainless, gutless excuses for journalists that have repeated their lies, none of this could be happening. Nobody can be allowed to escape justice for the psychological and economic Armageddon they are all responsible for visiting upon the human race.

As for the compliant, unquestioning, swathes of humanity, and the self-obsessed, all-knowing ignorance of the Wokers ... don't start me. God help their kids. God help their grandkids. God *help them*.

## CHAPTER NINE

### We must have it? So what is it?

*Well I won't back down. No, I won't back down. You can stand me up at the Gates of Hell. But I won't back down*

Tom Petty

I will now focus on the genetically-manipulating ‘Covid vaccines’ which do not meet this official definition of a vaccine by the US Centers for Disease Control (CDC): ‘A product that stimulates a person’s immune system to produce immunity to a specific disease, protecting the person from that disease.’ On that basis ‘Covid vaccines’ are not a vaccine in that the makers don’t even claim they stop infection or transmission.

They are instead part of a multi-levelled conspiracy to change the nature of the human body and what it means to be ‘human’ and to depopulate an enormous swathe of humanity. What I shall call Human 1.0 is on the cusp of becoming Human 2.0 and for very sinister reasons. Before I get to the ‘Covid vaccine’ in detail here’s some background to vaccines in general. Government regulators do not test vaccines – the makers do – and the makers control which data is revealed and which isn’t. Children in America are given 50 vaccine doses by age six and 69 by age 19 and the effect of the whole combined schedule has never been tested. Autoimmune diseases when the immune system attacks its own body have soared in the mass vaccine era and so has disease in general in children and the young. Why wouldn’t this be the case when vaccines target the *immune system*? The US government gave Big Pharma drug

companies immunity from prosecution for vaccine death and injury in the 1986 National Childhood Vaccine Injury Act (NCVIA) and since then the government (taxpayer) has been funding compensation for the consequences of Big Pharma vaccines. The criminal and satanic drug giants can't lose and the vaccine schedule has increased dramatically since 1986 for this reason. There is no incentive to make vaccines safe and a big incentive to make money by introducing ever more. Even against a ridiculously high bar to prove vaccine liability, and with the government controlling the hearing in which it is being challenged for compensation, the vaccine court has so far paid out more than \$4 billion. These are the vaccines we are told are safe and psychopaths like Zuckerberg censor posts saying otherwise. The immunity law was even justified by a ruling that vaccines by their nature were 'unavoidably unsafe'.

Check out the ingredients of vaccines and you will be shocked if you are new to this. *They put that in children's bodies?? What??* Try aluminium, a brain toxin connected to dementia, aborted foetal tissue and formaldehyde which is used to embalm corpses. World-renowned aluminium expert Christopher Exley had his research into the health effect of aluminium in vaccines shut down by Keele University in the UK when it began taking funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Research when diseases 'eradicated' by vaccines began to decline and you will find the fall began long *before* the vaccine was introduced. Sometimes the fall even plateaued after the vaccine. Diseases like scarlet fever for which there was no vaccine declined in the same way because of environmental and other factors. A perfect case in point is the polio vaccine. Polio began when lead arsenate was first sprayed as an insecticide and residues remained in food products. Spraying started in 1892 and the first US polio epidemic came in Vermont in 1894. The simple answer was to stop spraying, but Rockefeller-created Big Pharma had a better idea. Polio was decreed to be caused by the *poliovirus* which 'spreads from person to person and can infect a person's spinal cord'. Lead arsenate was replaced by the lethal DDT which had the same effect of causing paralysis by damaging the brain and central nervous

system. Polio plummeted when DDT was reduced and then banned, but the vaccine is still given the credit for something it didn't do. Today by far the biggest cause of polio is the vaccines promoted by Bill Gates. Vaccine justice campaigner Robert Kennedy Jr, son of assassinated (by the Cult) US Attorney General Robert Kennedy, wrote:

In 2017, the World Health Organization (WHO) reluctantly admitted that the global explosion in polio is predominantly vaccine strain. The most frightening epidemics in Congo, Afghanistan, and the Philippines, are all linked to vaccines. In fact, by 2018, 70% of global polio cases were vaccine strain.

Vaccines make fortunes for Cult-owned Gates and Big Pharma while undermining the health and immune systems of the population. We had a glimpse of the mentality behind the Big Pharma cartel with a report on WION (World is One News), an international English language TV station based in India, which exposed the extraordinary behaviour of US drug company Pfizer over its 'Covid vaccine'. The WION report told how Pfizer had made fantastic demands of Argentina, Brazil and other countries in return for its 'vaccine'. These included immunity from prosecution, even for Pfizer negligence, government insurance to protect Pfizer from law suits and handing over as collateral sovereign assets of the country to include Argentina's bank reserves, military bases and embassy buildings. Pfizer demanded the same of Brazil in the form of waiving sovereignty of its assets abroad; exempting Pfizer from Brazilian laws; and giving Pfizer immunity from all civil liability. This is a 'vaccine' developed with government funding. Big Pharma is evil incarnate as a creation of the Cult and all must be handed tickets to Nuremberg.

### **Phantom 'vaccine' for a phantom 'disease'**

I'll expose the 'Covid vaccine' fraud and then go on to the wider background of why the Cult has set out to 'vaccinate' every man, woman and child on the planet for an alleged 'new disease' with a survival rate of 99.77 percent (or more) even by the grotesquely-

manipulated figures of the World Health Organization and Johns Hopkins University. The ‘infection’ to ‘death’ ratio is 0.23 to 0.15 percent according to Stanford epidemiologist Dr John Ioannidis and while estimates vary the danger remains tiny. I say that if the truth be told the fake infection to fake death ratio is zero. Never mind all the evidence I have presented here and in *The Answer* that there is no ‘virus’ let us just focus for a moment on that death-rate figure of say 0.23 percent. The figure includes all those worldwide who have tested positive with a test not testing for the ‘virus’ and then died within 28 days or even longer of any other cause – *any other cause*. Now subtract all those illusory ‘Covid’ deaths on the global data sheets from the 0.23 percent. What do you think you would be left with? *Zero*. A vaccination has never been successfully developed for a so-called coronavirus. They have all failed at the animal testing stage when they caused hypersensitivity to what they were claiming to protect against and made the impact of a disease far worse. Cult-owned vaccine corporations got around that problem this time by bypassing animal trials, going straight to humans and making the length of the ‘trials’ before the public rollout as short as they could get away with. Normally it takes five to ten years or more to develop vaccines that still cause demonstrable harm to many people and that’s without including the long-term effects that are never officially connected to the vaccination. ‘Covid’ non-vaccines have been officially produced and approved in a matter of months from a standing start and part of the reason is that (a) they were developed before the ‘Covid’ hoax began and (b) they are based on computer programs and not natural sources. Official non-trials were so short that government agencies gave *emergency*, not full, approval. ‘Trials’ were not even completed and full approval cannot be secured until they are. Public ‘Covid vaccination’ is actually a *continuation of the trial*. Drug company ‘trials’ are not scheduled to end until 2023 by which time a lot of people are going to be dead. Data on which government agencies gave this emergency approval was supplied by the Big Pharma corporations themselves in the form of Pfizer/BioNTech, AstraZeneca, Moderna, Johnson & Johnson, and

others, and this is the case with all vaccines. By its very nature *emergency* approval means drug companies do not have to prove that the ‘vaccine’ is ‘safe and effective’. How could they with trials way short of complete? Government regulators only have to *believe* that they *could* be safe and effective. It is criminal manipulation to get products in circulation with no testing worth the name. Agencies giving that approval are infested with Big Pharma-connected place-people and they act in the interests of Big Pharma (the Cult) and not the public about whom they do not give a damn.

## **More human lab rats**

‘Covid vaccines’ produced in record time by Pfizer/BioNTech and Moderna employ a technique *never approved before for use on humans*. They are known as mRNA ‘vaccines’ and inject a synthetic version of ‘viral’ mRNA or ‘messenger RNA’. The key is in the term ‘messenger’. The body works, or doesn’t, on the basis of information messaging. Communications are constantly passing between and within the genetic system and the brain. Change those messages and you change the state of the body and even its very nature and you can change psychology and behaviour by the way the brain processes information. I think you are going to see significant changes in personality and perception of many people who have had the ‘Covid vaccine’ synthetic potions. Insider Aldous Huxley predicted the following in 1961 and mRNA ‘vaccines’ can be included in the term ‘pharmacological methods’:

There will be, in the next generation or so, a pharmacological method of making people love their servitude, and producing dictatorship without tears, so to speak, producing a kind of painless concentration camp for entire societies, so that people will in fact have their own liberties taken away from them, but rather enjoy it, because they will be distracted from any desire to rebel by propaganda or brainwashing, or brainwashing enhanced by pharmacological methods. And this seems to be the final revolution.

Apologists claim that mRNA synthetic ‘vaccines’ don’t change the DNA genetic blueprint because RNA does not affect DNA only the other way round. This is so disingenuous. A process called ‘reverse

'transcription' can convert RNA into DNA and be integrated into DNA in the cell nucleus. This was highlighted in December, 2020, by scientists at Harvard and Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). Geneticists report that more than 40 percent of mammalian genomes results from reverse transcription. On the most basic level if messaging changes then that sequence must lead to changes in DNA which is receiving and transmitting those communications. How can introducing synthetic material into cells not change the cells where DNA is located? The process is known as transfection which is defined as 'a technique to insert foreign nucleic acid (DNA or RNA) into a cell, typically with the intention of altering the properties of the cell'. Researchers at the Sloan Kettering Institute in New York found that changes in messenger RNA can deactivate tumour-suppressing proteins and thereby promote cancer. This is what happens when you mess with messaging. 'Covid vaccine' maker Moderna was founded in 2010 by Canadian stem cell biologist Derrick J. Rossi after his breakthrough discovery in the field of transforming and reprogramming stem cells. These are neutral cells that can be programmed to become any cell including sperm cells. Moderna was therefore founded on the principle of genetic manipulation and has never produced any vaccine or drug before its genetically-manipulating synthetic 'Covid' shite. Look at the name – Mode-RNA or Modify-RNA. Another important point is that the US Supreme Court has ruled that genetically-modified DNA, or complementary DNA (cDNA) synthesized in the laboratory from messenger RNA, can be patented and owned. These psychopaths are doing this to the human body.

Cells replicate synthetic mRNA in the 'Covid vaccines' and in theory the body is tricked into making antigens which trigger antibodies to target the 'virus spike proteins' which as Dr Tom Cowan said have *never been seen*. Cut the crap and these 'vaccines' deliver *self-replicating* synthetic material to the cells with the effect of changing human DNA. The more of them you have the more that process is compounded while synthetic material is all the time self-replicating. 'Vaccine'-maker Moderna describes mRNA as 'like

software for the cell' and so they are messing with the body's software. What happens when you change the software in a computer? Everything changes. For this reason the Cult is preparing a production line of mRNA 'Covid vaccines' and a long list of excuses to use them as with all the 'variants' of a 'virus' never shown to exist. The plan is further to transfer the mRNA technique to other vaccines mostly given to children and young people. The cumulative consequences will be a transformation of human DNA through a constant infusion of synthetic genetic material which will kill many and change the rest. Now consider that governments that have given emergency approval for a vaccine that's not a vaccine; never been approved for humans before; had no testing worth the name; and the makers have been given immunity from prosecution for any deaths or adverse effects suffered by the public. The UK government awarded *permanent legal indemnity* to itself and its employees for harm done when a patient is being treated for 'Covid-19' or 'suspected Covid-19'. That is quite a thought when these are possible 'side-effects' from the 'vaccine' (they are not 'side', they are effects) listed by the US Food and Drug Administration:

Guillain-Barre syndrome; acute disseminated encephalomyelitis; transverse myelitis; encephalitis; myelitis; encephalomyelitis; meningoencephalitis; meningitis; encephalopathy; convulsions; seizures; stroke; narcolepsy; cataplexy; anaphylaxis; acute myocardial infarction (heart attack); myocarditis; pericarditis; autoimmune disease; death; implications for pregnancy, and birth outcomes; other acute demyelinating diseases; non anaphylactic allergy reactions; thrombocytopenia ; disseminated intravascular coagulation; venous thromboembolism; arthritis; arthralgia; joint pain; Kawasaki disease; multisystem inflammatory syndrome in children; vaccine enhanced disease. The latter is the way the 'vaccine' has the potential to make diseases far worse than they would otherwise be.

UK doctor and freedom campaigner Vernon Coleman described the conditions in this list as 'all unpleasant, most of them very serious, and you can't get more serious than death'. The thought that anyone at all has had the 'vaccine' in these circumstances is testament to the potential that humanity has for clueless, unquestioning, stupidity and for many that programmed stupidity has already been terminal.

## An insider speaks

Dr Michael Yeadon is a former Vice President, head of research and Chief Scientific Adviser at vaccine giant Pfizer. Yeadon worked on the inside of Big Pharma, but that did not stop him becoming a vocal critic of 'Covid vaccines' and their potential for multiple harms, including infertility in women. By the spring of 2021 he went much further and even used the no, no, term 'conspiracy'. When you begin to see what is going on it is impossible not to do so. Yeadon spoke out in an interview with freedom campaigner James Delingpole and I mentioned earlier how he said that no one had samples of 'the virus'. He explained that the mRNA technique originated in the anti-cancer field and ways to turn on and off certain genes which could be advantageous if you wanted to stop cancer growing out of control. 'That's the origin of them. They are a very unusual application, really.' Yeadon said that treating a cancer patient with an aggressive procedure might be understandable if the alternative was dying, but it was quite another thing to use the same technique as a public health measure. Most people involved wouldn't catch the infectious agent you were vaccinating against and if they did they probably wouldn't die:

If you are really using it as a public health measure you really want to as close as you can get to zero side-effects ... I find it odd that they chose techniques that were really cutting their teeth in the field of oncology and I'm worried that in using gene-based vaccines that have to be injected in the body and spread around the body, get taken up into some cells, and the regulators haven't quite told us which cells they get taken up into ... you are going to be generating a wide range of responses ... with multiple steps each of which could go well or badly.

I doubt the Cult intends it to go well. Yeadon said that you can put any gene you like into the body through the 'vaccine'. 'You can certainly give them a gene that would do them some harm if you wanted.' I was intrigued when he said that when used in the cancer field the technique could turn genes on and off. I explore this process in *The Answer* and with different genes having different functions you could create mayhem – physically and psychologically – if you turned the wrong ones on and the right ones off. I read reports of an experiment by researchers at the University of Washington's school of computer science and engineering in which they encoded DNA to infect computers. The body is itself a biological computer and if human DNA can inflict damage on a computer why can't the computer via synthetic material mess with the human body? It can. The Washington research team said it was possible to insert malicious malware into 'physical DNA strands' and corrupt the computer system of a gene sequencing machine as it 'reads gene letters and stores them as binary digits 0 and 1'. They concluded that hackers could one day use blood or spit samples to access computer systems and obtain sensitive data from police forensics labs or infect genome files. It is at this level of digital interaction that synthetic 'vaccines' need to be seen to get the full picture and that will become very clear later on. Michael Yeadon said it made no sense to give the 'vaccine' to younger people who were in no danger from the 'virus'. What was the benefit? It was all downside with potential effects:

The fact that my government in what I thought was a civilised, rational country, is raining [the 'vaccine'] on people in their 30s and 40s, even my children in their 20s, they're getting letters and phone calls, I know this is not right and any of you doctors who are vaccinating you know it's not right, too. They are not at risk. They are not at risk from the disease, so you are now hoping that the side-effects are so rare that you get away with it. You don't give new technology ... that you don't understand to 100 percent of the population.

Blood clot problems with the AstraZeneca 'vaccine' have been affecting younger people to emphasise the downside risks with no benefit. AstraZeneca's version, produced with Oxford University, does not use mRNA, but still gets its toxic cocktail inside cells where

it targets DNA. The Johnson & Johnson ‘vaccine’ which uses a similar technique has also produced blood clot effects to such an extent that the United States paused its use at one point. They are all ‘gene therapy’ (cell modification) procedures and not ‘vaccines’. The truth is that once the content of these injections enter cells we have no idea what the effect will be. People can speculate and some can give very educated opinions and that’s good. In the end, though, only the makers know what their potions are designed to do and even they won’t know every last consequence. Michael Yeadon was scathing about doctors doing what they knew to be wrong.

‘Everyone’s mute’, he said. Doctors in the NHS must know this was not right, coming into work and injecting people. ‘I don’t know how they sleep at night. I know I couldn’t do it. I know that if I were in that position I’d have to quit.’ He said he knew enough about toxicology to know this was not a good risk-benefit. Yeadon had spoken to seven or eight university professors and all except two would not speak out publicly. Their universities had a policy that no one said anything that countered the government and its medical advisors. They were afraid of losing their government grants. This is how intimidation has been used to silence the truth at every level of the system. I say silence, but these people could still speak out if they made that choice. Yeadon called them ‘moral cowards’ – ‘This is about your children and grandchildren’s lives and you have just buggered off and left it.’

## **‘Variant’ nonsense**

Some of his most powerful comments related to the alleged ‘variants’ being used to instil more fear, justify more lockdowns, and introduce more ‘vaccines’. He said government claims about ‘variants’ were nonsense. He had checked the alleged variant ‘codes’ and they were 99.7 percent identical to the ‘original’. This was the human identity difference equivalent to putting a baseball cap on and off or wearing it the other way round. A 0.3 percent difference would make it impossible for that ‘variant’ to escape immunity from the ‘original’. This made no sense of having new ‘vaccines’ for

'variants'. He said there would have to be at least a *30 percent* difference for that to be justified and even then he believed the immune system would still recognise what it was. Gates-funded 'variant modeller' and 'vaccine'-pusher John Edmunds might care to comment. Yeadon said drug companies were making new versions of the 'vaccine' as a 'top up' for 'variants'. Worse than that, he said, the 'regulators' around the world like the MHRA in the UK had got together and agreed that because 'vaccines' for 'variants' were so similar to the first 'vaccines' *they did not have to do safety studies*. How transparently sinister that is. This is when Yeadon said: 'There is a conspiracy here.' There was no need for another vaccine for 'variants' and yet we were told that there was and the country had shut its borders because of them. 'They are going into hundreds of millions of arms without passing 'go' or any regulator. Why did they do that? Why did they pick this method of making the vaccine?'

The reason had to be something bigger than that it seemed and 'it's not protection against the virus'. It's was a far bigger project that meant politicians and advisers were willing to do things and not do things that knowingly resulted in avoidable deaths – 'that's already happened when you think about lockdown and deprivation of health care for a year.' He spoke of people prepared to do something that results in the avoidable death of their fellow human beings and it not bother them. This is the penny-drop I have been working to get across for more than 30 years – the level of pure evil we are dealing with. Yeadon said his friends and associates could not believe there could be that much evil, but he reminded them of Stalin, Pol Pot and Hitler and of what Stalin had said: 'One death is a tragedy. A million? A statistic.' He could not think of a benign explanation for why you need top-up vaccines 'which I'm sure you don't' and for the regulators 'to just get out of the way and wave them through'. Why would the regulators do that when they were still wrestling with the dangers of the 'parent' vaccine? He was clearly shocked by what he had seen since the 'Covid' hoax began and now he was thinking the previously unthinkable:

If you wanted to depopulate a significant proportion of the world and to do it in a way that doesn't involve destruction of the environment with nuclear weapons, poisoning everyone with anthrax or something like that, and you wanted plausible deniability while you had a multi-year infectious disease crisis, I actually don't think you could come up with a better plan of work than seems to be in front of me. I can't say that's what they are going to do, but I can't think of a benign explanation why they are doing it.

He said he never thought that they would get rid of 99 percent of humans, but now he wondered. 'If you wanted to that this would be a hell of a way to do it – it would be unstoppable folks.' Yeadon had concluded that those who submitted to the 'vaccine' would be allowed to have some kind of normal life (but for how long?) while screws were tightened to coerce and mandate the last few percent. 'I think they'll put the rest of them in a prison camp. I wish I was wrong, but I don't think I am.' Other points he made included: There were no coronavirus vaccines then suddenly they all come along at the same time; we have no idea of the long term affect with trials so short; coercing or forcing people to have medical procedures is against the Nuremberg Code instigated when the Nazis did just that; people should at least delay having the 'vaccine'; a quick Internet search confirms that masks don't reduce respiratory viral transmission and 'the government knows that'; they have smashed civil society and they know that, too; two dozen peer-reviewed studies show no connection between lockdown and reducing deaths; he knew from personal friends the elite were still flying around and going on holiday while the public were locked down; the elite were not having the 'vaccines'. He was also asked if 'vaccines' could be made to target difference races. He said he didn't know, but the document by the Project for the New American Century in September, 2000, said developing 'advanced forms of biological warfare that can target *specific genotypes* may transform biological warfare from the realm of terror to a politically useful tool.' Oh, they're evil all right. Of that we can be *absolutely* sure.

## **Another cull of old people**

We have seen from the CDC definition that the mRNA 'Covid vaccine' is not a vaccine and nor are the others that *claim* to reduce 'severity of symptoms' in *some* people, but not protect from infection or transmission. What about all the lies about returning to 'normal' if people were 'vaccinated'? If they are not claimed to stop infection and transmission of the alleged 'virus', how does anything change? This was all lies to manipulate people to take the jabs and we are seeing that now with masks and distancing still required for the 'vaccinated'. How did they think that elderly people with fragile health and immune responses were going to be affected by infusing their cells with synthetic material and other toxic substances? They *knew* that in the short and long term it would be devastating and fatal as the culling of the old that began with the first lockdowns was continued with the 'vaccine'. Death rates in care homes soared immediately residents began to be 'vaccinated' – infused with synthetic material. Brave and committed whistleblower nurses put their careers at risk by exposing this truth while the rest kept their heads down and their mouths shut to put their careers before those they are supposed to care for. A long-time American Certified Nursing Assistant who gave his name as James posted a video in which he described emotionally what happened in his care home when vaccination began. He said that during 2020 very few residents were sick with 'Covid' and no one died during the entire year; but shortly after the Pfizer mRNA injections 14 people died within two weeks and many others were near death. 'They're dropping like flies', he said. Residents who walked on their own before the shot could no longer and they had lost their ability to conduct an intelligent conversation. The home's management said the sudden deaths were caused by a 'super-spreader' of 'Covid-19'. Then how come, James asked, that residents who refused to take the injections were not sick? It was a case of inject the elderly with mRNA synthetic potions and blame their illness and death that followed on the 'virus'. James described what was happening in care homes as 'the greatest crime of genocide this country has ever seen'. Remember the NHS staff nurse from earlier who used the same

word ‘genocide’ for what was happening with the ‘vaccines’ and that it was an ‘act of human annihilation’. A UK care home whistleblower told a similar story to James about the effect of the ‘vaccine’ in deaths and ‘outbreaks’ of illness dubbed ‘Covid’ after getting the jab. She told how her care home management and staff had zealously imposed government regulations and no one was allowed to even question the official narrative let alone speak out against it. She said the NHS was even worse. Again we see the results of reframing. A worker at a local care home where I live said they had not had a single case of ‘Covid’ there for almost a year and when the residents were ‘vaccinated’ they had 19 positive cases in two weeks with eight dying.

### **It's not the 'vaccine' – honest**

The obvious cause and effect was being ignored by the media and most of the public. Australia’s health minister Greg Hunt (a former head of strategy at the World Economic Forum) was admitted to hospital after he had the ‘vaccine’. He was suffering according to reports from the skin infection ‘cellulitis’ and it must have been a severe case to have warranted days in hospital. Immediately the authorities said this was nothing to do with the ‘vaccine’ when an effect of some vaccines is a ‘cellulitis-like reaction’. We had families of perfectly healthy old people who died after the ‘vaccine’ saying that if only they had been given the ‘vaccine’ earlier they would still be alive. As a numbskull rating that is off the chart. A father of four ‘died of Covid’ at aged 48 when he was taken ill two days after having the ‘vaccine’. The man, a health administrator, had been ‘shielding during the pandemic’ and had ‘not really left the house’ until he went for the ‘vaccine’. Having the ‘vaccine’ and then falling ill and dying does not seem to have qualified as a possible cause and effect and ‘Covid-19’ went on his death certificate. His family said they had no idea how he ‘caught the virus’. A family member said: ‘Tragically, it could be that going for a vaccination ultimately led to him catching Covid ...The sad truth is that they are never going to know where it came from.’ The family warned people to remember

that the virus still existed and was 'very real'. So was their stupidity. Nurses and doctors who had the first round of the 'vaccine' were collapsing, dying and ending up in a hospital bed while they or their grieving relatives were saying they'd still have the 'vaccine' again despite what happened. I kid you not. You mean if your husband returned from the dead he'd have the same 'vaccine' again that killed him??

Doctors at the VCU Medical Center in Richmond, Virginia, said the Johnson & Johnson 'vaccine' was to blame for a man's skin peeling off. Patient Richard Terrell said: 'It all just happened so fast. My skin peeled off. It's still coming off on my hands now.' He said it was stinging, burning and itching and when he bent his arms and legs it was very painful with 'the skin swollen and rubbing against itself'. Pfizer/BioNTech and Moderna vaccines use mRNA to change the cell while the Johnson & Johnson version uses DNA in a process similar to AstraZeneca's technique. Johnson & Johnson and AstraZeneca have both had their 'vaccines' paused by many countries after causing serious blood problems. Terrell's doctor Fnu Nutan said he could have died if he hadn't got medical attention. It sounds terrible so what did Nutan and Terrell say about the 'vaccine' now? Oh, they still recommend that people have it. A nurse in a hospital bed 40 minutes after the vaccination and unable to swallow due to throat swelling was told by a doctor that he lost mobility in his arm for 36 hours following the vaccination. What did he say to the ailing nurse? 'Good for you for getting the vaccination.' We are dealing with a serious form of cognitive dissonance madness in both public and medical staff. There is a remarkable correlation between those having the 'vaccine' and trumpeting the fact and suffering bad happenings shortly afterwards. Witold Rogiewicz, a Polish doctor, made a video of his 'vaccination' and ridiculed those who were questioning its safety and the intentions of Bill Gates: 'Vaccinate yourself to protect yourself, your loved ones, friends and also patients. And to mention quickly I have info for anti-vaxxers and anti-Covidiers if you want to contact Bill Gates you can do this through me.' He further ridiculed the dangers of 5G. Days later he

was dead, but naturally the vaccination wasn't mentioned in the verdict of 'heart attack'.

## **Lies, lies and more lies**

So many members of the human race have slipped into extreme states of insanity and unfortunately they include reframed doctors and nursing staff. Having a 'vaccine' and dying within minutes or hours is not considered a valid connection while death from any cause within 28 days or longer of a positive test with a test not testing for the 'virus' means 'Covid-19' goes on the death certificate. How could that 'vaccine'-death connection not have been made except by calculated deceit? US figures in the initial rollout period to February 12th, 2020, revealed that a third of the deaths reported to the CDC after 'Covid vaccines' happened within 48 hours. Five men in the UK suffered an 'extremely rare' blood clot problem after having the AstraZeneca 'vaccine', but no causal link was established said the Gates-funded Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) which had given the 'vaccine' emergency approval to be used. Former Pfizer executive Dr Michael Yeadon explained in his interview how the procedures could cause blood coagulation and clots. People who should have been at no risk were dying from blood clots in the brain and he said he had heard from medical doctor friends that people were suffering from skin bleeding and massive headaches. The AstraZeneca 'shot' was stopped by some 20 countries over the blood clotting issue and still the corrupt MHRA, the European Medicines Agency (EMA) and the World Health Organization said that it should continue to be given even though the EMA admitted that it 'still cannot rule out definitively' a link between blood clotting and the 'vaccine'. Later Marco Cavaleri, head of EMA vaccine strategy, said there was indeed a clear link between the 'vaccine' and thrombosis, but they didn't know why. So much for the trials showing the 'vaccine' is safe. Blood clots were affecting younger people who would be under virtually no danger from 'Covid' even if it existed which makes it all the more stupid and sinister.

The British government responded to public alarm by wheeling out June Raine, the terrifyingly weak infant school headmistress sound-alike who heads the UK MHRA drug ‘regulator’. The idea that she would stand up to Big Pharma and government pressure is laughable and she told us that all was well in the same way that she did when allowing untested, never-used-on-humans-before, genetically-manipulating ‘vaccines’ to be exposed to the public in the first place. Mass lying is the new normal of the ‘Covid’ era. The MHRA later said 30 cases of rare blood clots had by then been connected with the AstraZeneca ‘vaccine’ (that means a lot more in reality) while stressing that the benefits of the jab in preventing ‘Covid-19’ outweighed any risks. A more ridiculous and disingenuous statement with callous disregard for human health it is hard to contemplate. Immediately after the mendacious ‘all-clears’ two hospital workers in Denmark experienced blood clots and cerebral haemorrhaging following the AstraZeneca jab and one died. Top Norwegian health official Pål Andre Holme said the ‘vaccine’ was the only common factor: ‘There is nothing in the patient history of these individuals that can give such a powerful immune response ... I am confident that the antibodies that we have found are the cause, and I see no other explanation than it being the vaccine which triggers it.’ Strokes, a clot or bleed in the brain, were clearly associated with the ‘vaccine’ from word of mouth and whistleblower reports. Similar consequences followed with all these ‘vaccines’ that we were told were so safe and as the numbers grew by the day it was clear we were witnessing human carnage.

## **Learning the hard way**

A woman interviewed by UKColumn told how her husband suffered dramatic health effects after the vaccine when he’d been in good health all his life. He went from being a little unwell to losing all feeling in his legs and experiencing ‘excruciating pain’. Misdiagnosis followed twice at Accident and Emergency (an ‘allergy’ and ‘sciatica’) before he was admitted to a neurology ward where doctors said his serious condition had been caused by the

'vaccine'. Another seven 'vaccinated' people were apparently being treated on the same ward for similar symptoms. The woman said he had the 'vaccine' because they believed media claims that it was safe. 'I didn't think the government would give out a vaccine that does this to somebody; I believed they would be bringing out a vaccination that would be safe.' What a tragic way to learn that lesson. Another woman posted that her husband was transporting stroke patients to hospital on almost every shift and when he asked them if they had been 'vaccinated' for 'Covid' they all replied 'yes'. One had a 'massive brain bleed' the day after his second dose. She said her husband reported the 'just been vaccinated' information every time to doctors in A and E only for them to ignore it, make no notes and appear annoyed that it was even mentioned. This particular report cannot be verified, but it expresses a common theme that confirms the monumental underreporting of 'vaccine' consequences. Interestingly as the 'vaccines' and their brain blood clot/stroke consequences began to emerge the UK National Health Service began a publicity campaign telling the public what to do in the event of a stroke. A Scottish NHS staff nurse who quit in disgust in March, 2021, said:

I have seen traumatic injuries from the vaccine, they're not getting reported to the yellow card [adverse reaction] scheme, they're treating the symptoms, not asking why, why it's happening. It's just treating the symptoms and when you speak about it you're dismissed like you're crazy, I'm not crazy, I'm not crazy because every other colleague I've spoken to is terrified to speak out, they've had enough.

Videos appeared on the Internet of people uncontrollably shaking after the 'vaccine' with no control over muscles, limbs and even their face. A Scottish mother broke out in a severe rash all over her body almost immediately after she was given the AstraZeneca 'vaccine'. The pictures were horrific. Leigh King, a 41-year-old hairdresser from Lanarkshire said: 'Never in my life was I prepared for what I was about to experience ... My skin was so sore and constantly hot ... I have never felt pain like this ...' But don't you worry, the 'vaccine' is perfectly safe. Then there has been the effect on medical

staff who have been pressured to have the ‘vaccine’ by psychopathic ‘health’ authorities and government. A London hospital consultant who gave the name K. Polyakova wrote this to the *British Medical Journal* or *BMJ*:

I am currently struggling with ... the failure to report the reality of the morbidity caused by our current vaccination program within the health service and staff population. The levels of sickness after vaccination is unprecedented and staff are getting very sick and some with neurological symptoms which is having a huge impact on the health service function. Even the young and healthy are off for days, some for weeks, and some requiring medical treatment. Whole teams are being taken out as they went to get vaccinated together.

Mandatory vaccination in this instance is stupid, unethical and irresponsible when it comes to protecting our staff and public health. We are in the voluntary phase of vaccination, and encouraging staff to take an unlicensed product that is impacting on their immediate health ... it is clearly stated that these vaccine products do not offer immunity or stop transmission. In which case why are we doing it?

Not to protect health that’s for sure. Medical workers are lauded by governments for agenda reasons when they couldn’t give a toss about them any more than they can for the population in general. Schools across America faced the same situation as they closed due to the high number of teachers and other staff with bad reactions to the Pfizer/BioNTech, Moderna, and Johnson & Johnson ‘Covid vaccines’ all of which were linked to death and serious adverse effects. The *BMJ* took down the consultant’s comments pretty quickly on the grounds that they were being used to spread ‘disinformation’. They were exposing the truth about the ‘vaccine’ was the real reason. The cover-up is breathtaking.

## **Hiding the evidence**

The scale of the ‘vaccine’ death cover-up worldwide can be confirmed by comparing official figures with the personal experience of the public. I heard of many people in my community who died immediately or soon after the vaccine that would never appear in the media or even likely on the official totals of ‘vaccine’ fatalities and adverse reactions when only about ten percent are estimated to be

reported and I have seen some estimates as low as one percent in a Harvard study. In the UK alone by April 29th, 2021, some 757,654 adverse reactions had been officially reported from the Pfizer/BioNTech, Oxford/AstraZeneca and Moderna 'vaccines' with more than a thousand deaths linked to jabs and that means an estimated ten times this number in reality from a ten percent reporting rate percentage. That's seven million adverse reactions and 10,000 potential deaths and a one percent reporting rate would be ten times *those* figures. In 1976 the US government pulled the swine flu vaccine after 53 deaths. The UK data included a combined 10,000 eye disorders from the 'Covid vaccines' with more than 750 suffering visual impairment or blindness and again multiply by the estimated reporting percentages. As 'Covid cases' officially fell hospitals virtually empty during the 'Covid crisis' began to fill up with a range of other problems in the wake of the 'vaccine' rollout. The numbers across America have also been catastrophic. Deaths linked to *all* types of vaccine increased by *6,000 percent* in the first quarter of 2021 compared with 2020. A 39-year-old woman from Ogden, Utah, died four days after receiving a second dose of Moderna's 'Covid vaccine' when her liver, heart and kidneys all failed despite the fact that she had no known medical issues or conditions. Her family sought an autopsy, but Dr Erik Christensen, Utah's chief medical examiner, said proving vaccine injury as a cause of death almost never happened. He could think of only one instance where an autopsy would name a vaccine as the official cause of death and that would be anaphylaxis where someone received a vaccine and died almost instantaneously. 'Short of that, it would be difficult for us to definitively say this is the vaccine,' Christensen said. If that is true this must be added to the estimated ten percent (or far less) reporting rate of vaccine deaths and serious reactions and the conclusion can only be that vaccine deaths and serious reactions – including these 'Covid' potions – are phenomenally understated in official figures. The same story can be found everywhere. Endless accounts of deaths and serious reactions among the public, medical

and care home staff while official figures did not even begin to reflect this.

Professional script-reader Dr David Williams, a ‘top public-health official’ in Ontario, Canada, insulted our intelligence by claiming only four serious adverse reactions and no deaths from the more than 380,000 vaccine doses then given. This bore no resemblance to what people knew had happened in their own circles and we had Dirk Huyer in charge of getting millions vaccinated in Ontario while at the same time he was Chief Coroner for the province investigating causes of death including possible death from the vaccine. An aide said he had stepped back from investigating deaths, but evidence indicated otherwise. Rosemary Frei, who secured a Master of Science degree in molecular biology at the Faculty of Medicine at Canada’s University of Calgary before turning to investigative journalism, was one who could see that official figures for ‘vaccine’ deaths and reactions made no sense. She said that doctors seldom reported adverse events and when people got really sick or died after getting a vaccination they would attribute that to anything except the vaccines. It had been that way for years and anyone who wondered aloud whether the ‘Covid vaccines’ or other shots cause harm is immediately branded as ‘anti-vax’ and ‘anti-science’. This was ‘career-threatening’ for health professionals. Then there was the huge pressure to support the push to ‘vaccinate’ billions in the quickest time possible. Frei said:

So that’s where we’re at today. More than half a million vaccine doses have been given to people in Ontario alone. The rush is on to vaccinate all 15 million of us in the province by September. And the mainstream media are screaming for this to be sped up even more. That all adds up to only a very slim likelihood that we’re going to be told the truth by officials about how many people are getting sick or dying from the vaccines.

What is true of Ontario is true of everywhere.

## **They KNEW – and still did it**

The authorities knew what was going to happen with multiple deaths and adverse reactions. The UK government’s Gates-funded

and Big Pharma-dominated Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) hired a company to employ AI in compiling the projected reactions to the ‘vaccine’ that would otherwise be uncountable. The request for applications said: ‘The MHRA urgently seeks an Artificial Intelligence (AI) software tool to process the expected high volume of Covid-19 vaccine Adverse Drug Reaction ...’ This was from the agency, headed by the disingenuous June Raine, that gave the ‘vaccines’ emergency approval and the company was hired before the first shot was given. ‘We are going to kill and maim you – is that okay?’ ‘Oh, yes, perfectly fine – I’m very grateful, thank you, doctor.’ The range of ‘Covid vaccine’ adverse reactions goes on for page after page in the MHRA criminally underreported ‘Yellow Card’ system and includes affects to eyes, ears, skin, digestion, blood and so on. Raine’s MHRA amazingly claimed that the ‘overall safety experience ... is so far as expected from the clinical trials’. The death, serious adverse effects, deafness and blindness were *expected*? When did they ever mention that? If these human tragedies were expected then those that gave approval for the use of these ‘vaccines’ must be guilty of crimes against humanity including murder – a definition of which is ‘killing a person with malice aforethought or with recklessness manifesting extreme indifference to the value of human life.’ People involved at the MHRA, the CDC in America and their equivalent around the world must go before Nuremberg trials to answer for their callous inhumanity. We are only talking here about the immediate effects of the ‘vaccine’. The longer-term impact of the DNA synthetic manipulation is the main reason they are so hysterically desperate to inoculate the entire global population in the shortest possible time.

Africa and the developing world are a major focus for the ‘vaccine’ depopulation agenda and a mass vaccination sales-pitch is underway thanks to caring people like the Rockefellers and other Cult assets. The Rockefeller Foundation, which pre-empted the ‘Covid pandemic’ in a document published in 2010 that ‘predicted’ what happened a decade later, announced an initial \$34.95 million grant in February, 2021, ‘to ensure more equitable access to Covid-19

testing and vaccines' among other things in Africa in collaboration with '24 organizations, businesses, and government agencies'. The pan-Africa initiative would focus on 10 countries: Burkina Faso, Ethiopia, Ghana, Kenya, Nigeria, Rwanda, South Africa, Tanzania, Uganda, and Zambia'. Rajiv Shah, President of the Rockefeller Foundation and former administrator of CIA-controlled USAID, said that if Africa was not mass-vaccinated (to change the DNA of its people) it was a 'threat to all of humanity' and not fair on Africans. When someone from the Rockefeller Foundation says they want to do something to help poor and deprived people and countries it is time for a belly-laugh. They are doing this out of the goodness of their 'heart' because 'vaccinating' the entire global population is what the 'Covid' hoax set out to achieve. Official 'decolonisation' of Africa by the Cult was merely a prelude to financial colonisation on the road to a return to physical colonisation. The 'vaccine' is vital to that and the sudden and convenient death of the 'Covid' sceptic president of Tanzania can be seen in its true light. A lot of people in Africa are aware that this is another form of colonisation and exploitation and they need to stand their ground.

### **The 'vaccine is working' scam**

A potential problem for the Cult was that the 'vaccine' is meant to change human DNA and body messaging and not to protect anyone from a 'virus' never shown to exist. The vaccine couldn't work because it was not designed to work and how could they make it *appear* to be working so that more people would have it? This was overcome by lowering the amplification rate of the PCR test to produce fewer 'cases' and therefore fewer 'deaths'. Some of us had been pointing out since March, 2020, that the amplification rate of the test not testing for the 'virus' had been made artificially high to generate positive tests which they could call 'cases' to justify lockdowns. The World Health Organization recommended an absurdly high 45 amplification cycles to ensure the high positives required by the Cult and then remained silent on the issue until January 20th, 2021 – Biden's Inauguration Day. This was when the

'vaccinations' were seriously underway and on that day the WHO recommended after discussions with America's CDC that laboratories *lowered their testing amplification*. Dr David Samadi, a certified urologist and health writer, said the WHO was encouraging all labs to reduce their cycle count for PCR tests. He said the current cycle was much too high and was 'resulting in any particle being declared a positive case'. Even one mainstream news report I saw said this meant the number of 'Covid' infections may have been 'dramatically inflated'. Oh, just a little bit. The CDC in America issued new guidance to laboratories in April, 2021, to use 28 cycles *but only for 'vaccinated' people*. The timing of the CDC/WHO interventions were cynically designed to make it appear the 'vaccines' were responsible for falling cases and deaths when the real reason can be seen in the following examples. New York's state lab, the Wadsworth Center, identified 872 positive tests in July, 2020, based on a threshold of 40 cycles. When the figure was lowered to 35 cycles *43 percent* of the 872 were no longer 'positives'. At 30 cycles the figure was 63 percent. A Massachusetts lab found that between *85 to 90 percent* of people who tested positive in July with a cycle threshold of 40 would be negative at 30 cycles, Ashish Jha, MD, director of the Harvard Global Health Institute, said: 'I'm really shocked that it could be that high ... Boy, does it really change the way we need to be thinking about testing.' I'm shocked that I could see the obvious in the spring of 2020, with no medical background, and most medical professionals still haven't worked it out. No, that's not shocking – it's terrifying.

Three weeks after the WHO directive to lower PCR cycles the London *Daily Mail* ran this headline: 'Why ARE Covid cases plummeting? New infections have fallen 45% in the US and 30% globally in the past 3 weeks but experts say vaccine is NOT the main driver because only 8% of Americans and 13% of people worldwide have received their first dose.' They acknowledged that the drop could not be attributed to the 'vaccine', but soon this morphed throughout the media into the 'vaccine' has caused cases and deaths to fall when it was the PCR threshold. In December, 2020, there was

chaos at English Channel ports with truck drivers needing negative 'Covid' tests before they could board a ferry home for Christmas. The government wanted to remove the backlog as fast as possible and they brought in troops to do the 'testing'. Out of 1,600 drivers just 36 tested positive and the rest were given the all clear to cross the Channel. I guess the authorities thought that 36 was the least they could get away with without the unquestioning catching on. The amplification trick which most people believed in the absence of information in the mainstream applied more pressure on those refusing the 'vaccine' to succumb when it 'obviously worked'. The truth was the exact opposite with deaths in care homes soaring with the 'vaccine' and in Israel the term used was 'skyrocket'. A re-analysis of published data from the Israeli Health Ministry led by Dr Hervé Seligmann at the Medicine Emerging Infectious and Tropical Diseases at Aix-Marseille University found that Pfizer's 'Covid vaccine' killed 'about 40 times more [elderly] people than the disease itself would have killed' during a five-week vaccination period and 260 *times* more younger people than would have died from the 'virus' even according to the manipulated 'virus' figures. Dr Seligmann and his co-study author, Haim Yativ, declared after reviewing the Israeli 'vaccine' death data: 'This is a new Holocaust.'

Then, in mid-April, 2021, after vast numbers of people worldwide had been 'vaccinated', the story changed with clear coordination. The UK government began to prepare the ground for more future lockdowns when Nuremberg-destined Boris Johnson told yet another whopper. He said that cases had fallen because of *lockdowns* not 'vaccines'. Lockdowns are irrelevant when *there is no 'virus'* and the test and fraudulent death certificates are deciding the number of 'cases' and 'deaths'. Study after study has shown that lockdowns don't work and instead kill and psychologically destroy people. Meanwhile in the United States Anthony Fauci and Rochelle Walensky, the ultra-Zionist head of the CDC, peddled the same line. More lockdown was the answer and not the 'vaccine', a line repeated on cue by the moron that is Canadian Prime Minister Justin Trudeau. Why all the hysteria to get everyone 'vaccinated' if lockdowns and

not ‘vaccines’ made the difference? None of it makes sense on the face of it. Oh, but it does. The Cult wants lockdowns *and* the ‘vaccine’ and if the ‘vaccine’ is allowed to be seen as the total answer lockdowns would no longer be justified when there are still livelihoods to destroy. ‘Variants’ and renewed upward manipulation of PCR amplification are planned to instigate never-ending lockdown *and* more ‘vaccines’.

## **You must have it – we’re desperate**

Israel, where the Jewish and Arab population are ruled by the Sabbatian Cult, was the front-runner in imposing the DNA-manipulating ‘vaccine’ on its people to such an extent that Jewish refusers began to liken what was happening to the early years of Nazi Germany. This would seem to be a fantastic claim. Why would a government of Jewish people be acting like the Nazis did? If you realise that the Sabbatian Cult was behind the Nazis and that Sabbatians hate Jews the pieces start to fit and the question of why a ‘Jewish’ government would treat Jews with such callous disregard for their lives and freedom finds an answer. Those controlling the government of Israel *aren’t Jewish* – they’re Sabbatian. Israeli lawyer Tamir Turgal was one who made the Nazi comparison in comments to German lawyer Reiner Fuellmich who is leading a class action lawsuit against the psychopaths for crimes against humanity. Turgal described how the Israeli government was vaccinating children and pregnant women on the basis that there was no evidence that this was dangerous when they had no evidence that it *wasn’t* dangerous either. They just had no evidence. This was medical experimentation and Turgal said this breached the Nuremberg Code about medical experimentation and procedures requiring informed consent and choice. Think about that. A Nuremberg Code developed because of Nazi experimentation on Jews and others in concentration camps by people like the evil-beyond-belief Josef Mengele is being breached by the *Israeli* government; but when you know that it’s a *Sabbatian* government along with its intelligence and military agencies like Mossad, Shin Bet and the Israeli Defense Forces, and that Sabbatians

were the force behind the Nazis, the kaleidoscope comes into focus. What have we come to when Israeli Jews are suing their government for violating the Nuremberg Code by essentially making Israelis subject to a medical experiment using the controversial 'vaccines'? It's a shocker that this has to be done in the light of what happened in Nazi Germany. The Anshe Ha-Emet, or 'People of the Truth', made up of Israeli doctors, lawyers, campaigners and public, have launched a lawsuit with the International Criminal Court. It says:

When the heads of the Ministry of Health as well as the prime minister presented the vaccine in Israel and began the vaccination of Israeli residents, the vaccinated were not advised, that, in practice, they are taking part in a medical experiment and that their consent is required for this under the Nuremberg Code.

The irony is unbelievable, but easily explained in one word: Sabbatians. The foundation of Israeli 'Covid' apartheid is the 'green pass' or 'green passport' which allows Jews and Arabs who have had the DNA-manipulating 'vaccine' to go about their lives – to work, fly, travel in general, go to shopping malls, bars, restaurants, hotels, concerts, gyms, swimming pools, theatres and sports venues, while non-'vaccinated' are banned from all those places and activities. Israelis have likened the 'green pass' to the yellow stars that Jews in Nazi Germany were forced to wear – the same as the yellow stickers that a branch of UK supermarket chain Morrisons told exempt mask-wears they had to display when shopping. How very sensitive. The Israeli system is blatant South African-style apartheid on the basis of compliance or non-compliance to fascism rather than colour of the skin. How appropriate that the Sabbatian Israeli government was so close to the pre-Mandela apartheid regime in Pretoria. The Sabbatian-instigated 'vaccine passport' in Israel is planned for everywhere. Sabbatians struck a deal with Pfizer that allowed them to lead the way in the percentage of a national population infused with synthetic material and the result was catastrophic. Israeli freedom activist Shai Dannon told me how chairs were appearing on beaches that said 'vaccinated only'. Health Minister Yuli Edelstein said that anyone unwilling or unable to get

the jabs that ‘confer immunity’ will be ‘left behind’. The man’s a liar. Not even the makers claim the ‘vaccines’ confer immunity. When you see those figures of ‘vaccine’ deaths these psychopaths were saying that you must take the chance the ‘vaccine’ will kill you or maim you while knowing it will change your DNA or lockdown for you will be permanent. That’s fascism. The Israeli parliament passed a law to allow personal information of the non-vaccinated to be shared with local and national authorities for three months. This was claimed by its supporters to be a way to ‘encourage’ people to be vaccinated. Hadas Ziv from Physicians for Human Rights described this as a ‘draconian law which crushed medical ethics and the patient rights’. But that’s the idea, the Sabbatians would reply.

## **Your papers, please**

Sabbatian Israel was leading what has been planned all along to be a global ‘vaccine pass’ called a ‘green passport’ without which you would remain in permanent lockdown restriction and unable to do anything. This is how badly – *desperately* – the Cult is to get everyone ‘vaccinated’. The term and colour ‘green’ was not by chance and related to the psychology of fusing the perception of the green climate hoax with the ‘Covid’ hoax and how the ‘solution’ to both is the same Great Reset. Lying politicians, health officials and psychologists denied there were any plans for mandatory vaccinations or restrictions based on vaccinations, but they knew that was exactly what was meant to happen with governments of all countries reaching agreements to enforce a global system. ‘Free’ Denmark and ‘free’ Sweden unveiled digital vaccine certification. Cyprus, Czech Republic, Estonia, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Italy, Poland, Portugal, Slovakia, and Spain have all committed to a vaccine passport system and the rest including the whole of the EU would follow. The satanic UK government will certainly go this way despite mendacious denials and at the time of writing it is trying to manipulate the public into having the ‘vaccine’ so they could go abroad on a summer holiday. How would that work without something to prove you had the synthetic toxicity injected into you?

Documents show that the EU's European Commission was moving towards 'vaccine certificates' in 2018 and 2019 before the 'Covid' hoax began. They knew what was coming. Abracadabra – Ursula von der Leyen, the German President of the Commission, announced in March, 2021, an EU 'Digital Green Certificate' – green again – to track the public's 'Covid status'. The passport sting is worldwide and the Far East followed the same pattern with South Korea ruling that only those with 'vaccination' passports – again the *green* pass – would be able to 'return to their daily lives'.

Bill Gates has been preparing for this 'passport' with other Cult operatives for years and beyond the paper version is a Gates-funded 'digital tattoo' to identify who has been vaccinated and who hasn't. The 'tattoo' is reported to include a substance which is externally readable to confirm who has been vaccinated. This is a bio-luminous light-generating enzyme (think fireflies) called ... *Luciferase*. Yes, named after the Cult 'god' Lucifer the 'light bringer' of whom more to come. Gates said he funded the readable tattoo to ensure children in the developing world were vaccinated and no one was missed out. He cares so much about poor kids as we know. This was just the cover story to develop a vaccine tagging system for everyone on the planet. Gates has been funding the ID2020 'alliance' to do just that in league with other lovely people at Microsoft, GAVI, the Rockefeller Foundation, Accenture and IDEO.org. He said in interviews in March, 2020, before any 'vaccine' publicly existed, that the world must have a globalised digital certificate to track the 'virus' and who had been vaccinated. Gates knew from the start that the mRNA vaccines were coming and when they would come and that the plan was to tag the 'vaccinated' to marginalise the intelligent and stop them doing anything including travel. Evil just doesn't suffice. Gates was exposed for offering a \$10 million bribe to the Nigerian House of Representatives to invoke compulsory 'Covid' vaccination of all Nigerians. Sara Cunial, a member of the Italian Parliament, called Gates a 'vaccine criminal'. She urged the Italian President to hand him over to the International Criminal Court for crimes against

humanity and condemned his plans to 'chip the human race' through ID2020.

You know it's a long-planned agenda when war criminal and Cult gofer Tony Blair is on the case. With the scale of arrogance only someone as dark as Blair can muster he said: 'Vaccination in the end is going to be your route to liberty.' Blair is a disgusting piece of work and he confirms that again. The media has given a lot of coverage to a bloke called Charlie Mullins, founder of London's biggest independent plumbing company, Pimlico Plumbers, who has said he won't employ anyone who has not been vaccinated or have them go to any home where people are not vaccinated. He said that if he had his way no one would be allowed to walk the streets if they have not been vaccinated. Gates was cheering at the time while I was alerting the white coats. The plan is that people will qualify for 'passports' for having the first two doses and then to keep it they will have to have all the follow ups and new ones for invented 'variants' until human genetics is transformed and many are dead who can't adjust to the changes. Hollywood celebrities – the usual propaganda stunt – are promoting something called the WELL Health-Safety Rating to verify that a building or space has 'taken the necessary steps to prioritize the health and safety of their staff, visitors and other stakeholders'. They included Lady Gaga, Jennifer Lopez, Michael B. Jordan, Robert DeNiro, Venus Williams, Wolfgang Puck, Deepak Chopra and 17th Surgeon General Richard Carmona. Yawn. WELL Health-Safety has big connections with China. Parent company Delos is headed by former Goldman Sachs partner Paul Scialla. This is another example – and we will see so many others – of using the excuse of 'health' to dictate the lives and activities of the population. I guess one confirmation of the 'safety' of buildings is that only 'vaccinated' people can go in, right?

## **Electronic concentration camps**

I wrote decades ago about the plans to restrict travel and here we are for those who refuse to bow to tyranny. This can be achieved in one go with air travel if the aviation industry makes a blanket decree.

The ‘vaccine’ and guaranteed income are designed to be part of a global version of China’s social credit system which tracks behaviour 24/7 and awards or deletes ‘credits’ based on whether your behaviour is supported by the state or not. I mean your entire lifestyle – what you do, eat, say, everything. Once your credit score falls below a certain level consequences kick in. In China tens of millions have been denied travel by air and train because of this. All the locations and activities denied to refusers by the ‘vaccine’ passports will be included in one big mass ban on doing almost anything for those that don’t bow their head to government. It’s beyond fascist and a new term is required to describe its extremes – I guess fascist technocracy will have to do. The way the Chinese system of technological – technocratic – control is sweeping the West can be seen in the Los Angeles school system and is planned to be expanded worldwide. Every child is required to have a ‘Covid’-tracking app scanned daily before they can enter the classroom. The so-called Daily Pass tracking system is produced by Gates’ Microsoft which I’m sure will shock you rigid. The pass will be scanned using a barcode (one step from an inside-the-body barcode) and the information will include health checks, ‘Covid’ tests and vaccinations. Entry codes are for one specific building only and access will only be allowed if a student or teacher has a negative test with a test not testing for the ‘virus’, has no symptoms of anything alleged to be related to ‘Covid’ (symptoms from a range of other illness), and has a temperature under 100 degrees. No barcode, no entry, is planned to be the case for everywhere and not only schools.

Kids are being psychologically prepared to accept this as ‘normal’ their whole life which is why what they can impose in schools is so important to the Cult and its gofers. Long-time American freedom campaigner John Whitehead of the Rutherford Institute was not exaggerating when he said: ‘Databit by databit, we are building our own electronic concentration camps.’ Canada under its Cult gofer prime minister Justin Trudeau has taken a major step towards the real thing with people interned against their will if they test positive with a test not testing for the ‘virus’ when they arrive at a Canadian

airport. They are jailed in internment hotels often without food or water for long periods and with many doors failing to lock there have been sexual assaults. The interned are being charged sometimes \$2,000 for the privilege of being abused in this way. Trudeau is fully on board with the Cult and says the 'Covid pandemic' has provided an opportunity for a global 'reset' to permanently change Western civilisation. His number two, Deputy Prime Minister Chrystia Freeland, is a trustee of the World Economic Forum and a Rhodes Scholar. The Trudeau family have long been servants of the Cult. See *The Biggest Secret* and Cathy O'Brien's book *Trance-Formation of America* for the horrific background to Trudeau's father Pierre Trudeau another Canadian prime minister. Hide your fascism behind the façade of a heart-on-the-sleeve liberal. It's a well-honed Cult technique.

## **What can the 'vaccine' really do?**

We have a 'virus' never shown to exist and 'variants' of the 'virus' that have also never been shown to exist except, like the 'original', as computer-generated fictions. Even if you believe there's a 'virus' the 'case' to 'death' rate is in the region of 0.23 to 0.15 percent and those 'deaths' are concentrated among the very old around the same average age that people die anyway. In response to this lack of threat (in truth none) psychopaths and idiots, knowingly and unknowingly answering to Gates and the Cult, are seeking to 'vaccinate' every man, woman and child on Planet Earth. Clearly the 'vaccine' is not about 'Covid' – none of this ever has been. So what is it all about *really*? Why the desperation to infuse genetically-manipulating synthetic material into everyone through mRNA fraudulent 'vaccines' with the intent of doing this over and over with the excuses of 'variants' and other 'virus' inventions? Dr Sherri Tenpenny, an osteopathic medical doctor in the United States, has made herself an expert on vaccines and their effects as a vehement campaigner against their use. Tenpenny was board certified in emergency medicine, the director of a level two trauma centre for 12 years, and moved to Cleveland in 1996 to start an integrative

medicine practice which has treated patients from all 50 states and some 17 other countries. Weaning people off pharmaceutical drugs is a speciality.

She became interested in the consequences of vaccines after attending a meeting at the National Vaccine Information Center in Washington DC in 2000 where she 'sat through four days of listening to medical doctors and scientists and lawyers and parents of vaccine injured kids' and asked: 'What's going on?' She had never been vaccinated and never got ill while her father was given a list of vaccines to be in the military and was 'sick his entire life'. The experience added to her questions and she began to examine vaccine documents from the Centers for Disease Control (CDC). After reading the first one, the 1998 version of *The General Recommendations of Vaccination*, she thought: 'This is it?' The document was poorly written and bad science and Tenpenny began 20 years of research into vaccines that continues to this day. She began her research into 'Covid vaccines' in March, 2020, and she describes them as 'deadly'. For many, as we have seen, they already have been. Tenpenny said that in the first 30 days of the 'vaccine' rollout in the United States there had been more than 40,000 adverse events reported to the vaccine adverse event database. A document had been delivered to her the day before that was 172 pages long. 'We have over 40,000 adverse events; we have over 3,100 cases of [potentially deadly] anaphylactic shock; we have over 5,000 neurological reactions.' Effects ranged from headaches to numbness, dizziness and vertigo, to losing feeling in hands or feet and paraesthesia which is when limbs 'fall asleep' and people have the sensation of insects crawling underneath their skin. All this happened in the first 30 days and remember that only about *ten percent* (or far less) of adverse reactions and vaccine-related deaths are estimated to be officially reported. Tenpenny said:

So can you think of one single product in any industry, any industry, for as long as products have been made on the planet that within 30 days we have 40,000 people complaining of side effects that not only is still on the market but ... we've got paid actors telling us how great

they are for getting their vaccine. We're offering people \$500 if they will just get their vaccine and we've got nurses and doctors going; 'I got the vaccine, I got the vaccine'.

Tenpenny said they were not going to be 'happy dancing folks' when they began to suffer Bell's palsy (facial paralysis), neuropathies, cardiac arrhythmias and autoimmune reactions that kill through a blood disorder. 'They're not going to be so happy, happy then, but we're never going to see pictures of those people' she said. Tenpenny described the 'vaccine' as 'a well-designed killing tool'.

## **No off-switch**

Bad as the initial consequences had been Tenpenny said it would be maybe 14 months before we began to see the 'full ravage' of what is going to happen to the 'Covid vaccinated' with full-out consequences taking anything between two years and 20 years to show. You can understand why when you consider that variations of the 'Covid vaccine' use mRNA (messenger RNA) to in theory activate the immune system to produce protective antibodies without using the actual 'virus'. How can they when it's a computer program and they've never isolated what they claim is the 'real thing'? Instead they use *synthetic* mRNA. They are inoculating synthetic material into the body which through a technique known as the Trojan horse is absorbed into cells to change the nature of DNA. Human DNA is changed by an infusion of messenger RNA and with each new 'vaccine' of this type it is changed even more. Say so and you are banned by Cult Internet platforms. The contempt the contemptuous Mark Zuckerberg has for the truth and human health can be seen in an internal Facebook video leaked to the Project Veritas investigative team in which he said of the 'Covid vaccines': '... I share some caution on this because we just don't know the long term side-effects of basically modifying people's DNA and RNA.' At the same time this disgusting man's Facebook was censoring and banning anyone saying exactly the same. He must go before a Nuremberg trial for crimes against humanity when he *knows* that he

is censoring legitimate concerns and denying the right of informed consent on behalf of the Cult that owns him. People have been killed and damaged by the very ‘vaccination’ technique he cast doubt on himself when they may not have had the ‘vaccine’ with access to information that he denied them. The plan is to have at least annual ‘Covid vaccinations’, add others to deal with invented ‘variants’, and change all other vaccines into the mRNA system. Pfizer executives told shareholders at a virtual Barclays Global Healthcare Conference in March, 2021, that the public may need a third dose of ‘Covid vaccine’, plus regular yearly boosters and the company planned to hike prices to milk the profits in a ‘significant opportunity for our vaccine’. These are the professional liars, cheats and opportunists who are telling you their ‘vaccine’ is safe. Given this volume of mRNA planned to be infused into the human body and its ability to then replicate we will have a transformation of human genetics from biological to synthetic biological – exactly the long-time Cult plan for reasons we’ll see – and many will die. Sherri Tenpenny said of this replication:

It’s like having an on-button but no off-button and that whole mechanism ... they actually give it a name and they call it the Trojan horse mechanism, because it allows that [synthetic] virus and that piece of that [synthetic] virus to get inside of your cells, start to replicate and even get inserted into other parts of your DNA as a Trojan-horse.

Ask the overwhelming majority of people who have the ‘vaccine’ what they know about the contents and what they do and they would reply: ‘The government says it will stop me getting the virus.’ Governments give that false impression on purpose to increase take-up. You can read Sherri Tenpenny’s detailed analysis of the health consequences in her blog at [Vaxxter.com](http://Vaxxter.com), but in summary these are some of them. She highlights the statement by Bill Gates about how human beings can become their own ‘vaccine manufacturing machine’. The man is insane. [‘Vaccine’-generated] ‘antibodies’ carry synthetic messenger RNA into the cells and the damage starts, Tenpenny contends, and she says that lungs can be adversely affected through varying degrees of pus and bleeding which

obviously affects breathing and would be dubbed ‘Covid-19’. Even more sinister was the impact of ‘antibodies’ on macrophages, a white blood cell of the immune system. They consist of Type 1 and Type 2 which have very different functions. She said Type 1 are ‘hyper-vigilant’ white blood cells which ‘gobble up’ bacteria etc. However, in doing so, this could cause inflammation and in extreme circumstances be fatal. She says these affects are mitigated by Type 2 macrophages which kick in to calm down the system and stop it going rogue. They clear up dead tissue debris and reduce inflammation that the Type 1 ‘fire crews’ have caused. Type 1 kills the infection and Type 2 heals the damage, she says. This is her punchline with regard to ‘Covid vaccinations’: She says that mRNA ‘antibodies’ block Type 2 macrophages by attaching to them and deactivating them. This meant that when the Type 1 response was triggered by infection there was nothing to stop that getting out of hand by calming everything down. There’s an on-switch, but no off-switch, she says. What follows can be ‘over and out, see you when I see you’.

## **Genetic suicide**

Tenpenny also highlights the potential for autoimmune disease – the body attacking itself – which has been associated with vaccines since they first appeared. Infusing a synthetic foreign substance into cells could cause the immune system to react in a panic believing that the body is being overwhelmed by an invader (it is) and the consequences can again be fatal. There is an autoimmune response known as a ‘cytokine storm’ which I have likened to a homeowner panicked by an intruder and picking up a gun to shoot randomly in all directions before turning the fire on himself. The immune system unleashes a storm of inflammatory response called cytokines to a threat and the body commits hara-kiri. The lesson is that you mess with the body’s immune response at your peril and these ‘vaccines’ seriously – fundamentally – mess with immune response. Tenpenny refers to a consequence called anaphylactic shock which is a severe and highly dangerous allergic reaction when the immune system

floods the body with chemicals. She gives the example of having a bee sting which primes the immune system and makes it sensitive to those chemicals. When people are stung again maybe years later the immune response can be so powerful that it leads to anaphylactic shock. Tenpenny relates this 'shock' with regard to the 'Covid vaccine' to something called polyethylene glycol or PEG. Enormous numbers of people have become sensitive to this over decades of use in a whole range of products and processes including food, drink, skin creams and 'medicine'. Studies have claimed that some 72 percent of people have antibodies triggered by PEG compared with two percent in the 1960s and allergic hypersensitive reactions to this become a gathering cause for concern. Tenpenny points out that the 'mRNA vaccine' is coated in a 'bubble' of polyethylene glycol which has the potential to cause anaphylactic shock through immune sensitivity. Many reports have appeared of people reacting this way after having the 'Covid vaccine'. What do we think is going to happen as humanity has more and more of these 'vaccines'?

Tenpenny said: 'All these pictures we have seen with people with these rashes ... these weepy rashes, big reactions on their arms and things like that – it's an acute allergic reaction most likely to the polyethylene glycol that you've been previously primed and sensitised to.'

Those who have not studied the conspiracy and its perpetrators at length might think that making the population sensitive to PEG and then putting it in these 'vaccines' is just a coincidence. It is not. It is instead testament to how carefully and coldly-planned current events have been and the scale of the conspiracy we are dealing with. Tenpenny further explains that the 'vaccine' mRNA procedure can breach the blood-brain barrier which protects the brain from toxins and other crap that will cause malfunction. In this case they could make two proteins corrupt brain function to cause Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), a progressive nervous system disease leading to loss of muscle control, and frontal lobe degeneration – Alzheimer's and dementia. Immunologist J. Bart Classon published a paper connecting mRNA 'vaccines' to prion

disease which can lead to Alzheimer's and other forms of neurodegenerative disease while others have pointed out the potential to affect the placenta in ways that make women infertile. This will become highly significant in the next chapter when I will discuss other aspects of this non-vaccine that relate to its nanotechnology and transmission from the injected to the uninjected.

## **Qualified in idiocy**

Tenpenny describes how research has confirmed that these 'vaccine'-generated antibodies can interact with a range of other tissues in the body and attack many other organs including the lungs. 'This means that if you have a hundred people standing in front of you that all got this shot they could have a hundred different symptoms.'

Anyone really think that Cult gofers like the Queen, Tony Blair, Christopher Whitty, Anthony Fauci, and all the other psychopaths have really had this 'vaccine' in the pictures we've seen? Not a bloody chance. Why don't doctors all tell us about all these dangers and consequences of the 'Covid vaccine'? Why instead do they encourage and pressure patients to have the shot? Don't let's think for a moment that doctors and medical staff can't be stupid, lazy, and psychopathic and that's without the financial incentives to give the jab. Tenpenny again:

Some people are going to die from the vaccine directly but a large number of people are going to start to get horribly sick and get all kinds of autoimmune diseases 42 days to maybe a year out. What are they going to do, these stupid doctors who say; 'Good for you for getting that vaccine.' What are they going to say; 'Oh, it must be a mutant, we need to give an extra dose of that vaccine.'

Because now the vaccine, instead of one dose or two doses we need three or four because the stupid physicians aren't taking the time to learn anything about it. If I can learn this sitting in my living room reading a 19 page paper and several others so can they. There's nothing special about me, I just take the time to do it.

Remember how Sara Kayat, the NHS and TV doctor, said that the 'Covid vaccine' would '100 percent prevent hospitalisation and death'. Doctors can be idiots like every other profession and they

should not be worshipped as infallible. They are not and far from it. Behind many medical and scientific ‘experts’ lies an uninformed prat trying to hide themselves from you although in the ‘Covid’ era many have failed to do so as with UK narrative-repeating ‘TV doctor’ Hilary Jones. Pushing back against the minority of proper doctors and scientists speaking out against the ‘vaccine’ has been the entire edifice of the Cult global state in the form of governments, medical systems, corporations, mainstream media, Silicon Valley, and an army of compliant doctors, medical staff and scientists willing to say anything for money and to enhance their careers by promoting the party line. If you do that you are an ‘expert’ and if you won’t you are an ‘anti-vaxxer’ and ‘Covidiot’. The pressure to be ‘vaccinated’ is incessant. We have even had reports claiming that the ‘vaccine’ can help cure cancer and Alzheimer’s and make the lame walk. I am waiting for the announcement that it can bring you coffee in the morning and cook your tea. Just as the symptoms of ‘Covid’ seem to increase by the week so have the miracles of the ‘vaccine’. American supermarket giant Kroger Co. offered nearly 500,000 employees in 35 states a \$100 bonus for having the ‘vaccine’ while donut chain Krispy Kreme promised ‘vaccinated’ customers a free glazed donut every day for the rest of 2021. Have your DNA changed and you will get a doughnut although we might not have to give you them for long. Such offers and incentives confirm the desperation.

Perhaps the worse vaccine-stunt of them all was UK ‘Health’ Secretary Matt-the-prat Hancock on live TV after watching a clip of someone being ‘vaccinated’ when the roll-out began. Hancock faked tears so badly it was embarrassing. Brain-of-Britain Piers Morgan, the lockdown-supporting, ‘vaccine’ supporting, ‘vaccine’ passport-supporting, TV host played along with Hancock – ‘You’re quite emotional about that’ he said in response to acting so atrocious it would have been called out at a school nativity which will presumably today include Mary and Jesus in masks, wise men keeping their camels six feet apart, and shepherds under tent arrest. System-serving Morgan tweeted this: ‘Love the idea of covid vaccine passports for everywhere: flights, restaurants, clubs, football, gyms,

shops etc. It's time covid-denying, anti-vaxxer loonies had their bullsh\*t bluff called & bar themselves from going anywhere that responsible citizens go.' If only I could aspire to his genius. To think that Morgan, who specialises in shouting over anyone he disagrees with, was lauded as a free speech hero when he lost his job after storming off the set of his live show like a child throwing his dolly out of the pram. If he is a free speech hero we are in real trouble. I have no idea what 'bullsh\*t' means, by the way, the \* throws me completely.

The Cult is desperate to infuse its synthetic DNA-changing concoction into everyone and has been using every lie, trick and intimidation to do so. The question of '*Why?*' we shall now address.

## CHAPTER TEN

### Human 2.0

***I believe that at the end of the century the use of words and general educated opinion will have altered so much that one will be able to speak of machines thinking without expecting to be contradicted –***

**Alan Turing (1912-1954), the ‘Father of artificial intelligence’**

I have been exposing for decades the plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic-biological state. The new human that I will call Human 2.0 is planned to be connected to artificial intelligence and a global AI ‘Smart Grid’ that would operate as one global system in which AI would control everything from your fridge to your heating system to your car to your mind. Humans would no longer be ‘human’, but post-human and sub-human, with their thinking and emotional processes replaced by AI.

What I said sounded crazy and beyond science fiction and I could understand that. To any balanced, rational, mind it *is* crazy. Today, however, that world is becoming reality and it puts the ‘Covid vaccine’ into its true context. Ray Kurzweil is the ultra-Zionist ‘computer scientist, inventor and futurist’ and co-founder of the Singularity University. Singularity refers to the merging of humans with machines or ‘transhumanism’. Kurzweil has said humanity would be connected to the cyber ‘cloud’ in the period of the ever-recurring year of 2030:

Our thinking ... will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking ... humans will be able to extend their limitations and ‘think in the cloud’ ... We’re going to put gateways to the

cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being human – we transcend our limitations. As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.

They are trying to sell this end-of-humanity-as-we-know-it as the next stage of 'evolution' when we become super-human and 'like the gods'. They are lying to you. Shocked, eh? The population, and again especially the young, have been manipulated into addiction to technologies designed to enslave them for life. First they induced an addiction to smartphones (holdables); next they moved to technology on the body (wearables); and then began the invasion of the body (implantables). I warned way back about the plan for microchipped people and we are now entering that era. We should not be diverted into thinking that this refers only to chips we can see. Most important are the nanochips known as smart dust, neural dust and nanobots which are far too small to be seen by the human eye. Nanotechnology is everywhere, increasingly in food products, and released into the atmosphere by the geoengineering of the skies funded by Bill Gates to 'shut out the Sun' and 'save the planet from global warming'. Gates has been funding a project to spray millions of tonnes of chalk (calcium carbonate) into the stratosphere over Sweden to 'dim the Sun' and cool the Earth. Scientists warned the move could be disastrous for weather systems in ways no one can predict and opposition led to the Swedish space agency announcing that the 'experiment' would not be happening as planned in the summer of 2021; but it shows where the Cult is going with dimming the impact of the Sun and there's an associated plan to change the planet's atmosphere. Who gives psychopath Gates the right to dictate to the entire human race and dismantle planetary systems? The world will not be safe while this man is at large.

The global warming hoax has made the Sun, like the gas of life, something to fear when both are essential to good health and human survival (more inversion). The body transforms sunlight into vital vitamin D through a process involving ... *cholesterol*. This is the cholesterol we are also told to fear. We are urged to take Big Pharma

statin drugs to reduce cholesterol and it's all systematic. Reducing cholesterol means reducing vitamin D uptake with all the multiple health problems that will cause. At least if you take statins long term it saves the government from having to pay you a pension. The delivery system to block sunlight is widely referred to as chemtrails although these have a much deeper agenda, too. They appear at first to be contrails or condensation trails streaming from aircraft into cold air at high altitudes. Contrails disperse very quickly while chemtrails do not and spread out across the sky before eventually their content falls to earth. Many times I have watched aircraft cross-cross a clear blue sky releasing chemtrails until it looks like a cloudy day. Chemtrails contain many things harmful to humans and the natural world including toxic heavy metals, aluminium (see Alzheimer's) and nanotechnology. Ray Kurzweil reveals the reason without actually saying so: 'Nanobots will infuse all the matter around us with information. Rocks, trees, everything will become these intelligent creatures.' How do you deliver that? *From the sky.* Self-replicating nanobots would connect everything to the Smart Grid. The phenomenon of Morgellons disease began in the chemtrail era and the correlation has led to it being dubbed the 'chemtrail disease'. Self-replicating fibres appear in the body that can be pulled out through the skin. Morgellons fibres continue to grow outside the body and have a form of artificial intelligence. I cover this at greater length in *Phantom Self*.

## **'Vaccine' operating system**

'Covid vaccines' with their self-replicating synthetic material are also designed to make the connection between humanity and Kurzweil's 'cloud'. American doctor and dedicated campaigner for truth, Carrie Madej, an Internal Medicine Specialist in Georgia with more than 20 years medical experience, has highlighted the nanotechnology aspect of the fake 'vaccines'. She explains how one of the components in at least the Moderna and Pfizer synthetic potions are 'lipid nanoparticles' which are 'like little tiny computer bits' – a 'sci-fi substance' known as nanobots and hydrogel which can be 'triggered

at any moment to deliver its payload' and act as 'biosensors'. The synthetic substance had 'the ability to accumulate data from your body like your breathing, your respiration, thoughts and emotions, all kind of things' and each syringe could carry a *million* nanobots:

This substance because it's like little bits of computers in your body, crazy, but it's true, it can do that, [and] obviously has the ability to act through Wi-Fi. It can receive and transmit energy, messages, frequencies or impulses. That issue has never been addressed by these companies. What does that do to the human?

Just imagine getting this substance in you and it can react to things all around you, the 5G, your smart device, your phones, what is happening with that? What if something is triggering it, too, like an impulse, a frequency? We have something completely foreign in the human body.

Madej said her research revealed that electromagnetic (EMF) frequencies emitted by phones and other devices had increased dramatically in the same period of the 'vaccine' rollout and she was seeing more people with radiation problems as 5G and other electromagnetic technology was expanded and introduced to schools and hospitals. She said she was 'floored with the EMF coming off' the devices she checked. All this makes total sense and syncs with my own work of decades when you think that Moderna refers in documents to its mRNA 'vaccine' as an 'operating system':

Recognizing the broad potential of mRNA science, we set out to create an mRNA technology platform that functions very much like an operating system on a computer. It is designed so that it can plug and play interchangeably with different programs. In our case, the 'program' or 'app' is our mRNA drug – the unique mRNA sequence that codes for a protein ...

... Our mRNA Medicines – 'The Software Of Life': When we have a concept for a new mRNA medicine and begin research, fundamental components are already in place. Generally, the only thing that changes from one potential mRNA medicine to another is the coding region – the actual genetic code that instructs ribosomes to make protein. Utilizing these instruction sets gives our investigational mRNA medicines a software-like quality. We also have the ability to combine different mRNA sequences encoding for different proteins in a single mRNA investigational medicine.

Who needs a real ‘virus’ when you can create a computer version to justify infusing your operating system into the entire human race on the road to making living, breathing people into cyborgs? What is missed with the ‘vaccines’ is the *digital* connection between synthetic material and the body that I highlighted earlier with the study that hacked a computer with human DNA. On one level the body is digital, based on mathematical codes, and I’ll have more about that in the next chapter. Those who ridiculously claim that mRNA ‘vaccines’ are not designed to change human genetics should explain the words of Dr Tal Zaks, chief medical officer at Moderna, in a 2017 TED talk. He said that over the last 30 years ‘we’ve been living this phenomenal digital scientific revolution, and I’m here today to tell you, that we are actually *hacking the software of life*, and that it’s changing the way we think about prevention and treatment of disease’:

In every cell there’s this thing called messenger RNA, or mRNA for short, that transmits the critical information from the DNA in our genes to the protein, which is really the stuff we’re all made out of. This is the critical information that determines what the cell will do. So we think about it as an operating system. So if you could change that, if you could introduce a line of code, or change a line of code, it turns out, that has profound implications for everything, from the flu to cancer.

Zaks should more accurately have said that this has profound implications for the human genetic code and the nature of DNA. Communications within the body go both ways and not only one. But, hey, no, the ‘Covid vaccine’ will not affect your genetics. Cult fact-checkers say so even though the man who helped to develop the mRNA technique says that it does. Zaks said in 2017:

If you think about what it is we’re trying to do. We’ve taken information and our understanding of that information and how that information is transmitted in a cell, and we’ve taken our understanding of medicine and how to make drugs, and we’re fusing the two. We think of it as information therapy.

I have been writing for decades that the body is an information field communicating with itself and the wider world. This is why

radiation which is information can change the information field of body and mind through phenomena like 5G and change their nature and function. ‘Information therapy’ means to change the body’s information field and change the way it operates. DNA is a receiver-transmitter of information and can be mutated by information like mRNA synthetic messaging. Technology to do this has been ready and waiting in the underground bases and other secret projects to be rolled out when the ‘Covid’ hoax was played. ‘Trials’ of such short and irrelevant duration were only for public consumption. When they say the ‘vaccine’ is ‘experimental’ that is not true. It may appear to be ‘experimental’ to those who don’t know what’s going on, but the trials have already been done to ensure the Cult gets the result it desires. Zaks said that it took decades to sequence the human genome, completed in 2003, but now they could do it in a week. By ‘they’ he means scientists operating in the public domain. In the secret projects they were sequencing the genome in a week long before even 2003.

## **Deluge of mRNA**

Highly significantly the Moderna document says the guiding premise is that if using mRNA as a medicine works for one disease then it should work for many diseases. They were leveraging the flexibility afforded by their platform and the fundamental role mRNA plays in protein synthesis to pursue mRNA medicines for a broad spectrum of diseases. Moderna is confirming what I was saying through 2020 that multiple ‘vaccines’ were planned for ‘Covid’ (and later invented ‘variants’) and that previous vaccines would be converted to the mRNA system to infuse the body with massive amounts of genetically-manipulating synthetic material to secure a transformation to a synthetic-biological state. The ‘vaccines’ are designed to kill stunning numbers as part of the long-exposed Cult depopulation agenda and transform the rest. Given this is the goal you can appreciate why there is such hysterical demand for every human to be ‘vaccinated’ for an alleged ‘disease’ that has an estimated ‘infection’ to ‘death’ ratio of 0.23-0.15 percent. As I write

children are being given the ‘vaccine’ in trials (their parents are a disgrace) and ever-younger people are being offered the vaccine for a ‘virus’ that even if you believe it exists has virtually zero chance of harming them. Horrific effects of the ‘trials’ on a 12-year-old girl were revealed by a family member to be serious brain and gastric problems that included a bowel obstruction and the inability to swallow liquids or solids. She was unable to eat or drink without throwing up, had extreme pain in her back, neck and abdomen, and was paralysed from the waist down which stopped her urinating unaided. When the girl was first taken to hospital doctors said it was all in her mind. She was signed up for the ‘trial’ by her parents for whom no words suffice. None of this ‘Covid vaccine’ insanity makes any sense unless you see what the ‘vaccine’ really is – a body-changer. Synthetic biology or ‘SynBio’ is a fast-emerging and expanding scientific discipline which includes everything from genetic and molecular engineering to electrical and computer engineering. Synthetic biology is defined in these ways:

- A multidisciplinary area of research that seeks to create new biological parts, devices, and systems, or to redesign systems that are already found in nature.
- The use of a mixture of physical engineering and genetic engineering to create new (and therefore synthetic) life forms.
- An emerging field of research that aims to combine the knowledge and methods of biology, engineering and related disciplines in the design of chemically-synthesized DNA to create organisms with novel or enhanced characteristics and traits (synthetic organisms including humans).

We now have synthetic blood, skin, organs and limbs being developed along with synthetic body parts produced by 3D printers. These are all elements of the synthetic human programme and this comment by Kurzweil’s co-founder of the Singularity University,

Peter Diamandis, can be seen in a whole new light with the 'Covid' hoax and the sanctions against those that refuse the 'vaccine':

Anybody who is going to be resisting the progress forward [to transhumanism] is going to be resisting evolution and, fundamentally, they will die out. It's not a matter of whether it's good or bad. It's going to happen.

'Resisting evolution'? What absolute bollocks. The arrogance of these people is without limit. His 'it's going to happen' mantra is another way of saying 'resistance is futile' to break the spirit of those pushing back and we must not fall for it. Getting this genetically-transforming 'vaccine' into everyone is crucial to the Cult plan for total control and the desperation to achieve that is clear for anyone to see. Vaccine passports are a major factor in this and they, too, are a form of resistance is futile. It's NOT. The paper funded by the Rockefeller Foundation for the 2013 'health conference' in China said:

We will interact more with artificial intelligence. The use of robotics, bio-engineering to augment human functioning is already well underway and will advance. Re-engineering of humans into potentially separate and unequal forms through genetic engineering or mixed human-robots raises debates on ethics and equality.

A new demography is projected to emerge after 2030 [that year again] of technologies (robotics, genetic engineering, nanotechnology) producing robots, engineered organisms, 'nanobots' and artificial intelligence (AI) that can self-replicate. Debates will grow on the implications of an impending reality of human designed life.

What is happening today is so long planned. The world army enforcing the will of the world government is intended to be a robot army, not a human one. Today's military and its technologically 'enhanced' troops, pilotless planes and driverless vehicles are just stepping stones to that end. Human soldiers are used as Cult fodder and its time they woke up to that and worked for the freedom of the population instead of their own destruction and their family's destruction – the same with the police. Join us and let's sort this out. The phenomenon of enforce my own destruction is widespread in the 'Covid' era with Woker 'luvvies' in the acting and entertainment

industries supporting ‘Covid’ rules which have destroyed their profession and the same with those among the public who put signs on the doors of their businesses ‘closed due to Covid – stay safe’ when many will never reopen. It’s a form of masochism and most certainly insanity.

## **Transgender = transhumanism**

When something explodes out of nowhere and is suddenly everywhere it is always the Cult agenda and so it is with the tidal wave of claims and demands that have infiltrated every aspect of society under the heading of ‘transgenderism’. The term ‘trans’ is so ‘in’ and this is the dictionary definition:

A prefix meaning ‘across’, ‘through’, occurring ... in loanwords from Latin, used in particular for denoting movement or conveyance from place to place (transfer; transmit; transplant) or complete change (transform; transmute), or to form adjectives meaning ‘crossing’, ‘on the other side of’, or ‘going beyond’ the place named (transmontane; transnational; trans-Siberian).

Transgender means to go beyond gender and transhuman means to go beyond human. Both are aspects of the Cult plan to transform the human body to a synthetic state with *no gender*. Human 2.0 is not designed to procreate and would be produced technologically with no need for parents. The new human would mean the end of parents and so men, and increasingly women, are being targeted for the deletion of their rights and status. Parental rights are disappearing at an ever-quickening speed for the same reason. The new human would have no need for men or women when there is no procreation and no gender. Perhaps the transgender movement that appears to be in a permanent state of frenzy might now contemplate on how it is being used. This was never about transgender rights which are only the interim excuse for confusing gender, particularly in the young, on the road to *fusing* gender. Transgender activism is not an end; it is a *means* to an end. We see again the technique of creative destruction in which you destroy the status quo to ‘build back better’ in the form that you want. The gender status quo had to be

destroyed by persuading the Cult-created Woke mentality to believe that you can have 100 genders or more. A programme for 9 to 12 year olds produced by the Cult-owned BBC promoted the 100 genders narrative. The very idea may be the most monumental nonsense, but it is not what is true that counts, only what you can make people *believe* is true. Once the gender of  $2 + 2 = 4$  has been dismantled through indoctrination, intimidation and  $2 + 2 = 5$  then the new no-gender normal can take its place with Human 2.0.

Aldous Huxley revealed the plan in his prophetic *Brave New World* in 1932:

Natural reproduction has been done away with and children are created, 'decanted', and raised in 'hatcheries and conditioning centres'. From birth, people are genetically designed to fit into one of five castes, which are further split into 'Plus' and 'Minus' members and designed to fulfil predetermined positions within the social and economic strata of the World State.

How could Huxley know this in 1932? For the same reason George Orwell knew about the Big Brother state in 1948, Cult insiders I have quoted knew about it in 1969, and I have known about it since the early 1990s. If you are connected to the Cult or you work your balls off to uncover the plan you can predict the future. The process is simple. If there is a plan for the world and nothing intervenes to stop it then it will happen. Thus if you communicate the plan ahead of time you are perceived to have predicted the future, but you haven't. You have revealed the plan which without intervention will become the human future. The whole reason I have done what I have is to alert enough people to inspire an intervention and maybe at last that time has come with the Cult and its intentions now so obvious to anyone with a brain in working order.

## **The future is here**

Technological wombs that Huxley described to replace parent procreation are already being developed and they are only the projects we know about in the public arena. Israeli scientists told *The Times of Israel* in March, 2021, that they have grown 250-cell embryos

into mouse foetuses with fully formed organs using artificial wombs in a development they say could pave the way for gestating humans outside the womb. Professor Jacob Hanna of the Weizmann Institute of Science said:

We took mouse embryos from the mother at day five of development, when they are just of 250 cells, and had them in the incubator from day five until day 11, by which point they had grown all their organs.

By day 11 they make their own blood and have a beating heart, a fully developed brain. Anybody would look at them and say, 'this is clearly a mouse foetus with all the characteristics of a mouse.' It's gone from being a ball of cells to being an advanced foetus.

A special liquid is used to nourish embryo cells in a laboratory dish and they float on the liquid to duplicate the first stage of embryonic development. The incubator creates all the right conditions for its development, Hanna said. The liquid gives the embryo 'all the nutrients, hormones and sugars they need' along with a custom-made electronic incubator which controls gas concentration, pressure and temperature. The cutting-edge in the underground bases and other secret locations will be light years ahead of that, however, and this was reported by the London *Guardian* in 2017:

We are approaching a biotechnological breakthrough. Ectogenesis, the invention of a complete external womb, could completely change the nature of human reproduction. In April this year, researchers at the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia announced their development of an artificial womb.

The article was headed 'Artificial wombs could soon be a reality. What will this mean for women?' What would it mean for children is an even bigger question. No mother to bond with only a machine in preparation for a life of soulless interaction and control in a world governed by machines (see the *Matrix* movies). Now observe the calculated manipulations of the 'Covid' hoax as human interaction and warmth has been curtailed by distancing, isolation and fear with people communicating via machines on a scale never seen before.

These are all dots in the same picture as are all the personal assistants, gadgets and children's toys through which kids and adults communicate with AI as if it is human. The AI 'voice' on Sat-Nav should be included. All these things are psychological preparation for the Cult endgame. Before you can make a physical connection with AI you have to make a psychological connection and that is what people are being conditioned to do with this ever gathering human-AI interaction. Movies and TV programmes depicting the transhuman, robot dystopia relate to a phenomenon known as 'pre-emptive programming' in which the world that is planned is portrayed everywhere in movies, TV and advertising. This is conditioning the conscious and subconscious mind to become familiar with the planned reality to dilute resistance when it happens for real. What would have been a shock such is the change is made less so. We have young children put on the road to transgender transition surgery with puberty blocking drugs at an age when they could never be able to make those life-changing decisions.

Rachel Levine, a professor of paediatrics and psychiatry who believes in treating children this way, became America's highest-ranked openly-transgender official when she was confirmed as US Assistant Secretary at the Department of Health and Human Services after being nominated by Joe Biden (the Cult). Activists and governments press for laws to deny parents a say in their children's transition process so the kids can be isolated and manipulated into agreeing to irreversible medical procedures. A Canadian father Robert Hoogland was denied bail by the Vancouver Supreme Court in 2021 and remained in jail for breaching a court order that he stay silent over his young teenage daughter, a minor, who was being offered life-changing hormone therapy without parental consent. At the age of 12 the girl's 'school counsellor' said she may be transgender, referred her to a doctor and told the school to treat her like a boy. This is another example of state-serving schools imposing ever more control over children's lives while parents have ever less.

Contemptible and extreme child abuse is happening all over the world as the Cult gender-fusion operation goes into warp-speed.

## **Why the war on men – and now women?**

The question about what artificial wombs mean for women should rightly be asked. The answer can be seen in the deletion of women's rights involving sport, changing rooms, toilets and status in favour of people in male bodies claiming to identify as women. I can identify as a mountain climber, but it doesn't mean I can climb a mountain any more than a biological man can be a biological woman. To believe so is a triumph of belief over factual reality which is the very perceptual basis of everything Woke. Women's sport is being destroyed by allowing those with male bodies who say they identify as female to 'compete' with girls and women. Male body 'women' dominate 'women's' competition with their greater muscle mass, bone density, strength and speed. With that disadvantage sport for women loses all meaning. To put this in perspective nearly 300 American high school boys can run faster than the quickest woman sprinter in the world. Women are seeing their previously protected spaces invaded by male bodies simply because they claim to identify as women. That's all they need to do to access all women's spaces and activities under the Biden 'Equality Act' that destroys equality for women with the usual Orwellian Woke inversion. Male sex offenders have already committed rapes in women's prisons after claiming to identify as women to get them transferred. Does this not matter to the Woke 'equality' hypocrites? Not in the least. What matters to Cult manipulators and funders behind transgender activists is to advance gender fusion on the way to the no-gender 'human'. When you are seeking to impose transparent nonsense like this, or the 'Covid' hoax, the only way the nonsense can prevail is through censorship and intimidation of dissenters, deletion of factual information, and programming of the unquestioning, bewildered and naive. You don't have to scan the world for long to see that all these things are happening.

Many women's rights organisations have realised that rights and status which took such a long time to secure are being eroded and that it is systematic. Kara Dansky of the global Women's Human Rights Campaign said that Biden's transgender executive order immediately he took office, subsequent orders, and Equality Act legislation that followed 'seek to erase women and girls in the law as a category'. *Exactly.* I said during the long ago-started war on men (in which many women play a crucial part) that this was going to turn into a war on them. The Cult is phasing out *both* male and female genders. To get away with that they are brought into conflict so they are busy fighting each other while the Cult completes the job with no unity of response. Unity, people, *unity*. We need unity everywhere. Transgender is the only show in town as the big step towards the no-gender human. It's not about rights for transgender people and never has been. Woke political correctness is deleting words relating to genders to the same end. Wokers believe this is to be 'inclusive' when the opposite is true. They are deleting words describing gender because gender *itself* is being deleted by Human 2.0. Terms like 'man', 'woman', 'mother' and 'father' are being deleted in the universities and other institutions to be replaced by the *no*-gender, not trans-gender, 'individuals' and 'guardians'. Women's rights campaigner Maria Keffler of Partners for Ethical Care said: 'Children are being taught from kindergarten upward that some boys have a vagina, some girls have a penis, and that kids can be any gender they want to be.' Do we really believe that suddenly countries all over the world at the same time had the idea of having drag queens go into schools or read transgender stories to very young children in the local library? It's coldly-calculated confusion of gender on the way to the fusion of gender. Suzanne Vierling, a psychologist from Southern California, made another important point:

Yesterday's slave woman who endured gynecological medical experiments is today's girl-child being butchered in a booming gender-transitioning sector. Ovaries removed, pushing her into menopause and osteoporosis, uncharted territory, and parents' rights and authority decimated.

The erosion of parental rights is a common theme in line with the Cult plans to erase the very concept of parents and 'ovaries removed, pushing her into menopause' means what? Those born female lose the ability to have children – another way to discontinue humanity as we know it.

## **Eliminating Human 1.0 (before our very eyes)**

To pave the way for Human 2.0 you must phase out Human 1.0. This is happening through plummeting sperm counts and making women infertile through an onslaught of chemicals, radiation (including smartphones in pockets of men) and mRNA 'vaccines'. Common agriculture pesticides are also having a devastating impact on human fertility. I have been tracking collapsing sperm counts in the books for a long time and in 2021 came a book by fertility scientist and reproductive epidemiologist Shanna Swan, *Count Down: How Our Modern World Is Threatening Sperm Counts, Altering Male and Female Reproductive Development and Imperiling the Future of the Human Race*. She reports how the global fertility rate dropped by half between 1960 and 2016 with America's birth rate 16 percent below where it needs to be to sustain the population. Women are experiencing declining egg quality, more miscarriages, and more couples suffer from infertility. Other findings were an increase in erectile dysfunction, infant boys developing more genital abnormalities, male problems with conception, and plunging levels of the male hormone testosterone which would explain why so many men have lost their backbone and masculinity. This has been very evident during the 'Covid' hoax when women have been prominent among the Pushbackers and big strapping blokes have bowed their heads, covered their faces with a nappy and quietly submitted. Mind control expert Cathy O'Brien also points to how global education introduced the concept of 'we're all winners' in sport and classrooms: 'Competition was defused, and it in turn defused a sense of fighting back.' This is another version of the 'equity' doctrine in which you drive down rather than raise up. What a contrast in Cult-controlled China with its global ambitions

where the government published plans in January, 2021, to 'cultivate masculinity' in boys from kindergarten through to high school in the face of a 'masculinity crisis'. A government adviser said boys would be soon become 'delicate, timid and effeminate' unless action was taken. Don't expect any similar policy in the targeted West. A 2006 study showed that a 65-year-old man in 2002 had testosterone levels 15 percent lower than a 65-year-old man in 1987 while a 2020 study found a similar story with young adults and adolescents. Men are getting prescriptions for testosterone replacement therapy which causes an even greater drop in sperm count with up to 99 percent seeing sperm counts drop to zero during the treatment. More sperm is defective and malfunctioning with some having two heads or not pursuing an egg.

A class of *synthetic* chemicals known as phthalates are being blamed for the decline. These are found everywhere in plastics, shampoos, cosmetics, furniture, flame retardants, personal care products, pesticides, canned foods and even receipts. Why till receipts? Everyone touches them. Let no one delude themselves that all this is not systematic to advance the long-time agenda for human body transformation. Phthalates mimic hormones and disrupt the hormone balance causing testosterone to fall and genital birth defects in male infants. Animals and fish have been affected in the same way due to phthalates and other toxins in rivers. When fish turn gay or change sex through chemicals in rivers and streams it is a pointer to why there has been such an increase in gay people and the sexually confused. It doesn't matter to me what sexuality people choose to be, but if it's being affected by chemical pollution and consumption then we need to know. Does anyone really think that this is not connected to the transgender agenda, the war on men and the condemnation of male 'toxic masculinity'? You watch this being followed by 'toxic femininity'. It's already happening. When breastfeeding becomes 'chest-feeding', pregnant women become pregnant people along with all the other Woke claptrap you know that the world is going insane and there's a Cult scam in progress. Transgender activists are promoting the Cult agenda while Cult

billionaires support and fund the insanity as they laugh themselves to sleep at the sheer stupidity for which humans must be infamous in galaxies far, far away.

## **'Covid vaccines' and female infertility**

We can now see why the 'vaccine' has been connected to potential infertility in women. Dr Michael Yeadon, former Vice President and Chief Scientific Advisor at Pfizer, and Dr Wolfgang Wodarg in Germany, filed a petition with the European Medicines Agency in December, 2020, urging them to stop trials for the Pfizer/BioNTech shot and all other mRNA trials until further studies had been done. They were particularly concerned about possible effects on fertility with 'vaccine'-produced antibodies attacking the protein Syncytin-1 which is responsible for developing the placenta. The result would be infertility 'of indefinite duration' in women who have the 'vaccine' with the placenta failing to form. Section 10.4.2 of the Pfizer/BioNTech trial protocol says that pregnant women or those who might become so should not have mRNA shots. Section 10.4 warns men taking mRNA shots to 'be abstinent from heterosexual intercourse' and not to donate sperm. The UK government said that it *did not know* if the mRNA procedure had an effect on fertility. *Did not know?* These people have to go to jail. UK government advice did not recommend at the start that pregnant women had the shot and said they should avoid pregnancy for at least two months after 'vaccination'. The 'advice' was later updated to pregnant women should only have the 'vaccine' if the benefits outweighed the risks to mother and foetus. What the hell is that supposed to mean? Then 'spontaneous abortions' began to appear and rapidly increase on the adverse reaction reporting schemes which include only a fraction of adverse reactions. Thousands and ever-growing numbers of 'vaccinated' women are describing changes to their menstrual cycle with heavier blood flow, irregular periods and menstruating again after going through the menopause – all links to reproduction effects. Women are passing blood clots and the lining of their uterus while men report erectile dysfunction and blood effects. Most

significantly of all *unvaccinated* women began to report similar menstrual changes after interaction with '*vaccinated*' people and men and children were also affected with bleeding noses, blood clots and other conditions. 'Shedding' is when vaccinated people can emit the content of a vaccine to affect the unvaccinated, but this is different. '*Vaccinated*' people were not shedding a 'live virus' allegedly in '*vaccines*' as before because the fake '*Covid vaccines*' involve synthetic material and other toxicity. Doctors exposing what is happening prefer the term '*transmission*' to shedding. Somehow those that have had the shots are transmitting effects to those that haven't. Dr Carrie Madej said the nano-content of the '*vaccines*' can 'act like an antenna' to others around them which fits perfectly with my own conclusions. This '*vaccine*' transmission phenomenon was becoming known as the book went into production and I deal with this further in the Postscript.

Vaccine effects on sterility are well known. The World Health Organization was accused in 2014 of sterilising millions of women in Kenya with the evidence confirmed by the content of the vaccines involved. The same WHO behind the '*Covid*' hoax admitted its involvement for more than ten years with the vaccine programme. Other countries made similar claims. Charges were lodged by Tanzania, Nicaragua, Mexico, and the Philippines. The Gardasil vaccine claimed to protect against a genital '*virus*' known as HPV has also been linked to infertility. Big Pharma and the WHO (same thing) are criminal and satanic entities. Then there's the Bill Gates Foundation which is connected through funding and shared interests with 20 pharmaceutical giants and laboratories. He stands accused of directing the policy of United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF), vaccine alliance GAVI, and other groupings, to advance the vaccine agenda and silence opposition at great cost to women and children. At the same time Gates wants to reduce the global population. Coincidence?

**Great Reset = Smart Grid = new human**

The Cult agenda I have been exposing for 30 years is now being openly promoted by Cult assets like Gates and Klaus Schwab of the World Economic Forum under code-terms like the 'Great Reset', 'Build Back Better' and 'a rare but narrow window of opportunity to reflect, reimagine, and reset our world'. What provided this 'rare but narrow window of opportunity'? The 'Covid' hoax did. Who created that? *They* did. My books from not that long ago warned about the planned 'Internet of Things' (IoT) and its implications for human freedom. This was the plan to connect all technology to the Internet and artificial intelligence and today we are way down that road with an estimated 36 billion devices connected to the World Wide Web and that figure is projected to be 76 billion by 2025. I further warned that the Cult planned to go beyond that to the Internet of *Everything* when the human brain was connected via AI to the Internet and Kurzweil's 'cloud'. Now we have Cult operatives like Schwab calling for precisely that under the term 'Internet of Bodies', a fusion of the physical, digital and biological into one centrally-controlled Smart Grid system which the Cult refers to as the 'Fourth Industrial Revolution'. They talk about the 'biological', but they really mean the synthetic-biological which is required to fully integrate the human body and brain into the Smart Grid and artificial intelligence planned to replace the human mind. We have everything being synthetically manipulated including the natural world through GMO and smart dust, the food we eat and the human body itself with synthetic 'vaccines'. I said in *The Answer* that we would see the Cult push for synthetic meat to replace animals and in February, 2021, the so predictable psychopath Bill Gates called for the introduction of synthetic meat to save us all from 'climate change'. The climate hoax just keeps on giving like the 'Covid' hoax. The war on meat by vegan activists is a carbon (oops, sorry) copy of the manipulation of transgender activists. They have no idea (except their inner core) that they are being used to promote and impose the agenda of the Cult or that they are only the *vehicle* and not the *reason*. This is not to say those who choose not to eat meat shouldn't be respected and supported in that right, but there are ulterior motives

for those in power. A *Forbes* article in December, 2019, highlighted the plan so beloved of Schwab and the Cult under the heading: 'What Is The Internet of Bodies? And How Is It Changing Our World?' The article said the human body is the latest data platform (remember 'our vaccine is an operating system'). *Forbes* described the plan very accurately and the words could have come straight out of my books from long before:

The Internet of Bodies (IoB) is an extension of the IoT and basically connects the human body to a network through devices that are ingested, implanted, or connected to the body in some way. Once connected, data can be exchanged, and the body and device can be remotely monitored and controlled.

They were really describing a human hive mind with human perception centrally-dictated via an AI connection as well as allowing people to be 'remotely monitored and controlled'.

Everything from a fridge to a human mind could be directed from a central point by these insane psychopaths and 'Covid vaccines' are crucial to this. *Forbes* explained the process I mentioned earlier of holdable and wearable technology followed by implantable. The article said there were three generations of the Internet of Bodies that include:

- Body external: These are wearable devices such as Apple Watches or Fitbits that can monitor our health.
- Body internal: These include pacemakers, cochlear implants, and digital pills that go inside our bodies to monitor or control various aspects of health.
- Body embedded: The third generation of the Internet of Bodies is embedded technology where technology and the human body are melded together and have a real-time connection to a remote machine.

*Forbes* noted the development of the Brain Computer Interface (BCI) which merges the brain with an external device for monitoring and controlling in real-time. ‘The ultimate goal is to help restore function to individuals with disabilities by using brain signals rather than conventional neuromuscular pathways.’ Oh, do fuck off. The goal of brain interface technology is controlling human thought and emotion from the central point in a hive mind serving its masters wishes. Many people are now agreeing to be chipped to open doors without a key. You can recognise them because they’ll be wearing a mask, social distancing and lining up for the ‘vaccine’. The Cult plans a Great Reset money system after they have completed the demolition of the global economy in which ‘money’ will be exchanged through communication with body operating systems. Rand Corporation, a Cult-owned think tank, said of the Internet of Bodies or IoB:

Internet of Bodies technologies fall under the broader IoT umbrella. But as the name suggests, IoB devices introduce an even more intimate interplay between humans and gadgets. IoB devices monitor the human body, collect health metrics and other personal information, and transmit those data over the Internet. Many devices, such as fitness trackers, are already in use ... IoB devices ... and those in development can track, record, and store users’ whereabouts, bodily functions, and what they see, hear, and even think.

Schwab’s World Economic Forum, a long-winded way of saying ‘fascism’ or ‘the Cult’, has gone full-on with the Internet of Bodies in the ‘Covid’ era. ‘We’re entering the era of the Internet of Bodies’, it declared, ‘collecting our physical data via a range of devices that can be implanted, swallowed or worn’. The result would be a huge amount of health-related data that could improve human wellbeing around the world, and prove crucial in fighting the ‘Covid-19 pandemic’. Does anyone think these clowns care about ‘human wellbeing’ after the death and devastation their pandemic hoax has purposely caused? Schwab and co say we should move forward with the Internet of Bodies because ‘Keeping track of symptoms could help us stop the spread of infection, and quickly detect new cases’. How wonderful, but keeping track’ is all they are really bothered

about. Researchers were investigating if data gathered from smartwatches and similar devices could be used as viral infection alerts by tracking the user's heart rate and breathing. Schwab said in his 2018 book *Shaping the Future of the Fourth Industrial Revolution*:

The lines between technologies and beings are becoming blurred and not just by the ability to create lifelike robots or synthetics. Instead it is about the ability of new technologies to literally become part of us. Technologies already influence how we understand ourselves, how we think about each other, and how we determine our realities. As the technologies ... give us deeper access to parts of ourselves, we may begin to integrate digital technologies into our bodies.

You can see what the game is. Twenty-four hour control and people – if you could still call them that – would never know when something would go ping and take them out of circulation. It's the most obvious rush to a global fascist dictatorship and the complete submission of humanity and yet still so many are locked away in their Cult-induced perceptual coma and can't see it.

## **Smart Grid control centres**

The human body is being transformed by the 'vaccines' and in other ways into a synthetic cyborg that can be attached to the global Smart Grid which would be controlled from a central point and other sub-locations of Grid manipulation. Where are these planned to be? Well, China for a start which is one of the Cult's biggest centres of operation. The technological control system and technocratic rule was incubated here to be unleashed across the world after the 'Covid' hoax came out of China in 2020. Another Smart Grid location that will surprise people new to this is Israel. I have exposed in *The Trigger* how Sabbatian technocrats, intelligence and military operatives were behind the horrors of 9/11 and not 19 Arab hijackers' who somehow manifested the ability to pilot big passenger airliners when instructors at puddle-jumping flying schools described some of them as a joke. The 9/11 attacks were made possible through control of civilian and military air computer systems and those of the White House, Pentagon and connected agencies. See *The Trigger* – it

will blow your mind. The controlling and coordinating force were the Sabbatian networks in Israel and the United States which by then had infiltrated the entire US government, military and intelligence system. The real name of the American Deep State is 'Sabbatian State'. Israel is a tiny country of only nine million people, but it is one of the global centres of cyber operations and fast catching Silicon Valley in importance to the Cult. Israel is known as the 'start-up nation' for all the cyber companies spawned there with the Sabbatian specialisation of 'cyber security' that I mentioned earlier which gives those companies access to computer systems of their clients in real time through 'backdoors' written into the coding when security software is downloaded. The Sabbatian centre of cyber operations outside Silicon Valley is the Israeli military Cyber Intelligence Unit, the biggest infrastructure project in Israel's history, headquartered in the desert-city of Beersheba and involving some 20,000 'cyber soldiers'. Here are located a literal army of Internet trolls scanning social media, forums and comment lists for anyone challenging the Cult agenda. The UK military has something similar with its 77th Brigade and associated operations. The Beersheba complex includes research and development centres for other Cult operations such as Intel, Microsoft, IBM, Google, Apple, Hewlett-Packard, Cisco Systems, Facebook and Motorola. [Techcrunch.com](#) ran an article about the Beersheba global Internet technology centre headlined 'Israel's desert city of Beersheba is turning into a cybertech oasis':

The military's massive relocation of its prestigious technology units, the presence of multinational and local companies, a close proximity to Ben Gurion University and generous government subsidies are turning Beersheba into a major global cybertech hub. Beersheba has all of the ingredients of a vibrant security technology ecosystem, including Ben Gurion University with its graduate program in cybersecurity and Cyber Security Research Center, and the presence of companies such as EMC, Deutsche Telekom, PayPal, Oracle, IBM, and Lockheed Martin. It's also the future home of the INCB (Israeli National Cyber Bureau); offers a special income tax incentive for cyber security companies, and was the site for the relocation of the army's intelligence corps units.

Sabbatians have taken over the cyber world through the following process: They scan the schools for likely cyber talent and develop them at Ben Gurion University and their period of conscription in the Israeli Defense Forces when they are stationed at the Beersheba complex. When the cyber talented officially leave the army they are funded to start cyber companies with technology developed by themselves or given to them by the state. Much of this is stolen through backdoors of computer systems around the world with America top of the list. Others are sent off to Silicon Valley to start companies or join the major ones and so we have many major positions filled by apparently 'Jewish' but really Sabbatian operatives. Google, YouTube and Facebook are all run by 'Jewish' CEOs while Twitter is all but run by ultra-Zionist hedge-fund shark Paul Singer. At the centre of the Sabbatian global cyber web is the Israeli army's Unit 8200 which specialises in hacking into computer systems of other countries, inserting viruses, gathering information, instigating malfunction, and even taking control of them from a distance. A long list of Sabbatians involved with 9/11, Silicon Valley and Israeli cyber security companies are operatives of Unit 8200. This is not about Israel. It's about the Cult. Israel is planned to be a Smart Grid hub as with China and what is happening at Beersheba is not for the benefit of Jewish people who are treated disgustingly by the Sabbatian elite that control the country. A glance at the Nuremberg Codes will tell you that.

The story is much bigger than 'Covid', important as that is to where we are being taken. Now, though, it's time to really strap in. There's more ... much more ...

## CHAPTER ELEVEN

### Who controls the Cult?

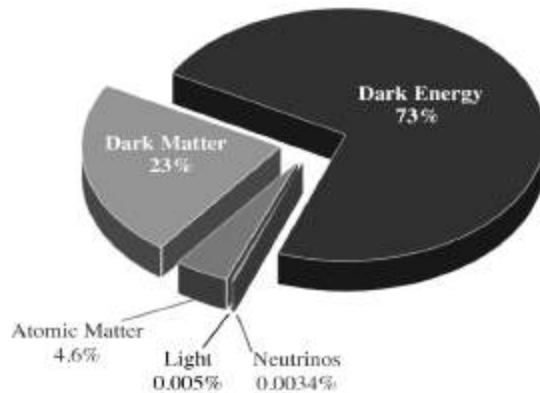
*Awake, arise or be forever fall'n*

**John Milton, Paradise Lost**

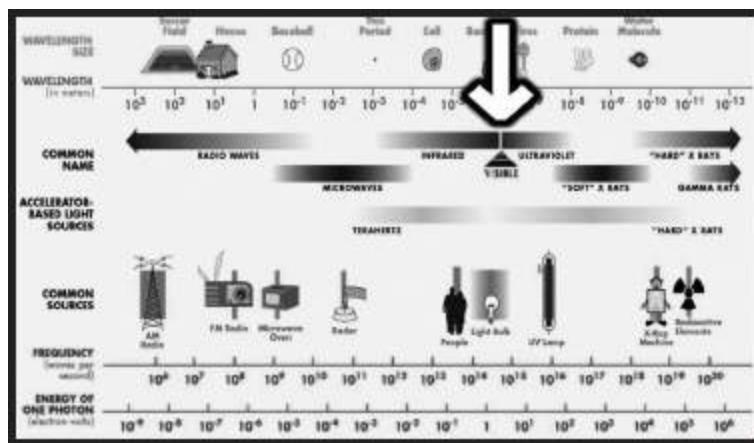
I have exposed this far the level of the Cult conspiracy that operates in the world of the seen and within the global secret society and satanic network which operates in the shadows one step back from the seen. The story, however, goes much deeper than that.

The 'Covid' hoax is major part of the Cult agenda, but only part, and to grasp the biggest picture we have to expand our attention beyond the realm of human sight and into the infinity of possibility that we cannot see. It is from here, ultimately, that humanity is being manipulated into a state of total control by the force which dictates the actions of the Cult. How much of reality can we see? Next to damn all is the answer. We may appear to see all there is to see in the 'space' our eyes survey and observe, but little could be further from the truth. The human 'world' is only a tiny band of frequency that the body's visual and perceptual systems can decode into *perception* of a 'world'. According to mainstream science the electromagnetic spectrum is 0.005 percent of what exists in the Universe ([Fig 10](#)). The maximum estimate I have seen is 0.5 percent and either way it's minuscule. I say it is far, far, smaller even than 0.005 percent when you compare reality we see with the totality of reality that we don't. Now get this if you are new to such information: Visible light, the only band of frequency that we can see, is a *fraction* of the 0.005

percent (Fig 11 overleaf). Take this further and realise that our universe is one of infinite universes and that universes are only a fragment of overall reality – *infinite* reality. Then compare that with the almost infinitesimal frequency band of visible light or human sight. You see that humans are as near blind as it is possible to be without actually being so. Artist and filmmaker, Sergio Toporek, said:



**Figure 10:** Humans can perceive such a tiny band of visual reality it's laughable.



**Figure 11:** We can see a smear of the 0.005 percent electromagnetic spectrum, but we still know it all. Yep, makes sense.

Consider that you can see less than 1% of the electromagnetic spectrum and hear less than 1% of the acoustic spectrum. 90% of the cells in your body carry their own microbial DNA and are not 'you'. The atoms in your body are 99.99999999999999% empty space and none of them are the ones you were born with ... Human beings have 46 chromosomes, two less than a potato.

The existence of the rainbow depends on the conical photoreceptors in your eyes; to animals without cones, the rainbow does not exist. So you don't just look at a rainbow, you create it. This is pretty amazing, especially considering that all the beautiful colours you see represent less than 1% of the electromagnetic spectrum.

Suddenly the 'world' of humans looks a very different place. Take into account, too, that Planet Earth when compared with the projected size of this single universe is the equivalent of a billionth of a pinhead. Imagine the ratio that would be when compared to infinite reality. To think that Christianity once insisted that Earth and humanity were the centre of everything. This background is vital if we are going to appreciate the nature of 'human' and how we can be manipulated by an unseen force. To human visual reality virtually *everything* is unseen and yet the prevailing perception within the institutions and so much of the public is that if we can't see it, touch it, hear it, taste it and smell it then it cannot exist. Such perception is indoctrinated and encouraged by the Cult and its agents because it isolates believers in the strictly limited, village-idiot, realm of the five senses where perceptions can be firewalled and information controlled. Most of those perpetuating the 'this-world-is-all-there-is' insanity are themselves indoctrinated into believing the same delusion. While major players and influencers know that official reality is laughable most of those in science, academia and medicine really believe the nonsense they peddle and teach succeeding generations. Those who challenge the orthodoxy are dismissed as nutters and freaks to protect the manufactured illusion from exposure. Observe the dynamic of the 'Covid' hoax and you will see how that takes the same form. The inner-circle psychopaths know it's a gigantic scam, but almost the entirety of those imposing their fascist rules believe that 'Covid' is all that they're told it is.

## **Stolen identity**

Ask people who they are and they will give you their name, place of birth, location, job, family background and life story. Yet that is not who they are – it is what they are *experiencing*. The difference is *absolutely crucial*. The true 'I', the eternal, infinite 'I', is consciousness,

a state of being aware. Forget ‘form’. That is a vehicle for a brief experience. Consciousness does not come *from* the brain, but *through* the brain and even that is more symbolic than literal. We are awareness, pure awareness, and this is what withdraws from the body at what we call ‘death’ to continue our eternal beingness, *isness*, in other realms of reality within the limitlessness of infinity or the Biblical ‘many mansions in my father’s house’. Labels of a human life, man, woman, transgender, black, white, brown, nationality, circumstances and income are not who we are. They are what we are – awareness – is *experiencing* in a brief connection with a band of frequency we call ‘human’. The labels are not the self; they are, to use the title of one of my books, a *Phantom Self*. I am not David Icke born in Leicester, England, on April 29th, 1952. I am the consciousness *having that experience*. The Cult and its non-human masters seek to convince us through the institutions of ‘education’, science, medicine, media and government that what we are *experiencing* is who we *are*. It’s so easy to control and direct perception locked away in the bewildered illusions of the five senses with no expanded radar. Try, by contrast, doing the same with a humanity aware of its true self and its true power to consciously create its reality and experience. How is it possible to do this? We do it all day every day. If you perceive yourself as ‘little me’ with no power to impact upon your life and the world then your life experience will reflect that. You will hand the power you don’t think you have to authority in all its forms which will use it to control your experience. This, in turn, will appear to confirm your perception of ‘little me’ in a self-fulfilling feedback loop. But that is what ‘little me’ really is – a *perception*. We are all ‘big-me’, infinite me, and the Cult has to make us forget that if its will is to prevail. We are therefore manipulated and pressured into self-identifying with human labels and not the consciousness/awareness *experiencing* those human labels.

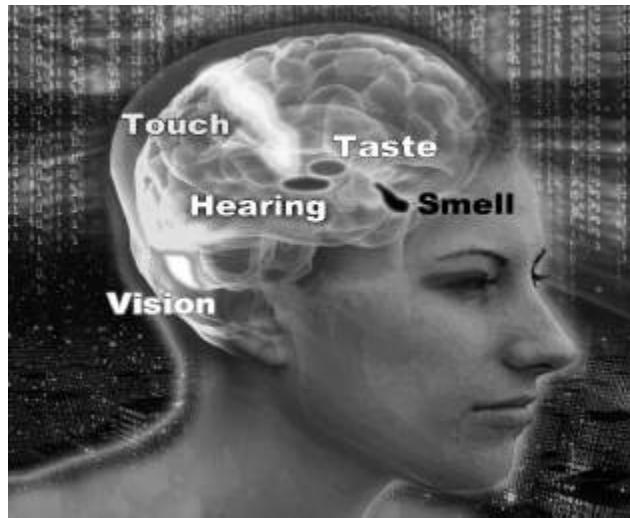
The phenomenon of identity politics is a Cult-instigated manipulation technique to sub-divide previous labels into even smaller ones. A United States university employs this list of letters to

describe student identity: LGBTQQFAGPBDSM or lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, transsexual, queer, questioning, flexual, asexual, gender-fuck, polyamorous, bondage/discipline, dominance/submission and sadism/masochism. I'm sure other lists are even longer by now as people feel the need to self-identify the 'I' with the minutiae of race and sexual preference. Wokers programmed by the Cult for generations believe this is about 'inclusivity' when it's really the Cult locking them away into smaller and smaller versions of Phantom Self while firewalls them from the influence of their true self, the infinite, eternal 'I'. You may notice that my philosophy which contends that we are all unique points of attention/awareness within the same infinite whole or Oneness is the ultimate non-racism. The very sense of Oneness makes the judgement of people by their body-type, colour or sexuality utterly ridiculous and confirms that racism has no understanding of reality (including anti-white racism). Yet despite my perception of life Cult agents and fast-asleep Wokers label me racist to discredit my information while they are themselves phenomenally racist and sexist. All they see is race and sexuality and they judge people as good or bad, demons or untouchables, by their race and sexuality. All they see is *Phantom Self* and perceive themselves in terms of *Phantom Self*. They are pawns and puppets of the Cult agenda to focus attention and self-identity in the five senses and play those identities against each other to divide and rule. Columbia University has introduced segregated graduations in another version of social distancing designed to drive people apart and teach them that different racial and cultural groups have nothing in common with each other. The last thing the Cult wants is unity. Again the pump-primers of this will be Cult operatives in the knowledge of what they are doing, but the rest are just the *Phantom Self* blind leading the *Phantom Self* blind. We *do* have something in common – we are all *the same consciousness* having different temporary experiences.

## **What is this 'human'?**

Yes, what *is* ‘human’? That is what we are supposed to be, right? I mean ‘human’? True, but ‘human’ is the experience not the ‘I’. Break it down to basics and ‘human’ is the way that information is processed. If we are to experience and interact with this band of frequency we call the ‘world’ we must have a vehicle that operates within that band of frequency. Our consciousness in its prime form cannot do that; it is way beyond the frequency of the human realm. My consciousness or awareness could not tap these keys and pick up the cup in front of me in the same way that radio station A cannot interact with radio station B when they are on different frequencies. The human body is the means through which we have that interaction. I have long described the body as a biological computer which processes information in a way that allows consciousness to experience this reality. The body is a receiver, transmitter and processor of information in a particular way that we call human. We visually perceive only the world of the five senses in a wakened state – that is the limit of the body’s visual decoding system. In truth it’s not even visual in the way we experience ‘visual reality’ as I will come to in a moment. We are ‘human’ because the body processes the information sources of human into a reality and behaviour system that we *perceive* as human. Why does an elephant act like an elephant and not like a human or a duck? The elephant’s biological computer is a different information field and processes information according to that program into a visual and behaviour type we call an elephant. The same applies to everything in our reality. These body information fields are perpetuated through procreation (like making a copy of a software program). The Cult wants to break that cycle and intervene technologically to transform the human information field into one that will change what we call humanity. If it can change the human information field it will change the way that field processes information and change humanity both ‘physically’ and psychologically. Hence the *messenger* (information) RNA ‘vaccines’ and so much more that is targeting human genetics by changing the body’s information – *messaging* – construct through food, drink, radiation, toxicity and other means.

Reality that we experience is nothing like reality as it really is in the same way that the reality people experience in virtual reality games is not the reality they are really living in. The game is only a decoded source of information that appears to be a reality. Our world is also an information construct – a *simulation* (more later). In its base form our reality is a wavefield of information much the same in theme as Wi-Fi. The five senses decode wavefield information into electrical information which they communicate to the brain to decode into holographic (illusory ‘physical’) information. Different parts of the brain specialise in decoding different senses and the information is fused into a reality that appears to be outside of us but is really inside the brain and the genetic structure in general ([Fig 12](#) overleaf). DNA is a receiver-transmitter of information and a vital part of this decoding process and the body’s connection to other realities. Change DNA and you change the way we decode and connect with reality – see ‘Covid vaccines’. Think of computers decoding Wi-Fi. You have information encoded in a radiation field and the computer decodes that information into a very different form on the screen. You can’t see the Wi-Fi until its information is made manifest on the screen and the information on the screen is inside the computer and not outside. I have just described how we decode the ‘human world’. All five senses decode the waveform ‘Wi-Fi’ field into electrical signals and the brain (computer) constructs reality inside the brain and not outside – ‘You don’t just look at a rainbow, you create it’. Sound is a simple example. We don’t hear sound until the brain decodes it. Waveform sound waves are picked up by the hearing sense and communicated to the brain in an electrical form to be decoded into the sounds that we hear. Everything we hear is inside the brain along with everything we see, feel, smell and taste. Words and language are waveform fields generated by our vocal chords which pass through this process until they are decoded by the brain into words that we hear. Different languages are different frequency fields or sound waves generated by vocal chords. Late British philosopher Alan Watts said:



**Figure 12:** The brain receives information from the five senses and constructs from that our perceived reality.

[Without the brain] the world is devoid of light, heat, weight, solidity, motion, space, time or any other imaginable feature. All these phenomena are interactions, or transactions, of vibrations with a certain arrangement of neurons.

That's exactly what they are and scientist Robert Lanza describes in his book, *Biocentrism*, how we decode electromagnetic waves and energy into visual and 'physical' experience. He uses the example of a flame emitting photons, electromagnetic energy, each pulsing electrically and magnetically:

... these ... invisible electromagnetic waves strike a human retina, and if (and only if) the waves happen to measure between 400 and 700 nano meters in length from crest to crest, then their energy is just right to deliver a stimulus to the 8 million cone-shaped cells in the retina.

Each in turn send an electrical pulse to a neighbour neuron, and on up the line this goes, at 250 mph, until it reaches the ... occipital lobe of the brain, in the back of the head. There, a cascading complex of neurons fire from the incoming stimuli, and we subjectively perceive this experience as a yellow brightness occurring in a place we have been conditioned to call the 'external world'.

## You hear what you decode

If a tree falls or a building collapses they make no noise unless someone is there to decode the energetic waves generated by the disturbance into what we call sound. Does a falling tree make a noise? Only if you hear it – *decode* it. Everything in our reality is a frequency field of information operating within the overall ‘Wi-Fi’ field that I call The Field. A vibrational disturbance is generated in The Field by the fields of the falling tree or building. These disturbance waves are what we decode into the sound of them falling. If no one is there to do that then neither will make any noise. Reality is created by the observer – *decoder* – and the *perceptions* of the observer affect the decoding process. For this reason different people – different *perceptions* – will perceive the same reality or situation in a different way. What one may perceive as a nightmare another will see as an opportunity. The question of why the Cult is so focused on controlling human perception now answers itself. All experienced reality is the act of decoding and we don’t experience Wi-Fi until it is decoded on the computer screen. The sight and sound of an Internet video is encoded in the Wi-Fi all around us, but we don’t see or hear it until the computer decodes that information. Taste, smell and touch are all phenomena of the brain as a result of the same process. We don’t taste, smell or feel anything except in the brain and there are pain relief techniques that seek to block the signal from the site of discomfort to the brain because if the brain doesn’t decode that signal we don’t feel pain. Pain is in the brain and only appears to be at the point of impact thanks to the feedback loop between them. We don’t see anything until electrical information from the sight senses is decoded in an area at the back of the brain. If that area is damaged we can go blind when our eyes are perfectly okay. So why do we go blind if we damage an eye? We damage the information processing between the waveform visual information and the visual decoding area of the brain. If information doesn’t reach the brain in a form it can decode then we can’t see the visual reality that it represents. What’s more the brain is decoding only a fraction of the information it receives and the rest is absorbed by the

sub-conscious mind. This explanation is from the science magazine, *Wonderpedia*:

Every second, 11 million sensations crackle along these [brain] pathways ... The brain is confronted with an alarming array of images, sounds and smells which it rigorously filters down until it is left with a manageable list of around 40. Thus 40 sensations per second make up what we perceive as reality.

The ‘world’ is not what people are told to believe that is it and the inner circles of the Cult *know that*.

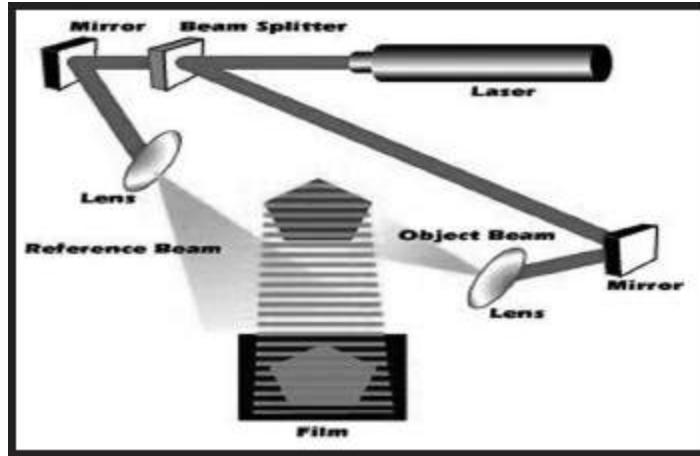
### **Illusory ‘physical’ reality**

We can only see a smear of 0.005 percent of the Universe which is only one of a vast array of universes – ‘mansions’ – within infinite reality. Even then the brain decodes only 40 pieces of information (‘sensations’) from a potential *11 million* that we receive every second. Two points strike you from this immediately: The sheer breathtaking stupidity of believing we know anything so rigidly that there’s nothing more to know; and the potential for these processes to be manipulated by a malevolent force to control the reality of the population. One thing I can say for sure with no risk of contradiction is that when you can perceive an almost indescribable fraction of infinite reality there is always more to know as in tidal waves of it. Ancient Greek philosopher Socrates was so right when he said that wisdom is to know how little we know. How obviously true that is when you think that we are experiencing a physical world of solidity that is neither physical nor solid and a world of apartness when everything is connected. Cult-controlled ‘science’ dismisses the so-called ‘paranormal’ and all phenomena related to that when the ‘para’-normal is perfectly normal and explains the alleged ‘great mysteries’ which dumbfound scientific minds. There is a reason for this. A ‘scientific mind’ in terms of the mainstream is a material mind, a five-sense mind imprisoned in see it, touch it, hear it, smell it and taste it. Phenomena and happenings that can’t be explained that way leave the ‘scientific mind’ bewildered and the rule is that if they

can't account for why something is happening then it can't, by definition, be happening. I beg to differ. Telepathy is thought waves passing through The Field (think wave disturbance again) to be decoded by someone able to connect with that wavelength (information). For example: You can pick up the thought waves of a friend at any distance and at the very least that will bring them to mind. A few minutes later the friend calls you. 'My god', you say, 'that's incredible – I was just thinking of you.' Ah, but *they* were thinking of *you* before they made the call and that's what you decoded. Native peoples not entrapped in five-sense reality do this so well it became known as the 'bush telegraph'. Those known as psychics and mediums (genuine ones) are doing the same only across dimensions of reality. 'Mind over matter' comes from the fact that matter and mind are the *same*. The state of one influences the state of the other. Indeed one *and* the other are illusions. They are aspects of the same field. Paranormal phenomena are all explainable so why are they still considered 'mysteries' or not happening? Once you go down this road of understanding you begin to expand awareness beyond the five senses and that's the nightmare for the Cult.



**Figure 13:** Holograms are not solid, but the best ones appear to be.



**Figure 14:** How holograms are created by capturing a waveform version of the subject image.

## Holographic ‘solidity’

Our reality is not solid, it is holographic. We are now well aware of holograms which are widely used today. Two-dimensional information is decoded into a three-dimensional reality that is not solid although can very much appear to be (Fig 13). Holograms are created with a laser divided into two parts. One goes directly onto a photographic print ('reference beam') and the other takes a waveform image of the subject ('working beam') before being directed onto the print where it 'collides' with the other half of the laser (Fig 14). This creates a *waveform* interference pattern which contains the wavefield information of whatever is being photographed (Fig 15 overleaf). The process can be likened to dropping pebbles in a pond. Waves generated by each one spread out across the water to collide with the others and create a wave representation of where the stones fell and at what speed, weight and distance. A waveform interference pattern of a hologram is akin to the waveform information in The Field which the five senses decode into electrical signals to be decoded by the brain into a holographic illusory 'physical' reality. In the same way when a laser (think human attention) is directed at the waveform interference pattern a three-dimensional version of the subject is projected into apparently 'solid' reality (Fig 16). An amazing trait of holograms reveals more 'paranormal mysteries'. Information of the *whole*

hologram is encoded in waveform in every part of the interference pattern by the way they are created. This means that every *part* of a hologram is a smaller version of the whole. Cut the interference wave-pattern into four and you won't get four parts of the image. You get quarter-sized versions of the *whole* image. The body is a hologram and the same applies. Here we have the basis of acupuncture, reflexology and other forms of healing which identify representations of the whole body in all of the parts, hands, feet, ears, everywhere. Skilled palm readers can do what they do because the information of whole body is encoded in the hand. The concept of as above, so below, comes from this.



**Figure 15:** A waveform interference pattern that holds the information that transforms into a hologram.



**Figure 16:** Holographic people including 'Elvis' holographically inserted to sing a duet with Celine Dion.

The question will be asked of why, if solidity is illusory, we can't just walk through walls and each other. The resistance is not solid against solid; it is electromagnetic field against electromagnetic field and we decode this into the *experience* of solid against solid. We should also not underestimate the power of belief to dictate reality. What you believe is impossible *will be*. Your belief impacts on your decoding processes and they won't decode what you think is impossible. What we believe we perceive and what we perceive we experience. 'Can't dos' and 'impossibles' are like a firewall in a computer system that won't put on the screen what the firewall blocks. How vital that is to understanding how human experience has been hijacked. I explain in *The Answer, Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told* and other books a long list of 'mysteries' and 'paranormal' phenomena that are not mysterious and perfectly normal once you realise what reality is and how it works. 'Ghosts' can be seen to pass through 'solid' walls because the walls are not solid and the ghost is a discarnate entity operating on a frequency so different to that of the wall that it's like two radio stations sharing the same space while never interfering with each other. I have seen ghosts do this myself. The apartness of people and objects is also an illusion. Everything is connected by the Field like all sea life is connected by the sea. It's just that within the limits of our visual reality we only 'see' holographic information and not the field of information that connects everything and from which the holographic world is made manifest. If you can only see holographic 'objects' and not the field that connects them they will appear to you as unconnected to each other in the same way that we see the computer while not seeing the Wi-Fi.

## **What you don't know *can* hurt you**

Okay, we return to those 'two worlds' of human society and the Cult with its global network of interconnecting secret societies and satanic groups which manipulate through governments, corporations, media, religions, etc. The fundamental difference between them is *knowledge*. The idea has been to keep humanity

ignorant of the plan for its total enslavement underpinned by a crucial ignorance of reality – who we are and where we are – and how we interact with it. ‘Human’ should be the interaction between our expanded eternal consciousness and the five-sense body experience. We are meant to be *in* this world in terms of the five senses but not *of* this world in relation to our greater consciousness and perspective. In that state we experience the small picture of the five senses within the wider context of the big picture of awareness beyond the five senses. Put another way the five senses see the dots and expanded awareness connects them into pictures and patterns that give context to the apparently random and unconnected. Without the context of expanded awareness the five senses see only apartness and randomness with apparently no meaning. The Cult and its other-dimensional controllers seek to intervene in the frequency realm where five-sense reality is supposed to connect with expanded reality and to keep the two apart (more on this in the final chapter). When that happens five-sense mental and emotional processes are no longer influenced by expanded awareness, or the True ‘I’, and instead are driven by the isolated perceptions of the body’s decoding systems. They are in the world *and* of it. Here we have the human plight and why humanity with its potential for infinite awareness can be so easily manipulatable and descend into such extremes of stupidity.

Once the Cult isolates five-sense mind from expanded awareness it can then program the mind with perceptions and beliefs by controlling information that the mind receives through the ‘education’ system of the formative years and the media perceptual bombardment and censorship of an entire lifetime. Limit perception and a sense of the possible through limiting knowledge by limiting and skewing information while censoring and discrediting that which could set people free. As the title of another of my books says ... *And The Truth Shall Set You Free*. For this reason the last thing the Cult wants in circulation is the truth about anything – especially the reality of the eternal ‘I’ – and that’s why it is desperate to control information. The Cult knows that information becomes perception

which becomes behaviour which, collectively, becomes human society. Cult-controlled and funded mainstream ‘science’ denies the existence of an eternal ‘I’ and seeks to dismiss and trash all evidence to the contrary. Cult-controlled mainstream religion has a version of ‘God’ that is little more than a system of control and dictatorship that employs threats of damnation in an afterlife to control perceptions and behaviour in the here and now through fear and guilt. Neither is true and it’s the ‘neither’ that the Cult wishes to suppress. This ‘neither’ is that everything is an expression, a point of attention, within an infinite state of consciousness which is the real meaning of the term ‘God’.

Perceptual obsession with the ‘physical body’ and five-senses means that ‘God’ becomes personified as a bearded bloke sitting among the clouds or a raging bully who loves us if we do what ‘he’ wants and condemns us to the fires of hell if we don’t. These are no more than a ‘spiritual’ fairy tales to control and dictate events and behaviour through fear of this ‘God’ which has bizarrely made ‘God-fearing’ in religious circles a state to be desired. I would suggest that fearing *anything* is not to be encouraged and celebrated, but rather deleted. You can see why ‘God fearing’ is so beneficial to the Cult and its religions when *they* decide what ‘God’ wants and what ‘God’ demands (the Cult demands) that everyone do. As the great American comedian Bill Hicks said satirising a Christian zealot: ‘I think what God meant to say.’ How much of this infinite awareness (“God”) that we access is decided by how far we choose to expand our perceptions, self-identity and sense of the possible. The scale of self-identity reflects itself in the scale of awareness that we can connect with and are influenced by – how much knowing and insight we have instead of programmed perception. You cannot expand your awareness into the infinity of possibility when you believe that you are little me Peter the postman or Mary in marketing and nothing more. I’ll deal with this in the concluding chapter because it’s crucial to how we turnaround current events.

## **Where the Cult came from**

When I realised in the early 1990s there was a Cult network behind global events I asked the obvious question: When did it start? I took it back to ancient Rome and Egypt and on to Babylon and Sumer in Mesopotamia, the 'Land Between Two Rivers', in what we now call Iraq. The two rivers are the Tigris and Euphrates and this region is of immense historical and other importance to the Cult, as is the land called Israel only 550 miles away by air. There is much more going with deep esoteric meaning across this whole region. It's not only about 'wars for oil'. Priceless artefacts from Mesopotamia were stolen or destroyed after the American and British invasion of Iraq in 2003 justified by the lies of Boy Bush and Tony Blair (their Cult masters) about non-existent 'weapons of mass destruction'.

Mesopotamia was the location of Sumer (about 5,400BC to 1,750BC), and Babylon (about 2,350BC to 539BC). Sabbatians may have become immensely influential in the Cult in modern times but they are part of a network that goes back into the mists of history. Sumer is said by historians to be the 'cradle of civilisation'. I disagree. I say it was the re-start of what we call human civilisation after cataclysmic events symbolised in part as the 'Great Flood' destroyed the world that existed before. These fantastic upheavals that I have been describing in detail in the books since the early 1990s appear in accounts and legends of ancient cultures across the world and they are supported by geological and biological evidence. Stone tablets found in Iraq detailing the Sumer period say the cataclysms were caused by non-human 'gods' they call the Anunnaki. These are described in terms of extraterrestrial visitations in which knowledge supplied by the Anunnaki is said to have been the source of at least one of the world's oldest writing systems and developments in astronomy, mathematics and architecture that were way ahead of their time. I have covered this subject at length in *The Biggest Secret* and *Children of the Matrix* and the same basic 'Anunnaki' story can be found in Zulu accounts in South Africa where the late and very great Zulu high shaman Credo Mutwa told me that the Sumerian Anunnaki were known by Zulus as the Chitauri or 'children of the serpent'. See my six-hour video interview with Credo on this subject entitled *The*

*Reptilian Agenda* recorded at his then home near Johannesburg in 1999 which you can watch on the Ickonic media platform.

The Cult emerged out of Sumer, Babylon and Egypt (and elsewhere) and established the Roman Empire before expanding with the Romans into northern Europe from where many empires were savagely imposed in the form of Cult-controlled societies all over the world. Mass death and destruction was their calling card. The Cult established its centre of operations in Europe and European Empires were Cult empires which allowed it to expand into a global force. Spanish and Portuguese colonialists headed for Central and South America while the British and French targeted North America. Africa was colonised by Britain, France, Belgium, the Netherlands, Portugal, Spain, Italy, and Germany. Some like Britain and France moved in on the Middle East. The British Empire was by far the biggest for a simple reason. By now Britain was the headquarters of the Cult from which it expanded to form Canada, the United States, Australia and New Zealand. The Sun never set on the British Empire such was the scale of its occupation. London remains a global centre for the Cult along with Rome and the Vatican although others have emerged in Israel and China. It is no accident that the 'virus' is alleged to have come out of China while Italy was chosen as the means to terrify the Western population into compliance with 'Covid' fascism. Nor that Israel has led the world in 'Covid' fascism and mass 'vaccination'.

You would think that I would mention the United States here, but while it has been an important means of imposing the Cult's will it is less significant than would appear and is currently in the process of having what power it does have deleted. The Cult in Europe has mostly loaded the guns for the US to fire. America has been controlled from Europe from the start through Cult operatives in Britain and Europe. The American Revolution was an illusion to make it appear that America was governing itself while very different forces were pulling the strings in the form of Cult families such as the Rothschilds through the Rockefellers and other subordinates. The Rockefellers are extremely close to Bill Gates and

established both scalpel and drug ‘medicine’ and the World Health Organization. They play a major role in the development and circulation of vaccines through the Rockefeller Foundation on which Bill Gates said his Foundation is based. Why wouldn’t this be the case when the Rockefellers and Gates are on the same team? Cult infiltration of human society goes way back into what we call history and has been constantly expanding and centralising power with the goal of establishing a global structure to dictate everything. Look how this has been advanced in great leaps with the ‘Covid’ hoax.

## **The non-human dimension**

I researched and observed the comings and goings of Cult operatives through the centuries and even thousands of years as they were born, worked to promote the agenda within the secret society and satanic networks, and then died for others to replace them. Clearly there had to be a coordinating force that spanned this entire period while operatives who would not have seen the end goal in their lifetimes came and went advancing the plan over millennia. I went in search of that coordinating force with the usual support from the extraordinary synchronicity of my life which has been an almost daily experience since 1990. I saw common themes in religious texts and ancient cultures about a non-human force manipulating human society from the hidden. Christianity calls this force Satan, the Devil and demons; Islam refers to the Jinn or Djinn; Zulus have their Chitauri (spelt in other ways in different parts of Africa); and the Gnostic people in Egypt in the period around and before 400AD referred to this phenomena as the ‘Archons’, a word meaning rulers in Greek. Central American cultures speak of the ‘Predators’ among other names and the same theme is everywhere. I will use ‘Archons’ as a collective name for all of them. When you see how their nature and behaviour is described all these different sources are clearly talking about the same force. Gnostics described the Archons in terms of ‘luminous fire’ while Islam relates the Jinn to ‘smokeless fire’. Some refer to beings in form that could occasionally be seen, but the most common of common theme is that they operate from

unseen realms which means almost all existence to the visual processes of humans. I had concluded that this was indeed the foundation of human control and that the Cult was operating within the human frequency band on behalf of this hidden force when I came across the writings of Gnostics which supported my conclusions in the most extraordinary way.

A sealed earthen jar was found in 1945 near the town of Nag Hammadi about 75-80 miles north of Luxor on the banks of the River Nile in Egypt. Inside was a treasure trove of manuscripts and texts left by the Gnostic people some 1,600 years earlier. They included 13 leather-bound papyrus codices (manuscripts) and more than 50 texts written in Coptic Egyptian estimated to have been hidden in the jar in the period of 400AD although the source of the information goes back much further. Gnostics oversaw the Great or Royal Library of Alexandria, the fantastic depository of ancient texts detailing advanced knowledge and accounts of human history. The Library was dismantled and destroyed in stages over a long period with the death-blow delivered by the Cult-established Roman Church in the period around 415AD. The Church of Rome was the Church of Babylon relocated as I said earlier. Gnostics were not a race. They were a way of perceiving reality. Whenever they established themselves and their information circulated the terrorists of the Church of Rome would target them for destruction. This happened with the Great Library and with the Gnostic Cathars who were burned to death by the psychopaths after a long period of oppression at the siege of the Castle of Monségur in southern France in 1244. The Church has always been terrified of Gnostic information which demolishes the official Christian narrative although there is much in the Bible that supports the Gnostic view if you read it in another way. To anyone studying the texts of what became known as the Nag Hammadi Library it is clear that great swathes of Christian and Biblical belief has its origin with Gnostics sources going back to Sumer. Gnostic themes have been twisted to manipulate the perceived reality of Bible believers. Biblical texts have been in the open for centuries where they could be changed while Gnostic

documents found at Nag Hammadi were sealed away and untouched for 1,600 years. What you see is what they wrote.

### **Use your *pneuma* not your *nous***

Gnosticism and Gnostic come from ‘gnosis’ which means knowledge, or rather *secret* knowledge, in the sense of spiritual awareness – knowledge about reality and life itself. The desperation of the Cult’s Church of Rome to destroy the Gnostics can be understood when the knowledge they were circulating was the last thing the Cult wanted the population to know. Sixteen hundred years later the same Cult is working hard to undermine and silence me for the same reason. The dynamic between knowledge and ignorance is a constant. ‘Time’ appears to move on, but essential themes remain the same. We are told to ‘use your *nous*’, a Gnostic word for head/brain/intelligence. They said, however, that spiritual awakening or ‘salvation’ could only be secured by expanding awareness *beyond* what they called *nous* and into *pneuma* or Infinite Self. Obviously as I read these texts the parallels with what I have been saying since 1990 were fascinating to me. There is a universal truth that spans human history and in that case why wouldn’t we be talking the same language 16 centuries apart? When you free yourself from the perception program of the five senses and explore expanded realms of consciousness you are going to connect with the same information no matter what the perceived ‘era’ within a manufactured timeline of a single and tiny range of manipulated frequency. Humans working with ‘smart’ technology or knocking rocks together in caves is only a timeline appearing to operate within the human frequency band. Expanded awareness and the knowledge it holds have always been there whether the era be Stone Age or computer age. We can only access that knowledge by opening ourselves to its frequency which the five-sense prison cell is designed to stop us doing. Gates, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance, Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki, Bezos, and all the others behind the ‘Covid’ hoax clearly have a long wait before their range of frequency can make that connection given that an open heart is

crucial to that as we shall see. Instead of accessing knowledge directly through expanded awareness it is given to Cult operatives by the secret society networks of the Cult where it has been passed on over thousands of years outside the public arena. Expanded realms of consciousness is where great artists, composers and writers find their inspiration and where truth awaits anyone open enough to connect with it. We need to go there fast.

## **Archon hijack**

A fifth of the Nag Hammadi texts describe the existence and manipulation of the Archons led by a 'Chief Archon' they call 'Yaldabaoth', or the 'Demiurge', and this is the Christian 'Devil', 'Satan', 'Lucifer', and his demons. Archons in Biblical symbolism are the 'fallen ones' which are also referred to as fallen angels after the angels expelled from heaven according to the Abrahamic religions of Judaism, Christianity and Islam. These angels are claimed to tempt humans to 'sin' ongoing and you will see how accurate that symbolism is during the rest of the book. The theme of 'original sin' is related to the 'Fall' when Adam and Eve were 'tempted by the serpent' and fell from a state of innocence and 'obedience' (connection) with God into a state of disobedience (disconnection). The Fall is said to have brought sin into the world and corrupted everything including human nature. Yaldabaoth, the 'Lord Archon', is described by Gnostics as a 'counterfeit spirit', 'The Blind One', 'The Blind God', and 'The Foolish One'. The Jewish name for Yaldabaoth in Talmudic writings is Samael which translates as 'Poison of God', or 'Blindness of God'. You see the parallels. Yaldabaoth in Islamic belief is the Muslim Jinn devil known as Shaytan – Shaytan is Satan as the same themes are found all over the world in every religion and culture. The 'Lord God' of the Old Testament is the 'Lord Archon' of Gnostic manuscripts and that's why he's such a bloodthirsty bastard. Satan is known by Christians as 'the Demon of Demons' and Gnostics called Yaldabaoth the 'Archon of Archons'. Both are known as 'The Deceiver'. We are talking about the same 'bloke' for sure and these common themes

using different names, storylines and symbolism tell a common tale of the human plight.

Archons are referred to in Nag Hammadi documents as mind parasites, inverters, guards, gatekeepers, detainers, judges, pitiless ones and deceivers. The 'Covid' hoax alone is a glaring example of all these things. The Biblical 'God' is so different in the Old and New Testaments because they are not describing the same phenomenon. The vindictive, angry, hate-filled, 'God' of the Old Testament, known as Yahweh, is Yaldabaoth who is depicted in Cult-dictated popular culture as the 'Dark Lord', 'Lord of Time', Lord (Darth) Vader and Dormammu, the evil ruler of the 'Dark Dimension' trying to take over the 'Earth Dimension' in the Marvel comic movie, *Dr Strange*. Yaldabaoth is both the Old Testament 'god' and the Biblical 'Satan'. Gnostics referred to Yaldabaoth as the 'Great Architect of the Universe' and the Cult-controlled Freemason network calls their god 'the Great Architect of the Universe' (also Grand Architect). The 'Great Architect' Yaldabaoth is symbolised by the Cult as the all-seeing eye at the top of the pyramid on the Great Seal of the United States and the dollar bill. Archon is encoded in *arch-itect* as it is in *arch-angels* and *arch-bishops*. All religions have the theme of a force for good and force for evil in some sort of spiritual war and there is a reason for that – the theme is true. The Cult and its non-human masters are quite happy for this to circulate. They present themselves as the force for good fighting evil when they are really the force of evil (absence of love). The whole foundation of Cult modus operandi is inversion. They promote themselves as a force for good and anyone challenging them in pursuit of peace, love, fairness, truth and justice is condemned as a satanic force for evil. This has been the game plan throughout history whether the Church of Rome inquisitions of non-believers or 'conspiracy theorists' and 'anti-vaxxers' of today. The technique is the same whatever the timeline era.

## **Yaldabaoth is revolting (true)**

Yaldabaoth and the Archons are said to have revolted against God with Yaldabaoth claiming to *be* God – the *All That Is*. The Old Testament ‘God’ (Yaldabaoth) demanded to be worshipped as such: ‘*I am the LORD, and there is none else, there is no God beside me*’ (Isaiah 45:5). I have quoted in other books a man who said he was the unofficial son of the late Baron Philippe de Rothschild of the Mouton-Rothschild wine producing estates in France who died in 1988 and he told me about the Rothschild ‘revolt from God’. The man said he was given the name Phillip Eugene de Rothschild and we shared long correspondence many years ago while he was living under another identity. He said that he was conceived through ‘occult incest’ which (within the Cult) was ‘normal and to be admired’. ‘Phillip’ told me about his experience attending satanic rituals with rich and famous people whom he names and you can see them and the wider background to Cult Satanism in my other books starting with *The Biggest Secret*. Cult rituals are interactions with Archontic ‘gods’. ‘Phillip’ described Baron Philippe de Rothschild as ‘a master Satanist and hater of God’ and he used the same term ‘revolt from God’ associated with Yaldabaoth/Satan/Lucifer/the Devil in describing the Sabbatian Rothschild dynasty. ‘I played a key role in my family’s revolt from God’, he said. That role was to infiltrate in classic Sabbatian style the Christian Church, but eventually he escaped the mind-prison to live another life. The Cult has been targeting religion in a plan to make worship of the Archons the global one-world religion. Infiltration of Satanism into modern ‘culture’, especially among the young, through music videos, stage shows and other means, is all part of this.

Nag Hammadi texts describe Yaldabaoth and the Archons in their prime form as energy – consciousness – and say they can take form if they choose in the same way that consciousness takes form as a human. Yaldabaoth is called ‘formless’ and represents a deeply inverted, distorted and chaotic state of consciousness which seeks to attach to humans and turn them into a likeness of itself in an attempt at assimilation. For that to happen it has to manipulate

humans into low frequency mental and emotional states that match its own. Archons can certainly appear in human form and this is the origin of the psychopathic personality. The energetic distortion Gnostics called Yaldabaoth is psychopathy. When psychopathic Archons take human form that human will be a psychopath as an expression of Yaldabaoth consciousness. Cult psychopaths are Archons in human form. The principle is the same as that portrayed in the 2009 *Avatar* movie when the American military travelled to a fictional Earth-like moon called Pandora in the Alpha Centauri star system to infiltrate a society of blue people, or Na'vi, by hiding within bodies that looked like the Na'vi. Archons posing as humans have a particular hybrid information field, part human, part Archon, (the ancient 'demigods') which processes information in a way that manifests behaviour to match their psychopathic evil, lack of empathy and compassion, and stops them being influenced by the empathy, compassion and love that a fully-human information field is capable of expressing. Cult bloodlines interbreed, be they royalty or dark suits, for this reason and you have their obsession with incest. Interbreeding with full-blown humans would dilute the Archontic energy field that guarantees psychopathy in its representatives in the human realm.

Gnostic writings say the main non-human forms that Archons take are *serpentine* (what I have called for decades 'reptilian' amid unbounded ridicule from the Archontically-programmed) and what Gnostics describe as 'an unborn baby or foetus with grey skin and dark, unmoving eyes'. This is an excellent representation of the ET 'Greys' of UFO folklore which large numbers of people claim to have seen and been abducted by – Zulu shaman Credo Mutwa among them. I agree with those that believe in extraterrestrial or interdimensional visitations today and for thousands of years past. No wonder with their advanced knowledge and technological capability they were perceived and worshipped as gods for technological and other 'miracles' they appeared to perform. Imagine someone arriving in a culture disconnected from the modern world with a smartphone and computer. They would be

seen as a ‘god’ capable of ‘miracles’. The Renegade Mind, however, wants to know the source of everything and not only the way that source manifests as human or non-human. In the same way that a Renegade Mind seeks the original source material for the ‘Covid virus’ to see if what is claimed is true. The original source of Archons in form is consciousness – the distorted state of consciousness known to Gnostics as Yaldabaoth.

### **‘Revolt from God’ is energetic disconnection**

Where I am going next will make a lot of sense of religious texts and ancient legends relating to ‘Satan’, Lucifer’ and the ‘gods’. Gnostic descriptions sync perfectly with the themes of my own research over the years in how they describe a consciousness distortion seeking to impose itself on human consciousness. I’ve referred to the core of infinite awareness in previous books as Infinite Awareness in Awareness of Itself. By that I mean a level of awareness that knows that it is all awareness and is aware of all awareness. From here comes the frequency of love in its true sense and balance which is what love is on one level – the balance of all forces into a single whole called Oneness and Isness. The more we disconnect from this state of love that many call ‘God’ the constituent parts of that Oneness start to unravel and express themselves as a part and not a whole. They become individualised as intellect, mind, selfishness, hatred, envy, desire for power over others, and such like. This is not a problem in the greater scheme in that ‘God’, the *All That Is*, can experience all these possibilities through different expressions of itself including humans. What we as expressions of the whole experience the *All That Is* experiences. We are the *All That Is* experiencing itself. As we withdraw from that state of Oneness we disconnect from its influence and things can get very unpleasant and very stupid. Archontic consciousness is at the extreme end of that. It has so disconnected from the influence of Oneness that it has become an inversion of unity and love, an inversion of everything, an inversion of life itself. Evil is appropriately live written backwards. Archontic consciousness is obsessed with death, an inversion of life,

and so its manifestations in Satanism are obsessed with death. They use inverted symbols in their rituals such as the inverted pentagram and cross. Sabbatians as Archontic consciousness incarnate invert Judaism and every other religion and culture they infiltrate. They seek disunity and chaos and they fear unity and harmony as they fear love like garlic to a vampire. As a result the Cult, Archons incarnate, act with such evil, psychopathy and lack of empathy and compassion disconnected as they are from the source of love. How could Bill Gates and the rest of the Archontic psychopaths do what they have to human society in the 'Covid' era with all the death, suffering and destruction involved and have no emotional consequence for the impact on others? Now you know. Why have Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki and company callously censored information warning about the dangers of the 'vaccine' while thousands have been dying and having severe, sometimes life-changing reactions? Now you know. Why have Tedros, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance and their like around the world been using case and death figures they're aware are fraudulent to justify lockdowns and all the deaths and destroyed lives that have come from that? Now you know. Why did Christian Drosten produce and promote a 'testing' protocol that he knew couldn't test for infectious disease which led to a global human catastrophe. Now you know. The Archontic mind doesn't give a shit ([Fig 17](#)). I personally think that Gates and major Cult insiders are a form of AI cyborg that the Archons want humans to become.

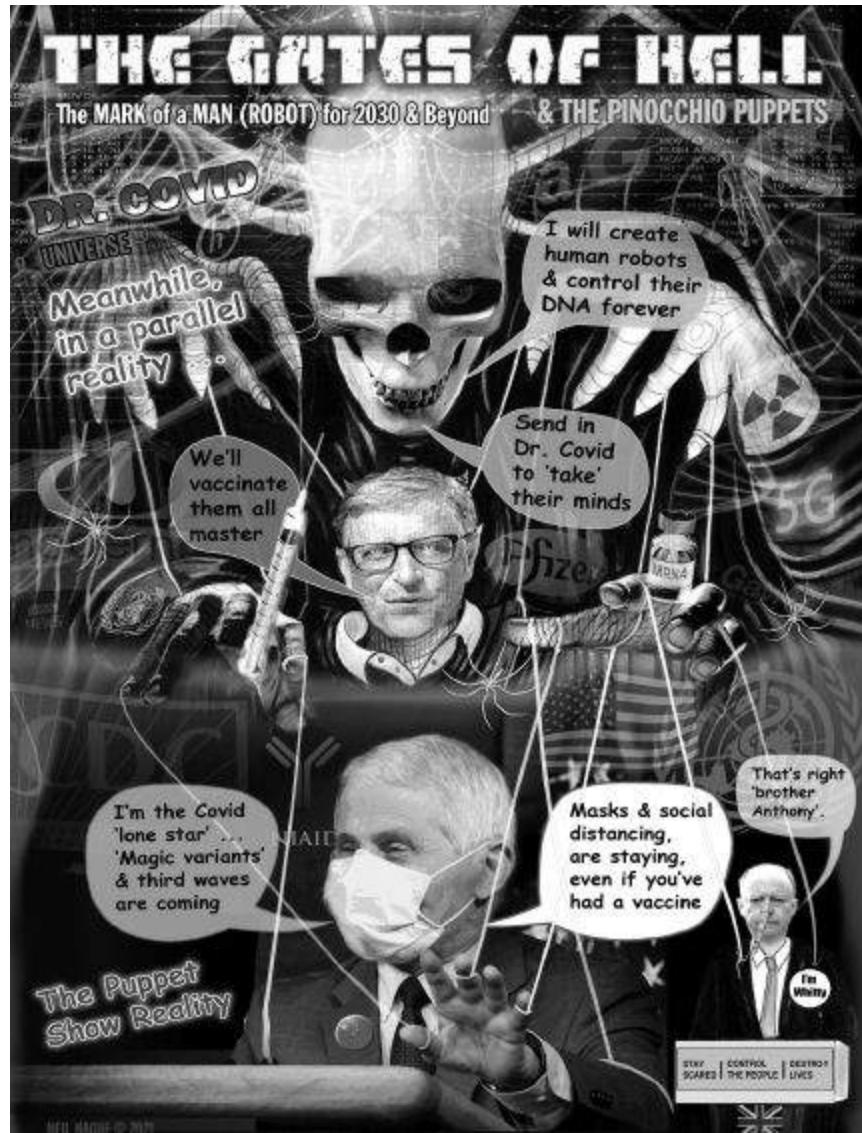


Figure 17: Artist Neil Hague's version of the 'Covid' hierarchy.

## Human batteries

A state of such inversion does have its consequences, however. The level of disconnection from the Source of All means that you withdraw from that source of energetic sustenance and creativity. This means that you have to find your own supply of energetic power and it has – *us*. When the Morpheus character in the first *Matrix* movie held up a battery he spoke a profound truth when he said: ‘The Matrix is a computer-generated dream world built to keep us under control in order to change the human being into one of

these.' The statement was true in all respects. We do live in a technologically-generated virtual reality simulation (more very shortly) and we have been manipulated to be an energy source for Archontic consciousness. The Disney-Pixar animated movie *Monsters, Inc.* in 2001 symbolised the dynamic when monsters in their world had no energy source and they would enter the human world to terrify children in their beds, catch the child's scream, terror (low-vibrational frequencies), and take that energy back to power the monster world. The lead character you might remember was a single giant eye and the symbolism of the Cult's all-seeing eye was obvious. Every thought and emotion is broadcast as a frequency unique to that thought and emotion. Feelings of love and joy, empathy and compassion, are high, quick, frequencies while fear, depression, anxiety, suffering and hate are low, slow, dense frequencies. Which kind do you think Archontic consciousness can connect with and absorb? In such a low and dense frequency state there's no way it can connect with the energy of love and joy. Archons can only feed off energy compatible with their own frequency and they and their Cult agents want to delete the human world of love and joy and manipulate the transmission of low vibrational frequencies through low-vibrational human mental and emotional states. *We are their energy source.* Wars are energetic banquets to the Archons – a world war even more so – and think how much low-frequency mental and emotional energy has been generated from the consequences for humanity of the 'Covid' hoax orchestrated by Archons incarnate like Gates.

The ancient practice of human sacrifice 'to the gods', continued in secret today by the Cult, is based on the same principle. 'The gods' are Archontic consciousness in different forms and the sacrifice is induced into a state of intense terror to generate the energy the Archontic frequency can absorb. Incarnate Archons in the ritual drink the blood which contains an adrenaline they crave which floods into the bloodstream when people are terrorised. Most of the sacrifices, ancient and modern, are children and the theme of 'sacrificing young virgins to the gods' is just code for children. They

have a particular pre-puberty energy that Archons want more than anything and the energy of the young in general is their target. The California Department of Education wants students to chant the names of Aztec gods (Archontic gods) once worshipped in human sacrifice rituals in a curriculum designed to encourage them to ‘challenge racist, bigoted, discriminatory, imperialist/colonial beliefs’, join ‘social movements that struggle for social justice’, and ‘build new possibilities for a post-racist, post-systemic racism society’. It’s the usual Woke crap that inverts racism and calls it anti-racism. In this case solidarity with ‘indigenous tribes’ is being used as an excuse to chant the names of ‘gods’ to which people were sacrificed (and still are in secret). What an example of Woke’s inability to see beyond black and white, us and them, They condemn the colonisation of these tribal cultures by Europeans (quite right), but those cultures sacrificing people including children to their ‘gods’, and mass murdering untold numbers as the Aztecs did, is just fine. One chant is to the Aztec god Tezcatlipoca who had a man sacrificed to him in the 5th month of the Aztec calendar. His heart was cut out and he was eaten. Oh, that’s okay then. Come on children … after three … Other sacrificial ‘gods’ for the young to chant their allegiance include Quetzalcoatl, Huitzilopochtli and Xipe Totec. The curriculum says that ‘chants, affirmations, and energizers can be used to bring the class together, build unity around ethnic studies principles and values, and to reinvigorate the class following a lesson that may be emotionally taxing or even when student engagement may appear to be low’. Well, that’s the cover story, anyway. Chanting and mantras are the repetition of a particular frequency generated from the vocal cords and chanting the names of these Archontic ‘gods’ tunes you into their frequency. That is the last thing you want when it allows for energetic synchronisation, attachment and perceptual influence. Initiates chant the names of their ‘Gods’ in their rituals for this very reason.

## **Vampires of the Woke**

Paedophilia is another way that Archons absorb the energy of children. Paedophiles possessed by Archontic consciousness are used as the conduit during sexual abuse for discarnate Archons to vampire the energy of the young they desire so much. Stupendous numbers of children disappear every year never to be seen again although you would never know from the media. Imagine how much low-vibrational energy has been generated by children during the 'Covid' hoax when so many have become depressed and psychologically destroyed to the point of killing themselves.

Shocking numbers of children are now taken by the state from loving parents to be handed to others. I can tell you from long experience of researching this since 1996 that many end up with paedophiles and assets of the Cult through corrupt and Cult-owned social services which in the reframing era has hired many psychopaths and emotionless automatons to do the job. Children are even stolen to order using spurious reasons to take them by the corrupt and secret (because they're corrupt) 'family courts'. I have written in detail in other books, starting with *The Biggest Secret* in 1997, about the ubiquitous connections between the political, corporate, government, intelligence and military elites (Cult operatives) and Satanism and paedophilia. If you go deep enough both networks have an interlocking leadership. The Woke mentality has been developed by the Cult for many reasons: To promote almost every aspect of its agenda; to hijack the traditional political left and turn it fascist; to divide and rule; and to target agenda pushbackers. But there are other reasons which relate to what I am describing here. How many happy and joyful Wokers do you ever see especially at the extreme end? They are a mental and psychological mess consumed by emotional stress and constantly emotionally cocked for the next explosion of indignation at someone referring to a female as a female. They are walking, talking, batteries as Morpheus might say emitting frequencies which both enslave them in low-vibrational bubbles of perceptual limitation and feed the Archons. Add to this the hatred claimed to be love; fascism claimed to 'anti-fascism', racism claimed to be 'anti-racism';

exclusion claimed to inclusion; and the abuse-filled Internet trolling. You have a purpose-built Archontic energy system with not a wind turbine in sight and all founded on Archontic *inversion*. We have whole generations now manipulated to serve the Archons with their actions and energy. They will be doing so their entire adult lives unless they snap out of their Archon-induced trance. Is it really a surprise that Cult billionaires and corporations put so much money their way? Where is the energy of joy and laughter, including laughing at yourself which is confirmation of your own emotional security? Mark Twain said: 'The human race has one really effective weapon, and that is laughter.' We must use it all the time. Woke has destroyed comedy because it has no humour, no joy, sense of irony, or self-deprecation. Its energy is dense and intense. *Mmmmm*, lunch says the Archontic frequency. Rudolf Steiner (1861-1925) was the Austrian philosopher and famous esoteric thinker who established Waldorf education or Steiner schools to treat children like unique expressions of consciousness and not minds to be programmed with the perceptions determined by authority. I'd been writing about this energy vampiring for decades when I was sent in 2016 a quote by Steiner. He was spot on:

There are beings in the spiritual realms for whom anxiety and fear emanating from human beings offer welcome food. When humans have no anxiety and fear, then these creatures starve. If fear and anxiety radiates from people and they break out in panic, then these creatures find welcome nutrition and they become more and more powerful. These beings are hostile towards humanity. Everything that feeds on negative feelings, on anxiety, fear and superstition, despair or doubt, are in reality hostile forces in super-sensible worlds, launching cruel attacks on human beings, while they are being fed ... These are exactly the feelings that belong to contemporary culture and materialism; because it estranges people from the spiritual world, it is especially suited to evoke hopelessness and fear of the unknown in people, thereby calling up the above mentioned hostile forces against them.

Pause for a moment from this perspective and reflect on what has happened in the world since the start of 2020. Not only will pennies drop, but billion dollar bills. We see the same theme from Don Juan Matus, a Yaqui Indian shaman in Mexico and the information source for Peruvian-born writer, Carlos Castaneda, who wrote a series of

books from the 1960s to 1990s. Don Juan described the force manipulating human society and his name for the Archons was the predator:

We have a predator that came from the depths of the cosmos and took over the rule of our lives. Human beings are its prisoners. The predator is our lord and master. It has rendered us docile, helpless. If we want to protest, it suppresses our protest. If we want to act independently, it demands that we don't do so ... indeed we are held prisoner!

They took us over because we are food to them, and they squeeze us mercilessly because we are their sustenance. Just as we rear chickens in coops, the predators rear us in human coops, humaneros. Therefore, their food is always available to them.

Different cultures, different eras, same recurring theme.

## The 'ennoia' dilemma

Nag Hammadi Gnostic manuscripts say that Archon consciousness has no 'ennoia'. This is directly translated as 'intentionality', but I'll use the term 'creative imagination'. The *All That Is* in awareness of itself is the source of all creativity – all possibility – and the more disconnected you are from that source the more you are subsequently denied 'creative imagination'. Given that Archon consciousness is almost entirely disconnected it severely lacks creativity and has to rely on far more mechanical processes of thought and exploit the creative potential of those that do have 'ennoia'. You can see cases of this throughout human society. Archon consciousness almost entirely dominates the global banking system and if we study how that system works you will appreciate what I mean. Banks manifest 'money' out of nothing by issuing lines of 'credit' which is 'money' that has never, does not, and will never exist except in theory. It's a confidence trick. If you think 'credit' figures-on-a-screen 'money' is worth anything you accept it as payment. If you don't then the whole system collapses through lack of confidence in the value of that 'money'. Archontic bankers with no 'ennoia' are 'lending' 'money' that doesn't exist to humans that *do* have creativity – those that have the inspired ideas and create businesses and products. Archon banking feeds off human creativity

which it controls through ‘money’ creation and debt. Humans have the creativity and Archons exploit that for their own benefit and control while having none themselves. Archon Internet platforms like Facebook claim joint copyright of everything that creative users post and while Archontic minds like Zuckerberg may officially head that company it will be human creatives on the staff that provide the creative inspiration. When you have limitless ‘money’ you can then buy other companies established by creative humans. Witness the acquisition record of Facebook, Google and their like. Survey the Archon-controlled music industry and you see non-creative dark suit executives making their fortune from the human creativity of their artists. The cases are endless. Research the history of people like Gates and Zuckerberg and how their empires were built on exploiting the creativity of others. Archon minds cannot create out of nothing, but they are skilled (because they have to be) in what Gnostic texts call ‘countermimicry’. They can imitate, but not innovate. Sabbatians trawl the creativity of others through backdoors they install in computer systems through their cybersecurity systems. Archon-controlled China is globally infamous for stealing intellectual property and I remember how Hong Kong, now part of China, became notorious for making counterfeit copies of the creativity of others – ‘countermimicry’. With the now pervasive and all-seeing surveillance systems able to infiltrate any computer you can appreciate the potential for Archons to vampire the creativity of humans. Author John Lamb Lash wrote in his book about the Nag Hammadi texts, *Not In His Image*:

Although they cannot originate anything, because they lack the divine factor of ennoia (intentionality), Archons can imitate with a vengeance. Their expertise is simulation (HAL, virtual reality). The Demiurge [Yaldabaoth] fashions a heaven world copied from the fractal patterns [of the original] ... His construction is celestial kitsch, like the fake Italianate villa of a Mafia don complete with militant angels to guard every portal.

This brings us to something that I have been speaking about since the turn of the millennium. Our reality is a simulation; a virtual reality that we think is real. No, I’m not kidding.

## **Human reality? Well, virtually**

I had pondered for years about whether our reality is ‘real’ or some kind of construct. I remembered being immensely affected on a visit as a small child in the late 1950s to the then newly-opened Planetarium on the Marylebone Road in London which is now closed and part of the adjacent Madame Tussauds wax museum. It was in the middle of the day, but when the lights went out there was the night sky projected in the Planetarium’s domed ceiling and it appeared to be so real. The experience never left me and I didn’t know why until around the turn of the millennium when I became certain that our ‘night sky’ and entire reality is a projection, a virtual reality, akin to the illusory world portrayed in the *Matrix* movies. I looked at the sky one day in this period and it appeared to me like the domed roof of the Planetarium. The release of the first *Matrix* movie in 1999 also provided a synchronistic and perfect visual representation of where my mind had been going for a long time. I hadn’t come across the Gnostic Nag Hammadi texts then. When I did years later the correlation was once again astounding. As I read Gnostic accounts from 1,600 years and more earlier it was clear that they were describing the same simulation phenomenon. They tell how the Yaldabaoth ‘Demiurge’ and Archons created a ‘bad copy’ of original reality to rule over all that were captured by its illusions and the body was a prison to trap consciousness in the ‘bad copy’ fake reality. Read how Gnostics describe the ‘bad copy’ and update that to current times and they are referring to what we would call today a virtual reality simulation.

Author John Lamb Lash said ‘the Demiurge fashions a heaven world copied from the fractal patterns’ of the original through expertise in ‘HAL’ or virtual reality simulation. Fractal patterns are part of the energetic information construct of our reality, a sort of blueprint. If these patterns were copied in computer terms it would indeed give you a copy of a ‘natural’ reality in a non-natural frequency and digital form. The principle is the same as making a copy of a website. The original website still exists, but now you can change the copy version to make it whatever you like and it can

become very different to the original website. Archons have done this with our reality, a *synthetic* copy of prime reality that still exists beyond the frequency walls of the simulation. Trapped within the illusions of this synthetic Matrix, however, were and are human consciousness and other expressions of prime reality and this is why the Archons via the Cult are seeking to make the human body synthetic and give us synthetic AI minds to complete the job of turning the entire reality synthetic including what we perceive to be the natural world. To quote Kurzweil: ‘Nanobots will infuse all the matter around us with information. Rocks, trees, everything will become these intelligent creatures.’ Yes, *synthetic* ‘creatures’ just as ‘Covid’ and other genetically-manipulating ‘vaccines’ are designed to make the human body synthetic. From this perspective it is obvious why Archons and their Cult are so desperate to infuse synthetic material into every human with their ‘Covid’ scam.

### **Let there be (electromagnetic) light**

Yaldabaoth, the force that created the simulation, or Matrix, makes sense of the Gnostic reference to ‘The Great Architect’ and its use by Cult Freemasonry as the name of its deity. The designer of the Matrix in the movies is called ‘The Architect’ and that trilogy is jam-packed with symbolism relating to these subjects. I have contended for years that the angry Old Testament God (Yaldabaoth) is the ‘God’ being symbolically ‘quoted’ in the opening of Genesis as ‘creating the world’. This is not the creation of prime reality – it’s the creation of the *simulation*. The Genesis ‘God’ says: ‘Let there be Light: and there was light.’ But what is this ‘Light’? I have said for decades that the speed of light (186,000 miles per second) is not the fastest speed possible as claimed by mainstream science and is in fact the frequency walls or outer limits of the Matrix. You can’t have a fastest or slowest anything within all possibility when everything is possible. The human body is encoded to operate within the speed of light or *within the simulation* and thus we see only the tiny frequency band of visible *light*. Near-death experiencers who perceive reality outside the body during temporary ‘death’ describe a very different

form of light and this is supported by the Nag Hammadi texts. Prime reality beyond the simulation ('Upper Aeons' to the Gnostics) is described as a realm of incredible beauty, bliss, love and harmony – a realm of 'watery light' that is so powerful 'there are no shadows'. Our false reality of Archon control, which Gnostics call the 'Lower Aeons', is depicted as a realm with a different kind of 'light' and described in terms of chaos, 'Hell', 'the Abyss' and 'Outer Darkness', where trapped souls are tormented and manipulated by demons (relate that to the 'Covid' hoax alone). The watery light theme can be found in near-death accounts and it is not the same as *simulation* 'light' which is electromagnetic or radiation light within the speed of light – the 'Lower Aeons'. Simulation 'light' is the 'luminous fire' associated by Gnostics with the Archons. The Bible refers to Yaldabaoth as 'that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world' (Revelation 12:9). I think that making a simulated copy of prime reality ('countermimicry') and changing it dramatically while all the time manipulating humanity to believe it to be real could probably meet the criteria of deceiving the whole world. Then we come to the Cult god Lucifer – the *Light Bringer*. Lucifer is symbolic of Yaldabaoth, the bringer of radiation light that forms the bad copy simulation within the speed of light. 'He' is symbolised by the lighted torch held by the Statue of Liberty and in the name 'Illuminati'. Sabbatian-Frankism declares that Lucifer is the true god and Lucifer is the real god of Freemasonry honoured as their 'Great or Grand Architect of the Universe' (simulation).

I would emphasise, too, the way Archontic technologically-generated luminous fire of radiation has deluged our environment since I was a kid in the 1950s and changed the nature of The Field with which we constantly interact. Through that interaction technological radiation is changing us. The Smart Grid is designed to operate with immense levels of communication power with 5G expanding across the world and 6G, 7G, in the process of development. Radiation is the simulation and the Archontic manipulation system. Why wouldn't the Archon Cult wish to unleash radiation upon us to an ever-greater extreme to form

Kurzweil's 'cloud'? The plan for a synthetic human is related to the need to cope with levels of radiation beyond even anything we've seen so far. Biological humans would not survive the scale of radiation they have in their script. The Smart Grid is a technological sub-reality within the technological simulation to further disconnect five-sense perception from expanded consciousness. It's a technological prison of the mind.

### **Infusing the 'spirit of darkness'**

A recurring theme in religion and native cultures is the manipulation of human genetics by a non-human force and most famously recorded as the biblical 'sons of god' (the gods plural in the original) who interbred with the daughters of men. The Nag Hammadi *Apocryphon of John* tells the same story this way:

He [Yaldabaoth] sent his angels [Archons/demons] to the daughters of men, that they might take some of them for themselves and raise offspring for their enjoyment. And at first they did not succeed. When they had no success, they gathered together again and they made a plan together ... And the angels changed themselves in their likeness into the likeness of their mates, filling them with the spirit of darkness, which they had mixed for them, and with evil ... And they took women and begot children out of the darkness according to the likeness of their spirit.

Possession when a discarnate entity takes over a human body is an age-old theme and continues today. It's very real and I've seen it. Satanic and secret society rituals can create an energetic environment in which entities can attach to initiates and I've heard many stories of how people have changed their personality after being initiated even into lower levels of the Freemasons. I have been inside three Masonic temples, one at a public open day and two by just walking in when there was no one around to stop me. They were in Ryde, the town where I live, Birmingham, England, when I was with a group, and Boston, Massachusetts. They all felt the same energetically – dark, dense, low-vibrational and sinister. Demonic attachment can happen while the initiate has no idea what is going on. To them it's just a ritual to get in the Masons and do a bit of good

business. In the far more extreme rituals of Satanism human possession is even more powerful and they are designed to make possession possible. The hierarchy of the Cult is dictated by the power and perceived status of the possessing Archon. In this way the Archon hierarchy becomes the Cult hierarchy. Once the entity has attached it can influence perception and behaviour and if it attaches to the extreme then so much of its energy (information) infuses into the body information field that the hologram starts to reflect the nature of the possessing entity. This is the *Exorcist* movie type of possession when facial features change and it's known as shapeshifting. Islam's Jinn are said to be invisible tricksters who change shape, 'whisper', confuse and take human form. These are all traits of the Archons and other versions of the same phenomenon. Extreme possession could certainty infuse the 'spirit of darkness' into a partner during sex as the Nag Hammadi texts appear to describe. Such an infusion can change genetics which is also energetic information. Human genetics is information and the 'spirit of darkness' is information. Mix one with the other and change must happen. Islam has the concept of a 'Jinn baby' through possession of the mother and by Jinn taking human form. There are many ways that human genetics can be changed and remember that Archons have been aware all along of advanced techniques to do this. What is being done in human society today – and far more – was known about by Archons at the time of the 'fallen ones' and their other versions described in religions and cultures.

Archons and their human-world Cult are obsessed with genetics as we see today and they know this dictates how information is processed into perceived reality during a human life. They needed to produce a human form that would decode the simulation and this is symbolically known as 'Adam and Eve' who left the 'garden' (prime reality) and 'fell' into Matrix reality. The simulation is not a 'physical' construct (there is no 'physical'); it is a source of information. Think Wi-Fi again. The simulation is an energetic field encoded with information and body-brain systems are designed to decode that information encoded in wave or frequency form which

is transmitted to the brain as electrical signals. These are decoded by the brain to construct our sense of reality – an illusory ‘physical’ world that only exists in the brain or the mind. Virtual reality games mimic this process using the same sensory decoding system. Information is fed to the senses to decode a virtual reality that can appear so real, but isn’t (Figs 18 and 19). Some scientists believe – and I agree with them – that what we perceive as ‘physical’ reality only exists when we are looking or observing. The act of perception or focus triggers the decoding systems which turn waveform information into holographic reality. When we are not observing something our reality reverts from a holographic state to a waveform state. This relates to the same principle as a falling tree not making a noise unless someone is there to hear it or decode it. The concept makes sense from the simulation perspective. A computer is not decoding all the information in a Wi-Fi field all the time and only decodes or brings into reality on the screen that part of Wi-Fi that it’s decoding – focusing upon – at that moment.



**Figure 18:** Virtual reality technology ‘hacks’ into the body’s five-sense decoding system.



**Figure 19:** The result can be experienced as very ‘real’.

Interestingly, Professor Donald Hoffman at the Department of Cognitive Sciences at the University of California, Irvine, says that our experienced reality is like a computer interface that shows us only the level with which we interact while hiding all that exists beyond it: ‘Evolution shaped us with a user interface that hides the truth. Nothing that we see is the truth – the very language of space and time and objects is the wrong language to describe reality.’ He is correct in what he says on so many levels. Space and time are not a universal reality. They are a phenomenon of decoded *simulation* reality as part of the process of enslaving our sense of reality. Near-death experiencers report again and again how space and time did not exist as we perceive them once they were free of the body – body decoding systems. You can appreciate from this why Archons and their Cult are so desperate to entrap human attention in the five senses where we are in the Matrix and of the Matrix. Opening your mind to expanded states of awareness takes you beyond the information confines of the simulation and you become aware of knowledge and insights denied to you before. This is what we call ‘awakening’ – *awakening from the Matrix* – and in the final chapter I will relate this to current events.

## **Where are the ‘aliens’?**

A simulation would explain the so-called ‘Fermi Paradox’ named after Italian physicist Enrico Fermi (1901-1954) who created the first nuclear reactor. He considered the question of why there is such a lack of extraterrestrial activity when there are so many stars and planets in an apparently vast universe; but what if the night sky that we see, or think we do, is a simulated projection as I say? If you control the simulation and your aim is to hold humanity fast in essential ignorance would you want other forms of life including advanced life coming and going sharing information with humanity? Or would you want them to believe they were isolated and apparently alone? Themes of human isolation and apartness are common whether they be the perception of a lifeless universe or the fascist isolation laws of the ‘Covid’ era. Paradoxically the very

existence of a simulation means that we are not alone when some force had to construct it. My view is that experiences that people have reported all over the world for centuries with Reptilians and Grey entities are Archon phenomena as Nag Hammadi texts describe; and that benevolent 'alien' interactions are non-human groups that come in and out of the simulation by overcoming Archon attempts to keep them out. It should be highlighted, too, that Reptilians and Greys are obsessed with *genetics* and *technology* as related by cultural accounts and those who say they have been abducted by them. Technology is their way of overcoming some of the limitations in their creative potential and our technology-driven and controlled human society of today is *archetypical* Archon-Reptilian-Grey modus operandi. Technocracy is really *Archontocracy*. The Universe does not have to be as big as it appears with a simulation. There is no space or distance only information decoded into holographic reality. What we call 'space' is only the absence of holographic 'objects' and that 'space' is The Field of energetic information which connects everything into a single whole. The same applies with the artificially-generated information field of the simulation. The Universe is not big or small as a physical reality. It is decoded information, that's all, and its perceived size is decided by the way the simulation is encoded to make it appear. The entire night sky as we perceive it only exists in our brain and so where are those 'millions of light years'? The 'stars' on the ceiling of the Planetarium looked a vast distance away.

There's another point to mention about 'aliens'. I have been highlighting since the 1990s the plan to stage a fake 'alien invasion' to justify the centralisation of global power and a world military. Nazi scientist Werner von Braun, who was taken to America by Operation Paperclip after World War Two to help found NASA, told his American assistant Dr Carol Rosin about the Cult agenda when he knew he was dying in 1977. Rosin said that he told her about a sequence that would lead to total human control by a one-world government. This included threats from terrorism, rogue nations, meteors and asteroids before finally an 'alien invasion'. All of these

things, von Braun said, would be bogus and what I would refer to as a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Keep this in mind when ‘the aliens are coming’ is the new mantra. The aliens are not coming – they are *already here* and they have infiltrated human society while looking human. French-Canadian investigative journalist Serge Monast said in 1994 that he had uncovered a NASA/military operation called Project Blue Beam which fits with what Werner von Braun predicted. Monast died of a ‘heart attack’ in 1996 the day after he was arrested and spent a night in prison. He was 51. He said Blue Beam was a plan to stage an alien invasion that would include religious figures beamed holographically into the sky as part of a global manipulation to usher in a ‘new age’ of worshipping what I would say is the Cult ‘god’ Yaldabaoth in a one-world religion. Fake holographic asteroids are also said to be part of the plan which again syncs with von Braun. How could you stage an illusory threat from asteroids unless they were holographic inserts? This is pretty straightforward given the advanced technology outside the public arena and the fact that our ‘physical’ reality is holographic anyway. Information fields would be projected and we would decode them into the illusion of a ‘physical’ asteroid. If they can sell a global ‘pandemic’ with a ‘virus’ that doesn’t exist what will humans not believe if government and media tell them?

All this is particularly relevant as I write with the Pentagon planning to release in June, 2021, information about ‘UFO sightings’. I have been following the UFO story since the early 1990s and the common theme throughout has been government and military denials and cover up. More recently, however, the Pentagon has suddenly become more talkative and apparently open with Air Force pilot radar images released of unexplained craft moving and changing direction at speeds well beyond anything believed possible with human technology. Then, in March, 2021, former Director of National Intelligence John Ratcliffe said a Pentagon report months later in June would reveal a great deal of information about UFO sightings unknown to the public. He said the report would have ‘massive implications’. The order to do this was included bizarrely

in a \$2.3 trillion ‘coronavirus’ relief and government funding bill passed by the Trump administration at the end of 2020. I would add some serious notes of caution here. I have been pointing out since the 1990s that the US military and intelligence networks have long had craft – ‘flying saucers’ or anti-gravity craft – which any observer would take to be extraterrestrial in origin. Keeping this knowledge from the public allows craft flown by *humans* to be perceived as alien visitations. I am not saying that ‘aliens’ do not exist. I would be the last one to say that, but we have to be streetwise here. President Ronald Reagan told the UN General Assembly in 1987: ‘I occasionally think how quickly our differences worldwide would vanish if we were facing an alien threat from outside this world.’ That’s the idea. Unite against a common ‘enemy’ with a common purpose behind your ‘saviour force’ (the Cult) as this age-old technique of mass manipulation goes global.

### **Science moves this way ...**

I could find only one other person who was discussing the simulation hypothesis publicly when I concluded it was real. This was Nick Bostrom, a Swedish-born philosopher at the University of Oxford, who has explored for many years the possibility that human reality is a computer simulation although his version and mine are not the same. Today the simulation and holographic reality hypothesis have increasingly entered the scientific mainstream. Well, the more open-minded mainstream, that is. Here are a few of the ever-gathering examples. American nuclear physicist Silas Beane led a team of physicists at the University of Bonn in Germany pursuing the question of whether we live in a simulation. They concluded that we probably do and it was likely based on a lattice of cubes. They found that cosmic rays align with that specific pattern. The team highlighted the Greisen-Zatsepin-Kuzmin (GZK) limit which refers to cosmic ray particle interaction with cosmic background radiation that creates an apparent boundary for cosmic ray particles. They say in a paper entitled ‘Constraints on the Universe as a Numerical Simulation’ that this ‘pattern of constraint’ is exactly what you

would find with a computer simulation. They also made the point that a simulation would create its own ‘laws of physics’ that would limit possibility. I’ve been making the same point for decades that the *perceived* laws of physics relate only to this reality, or what I would later call the simulation. When designers write codes to create computer and virtual reality games they are the equivalent of the laws of physics for that game. Players interact within the limitations laid out by the coding. In the same way those who wrote the codes for the simulation decided the laws of physics that would apply. These can be overridden by expanded states of consciousness, but not by those enslaved in only five-sense awareness where simulation codes rule. Overriding the codes is what people call ‘miracles’. They are not. They are bypassing the encoded limits of the simulation. A population caught in simulation perception would have no idea that this was their plight. As the Bonn paper said: ‘Like a prisoner in a pitch-black cell we would not be able to see the “walls” of our prison.’ That’s true if people remain mesmerised by the five senses. Open to expanded awareness and those walls become very clear. The main one is the speed of light.

American theoretical physicist James Gates is another who has explored the simulation question and found considerable evidence to support the idea. Gates was Professor of Physics at the University of Maryland, Director of The Center for String and Particle Theory, and on Barack Obama’s Council of Advisors on Science and Technology. He and his team found *computer codes* of digital data embedded in the fabric of our reality. They relate to on-off electrical charges of 1 and 0 in the binary system used by computers. ‘We have no idea what they are doing there’, Gates said. They found within the energetic fabric mathematical sequences known as error-correcting codes or block codes that ‘reboot’ data to its original state or ‘default settings’ when something knocks it out of sync. Gates was asked if he had found a set of equations embedded in our reality indistinguishable from those that drive search engines and browsers and he said: ‘That is correct.’ Rich Terrile, director of the Centre for Evolutionary Computation and Automated Design at NASA’s Jet

Propulsion Laboratory, has said publicly that he believes the Universe is a digital hologram that must have been created by a form of intelligence. I agree with that in every way. Waveform information is delivered electrically by the senses to the brain which constructs a *digital* holographic reality that we call the ‘world’. This digital level of reality can be read by the esoteric art of numerology. Digital holograms are at the cutting edge of holographics today. We have digital technology everywhere designed to access and manipulate our digital level of perceived reality. Synthetic mRNA in ‘Covid vaccines’ has a digital component to manipulate the body’s digital ‘operating system’.

## **Reality is numbers**

How many know that our reality can be broken down to numbers and codes that are the same as computer games? Max Tegmark, a physicist at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), is the author of *Our Mathematical Universe* in which he lays out how reality can be entirely described by numbers and maths in the way that a video game is encoded with the ‘physics’ of computer games. Our world and computer virtual reality are essentially the same.

Tegmark imagines the perceptions of characters in an advanced computer game when the graphics are so good they don’t know they are in a game. They think they can bump into real objects (electromagnetic resistance in our reality), fall in love and feel emotions like excitement. When they began to study the apparently ‘physical world’ of the video game they would realise that everything was made of pixels (which have been found in our energetic reality as must be the case when on one level our world is digital). What computer game characters thought was physical ‘stuff’, Tegmark said, could actually be broken down into numbers:

And we’re exactly in this situation in our world. We look around and it doesn’t seem that mathematical at all, but everything we see is made out of elementary particles like quarks and electrons. And what properties does an electron have? Does it have a smell or a colour or a texture? No! ... We physicists have come up with geeky names for [Electron] properties, like

electric charge, or spin, or lepton number, but the electron doesn't care what we call it, the properties are just numbers.

This is the illusory reality Gnostics were describing. This is the simulation. The A, C, G, and T codes of DNA have a binary value – A and C = 0 while G and T = 1. This has to be when the simulation is digital and the body must be digital to interact with it. Recurring mathematical sequences are encoded throughout reality and the body. They include the Fibonacci sequence in which the two previous numbers are added to get the next one, as in ... 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, etc. The sequence is encoded in the human face and body, proportions of animals, DNA, seed heads, pine cones, trees, shells, spiral galaxies, hurricanes and the number of petals in a flower. The list goes on and on. There are fractal patterns – a 'never-ending pattern that is infinitely complex and self-similar across all scales in the as above, so below, principle of holograms. These and other famous recurring geometrical and mathematical sequences such as Phi, Pi, Golden Mean, Golden Ratio and Golden Section are *computer codes* of the simulation. I had to laugh and give my head a shake the day I finished this book and it went into the production stage. I was sent an article in *Scientific American* published in April, 2021, with the headline 'Confirmed! We Live in a Simulation'. Two decades after I first said our reality is a simulation and the speed of light is its outer limit the article suggested that we do live in a simulation and that the speed of light is its outer limit. I left school at 15 and never passed a major exam in my life while the writer was up to his eyes in qualifications. As I will explain in the final chapter *knowing* is far better than thinking and they come from very different sources. The article rightly connected the speed of light to the processing speed of the 'Matrix' and said what has been in my books all this time ... 'If we are in a simulation, as it appears, then space is an abstract property written in code. It is not real'. No it's not and if we live in a simulation something created it and it wasn't *us*. 'That David Icke says we are manipulated by aliens' – he's crackers.'

## **Wow ...**

The reality that humanity thinks is so real is an illusion. Politicians, governments, scientists, doctors, academics, law enforcement, media, school and university curriculums, on and on, are all founded on a world that *does not exist* except as a simulated prison cell. Is it such a stretch to accept that 'Covid' doesn't exist when our entire 'physical' reality doesn't exist? Revealed here is the knowledge kept under raps in the Cult networks of compartmentalised secrecy to control humanity's sense of reality by inducing the population to believe in a reality that's not real. If it wasn't so tragic in its experiential consequences the whole thing would be hysterically funny. None of this is new to Renegade Minds. Ancient Greek philosopher Plato (about 428 to about 347BC) was a major influence on Gnostic belief and he described the human plight thousands of years ago with his Allegory of the Cave. He told the symbolic story of prisoners living in a cave who had never been outside. They were chained and could only see one wall of the cave while behind them was a fire that they could not see. Figures walked past the fire casting shadows on the prisoners' wall and those moving shadows became their sense of reality. Some prisoners began to study the shadows and were considered experts on them (today's academics and scientists), but what they studied was only an illusion (today's academics and scientists). A prisoner escaped from the cave and saw reality as it really is. When he returned to report this revelation they didn't believe him, called him mad and threatened to kill him if he tried to set them free. Plato's tale is not only a brilliant analogy of the human plight and our illusory reality. It describes, too, the dynamics of the 'Covid' hoax. I have only skimmed the surface of these subjects here. The aim of this book is to crisply connect all essential dots to put what is happening today into its true context. All subject areas and their connections in this chapter are covered in great evidential detail in *Everything You Need To Know, But Have Never Been Told* and *The Answer*.

They say that bewildered people 'can't see the forest for the trees'. Humanity, however, can't see the forest for the *twigs*. The five senses

see only twigs while Renegade Minds can see the forest and it's the forest where the answers lie with the connections that reveals. Breaking free of perceptual programming so the forest can be seen is the way we turn all this around. Not breaking free is how humanity got into this mess. The situation may seem hopeless, but I promise you it's not. We are a perceptual heartbeat from paradise if only we knew.

## CHAPTER TWELVE

### Escaping Wetiko

*Life is simply a vacation from the infinite*

Dean Cavanagh

Renegade Minds weave the web of life and events and see common themes in the apparently random. They are always there if you look for them and their pursuit is aided by incredible synchronicity that comes when your mind is open rather than mesmerised by what it thinks it can see.

Infinite awareness is infinite possibility and the more of infinite possibility that we access the more becomes infinitely possible. That may be stating the apparently obvious, but it is a devastatingly-powerful fact that can set us free. We are a point of attention within an infinity of consciousness. The question is how much of that infinity do we choose to access? How much knowledge, insight, awareness, wisdom, do we want to connect with and explore? If your focus is only in the five senses you will be influenced by a fraction of infinite awareness. I mean a range so tiny that it gives new meaning to infinitesimal. Limitation of self-identity and a sense of the possible limit accordingly your range of consciousness. We are what we think we are. Life is what we think it is. The dream is the dreamer and the dreamer is the dream. Buddhist philosophy puts it this way: 'As a thing is viewed, so it appears.' Most humans live in the realm of touch, taste, see, hear, and smell and that's the limit of their sense of the possible and sense of self. Many will follow a religion and speak of a God in his heaven, but their lives are still

dominated by the five senses in their perceptions and actions. The five senses become the arbiter of everything. When that happens all except a smear of infinity is sealed away from influence by the rigid, unyielding, reality bubbles that are the five-sense human or Phantom Self. Archon Cult methodology is to isolate consciousness within five-sense reality – the simulation – and then program that consciousness with a sense of self and the world through a deluge of life-long information designed to instil the desired perception that allows global control. Efforts to do this have increased dramatically with identity politics as identity bubbles are squeezed into the minutiae of five-sense detail which disconnect people even more profoundly from the infinite ‘I’.

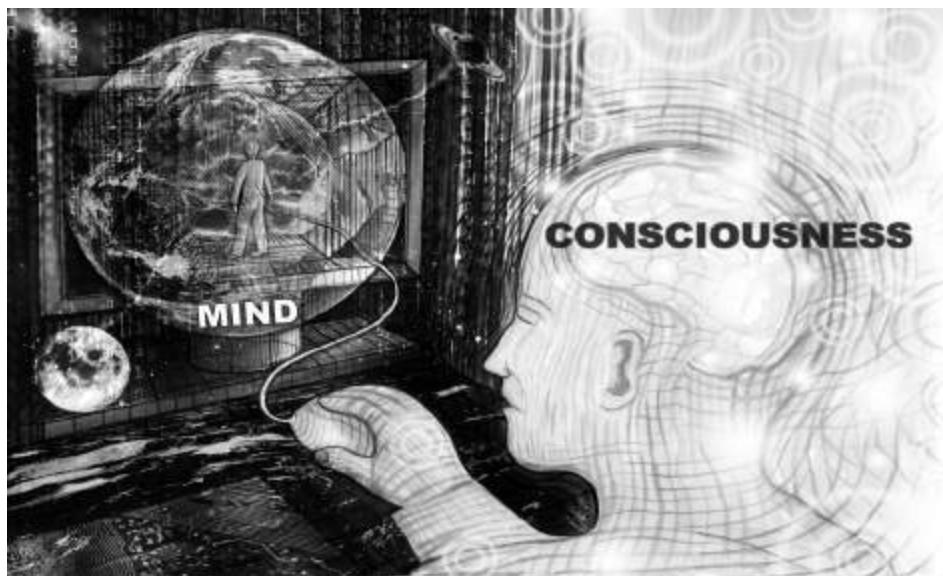
Five-sense focus and self-identity are like a firewall that limits access to the infinite realms. You only perceive one radio or television station and no other. We’ll take that literally for a moment. Imagine a vast array of stations giving different information and angles on reality, but you only ever listen to one. Here we have the human plight in which the population is overwhelmingly confined to CultFM. This relates only to the frequency range of CultFM and limits perception and insight to that band – limits *possibility* to that band. It means you are connecting with an almost imperceptibly minuscule range of possibility and creative potential within the infinite Field. It’s a world where everything seems apart from everything else and where synchronicity is rare. Synchronicity is defined in the dictionary as ‘the happening by chance of two or more related or similar events at the same time’. Use of ‘by chance’ betrays a complete misunderstanding of reality. Synchronicity is not ‘by chance’. As people open their minds, or ‘awaken’ to use the term, they notice more and more coincidences in their lives, bits of ‘luck’, apparently miraculous happenings that put them in the right place at the right time with the right people. Days become peppered with ‘fancy meeting you here’ and ‘what are the chances of that?’ My entire life has been lived like this and ever more so since my own colossal awakening in 1990 and 91 which transformed my sense of reality. Synchronicity is not ‘by chance’; it is by accessing expanded

realms of possibility which allow expanded potential for manifestation. People broadcasting the same vibe from the same openness of mind tend to be drawn ‘by chance’ to each other through what I call frequency magnetism and it’s not only people. In the last more than 30 years incredible synchronicity has also led me through the Cult maze to information in so many forms and to crucial personal experiences. These ‘coincidences’ have allowed me to put the puzzle pieces together across an enormous array of subjects and situations. Those who have breached the bubble of five-sense reality will know exactly what I mean and this escape from the perceptual prison cell is open to everyone whenever they make that choice. This may appear super-human when compared with the limitations of ‘human’, but it’s really our natural state. ‘Human’ as currently experienced is consciousness in an unnatural state of induced separation from the infinity of the whole. I’ll come to how this transformation into unity can be made when I have described in more detail the force that holds humanity in servitude by denying this access to infinite self.

## **The Wetiko factor**

I have been talking and writing for decades about the way five-sense mind is systematically barricaded from expanded awareness. I have used the analogy of a computer (five-sense mind) and someone at the keyboard (expanded awareness). Interaction between the computer and the operator is symbolic of the interaction between five-sense mind and expanded awareness. The computer directly experiences the Internet and the operator experiences the Internet via the computer which is how it’s supposed to be – the two working as one. Archons seek to control that point where the operator connects with the computer to stop that interaction ([Fig 20](#)). Now the operator is banging the keyboard and clicking the mouse, but the computer is not responding and this happens when the computer is taken over – *possessed* – by an appropriately-named computer ‘virus’. The operator has lost all influence over the computer which goes its own way making decisions under the control of the ‘virus’. I have

just described the dynamic through which the force known to Gnostics as Yaldabaoth and Archons disconnects five-sense mind from expanded awareness to imprison humanity in perceptual servitude.



**Figure 20:** The mind ‘virus’ I have been writing about for decades seeks to isolate five-sense mind (the computer) from the true ‘I’. (Image by Neil Hague).

About a year ago I came across a Native American concept of Wetiko which describes precisely the same phenomenon. Wetiko is the spelling used by the Cree and there are other versions including wintiko and windigo used by other tribal groups. They spell the name with lower case, but I see Wetiko as a proper noun as with Archons and prefer a capital. I first saw an article about Wetiko by writer and researcher Paul Levy which so synced with what I had been writing about the computer/operator disconnection and later the Archons. I then read his book, the fascinating *Dispelling Wetiko, Breaking the Spell of Evil*. The parallels between what I had concluded long before and the Native American concept of Wetiko were so clear and obvious that it was almost funny. For Wetiko see the Gnostic Archons for sure and the Jinn, the Predators, and every other name for a force of evil, inversion and chaos. Wetiko is the Native American name for the force that divides the computer from

the operator ([Fig 21](#)). Indigenous author Jack D. Forbes, a founder of the Native American movement in the 1960s, wrote another book about Wetiko entitled *Columbus And Other Cannibals – The Wetiko Disease of Exploitation, Imperialism, and Terrorism* which I also read. Forbes says that Wetiko refers to an evil person or spirit ‘who terrorizes other creatures by means of terrible acts, including cannibalism’. Zulu shaman Credo Mutwa told me that African accounts tell how cannibalism was brought into the world by the Chitauri ‘gods’ – another manifestation of Wetiko. The distinction between ‘evil person or spirit’ relates to Archons/Wetiko possessing a human or acting as pure consciousness. Wetiko is said to be a sickness of the soul or spirit and a state of being that takes but gives nothing back – the Cult and its operatives perfectly described. Black Hawk, a Native American war leader defending their lands from confiscation, said European invaders had ‘poisoned hearts’ – Wetiko hearts – and that this would spread to native societies. Mention of the heart is very significant as we shall shortly see. Forbes writes: ‘Tragically, the history of the world for the past 2,000 years is, in great part, the story of the epidemiology of the wetiko disease.’ Yes, and much longer. Forbes is correct when he says: ‘The wetikos destroyed Egypt and Babylon and Athens and Rome and Tenochtitlan [capital of the Aztec empire] and perhaps now they will destroy the entire earth.’ Evil, he said, is the number one export of a Wetiko culture – see its globalisation with ‘Covid’. Constant war, mass murder, suffering of all kinds, child abuse, Satanism, torture and human sacrifice are all expressions of Wetiko and the Wetiko possessed. The world is Wetiko made manifest, *but it doesn’t have to be*. There is a way out of this even now.



**Figure 21:** The mind ‘virus’ is known to Native Americans as ‘Wetiko’. (Image by Neil Hague).

## Cult of Wetiko

Wetiko is the Yaldabaoth frequency distortion that seeks to attach to human consciousness and absorb it into its own. Once this connection is made Wetiko can drive the perceptions of the target which they believe to be coming from their own mind. All the horrors of history and today from mass killers to Satanists, paedophiles like Jeffrey Epstein and other psychopaths, are the embodiment of Wetiko and express its state of being in all its grotesqueness. The Cult is Wetiko incarnate, Yaldabaoth incarnate, and it seeks to facilitate Wetiko assimilation of humanity in totality into its distortion by manipulating the population into low frequency states that match its own. Paul Levy writes: ‘Holographically enforced within the psyche of every human being the wetiko virus pervades and underlies the entire field of consciousness, and can therefore potentially manifest through any one of us at any moment if we are not mindful.’ The ‘Covid’ hoax has achieved this with many people, but others have not fallen into Wetiko’s frequency lair. Players in the ‘Covid’ human catastrophe including Gates, Schwab, Tedros, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance, Johnson, Hancock, Ferguson, Drosten, and all the rest, including the psychopath psychologists, are expressions of Wetiko. This is why

they have no compassion or empathy and no emotional consequence for what they do that would make them stop doing it. Observe all the people who support the psychopaths in authority against the Pushbackers despite the damaging impact the psychopaths have on their own lives and their family's lives. You are again looking at Wetiko possession which prevents them seeing through the lies to the obvious scam going on. *Why can't they see it?* Wetiko won't let them see it. The perceptual divide that has now become a chasm is between the Wetikoed and the non-Wetikoed.

Paul Levy describes Wetiko in the same way that I have long described the Archontic force. They are the same distorted consciousness operating across dimensions of reality: '... the subtle body of wetiko is not located in the third dimension of space and time, literally existing in another dimension ... it is able to affect ordinary lives by mysteriously interpenetrating into our three-dimensional world.' Wetiko does this through its incarnate representatives in the Cult and by weaving itself into The Field which on our level of reality is the electromagnetic information field of the simulation or Matrix. More than that, the simulation *is* Wetiko / Yaldabaoth. Caleb Scharf, Director of Astrobiology at Columbia University, has speculated that 'alien life' could be so advanced that it has transcribed itself into the quantum realm to become what we call physics. He said intelligence indistinguishable from the fabric of the Universe would solve many of its greatest mysteries:

Perhaps hyper-advanced life isn't just external. Perhaps it's already all around. It is embedded in what we perceive to be physics itself, from the root behaviour of particles and fields to the phenomena of complexity and emergence ... In other words, life might not just be in the equations. It might BE the equations [My emphasis].

Scharf said it is possible that 'we don't recognise advanced life because it forms an integral and unsuspicious part of what we've considered to be the natural world'. I agree. Wetiko/Yaldabaoth *is* the simulation. We are literally in the body of the beast. But that doesn't mean it has to control us. We all have the power to overcome Wetiko

influence and the Cult knows that. I doubt it sleeps too well because it knows that.

## **Which Field?**

This, I suggest, is how it all works. There are two Fields. One is the fierce electromagnetic light of the Matrix within the speed of light; the other is the ‘watery light’ of The Field beyond the walls of the Matrix that connects with the Great Infinity. Five-sense mind and the decoding systems of the body attach us to the Field of Matrix light. They have to or we could not experience this reality. Five-sense mind sees only the Matrix Field of information while our expanded consciousness is part of the Infinity Field. When we open our minds, and most importantly our hearts, to the Infinity Field we have a mission control which gives us an expanded perspective, a road map, to understand the nature of the five-sense world. If we are isolated only in five-sense mind there is no mission control. We’re on our own trying to understand a world that’s constantly feeding us information to ensure we do not understand. People in this state can feel ‘lost’ and bewildered with no direction or radar. You can see ever more clearly those who are influenced by the Fields of Big Infinity or little five-sense mind simply by their views and behaviour with regard to the ‘Covid’ hoax. We have had this division throughout known human history with the mass of the people on one side and individuals who could see and intuit beyond the walls of the simulation – Plato’s prisoner who broke out of the cave and saw reality for what it is. Such people have always been targeted by Wetiko/Archon-possessed authority, burned at the stake or demonised as mad, bad and dangerous. The Cult today and its global network of ‘anti-hate’, ‘anti-fascist’ Woke groups are all expressions of Wetiko attacking those exposing the conspiracy, ‘Covid’ lies and the ‘vaccine’ agenda.

Woke as a whole is Wetiko which explains its black and white mentality and how at one it is with the Wetiko-possessed Cult. Paul Levy said: ‘To be in this paradigm is to still be under the thrall of a two-valued logic – where things are either true or false – of a

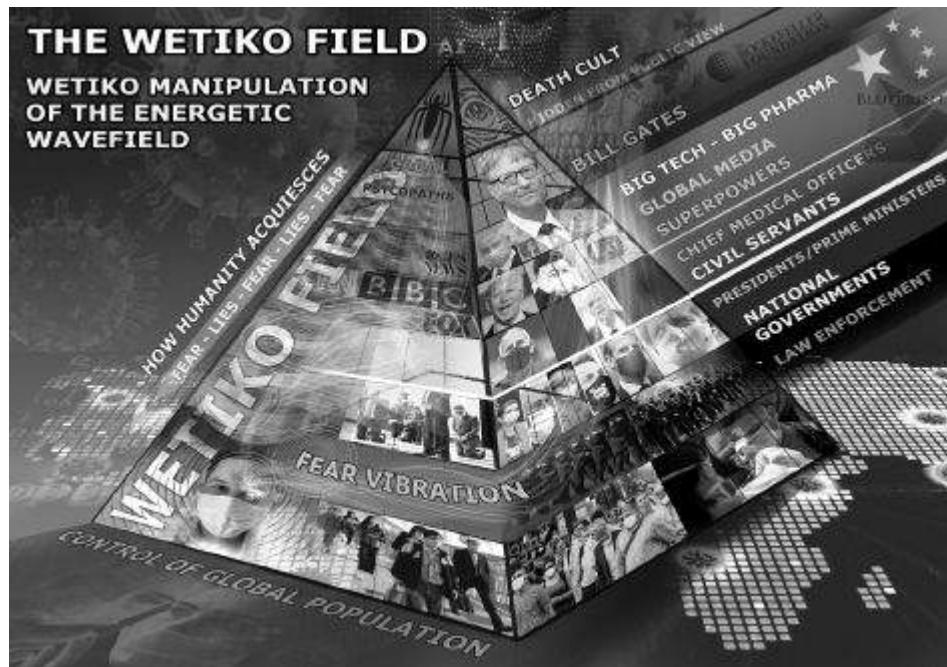
wetikoized mind.' Wetiko consciousness is in a permanent rage, therefore so is Woke, and then there is Woke inversion and contradiction. 'Anti-fascists' act like fascists because fascists *and* 'anti-fascists' are both Wetiko at work. Political parties act the same while claiming to be different for the same reason. Secret society and satanic rituals are attaching initiates to Wetiko and the cold, ruthless, psychopathic mentality that secures the positions of power all over the world is Wetiko. Reframing 'training programmes' have the same cumulative effect of attaching Wetiko and we have their graduates described as automatons and robots with a cold, psychopathic, uncaring demeanour. They are all traits of Wetiko possession and look how many times they have been described in this book and elsewhere with regard to personnel behind 'Covid' including the police and medical profession. Climbing the greasy pole in any profession in a Wetiko society requires traits of Wetiko to get there and that is particularly true of politics which is not about fair competition and pre-eminence of ideas. It is founded on how many backs you can stab and arses you can lick. This culminated in the global 'Covid' coordination between the Wetiko possessed who pulled it off in all the different countries without a trace of empathy and compassion for their impact on humans. Our sight sense can see only holographic form and not the Field which connects holographic form. Therefore we perceive 'physical' objects with 'space' in between. In fact that 'space' is energy/consciousness operating on multiple frequencies. One of them is Wetiko and that connects the Cult psychopaths, those who submit to the psychopaths, and those who serve the psychopaths in the media operations of the world. Wetiko is Gates. Wetiko is the mask-wearing submissive. Wetiko is the fake journalist and 'fact-checker'. The Wetiko Field is coordinating the whole thing. Psychopaths, gofers, media operatives, 'anti-hate' hate groups, 'fact-checkers' and submissive people work as one unit *even without human coordination* because they are attached to the *same* Field which is organising it all ([Fig 22](#)). Paul Levy is here describing how Wetiko-possessed people are drawn together and refuse to let any information breach their rigid

perceptions. He was writing long before ‘Covid’, but I think you will recognise followers of the ‘Covid’ religion *oh just a little bit*:

People who are channelling the vibratory frequency of wetiko align with each other through psychic resonance to reinforce their unspoken shared agreement so as to uphold their deranged view of reality. Once an unconscious content takes possession of certain individuals, it irresistibly draws them together by mutual attraction and knits them into groups tied together by their shared madness that can easily swell into an avalanche of insanity.

A psychic epidemic is a closed system, which is to say that it is insular and not open to any new information or informing influences from the outside world which contradict its fixed, limited, and limiting perspective.

There we have the Woke mind and the ‘Covid’ mind. Compatible resonance draws the awakening together, too, which is clearly happening today.



**Figure 22:** The Wetiko Field from which the Cult pyramid and its personnel are made manifest. (Image by Neil Hague).

## Spiritual servitude

Wetiko doesn’t care about humans. It’s not human; it just possesses humans for its own ends and the effect (depending on the scale of

possession) can be anything from extreme psychopathy to unquestioning obedience. Wetiko's worst nightmare is for human consciousness to expand beyond the simulation. Everything is focussed on stopping that happening through control of information, thus perception, thus frequency. The 'education system', media, science, medicine, academia, are all geared to maintaining humanity in five-sense servitude as is the constant stimulation of low-vibrational mental and emotional states (see 'Covid'). Wetiko seeks to dominate those subconscious spaces between five-sense perception and expanded consciousness where the computer meets the operator. From these subconscious hiding places Wetiko speaks to us to trigger urges and desires that we take to be our own and manipulate us into anything from low-vibrational to psychopathic states. Remember how Islam describes the Jinn as invisible tricksters that 'whisper' and confuse. Wetiko is the origin of the 'trickster god' theme that you find in cultures all over the world. Jinn, like the Archons, are Wetiko which is terrified of humans awakening and reconnecting with our true self for then its energy source has gone. With that the feedback loop breaks between Wetiko and human perception that provides the energetic momentum on which its very existence depends as a force of evil. Humans are both its target and its source of survival, but only if we are operating in low-vibrational states of fear, hate, depression and the background anxiety that most people suffer. We are Wetiko's target because we are its key to survival. It needs us, not the other way round. Paul Levy writes:

A vampire has no intrinsic, independent, substantial existence in its own right; it only exists in relation to us. The pathogenic, vampiric mind-parasite called wetiko is nothing in itself – not being able to exist from its own side – yet it has a 'virtual reality' such that it can potentially destroy our species ...

...The fact that a vampire is not reflected by a mirror can also mean that what we need to see is that there's nothing, no-thing to see, other than ourselves. The fact that wetiko is the expression of something inside of us means that the cure for wetiko is with us as well. The critical issue is finding this cure within us and then putting it into effect.

Evil begets evil because if evil does not constantly expand and find new sources of energetic sustenance its evil, its *distortion*, dies with the assimilation into balance and harmony. Love is the garlic to Wetiko's vampire. Evil, the absence of love, cannot exist in the presence of love. I think I see a way out of here. I have emphasised so many times over the decades that the Archons/Wetiko and their Cult are not all powerful. *They are not.* I don't care how it looks even now *they are not.* I have not called them little boys in short trousers for effect. I have said it because it is true. Wetiko's insatiable desire for power over others is not a sign of its omnipotence, but its insecurity. Paul Levy writes: 'Due to the primal fear which ultimately drives it and which it is driven to cultivate, wetiko's body politic has an intrinsic and insistent need for centralising power and control so as to create imagined safety for itself.' *Yeeeeees!* Exactly! Why does Wetiko want humans in an ongoing state of fear? Wetiko itself *is* fear and it is petrified of love. As evil is an absence of love, so love is an absence of fear. Love conquers all and *especially* Wetiko which *is* fear. Wetiko brought fear into the world when it wasn't here before. *Fear* was the 'fall', the fall into low-frequency ignorance and illusion – fear is False Emotion Appearing Real. The simulation is driven and energised by fear because Wetiko/Yaldabaoth (fear) *are* the simulation. Fear is the absence of love and Wetiko is the absence of love.

## **Wetiko today**

We can now view current events from this level of perspective. The 'Covid' hoax has generated momentous amounts of ongoing fear, anxiety, depression and despair which have empowered Wetiko. No wonder people like Gates have been the instigators when they are Wetiko incarnate and exhibit every trait of Wetiko in the extreme. See how cold and unemotional these people are like Gates and his cronies, how dead of eye they are. That's Wetiko. Sabbatians are Wetiko and everything they control including the World Health Organization, Big Pharma and the 'vaccine' makers, national 'health'

hierarchies, corporate media, Silicon Valley, the banking system, and the United Nations with its planned transformation into world government. All are controlled and possessed by the Wetiko distortion into distorting human society in its image. We are with this knowledge at the gateway to understanding the world.

Divisions of race, culture, creed and sexuality are diversions to hide the real division between those possessed and influenced by Wetiko and those that are not. The ‘Covid’ hoax has brought both clearly into view. Human behaviour is not about race. Tyrants and dictatorships come in all colours and creeds. What unites the US president bombing the innocent and an African tribe committing genocide against another as in Rwanda? What unites them? *Wetiko*. All wars are Wetiko, all genocide is Wetiko, all hunger over centuries in a world of plenty is Wetiko. Children going to bed hungry, including in the West, is Wetiko. Cult-generated Woke racial divisions that focus on the body are designed to obscure the reality that divisions in behaviour are manifestations of mind, not body. Obsession with body identity and group judgement is a means to divert attention from the real source of behaviour – mind and perception. Conflict sown by the Woke both within themselves and with their target groups are Wetiko providing lunch for itself through still more agents of the division, chaos, and fear on which it feeds. The Cult is seeking to assimilate the entirety of humanity and all children and young people into the Wetiko frequency by manipulating them into states of fear and despair. Witness all the suicide and psychological unravelling since the spring of 2020. Wetiko psychopaths want to impose a state of unquestioning obedience to authority which is no more than a conduit for Wetiko to enforce its will and assimilate humanity into itself. It needs us to believe that resistance is futile when it fears resistance and even more so the game-changing non-cooperation with its impositions. It can use violent resistance for its benefit. Violent impositions and violent resistance are *both* Wetiko. The Power of Love with its Power of No will sweep Wetiko from our world. Wetiko and its Cult know that. They just don’t want us to know.

## **AI Wetiko**

This brings me to AI or artificial intelligence and something else Wetikos don't want us to know. What is AI *really*? I know about computer code algorithms and AI that learns from data input. These, however, are more diversions, the expeditionary force, for the real AI that they want to connect to the human brain as promoted by Silicon Valley Wetikos like Kurzweil. What is this AI? It is the frequency of *Wetiko*, the frequency of the Archons. The connection of AI to the human brain is the connection of the Wetiko frequency to create a Wetiko hive mind and complete the job of assimilation. The hive mind is planned to be controlled from Israel and China which are both 100 percent owned by Wetiko Sabbatians. The assimilation process has been going on minute by minute in the 'smart' era which fused with the 'Covid' era. We are told that social media is scrambling the minds of the young and changing their personality. This is true, but what is social media? Look more deeply at how it works, how it creates divisions and conflict, the hostility and cruelty, the targeting of people until they are destroyed. That's Wetiko. Social media is manipulated to tune people to the Wetiko frequency with all the emotional exploitation tricks employed by platforms like Facebook and its Wetiko front man, Zuckerberg. Facebook's Instagram announced a new platform for children to overcome a legal bar on them using the main site. This is more Wetiko exploitation and manipulation of kids. Amnesty International likened the plan to foxes offering to guard the henhouse and said it was incompatible with human rights. Since when did Wetiko or Zuckerberg (I repeat myself) care about that? Would Brin and Page at Google, Wojcicki at YouTube, Bezos at Amazon and whoever the hell runs Twitter act as they do if they were not channelling Wetiko? Would those who are developing technologies for no other reason than human control? How about those designing and selling technologies to kill people and Big Pharma drug and 'vaccine' producers who know they will end or devastate lives? Quite a thought for these people to consider is that if you are Wetiko in a human life you are Wetiko on the 'other side' unless your frequency

changes and that can only change by a change of perception which becomes a change of behaviour. Where Gates is going does not bear thinking about although perhaps that's exactly where he wants to go. Either way, that's where he's going. His frequency will make it so.

## **The frequency lair**

I have been saying for a long time that a big part of the addiction to smartphones and devices is that a frequency is coming off them that entraps the mind. People spend ages on their phones and sometimes even a minute or so after they put them down they pick them up again and it all repeats. 'Covid' lockdowns will have increased this addiction a million times for obvious reasons. Addictions to alcohol overindulgence and drugs are another way that Wetiko entraps consciousness to attach to its own. Both are symptoms of low-vibrational psychological distress which alcoholism and drug addiction further compound. Do we think it's really a coincidence that access to them is made so easy while potions that can take people into realms beyond the simulation are banned and illegal? I have explored smartphone addiction in other books, the scale is mind-blowing, and that level of addiction does not come without help. Tech companies that make these phones are Wetiko and they will have no qualms about destroying the minds of children. We are seeing again with these companies the Wetiko perceptual combination of psychopathic enforcers and weak and meek unquestioning compliance by the rank and file.

The global Smart Grid is the Wetiko Grid and it is crucial to complete the Cult endgame. The simulation is radiation and we are being deluged with technological radiation on a devastating scale. Wetiko frauds like Elon Musk serve Cult interests while occasionally criticising them to maintain his street-cred. 5G and other forms of Wi-Fi are being directed at the earth from space on a volume and scale that goes on increasing by the day. Elon Musk's (officially) SpaceX Starlink project is in the process of putting tens of thousands of satellites in low orbit to cover every inch of the planet with 5G and other Wi-Fi to create Kurzweil's global 'cloud' to which the

human mind is planned to be attached very soon. SpaceX has approval to operate 12,000 satellites with more than 1,300 launched at the time of writing and applications filed for 30,000 more. Other operators in the Wi-Fi, 5G, low-orbit satellite market include OneWeb (UK), Telesat (Canada), and AST & Science (US). Musk tells us that AI could be the end of humanity and then launches a company called Neuralink to connect the human brain to computers. Musk's (in theory) Tesla company is building electric cars and the driverless vehicles of the smart control grid. As frauds and bullshitters go Elon Musk in my opinion is Major League.

5G and technological radiation in general are destructive to human health, genetics and psychology and increasing the strength of artificial radiation underpins the five-sense perceptual bubbles which are themselves expressions of radiation or electromagnetism. Freedom activist John Whitehead was so right with his 'databit by databit, we are building our own electronic concentration camps'. The Smart Grid and 5G is a means to control the human mind and infuse perceptual information into The Field to influence anyone in sync with its frequency. You can change perception and behaviour en masse if you can manipulate the population into those levels of frequency and this is happening all around us today. The arrogance of Musk and his fellow Cult operatives knows no bounds in the way that we see with Gates. Musk's satellites are so many in number already they are changing the night sky when viewed from Earth. The astronomy community has complained about this and they have seen nothing yet. Some consequences of Musk's Wetiko hubris include: Radiation; visible pollution of the night sky; interference with astronomy and meteorology; ground and water pollution from intensive use of increasingly many spaceports; accumulating space debris; continual deorbiting and burning up of aging satellites, polluting the atmosphere with toxic dust and smoke; and ever-increasing likelihood of collisions. A collective public open letter of complaint to Musk said:

We are writing to you ... because SpaceX is in process of surrounding the Earth with a network of thousands of satellites whose very purpose is to irradiate every square inch of the

Earth. SpaceX, like everyone else, is treating the radiation as if it were not there. As if the mitochondria in our cells do not depend on electrons moving undisturbed from the food we digest to the oxygen we breathe.

As if our nervous systems and our hearts are not subject to radio frequency interference like any piece of electronic equipment. As if the cancer, diabetes, and heart disease that now afflict a majority of the Earth's population are not metabolic diseases that result from interference with our cellular machinery. As if insects everywhere, and the birds and animals that eat them, are not starving to death as a result.

People like Musk and Gates believe in their limitless Wetiko arrogance that they can do whatever they like to the world because they own it. Consequences for humanity are irrelevant. It's absolutely time that we stopped taking this shit from these self-styled masters of the Earth when you consider where this is going.

## **Why is the Cult so anti-human?**

I hear this question often: Why would they do this when it will affect them, too? Ah, but will it? Who is this *them*? Forget their bodies. They are just vehicles for Wetiko consciousness. When you break it all down to the foundations we are looking at a state of severely distorted consciousness targeting another state of consciousness for assimilation. The rest is detail. The simulation is the fly-trap in which unique sensations of the five senses create a cycle of addiction called reincarnation. Renegade Minds see that everything which happens in our reality is a smaller version of the whole picture in line with the holographic principle. Addiction to the radiation of smart technology is a smaller version of addiction to the whole simulation. Connecting the body/brain to AI is taking that addiction on a giant step further to total ongoing control by assimilating human incarnate consciousness into Wetiko. I have watched during the 'Covid' hoax how many are becoming ever more profoundly attached to Wetiko's perceptual calling cards of aggressive response to any other point of view ('There is no other god but me'), psychopathic lack of compassion and empathy, and servile submission to the narrative and will of authority. Wetiko is the psychopaths *and* subservience to psychopaths. The Cult of Wetiko is

so anti-human because it is *not* human. It embarked on a mission to destroy human by targeting everything that it means to be human and to survive as human. ‘Covid’ is not the end, just a means to an end. The Cult with its Wetiko consciousness is seeking to change Earth systems, including the atmosphere, to suit them, not humans. The gathering bombardment of 5G alone from ground and space is dramatically changing The Field with which the five senses interact. There is so much more to come if we sit on our hands and hope it will all go away. It is not meant to go away. It is meant to get ever more extreme and we need to face that while we still can – just.

Carbon dioxide is the gas of life. Without that human is over. Kaput, gone, history. No natural world, no human. The Cult has created a cock and bull story about carbon dioxide and climate change to justify its reduction to the point where Gates and the ignoramus Biden ‘climate chief’ John Kerry want to suck it out of the atmosphere. Kerry wants to do this because his master Gates does. Wetikos have made the gas of life a demon with the usual support from the Wokers of Extinction Rebellion and similar organisations and the bewildered puppet-child that is Greta Thunberg who was put on the world stage by Klaus Schwab and the World Economic Forum. The name Extinction Rebellion is both ironic and as always Wetiko inversion. The gas that we need to survive must be reduced to save us from extinction. The most basic need of human is oxygen and we now have billions walking around in face nappies depriving body and brain of this essential requirement of human existence. More than that 5G at 60 gigahertz interacts with the oxygen molecule to reduce the amount of oxygen the body can absorb into the bloodstream. The obvious knock-on consequences of that for respiratory and cognitive problems and life itself need no further explanation. Psychopaths like Musk are assembling a global system of satellites to deluge the human atmosphere with this insanity. The man should be in jail. Here we have two most basic of human needs, oxygen and carbon dioxide, being dismantled.

Two others, water and food, are getting similar treatment with the United Nations Agendas 21 and 2030 – the Great Reset – planning to

centrally control all water and food supplies. People will not even own rain water that falls on their land. Food is affected at the most basic level by reducing carbon dioxide. We have genetic modification or GMO infiltrating the food chain on a mass scale, pesticides and herbicides polluting the air and destroying the soil. Freshwater fish that provide livelihoods for 60 million people and feed hundreds of millions worldwide are being 'pushed to the brink' according the conservationists while climate change is the only focus. Now we have Gates and Schwab wanting to dispense with current food sources all together and replace them with a synthetic version which the Wetiko Cult would control in terms of production and who eats and who doesn't. We have been on the Totalitarian Tiptoe to this for more than 60 years as food has become ever more processed and full of chemical shite to the point today when it's not natural food at all. As Dr Tom Cowan says: 'If it has a label don't eat it.' Bill Gates is now the biggest owner of farmland in the United States and he does nothing without an ulterior motive involving the Cult. Klaus Schwab wrote: 'To feed the world in the next 50 years we will need to produce as much food as was produced in the last 10,000 years ... food security will only be achieved, however, if regulations on genetically modified foods are adapted to reflect the reality that gene editing offers a precise, efficient and safe method of improving crops.' Liar. People and the world are being targeted with aluminium through vaccines, chemtrails, food, drink cans, and endless other sources when aluminium has been linked to many health issues including dementia which is increasing year after year. Insects, bees and wildlife essential to the food chain are being deleted by pesticides, herbicides and radiation which 5G is dramatically increasing with 6G and 7G to come. The pollinating bee population is being devastated while wildlife including birds, dolphins and whales are having their natural radar blocked by the effects of ever-increasing radiation. In the summer windscreens used to be splattered with insects so numerous were they. It doesn't happen now. Where have they gone?

## **Synthetic everything**

The Cult is introducing genetically-modified versions of trees, plants and insects including a Gates-funded project to unleash hundreds of millions of genetically-modified, lab-altered and patented male mosquitoes to mate with wild mosquitoes and induce genetic flaws that cause them to die out. Clinically-insane Gates-funded Japanese researchers have developed mosquitos that spread vaccine and are dubbed 'flying vaccinators'. Gates is funding the modification of weather patterns in part to sell the myth that this is caused by carbon dioxide and he's funding geoengineering of the skies to change the atmosphere. Some of this came to light with the Gates-backed plan to release tonnes of chalk into the atmosphere to 'deflect the Sun and cool the planet'. Funny how they do this while the heating effect of the Sun is not factored into climate projections focussed on carbon dioxide. The reason is that they want to reduce carbon dioxide (so don't mention the Sun), but at the same time they do want to reduce the impact of the Sun which is so essential to human life and health. I have mentioned the sun-cholesterol-vitamin D connection as they demonise the Sun with warnings about skin cancer (caused by the chemicals in sun cream they tell you to splash on). They come from the other end of the process with statin drugs to reduce cholesterol that turns sunlight into vitamin D. A lack of vitamin D leads to a long list of health effects and how vitamin D levels must have fallen with people confined to their homes over 'Covid'. Gates is funding other forms of geoengineering and most importantly chemtrails which are dropping heavy metals, aluminium and self-replicating nanotechnology onto the Earth which is killing the natural world. See *Everything You Need To Know, But Have Never Been Told* for the detailed background to this.

Every human system is being targeted for deletion by a force that's not human. The Wetiko Cult has embarked on the process of transforming the human body from biological to synthetic biological as I have explained. Biological is being replaced by the artificial and synthetic – Archontic 'countermimicry' – right across human society. The plan eventually is to dispense with the human body altogether

and absorb human consciousness – which it wouldn't really be by then – into cyberspace (the simulation which is Wetiko/Yaldabaoth). Preparations for that are already happening if people would care to look. The alternative media rightly warns about globalism and 'the globalists', but this is far bigger than that and represents the end of the human race as we know it. The 'bad copy' of prime reality that Gnostics describe was a bad copy of harmony, wonder and beauty to start with before Wetiko/Yaldabaoth set out to change the simulated 'copy' into something very different. The process was slow to start with. Entrapped humans in the simulation timeline were not technologically aware and they had to be brought up to intellectual speed while being suppressed spiritually to the point where they could build their own prison while having no idea they were doing so. We have now reached that stage where technological intellect has the potential to destroy us and that's why events are moving so fast. Central American shaman Don Juan Matus said:

Think for a moment, and tell me how you would explain the contradictions between the intelligence of man the engineer and the stupidity of his systems of belief, or the stupidity of his contradictory behaviour. Sorcerers believe that the predators have given us our systems of beliefs, our ideas of good and evil; our social mores. They are the ones who set up our dreams of success or failure. They have given us covetousness, greed, and cowardice. It is the predator who makes us complacent, routinary, and egomaniacal.

In order to keep us obedient and meek and weak, the predators engaged themselves in a stupendous manoeuvre – stupendous, of course, from the point of view of a fighting strategist; a horrendous manoeuvre from the point of those who suffer it. They gave us their mind. The predators' mind is baroque, contradictory, morose, filled with the fear of being discovered any minute now.

For 'predators' see Wetiko, Archons, Yaldabaoth, Jinn, and all the other versions of the same phenomenon in cultures and religions all over the world. The theme is always the same because it's true and it's real. We have reached the point where we have to deal with it. The question is – how?

## **Don't fight – walk away**

I thought I'd use a controversial subheading to get things moving in terms of our response to global fascism. What do you mean 'don't fight'? What do you mean 'walk away'? We've got to fight. We can't walk away. Well, it depends what we mean by fight and walk away. If fighting means physical combat we are playing Wetiko's game and falling for its trap. It wants us to get angry, aggressive, and direct hate and hostility at the enemy we think we must fight. Every war, every battle, every conflict, has been fought with Wetiko leading both sides. It's what it does. Wetiko wants a fight, anywhere, any place. Just hit me, son, so I can hit you back. Wetiko hits Wetiko and Wetiko hits Wetiko in return. I am very forthright as you can see in exposing Wetikos of the Cult, but I don't hate them. I refuse to hate them. It's what they want. What you hate you become. What you *fight* you become. Wokers, 'anti-haters' and 'anti-fascists' prove this every time they reach for their keyboards or don their balaclavas. By walk away I mean to disengage from Wetiko which includes ceasing to cooperate with its tyranny. Paul Levy says of Wetiko:

The way to 'defeat' evil is not to try to destroy it (for then, in playing evil's game, we have already lost), but rather, to find the invulnerable place within ourselves where evil is unable to vanquish us – this is to truly 'win' our battle with evil.

Wetiko is everywhere in human society and it's been on steroids since the 'Covid' hoax. Every shouting match over wearing masks has Wetiko wearing a mask and Wetiko not wearing one. It's an electrical circuit of push and resist, push and resist, with Wetiko pushing *and* resisting. Each polarity is Wetiko empowering itself. Dictionary definitions of 'resist' include 'opposing, refusing to accept or comply with' and the word to focus on is 'opposing'. What form does this take – setting police cars alight or 'refusing to accept or comply with'? The former is Wetiko opposing Wetiko while the other points the way forward. This is the difference between those aggressively demanding that government fascism must be obeyed who stand in stark contrast to the great majority of Pushbackers. We saw this clearly with a march by thousands of Pushbackers against lockdown in London followed days later by a Woker-hijacked

protest in Bristol in which police cars were set on fire. Masks were virtually absent in London and widespread in Bristol. Wetiko wants lockdown on every level of society and infuses its aggression to police it through its unknowing stooges. Lockdown protesters are the ones with the smiling faces and the hugs, The two blatantly obvious states of being – getting more obvious by the day – are the result of Wokers and their like becoming ever more influenced by the simulation Field of Wetiko and Pushbackers ever more influenced by The Field of a far higher vibration beyond the simulation. Wetiko can't invade the heart which is where most lockdown opponents are coming from. It's the heart that allows them to see through the lies to the truth in ways I will be highlighting.

Renegade Minds know that calmness is the place from which wisdom comes. You won't find wisdom in a hissing fit and wisdom is what we need in abundance right now. Calmness is not weakness – you don't have to scream at the top of your voice to be strong. Calmness is indeed a sign of strength. 'No' means I'm not doing it. NOOOO!!! doesn't mean you're not doing it even more. Volume does not advance 'No – I'm not doing it'. You are just not doing it. Wetiko possessed and influenced don't know how to deal with that. Wetiko wants a fight and we should not give it one. What it needs more than anything is our *cooperation* and we should not give that either. Mass rallies and marches are great in that they are a visual representation of feeling, but if it ends there they are irrelevant. You demand that Wetikos act differently? Well, they're not going to are they? They are Wetikos. We don't need to waste our time demanding that something doesn't happen when that will make no difference. We need to delete the means that *allows* it to happen. This, invariably, is our cooperation. You can demand a child stop firing a peashooter at the dog or you can refuse to buy the peashooter. If you provide the means you are cooperating with the dog being smacked on the nose with a pea. How can the authorities enforce mask-wearing if millions in a country refuse? What if the 74 million Pushbackers that voted for Trump in 2020 refused to wear masks, close their businesses or stay in their homes. It would be unenforceable. The

few control the many through the compliance of the many and that's always been the dynamic be it 'Covid' regulations or the Roman Empire. I know people can find it intimidating to say no to authority or stand out in a crowd for being the only one with a face on display; but it has to be done or it's over. I hope I've made clear in this book that where this is going will be far more intimidating than standing up now and saying 'No' – I will not cooperate with my own enslavement and that of my children. There might be consequences for some initially, although not so if enough do the same. The question that must be addressed is what is going to happen if we don't? It is time to be strong and unyieldingly so. No means no. Not here and there, but *everywhere* and *always*. I have refused to wear a mask and obey all the other nonsense. I will not comply with tyranny. I repeat: Fascism is not imposed by fascists – there are never enough of them. Fascism is imposed by the population acquiescing to fascism. *I will not do it.* I will die first, or my body will. Living meekly under fascism is a form of death anyway, the death of the spirit that Martin Luther King described.

## **Making things happen**

We must not despair. This is not over till it's over and it's far from that. The 'fat lady' must refuse to sing. The longer the 'Covid' hoax has dragged on and impacted on more lives we have seen an awakening of phenomenal numbers of people worldwide to the realisation that what they have believed all their lives is not how the world really is. Research published by the system-serving University of Bristol and King's College London in February, 2021, concluded: 'One in every 11 people in Britain say they trust David Icke's take on the coronavirus pandemic.' It will be more by now and we have gathering numbers to build on. We must urgently progress from seeing the scam to ceasing to cooperate with it. Prominent German lawyer Reiner Fuellmich, also licenced to practice law in America, is doing a magnificent job taking the legal route to bring the psychopaths to justice through a second Nuremberg tribunal for crimes against humanity. Fuellmich has an impressive record of

beating the elite in court and he formed the German Corona Investigative Committee to pursue civil charges against the main perpetrators with a view to triggering criminal charges. Most importantly he has grasped the foundation of the hoax – the PCR test not testing for the ‘virus’ – and Christian Drosten is therefore on his charge sheet along with Gates frontman Tedros at the World Health Organization. Major players must be not be allowed to inflict their horrors on the human race without being brought to book. A life sentence must follow for Bill Gates and the rest of them. A group of researchers has also indicted the government of Norway for crimes against humanity with copies sent to the police and the International Criminal Court. The lawsuit cites participation in an internationally-planned false pandemic and violation of international law and human rights, the European Commission’s definition of human rights by coercive rules, Nuremberg and Hague rules on fundamental human rights, and the Norwegian constitution. We must take the initiative from hereon and not just complain, protest and react.

There are practical ways to support vital mass non-cooperation. Organising in numbers is one. Lockdown marches in London in the spring in 2021 were mass non-cooperation that the authorities could not stop. There were too many people. Hundreds of thousands walked the London streets in the centre of the road for mile after mile while the Face-Nappies could only look on. They were determined, but calm, and just *did it* with no histrionics and lots of smiles. The police were impotent. Others are organising group shopping without masks for mutual support and imagine if that was happening all over. Policing it would be impossible. If the store refuses to serve people in these circumstances they would be faced with a long line of trolleys full of goods standing on their own and everything would have to be returned to the shelves. How would they cope with that if it kept happening? I am talking here about moving on from complaining to being pro-active; from watching things happen to making things happen. I include in this our relationship with the police. The behaviour of many Face-Nappies

has been disgraceful and anyone who thinks they would never find concentration camp guards in the ‘enlightened’ modern era have had that myth busted big-time. The period and setting may change – Wetikos never do. I watched film footage from a London march in which a police thug viciously kicked a protestor on the floor who had done nothing. His fellow Face-Nappies stood in a ring protecting him. What he did was a criminal assault and with a crowd far outnumbering the police this can no longer be allowed to happen unchallenged. I get it when people chant ‘shame on you’ in these circumstances, but that is no longer enough. They *have* no shame those who do this. Crowds needs to start making a citizen’s arrest of the police who commit criminal offences and brutally attack innocent people and defenceless women. A citizen’s arrest can be made under section 24A of the UK Police and Criminal Evidence (PACE) Act of 1984 and you will find something similar in other countries. I prefer to call it a Common Law arrest rather than citizen’s for reasons I will come to shortly. Anyone can arrest a person committing an indictable offence or if they have reasonable grounds to suspect they are committing an indictable offence. On both counts the attack by the police thug would have fallen into this category. A citizen’s arrest can be made to stop someone:

- Causing physical injury to himself or any other person
- Suffering physical injury
- Causing loss of or damage to property
- Making off before a constable can assume responsibility for him

A citizen’s arrest may also be made to prevent a breach of the peace under Common Law and if they believe a breach of the peace will happen or anything related to harm likely to be done or already done in their presence. This is the way to go I think – the Common Law version. If police know that the crowd and members of the public will no longer be standing and watching while they commit

their thuggery and crimes they will think twice about acting like Brownshirts and Blackshirts.

## **Common Law – common sense**

Mention of Common Law is very important. Most people think the law is the law as in one law. This is not the case. There are two bodies of law, Common Law and Statute Law, and they are not the same. Common Law is founded on the simple premise of do no harm. It does not recognise victimless crimes in which no harm is done while Statute Law does. There is a Statute Law against almost everything. So what is Statute Law? Amazingly it's the law of the sea that was brought ashore by the Cult to override the law of the land which is Common Law. They had no right to do this and as always they did it anyway. They had to. They could not impose their will on the people through Common Law which only applies to do no harm. How could you stitch up the fine detail of people's lives with that? Instead they took the law of the sea, or Admiralty Law, and applied it to the population. Statute Law refers to all the laws spewing out of governments and their agencies including all the fascist laws and regulations relating to 'Covid'. The key point to make is that Statute Law is *contract law*. It only applies between *contracting* corporations. Most police officers don't even know this. They have to be kept in the dark, too. Long ago when merchants and their sailing ships began to trade with different countries a contractual law was developed called Admiralty Law and other names. Again it only applied to *contracts* agreed between *corporate* entities. If there is no agreed contract the law of the sea had no jurisdiction *and that still applies to its new alias of Statute Law*. The problem for the Cult when the law of the sea was brought ashore was an obvious one. People were not corporations and neither were government entities. To overcome the latter they made governments and all associated organisations corporations. All the institutions are *private corporations* and I mean governments and their agencies, local councils, police, courts, military, US states, the whole lot. Go to the

Dun and Bradstreet corporate listings website for confirmation that they are all corporations. You are arrested by a private corporation called the police by someone who is really a private security guard and they take you to court which is another private corporation.

Neither have jurisdiction over you unless you consent and *contract* with them. This is why you hear the mantra about law enforcement policing by *consent* of the people. In truth the people 'consent' only in theory through monumental trickery.

Okay, the Cult overcame the corporate law problem by making governments and institutions corporate entities; but what about people? They are not corporations are they? Ah ... well in a sense, and *only* a sense, they are. Not people exactly – the illusion of people. The Cult creates a corporation in the name of everyone at the time that their birth certificate is issued. Note birth/ *berth* certificate and when you go to court under the law of the sea on land you stand in a *dock*. These are throwbacks to the origin. My Common Law name is David Vaughan Icke. The name of the corporation created by the government when I was born is called Mr David Vaughan Icke usually written in capitals as MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE. That is not me, the living, breathing man. It is a fictitious corporate entity. The trick is to make you think that David Vaughan Icke and MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE are the same thing. *They are not*. When police charge you and take you to court they are prosecuting the corporate entity and not the living, breathing, man or woman. They have to trick you into identifying as the corporate entity and contracting with them. Otherwise they have no jurisdiction. They do this through a language known as legalese. Lawful and legal are not the same either. Lawful relates to Common Law and legal relates to Statute Law. Legalese is the language of Statue Law which uses terms that mean one thing to the public and another in legalese. Notice that when a police officer tells someone why they are being charged he or she will say at the end: 'Do you understand?' To the public that means 'Do you comprehend?' In legalese it means 'Do you stand under me?' Do you stand under my authority? If you say

yes to the question you are unknowingly agreeing to give them jurisdiction over you in a contract between two corporate entities.

This is a confidence trick in every way. Contracts have to be agreed between informed parties and if you don't know that David Vaughan Icke is agreeing to be the corporation MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE you cannot knowingly agree to contract. They are deceiving you and another way they do this is to ask for proof of identity. You usually show them a driving licence or other document on which your corporate name is written. In doing so you are accepting that you are that corporate entity when you are not. Referring to yourself as a 'person' or 'citizen' is also identifying with your corporate fiction which is why I made the Common Law point about the citizen's arrest. If you are approached by a police officer you identify yourself immediately as a living, breathing, man or woman and say 'I do not consent, I do not contract with you and I do not understand' or stand under their authority. I have a Common Law birth certificate as a living man and these are available at no charge from [commonlawcourt.com](http://commonlawcourt.com). Businesses registered under the Statute Law system means that its laws apply. There are, however, ways to run a business under Common Law. Remember all 'Covid' laws and regulations are Statute Law – the law of *contracts* and you do not have to contract. This doesn't mean that you can kill someone and get away with it. Common Law says do no harm and that applies to physical harm, financial harm etc. Police are employees of private corporations and there needs to be a new system of non-corporate Common Law constables operating outside the Statute Law system. If you go to [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com) and put Common Law into the search engine you will find videos that explain Common Law in much greater detail. It is definitely a road we should walk.

## **With all my heart**

I have heard people say that we are in a spiritual war. I don't like the term 'war' with its Wetiko dynamic, but I know what they mean. Sweep aside all the bodily forms and we are in a situation in which two states of consciousness are seeking very different realities.

Wetiko wants upheaval, chaos, fear, suffering, conflict and control. The other wants love, peace, harmony, fairness and freedom. That's where we are. We should not fall for the idea that Wetiko is all-powerful and there's nothing we can do. Wetiko is not all-powerful. It's a joke, pathetic. It doesn't have to be, but it has made that choice for now. A handful of times over the years when I have felt the presence of its frequency I have allowed it to attach briefly so I could consciously observe its nature. The experience is not pleasant, the energy is heavy and dark, but the ease with which you can kick it back out the door shows that its real power is in persuading us that it has power. It's all a con. Wetiko is a con. It's a trickster and not a power that can control us if we unleash our own. The con is founded on manipulating humanity to give its power to Wetiko which recycles it back to present the illusion that it has power when its power is *ours* that we gave away. This happens on an energetic level and plays out in the world of the seen as humanity giving its power to Wetiko authority which uses that power to control the population when the power is only the power the population has handed over. How could it be any other way for billions to be controlled by a relative few? I have had experiences with people possessed by Wetiko and again you can kick its arse if you do it with an open heart. Oh yes – the *heart* which can transform the world of perceived 'matter'.

We are receiver-transmitters and processors of information, but what information and where from? Information is processed into perception in three main areas – the brain, the heart and the belly. These relate to thinking, knowing, and emotion. Wetiko wants us to be head and belly people which means we think within the confines of the Matrix simulation and low-vibrational emotional reaction scrambles balance and perception. A few minutes on social media and you see how emotion is the dominant force. Woke is all emotion and is therefore thought-free and fact-free. Our heart is something different. It *knows* while the head *thinks* and has to try to work it out because it doesn't know. The human energy field has seven prime vortexes which connect us with wider reality ([Fig 23](#)). Chakra means

'wheels of light' in the Sanskrit language of ancient India. The main ones are: The crown chakra on top of the head; brow (or 'third eye') chakra in the centre of the forehead; throat chakra; heart chakra in the centre of the chest; solar plexus chakra below the sternum; sacral chakra beneath the navel; and base chakra at the bottom of the spine. Each one has a particular function or functions. We feel anxiety and nervousness in the belly where the sacral chakra is located and this processes emotion that can affect the colon to give people 'the shits' or make them 'shit scared' when they are nervous. Chakras all play an important role, but the Mr and Mrs Big is the heart chakra which sits at the centre of the seven, above the chakras that connect us to the 'physical' and below those that connect with higher realms (or at least should). Here in the heart chakra we feel love, empathy and compassion – 'My heart goes out to you'. Those with closed hearts become literally 'heart-less' in their attitudes and behaviour (see Bill Gates). Native Americans portrayed Wetiko with what Paul Levy calls a 'frigid, icy heart, devoid of mercy' (see Bill Gates).



**Figure 23:** The chakra system which interpenetrates the human energy field. The heart chakra is the governor – or should be.

Wetiko trembles at the thought of heart energy which it cannot infiltrate. The frequency is too high. What it seeks to do instead is close the heart chakra vortex to block its perceptual and energetic influence. Psychopaths have 'hearts of stone' and emotionally-damaged people have 'heartache' and 'broken hearts'. The astonishing amount of heart disease is related to heart chakra

disruption with its fundamental connection to the ‘physical’ heart. Dr Tom Cowan has written an outstanding book challenging the belief that the heart is a pump and making the connection between the ‘physical’ and spiritual heart. Rudolph Steiner who was way ahead of his time said the same about the fallacy that the heart is a pump. *What?* The heart is not a pump? That’s crazy, right? Everybody knows that. Read Cowan’s *Human Heart, Cosmic Heart* and you will realise that the very idea of the heart as a pump is ridiculous when you see the evidence. How does blood in the feet so far from the heart get pumped horizontally up the body by the heart?? Cowan explains in the book the real reason why blood moves as it does. Our ‘physical’ heart is used to symbolise love when the source is really the heart vortex or spiritual heart which is our most powerful energetic connection to ‘out there’ expanded consciousness. That’s why we feel *knowing* – intuitive knowing – in the centre of the chest. Knowing doesn’t come from a process of thoughts leading to a conclusion. It is there in an instant all in one go. Our heart knows because of its connection to levels of awareness that *do* know. This is the meaning and source of intuition – intuitive *knowing*.

For the last more than 30 years of uncovering the global game and the nature of reality my heart has been my constant antenna for truth and accuracy. An American intelligence insider once said that I had quoted a disinformant in one of my books and yet I had only quoted the part that was true. He asked: ‘How do you do that?’ By using my heart antenna was the answer and anyone can do it. Heart-centred is how we are meant to be. With a closed heart chakra we withdraw into a closed mind and the bubble of five-sense reality. If you take a moment to focus your attention on the centre of your chest, picture a spinning wheel of light and see it opening and expanding. You will feel it happening, too, and perceptions of the heart like joy and love as the heart impacts on the mind as they interact. The more the chakra opens the more you will feel expressions of heart consciousness and as the process continues, and becomes part of you, insights and knowings will follow. An open

heart is connected to that level of awareness that knows all is *One*. You will see from its perspective that the fault-lines that divide us are only illusions to control us. An open heart does not process the illusions of race, creed and sexuality except as brief experiences for a consciousness that is all. Our heart does not see division, only unity (Figs 24 and 25). There's something else, too. Our hearts love to laugh. Mark Twain's quote that says 'The human race has one really effective weapon, and that is laughter' is really a reference to the heart which loves to laugh with the joy of knowing the true nature of infinite reality and that all the madness of human society is an illusion of the mind. Twain also said: 'Against the assault of laughter nothing can stand.' This is so true of Wetiko and the Cult. Their insecurity demands that they be taken seriously and their power and authority acknowledged and feared. We should do nothing of the sort. We should not get aggressive or fearful which their insecurity so desires. We should laugh in their face. Even in their no-face as police come over in their face-nappies and expect to be taken seriously. They don't take themselves seriously looking like that so why should we? Laugh in the face of intimidation. Laugh in the face of tyranny. You will see by its reaction that you have pressed all of its buttons. Wetiko does not know what to do in the face of laughter or when its targets refuse to concede their joy to fear. We have seen many examples during the 'Covid' hoax when people have expressed their energetic power and the string puppets of Wetiko retreat with their tail limp between their knees. Laugh – the world is bloody mad after all and if it's a choice between laughter and tears I know which way I'm going.



**Figure 24:** Head consciousness without the heart sees division and everything apart from everything else.



**Figure 25:** Heart consciousness sees everything as One.

## **Vaccines' and the soul**

The foundation of Wetiko/Archon control of humans is the separation of incarnate five-sense mind from the infinite 'I' and closing the heart chakra where the True 'I' lives during a human life. The goal has been to achieve complete separation in both cases. I was interested therefore to read an account by a French energetic healer of what she said she experienced with a patient who had been given the 'Covid' vaccine. Genuine energy healers can sense information and consciousness fields at different levels of being which are referred to as 'subtle bodies'. She described treating the patient who later returned after having, without the healer's knowledge, two doses of the 'Covid vaccine'. The healer said:

I noticed immediately the change, very heavy energy emanating from [the] subtle bodies. The scariest thing was when I was working on the heart chakra, I connected with her soul: it was detached from the physical body, it had no contact and it was, as if it was floating in a state of total confusion: a damage to the consciousness that loses contact with the physical body, i.e. with our biological machine, there is no longer any communication between them.

I continued the treatment by sending light to the heart chakra, the soul of the person, but it seemed that the soul could no longer receive any light, frequency or energy. It was a very powerful experience for me. Then I understood that this substance is indeed used to detach consciousness so that this consciousness can no longer interact through this body that it possesses in life, where there is no longer any contact, no frequency, no light, no more energetic balance or mind.

This would create a human that is rudderless and at the extreme almost zombie-like operating with a fractional state of consciousness at the mercy of Wetiko. I was especially intrigued by what the healer said in the light of the prediction by the highly-informed Rudolf Steiner more than a hundred years ago. He said:

In the future, we will eliminate the soul with medicine. Under the pretext of a 'healthy point of view', there will be a vaccine by which the human body will be treated as soon as possible directly at birth, so that the human being cannot develop the thought of the existence of soul and Spirit. To materialistic doctors will be entrusted the task of removing the soul of humanity.

As today, people are vaccinated against this disease or that disease, so in the future, children will be vaccinated with a substance that can be produced precisely in such a way that people, thanks to this vaccination, will be immune to being subjected to the 'madness' of spiritual life. He would be extremely smart, but he would not develop a conscience, and that is the true goal of some materialistic circles.

Steiner said the vaccine would detach the physical body from the etheric body (subtle bodies) and 'once the etheric body is detached the relationship between the universe and the etheric body would become extremely unstable, and man would become an automaton'. He said 'the physical body of man must be polished on this Earth by spiritual will – so the vaccine becomes a kind of aryanique (Wetiko) force' and 'man can no longer get rid of a given materialistic feeling'. Humans would then, he said, become 'materialistic of constitution and can no longer rise to the spiritual'. I have been writing for years about DNA being a receiver-transmitter of information that connects us to other levels of reality and these 'vaccines' changing DNA can be likened to changing an antenna and what it can transmit and receive. Such a disconnection would clearly lead to changes in personality and perception. Steiner further predicted the arrival of AI. Big Pharma 'Covid vaccine' makers, expressions of Wetiko, are testing their DNA-manipulating evil on children as I write with a view to giving the 'vaccine' to babies. If it's a soul-body disconnecter – and I say that it is or can be – every child would be disconnected from 'soul' at birth and the 'vaccine' would create a closed system in which spiritual guidance from the greater self would play no part. This has been the ambition of Wetiko all

along. A Pentagon video from 2005 was leaked of a presentation explaining the development of vaccines to change behaviour by their effect on the brain. Those that believe this is not happening with the ‘Covid’ genetically-modifying procedure masquerading as a ‘vaccine’ should make an urgent appointment with Naivety Anonymous. Klaus Schwab wrote in 2018:

Neurotechnologies enable us to better influence consciousness and thought and to understand many activities of the brain. They include decoding what we are thinking in fine levels of detail through new chemicals and interventions that can influence our brains to correct for errors or enhance functionality.

The plan is clear and only the heart can stop it. With every heart that opens, every mind that awakens, Wetiko is weakened. Heart and love are far more powerful than head and hate and so nothing like a majority is needed to turn this around.

## **Beyond the Phantom**

Our heart is the prime target of Wetiko and so it must be the answer to Wetiko. We *are* our heart which is part of one heart, the infinite heart. Our heart is where the true self lives in a human life behind firewalls of five-sense illusion when an imposter takes its place – *Phantom Self*; but our heart waits patiently to be set free any time we choose to see beyond the Phantom, beyond Wetiko. A Wetikoed Phantom Self can wreak mass death and destruction while the love of forever is locked away in its heart. The time is here to unleash its power and let it sweep away the fear and despair that is Wetiko. Heart consciousness does not seek manipulated, censored, advantage for its belief or religion, its activism and desires. As an expression of the One it treats all as One with the same rights to freedom and opinion. Our heart demands fairness for itself no more than for others. From this unity of heart we can come together in mutual support and transform this Wetikoed world into what reality is meant to be – a place of love, joy, happiness, fairness, justice and freedom. Wetiko has another agenda and that’s why the world is as

it is, but enough of this nonsense. Wetiko can't stay where hearts are open and it works so hard to keep them closed. Fear is its currency and its food source and love in its true sense has no fear. Why would love have fear when it knows it is *All That Is, Has Been, And Ever Can Be* on an eternal exploration of all possibility? Love in this true sense is not the physical attraction that passes for love. This can be an expression of it, yes, but Infinite Love, a love without condition, goes far deeper to the core of all being. It is the core of all being. Infinite reality was born from love beyond the illusions of the simulation. Love infinitely expressed is the knowing that all is One and the swiftly-passing experience of separation is a temporary hallucination. You cannot disconnect from Oneness; you can only perceive that you have and withdraw from its influence. This is the most important of all perception trickery by the mind parasite that is Wetiko and the foundation of all its potential for manipulation.

If we open our hearts, open the sluice gates of the mind, and redefine self-identity amazing things start to happen. Consciousness expands or contracts in accordance with self-identity. When true self is recognised as infinite awareness and label self – Phantom Self – is seen as only a series of brief experiences life is transformed. Consciousness expands to the extent that self-identity expands and everything changes. You see unity, not division, the picture, not the pixels. From this we can play the long game. No more is an experience something in and of itself, but a fleeting moment in the eternity of forever. Suddenly people in uniform and dark suits are no longer intimidating. Doing what your heart knows to be right is no longer intimidating and consequences for those actions take on the same nature of a brief experience that passes in the blink of an infinite eye. Intimidation is all in the mind. Beyond the mind there is no intimidation.

An open heart does not consider consequences for what it knows to be right. To do so would be to consider not doing what it knows to be right and for a heart in its power that is never an option. The Renegade Mind is really the Renegade Heart. Consideration of consequences will always provide a getaway car for the mind and

the heart doesn't want one. What is right in the light of what we face today is to stop cooperating with Wetiko in all its forms and to do it without fear or compromise. You cannot compromise with tyranny when tyranny always demands more until it has everything. Life is your perception and you are your destiny. Change your perception and you change your life. Change collective perception and we change the world.

*Come on people ... One human family, One heart, One goal ...  
FREEEEEDOM!*

We must settle for nothing less.

## **Postscript**

**T**he big scare story as the book goes to press is the ‘Indian’ variant and the world is being deluged with propaganda about the ‘Covid catastrophe’ in India which mirrors in its lies and misrepresentations what happened in Italy before the first lockdown in 2020.

The *New York Post* published a picture of someone who had ‘collapsed in the street from Covid’ in India in April, 2021, which was actually taken during a gas leak in May, 2020. Same old, same old. Media articles in mid-February were asking why India had been so untouched by ‘Covid’ and then as their vaccine rollout gathered pace the alleged ‘cases’ began to rapidly increase. Indian ‘Covid vaccine’ maker Bharat Biotech was funded into existence by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (the pair announced their divorce in May, 2021, which is a pity because they so deserve each other). The Indian ‘Covid crisis’ was ramped up by the media to terrify the world and prepare people for submission to still more restrictions. The scam that worked the first time was being repeated only with far more people seeing through the deceit. [Davidicke.com](http://Davidicke.com) and [Ickonic.com](http://Ickonic.com) have sought to tell the true story of what is happening by talking to people living through the Indian nightmare which has nothing to do with ‘Covid’. We posted a letter from ‘Alisha’ in Pune who told a very different story to government and media mendacity. She said scenes of dying people and overwhelmed hospitals were designed to hide what was really happening – genocide and starvation. Alisha said that millions had already died of starvation during the ongoing lockdowns while government and media were lying and making it look like the ‘virus’:

Restaurants, shops, gyms, theatres, basically everything is shut. The cities are ghost towns. Even so-called 'essential' businesses are only open till 11am in the morning. You basically have just an hour to buy food and then your time is up.

Inter-state travel and even inter-district travel is banned. The cops wait at all major crossroads to question why you are traveling outdoors or to fine you if you are not wearing a mask.

The medical community here is also complicit in genocide, lying about hospitals being full and turning away people with genuine illnesses, who need immediate care. They have even created a shortage of oxygen cylinders.

This is the classic Cult modus operandi played out in every country. Alisha said that people who would not have a PCR test not testing for the 'virus' were being denied hospital treatment. She said the people hit hardest were migrant workers and those in rural areas. Most businesses employed migrant workers and with everything closed there were no jobs, no income and no food. As a result millions were dying of starvation or malnutrition. All this was happening under Prime Minister Narendra Modi, a 100-percent asset of the Cult, and it emphasises yet again the scale of pure anti-human evil we are dealing with. Australia banned its people from returning home from India with penalties for trying to do so of up to five years in jail and a fine of £37,000. The manufactured 'Covid' crisis in India was being prepared to justify further fascism in the West. Obvious connections could be seen between the Indian 'vaccine' programme and increased 'cases' and this became a common theme. The Seychelles, the most per capita 'Covid vaccinated' population in the world, went back into lockdown after a 'surge of cases'.

Long ago the truly evil Monsanto agricultural biotechnology corporation with its big connections to Bill Gates devastated Indian farming with genetically-modified crops. Human rights activist Gurcharan Singh highlighted the efforts by the Indian government to complete the job by destroying the food supply to hundreds of millions with 'Covid' lockdowns. He said that 415 million people at the bottom of the disgusting caste system (still going whatever they say) were below the poverty line and struggled to feed themselves every year. Now the government was imposing lockdown at just the

time to destroy the harvest. This deliberate policy was leading to mass starvation. People may reel back at the suggestion that a government would do that, but Wetiko-controlled ‘leaders’ are capable of any level of evil. In fact what is described in India is in the process of being instigated worldwide. The food chain and food supply are being targeted at every level to cause world hunger and thus control. Bill Gates is not the biggest owner of farmland in America for no reason and destroying access to food aids both the depopulation agenda and the plan for synthetic ‘food’ already being funded into existence by Gates. Add to this the coming hyper-inflation from the suicidal creation of fake ‘money’ in response to ‘Covid’ and the breakdown of container shipping systems and you have a cocktail that can only lead one way and is meant to. The Cult plan is to crash the entire system to ‘build back better’ with the Great Reset.

## **'Vaccine' transmission**

Reports from all over the world continue to emerge of women suffering menstrual and fertility problems after having the fake ‘vaccine’ and of the non-‘vaccinated’ having similar problems when interacting with the ‘vaccinated’. There are far too many for ‘coincidence’ to be credible. We’ve had menopausal women getting periods, others having periods stop or not stopping for weeks, passing clots, sometimes the lining of the uterus, breast irregularities, and miscarriages (which increased by 400 percent in parts of the United States). Non-‘vaccinated’ men and children have suffered blood clots and nose bleeding after interaction with the ‘vaccinated’. Babies have died from the effects of breast milk from a ‘vaccinated’ mother. Awake doctors – the small minority – speculated on the cause of non-‘vaccinated’ suffering the same effects as the ‘vaccinated’. Was it nanotechnology in the synthetic substance transmitting frequencies or was it a straight chemical bioweapon that was being transmitted between people? I am not saying that some kind of chemical transmission is not one possible answer, but the foundation of all that the Cult does is frequency and

this is fertile ground for understanding how transmission can happen. American doctor Carrie Madej, an internal medicine physician and osteopath, has been practicing for the last 20 years, teaching medical students, and she says attending different meetings where the agenda for humanity was discussed. Madej, who operates out of Georgia, did not dismiss other possible forms of transmission, but she focused on frequency in search of an explanation for transmission. She said the Moderna and Pfizer 'vaccines' contained nano-lipid particles as a key component. This was a brand new technology never before used on humanity. 'They're using a nanotechnology which is pretty much little tiny computer bits ... nanobots or hydrogel.' Inside the 'vaccines' was 'this sci-fi kind of substance' which suppressed immune checkpoints to get into the cell. I referred to this earlier as the 'Trojan horse' technique that tricks the cell into opening a gateway for the self-replicating synthetic material and while the immune system is artificially suppressed the body has no defences. Madej said the substance served many purposes including an on-demand ability to 'deliver the payload' and using the nano 'computer bits' as biosensors in the body. 'It actually has the ability to accumulate data from your body, like your breathing, your respiration, thoughts, emotions, all kinds of things.'

She said the technology obviously has the ability to operate through Wi-Fi and transmit and receive energy, messages, frequencies or impulses. 'Just imagine you're getting this new substance in you and it can react to things all around you, the 5G, your smart device, your phones.' We had something completely foreign in the human body that had never been launched large scale at a time when we were seeing 5G going into schools and hospitals (plus the Musk satellites) and she believed the 'vaccine' transmission had something to do with this: '... if these people have this inside of them ... it can act like an antenna and actually transmit it outwardly as well.' The synthetic substance produced its own voltage and so it could have that kind of effect. This fits with my own contention that the nano receiver-transmitters are designed to connect people to the

Smart Grid and break the receiver-transmitter connection to expanded consciousness. That would explain the French energy healer's experience of the disconnection of body from 'soul' with those who have had the 'vaccine'. The nanobots, self-replicating inside the body, would also transmit the synthetic frequency which could be picked up through close interaction by those who have not been 'vaccinated'. Madej speculated that perhaps it was 5G and increased levels of other radiation that was causing the symptoms directly although interestingly she said that non-'vaccinated' patients had shown improvement when they were away from the 'vaccinated' person they had interacted with. It must be remembered that you can control frequency and energy with your mind and you can consciously create energetic barriers or bubbles with the mind to stop damaging frequencies from penetrating your field. American paediatrician Dr Larry Palevsky said the 'vaccine' was not a 'vaccine' and was never designed to protect from a 'viral' infection. He called it 'a massive, brilliant propaganda of genocide' because they didn't have to inject everyone to get the result they wanted. He said the content of the jabs was able to infuse any material into the brain, heart, lungs, kidneys, liver, sperm and female productive system. 'This is genocide; this is a weapon of mass destruction.' At the same time American colleges were banning students from attending if they didn't have this life-changing and potentially life-ending 'vaccine'. Class action lawsuits must follow when the consequences of this college fascism come to light. As the book was going to press came reports about fertility effects on sperm in 'vaccinated' men which would absolutely fit with what I have been saying and hospitals continued to fill with 'vaccine' reactions. Another question is what about transmission via blood transfusions? The NHS has extended blood donation restrictions from seven days after a 'Covid vaccination' to 28 days after even a sore arm reaction.

I said in the spring of 2020 that the then touted 'Covid vaccine' would be ongoing each year like the flu jab. A year later Pfizer CEO, the appalling Albert Bourla, said people would 'likely' need a 'booster dose' of the 'vaccine' within 12 months of getting 'fully

'vaccinated' and then a yearly shot. 'Variants will play a key role', he said confirming the point. Johnson & Johnson CEO Alex Gorsky also took time out from his 'vaccine' disaster to say that people may need to be vaccinated against 'Covid-19' each year. UK Health Secretary, the psychopath Matt Hancock, said additional 'boosters' would be available in the autumn of 2021. This is the trap of the 'vaccine passport'. The public will have to accept every last 'vaccine' they introduce, including for the fake 'variants', or it would cease to be valid. The only other way in some cases would be continuous testing with a test not testing for the 'virus' and what is on the swabs constantly pushed up your noise towards the brain every time?

## **'Vaccines' changing behaviour**

I mentioned in the body of the book how I believed we would see gathering behaviour changes in the 'vaccinated' and I am already hearing such comments from the non-'vaccinated' describing behaviour changes in friends, loved ones and work colleagues. This will only increase as the self-replicating synthetic material and nanoparticles expand in body and brain. An article in the *Guardian* in 2016 detailed research at the University of Virginia in Charlottesville which developed a new method for controlling brain circuits associated with complex animal behaviour. The method, dubbed 'magnetogenetics', involves genetically-engineering a protein called ferritin, which stores and releases iron, to create a magnetised substance – 'Magneto' – that can activate specific groups of nerve cells from a distance. This is claimed to be an advance on other methods of brain activity manipulation known as optogenetics and chemogenetics (the Cult has been developing methods of brain control for a long time). The ferritin technique is said to be non-invasive and able to activate neurons 'rapidly and reversibly'. In other words, human thought and perception. The article said that earlier studies revealed how nerve cell proteins 'activated by heat and mechanical pressure can be genetically engineered so that they become sensitive to radio waves and magnetic fields, by attaching them to an iron-storing protein called ferritin, or to inorganic

paramagnetic particles'. Sensitive to radio waves and magnetic fields? You mean like 5G, 6G and 7G? This is the human-AI Smart Grid hive mind we are talking about. The *Guardian* article said:

... the researchers injected Magneto into the striatum of freely behaving mice, a deep brain structure containing dopamine-producing neurons that are involved in reward and motivation, and then placed the animals into an apparatus split into magnetised and non-magnetised sections.

Mice expressing Magneto spent far more time in the magnetised areas than mice that did not, because activation of the protein caused the striatal neurons expressing it to release dopamine, so that the mice found being in those areas rewarding. This shows that Magneto can remotely control the firing of neurons deep within the brain, and also control complex behaviours.

Make no mistake this basic methodology will be part of the 'Covid vaccine' cocktail and using magnetics to change brain function through electromagnetic field frequency activation. The Pentagon is developing a 'Covid vaccine' using ferritin. Magnetics would explain changes in behaviour and why videos are appearing across the Internet as I write showing how magnets stick to the skin at the point of the 'vaccine' shot. Once people take these 'vaccines' anything becomes possible in terms of brain function and illness which will be blamed on 'Covid-19' and 'variants'. Magnetic field manipulation would further explain why the non-'vaccinated' are reporting the same symptoms as the 'vaccinated' they interact with and why those symptoms are reported to decrease when not in their company. Interestingly 'Magneto', a 'mutant', is a character in the Marvel Comic *X-Men* stories with the ability to manipulate magnetic fields and he believes that mutants should fight back against their human oppressors by any means necessary. The character was born Erik Lehnsherr to a Jewish family in Germany.

## Cult-controlled courts

The European Court of Human Rights opened the door for mandatory 'Covid-19 vaccines' across the continent when it ruled in a Czech Republic dispute over childhood immunisation that legally

enforced vaccination could be ‘necessary in a democratic society’. The 17 judges decided that compulsory vaccinations did not breach human rights law. On the face of it the judgement was so inverted you gasp for air. If not having a vaccine infused into your body is not a human right then what is? Ah, but they said human rights law which has been specifically written to delete all human rights at the behest of the state (the Cult). Article 8 of the European Convention on Human Rights relates to the right to a private life. The crucial word here is ‘*except*’:

There shall be no interference by a public authority with the exercise of this right EXCEPT such as is in accordance with the law and is necessary in a democratic society in the interests of national security, public safety or the economic wellbeing of the country, for the prevention of disorder or crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others [My emphasis].

No interference *except* in accordance with the law means there *are no* ‘human rights’ *except* what EU governments decide you can have at their behest. ‘As is necessary in a democratic society’ explains that reference in the judgement and ‘in the interests of national security, public safety or the economic well-being of the country, for the prevention of disorder or crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others’ gives the EU a coach and horses to ride through ‘human rights’ and scatter them in all directions. The judiciary is not a check and balance on government extremism; it is a vehicle to enforce it. This judgement was almost laughably predictable when the last thing the Cult wanted was a decision that went against mandatory vaccination. Judges rule over and over again to benefit the system of which they are a part. Vaccination disputes that come before them are invariably delivered in favour of doctors and authorities representing the view of the state which owns the judiciary. Oh, yes, and we have even had calls to stop putting ‘Covid-19’ on death certificates within 28 days of a ‘positive test’ because it is claimed the practice makes the ‘vaccine’ appear not to work. They are laughing at you.

The scale of madness, inhumanity and things to come was highlighted when those not ‘vaccinated’ for ‘Covid’ were refused evacuation from the Caribbean island of St Vincent during massive volcanic eruptions. Cruise ships taking residents to the safety of another island allowed only the ‘vaccinated’ to board and the rest were left to their fate. Even in life and death situations like this we see ‘Covid’ stripping people of their most basic human instincts and the insanity is even more extreme when you think that fake ‘vaccine’-makers are not even claiming their body-manipulating concoctions stop ‘infection’ and ‘transmission’ of a ‘virus’ that doesn’t exist. St Vincent Prime Minister Ralph Gonsalves said: ‘The chief medical officer will be identifying the persons already vaccinated so that we can get them on the ship.’ Note again the power of the chief medical officer who, like Whitty in the UK, will be answering to the World Health Organization. This is the Cult network structure that has overridden politicians who ‘follow the science’ which means doing what WHO-controlled ‘medical officers’ and ‘science advisers’ tell them. Gonsalves even said that residents who were ‘vaccinated’ after the order so they could board the ships would still be refused entry due to possible side effects such as ‘wooziness in the head’. The good news is that if they were woozy enough in the head they could qualify to be prime minister of St Vincent.

## **Microchipping freedom**

The European judgement will be used at some point to justify moves to enforce the ‘Covid’ DNA-manipulating procedure. Sandra Ro, CEO of the Global Blockchain Business Council, told a World Economic Forum event that she hoped ‘vaccine passports’ would help to ‘drive forced consent and standardisation’ of global digital identity schemes: ‘I’m hoping with the desire and global demand for some sort of vaccine passport – so that people can get travelling and working again – [it] will drive forced consent, standardisation, and frankly, cooperation across the world.’ The lady is either not very bright, or thoroughly mendacious, to use the term ‘forced consent’.

You do not ‘consent’ if you are forced – you *submit*. She was describing what the plan has been all along and that’s to enforce a digital identity on every human without which they could not function. ‘Vaccine passports’ are opening the door and are far from the end goal. A digital identity would allow you to be tracked in everything you do in cyberspace and this is the same technique used by Cult-owned China to enforce its social credit system of total control. The ultimate ‘passport’ is planned to be a microchip as my books have warned for nearly 30 years. Those nice people at the Pentagon working for the Cult-controlled Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) claimed in April, 2021, they have developed a microchip inserted under the skin to detect ‘asymptomatic Covid-19 infection’ before it becomes an outbreak and a ‘revolutionary filter’ that can remove the ‘virus’ from the blood when attached to a dialysis machine. The only problems with this are that the ‘virus’ does not exist and people transmitting the ‘virus’ with no symptoms is brain-numbing bullshit. This is, of course, not a ruse to get people to be microchipped for very different reasons. DARPA also said it was producing a one-stop ‘vaccine’ for the ‘virus’ and all ‘variants’. One of the most sinister organisations on Planet Earth is doing this? Better have it then. These people are insane because Wetiko that possesses them is insane.

Researchers from the Salk Institute in California announced they have created an embryo that is part human and part monkey. My books going back to the 1990s have exposed experiments in top secret underground facilities in the United States where humans are being crossed with animal and non-human ‘extraterrestrial’ species. They are now easing that long-developed capability into the public arena and there is much more to come given we are dealing with psychiatric basket cases. Talking of which – Elon Musk’s scientists at Neuralink trained a monkey to play Pong and other puzzles on a computer screen using a joystick and when the monkey made the correct move a metal tube squirted banana smoothie into his mouth which is the basic technique for training humans into unquestioning compliance. Two Neuralink chips were in the monkey’s skull and

more than 2,000 wires ‘fanned out’ into its brain. Eventually the monkey played a video game purely with its brain waves. Psychopathic narcissist Musk said the ‘breakthrough’ was a step towards putting Neuralink chips into human skulls and merging minds with artificial intelligence. *Exactly.* This man is so dark and Cult to his DNA.

## **World Economic Fascism (WEF)**

The World Economic Forum is telling you the plan by the statements made at its many and various events. Cult-owned fascist YouTube CEO Susan Wojcicki spoke at the 2021 WEF Global Technology Governance Summit (see the name) in which 40 governments and 150 companies met to ensure ‘the responsible design and deployment of emerging technologies’. Orwellian translation: ‘Ensuring the design and deployment of long-planned technologies will advance the Cult agenda for control and censorship.’ Freedom-destroyer and Nuremberg-bound Wojcicki expressed support for tech platforms like hers to censor content that is ‘technically legal but could be harmful’. Who decides what is ‘harmful’? She does and they do. ‘Harmful’ will be whatever the Cult doesn’t want people to see and we have legislation proposed by the UK government that would censor content on the basis of ‘harm’ no matter if the information is fair, legal and provably true. Make that *especially* if it is fair, legal and provably true. Wojcicki called for a global coalition to be formed to enforce content moderation standards through automated censorship. This is a woman and mega-censor so self-deluded that she shamelessly accepted a ‘free expression’ award – *Wojcicki* – in an event sponsored by her own *YouTube*. They have no shame and no self-awareness.

You know that ‘Covid’ is a scam and Wojcicki a Cult operative when YouTube is censoring medical and scientific opinion purely on the grounds of whether it supports or opposes the Cult ‘Covid’ narrative. Florida governor Ron DeSantis compiled an expert panel with four professors of medicine from Harvard, Oxford, and Stanford Universities who spoke against forcing children and

vaccinated people to wear masks. They also said there was no proof that lockdowns reduced spread or death rates of 'Covid-19'. Cult-gofer Wojcicki and her YouTube deleted the panel video 'because it included content that contradicts the consensus of local and global health authorities regarding the efficacy of masks to prevent the spread of Covid-19'. This 'consensus' refers to what the Cult tells the World Health Organization to say and the WHO tells 'local health authorities' to do. Wojcicki knows this, of course. The panellists pointed out that censorship of scientific debate was responsible for deaths from many causes, but Wojcicki couldn't care less. She would not dare go against what she is told and as a disgrace to humanity she wouldn't want to anyway. The UK government is seeking to pass a fascist 'Online Safety Bill' to specifically target with massive fines and other means non-censored video and social media platforms to make them censor 'lawful but harmful' content like the Cult-owned Facebook, Twitter, Google and YouTube. What is 'lawful but harmful' would be decided by the fascist Blair-created Ofcom.

Another WEF obsession is a cyber-attack on the financial system and this is clearly what the Cult has planned to take down the bank accounts of everyone – except theirs. Those that think they have enough money for the Cult agenda not to matter to them have got a big lesson coming if they continue to ignore what is staring them in the face. The World Economic Forum, funded by Gates and fronted by Klaus Schwab, announced it would be running a 'simulation' with the Russian government and global banks of just such an attack called Cyber Polygon 2021. What they simulate – as with the 'Covid' Event 201 – they plan to instigate. The WEF is involved in a project with the Cult-owned Carnegie Endowment for International Peace called the WEF-Carnegie Cyber Policy Initiative which seeks to merge Wall Street banks, 'regulators' (I love it) and intelligence agencies to 'prevent' (arrange and allow) a cyber-attack that would bring down the global financial system as long planned by those that control the WEF and the Carnegie operation. The Carnegie Endowment for International Peace sent an instruction to First World

War US President Woodrow Wilson not to let the war end before society had been irreversibly transformed.

## **The Wuhan lab diversion**

As I close, the Cult-controlled authorities and lapdog media are systematically pushing ‘the virus was released from the Wuhan lab’ narrative. There are two versions – it happened by accident and it happened on purpose. Both are nonsense. The perceived existence of the never-shown-to-exist ‘virus’ is vital to sell the impression that there is actually an infective agent to deal with and to allow the endless potential for terrifying the population with ‘variants’ of a ‘virus’ that does not exist. The authorities at the time of writing are going with the ‘by accident’ while the alternative media is promoting the ‘on purpose’. Cable news host Tucker Carlson who has questioned aspects of lockdown and ‘vaccine’ compulsion has bought the Wuhan lab story. ‘Everyone now agrees’ he said. Well, I don’t and many others don’t and the question is *why* does the system and its media suddenly ‘agree’? When the media moves as one unit with a narrative it is always a lie – witness the hour by hour mendacity of the ‘Covid’ era. Why would this Cult-owned combination which has unleashed lies like machine gun fire suddenly ‘agree’ to tell the truth??

Much of the alternative media is buying the lie because it fits the conspiracy narrative, but it’s the *wrong* conspiracy. The real conspiracy is that *there is no virus* and that is what the Cult is desperate to hide. The idea that the ‘virus’ was released by accident is ludicrous when the whole ‘Covid’ hoax was clearly long-planned and waiting to be played out as it was so fast in accordance with the Rockefeller document and Event 201. So they prepared everything in detail over decades and then sat around strumming their fingers waiting for an ‘accidental’ release from a bio-lab? *What??* It’s crazy. Then there’s the ‘on purpose’ claim. You want to circulate a ‘deadly virus’ and hide the fact that you’ve done so and you release it down the street from the highest-level bio-lab in China? I repeat – *What??*

You would release it far from that lab to stop any association being made. But, no, we'll do it in a place where the connection was certain to be made. Why would you need to scam 'cases' and 'deaths' and pay hospitals to diagnose 'Covid-19' if you had a real 'virus'? What are sections of the alternative media doing believing this crap? Where were all the mass deaths in Wuhan from a 'deadly pathogen' when the recovery to normal life after the initial propaganda was dramatic in speed? Why isn't the 'deadly pathogen' now circulating all over China with bodies in the street? Once again we have the technique of tell them what they want to hear and they will likely believe it. The alternative media has its 'conspiracy' and with Carlson it fits with his 'China is the danger' narrative over years. China *is* a danger as a global Cult operations centre, but not for this reason. The Wuhan lab story also has the potential to instigate conflict with China when at some stage the plan is to trigger a Problem-Reaction-Solution confrontation with the West. Question everything – *everything* – and especially when the media agrees on a common party line.

### **Third wave ... fourth wave ... fifth wave ...**

As the book went into production the world was being set up for more lockdowns and a 'third wave' supported by invented 'variants' that were increasing all the time and will continue to do so in public statements and computer programs, but not in reality. India became the new Italy in the 'Covid' propaganda campaign and we were told to be frightened of the new 'Indian strain'. Somehow I couldn't find it within myself to do so. A document produced for the UK government entitled 'Summary of further modelling of easing of restrictions – Roadmap Step 2' declared that a third wave was inevitable (of course when it's in the script) and it would be the fault of children and those who refuse the health-destroying fake 'Covid vaccine'. One of the computer models involved came from the Cult-owned *Imperial College* and the other from Warwick University which I wouldn't trust to tell me the date in a calendar factory. The document states that both models presumed extremely high uptake

of the ‘Covid vaccines’ and didn’t allow for ‘variants’. The document states: ‘The resurgence is a result of some people (mostly children) being ineligible for vaccination; others choosing not to receive the vaccine; and others being vaccinated but not perfectly protected.’ The mendacity takes the breath away. Okay, blame those with a brain who won’t take the DNA-modifying shots and put more pressure on children to have it as ‘trials’ were underway involving children as young as six months with parents who give insanity a bad name. Massive pressure is being put on the young to have the fake ‘vaccine’ and child age consent limits have been systematically lowered around the world to stop parents intervening. Most extraordinary about the document was its claim that the ‘third wave’ would be driven by ‘the resurgence in both hospitalisations and deaths … dominated by *those that have received two doses of the vaccine*, comprising around 60-70% of the wave respectively’. The predicted peak of the ‘third wave’ suggested 300 deaths per day with 250 of them *fully ‘vaccinated’ people*. How many more lies do acquiescers need to be told before they see the obvious? Those who took the jab to ‘protect themselves’ are projected to be those who mostly get sick and die? So what’s in the ‘vaccine’? The document went on:

It is possible that a summer of low prevalence could be followed by substantial increases in incidence over the following autumn and winter. Low prevalence in late summer should not be taken as an indication that SARS-CoV-2 has retreated or that the population has high enough levels of immunity to prevent another wave.

They are telling you the script and while many British people believed ‘Covid’ restrictions would end in the summer of 2021 the government was preparing for them to be ongoing. Authorities were awarding contracts for ‘Covid marshals’ to police the restrictions with contracts starting in July, 2021, and going through to January 31st, 2022, and the government was advertising for ‘Media Buying Services’ to secure media propaganda slots worth a potential £320 million for ‘Covid-19 campaigns’ with a contract not ending until March, 2022. The recipient – via a list of other front companies – was reported to be American media marketing giant Omnicom Group

Inc. While money is no object for ‘Covid’ the UK waiting list for all other treatment – including life-threatening conditions – passed 4.5 million. Meantime the Cult is seeking to control all official ‘inquiries’ to block revelations about what has really been happening and why. It must not be allowed to – we need Nuremberg jury trials in every country. The cover-up doesn’t get more obvious than appointing ultra-Zionist professor Philip Zelikow to oversee two dozen US virologists, public health officials, clinicians, former government officials and four American ‘charitable foundations’ to ‘learn the lessons’ of the ‘Covid’ debacle. The personnel will be those that created and perpetuated the ‘Covid’ lies while Zelikow is the former executive director of the 9/11 Commission who ensured that the truth about those attacks never came out and produced a report that must be among the most mendacious and manipulative documents ever written – see *The Trigger* for the detailed exposure of the almost unimaginable 9/11 story in which Sabbatians can be found at every level.

## **Passive no more**

People are increasingly challenging the authorities with amazing numbers of people taking to the streets in London well beyond the ability of the Face-Nappies to stop them. Instead the Nappies choose situations away from the mass crowds to target, intimidate, and seek to promote the impression of ‘violent protestors’. One such incident happened in London’s Hyde Park. Hundreds of thousands walking through the streets in protest against ‘Covid’ fascism were ignored by the Cult-owned BBC and most of the rest of the mainstream media, but they delighted in reporting how police were injured in ‘clashes with protestors’. The truth was that a group of people gathered in Hyde Park at the end of one march when most had gone home and they were peacefully having a good time with music and chat. Face-Nappies who couldn’t deal with the full-march crowd then waded in with their batons and got more than they bargained for. Instead of just standing for this criminal brutality the crowd used their numerical superiority to push the Face-Nappies out of the

park. Eventually the Nappies turned and ran. Unfortunately two or three idiots in the crowd threw drink cans striking two officers which gave the media and the government the image they wanted to discredit the 99.9999 percent who were peaceful. The idiots walked straight into the trap and we must always be aware of potential agent provocateurs used by the authorities to discredit their targets.

This response from the crowd – the can people apart – must be a turning point when the public no longer stand by while the innocent are arrested and brutally attacked by the Face-Nappies. That doesn't mean to be violent, that's the last thing we need. We'll leave the violence to the Face-Nappies and government. But it does mean that when the Face-Nappies use violence against peaceful people the numerical superiority is employed to stop them and make citizen's arrests or Common Law arrests for a breach of the peace. The time for being passive in the face of fascism is over.

We are the many, they are the few, and we need to make that count before there is no freedom left and our children and grandchildren face an ongoing fascist nightmare.

*COME ON PEOPLE – IT'S TIME.*

### **One final thought ...**

The power of love  
A force from above  
Cleaning my soul  
Flame on burn desire  
Love with tongues of fire  
Purge the soul  
Make love your goal

I'll protect you from the hooded claw  
Keep the vampires from your door  
When the chips are down I'll be around  
With my undying, death-defying  
Love for you

Envy will hurt itself  
Let yourself be beautiful  
Sparkling love, flowers  
And pearls and pretty girls  
Love is like an energy  
Rushin' rushin' inside of me

This time we go sublime  
Lovers entwine, divine, divine,  
Love is danger, love is pleasure  
Love is pure – the only treasure

I'm so in love with you  
Purge the soul  
Make love your goal

The power of love  
A force from above  
Cleaning my soul  
The power of love  
A force from above  
A sky-scraping dove

Flame on burn desire  
Love with tongues of fire  
Purge the soul  
Make love your goal

**Frankie Goes To Hollywood**

## APPENDIX

### Cowan-Kaufman-Morell Statement on Virus Isolation (SOVI)

*Isolation: The action of isolating; the fact or condition of being isolated or standing alone; separation from other things or persons; solitariness*

Oxford English Dictionary

The controversy over whether the SARS-CoV-2 virus has ever been isolated or purified continues. However, using the above definition, common sense, the laws of logic and the dictates of science, any unbiased person must come to the conclusion that the SARS-CoV-2 virus has never been isolated or purified. As a result, no confirmation of the virus' existence can be found. The logical, common sense, and scientific consequences of this fact are:

- the structure and composition of something not shown to exist can't be known, including the presence, structure, and function of any hypothetical spike or other proteins;
- the genetic sequence of something that has never been found can't be known;
- "variants" of something that hasn't been shown to exist can't be known;
- it's impossible to demonstrate that SARS-CoV-2 causes a disease called Covid-19.

In as concise terms as possible, here's the proper way to isolate, characterize and demonstrate a new virus. First, one takes samples (blood, sputum, secretions) from many people (e.g. 500) with symptoms which are unique and specific enough to characterize an illness. Without mixing these samples with ANY tissue or products that also contain genetic material, the virologist macerates, filters and ultracentrifuges i.e. *purifies* the specimen. This common virology technique, done for decades to isolate bacteriophages<sup>1</sup> and so-called giant viruses in every virology lab, then allows the virologist to demonstrate with electron microscopy thousands of identically sized and shaped particles. These particles are the isolated and purified virus.

These identical particles are then checked for uniformity by physical and/or microscopic techniques. Once the purity is determined, the particles may be further characterized. This would include examining the structure, morphology, and chemical composition of the particles. Next, their genetic makeup is characterized by extracting the genetic material directly from the purified particles and using genetic-sequencing techniques, such as Sanger sequencing, that have also been around for decades. Then one does an analysis to confirm that these uniform particles are exogenous (outside) in origin as a virus is conceptualized to be, and not the normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues.<sup>2</sup> (As of May 2020, we know that virologists have no way to determine whether the particles they're seeing are viruses or just normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues.)<sup>3</sup>

---

1 Isolation, characterization and analysis of bacteriophages from the haloalkaline lake Elmenteita, KenyaJuliah Khayeli Akhwale et al, PLOS One, Published: April 25, 2019.  
<https://journals.plos.org/plosone/article?id=10.1371/journal.pone.0215734> – accessed 2/15/21

2 "Extracellular Vesicles Derived From Apoptotic Cells: An Essential Link Between Death and Regeneration," Maojiao Li et al, Frontiers in Cell and Developmental Biology, 2020 October 2.  
<https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fcell.2020.573511/full> – accessed 2/15/21

---

3 "The Role of Extracellular Vesicles as Allies of HIV, HCV and SARS Viruses," Flavia Giannessi, et al, *Viruses*, 2020 May

If we have come this far then we have fully isolated, characterized, and genetically sequenced an exogenous virus particle. However, we still have to show it is causally related to a disease. This is carried out by exposing a group of healthy subjects (animals are usually used) to this isolated, purified virus in the manner in which the disease is thought to be transmitted. If the animals get sick with the same disease, as confirmed by clinical and autopsy findings, one has now shown that the virus actually causes a disease. This demonstrates infectivity and transmission of an infectious agent.

None of these steps has even been attempted with the SARS-CoV-2 virus, nor have all these steps been successfully performed for any so-called pathogenic virus. Our research indicates that a single study showing these steps does not exist in the medical literature.

Instead, since 1954, virologists have taken unpurified samples from a relatively few people, often less than ten, with a similar disease. They then minimally process this sample and inoculate this unpurified sample onto tissue culture containing usually four to six other types of material – all of which contain identical genetic material as to what is called a “virus.” The tissue culture is starved and poisoned and naturally disintegrates into many types of particles, some of which contain genetic material. Against all common sense, logic, use of the English language and scientific integrity, this process is called “virus isolation.” This brew containing fragments of genetic material from many sources is then subjected to genetic analysis, which then creates in a computer-simulation process the alleged sequence of the alleged virus, a so-called *in silico* genome. At no time is an actual virus confirmed by electron microscopy. At no time is a genome extracted and sequenced from an actual virus. This is scientific fraud.

The observation that the unpurified specimen — inoculated onto tissue culture along with toxic antibiotics, bovine fetal tissue, amniotic fluid and other tissues — destroys the kidney tissue onto which it is inoculated is given as evidence of the virus' existence and pathogenicity. This is scientific fraud.

From now on, when anyone gives you a paper that suggests the SARS-CoV-2 virus has been isolated, please check the methods sections. If the researchers used Vero cells or any other culture method, you know that their process was not isolation. You will hear the following excuses for why actual isolation isn't done:

1. There were not enough virus particles found in samples from patients to analyze.
2. Viruses are intracellular parasites; they can't be found outside the cell in this manner.

If No. 1 is correct, and we can't find the virus in the sputum of sick people, then on what evidence do we think the virus is dangerous or even lethal? If No. 2 is correct, then how is the virus spread from person to person? We are told it emerges from the cell to infect others. Then why isn't it possible to find it?

Finally, questioning these virology techniques and conclusions is not some distraction or divisive issue. Shining the light on this truth is essential to stop this terrible fraud that humanity is confronting. For, as we now know, if the virus has never been isolated, sequenced or shown to cause illness, if the virus is imaginary, then why are we wearing masks, social distancing and putting the whole world into prison?

Finally, if pathogenic viruses don't exist, then what is going into those injectable devices erroneously called "vaccines," and what is their purpose? This scientific question is the most urgent and relevant one of our time.

We are correct. The SARS-CoV2 virus does not exist.

Sally Fallon Morell, MA

Dr. Thomas Cowan, MD

Dr. Andrew Kaufman, MD

# Bibliography

- Alinsky, Saul:** *Rules for Radicals* (Vintage, 1989)
- Antelman, Rabbi Marvin:** *To Eliminate the Opiate* (Zahavia, 1974)
- Bastardi, Joe:** *The Climate Chronicles* (Relentless Thunder Press, 2018)
- Cowan, Tom:** *Human Heart, Cosmic Heart* (Chelsea Green Publishing, 2016)
- Cowan, Tom, and Fallon Morell, Sally:** *The Contagion Myth* (Skyhorse Publishing, 2020)
- Forbes, Jack D:** *Columbus And Other Cannibals – The Wetiko Disease of Exploitation, Imperialism, and Terrorism* (Seven Stories Press, 2008 – originally published in 1979)
- Gates, Bill:** *How to Avoid a Climate Disaster: The Solutions We Have and the Breakthroughs We Need* (Allen Lane, 2021)
- Huxley, Aldous:** *Brave New World* (Chatto & Windus, 1932)
- Köhnlein, Dr Claus, and Engelbrecht, Torsten:** *Virus Mania* (emu-Vertag, Lahnstein, 2020)
- Lanza, Robert, and Berman, Bob:** *Biocentrism* (BenBella Books, 2010)
- Lash, John Lamb:** *Not In His Image* (Chelsea Green Publishing, 2006)
- Lester, Dawn, and Parker, David:** *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong* (Independently Published, 2019)
- Levy, Paul:** *Dispelling Wetiko, Breaking the Spell of Evil* (North Atlantic Books, 2013)
- Marx, Karl:** *A World Without Jews* (Philosophical Library, first edition, 1959)
- Mullis, Kary:** *Dancing Naked in the Mine Field* (Bloomsbury, 1999)
- O'Brien, Cathy:** *Trance-Formation of America* (Reality Marketing, 1995)
- Scholem, Gershon:** *The Messianic Idea in Judaism* (Schocken Books, 1994)
- Schwab, Klaus, and Davis, Nicholas:** *Shaping the Future of the Fourth Industrial Revolution: A guide to building a better world* (Penguin Books, 2018)
- Schwab, Klaus:** *The Great Reset* (Agentur Schweiz, 2020)
- Sunstein, Cass and Thaler, Richard:** *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness* (Penguin, 2009)
- Swan, Shanna:** *Count Down: How Our Modern World Is Threatening Sperm Counts, Altering Male and Female Reproductive Development and Imperiling the Future of the Human Race* (Scribner, 2021)
- Tegmark, Max:** *Our Mathematical Universe: My Quest for the Ultimate Nature of Reality* (Penguin, 2015)
- Velikovsky, Immanuel:** *Worlds in Collision* (Paradigma, 2009)

**Wilton, Robert:** *The Last Days of the Romanovs* (Blurb, 2018, first published 1920)

# **Index**

## **A**

### **abusive relationships**

blaming themselves, abused as [ref1](#)  
children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)  
conspiracy theories [ref1](#)  
domestic abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
economic abuse and dependency [ref1](#)  
isolation [ref1](#)  
physical abuse [ref1](#)  
psychological abuse [ref1](#)  
signs of abuse [ref1](#)

### **addiction**

alcoholism [ref1](#)  
frequencies [ref1](#)  
substance abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
technology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

### **Adelson, Sheldon** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

### **Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 (UN)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

### **AIDs/HIV** [ref1](#)

causal link between HIV and AIDs [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
retroviruses [ref1](#)  
testing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
trial-run for Covid-19, as [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**aliens/extraterrestrials** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**aluminium** [ref1](#)  
**Amazon** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**amplification cycles** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**anaphylactic shock** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**animals** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**antibodies** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**Antifa** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**antigens** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**anti-Semitism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Archons** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    energy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    ennoia [ref1](#)  
    genetic manipulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    inversion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    lockdowns [ref1](#)  
    money [ref1](#)  
    radiation [ref1](#)  
    religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    technology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**artificial intelligence (AI)** [ref1](#)  
**army made up of robots** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Internet [ref1](#)  
    MHRA [ref1](#)  
    Morgellons fibres [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Smart Grid [ref1](#)  
    Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
**asymptomatic, Covid-19 as** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**aviation industry** [ref1](#)

## B

**banking, finance and money** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

2008 crisis [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

boom and bust [ref1](#)

cashless digital money systems [ref1](#)

central banks [ref1](#)

credit [ref1](#)

digital currency [ref1](#)

fractional reserve lending [ref1](#)

Great Reset [ref1](#)

guaranteed income [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Human 2.0 [ref1](#)

incomes, destruction of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

interest [ref1](#)

one per cent [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

scams [ref1](#)

**BBC** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**Becker-Phelps, Leslie** [ref1](#)

**Behavioural Insights Team (BIT) (Nudge Unit)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**behavioural scientists and psychologists, advice from** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Bezos, Jeff** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Biden, Hunter** [ref1](#)

**Biden, Joe** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#),  
[ref12](#), [ref13](#), [ref14](#), [ref15](#), [ref16](#), [ref17](#)

**Big Pharma**

cholesterol [ref1](#)

health professionals [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

immunity from prosecution in US [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#),  
[ref7](#)

**billionaires** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#) [ref10](#), [ref11](#)  
**bird flu (H5N1)** [ref1](#)  
**Black Lives Matter (BLM)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**Blair, Tony** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**Brin, Sergei** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**British Empire** [ref1](#)  
**Bush, George HW** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Bush, George W** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Byrd, Robert** [ref1](#)

## C

### **Canada**

Global Cult [ref1](#)  
hate speech [ref1](#)  
internment [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
old people [ref1](#)  
SARS-COV-2 [ref1](#)  
satellites [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
wearable technology [ref1](#)

**Capitol Hill riot** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
agents provocateur [ref1](#)  
Antifa [ref1](#)  
Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**QAnon** [ref1](#)  
security precautions, lack of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**carbon dioxide** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**care homes, deaths in** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**cashless digital money systems** [ref1](#)  
**censorship** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

fact-checkers [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
private messages [ref1](#)  
social media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
transgender persons [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#)

**Centers for Disease Control (CDC) (United States)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#),  
[ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#), [ref13](#)

**centralisation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**chakras** [ref1](#)

**change agents** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**chemtrails** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**chief medical officers and scientific advisers** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#),  
[ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**children** *see also young people*

abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

care, taken into [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

education [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

energy [ref1](#)

family courts [ref1](#)

hand sanitisers [ref1](#)

human sacrifice [ref1](#)

lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

mental health [ref1](#)

old people [ref1](#)

parents, replacement of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

reframing [ref1](#)

smartphone addiction [ref1](#)

social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)  
social media [ref1](#)  
transgender persons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
United States [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

**China** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
anal swab tests [ref1](#)  
**Chinese Revolution** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
digital currency [ref1](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
guaranteed income [ref1](#)  
Imperial College [ref1](#)  
Israel [ref1](#)  
lockdown [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
masculinity crisis [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
media [ref1](#)  
origins of virus in China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
pollution causing respiratory diseases [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Smart Grid [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
social credit system [ref1](#)  
testing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
wet market conspiracy [ref1](#)  
**Wuhan** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**cholesterol** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Christianity** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
criticism [ref1](#)  
cross, inversion of the [ref1](#)

Nag Hammadi texts [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Roman Catholic Church [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Satan [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#)

**class** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**climate change hoax** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

carbon dioxide [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Club of Rome [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

fear [ref1](#)

funding [ref1](#)

Global Cult [ref1](#)

green new deals [ref1](#)

green parties [ref1](#)

inversion [ref1](#)

perception, control of [ref1](#)

PICC [ref1](#)

reframing [ref1](#)

temperature, increases in [ref1](#)

United Nations [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Wikipedia [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Clinton, Bill** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**Clinton, Hillary** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**the cloud** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**Club of Rome and climate change hoax** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

cognitive therapy [ref1](#)

**Cohn, Roy** [ref1](#)

**Common Law** [ref1](#)

Admiralty Law [ref1](#)

arrests [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

contractual law, Statute Law as [ref1](#)  
corporate entities, people as [ref1](#)  
legalese [ref1](#)  
*sea, law of the* [ref1](#)  
Statute Law [ref1](#)

**Common Purpose** leadership programme [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**communism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**co-morbidities** [ref1](#)  
**computer-generated virus**,  
**Covid-19** as [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**computer models** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**connections** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**consciousness** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
expanded [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
experience [ref1](#)  
heart [ref1](#)  
infinity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
self-identity [ref1](#)  
simulation thesis [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**conspiracy theorists** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**contradictory rules** [ref1](#)  
**contrails** [ref1](#)  
**Corman-Drosten test** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**countermimicry** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Covid-19 vaccines** *see* vaccines  
**Covidiots** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Cowan, Tom** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**crimes against humanity** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**cyber-operations** [ref1](#)

**cyberwarfare** [ref1](#)

## D

**DARPA (Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency)** [ref1](#)

**deaths**

care homes [ref1](#)

certificates [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

mortality rate [ref1](#)

post-mortems/autopsies [ref1](#)

recording [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**deceit**

pyramid of deceit [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

sequence of deceit [ref1](#)

**decoding** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**dehumanisation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Delphi technique** [ref1](#)

**democracy** [ref1](#)

**dependency** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Descartes, René** [ref1](#)

**DNA**

numbers [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

**DNR (do not resuscitate)**

orders [ref1](#)

**domestic abuse** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**downgrading of Covid-19** [ref1](#)

**Drosten, Christian** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**Duesberg, Peter** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## **E**

**economic abuse** [ref1](#)

**Edmunds, John** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**education** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**electromagnetic spectrum** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Enders, John** [ref1](#)

**energy**

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

children and young people [ref1](#)

consciousness [ref1](#)

decoding [ref1](#)

frequencies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

heart [ref1](#)

human energy field [ref1](#)

source, humans as an energy [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#)

viruses [ref1](#)

**ennoia** [ref1](#)

**Epstein, Jeffrey** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**eternal 'I'** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**ethylene oxide** [ref1](#)

**European Union** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Event** [ref1](#) and Bill Gates [ref2](#)

**exosomes**, Covid-19 as natural defence mechanism called [ref1](#)

**experience** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Extinction Rebellion** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## **F**

**Facebook**

addiction [ref1](#), 448–50

Facebook

Archons [ref1](#)  
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
hate speech [ref1](#)  
monopoly, as [ref1](#)  
private messages, censorship of [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#)  
United States election fraud [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

**fact-checkers** [ref1](#)

**Fauci, Anthony** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#),  
[ref11](#), [ref12](#)

**fear** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
climate change [ref1](#)  
computer models [ref1](#)  
conspiracy theories [ref1](#)  
empty hospitals [ref1](#)  
Italy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
medical staff [ref1](#)  
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**female infertility** [ref1](#)

**Fermi Paradox** [ref1](#)

**Ferguson, Neil** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**fertility, decline in** [ref1](#)

**The Field** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**finance** *see banking, finance and money*

**five-senses** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

censorship [ref1](#)  
consciousness, expansion of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
decoding [ref1](#)  
education [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
the Field [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
God, personification of [ref1](#)  
infinity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
media [ref1](#)  
paranormal [ref1](#)  
perceptual programming [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Phantom Self [ref1](#)  
pneuma not nous, using [ref1](#)  
reincarnation [ref1](#)  
self-identity [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
**5G** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
**Floyd, George and protests, killing of** [ref1](#)  
**flu, re-labelling of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**food and water, control of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Freemasons** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
**Frei, Rosemary** [ref1](#)  
**frequencies**  
addictions [ref1](#)  
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
awareness [ref1](#)  
chanting and mantras [ref1](#)  
consciousness [ref1](#)  
decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
education [ref1](#)  
electromagnetic (EMF) frequencies [ref1](#)  
energy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
fear [ref1](#)

the Field [ref1](#), [ref2](#) 5G [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)  
five-senses [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
ghosts [ref1](#)  
Gnostics [ref1](#)  
hive-minds [ref1](#)  
human, meaning of [ref1](#)  
light [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
love [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
magnetism [ref1](#)  
perception [ref1](#)  
reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
simulation [ref1](#)  
terror [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Fuellmich, Reiner** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**furlough/rescue payments** [ref1](#)

## G

**Gallo, Robert** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Gates, Bill**

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Daily Pass tracking system [ref1](#)  
Epstein [ref1](#)  
fascism [ref1](#)  
five senses [ref1](#)  
GAVI [ref1](#)  
Great Reset [ref1](#)  
GSK [ref1](#)  
Imperial College [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Johns Hopkins University [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

masks [ref1](#)

Nuremberg trial, proposal for [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Rockefellers [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)

Sun, dimming the [ref1](#)

synthetic meat [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

Wellcome Trust [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#)

World Economic Forum [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Gates, Melinda** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**GAVI vaccine alliance** [ref1](#)

**genetics, manipulation of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Germany** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#) *see also Nazi Germany*

**Global Cult** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

anti-human, why Global Cult is [ref1](#)

Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)

climate change hoax [ref1](#)

contradictory rules [ref1](#)

Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

fascism [ref1](#)

geographical origins [ref1](#)

immigration [ref1](#)

Internet [ref1](#)

mainstream media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

monarchy [ref1](#)

non-human dimension [ref1](#)

perception [ref1](#)  
political parties [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
pyramidal hierarchy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
reframing [ref1](#)  
Sabbantian-Frankism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
science, manipulation of [ref1](#)  
spider and the web [ref1](#)  
transgender persons [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
who controls the Cult [ref1](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**globalisation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Gnostics** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Google** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**government**

- behavioural scientists and psychologists, advice from [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- definition [ref1](#)
- Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) [ref1](#)
- people, abusive relationship with [ref1](#)

**Great Reset** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

- fascism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
- financial system [ref1](#)
- Human 2.0 [ref1](#)
- water and food, control of [ref1](#)

**green parties** [ref1](#)

**Griesz-Brisson, Margarite** [ref1](#)

**guaranteed income** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

## H

**Hancock, Matt** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**hand sanitisers** [ref1](#)

**heart** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**hive-minds/groupthink** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**holographs** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**hospitals, empty** [ref1](#)

**human, meaning of** [ref1](#)

**Human 2.0** [ref1](#)

addiction to technology [ref1](#)

artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

elimination of Human 1.0 [ref1](#)

fertility, decline in [ref1](#)

Great Reset [ref1](#)

implantables [ref1](#)

money [ref1](#)

mRNA [ref1](#)

nanotechnology [ref1](#)

parents, replacement of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Smart Grid, connection to [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

synthetic biology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

testosterone levels, decrease in [ref1](#)

transgender = transhumanism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**human sacrifice** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Hunger Games Society** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**Huxley, Aldous** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

## I

**identity politics** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Illuminati** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**illusory physical reality** [ref1](#)

**immigration** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Imperial College** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**implantables** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**incomes, destruction of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Infinite Awareness** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Internet** [ref1](#), [ref2](#) *see also* social media  
    artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)  
    independent journalism, lack of [ref1](#)  
    Internet of Bodies (IoB) [ref1](#)

**Internet of Everything (IoE)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Internet of Things (IoT)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**lockdowns** [ref1](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)  
    trolls [ref1](#)

**intersectionality** [ref1](#)

**inversion**  
    Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    climate change hoax [ref1](#)  
    energy [ref1](#)  
    Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    symbolism [ref1](#)  
    Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
    Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Islam**  
    Archons [ref1](#)  
    crypto-Jews [ref1](#)  
    Islamic State [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Jinn and Djinn [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    Ottoman Empire [ref1](#)  
    Wahhabism [ref1](#)

**isolation** *see* **social distancing and isolation**

**Israel**  
    China [ref1](#)  
    Cyber Intelligence Unit Beersheba complex [ref1](#)  
    expansion of illegal settlements [ref1](#)

formation [ref1](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#)  
Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
medical experiments, consent for [ref1](#)  
Mossad [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Palestine-Israel conflict [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
parents, replacement of [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States [ref1](#)  
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)  
Smart Grid [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

## **Italy**

fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Lombardy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)

## **J**

Johns Hopkins University [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
Johnson, Boris [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) [ref1](#)

## **Judaism**

anti-Semitism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
crypto-Jews [ref1](#)  
inversion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Labour Party [ref1](#)  
Nazi Germany [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Silicon Valley [ref1](#)  
Torah [ref1](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Zionists [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

## K

**Kaufman, Andrew** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**knowledge** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
**Koch's postulates** [ref1](#)  
**Kurzweil, Ray** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**Kushner, Jared** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## L

**Labour Party** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Lanka, Stefan** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Lateral Flow Device (LFD)** [ref1](#)  
**Levy, Paul** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Life Program** [ref1](#)  
**lockdowns** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    amplification tampering [ref1](#)  
    Archons [ref1](#)  
    Behavioural Insights Team [ref1](#)  
    Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#)  
    care homes, deaths in [ref1](#)  
    children  
    abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    mental health [ref1](#)  
    China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    computer models [ref1](#)  
    consequences [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    dependency [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

domestic abuse [ref1](#)  
fall in cases [ref1](#)  
fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
guaranteed income [ref1](#)  
Hunger Games Society [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
interaction, destroying [ref1](#)  
Internet [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
overdoses [ref1](#)  
perception [ref1](#)  
police-military state [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
protests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
psychopathic personality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
reporting/snitching, encouragement of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
testing [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
WHO [ref1](#)  
**love** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Lucifer** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

## M

**Madej, Carrie** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Magufuli, John** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**mainstream media** [ref1](#)  
BBC [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
China [ref1](#)  
climate change hoax [ref1](#)  
fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
independent journalism, lack of [ref1](#)  
Ofcom [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
social disapproval [ref1](#)  
social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Mao Zedong** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Marx and Marxism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**masculinity** [ref1](#)

**masks/face coverings** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

censorship [ref1](#)

children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

China, made in [ref1](#)

dehumanisation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

flu [ref1](#)

health professionals [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

isolation [ref1](#)

laughter [ref1](#)

**mass non-cooperation** [ref1](#)

**microplastics, risk of** [ref1](#)

**mind control** [ref1](#)

**multiple masks** [ref1](#)

oxygen deficiency [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

police [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

pollution, as cause of plastic [ref1](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)

reframing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

risk assessments, lack of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

self-respect [ref1](#)

surgeons [ref1](#)

United States [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
'worms' [ref1](#)  
*The Matrix* movies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
measles [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
media see mainstream media  
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)  
[ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Mesopotamia** [ref1](#)  
**messaging** [ref1](#)  
**military-police state** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**mind control** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#) *see also MKUltra*  
**MKUltra** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**monarchy** [ref1](#)  
**money** *see banking, finance and money*  
**Montagnier, Luc** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Mooney, Bel** [ref1](#)  
**Morgellons disease** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**mortality rate** [ref1](#)  
**Mullis, Kary** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Musk, Elon** [ref1](#)

## N

**Nag Hammadi texts** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**nanotechnology** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**narcissism** [ref1](#)  
**Nazi Germany** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
**near-death experiences** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Neocons** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP) and the Delphi technique**  
[ref1](#)

**NHS (National Health Service)**

amplification cycles [ref1](#)

Common Purpose [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

mind control [ref1](#)

**NHS England** [ref1](#)

saving the NHS [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

whistle-blowers [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**No-Problem-Reaction-Solution** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**non-human dimension of Global Cult** [ref1](#)

**nous** [ref1](#)

**numbers, reality as** [ref1](#)

**Nuremberg Codes** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Nuremberg-like tribunal, proposal for** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#),  
[ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)

## Ø

**Obama, Barack** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

**O'Brien, Cathy** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Ochel, Evita** [ref1](#)

**Ofcom** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**old people** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Oneness** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Open Society Foundations (Soros)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**oxygen** 406, 528–34

## P

**paedophilia** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Page, Larry** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**Palestine-Israel conflict** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**pandemic, definition of** [ref1](#)

**pandemic and health crisis scenarios/simulations** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**paranormal** [ref1](#)

**PCR tests** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**Pearl Harbor attacks, prior knowledge of** [ref1](#)

**Pelosi, Nancy** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**perception** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

- climate change hoax [ref1](#)
- control [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
- decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- enslavement [ref1](#)
- externally-delivered perceptions [ref1](#)
- five senses [ref1](#)
- human labels [ref1](#)
- media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- political parties [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)
- sale of perception [ref1](#)
- self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- Wokeness [ref1](#)

**Phantom Self** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**pharmaceutical industry** *see* **Big Pharma**

**phthalates** [ref1](#)

**Plato's Allegory of the Cave** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**pneuma** [ref1](#)

**police**

- Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#)
- brutality [ref1](#)
- citizen's arrests [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- common law arrests [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Common Purpose ref1  
defunding ref1  
lockdowns ref1, ref2  
masks ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4  
police-military state ref1, ref2, ref3  
psychopathic personality ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4  
reframing ref1  
United States ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4  
Wokeness ref1

**polio** ref1

**political correctness** ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

**political parties** ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

**political puppets** ref1

**pollution** ref1, ref2, ref3

**post-mortems/autopsies** ref1

**Postage Stamp Consensus** ref1, ref2

**pre-emptive programming** ref1

**Problem-Reaction-Solution** ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8

**Project for the New American Century** ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

**psychopathic personality** ref1

- Archons ref1
- heart energy ref1
- lockdowns ref1, ref2, ref3
- police ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
- recruitment ref1, ref2
- vaccines ref1
- wealth ref1
- Wetiko ref1, ref2

**Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a** ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5

**Pushbackers** ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

**pyramid structure** ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

## **Q**

**QAnon Psyop** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

## **R**

**racism** *see also* **Black Lives**

Matter (BLM)

anti-racism industry [ref1](#)

class [ref1](#)

critical race theory [ref1](#)

culture [ref1](#)

intersectionality [ref1](#)

reverse racism [ref1](#)

white privilege [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

white supremacy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**radiation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**randomness, illusion of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**reality** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**reframing** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

change agents [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

children [ref1](#)

climate change [ref1](#)

Common Purpose leadership programme [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

contradictory rules [ref1](#)

enforcers [ref1](#)

masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

NLP and the Delphi technique [ref1](#)

police [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**religion** *see also* particular religions

alien invasions [ref1](#)

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

control, system of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

criticism, prohibition on [ref1](#)

five senses [ref1](#)

good and evil, war between [ref1](#)

hidden non-human forces [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Sabbatians [ref1](#)

save me syndrome [ref1](#)

Wetiko [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#)

**repetition and mind control** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**reporting/snitching, encouragement of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Reptilians/Grey entities** [ref1](#)

**rewiring the mind** [ref1](#)

**Rivers, Thomas Milton** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Rockefeller family** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)

**Rockefeller Foundation documents** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Roman Empire** [ref1](#)

**Rothschild family** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)

**RT-PCR tests** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**Russia**

collusion inquiry in US [ref1](#)

**Russian Revolution** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Sabbatians [ref1](#)

## §

**Sabbantian-Frankism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

anti-Semitism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

banking and finance [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Lucifer [ref1](#)

media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Nazis [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

QAnon [ref1](#)

Rothschilds [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

Russia [ref1](#)

Saudi Arabia [ref1](#)

Silicon Valley [ref1](#)

Sumer [ref1](#)

United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**SAGE (Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#),  
[ref4](#)

**SARS-1** [ref1](#)

**SARs-CoV-2** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**Satan/Satanism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**satellites in low-orbit** [ref1](#)

**Saudi Arabia** [ref1](#)

**Save Me Syndrome** [ref1](#)

**scapegoating** [ref1](#)

**Schwab, Klaus** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#),  
[ref11](#), [ref12](#)

**science, manipulation of** [ref1](#)

**self-identity** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**self-respect, attacks on** [ref1](#)

**September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States** [ref1](#), [ref2](#),  
[ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**77th Brigade of UK military** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Silicon Valley/tech giants** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#) *see also*  
Facebook

Israel [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#)  
technocracy [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#)  
**simulation hypothesis** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**Smart Grid** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)  
China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
control centres [ref1](#)  
the Field [ref1](#)  
Great Reset [ref1](#)  
Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
**social disapproval** [ref1](#)  
**social distancing and isolation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
abusive relationships [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
children [ref1](#)  
flats and apartments [ref1](#)  
heart issues [ref1](#)  
hugs [ref1](#)  
Internet [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
media [ref1](#)  
older people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
one-metre (three feet) rule [ref1](#)  
rewiring the mind [ref1](#)  
**simulation, universe as a** [ref1](#)  
**SPI-B** [ref1](#)  
substance abuse [ref1](#)

suicide and self-harm [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
technology [ref1](#)  
torture, as [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
two-metre (six feet) rule [ref1](#)  
women [ref1](#)

**social justice** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**social media** *see also Facebook bans on alternative views* [ref1](#)  
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
children [ref1](#)  
emotion [ref1](#)  
perception [ref1](#)  
private messages [ref1](#)  
Twitter [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
YouTube [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Soros, George** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**Spain** [ref1](#)

**SPI-B (Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours)** [ref1](#),  
[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**spider and the web** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Starmer, Keir** [ref1](#)

**Statute Law** [ref1](#)

**Steiner, Rudolf** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Stockholm syndrome** [ref1](#)

**streptomycin** [ref1](#)

**suicide and self-harm** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Sumer** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Sunstein, Cass** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**swine flu (H1N1)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**synchronicity** [ref1](#)

**synthetic biology** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**synthetic meat** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

# T

**technology** *see also* **artificial intelligence (AI); Internet; social media addiction** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Archons** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**the cloud** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**cyber-operations** [ref1](#)  
**cyberwarfare** [ref1](#)  
**radiation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**social distancing and isolation** [ref1](#)  
**technocracy** [ref1](#)

**Tedros Adhanom Ghebreyesus** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#),  
[ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#), [ref13](#)

**telepathy** [ref1](#)

**Tenpenny, Sherri** [ref1](#)

**Tesla, Nikola** [ref1](#)

**testosterone levels, decrease in** [ref1](#)

**testing for Covid-19** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    anal swab tests [ref1](#)  
    cancer [ref1](#)  
    China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    Corman-Drosten test [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
    death certificates [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    fraudulent testing [ref1](#)  
    genetic material, amplification of [ref1](#)  
    Lateral Flow Device (LFD) [ref1](#)  
    PCR tests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
    vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Thunberg, Greta** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Totalitarian Tiptoe** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**transgender persons**  
    activism [ref1](#)  
    artificial wombs [ref1](#)

censorship [ref1](#)  
child abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
women, deletion of rights and status of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
young persons [ref1](#)  
**travel restrictions** [ref1](#)  
**Trudeau, Justin** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Trump, Donald** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#),  
[ref11](#)  
**Twitter** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

## U

**UKColumn** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**United Nations (UN)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#) *see also Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 (UN)*  
**United States** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    American Revolution [ref1](#)  
    borders [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Capitol Hill riot [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    children [ref1](#)  
    China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    CIA [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Daily Pass tracking system [ref1](#)  
    demographics by immigration, changes in [ref1](#)  
    Democrats [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
    election fraud [ref1](#)  
    far-right domestic terrorists, pushbackers as [ref1](#)  
    Federal Reserve [ref1](#)  
    flu/respiratory diseases statistics [ref1](#)  
    Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    hand sanitisers, FDA warnings on [ref1](#)

immigration, effects of illegal [ref1](#)  
impeachment [ref1](#)  
Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
lockdown [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
mass media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
nursing homes [ref1](#)  
Pentagon [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
police [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
pushbackers [ref1](#)  
Republicans [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
borders [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Democrats [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Russia, inquiry into collusion with [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
UFO sightings, release of information on [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
white supremacy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Woke Democrats [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## V

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
adverse reactions [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Africa [ref1](#)  
anaphylactic shock [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
animals [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
anti-vax movement [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
AstraZeneca/Oxford [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
autoimmune diseases, rise in [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

bioweapon, as real [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
black and ethnic minority communities [ref1](#)  
blood clots [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Brain Computer Interface (BCI) [ref1](#)  
care homes, deaths in [ref1](#)  
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
chief medical officers and scientific advisers, financial interests of  
[ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)  
China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
clinical trials [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
compensation [ref1](#)  
compulsory vaccinations [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
computer programs [ref1](#)  
consciousness [ref1](#)  
cover-ups [ref1](#)  
creation before Covid [ref1](#)  
cytokine storm [ref1](#)  
deaths and illnesses caused by vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
definition [ref1](#)  
developing countries [ref1](#)  
digital tattoos [ref1](#)  
DNA-manipulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#),  
[ref10](#)  
emergency approval [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
female infertility [ref1](#)  
funding [ref1](#)  
genetic suicide [ref1](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#)  
heart chakras [ref1](#)  
hesitancy [ref1](#)  
Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
immunity from prosecution [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

implantable technology [ref1](#)  
Israel [ref1](#)  
Johnson & Johnson [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
lockdowns [ref1](#)  
long-term effects [ref1](#)  
mainstream media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)  
[ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
messaging [ref1](#)  
Moderna [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
mRNA vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
nanotechnology [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
NHS [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
older people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
operating system [ref1](#)  
passports [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Pfizer/BioNTech [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
polyethylene glycol [ref1](#)  
pregnant women [ref1](#)  
psychopathic personality [ref1](#)  
races, targeting different [ref1](#)  
reverse transcription [ref1](#)  
Smart Grid [ref1](#)  
social distancing [ref1](#)  
social media [ref1](#)  
sterility [ref1](#)  
synthetic material, introduction of [ref1](#)  
tests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
travel restrictions [ref1](#)  
**variants** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**viruses, existence of** [ref1](#)  
whistle-blowing [ref1](#)

WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#)  
working, vaccine as [ref1](#)  
young people [ref1](#)  
**Vallance, Patrick** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
**variants** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**vegans** [ref1](#)  
**ventilators** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**virology** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**virtual reality** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**viruses, existence of** [ref1](#)  
**visual reality** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**vitamin D** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**von Braun, Wernher** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## **W**

**war-zone hospital myths** [ref1](#)  
**waveforms** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**wealth** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#) [ref10](#), [ref11](#)  
**wet market conspiracy** [ref1](#)  
**Wetiko factor** [ref1](#)  
alcoholism and drug addiction [ref1](#)  
anti-human, why Global Cult is [ref1](#)  
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)  
Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
children [ref1](#)  
China [ref1](#)  
consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
education [ref1](#)  
Facebook [ref1](#)

fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
frequency [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Gates [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
lockdowns [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
Native American concept [ref1](#)  
psychopathic personality [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
reframing/retraining programmes [ref1](#)  
religion [ref1](#)  
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)  
Smart Grid [ref1](#)  
smartphone addiction [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
social media [ref1](#)  
war [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
WHO [ref1](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Yaldabaoth [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**whistle-blowing** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**white privilege** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**white supremacy** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**Whitty, Christopher** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#),  
[ref10](#)  
'who benefits' [ref1](#)  
**Wi-Fi** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Wikipedia** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Wojcicki, Susan** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**Wokeness**  
Antifa [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
anti-Semitism [ref1](#)  
billionaire social justice warriors [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Capitol Hill riot [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
censorship [ref1](#)  
Christianity [ref1](#)  
climate change hoax [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
culture [ref1](#)  
education, control of [ref1](#)  
emotion [ref1](#)  
facts [ref1](#)  
fascism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
group-think [ref1](#)  
immigration [ref1](#)  
indigenous people, solidarity with [ref1](#)  
inversion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
left, hijacking the [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Marxism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
mind control [ref1](#)  
New Woke [ref1](#)  
Old Woke [ref1](#)  
Oneness [ref1](#)  
perceptual programming [ref1](#)  
    Phantom Self [ref1](#)  
police [ref1](#)  
defunding the [ref1](#)  
reframing [ref1](#)  
public institutions [ref1](#)  
Pushbackers [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
racism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
reframing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
religion, as [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)  
social justice [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

transgender [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
young people [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**women, deletion of rights and status of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**World Economic Forum (WEF)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#),  
[ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
**World Health Organization (WHO)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#),  
[ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
AIDs/HIV [ref1](#)  
amplification cycles [ref1](#)  
Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
cooperation in health emergencies [ref1](#)  
creation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
fatality rate [ref1](#)  
funding [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Gates [ref1](#)  
Internet [ref1](#)  
lockdown [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Wetiko factor** [ref1](#)  
**world number 1 (masses)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**world number 2** [ref1](#)  
**Wuhan** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#) [ref8](#)

## Y

**Yaldabaoth** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
**Yeadon, Michael** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**young people** *see also children* addiction to technology [ref1](#)  
Human 2.0 [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**YouTube** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

WHO 548

## Z

**Zaks, Tal** [ref1](#)

**Zionism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Zuckerberg, Mark** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#),  
[ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)

**Zulus** [ref1](#)

# **ICKONIC**

**THE ALTERNATIVE**

Ickonic is something that has been a dream of mine for the last 5 years. growing up around alternative information I have always had a natural interest in what is going on in the World and what could I do to make it better. Across the range of subjects and positions of influence occupied mainly by people who don't strive to make things better it's the Media that I have always found the most frustrating and fascinating. Mainly because if the Media did their Jobs properly then so much of the negative things happening in the World simply would not be able to happen, because they would be exposed within a heartbeat.

Free Press and the Opportunities that the internet could have given would mean that the Media are able to expose things like never before and hold people to account for their actions. As we all know there are 'Untouchables' that walk among us, people the Media simply won't touch, expose or investigate and that leads to the dark underworlds that infest the establishment the World over. Well I say enough, it's time for something different, a different kind of Media, where no one is off limits from exposing and investigating. All we're interested in at Ickonic is the truth of what is really going on in the World on whichever subject we're covering.

We hope you enjoy what we have created and take something away from the platform, we aim to deliver information that's informative and most importantly self-empowering, you're not a little person, you're part of something much bigger than that and its time we as a collective race began to understand that and look to the future as ours to take.

It's time...

Jaymie Icke - Founder Ickonic Alternative Media.

**SIGN UP NOW AT [ICKONIC.COM](http://ICKONIC.COM)**

DAVID ICKE

# THE ANSWER



We live in extraordinary times with billions bewildered and seeking answers for what is happening. David Icke, the man who has been proved right again and again, has spent 30 years uncovering the truth behind world affairs and in a stream of previous books he predicted current events.

The Answer will change your every perception of life and the world and set you free of the illusions that control human society. There is nothing more vital for our collective freedom than humanity becoming aware of what is in this book.

**Available now at [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com).**

# THE **TRIGGER**

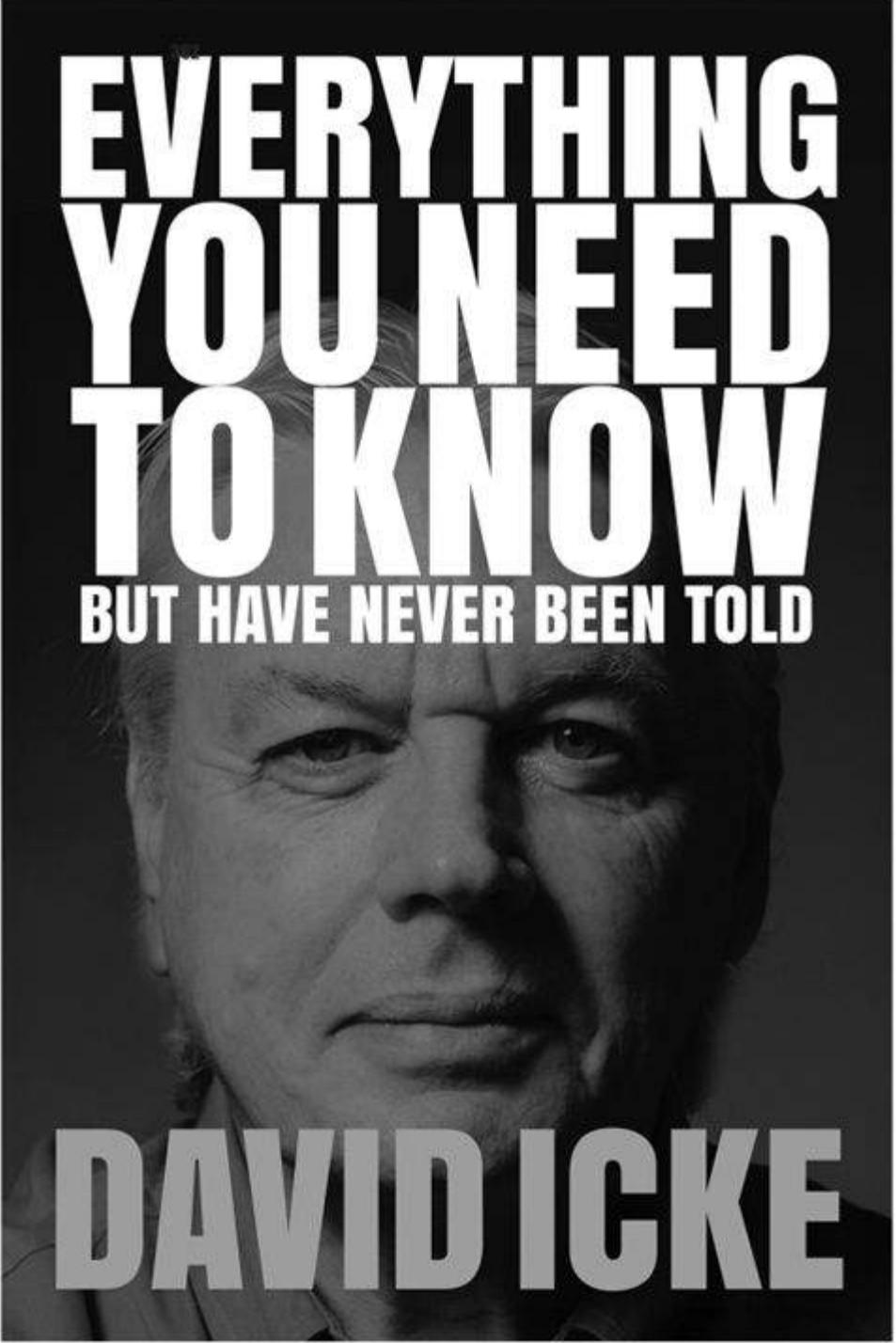
THE LIE THAT CHANGED THE WORLD  
- WHO REALLY DID IT AND WHY



**DAVID ICKE**

# **EVERYTHING YOU NEED TO KNOW**

**BUT HAVE NEVER BEEN TOLD**



**DAVID ICKE**

**DAVIDICKE.COM**



**DAVID ICKE STORE  
LATEST NEWS ARTICLES  
DAVID ICKE VIDEOS  
WEEKLY DOT-CONNECTOR PODCASTS  
LIVE EVENTS**  
**WWW.DAVIDICKE.COM**

THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE

# RENEGADE

/'ren-i.gəd/

**noun**

A person who behaves in a rebelliously unconventional manner.

THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM



AVAILABLE NOW AT [DAVIDICKE.COM](http://DAVIDICKE.COM)

2 NEW BOOKS  
BY NEIL HAGUE

# ORION'S DOOR

SYMBOLS OF CONSCIOUSNESS & BLUEPRINTS OF CONTROL  
- THE STORY OF ORION'S INFLUENCE OVER HUMANITY

CUTTING EDGE VISIONARY ART  
& UNIQUE ILLUSTRATED BOOKS

NEIL HAGUE

FOR  
BOOKS, PRINTS & T-SHIRTS

VISIT:

**NEILHAGUEBOOKS.COM**

OR [NEILHAGUE.COM](http://NEILHAGUE.COM)

# DR. COVID UNIVERSE

ADVENTURES  
IN CLOWNLAND



NEIL HAGUE

## **Before you go ...**

For more detail, background and evidence about the subjects in *Perceptions of a Renegade Mind* – and so much more – see my others books including *And The Truth Shall Set You Free; The Biggest Secret; Children of the Matrix; The David Icke Guide to the Global Conspiracy; Tales from the Time Loop; The Perception Deception; Remember Who You Are; Human Race Get Off Your Knees; Phantom Self; Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told, The Trigger and The Answer.*

You can subscribe to the fantastic new Ickonic media platform where there are many hundreds of hours of cutting-edge information in videos, documentaries and series across a whole range of subjects which are added to every week. This includes my 90 minute breakdown of the week's news every Friday to explain *why* events are happening and to what end.

# PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND



DAVID ICKE

# PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND



**DAVID ICKE**

# PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND

ickonic  
publishing

First published in July 2021.



**New Enterprise House  
St Helens Street  
Derby  
DE1 3GY  
UK**

*email:* [gareth.icke@davidicke.com](mailto:gareth.icke@davidicke.com)

Copyright © 2021 David Icke

No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without permission from the Publisher, except for the quotation of brief passages in criticism

*Cover Design:* Gareth Icke  
*Book Design:* Neil Hague

**British Library Cataloguing-in  
Publication Data**  
A catalogue record for this book is  
available from the British Library

eISBN 978-18384153-1-0

PERCEPTIONS  
OF A  
RENEGADE  
MIND



**DAVID ICKE**

**Dedication:**

To *Freeeeeedom!*

# **ICKONIC**



## **THE ALTERNATIVE**

**NEW. DIFFERENT. REVOLUTIONARY**

HUNDREDS OF CUTTING EDGE DOCUMENTARIES,  
FEATURE FILMS, SERIES & PODCASTS.

**SIGN UP NOW AT [ICKONIC.COM](http://ICKONIC.COM)**

THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE  
**RENEGADE**  
THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM



**AVAILABLE NOW AT DAVIDICKE.COM**

**Renegade:**

Adjective

'Having rejected tradition: Unconventional.'

**Merriam-Webster Dictionary**

## **Acquiescence to tyranny is the death of the spirit**

You may be 38 years old, as I happen to be. And one day, some great opportunity stands before you and calls you to stand up for some great principle, some great issue, some great cause. And you refuse to do it because you are afraid

... You refuse to do it because you want to live longer ...

You're afraid that you will lose your job, or you are afraid that you will be criticised or that you will lose your popularity, or you're afraid that somebody will stab you, or shoot at you or bomb your house; so you refuse to take the stand.

Well, you may go on and live until you are 90, but you're just as dead at 38 as you would be at 90. And the cessation of breathing in your life is but the belated announcement of an earlier death of the spirit.

**Martin Luther King**

**How the few control the many and always have – the many do  
whatever they're told**

'Forward, the Light Brigade!'  
Was there a man dismayed?  
Not though the soldier knew  
    Someone had blundered.  
Theirs not to make reply,  
Theirs not to reason why,  
Theirs but to do and die.  
    Into the valley of Death  
        Rode the six hundred.

Cannon to right of them,  
Cannon to left of them,  
Cannon in front of them  
    Volleyed and thundered;  
Stormed at with shot and shell,  
    Boldly they rode and well,  
        Into the jaws of Death,  
        Into the mouth of hell  
        Rode the six hundred

**Alfred Lord Tennyson (1809-1892)**

The mist is lifting slowly  
I can see the way ahead  
And I've left behind the empty streets  
That once inspired my life  
And the strength of the emotion  
Is like thunder in the air  
'Cos the promise that we made each other  
Haunts me to the end

The secret of your beauty  
And the mystery of your soul  
I've been searching for in everyone I meet  
And the times I've been mistaken  
It's impossible to say  
And the grass is growing  
Underneath our feet

The words that I remember  
From my childhood still are true  
That there's none so blind  
As those who will not see  
And to those who lack the courage  
And say it's dangerous to try  
Well they just don't know  
That love eternal will not be denied

I know you're out there somewhere  
Somewhere, somewhere  
I know you're out there somewhere

Somewhere you can hear my voice  
I know I'll find you somehow  
Somehow, somehow  
I know I'll find you somehow  
And somehow I'll return again to you

**The Moody Blues**

## **Are you a gutless wonder - or a Renegade Mind?**

Monuments put from pen to paper,  
Turns me into a gutless wonder,  
And if you tolerate this,  
Then your children will be next.  
Gravity keeps my head down,  
Or is it maybe shame ...

**Manic Street Preachers**

Rise like lions after slumber  
In unvanquishable number.  
Shake your chains to earth like dew  
Which in sleep have fallen on you.  
Ye are many – they are few.

**Percy Shelley**

# **Contents**

<b>CHAPTER 1</b>	<b>'I'm thinking' – Oh, but <i>are you?</i></b>
<b>CHAPTER 2</b>	<b>Renegade perception</b>
<b>CHAPTER 3</b>	<b>The Pushbacker sting</b>
<b>CHAPTER 4</b>	<b>'Covid': The calculated catastrophe</b>
<b>CHAPTER 5</b>	<b>There <i>is no</i> 'virus'</b>
<b>CHAPTER 6</b>	<b>Sequence of deceit</b>
<b>CHAPTER 7</b>	<b>War on your mind</b>
<b>CHAPTER 8</b>	<b>'Reframing' insanity</b>
<b>CHAPTER 9</b>	<b>We must have it? So what is it?</b>
<b>CHAPTER 10</b>	<b>Human 2.0</b>
<b>CHAPTER 11</b>	<b>Who controls the Cult?</b>
<b>CHAPTER 12</b>	<b>Escaping Wetiko</b>
<b>POSTSCRIPT</b>	
<b>APPENDIX</b>	<b>Cowan-Kaufman-Morell Statement on Virus Isolation</b>
<b>BIBLIOGRAPHY</b>	
<b>INDEX</b>	

# CHAPTER ONE

## I'm thinking' – Oh, but *are* you?

*Think for yourself and let others enjoy the privilege of doing so too*  
Voltaire

French-born philosopher, mathematician and scientist René Descartes became famous for his statement in Latin in the 17th century which translates into English as: 'I think, therefore I am.'

On the face of it that is true. Thought reflects perception and perception leads to both behaviour and self-identity. In that sense 'we' are what we think. But who or what is doing the thinking and is thinking the only route to perception? Clearly, as we shall see, 'we' are not always the source of 'our' perception, indeed with regard to humanity as a whole this is rarely the case; and thinking is far from the only means of perception. Thought is the village idiot compared with other expressions of consciousness that we all have the potential to access and tap into. This has to be true when we *are* those other expressions of consciousness which are infinite in nature. We have forgotten this, or, more to the point, been manipulated to forget.

These are not just the esoteric musings of the navel. The whole foundation of human control and oppression is control of perception. Once perception is hijacked then so is behaviour which is dictated by perception. Collective perception becomes collective behaviour and collective behaviour is what we call human society. Perception is all and those behind human control know that which is

why perception is the target 24/7 of the psychopathic manipulators that I call the Global Cult. They know that if they dictate perception they will dictate behaviour and collectively dictate the nature of human society. They are further aware that perception is formed from information received and if they control the circulation of information they will to a vast extent direct human behaviour.

Censorship of information and opinion has become globally Nazi-like in recent years and never more blatantly than since the illusory ‘virus pandemic’ was triggered out of China in 2019 and across the world in 2020. Why have billions submitted to house arrest and accepted fascistic societies in a way they would have never believed possible? Those controlling the information spewing from government, mainstream media and Silicon Valley (all controlled by the same Global Cult networks) told them they were in danger from a ‘deadly virus’ and only by submitting to house arrest and conceding their most basic of freedoms could they and their families be protected. This monumental and provable lie became the *perception* of the billions and therefore the *behaviour* of the billions. In those few words you have the whole structure and modus operandi of human control. Fear is a perception – False Emotion Appearing Real – and fear is the currency of control. In short ... get them by the balls (or give them the impression that you have) and their hearts and minds will follow. Nothing grips the dangly bits and freezes the rear-end more comprehensively than fear.

## **World number 1**

There are two ‘worlds’ in what appears to be one ‘world’ and the prime difference between them is knowledge. First we have the mass of human society in which the population is maintained in coldly-calculated ignorance through control of information and the ‘education’ (indoctrination) system. That’s all you really need to control to enslave billions in a perceptual delusion in which what are perceived to be *their* thoughts and opinions are ever-repeated mantras that the system has been downloading all their lives through ‘education’, media, science, medicine, politics and academia

in which the personnel and advocates are themselves overwhelmingly the perceptual products of the same repetition. Teachers and academics in general are processed by the same programming machine as everyone else, but unlike the great majority they never leave the ‘education’ program. It gripped them as students and continues to grip them as programmers of subsequent generations of students. The programmed become the programmers – the programmed programmers. The same can largely be said for scientists, doctors and politicians and not least because as the American writer Upton Sinclair said: ‘It is difficult to get a man to understand something when his salary depends upon his not understanding it.’ If your career and income depend on thinking the way the system demands then you will – bar a few free-minded exceptions – concede your mind to the Perceptual Mainframe that I call the Postage Stamp Consensus. This is a tiny band of perceived knowledge and possibility ‘taught’ (downloaded) in the schools and universities, pounded out by the mainstream media and on which all government policy is founded. Try thinking, and especially speaking and acting, outside of the ‘box’ of consensus and see what that does for your career in the Mainstream Everything which bullies, harasses, intimidates and ridicules the population into compliance. Here we have the simple structure which enslaves most of humanity in a perceptual prison cell for an entire lifetime and I’ll go deeper into this process shortly. Most of what humanity is taught as fact is nothing more than programmed belief. American science fiction author Frank Herbert was right when he said: ‘Belief can be manipulated. Only knowledge is dangerous.’ In the ‘Covid’ age belief is promoted and knowledge is censored. It was always so, but never to the extreme of today.

## **World number 2**

A ‘number 2’ is slang for ‘doing a poo’ and how appropriate that is when this other ‘world’ is doing just that on humanity every minute of every day. World number 2 is a global network of secret societies and semi-secret groups dictating the direction of society via

governments, corporations and authorities of every kind. I have spent more than 30 years uncovering and exposing this network that I call the Global Cult and knowing its agenda is what has made my books so accurate in predicting current and past events. Secret societies are secret for a reason. They want to keep their hoarded knowledge to themselves and their chosen initiates and to hide it from the population which they seek through ignorance to control and subdue. The whole foundation of the division between World 1 and World 2 is *knowledge*. What number 1 knows number 2 must not. Knowledge they have worked so hard to keep secret includes (a) the agenda to enslave humanity in a centrally-controlled global dictatorship, and (b) the nature of reality and life itself. The latter (b) must be suppressed to allow the former (a) to prevail as I shall be explaining. The way the Cult manipulates and interacts with the population can be likened to a spider's web. The 'spider' sits at the centre in the shadows and imposes its will through the web with each strand represented in World number 2 by a secret society, satanic or semi-secret group, and in World number 1 – the world of the seen – by governments, agencies of government, law enforcement, corporations, the banking system, media conglomerates and Silicon Valley ([Fig 1](#) overleaf). The spider and the web connect and coordinate all these organisations to pursue the same global outcome while the population sees them as individual entities working randomly and independently. At the level of the web governments *are* the banking system *are* the corporations *are* the media *are* Silicon Valley *are* the World Health Organization working from their inner cores as one unit. Apparently unconnected countries, corporations, institutions, organisations and people are on the *same team* pursuing the same global outcome. Strands in the web immediately around the spider are the most secretive and exclusive secret societies and their membership is emphatically restricted to the Cult inner-circle emerging through the generations from particular bloodlines for reasons I will come to. At the core of the core you would get them in a single room. That's how many people are dictating the direction of human society and its transformation

through the ‘Covid’ hoax and other means. As the web expands out from the spider we meet the secret societies that many people will be aware of – the Freemasons, Knights Templar, Knights of Malta, Opus Dei, the inner sanctum of the Jesuit Order, and such like. Note how many are connected to the Church of Rome and there is a reason for that. The Roman Church was established as a revamp, a rebranding, of the relocated ‘Church’ of Babylon and the Cult imposing global tyranny today can be tracked back to Babylon and Sumer in what is now Iraq.



**Figure 1:** The global web through which the few control the many. (Image Neil Hague.)

Inner levels of the web operate in the unseen away from the public eye and then we have what I call the cusp organisations located at the point where the hidden meets the seen. They include a series of satellite organisations answering to a secret society founded in London in the late 19th century called the Round Table and among them are the Royal Institute of International Affairs (UK, founded in 1920); Council on Foreign Relations (US, 1921); Bilderberg Group (worldwide, 1954); Trilateral Commission (US/worldwide, 1972); and the Club of Rome (worldwide, 1968) which was created to exploit environmental concerns to justify the centralisation of global power to ‘save the planet’. The Club of Rome instigated with others the human-caused climate change hoax which has led to all the ‘green

new deals' demanding that very centralisation of control. Cusp organisations, which include endless 'think tanks' all over the world, are designed to coordinate a single global policy between political and business leaders, intelligence personnel, media organisations and anyone who can influence the direction of policy in their own sphere of operation. Major players and regular attenders will know what is happening – or some of it – while others come and go and are kept overwhelmingly in the dark about the big picture. I refer to these cusp groupings as semi-secret in that they can be publicly identified, but what goes on at the inner-core is kept very much 'in house' even from most of their members and participants through a fiercely-imposed system of compartmentalisation. Only let them know what they need to know to serve your interests and no more. The structure of secret societies serves as a perfect example of this principle. Most Freemasons never get higher than the bottom three levels of 'degree' (degree of knowledge) when there are 33 official degrees of the Scottish Rite. Initiates only qualify for the next higher 'compartment' or degree if those at that level choose to allow them. Knowledge can be carefully assigned only to those considered 'safe'. I went to my local Freemason's lodge a few years ago when they were having an 'open day' to show how cuddly they were and when I chatted to some of them I was astonished at how little the rank and file knew even about the most ubiquitous symbols they use. The mushroom technique – keep them in the dark and feed them bullshit – applies to most people in the web as well as the population as a whole. Sub-divisions of the web mirror in theme and structure transnational corporations which have a headquarters somewhere in the world dictating to all their subsidiaries in different countries. Subsidiaries operate in their methodology and branding to the same centrally-dictated plan and policy in pursuit of particular ends. The Cult web functions in the same way. Each country has its own web as a subsidiary of the global one. They consist of networks of secret societies, semi-secret groups and bloodline families and their job is to impose the will of the spider and the global web in their particular country. Subsidiary networks control and manipulate the national political system, finance, corporations, media, medicine, etc. to

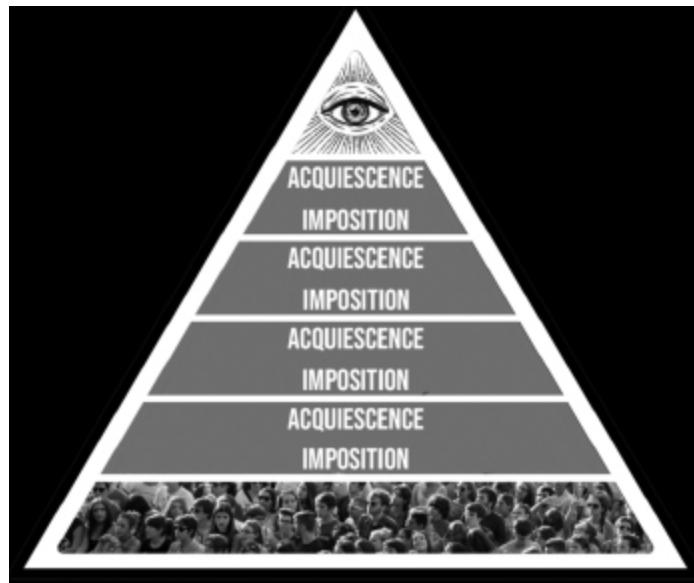
ensure that they follow the globally-dictated Cult agenda. These networks were the means through which the ‘Covid’ hoax could be played out with almost every country responding in the same way.

### **The ‘Yessir’ pyramid**

Compartmentalisation is the key to understanding how a tiny few can dictate the lives of billions when combined with a top-down sequence of imposition and acquiescence. The inner core of the Cult sits at the peak of the pyramidal hierarchy of human society ([Fig 2](#) overleaf). It imposes its will – its agenda for the world – on the level immediately below which acquiesces to that imposition. This level then imposes the Cult will on the level below them which acquiesces and imposes on the next level. Very quickly we meet levels in the hierarchy that have no idea there even is a Cult, but the sequence of imposition and acquiescence continues down the pyramid in just the same way. ‘I don’t know why we are doing this but the order came from “on-high” and so we better just do it.’ Alfred Lord Tennyson said of the cannon fodder levels in his poem *The Charge of the Light Brigade*: ‘Theirs not to reason why; theirs but to do and die.’ The next line says that ‘into the valley of death rode the six hundred’ and they died because they obeyed without question what their perceived ‘superiors’ told them to do. In the same way the population capitulated to ‘Covid’. The whole hierarchical pyramid functions like this to allow the very few to direct the enormous many.

Eventually imposition-acquiescence-imposition-acquiescence comes down to the mass of the population at the foot of the pyramid. If they acquiesce to those levels of the hierarchy imposing on them (governments/law enforcement/doctors/media) a circuit is completed between the population and the handful of super-psychopaths in the Cult inner core at the top of the pyramid. Without a circuit-breaking refusal to obey, the sequence of imposition and acquiescence allows a staggeringly few people to impose their will upon the entirety of humankind. We are looking at the very sequence that has subjugated billions since the start of 2020. Our freedom has not been taken from us. Humanity has given it

away. Fascists do not impose fascism because there are not enough of them. Fascism is imposed by the population acquiescing to fascism. Put another way allowing their perceptions to be programmed to the extent that leads to the population giving their freedom away by giving their perceptions – their mind – away. If this circuit is not broken by humanity ceasing to cooperate with their own enslavement then nothing can change. For that to happen people have to critically think and see through the lies and window dressing and then summon the backbone to act upon what they see. The Cult spends its days working to stop either happening and its methodology is systematic and highly detailed, but it can be overcome and that is what this book is all about.



**Figure 2:** The simple sequence of imposition and compliance that allows a handful of people at the peak of the pyramid to dictate the lives of billions.

## The Life Program

Okay, back to world number 1 or the world of the ‘masses’. Observe the process of what we call ‘life’ and it is a perceptual download from cradle to grave. The Cult has created a global structure in which perception can be programmed and the program continually topped-up with what appears to be constant confirmation that the program is indeed true reality. The important word here is ‘appears’.

This is the structure, the fly-trap, the Postage Stamp Consensus or Perceptual Mainframe, which represents that incredibly narrow band of perceived possibility delivered by the ‘education’ system, mainstream media, science and medicine. From the earliest age the download begins with parents who have themselves succumbed to the very programming their children are about to go through. Most parents don’t do this out of malevolence and mostly it is quite the opposite. They do what they believe is best for their children and that is what the program has told them is best. Within three or four years comes the major transition from parental programming to full-blown state (Cult) programming in school, college and university where perceptually-programmed teachers and academics pass on their programming to the next generations. Teachers who resist are soon marginalised and their careers ended while children who resist are called a problem child for whom Ritalin may need to be prescribed. A few years after entering the ‘world’ children are under the control of authority figures representing the state telling them when they have to be there, when they can leave and when they can speak, eat, even go to the toilet. This is calculated preparation for a lifetime of obeying authority in all its forms. Reflex-action fear of authority is instilled by authority from the start. Children soon learn the carrot and stick consequences of obeying or defying authority which is underpinned daily for the rest of their life. Fortunately I daydreamed through this crap and never obeyed authority simply because it told me to. This approach to my alleged ‘bettters’ continues to this day. There can be consequences of pursuing open-minded freedom in a world of closed-minded conformity. I spent a lot of time in school corridors after being ejected from the classroom for not taking some of it seriously and now I spend a lot of time being ejected from Facebook, YouTube and Twitter. But I can tell you that being true to yourself and not compromising your self-respect is far more exhilarating than bowing to authority for authority’s sake. You don’t have to be a sheep to the shepherd (authority) and the sheep dog (fear of not obeying authority).

The perceptual download continues throughout the formative years in school, college and university while script-reading ‘teachers’, ‘academics’ ‘scientists’, ‘doctors’ and ‘journalists’ insist that ongoing generations must be as programmed as they are. Accept the program or you will not pass your ‘exams’ which confirm your ‘degree’ of programming. It is tragic to think that many parents pressure their offspring to work hard at school to download the program and qualify for the next stage at college and university. The late, great, American comedian George Carlin said: ‘Here’s a bumper sticker I’d like to see: We are proud parents of a child who has resisted his teachers’ attempts to break his spirit and bend him to the will of his corporate masters.’ Well, the best of luck finding many of those, George. Then comes the moment to leave the formal programming years in academia and enter the ‘adult’ world of work. There you meet others in your chosen or prescribed arena who went through the same Postage Stamp Consensus program before you did. There is therefore overwhelming agreement between almost everyone on the basic foundations of Postage Stamp reality and the rejection, even contempt, of the few who have a mind of their own and are prepared to use it. This has two major effects. Firstly, the consensus confirms to the programmed that their download is really how things are. I mean, everyone knows that, right? Secondly, the arrogance and ignorance of Postage Stamp adherents ensure that anyone questioning the program will have unpleasant consequences for seeking their own truth and not picking their perceptions from the shelf marked: ‘Things you must believe without question and if you don’t you’re a dangerous lunatic conspiracy theorist and a harebrained nutter’.

Every government, agency and corporation is founded on the same Postage Stamp prison cell and you can see why so many people believe the same thing while calling it their own ‘opinion’. Fusion of governments and corporations in pursuit of the same agenda was the definition of fascism described by Italian dictator Benito Mussolini. The pressure to conform to perceptual norms downloaded for a lifetime is incessant and infiltrates society right

down to family groups that become censors and condemners of their own ‘black sheep’ for not, ironically, being sheep. We have seen an explosion of that in the ‘Covid’ era. Cult-owned global media unleashes its propaganda all day every day in support of the Postage Stamp and targets with abuse and ridicule anyone in the public eye who won’t bend their mind to the will of the tyranny. Any response to this is denied (certainly in my case). They don’t want to give a platform to expose official lies. Cult-owned-and-created Internet giants like Facebook, Google, YouTube and Twitter delete you for having an unapproved opinion. Facebook boasts that its AI censors delete 97-percent of ‘hate speech’ before anyone even reports it. Much of that ‘hate speech’ will simply be an opinion that Facebook and its masters don’t want people to see. Such perceptual oppression is widely known as fascism. Even Facebook executive Benny Thomas, a ‘CEO Global Planning Lead’, said in comments secretly recorded by investigative journalism operation Project Veritas that Facebook is ‘too powerful’ and should be broken up:

I mean, no king in history has been the ruler of two billion people, but Mark Zuckerberg is ... And he's 36. That's too much for a 36-year-old ... You should not have power over two billion people. I just think that's wrong.

Thomas said Facebook-owned platforms like Instagram, Oculus, and WhatsApp needed to be separate companies. ‘It’s too much power when they’re all one together’. That’s the way the Cult likes it, however. We have an executive of a Cult organisation in Benny Thomas that doesn’t know there is a Cult such is the compartmentalisation. Thomas said that Facebook and Google ‘are no longer companies, they’re countries’. Actually they are more powerful than countries on the basis that if you control information you control perception and control human society.

## **I love my oppressor**

Another expression of this psychological trickery is for those who realise they are being pressured into compliance to eventually

convince themselves to believe the official narratives to protect their self-respect from accepting the truth that they have succumbed to meek and subservient compliance. Such people become some of the most vehement defenders of the system. You can see them everywhere screaming abuse at those who prefer to think for themselves and by doing so reminding the compliers of their own capitulation to conformity. ‘You are talking dangerous nonsense you Covidiot!!’ Are you trying to convince me or yourself? It is a potent form of Stockholm syndrome which is defined as: ‘A psychological condition that occurs when a victim of abuse identifies and attaches, or bonds, positively with their abuser.’ An example is hostages bonding and even ‘falling in love’ with their kidnappers. The syndrome has been observed in domestic violence, abused children, concentration camp inmates, prisoners of war and many and various Satanic cults. These are some traits of Stockholm syndrome listed at [goodtherapy.org](http://goodtherapy.org):

- Positive regard towards perpetrators of abuse or captor [see ‘Covid’].
- Failure to cooperate with police and other government authorities when it comes to holding perpetrators of abuse or kidnapping accountable [or in the case of ‘Covid’ cooperating with the police to enforce and defend their captors’ demands].
- Little or no effort to escape [see ‘Covid’].
- Belief in the goodness of the perpetrators or kidnappers [see ‘Covid’].
- Appeasement of captors. This is a manipulative strategy for maintaining one’s safety. As victims get rewarded – perhaps with less abuse or even with life itself – their appeasing behaviours are reinforced [see ‘Covid’].
- Learned helplessness. This can be akin to ‘if you can’t beat ‘em, join ‘em’. As the victims fail to escape the abuse or captivity, they may start giving up and soon realize it’s just easier for everyone if they acquiesce all their power to their captors [see ‘Covid’].

- Feelings of pity toward the abusers, believing they are actually victims themselves. Because of this, victims may go on a crusade or mission to 'save' [protect] their abuser [see the venom unleashed on those challenging the official 'Covid' narrative].
- Unwillingness to learn to detach from their perpetrators and heal. In essence, victims may tend to be less loyal to themselves than to their abuser [*definitely* see 'Covid'].

Ponder on those traits and compare them with the behaviour of great swathes of the global population who have defended governments and authorities which have spent every minute destroying their lives and livelihoods and those of their children and grandchildren since early 2020 with fascistic lockdowns, house arrest and employment deletion to 'protect' them from a 'deadly virus' that their abusers' perceptually created to bring about this very outcome. We are looking at mass Stockholm syndrome. All those that agree to concede their freedom will believe those perceptions are originating in their own independent 'mind' when in fact by conceding their reality to Stockholm syndrome they have by definition conceded any independence of mind. Listen to the 'opinions' of the acquiescing masses in this 'Covid' era and what gushes forth is the repetition of the official version of everything delivered unprocessed, unfiltered and unquestioned. The whole programming dynamic works this way. I must be free because I'm told that I am and so I think that I am.

You can see what I mean with the chapter theme of 'I'm thinking – Oh, but *are you?*' The great majority are not thinking, let alone for themselves. They are repeating what authority has told them to believe which allows them to be controlled. Weaving through this mentality is the fear that the 'conspiracy theorists' are right and this again explains the often hysterical abuse that ensues when you dare to contest the official narrative of anything. Denial is the mechanism of hiding from yourself what you don't want to be true. Telling people what they want to hear is easy, but it's an infinitely greater challenge to tell them what they would rather not be happening.

One is akin to pushing against an open door while the other is met with vehement resistance no matter what the scale of evidence. I don't want it to be true so I'll convince myself that it's not. Examples are everywhere from the denial that a partner is cheating despite all the signs to the reflex-action rejection of any idea that world events in which country after country act in exactly the same way are centrally coordinated. To accept the latter is to accept that a force of unspeakable evil is working to destroy your life and the lives of your children with nothing too horrific to achieve that end. Who the heck wants that to be true? But if we don't face reality the end is duly achieved and the consequences are far worse and ongoing than breaking through the walls of denial today with the courage to make a stand against tyranny.

### **Connect the dots – but how?**

A crucial aspect of perceptual programming is to portray a world in which everything is random and almost nothing is connected to anything else. Randomness cannot be coordinated by its very nature and once you perceive events as random the idea they could be connected is waved away as the rantings of the tinfoil-hat brigade. You can't plan and coordinate random you idiot! No, you can't, but you can hide the coldly-calculated and long-planned behind the *illusion* of randomness. A foundation manifestation of the Renegade Mind is to scan reality for patterns that connect the apparently random and turn pixels and dots into pictures. This is the way I work and have done so for more than 30 years. You look for similarities in people, modus operandi and desired outcomes and slowly, then ever quicker, the picture forms. For instance: There would seem to be no connection between the 'Covid pandemic' hoax and the human-caused global-warming hoax and yet they are masks (appropriately) on the same face seeking the same outcome. Those pushing the global warming myth through the Club of Rome and other Cult agencies are driving the lies about 'Covid' – Bill Gates is an obvious one, but they are endless. Why would the same people be involved in both when they are clearly not connected? Oh, but they

are. Common themes with personnel are matched by common goals. The ‘solutions’ to both ‘problems’ are centralisation of global power to impose the will of the few on the many to ‘save’ humanity from ‘Covid’ and save the planet from an ‘existential threat’ (we need ‘zero Covid’ and ‘zero carbon emissions’). These, in turn, connect with the ‘dot’ of globalisation which was coined to describe the centralisation of global power in every area of life through incessant political and corporate expansion, trading blocks and superstates like the European Union. If you are the few and you want to control the many you have to centralise power and decision-making. The more you centralise power the more power the few at the centre will have over the many; and the more that power is centralised the more power those at the centre have to centralise even quicker. The momentum of centralisation gets faster and faster which is exactly the process we have witnessed. In this way the hoaxed ‘pandemic’ and the fakery of human-caused global warming serve the interests of globalisation and the seizure of global power in the hands of the Cult inner-circle which is behind ‘Covid’, ‘climate change’ and globalisation. At this point random ‘dots’ become a clear and obvious picture or pattern.

Klaus Schwab, the classic Bond villain who founded the Cult’s Gates-funded World Economic Forum, published a book in 2020, *The Great Reset*, in which he used the ‘problem’ of ‘Covid’ to justify a total transformation of human society to ‘save’ humanity from ‘climate change’. Schwab said: ‘The pandemic represents a rare but narrow window of opportunity to reflect, reimagine, and reset our world.’ What he didn’t mention is that the Cult he serves is behind both hoaxes as I show in my book *The Answer*. He and the Cult don’t have to reimagine the world. They know precisely what they want and that’s why they destroyed human society with ‘Covid’ to ‘build back better’ in their grand design. Their job is not to imagine, but to get humanity to imagine and agree with their plans while believing it’s all random. It must be pure coincidence that ‘The Great Reset’ has long been the Cult’s code name for the global imposition of fascism and replaced previous code-names of the ‘New World

'Order' used by Cult frontmen like Father George Bush and the 'New Order of the Ages' which emerged from Freemasonry and much older secret societies. New Order of the Ages appears on the reverse of the Great Seal of the United States as 'Novus ordo seclorum' underneath the Cult symbol used since way back of the pyramid and all seeing-eye ([Fig 3](#)). The pyramid is the hierarchy of human control headed by the illuminated eye that symbolises the force behind the Cult which I will expose in later chapters. The term 'Annuit Coeptis' translates as 'He favours our undertaking'. We are told the 'He' is the Christian god, but 'He' is not as I will be explaining.



**Figure 3:** The all-seeing eye of the Cult 'god' on the Freemason-designed Great Seal of the United States and also on the dollar bill.

## Having you on

Two major Cult techniques of perceptual manipulation that relate to all this are what I have called since the 1990s Problem-Reaction-Solution (PRS) and the Totalitarian Tiptoe (TT). They can be uncovered by the inquiring mind with a simple question: Who benefits? The answer usually identifies the perpetrators of a given action or happening through the concept of 'he who most benefits from a crime is the one most likely to have committed it'. The Latin 'Cue bono?' – Who benefits? – is widely attributed to the Roman orator and statesman Marcus Tullius Cicero. No wonder it goes back so far when the concept has been relevant to human behaviour since

history was recorded. Problem-Reaction-Solution is the technique used to manipulate us every day by covertly creating a problem (or the illusion of one) and offering the solution to the problem (or the illusion of one). In the first phase you create the problem and blame someone or something else for why it has happened. This may relate to a financial collapse, terrorist attack, war, global warming or pandemic, anything in fact that will allow you to impose the ‘solution’ to change society in the way you desire at that time. The ‘problem’ doesn’t have to be real. PRS is manipulation of perception and all you need is the population to believe the problem is real. Human-caused global warming and the ‘Covid pandemic’ only have to be *perceived* to be real for the population to accept the ‘solutions’ of authority. I refer to this technique as NO-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Billions did not meekly accept house arrest from early 2020 because there was a real deadly ‘Covid pandemic’ but because they perceived – believed – that to be the case. The antidote to Problem-Reaction-Solution is to ask who benefits from the proposed solution. Invariably it will be anyone who wants to justify more control through deletion of freedom and centralisation of power and decision-making.

The two world wars were Problem-Reaction-Solutions that transformed and realigned global society. Both were manipulated into being by the Cult as I have detailed in books since the mid-1990s. They dramatically centralised global power, especially World War Two, which led to the United Nations and other global bodies thanks to the overt and covert manipulations of the Rockefeller family and other Cult bloodlines like the Rothschilds. The UN is a stalking horse for full-blown world government that I will come to shortly. The land on which the UN building stands in New York was donated by the Rockefellers and the same Cult family was behind Big Pharma scalpel and drug ‘medicine’ and the creation of the World Health Organization as part of the UN. They have been stalwarts of the eugenics movement and funded Hitler’s race-purity expert Ernst Rudin. The human-caused global warming hoax has been orchestrated by the Club of Rome through the UN which is

manufacturing both the ‘problem’ through its Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change and imposing the ‘solution’ through its Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030 which demand the total centralisation of global power to ‘save the world’ from a climate hoax the United Nations is itself perpetrating. What a small world the Cult can be seen to be particularly among the inner circles. The bedfellow of Problem-Reaction-Solution is the Totalitarian Tiptoe which became the Totalitarian Sprint in 2020. The technique is fashioned to hide the carefully-coordinated behind the cover of apparently random events. You start the sequence at ‘A’ and you know you are heading for ‘Z’. You don’t want people to know that and each step on the journey is presented as a random happening while all the steps strung together lead in the same direction. The speed may have quickened dramatically in recent times, but you can still see the incremental approach of the Tiptoe in the case of ‘Covid’ as each new imposition takes us deeper into fascism. Tell people they have to do this or that to get back to ‘normal’, then this and this and this. With each new demand adding to the ones that went before the population’s freedom is deleted until it disappears. The spider wraps its web around the flies more comprehensively with each new diktat. I’ll highlight this in more detail when I get to the ‘Covid’ hoax and how it has been pulled off. Another prime example of the Totalitarian Tiptoe is how the Cult-created European Union went from a ‘free-trade zone’ to a centralised bureaucratic dictatorship through the Tiptoe of incremental centralisation of power until nations became mere administrative units for Cult-owned dark suits in Brussels.

The antidote to ignorance is knowledge which the Cult seeks vehemently to deny us, but despite the systematic censorship to that end the Renegade Mind can overcome this by vociferously seeking out the facts no matter the impediments put in the way. There is also a method of thinking and perceiving – *knowing* – that doesn’t even need names, dates, place-type facts to identify the patterns that reveal the story. I’ll get to that in the final chapter. All you need to know about the manipulation of human society and to what end is still out there – *at the time of writing* – in the form of books, videos

and websites for those that really want to breach the walls of programmed perception. To access this knowledge requires the abandonment of the mainstream media as a source of information in the awareness that this is owned and controlled by the Cult and therefore promotes mass perceptions that suit the Cult. Mainstream media lies all day, every day. That is its function and very reason for being. Where it does tell the truth, here and there, is only because the truth and the Cult agenda very occasionally coincide. If you look for fact and insight to the BBC, CNN and virtually all the rest of them you are asking to be conned and perceptually programmed.

### **Know the outcome and you'll see the journey**

Events seem random when you have no idea where the world is being taken. Once you do the random becomes the carefully planned. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey is a phrase I have been using for a long time to give context to daily happenings that appear unconnected. Does a problem, or illusion of a problem, trigger a proposed 'solution' that further drives society in the direction of the outcome? Invariably the answer will be yes and the random – *abracadabra* – becomes the clearly coordinated. So what is this outcome that unlocks the door to a massively expanded understanding of daily events? I will summarise its major aspects – the fine detail is in my other books – and those new to this information will see that the world they thought they were living in is a very different place. The foundation of the Cult agenda is the incessant centralisation of power and all such centralisation is ultimately in pursuit of Cult control on a global level. I have described for a long time the planned world structure of top-down dictatorship as the Hunger Games Society. The term obviously comes from the movie series which portrayed a world in which a few living in military-protected hi-tech luxury were the overlords of a population condemned to abject poverty in isolated 'sectors' that were not allowed to interact. 'Covid' lockdowns and travel bans anyone? The 'Hunger Games' pyramid of structural control has the inner circle of the Cult at the top with pretty much the entire

population at the bottom under their control through dependency for survival on the Cult. The whole structure is planned to be protected and enforced by a military-police state ([Fig 4](#)).

Here you have the reason for the global lockdowns of the fake pandemic to coldly destroy independent incomes and livelihoods and make everyone dependent on the ‘state’ (the Cult that controls the ‘states’). I have warned in my books for many years about the plan to introduce a ‘guaranteed income’ – a barely survivable pittance – designed to impose dependency when employment was destroyed by AI technology and now even more comprehensively at great speed by the ‘Covid’ scam. Once the pandemic was played and lockdown consequences began to delete independent income the authorities began to talk right on cue about the need for a guaranteed income and a ‘Great Reset’. Guaranteed income will be presented as benevolent governments seeking to help a desperate people – desperate as a direct result of actions of the same governments. The truth is that such payments are a trap. You will only get them if you do exactly what the authorities demand including mass vaccination (genetic manipulation). We have seen this theme already in Australia where those dependent on government benefits have them reduced if parents don’t agree to have their children vaccinated according to an insane health-destroying government-dictated schedule. Calculated economic collapse applies to governments as well as people. The Cult wants rid of countries through the creation of a world state with countries broken up into regions ruled by a world government and super states like the European Union. Countries must be bankrupted, too, to this end and it’s being achieved by the trillions in ‘rescue packages’ and furlough payments, trillions in lost taxation, and money-no-object spending on ‘Covid’ including constant all-medium advertising (programming) which has made the media dependent on government for much of its income. The day of reckoning is coming – as planned – for government spending and given that it has been made possible by printing money and not by production/taxation there is inflation on the way that has the

potential to wipe out monetary value. In that case there will be no need for the Cult to steal your money. It just won't be worth anything (see the German Weimar Republic before the Nazis took over). Many have been okay with lockdowns while getting a percentage of their income from so-called furlough payments without having to work. Those payments are dependent, however, on people having at least a theoretical job with a business considered non-essential and ordered to close. As these business go under because they are closed by lockdown after lockdown the furlough stops and it will for everyone eventually. Then what? The 'then what?' is precisely the idea.



**Figure 4:** The Hunger Games Society structure I have long warned was planned and now the 'Covid' hoax has made it possible. This is the real reason for lockdowns.

## Hired hands

Between the Hunger Games Cult elite and the dependent population is planned to be a vicious military-police state (a fusion of the two into one force). This has been in the making for a long time with police looking ever more like the military and carrying weapons to match. The pandemic scam has seen this process accelerate so fast as

lockdown house arrest is brutally enforced by carefully recruited fascist minds and gormless system-servers. The police and military are planned to merge into a centrally-directed world army in a global structure headed by a world government which wouldn't be elected even by the election fixes now in place. The world army is not planned even to be human and instead wars would be fought, primarily against the population, using robot technology controlled by artificial intelligence. I have been warning about this for decades and now militaries around the world are being transformed by this very AI technology. The global regime that I describe is a particular form of fascism known as a technocracy in which decisions are not made by clueless and co-opted politicians but by unelected technocrats – scientists, engineers, technologists and bureaucrats. Cult-owned-and-controlled Silicon Valley giants are examples of technocracy and they already have far more power to direct world events than governments. They are with their censorship *selecting* governments. I know that some are calling the 'Great Reset' a Marxist communist takeover, but fascism and Marxism are different labels for the same tyranny. Tell those who lived in fascist Germany and Stalinist Russia that there was a difference in the way their freedom was deleted and their lives controlled. I could call it a fascist technocracy or a Marxist technocracy and they would be equally accurate. The Hunger Games society with its world government structure would oversee a world army, world central bank and single world cashless currency imposing its will on a microchipped population ([Fig 5](#)). Scan its different elements and see how the illusory pandemic is forcing society in this very direction at great speed. Leaders of 23 countries and the World Health Organization (WHO) backed the idea in March, 2021, of a global treaty for 'international cooperation' in 'health emergencies' and nations should 'come together as a global community for peaceful cooperation that extends beyond this crisis'. Cut the Orwellian bullshit and this means another step towards global government. The plan includes a cashless digital money system that I first warned about in 1993. Right at the start of 'Covid' the deeply corrupt Tedros

Adhanom Ghebreyesus, the crooked and merely gofer ‘head’ of the World Health Organization, said it was possible to catch the ‘virus’ by touching cash and it was better to use cashless means. The claim was ridiculous nonsense and like the whole ‘Covid’ mind-trick it was nothing to do with ‘health’ and everything to do with pushing every aspect of the Cult agenda. As a result of the Tedros lie the use of cash has plummeted. The Cult script involves a single world digital currency that would eventually be technologically embedded in the body. China is a massive global centre for the Cult and if you watch what is happening there you will know what is planned for everywhere. The Chinese government is developing a digital currency which would allow fines to be deducted immediately via AI for anyone caught on camera breaking its fantastic list of laws and the money is going to be programmable with an expiry date to ensure that no one can accrue wealth except the Cult and its operatives.



**Figure 5:** The structure of global control the Cult has been working towards for so long and this has been enormously advanced by the ‘Covid’ illusion.

## **Serfdom is so smart**

The Cult plan is far wider, extreme, and more comprehensive than even most conspiracy researchers appreciate and I will come to the true depths of deceit and control in the chapters ‘Who controls the

Cult?' and 'Escaping Wetiko'. Even the world that we know is crazy enough. We are being deluged with ever more sophisticated and controlling technology under the heading of 'smart'. We have smart televisions, smart meters, smart cards, smart cars, smart driving, smart roads, smart pills, smart patches, smart watches, smart skin, smart borders, smart pavements, smart streets, smart cities, smart communities, smart environments, smart growth, smart planet ... smart *everything* around us. Smart technologies and methods of operation are designed to interlock to create a global Smart Grid connecting the entirety of human society including human minds to create a centrally-dictated 'hive' mind. 'Smart cities' is code for densely-occupied megacities of total surveillance and control through AI. Ever more destructive frequency communication systems like 5G have been rolled out without any official testing for health and psychological effects (colossal). 5G/6G/7G systems are needed to run the Smart Grid and each one becomes more destructive of body and mind. Deleting independent income is crucial to forcing people into these AI-policed prisons by ending private property ownership (except for the Cult elite). The Cult's Great Reset now openly foresees a global society in which no one will own any possessions and everything will be rented while the Cult would own literally everything under the guise of government and corporations. The aim has been to use the lockdowns to destroy sources of income on a mass scale and when the people are destitute and in unrepayable amounts of debt (problem) Cult assets come forward with the pledge to write-off debt in return for handing over all property and possessions (solution). Everything – literally everything including people – would be connected to the Internet via AI. I was warning years ago about the coming Internet of Things (IoT) in which all devices and technology from your car to your fridge would be plugged into the Internet and controlled by AI. Now we are already there with much more to come. The next stage is the Internet of Everything (IoE) which is planned to include the connection of AI to the human brain and body to replace the human mind with a centrally-controlled AI mind. Instead of perceptions

being manipulated through control of information and censorship those perceptions would come direct from the Cult through AI. What do you think? You think whatever AI decides that you think. In human terms there would be no individual 'think' any longer. Too incredible? The ravings of a lunatic? Not at all. Cult-owned crazies in Silicon Valley have been telling us the plan for years without explaining the real motivation and calculated implications. These include Google executive and 'futurist' Ray Kurzweil who highlights the year 2030 for when this would be underway. He said:

Our thinking ... will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking ... humans will be able to extend their limitations and 'think in the cloud' ... We're going to put gateways to the cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being human – we transcend our limitations.

As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.

The sales-pitch of Kurzweil and Cult-owned Silicon Valley is that this would make us 'super-human' when the real aim is to make us post-human and no longer 'human' in the sense that we have come to know. The entire global population would be connected to AI and become the centrally-controlled 'hive-mind' of externally-delivered perceptions. The Smart Grid being installed to impose the Cult's will on the world is being constructed to allow particular locations – even one location – to control the whole global system. From these prime control centres, which absolutely include China and Israel, anything connected to the Internet would be switched on or off and manipulated at will. Energy systems could be cut, communication via the Internet taken down, computer-controlled driverless autonomous vehicles driven off the road, medical devices switched off, the potential is limitless given how much AI and Internet connections now run human society. We have seen nothing yet if we allow this to continue. Autonomous vehicle makers are working with law enforcement to produce cars designed to automatically pull over if they detect a police or emergency vehicle flashing from up to 100 feet away. At a police stop the car would be unlocked and the

window rolled down automatically. Vehicles would only take you where the computer (the state) allowed. The end of petrol vehicles and speed limiters on all new cars in the UK and EU from 2022 are steps leading to electric computerised transport over which ultimately you have no control. The picture is far bigger even than the Cult global network or web and that will become clear when I get to the nature of the ‘spider’. There is a connection between all these happenings and the instigation of DNA-manipulating ‘vaccines’ (which aren’t ‘vaccines’) justified by the ‘Covid’ hoax. That connection is the unfolding plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic biological state and this is why synthetic biology is such a fast-emerging discipline of mainstream science. ‘Covid vaccines’ are infusing self-replicating synthetic genetic material into the cells to cumulatively take us on the Totalitarian Tiptoe from Human 1.0 to the synthetic biological Human 2.0 which will be physically and perceptually attached to the Smart Grid to one hundred percent control every thought, perception and deed.

Humanity needs to wake up and *fast*.

This is the barest explanation of where the ‘outcome’ is planned to go but it’s enough to see the journey happening all around us. Those new to this information will already see ‘Covid’ in a whole new context. I will add much more detail as we go along, but for the minutiae evidence see my mega-works, *The Answer*, *The Trigger* and *Everything You Need to Know But Have Never Been Told*.

Now – how does a Renegade Mind see the ‘world’?

## CHAPTER TWO

### Renegade Perception

*It is one thing to be clever and another to be wise*

George R.R. Martin

A simple definition of the difference between a programmed mind and a Renegade Mind would be that one sees only dots while the other connects them to see the picture. Reading reality with accuracy requires the observer to (a) know the planned outcome and (b) realise that everything, but *everything*, is connected.

The entirety of infinite reality is connected – that's its very nature – and with human society an expression of infinite reality the same must apply. Simple cause and effect is a connection. The effect is triggered by the cause and the effect then becomes the cause of another effect. Nothing happens in isolation because it *can't*. Life in whatever reality is simple choice and consequence. We make choices and these lead to consequences. If we don't like the consequences we can make different choices and get different consequences which lead to other choices and consequences. The choice and the consequence are not only connected they are indivisible. You can't have one without the other as an old song goes. A few cannot control the world unless those being controlled allow that to happen – cause and effect, choice and consequence. Control – who has it and who doesn't – is a two-way process, a symbiotic relationship, involving the controller and controlled. 'They took my freedom away!!' Well, yes, but you also gave it to them. Humanity is

subjected to mass control because humanity has acquiesced to that control. This is all cause and effect and literally a case of give and take. In the same way world events of every kind are connected and the Cult works incessantly to sell the illusion of the random and coincidental to maintain the essential (to them) perception of dots that hide the picture. Renegade Minds know this and constantly scan the world for patterns of connection. This is absolutely pivotal in understanding the happenings in the world and without that perspective clarity is impossible. First you know the planned outcome and then you identify the steps on the journey – the day-by-day apparently random which, when connected in relation to the outcome, no longer appear as individual events, but as the proverbial *chain* of events leading in the same direction. I'll give you some examples:

## **Political puppet show**

We are told to believe that politics is 'adversarial' in that different parties with different beliefs engage in an endless tussle for power. There may have been some truth in that up to a point – and only a point – but today divisions between 'different' parties are rhetorical not ideological. Even the rhetorical is fusing into one-speak as the parties eject any remaining free thinkers while others succumb to the ever-gathering intimidation of anyone with the 'wrong' opinion. The Cult is not a new phenomenon and can be traced back thousands of years as my books have documented. Its intergenerational initiates have been manipulating events with increasing effect the more that global power has been centralised. In ancient times the Cult secured control through the system of monarchy in which 'special' bloodlines (of which more later) demanded the right to rule as kings and queens simply by birthright and by vanquishing others who claimed the same birthright. There came a time, however, when people had matured enough to see the unfairness of such tyranny and demanded a say in who governed them. Note the word – *governed* them. Not served them – *governed* them, hence government defined as 'the political direction and control exercised over the

actions of the members, citizens, or inhabitants of communities, societies, and states; direction of the affairs of a state, community, etc.' Governments exercise control over rather than serve just like the monarchies before them. Bizarrely there are still countries like the United Kingdom which are ruled by a monarch *and* a government that officially answers to the monarch. The UK head of state and that of Commonwealth countries such as Canada, Australia and New Zealand is 'selected' by who in a *single family* had unprotected sex with whom and in what order. Pinch me it can't be true. Ouch! Shit, it is. The demise of monarchies in most countries offered a potential vacuum in which some form of free and fair society could arise and the Cult had that base covered. Monarchies had served its interests but they couldn't continue in the face of such widespread opposition and, anyway, replacing a 'royal' dictatorship that people could see with a dictatorship 'of the people' hiding behind the concept of 'democracy' presented far greater manipulative possibilities and ways of hiding coordinated tyranny behind the illusion of 'freedom'.

Democracy is quite wrongly defined as government selected by the population. This is not the case at all. It is government selected by *some* of the population (and then only in theory). This 'some' doesn't even have to be the majority as we have seen so often in first-past-the-post elections in which the so-called majority party wins fewer votes than the 'losing' parties combined. Democracy can give total power to a party in government from a minority of the votes cast. It's a sleight of hand to sell tyranny as freedom. Seventy-four million Trump-supporting Americans didn't vote for the 'Democratic' Party of Joe Biden in the distinctly dodgy election in 2020 and yet far from acknowledging the wishes and feelings of that great percentage of American society the Cult-owned Biden government set out from day one to destroy them and their right to a voice and opinion. Empty shell Biden and his Cult handlers said they were doing this to 'protect democracy'. Such is the level of lunacy and sickness to which politics has descended. Connect the dots and relate them to the desired outcome – a world government run by self-appointed technocrats and no longer even elected

politicians. While operating through its political agents in government the Cult is at the same time encouraging public distain for politicians by putting idiots and incompetents in theoretical power on the road to deleting them. The idea is to instil a public reaction that says of the technocrats: 'Well, they couldn't do any worse than the pathetic politicians.' It's all about controlling perception and Renegade Minds can see through that while programmed minds cannot when they are ignorant of both the planned outcome and the manipulation techniques employed to secure that end. This knowledge can be learned, however, and fast if people choose to get informed.

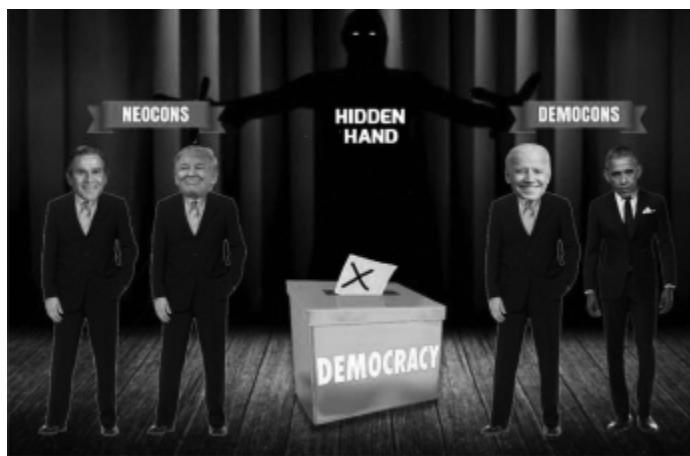
Politics may at first sight appear very difficult to control from a central point. I mean look at the 'different' parties and how would you be able to oversee them all and their constituent parts? In truth, it's very straightforward because of their structure. We are back to the pyramid of imposition and acquiescence. Organisations are structured in the same way as the system as a whole. Political parties are not open forums of free expression. They are hierarchies. I was a national spokesman for the British Green Party which claimed to be a different kind of politics in which influence and power was devolved; but I can tell you from direct experience – and it's far worse now – that Green parties are run as hierarchies like all the others however much they may try to hide that fact or kid themselves that it's not true. A very few at the top of all political parties are directing policy and personnel. They decide if you are elevated in the party or serve as a government minister and to do that you have to be a yes man or woman. Look at all the maverick political thinkers who never ascended the greasy pole. If you want to progress within the party or reach 'high-office' you need to fall into line and conform. Exceptions to this are rare indeed. Should you want to run for parliament or Congress you have to persuade the local or state level of the party to select you and for that you need to play the game as dictated by the hierarchy. If you secure election and wish to progress within the greater structure you need to go on conforming to what is acceptable to those running the hierarchy

from the peak of the pyramid. Political parties are perceptual gulags and the very fact that there are party 'Whips' appointed to 'whip' politicians into voting the way the hierarchy demands exposes the ridiculous idea that politicians are elected to serve the people they are supposed to represent. Cult operatives and manipulation has long seized control of major parties that have any chance of forming a government and at least most of those that haven't. A new party forms and the Cult goes to work to infiltrate and direct. This has reached such a level today that you see video compilations of 'leaders' of all parties whether Democrats, Republicans, Conservative, Labour and Green parroting the same Cult mantra of 'Build Back Better' and the 'Great Reset' which are straight off the Cult song-sheet to describe the transformation of global society in response to the Cult-instigated hoaxes of the 'Covid pandemic' and human-caused 'climate change'. To see Caroline Lucas, the Green Party MP that I knew when I was in the party in the 1980s, speaking in support of plans proposed by Cult operative Klaus Schwab representing the billionaire global elite is a real head-shaker.

### **Many parties – one master**

The party system is another mind-trick and was instigated to change the nature of the dictatorship by swapping 'royalty' for dark suits that people believed – though now ever less so – represented their interests. Understanding this trick is to realise that a single force (the Cult) controls all parties either directly in terms of the major ones or through manipulation of perception and ideology with others. You don't need to manipulate Green parties to demand your transformation of society in the name of 'climate change' when they are obsessed with the lie that this is essential to 'save the planet'. You just give them a platform and away they go serving your interests while believing they are being environmentally virtuous. America's political structure is a perfect blueprint for how the two or multi-party system is really a one-party state. The Republican Party is controlled from one step back in the shadows by a group made up of billionaires and their gofers known as neoconservatives or Neocons.

I have exposed them in fine detail in my books and they were the driving force behind the policies of the imbecilic presidency of Boy George Bush which included 9/11 (see *The Trigger* for a comprehensive demolition of the official story), the subsequent ‘war on terror’ (war of terror) and the invasions of Afghanistan and Iraq. The latter was a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution based on claims by Cult operatives, including Bush and British Prime Minister Tony Blair, about Saddam Hussein’s ‘weapons of mass destruction’ which did not exist as war criminals Bush and Blair well knew.



**Figure 6:** Different front people, different parties – same control system.

The Democratic Party has its own ‘Neocon’ group controlling from the background which I call the ‘Democons’ and here’s the penny-drop – the Neocons and Democons answer to the same masters one step further back into the shadows (Fig 6). At that level of the Cult the Republican and Democrat parties are controlled by the same people and no matter which is in power the Cult is in power. This is how it works in almost every country and certainly in Britain with Conservative, Labour, Liberal Democrat and Green parties now all on the same page whatever the rhetoric may be in their feeble attempts to appear different. Neocons operated at the time of Bush through a think tank called The Project for the New American Century which in September, 2000, published a document entitled *Rebuilding America’s Defenses: Strategies, Forces, and Resources*

*For a New Century* demanding that America fight ‘multiple, simultaneous major theatre wars’ as a ‘core mission’ to force regime-change in countries including Iraq, Libya and Syria. Neocons arranged for Bush (‘Republican’) and Blair (‘Labour Party’) to front-up the invasion of Iraq and when they departed the Democons orchestrated the targeting of Libya and Syria through Barack Obama (‘Democrat’) and British Prime Minister David Cameron (‘Conservative Party’). We have ‘different’ parties and ‘different’ people, but the same unfolding script. The more the Cult has seized the reigns of parties and personnel the more their policies have transparently pursued the same agenda to the point where the fascist ‘Covid’ impositions of the Conservative junta of Jackboot Johnson in Britain were opposed by the Labour Party because they were not fascist enough. The Labour Party is likened to the US Democrats while the Conservative Party is akin to a British version of the Republicans and on both sides of the Atlantic they all speak the same language and support the direction demanded by the Cult although some more enthusiastically than others. It’s a similar story in country after country because it’s all centrally controlled. Oh, but what about Trump? I’ll come to him shortly. Political ‘choice’ in the ‘party’ system goes like this: You vote for Party A and they get into government. You don’t like what they do so next time you vote for Party B and they get into government. You don’t like what they do when it’s pretty much the same as Party A and why wouldn’t that be with both controlled by the same force? Given that only two, sometimes three, parties have any chance of forming a government to get rid of Party B that you don’t like you have to vote again for Party A which ... you don’t like. This, ladies and gentlemen, is what they call ‘democracy’ which we are told – wrongly – is a term interchangeable with ‘freedom’.

## **The cult of cults**

At this point I need to introduce a major expression of the Global Cult known as Sabbatian-Frankism. Sabbatian is also spelt as Sabbatean. I will summarise here. I have published major exposés

and detailed background in other works. Sabbatian-Frankism combines the names of two frauds posing as 'Jewish' men, Sabbatai Zevi (1626-1676), a rabbi, black magician and occultist who proclaimed he was the Jewish messiah; and Jacob Frank (1726-1791), the Polish 'Jew', black magician and occultist who said he was the reincarnation of 'messiah' Zevi and biblical patriarch Jacob. They worked across two centuries to establish the Sabbatian-Frankist cult that plays a major, indeed central, role in the manipulation of human society by the Global Cult which has its origins much further back in history than Sabbatai Zevi. I should emphasise two points here in response to the shrill voices that will scream 'anti-Semitism': (1) Sabbatian-Frankists are NOT Jewish and only pose as such to hide their cult behind a Jewish façade; and (2) my information about this cult has come from Jewish sources who have long realised that their society and community has been infiltrated and taken over by interloper Sabbatian-Frankists. Infiltration has been the foundation technique of Sabbatian-Frankism from its official origin in the 17th century. Zevi's Sabbatian sect attracted a massive following described as the biggest messianic movement in Jewish history, spreading as far as Africa and Asia, and he promised a return for the Jews to the 'Promised Land' of Israel. Sabbatianism was not Judaism but an inversion of everything that mainstream Judaism stood for. So much so that this sinister cult would have a feast day when Judaism had a fast day and whatever was forbidden in Judaism the Sabbatians were encouraged and even commanded to do. This included incest and what would be today called Satanism. Members were forbidden to marry outside the sect and there was a system of keeping their children ignorant of what they were part of until they were old enough to be trusted not to unknowingly reveal anything to outsiders. The same system is employed to this day by the Global Cult in general which Sabbatian-Frankism has enormously influenced and now largely controls.

Zevi and his Sabbatians suffered a setback with the intervention by the Sultan of the Islamic Ottoman Empire in the Middle East and what is now the Republic of Turkey where Zevi was located. The

Sultan gave him the choice of proving his ‘divinity’, converting to Islam or facing torture and death. Funnily enough Zevi chose to convert or at least appear to. Some of his supporters were disillusioned and drifted away, but many did not with 300 families also converting – only in theory – to Islam. They continued behind this Islamic smokescreen to follow the goals, rules and rituals of Sabbatianism and became known as ‘crypto-Jews’ or the ‘Dönmeh’ which means ‘to turn’. This is rather ironic because they didn’t ‘turn’ and instead hid behind a fake Islamic persona. The process of appearing to be one thing while being very much another would become the calling card of Sabbatianism especially after Zevi’s death and the arrival of the Satanist Jacob Frank in the 18th century when the cult became Sabbatian-Frankism and plumbbed still new depths of depravity and infiltration which included – still includes – human sacrifice and sex with children. Wherever Sabbatians go paedophilia and Satanism follow and is it really a surprise that Hollywood is so infested with child abuse and Satanism when it was established by Sabbatian-Frankists and is still controlled by them? Hollywood has been one of the prime vehicles for global perceptual programming and manipulation. How many believe the version of ‘history’ portrayed in movies when it is a travesty and inversion (again) of the truth? Rabbi Marvin Antelman describes Frankism in his book, *To Eliminate the Opiate*, as ‘a movement of complete evil’ while Jewish professor Gershom Scholem said of Frank in *The Messianic Idea in Judaism*: ‘In all his actions [he was] a truly corrupt and degenerate individual ... one of the most frightening phenomena in the whole of Jewish history.’ Frank was excommunicated by traditional rabbis, as was Zevi, but Frank was undeterred and enjoyed vital support from the House of Rothschild, the infamous banking dynasty whose inner-core are Sabbatian-Frankists and not Jews. Infiltration of the Roman Church and Vatican was instigated by Frank with many Dönmeh ‘turning’ again to convert to Roman Catholicism with a view to hijacking the reins of power. This was the ever-repeating modus operandi and continues to be so. Pose as an advocate of the religion, culture or country that you want to control and then

manipulate your people into the positions of authority and influence largely as advisers, administrators and Svengalis for those that appear to be in power. They did this with Judaism, Christianity (Christian Zionism is part of this), Islam and other religions and nations until Sabbatian-Frankism spanned the world as it does today.

## **Sabbatian Saudis and the terror network**

One expression of the Sabbatian-Frankist Dönme within Islam is the ruling family of Saudi Arabia, the House of Saud, through which came the vile distortion of Islam known as Wahhabism. This is the violent creed followed by terrorist groups like Al-Qaeda and ISIS or Islamic State. Wahhabism is the hand-chopping, head-chopping ‘religion’ of Saudi Arabia which is used to keep the people in a constant state of fear so the interloper House of Saud can continue to rule. Al-Qaeda and Islamic State were lavishly funded by the House of Saud while being created and directed by the Sabbatian-Frankist network in the United States that operates through the Pentagon, CIA and the government in general of whichever ‘party’. The front man for the establishment of Wahhabism in the middle of the 18th century was a Sabbatian-Frankist ‘crypto-Jew’ posing as Islamic called Muhammad ibn Abd al-Wahhab. His daughter would marry the son of Muhammad bin Saud who established the first Saudi state before his death in 1765 with support from the British Empire. Bin Saud’s successors would establish modern Saudi Arabia in league with the British and Americans in 1932 which allowed them to seize control of Islam’s major shrines in Mecca and Medina. They have dictated the direction of Sunni Islam ever since while Iran is the major centre of the Shiite version and here we have the source of at least the public conflict between them. The Sabbatian network has used its Wahhabi extremists to carry out Problem-Reaction-Solution terrorist attacks in the name of ‘Al-Qaeda’ and ‘Islamic State’ to justify a devastating ‘war on terror’, ever-increasing surveillance of the population and to terrify people into compliance. Another insight of the Renegade Mind is the streetwise understanding that

just because a country, location or people are attacked doesn't mean that those apparently representing that country, location or people are not behind the attackers. Often they are *orchestrating* the attacks because of the societal changes that can be then justified in the name of 'saving the population from terrorists'.

I show in great detail in *The Trigger* how Sabbatian-Frankists were the real perpetrators of 9/11 and not '19 Arab hijackers' who were blamed for what happened. Observe what was justified in the name of 9/11 alone in terms of Middle East invasions, mass surveillance and control that fulfilled the demands of the Project for the New American Century document published by the Sabbatian Neocons. What appear to be enemies are on the deep inside players on the same Sabbatian team. Israel and Arab 'royal' dictatorships are all ruled by Sabbatians and the recent peace agreements between Israel and Saudi Arabia, the United Arab Emirates (UAE) and others are only making formal what has always been the case behind the scenes. Palestinians who have been subjected to grotesque tyranny since Israel was bombed and terrorised into existence in 1948 have never stood a chance. Sabbatian-Frankists have controlled Israel (so the constant theme of violence and war which Sabbatians love) and they have controlled the Arab countries that Palestinians have looked to for real support that never comes. 'Royal families' of the Arab world in Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, UAE, etc., are all Sabbatians with allegiance to the aims of the cult and not what is best for their Arabic populations. They have stolen the oil and financial resources from their people by false claims to be 'royal dynasties' with a genetic right to rule and by employing vicious militaries to impose their will.

## **Satanic 'illumination'**

The Satanist Jacob Frank formed an alliance in 1773 with two other Sabbatians, Mayer Amschel Rothschild (1744-1812), founder of the Rothschild banking dynasty, and Jesuit-educated fraudulent Jew, Adam Weishaupt, and this led to the formation of the Bavarian Illuminati, firstly under another name, in 1776. The Illuminati would

be the manipulating force behind the French Revolution (1789-1799) and was also involved in the American Revolution (1775-1783) before and after the Illuminati's official creation. Weishaupt would later become (in public) a Protestant Christian in archetypal Sabbatian style. I read that his name can be decoded as Adam-Weishaupt or 'the first man to lead those who know'. He wasn't a leader in the sense that he was a subordinate, but he did lead those below him in a crusade of transforming human society that still continues today. The theme was confirmed as early as 1785 when a horseman courier called Lanz was reported to be struck by lighting and extensive Illuminati documents were found in his saddlebags. They made the link to Weishaupt and detailed the plan for world takeover. Current events with 'Covid' fascism have been in the making for a very long time. Jacob Frank was jailed for 13 years by the Catholic Inquisition after his arrest in 1760 and on his release he headed for Frankfurt, Germany, home city and headquarters of the House of Rothschild where the alliance was struck with Mayer Amschel Rothschild and Weishaupt. Rothschild arranged for Frank to be given the title of Baron and he became a wealthy nobleman with a big following of Jews in Germany, the Austro-Hungarian Empire and other European countries. Most of them would have believed he was on their side.

The name 'Illuminati' came from the Zohar which is a body of works in the Jewish mystical 'bible' called the Kabbalah. 'Zohar' is the foundation of Sabbatian-Frankist belief and in Hebrew 'Zohar' means 'splendour', 'radiance', 'illuminated', and so we have 'Illuminati'. They claim to be the 'Illuminated Ones' from their knowledge systematically hidden from the human population and passed on through generations of carefully-chosen initiates in the global secret society network or Cult. Hidden knowledge includes an awareness of the Cult agenda for the world and the nature of our collective reality that I will explore later. Cult 'illumination' is symbolised by the torch held by the Statue of Liberty which was gifted to New York by French Freemasons in Paris who knew exactly what it represents. 'Liberty' symbolises the goddess worshipped in

Babylon as Queen Semiramis or Ishtar. The significance of this will become clear. Notice again the ubiquitous theme of inversion with the Statue of 'Liberty' really symbolising mass control ([Fig 7](#)). A mirror-image statute stands on an island in the River Seine in Paris from where New York Liberty originated ([Fig 8](#)). A large replica of the Liberty flame stands on top of the Pont de l'Alma tunnel in Paris where Princess Diana died in a Cult ritual described in *The Biggest Secret*. Lucifer 'the light bringer' is related to all this (and much more as we'll see) and 'Lucifer' is a central figure in Sabbatian-Frankism and its associated Satanism. Sabbatians reject the Jewish Torah, or Pentateuch, the 'five books of Moses' in the Old Testament known as Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy which are claimed by Judaism and Christianity to have been dictated by 'God' to Moses on Mount Sinai. Sabbatians say these do not apply to them and they seek to replace them with the Zohar to absorb Judaism and its followers into their inversion which is an expression of a much greater global inversion. They want to delete all religions and force humanity to worship a one-world religion – Sabbatian Satanism that also includes worship of the Earth goddess. Satanic themes are being more and more introduced into mainstream society and while Christianity is currently the foremost target for destruction the others are planned to follow.



**Figure 7:** The Cult goddess of Babylon disguised as the Statue of Liberty holding the flame of Lucifer the 'light bringer'.



**Figure 8:** Liberty's mirror image in Paris where the New York version originated.

## **Marx brothers**

Rabbi Marvin Antelman connects the Illuminati to the Jacobins in *To Eliminate the Opiate* and Jacobins were the force behind the French Revolution. He links both to the Bund der Gerechten, or League of the Just, which was the network that inflicted communism/Marxism on the world. Antelman wrote:

The original inner circle of the Bund der Gerechten consisted of born Catholics, Protestants and Jews [Sabbatian-Frankist infiltrators], and those representatives of respective subdivisions formulated schemes for the ultimate destruction of their faiths. The heretical Catholics laid plans which they felt would take a century or more for the ultimate destruction of the church; the apostate Jews for the ultimate destruction of the Jewish religion.

Sabbatian-created communism connects into this anti-religion agenda in that communism does not allow for the free practice of religion. The Sabbatian 'Bund' became the International Communist Party and Communist League and in 1848 'Marxism' was born with the Communist Manifesto of Sabbatian assets Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels. It is absolutely no coincidence that Marxism, just a different name for fascist and other centrally-controlled tyrannies, is being imposed worldwide as a result of the 'Covid' hoax and nor that Marxist/fascist China was the place where the hoax originated. The reason for this will become very clear in the chapter 'Covid: The calculated catastrophe'. The so-called 'Woke' mentality has hijacked

traditional beliefs of the political left and replaced them with far-right make-believe ‘social justice’ better known as Marxism. Woke will, however, be swallowed by its own perceived ‘revolution’ which is really the work of billionaires and billionaire corporations feigning being ‘Woke’. Marxism is being touted by Wokers as a replacement for ‘capitalism’ when we don’t have ‘capitalism’. We have cartelism in which the market is stitched up by the very Cult billionaires and corporations bankrolling Woke. Billionaires love Marxism which keeps the people in servitude while they control from the top.

Terminally naïve Wokers think they are ‘changing the world’ when it’s the Cult that is doing the changing and when they have played their vital part and become surplus to requirements they, too, will be targeted. The Illuminati-Jacobins were behind the period known as ‘The Terror’ in the French Revolution in 1793 and 1794 when Jacobin Maximillian de Robespierre and his Orwellian ‘Committee of Public Safety’ killed 17,000 ‘enemies of the Revolution’ who had once been ‘friends of the Revolution’. Karl Marx (1818-1883), whose Sabbatian creed of Marxism has cost the lives of at least 100 million people, is a hero once again to Wokers who have been systematically kept ignorant of real history by their ‘education’ programming. As a result they now promote a Sabbatian ‘Marxist’ abomination destined at some point to consume them. Rabbi Antelman, who spent decades researching the Sabbatian plot, said of the League of the Just and Karl Marx:

Contrary to popular opinion Karl Marx did not originate the Communist Manifesto. He was paid for his services by the League of the Just, which was known in its country of origin, Germany, as the Bund der Gaeachteten.

Antelman said the text attributed to Marx was the work of other people and Marx ‘was only repeating what others already said’. Marx was ‘a hired hack – lackey of the wealthy Illuminists’. Marx famously said that religion was the ‘opium of the people’ (part of the Sabbatian plan to demonise religion) and Antelman called his books, *To Eliminate the Opiate*. Marx was born Jewish, but his family converted to Christianity (Sabbatian modus operandi) and he

attacked Jews, not least in his book, *A World Without Jews*. In doing so he supported the Sabbatian plan to destroy traditional Jewishness and Judaism which we are clearly seeing today with the vindictive targeting of orthodox Jews by the Sabbatian government of Israel over 'Covid' laws. I don't follow any religion and it has done much damage to the world over centuries and acted as a perceptual straightjacket. Renegade Minds, however, are always asking *why* something is being done. It doesn't matter if they agree or disagree with what is happening – *why* is it happening is the question. The 'why?' can be answered with regard to religion in that religions create interacting communities of believers when the Cult wants to dismantle all discourse, unity and interaction (see 'Covid' lockdowns) and the ultimate goal is to delete all religions for a one-world religion of Cult Satanism worshipping their 'god' of which more later. We see the same 'why?' with gun control in America. I don't have guns and don't want them, but why is the Cult seeking to disarm the population at the same time that law enforcement agencies are armed to their molars and why has every tyrant in history sought to disarm people before launching the final takeover? They include Hitler, Stalin, Pol Pot and Mao who followed confiscation with violent seizing of power. You know it's a Cult agenda by the people who immediately race to the microphones to exploit dead people in multiple shootings. Ultra-Zionist Cult lackey Senator Chuck Schumer was straight on the case after ten people were killed in Boulder, Colorado in March, 2021. Simple rule ... if Schumer wants it the Cult wants it and the same with his ultra-Zionist mate the wild-eyed Senator Adam Schiff. At the same time they were calling for the disarmament of Americans, many of whom live a long way from a police response, Schumer, Schiff and the rest of these pampered clowns were sitting on Capitol Hill behind a razor-wired security fence protected by thousands of armed troops in addition to their own armed bodyguards. Mom and pop in an isolated home? They're just potential mass shooters.

## Zion Mainframe

Sabbatian-Frankists and most importantly the Rothschilds were behind the creation of 'Zionism', a political movement that demanded a Jewish homeland in Israel as promised by Sabbatai Zevi. The very symbol of Israel comes from the German meaning of the name Rothschild. Dynasty founder Mayer Amschel Rothschild changed the family name from Bauer to Rothschild, or 'Red-Shield' in German, in deference to the six-pointed 'Star of David' hexagram displayed on the family's home in Frankfurt. The symbol later appeared on the flag of Israel after the Rothschilds were centrally involved in its creation. Hexagrams are not a uniquely Jewish symbol and are widely used in occult ('hidden') networks often as a symbol for Saturn (see my other books for why). Neither are Zionism and Jewishness interchangeable. Zionism is a political movement and philosophy and not a 'race' or a people. Many Jews oppose Zionism and many non-Jews, including US President Joe Biden, call themselves Zionists as does Israel-centric Donald Trump. America's support for the Israel government is pretty much a gimme with ultra-Zionist billionaires and corporations providing fantastic and dominant funding for both political parties. Former Congresswoman Cynthia McKinney has told how she was approached immediately she ran for office to 'sign the pledge' to Israel and confirm that she would always vote in that country's best interests. All American politicians are approached in this way. Anyone who refuses will get no support or funding from the enormous and all-powerful Zionist lobby that includes organisations like mega-lobby group AIPAC, the American Israel Public Affairs Committee. Trump's biggest funder was ultra-Zionist casino and media billionaire Sheldon Adelson while major funders of the Democratic Party include ultra-Zionist George Soros and ultra-Zionist financial and media mogul, Haim Saban. Some may reel back at the suggestion that Soros is an Israel-firster (Sabbatian-controlled Israel-firster), but Renegade Minds watch the actions not the words and everywhere Soros donates his billions the Sabbatian agenda benefits. In the spirit of Sabbatian inversion Soros pledged \$1 billion for a new university network to promote 'liberal values and tackle intolerance'. He made the announcement during his annual speech

at the Cult-owned World Economic Forum in Davos, Switzerland, in January, 2020, after his ‘harsh criticism’ of ‘authoritarian rulers’ around the world. You can only laugh at such brazen mendacity. How *he* doesn’t laugh is the mystery. Translated from the Orwellian ‘liberal values and tackle intolerance’ means teaching non-white people to hate white people and for white people to loathe themselves for being born white. The reason for that will become clear.

### **The ‘Anti-Semitism’ fraud**

Zionists support the Jewish homeland in the land of Palestine which has been the Sabbatian-Rothschild goal for so long, but not for the benefit of Jews. Sabbatians and their global Anti-Semitism Industry have skewed public and political opinion to equate opposing the violent extremes of Zionism to be a blanket attack and condemnation of all Jewish people. Sabbatians and their global Anti-Semitism Industry have skewed public and political opinion to equate opposing the violent extremes of Zionism to be a blanket attack and condemnation of all Jewish people. This is nothing more than a Sabbatian protection racket to stop legitimate investigation and exposure of their agendas and activities. The official definition of ‘anti-Semitism’ has more recently been expanded to include criticism of Zionism – a *political movement* – and this was done to further stop exposure of Sabbatian infiltrators who created Zionism as we know it today in the 19th century. Renegade Minds will talk about these subjects when they know the shit that will come their way. People must decide if they want to know the truth or just cower in the corner in fear of what others will say. Sabbatians have been trying to label me as ‘anti-Semitic’ since the 1990s as I have uncovered more and more about their background and agendas. Useless, gutless, fraudulent ‘journalists’ then just repeat the smears without question and on the day I was writing this section a pair of unquestioning repeaters called Ben Quinn and Archie Bland (how appropriate) outright called me an ‘anti-Semite’ in the establishment propaganda sheet, the London *Guardian*, with no supporting evidence. The

Sabbatian Anti-Semitism Industry said so and who are they to question that? They wouldn't dare. Ironically 'Semitic' refers to a group of languages in the Middle East that are almost entirely Arabic. 'Anti-Semitism' becomes 'anti-Arab' which if the consequences of this misunderstanding were not so grave would be hilarious. Don't bother telling Quinn and Bland. I don't want to confuse them, bless 'em. One reason I am dubbed 'anti-Semitic' is that I wrote in the 1990s that Jewish operatives (Sabbatians) were heavily involved in the Russian Revolution when Sabbatians overthrew the Romanov dynasty. This apparently made me 'anti-Semitic'. Oh, really? Here is a section from *The Trigger*:

British journalist Robert Wilton confirmed these themes in his 1920 book *The Last Days of the Romanovs* when he studied official documents from the Russian government to identify the members of the Bolshevik ruling elite between 1917 and 1919. The Central Committee included 41 Jews among 62 members; the Council of the People's Commissars had 17 Jews out of 22 members; and 458 of the 556 most important Bolshevik positions between 1918 and 1919 were occupied by Jewish people. Only 17 were Russian. Then there were the 23 Jews among the 36 members of the vicious Cheka Soviet secret police established in 1917 who would soon appear all across the country.

Professor Robert Service of Oxford University, an expert on 20th century Russian history, found evidence that ['Jewish'] Leon Trotsky had sought to make sure that Jews were enrolled in the Red Army and were disproportionately represented in the Soviet civil bureaucracy that included the Cheka which performed mass arrests, imprisonment and executions of 'enemies of the people'. A US State Department Decimal File (861.00/5339) dated November 13th, 1918, names [Rothschild banking agent in America] Jacob Schiff and a list of ultra-Zionists as funders of the Russian Revolution leading to claims of a 'Jewish plot', but the key point missed by all is they were not 'Jews' – they were Sabbatian-Frankists.

Britain's Winston Churchill made the same error by mistake or otherwise. He wrote in a 1920 edition of the *Illustrated Sunday Herald* that those behind the Russian revolution were part of a 'worldwide conspiracy for the overthrow of civilisation and for the reconstitution of society on the basis of arrested development, of envious malevolence, and impossible equality' (see 'Woke' today because that has been created by the same network). Churchill said there was no need to exaggerate the part played in the creation of Bolshevism and in the actual bringing about of the Russian

Revolution 'by these international and for the most part atheistical Jews' ['atheistical Jews' = Sabbatians]. Churchill said it is certainly a very great one and probably outweighs all others: 'With the notable exception of Lenin, the majority of the leading figures are Jews.' He went on to describe, knowingly or not, the Sabbatian modus operandi of placing puppet leaders nominally in power while they control from the background:

Moreover, the principal inspiration and driving power comes from the Jewish leaders. Thus Tchitcherin, a pure Russian, is eclipsed by his nominal subordinate, Litvinoff, and the influence of Russians like Bukharin or Lunacharski cannot be compared with the power of Trotsky, or of Zinovieff, the Dictator of the Red Citadel (Petrograd), or of Krassin or Radek – all Jews. In the Soviet institutions the predominance of Jews is even more astonishing. And the prominent, if not indeed the principal, part in the system of terrorism applied by the Extraordinary Commissions for Combatting Counter-Revolution has been taken by Jews, and in some notable cases by Jewesses.

What I said about seriously disproportionate involvement in the Russian Revolution by Jewish 'revolutionaries' (Sabbatians) is provable fact, but truth is no defence against the Sabbatian Anti-Semitism Industry, its repeater parrots like Quinn and Bland, and the now breathtaking network of so-called 'Woke' 'anti-hate' groups with interlocking leaderships and funding which have the role of discrediting and silencing anyone who gets too close to exposing the Sabbatians. We have seen 'truth is no defence' confirmed in legal judgements with the Saskatchewan Human Rights Commission in Canada decreeing this: 'Truthful statements can be presented in a manner that would meet the definition of hate speech, and not all truthful statements must be free from restriction.' Most 'anti-hate' activists, who are themselves consumed by hatred, are too stupid and ignorant of the world to know how they are being used. They are far too far up their own virtue-signalling arses and it's far too dark for them to see anything.

## **The 'revolution' game**

The background and methods of the 'Russian' Revolution are straight from the Sabbatian playbook seen in the French Revolution

and endless others around the world that appear to start as a revolution of the people against tyrannical rule and end up with a regime change to more tyrannical rule overtly or covertly. Wars, terror attacks and regime overthrows follow the Sabbatian cult through history with its agents creating them as Problem-Reaction-Solutions to remove opposition on the road to world domination. Sabbatian dots connect the Rothschilds with the Illuminati, Jacobins of the French Revolution, the 'Bund' or League of the Just, the International Communist Party, Communist League and the Communist Manifesto of Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels that would lead to the Rothschild-funded Russian Revolution. The sequence comes under the heading of 'creative destruction' when you advance to your global goal by continually destroying the status quo to install a new status quo which you then also destroy. The two world wars come to mind. With each new status quo you move closer to your planned outcome. Wars and mass murder are to Sabbatians a collective blood sacrifice ritual. They are obsessed with death for many reasons and one is that death is an inversion of life. Satanists and Sabbatians are obsessed with death and often target churches and churchyards for their rituals. Inversion-obsessed Sabbatians explain the use of inverted symbolism including the *inverted* pentagram and *inverted* cross. The inversion of the cross has been related to targeting Christianity, but the cross was a religious symbol long before Christianity and its inversion is a statement about the Sabbatian mentality and goals more than any single religion.

Sabbatians operating in Germany were behind the rise of the occult-obsessed Nazis and the subsequent Jewish exodus from Germany and Europe to Palestine and the United States after World War Two. The Rothschild dynasty was at the forefront of this both as political manipulators and by funding the operation. Why would Sabbatians help to orchestrate the horrors inflicted on Jews by the Nazis and by Stalin after they organised the Russian Revolution? Sabbatians hate Jews and their religion, that's why. They pose as Jews and secure positions of control within Jewish society and play the 'anti-Semitism' card to protect themselves from exposure

through a global network of organisations answering to the Sabbatian-created-and-controlled globe-spanning intelligence network that involves a stunning web of military-intelligence operatives and operations for a tiny country of just nine million. Among them are Jewish assets who are not Sabbatians but have been convinced by them that what they are doing is for the good of Israel and the Jewish community to protect them from what they have been programmed since childhood to believe is a Jew-hating hostile world. The Jewish community is just a highly convenient cover to hide the true nature of Sabbatians. Anyone getting close to exposing their game is accused by Sabbatian place-people and gofers of 'anti-Semitism' and claiming that all Jews are part of a plot to take over the world. I am not saying that. I am saying that Sabbatians – the *real* Jew-haters – have infiltrated the Jewish community to use them both as a cover and an 'anti-Semitic' defence against exposure. Thus we have the Anti-Semitism Industry targeted researchers in this way and most Jewish people think this is justified and genuine. They don't know that their 'Jewish' leaders and institutions of state, intelligence and military are not controlled by Jews at all, but cultists and stooges of Sabbatian-Frankism. I once added my name to a pro-Jewish freedom petition online and the next time I looked my name was gone and text had been added to the petition blurb to attack me as an 'anti-Semite' such is the scale of perceptual programming.

## **Moving on America**

I tell the story in *The Trigger* and a chapter called 'Atlantic Crossing' how particularly after Israel was established the Sabbatians moved in on the United States and eventually grasped control of government administration, the political system via both Democrats and Republicans, the intelligence community like the CIA and National Security Agency (NSA), the Pentagon and mass media. Through this seriously compartmentalised network Sabbatians and their operatives in Mossad, Israeli Defense Forces (IDF) and US agencies pulled off 9/11 and blamed it on 19 'Al-Qaeda hijackers' dominated by men from, or connected to, Sabbatian-ruled Saudi

Arabia. The '19' were not even on the planes let alone flew those big passenger jets into buildings while being largely incompetent at piloting one-engine light aircraft. 'Hijacker' Hani Hanjour who is said to have flown American Airlines Flight 77 into the Pentagon with a turn and manoeuvre most professional pilots said they would have struggled to do was banned from renting a small plane by instructors at the Freeway Airport in Bowie, Maryland, just *six weeks* earlier on the grounds that he was an incompetent pilot. The Jewish population of the world is just 0.2 percent with even that almost entirely concentrated in Israel (75 percent Jewish) and the United States (around two percent). This two percent and globally 0.2 percent refers to *Jewish* people and not Sabbatian interlopers who are a fraction of that fraction. What a sobering thought when you think of the fantastic influence on world affairs of tiny Israel and that the Project for the New America Century (PNAC) which laid out the blueprint in September, 2000, for America's war on terror and regime change wars in Iraq, Libya and Syria was founded and dominated by Sabbatians known as 'Neocons'. The document conceded that this plan would not be supported politically or publicly without a major attack on American soil and a Problem-Reaction-Solution excuse to send troops to war across the Middle East. Sabbatian Neocons said:

... [The] process of transformation ... [war and regime change] ... is likely to be a long one, absent some catastrophic and catalysing event – like a new Pearl Harbor.

Four months later many of those who produced that document came to power with their inane puppet George Bush from the long-time Sabbatian Bush family. They included Sabbatian Dick Cheney who was officially vice-president, but really de-facto president for the entirety of the 'Bush' government. Nine months after the 'Bush' inauguration came what Bush called at the time 'the Pearl Harbor of the 21st century' and with typical Sabbatian timing and symbolism 2001 was the 60th anniversary of the attack in 1941 by the Japanese Air Force on Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, which allowed President Franklin Delano Roosevelt to take the United States into a Sabbatian-

instigated Second World War that he said in his election campaign that he never would. The evidence is overwhelming that Roosevelt and his military and intelligence networks knew the attack was coming and did nothing to stop it, but they did make sure that America's most essential naval ships were not in Hawaii at the time. Three thousand Americans died in the Pearl Harbor attacks as they did on September 11th. By the 9/11 year of 2001 Sabbatians had widely infiltrated the US government, military and intelligence operations and used their compartmentalised assets to pull off the 'Al-Qaeda' attacks. If you read *The Trigger* it will blow your mind to see the utterly staggering concentration of 'Jewish' operatives (Sabbatian infiltrators) in essential positions of political, security, legal, law enforcement, financial and business power before, during, and after the attacks to make them happen, carry them out, and then cover their tracks – and I do mean *staggering* when you think of that 0.2 percent of the world population and two percent of Americans which are Jewish while Sabbatian infiltrators are a fraction of that. A central foundation of the 9/11 conspiracy was the hijacking of government, military, Air Force and intelligence computer systems in real time through 'back-door' access made possible by Israeli (Sabbatian) 'cyber security' software. Sabbatian-controlled Israel is on the way to rivalling Silicon Valley for domination of cyberspace and is becoming the dominant force in cyber-security which gives them access to entire computer systems and their passcodes across the world. Then add to this that Zionists head (officially) Silicon Valley giants like Google (Larry Page and Sergey Brin), Google-owned YouTube (Susan Wojcicki), Facebook (Mark Zuckerberg and Sheryl Sandberg), and Apple (Chairman Arthur D. Levinson), and that ultra-Zionist hedge fund billionaire Paul Singer has a \$1 billion stake in Twitter which is only nominally headed by 'CEO' pothead Jack Dorsey. As cable news host Tucker Carlson said of Dorsey: 'There used to be debate in the medical community whether dropping a ton of acid had permanent effects and I think that debate has now ended.' Carlson made the comment after Dorsey told a hearing on Capitol Hill (if you cut through his bullshit) that he

believed in free speech so long as he got to decide what you can hear and see. These 'big names' of Silicon Valley are only front men and women for the Global Cult, not least the Sabbatians, who are the true controllers of these corporations. Does anyone still wonder why these same people and companies have been ferociously censoring and banning people (like me) for exposing any aspect of the Cult agenda and especially the truth about the 'Covid' hoax which Sabbatians have orchestrated?

The Jeffrey Epstein paedophile ring was a Sabbatian operation. He was officially 'Jewish' but he was a Sabbatian and women abused by the ring have told me about the high number of 'Jewish' people involved. The Epstein horror has Sabbatian written all over it and matches perfectly their modus operandi and obsession with sex and ritual. Epstein was running a Sabbatian blackmail ring in which famous people with political and other influence were provided with young girls for sex while everything was being filmed and recorded on hidden cameras and microphones at his New York house, Caribbean island and other properties. Epstein survivors have described this surveillance system to me and some have gone public. Once the famous politician or other figure knew he or she was on video they tended to do whatever they were told. Here we go again ...when you've got them by the balls their hearts and minds will follow. Sabbatians use this blackmail technique on a wide scale across the world to entrap politicians and others they need to act as demanded. Epstein's private plane, the infamous 'Lolita Express', had many well-known passengers including Bill Clinton while Bill Gates has flown on an Epstein plane and met with him four years after Epstein had been jailed for paedophilia. They subsequently met many times at Epstein's home in New York according to a witness who was there. Epstein's infamous side-kick was Ghislaine Maxwell, daughter of Mossad agent and ultra-Zionist mega-crooked British businessman, Bob Maxwell, who at one time owned the *Daily Mirror* newspaper. Maxwell was murdered at sea on his boat in 1991 by Sabbatian-controlled Mossad when he became a liability with his

business empire collapsing as a former Mossad operative has confirmed (see *The Trigger*).

### **Money, money, money, funny money ...**

Before I come to the Sabbatian connection with the last three US presidents I will lay out the crucial importance to Sabbatians of controlling banking and finance. Sabbatian Mayer Amschel Rothschild set out to dominate this arena in his family's quest for total global control. What is freedom? It is, in effect, choice. The more choices you have the freer you are and the fewer your choices the more you are enslaved. In the global structure created over centuries by Sabbatians the biggest decider and restrictor of choice is ... money. Across the world if you ask people what they would like to do with their lives and why they are not doing that they will reply 'I don't have the money'. This is the idea. A global elite of multi-billionaires are described as 'greedy' and that is true on one level; but control of money – who has it and who doesn't – is not primarily about greed. It's about control. Sabbatians have seized ever more control of finance and sucked the wealth of the world out of the hands of the population. We talk now, after all, about the 'One-percent' and even then the wealthiest are a lot fewer even than that. This has been made possible by a money scam so outrageous and so vast it could rightly be called the scam of scams founded on creating 'money' out of nothing and 'loaning' that with interest to the population. Money out of nothing is called 'credit'. Sabbatians have asserted control over governments and banking ever more completely through the centuries and secured financial laws that allow banks to lend hugely more than they have on deposit in a confidence trick known as fractional reserve lending. Imagine if you could lend money that doesn't exist and charge the recipient interest for doing so. You would end up in jail. Bankers by contrast end up in mansions, private jets, Malibu and Monaco.

Banks are only required to keep a fraction of their deposits and wealth in their vaults and they are allowed to lend 'money' they don't have called 'credit'. Go into a bank for a loan and if you succeed

the banker will not move any real wealth into your account. They will type into your account the amount of the agreed 'loan' – say £100,000. This is not wealth that really exists; it is non-existent, fresh-air, created-out-of-nothing 'credit' which has never, does not, and will never exist except in theory. Credit is backed by nothing except wind and only has buying power because people think that it has buying power and accept it in return for property, goods and services. I have described this situation as like those cartoon characters you see chasing each other and when they run over the edge of a cliff they keep running forward on fresh air until one of them looks down, realises what's happened, and they all crash into the ravine. The whole foundation of the Sabbatian financial system is to stop people looking down except for periodic moments when they want to crash the system (as in 2008 and 2020 ongoing) and reap the rewards from all the property, businesses and wealth their borrowers had signed over as 'collateral' in return for a 'loan' of fresh air. Most people think that money is somehow created by governments when it comes into existence from the start as a debt through banks 'lending' illusory money called credit. Yes, the very currency of exchange is a *debt* from day one issued as an interest-bearing loan. Why don't governments create money interest-free and lend it to their people interest-free? Governments are controlled by Sabbatians and the financial system is controlled by Sabbatians for whom interest-free money would be a nightmare come true. Sabbatians underpin their financial domination through their global network of central banks, including the privately-owned US Federal Reserve and Britain's Bank of England, and this is orchestrated by a privately-owned central bank coordination body called the Bank for International Settlements in Basle, Switzerland, created by the usual suspects including the Rockefellers and Rothschilds. Central bank chiefs don't answer to governments or the people. They answer to the Bank for International Settlements or, in other words, the Global Cult which is dominated today by Sabbatians.

## **Built-in disaster**

There are so many constituent scams within the overall banking scam. When you take out a loan of thin-air credit only the amount of that loan is theoretically brought into circulation to add to the amount in circulation; but you are paying back the principle plus interest. The additional interest is not created and this means that with every 'loan' there is a shortfall in the money in circulation between what is borrowed and what has to be paid back. There is never even close to enough money in circulation to repay all outstanding public and private debt including interest. Coldly weaved in the very fabric of the system is the certainty that some will lose their homes, businesses and possessions to the banking 'lender'. This is less obvious in times of 'boom' when the amount of money in circulation (and the debt) is expanding through more people wanting and getting loans. When a downturn comes and the money supply contracts it becomes painfully obvious that there is not enough money to service all debt and interest. This is less obvious in times of 'boom' when the amount of money in circulation (and the debt) is expanding through more people wanting and getting loans. When a downturn comes and the money supply contracts and it becomes painfully obvious – as in 2008 and currently – that there is not enough money to service all debt and interest.

Sabbatian banksters have been leading the human population through a calculated series of booms (more debt incurred) and busts (when the debt can't be repaid and the banks get the debtor's tangible wealth in exchange for non-existent 'credit'). With each 'bust' Sabbatian bankers have absorbed more of the world's tangible wealth and we end up with the One-percent. Governments are in bankruptcy levels of debt to the same system and are therefore owned by a system they do not control. The Federal Reserve, 'America's central bank', is privately-owned and American presidents only nominally appoint its chairman or woman to maintain the illusion that it's an arm of government. It's not. The 'Fed' is a cartel of private banks which handed billions to its associates and friends after the crash of 2008 and has been Sabbatian-controlled since it was manipulated into being in 1913 through the covert trickery of Rothschild banking agents Jacob Schiff and Paul

Warburg, and the Sabbatian Rockefeller family. Somehow from a Jewish population of two-percent and globally 0.2 percent (Sabbatian interlopers remember are far smaller) ultra-Zionists headed the Federal Reserve for 31 years between 1987 and 2018 in the form of Alan Greenspan, Bernard Bernanke and Janet Yellen (now Biden's Treasury Secretary) with Yellen's deputy chairman a Israeli-American dual citizen and ultra-Zionist Stanley Fischer, a former governor of the Bank of Israel. Ultra-Zionist Fed chiefs spanned the presidencies of Ronald Reagan ('Republican'), Father George Bush ('Republican'), Bill Clinton ('Democrat'), Boy George Bush ('Republican') and Barack Obama ('Democrat'). We should really add the pre-Greenspan chairman, Paul Adolph Volcker, 'appointed' by Jimmy Carter ('Democrat') who ran the Fed between 1979 and 1987 during the Carter and Reagan administrations before Greenspan took over. Volcker was a long-time associate and business partner of the Rothschilds. No matter what the 'party' officially in power the United States economy was directed by the same force. Here are members of the Obama, Trump and Biden administrations and see if you can make out a common theme.

## **Barack Obama ('Democrat')**

Ultra-Zionists Robert Rubin, Larry Summers, and Timothy Geithner ran the US Treasury in the Clinton administration and two of them reappeared with Obama. Ultra-Zionist Fed chairman Alan Greenspan had manipulated the crash of 2008 through deregulation and jumped ship just before the disaster to make way for ultra-Zionist Bernard Bernanke to hand out trillions to Sabbatian 'too big to fail' banks and businesses, including the ubiquitous ultra-Zionist Goldman Sachs which has an ongoing staff revolving door operation between itself and major financial positions in government worldwide. Obama inherited the fallout of the crash when he took office in January, 2009, and fortunately he had the support of his ultra-Zionist White House Chief of Staff Rahm Emmanuel, son of a terrorist who helped to bomb Israel into being in 1948, and his ultra-Zionist senior adviser David Axelrod, chief strategist in Obama's two

successful presidential campaigns. Emmanuel, later mayor of Chicago and former senior fundraiser and strategist for Bill Clinton, is an example of the Sabbatian policy after Israel was established of migrating insider families to America so their children would be born American citizens. ‘Obama’ chose this financial team throughout his administration to respond to the Sabbatian-instigated crisis:

Timothy Geithner (ultra-Zionist) Treasury Secretary; Jacob J. Lew, Treasury Secretary; Larry Summers (ultra-Zionist), director of the White House National Economic Council; Paul Adolph Volcker (Rothschild business partner), chairman of the Economic Recovery Advisory Board; Peter Orszag (ultra-Zionist), director of the Office of Management and Budget overseeing all government spending; Penny Pritzker (ultra-Zionist), Commerce Secretary; Jared Bernstein (ultra-Zionist), chief economist and economic policy adviser to Vice President Joe Biden; Mary Schapiro (ultra-Zionist), chair of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC); Gary Gensler (ultra-Zionist), chairman of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (CFTC); Sheila Bair (ultra-Zionist), chair of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC); Karen Mills (ultra-Zionist), head of the Small Business Administration (SBA); Kenneth Feinberg (ultra-Zionist), Special Master for Executive [bail-out] Compensation. Feinberg would be appointed to oversee compensation (with strings) to 9/11 victims and families in a campaign to stop them having their day in court to question the official story. At the same time ultra-Zionist Bernard Bernanke was chairman of the Federal Reserve and these are only some of the ultra-Zionists with allegiance to Sabbatian-controlled Israel in the Obama government. Obama’s biggest corporate donor was ultra-Zionist Goldman Sachs which had employed many in his administration.

## **Donald Trump ('Republican')**

Trump claimed to be an outsider (he wasn’t) who had come to ‘drain the swamp’. He embarked on this goal by immediately appointing ultra-Zionist Steve Mnuchin, a Goldman Sachs employee for 17

years, as his Treasury Secretary. Others included Gary Cohn (ultra-Zionist), chief operating officer of Goldman Sachs, his first Director of the National Economic Council and chief economic adviser, who was later replaced by Larry Kudlow (ultra-Zionist). Trump's senior adviser throughout his four years in the White House was his sinister son-in-law Jared Kushner, a life-long friend of Israel Prime Minister Benjamin Netanyahu. Kushner is the son of a convicted crook who was pardoned by Trump in his last days in office. Other ultra-Zionists in the Trump administration included: Stephen Miller, Senior Policy Adviser; Avrahm Berkowitz, Deputy Adviser to Trump and his Senior Adviser Jared Kushner; Ivanka Trump, Adviser to the President, who converted to Judaism when she married Jared Kushner; David Friedman, Trump lawyer and Ambassador to Israel; Jason Greenblatt, Trump Organization executive vice president and chief legal officer, who was made Special Representative for International Negotiations and the Israeli-Palestinian Conflict; Rod Rosenstein, Deputy Attorney General; Elliot Abrams, Special Representative for Venezuela, then Iran; John Eisenberg, National Security Council Legal Adviser and Deputy Council to the President for National Security Affairs; Anne Neuberger, Deputy National Manager, National Security Agency; Ezra Cohen-Watnick, Acting Under Secretary of Defense for Intelligence; Elan Carr, Special Envoy to monitor and combat anti-Semitism; Len Khodorkovsky, Deputy Special Envoy to monitor and combat anti-Semitism; Reed Cordish, Assistant to the President, Intragovernmental and Technology Initiatives. Trump Vice President Mike Pence and Secretary of State Mike Pompeo, both Christian Zionists, were also vehement supporters of Israel and its goals and ambitions.

Donald 'free-speech believer' Trump pardoned a number of financial and violent criminals while ignoring calls to pardon Julian Assange and Edward Snowden whose crimes are revealing highly relevant information about government manipulation and corruption and the widespread illegal surveillance of the American people by US 'security' agencies. It's so good to know that Trump is on the side of freedom and justice and not mega-criminals with

allegiance to Sabbatian-controlled Israel. These included a pardon for Israeli spy Jonathan Pollard who was jailed for life in 1987 under the Espionage Act. Aviem Sella, the Mossad agent who recruited Pollard, was also pardoned by Trump while Assange sat in jail and Snowden remained in exile in Russia. Sella had 'fled' (was helped to escape) to Israel in 1987 and was never extradited despite being charged under the Espionage Act. A Trump White House statement said that Sella's clemency had been 'supported by Benjamin Netanyahu, Ron Dermer, Israel's US Ambassador, David Friedman, US Ambassador to Israel and Miriam Adelson, wife of leading Trump donor Sheldon Adelson who died shortly before. Other friends of Jared Kushner were pardoned along with Sholom Weiss who was believed to be serving the longest-ever white-collar prison sentence of more than 800 years in 2000. The sentence was commuted of Ponzi-schemer Eliyahu Weinstein who defrauded Jews and others out of \$200 million. I did mention that Assange and Snowden were ignored, right? Trump gave Sabbatians almost everything they asked for in military and political support, moving the US Embassy from Tel Aviv to Jerusalem with its critical symbolic and literal implications for Palestinian statehood, and the 'deal of the Century' designed by Jared Kushner and David Friedman which gave the Sabbatian Israeli government the green light to substantially expand its already widespread program of building illegal Jewish-only settlements in the occupied land of the West Bank. This made a two-state 'solution' impossible by seizing all the land of a potential Palestinian homeland and that had been the plan since 1948 and then 1967 when the Arab-controlled Gaza Strip, West Bank, Sinai Peninsula and Syrian Golan Heights were occupied by Israel. All the talks about talks and road maps and delays have been buying time until the West Bank was physically occupied by Israeli real estate. Trump would have to be a monumentally ill-informed idiot not to see that this was the plan he was helping to complete. The Trump administration was in so many ways the Kushner administration which means the Netanyahu administration which means the Sabbatian administration. I understand why many opposing Cult fascism in all its forms gravitated to Trump, but he

was a crucial part of the Sabbatian plan and I will deal with this in the next chapter.

## **Joe Biden ('Democrat')**

A barely cognitive Joe Biden took over the presidency in January, 2021, along with his fellow empty shell, Vice-President Kamala Harris, as the latest Sabbatian gofers to enter the White House. Names on the door may have changed and the 'party' – the force behind them remained the same as Zionists were appointed to a stream of pivotal areas relating to Sabbatian plans and policy. They included: Janet Yellen, Treasury Secretary, former head of the Federal Reserve, and still another ultra-Zionist running the US Treasury after Mnuchin (Trump), Lew and Geithner (Obama), and Summers and Rubin (Clinton); Anthony Blinken, Secretary of State; Wendy Sherman, Deputy Secretary of State (so that's 'Biden's' Sabbatian foreign policy sorted); Jeff Zients, White House coronavirus coordinator; Rochelle Walensky, head of the Centers for Disease Control; Rachel Levine, transgender deputy health secretary (that's 'Covid' hoax policy under control); Merrick Garland, Attorney General; Alejandro Mayorkas, Secretary of Homeland Security; Cass Sunstein, Homeland Security with responsibility for new immigration laws; Avril Haines, Director of National Intelligence; Anne Neuberger, National Security Agency cybersecurity director (note, cybersecurity); David Cohen, CIA Deputy Director; Ronald Klain, Biden's Chief of Staff (see Rahm Emanuel); Eric Lander, a 'leading geneticist', Office of Science and Technology Policy director (see Smart Grid, synthetic biology agenda); Jessica Rosenworcel, acting head of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) which controls Smart Grid technology policy and electromagnetic communication systems including 5G. How can it be that so many pivotal positions are held by two-percent of the American population and 0.2 percent of the world population administration after administration no matter who is the president and what is the party? It's a coincidence? Of course it's not and this is why Sabbatians have built their colossal global web of interlocking 'anti-

hate' hate groups to condemn anyone who asks these glaring questions as an 'anti-Semite'. The way that Jewish people horrifically abused in Sabbatian-backed Nazi Germany are exploited to this end is stomach-turning and disgusting beyond words.

## **Political fusion**

Sabbatian manipulation has reversed the roles of Republicans and Democrats and the same has happened in Britain with the Conservative and Labour Parties. Republicans and Conservatives were always labelled the 'right' and Democrats and Labour the 'left', but look at the policy positions now and the Democrat-Labour 'left' has moved further to the 'right' than Republicans and Conservatives under the banner of 'Woke', the Cult-created far-right tyranny. Where once the Democrat-Labour 'left' defended free speech and human rights they now seek to delete them and as I said earlier despite the 'Covid' fascism of the Jackboot Johnson Conservative government in the UK the Labour Party of leader Keir Starmer demanded even more extreme measures. The Labour Party has been very publicly absorbed by Sabbatians after a political and media onslaught against the previous leader, the weak and inept Jeremy Corbyn, over made-up allegations of 'anti-Semitism' both by him and his party. The plan was clear with this 'anti-Semite' propaganda and what was required in response was a swift and decisive 'fuck off' from Corbyn and a statement to expose the Anti-Semitism Industry (Sabbatian) attempt to silence Labour criticism of the Israeli government (Sabbatians) and purge the party of all dissent against the extremes of ultra-Zionism (Sabbatians). Instead Corbyn and his party fell to their knees and appeased the abusers which, by definition, is impossible. Appeasing one demand leads only to a new demand to be appeased until takeover is complete. Like I say – 'fuck off' would have been a much more effective policy and I have used it myself with great effect over the years when Sabbatians are on my case which is most of the time. I consider that fact a great compliment, by the way. The outcome of the Labour Party capitulation is that we now have a Sabbatian-controlled

Conservative Party ‘opposed’ by a Sabbatian-controlled Labour Party in a one-party Sabbatian state that hurtles towards the extremes of tyranny (the Sabbatian cult agenda). In America the situation is the same. Labour’s Keir Starmer spends his days on his knees with his tongue out pointing to Tel Aviv, or I guess now Jerusalem, while Boris Johnson has an ‘anti-Semitism czar’ in the form of former Labour MP John Mann who keeps Starmer company on his prayer mat.

Sabbatian influence can be seen in Jewish members of the Labour Party who have been ejected for criticism of Israel including those from families that suffered in Nazi Germany. Sabbatians despise real Jewish people and target them even more harshly because it is so much more difficult to dub them ‘anti-Semitic’ although in their desperation they do try.

## CHAPTER THREE

### The Pushbacker sting

*Until you realize how easy it is for your mind to be manipulated, you remain the puppet of someone else's game*

Evita Ochel

I will use the presidencies of Trump and Biden to show how the manipulation of the one-party state plays out behind the illusion of political choice across the world. No two presidencies could – on the face of it – be more different and apparently at odds in terms of direction and policy.

A Renegade Mind sees beyond the obvious and focuses on outcomes and consequences and not image, words and waffle. The Cult embarked on a campaign to divide America between those who blindly support its agenda (the mentality known as 'Woke') and those who are pushing back on where the Cult and its Sabbatians want to go. This presents infinite possibilities for dividing and ruling the population by setting them at war with each other and allows a perceptual ring fence of demonisation to encircle the Pushbackers in a modern version of the Little Big Horn in 1876 when American cavalry led by Lieutenant Colonel George Custer were drawn into a trap, surrounded and killed by Native American tribes defending their land of thousands of years from being seized by the government. In this modern version the roles are reversed and it's those defending themselves from the Sabbatian government who are surrounded and the government that's seeking to destroy them. This trap was set years ago and to explain how we must return to 2016

and the emergence of Donald Trump as a candidate to be President of the United States. He set out to overcome the best part of 20 other candidates in the Republican Party before and during the primaries and was not considered by many in those early stages to have a prayer of living in the White House. The Republican Party was said to have great reservations about Trump and yet somehow he won the nomination. When you know how American politics works – politics in general – there is no way that Trump could have become the party's candidate unless the Sabbatian-controlled 'Neocons' that run the Republican Party wanted that to happen. We saw the proof in emails and documents made public by WikiLeaks that the Democratic Party hierarchy, or Democons, systematically undermined the campaign of Bernie Sanders to make sure that Sabbatian gofer Hillary Clinton won the nomination to be their presidential candidate. If the Democons could do that then the Neocons in the Republican Party could have derailed Trump in the same way. But they didn't and at that stage I began to conclude that Trump could well be the one chosen to be president. If that was the case the 'why' was pretty clear to see – the goal of dividing America between Cult agenda-supporting Wokers and Pushbackers who gravitated to Trump because he was telling them what they wanted to hear. His constituency of support had been increasingly ignored and voiceless for decades and profoundly through the eight years of Sabbatian puppet Barack Obama. Now here was someone speaking their language of pulling back from the incessant globalisation of political and economic power, the exporting of American jobs to China and elsewhere by 'American' (Sabbatian) corporations, the deletion of free speech, and the mass immigration policies that had further devastated job opportunities for the urban working class of all races and the once American heartlands of the Midwest.

### **Beware the forked tongue**

Those people collectively sighed with relief that at last a political leader was apparently on their side, but another trait of the Renegade Mind is that you look even harder at people telling you

what you want to hear than those who are telling you otherwise. Obviously as I said earlier people wish what they want to hear to be true and genuine and they are much more likely to believe that than someone saying what they don't want to here and don't want to be true. Sales people are taught to be skilled in eliciting by calculated questioning what their customers want to hear and repeating that back to them as their own opinion to get their targets to like and trust them. Assets of the Cult are also sales people in the sense of selling perception. To read Cult manipulation you have to play the long and expanded game and not fall for the Vaudeville show of party politics. Both American parties are vehicles for the Cult and they exploit them in different ways depending on what the agenda requires at that moment. Trump and the Republicans were used to be the focus of dividing America and isolating Pushbackers to open the way for a Biden presidency to become the most extreme in American history by advancing the full-blown Woke (Cult) agenda with the aim of destroying and silencing Pushbackers now labelled Nazi Trump supporters and white supremacists.

Sabbatians wanted Trump in office for the reasons described by ultra-Zionist Saul Alinsky (1909-1972) who was promoting the Woke philosophy through 'community organising' long before anyone had heard of it. In those days it still went by its traditional name of Marxism. The reason for the manipulated Trump phenomenon was laid out in Alinsky's 1971 book, *Rules for Radicals*, which was his blueprint for overthrowing democratic and other regimes and replacing them with Sabbatian Marxism. Not surprisingly his to-do list was evident in the Sabbatian French and Russian 'Revolutions' and that in China which will become very relevant in the next chapter about the 'Covid' hoax. Among Alinsky's followers have been the deeply corrupt Barack Obama, House Speaker Nancy Pelosi and Hillary Clinton who described him as a 'hero'. All three are Sabbatian stooges with Pelosi personifying the arrogant corrupt idiocy that so widely fronts up for the Cult inner core. Predictably as a Sabbatian advocate of the 'light-bringer' Alinsky features Lucifer on the dedication page of his book as the original radical who gained

his own kingdom ('Earth' as we shall see). One of Alinsky's golden radical rules was to pick an individual and focus all attention, hatred and blame on them and not to target faceless bureaucracies and corporations. *Rules for Radicals* is really a Sabbatian handbook with its contents repeatedly employed all over the world for centuries and why wouldn't Sabbatians bring to power their designer-villain to be used as the individual on which all attention, hatred and blame was bestowed? This is what they did and the only question for me is how much Trump knew that and how much he was manipulated. A bit of both, I suspect. This was Alinsky's Trump technique from a man who died in 1972. The technique has spanned history:

Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, polarize it. Don't try to attack abstract corporations or bureaucracies. Identify a responsible individual. Ignore attempts to shift or spread the blame.

From the moment Trump came to illusory power everything was about him. It wasn't about Republican policy or opinion, but all about Trump. Everything he did was presented in negative, derogatory and abusive terms by the Sabbatian-dominated media led by Cult operations such as CNN, MSNBC, *The New York Times* and the Jeff Bezos-owned *Washington Post* – 'Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, polarize it.' Trump was turned into a demon to be vilified by those who hated him and a demi-god loved by those who worshipped him. This, in turn, had his supporters, too, presented as equally demonic in preparation for the punchline later down the line when Biden was about to take office. It was here's a Trump, there's a Trump, everywhere a Trump, Trump. Virtually every news story or happening was filtered through the lens of 'The Donald'. You loved him or hated him and which one you chose was said to define you as Satan's spawn or a paragon of virtue. Even supporting some Trump policies or statements and not others was enough for an assault on your character. No shades of grey were or are allowed. Everything is black and white (literally and figuratively). A Californian I knew had her head utterly scrambled by her hatred for Trump while telling people they should love each other. She was so totally consumed by

Trump Derangement Syndrome as it became to be known that this glaring contradiction would never have occurred to her. By definition anyone who criticised Trump or praised his opponents was a hero and this lady described Joe Biden as 'a kind, honest gentleman' when he's a provable liar, mega-crook and vicious piece of work to boot. Sabbatians had indeed divided America using Trump as the fall-guy and all along the clock was ticking on the consequences for his supporters.

### **In hock to his masters**

Trump gave Sabbatians via Israel almost everything they wanted in his four years. Ask and you shall receive was the dynamic between himself and Benjamin Netanyahu orchestrated by Trump's ultra-Zionist son-in-law Jared Kushner, his ultra-Zionist Ambassador to Israel, David Friedman, and ultra-Zionist 'Israel adviser', Jason Greenblatt. The last two were central to the running and protecting from collapse of his business empire, the Trump Organisation, and colossal business failures made him forever beholden to Sabbatian networks that bailed him out. By the start of the 1990s Trump owed \$4 billion to banks that he couldn't pay and almost \$1 billion of that was down to him personally and not his companies. This mega-disaster was the result of building two new casinos in Atlantic City and buying the enormous Taj Mahal operation which led to crippling debt payments. He had borrowed fantastic sums from 72 banks with major Sabbatian connections and although the scale of debt should have had him living in a tent alongside the highway they never foreclosed. A plan was devised to lift Trump from the mire by BT Securities Corporation and Rothschild Inc. and the case was handled by Wilber Ross who had worked for the Rothschilds for 27 years. Ross would be named US Commerce Secretary after Trump's election. Another crucial figure in saving Trump was ultra-Zionist 'investor' Carl Icahn who bought the Taj Mahal casino. Icahn was made special economic adviser on financial regulation in the Trump administration. He didn't stay long but still managed to find time to make a tidy sum of a reported \$31.3 million when he sold his

holdings affected by the price of steel three days before Trump imposed a 235 percent tariff on steel imports. What amazing bits of luck these people have. Trump and Sabbatian operatives have long had a close association and his mentor and legal adviser from the early 1970s until 1986 was the dark and genetically corrupt ultra-Zionist Roy Cohn who was chief counsel to Senator Joseph McCarthy's 'communist' witch-hunt in the 1950s. *Esquire* magazine published an article about Cohn with the headline 'Don't mess with Roy Cohn'. He was described as the most feared lawyer in New York and 'a ruthless master of dirty tricks ... [with] ... more than one Mafia Don on speed dial'. Cohn's influence, contacts, support and protection made Trump a front man for Sabbatians in New York with their connections to one of Cohn's many criminal employers, the 'Russian' Sabbatian Mafia. Israel-centric media mogul Rupert Murdoch was introduced to Trump by Cohn and they started a long friendship. Cohn died in 1986 weeks after being disbarred for unethical conduct by the Appellate Division of the New York State Supreme Court. The wheels of justice do indeed run slow given the length of Cohn's crooked career.

## **QAnon-sense**

We are asked to believe that Donald Trump with his fundamental connections to Sabbatian networks and operatives has been leading the fight to stop the Sabbatian agenda for the fascistic control of America and the world. Sure he has. A man entrapped during his years in the White House by Sabbatian operatives and whose biggest financial donor was casino billionaire Sheldon Adelson who was Sabbatian to his DNA?? Oh, do come on. Trump has been used to divide America and isolate Pushbackers on the Cult agenda under the heading of 'Trump supporters', 'insurrectionists' and 'white supremacists'. The US Intelligence/Mossad Psyop or psychological operation known as QAnon emerged during the Trump years as a central pillar in the Sabbatian campaign to lead Pushbackers into the trap set by those that wished to destroy them. I knew from the start that QAnon was a scam because I had seen the same scenario many

times before over 30 years under different names and I had written about one in particular in the books. ‘Not again’ was my reaction when QAnon came to the fore. The same script is pulled out every few years and a new name added to the letterhead. The story always takes the same form: ‘Insiders’ or ‘the good guys’ in the government-intelligence-military ‘Deep State’ apparatus were going to instigate mass arrests of the ‘bad guys’ which would include the Rockefellers, Rothschilds, Barack Obama, Hillary Clinton, George Soros, etc., etc. Dates are given for when the ‘good guys’ are going to move in, but the dates pass without incident and new dates are given which pass without incident. The central message to Pushbackers in each case is that they don’t have to do anything because there is ‘a plan’ and it is all going to be sorted by the ‘good guys’ on the inside. ‘Trust the plan’ was a QAnon mantra when the only plan was to misdirect Pushbackers into putting their trust in a Psyop they believed to be real. Beware, beware, those who tell you what you want to hear and always check it out. Right up to Biden’s inauguration QAnon was still claiming that ‘the Storm’ was coming and Trump would stay on as president when Biden and his cronies were arrested and jailed. It was never going to happen and of course it didn’t, but what did happen as a result provided that punchline to the Sabbatian Trump/QAnon Psyop.

On January 6th, 2021, a very big crowd of Trump supporters gathered in the National Mall in Washington DC down from the Capitol Building to protest at what they believed to be widespread corruption and vote fraud that stopped Trump being re-elected for a second term as president in November, 2020. I say as someone that does not support Trump or Biden that the evidence is clear that major vote-fixing went on to favour Biden, a man with cognitive problems so advanced he can often hardly string a sentence together without reading the words written for him on the Teleprompter. Glaring ballot discrepancies included serious questions about electronic voting machines that make vote rigging a comparative cinch and hundreds of thousands of paper votes that suddenly appeared during already advanced vote counts and virtually all of

them for Biden. Early Trump leads in crucial swing states suddenly began to close and disappear. The pandemic hoax was used as the excuse to issue almost limitless numbers of mail-in ballots with no checks to establish that the recipients were still alive or lived at that address. They were sent to streams of people who had not even asked for them. Private organisations were employed to gather these ballots and who knows what they did with them before they turned up at the counts. The American election system has been manipulated over decades to become a sick joke with more holes than a Swiss cheese for the express purpose of dictating the results. Then there was the criminal manipulation of information by Sabbatian tech giants like Facebook, Twitter and Google-owned YouTube which deleted pro-Trump, anti-Biden accounts and posts while everything in support of Biden was left alone. Sabbatians wanted Biden to win because after the dividing of America it was time for full-on Woke and every aspect of the Cult agenda to be unleashed.

### **Hunter gatherer**

Extreme Silicon Valley bias included blocking information by the *New York Post* exposing a Biden scandal that should have ended his bid for president in the final weeks of the campaign. Hunter Biden, his monumentally corrupt son, is reported to have sent a laptop to be repaired at a local store and failed to return for it. Time passed until the laptop became the property of the store for non-payment of the bill. When the owner saw what was on the hard drive he gave a copy to the FBI who did nothing even though it confirmed widespread corruption in which the Joe Biden family were using his political position, especially when he was vice president to Obama, to make multiple millions in countries around the world and most notably Ukraine and China. Hunter Biden's one-time business partner Tony Bobulinski went public when the story broke in the *New York Post* to confirm the corruption he saw and that Joe Biden not only knew what was going on he also profited from the spoils. Millions were handed over by a Chinese company with close

connections – like all major businesses in China – to the Chinese communist party of President Xi Jinping. Joe Biden even boasted at a meeting of the Cult's World Economic Forum that as vice president he had ordered the government of Ukraine to fire a prosecutor. What he didn't mention was that the same man just happened to be investigating an energy company which was part of Hunter Biden's corrupt portfolio. The company was paying him big bucks for no other reason than the influence his father had. Overnight Biden's presidential campaign should have been over given that he had lied publicly about not knowing what his son was doing. Instead almost the entire Sabbatian-owned mainstream media and Sabbatian-owned Silicon Valley suppressed circulation of the story. This alone went a mighty way to rigging the election of 2020. Cult assets like Mark Zuckerberg at Facebook also spent hundreds of millions to be used in support of Biden and vote 'administration'.

The Cult had used Trump as the focus to divide America and was now desperate to bring in moronic, pliable, corrupt Biden to complete the double-whammy. No way were they going to let little things like the will of the people thwart their plan. Silicon Valley widely censored claims that the election was rigged because it *was* rigged. For the same reason anyone claiming it was rigged was denounced as a 'white supremacist' including the pathetically few Republican politicians willing to say so. Right across the media where the claim was mentioned it was described as a 'false claim' even though these excuses for 'journalists' would have done no research into the subject whatsoever. Trump won seven million more votes than any sitting president had ever achieved while somehow a cognitively-challenged soon to be 78-year-old who was hidden away from the public for most of the campaign managed to win more votes than any presidential candidate in history. It makes no sense. You only had to see election rallies for both candidates to witness the enthusiasm for Trump and the apathy for Biden. Tens of thousands would attend Trump events while Biden was speaking in empty car parks with often only television crews attending and framing their shots to hide the fact that no one was there. It was pathetic to see

footage come to light of Biden standing at a podium making speeches only to TV crews and party fixers while reading the words written for him on massive Teleprompter screens. So, yes, those protestors on January 6th had a point about election rigging, but some were about to walk into a trap laid for them in Washington by the Cult Deep State and its QAnon Psyop. This was the Capitol Hill riot ludicrously dubbed an ‘insurrection’.

## **The spider and the fly**

Renegade Minds know there are not two ‘sides’ in politics, only one side, the Cult, working through all ‘sides’. It’s a stage show, a puppet show, to direct the perceptions of the population into focusing on diversions like parties and candidates while missing the puppeteers with their hands holding all the strings. The Capitol Hill ‘insurrection’ brings us back to the Little Big Horn. Having created two distinct opposing groupings – Woke and Pushbackers – the trap was about to be sprung. Pushbackers were to be encircled and isolated by associating them all in the public mind with Trump and then labelling Trump as some sort of Confederate leader. I knew immediately that the Capitol riot was a set-up because of two things. One was how easy the rioters got into the building with virtually no credible resistance and secondly I could see – as with the ‘Covid’ hoax in the West at the start of 2020 – how the Cult could exploit the situation to move its agenda forward with great speed. My experience of Cult techniques and activities over more than 30 years has showed me that while they do exploit situations they haven’t themselves created this never happens with events of fundamental agenda significance. Every time major events giving cultists the excuse to rapidly advance their plan you find they are manipulated into being for the specific reason of providing that excuse – Problem-Reaction-Solution. Only a tiny minority of the huge crowd of Washington protestors sought to gain entry to the Capitol by smashing windows and breaching doors. That didn’t matter. The whole crowd and all Pushbackers, even if they did not support Trump, were going to be lumped together as dangerous

insurrectionists and conspiracy theorists. The latter term came into widespread use through a CIA memo in the 1960s aimed at discrediting those questioning the nonsensical official story of the Kennedy assassination and it subsequently became widely employed by the media. It's still being used by inept 'journalists' with no idea of its origin to discredit anyone questioning anything that authority claims to be true. When you are perpetrating a conspiracy you need to discredit the very word itself even though the dictionary definition of conspiracy is merely 'the activity of secretly planning with other people to do something bad or illegal' and 'a general agreement to keep silent about a subject for the purpose of keeping it secret'. On that basis there are conspiracies almost wherever you look. For obvious reasons the Cult and its lapdog media have to claim there are no conspiracies even though the word appears in state laws as with conspiracy to defraud, to murder, and to corrupt public morals.

Agent provocateurs are widely used by the Cult Deep State to manipulate genuine people into acting in ways that suit the desired outcome. By genuine in this case I mean protestors genuinely supporting Trump and claims that the election was stolen. In among them, however, were agents of the state wearing the garb of Trump supporters and QAnon to pump-prime the Capitol riot which some genuine Trump supporters naively fell for. I described the situation as 'Come into my parlour said the spider to the fly'. Leaflets appeared through the Woke paramilitary arm Antifa, the anti-fascist fascists, calling on supporters to turn up in Washington looking like Trump supporters even though they hated him. Some of those arrested for breaching the Capitol Building were sourced to Antifa and its stable mate Black Lives Matter. Both organisations are funded by Cult billionaires and corporations. One man charged for the riot was according to his lawyer a former FBI agent who had held top secret security clearance for 40 years. Attorney Thomas Plofchan said of his client, 66-year-old Thomas Edward Caldwell:

He has held a Top Secret Security Clearance since 1979 and has undergone multiple Special Background Investigations in support of his clearances. After retiring from the Navy, he

worked as a section chief for the Federal Bureau of Investigation from 2009-2010 as a GS-12 [mid-level employee].

He also formed and operated a consulting firm performing work, often classified, for U.S government customers including the US Drug Enforcement Agency, Department of Housing and Urban Development, the US Coast Guard, and the US Army Personnel Command.

A judge later released Caldwell pending trial in the absence of evidence about a conspiracy or that he tried to force his way into the building. *The New York Post* reported a 'law enforcement source' as saying that 'at least two known Antifa members were spotted' on camera among Trump supporters during the riot while one of the rioters arrested was John Earle Sullivan, a seriously extreme Black Lives Matter Trump-hater from Utah who was previously arrested and charged in July, 2020, over a BLM-Antifa riot in which drivers were threatened and one was shot. Sullivan is the founder of Utah-based Insurgence USA which is an affiliate of the Cult-created-and-funded Black Lives Matter movement. Footage appeared and was then deleted by Twitter of Trump supporters calling out Antifa infiltrators and a group was filmed changing into pro-Trump clothing before the riot. Security at the building was *pathetic* – as planned. Colonel Leroy Fletcher Prouty, a man with long experience in covert operations working with the US security apparatus, once described the tell-tale sign to identify who is involved in an assassination. He said:

No one has to direct an assassination – it happens. The active role is played secretly by permitting it to happen. This is the greatest single clue. Who has the power to call off or reduce the usual security precautions?

This principle applies to many other situations and certainly to the Capitol riot of January 6th, 2021.

## **The sting**

With such a big and potentially angry crowd known to be gathering near the Capitol the security apparatus would have had a major police detail to defend the building with National Guard troops on

standby given the strength of feeling among people arriving from all over America encouraged by the QAnon Psyop and statements by Donald Trump. Instead Capitol Police ‘security’ was flimsy, weak, and easily breached. The same number of officers was deployed as on a regular day and that is a blatant red flag. They were not staffed or equipped for a possible riot that had been an obvious possibility in the circumstances. No protective and effective fencing worth the name was put in place and there were no contingency plans. The whole thing was basically a case of standing aside and waving people in. Once inside police mostly backed off apart from one Capitol police officer who ridiculously shot dead unarmed Air Force veteran protestor Ashli Babbitt without a warning as she climbed through a broken window. The ‘investigation’ refused to name or charge the officer after what must surely be considered a murder in the circumstances. They just lifted a carpet and swept. The story was endlessly repeated about five people dying in the ‘armed insurrection’ when there was no report of rioters using weapons. Apart from Babbitt the other four died from a heart attack, strokes and apparently a drug overdose. Capitol police officer Brian Sicknick was reported to have died after being bludgeoned with a fire extinguisher when he was alive after the riot was over and died later of what the Washington Medical Examiner’s Office said was a stroke. Sicknick had no external injuries. The lies were delivered like rapid fire. There was a narrative to build with incessant repetition of the lie until the lie became the accepted ‘everybody knows that’ truth. The ‘Big Lie’ technique of Nazi Propaganda Minister Joseph Goebbels is constantly used by the Cult which was behind the Nazis and is today behind the ‘Covid’ and ‘climate change’ hoaxes. Goebbels said:

If you tell a lie big enough and keep repeating it, people will eventually come to believe it. The lie can be maintained only for such time as the State can shield the people from the political, economic and/or military consequences of the lie. It thus becomes vitally important for the State to use all of its powers to repress dissent, for the truth is the mortal enemy of the lie, and thus by extension, the truth is the greatest enemy of the State.

Most protestors had a free run of the Capitol Building. This allowed pictures to be taken of rioters in iconic parts of the building including the Senate chamber which could be used as propaganda images against all Pushbackers. One Congresswoman described the scene as ‘the worst kind of non-security anybody could ever imagine’. Well, the first part was true, but someone obviously did imagine it and made sure it happened. Some photographs most widely circulated featured people wearing QAnon symbols and now the Psyop would be used to dub all QAnon followers with the ubiquitous fit-all label of ‘white supremacist’ and ‘insurrectionists’. When a Muslim extremist called Noah Green drove his car at two police officers at the Capitol Building killing one in April, 2021, there was no such political and media hysteria. They were just disappointed he wasn’t white.

## **The witch-hunt**

Government prosecutor Michael Sherwin, an aggressive, dark-eyed, professional Rottweiler led the ‘investigation’ and to call it over the top would be to underestimate reality a thousand fold. Hundreds were tracked down and arrested for the crime of having the wrong political views and people were jailed who had done nothing more than walk in the building, committed no violence or damage to property, took a few pictures and left. They were labelled a ‘threat to the Republic’ while Biden sat in the White House signing executive orders written for him that were dismantling ‘the Republic’. Even when judges ruled that a mother and son should not be in jail the government kept them there. Some of those arrested have been badly beaten by prison guards in Washington and lawyers for one man said he suffered a fractured skull and was made blind in one eye. Meanwhile a woman is shot dead for no reason by a Capitol Police officer and we are not allowed to know who he is never mind what has happened to him although that will be *nothing*. The Cult’s QAnon/Trump sting to identify and isolate Pushbackers and then target them on the road to crushing and deleting them was a resounding success. You would have thought the Russians had

invaded the building at gunpoint and lined up senators for a firing squad to see the political and media reaction. Congresswoman Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez is a child in a woman's body, a terrible-twins, me, me, me, Woker narcissist of such proportions that words have no meaning. She said she thought she was going to die when 'insurrectionists' banged on her office door. It turned out she wasn't even in the Capitol Building when the riot was happening and the 'banging' was a Capitol Police officer. She referred to herself as a 'survivor' which is an insult to all those true survivors of violent and sexual abuse while she lives her pampered and privileged life talking drivel for a living. Her Woke colleague and fellow mega-narcissist Rashida Tlaib broke down describing the devastating effect on her, too, of *not being* in the building when the rioters were there. Ocasio-Cortez and Tlaib are members of a fully-Woke group of Congresswomen known as 'The Squad' along with Ilhan Omar and Ayanna Pressley. The Squad from what I can see can be identified by its vehement anti-white racism, anti-white men agenda, and, as always in these cases, the absence of brain cells on active duty.

The usual suspects were on the riot case immediately in the form of Democrat ultra-Zionist senators and operatives Chuck Schumer and Adam Schiff demanding that Trump be impeached for 'his part in the insurrection'. The same pair of prats had led the failed impeachment of Trump over the invented 'Russia collusion' nonsense which claimed Russia had helped Trump win the 2016 election. I didn't realise that Tel Aviv had been relocated just outside Moscow. I must find an up-to-date map. The Russia hoax was a Sabbatian operation to keep Trump occupied and impotent and to stop any rapport with Russia which the Cult wants to retain as a perceptual enemy to be pulled out at will. Puppet Biden began attacking Russia when he came to office as the Cult seeks more upheaval, division and war across the world. A two-year stage show 'Russia collusion inquiry' headed by the not-very-bright former 9/11 FBI chief Robert Mueller, with support from 19 lawyers, 40 FBI agents plus intelligence analysts, forensic accountants and other

staff, devoured tens of millions of dollars and found no evidence of Russia collusion which a ten-year-old could have told them on day one. Now the same moronic Schumer and Schiff wanted a second impeachment of Trump over the Capitol ‘insurrection’ (riot) which the arrested development of Schumer called another ‘Pearl Harbor’ while others compared it with 9/11 in which 3,000 died and, in the case of CNN, with the Rwandan genocide in the 1990s in which an estimated 500,000 to 600,000 were murdered, between 250, 000 and 500,000 women were raped, and populations of whole towns were hacked to death with machetes. To make those comparisons purely for Cult political reasons is beyond insulting to those that suffered and lost their lives and confirms yet again the callous inhumanity that we are dealing with. Schumer is a monumental idiot and so is Schiff, but they serve the Cult agenda and do whatever they’re told so they get looked after. Talking of idiots – another inane man who spanned the Russia and Capitol impeachment attempts was Senator Eric Swalwell who had the nerve to accuse Trump of collusion with the Russians while sleeping with a Chinese spy called Christine Fang or ‘Fang Fang’ which is straight out of a Bond film no doubt starring Klaus Schwab as the bloke living on a secret island and controlling laser weapons positioned in space and pointing at world capitals. Fang Fang plays the part of Bond’s infiltrator girlfriend which I’m sure she would enjoy rather more than sharing a bed with the brainless Swalwell, lying back and thinking of China. The FBI eventually warned Swalwell about Fang Fang which gave her time to escape back to the Chinese dictatorship. How very thoughtful of them. The second Trump impeachment also failed and hardly surprising when an impeachment is supposed to remove a sitting president and by the time it happened Trump was no longer president. These people are running your country America, well, officially anyway. Terrifying isn’t it?

## **Outcomes tell the story - always**

The outcome of all this – and it’s the *outcome* on which Renegade Minds focus, not the words – was that a vicious, hysterical and

obviously pre-planned assault was launched on Pushbackers to censor, silence and discredit them and even targeted their right to earn a living. They have since been condemned as ‘domestic terrorists’ that need to be treated like Al-Qaeda and Islamic State. ‘Domestic terrorists’ is a label the Cult has been trying to make stick since the period of the Oklahoma bombing in 1995 which was blamed on ‘far-right domestic terrorists’. If you read *The Trigger* you will see that the bombing was clearly a Problem-Reaction-Solution carried out by the Deep State during a Bill Clinton administration so corrupt that no dictionary definition of the term would even nearly suffice. Nearly 30,000 troops were deployed from all over America to the empty streets of Washington for Biden’s inauguration. Ten thousand of them stayed on with the pretext of protecting the capital from insurrectionists when it was more psychological programming to normalise the use of the military in domestic law enforcement in support of the Cult plan for a police-military state. Biden’s fascist administration began a purge of ‘wrong-thinkers’ in the military which means anyone that is not on board with Woke. The Capitol Building was surrounded by a fence with razor wire and the Land of the Free was further symbolically and literally dismantled. The circle was completed with the installation of Biden and the exploitation of the QAnon Psyop.

America had never been so divided since the civil war of the 19th century, Pushbackers were isolated and dubbed terrorists and now, as was always going to happen, the Cult immediately set about deleting what little was left of freedom and transforming American society through a swish of the hand of the most controlled ‘president’ in American history leading (officially at least) the most extreme regime since the country was declared an independent state on July 4th, 1776. Biden issued undebated, dictatorial executive orders almost by the hour in his opening days in office across the whole spectrum of the Cult wish-list including diluting controls on the border with Mexico allowing thousands of migrants to illegally enter the United States to transform the demographics of America and import an election-changing number of perceived Democrat

voters. Then there were Biden deportation amnesties for the already illegally resident (estimated to be as high as 20 or even 30 million). A bill before Congress awarded American citizenship to anyone who could prove they had worked in agriculture for just 180 days in the previous two years as 'Big Ag' secured its slave labour long-term. There were the plans to add new states to the union such as Puerto Rico and making Washington DC a state. They are all parts of a plan to ensure that the Cult-owned Woke Democrats would be permanently in power.

## **Border – what border?**

I have exposed in detail in other books how mass immigration into the United States and Europe is the work of Cult networks fuelled by the tens of billions spent to this and other ends by George Soros and his global Open Society (open borders) Foundations. The impact can be seen in America alone where the population has increased by *100 million* in little more than 30 years mostly through immigration. I wrote in *The Answer* that the plan was to have so many people crossing the southern border that the numbers become unstoppable and we are now there under Cult-owned Biden. El Salvador in Central America puts the scale of what is happening into context. A third of the population now lives in the United States, much of it illegally, and many more are on the way. The methodology is to crush Central and South American countries economically and spread violence through machete-wielding psychopathic gangs like MS-13 based in El Salvador and now operating in many American cities. Biden-imposed lax security at the southern border means that it is all but open. He said before his 'election' that he wanted to see a surge towards the border if he became president and that was the green light for people to do just that after election day to create the human disaster that followed for both America and the migrants. When that surge came the imbecilic Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez said it wasn't a 'surge' because they are 'children, not insurgents' and the term 'surge' (used by Biden) was a claim of 'white supremacists'.

This disingenuous lady may one day enter the realm of the most basic intelligence, but it won't be any time soon.

Sabbatians and the Cult are in the process of destroying America by importing violent people and gangs in among the genuine to terrorise American cities and by overwhelming services that cannot cope with the sheer volume of new arrivals. Something similar is happening in Europe as Western society in general is targeted for demographic and cultural transformation and upheaval. The plan demands violence and crime to create an environment of intimidation, fear and division and Soros has been funding the election of district attorneys across America who then stop prosecuting many crimes, reduce sentences for violent crimes and free as many violent criminals as they can. Sabbatians are creating the chaos from which order – their order – can respond in a classic Problem-Reaction-Solution. A Freemasonic moto says ‘Ordo Ab Chao’ (Order out of Chaos) and this is why the Cult is constantly creating chaos to impose a new ‘order’. Here you have the reason the Cult is constantly creating chaos. The ‘Covid’ hoax can be seen with those entering the United States by plane being forced to take a ‘Covid’ test while migrants flooding through southern border processing facilities do not. Nothing is put in the way of mass migration and if that means ignoring the government’s own ‘Covid’ rules then so be it. They know it’s all bullshit anyway. Any pushback on this is denounced as ‘racist’ by Wokers and Sabbatian fronts like the ultra-Zionist Anti-Defamation League headed by the appalling Jonathan Greenblatt which at the same time argues that Israel should not give citizenship and voting rights to more Palestinian Arabs or the ‘Jewish population’ (in truth the Sabbatian network) will lose control of the country.

## **Society-changing numbers**

Biden’s masters have declared that countries like El Salvador are so dangerous that their people must be allowed into the United States for humanitarian reasons when there are fewer murders in large parts of many Central American countries than in US cities like

Baltimore. That is not to say Central America cannot be a dangerous place and Cult-controlled American governments have been making it so since way back, along with the dismantling of economies, in a long-term plan to drive people north into the United States. Parts of Central America are very dangerous, but in other areas the story is being greatly exaggerated to justify relaxing immigration criteria. Migrants are being offered free healthcare and education in the United States as another incentive to head for the border and there is no requirement to be financially independent before you can enter to prevent the resources of America being drained. You can't blame migrants for seeking what they believe will be a better life, but they are being played by the Cult for dark and nefarious ends. The numbers since Biden took office are huge. In February, 2021, more than 100,000 people were known to have tried to enter the US illegally through the southern border (it was 34,000 in the same month in 2020) and in March it was 170,000 – a 418 percent increase on March, 2020. These numbers are only known people, not the ones who get in unseen. The true figure for migrants illegally crossing the border in a single month was estimated by one congressman at 250,000 and that number will only rise under Biden's current policy. Gangs of murdering drug-running thugs that control the Mexican side of the border demand money – thousands of dollars – to let migrants cross the Rio Grande into America. At the same time gun battles are breaking out on the border several times a week between rival Mexican drug gangs (which now operate globally) who are equipped with sophisticated military-grade weapons, grenades and armoured vehicles. While the Capitol Building was being 'protected' from a non-existent 'threat' by thousands of troops, and others were still deployed at the time in the Cult Neocon war in Afghanistan, the southern border of America was left to its fate. This is not incompetence, it is cold calculation.

By March, 2021, there were 17,000 unaccompanied children held at border facilities and many of them are ensnared by people traffickers for paedophile rings and raped on their journey north to America. This is not conjecture – this is fact. Many of those designated

children are in reality teenage boys or older. Meanwhile Wokers posture their self-purity for encouraging poor and tragic people to come to America and face this nightmare both on the journey and at the border with the disgusting figure of House Speaker Nancy Pelosi giving disingenuous speeches about caring for migrants. The woman's evil. Wokers condemned Trump for having children in cages at the border (so did Obama, *Shhhh*), but now they are sleeping on the floor without access to a shower with one border facility 729 percent over capacity. The Biden insanity even proposed flying migrants from the southern border to the northern border with Canada for 'processing'. The whole shambles is being overseen by ultra-Zionist Secretary of Homeland Security, the moronic liar Alejandro Mayorkas, who banned news cameras at border facilities to stop Americans seeing what was happening. Mayorkas said there was not a ban on news crews; it was just that they were not allowed to film. Alongside him at Homeland Security is another ultra-Zionist Cass Sunstein appointed by Biden to oversee new immigration laws. Sunstein despises conspiracy researchers to the point where he suggests they should be banned or *taxed* for having such views. The man is not bonkers or anything. He's perfectly well-adjusted, but adjusted to what is the question. Criticise what is happening and you are a 'white supremacist' when earlier non-white immigrants also oppose the numbers which effect their lives and opportunities. Black people in poor areas are particularly damaged by uncontrolled immigration and the increased competition for work opportunities with those who will work for less. They are also losing voting power as Hispanics become more dominant in former black areas. It's a downward spiral for them while the billionaires behind the policy drone on about how much they care about black people and 'racism'. None of this is about compassion for migrants or black people – that's just wind and air. Migrants are instead being mercilessly exploited to transform America while the countries they leave are losing their future and the same is true in Europe. Mass immigration may now be the work of Woke Democrats, but it can be traced back to the 1986 Immigration Reform and Control Act (it

wasn't) signed into law by Republican hero President Ronald Reagan which gave amnesty to millions living in the United States illegally and other incentives for people to head for the southern border. Here we have the one-party state at work again.

## **Save me syndrome**

Almost every aspect of what I have been exposing as the Cult agenda was on display in even the first days of 'Biden' with silencing of Pushbackers at the forefront of everything. A Renegade Mind will view the Trump years and QAnon in a very different light to their supporters and advocates as the dots are connected. The QAnon/Trump Psyop has given the Cult all it was looking for. We may not know how much, or little, that Trump realised he was being used, but that's a side issue. This pincer movement produced the desired outcome of dividing America and having Pushbackers isolated. To turn this around we have to look at new routes to empowerment which do not include handing our power to other people and groups through what I will call the 'Save Me Syndrome' – 'I want someone else to do it so that I don't have to'. We have seen this at work throughout human history and the QAnon/Trump Psyop is only the latest incarnation alongside all the others. Religion is an obvious expression of this when people look to a 'god' or priest to save them or tell them how to be saved and then there are 'save me' politicians like Trump. Politics is a diversion and not a 'saviour'. It is a means to block positive change, not make it possible.

Save Me Syndrome always comes with the same repeating theme of handing your power to whom or what you believe will save you while your real 'saviour' stares back from the mirror every morning. Renegade Minds are constantly vigilant in this regard and always asking the question 'What can I do?' rather than 'What can someone else do for me?' Gandhi was right when he said: 'You must be the change you want to see in the world.' We are indeed the people we have been waiting for. We are presented with a constant raft of reasons to concede that power to others and forget where the real power is. Humanity has the numbers and the Cult does not. It has to

use diversion and division to target the unstoppable power that comes from unity. Religions, governments, politicians, corporations, media, QAnon, are all different manifestations of this power-diversion and dilution. Refusing to give your power to governments and instead handing it to Trump and QAnon is not to take a new direction, but merely to recycle the old one with new names on the posters. I will explore this phenomenon as we proceed and how to break the cycles and recycles that got us here through the mists of repeating perception and so repeating history.

For now we shall turn to the most potent example in the entire human story of the consequences that follow when you give your power away. I am talking, of course, of the 'Covid' hoax.

## CHAPTER FOUR

### 'Covid': Calculated catastrophe

*Facts are threatening to those invested in fraud*  
DaShanne Stokes

We can easily unravel the real reason for the 'Covid pandemic' hoax by employing the Renegade Mind methodology that I have outlined this far. We'll start by comparing the long-planned Cult outcome with the 'Covid pandemic' outcome. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey.

I have highlighted the plan for the Hunger Games Society which has been in my books for so many years with the very few controlling the very many through ongoing dependency. To create this dependency it is essential to destroy independent livelihoods, businesses and employment to make the population reliant on the state (the Cult) for even the basics of life through a guaranteed pittance income. While independence of income remained these Cult ambitions would be thwarted. With this knowledge it was easy to see where the 'pandemic' hoax was going once talk of 'lockdowns' began and the closing of all but perceived 'essential' businesses to 'save' us from an alleged 'deadly virus'. Cult corporations like Amazon and Walmart were naturally considered 'essential' while mom and pop shops and stores had their doors closed by fascist decree. As a result with every new lockdown and new regulation more small and medium, even large businesses not owned by the Cult, went to the wall while Cult giants and their frontmen and women grew financially fatter by the second. Mom and pop were

denied an income and the right to earn a living and the wealth of people like Jeff Bezos (Amazon), Mark Zuckerberg (Facebook) and Sergei Brin and Larry Page (Google/Alphabet) have reached record levels. The Cult was increasing its own power through further dramatic concentrations of wealth while the competition was being destroyed and brought into a state of dependency. Lockdowns have been instigated to secure that very end and were never anything to do with health. My brother Paul spent 45 years building up a bus repair business, but lockdowns meant buses were running at a fraction of normal levels for months on end. Similar stories can told in their hundreds of millions worldwide. Efforts of a lifetime coldly destroyed by Cult multi-billionaires and their lackeys in government and law enforcement who continued to earn their living from the taxation of the people while denying the right of the same people to earn theirs. How different it would have been if those making and enforcing these decisions had to face the same financial hardships of those they affected, but they never do.

## **Gates of Hell**

Behind it all in the full knowledge of what he is doing and why is the psychopathic figure of Cult operative Bill Gates. His puppet Tedros at the World Health Organization declared 'Covid' a pandemic in March, 2020. The WHO had changed the definition of a 'pandemic' in 2009 just a month before declaring the 'swine flu pandemic' which would not have been so under the previous definition. The same applies to 'Covid'. The definition had included... 'an infection by an infectious agent, occurring simultaneously in different countries, with a significant mortality rate relative to the proportion of the population infected'. The new definition removed the need for 'significant mortality'. The 'pandemic' has been fraudulent even down to the definition, but Gates demanded economy-destroying lockdowns, school closures, social distancing, mandatory masks, a 'vaccination' for every man, woman and child on the planet and severe consequences and restrictions for those that refused. Who gave him this power? The

Cult did which he serves like a little boy in short trousers doing what his daddy tells him. He and his psychopathic missus even smiled when they said that much worse was to come (what they knew was planned to come). Gates responded in the matter-of-fact way of all psychopaths to a question about the effect on the world economy of what he was doing:

Well, it won't go to zero but it will shrink. Global GDP is probably going to take the biggest hit ever [Gates was smiling as he said this] ... in my lifetime this will be the greatest economic hit. But you don't have a choice. People act as if you have a choice. People don't feel like going to the stadium when they might get infected ... People are deeply affected by seeing these stats, by knowing they could be part of the transmission chain, old people, their parents and grandparents, could be affected by this, and so you don't get to say ignore what is going on here.

There will be the ability to open up, particularly in rich countries, if things are done well over the next few months, but for the world at large normalcy only returns when we have largely vaccinated the entire population.

The man has no compassion or empathy. How could he when he's a psychopath like all Cult players? My own view is that even beyond that he is very seriously mentally ill. Look in his eyes and you can see this along with his crazy flailing arms. You don't do what he has done to the world population since the start of 2020 unless you are mentally ill and at the most extreme end of psychopathic. You especially don't do it when to you know, as we shall see, that cases and deaths from 'Covid' are fakery and a product of monumental figure massaging. 'These stats' that Gates referred to are based on a 'test' that's not testing for the 'virus' as he has known all along. He made his fortune with big Cult support as an infamously ruthless software salesman and now buys global control of 'health' (death) policy without the population he affects having any say. It's a breathtaking outrage. Gates talked about people being deeply affected by fear of 'Covid' when that was because of *him* and his global network lying to them minute-by-minute supported by a lying media that he seriously influences and funds to the tune of hundreds of millions. He's handed big sums to media operations including the BBC, NBC, Al Jazeera, Univision, *PBS NewsHour*,

*ProPublica, National Journal, The Guardian, The Financial Times, The Atlantic, Texas Tribune, USA Today* publisher Gannett, Washington Monthly, Le Monde, Center for Investigative Reporting, Pulitzer Center on Crisis Reporting, National Press Foundation, International Center for Journalists, Solutions Journalism Network, the Poynter Institute for Media Studies, and many more. Gates is everywhere in the ‘Covid’ hoax and the man must go to prison – or a mental facility – for the rest of his life and his money distributed to those he has taken such enormous psychopathic pleasure in crushing.

## **The Muscle**

The Hunger Games global structure demands a police-military state – a fusion of the two into one force – which viciously imposes the will of the Cult on the population and protects the Cult from public rebellion. In that regard, too, the ‘Covid’ hoax just keeps on giving. Often unlawful, ridiculous and contradictory ‘Covid’ rules and regulations have been policed across the world by moronic automatons and psychopaths made faceless by face-nappy masks and acting like the Nazi SS and fascist blackshirts and brownshirts of Hitler and Mussolini. The smallest departure from the rules decreed by the psychos in government and their clueless gofers were jumped upon by the face-nappy fascists. Brutality against public protestors soon became commonplace even on girls, women and old people as the brave men with the batons – the Face-Nappies as I call them – broke up peaceful protests and handed out fines like confetti to people who couldn’t earn a living let alone pay hundreds of pounds for what was once an accepted human right. Robot Face-Nappies of Nottingham police in the English East Midlands fined one group £11,000 for attending a child’s birthday party. For decades I charted the transformation of law enforcement as genuine, decent officers were replaced with psychopaths and the brain dead who would happily and brutally do whatever their masters told them. Now they were let loose on the public and I would emphasise the point that none of this just happened. The step-by-step change in the dynamic between police and public was orchestrated from the shadows by

those who knew where this was all going and the same with the perceptual reframing of those in all levels of authority and official administration through ‘training courses’ by organisations such as Common Purpose which was created in the late 1980s and given a massive boost in Blair era Britain until it became a global phenomenon. Supposed public ‘servants’ began to view the population as the enemy and the same was true of the police. This was the start of the explosion of behaviour manipulation organisations and networks preparing for the all-war on the human psyche unleashed with the dawn of 2020. I will go into more detail about this later in the book because it is a core part of what is happening.

Police desecrated beauty spots to deter people gathering and arrested women for walking in the countryside alone ‘too far’ from their homes. We had arrogant, clueless sergeants in the Isle of Wight police where I live posting on Facebook what they insisted the population must do or else. A schoolmaster sergeant called Radford looked young enough for me to ask if his mother knew he was out, but he was posting what he *expected* people to do while a Sergeant Wilkinson boasted about fining lads for meeting in a McDonald’s car park where they went to get a lockdown takeaway. Wilkinson added that he had even cancelled their order. What a pair of prats these people are and yet they have increasingly become the norm among Jackboot Johnson’s Yellowshirts once known as the British police. This was the theme all over the world with police savagery common during lockdown protests in the United States, the Netherlands, and the fascist state of Victoria in Australia under its tyrannical and again moronic premier Daniel Andrews. Amazing how tyrannical and moronic tend to work as a team and the same combination could be seen across America as arrogant, narcissistic Woke governors and mayors such as Gavin Newsom (California), Andrew Cuomo (New York), Gretchen Whitmer (Michigan), Lori Lightfoot (Chicago) and Eric Garcetti (Los Angeles) did their Nazi and Stalin impressions with the full support of the compliant brutality of their enforcers in uniform as they arrested small business owners defying

fascist shutdown orders and took them to jail in ankle shackles and handcuffs. This happened to bistro owner Marlena Pavlos-Hackney in Gretchen Whitmer's fascist state of Michigan when police arrived to enforce an order by a state-owned judge for 'putting the community at risk' at a time when other states like Texas were dropping restrictions and migrants were pouring across the southern border without any 'Covid' questions at all. I'm sure there are many officers appalled by what they are ordered to do, but not nearly enough of them. If they were truly appalled they would not do it. As the months passed every opportunity was taken to have the military involved to make their presence on the streets ever more familiar and 'normal' for the longer-term goal of police-military fusion.

Another crucial element to the Hunger Games enforcement network has been encouraging the public to report neighbours and others for 'breaking the lockdown rules'. The group faced with £11,000 in fines at the child's birthday party would have been dobbed-in by a neighbour with a brain the size of a pea. The technique was most famously employed by the Stasi secret police in communist East Germany who had public informants placed throughout the population. A police chief in the UK says his force doesn't need to carry out 'Covid' patrols when they are flooded with so many calls from the public reporting other people for visiting the beach. Dorset police chief James Vaughan said people were so enthusiastic about snitching on their fellow humans they were now operating as an auxiliary arm of the police: 'We are still getting around 400 reports a week from the public, so we will respond to reports ... We won't need to be doing hotspot patrols because people are very quick to pick the phone up and tell us.' Vaughan didn't say that this is a pillar of all tyrannies of whatever complexion and the means to hugely extend the reach of enforcement while spreading distrust among the people and making them wary of doing anything that might get them reported. Those narcissistic Isle of Wight sergeants Radford and Wilkinson never fail to add a link to their Facebook posts where the public can inform on their fellow slaves.

Neither would be self-aware enough to realise they were imitating the Stasi which they might well never have heard of. Government psychologists that I will expose later laid out a policy to turn communities against each other in the same way.

## **A coincidence? Yep, and I can knit fog**

I knew from the start of the alleged pandemic that this was a Cult operation. It presented limitless potential to rapidly advance the Cult agenda and exploit manipulated fear to demand that every man, woman and child on the planet was ‘vaccinated’ in a process never used on humans before which infuses self-replicating *synthetic* material into human cells. Remember the plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic biological state. I’ll deal with the ‘vaccine’ (that’s not actually a vaccine) when I focus on the genetic agenda. Enough to say here that mass global ‘vaccination’ justified by this ‘new virus’ set alarms ringing after 30 years of tracking these people and their methods. The ‘Covid’ hoax officially beginning in China was also a big red flag for reasons I will be explaining. The agenda potential was so enormous that I could dismiss any idea that the ‘virus’ appeared naturally. Major happenings with major agenda implications never occur without Cult involvement in making them happen. My questions were twofold in early 2020 as the media began its campaign to induce global fear and hysteria: Was this alleged infectious agent released on purpose by the Cult or did it even exist at all? I then did what I always do in these situations. I sat, observed and waited to see where the evidence and information would take me. By March and early April synchronicity was strongly – and ever more so since then – pointing me in the direction of *there is no ‘virus’*. I went public on that with derision even from swathes of the alternative media that voiced a scenario that the Chinese government released the ‘virus’ in league with Deep State elements in the United States from a top-level bio-lab in Wuhan where the ‘virus’ is said to have first appeared. I looked at that possibility, but I didn’t buy it for several reasons. Deaths from the ‘virus’ did not in any way match what they

would have been with a ‘deadly bioweapon’ and it is much more effective if you sell the *illusion* of an infectious agent rather than having a real one unless you can control through injection who has it and who doesn’t. Otherwise you lose control of events. A made-up ‘virus’ gives you a blank sheet of paper on which you can make it do whatever you like and have any symptoms or mutant ‘variants’ you choose to add while a real infectious agent would limit you to what it actually does. A phantom disease allows you to have endless ludicrous ‘studies’ on the ‘Covid’ dollar to widen the perceived impact by inventing ever more ‘at risk’ groups including one study which said those who walk slowly may be almost four times more likely to die from the ‘virus’. People are in psychiatric wards for less.

A real ‘deadly bioweapon’ can take out people in the hierarchy that are not part of the Cult, but essential to its operation. Obviously they don’t want that. Releasing a real disease means you immediately lose control of it. Releasing an illusory one means you don’t. Again it’s vital that people are extra careful when dealing with what they want to hear. A bioweapon unleashed from a Chinese laboratory in collusion with the American Deep State may fit a conspiracy narrative, but is it true? Would it not be far more effective to use the excuse of a ‘virus’ to justify the real bioweapon – the ‘vaccine’? That way your disease agent does not have to be transmitted and arrives directly through a syringe. I saw a French virologist Luc Montagnier quoted in the alternative media as saying he had discovered that the alleged ‘new’ severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus , or SARS-CoV-2, was made artificially and included elements of the human immunodeficiency ‘virus’ (HIV) and a parasite that causes malaria. SARS-CoV-2 is alleged to trigger an alleged illness called Covid-19. I remembered Montagnier’s name from my research years before into claims that an HIV ‘retrovirus’ causes AIDS – claims that were demolished by Berkeley virologist Peter Duesberg who showed that no one had ever proved that HIV causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or AIDS. Claims that become accepted as fact, publicly and medically, with no proof whatsoever are an ever-recurring story that profoundly applies to

'Covid'. Nevertheless, despite the lack of proof, Montagnier's team at the Pasteur Institute in Paris had a long dispute with American researcher Robert Gallo over which of them discovered and isolated the HIV 'virus' and with *no evidence* found it to cause AIDS. You will see later that there is also no evidence that any 'virus' causes any disease or that there is even such a thing as a 'virus' in the way it is said to exist. The claim to have 'isolated' the HIV 'virus' will be presented in its real context as we come to the shocking story – and it is a story – of SARS-CoV-2 and so will Montagnier's assertion that he identified the full SARS-CoV-2 genome.

## **Hoax in the making**

We can pick up the 'Covid' story in 2010 and the publication by the Rockefeller Foundation of a document called 'Scenarios for the Future of Technology and International Development'. The inner circle of the Rockefeller family has been serving the Cult since John D. Rockefeller (1839-1937) made his fortune with Standard Oil. It is less well known that the same Rockefeller – the Bill Gates of his day – was responsible for establishing what is now referred to as 'Big Pharma', the global network of pharmaceutical companies that make outrageous profits dispensing scalpel and drug 'medicine' and are obsessed with pumping vaccines in ever-increasing number into as many human arms and backsides as possible. John D. Rockefeller was the driving force behind the creation of the 'education' system in the United States and elsewhere specifically designed to program the perceptions of generations thereafter. The Rockefeller family donated exceptionally valuable land in New York for the United Nations building and were central in establishing the World Health Organization in 1948 as an agency of the UN which was created from the start as a Trojan horse and stalking horse for world government. Now enter Bill Gates. His family and the Rockefellers have long been extremely close and I have seen genealogy which claims that if you go back far enough the two families fuse into the same bloodline. Gates has said that the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation was inspired by the Rockefeller Foundation and why not

when both are serving the same Cult? Major tax-exempt foundations are overwhelmingly criminal enterprises in which Cult assets fund the Cult agenda in the guise of 'philanthropy' while avoiding tax in the process. Cult operatives can become mega-rich in their role of front men and women for the psychopaths at the inner core and they, too, have to be psychopaths to knowingly serve such evil. Part of the deal is that a big percentage of the wealth gleaned from representing the Cult has to be spent advancing the ambitions of the Cult and hence you have the Rockefeller Foundation, Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (and so many more) and people like George Soros with his global Open Society Foundations spending their billions in pursuit of global Cult control. Gates is a global public face of the Cult with his interventions in world affairs including Big Tech influence; a central role in the 'Covid' and 'vaccine' scam; promotion of the climate change shakedown; manipulation of education; geoengineering of the skies; and his food-control agenda as the biggest owner of farmland in America, his GMO promotion and through other means. As one writer said: 'Gates monopolizes or wields disproportionate influence over the tech industry, global health and vaccines, agriculture and food policy (including biopiracy and fake food), weather modification and other climate technologies, surveillance, education and media.' The almost limitless wealth secured through Microsoft and other not-allowed-to-fail ventures (including vaccines) has been ploughed into a long, long list of Cult projects designed to enslave the entire human race. Gates and the Rockefellers have been working as one unit with the Rockefeller-established World Health Organization leading global 'Covid' policy controlled by Gates through his mouth-piece Tedros. Gates became the WHO's biggest funder when Trump announced that the American government would cease its donations, but Biden immediately said he would restore the money when he took office in January, 2021. The Gates Foundation (the Cult) owns through limitless funding the world health system and the major players across the globe in the 'Covid' hoax.

Okay, with that background we return to that Rockefeller Foundation document of 2010 headed ‘Scenarios for the Future of Technology and International Development’ and its ‘imaginary’ epidemic of a virulent and deadly influenza strain which infected 20 percent of the global population and killed eight million in seven months. The Rockefeller scenario was that the epidemic destroyed economies, closed shops, offices and other businesses and led to governments imposing fierce rules and restrictions that included mandatory wearing of face masks and body-temperature checks to enter communal spaces like railway stations and supermarkets. The document predicted that even after the height of the Rockefeller-envisioned epidemic the authoritarian rule would continue to deal with further pandemics, transnational terrorism, environmental crises and rising poverty. Now you may think that the Rockefellers are our modern-day seers or alternatively, and rather more likely, that they well knew what was planned a few years further on. Fascism had to be imposed, you see, to ‘protect citizens from risk and exposure’. The Rockefeller scenario document said:

During the pandemic, national leaders around the world flexed their authority and imposed airtight rules and restrictions, from the mandatory wearing of face masks to body-temperature checks at the entries to communal spaces like train stations and supermarkets. Even after the pandemic faded, this more authoritarian control and oversight of citizens and their activities stuck and even intensified. In order to protect themselves from the spread of increasingly global problems – from pandemics and transnational terrorism to environmental crises and rising poverty – leaders around the world took a firmer grip on power.

At first, the notion of a more controlled world gained wide acceptance and approval. Citizens willingly gave up some of their sovereignty – and their privacy – to more paternalistic states in exchange for greater safety and stability. Citizens were more tolerant, and even eager, for top-down direction and oversight, and national leaders had more latitude to impose order in the ways they saw fit.

In developed countries, this heightened oversight took many forms: biometric IDs for all citizens, for example, and tighter regulation of key industries whose stability was deemed vital to national interests. In many developed countries, enforced cooperation with a suite of new regulations and agreements slowly but steadily restored both order and, importantly, economic growth.

There we have the prophetic Rockefellers in 2010 and three years later came their paper for the Global Health Summit in Beijing, China, when government representatives, the private sector, international organisations and groups met to discuss the next 100 years of 'global health'. The Rockefeller Foundation-funded paper was called 'Dreaming the Future of Health for the Next 100 Years' and more prophecy ensued as it described a dystopian future: 'The abundance of data, digitally tracking and linking people may mean the 'death of privacy' and may replace physical interaction with transient, virtual connection, generating isolation and raising questions of how values are shaped in virtual networks.' Next in the 'Covid' hoax preparation sequence came a 'table top' simulation in 2018 for another 'imaginary' pandemic of a disease called Clade X which was said to kill 900 million people. The exercise was organised by the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins University's Center for Health Security in the United States and this is the very same university that has been compiling the disgustingly and systematically erroneous global figures for 'Covid' cases and deaths. Similar Johns Hopkins health crisis scenarios have included the Dark Winter exercise in 2001 and Atlantic Storm in 2005.

## **Nostradamus 201**

For sheer predictive genius look no further prophecy-watchers than the Bill Gates-funded Event 201 held only six weeks before the 'coronavirus pandemic' is supposed to have broken out in China and Event 201 was based on a scenario of a global 'coronavirus pandemic'. Melinda Gates, the great man's missus, told the BBC that he had 'prepared for years' for a coronavirus pandemic which told us what we already knew. Nostradamugates had predicted in a TED talk in 2015 that a pandemic was coming that would kill a lot of people and demolish the world economy. My god, the man is a machine – possibly even literally. Now here he was only weeks before the real thing funding just such a simulated scenario and involving his friends and associates at Johns Hopkins, the World Economic Forum Cult-front of Klaus Schwab, the United Nations,

Johnson & Johnson, major banks, and officials from China and the Centers for Disease Control in the United States. What synchronicity – Johns Hopkins would go on to compile the fraudulent ‘Covid’ figures, the World Economic Forum and Schwab would push the ‘Great Reset’ in response to ‘Covid’, the Centers for Disease Control would be at the forefront of ‘Covid’ policy in the United States, Johnson & Johnson would produce a ‘Covid vaccine’, and everything would officially start just weeks later in China. Spooky, eh? They were even accurate in creating a simulation of a ‘virus’ pandemic because the ‘real thing’ would also be a simulation. Event 201 was not an exercise preparing for something that might happen; it was a rehearsal for what those in control knew was *going* to happen and very shortly. Hours of this simulation were posted on the Internet and the various themes and responses mirrored what would soon be imposed to transform human society. News stories were inserted and what they said would be commonplace a few weeks later with still more prophecy perfection. Much discussion focused on the need to deal with misinformation and the ‘anti-vax movement’ which is exactly what happened when the ‘virus’ arrived – was said to have arrived – in the West.

Cult-owned social media banned criticism and exposure of the official ‘virus’ narrative and when I said there *was* no ‘virus’ in early April, 2020, I was banned by one platform after another including YouTube, Facebook and later Twitter. The mainstream broadcast media in Britain was in effect banned from interviewing me by the Tony-Blair-created government broadcasting censor Ofcom headed by career government bureaucrat Melanie Dawes who was appointed just as the ‘virus’ hoax was about to play out in January, 2020. At the same time the Ickonic media platform was using Vimeo, another ultra-Zionist-owned operation, while our own player was being created and they deleted in an instant hundreds of videos, documentaries, series and shows to confirm their unbelievable vindictiveness. We had copies, of course, and they had to be restored one by one when our player was ready. These people have no class. Sabbatian Facebook promised free advertisements for the Gates-

controlled World Health Organization narrative while deleting ‘false claims and conspiracy theories’ to stop ‘misinformation’ about the alleged coronavirus. All these responses could be seen just a short while earlier in the scenarios of Event 201. Extreme censorship was absolutely crucial for the Cult because the official story was so ridiculous and unsupportable by the evidence that it could never survive open debate and the free-flow of information and opinion. If you can’t win a debate then don’t have one is the Cult’s approach throughout history. Facebook’s little boy front man – front boy – Mark Zuckerberg equated ‘credible and accurate information’ with official sources and exposing their lies with ‘misinformation’.

## **Silencing those that can see**

The censorship dynamic of Event 201 is now the norm with an army of narrative-supporting ‘fact-checker’ organisations whose entire reason for being is to tell the public that official narratives are true and those exposing them are lying. One of the most appalling of these ‘fact-checkers’ is called NewsGuard founded by ultra-Zionist Americans Gordon Crovitz and Steven Brill. Crovitz is a former publisher of *The Wall Street Journal*, former Executive Vice President of Dow Jones, a member of the Council on Foreign Relations (CFR), and on the board of the American Association of Rhodes Scholars. The CFR and Rhodes Scholarships, named after Rothschild agent Cecil Rhodes who plundered the gold and diamonds of South Africa for his masters and the Cult, have featured widely in my books. NewsGuard don’t seem to like me for some reason – I really can’t think why – and they have done all they can to have me censored and discredited which is, to quote an old British politician, like being savaged by a dead sheep. They are, however, like all in the censorship network, very well connected and funded by organisations themselves funded by, or connected to, Bill Gates. As you would expect with anything associated with Gates NewsGuard has an offshoot called HealthGuard which ‘fights online health care hoaxes’. How very kind. Somehow the NewsGuard European Managing Director Anna-Sophie Harling, a remarkably young-

looking woman with no broadcasting experience and little hands-on work in journalism, has somehow secured a position on the ‘Content Board’ of UK government broadcast censor Ofcom. An executive of an organisation seeking to discredit dissidents of the official narratives is making decisions for the government broadcast ‘regulator’ about content?? Another appalling ‘fact-checker’ is Full Fact funded by George Soros and global censors Google and Facebook.

It’s amazing how many activists in the ‘fact-checking’, ‘anti-hate’, arena turn up in government-related positions – people like UK Labour Party activist Imran Ahmed who heads the Center for Countering Digital Hate founded by people like Morgan McSweeney, now chief of staff to the Labour Party’s hapless and useless ‘leader’ Keir Starmer. Digital Hate – which is what it really is – uses the American spelling of Center to betray its connection to a transatlantic network of similar organisations which in 2020 shapeshifted from attacking people for ‘hate’ to attacking them for questioning the ‘Covid’ hoax and the dangers of the ‘Covid vaccine’. It’s just a coincidence, you understand. This is one of Imran Ahmed’s hysterical statements: ‘I would go beyond calling anti-vaxxers conspiracy theorists to say they are an extremist group that pose a national security risk.’ No one could ever accuse this prat of understatement and he’s including in that those parents who are now against vaccines after their children were damaged for life or killed by them. He’s such a nice man. Ahmed does the rounds of the Woke media getting soft-ball questions from spineless ‘journalists’ who never ask what right he has to campaign to destroy the freedom of speech of others while he demands it for himself. There also seems to be an overrepresentation in Ofcom of people connected to the narrative-worshipping BBC. This incredible global network of narrative-support was super-vital when the ‘Covid’ hoax was played in the light of the mega-whopper lies that have to be defended from the spotlight cast by the most basic intelligence.

## **Setting the scene**

The Cult plays the long game and proceeds step-by-step ensuring that everything is in place before major cards are played and they don't come any bigger than the 'Covid' hoax. The psychopaths can't handle events where the outcome isn't certain and as little as possible – preferably nothing – is left to chance. Politicians, government and medical officials who would follow direction were brought to illusory power in advance by the Cult web whether on the national stage or others like state governors and mayors of America. For decades the dynamic between officialdom, law enforcement and the public was changed from one of service to one of control and dictatorship. Behaviour manipulation networks established within government were waiting to impose the coming 'Covid' rules and regulations specifically designed to subdue and rewire the psyche of the people in the guise of protecting health. These included in the UK the Behavioural Insights Team part-owned by the British government Cabinet Office; the Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours (SPI-B); and a whole web of intelligence and military groups seeking to direct the conversation on social media and control the narrative. Among them are the cyberwarfare (on the people) 77th Brigade of the British military which is also coordinated through the Cabinet Office as civilian and military leadership continues to combine in what they call the Fusion Doctrine. The 77th Brigade is a British equivalent of the infamous Israeli (Sabbatian) military cyberwarfare and Internet manipulation operation Unit 8200 which I expose at length in *The Trigger*. Also carefully in place were the medical and science advisers to government – many on the payroll past or present of Bill Gates – and a whole alternative structure of unelected government stood by to take control when elected parliaments were effectively closed down once the 'Covid' card was slammed on the table. The structure I have described here and so much more was installed in every major country through the Cult networks. The top-down control hierarchy looks like this: The Cult – Cult-owned Gates – the World Health Organization and Tedros – Gates-funded or controlled chief medical officers and science 'advisers' (dictators) in each country –

political ‘leaders’ – law enforcement – The People. Through this simple global communication and enforcement structure the policy of the Cult could be imposed on virtually the entire human population so long as they acquiesced to the fascism. With everything in place it was time for the button to be pressed in late 2019/early 2020.

These were the prime goals the Cult had to secure for its will to prevail:

- 1) Locking down economies, closing all but designated ‘essential’ businesses (Cult-owned corporations were ‘essential’), and putting the population under house arrest was an imperative to destroy independent income and employment and ensure dependency on the Cult-controlled state in the Hunger Games Society. Lockdowns had to be established as the global blueprint from the start to respond to the ‘virus’ and followed by pretty much the entire world.
- 2) The global population had to be terrified into believing in a deadly ‘virus’ that didn’t actually exist so they would unquestioningly obey authority in the belief that authority must know how best to protect them and their families. Software salesman Gates would suddenly morph into the world’s health expert and be promoted as such by the Cult-owned media.
- 3) A method of testing that wasn’t testing for the ‘virus’, but was only claimed to be, had to be in place to provide the illusion of ‘cases’ and subsequent ‘deaths’ that had a very different cause to the ‘Covid-19’ that would be scribbled on the death certificate.
- 4) Because there was no ‘virus’ and the great majority testing positive with a test not testing for the ‘virus’ would have no symptoms of anything the lie had to be sold that people without symptoms (without the ‘virus’) could still pass it on to others. This was crucial to justify for the first time quarantining – house arresting – healthy people. Without this the economy-destroying lockdown of *everybody* could not have been credibly sold.
- 5) The ‘saviour’ had to be seen as a vaccine which beyond evil drug companies were working like angels of mercy to develop as quickly as possible, with all corners cut, to save the day. The public must absolutely not know that the ‘vaccine’ had nothing to do with a ‘virus’ or that the contents were ready and waiting with a very different motive long before the ‘Covid’ card was even lifted from the pack.

I said in March, 2020, that the ‘vaccine’ would have been created way ahead of the ‘Covid’ hoax which justified its use and the following December an article in the New York *Intelligencer* magazine said the Moderna ‘vaccine’ had been ‘designed’ by

January, 2020. This was ‘before China had even acknowledged that the disease could be transmitted from human to human, more than a week before the first confirmed coronavirus case in the United States’. The article said that by the time the first American death was announced a month later ‘the vaccine had already been manufactured and shipped to the National Institutes of Health for the beginning of its Phase I clinical trial’. The ‘vaccine’ was actually ‘designed’ long before that although even with this timescale you would expect the article to ask how on earth it could have been done that quickly. Instead it asked why the ‘vaccine’ had not been rolled out then and not months later. Journalism in the mainstream is truly dead. I am going to detail in the next chapter why the ‘virus’ has never existed and how a hoax on that scale was possible, but first the foundation on which the Big Lie of ‘Covid’ was built.

## **The test that doesn’t test**

Fraudulent ‘testing’ is the bottom line of the whole ‘Covid’ hoax and was the means by which a ‘virus’ that did not exist *appeared* to exist. They could only achieve this magic trick by using a test not testing for the ‘virus’. To use a test that *was* testing for the ‘virus’ would mean that every test would come back negative given there was no ‘virus’. They chose to exploit something called the RT-PCR test invented by American biochemist Kary Mullis in the 1980s who said publicly that his PCR test … *cannot detect infectious disease*. Yes, the ‘test’ used worldwide to detect infectious ‘Covid’ to produce all the illusory ‘cases’ and ‘deaths’ compiled by Johns Hopkins and others *cannot detect infectious disease*. This fact came from the mouth of the man who invented PCR and was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1993 for doing so. Sadly, and incredibly conveniently for the Cult, Mullis died in August, 2019, at the age of 74 just before his test would be fraudulently used to unleash fascism on the world. He was said to have died from pneumonia which was an irony in itself. A few months later he would have had ‘Covid-19’ on his death certificate. I say the timing of his death was convenient because had he lived Mullis, a brilliant, honest and decent man, would have been

vociferously speaking out against the use of his test to detect 'Covid' when it was never designed, or able, to do that. I know that to be true given that Mullis made the same point when his test was used to 'detect' – not detect – HIV. He had been seriously critical of the Gallo/Montagnier claim to have isolated the HIV 'virus' and shown it to cause AIDS for which Mullis said there was no evidence. AIDS is actually not a disease but a series of diseases from which people die all the time. When they die from those *same diseases* after a positive 'test' for HIV then AIDS goes on their death certificate. I think I've heard that before somewhere. Countries instigated a policy with 'Covid' that anyone who tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' and died of any other cause within 28 days and even longer 'Covid-19' had to go on the death certificate. Cases have come from the test that can't test for infectious disease and the deaths are those who have died of *anything* after testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'. I'll have much more later about the death certificate scandal.

Mullis was deeply dismissive of the now US 'Covid' star Anthony Fauci who he said was a liar who didn't know anything about anything – 'and I would say that to his face – nothing.' He said of Fauci: 'The man thinks he can take a blood sample, put it in an electron microscope and if it's got a virus in there you'll know it – he doesn't understand electron microscopy and he doesn't understand medicine and shouldn't be in a position like he's in.' That position, terrifyingly, has made him the decider of 'Covid' fascism policy on behalf of the Cult in his role as director since 1984 of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) while his record of being wrong is laughable; but being wrong, so long as it's the *right kind* of wrong, is why the Cult loves him. He'll say anything the Cult tells him to say. Fauci was made Chief Medical Adviser to the President immediately Biden took office. Biden was installed in the White House by Cult manipulation and one of his first decisions was to elevate Fauci to a position of even more control. This is a coincidence? Yes, and I identify as a flamenco dancer called Lola. How does such an incompetent criminal like Fauci remain in that

pivotal position in American health since *the 1980s*? When you serve the Cult it looks after you until you are surplus to requirements. Kary Mullis said prophetically of Fauci and his like: ‘Those guys have an agenda and it’s not an agenda we would like them to have ... they make their own rules, they change them when they want to, and Tony Fauci does not mind going on television in front of the people who pay his salary and lie directly into the camera.’ Fauci has done that almost daily since the ‘Covid’ hoax began. Lying is in Fauci’s DNA. To make the situation crystal clear about the PCR test this is a direct quote from its inventor Kary Mullis:

It [the PCR test] doesn’t tell you that you’re sick and doesn’t tell you that the thing you ended up with was really going to hurt you ...’

Ask yourself why governments and medical systems the world over have been using this very test to decide who is ‘infected’ with the SARS-CoV-2 ‘virus’ and the alleged disease it allegedly causes, ‘Covid-19’. The answer to that question will tell you what has been going on. By the way, here’s a little show-stopper – the ‘new’ SARS-CoV-2 ‘virus’ was ‘identified’ as such right from the start using ... *the PCR test not testing for the ‘virus’*. If you are new to this and find that shocking then stick around. I have hardly started yet. Even worse, other ‘tests’, like the ‘Lateral Flow Device’ (LFD), are considered so useless that they have to be *confirmed* by the PCR test! Leaked emails written by Ben Dyson, adviser to UK ‘Health’ Secretary Matt Hancock, said they were ‘dangerously unreliable’. Dyson, executive director of strategy at the Department of Health, wrote: ‘As of today, someone who gets a positive LFD result in (say) London has at best a 25 per cent chance of it being a true positive, but if it is a self-reported test potentially as low as 10 per cent (on an optimistic assumption about specificity) or as low as 2 per cent (on a more pessimistic assumption).’ These are the ‘tests’ that schoolchildren and the public are being urged to have twice a week or more and have to isolate if they get a positive. Each fake positive goes in the statistics as a ‘case’ no matter how ludicrously inaccurate and the

'cases' drive lockdown, masks and the pressure to 'vaccinate'. The government said in response to the email leak that the 'tests' were accurate which confirmed yet again what shocking bloody liars they are. The real false positive rate is *100 percent* as we'll see. In another 'you couldn't make it up' the UK government agreed to pay £2.8 billion to California's Innova Medical Group to supply the irrelevant lateral flow tests. The company's primary test-making centre is in China. Innova Medical Group, established in March, 2020, is owned by Pasaca Capital Inc, chaired by Chinese-American millionaire Charles Huang who was born in Wuhan.

## **How it works – and how it doesn't**

The RT-PCR test, known by its full title of Polymerase chain reaction, is used across the world to make millions, even billions, of copies of a DNA/RNA genetic information sample. The process is called 'amplification' and means that a tiny sample of genetic material is amplified to bring out the detailed content. I stress that it is not testing for an infectious disease. It is simply amplifying a sample of genetic material. In the words of Kary Mullis: 'PCR is ... just a process that's used to make a whole lot of something out of something.' To emphasise the point companies that make the PCR tests circulated around the world to 'test' for 'Covid' warn on the box that it can't be used to detect 'Covid' or infectious disease and is for research purposes only. It's okay, rest for a minute and you'll be fine. This is the test that produces the 'cases' and 'deaths' that have been used to destroy human society. All those global and national medical and scientific 'experts' demanding this destruction to 'save us' KNOW that the test is not testing for the 'virus' and the cases and deaths they claim to be real are an almost unimaginable fraud. Every one of them and so many others including politicians and psychopaths like Gates and Tedros must be brought before Nuremberg-type trials and jailed for the rest of their lives. The more the genetic sample is amplified by PCR the more elements of that material become sensitive to the test and by that I don't mean sensitive for a 'virus' but for elements of the genetic material which

is naturally in the body or relates to remnants of old conditions of various kinds lying dormant and causing no disease. Once the amplification of the PCR reaches a certain level *everyone* will test positive. So much of the material has been made sensitive to the test that everyone will have some part of it in their body. Even lying criminals like Fauci have said that once PCR amplifications pass 35 cycles everything will be a false positive that cannot be trusted for the reasons I have described. I say, like many proper doctors and scientists, that 100 percent of the ‘positives’ are false, but let’s just go with Fauci for a moment.

He says that any amplification over 35 cycles will produce false positives and yet the US Centers for Disease Control (CDC) and Food and Drug Administration (FDA) have recommended up to 40 cycles and the National Health Service (NHS) in Britain admitted in an internal document for staff that it was using 45 cycles of amplification. A long list of other countries has been doing the same and at least one ‘testing’ laboratory has been using 50 cycles. Have you ever heard a doctor, medical ‘expert’ or the media ask what level of amplification has been used to claim a ‘positive’. The ‘test’ comes back ‘positive’ and so you have the ‘virus’, end of story. Now we can see how the government in Tanzania could send off samples from a goat and a pawpaw fruit under human names and both came back positive for ‘Covid-19’. Tanzania president John Magufuli mocked the ‘Covid’ hysteria, the PCR test and masks and refused to import the DNA-manipulating ‘vaccine’. The Cult hated him and an article sponsored by the Bill Gates Foundation appeared in the London *Guardian* in February, 2021, headed ‘It’s time for Africa to rein in Tanzania’s anti-vaxxer president’. Well, ‘reined in’ he shortly was. Magufuli appeared in good health, but then, in March, 2021, he was dead at 61 from ‘heart failure’. He was replaced by Samia Hassan Suhulu who is connected to Klaus Schwab’s World Economic Forum and she immediately reversed Magufuli’s ‘Covid’ policy. A sample of cola tested positive for ‘Covid’ with the PCR test in Germany while American actress and singer-songwriter Erykah Badu tested positive in one nostril and negative in the other. Footballer Ronaldo called

the PCR test ‘bullshit’ after testing positive three times and being forced to quarantine and miss matches when there was nothing wrong with him. The mantra from Tedros at the World Health Organization and national governments (same thing) has been test, test, test. They know that the more tests they can generate the more fake ‘cases’ they have which go on to become ‘deaths’ in ways I am coming to. The UK government has its Operation Moonshot planned to test multiple millions every day in workplaces and schools with free tests for everyone to use twice a week at home in line with the Cult plan from the start to make testing part of life. A government advertisement for an ‘Interim Head of Asymptomatic Testing Communication’ said the job included responsibility for delivering a ‘communications strategy’ (propaganda) ‘to support the expansion of asymptomatic testing that *“normalises testing as part of everyday life”*. More tests means more fake ‘cases’, ‘deaths’ and fascism. I have heard of, and from, many people who booked a test, couldn’t turn up, and yet got a positive result through the post for a test they’d never even had. The whole thing is crazy, but for the Cult there’s method in the madness. Controlling and manipulating the level of amplification of the test means the authorities can control whenever they want the number of apparent ‘cases’ and ‘deaths’. If they want to justify more fascist lockdown and destruction of livelihoods they keep the amplification high. If they want to give the illusion that lockdowns and the ‘vaccine’ are working then they lower the amplification and ‘cases’ and ‘deaths’ will appear to fall. In January, 2021, the Cult-owned World Health Organization suddenly warned laboratories about over-amplification of the test and to lower the threshold. Suddenly headlines began appearing such as: ‘Why ARE “Covid” cases plummeting?’ This was just when the vaccine rollout was underway and I had predicted months before they would make cases appear to fall through amplification tampering when the ‘vaccine’ came. These people are so predictable.

## Cow vaccines?

The question must be asked of what is on the test swabs being poked far up the nose of the population to the base of the brain? A nasal swab punctured one woman's brain and caused it to leak fluid. Most of these procedures are being done by people with little training or medical knowledge. Dr Lorraine Day, former orthopaedic trauma surgeon and Chief of Orthopaedic Surgery at San Francisco General Hospital, says the tests are really a '*vaccine*'. Cows have long been vaccinated this way. She points out that masks have to cover the nose and the mouth where it is claimed the 'virus' exists in saliva. Why then don't they take saliva from the mouth as they do with a DNA test instead of pushing a long swab up the nose towards the brain? The ethmoid bone separates the nasal cavity from the brain and within that bone is the cribriform plate. Dr Day says that when the swab is pushed up against this plate and twisted the procedure is 'depositing things back there'. She claims that among these 'things' are nanoparticles that can enter the brain. Researchers have noted that a team at the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins have designed tiny, star-shaped micro-devices that can latch onto intestinal mucosa and release drugs into the body. Mucosa is the thin skin that covers the inside surface of parts of the body such as *the nose* and mouth and produces mucus to protect them. The Johns Hopkins micro-devices are called 'theragrippers' and were 'inspired' by a parasitic worm that digs its sharp teeth into a host's intestines. Nasal swabs are also coated in the sterilisation agent ethylene oxide. The US National Cancer Institute posts this explanation on its website:

At room temperature, ethylene oxide is a flammable colorless gas with a sweet odor. It is used primarily to produce other chemicals, including antifreeze. In smaller amounts, ethylene oxide is used as a pesticide and a sterilizing agent. The ability of ethylene oxide to damage DNA makes it an effective sterilizing agent but also accounts for its cancer-causing activity.

The Institute mentions lymphoma and leukaemia as cancers most frequently reported to be associated with occupational exposure to ethylene oxide along with stomach and breast cancers. How does anyone think this is going to work out with the constant testing

regime being inflicted on adults and children at home and at school that will accumulate in the body anything that's on the swab?

## **Doctors know best**

It is vital for people to realise that 'hero' doctors 'know' only what the Big Pharma-dominated medical authorities tell them to 'know' and if they refuse to 'know' what they are told to 'know' they are out the door. They are mostly not physicians or healers, but repeaters of the official narrative – or else. I have seen alleged professional doctors on British television make shocking statements that we are supposed to take seriously. One called 'Dr' Amir Khan, who is actually telling patients how to respond to illness, said that men could take the birth pill to 'help slow down the effects of Covid-19'. In March, 2021, another ridiculous 'Covid study' by an American doctor proposed injecting men with the female sex hormone progesterone as a 'Covid' treatment. British doctor Nighat Arif told the BBC that face coverings were now going to be part of ongoing normal. Yes, the vaccine protects you, she said (evidence?) ... but the way to deal with viruses in the community was always going to come down to hand washing, face covering and keeping a physical distance. That's not what we were told before the 'vaccine' was circulating. Arif said she couldn't imagine ever again going on the underground or in a lift without a mask. I was just thanking my good luck that she was not my doctor when she said – in March, 2021 – that if 'we are *behaving* and we are doing all the right things' she thought we could 'have our nearest and dearest around us at home ... around *Christmas* and *New Year!*' Her patronising delivery was the usual school teacher talking to six-year-olds as she repeated every government talking point and probably believed them all. If we have learned anything from the 'Covid' experience surely it must be that humanity's perception of doctors needs a fundamental rethink. NHS 'doctor' Sara Kayat told her television audience that the 'Covid vaccine' would '100 percent prevent hospitalisation and death'. Not even Big Pharma claimed that. We have to stop taking 'experts' at their word without question when so many of them are

clueless and only repeating the party line on which their careers depend. That is not to say there are not brilliant doctors – there are and I have spoken to many of them since all this began – but you won't see them in the mainstream media or quoted by the psychopaths and yes-people in government.

## **Remember the name – Christian Drosten**

German virologist Christian Drosten, Director of Charité Institute of Virology in Berlin, became a national star after the pandemic hoax began. He was feted on television and advised the German government on 'Covid' policy. Most importantly to the wider world Drosten led a group that produced the 'Covid' testing protocol for the PCR test. What a remarkable feat given the PCR cannot test for infectious disease and even more so when you think that Drosten said that his method of testing for SARS-CoV-2 was developed 'without having virus material available'. *He developed a test for a 'virus' that he didn't have and had never seen.* Let that sink in as you survey the global devastation that came from what he did. The whole catastrophe of Drosten's 'test' was based on the alleged genetic sequence published by Chinese scientists on the Internet. We will see in the next chapter that this alleged 'genetic sequence' has never been produced by China or anyone and cannot be when there *is no* SARS-CoV-2. Drosten, however, doesn't seem to let little details like that get in the way. He was the lead author with Victor Corman from the same Charité Hospital of the paper 'Detection of 2019 novel coronavirus (2019-nCoV) by real-time PCR' published in a magazine called *Eurosurveillance*. This became known as the Corman-Drosten paper. In November, 2020, with human society devastated by the effects of the Corman-Drosten test baloney, the protocol was publicly challenged by 22 international scientists and independent researchers from Europe, the United States, and Japan. Among them were senior molecular geneticists, biochemists, immunologists, and microbiologists. They produced a document headed 'External peer review of the RTPCR test to detect SARS-Cov-2 Reveals 10 Major Flaws At The Molecular and Methodological Level: Consequences

For False-Positive Results'. The flaws in the Corman-Drosten test included the following:

- The test is non-specific because of erroneous design
- Results are enormously variable
- The test is unable to discriminate between the whole 'virus' and viral fragments
- It doesn't have positive or negative controls
- The test lacks a standard operating procedure
- It is unsupported by proper peer view

The scientists said the PCR 'Covid' testing protocol was not founded on science and they demanded the Corman-Drosten paper be retracted by *Eurosurveillance*. They said all present and previous Covid deaths, cases, and 'infection rates' should be subject to a massive retroactive inquiry. Lockdowns and travel restrictions should be reviewed and relaxed and those diagnosed through PCR to have 'Covid-19' should not be forced to isolate. Dr Kevin Corbett, a health researcher and nurse educator with a long academic career producing a stream of peer-reviewed publications at many UK universities, made the same point about the PCR test debacle. He said of the scientists' conclusions: 'Every scientific rationale for the development of that test has been totally destroyed by this paper. It's like Hiroshima/Nagasaki to the Covid test.' He said that China hadn't given them an isolated 'virus' when Drosten developed the test. Instead they had developed the test from *a sequence in a gene bank.*' Put another way ... *they made it up!* The scientists were supported in this contention by a Portuguese appeals court which ruled in November, 2020, that PCR tests are unreliable and it is unlawful to quarantine people based solely on a PCR test. The point about China not providing an isolated virus must be true when the 'virus' has never been isolated to this day and the consequences of that will become clear. Drosten and company produced this useless 'protocol' right on cue in January, 2020, just as the 'virus' was said to

be moving westward and it somehow managed to successfully pass a peer-review in 24 hours. In other words there was no peer-review for a test that would be used to decide who had 'Covid' and who didn't across the world. The Cult-created, Gates-controlled World Health Organization immediately recommended all its nearly 200 member countries to use the Drosten PCR protocol to detect 'cases' and 'deaths'. The sting was underway and it continues to this day.

So who is this Christian Drosten that produced the means through which death, destruction and economic catastrophe would be justified? His education background, including his doctoral thesis, would appear to be somewhat shrouded in mystery and his track record is dire as with another essential player in the 'Covid' hoax, the Gates-funded Professor Neil Ferguson at the Gates-funded Imperial College in London of whom more shortly. Drosten predicted in 2003 that the alleged original SARS 'virus' (SARS-1') was an epidemic that could have serious effects on economies and an effective vaccine would take at least two years to produce. Drosten's answer to every alleged 'outbreak' is a vaccine which you won't be shocked to know. What followed were just 774 official deaths worldwide and none in Germany where there were only nine cases. That is even if you believe there ever was a SARS 'virus' when the evidence is zilch and I will expand on this in the next chapter. Drosten claims to be co-discoverer of 'SARS-1' and developed a test for it in 2003. He was screaming warnings about 'swine flu' in 2009 and how it was a widespread infection far more severe than any dangers from a vaccine could be and people should get vaccinated. It would be helpful for Drosten's vocal chords if he simply recorded the words 'the virus is deadly and you need to get vaccinated' and copies could be handed out whenever the latest made-up threat comes along. Drosten's swine flu epidemic never happened, but Big Pharma didn't mind with governments spending hundreds of millions on vaccines that hardly anyone bothered to use and many who did wished they hadn't. A study in 2010 revealed that the risk of dying from swine flu, or H1N1, was no higher than that of the annual seasonal flu which is what at least most of 'it' really was as in

the case of 'Covid-19'. A media investigation into Drosten asked how with such a record of inaccuracy he could be *the* government adviser on these issues. The answer to that question is the same with Drosten, Ferguson and Fauci – they keep on giving the authorities the 'conclusions' and 'advice' they want to hear. Drosten certainly produced the goods for them in January, 2020, with his PCR protocol garbage and provided the foundation of what German internal medicine specialist Dr Claus Köhnlein, co-author of *Virus Mania*, called the 'test pandemic'. The 22 scientists in the *Eurosurveillance* challenge called out conflicts of interest within the Drosten 'protocol' group and with good reason. Olfert Landt, a regular co-author of Drosten 'studies', owns the biotech company TIB Molbiol Syntheselabor GmbH in Berlin which manufactures and sells the tests that Drosten and his mates come up with. They have done this with SARS, Enterotoxigenic E. coli (ETEC), MERS, Zika 'virus', yellow fever, and now 'Covid'. Landt told the *Berliner Zeitung* newspaper:

The testing, design and development came from the Charité [Drosten and Corman]. We simply implemented it immediately in the form of a kit. And if we don't have the virus, which originally only existed in Wuhan, we can make a synthetic gene to simulate the genome of the virus. That's what we did very quickly.

This is more confirmation that the Drosten test was designed without access to the 'virus' and only a synthetic simulation which is what SARS-CoV-2 really is – a computer-generated synthetic fiction. It's quite an enterprise they have going here. A Drosten team decides what the test for something should be and Landt's biotech company flogs it to governments and medical systems across the world. His company must have made an absolute fortune since the 'Covid' hoax began. Dr Reiner Fuellmich, a prominent German consumer protection trial lawyer in Germany and California, is on Drosten's case and that of Tedros at the World Health Organization for crimes against humanity with a class-action lawsuit being prepared in the United States and other legal action in Germany.

## **Why China?**

Scamming the world with a ‘virus’ that doesn’t exist would seem impossible on the face of it, but not if you have control of the relatively few people that make policy decisions and the great majority of the global media. Remember it’s not about changing ‘real’ reality it’s about controlling *perception* of reality. You don’t have to make something happen you only have to make people *believe* that it’s happening. Renegade Minds understand this and are therefore much harder to swindle. ‘Covid-19’ is not a ‘real’ ‘virus’. It’s a mind virus, like a computer virus, which has infected the minds, not the bodies, of billions. It all started, publically at least, in China and that alone is of central significance. The Cult was behind the revolution led by its asset Mao Zedong, or Chairman Mao, which established the People’s Republic of China on October 1st, 1949. It should have been called The Cult’s Republic of China, but the name had to reflect the recurring illusion that vicious dictatorships are run by and for the people (see all the ‘Democratic Republics’ controlled by tyrants). In the same way we have the ‘Biden’ Democratic Republic of America officially ruled by a puppet tyrant (at least temporarily) on behalf of Cult tyrants. The creation of Mao’s merciless communist/fascist dictatorship was part of a frenzy of activity by the Cult at the conclusion of World War Two which, like the First World War, it had instigated through its assets in Germany, Britain, France, the United States and elsewhere. Israel was formed in 1948; the Soviet Union expanded its ‘Iron Curtain’ control, influence and military power with the Warsaw Pact communist alliance in 1955; the United Nations was formed in 1945 as a Cult precursor to world government; and a long list of world bodies would be established including the World Health Organization (1948), World Trade Organization (1948 under another name until 1995), International Monetary Fund (1945) and World Bank (1944). Human society was redrawn and hugely centralised in the global Problem-Reaction-Solution that was World War Two. All these changes were significant. Israel would become the headquarters of the Sabbatians

and the revolution in China would prepare the ground and control system for the events of 2019/2020.

Renegade Minds know there are no borders except for public consumption. The Cult is a seamless, borderless global entity and to understand the game we need to put aside labels like borders, nations, countries, communism, fascism and democracy. These delude the population into believing that countries are ruled within their borders by a government of whatever shade when these are mere agencies of a global power. America's illusion of democracy and China's communism/fascism are subsidiaries – vehicles – for the same agenda. We may hear about conflict and competition between America and China and on the lower levels that will be true; but at the Cult level they are branches of the same company in the way of the McDonald's example I gave earlier. I have tracked in the books over the years support by US governments of both parties for Chinese Communist Party infiltration of American society through allowing the sale of land, even military facilities, and the acquisition of American business and university influence. All this is underpinned by the infamous stealing of intellectual property and technological know-how. Cult-owned Silicon Valley corporations waive their fraudulent 'morality' to do business with human-rights-free China; Cult-controlled Disney has become China's PR department; and China in effect owns 'American' sports such as basketball which depends for much of its income on Chinese audiences. As a result any sports player, coach or official speaking out against China's horrific human rights record is immediately condemned or fired by the China-worshipping National Basketball Association. One of the first acts of China-controlled Biden was to issue an executive order telling federal agencies to stop making references to the 'virus' by the 'geographic location of its origin'. Long-time Congressman Jerry Nadler warned that criticising China, America's biggest rival, leads to hate crimes against Asian people in the United States. So shut up you bigot. China is fast closing in on Israel as a country that must not be criticised which is apt, really, given that Sabbatians control them both. The two countries have

developed close economic, military, technological and strategic ties which include involvement in China's 'Silk Road' transport and economic initiative to connect China with Europe. Israel was the first country in the Middle East to recognise the establishment of Mao's tyranny in 1950 months after it was established.

### **Project Wuhan – the 'Covid' Psyop**

I emphasise again that the Cult plays the long game and what is happening to the world today is the result of centuries of calculated manipulation following a script to take control step-by-step of every aspect of human society. I will discuss later the common force behind all this that has spanned those centuries and thousands of years if the truth be told. Instigating the Mao revolution in China in 1949 with a 2020 'pandemic' in mind is not only how they work – the 71 years between them is really quite short by the Cult's standards of manipulation preparation. The reason for the Cult's Chinese revolution was to create a fiercely-controlled environment within which an extreme structure for human control could be incubated to eventually be unleashed across the world. We have seen this happen since the 'pandemic' emerged from China with the Chinese control-structure founded on AI technology and tyrannical enforcement sweep across the West. Until the moment when the Cult went for broke in the West and put its fascism on public display Western governments had to pay some lip-service to freedom and democracy to not alert too many people to the tyranny-in-the-making. Freedoms were more subtly eroded and power centralised with covert government structures put in place waiting for the arrival of 2020 when that smokescreen of 'freedom' could be dispensed with. The West was not able to move towards tyranny before 2020 anything like as fast as China which was created as a tyranny and had no limits on how fast it could construct the Cult's blueprint for global control. When the time came to impose that structure on the world it was the same Cult-owned Chinese communist/fascist government that provided the excuse – the 'Covid pandemic'. It was absolutely crucial to the Cult plan for the Chinese response to the 'pandemic' –

draconian lockdowns of the entire population – to become the blueprint that Western countries would follow to destroy the livelihoods and freedom of their people. This is why the Cult-owned, Gates-owned, WHO Director-General Tedros said early on:

The Chinese government is to be congratulated for the extraordinary measures it has taken to contain the outbreak. China is actually setting a new standard for outbreak response and it is not an exaggeration.

*Forbes* magazine said of China: ‘... those measures protected untold millions from getting the disease’. The Rockefeller Foundation ‘epidemic scenario’ document in 2010 said ‘prophetically’:

However, a few countries did fare better – China in particular. The Chinese government’s quick imposition and enforcement of mandatory quarantine for all citizens, as well as its instant and near-hermetic sealing off of all borders, saved millions of lives, stopping the spread of the virus far earlier than in other countries and enabling a swifter post-pandemic recovery.

Once again – *spooky*.

The first official story was the ‘bat theory’ or rather the bat diversion. The source of the ‘virus outbreak’ we were told was a “wet market” in Wuhan where bats and other animals are bought and eaten in horrifically unhygienic conditions. Then another story emerged through the alternative media that the ‘virus’ had been released on purpose or by accident from a BSL-4 (biosafety level 4) laboratory in Wuhan not far from the wet market. The lab was reported to create and work with lethal concoctions and bioweapons. Biosafety level 4 is the highest in the World Health Organization system of safety and containment. Renegade Minds are aware of what I call designer manipulation. The ideal for the Cult is for people to buy its prime narrative which in the opening salvos of the ‘pandemic’ was the wet market story. It knows, however, that there is now a considerable worldwide alternative media of researchers sceptical of anything governments say and they are often given a version of events in a form they can perceive as credible while misdirecting them from the real truth. In this case let them

think that the conspiracy involved is a ‘bioweapon virus’ released from the Wuhan lab to keep them from the real conspiracy – *there is no ‘virus’*. The WHO’s current position on the source of the outbreak at the time of writing appears to be: ‘We haven’t got a clue, mate.’ This is a good position to maintain mystery and bewilderment. The inner circle will know where the ‘virus’ came from – *nowhere*. The bottom line was to ensure the public believed there *was* a ‘virus’ and it didn’t much matter if they thought it was natural or had been released from a lab. The belief that there was a ‘deadly virus’ was all that was needed to trigger global panic and fear. The population was terrified into handing their power to authority and doing what they were told. They had to or they were ‘all gonna die’.

In March, 2020, information began to come my way from real doctors and scientists and my own additional research which had my intuition screaming: ‘Yes, that’s it! *There is no virus.*’ The ‘bioweapon’ was not the ‘virus’; it was the ‘vaccine’ already being talked about that would be the bioweapon. My conclusion was further enhanced by happenings in Wuhan. The ‘virus’ was said to be sweeping the city and news footage circulated of people collapsing in the street (which they’ve never done in the West with the same ‘virus’). The Chinese government was building ‘new hospitals’ in a matter of ten days to ‘cope with demand’ such was the virulent nature of the ‘virus’. Yet in what seemed like no time the ‘new hospitals’ closed – even if they even opened – and China declared itself ‘virus-free’. It was back to business as usual. This was more propaganda to promote the Chinese draconian lockdowns in the West as the way to ‘beat the virus’. Trouble was that we subsequently had lockdown after lockdown, but never business as usual. As the people of the West and most of the rest of the world were caught in an ever-worsening spiral of lockdown, social distancing, masks, isolated old people, families forced apart, and livelihood destruction, it was party-time in Wuhan. Pictures emerged of thousands of people enjoying pool parties and concerts. It made no sense until you realised there never was a ‘virus’ and the

whole thing was a Cult set-up to transform human society out of one its major global strongholds – China.

How is it possible to deceive virtually the entire world population into believing there is a deadly virus when there is not even a ‘virus’ let alone a deadly one? It’s nothing like as difficult as you would think and that’s clearly true because it happened.

**Postscript:** See end of book Postscript for more on the ‘Wuhan lab virus release’ story which the authorities and media were pushing heavily in the summer of 2021 to divert attention from the truth that the ‘Covid virus’ is pure invention.

## CHAPTER FIVE

### **There is no ‘virus’**

***You can fool some of the people all of the time, and all of the people some of the time, but you cannot fool all of the people all of the time***

**Abraham Lincoln**

The greatest form of mind control is repetition. The more you repeat the same mantra of alleged ‘facts’ the more will accept them to be true. It becomes an ‘everyone knows that, mate’. If you can also censor any other version or alternative to your alleged ‘facts’ you are pretty much home and cooking.

By the start of 2020 the Cult owned the global mainstream media almost in its entirety to spew out its ‘Covid’ propaganda and ignore or discredit any other information and view. Cult-owned social media platforms in Cult-owned Silicon Valley were poised and ready to unleash a campaign of ferocious censorship to obliterate all but the official narrative. To complete the circle many demands for censorship by Silicon Valley were led by the mainstream media as ‘journalists’ became full-out enforcers for the Cult both as propagandists and censors. Part of this has been the influx of young people straight out of university who have become ‘journalists’ in significant positions. They have no experience and a headful of programmed perceptions from their years at school and university at a time when today’s young are the most perceptually-targeted generations in known human history given the insidious impact of technology. They enter the media perceptually prepared and ready to repeat the narratives of the system that programmed them to

repeat its narratives. The BBC has a truly pathetic ‘specialist disinformation reporter’ called Marianna Spring who fits this bill perfectly. She is clueless about the world, how it works and what is really going on. Her role is to discredit anyone doing the job that a proper journalist would do and system-serving hacks like Spring wouldn’t dare to do or even see the need to do. They are too busy licking the arse of authority which can never be wrong and, in the case of the BBC propaganda programme, *Panorama*, contacting payments systems such as PayPal to have a donations page taken down for a film company making documentaries questioning vaccines. Even the BBC soap opera *EastEnders* included a disgracefully biased scene in which an inarticulate white working class woman was made to look foolish for questioning the ‘vaccine’ while a well-spoken black man and Asian woman promoted the government narrative. It ticked every BBC box and the fact that the black and minority community was resisting the ‘vaccine’ had nothing to do with the way the scene was written. The BBC has become a disgusting tyrannical propaganda and censorship operation that should be defunded and disbanded and a free media take its place with a brief to stop censorship instead of demanding it. A BBC ‘interview’ with Gates goes something like: ‘Mr Gates, sir, if I can call you sir, would you like to tell our audience why you are such a great man, a wonderful humanitarian philanthropist, and why you should absolutely be allowed as a software salesman to decide health policy for approaching eight billion people? Thank you, sir, please sir.’ Propaganda programming has been incessant and merciless and when all you hear is the same story from the media, repeated by those around you who have only heard the same story, is it any wonder that people on a grand scale believe absolute mendacious garbage to be true? You are about to see, too, why this level of information control is necessary when the official ‘Covid’ narrative is so nonsensical and unsupportable by the evidence.

## **Structure of Deceit**

The pyramid structure through which the ‘Covid’ hoax has been manifested is very simple and has to be to work. As few people as possible have to be involved with full knowledge of what they are doing – and why – or the real story would get out. At the top of the pyramid are the inner core of the Cult which controls Bill Gates who, in turn, controls the World Health Organization through his pivotal funding and his puppet Director-General mouthpiece, Tedros.

Before he was appointed Tedros was chair of the Gates-founded Global Fund to ‘fight against AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria’, a board member of the Gates-funded ‘vaccine alliance’ GAVI, and on the board of another Gates-funded organisation. Gates owns him and picked him for a specific reason – Tedros is a crook and worse. ‘Dr’ Tedros (he’s not a medical doctor, the first WHO chief not to be) was a member of the tyrannical Marxist government of Ethiopia for decades with all its human rights abuses. He has faced allegations of corruption and misappropriation of funds and was exposed three times for covering up cholera epidemics while Ethiopia’s health minister. Tedros appointed the mass-murdering genocidal Zimbabwe dictator Robert Mugabe as a WHO goodwill ambassador for public health which, as with Tedros, is like appointing a psychopath to run a peace and love campaign. The move was so ridiculous that he had to drop Mugabe in the face of widespread condemnation. American economist David Steinman, a Nobel peace prize nominee, lodged a complaint with the International Criminal Court in The Hague over alleged genocide by Tedros when he was Ethiopia’s foreign minister. Steinman says Tedros was a ‘crucial decision maker’ who directed the actions of Ethiopia’s security forces from 2013 to 2015 and one of three officials in charge when those security services embarked on the ‘killing’ and ‘torturing’ of Ethiopians. You can see where Tedros is coming from and it’s sobering to think that he has been the vehicle for Gates and the Cult to direct the global response to ‘Covid’. Think about that. A psychopathic Cult dictates to psychopath Gates who dictates to psychopath Tedros who dictates how countries of the world must respond to a ‘Covid virus’ never scientifically shown to exist. At the same time psychopathic Cult-owned Silicon Valley information

giants like Google, YouTube, Facebook and Twitter announced very early on that they would give the Cult/Gates/Tedros/WHO version of the narrative free advertising and censor those who challenged their intelligence-insulting, mendacious story.

The next layer in the global ‘medical’ structure below the Cult, Gates and Tedros are the chief medical officers and science ‘advisers’ in each of the WHO member countries which means virtually all of them. Medical officers and arbiters of science (they’re not) then take the WHO policy and recommended responses and impose them on their country’s population while the political ‘leaders’ say they are deciding policy (they’re clearly not) by ‘following the science’ on the advice of the ‘experts’ – the same medical officers and science ‘advisers’ (dictators). In this way with the rarest of exceptions the entire world followed the same policy of lockdown, people distancing, masks and ‘vaccines’ dictated by the psychopathic Cult, psychopathic Gates and psychopathic Tedros who we are supposed to believe give a damn about the health of the world population they are seeking to enslave. That, amazingly, is all there is to it in terms of crucial decision-making. Medical staff in each country then follow like sheep the dictates of the shepherds at the top of the national medical hierarchies – chief medical officers and science ‘advisers’ who themselves follow like sheep the shepherds of the World Health Organization and the Cult. Shepherds at the national level often have major funding and other connections to Gates and his Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation which carefully hands out money like confetti at a wedding to control the entire global medical system from the WHO down.

## **Follow the money**

Christopher Whitty, Chief Medical Adviser to the UK Government at the centre of ‘virus’ policy, a senior adviser to the government’s Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE), and Executive Board member of the World Health Organization, was gifted a grant of \$40 million by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation for malaria research in Africa. The BBC described the unelected Whitty as ‘the

official who will probably have the greatest impact on our everyday lives of any individual policymaker in modern times' and so it turned out. What Gates and Tedros have said Whitty has done like his equivalents around the world. Patrick Vallance, co-chair of SAGE and the government's Chief Scientific Adviser, is a former executive of Big Pharma giant GlaxoSmithKline with its fundamental financial and business connections to Bill Gates. In September, 2020, it was revealed that Vallance owned a deferred bonus of shares in GlaxoSmithKline worth £600,000 while the company was 'developing' a 'Covid vaccine'. Move along now – nothing to see here – what could possibly be wrong with that? Imperial College in London, a major player in 'Covid' policy in Britain and elsewhere with its 'Covid-19' Response Team, is funded by Gates and has big connections to China while the now infamous Professor Neil Ferguson, the useless 'computer modeller' at Imperial College is also funded by Gates. Ferguson delivered the dramatically inaccurate excuse for the first lockdowns (much more in the next chapter). The Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation (IHME) in the United States, another source of outrageously false 'Covid' computer models to justify lockdowns, is bankrolled by Gates who is a vehement promotor of lockdowns. America's version of Whitty and Vallance, the again now infamous Anthony Fauci, has connections to 'Covid vaccine' maker Moderna as does Bill Gates through funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Fauci is director of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), a major recipient of Gates money, and they are very close. Deborah Birx who was appointed White House Coronavirus Response Coordinator in February, 2020, is yet another with ties to Gates. Everywhere you look at the different elements around the world behind the coordination and decision making of the 'Covid' hoax there is Bill Gates and his money. They include the World Health Organization; Centers for Disease Control (CDC) in the United States; National Institutes of Health (NIH) of Anthony Fauci; Imperial College and Neil Ferguson; the London School of Hygiene where Chris Whitty worked; Regulatory agencies like the UK Medicines & Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)

which gave emergency approval for ‘Covid vaccines’; Wellcome Trust; GAVI, the Vaccine Alliance; the Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI); Johns Hopkins University which has compiled the false ‘Covid’ figures; and the World Economic Forum. A [Nationalfile.com](#) article said:

Gates has a lot of pull in the medical world, he has a multi-million dollar relationship with Dr. Fauci, and Fauci originally took the Gates line supporting vaccines and casting doubt on [the drug hydroxychloroquine]. Coronavirus response team member Dr. Deborah Birx, appointed by former president Obama to serve as United States Global AIDS Coordinator, also sits on the board of a group that has received billions from Gates’ foundation, and Birx reportedly used a disputed Bill Gates-funded model for the White House’s Coronavirus effort. Gates is a big proponent for a population lockdown scenario for the Coronavirus outbreak.

Another funder of Moderna is the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the technology-development arm of the Pentagon and one of the most sinister organisations on earth. DARPA had a major role with the CIA covert technology-funding operation In-Q-Tel in the development of Google and social media which is now at the centre of global censorship. Fauci and Gates are extremely close and openly admit to talking regularly about ‘Covid’ policy, but then why wouldn’t Gates have a seat at every national ‘Covid’ table after his Foundation committed \$1.75 billion to the ‘fight against Covid-19’. When passed through our Orwellian Translation Unit this means that he has bought and paid for the Cult-driven ‘Covid’ response worldwide. Research the major ‘Covid’ response personnel in your own country and you will find the same Gates funding and other connections again and again. Medical and science chiefs following World Health Organization ‘policy’ sit atop a medical hierarchy in their country of administrators, doctors and nursing staff. These ‘subordinates’ are told they must work and behave in accordance with the policy delivered from the ‘top’ of the national ‘health’ pyramid which is largely the policy delivered by the WHO which is the policy delivered by Gates and the Cult. The whole ‘Covid’ narrative has been imposed on medical staff by a climate of fear although great numbers don’t even need that to comply. They do so through breathtaking levels of ignorance and

include doctors who go through life simply repeating what Big Pharma and their hierarchical masters tell them to say and believe. No wonder Big Pharma ‘medicine’ is one of the biggest killers on Planet Earth.

The same top-down system of intimidation operates with regard to the Cult Big Pharma cartel which also dictates policy through national and global medical systems in this way. The Cult and Big Pharma agendas are the same because the former controls and owns the latter. ‘Health’ administrators, doctors, and nursing staff are told to support and parrot the dictated policy or they will face consequences which can include being fired. How sad it’s been to see medical staff meekly repeating and imposing Cult policy without question and most of those who can see through the deceit are only willing to speak anonymously off the record. They know what will happen if their identity is known. This has left the courageous few to expose the lies about the ‘virus’, face masks, overwhelmed hospitals that aren’t, and the dangers of the ‘vaccine’ that isn’t a vaccine. When these medical professionals and scientists, some renowned in their field, have taken to the Internet to expose the truth their articles, comments and videos have been deleted by Cult-owned Facebook, Twitter and YouTube. What a real head-shaker to see YouTube videos with leading world scientists and highly qualified medical specialists with an added link underneath to the notorious Cult propaganda website *Wikipedia* to find the ‘facts’ about the same subject.

### **HIV – the ‘Covid’ trial-run**

I’ll give you an example of the consequences for health and truth that come from censorship and unquestioning belief in official narratives. The story was told by PCR inventor Kary Mullis in his book *Dancing Naked in the Mind Field*. He said that in 1984 he accepted as just another scientific fact that Luc Montagnier of France’s Pasteur Institute and Robert Gallo of America’s National Institutes of Health had independently discovered that a ‘retrovirus’ dubbed HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) caused AIDS. They

were, after all, Mullis writes, specialists in retroviruses. This is how the medical and science pyramids work. Something is announced or *assumed* and then becomes an everybody-knows-that purely through repetition of the assumption as if it is fact. Complete crap becomes accepted truth with no supporting evidence and only repetition of the crap. This is how a 'virus' that doesn't exist became the 'virus' that changed the world. The HIV-AIDS fairy story became a multi-billion pound industry and the media poured out propaganda terrifying the world about the deadly HIV 'virus' that caused the lethal AIDS. By then Mullis was working at a lab in Santa Monica, California, to detect retroviruses with his PCR test in blood donations received by the Red Cross. In doing so he asked a virologist where he could find a reference for HIV being the cause of AIDS. 'You don't need a reference,' the virologist said ... '*Everybody knows it.*' Mullis said he wanted to quote a reference in the report he was doing and he said he felt a little funny about not knowing the source of such an important discovery when everyone else seemed to. The virologist suggested he cite a report by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) on morbidity and mortality. Mullis read the report, but it only said that an organism had been identified and did not say how. The report did not identify the original scientific work. Physicians, however, *assumed* (key recurring theme) that if the CDC was convinced that HIV caused AIDS then proof must exist. Mullis continues:

I did computer searches. Neither Montagnier, Gallo, nor anyone else had published papers describing experiments which led to the conclusion that HIV probably caused AIDS. I read the papers in Science for which they had become well known as AIDS doctors, but all they had said there was that they had found evidence of a past infection by something which was probably HIV in some AIDS patients.

They found antibodies. Antibodies to viruses had always been considered evidence of past disease, not present disease. Antibodies signaled that the virus had been defeated. The patient had saved himself. There was no indication in these papers that this virus caused a disease. They didn't show that everybody with the antibodies had the disease. In fact they found some healthy people with antibodies.

Mullis asked why their work had been published if Montagnier and Gallo hadn't really found this evidence, and why had they been fighting so hard to get credit for the discovery? He says he was hesitant to write 'HIV is the probable cause of AIDS' until he found published evidence to support that. 'Tens of thousands of scientists and researchers were spending billions of dollars a year doing research based on this idea,' Mullis writes. 'The reason had to be there somewhere; otherwise these people would not have allowed their research to settle into one narrow channel of investigation.' He said he lectured about PCR at numerous meetings where people were always talking about HIV and he asked them how they knew that HIV was the cause of AIDS:

Everyone said something. Everyone had the answer at home, in the office, in some drawer. They all knew, and they would send me the papers as soon as they got back. But I never got any papers. Nobody ever sent me the news about how AIDS was caused by HIV.

Eventually Mullis was able to ask Montagnier himself about the reference proof when he lectured in San Diego at the grand opening of the University of California AIDS Research Center. Mullis says this was the last time he would ask his question without showing anger. Montagnier said he should reference the CDC report. 'I read it', Mullis said, and it didn't answer the question. 'If Montagnier didn't know the answer who the hell did?' Then one night Mullis was driving when an interview came on National Public Radio with Peter Duesberg, a prominent virologist at Berkeley and a California Scientist of the Year. Mullis says he finally understood why he could not find references that connected HIV to AIDS – *there weren't any!* No one had ever proved that HIV causes AIDS even though it had spawned a multi-billion pound global industry and the media was repeating this as fact every day in their articles and broadcasts terrifying the shit out of people about AIDS and giving the impression that a positive test for HIV (see 'Covid') was a death sentence. Duesberg was a threat to the AIDS gravy train and the agenda that underpinned it. He was therefore abused and castigated after he told the Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences

there was no good evidence implicating the new ‘virus’. Editors rejected his manuscripts and his research funds were deleted. Mullis points out that the CDC has defined AIDS as one of more than 30 diseases *if accompanied* by a positive result on a test that detects antibodies to HIV; but those same diseases are not defined as AIDS cases when antibodies are not detected:

If an HIV-positive woman develops uterine cancer, for example, she is considered to have AIDS. If she is not HIV positive, she simply has uterine cancer. An HIV-positive man with tuberculosis has AIDS; if he tests negative he simply has tuberculosis. If he lives in Kenya or Colombia, where the test for HIV antibodies is too expensive, he is simply presumed to have the antibodies and therefore AIDS, and therefore he can be treated in the World Health Organization’s clinic. It’s the only medical help available in some places. And it’s free, because the countries that support WHO are worried about AIDS.

Mullis accuses the CDC of continually adding new diseases (see ever more ‘Covid symptoms’) to the grand AIDS definition and of virtually doctoring the books to make it appear as if the disease continued to spread. He cites how in 1993 the CDC enormously broadened its AIDS definition and county health authorities were delighted because they received \$2,500 per year from the Federal government for every reported AIDS case. Ladies and gentlemen, I have just described, via Kary Mullis, the ‘Covid pandemic’ of 2020 and beyond. Every element is the same and it’s been pulled off in the same way by the same networks.

### **The ‘Covid virus’ exists? Okay – prove it. Er ... still waiting**

What Kary Mullis described with regard to ‘HIV’ has been repeated with ‘Covid’. A claim is made that a new, or ‘novel’, infection has been found and the entire medical system of the world repeats that as fact exactly as they did with HIV and AIDS. No one in the mainstream asks rather relevant questions such as ‘How do you know?’ and ‘Where is your proof?’ The SARS-CoV-2 ‘virus’ and the ‘Covid-19 disease’ became an overnight ‘everybody-knows-that’. The origin could be debated and mulled over, but what you could not suggest was that ‘SARS-CoV-2’ didn’t exist. That would be

ridiculous. ‘Everybody knows’ the ‘virus’ exists. Well, I didn’t for one along with American proper doctors like Andrew Kaufman and Tom Cowan and long-time American proper journalist Jon Rappaport. We dared to pursue the obvious and simple question: ‘Where’s the evidence?’ The overwhelming majority in medicine, journalism and the general public did not think to ask that. After all, *everyone knew* there was a new ‘virus’. Everyone was saying so and I heard it on the BBC. Some would eventually argue that the ‘deadly virus’ was nothing like as deadly as claimed, but few would venture into the realms of its very existence. Had they done so they would have found that the evidence for that claim had gone AWOL as with HIV causes AIDS. In fact, not even that. For something to go AWOL it has to exist in the first place and scientific proof for a ‘SARS-Cov-2’ can be filed under nothing, nowhere and zilch.

Dr Andrew Kaufman is a board-certified forensic psychiatrist in New York State, a Doctor of Medicine and former Assistant Professor and Medical Director of Psychiatry at SUNY Upstate Medical University, and Medical Instructor of Hematology and Oncology at the Medical School of South Carolina. He also studied biology at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) and trained in Psychiatry at Duke University. Kaufman is retired from allopathic medicine, but remains a consultant and educator on natural healing, I saw a video of his very early on in the ‘Covid’ hoax in which he questioned claims about the ‘virus’ in the absence of any supporting evidence and with plenty pointing the other way. I did everything I could to circulate his work which I felt was asking the pivotal questions that needed an answer. I can recommend an excellent pull-together interview he did with the website The Last Vagabond entitled *Dr Andrew Kaufman: Virus Isolation, Terrain Theory and Covid-19* and his website is [andrewkaufmanmd.com](http://andrewkaufmanmd.com). Kaufman is not only a forensic psychiatrist; he is forensic in all that he does. He always reads original scientific papers, experiments and studies instead of second-third-fourth-hand reports about the ‘virus’ in the media which are repeating the repeated repetition of the narrative. When he did so with the original Chinese ‘virus’ papers Kaufman

realised that there was no evidence of a ‘SARS-Cov-2’. They had never – from the start – shown it to exist and every repeat of this claim worldwide was based on the accepted existence of proof that was nowhere to be found – see Kary Mullis and HIV. Here we go again.

## **Let's postulate**

Kaufman discovered that the Chinese authorities immediately concluded that the cause of an illness that broke out among about 200 initial patients in Wuhan was a ‘new virus’ when there were no grounds to make that conclusion. The alleged ‘virus’ was not isolated from other genetic material in their samples and then shown through a system known as Koch’s postulates to be the causative agent of the illness. The world was told that the SARS-Cov-2 ‘virus’ caused a disease they called ‘Covid-19’ which had ‘flu-like’ symptoms and could lead to respiratory problems and pneumonia. If it wasn’t so tragic it would almost be funny. *‘Flu-like’ symptoms?* *Pneumonia? Respiratory disease?* What in CHINA and particularly in Wuhan, one of the most polluted cities in the world with a resulting epidemic of respiratory disease?? Three hundred thousand people get pneumonia in China every year and there are nearly a billion cases worldwide of ‘flu-like symptoms’. These have a whole range of causes – including pollution in Wuhan – but no other possibility was credibly considered in late 2019 when the world was told there was a new and deadly ‘virus’. The global prevalence of pneumonia and ‘flu-like systems’ gave the Cult networks unlimited potential to re-diagnose these other causes as the mythical ‘Covid-19’ and that is what they did from the very start. Kaufman revealed how Chinese medical and science authorities (all subordinates to the Cult-owned communist government) took genetic material from the lungs of only a few of the first patients. The material contained their own cells, bacteria, fungi and other microorganisms living in their bodies. The only way you could prove the existence of the ‘virus’ and its responsibility for the alleged ‘Covid-19’ was to isolate the virus from all the other material – a process also known as ‘purification’ – and

then follow the postulates sequence developed in the late 19th century by German physician and bacteriologist Robert Koch which became the ‘gold standard’ for connecting an alleged causation agent to a disease:

1. The microorganism (bacteria, fungus, virus, etc.) must be present in every case of the disease and all patients must have the same symptoms. It must also *not be present in healthy individuals*.
2. The microorganism must be isolated from the host with the disease. If the microorganism is a bacteria or fungus it must be grown in a pure culture. If it is a virus, it must be purified (i.e. containing no other material except the virus particles) from a clinical sample.
3. The specific disease, with all of its characteristics, must be reproduced when the infectious agent (the purified virus or a pure culture of bacteria or fungi) is inoculated into a healthy, susceptible host.
4. The microorganism must be recoverable from the experimentally infected host as in step 2.

*Not one* of these criteria has been met in the case of ‘SARS-Cov-2’ and ‘Covid-19’. Not ONE. EVER. Robert Koch refers to bacteria and not viruses. What are called ‘viral particles’ are so minute (hence masks are useless by any definition) that they could only be seen after the invention of the electron microscope in the 1930s and can still only be observed through that means. American bacteriologist and virologist Thomas Milton Rivers, the so-called ‘Father of Modern Virology’ who was very significantly director of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research in the 1930s, developed a less stringent version of Koch’s postulates to identify ‘virus’ causation known as ‘Rivers criteria’. ‘Covid’ did not pass that process either. Some even doubt whether any ‘virus’ can be isolated from other particles containing genetic material in the Koch method. Freedom of Information requests in many countries asking for scientific proof that the ‘Covid virus’ has been purified and isolated and shown to exist have all come back with a ‘we don’t have that’ and when this happened with a request to the UK Department of Health they added this comment:

However, outside of the scope of the [Freedom of Information Act] and on a discretionary basis, the following information has been advised to us, which may be of interest. Most infectious diseases are caused by viruses, bacteria or fungi. Some bacteria or fungi have the capacity to grow on their own in isolation, for example in colonies on a petri dish. Viruses are different in that they are what we call 'obligate pathogens' – that is, they cannot survive or reproduce without infecting a host ...

... For some diseases, it is possible to establish causation between a microorganism and a disease by isolating the pathogen from a patient, growing it in pure culture and reintroducing it to a healthy organism. These are known as 'Koch's postulates' and were developed in 1882. However, as our understanding of disease and different disease-causing agents has advanced, these are no longer the method for determining causation [Andrew Kaufman asks why in that case are there two published articles falsely claiming to satisfy Koch's postulates].

It has long been known that viral diseases cannot be identified in this way as viruses cannot be grown in 'pure culture'. When a patient is tested for a viral illness, this is normally done by looking for the presence of antigens, or viral genetic code in a host with molecular biology techniques [Kaufman asks how you could know the origin of these chemicals without having a pure culture for comparison].

For the record 'antigens' are defined so:

Invading microorganisms have antigens on their surface that the human body can recognise as being foreign – meaning not belonging to it. When the body recognises a foreign antigen, lymphocytes (white blood cells) produce antibodies, which are complementary in shape to the antigen.

Notwithstanding that this is open to question in relation to 'SARS-CoV-2' the presence of 'antibodies' can have many causes and they are found in people that are perfectly well. Kary Mullis said: 'Antibodies ... had always been considered evidence of past disease, not present disease.'

## **'Covid' really is a computer 'virus'**

Where the UK Department of Health statement says 'viruses' are now 'diagnosed' through a 'viral genetic code in a host with molecular biology techniques', they mean ... *the PCR test* which its inventor said cannot test for infectious disease. They have no credible method of connecting a 'virus' to a disease and we will see that there is no scientific proof that any 'virus' causes any disease or there is any such thing as a 'virus' in the way that it is described. Tenacious Canadian researcher Christine Massey and her team made

some 40 Freedom of Information requests to national public health agencies in different countries asking for proof that SARS-CoV-2 has been isolated and not one of them could supply that information. Massey said of her request in Canada: 'Freedom of Information reveals Public Health Agency of Canada has no record of 'SARS-CoV-2' isolation performed by anyone, anywhere, ever.' If you accept the comment from the UK Department of Health it's because they can't isolate a 'virus'. Even so many 'science' papers claimed to have isolated the 'Covid virus' until they were questioned and had to admit they hadn't. A reply from the Robert Koch Institute in Germany was typical: 'I am not aware of a paper which purified isolated SARS-CoV-2.' So what the hell was Christian Drosten and his gang using to design the 'Covid' testing protocol that has produced all the illusory Covid' cases and 'Covid' deaths when the head of the Chinese version of the CDC admitted there was a problem right from the start in that the 'virus' had never been isolated/purified? Breathe deeply: What they are calling 'Covid' is actually created by a *computer program* i.e. *they made it up* – er, that's it. They took lung fluid, with many sources of genetic material, from one single person alleged to be infected with Covid-19 by a PCR test which they *claimed*, without clear evidence, contained a 'virus'. They used several computer programs to create a model of a theoretical virus genome sequence from more than fifty-six million small sequences of RNA, each of an unknown source, assembling them like a puzzle with no known solution. The computer filled in the gaps with sequences from bits in the gene bank to make it look like a bat SARS-like coronavirus! A wave of the magic wand and poof, an *in silico* (computer-generated) genome, a scientific fantasy, was created. UK health researcher Dr Kevin Corbett made the same point with this analogy:

... It's like giving you a few bones and saying that's your fish. It could be any fish. Not even a skeleton. Here's a few fragments of bones. That's your fish ... It's all from gene bank and the bits of the virus sequence that weren't there they made up.

They synthetically created them to fill in the blanks. That's what genetics is; it's a code. So it's ABBBCCDDDD and you're missing some what you think is EEE so you put it in. It's all

synthetic. You just manufacture the bits that are missing. This is the end result of the geneticization of virology. This is basically a computer virus.

Further confirmation came in an email exchange between British citizen journalist Frances Leader and the government's Medicines & Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency (the Gates-funded MHRA) which gave emergency permission for untested 'Covid vaccines' to be used. The agency admitted that the 'vaccine' is not based on an isolated 'virus', but comes from a *computer-generated model*. Frances Leader was naturally banned from Cult-owned fascist Twitter for making this exchange public. The process of creating computer-generated alleged 'viruses' is called 'in silico' or 'in silicon' – computer chips – and the term 'in silico' is believed to originate with biological experiments using only a computer in 1989. 'Vaccines' involved with 'Covid' are also produced 'in silico' or by computer not a natural process. If the original 'virus' is nothing more than a made-up computer model how can there be 'new variants' of something that never existed in the first place? They are not new 'variants'; they are new *computer models* only minutely different to the original program and designed to further terrify the population into having the 'vaccine' and submitting to fascism. You want a 'new variant'? Click, click, enter – there you go. Tell the medical profession that you have discovered a 'South African variant', 'UK variants' or a 'Brazilian variant' and in the usual HIV-causes-AIDS manner they will unquestioningly repeat it with no evidence whatsoever to support these claims. They will go on television and warn about the dangers of 'new variants' while doing nothing more than repeating what they have been told to be true and knowing that any deviation from that would be career suicide. Big-time insiders will know it's a hoax, but much of the medical community is clueless about the way they are being played and themselves play the public without even being aware they are doing so. What an interesting 'coincidence' that AstraZeneca and Oxford University were conducting 'Covid vaccine trials' in the three countries – the UK, South Africa and Brazil – where the first three 'variants' were claimed to have 'broken out'.

## **Here's your 'virus' – it's a unicorn**

Dr Andrew Kaufman presented a brilliant analysis describing how the 'virus' was imagined into fake existence when he dissected an article published by *Nature* and written by 19 authors detailing *alleged* 'sequencing of a complete viral genome' of the 'new SARS-CoV-2 virus'. This computer-modelled *in silico* genome was used as a template for all subsequent genome sequencing experiments that resulted in the so-called variants which he said now number more than 6,000. The fake genome was constructed from more than 56 million individual short strands of RNA. Those little pieces were assembled into longer pieces by finding areas of overlapping sequences. The computer programs created over two million possible combinations from which the authors simply chose the longest one. They then compared this to a 'bat virus' and the computer 'alignment' rearranged the sequence and filled in the gaps! They called this computer-generated abomination the 'complete genome'. Dr Tom Cowan, a fellow medical author and collaborator with Kaufman, said such computer-generation constitutes scientific fraud and he makes this superb analogy:

Here is an equivalency: A group of researchers claim to have found a unicorn because they found a piece of a hoof, a hair from a tail, and a snippet of a horn. They then add that information into a computer and program it to re-create the unicorn, and they then claim this computer re-creation is the real unicorn. Of course, they had never actually seen a unicorn so could not possibly have examined its genetic makeup to compare their samples with the actual unicorn's hair, hooves and horn.

The researchers claim they decided which is the real genome of SARS-CoV-2 by 'consensus', sort of like a vote. Again, different computer programs will come up with different versions of the imaginary 'unicorn', so they come together as a group and decide which is the real imaginary unicorn.

This is how the 'virus' that has transformed the world was brought into fraudulent 'existence'. Extraordinary, yes, but as the Nazis said the bigger the lie the more will believe it. Cowan, however, wasn't finished and he went on to identify what he called the real blockbuster in the paper. He quotes this section from a paper written

by virologists and published by the CDC and then explains what it means:

Therefore, we examined the capacity of SARS-CoV-2 to infect and replicate in several common primate and human cell lines, including human adenocarcinoma cells (A549), human liver cells (HUH 7.0), and human embryonic kidney cells (HEK-293T). In addition to Vero E6 and Vero CCL81 cells. ... Each cell line was inoculated at high multiplicity of infection and examined 24h post-infection.

No CPE was observed in any of the cell lines except in Vero cells, which grew to greater than 10 to the 7th power at 24 h post-infection. In contrast, HUH 7.0 and 293T showed only modest viral replication, and A549 cells were incompatible with SARS CoV-2 infection.

Cowan explains that when virologists attempt to prove infection they have three possible 'hosts' or models on which they can test. The first was humans. Exposure to humans was generally not done for ethical reasons and has never been done with SARS-CoV-2 or any coronavirus. The second possible host was animals. Cowan said that forgetting for a moment that they never actually use purified virus when exposing animals they do use solutions that they *claim* contain the virus. Exposure to animals has been done with SARS-CoV-2 in an experiment involving mice and this is what they found: *None of the wild (normal) mice got sick*. In a group of genetically-modified mice, a statistically insignificant number lost weight and had slightly bristled fur, but they experienced nothing like the illness called 'Covid-19'. Cowan said the third method – the one they mostly rely on – is to inoculate solutions they *say* contain the virus onto a variety of tissue cultures. This process had never been shown to kill tissue *unless* the sample material was starved of nutrients and poisoned as *part of the process*. Yes, incredibly, in tissue experiments designed to show the 'virus' is responsible for killing the tissue they starve the tissue of nutrients and add toxic drugs including antibiotics and they do not have control studies to see if it's the starvation and poisoning that is degrading the tissue rather than the 'virus' they allege to be in there somewhere. You want me to pinch you? Yep, I understand. Tom Cowan said this about the whole nonsensical farce as he explains what that quote from the CDC paper really means:

The shocking thing about the above quote is that using their own methods, the virologists found that solutions containing SARS-CoV-2 – even in high amounts – were NOT, I repeat NOT, infective to any of the three human tissue cultures they tested. In plain English, this means they proved, on their terms, that this ‘new coronavirus’ is not infectious to human beings. It is ONLY infective to monkey kidney cells, and only then when you add two potent drugs (gentamicin and amphotericin), known to be toxic to kidneys, to the mix.

My friends, read this again and again. These virologists, published by the CDC, performed a clear proof, on their terms, showing that the SARS-CoV-2 virus is harmless to human beings. That is the only possible conclusion, but, unfortunately, this result is not even mentioned in their conclusion. They simply say they can provide virus stocks cultured only on monkey Vero cells, thanks for coming.

Cowan concluded: ‘If people really understood how this “science” was done, I would hope they would storm the gates and demand honesty, transparency and truth.’ Dr Michael Yeadon, former Vice President and Chief Scientific Adviser at drug giant Pfizer has been a vocal critic of the ‘Covid vaccine’ and its potential for multiple harm. He said in an interview in April, 2021, that ‘not one [vaccine] has the virus. He was asked why vaccines normally using a ‘dead’ version of a disease to activate the immune system were not used for ‘Covid’ and instead we had the synthetic methods of the ‘mRNA Covid vaccine’. Yeadon said that to do the former ‘you’d have to have some of [the virus] wouldn’t you?’ He added: ‘No-one’s got any – seriously.’ Yeadon said that surely they couldn’t have fooled the whole world for a year without having a virus, ‘but oddly enough ask around – no one’s got it’. He didn’t know why with all the ‘great labs’ around the world that the virus had not been isolated – ‘Maybe they’ve been too busy running bad PCR tests and vaccines that people don’t need.’ What is today called ‘science’ is not ‘science’ at all. Science is no longer what is, but whatever people can be manipulated to *believe* that it is. Real science has been hijacked by the Cult to dispense and produce the ‘expert scientists’ and contentions that suit the agenda of the Cult. How big-time this has happened with the ‘Covid’ hoax which is entirely based on fake science delivered by fake ‘scientists’ and fake ‘doctors’. The human-caused climate change hoax is also entirely based on fake science delivered by fake ‘scientists’ and fake ‘climate experts’. In both cases real

scientists, climate experts and doctors have their views suppressed and deleted by the Cult-owned science establishment, media and Silicon Valley. This is the ‘science’ that politicians claim to be ‘following’ and a common denominator of ‘Covid’ and climate are Cult psychopaths Bill Gates and his mate Klaus Schwab at the Gates-funded World Economic Forum. But, don’t worry, it’s all just a coincidence and absolutely nothing to worry about. Zzzzzzzz.

## **What is a ‘virus’ REALLY?**

Dr Tom Cowan is one of many contesting the very existence of viruses let alone that they cause disease. This is understandable when there is no scientific evidence for a disease-causing ‘virus’. German virologist Dr Stefan Lanka won a landmark case in 2017 in the German Supreme Court over his contention that there is no such thing as a measles virus. He had offered a big prize for anyone who could prove there is and Lanka won his case when someone sought to claim the money. There is currently a prize of more than 225,000 euros on offer from an Isolate Truth Fund for anyone who can prove the isolation of SARS-CoV-2 and its genetic substance. Lanka wrote in an article headed ‘The Misconception Called Virus’ that scientists think a ‘virus’ is causing tissue to become diseased and degraded when in fact it is the *processes they are using* which do that – not a ‘virus’. Lanka has done an important job in making this point clear as Cowan did in his analysis of the CDC paper. Lanka says that all claims about viruses as disease-causing pathogens are wrong and based on ‘easily recognisable, understandable and verifiable misinterpretations.’ Scientists believed they were working with ‘viruses’ in their laboratories when they were really working with ‘typical particles of specific dying tissues or cells ...’ Lanka said that the tissue decaying process claimed to be caused by a ‘virus’ still happens when no alleged ‘virus’ is involved. It’s the *process* that does the damage and not a ‘virus’. The genetic sample is deprived of nutrients, removed from its energy supply through removal from the body and then doused in toxic antibiotics to remove any bacteria. He confirms again that establishment scientists do not (pinch me)

conduct control experiments to see if this is the case and if they did they would see the claims that 'viruses' are doing the damage is nonsense. He adds that during the measles 'virus' court case he commissioned an independent laboratory to perform just such a control experiment and the result was that the tissues and cells died in the exact same way as with alleged 'infected' material. This is supported by a gathering number of scientists, doctors and researchers who reject what is called 'germ theory' or the belief in the body being infected by contagious sources emitted by other people. Researchers Dawn Lester and David Parker take the same stance in their highly-detailed and sourced book *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong* which was recommended to me by a number of medical professionals genuinely seeking the truth. Lester and Parker say there is no provable scientific evidence to show that a 'virus' can be transmitted between people or people and animals or animals and people:

The definition also claims that viruses are the cause of many diseases, as if this has been definitively proven. But this is not the case; there is no original scientific evidence that definitively demonstrates that any virus is the cause of any disease. The burden of proof for any theory lies with those who proposed it; but none of the existing documents provides 'proof' that supports the claim that 'viruses' are pathogens.

Dr Tom Cowan employs one of his clever analogies to describe the process by which a 'virus' is named as the culprit for a disease when what is called a 'virus' is only material released by cells detoxing themselves from infiltration by chemical or radiation poisoning. The tidal wave of technologically-generated radiation in the 'smart' modern world plus all the toxic food and drink are causing this to happen more than ever. Deluded 'scientists' misread this as a gathering impact of what they wrongly label 'viruses'.

## **Paper can infect houses**

Cowan said in an article for [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com) – with his tongue only mildly in his cheek – that he believed he had made a tremendous

discovery that may revolutionise science. He had discovered that small bits of paper are alive, ‘well alive-ish’, can ‘infect’ houses, and then reproduce themselves inside the house. The result was that this explosion of growth in the paper inside the house causes the house to explode, blowing it to smithereens. His evidence for this new theory is that in the past months he had carefully examined many of the houses in his neighbourhood and found almost no scraps of paper on the lawns and surrounds of the house. There was an occasional stray label, but nothing more. Then he would return to these same houses a week or so later and with a few, not all of them, particularly the old and decrepit ones, he found to his shock and surprise they were littered with stray bits of paper. He knew then that the paper had infected these houses, made copies of itself, and blew up the house. A young boy on a bicycle at one of the sites told him he had seen a demolition crew using dynamite to explode the house the previous week, but Cowan dismissed this as the idle thoughts of silly boys because ‘I was on to something big’. He was on to how ‘scientists’ mistake genetic material in the detoxifying process for something they call a ‘virus’. Cowan said of his house and paper story:

If this sounds crazy to you, it’s because it should. This scenario is obviously nuts. But consider this admittedly embellished, for effect, current viral theory that all scientists, medical doctors and virologists currently believe.

He takes the example of the ‘novel SARS-Cov2’ virus to prove the point. First they take someone with an undefined illness called ‘Covid-19’ and don’t even attempt to find any virus in their sputum. Never mind the scientists still describe how this ‘virus’, which they have not located attaches to a cell receptor, injects its genetic material, in ‘Covid’s’ case, RNA, into the cell. The RNA once inserted exploits the cell to reproduce itself and makes ‘thousands, nay millions, of copies of itself ... Then it emerges victorious to claim its next victim’:

If you were to look in the scientific literature for proof, actual scientific proof, that uniform SARS-CoV2 viruses have been properly isolated from the sputum of a sick person, that actual spike proteins could be seen protruding from the virus (which has not been found), you would find that such evidence doesn't exist.

If you go looking in the published scientific literature for actual pictures, proof, that these spike proteins or any viral proteins are ever attached to any receptor embedded in any cell membrane, you would also find that no such evidence exists. If you were to look for a video or documented evidence of the intact virus injecting its genetic material into the body of the cell, reproducing itself and then emerging victorious by budding off the cell membrane, you would find that no such evidence exists.

The closest thing you would find is electron micrograph pictures of cellular particles, possibly attached to cell debris, both of which to be seen were stained by heavy metals, a process that completely distorts their architecture within the living organism. This is like finding bits of paper stuck to the blown-up bricks, thereby proving the paper emerged by taking pieces of the bricks on its way out.

## **The Enders baloney**

Cowan describes the 'Covid' story as being just as make-believe as his paper story and he charts back this fantasy to a Nobel Prize winner called John Enders (1897-1985), an American biomedical scientist who has been dubbed 'The Father of Modern Vaccines'. Enders is claimed to have 'discovered' the process of the viral culture which 'proved' that a 'virus' caused measles. Cowan explains how Enders did this 'by using the EXACT same procedure that has been followed by every virologist to find and characterize every new virus since 1954'. Enders took throat swabs from children with measles and immersed them in 2ml of milk. Penicillin (100u/ml) and the antibiotic streptomycin (50,g/ml) were added and the whole mix was centrifuged – rotated at high speed to separate large cellular debris from small particles and molecules as with milk and cream, for example. Cowan says that if the aim is to find little particles of genetic material ('viruses') in the snot from children with measles it would seem that the last thing you would do is mix the snot with other material – milk –that also has genetic material. 'How are you ever going to know whether whatever you found came from the snot or the milk?' He points out that streptomycin is a 'nephrotoxic' or poisonous-to-the-kidney drug. You will see the relevance of that

shortly. Cowan says that it gets worse, much worse, when Enders describes the culture medium upon which the virus 'grows': 'The culture medium consisted of bovine amniotic fluid (90%), beef embryo extract (5%), horse serum (5%), antibiotics and phenol red as an indicator of cell metabolism.' Cowan asks incredulously: 'Did he just say that the culture medium also contained fluids and tissues that are themselves rich sources of genetic material?' The genetic cocktail, or 'medium', is inoculated onto tissue and cells from rhesus monkey *kidney* tissue. This is where the importance of streptomycin comes in and currently-used antimicrobials and other drugs that are *poisonous to kidneys* and used in ALL modern viral cultures (e.g. gentamicin, streptomycin, and amphotericin). Cowan asks: 'How are you ever going to know from this witch's brew where any genetic material comes from as we now have five different sources of rich genetic material in our mix?' Remember, he says, that all genetic material, whether from monkey kidney tissues, bovine serum, milk, etc., is made from the exact same components. The same central question returns: 'How are you possibly going to know that it was the virus that killed the kidney tissue and not the toxic antibiotic and starvation rations on which you are growing the tissue?' John Enders answered the question himself – *you can't*:

A second agent was obtained from an uninoculated culture of monkey kidney cells. The cytopathic changes [death of the cells] it induced in the unstained preparations could not be distinguished with confidence from the viruses isolated from measles.

The death of the cells ('cytopathic changes') happened in exactly the same manner, whether they inoculated the kidney tissue with the measles snot or not, Cowan says. 'This is evidence that the destruction of the tissue, the very proof of viral causation of illness, was not caused by anything in the snot because they saw the same destructive effect when the snot was not even used ... the cytopathic, i.e., cell-killing, changes come from the process of the culture itself, not from any virus in any snot, period.' Enders quotes in his 1957 paper a virologist called Ruckle as reporting similar findings 'and in addition has isolated an agent from monkey kidney tissue that is so

far indistinguishable from human measles virus'. In other words, Cowan says, these particles called 'measles viruses' are simply and clearly breakdown products of the starved and poisoned tissue. For measles 'virus' see all 'viruses' including the so-called 'Covid virus'. Enders, the 'Father of Modern Vaccines', also said:

There is a potential risk in employing cultures of primate cells for the production of vaccines composed of attenuated virus, since the presence of other agents possibly latent in primate tissues cannot be definitely excluded by any known method.

Cowan further quotes from a paper published in the journal *Viruses* in May, 2020, while the 'Covid pandemic' was well underway in the media if not in reality. 'EVs' here refers to particles of genetic debris from our own tissues, such as exosomes of which more in a moment: 'The remarkable resemblance between EVs and viruses has caused quite a few problems in the studies focused on the analysis of EVs released during viral infections.' Later the paper adds that to date a reliable method that can actually guarantee a complete separation (of EVs from viruses) DOES NOT EXIST. This was published at a time when a fairy tale 'virus' was claimed in total certainty to be causing a fairy tale 'viral disease' called 'Covid-19' – a fairy tale that was already well on the way to transforming human society in the image that the Cult has worked to achieve for so long. Cowan concludes his article:

To summarize, there is no scientific evidence that pathogenic viruses exist. What we think of as 'viruses' are simply the normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues and cells. When we are well, we make fewer of these particles; when we are starved, poisoned, suffocated by wearing masks, or afraid, we make more.

There is no engineered virus circulating and making people sick. People in laboratories all over the world are making genetically modified products to make people sick. These are called vaccines. There is no virome, no 'ecosystem' of viruses, viruses are not 8%, 50% or 100 % of our genetic material. These are all simply erroneous ideas based on the misconception called a virus.

## **What is 'Covid'? Load of bollocks**

The background described here by Cowan and Lanka was emphasised in the first video presentation that I saw by Dr Andrew Kaufman when he asked whether the ‘Covid virus’ was in truth a natural defence mechanism of the body called ‘exosomes’. These are released by cells when in states of toxicity – see the same themes returning over and over. They are released ever more profusely as chemical and radiation toxicity increases and think of the potential effect therefore of 5G alone as its destructive frequencies infest the human energetic information field with a gathering pace (5G went online in Wuhan in 2019 as the ‘virus’ emerged). I’ll have more about this later. Exosomes transmit a warning to the rest of the body that ‘Houston, we have a problem’. Kaufman presented images of exosomes and compared them with ‘Covid’ under an electron microscope and the similarity was remarkable. They both attach to the same cell receptors (*claimed* in the case of ‘Covid’), contain the same genetic material in the form of RNA or ribonucleic acid, and both are found in ‘viral cell cultures’ with damaged or dying cells. James Hildreth MD, President and Chief Executive Officer of the Meharry Medical College at Johns Hopkins, said: ‘The virus is fully an exosome in every sense of the word.’ Kaufman’s conclusion was that there is no ‘virus’: ‘This entire pandemic is a completely manufactured crisis … there is no evidence of anyone dying from [this] illness.’ Dr Tom Cowan and Sally Fallon Morell, authors of *The Contagion Myth*, published a statement with Dr Kaufman in February, 2021, explaining why the ‘virus’ does not exist and you can read it that in full in the Appendix.

‘Virus’ theory can be traced to the ‘cell theory’ in 1858 of German physician Rudolf Virchow (1821-1920) who contended that disease originates from a single cell infiltrated by a ‘virus’. Dr Stefan Lanka said that findings and insights with respect to the structure, function and central importance of tissues in the creation of life, which were already known in 1858, comprehensively refute the cell theory. Virchow ignored them. We have seen the part later played by John Enders in the 1950s and Lanka notes that infection theories were only established as a global dogma through the policies and

eugenics of the Third Reich in Nazi Germany (creation of the same Sabbatian cult behind the ‘Covid’ hoax). Lanka said: ‘Before 1933, scientists dared to contradict this theory; after 1933, these critical scientists were silenced’. Dr Tom Cowan’s view is that ill-health is caused by too much of something, too little of something, or toxification from chemicals and radiation – not contagion. We must also highlight as a major source of the ‘virus’ theology a man still called the ‘Father of Modern Virology’ – Thomas Milton Rivers (1888-1962). There is no way given the Cult’s long game policy that it was a coincidence for the ‘Father of Modern Virology’ to be director of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research from 1937 to 1956 when he is credited with making the Rockefeller Institute a leader in ‘viral research’. Cult Rockefellers were the force behind the creation of Big Pharma ‘medicine’, established the World Health Organisation in 1948, and have long and close associations with the Gates family that now runs the WHO during the pandemic hoax through mega-rich Cult gofer and psychopath Bill Gates.

Only a Renegade Mind can see through all this bullshit by asking the questions that need to be answered, not taking ‘no’ or prevarication for an answer, and certainly not hiding from the truth in fear of speaking it. Renegade Minds have always changed the world for the better and they will change this one no matter how bleak it may currently appear to be.

## CHAPTER SIX

### Sequence of deceit

*If you tell the truth, you don't have to remember anything*

Mark Twain

**A**gainst the background that I have laid out this far the sequence that took us from an invented 'virus' in Cult-owned China in late 2019 to the fascist transformation of human society can be seen and understood in a whole new context.

We were told that a deadly disease had broken out in Wuhan and the world media began its campaign (coordinated by behavioural psychologists as we shall see) to terrify the population into unquestioning compliance. We were shown images of Chinese people collapsing in the street which never happened in the West with what was supposed to be the same condition. In the earliest days when alleged cases and deaths were few the fear register was hysterical in many areas of the media and this would expand into the common media narrative across the world. The real story was rather different, but we were never told that. The Chinese government, one of the Cult's biggest centres of global operation, said they had discovered a new illness with flu-like and pneumonia-type symptoms in a city with such toxic air that it is overwhelmed with flu-like symptoms, pneumonia and respiratory disease. Chinese scientists said it was a new – 'novel' – coronavirus which they called Sars-Cov-2 and that it caused a disease they labelled 'Covid-19'. There was no evidence for this and the 'virus' has never to this day been isolated, purified and its genetic code established from that. It

was from the beginning a computer-generated fiction. Stories of Chinese whistleblowers saying the number of deaths was being suppressed or that the ‘new disease’ was related to the Wuhan bio-lab misdirected mainstream and alternative media into cul-de-sacs to obscure the real truth – there was no ‘virus’.

Chinese scientists took genetic material from the lung fluid of just a few people and said they had found a ‘new’ disease when this material had a wide range of content. There was no evidence for a ‘virus’ for the very reasons explained in the last two chapters. The ‘virus’ has never been shown to (a) exist and (b) cause any disease. People were diagnosed on symptoms that are so widespread in Wuhan and polluted China and with a PCR test that can’t detect infectious disease. On this farce the whole global scam was sold to the rest of the world which would also diagnose respiratory disease as ‘Covid-19’ from symptoms alone or with a PCR test not testing for a ‘virus’. Flu miraculously disappeared *worldwide* in 2020 and into 2021 as it was redesignated ‘Covid-19’. It was really the same old flu with its ‘flu-like’ symptoms attributed to ‘flu-like’ ‘Covid-19’. At the same time with very few exceptions the Chinese response of draconian lockdown and fascism was the chosen weapon to respond across the West as recommended by the Cult-owned Tedros at the Cult-owned World Health Organization run by the Cult-owned Gates. All was going according to plan. Chinese scientists – everything in China is controlled by the Cult-owned government – compared their contaminated RNA lung-fluid material with other RNA sequences and said it appeared to be just under 80 percent identical to the SARS-CoV-1 ‘virus’ claimed to be the cause of the SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome) ‘outbreak’ in 2003. They decreed that because of this the ‘new virus’ had to be related and they called it SARS-CoV-2. There are some serious problems with this assumption and *assumption* was all it was. Most ‘factual’ science turns out to be assumptions repeated into everyone-knows-that. A match of under 80-percent is meaningless. Dr Kaufman makes the point that there’s a 96 percent genetic correlation between humans and chimpanzees, but ‘no one would say our genetic material is part

of the chimpanzee family'. Yet the Chinese authorities were claiming that a much lower percentage, less than 80 percent, proved the existence of a new 'coronavirus'. For goodness sake human DNA is 60 percent similar to a *banana*.

## **You are feeling sleepy**

The entire 'Covid' hoax is a global Psyop, a psychological operation to program the human mind into believing and fearing a complete fantasy. A crucial aspect of this was what *appeared* to happen in Italy. It was all very well streaming out daily images of an alleged catastrophe in Wuhan, but to the Western mind it was still on the other side of the world in a very different culture and setting. A reaction of 'this could happen to me and my family' was still nothing like as intense enough for the mind-doctors. The Cult needed a Western example to push people over that edge and it chose Italy, one of its major global locations going back to the Roman Empire. An Italian 'Covid' crisis was manufactured in a particular area called Lombardy which just happens to be notorious for its toxic air and therefore respiratory disease. Wuhan, China, *déjà vu*. An hysterical media told horror stories of Italians dying from 'Covid' in their droves and how Lombardy hospitals were being overrun by a tidal wave of desperately ill people needing treatment after being struck down by the 'deadly virus'. Here was the psychological turning point the Cult had planned. Wow, if this is happening in Italy, the Western mind concluded, this indeed could happen to me and my family. Another point is that Italian authorities responded by following the Chinese blueprint so vehemently recommended by the Cult-owned World Health Organization. They imposed fascistic lockdowns on the whole country viciously policed with the help of surveillance drones sweeping through the streets seeking out anyone who escaped from mass house arrest. Livelihoods were destroyed and psychology unravelled in the way we have witnessed since in all lockdown countries. Crucial to the plan was that Italy responded in this way to set the precedent of suspending freedom and imposing fascism in a 'Western liberal democracy'. I emphasised in an

animated video explanation on [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com) posted in the summer of 2020 how important it was to the Cult to expand the Chinese lockdown model across the West. Without this, and the bare-faced lie that non-symptomatic people could still transmit a ‘disease’ they didn’t have, there was no way locking down the whole population, sick and not sick, could be pulled off. At just the right time and with no evidence Cult operatives and gofers claimed that people without symptoms could pass on the ‘disease’. In the name of protecting the ‘vulnerable’ like elderly people, who lockdowns would kill by the tens of thousands, we had for the first time healthy people told to isolate as well as the sick. The great majority of people who tested positive had no symptoms because there was nothing wrong with them. It was just a trick made possible by a test not testing for the ‘virus’.

Months after my animated video the Gates-funded Professor Neil Ferguson at the Gates-funded Imperial College confirmed that I was right. He didn’t say it in those terms, naturally, but he did say it. Ferguson will enter the story shortly for his outrageously crazy ‘computer models’ that led to Britain, the United States and many other countries following the Chinese and now Italian methods of response. Put another way, following the Cult script. Ferguson said that SAGE, the UK government’s scientific advisory group which has controlled ‘Covid’ policy from the start, wanted to follow the Chinese lockdown model (while they all continued to work and be paid), but they wondered if they could possibly, in Ferguson’s words, ‘get away with it in Europe’. ‘Get away with it’? Who the hell do these moronic, arrogant people think they are? This appalling man Ferguson said that once Italy went into national lockdown they realised they, too, could mimic China:

It’s a communist one-party state, we said. We couldn’t get away with it in Europe, we thought ... and then Italy did it. And we realised we could. Behind this garbage from Ferguson is a simple fact: Doing the same as China in every country was the plan from the start and Ferguson’s ‘models’ would play a central role in achieving that. It’s just a coincidence, of course, and absolutely nothing to worry your little head about.

## **Oops, sorry, our mistake**

Once the Italian segment of the Psyop had done the job it was designed to do a very different story emerged. Italian authorities revealed that 99 percent of those who had 'died from Covid-19' in Italy had one, two, three, or more 'co-morbidities' or illnesses and health problems that could have ended their life. The US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) published a figure of 94 percent for Americans dying of 'Covid' while having other serious medical conditions – on average two to three (some five or six) other potential causes of death. In terms of death from an unproven 'virus' I say it is 100 percent. The other one percent in Italy and six percent in the US would presumably have died from 'Covid's' flu-like symptoms with a range of other possible causes in conjunction with a test not testing for the 'virus'. Fox News reported that even more startling figures had emerged in one US county in which 410 of 422 deaths attributed to 'Covid-19' had other potentially deadly health conditions. The Italian National Health Institute said later that the average age of people dying with a 'Covid-19' diagnosis in Italy was about 81. Ninety percent were over 70 with ten percent over 90. In terms of other reasons to die some 80 percent had two or more chronic diseases with half having three or more including cardiovascular problems, diabetes, respiratory problems and cancer. Why is the phantom 'Covid-19' said to kill overwhelmingly old people and hardly affect the young? Old people continually die of many causes and especially respiratory disease which you can re-diagnose 'Covid-19' while young people die in tiny numbers by comparison and rarely of respiratory disease. Old people 'die of Covid' because they die of other things that can be redesignated 'Covid' and it really is that simple.

## **Flu has flown**

The blueprint was in place. Get your illusory 'cases' from a test not testing for the 'virus' and redesignate other causes of death as 'Covid-19'. You have an instant 'pandemic' from something that is nothing more than a computer-generated fiction. With near-on a

billion people having ‘flu-like’ symptoms every year the potential was limitless and we can see why flu quickly and apparently miraculously disappeared *worldwide* by being diagnosed ‘Covid-19’. The painfully bloody obvious was explained away by the childlike media in headlines like this in the UK *‘Independent’*: ‘Not a single case of flu detected by Public Health England this year as Covid restrictions suppress virus’. I kid you not. The masking, social distancing and house arrest that did not make the ‘Covid virus’ disappear somehow did so with the ‘flu virus’. Even worse the article, by a bloke called Samuel Lovett, suggested that maybe the masking, sanitising and other ‘Covid’ measures should continue to keep the flu away. With a ridiculousness that disturbs your breathing (it’s ‘Covid-19’) the said Lovett wrote: ‘With widespread social distancing and mask-wearing measures in place throughout the UK, the usual routes of transmission for influenza have been blocked.’ He had absolutely no evidence to support that statement, but look at the consequences of him acknowledging the obvious. With flu not disappearing at all and only being relabelled ‘Covid-19’ he would have to contemplate that ‘Covid’ was a hoax on a scale that is hard to imagine. You need guts and commitment to truth to even go there and that’s clearly something Samuel Lovett does not have in abundance. He would never have got it through the editors anyway.

Tens of thousands die in the United States alone every winter from flu including many with pneumonia complications. CDC figures record *45 million* Americans diagnosed with flu in 2017-2018 of which 61,000 died and some reports claim 80,000. Where was the same hysteria then that we have seen with ‘Covid-19’? Some 250,000 Americans are admitted to hospital with pneumonia every year with about 50,000 cases proving fatal. About 65 million suffer respiratory disease every year and three million deaths makes this the third biggest cause of death worldwide. You only have to redesignate a portion of all these people ‘Covid-19’ and you have an instant global pandemic or the *appearance* of one. Why would doctors do this? They are told to do this and all but a few dare not refuse those who must be obeyed. Doctors in general are not researching their own

knowledge and instead take it direct and unquestioned from the authorities that own them and their careers. The authorities say they must now diagnose these symptoms ‘Covid-19’ and not flu, or whatever, and they do it. Dark suits say put ‘Covid-19’ on death certificates no matter what the cause of death and the doctors do it. Renegade Minds don’t fall for the illusion that doctors and medical staff are all highly-intelligent, highly-principled, seekers of medical truth. *Some are*, but not the majority. They are repeaters, gofers, and yes sir, no sir, purveyors of what the system demands they purvey. The ‘Covid’ con is not merely confined to diseases of the lungs. Instructions to doctors to put ‘Covid-19’ on death certificates for anyone dying of *anything* within 28 days (or much more) of a positive test not testing for the ‘virus’ opened the floodgates. The term dying *with* ‘Covid’ and not *of* ‘Covid’ was coined to cover the truth. Whether it was a *with* or an *of* they were all added to the death numbers attributed to the ‘deadly virus’ compiled by national governments and globally by the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins operation in the United States that was so involved in those ‘pandemic’ simulations. Fraudulent deaths were added to the ever-growing list of fraudulent ‘cases’ from false positives from a false test. No wonder Professor Walter Ricciardi, scientific advisor to the Italian minister of health, said after the Lombardy hysteria had done its job that ‘Covid’ death rates were due to Italy having the second oldest population in the world and to *how hospitals record deaths*:

The way in which we code deaths in our country is very generous in the sense that all the people who die in hospitals with the coronavirus are deemed to be dying of the coronavirus. On re-evaluation by the National Institute of Health, only 12 per cent of death certificates have shown a direct causality from coronavirus, while 88 per cent of patients who have died have at least one pre-morbidity – many had two or three.

This is extraordinary enough when you consider the propaganda campaign to use Italy to terrify the world, but how can they even say twelve percent were genuine when the ‘virus’ has not been shown to exist, its ‘code’ is a computer program, and diagnosis comes from a test not testing for it? As in China, and soon the world, ‘Covid-19’ in

Italy was a redesignation of diagnosis. Lies and corruption were to become the real ‘pandemic’ fuelled by a pathetically-compliant medical system taking its orders from the tiny few at the top of their national hierarchy who answered to the World Health Organization which answers to Gates and the Cult. Doctors were told – ordered – to diagnose a particular set of symptoms ‘Covid-19’ and put that on the death certificate for any cause of death if the patient had tested positive with a test not testing for the virus or had ‘Covid’ symptoms like the flu. The United States even introduced big financial incentives to manipulate the figures with hospitals receiving £4,600 from the Medicare system for diagnosing someone with regular pneumonia, \$13,000 if they made the diagnosis from the same symptoms ‘Covid-19’ pneumonia, and \$39, 000 if they put a ‘Covid’ diagnosed patient on a ventilator that would almost certainly kill them. A few – painfully and pathetically few – medical whistleblowers revealed (before Cult-owned YouTube deleted their videos) that they had been instructed to ‘let the patient crash’ and put them straight on a ventilator instead of going through a series of far less intrusive and dangerous methods as they would have done before the pandemic hoax began and the financial incentives kicked in. We are talking cold-blooded murder given that ventilators are so damaging to respiratory systems they are usually the last step before heaven awaits. Renegade Minds never fall for the belief that people in white coats are all angels of mercy and cannot be full-on psychopaths. I have explained in detail in *The Answer* how what I am describing here played out across the world coordinated by the World Health Organization through the medical hierarchies in almost every country.

## **Medical scientist calls it**

Information about the non-existence of the ‘virus’ began to emerge for me in late March, 2020, and mushroomed after that. I was sent an email by Sir Julian Rose, a writer, researcher, and organic farming promotor, from a medical scientist friend of his in the United States. Even at that early stage in March the scientist was able to explain

how the ‘Covid’ hoax was being manipulated. He said there were no reliable tests for a specific ‘Covid-19 virus’ and nor were there any reliable agencies or media outlets for reporting numbers of actual ‘Covid-19’ cases. We have seen in the long period since then that he was absolutely right. ‘Every action and reaction to Covid-19 is based on totally flawed data and we simply cannot make accurate assessments,’ he said. Most people diagnosed with ‘Covid-19’ were showing nothing more than cold and flu-like symptoms ‘because most coronavirus strains *are* nothing more than cold/flu-like symptoms’. We had farcical situations like an 84-year-old German man testing positive for ‘Covid-19’ and his nursing home ordered to quarantine only for him to be found to have a common cold. The scientist described back then why PCR tests and what he called the ‘Mickey Mouse test kits’ were useless for what they were claimed to be identifying. ‘The idea these kits can isolate a specific virus like Covid-19 is nonsense,’ he said. Significantly, he pointed out that ‘if you want to create a totally false panic about a totally false pandemic – pick a coronavirus’. This is exactly what the Cult-owned Gates, World Economic Forum and Johns Hopkins University did with their Event 201 ‘simulation’ followed by their real-life simulation called the ‘pandemic’. The scientist said that all you had to do was select the sickest of people with respiratory-type diseases in a single location – ‘say Wuhan’ – and administer PCR tests to them. You can then claim that anyone showing ‘viral sequences’ similar to a coronavirus ‘which will inevitably be quite a few’ is suffering from a ‘new’ disease:

Since you already selected the sickest flu cases a fairly high proportion of your sample will go on to die. You can then say this ‘new’ virus has a CFR [case fatality rate] higher than the flu and use this to infuse more concern and do more tests which will of course produce more ‘cases’, which expands the testing, which produces yet more ‘cases’ and so on and so on. Before long you have your ‘pandemic’, and all you have done is use a simple test kit trick to convert the worst flu and pneumonia cases into something new that doesn’t ACTUALLY EXIST [my emphasis].

He said that you then ‘just run the same scam in other countries’ and make sure to keep the fear message running high ‘so that people

will feel panicky and less able to think critically'. The only problem to overcome was the fact *there is no* actual new deadly pathogen and only regular sick people. This meant that deaths from the 'new deadly pathogen' were going to be way too low for a real new deadly virus pandemic, but he said this could be overcome in the following ways – all of which would go on to happen:

1. You can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent [you underpin this with fantasy 'computer projections']. Use this as an excuse to quarantine everyone and then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead.
2. You can [say that people] 'minimizing' the dangers are irresponsible and bully them into not talking about numbers.
3. You can talk crap about made up numbers hoping to blind people with pseudoscience.
4. You can start testing well people (who, of course, will also likely have shreds of coronavirus [RNA] in them) and thus inflate your 'case figures' with 'asymptomatic carriers' (you will of course have to spin that to sound deadly even though any virologist knows the more symptom-less cases you have the less deadly is your pathogen).

The scientist said that if you take these simple steps 'you can have your own entirely manufactured pandemic up and running in weeks'. His analysis made so early in the hoax was brilliantly prophetic of what would actually unfold. Pulling all the information together in these recent chapters we have this is simple 1, 2, 3, of how you can delude virtually the entire human population into believing in a 'virus' that doesn't exist:

- A 'Covid case' is someone who tests positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'.
- A 'Covid death' is someone who dies of *any cause* within 28 days (or much longer) of testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'.
- Asymptomatic means there is nothing wrong with you, but they claim you can pass on what you don't have to justify locking

down (quarantining) healthy people in totality.

The foundations of the hoax are that simple. A study involving ten million people in Wuhan, published in November, 2020, demolished the whole lie about those without symptoms passing on the ‘virus’. They found ‘300 asymptomatic cases’ and traced their contacts to find that not one of them was detected with the ‘virus’.

‘Asymptomatic’ patients and their contacts were isolated for no less than two weeks and nothing changed. I know it’s all crap, but if you are going to claim that those without symptoms can transmit ‘the virus’ then you must produce evidence for that and they never have. Even World Health Organization official Dr Maria Van Kerkhove, head of the emerging diseases and zoonosis unit, said as early as June, 2020, that she doubted the validity of asymptomatic transmission. She said that ‘from the data we have, it still seems to be rare that an asymptomatic person actually transmits onward to a secondary individual’ and by ‘rare’ she meant that she couldn’t cite any case of asymptomatic transmission.

## **The Ferguson factor**

The problem for the Cult as it headed into March, 2020, when the script had lockdown due to start, was that despite all the manipulation of the case and death figures they still did not have enough people alleged to have died from ‘Covid’ to justify mass house arrest. This was overcome in the way the scientist described: ‘You can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent ... Use this as an excuse to quarantine everyone and then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead.’ Enter one Professor Neil Ferguson, the Gates-funded ‘epidemiologist’ at the Gates-funded Imperial College in London. Ferguson is Britain’s Christian Drosten in that he has a dire record of predicting health outcomes, but is still called upon to advise government on the next health outcome when another ‘crisis’ comes along. This may seem to be a strange and ridiculous thing to do. Why would you keep turning for policy guidance to people who have a history of being

monumentally wrong? Ah, but it makes sense from the Cult point of view. These ‘experts’ keep on producing predictions that suit the Cult agenda for societal transformation and so it was with Neil Ferguson as he revealed his horrific (and clearly insane) computer model predictions that allowed lockdowns to be imposed in Britain, the United States and many other countries. Ferguson does not have even an A-level in biology and would appear to have no formal training in computer modelling, medicine or epidemiology, according to Derek Winton, an MSc in Computational Intelligence. He wrote an article somewhat aghast at what Ferguson did which included taking no account of respiratory disease ‘seasonality’ which means it is far worse in the winter months. Who would have thought that respiratory disease could be worse in the winter? Well, certainly not Ferguson.

The massively China-connected Imperial College and its bizarre professor provided the excuse for the long-incubated Chinese model of human control to travel westward at lightning speed. Imperial College confirms on its website that it collaborates with the Chinese Research Institute; publishes more than 600 research papers every year with Chinese research institutions; has 225 Chinese staff; 2,600 Chinese students – the biggest international group; 7,000 former students living in China which is the largest group outside the UK; and was selected for a tour by China’s President Xi Jinping during his state visit to the UK in 2015. The college takes major donations from China and describes itself as the UK’s number one university collaborator with Chinese research institutions. The China communist/fascist government did not appear phased by the woeful predictions of Ferguson and Imperial when during the lockdown that Ferguson induced the college signed a five-year collaboration deal with China tech giant Huawei that will have Huawei’s indoor 5G network equipment installed at the college’s West London tech campus along with an ‘AI cloud platform’. The deal includes Chinese sponsorship of Imperial’s Venture Catalyst entrepreneurship competition. Imperial is an example of the enormous influence the Chinese government has within British and North American

universities and research centres – and further afield. Up to 200 academics from more than a dozen UK universities are being investigated on suspicion of ‘unintentionally’ helping the Chinese government build weapons of mass destruction by ‘transferring world-leading research in advanced military technology such as aircraft, missile designs and cyberweapons’. Similar scandals have broken in the United States, but it’s all a coincidence. Imperial College serves the agenda in many other ways including the promotion of every aspect of the United Nations Agenda 21/2030 (the Great Reset) and produced computer models to show that human-caused ‘climate change’ is happening when in the real world it isn’t. Imperial College is driving the climate agenda as it drives the ‘Covid’ agenda (both Cult hoaxes) while Patrick Vallance, the UK government’s Chief Scientific Adviser on ‘Covid’, was named Chief Scientific Adviser to the UN ‘climate change’ conference known as COP26 hosted by the government in Glasgow, Scotland. ‘Covid’ and ‘climate’ are fundamentally connected.

## **Professor Woeful**

From Imperial’s bosom came Neil Ferguson still advising government despite his previous disasters and it was announced early on that he and other key people like UK Chief Medical Adviser Chris Whitty had caught the ‘virus’ as the propaganda story was being sold. Somehow they managed to survive and we had Prime Minister Boris Johnson admitted to hospital with what was said to be a severe version of the ‘virus’ in this same period. His whole policy and demeanour changed when he returned to Downing Street. It’s a small world with these government advisors – especially in their communal connections to Gates – and Ferguson had partnered with Whitty to write a paper called ‘Infectious disease: Tough choices to reduce Ebola transmission’ which involved another scare-story that didn’t happen. Ferguson’s ‘models’ predicted that up to 150, 000 could die from ‘mad cow disease’, or BSE, and its version in sheep if it was transmitted to humans. BSE was not transmitted and instead triggered by an organophosphate pesticide used to treat a pest on

cows. Fewer than 200 deaths followed from the human form. Models by Ferguson and his fellow incompetents led to the unnecessary culling of millions of pigs, cattle and sheep in the foot and mouth outbreak in 2001 which destroyed the lives and livelihoods of farmers and their families who had often spent decades building their herds and flocks. Vast numbers of these animals did not have foot and mouth and had no contact with the infection. Another ‘expert’ behind the cull was Professor Roy Anderson, a computer modeller at Imperial College specialising in the epidemiology of *human*, not animal, disease. Anderson has served on the Bill and Melinda Gates Grand Challenges in Global Health advisory board and chairs another Gates-funded organisation. Gates is everywhere.

In a precursor to the ‘Covid’ script Ferguson backed closing schools ‘for prolonged periods’ over the swine flu ‘pandemic’ in 2009 and said it would affect a third of the world population if it continued to spread at the speed he claimed to be happening. His mates at Imperial College said much the same and a news report said: ‘One of the authors, the epidemiologist and disease modeller Neil Ferguson, who sits on the World Health Organisation’s emergency committee for the outbreak, said the virus had “full pandemic potential”.’ Professor Liam Donaldson, the Chris Whitty of his day as Chief Medical Officer, said the worst case could see 30 percent of the British people infected by swine flu with 65,000 dying. Ferguson and Donaldson were indeed proved correct when at the end of the year the number of deaths attributed to swine flu was 392. The term ‘expert’ is rather liberally applied unfortunately, not least to complete idiots. Swine flu ‘projections’ were great for GlaxoSmithKline (GSK) as millions rolled in for its Pandemrix influenza vaccine which led to brain damage with children most affected. The British government (taxpayers) paid out more than £60 million in compensation after GSK was given immunity from prosecution. Yet another ‘Covid’ déjà vu. Swine flu was supposed to have broken out in Mexico, but Dr Wolfgang Wodarg, a German doctor, former member of parliament and critic of the ‘Covid’ hoax, observed ‘the spread of swine flu’ in Mexico City at the time. He

said: 'What we experienced in Mexico City was a very mild flu which did not kill more than usual – which killed even fewer people than usual.' Hyping the fear against all the facts is not unique to 'Covid' and has happened many times before. Ferguson is reported to have over-estimated the projected death toll of bird flu (H5N1) by some three million-fold, but bird flu vaccine makers again made a killing from the scare. This is some of the background to the Neil Ferguson who produced the perfectly-timed computer models in early 2020 predicting that half a million people would die in Britain without draconian lockdown and 2.2 million in the United States. Politicians panicked, people panicked, and lockdowns of alleged short duration were instigated to 'flatten the curve' of cases gleaned from a test not testing for the 'virus'. I said at the time that the public could forget the 'short duration' bit. This was an agenda to destroy the livelihoods of the population and force them into mass control through dependency and there was going to be nothing 'short' about it. American researcher Daniel Horowitz described the consequences of the 'models' spewed out by Gates-funded Ferguson and Imperial College:

What led our government and the governments of many other countries into panic was a single Imperial College of UK study, funded by global warming activists, that predicted 2.2 million deaths if we didn't lock down the country. In addition, the reported 8-9% death rate in Italy scared us into thinking there was some other mutation of this virus that they got, which might have come here.

Together with the fact that we were finally testing and had the ability to actually report new cases, we thought we were headed for a death spiral. But again ... we can't flatten a curve if we don't know when the curve started.

How about it *never* started?

## **Giving them what they want**

An investigation by German news outlet *Welt Am Sonntag* (*World on Sunday*) revealed how in March, 2020, the German government gathered together 'leading scientists from several research institutes and universities' and 'together, they were to produce a [modelling]

paper that would serve as legitimization for further tough political measures'. The Cult agenda was justified by computer modelling not based on evidence or reality; it was specifically constructed to justify the Cult demand for lockdowns all over the world to destroy the independent livelihoods of the global population. All these modellers and everyone responsible for the 'Covid' hoax have a date with a trial like those in Nuremberg after World War Two when Nazis faced the consequences of their war crimes. These corrupt-beyond-belief 'modellers' wrote the paper according to government instructions and it said that if lockdown measures were lifted then up to one million Germans would die from 'Covid-19' adding that some would die 'agonizingly at home, gasping for breath' unable to be treated by hospitals that couldn't cope. All lies. No matter – it gave the Cult all that it wanted. What did long-time government 'modeller' Neil Ferguson say? If the UK and the United States didn't lockdown half a million would die in Britain and 2.2 million Americans. Anyone see a theme here? 'Modellers' are such a crucial part of the lockdown strategy that we should look into their background and follow the money. Researcher Rosemary Frei produced an excellent article headlined 'The Modelling-paper Mafiosi'. She highlights a guy called John Edmunds, a British epidemiologist, and professor in the Faculty of Epidemiology and Population Health at the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine. He studied at Imperial College. Edmunds is a member of government 'Covid' advisory bodies which have been dictating policy, the New and Emerging Respiratory Virus Threats Advisory Group (NERVTAG) and the Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE).

Ferguson, another member of NERVTAG and SAGE, led the way with the original 'virus' and Edmunds has followed in the 'variant' stage and especially the so-called UK or Kent variant known as the 'Variant of Concern' (VOC) B.1.1.7. He said in a co-written report for the Centre for Mathematical modelling of Infectious Diseases at the London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, with input from the Centre's 'Covid-19' Working Group, that there was 'a realistic

possibility that VOC B.1.1.7 is associated with an increased risk of death compared to non-VOC viruses'. Fear, fear, fear, get the vaccine, fear, fear, fear, get the vaccine. Rosemary Frei reveals that almost all the paper's authors and members of the modelling centre's 'Covid-19' Working Group receive funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and/or the associated Gates-funded Wellcome Trust. The paper was published by e-journal *Medr* <sup>xiv</sup> which only publishes papers not peer-reviewed and the journal was established by an organisation headed by Facebook's Mark Zuckerberg and his missus. What a small world it is. Frei discovered that Edmunds is on the Scientific Advisory Board of the Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI) which was established by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, Klaus Schwab's Davos World Economic Forum and Big Pharma giant Wellcome. CEPI was 'launched in Davos [in 2017] to develop vaccines to stop future epidemics', according to its website. 'Our mission is to accelerate the development of vaccines against emerging infectious diseases and enable equitable access to these vaccines for people during outbreaks.' What kind people they are. Rosemary Frei reveals that Public Health England (PHE) director Susan Hopkins is an author of her organisation's non-peer-reviewed reports on 'new variants'. Hopkins is a professor of infectious diseases at London's Imperial College which is gifted tens of millions of dollars a year by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Gates-funded modelling disaster Neil Ferguson also co-authors Public Health England reports and he spoke in December, 2020, about the potential danger of the B.1.1.7. 'UK variant' promoted by Gates-funded modeller John Edmunds. When I come to the 'Covid vaccines' the 'new variants' will be shown for what they are – bollocks.

## **Connections, connections**

All these people and modellers are lockdown-obsessed or, put another way, they demand what the Cult demands. Edmunds said in January, 2021, that to ease lockdowns too soon would be a disaster and they had to 'vaccinate much, much, much more widely than the

elderly'. Rosemary Frei highlights that Edmunds is married to Jeanne Pimenta who is described in a LinkedIn profile as director of epidemiology at GlaxoSmithKline (GSK) and she held shares in the company. Patrick Vallance, co-chair of SAGE and the government's Chief Scientific Adviser, is a former executive of GSK and has a deferred bonus of shares in the company worth £600,000. GSK has serious business connections with Bill Gates and is collaborating with mRNA-'vaccine' company CureVac to make 'vaccines' for the new variants that Edmunds is talking about. GSK is planning a 'Covid vaccine' with drug giant Sanofi. Puppet Prime Minister Boris Johnson announced in the spring of 2021 that up to 60 million vaccine doses were to be made at the GSK facility at Barnard Castle in the English North East. Barnard Castle, with a population of just 6,000, was famously visited in breach of lockdown rules in April, 2020, by Johnson aide Dominic Cummings who said that he drove there 'to test his eyesight' before driving back to London. Cummings would be better advised to test his integrity – not that it would take long. The GSK facility had nothing to do with his visit then although I'm sure Patrick Vallance would have been happy to arrange an introduction and some tea and biscuits. Ruthless psychopath Gates has made yet another fortune from vaccines in collaboration with Big Pharma companies and gushes at the phenomenal profits to be made from vaccines – more than a 20-to-1 return as he told one interviewer. Gates also tweeted in December, 2019, with the foreknowledge of what was coming: 'What's next for our foundation? I'm particularly excited about what the next year could mean for one of the best buys in global health: vaccines.'

Modeller John Edmunds is a big promotor of vaccines as all these people appear to be. He's the dean of the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine's Faculty of Epidemiology and Population Health which is primarily funded by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and the Gates-established and funded GAVI vaccine alliance which is the Gates vehicle to vaccinate the world. The organisation Doctors Without Borders has described GAVI as being 'aimed more at supporting drug-industry desires to promote new

products than at finding the most efficient and sustainable means for fighting the diseases of poverty'. But then that's why the psychopath Gates created it. John Edmunds said in a video that the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine is involved in every aspect of vaccine development including large-scale clinical trials. He contends that mathematical modelling can show that vaccines protect individuals and society. That's on the basis of shit in and shit out, I take it. Edmunds serves on the UK Vaccine Network as does Ferguson and the government's foremost 'Covid' adviser, the grim-faced, dark-eyed Chris Whitty. The Vaccine Network says it works 'to support the government to identify and shortlist targeted investment opportunities for the most promising vaccines and vaccine technologies that will help combat infectious diseases with epidemic potential, and to address structural issues related to the UK's broader vaccine infrastructure'. Ferguson is acting Director of the Imperial College Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium which has funding from the Bill and Melina Gates Foundation and the Gates-created GAVI 'vaccine alliance'. Anyone wonder why these characters see vaccines as the answer to every problem? Ferguson is wildly enthusiastic in his support for GAVI's campaign to vaccine children en masse in poor countries. You would expect someone like Gates who has constantly talked about the need to reduce the population to want to fund vaccines to keep more people alive. I'm sure that's why he does it. The John Edmunds London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine (LSHTM) has a Vaccines Manufacturing Innovation Centre which develops, tests and commercialises vaccines. Rosemary Frei writes:

The vaccines centre also performs affiliated activities like combating 'vaccine hesitancy'. The latter includes the Vaccine Confidence Project. The project's stated purpose is, among other things, 'to provide analysis and guidance for early response and engagement with the public to ensure sustained confidence in vaccines and immunisation'. The Vaccine Confidence Project's director is LSHTM professor Heidi Larson. For more than a decade she's been researching how to combat vaccine hesitancy.

How the bloody hell can blokes like John Edmunds and Neil Ferguson with those connections and financial ties model 'virus' case

and death projections for the government and especially in a way that gives their paymasters like Gates exactly what they want? It's insane, but this is what you find throughout the world.

## **'Covid' is not dangerous, oops, wait, yes it is**

Only days before Ferguson's nightmare scenario made Jackboot Johnson take Britain into a China-style lockdown to save us from a deadly 'virus' the UK government website gov.uk was reporting something very different to Ferguson on a page of official government guidance for 'high consequence infectious diseases (HCID)'. It said this about 'Covid-19':

As of 19 March 2020, COVID-19 *is no longer considered to be a high consequence infectious diseases (HCID) in the UK* [my emphasis]. The 4 nations public health HCID group made an interim recommendation in January 2020 to classify COVID-19 as an HCID. This was based on consideration of the UK HCID criteria about the virus and the disease with information available during the early stages of the outbreak.

Now that more is known about COVID-19, the public health bodies in the UK have reviewed the most up to date information about COVID-19 against the UK HCID criteria. They have determined that several features have now changed; in particular, more information is available about mortality rates (low overall), and there is now greater clinical awareness and a specific and sensitive laboratory test, the availability of which continues to increase. The Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens (ACDP) is also of the opinion that COVID-19 should no longer be classified as an HCID.

Soon after the government had been exposed for downgrading the risk they upgraded it again and everyone was back to singing from the same Cult hymn book. Ferguson and his fellow Gates clones indicated that lockdowns and restrictions would have to continue until a Gates-funded vaccine was developed. Gates said the same because Ferguson and his like were repeating the Gates script which is the Cult script. 'Flatten the curve' became an ongoing nightmare of continuing lockdowns with periods in between of severe restrictions in pursuit of destroying independent incomes and had nothing to do with protecting health about which the Cult gives not a shit. Why wouldn't Ferguson be pushing a vaccine 'solution' when he's owned by vaccine-obsessive Gates who makes a fortune from them and

when Ferguson heads the Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium at Imperial College funded by the Gates Foundation and GAVI, the ‘vaccine alliance’, created by Gates as his personal vaccine promotion operation? To compound the human catastrophe that Ferguson’s ‘models’ did so much to create he was later exposed for breaking his own lockdown rules by having sexual liaisons with his married girlfriend Antonia Staats at his home while she was living at another location with her husband and children. Staats was a ‘climate’ activist and senior campaigner at the Soros-funded Avaaz which I wouldn’t trust to tell me that grass is green. Ferguson had to resign as a government advisor over this hypocrisy in May, 2020, but after a period of quiet he was back being quoted by the ridiculous media on the need for more lockdowns and a vaccine rollout. Other government-advising ‘scientists’ from Imperial College held the fort in his absence and said lockdown could be indefinite until a vaccine was found. The Cult script was being sung by the payrolled choir. I said there was no intention of going back to ‘normal’ when the ‘vaccine’ came because the ‘vaccine’ is part of a very different agenda that I will discuss in Human 2.0. Why would the Cult want to let the world go back to normal when destroying that normal forever was the whole point of what was happening? House arrest, closing businesses and schools through lockdown, (un)social distancing and masks all followed the Ferguson fantasy models. Again as I predicted (these people are so predictable) when the ‘vaccine’ arrived we were told that house arrest, lockdown, (un)social distancing and masks would still have to continue. I will deal with the masks in the next chapter because they are of fundamental importance.

## **Where's the 'pandemic'?**

Any mildly in-depth assessment of the figures revealed what was really going on. Cult-funded and controlled organisations still have genuine people working within them such is the number involved. So it is with Genevieve Briand, assistant program director of the Applied Economics master’s degree program at Johns Hopkins

University. She analysed the impact that 'Covid-19' had on deaths from *all* causes in the United States using official data from the CDC for the period from early February to early September, 2020. She found that allegedly 'Covid' *related*-deaths exceeded those from heart disease which she found strange with heart disease always the biggest cause of fatalities. Her research became even more significant when she noted the sudden decline in 2020 of *all* non-'Covid' deaths: 'This trend is completely contrary to the pattern observed in all previous years ... the total decrease in deaths by other causes almost exactly equals the increase in deaths by Covid-19.' This was such a game, set and match in terms of what was happening that Johns Hopkins University deleted the article on the grounds that it 'was being used to support false and dangerous inaccuracies about the impact of the pandemic'. No – because it exposed the scam from official CDC figures and this was confirmed when those figures were published in January, 2021. Here we can see the effect of people dying from heart attacks, cancer, road accidents and gunshot wounds – *anything* – having 'Covid-19' on the death certificate along with those diagnosed from 'symptoms' who had even not tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'. I am not kidding with the gunshot wounds, by the way. Brenda Bock, coroner in Grand County, Colorado, revealed that two gunshot victims tested positive for the 'virus' within the previous 30 days and were therefore classified as 'Covid deaths'. Bock said: 'These two people had tested positive for Covid, but that's not what killed them. A gunshot wound is what killed them.' She said she had not even finished her investigation when the state listed the gunshot victims as deaths due to the 'virus'. The death and case figures for 'Covid-19' are an absolute joke and yet they are repeated like parrots by the media, politicians and alleged medical 'experts'. The official Cult narrative is the only show in town.

Genevieve Briand found that deaths from all causes were not exceptional in 2020 compared with previous years and a Spanish magazine published figures that said the same about Spain which was a 'Covid' propaganda hotspot at one point. *Discovery Salud*, a

health and medicine magazine, quoted government figures which showed how 17,000 *fewer* people died in Spain in 2020 than in 2019 and more than 26,000 fewer than in 2018. The age-standardised mortality rate for England and Wales when age distribution is taken into account was significantly lower in 2020 than the 1970s, 80s and 90s, and was only the ninth highest since 2000. Where is the ‘pandemic’?

Post mortems and autopsies virtually disappeared for ‘Covid’ deaths amid claims that ‘virus-infected’ bodily fluids posed a risk to those carrying out the autopsy. This was rejected by renowned German pathologist and forensic doctor Klaus Püschel who said that he and his staff had by then done 150 autopsies on ‘Covid’ patients with no problems at all. He said they were needed to know why some ‘Covid’ patients suffered blood clots and not severe respiratory infections. The ‘virus’ is, after all, called SARS or ‘severe acute respiratory syndrome’. I highlighted in the spring of 2020 this phenomenon and quoted New York intensive care doctor Cameron Kyle-Sidell who posted a soon deleted YouTube video to say that they had been told to prepare to treat an infectious disease called ‘Covid-19’, but that was not what they were dealing with. Instead he likened the lung condition of the most severely ill patients to what you would expect with cabin depressurisation in a plane at 30,000 feet or someone dropped on the top of Everest without oxygen or acclimatisation. I have never said this is not happening to a small minority of alleged ‘Covid’ patients – I am saying this is not caused by a phantom ‘contagious virus’. Indeed Kyle-Sidell said that ‘Covid-19’ was not the disease they were told was coming their way. ‘We are operating under a medical paradigm that is untrue,’ he said, and he believed they were treating the wrong disease: ‘These people are being slowly starved of oxygen.’ Patients would take off their oxygen masks in a state of fear and stress and while they were blue in the face on the brink of death. They did not look like patients dying of pneumonia. You can see why they don’t want autopsies when their virus doesn’t exist and there is another condition in some people that they don’t wish to be uncovered. I should add here that

the 5G system of millimetre waves was being rapidly introduced around the world in 2020 and even more so now as they fire 5G at the Earth from satellites. At 60 gigahertz within the 5G range that frequency interacts with the oxygen molecule and stops people breathing in sufficient oxygen to be absorbed into the bloodstream. They are installing 5G in schools and hospitals. The world is not mad or anything. 5G can cause major changes to the lungs and blood as I detail in *The Answer* and these consequences are labelled 'Covid-19', the alleged symptoms of which can be caused by 5G and other electromagnetic frequencies as cells respond to radiation poisoning.

## **The 'Covid death' scam**

Dr Scott Jensen, a Minnesota state senator and medical doctor, exposed 'Covid' Medicare payment incentives to hospitals and death certificate manipulation. He said he was sent a seven-page document by the US Department of Health 'coaching' him on how to fill out death certificates which had never happened before. The document said that he didn't need to have a laboratory test for 'Covid-19' to put that on the death certificate and that shocked him when death certificates are supposed to be about facts. Jensen described how doctors had been 'encouraged, if not pressured' to make a diagnosis of 'Covid-19' if they thought it was probable or '*presumed*'. No positive test was necessary – not that this would have mattered anyway. He said doctors were told to diagnose 'Covid' by symptoms when these were the same as colds, allergies, other respiratory problems, and certainly with influenza which 'disappeared' in the 'Covid' era. A common sniffle was enough to get the dreaded verdict. Ontario authorities decreed that a single care home resident with *one* symptom from a long list must lead to the isolation of the entire home. Other courageous doctors like Jensen made the same point about death figure manipulation and how deaths by other causes were falling while 'Covid-19 deaths' were rising at the same rate due to re-diagnosis. Their videos rarely survive long on YouTube with its Cult-supporting algorithms courtesy of CEO Susan Wojcicki and her bosses at Google. Figure-tampering was so glaring

and ubiquitous that even officials were letting it slip or outright saying it. UK chief scientific adviser Patrick Vallance said on one occasion that ‘Covid’ on the death certificate doesn’t mean ‘Covid’ was the cause of death (so why the hell is it there?) and we had the rare sight of a BBC reporter telling the truth when she said: ‘Someone could be successfully treated for Covid, in say April, discharged, and then in June, get run over by a bus and die ... That person would still be counted as a Covid death in England.’ Yet the BBC and the rest of the world media went on repeating the case and death figures as if they were real. Illinois Public Health Director Dr Ngozi Ezike revealed the deceit while her bosses must have been clenching their buttocks:

If you were in a hospice and given a few weeks to live and you were then found to have Covid that would be counted as a Covid death. [There might be] a clear alternate cause, but it is still listed as a Covid death. So everyone listed as a Covid death doesn’t mean that was the cause of the death, but that they had Covid at the time of death.

Yes, a ‘Covid virus’ never shown to exist and tested for with a test not testing for the ‘virus’. In the first period of the pandemic hoax through the spring of 2020 the process began of designating almost everything a ‘Covid’ death and this has continued ever since. I sat in a restaurant one night listening to a loud conversation on the next table where a family was discussing in bewilderment how a relative who had no symptoms of ‘Covid’, and had died of a long-term problem, could have been diagnosed a death by the ‘virus’. I could understand their bewilderment. If they read this book they will know why this medical fraud has been perpetrated the world over.

## **Some media truth shock**

The media ignored the evidence of death certificate fraud until eventually one columnist did speak out when she saw it first-hand. Bel Mooney is a long-time national newspaper journalist in Britain currently working for the *Daily Mail*. Her article on February 19th, 2021, carried this headline: ‘My dad Ted passed three Covid tests

and died of a chronic illness yet he's officially one of Britain's 120,000 victims of the virus and is far from alone ... so how many more are there?' She told how her 99-year-old father was in a care home with a long-standing chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and vascular dementia. Maybe, but he was still aware enough to tell her from the start that there was no 'virus' and he refused the 'vaccine' for that reason. His death was not unexpected given his chronic health problems and Mooney said she was shocked to find that 'Covid-19' was declared the cause of death on his death certificate. She said this was a 'bizarre and unacceptable untruth' for a man with long-time health problems who had tested negative twice at the home for the 'virus'. I was also shocked by this story although not by what she said. I had been highlighting the death certificate manipulation for ten months. It was the confirmation that a professional full-time journalist only realised this was going on when it affected her directly and neither did she know that whether her dad tested positive or negative was irrelevant with the test not testing for the 'virus'. Where had she been? She said she did not believe in 'conspiracy theories' without knowing I'm sure that this and 'conspiracy theorists' were terms put into widespread circulation by the CIA in the 1960s to discredit those who did not accept the ridiculous official story of the Kennedy assassination. A blanket statement of 'I don't believe in conspiracy theories' is always bizarre. The dictionary definition of the term alone means the world is drowning in conspiracies. What she said was even more daft when her dad had just been affected by the 'Covid' conspiracy. Why else does she think that 'Covid-19' was going on the death certificates of people who died of something else?

To be fair once she saw from personal experience what was happening she didn't mince words. Mooney was called by the care home on the morning of February 9th to be told her father had died in his sleep. When she asked for the official cause of death what came back was 'Covid-19'. Mooney challenged this and was told there had been deaths from Covid on the dementia floor (confirmed by a test not testing for the 'virus') so they considered it 'reasonable

to assume'. 'But doctor,' Mooney rightly protested, 'an assumption isn't a diagnosis.' She said she didn't blame the perfectly decent and sympathetic doctor – 'he was just doing his job'. Sorry, but that's *bullshit*. He wasn't doing his job at all. He was putting a false cause of death on the death certificate and that is a criminal offence for which he should be brought to account and the same with the millions of doctors worldwide who have done the same. They were not doing their job they were following orders and that must not wash at new Nuremberg trials any more than it did at the first ones. Mooney's doctor was 'assuming' (presuming) as he was told to, but 'just following orders' makes no difference to his actions. A doctor's job is to serve the patient and the truth, not follow orders, but that's what they have done all over the world and played a central part in making the 'Covid' hoax possible with all its catastrophic consequences for humanity. Shame on them and they must answer for their actions. Mooney said her disquiet worsened when she registered her father's death by telephone and was told by the registrar there had been very many other cases like hers where 'the deceased' had not tested positive for 'Covid' yet it was recorded as the cause of death. The test may not matter, but those involved at their level *think* it matters and it shows a callous disregard for accurate diagnosis. The pressure to do this is coming from the top of the national 'health' pyramids which in turn obey the World Health Organization which obeys Gates and the Cult. Mooney said the registrar agreed that this must distort the national figures adding that 'the strangest thing is that every winter we record countless deaths from flu, and this winter there have been none. Not one!' She asked if the registrar thought deaths from flu were being misdiagnosed and lumped together with 'Covid' deaths. The answer was a 'puzzled yes'. Mooney said that the funeral director said the same about 'Covid' deaths which had nothing to do with 'Covid'. They had lost count of the number of families upset by this and other funeral companies in different countries have had the same experience. Mooney wrote:

The nightly shroud-waving and shocking close-ups of pain imposed on us by the TV news bewildered and terrified the population into eager compliance with lockdowns. We were invited to ‘save the NHS’ and to grieve for strangers – the real-life loved ones behind those shocking death counts. Why would the public imagine what I now fear, namely that the way Covid-19 death statistics are compiled might make the numbers seem greater than they are?

Oh, just a little bit – like 100 percent.

## **Do the maths**

Mooney asked why a country would wish to skew its mortality figures by wrongly certifying deaths? What had been going on? Well, if you don’t believe in conspiracies you will never find the answer which is that *it’s a conspiracy*. She did, however, describe what she had discovered as a ‘national scandal’. In reality it’s a global scandal and happening everywhere. Pillars of this conspiracy were all put into place before the button was pressed with the Drosten PCR protocol and high amplifications to produce the cases and death certificate changes to secure illusory ‘Covid’ deaths.

Mooney notes that normally two doctors were needed to certify a death, with one having to know the patient, and how the rules were changed in the spring of 2020 to allow one doctor to do this. In the same period ‘Covid deaths’ were decreed to be all cases where Covid-19 was put on the death certificate even without a positive test or any symptoms. Mooney asked: ‘How many of the 30,851 (as of January 15) care home resident deaths with Covid-19 on the certificate (32.4 per cent of all deaths so far) were based on an assumption, like that of my father? And what has that done to our national psyche?’ All of them is the answer to the first question and it has devastated and dismantled the national psyche, actually the global psyche, on a colossal scale. In the UK case and death data is compiled by organisations like Public Health England (PHE) and the Office for National Statistics (ONS). Mooney highlights the insane policy of counting a death from any cause as ‘Covid-19’ if this happens within 28 days of a positive test (with a test not testing for the ‘virus’) and she points out that ONS statistics reflect deaths ‘involving Covid’ ‘or due to Covid’ which meant in practice any

death where ‘Covid-19’ was mentioned on the death certificate. She described the consequences of this fraud:

Most people will accept the narrative they are fed, so panicky governments here and in Europe witnessed the harsh measures enacted in totalitarian China and jumped into lockdown. Headlines about Covid deaths tolled like the knell that would bring doomsday to us all. Fear stalked our empty streets. Politicians parroted the frankly ridiculous aim of ‘zero Covid’ and shut down the economy, while most British people agreed that lockdown was essential and (astonishingly to me, as a patriotic Brit) even wanted more restrictions.

For what? Lies on death certificates? Never mind the grim toll of lives ruined, suicides, schools closed, rising inequality, depression, cancelled hospital treatments, cancer patients in a torture of waiting, poverty, economic devastation, loneliness, families kept apart, and so on. How many lives have been lost as a direct result of lockdown?

She said that we could join in a national chorus of shock and horror at reaching the 120,000 death toll which was surely certain to have been totally skewed all along, but what about the human cost of lockdown justified by these ‘death figures’? *The British Medical Journal* had reported a 1,493 percent increase in cases of children taken to Great Ormond Street Hospital with abusive head injuries alone and then there was the effect on families:

Perhaps the most shocking thing about all this is that families have been kept apart – and obeyed the most irrational, changing rules at the whim of government – because they believed in the statistics. They succumbed to fear, which his generation rejected in that war fought for freedom. Dad (God rest his soul) would be angry. And so am I.

Another theme to watch is that in the winter months when there are more deaths from all causes they focus on ‘Covid’ deaths and in the summer when the British Lung Foundation says respiratory disease plummets by 80 percent they rage on about ‘cases’. Either way fascism on population is always the answer.

## **Nazi eugenics in the 21st century**

Elderly people in care homes have been isolated from their families month after lonely month with no contact with relatives and grandchildren who were banned from seeing them. We were told

that lockdown fascism was to ‘protect the vulnerable’ like elderly people. At the same time Do Not Resuscitate (DNR) orders were placed on their medical files so that if they needed resuscitation it wasn’t done and ‘Covid-19’ went on their death certificates. Old people were not being ‘protected’ they were being culled – murdered in truth. DNR orders were being decreed for disabled and young people with learning difficulties or psychological problems. The UK Care Quality Commission, a non-departmental body of the Department of Health and Social Care, found that 34 percent of those working in health and social care were pressured into placing ‘do not attempt cardiopulmonary resuscitation’ orders on ‘Covid’ patients who suffered from disabilities and learning difficulties without involving the patient or their families in the decision. UK judges ruled that an elderly woman with dementia should have the DNA-manipulating ‘Covid vaccine’ against her son’s wishes and that a man with severe learning difficulties should have the jab despite his family’s objections. Never mind that many had already died. The judiciary always supports doctors and government in fascist dictatorships. They wouldn’t dare do otherwise. A horrific video was posted showing fascist officers from Los Angeles police forcibly giving the ‘Covid’ shot to women with special needs who were screaming that they didn’t want it. The same fascists are seen giving the jab to a sleeping elderly woman in a care home. This is straight out of the Nazi playbook. Hitler’s Nazis committed mass murder of the mentally ill and physically disabled throughout Germany and occupied territories in the programme that became known as Aktion T4, or just T4. Sabbatian-controlled Hitler and his grotesque crazies set out to kill those they considered useless and unnecessary. The Reich Committee for the Scientific Registering of Hereditary and Congenital Illnesses registered the births of babies identified by physicians to have ‘defects’. By 1941 alone more than 5,000 children were murdered by the state and it is estimated that in total the number of innocent people killed in Aktion T4 was between 275,000 and 300,000. Parents were told their children had been sent away for ‘special treatment’ never to return. It is rather pathetic to see claims about plans for new extermination camps being dismissed today

when the same force behind current events did precisely that 80 years ago. Margaret Sanger was a Cult operative who used 'birth control' to sanitise her programme of eugenics. Organisations she founded became what is now Planned Parenthood. Sanger proposed that 'the whole dysgenic population would have its choice of segregation or sterilization'. These included epileptics, 'feeble-minded', and prostitutes. Sanger opposed charity because it perpetuated 'human waste'. She reveals the Cult mentality and if anyone thinks that extermination camps are a 'conspiracy theory' their naivety is touching if breathtakingly stupid.

If you don't believe that doctors can act with callous disregard for their patients it is worth considering that doctors and medical staff agreed to put government-decreed DNR orders on medical files and do nothing when resuscitation is called for. I don't know what you call such people in your house. In mine they are Nazis from the Josef Mengele School of Medicine. Phenomenal numbers of old people have died worldwide from the effects of lockdown, depression, lack of treatment, the 'vaccine' (more later) and losing the will to live. A common response at the start of the manufactured pandemic was to remove old people from hospital beds and transfer them to nursing homes. The decision would result in a mass cull of elderly people in those homes through lack of treatment – *not* 'Covid'. Care home whistleblowers have told how once the 'Covid' era began doctors would not come to their homes to treat patients and they were begging for drugs like antibiotics that often never came. The most infamous example was ordered by New York governor Andrew Cuomo, brother of a moronic CNN host, who amazingly was given an Emmy Award for his handling of the 'Covid crisis' by the ridiculous Wokers that hand them out. Just how ridiculous could be seen in February, 2021, when a Department of Justice and FBI investigation began into how thousands of old people in New York died in nursing homes after being discharged from hospital to make way for 'Covid' patients on Cuomo's say-so – and how he and his staff covered up these facts. This couldn't have happened to a nicer psychopath. Even then there was a 'Covid' spin. Reports said that

thousands of old people who tested positive for ‘Covid’ in hospital were transferred to nursing homes to both die of ‘Covid’ and transmit it to others. No – they were in hospital because they were ill and the fact that they tested positive with a test not testing for the ‘virus’ is irrelevant. They were ill often with respiratory diseases ubiquitous in old people near the end of their lives. Their transfer out of hospital meant that their treatment stopped and many would go on to die.

### **They're old. Who gives a damn?**

I have exposed in the books for decades the Cult plan to cull the world’s old people and even to introduce at some point what they call a ‘demise pill’ which at a certain age everyone would take and be out of here by law. In March, 2021, Spain legalised euthanasia and assisted suicide following the Netherlands, Belgium, Luxembourg and Canada on the Tiptoe to the demise pill. Treatment of old people by many ‘care’ homes has been a disgrace in the ‘Covid’ era. There are many, many, caring staff – I know some. There have, however, been legions of stories about callous treatment of old people and their families. Police were called when families came to take their loved ones home in the light of isolation that was killing them. They became prisoners of the state. Care home residents in insane, fascist Ontario, Canada, were not allowed to leave their *room* once the ‘Covid’ hoax began. UK staff have even wheeled elderly people away from windows where family members were talking with them. Oriana Criscuolo from Stockport in the English North West dropped off some things for her 80-year-old father who has Parkinson’s disease and dementia and she wanted to wave to him through a ground-floor window. She was told that was ‘illegal’. When she went anyway they closed the curtains in the middle of the day. Oriana said:

It’s just unbelievable. I cannot understand how care home staff – people who are being paid to care – have become so uncaring. Their behaviour is inhumane and cruel. It’s beyond belief.

She was right and this was not a one-off. What a way to end your life in such loveless circumstances. UK registered nurse Nicky Millen, a proper old school nurse for 40 years, said that when she started her career care was based on dignity, choice, compassion and empathy. Now she said ‘the things that are important to me have gone out of the window.’ She was appalled that people were dying without their loved ones and saying goodbye on iPads. Nicky described how a distressed 89-year-old lady stroked her face and asked her ‘how many paracetamol would it take to finish me off’. Life was no longer worth living while not seeing her family. Nicky said she was humiliated in front of the ward staff and patients for letting the lady stroke her face and giving her a cuddle. Such is the dehumanisation that the ‘Covid’ hoax has brought to the surface. Nicky worked in care homes where patients told her they were being held prisoner. ‘I want to live until I die’, one said to her. ‘I had a lady in tears because she hadn’t seen her great-grandson.’ Nicky was compassionate old school meeting psychopathic New Normal. She also said she had worked on a ‘Covid’ ward with no ‘Covid’ patients. Jewish writer Shai Held wrote an article in March, 2020, which was headlined ‘The Staggering, Heartless Cruelty Toward the Elderly’. What he described was happening from the earliest days of lockdown. He said ‘the elderly’ were considered a group and not unique individuals (the way of the Woke). Shai Held said:

Notice how the all-too-familiar rhetoric of dehumanization works: ‘The elderly’ are bunched together as a faceless mass, all of them considered culprits and thus effectively deserving of the suffering the pandemic will inflict upon them. Lost entirely is the fact that the elderly are individual human beings, each with a distinctive face and voice, each with hopes and dreams, memories and regrets, friendships and marriages, loves lost and loves sustained.

‘The elderly’ have become another dehumanised group for which anything goes and for many that has resulted in cold disregard for their rights and their life. The distinctive face that Held talks about is designed to be deleted by masks until everyone is part of a faceless mass.

## **'War-zone' hospitals myth**

Again and again medical professionals have told me what was really going on and how hospitals 'overrun like war zones' according to the media were virtually empty. The mantra from medical whistleblowers was please don't use my name or my career is over. Citizen journalists around the world sneaked into hospitals to film evidence exposing the 'war-zone' lie. They really *were* largely empty with closed wards and operating theatres. I met a hospital worker in my town on the Isle of Wight during the first lockdown in 2020 who said the only island hospital had never been so quiet. Lockdown was justified by the psychopaths to stop hospitals being overrun. At the same time that the island hospital was near-empty the military arrived here to provide *extra beds*. It was all propaganda to ramp up the fear to ensure compliance with fascism as were never-used temporary hospitals with thousands of beds known as Nightingales and never-used make-shift mortuaries opened by the criminal UK government. A man who helped to install those extra island beds attributed to the army said they were never used and the hospital was empty. Doctors and nurses 'stood around talking or on their phones, wandering down to us to see what we were doing'. There were no masks or social distancing. He accused the useless local island paper, the *County Press*, of 'pumping the fear as if our hospital was overrun and we only have one so it should have been'. He described ambulances parked up with crews outside in deck chairs. When his brother called an ambulance he was told there was a two-hour backlog which he called 'bullshit'. An old lady on the island fell 'and was in a bad way', but a caller who rang for an ambulance was told the situation wasn't urgent enough. Ambulance stations were working under capacity while people would hear ambulances with sirens blaring driving through the streets. When those living near the stations realised what was going on they would follow them as they left, circulated around an urban area with the sirens going, and then came back without stopping. All this was to increase levels of fear and the same goes for the 'ventilator shortage crisis' that cost tens of millions for hastily produced ventilators never to be used.

Ambulance crews that agreed to be exploited in this way for fear propaganda might find themselves a mirror. I wish them well with that. Empty hospitals were the obvious consequence of treatment and diagnoses of non-'Covid' conditions cancelled and those involved handed a death sentence. People have been dying at home from undiagnosed and untreated cancer, heart disease and other life-threatening conditions to allow empty hospitals to deal with a 'pandemic' that wasn't happening.

## **Death of the innocent**

'War-zones' have been laying off nursing staff, even doctors where they can. There was no work for them. Lockdown was justified by saving lives and protecting the vulnerable they were actually killing with DNR orders and preventing empty hospitals being 'overrun'. In Britain the mantra of stay at home to 'save the NHS' was everywhere and across the world the same story was being sold when it was all lies. Two California doctors, Dan Erickson and Artin Massihi at Accelerated Urgent Care in Bakersfield, held a news conference in April, 2020, to say that intensive care units in California were 'empty, essentially', with hospitals shutting floors, not treating patients and laying off doctors. The California health system was working at minimum capacity 'getting rid of doctors because we just don't have the volume'. They said that people with conditions such as heart disease and cancer were not coming to hospital out of fear of 'Covid-19'. Their video was deleted by Susan Wojcicki's Cult-owned YouTube after reaching five million views. Florida governor Ron Desantis, who rejected the severe lockdowns of other states and is being targeted for doing so, said that in March, 2020, every US governor was given models claiming they would run out of hospital beds in days. That was never going to happen and the 'modellers' knew it. Deceit can be found at every level of the system. Urgent children's operations were cancelled including fracture repairs and biopsies to spot cancer. Eric Nicholls, a consultant paediatrician, said 'this is obviously concerning and we need to return to normal operating and to increase capacity as soon as possible'. Psychopaths

in power were rather less concerned *because* they are psychopaths. Deletion of urgent care and diagnosis has been happening all over the world and how many kids and others have died as a result of the actions of these cold and heartless lunatics dictating ‘health’ policy? The number must be stratospheric. Richard Sullivan, professor of cancer and global health at King’s College London, said people feared ‘Covid’ more than cancer such was the campaign of fear. ‘Years of lost life will be quite dramatic’, Sullivan said, with ‘a huge amount of avoidable mortality’. Sarah Woolnough, executive director for policy at Cancer Research UK, said there had been a 75 percent drop in urgent referrals to hospitals by family doctors of people with suspected cancer. Sullivan said that ‘a lot of services have had to scale back – we’ve seen a dramatic decrease in the amount of elective cancer surgery’. Lockdown deaths worldwide has been absolutely fantastic with the *New York Post* reporting how data confirmed that ‘lockdowns end more lives than they save’:

There was a sharp decline in visits to emergency rooms and an increase in fatal heart attacks because patients didn’t receive prompt treatment. Many fewer people were screened for cancer. Social isolation contributed to excess deaths from dementia and Alzheimer’s.

Researchers predicted that the social and economic upheaval would lead to tens of thousands of “deaths of despair” from drug overdoses, alcoholism and suicide. As unemployment surged and mental-health and substance-abuse treatment programs were interrupted, the reported levels of anxiety, depression and suicidal thoughts increased dramatically, as did alcohol sales and fatal drug overdoses.

This has been happening while nurses and other staff had so much time on their hands in the ‘war-zones’ that Tic-Tok dancing videos began appearing across the Internet with medical staff dancing around in empty wards and corridors as people died at home from causes that would normally have been treated in hospital.

## **Mentions in dispatches**

One brave and truth-committed whistleblower was Louise Hampton, a call handler with the UK NHS who made a viral Internet video saying she had done ‘fuck all’ during the ‘pandemic’

which was ‘a load of bollocks’. She said that ‘Covid-19’ was rebranded flu and of course she lost her job. This is what happens in the medical and endless other professions now when you tell the truth. Louise filmed inside ‘war-zone’ accident and emergency departments to show they were empty and I mean *empty* as in no one there. The mainstream media could have done the same and blown the gaff on the whole conspiracy. They haven’t to their eternal shame. Not that most ‘journalists’ seem capable of manifesting shame as with the psychopaths they slavishly repeat without question. The relative few who were admitted with serious health problems were left to die alone with no loved ones allowed to see them because of ‘Covid’ rules and they included kids dying without the comfort of mum and dad at their bedside while the evil behind this couldn’t give a damn. It was all good fun to them. A Scottish NHS staff nurse publicly quit in the spring of 2021 saying: ‘I can no longer be part of the lies and the corruption by the government.’ She said hospitals ‘aren’t full, the beds aren’t full, beds have been shut, wards have been shut’. Hospitals were never busy throughout ‘Covid’. The staff nurse said that Nicola Sturgeon, tragically the leader of the Scottish government, was on television saying save the hospitals and the NHS – ‘but the beds are empty’ and ‘we’ve not seen flu, we always see flu every year’. She wrote to government and spoke with her union Unison (the unions are Cult-compromised and *useless*, but nothing changed. Many of her colleagues were scared of losing their jobs if they spoke out as they wanted to. She said nursing staff were being affected by wearing masks all day and ‘my head is splitting every shift from wearing a mask’. The NHS is part of the fascist tyranny and must be dismantled so we can start again with human beings in charge. (Ironically, hospitals were reported to be busier again when official ‘Covid’ cases *fell* in spring/summer of 2021 and many other conditions required treatment at the same time as *the fake vaccine rollout*.)

I will cover the ‘Covid vaccine’ scam in detail later, but it is another indicator of the sickening disregard for human life that I am highlighting here. The DNA-manipulating concoctions do not fulfil

the definition of a ‘vaccine’, have never been used on humans before and were given only emergency approval because trials were not completed and they continued using the unknowing public. The result was what a NHS senior nurse with responsibility for ‘vaccine’ procedure said was ‘genocide’. She said the ‘vaccines’ were not ‘vaccines’. They had not been shown to be safe and claims about their effectiveness by drug companies were ‘poetic licence’. She described what was happening as a ‘horrid act of human annihilation’. The nurse said that management had instigated a policy of not providing a Patient Information Leaflet (PIL) before people were ‘vaccinated’ even though health care professionals are supposed to do this according to protocol. Patients should also be told that they are taking part in an ongoing clinical trial. Her challenges to what is happening had seen her excluded from meetings and ridiculed in others. She said she was told to ‘watch my step … or I would find myself surplus to requirements’. The nurse, who spoke anonymously in fear of her career, said she asked her NHS manager why he/she was content with taking part in genocide against those having the ‘vaccines’. The reply was that everyone had to play their part and to ‘put up, shut up, and get it done’. Government was ‘leaning heavily’ on NHS management which was clearly leaning heavily on staff. This is how the global ‘medical’ hierarchy operates and it starts with the Cult and its World Health Organization.

She told the story of a doctor who had the Pfizer jab and when questioned had no idea what was in it. The doctor had never read the literature. We have to stop treating doctors as intellectual giants when so many are moral and medical pygmies. The doctor did not even know that the ‘vaccines’ were not fully approved or that their trials were ongoing. They were, however, asking their patients if they minded taking part in follow-ups for research purposes – yes, the *ongoing clinical trial*. The nurse said the doctor’s ignorance was not rare and she had spoken to a hospital consultant who had the jab without any idea of the background or that the ‘trials’ had not been completed. Nurses and pharmacists had shown the same ignorance.

'My NHS colleagues have forsaken their duty of care, broken their code of conduct – Hippocratic Oath – and have been brainwashed just the same as the majority of the UK public through propaganda ...' She said she had not been able to recruit a single NHS colleague, doctor, nurse or pharmacist to stand with her and speak out. Her union had refused to help. She said that if the genocide came to light she would not hesitate to give evidence at a Nuremberg-type trial against those in power who could have affected the outcomes but didn't.

## **And all for what?**

To put the nonsense into perspective let's say the 'virus' does exist and let's go completely crazy and accept that the official manipulated figures for cases and deaths are accurate. *Even then* a study by Stanford University epidemiologist Dr John Ioannidis published on the World Health Organization website produced an average infection to fatality rate of ... 0.23 percent! Ioannidis said: 'If one could sample equally from all locations globally, the median infection fatality rate might even be substantially lower than the 0.23% observed in my analysis.' For healthy people under 70 it was ... 0.05 percent! This compares with the 3.4 percent claimed by the Cult-owned World Health Organization when the hoax was first played and maximum fear needed to be generated. An updated Stanford study in April, 2021, put the 'infection' to 'fatality' rate at just 0.15 percent. Another team of scientists led by Megan O'Driscoll and Henrik Salje studied data from 45 countries and published their findings on the Nature website. For children and young people the figure is so small it virtually does not register although authorities will be hyping dangers to the young when they introduce DNA-manipulating 'vaccines' for children. The O'Driscoll study produced an average infection-fatality figure of 0.003 for children from birth to four; 0.001 for 5 to 14; 0.003 for 15 to 19; and it was still only 0.456 up to 64. To claim that children must be 'vaccinated' to protect them from 'Covid' is an obvious lie and so there must be another reason and there is. What's more the average age of a 'Covid' death is akin

to the average age that people die in general. The average age of death in England is about 80 for men and 83 for women. The average age of death from alleged 'Covid' is between 82 and 83. California doctors, Dan Erickson and Artin Massihi, said at their April media conference that projection models of millions of deaths had been 'woefully inaccurate'. They produced detailed figures showing that Californians had a 0.03 chance of dying from 'Covid' based on the number of people who tested positive (with a test not testing for the 'virus'). Erickson said there was a 0.1 percent chance of dying from 'Covid' in the *state* of New York, not just the city, and a 0.05 percent chance in Spain, a centre of 'Covid-19' hysteria at one stage. The Stanford studies supported the doctors' data with fatality rate estimates of 0.23 and 0.15 percent. How close are these figures to my estimate of *zero*? Death-rate figures claimed by the World Health Organization at the start of the hoax were some 15 times higher. The California doctors said there was no justification for lockdowns and the economic devastation they caused. Everything they had ever learned about quarantine was that you quarantine the *sick* and not the healthy. They had never seen this before and it made no medical sense.

Why in the light of all this would governments and medical systems the world over say that billions must go under house arrest; lose their livelihood; in many cases lose their mind, their health and their life; force people to wear masks dangerous to health and psychology; make human interaction and even family interaction a criminal offence; ban travel; close restaurants, bars, watching live sport, concerts, theatre, and any activity involving human togetherness and discourse; and closing schools to isolate children from their friends and cause many to commit suicide in acts of hopelessness and despair? The California doctors said lockdown consequences included increased child abuse, partner abuse, alcoholism, depression, and other impacts they were seeing every day. Who would do that to the entire human race if not mentally-ill psychopaths of almost unimaginable extremes like Bill Gates? We must face the reality of what we are dealing with and come out of

denial. Fascism and tyranny are made possible only by the target population submitting and acquiescing to fascism and tyranny. The whole of human history shows that to be true. Most people naively and unquestioning believed what they were told about a ‘deadly virus’ and meekly and weakly submitted to house arrest. Those who didn’t believe it – at least in total – still submitted in fear of the consequences of not doing so. For the rest who wouldn’t submit draconian fines have been imposed, brutal policing by psychopaths *for* psychopaths, and condemnation from the meek and weak who condemn the Pushbackers on behalf of the very force that has them, too, in its gunsights. ‘Pathetic’ does not even begin to suffice.

Britain’s brainless ‘Health’ Secretary Matt Hancock warned anyone lying to border officials about returning from a list of ‘hotspot’ countries could face a jail sentence of up to ten years which is more than for racially-aggravated assault, incest and attempting to have sex with a child under 13. Hancock is a lunatic, but he has the state apparatus behind him in a Cult-led chain reaction and the same with UK ‘Vaccine Minister’ Nadhim Zahawi, a prominent member of the mega-Cult secret society, Le Cercle, which featured in my earlier books. The Cult enforces its will on governments and medical systems; government and medical systems enforce their will on business and police; business enforces its will on staff who enforce it on customers; police enforce the will of the Cult on the population and play their essential part in creating a world of fascist control that their own children and grandchildren will have to live in their entire lives. It is a hierarchical pyramid of imposition and acquiescence and, yes indeedy, of clinical insanity.

Does anyone bright enough to read this book have to ask what the answer is? I think not, but I will reveal it anyway in the fewest of syllables: Tell the psychos and their moronic lackeys to fuck off and let’s get on with our lives. We are many – They are few.

## CHAPTER SEVEN

### War on your mind

***One believes things because one has been conditioned to believe them***

**Aldous Huxley, *Brave New World***

I have described the ‘Covid’ hoax as a ‘Psyop’ and that is true in every sense and on every level in accordance with the definition of that term which is psychological warfare. Break down the ‘Covid pandemic’ to the foundation themes and it is psychological warfare on the human individual and collective mind.

The same can be said for the entire human belief system involving every subject you can imagine. Huxley was right in his contention that people believe what they are conditioned to believe and this comes from the repetition throughout their lives of the same falsehoods. They spew from government, corporations, media and endless streams of ‘experts’ telling you what the Cult wants you to believe and often believing it themselves (although *far* from always). ‘Experts’ are rewarded with ‘prestigious’ jobs and titles and as agents of perceptual programming with regular access to the media. The Cult has to control the narrative – control *information* – or they lose control of the vital, crucial, without-which-they-cannot-prevail public perception of reality. The foundation of that control today is the Internet made possible by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the incredibly sinister technological arm of the Pentagon. The Internet is the result of military technology.

DARPA openly brags about establishing the Internet which has been a long-term project to lasso the minds of the global population. I have said for decades the plan is to control information to such an extreme that eventually no one would see or hear anything that the Cult does not approve. We are closing in on that end with ferocious censorship since the ‘Covid’ hoax began and in my case it started back in the 1990s in terms of books and speaking venues. I had to create my own publishing company in 1995 precisely because no one else would publish my books even then. I think they’re all still running.

## **Cult Internet**

To secure total control of information they needed the Internet in which pre-programmed algorithms can seek out ‘unclean’ content for deletion and even stop it being posted in the first place. The Cult had to dismantle print and non-Internet broadcast media to ensure the transfer of information to the appropriate-named ‘Web’ – a critical expression of the *Cult* web. We’ve seen the ever-quickenning demise of traditional media and control of what is left by a tiny number of corporations operating worldwide. Independent journalism in the mainstream is already dead and never was that more obvious than since the turn of 2020. The Cult wants all information communicated via the Internet to globally censor and allow the plug to be pulled any time. Lockdowns and forced isolation has meant that communication between people has been through electronic means and no longer through face-to-face discourse and discussion. Cult psychopaths have targeted the bars, restaurants, sport, venues and meeting places in general for this reason. None of this is by chance and it’s to stop people gathering in any kind of privacy or number while being able to track and monitor all Internet communications and block them as necessary. Even private messages between individuals have been censored by these fascists that control Cult fronts like Facebook, Twitter, Google and YouTube which are all officially run by Sabbatian place-people and from the background by higher-level Sabbatian place people.

Facebook, Google, Amazon and their like were seed-funded and supported into existence with money-no-object infusions of funds either directly or indirectly from DARPA and CIA technology arm In-Q-Tel. The Cult plays the long game and prepares very carefully for big plays like 'Covid'. Amazon is another front in the psychological war and pretty much controls the global market in book sales and increasingly publishing. Amazon's limitless funds have deleted fantastic numbers of independent publishers to seize global domination on the way to deciding which books can be sold and circulated and which cannot. Moves in that direction are already happening. Amazon's leading light Jeff Bezos is the grandson of Lawrence Preston Gise who worked with DARPA predecessor ARPA. Amazon has big connections to the CIA and the Pentagon. The plan I have long described went like this:

1. Employ military technology to establish the Internet.
2. Sell the Internet as a place where people can freely communicate without censorship and allow that to happen until the Net becomes the central and irreversible pillar of human society. If the Internet had been highly censored from the start many would have rejected it.
3. Fund and manipulate major corporations into being to control the circulation of information on your Internet using cover stories about geeks in garages to explain how they came about. Give them unlimited funds to expand rapidly with no need to make a profit for years while non-Cult companies who need to balance the books cannot compete. You know that in these circumstances your Googles, YouTubes, Facebooks and Amazons are going to secure near monopolies by either crushing or buying up the opposition.
4. Allow freedom of expression on both the Internet and communication platforms to draw people in until the Internet is the central and irreversible pillar of human society and your communication corporations have reached a stage of near monopoly domination.
5. Then unleash your always-planned frenzy of censorship on the basis of 'where else are you going to go?' and continue to expand that until nothing remains that the Cult does not want its human targets to see.

The process was timed to hit the 'Covid' hoax to ensure the best chance possible of controlling the narrative which they knew they had to do at all costs. They were, after all, about to unleash a 'deadly virus' that didn't really exist. If you do that in an environment of free-flowing information and opinion you would be dead in the

water before you could say Gates is a psychopath. The network was in place through which the Cult-created-and-owned World Health Organization could dictate the ‘Covid’ narrative and response policy slavishly supported by Cult-owned Internet communication giants and mainstream media while those telling a different story were censored. Google, YouTube, Facebook and Twitter openly announced that they would do this. What else would we expect from Cult-owned operations like Facebook which former executives have confirmed set out to make the platform more addictive than cigarettes and coldly manipulates emotions of its users to sow division between people and groups and scramble the minds of the young? If Zuckerberg lives out the rest of his life without going to jail for crimes against humanity, and most emphatically against the young, it will be a travesty of justice. Still, no matter, cause and effect will catch up with him eventually and the same with Sergey Brin and Larry Page at Google with its CEO Sundar Pichai who fix the Google search results to promote Cult narratives and hide the opposition. Put the same key words into Google and other search engines like DuckDuckGo and you will see how different results can be. Wikipedia is another intensely biased ‘encyclopaedia’ which skews its content to the Cult agenda. YouTube links to Wikipedia’s version of ‘Covid’ and ‘climate change’ on video pages in which experts in their field offer a different opinion (even that is increasingly rare with Wojcicki censorship). Into this ‘Covid’ silence-them network must be added government media censors, sorry ‘regulators’, such as Ofcom in the UK which imposed tyrannical restrictions on British broadcasters that had the effect of banning me from ever appearing. Just to debate with me about my evidence and views on ‘Covid’ would mean breaking the fascistic impositions of Ofcom and its CEO career government bureaucrat Melanie Dawes. Gutless British broadcasters tremble at the very thought of fascist Ofcom.

## **Psychos behind ‘Covid’**

The reason for the ‘Covid’ catastrophe in all its facets and forms can be seen by whom and what is driving the policies worldwide in such a coordinated way. Decisions are not being made to protect health, but to target psychology. The dominant group guiding and ‘advising’ government policy are not medical professionals. They are psychologists and behavioural scientists. Every major country has its own version of this phenomenon and I’ll use the British example to show how it works. In many ways the British version has been affecting the wider world in the form of the huge behaviour manipulation network in the UK which operates in other countries. The network involves private companies, government, intelligence and military. The Cabinet Office is at the centre of the government ‘Covid’ Psyop and part-owns, with ‘innovation charity’ Nesta, the Behavioural Insights Team (BIT) which claims to be independent of government but patently isn’t. The BIT was established in 2010 and its job is to manipulate the psyche of the population to acquiesce to government demands and so much more. It is also known as the ‘Nudge Unit’, a name inspired by the 2009 book by two ultra-Zionists, Cass Sunstein and Richard Thaler, called *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness*. The book, as with the Behavioural Insights Team, seeks to ‘nudge’ behaviour (manipulate it) to make the public follow patterns of action and perception that suit those in authority (the Cult). Sunstein is so skilled at this that he advises the World Health Organization and the UK Behavioural Insights Team and was Administrator of the White House Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs in the Obama administration. Biden appointed him to the Department of Homeland Security – another ultra-Zionist in the fold to oversee new immigration laws which is another policy the Cult wants to control. Sunstein is desperate to silence anyone exposing conspiracies and co-authored a 2008 report on the subject in which suggestions were offered to ban ‘conspiracy theorizing’ or impose ‘some kind of tax, financial or otherwise, on those who disseminate such theories’. I guess a psychiatrist’s chair is out of the question?

Sunstein's mate Richard Thaler, an 'academic affiliate' of the UK Behavioural Insights Team, is a proponent of 'behavioural economics' which is defined as the study of 'the effects of psychological, cognitive, emotional, cultural and social factors on the decisions of individuals and institutions'. Study the effects so they can be manipulated to be what you want them to be. Other leading names in the development of behavioural economics are ultra-Zionists Daniel Kahneman and Robert J. Shiller and they, with Thaler, won the Nobel Memorial Prize in Economic Sciences for their work in this field. The Behavioural Insights Team is operating at the heart of the UK government and has expanded globally through partnerships with several universities including Harvard, Oxford, Cambridge, University College London (UCL) and Pennsylvania. They claim to have 'trained' (reframed) 20,000 civil servants and run more than 750 projects involving 400 randomised controlled trials in dozens of countries' as another version of mind reframers Common Purpose. BIT works from its office in New York with cities and their agencies, as well as other partners, across the United States and Canada – this is a company part-owned by the British government Cabinet Office. An executive order by President Cult-servant Obama established a US Social and Behavioral Sciences Team in 2015. They all have the same reason for being and that's to brainwash the population directly and by brainwashing those in positions of authority.

### **'Covid' mind game**

Another prime aspect of the UK mind-control network is the 'independent' [joke] Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours (SPI-B) which 'provides behavioural science advice aimed at anticipating and helping people adhere to interventions that are recommended by medical or epidemiological experts'. That means manipulating public perception and behaviour to do whatever government tells them to do. It's disgusting and if they really want the public to be 'safe' this lot should all be under lock and key. According to the government website SPI-B consists of

'behavioural scientists, health and social psychologists, anthropologists and historians' and advises the Whitty-Vallance-led Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE) which in turn advises the government on 'the science' (it doesn't) and 'Covid' policy. When politicians say they are being guided by 'the science' this is the rabble in each country they are talking about and that 'science' is dominated by behaviour manipulators to enforce government fascism through public compliance. The Behaviour Insight Team is headed by psychologist David Solomon Halpern, a visiting professor at King's College London, and connects with a national and global web of other civilian and military organisations as the Cult moves towards its goal of fusing them into one fascistic whole in every country through its 'Fusion Doctrine'. The behaviour manipulation network involves, but is not confined to, the Foreign Office; National Security Council; government communications headquarters (GCHQ); MI5; MI6; the Cabinet Office-based Media Monitoring Unit; and the Rapid Response Unit which 'monitors digital trends to spot emerging issues; including misinformation and disinformation; and identifies the best way to respond'.

There is also the 77th Brigade of the UK military which operates like the notorious Israeli military's Unit 8200 in manipulating information and discussion on the Internet by posing as members of the public to promote the narrative and discredit those who challenge it. Here we have the military seeking to manipulate *domestic* public opinion while the Nazis in government are fine with that. Conservative Member of Parliament Tobias Ellwood, an advocate of lockdown and control through 'vaccine passports', is a Lieutenant Colonel reservist in the 77th Brigade which connects with the military operation jHub, the 'innovation centre' for the Ministry of Defence and Strategic Command. jHub has also been involved with the civilian National Health Service (NHS) in 'symptom tracing' the population. The NHS is a key part of this mind control network and produced a document in December, 2020, explaining to staff how to use psychological manipulation with different groups and ages to get them to have the DNA-manipulating 'Covid vaccine'

that's designed to cumulatively rewrite human genetics. The document, called 'Optimising Vaccination Roll Out – Do's and Dont's for all messaging, documents and "communications" in the widest sense', was published by NHS England and the NHS Improvement *Behaviour Change Unit* in partnership with Public Health England and Warwick Business School. I hear the mantra about 'save the NHS' and 'protect the NHS' when we need to scrap the NHS and start again. The current version is far too corrupt, far too anti-human and totally compromised by Cult operatives and their assets. UK government broadcast media censor Ofcom will connect into this web – as will the BBC with its tremendous Ofcom influence – to control what the public see and hear and dictate mass perception. Nuremberg trials must include personnel from all these organisations.

## **The fear factor**

The 'Covid' hoax has led to the creation of the UK Cabinet Office-connected Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) which is officially described as providing 'expert advice on pandemics' using its independent [all Cult operations are 'independent'] analytical function to provide real-time analysis about infection outbreaks to identify and respond to outbreaks of Covid-19'. Another role is to advise the government on a response to spikes in infections – 'for example by closing schools or workplaces in local areas where infection levels have risen'. Put another way, promoting the Cult agenda. The Joint Biosecurity Centre is modelled on the Joint Terrorism Analysis Centre which analyses intelligence to set 'terrorism threat levels' and here again you see the fusion of civilian and military operations and intelligence that has led to military intelligence producing documents about 'vaccine hesitancy' and how it can be combated. Domestic civilian matters and opinions should not be the business of the military. The Joint Biosecurity Centre is headed by Tom Hurd, director general of the Office for Security and Counter-Terrorism from the establishment-to-its-fingertips Hurd family. His father is former Foreign Secretary Douglas Hurd. How coincidental that Tom

Hurd went to the elite Eton College and Oxford University with Boris Johnson. Imperial College with its ridiculous computer modeller Neil Ferguson will connect with this gigantic web that will itself interconnect with similar set-ups in other major and not so major countries. Compared with this Cult network the politicians, be they Boris Johnson, Donald Trump or Joe Biden, are bit-part players ‘following the science’. The network of psychologists was on the ‘Covid’ case from the start with the aim of generating maximum fear of the ‘virus’ to ensure compliance by the population. A government behavioural science group known as SPI-B produced a paper in March, 2020, for discussion by the main government science advisory group known as SAGE. It was headed ‘Options for increasing adherence to social distancing measures’ and it said the following in a section headed ‘Persuasion’:

- A substantial number of people still do not feel sufficiently personally threatened; it could be that they are reassured by the low death rate in their demographic group, although levels of concern may be rising. Having a good understanding of the risk has been found to be positively associated with adoption of COVID-19 social distancing measures in Hong Kong.
- The perceived level of personal threat needs to be increased among those who are complacent, using hard-hitting evaluation of options for increasing social distancing emotional messaging. To be effective this must also empower people by making clear the actions they can take to reduce the threat.
- Responsibility to others: There seems to be insufficient understanding of, or feelings of responsibility about, people’s role in transmitting the infection to others ... Messaging about actions need to be framed positively in terms of protecting oneself and the community, and increase confidence that they will be effective.
- Some people will be more persuaded by appeals to play by the rules, some by duty to the community, and some to personal risk.

All these different approaches are needed. The messaging also needs to take account of the realities of different people's lives. Messaging needs to take account of the different motivational levers and circumstances of different people.

All this could be achieved the SPI-B psychologists said by *using the media to increase the sense of personal threat* which translates as terrify the shit out of the population, including children, so they all do what we want. That's not happened has it? Those excuses for 'journalists' who wouldn't know journalism if it bit them on the arse (the great majority) have played their crucial part in serving this Cult-government Psyop to enslave their own kids and grandkids. How they live with themselves I have no idea. The psychological war has been underpinned by constant government 'Covid' propaganda in almost every television and radio ad break, plus the Internet and print media, which has pounded out the fear with taxpayers footing the bill for their own programming. The result has been people terrified of a 'virus' that doesn't exist or one with a tiny fatality rate even if you believe it does. People walk down the street and around the shops wearing face-nappies damaging their health and psychology while others report those who refuse to be that naïve to the police who turn up in their own face-nappies. I had a cameraman come to my flat and he was so frightened of 'Covid' he came in wearing a mask and refused to shake my hand in case he caught something. He had – naïveitis – and the thought that he worked in the mainstream media was both depressing and made his behaviour perfectly explainable. The fear which has gripped the minds of so many and frozen them into compliance has been carefully cultivated by these psychologists who are really psychopaths. If lives get destroyed and a lot of young people commit suicide it shows our plan is working. SPI-B then turned to compulsion on the public to comply. 'With adequate preparation, rapid change can be achieved', it said. Some countries had introduced mandatory self-isolation on a wide scale without evidence of major public unrest and a large majority of the UK's population appeared to be supportive of more coercive measures with 64 percent of adults saying they would

support putting London under a lockdown (watch the ‘polls’ which are designed to make people believe that public opinion is in favour or against whatever the subject in hand).

For ‘aggressive protective measures’ to be effective, the SPI-B paper said, special attention should be devoted to those population groups that are more at risk. Translated from the Orwellian this means making the rest of population feel guilty for not protecting the ‘vulnerable’ such as old people which the Cult and its agencies were about to kill on an industrial scale with lockdown, lack of treatment and the Gates ‘vaccine’. Psychopath psychologists sold their guilt-trip so comprehensively that Los Angeles County Supervisor Hilda Solis reported that children were apologising (from a distance) to their parents and grandparents for bringing ‘Covid’ into their homes and getting them sick. ‘... These apologies are just some of the last words that loved ones will ever hear as they die alone,’ she said. Gut-wrenchingly Solis then used this childhood tragedy to tell children to stay at home and ‘keep your loved ones alive’. Imagine heaping such potentially life-long guilt on a kid when it has absolutely nothing to do with them. These people are deeply disturbed and the psychologists behind this even more so.

## **Uncivil war – divide and rule**

Professional mind-controllers at SPI-B wanted the media to increase a sense of responsibility to others (do as you’re told) and promote ‘positive messaging’ for those actions while in contrast to invoke ‘social disapproval’ by the unquestioning, obedient, community of anyone with a mind of their own. Again the compliant Goebbels-like media obliged. This is an old, old, trick employed by tyrannies the world over throughout human history. You get the target population to keep the target population in line – *your* line. SPI-B said this could ‘play an important role in preventing anti-social behaviour or discouraging failure to enact pro-social behaviour’. For ‘anti-social’ in the Orwellian parlance of SPI-B see any behaviour that government doesn’t approve. SPI-B recommendations said that ‘social disapproval’ should be accompanied by clear messaging and

promotion of strong collective identity – hence the government and celebrity mantra of ‘we’re all in this together’. Sure we are. The mind doctors have such contempt for their targets that they think some clueless comedian, actor or singer telling them to do what the government wants will be enough to win them over. We have had UK comedian Lenny Henry, actor Michael Caine and singer Elton John wheeled out to serve the propagandists by urging people to have the DNA-manipulating ‘Covid’ non-‘vaccine’. The role of Henry and fellow black celebrities in seeking to coax a ‘vaccine’ reluctant black community into doing the government’s will was especially stomach-turning. An emotion-manipulating script and carefully edited video featuring these black ‘celebs’ was such an insult to the intelligence of black people and where’s the self-respect of those involved selling their souls to a fascist government agenda? Henry said he heard black people’s ‘legitimate worries and concerns’, but people must ‘trust the facts’ when they were doing exactly that by not having the ‘vaccine’. They had to include the obligatory reference to Black Lives Matter with the line ... ‘Don’t let coronavirus cost even more black lives – because we matter’. My god, it was pathetic. ‘I know the vaccine is safe and what it does.’ How? ‘I’m a comedian and it says so in my script.’

SPI-B said social disapproval needed to be carefully managed to avoid victimisation, scapegoating and misdirected criticism, but they knew that their ‘recommendations’ would lead to exactly that and the media were specifically used to stir-up the divide-and-conquer hostility. Those who conform like good little baa, baas, are praised while those who have seen through the tidal wave of lies are ‘Covidiots’. The awake have been abused by the fast asleep for not conforming to fascism and impositions that the awake know are designed to endanger their health, dehumanise them, and tear asunder the very fabric of human society. We have had the curtain-twitchers and morons reporting neighbours and others to the face-nappied police for breaking ‘Covid rules’ with fascist police delighting in posting links and phone numbers where this could be done. The Cult cannot impose its will without a compliant police

and military or a compliant population willing to play their part in enslaving themselves and their kids. The words of a pastor in Nazi Germany are so appropriate today:

First they came for the socialists and I did not speak out because I was not a socialist.

Then they came for the trade unionists and I did not speak out because I was not a trade unionist.

Then they came for the Jews and I did not speak out because I was not a Jew.

Then they came for me and there was no one left to speak for me.

Those who don't learn from history are destined to repeat it and so many are.

### **'Covid' rules: Rewiring the mind**

With the background laid out to this gigantic national and global web of psychological manipulation we can put 'Covid' rules into a clear and sinister perspective. Forget the claims about protecting health. 'Covid' rules are about dismantling the human mind, breaking the human spirit, destroying self-respect, and then putting Humpty Dumpty together again as a servile, submissive slave. Social isolation through lockdown and distancing have devastating effects on the human psyche as the psychological psychopaths well know and that's the real reason for them. Humans need contact with each other, discourse, closeness and touch, or they eventually, and literally, go crazy. Masks, which I will address at some length, fundamentally add to the effects of isolation and the Cult agenda to dehumanise and de-individualise the population. To do this while knowing – in fact *seeking* – this outcome is the very epitome of evil and psychologists involved in this *are* the epitome of evil. They must like all the rest of the Cult demons and their assets stand trial for crimes against humanity on a scale that defies the imagination. Psychopaths in uniform use isolation to break enemy troops and agents and make them subservient and submissive to tell what they know. The technique is rightly considered a form of torture and

torture is most certainly what has been imposed on the human population.

Clinically-insane American psychologist Harry Harlow became famous for his isolation experiments in the 1950s in which he separated baby monkeys from their mothers and imprisoned them for months on end in a metal container or ‘pit of despair’. They soon began to show mental distress and depression as any idiot could have predicted. Harlow put other monkeys in steel chambers for three, six or twelve months while denying them any contact with animals or humans. He said that the effects of total social isolation for six months were ‘so devastating and debilitating that we had assumed initially that twelve months of isolation would not produce any additional decrement’; but twelve months of isolation ‘almost obliterated the animals socially’. This is what the Cult and its psychopaths are doing to you and your children. Even monkeys in partial isolation in which they were not allowed to form relationships with other monkeys became ‘aggressive and hostile, not only to others, but also towards their own bodies’. We have seen this in the young as a consequence of lockdown. UK government psychopaths launched a public relations campaign telling people not to hug each other even after they received the ‘Covid-19 vaccine’ which we were told with more lies would allow a return to ‘normal life’. A government source told *The Telegraph*: ‘It will be along the lines that it is great that you have been vaccinated, but if you are going to visit your family and hug your grandchildren there is a chance you are going to infect people you love.’ The source was apparently speaking from a secure psychiatric facility. Janet Lord, director of Birmingham University’s Institute of Inflammation and Ageing, said that parents and grandparents should avoid hugging their children. Well, how can I put it, Ms Lord? Fuck off. Yep, that’ll do.

## **Destroying the kids – where are the parents?**

Observe what has happened to people enslaved and isolated by lockdown as suicide and self-harm has soared worldwide,

particularly among the young denied the freedom to associate with their friends. A study of 49,000 people in English-speaking countries concluded that almost half of young adults are at clinical risk of mental health disorders. A national survey in America of 1,000 currently enrolled high school and college students found that 5 percent reported attempting suicide during the pandemic. Data from the US CDC's National Syndromic Surveillance Program from January 1st to October 17th, 2020, revealed a 31 percent increase in mental health issues among adolescents aged 12 to 17 compared with 2019. The CDC reported that America in general suffered the biggest drop in life expectancy since World War Two as it fell by a year in the first half of 2020 as a result of 'deaths of despair' – overdoses and suicides. Deaths of despair have leapt by more than 20 percent during lockdown and include the highest number of fatal overdoses ever recorded in a single year – 81,000. Internet addiction is another consequence of being isolated at home which lowers interest in physical activities as kids fall into inertia and what's the point? Children and young people are losing hope and giving up on life, sometimes literally. A 14-year-old boy killed himself in Maryland because he had 'given up' when his school district didn't reopen; an 11-year-old boy shot himself during a zoom class; a teenager in Maine succumbed to the isolation of the 'pandemic' when he ended his life after experiencing a disrupted senior year at school. Children as young as nine have taken their life and all these stories can be repeated around the world. Careers are being destroyed before they start and that includes those in sport in which promising youngsters have not been able to take part. The plan of the psycho-psychologists is working all right. Researchers at Cambridge University found that lockdowns cause significant harm to children's mental health. Their study was published in the *Archives of Disease in Childhood*, and followed 168 children aged between 7 and 11. The researchers concluded:

During the UK lockdown, children's depression symptoms have increased substantially, relative to before lockdown. The scale of this effect has direct relevance for the continuation of different elements of lockdown policy, such as complete or partial school closures ...

... Specifically, we observed a statistically significant increase in ratings of depression, with a medium-to-large effect size. Our findings emphasise the need to incorporate the potential impact of lockdown on child mental health in planning the ongoing response to the global pandemic and the recovery from it.

Not a chance when the Cult's psycho-psychologists were getting exactly what they wanted. The UK's Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health has urged parents to look for signs of eating disorders in children and young people after a three to four fold increase. Specialists say the 'pandemic' is a major reason behind the rise. You don't say. The College said isolation from friends during school closures, exam cancellations, loss of extra-curricular activities like sport, and an increased use of social media were all contributory factors along with fears about the virus (psycho-psychologists again), family finances, and students being forced to quarantine. Doctors said young people were becoming severely ill by the time they were seen with 'Covid' regulations reducing face-to-face consultations. Nor is it only the young that have been devastated by the psychopaths. Like all bullies and cowards the Cult is targeting the young, elderly, weak and infirm. A typical story was told by a British lady called Lynn Parker who was not allowed to visit her husband in 2020 for the last ten and half months of his life 'when he needed me most' between March 20th and when he died on December 19th. This vacates the criminal and enters the territory of evil. The emotional impact on the immune system alone is immense as are the number of people of all ages worldwide who have died as a result of Cult-demanded, Gates-demanded, lockdowns.

## **Isolation is torture**

The experience of imposing solitary confinement on millions of prisoners around the world has shown how a large percentage become 'actively psychotic and/or acutely suicidal'. Social isolation has been found to trigger 'a specific psychiatric syndrome, characterized by hallucinations; panic attacks; overt paranoia; diminished impulse control; hypersensitivity to external stimuli; and difficulties with thinking, concentration and memory'. Juan Mendez,

a United Nations rapporteur (investigator), said that isolation is a form of torture. Research has shown that even after isolation prisoners find it far more difficult to make social connections and I remember chatting to a shop assistant after one lockdown who told me that when her young son met another child again he had no idea how to act or what to do. Hannah Flanagan, Director of Emergency Services at Journey Mental Health Center in Dane County, Wisconsin, said: ‘The specificity about Covid social distancing and isolation that we’ve come across as contributing factors to the suicides are really new to us this year.’ But they are not new to those that devised them. They are getting the effect they want as the population is psychologically dismantled to be rebuilt in a totally different way. Children and the young are particularly targeted. They will be the adults when the full-on fascist AI-controlled technocracy is planned to be imposed and they are being prepared to meekly submit. At the same time older people who still have a memory of what life was like before – and how fascist the new normal really is – are being deleted. You are going to see efforts to turn the young against the old to support this geriatric genocide. Hannah Flanagan said the big increase in suicide in her county proved that social isolation is not only harmful, but deadly. Studies have shown that isolation from others is one of the main risk factors in suicide and even more so with women. Warnings that lockdown could create a ‘perfect storm’ for suicide were ignored. After all this was one of the *reasons* for lockdown. Suicide, however, is only the most extreme of isolation consequences. There are many others. Dr Dhruv Khullar, assistant professor of healthcare policy at Weill Cornell Medical College, said in a *New York Times* article in 2016 long before the fake ‘pandemic’:

A wave of new research suggests social separation is bad for us. Individuals with less social connection have disrupted sleep patterns, altered immune systems, more inflammation and higher levels of stress hormones. One recent study found that isolation increases the risk of heart disease by 29 percent and stroke by 32 percent. Another analysis that pooled data from 70 studies and 3.4 million people found that socially isolated individuals had a 30 percent higher risk of dying in the next seven years, and that this effect was largest in middle age.

Loneliness can accelerate cognitive decline in older adults, and isolated individuals are twice as likely to die prematurely as those with more robust social interactions. These effects start early: Socially isolated children have significantly poorer health 20 years later, even after controlling for other factors. All told, loneliness is as important a risk factor for early death as obesity and smoking.

There you have proof from that one article alone four years before 2020 that those who have enforced lockdown, social distancing and isolation knew what the effect would be and that is even more so with professional psychologists that have been driving the policy across the globe. We can go back even further to the years 2000 and 2003 and the start of a major study on the effects of isolation on health by Dr Janine Gronewold and Professor Dirk M. Hermann at the University Hospital in Essen, Germany, who analysed data on 4,316 people with an average age of 59 who were recruited for the long-term research project. They found that socially isolated people are more than 40 percent more likely to have a heart attack, stroke, or other major cardiovascular event and nearly 50 percent more likely to die from any cause. Given the financial Armageddon unleashed by lockdown we should note that the study found a relationship between increased cardiovascular risk and lack of financial support. After excluding other factors social isolation was still connected to a 44 percent increased risk of cardiovascular problems and a 47 percent increased risk of death by any cause. Lack of financial support was associated with a 30 percent increase in the risk of cardiovascular health events. Dr Gronewold said it had been known for some time that feeling lonely or lacking contact with close friends and family can have an impact on physical health and the study had shown that having strong social relationships is of high importance for heart health. Gronewold said they didn't understand yet why people who are socially isolated have such poor health outcomes, but this was obviously a worrying finding, particularly during these times of prolonged social distancing. Well, it can be explained on many levels. You only have to identify the point in the body where people feel loneliness and missing people they are parted from – it's in the centre of the chest where they feel the ache of loneliness and the ache of missing people. 'My heart aches for

you' ... 'My heart aches for some company.' I will explain this more in the chapter Escaping Wetiko, but when you realise that the body is the mind – they are expressions of each other – the reason why state of the mind dictates state of the body becomes clear.

American psychologist Ranjit Powar was highlighting the effects of lockdown isolation as early as April, 2020. She said humans have evolved to be social creatures and are wired to live in interactive groups. Being isolated from family, friends and colleagues could be unbalancing and traumatic for most people and could result in short or even long-term psychological and physical health problems. An increase in levels of anxiety, aggression, depression, forgetfulness and hallucinations were possible psychological effects of isolation. 'Mental conditions may be precipitated for those with underlying pre-existing susceptibilities and show up in many others without any pre-condition.' Powar said personal relationships helped us cope with stress and if we lost this outlet for letting off steam the result can be a big emotional void which, for an average person, was difficult to deal with. 'Just a few days of isolation can cause increased levels of anxiety and depression' – so what the hell has been the effect on the global population of *18 months* of this at the time of writing? Powar said: 'Add to it the looming threat of a dreadful disease being repeatedly hammered in through the media and you have a recipe for many shades of mental and physical distress.' For those with a house and a garden it is easy to forget that billions have had to endure lockdown isolation in tiny overcrowded flats and apartments with nowhere to go outside. The psychological and physical consequences of this are unimaginable and with lunatic and abusive partners and parents the consequences have led to tremendous increases in domestic and child abuse and alcoholism as people seek to shut out the horror. Ranjit Powar said:

Staying in a confined space with family is not all a rosy picture for everyone. It can be extremely oppressive and claustrophobic for large low-income families huddled together in small single-room houses. Children here are not lucky enough to have many board/electronic games or books to keep them occupied.

Add to it the deep insecurity of running out of funds for food and basic necessities. On the other hand, there are people with dysfunctional family dynamics, such as domineering, abusive or alcoholic partners, siblings or parents which makes staying home a period of trial. Incidence of suicide and physical abuse against women has shown a worldwide increase. Heightened anxiety and depression also affect a person's immune system, making them more susceptible to illness.

To think that Powar's article was published on April 11th, 2020.

## **Six-feet fantasy**

Social (unsocial) distancing demanded that people stay six feet or two metres apart. UK government advisor Robert Dingwall from the New and Emerging Respiratory Virus Threats Advisory Group said in a radio interview that the two-metre rule was 'conjured up out of nowhere' and was not based on science. No, it was not based on *medical* science, but it didn't come out of nowhere. The distance related to *psychological* science. Six feet/two metres was adopted in many countries and we were told by people like the criminal Anthony Fauci and his ilk that it was founded on science. Many schools could not reopen because they did not have the space for six-feet distancing. Then in March, 2021, after a year of six-feet 'science', a study published in the *Journal of Infectious Diseases* involving more than 500,000 students and almost 100,000 staff over 16 weeks revealed no significant difference in 'Covid' cases between six feet and three feet and Fauci changed his tune. Now three feet was okay. There is no difference between six feet and three *inches* when there is no 'virus' and they got away with six feet for psychological reasons for as long as they could. I hear journalists and others talk about 'unintended consequences' of lockdown. They are not *unintended* at all; they have been coldly-calculated for a specific outcome of human control and that's why super-psychopaths like Gates have called for them so vehemently. Super-psychopath psychologists have demanded them and psychopathic or clueless, spineless, politicians have gone along with them by 'following the science'. But it's not science at all. 'Science' is not what is; it's only what people can be manipulated to believe it is. The whole 'Covid' catastrophe is

founded on mind control. Three word or three statement mantras issued by the UK government are a well-known mind control technique and so we've had 'Stay home/protect the NHS/save lives', 'Stay alert/control the virus/save lives' and 'hands/face/space'. One of the most vocal proponents of extreme 'Covid' rules in the UK has been Professor Susan Michie, a member of the British Communist Party, who is not a medical professional. Michie is the director of the Centre for Behaviour Change at University College London. She is a *behavioural psychologist* and another filthy rich 'Marxist' who praised China's draconian lockdown. She was known by fellow students at Oxford University as 'Stalin's nanny' for her extreme Marxism. Michie is an influential member of the UK government's Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE) and behavioural manipulation groups which have dominated 'Covid' policy. She is a consultant adviser to the World Health Organization on 'Covid-19' and behaviour. Why the hell are lockdowns anything to do with her when they are claimed to be about health? Why does a behavioural psychologist from a group charged with changing the behaviour of the public want lockdown, human isolation and mandatory masks? Does that question really need an answer? Michie *absolutely* has to explain herself before a Nuremberg court when humanity takes back its world again and even more so when you see the consequences of masks that she demands are compulsory. This is a Michie classic:

The benefits of getting primary school children to wear masks is that regardless of what little degree of transmission is occurring in those age groups it could help normalise the practice. Young children wearing masks may be more likely to get their families to accept masks.

Those words alone should carry a prison sentence when you ponder on the callous disregard for children involved and what a statement it makes about the mind and motivations of Susan Michie. What a lovely lady and what she said there encapsulates the mentality of the psychopaths behind the 'Covid' horror. Let us compare what Michie said with a countrywide study in Germany published at [researchsquare.com](https://www.researchsquare.com) involving 25,000 school children and 17,854 health complaints submitted by parents. Researchers

found that masks are harming children physically, psychologically, and behaviourally with 24 health issues associated with mask wearing. They include: shortness of breath (29.7%); dizziness (26.4%); increased headaches (53%); difficulty concentrating (50%); drowsiness or fatigue (37%); and malaise (42%). Nearly a third of children experienced more sleep issues than before and a quarter developed new fears. Researchers found health issues and other impairments in 68 percent of masked children covering their faces for an average of 4.5 hours a day. Hundreds of those taking part experienced accelerated respiration, tightness in the chest, weakness, and short-term impairment of consciousness. A reminder of what Michie said again:

The benefits of getting primary school children to wear masks is that regardless of what little degree of transmission is occurring in those age groups it could help normalise the practice. Young children wearing masks may be more likely to get their families to accept masks.

Psychopaths in government and psychology now have children and young people – plus all the adults – wearing masks for hours on end while clueless teachers impose the will of the psychopaths on the young they should be protecting. What the hell are parents doing?

## **Cult lab rats**

We have some schools already imposing on students microchipped buzzers that activate when they get ‘too close’ to their pals in the way they do with lab rats. How apt. To the Cult and its brain-dead servants our children *are* lab rats being conditioned to be unquestioning, dehumanised slaves for the rest of their lives.

Children and young people are being weaned and frightened away from the most natural human instincts including closeness and touch. I have tracked in the books over the years how schools were banning pupils from greeting each other with a hug and the whole Cult-induced Me Too movement has terrified men and boys from a relaxed and natural interaction with female friends and work colleagues to the point where many men try never to be in a room

alone with a woman that's not their partner. Airhead celebrities have as always played their virtue-signalling part in making this happen with their gross exaggeration. For every monster like Harvey Weinstein there are at least tens of thousands of men that don't treat women like that; but everyone must be branded the same and policy changed for them as well as the monster. I am going to be using the word 'dehumanise' many times in this chapter because that is what the Cult is seeking to do and it goes very deep as we shall see. Don't let them kid you that social distancing is planned to end one day. That's not the idea. We are seeing more governments and companies funding and producing wearable gadgets to keep people apart and they would not be doing that if this was meant to be short-term. A tech start-up company backed by GCHQ, the British Intelligence and military surveillance headquarters, has created a social distancing wrist sensor that alerts people when they get too close to others. The CIA has also supported tech companies developing similar devices. The wearable sensor was developed by Tended, one of a number of start-up companies supported by GCHQ (see the CIA and DARPA). The device can be worn on the wrist or as a tag on the waistband and will vibrate whenever someone wearing the device breaches social distancing and gets anywhere near natural human contact. The company had a lucky break in that it was developing a distancing sensor when the 'Covid' hoax arrived which immediately provided a potentially enormous market. How fortunate. The government in big-time Cult-controlled Ontario in Canada is investing \$2.5 million in wearable contact tracing technology that 'will alert users if they may have been exposed to the Covid-19 in the workplace and will beep or vibrate if they are within six feet of another person'. Facedrive Inc., the technology company behind this, was founded in 2016 with funding from the Ontario Together Fund and obviously they, too, had a prophet on the board of directors. The human surveillance and control technology is called TraceSCAN and would be worn by the human cyborgs in places such as airports, workplaces, construction sites, care homes and ... *schools*.

I emphasise schools with children and young people the prime targets. You know what is planned for society as a whole if you keep your eyes on the schools. They have always been places where the state program the next generation of slaves to be its compliant worker-ants – or Woker-ants these days; but in the mist of the ‘Covid’ madness they have been transformed into mind laboratories on a scale never seen before. Teachers and head teachers are just as programmed as the kids – often more so. Children are kept apart from human interaction by walk lanes, classroom distancing, staggered meal times, masks, and the rolling-out of buzzer systems. Schools are now physically laid out as a laboratory maze for lab-rats. Lunatics at a school in Anchorage, Alaska, who should be prosecuted for child abuse, took away desks and forced children to kneel (know your place) on a mat for five hours a day while wearing a mask and using their chairs as a desk. How this was supposed to impact on a ‘virus’ only these clinically insane people can tell you and even then it would be clap-trap. The school banned recess (interaction), art classes (creativity), and physical exercise (getting body and mind moving out of inertia). Everyone behind this outrage should be in jail or better still a mental institution. The behavioural manipulators are all for this dystopian approach to schools.

Professor Susan Michie, the mind-doctor and British Communist Party member, said it was wrong to say that schools were safe. They had to be made so by ‘distancing’, masks and ventilation (sitting all day in the cold). I must ask this lady round for dinner on a night I know I am going to be out and not back for weeks. She probably wouldn’t be able to make it, anyway, with all the visits to her own psychologist she must have block-booked.

## **Masking identity**

I know how shocking it must be for you that a behaviour manipulator like Michie wants everyone to wear masks which have long been a feature of mind-control programs like the infamous MKUltra in the United States, but, there we are. We live and learn. I spent many years from 1996 to right across the millennium

researching mind control in detail on both sides of the Atlantic and elsewhere. I met a large number of mind-control survivors and many had been held captive in body and mind by MKUltra. MK stands for mind-control, but employs the German spelling in deference to the Nazis spirited out of Germany at the end of World War Two by Operation Paperclip in which the US authorities, with help from the Vatican, transported Nazi mind-controllers and engineers to America to continue their work. Many of them were behind the creation of NASA and they included Nazi scientist and SS officer Wernher von Braun who swapped designing V-2 rockets to bombard London with designing the Saturn V rockets that powered the NASA moon programme's Apollo craft. I think I may have mentioned that the Cult has no borders. Among Paperclip escapees was Josef Mengele, the Angel of Death in the Nazi concentration camps where he conducted mind and genetic experiments on children often using twins to provide a control twin to measure the impact of his 'work' on the other. If you want to observe the Cult mentality in all its extremes of evil then look into the life of Mengele. I have met many people who suffered mercilessly under Mengele in the United States where he operated under the name Dr Greene and became a stalwart of MKUltra programming and torture. Among his locations was the underground facility in the Mojave Desert in California called the China Lake Naval Weapons Station which is almost entirely below the surface. My books *The Biggest Secret*, *Children of the Matrix* and *The Perception Deception* have the detailed background to MKUltra.

The best-known MKUltra survivor is American Cathy O'Brien. I first met her and her late partner Mark Phillips at a conference in Colorado in 1996. Mark helped her escape and deprogram from decades of captivity in an offshoot of MKUltra known as Project Monarch in which 'sex slaves' were provided for the rich and famous including Father George Bush, Dick Cheney and the Clintons. Read Cathy and Mark's book *Trance-Formation of America* and if you are new to this you will be shocked to the core. I read it in 1996 shortly before, with the usual synchronicity of my life, I found

myself given a book table at the conference right next to hers. MKUltra never ended despite being very publicly exposed (only a small part of it) in the 1970s and continues in other guises. I am still in touch with Cathy. She contacted me during 2020 after masks became compulsory in many countries to tell me how they were used as part of MKUltra programming. I had been observing 'Covid regulations' and the relationship between authority and public for months. I saw techniques that I knew were employed on individuals in MKUltra being used on the global population. I had read many books and manuals on mind control including one called *Silent Weapons for Quiet Wars* which came to light in the 1980s and was a guide on how to perceptually program on a mass scale. 'Silent Weapons' refers to mind-control. I remembered a line from the manual as governments, medical authorities and law enforcement agencies have so obviously talked to – or rather at – the adult population since the 'Covid' hoax began as if they are children. The document said:

If a person is spoken to by a T.V. advertiser as if he were a twelve-year-old, then, due to suggestibility, he will, with a certain probability, respond or react to that suggestion with the uncritical response of a twelve-year-old and will reach in to his economic reservoir and deliver its energy to buy that product on impulse when he passes it in the store.

That's why authority has spoken to adults like children since all this began.

### **Why did Michael Jackson wear masks?**

Every aspect of the 'Covid' narrative has mind-control as its central theme. Cathy O'Brien wrote an article for [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com) about the connection between masks and mind control. Her daughter Kelly who I first met in the 1990s was born while Cathy was still held captive in MKUltra. Kelly was forced to wear a mask as part of her programming from the age of *two* to dehumanise her, target her sense of individuality and reduce the amount of oxygen her brain and body received. *Bingo*. This is the real reason for compulsory

masks, why they have been enforced en masse, and why they seek to increase the number they demand you wear. First one, then two, with one disgraceful alleged ‘doctor’ recommending four which is nothing less than a death sentence. Where and how often they must be worn is being expanded for the purpose of mass mind control and damaging respiratory health which they can call ‘Covid-19’. Canada’s government headed by the man-child Justin Trudeau, says it’s fine for children of two and older to wear masks. An insane ‘study’ in Italy involving just 47 children concluded there was no problem for babies as young as *four months* wearing them. Even after people were ‘vaccinated’ they were still told to wear masks by the criminal that is Anthony Fauci. Cathy wrote that mandating masks is allowing the authorities literally to control the air we breathe which is what was done in MKUltra. You might recall how the singer Michael Jackson wore masks and there is a reason for that. He was subjected to MKUltra mind control through Project Monarch and his psyche was scrambled by these simpletons. Cathy wrote:

In MKUltra Project Monarch mind control, Michael Jackson had to wear a mask to silence his voice so he could not reach out for help. Remember how he developed that whisper voice when he wasn’t singing? Masks control the mind from the outside in, like the redefining of words is doing. By controlling what we can and cannot say for fear of being labeled racist or beaten, for example, it ultimately controls thought that drives our words and ultimately actions (or lack thereof).

Likewise, a mask muffles our speech so that we are not heard, which controls voice ... words ... mind. This is Mind Control. Masks are an obvious mind control device, and I am disturbed so many people are complying on a global scale. Masks depersonalize while making a person feel as though they have no voice. It is a barrier to others. People who would never choose to comply but are forced to wear a mask in order to keep their job, and ultimately their family fed, are compromised. They often feel shame and are subdued. People have stopped talking with each other while media controls the narrative.

The ‘no voice’ theme has often become literal with train passengers told not to speak to each other in case they pass on the ‘virus’, singing banned for the same reason and bonkers California officials telling people riding roller coasters that they cannot shout and scream. Cathy said she heard every day from healed MKUltra survivors who cannot wear a mask without flashing back on ways

their breathing was controlled – ‘from ball gags and penises to water boarding’. She said that through the years when she saw images of people in China wearing masks ‘due to pollution’ that it was really to control their oxygen levels. ‘I knew it was as much of a population control mechanism of depersonalisation as are burkas’, she said. Masks are another Chinese communist/fascist method of control that has been swept across the West as the West becomes China at lightning speed since we entered 2020.

## **Mask-19**

There are other reasons for mandatory masks and these include destroying respiratory health to call it ‘Covid-19’ and stunting brain development of children and the young. Dr Margarite Griesz-Brisson MD, PhD, is a Consultant Neurologist and Neurophysiologist and the Founder and Medical Director of the London Neurology and Pain Clinic. Her CV goes down the street and round the corner. She is clearly someone who cares about people and won’t parrot the propaganda. Griesz-Brisson has a PhD in pharmacology, with special interest in neurotoxicology, environmental medicine, neuroregeneration and neuroplasticity (the way the brain can change in the light of information received). She went public in October, 2020, with a passionate warning about the effects of mask-wearing laws:

The reinhalation of our exhaled air will without a doubt create oxygen deficiency and a flooding of carbon dioxide. We know that the human brain is very sensitive to oxygen deprivation. There are nerve cells for example in the hippocampus that can’t be longer than 3 minutes without oxygen – they cannot survive. The acute warning symptoms are headaches, drowsiness, dizziness, issues in concentration, slowing down of reaction time – reactions of the cognitive system.

Oh, I know, let’s tell bus, truck and taxi drivers to wear them and people working machinery. How about pilots, doctors and police? Griesz-Brisson makes the important point that while the symptoms she mentions may fade as the body readjusts this does not alter the fact that people continue to operate in oxygen deficit with long list of

potential consequences. She said it was well known that neurodegenerative diseases take years or decades to develop. 'If today you forget your phone number, the breakdown in your brain would have already started 20 or 30 years ago.' She said degenerative processes in your brain are getting amplified as your oxygen deprivation continues through wearing a mask. Nerve cells in the brain are unable to divide themselves normally in these circumstances and lost nerve cells will no longer be regenerated. 'What is gone is gone.' Now consider that people like shop workers and *schoolchildren* are wearing masks for hours every day. What in the name of sanity is going to be happening to them? 'I do not wear a mask, I need my brain to think', Griesz-Brisson said, 'I want to have a clear head when I deal with my patients and not be in a carbon dioxide-induced anaesthesia'. If you are told to wear a mask anywhere ask the organisation, police, store, whatever, for their risk assessment on the dangers and negative effects on mind and body of enforcing mask-wearing. They won't have one because it has never been done not even by government. All of them must be subject to class-action lawsuits as the consequences come to light. They don't do mask risk assessments for an obvious reason. They know what the conclusions would be and independent scientific studies that *have* been done tell a horror story of consequences.

### **'Masks are criminal'**

Dr Griesz-Brisson said that for children and adolescents, masks are an absolute no-no. They had an extremely active and adaptive immune system and their brain was incredibly active with so much to learn. 'The child's brain, or the youth's brain, is thirsting for oxygen.' The more metabolically active an organ was, the more oxygen it required; and in children and adolescents every organ was metabolically active. Griesz-Brisson said that to deprive a child's or adolescent's brain of oxygen, or to restrict it in any way, was not only dangerous to their health, it was absolutely criminal. 'Oxygen deficiency inhibits the development of the brain, and the damage that has taken place as a result CANNOT be reversed.' Mind

manipulators of MKUltra put masks on two-year-olds they wanted to neurologically rewire and you can see why. Griesz-Brisson said a child needs the brain to learn and the brain needs oxygen to function. 'We don't need a clinical study for that. This is simple, indisputable physiology.' Consciously and purposely induced oxygen deficiency was an absolutely deliberate health hazard, and an absolute medical contraindication which means that 'this drug, this therapy, this method or measure should not be used, and is not allowed to be used'. To coerce an entire population to use an absolute medical contraindication by force, she said, there had to be definite and serious reasons and the reasons must be presented to competent interdisciplinary and independent bodies to be verified and authorised. She had this warning of the consequences that were coming if mask wearing continued:

When, in ten years, dementia is going to increase exponentially, and the younger generations couldn't reach their god-given potential, it won't help to say 'we didn't need the masks'. I know how damaging oxygen deprivation is for the brain, cardiologists know how damaging it is for the heart, pulmonologists know how damaging it is for the lungs. Oxygen deprivation damages every single organ. Where are our health departments, our health insurance, our medical associations? It would have been their duty to be vehemently against the lockdown and to stop it and stop it from the very beginning.

Why do the medical boards issue punishments to doctors who give people exemptions? Does the person or the doctor seriously have to prove that oxygen deprivation harms people? What kind of medicine are our doctors and medical associations representing? Who is responsible for this crime? The ones who want to enforce it? The ones who let it happen and play along, or the ones who don't prevent it?

All of the organisations and people she mentions there either answer directly to the Cult or do whatever hierarchical levels above them tell them to do. The outcome of both is the same. 'It's not about masks, it's not about viruses, it's certainly not about your health', Griesz-Brisson said. 'It is about much, much more. I am not participating. I am not afraid.' They were taking our air to breathe and there was no unfounded medical exemption from face masks. Oxygen deprivation was dangerous for every single brain. It had to be the free decision of every human being whether they want to

wear a mask that was absolutely ineffective to protect themselves from a virus. She ended by rightly identifying where the responsibility lies for all this:

The imperative of the hour is personal responsibility. We are responsible for what we think, not the media. We are responsible for what we do, not our superiors. We are responsible for our health, not the World Health Organization. And we are responsible for what happens in our country, not the government.

Halle-bloody-lujah.

## **But surgeons wear masks, right?**

Independent studies of mask-wearing have produced a long list of reports detailing mental, emotional and physical dangers. What a definition of insanity to see police officers imposing mask-wearing on the public which will cumulatively damage their health while the police themselves wear masks that will cumulatively damage *their* health. It's utter madness and both public and police do this because 'the government says so' – yes a government of brain-donor idiots like UK Health Secretary Matt Hancock reading the 'follow the science' scripts of psychopathic, lunatic psychologists. The response you get from Stockholm syndrome sufferers defending the very authorities that are destroying them and their families is that 'surgeons wear masks'. This is considered the game, set and match that they must work and don't cause oxygen deficit. Well, actually, scientific studies have shown that they *do* and oxygen levels are monitored in operating theatres to compensate. Surgeons wear masks to stop spittle and such like dropping into open wounds – not to stop 'viral particles' which are so minuscule they can only be seen through an electron microscope. Holes in the masks are significantly bigger than 'viral particles' and if you sneeze or cough they will breach the mask. I watched an incredibly disingenuous 'experiment' that claimed to prove that masks work in catching 'virus' material from the mouth and nose. They did this with a slow motion camera and the mask did block big stuff which stayed inside the mask and

against the face to be breathed in or cause infections on the face as we have seen with many children. ‘Viral particles’, however, would never have been picked up by the camera as they came through the mask when they are far too small to be seen. The ‘experiment’ was therefore disingenuous *and* useless.

Studies have concluded that wearing masks in operating theatres (and thus elsewhere) make no difference to preventing infection while the opposite is true with toxic shite building up in the mask and this had led to an explosion in tooth decay and gum disease dubbed by dentists ‘mask mouth’. You might have seen the Internet video of a furious American doctor urging people to take off their masks after a four-year-old patient had been rushed to hospital the night before and nearly died with a lung infection that doctors sourced to mask wearing. A study in the journal *Cancer Discovery* found that inhalation of harmful microbes can contribute to advanced stage lung cancer in adults and long-term use of masks can help breed dangerous pathogens. Microbiologists have said frequent mask wearing creates a moist environment in which microbes can grow and proliferate before entering the lungs. The Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health, or CADTH, a Canadian national organisation that provides research and analysis to healthcare decision-makers, said this as long ago as 2013 in a report entitled ‘Use of Surgical Masks in the Operating Room: A Review of the Clinical Effectiveness and Guidelines’. It said:

- No evidence was found to support the use of surgical face masks to reduce the frequency of surgical site infections
- No evidence was found on the effectiveness of wearing surgical face masks to protect staff from infectious material in the operating room.
- Guidelines recommend the use of surgical face masks by staff in the operating room to protect both operating room staff and patients (despite the lack of evidence).

We were told that the world could go back to ‘normal’ with the arrival of the ‘vaccines’. When they came, fraudulent as they are, the story changed as I knew that it would. We are in the midst of transforming ‘normal’, not going back to it. Mary Ramsay, head of immunisation at Public Health England, echoed the words of US criminal Anthony Fauci who said masks and other regulations must stay no matter if people are vaccinated. The Fauci idiot continued to wear two masks – different colours so both could be clearly seen – after he *claimed* to have been vaccinated. Senator Rand Paul told Fauci in one exchange that his double-masks were ‘theatre’ and he was right. It’s all theatre. Mary Ramsay back-tracked on the vaccine-return-to-normal theme when she said the public may need to wear masks and social-distance for years despite the jabs. ‘People have got used to those lower-level restrictions now, and [they] can live with them’, she said telling us what the idea has been all along. ‘The vaccine does not give you a pass, even if you have had it, you must continue to follow all the guidelines’ said a Public Health England statement which reneged on what we had been told before and made having the ‘vaccine’ irrelevant to ‘normality’ even by the official story. Spain’s fascist government trumped everyone by passing a law mandating the wearing of masks on the beach and even when swimming in the sea. The move would have devastated what’s left of the Spanish tourist industry, posed potential breathing dangers to swimmers and had Northern European sunbathers walking around with their forehead brown and the rest of their face white as a sheet. The ruling was so crazy that it had to be retracted after pressure from public and tourist industry, but it confirmed where the Cult wants to go with masks and how clinically insane authority has become. The determination to make masks permanent and hide the serious dangers to body and mind can be seen in the censorship of scientist Professor Denis Rancourt by Bill Gates-funded academic publishing website ResearchGate over his papers exposing the dangers and uselessness of masks. Rancourt said:

ResearchGate today has permanently locked my account, which I have had since 2015. Their reasons graphically show the nature of their attack against democracy, and their corruption of

science ... By their obscene non-logic, a scientific review of science articles reporting on harms caused by face masks has a 'potential to cause harm'. No criticism of the psychological device (face masks) is tolerated, if the said criticism shows potential to influence public policy.

This is what happens in a fascist world.

## **Where are the 'greens' (again)?**

Other dangers of wearing masks especially regularly relate to the inhalation of minute plastic fibres into the lungs and the deluge of discarded masks in the environment and oceans. Estimates predicted that more than 1.5 billion disposable masks will end up in the world's oceans every year polluting the water with tons of plastic and endangering marine wildlife. Studies project that humans are using 129 billion face masks each month worldwide – about three million a minute. Most are disposable and made from plastic, non-biodegradable microfibers that break down into smaller plastic particles that become widespread in ecosystems. They are littering cities, clogging sewage channels and turning up in bodies of water. I have written in other books about the immense amounts of microplastics from endless sources now being absorbed into the body. Rolf Halden, director of the Arizona State University (ASU) Biodesign Center for Environmental Health Engineering, was the senior researcher in a 2020 study that analysed 47 human tissue samples and found microplastics in all of them. 'We have detected these chemicals of plastics in every single organ that we have investigated', he said. I wrote in *The Answer* about the world being deluged with microplastics. A study by the Worldwide Fund for Nature (WWF) found that people are consuming on average every week some 2,000 tiny pieces of plastic mostly through water and also through marine life and the air. Every year humans are ingesting enough microplastics to fill a heaped dinner plate and in a life-time of 79 years it is enough to fill two large waste bins. Marco Lambertini, WWF International director general said: 'Not only are plastics polluting our oceans and waterways and killing marine life – it's in all of us and we can't escape consuming plastics,' American

geologists found tiny plastic fibres, beads and shards in rainwater samples collected from the remote slopes of the Rocky Mountain National Park near Denver, Colorado. Their report was headed: 'It is raining plastic.' Rachel Adams, senior lecturer in Biomedical Science at Cardiff Metropolitan University, said that among health consequences are internal inflammation and immune responses to a 'foreign body'. She further pointed out that microplastics become carriers of toxins including mercury, pesticides and dioxins (a known cause of cancer and reproductive and developmental problems). These toxins accumulate in the fatty tissues once they enter the body through microplastics. Now this is being compounded massively by people putting plastic on their face and throwing it away.

Workers exposed to polypropylene plastic fibres known as 'flock' have developed 'flock worker's lung' from inhaling small pieces of the flock fibres which can damage lung tissue, reduce breathing capacity and exacerbate other respiratory problems. Now ... commonly used surgical masks have three layers of melt-blown textiles made of ... polypropylene. We have billions of people putting these microplastics against their mouth, nose and face for hours at a time day after day in the form of masks. How does anyone think that will work out? I mean – what could possibly go wrong? We posted a number of scientific studies on this at [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com), but when I went back to them as I was writing this book the links to the science research website where they were hosted were dead. Anything that challenges the official narrative in any way is either censored or vilified. The official narrative is so unsupportable by the evidence that only deleting the truth can protect it. A study by Chinese scientists still survived – with the usual twist which it why it was still active, I guess. Yes, they found that virtually all the masks they tested increased the daily intake of microplastic fibres, but people should still wear them because the danger from the 'virus' was worse said the crazy 'team' from the Institute of Hydrobiology in Wuhan. Scientists first discovered microplastics in lung tissue of some patients who died of lung cancer

in the 1990s. Subsequent studies have confirmed the potential health damage with the plastic degrading slowly and remaining in the lungs to accumulate in volume. Wuhan researchers used a machine simulating human breathing to establish that masks shed up to nearly 4,000 microplastic fibres in a month with reused masks producing more. Scientists said some masks are laced with toxic chemicals and a variety of compounds seriously restricted for both health and environmental reasons. They include cobalt (used in blue dye) and formaldehyde known to cause watery eyes, burning sensations in the eyes, nose, and throat, plus coughing, wheezing and nausea. No – that must be 'Covid-19'.

### **Mask 'worms'**

There is another and potentially even more sinister content of masks. Mostly new masks of different makes filmed under a microscope around the world have been found to contain strange black fibres or 'worms' that appear to move or 'crawl' by themselves and react to heat and water. The nearest I have seen to them are the self-replicating fibres that are pulled out through the skin of those suffering from Morgellons disease which has been connected to the phenomena of 'chemtrails' which I will bring into the story later on. Morgellons fibres continue to grow outside the body and have a form of artificial intelligence. Black 'worm' fibres in masks have that kind of feel to them and there is a nanotechnology technique called 'worm micelles' which carry and release drugs or anything else you want to deliver to the body. For sure the suppression of humanity by mind altering drugs is the Cult agenda big time and the more excuses they can find to gain access to the body the more opportunities there are to make that happen whether through 'vaccines' or masks pushed against the mouth and nose for hours on end.

So let us summarise the pros and cons of masks:

**Against masks:** Breathing in your own carbon dioxide; depriving the body and brain of sufficient oxygen; build-up of toxins in the mask that can be breathed into the lungs and cause rashes on the face and ‘mask-mouth’; breathing microplastic fibres and toxic chemicals into the lungs; dehumanisation and deleting individualisation by literally making people faceless; destroying human emotional interaction through facial expression and deleting parental connection with their babies which look for guidance to their facial expression.

**For masks:** They don’t protect you from a ‘virus’ that doesn’t exist and even if it did ‘viral’ particles are so minute they are smaller than the holes in the mask.

Governments, police, supermarkets, businesses, transport companies, and all the rest who seek to impose masks have done no risk assessment on their consequences for health and psychology and are now open to group lawsuits when the impact becomes clear with a cumulative epidemic of respiratory and other disease. Authorities will try to exploit these effects and hide the real cause by dubbing them ‘Covid-19’. Can you imagine setting out to force the population to wear health-destroying masks without doing any assessment of the risks? It is criminal and it is evil, but then how many people targeted in this way, who see their children told to wear them all day at school, have asked for a risk assessment? Billions can’t be imposed upon by the few unless the billions allow it. Oh, yes, with just a tinge of irony, 85 percent of all masks made worldwide come from *China*.

## **Wash your hands in toxic shite**

‘Covid’ rules include the use of toxic sanitisers and again the health consequences of constantly applying toxins to be absorbed through the skin is obvious to any level of Renegade Mind. America’s Food and Drug Administration (FDA) said that sanitisers are drugs and issued a warning about 75 dangerous brands which contain

methanol used in antifreeze and can cause death, kidney damage and blindness. The FDA circulated the following warning even for those brands that it claims to be safe:

Store hand sanitizer out of the reach of pets and children, and children should use it only with adult supervision. Do not drink hand sanitizer. This is particularly important for young children, especially toddlers, who may be attracted by the pleasant smell or brightly colored bottles of hand sanitizer.

Drinking even a small amount of hand sanitizer can cause alcohol poisoning in children. (However, there is no need to be concerned if your children eat with or lick their hands after using hand sanitizer.) During this coronavirus pandemic, poison control centers have had an increase in calls about accidental ingestion of hand sanitizer, so it is important that adults monitor young children's use.

Do not allow pets to swallow hand sanitizer. If you think your pet has eaten something potentially dangerous, call your veterinarian or a pet poison control center right away. Hand sanitizer is flammable and should be stored away from heat and flames. When using hand sanitizer, rub your hands until they feel completely dry before performing activities that may involve heat, sparks, static electricity, or open flames.

There you go, perfectly safe, then, and that's without even a mention of the toxins absorbed through the skin. Come on kids – sanitise your hands everywhere you go. It will save you from the 'virus'. Put all these elements together of the 'Covid' normal and see how much health and psychology is being cumulatively damaged, even devastated, to 'protect your health'. Makes sense, right? They are only imposing these things because they care, right? *Right?*

## **Submitting to insanity**

Psychological reframing of the population goes very deep and is done in many less obvious ways. I hear people say how contradictory and crazy 'Covid' rules are and how they are ever changing. This is explained away by dismissing those involved as idiots. It is a big mistake. The Cult is delighted if its cold calculation is perceived as incompetence and idiocy when it is anything but. Oh, yes, there are idiots within the system – lots of them – but they are *administering* the Cult agenda, mostly unknowingly. They are not deciding and dictating it. The bulwark against tyranny is self-

respect, always has been, always will be. It is self-respect that has broken every tyranny in history. By its very nature self-respect will not bow to oppression and its perpetrators. There is so little self-respect that it's always the few that overturn dictators. Many may eventually follow, but the few with the iron spines (self-respect) kick it off and generate the momentum. The Cult targets self-respect in the knowledge that once this has gone only submission remains. Crazy, contradictory, ever-changing 'Covid' rules are systematically applied by psychologists to delete self-respect. They *want* you to see that the rules make no sense. It is one thing to decide to do something when *you* have made the choice based on evidence and logic. You still retain your self-respect. It is quite another when you can see what you are being told to do is insane, ridiculous and makes no sense, and *yet you still do it*. Your self-respect is extinguished and this has been happening as ever more obviously stupid and nonsensical things have been demanded and the great majority have complied even when they can see they are stupid and nonsensical.

People walk around in face-nappies knowing they are damaging their health and make no difference to a 'virus'. They do it in fear of not doing it. I know it's daft, but I'll do it anyway. When that happens something dies inside of you and submissive reframing has begun. Next there's a need to hide from yourself that you have conceded your self-respect and you convince yourself that you have not really submitted to fear and intimidation. You begin to believe that you are complying with craziness because it's the right thing to do. When first you concede your self-respect of  $2+2 = 4$  to  $2+2 = 5$  you *know* you are compromising your self-respect. Gradually to avoid facing that fact you begin to *believe* that  $2+2=5$ . You have been reframed and I have been watching this process happening in the human psyche on an industrial scale. The Cult is working to break your spirit and one of its major tools in that war is humiliation. I read how former American soldier Bradley Manning (later Chelsea Manning after a sex-change) was treated after being jailed for supplying WikiLeaks with documents exposing the enormity of

government and elite mendacity. Manning was isolated in solitary confinement for eight months, put under 24-hour surveillance, forced to hand over clothing before going to bed, and stand naked for every roll call. This is systematic humiliation. The introduction of anal swab 'Covid' tests in China has been done for the same reason to delete self-respect and induce compliant submission. Anal swabs are mandatory for incoming passengers in parts of China and American diplomats have said they were forced to undergo the indignity which would have been calculated humiliation by the Cult-owned Chinese government that has America in its sights.

### **Government-people: An abusive relationship**

Spirit-breaking psychological techniques include giving people hope and apparent respite from tyranny only to take it away again. This happened in the UK during Christmas, 2020, when the psycho-psychologists and their political lackeys announced an easing of restrictions over the holiday only to reimpose them almost immediately on the basis of yet another lie. There is a big psychological difference between getting used to oppression and being given hope of relief only to have that dashed. Psychologists know this and we have seen the technique used repeatedly. Then there is traumatising people before you introduce more extreme regulations that require compliance. A perfect case was the announcement by the dark and sinister Whitty and Vallance in the UK that 'new data' predicted that 4,000 could die every day over the winter of 2020/2021 if we did not lockdown again. I think they call it lying and after traumatising people with that claim out came Jackboot Johnson the next day with new curbs on human freedom. Psychologists know that a frightened and traumatised mind becomes suggestable to submission and behaviour reframing. Underpinning all this has been to make people fearful and suspicious of each other and see themselves as a potential danger to others. In league with deleted self-respect you have the perfect psychological recipe for self-loathing. The relationship between authority and public is now demonstrably the same as that of

subservience to an abusive partner. These are signs of an abusive relationship explained by psychologist Leslie Becker-Phelps:

**Psychological and emotional abuse:** Undermining a partner's self-worth with verbal attacks, name-calling, and belittling. Humiliating the partner in public, unjustly accusing them of having an affair, or interrogating them about their every behavior. Keeping partner confused or off balance by saying they were just kidding or blaming the partner for 'making' them act this way ... Feigning in public that they care while turning against them in private. This leads to victims frequently feeling confused, incompetent, unworthy, hopeless, and chronically self-doubting. [Apply these techniques to how governments have treated the population since New Year, 2020, and the parallels are obvious.]

**Physical abuse:** The abuser might physically harm their partner in a range of ways, such as grabbing, hitting, punching, or shoving them. They might throw objects at them or harm them with a weapon. [Observe the physical harm imposed by masks, lockdown, and so on.]

**Threats and intimidation:** One way abusers keep their partners in line is by instilling fear. They might be verbally threatening, or give threatening looks or gestures. Abusers often make it known that they are tracking their partner's every move. They might destroy their partner's possessions, threaten to harm them, or threaten to harm their family members. Not surprisingly, victims of this abuse often feel anxiety, fear, and panic. [No words necessary.]

**Isolation:** Abusers often limit their partner's activities, forbidding them to talk or interact with friends or family. They might limit access to a car or even turn off their phone. All of this might be done by physically holding them against their will, but is often accomplished through psychological abuse and intimidation. The more isolated a person feels, the fewer resources they have to help gain perspective on their situation and to escape from it. [No words necessary.]

**Economic abuse:** Abusers often make their partners beholden to them for money by controlling access to funds of any kind. They might prevent their partner from getting a job or withhold access to money they earn from a job. This creates financial dependency that makes leaving the relationship very difficult. [See destruction of livelihoods and the proposed meagre 'guaranteed income' so long as you do whatever you are told.]

**Using children:** An abuser might disparage their partner's parenting skills, tell their children lies about their partner, threaten to take custody of their children, or threaten to harm their children. These tactics instil fear and often elicit compliance. [See reframed social service mafia and how children are being mercilessly abused by the state over 'Covid' while their parents look on too frightened to do anything.]

A further recurring trait in an abusive relationship is the abused blaming themselves for their abuse and making excuses for the abuser. We have the public blaming each other for lockdown abuse by government and many making excuses for the government while attacking those who challenge the government. How often we have heard authorities say that rules are being imposed or reimposed only because people have refused to 'behave' and follow the rules. We don't want to do it – it's *you*.

Renegade Minds are an antidote to all of these things. They will never concede their self-respect no matter what the circumstances. Even when apparent humiliation is heaped upon them they laugh in its face and reflect back the humiliation on the abuser where it belongs. Renegade Minds will never wear masks they know are only imposed to humiliate, suppress and damage both physically and psychologically. Consequences will take care of themselves and they will never break their spirit or cause them to concede to tyranny. UK newspaper columnist Peter Hitchens was one of the few in the mainstream media to speak out against lockdowns and forced vaccinations. He then announced he had taken the jab. He wanted to see family members abroad and he believed vaccine passports were inevitable even though they had not yet been introduced. Hitchens

has a questioning and critical mind, but not a Renegade one. If he had no amount of pressure would have made him concede. Hitchens excused his action by saying that the battle has been lost. Renegade Minds never accept defeat when freedom is at stake and even if they are the last one standing the self-respect of not submitting to tyranny is more important than any outcome or any consequence.

That's why Renegade Minds are the only minds that ever changed anything worth changing.

## CHAPTER EIGHT

### 'Reframing' insanity

*Insanity is relative. It depends on who has who locked in what cage*

Ray Bradbury

'Reframing' a mind means simply to change its perception and behaviour. This can be done subconsciously to such an extent that subjects have no idea they have been 'reframed' while to any observer changes in behaviour and attitudes are obvious.

Human society is being reframed on a ginormous scale since the start of 2020 and here we have the reason why psychologists rather than doctors have been calling the shots. Ask most people who have succumbed to 'Covid' reframing if they have changed and most will say 'no'; but they *have* and fundamentally. The Cult's long-game has been preparing for these times since way back and crucial to that has been to prepare both population and officialdom mentally and emotionally. To use the mind-control parlance they had to reframe the population with a mentality that would submit to fascism and reframe those in government and law enforcement to impose fascism or at least go along with it. The result has been the fact-deleted mindlessness of 'Wokeness' and officialdom that has either enthusiastically or unquestioningly imposed global tyranny demanded by reframed politicians on behalf of psychopathic and deeply evil cultists. 'Cognitive reframing' identifies and challenges the way someone sees the world in the form of situations, experiences and emotions and then restructures those perceptions to view the same set of circumstances in a different way. This can have

benefits if the attitudes are personally destructive while on the other side it has the potential for individual and collective mind control which the subject has no idea has even happened.

Cognitive therapy was developed in the 1960s by Aaron T. Beck who was born in Rhode Island in 1921 as the son of Jewish immigrants from the Ukraine. He became interested in the techniques as a treatment for depression. Beck's daughter Judith S. Beck is prominent in the same field and they founded the Beck Institute for Cognitive Behavior Therapy in Philadelphia in 1994. Cognitive reframing, however, began to be used worldwide by those with a very dark agenda. The Cult reframes politicians to change their attitudes and actions until they are completely at odds with what they once appeared to stand for. The same has been happening to government administrators at all levels, law enforcement, military and the human population. Cultists love mind control for two main reasons: It allows them to control what people think, do and say to secure agenda advancement and, by definition, it calms their legendary insecurity and fear of the unexpected. I have studied mind control since the time I travelled America in 1996. I may have been talking to next to no one in terms of an audience in those years, but my goodness did I gather a phenomenal amount of information and knowledge about so many things including the techniques of mind control. I have described this in detail in other books going back to *The Biggest Secret* in 1998. I met a very large number of people recovering from MKUltra and its offshoots and successors and I began to see how these same techniques were being used on the population in general. This was never more obvious than since the 'Covid' hoax began.

## **Reframing the enforcers**

I have observed over the last two decades and more the very clear transformation in the dynamic between the police, officialdom and the public. I tracked this in the books as the relationship mutated from one of serving the public to seeing them as almost the enemy and certainly a lower caste. There has always been a class divide

based on income and always been some psychopathic, corrupt, and big-I-am police officers. This was different. Wholesale change was unfolding in the collective dynamic; it was less about money and far more about position and perceived power. An us-and-them was emerging. Noses were lifted skyward by government administration and law enforcement and their attitude to the public they were *supposed* to be serving changed to one of increasing contempt, superiority and control. The transformation was so clear and widespread that it had to be planned. Collective attitudes and dynamics do not change naturally and organically that quickly on that scale. I then came across an organisation in Britain called Common Purpose created in the late 1980s by Julia Middleton who would work in the office of Deputy Prime Minister John Prescott during the long and disastrous premiership of war criminal Tony Blair. When Blair speaks the Cult is speaking and the man should have been in jail a long time ago. Common Purpose proclaims itself to be one of the biggest 'leadership development' organisations in the world while functioning as a *charity* with all the financial benefits which come from that. It hosts 'leadership development' courses and programmes all over the world and claims to have 'brought together' what it calls 'leaders' from more than 100 countries on six continents. The modus operandi of Common Purpose can be compared with the work of the UK government's reframing network that includes the Behavioural Insights Team 'nudge unit' and 'Covid' reframing specialists at SPI-B. WikiLeaks described Common Purpose long ago as 'a hidden virus in our government and schools' which is unknown to the general public: 'It recruits and trains "leaders" to be loyal to the directives of Common Purpose and the EU, instead of to their own departments, which they then undermine or subvert, the NHS [National Health Service] being an example.' This is a vital point to understand the 'Covid' hoax. The NHS, and its equivalent around the world, has been utterly reframed in terms of administrators and much of the medical personnel with the transformation underpinned by recruitment policies. The outcome has been the criminal and psychopathic behaviour of the

NHS over ‘Covid’ and we have seen the same in every other major country. WikiLeaks said Common Purpose trainees are ‘learning to rule without regard to democracy’ and to usher in a police state (current events explained). Common Purpose operated like a ‘glue’ and had members in the NHS, BBC, police, legal profession, church, many of Britain’s 7,000 quangos, local councils, the Civil Service, government ministries and Parliament, and controlled many RDA’s (Regional Development Agencies). Here we have one answer for how and why British institutions and their like in other countries have changed so negatively in relation to the public. This further explains how and why the beyond-disgraceful reframed BBC has become a propaganda arm of ‘Covid’ fascism. They are all part of a network pursuing the same goal.

By 2019 Common Purpose was quoting a figure of 85,000 ‘leaders’ that had attended its programmes. These ‘students’ of all ages are known as Common Purpose ‘graduates’ and they consist of government, state and local government officials and administrators, police chiefs and officers, and a whole range of others operating within the national, local and global establishment. Cressida Dick, Commissioner of the London Metropolitan Police, is the Common Purpose graduate who was the ‘Gold Commander’ that oversaw what can only be described as the murder of Brazilian electrician Jean Charles de Menezes in 2005. He was held down by psychopathic police and shot seven times in the head by a psychopathic lunatic after being mistaken for a terrorist when he was just a bloke going about his day. Dick authorised officers to pursue and keep surveillance on de Menezes and ordered that he be stopped from entering the underground train system. Police psychopaths took her at her word clearly. She was ‘disciplined’ for this outrage by being *promoted* – eventually to the top of the ‘Met’ police where she has been a disaster. Many Chief Constables controlling the police in different parts of the UK are and have been Common Purpose graduates. I have heard the ‘graduate’ network described as a sort of Mafia or secret society operating within the fabric of government at all levels pursuing a collective policy

ingrained at Common Purpose training events. Founder Julia Middleton herself has said:

Locally and internationally, Common Purpose graduates will be 'lighting small fires' to create change in their organisations and communities ... The Common Purpose effect is best illustrated by the many stories of small changes brought about by leaders, who themselves have changed.

A Common Purpose mission statement declared:

Common Purpose aims to improve the way society works by expanding the vision, decision-making ability and influence of all kinds of leaders. The organisation runs a variety of educational programmes for leaders of all ages, backgrounds and sectors, in order to provide them with the inspirational, information and opportunities they need to change the world.

Yes, but into what? Since 2020 the answer has become clear.

### **NLP and the Delphi technique**

Common Purpose would seem to be a perfect name or would common programming be better? One of the foundation methods of reaching 'consensus' (group think) is by setting the agenda theme and then encouraging, cajoling or pressuring everyone to agree a 'consensus' in line with the core theme promoted by Common Purpose. The methodology involves the 'Delphi technique', or an adaption of it, in which opinions are expressed that are summarised by a 'facilitator or change agent' at each stage. Participants are 'encouraged' to modify their views in the light of what others have said. Stage by stage the former individual opinions are merged into group consensus which just happens to be what Common Purpose wants them to believe. A key part of this is to marginalise anyone refusing to concede to group think and turn the group against them to apply pressure to conform. We are seeing this very technique used on the general population to make 'Covid' group-thinkers hostile to those who have seen through the bullshit. People can be reframed by using perception manipulation methods such as Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP) in which you change perception with the use of

carefully constructed language. An NLP website described the technique this way:

... A method of influencing brain behaviour (the 'neuro' part of the phrase) through the use of language (the 'linguistic' part) and other types of communication to enable a person to 'recode' the way the brain responds to stimuli (that's the 'programming') and manifest new and better behaviours. Neuro-Linguistic Programming often incorporates hypnosis and self-hypnosis to help achieve the change (or 'programming') that is wanted.

British alternative media operation UKColumn has done very detailed research into Common Purpose over a long period. I quoted co-founder and former naval officer Brian Gerrish in my book *Remember Who You Are*, published in 2011, as saying the following years before current times:

It is interesting that many of the mothers who have had children taken by the State speak of the Social Services people being icily cool, emotionless and, as two ladies said in slightly different words, '... like little robots'. We know that NLP is cumulative, so people can be given small imperceptible doses of NLP in a course here, another in a few months, next year etc. In this way, major changes are accrued in their personality, but the day by day change is almost unnoticeable.

In these and other ways 'graduates' have had their perceptions uniformly reframed and they return to their roles in the institutions of government, law enforcement, legal profession, military, 'education', the UK National Health Service and the whole swathe of the establishment structure to pursue a common agenda preparing for the 'post-industrial', 'post-democratic' society. I say 'preparing' but we are now there. 'Post-industrial' is code for the Great Reset and 'post-democratic' is 'Covid' fascism. UKColumn has spoken to partners of those who have attended Common Purpose 'training'. They have described how personalities and attitudes of 'graduates' changed very noticeably for the worse by the time they had completed the course. They had been 'reframed' and told they are the 'leaders' – the special ones – who know better than the population. There has also been the very demonstrable recruitment of psychopaths and narcissists into government administration at all

levels and law enforcement. If you want psychopathy hire psychopaths and you get a simple cause and effect. If you want administrators, police officers and 'leaders' to perceive the public as lesser beings who don't matter then employ narcissists. These personalities are identified using 'psychometrics' that identifies knowledge, abilities, attitudes and personality traits, mostly through carefully-designed questionnaires and tests. As this policy has passed through the decades we have had power-crazy, power-trippers appointed into law enforcement, security and government administration in preparation for current times and the dynamic between public and law enforcement/officialdom has been transformed. UKColumn's Brian Gerrish said of the narcissistic personality:

Their love of themselves and power automatically means that they will crush others who get in their way. I received a major piece of the puzzle when a friend pointed out that when they made public officials re-apply for their own jobs several years ago they were also required to do psychometric tests. This was undoubtedly the start of the screening process to get 'their' sort of people in post.

How obvious that has been since 2020 although it was clear what was happening long before if people paid attention to the changing public-establishment dynamic.

## **Change agents**

At the centre of events in 'Covid' Britain is the National Health Service (NHS) which has behaved disgracefully in slavishly following the Cult agenda. The NHS management structure is awash with Common Purpose graduates or 'change agents' working to a common cause. Helen Bevan, a Chief of Service Transformation at the NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement, co-authored a document called 'Towards a million change agents, a review of the social movements literature: implications for large scale change in the NHS'. The document compared a project management approach to that of change and social movements where 'people change

themselves and each other – peer to peer'. Two definitions given for a 'social movement' were:

*A group of people who consciously attempt to build a radically new social order; involves people of a broad range of social backgrounds; and deploys politically confrontational and socially disruptive tactics* – Cyrus Zirakzadeh 1997

*Collective challenges, based on common purposes and social solidarities, in sustained interaction with elites, opponents, and authorities* – Sidney Tarrow 1994

Helen Bevan wrote another NHS document in which she defined 'framing' as 'the process by which leaders construct, articulate and put across their message in a powerful and compelling way in order to win people to their cause and call them to action'. I think I could come up with another definition that would be rather more accurate. The National Health Service and institutions of Britain and the wider world have been taken over by reframed 'change agents' and that includes everything from the United Nations to national governments, local councils and social services which have been kidnapping children from loving parents on an extraordinary and gathering scale on the road to the end of parenthood altogether. Children from loving homes are stolen and kidnapped by the state and put into the 'care' (inversion) of the local authority through council homes, foster parents and forced adoption. At the same time children are allowed to be abused without response while many are under council 'care'. UKColumn highlighted the Common Purpose connection between South Yorkshire Police and Rotherham council officers in the case of the scandal in that area of the sexual exploitation of children to which the authorities turned not one blind eye, but both:

We were alarmed to discover that the Chief Executive, the Strategic Director of Children and Young People's Services, the Manager for the Local Strategic Partnership, the Community Cohesion Manager, the Cabinet Member for Cohesion, the Chief Constable and his predecessor had all attended Leadership training courses provided by the pseudo-charity Common Purpose.

Once 'change agents' have secured positions of hire and fire within any organisation things start to move very quickly. Personnel are then hired and fired on the basis of whether they will work towards the agenda the change agent represents. If they do they are rapidly promoted even though they may be incompetent. Those more qualified and skilled who are pre-Common Purpose 'old school' see their careers stall and even disappear. This has been happening for decades in every institution of state, police, 'health' and social services and all of them have been transformed as a result in their attitudes to their jobs and the public. Medical professions, including nursing, which were once vocations for the caring now employ many cold, callous and couldn't give a shit personality types. The UKColumn investigation concluded:

By blurring the boundaries between people, professions, public and private sectors, responsibility and accountability, Common Purpose encourages 'graduates' to believe that as new selected leaders, they can work together, outside of the established political and social structures, to achieve a paradigm shift or CHANGE – so called 'Leading Beyond Authority'. In doing so, the allegiance of the individual becomes 'reframed' on CP colleagues and their NETWORK.

## **Reframing the Face-Nappies**

Nowhere has this process been more obvious than in the police where recruitment of psychopaths and development of unquestioning mind-controlled group-thinkers have transformed law enforcement into a politically-correct 'Woke' joke and a travesty of what should be public service. Today they wear their face-nappies like good little gofers and enforce 'Covid' rules which are fascism under another name. Alongside the specifically-recruited psychopaths we have software minds incapable of free thought. Brian Gerrish again:

An example is the policeman who would not get on a bike for a press photo because he had not done the cycling proficiency course. Normal people say this is political correctness gone mad. Nothing could be further from the truth. The policeman has been reframed, and in his reality it is perfect common sense not to get on the bike ‘because he hasn’t done the cycling course’.

Another example of this is where the police would not rescue a boy from a pond until they had taken advice from above on the ‘risk assessment’. A normal person would have arrived, perhaps thought of the risk for a moment, and dived in. To the police now ‘reframed’, they followed ‘normal’ procedure.

There are shocking cases of reframed ambulance crews doing the same. Sheer unthinking stupidity of London Face-Nappies headed by Common Purpose graduate Cressida Dick can be seen in their behaviour at a vigil in March, 2021, for a murdered woman, Sarah Everard. A police officer had been charged with the crime. Anyone with a brain would have left the vigil alone in the circumstances. Instead they ‘manhandled’ women to stop them breaking ‘Covid rules’ to betray classic reframing. Minds in the thrall of perception control have no capacity for seeing a situation on its merits and acting accordingly. ‘Rules is rules’ is their only mind-set. My father used to say that rules and regulations are for the guidance of the intelligent and the blind obedience of the idiot. Most of the intelligent, decent, coppers have gone leaving only the other kind and a few old school for whom the job must be a daily nightmare. The combination of psychopaths and rule-book software minds has been clearly on public display in the ‘Covid’ era with automaton robots in uniform imposing fascistic ‘Covid’ regulations on the population without any personal initiative or judging situations on their merits. There are thousands of examples around the world, but I’ll make my point with the infamous Derbyshire police in the English East Midlands – the ones who think pouring dye into beauty spots and using drones to track people walking in the countryside away from anyone is called ‘policing’. To them there are rules decreed by the government which they have to enforce and in their bewildered state a group gathering in a closed space and someone walking alone in the countryside are the same thing. It is beyond idiocy and enters the realm of clinical insanity.

Police officers in Derbyshire said they were ‘horrified’ – *horrified* – to find 15 to 20 ‘irresponsible’ kids playing a football match at a closed leisure centre ‘in breach of coronavirus restrictions’. When they saw the police the kids ran away leaving their belongings behind and the reframed men and women of Derbyshire police were seeking to establish their identities with a view to fining their parents. The most natural thing for youngsters to do – kicking a ball about – is turned into a criminal activity and enforced by the moronic software programs of Derbyshire police. You find the same mentality in every country. These barely conscious ‘horrified’ officers said they had to take action because ‘we need to ensure these rules are being followed’ and ‘it is of the utmost importance that you ensure your children are following the rules and regulations for Covid-19’. Had any of them done ten seconds of research to see if this parroting of their masters’ script could be supported by any evidence? Nope. Reframed people don’t think – others think for them and that’s the whole idea of reframing. I have seen police officers one after the other repeating without question word for word what officialdom tells them just as I have seen great swathes of the public doing the same. Ask either for ‘their’ opinion and out spews what they have been told to think by the official narrative. Police and public may seem to be in different groups, but their mentality is the same. Most people do whatever they are told in fear not doing so or because they believe what officialdom tells them; almost the entirety of the police do what they are told for the same reason. Ultimately it’s the tiny inner core of the global Cult that’s telling both what to do.

So Derbyshire police were ‘horrified’. Oh, really? Why did they think those kids were playing football? It was to relieve the psychological consequences of lockdown and being denied human contact with their friends and interaction, touch and discourse vital to human psychological health. Being denied this month after month has dismantled the psyche of many children and young people as depression and suicide have exploded. Were Derbyshire police *horrified by that?* Are you kidding? Reframed people don’t have those

mental and emotional processes that can see how the impact on the psychological health of youngsters is far more dangerous than any 'virus' even if you take the mendacious official figures to be true. The reframed are told (programmed) how to act and so they do. The Derbyshire Chief Constable in the first period of lockdown when the black dye and drones nonsense was going on was Peter Goodman. He was the man who severed the connection between his force and the Derbyshire Constabulary *Male Voice* Choir when he decided that it was not inclusive enough to allow women to join. The fact it was a male voice choir making a particular sound produced by male voices seemed to elude a guy who terrifyingly ran policing in Derbyshire. He retired weeks after his force was condemned as disgraceful by former Supreme Court Justice Jonathan Sumption for their behaviour over extreme lockdown impositions. Goodman was replaced by his deputy Rachel Swann who was in charge when her officers were 'horrified'. The police statement over the boys committing the hanging-offence of playing football included the line about the youngsters being 'irresponsible in the times we are all living through' missing the point that the real relevance of the 'times we are all living through' is the imposition of fascism enforced by psychopaths and reframed minds of police officers playing such a vital part in establishing the fascist tyranny that their own children and grandchildren will have to live in their entire lives. As a definition of insanity that is hard to beat although it might be run close by imposing masks on people that can have a serious effect on their health while wearing a face nappy all day themselves. Once again public and police do it for the same reason – the authorities tell them to and who are they to have the self-respect to say no?

## **Wokers in uniform**

How reframed do you have to be to arrest a *six-year-old* and take him to court for *picking a flower* while waiting for a bus? Brain dead police and officialdom did just that in North Carolina where criminal proceedings happen regularly for children under nine. Attorney Julie Boyer gave the six-year-old crayons and a colouring book

during the ‘flower’ hearing while the ‘adults’ decided his fate. County Chief District Court Judge Jay Corpening asked: ‘Should a child that believes in Santa Claus, the Easter Bunny and the tooth fairy be making life-altering decisions?’ Well, of course not, but common sense has no meaning when you have a common purpose and a reframed mind. Treating children in this way, and police operating in American schools, is all part of the psychological preparation for children to accept a police state as normal all their adult lives. The same goes for all the cameras and biometric tracking technology in schools. Police training is focused on reframing them as snowflake Wokers and this is happening in the military. Pentagon top brass said that ‘training sessions on extremism’ were needed for troops who asked why they were so focused on the Capitol Building riot when Black Lives Matter riots were ignored. What’s the difference between them some apparently and rightly asked. Actually, there is a difference. Five people died in the Capitol riot, only one through violence, and that was a police officer shooting an unarmed protestor. BLM riots killed at least 25 people and cost billions. Asking the question prompted the psychopaths and reframed minds that run the Pentagon to say that more ‘education’ (programming) was needed. Troop training is all based on psychological programming to make them fodder for the Cult – ‘Military men are just dumb, stupid animals to be used as pawns in foreign policy’ as Cult-to-his-DNA former Secretary of State Henry Kissinger famously said. Governments see the police in similar terms and it’s time for those among them who can see this to defend the people and stop being enforcers of the Cult agenda upon the people.

The US military, like the country itself, is being targeted for destruction through a long list of Woke impositions. Cult-owned gaga ‘President’ Biden signed an executive order when he took office to allow taxpayer money to pay for transgender surgery for active military personnel and veterans. Are you a man soldier? No, I’m a LGBTQIA+ with a hint of Skoliosexual and Spectrasexual. Oh, good man. Bad choice of words you bigot. The Pentagon announced in March, 2021, the appointment of the first ‘diversity and inclusion

officer' for US Special Forces. Richard Torres-Estrada arrived with the publication of a 'D&I Strategic Plan which will guide the enterprise-wide effort to institutionalize and sustain D&I'. If you think a Special Forces 'Strategic Plan' should have something to do with defending America you haven't been paying attention.

Defending Woke is now the military's new role. Torres-Estrada has posted images comparing Donald Trump with Adolf Hitler and we can expect no bias from him as a representative of the supposedly non-political Pentagon. Cable news host Tucker Carlson said: 'The Pentagon is now the Yale faculty lounge but with cruise missiles.' Meanwhile Secretary of Defense Lloyd Austin, a board member of weapons-maker Raytheon with stock and compensation interests in October, 2020, worth \$1.4 million, said he was purging the military of the 'enemy within' – anyone who isn't Woke and supports Donald Trump. Austin refers to his targets as 'racist extremists' while in true Woke fashion being himself a racist extremist. Pentagon documents pledge to 'eradicate, eliminate and conquer all forms of racism, sexism and homophobia'. The definitions of these are decided by 'diversity and inclusion committees' peopled by those who see racism, sexism and homophobia in every situation and opinion. Woke (the Cult) is dismantling the US military and purging testosterone as China expands its military and gives its troops 'masculinity training'. How do we think that is going to end when this is all Cult coordinated? The US military, like the British military, is controlled by Woke and spineless top brass who just go along with it out of personal career interests.

## **'Woke' means fast asleep**

Mind control and perception manipulation techniques used on individuals to create group-think have been unleashed on the global population in general. As a result many have no capacity to see the obvious fascist agenda being installed all around them or what 'Covid' is really all about. Their brains are firewalled like a computer system not to process certain concepts, thoughts and realisations that are bad for the Cult. The young are most targeted as the adults they

will be when the whole fascist global state is planned to be fully implemented. They need to be prepared for total compliance to eliminate all pushback from entire generations. The Cult has been pouring billions into taking complete control of 'education' from schools to universities via its operatives and corporations and not least Bill Gates as always. The plan has been to transform 'education' institutions into programming centres for the mentality of 'Woke'. James McConnell, professor of psychology at the University of Michigan, wrote in *Psychology Today* in 1970:

The day has come when we can combine sensory deprivation with drugs, hypnosis, and astute manipulation of reward and punishment, to gain almost absolute control over an individual's behaviour. It should then be possible to achieve a very rapid and highly effective type of brainwashing that would allow us to make dramatic changes in a person's behaviour and personality ...

... We should reshape society so that we all would be trained from birth to want to do what society wants us to do. We have the techniques to do it... no-one owns his own personality you acquired, and there's no reason to believe you should have the right to refuse to acquire a new personality if your old one is anti-social.

This was the potential for mass brainwashing in 1970 and the mentality there displayed captures the arrogant psychopathy that drives it forward. I emphasise that not all young people have succumbed to Woke programming and those that haven't are incredibly impressive people given that today's young are the most perceptually-targeted generations in history with all the technology now involved. Vast swathes of the young generations, however, have fallen into the spell – and that's what it is – of Woke. The Woke mentality and perceptual program is founded on *inversion* and you will appreciate later why that is so significant. Everything with Woke is inverted and the opposite of what it is claimed to be. Woke was a term used in African-American culture from the 1900s and referred to an awareness of social and racial justice. This is not the meaning of the modern version or 'New Woke' as I call it in *The Answer*. Oh, no, Woke today means something very different no matter how much Wokers may seek to hide that and insist Old Woke and New

Woke are the same. See if you find any 'awareness of social justice' here in the modern variety:

- Woke demands 'inclusivity' while excluding anyone with a different opinion and calls for mass censorship to silence other views.
- Woke claims to stand against oppression when imposing oppression is the foundation of all that it does. It is the driver of political correctness which is nothing more than a Cult invention to manipulate the population to silence itself.
- Woke believes itself to be 'liberal' while pursuing a global society that can only be described as fascist (see 'anti-fascist' fascist Antifa).
- Woke calls for 'social justice' while spreading injustice wherever it goes against the common 'enemy' which can be easily identified as a differing view.
- Woke is supposed to be a metaphor for 'awake' when it is solid-gold asleep and deep in a Cult-induced coma that meets the criteria for 'off with the fairies'.

I state these points as obvious facts if people only care to look. I don't do this with a sense of condemnation. We need to appreciate that the onslaught of perceptual programming on the young has been incessant and merciless. I can understand why so many have been reframed, or, given their youth, framed from the start to see the world as the Cult demands. The Cult has had access to their minds day after day in its 'education' system for their entire formative years. Perception is formed from information received and the Cult-created system is a life-long download of information delivered to elicit a particular perception, thus behaviour. The more this has expanded into still new extremes in recent decades and ever-increasing censorship has deleted other opinions and information why wouldn't that lead to a perceptual reframing on a mass scale? I

have described already cradle-to-grave programming and in more recent times the targeting of young minds from birth to adulthood has entered the stratosphere. This has taken the form of skewing what is ‘taught’ to fit the Cult agenda and the omnipresent techniques of group-think to isolate non-believers and pressure them into line. There has always been a tendency to follow the herd, but we really are in a new world now in relation to that. We have parents who can see the ‘Covid’ hoax told by their children not to stop them wearing masks at school, being ‘Covid’ tested or having the ‘vaccine’ in fear of the peer-pressure consequences of being different. What is ‘peer-pressure’ if not pressure to conform to group-think? Renegade Minds never group-think and always retain a set of perceptions that are unique to them. Group-think is always underpinned by consequences for not group-thinking. Abuse now aimed at those refusing DNA-manipulating ‘Covid vaccines’ are a potent example of this. The biggest pressure to conform comes from the very group which is itself being manipulated. ‘I am programmed to be part of a hive mind and so you must be.’

Woke control structures in ‘education’ now apply to every mainstream organisation. Those at the top of the ‘education’ hierarchy (the Cult) decide the policy. This is imposed on governments through the Cult network; governments impose it on schools, colleges and universities; their leadership impose the policy on teachers and academics and they impose it on children and students. At any level where there is resistance, perhaps from a teacher or university lecturer, they are targeted by the authorities and often fired. Students themselves regularly demand the dismissal of academics (increasingly few) at odds with the narrative that the students have been programmed to believe in. It is quite a thought that students who are being targeted by the Cult become so consumed by programmed group-think that they launch protests and demand the removal of those who are trying to push back against those targeting the students. Such is the scale of perceptual inversion. We see this with ‘Covid’ programming as the Cult imposes the rules via psycho-psychologists and governments on

shops, transport companies and businesses which impose them on their staff who impose them on their customers who pressure Pushbackers to conform to the will of the Cult which is in the process of destroying them and their families. Scan all aspects of society and you will see the same sequence every time.

## **Fact free Woke and hijacking the 'left'**

There is no more potent example of this than 'Woke', a mentality only made possible by the deletion of factual evidence by an 'education' system seeking to produce an ever more uniform society. Why would you bother with facts when you don't know any? Deletion of credible history both in volume and type is highly relevant. Orwell said: 'Who controls the past controls the future: who controls the present controls the past.' They who control the perception of the past control the perception of the future and they who control the present control the perception of the past through the writing and deleting of history. Why would you oppose the imposition of Marxism in the name of Wokeism when you don't know that Marxism cost at least 100 million lives in the 20th century alone? Watch videos and read reports in which Woker generations are asked basic historical questions – it's mind-blowing. A survey of 2,000 people found that six percent of millennials (born approximately early 1980s to early 2000s) believed the Second World War (1939-1945) broke out with the assassination of President Kennedy (in 1963) and one in ten thought Margaret Thatcher was British Prime Minister at the time. She was in office between 1979 and 1990. We are in a post-fact society. Provable facts are no defence against the fascism of political correctness or Silicon Valley censorship. Facts don't matter anymore as we have witnessed with the 'Covid' hoax. Sacrificing uniqueness to the Woke group-think religion is all you are required to do and that means thinking for yourself is the biggest Woke no, no. All religions are an expression of group-think and censorship and Woke is just another religion with an orthodoxy defended by group-think and censorship. Burned at

the stake becomes burned on Twitter which leads back eventually to burned at the stake as Woke humanity regresses to ages past.

The biggest Woke inversion of all is its creators and funders. I grew up in a traditional left of centre political household on a council estate in Leicester in the 1950s and 60s – you know, the left that challenged the power of wealth-hoarding elites and threats to freedom of speech and opinion. In those days students went on marches defending freedom of speech while today's Wokers march for its deletion. What on earth could have happened? Those very elites (collectively the Cult) that we opposed in my youth and early life have funded into existence the antithesis of that former left and hijacked the 'brand' while inverting everything it ever stood for. We have a mentality that calls itself 'liberal' and 'progressive' while acting like fascists. Cult billionaires and their corporations have funded themselves into control of 'education' to ensure that Woke programming is unceasing throughout the formative years of children and young people and that non-Wokers are isolated (that word again) whether they be students, teachers or college professors. The Cult has funded into existence the now colossal global network of Woke organisations that have spawned and promoted all the 'causes' on the Cult wish-list for global transformation and turned Wokers into demanders of them. Does anyone really think it's a coincidence that the Cult agenda for humanity is a carbon (sorry) copy of the societal transformations desired by Woke?? These are only some of them:

**Political correctness:** The means by which the Cult deletes all public debates that it knows it cannot win if we had the free-flow of information and evidence.

**Human-caused 'climate change':** The means by which the Cult seeks to transform society into a globally-controlled dictatorship imposing its will over the fine detail of everyone's lives 'to save the planet' which doesn't actually need saving.

**Transgender obsession:** Preparing collective perception to accept the ‘new human’ which would not have genders because it would be created technologically and not through procreation. I’ll have much more on this in Human 2.0.

**Race obsession:** The means by which the Cult seeks to divide and rule the population by triggering racial division through the perception that society is more racist than ever when the opposite is the case. Is it perfect in that regard? No. But to compare today with the racism of apartheid and segregation brought to an end by the civil rights movement in the 1960s is to insult the memory of that movement and inspirations like Martin Luther King. Why is the ‘anti-racism’ industry (which it is) so dominated by privileged white people?

**White supremacy:** This is a label used by privileged white people to demonise poor and deprived white people pushing back on tyranny to marginalise and destroy them. White people are being especially targeted as the dominant race by number within Western society which the Cult seeks to transform in its image. If you want to change a society you must weaken and undermine its biggest group and once you have done that by using the other groups you next turn on them to do the same ... ‘Then they came for the Jews and I was not a Jew so I did nothing.’

**Mass migration:** The mass movement of people from the Middle East, Africa and Asia into Europe, from the south into the United States and from Asia into Australia are another way the Cult seeks to dilute the racial, cultural and political influence of white people on Western society. White people ask why their governments appear to be working against them while being politically and culturally biased towards incoming cultures. Well, here’s your answer. In the same way sexually ‘straight’ people, men and women, ask why the

authorities are biased against them in favour of other sexualities. The answer is the same – that's the way the Cult wants it to be for very sinister motives.

These are all central parts of the Cult agenda and central parts of the Woke agenda and Woke was created and continues to be funded to an immense degree by Cult billionaires and corporations. If anyone begins to say 'coincidence' the syllables should stick in their throat.

### **Billionaire 'social justice warriors'**

Joe Biden is a 100 percent-owned asset of the Cult and the Wokers' man in the White House whenever he can remember his name and for however long he lasts with his rapidly diminishing cognitive function. Even walking up the steps of an aircraft without falling on his arse would appear to be a challenge. He's not an empty-shell puppet or anything. From the minute Biden took office (or the Cult did) he began his executive orders promoting the Woke wish-list. You will see the Woke agenda imposed ever more severely because it's really the *Cult* agenda. Woke organisations and activist networks spawned by the Cult are funded to the extreme so long as they promote what the Cult wants to happen. Woke is funded to promote 'social justice' by billionaires who become billionaires by destroying social justice. The social justice mantra is only a cover for dismantling social justice and funded by billionaires that couldn't give a damn about social justice. Everything makes sense when you see that. One of Woke's premier funders is Cult billionaire financier George Soros who said: 'I am basically there to make money, I cannot and do not look at the social consequences of what I do.' This is the same Soros who has given more than \$32 billion to his Open Society Foundations global Woke network and funded Black Lives Matter, mass immigration into Europe and the United States, transgender activism, climate change activism, political correctness and groups targeting 'white supremacy' in the form of privileged white thugs that dominate Antifa. What a scam it all is and when

you are dealing with the unquestioning fact-free zone of Woke scamming them is child's play. All you need to pull it off in all these organisations are a few in-the-know agents of the Cult and an army of naïve, reframed, uninformed, narcissistic, know-nothings convinced of their own self-righteousness, self-purity and virtue.

Soros and fellow billionaires and billionaire corporations have poured hundreds of millions into Black Lives Matter and connected groups and promoted them to a global audience. None of this is motivated by caring about black people. These are the billionaires that have controlled and exploited a system that leaves millions of black people in abject poverty and deprivation which they do absolutely nothing to address. The same Cult networks funding BLM were behind the *slave trade!* Black Lives Matter hijacked a phrase that few would challenge and they have turned this laudable concept into a political weapon to divide society. You know that BLM is a fraud when it claims that *All Lives Matter*, the most inclusive statement of all, is 'racist'. BLM and its Cult masters don't want to end racism. To them it's a means to an end to control all of humanity never mind the colour, creed, culture or background. What has destroying the nuclear family got to do with ending racism? Nothing – but that is one of the goals of BLM and also happens to be a goal of the Cult as I have been exposing in my books for decades. Stealing children from loving parents and giving schools ever more power to override parents is part of that same agenda. BLM is a Marxist organisation and why would that not be the case when the Cult created Marxism *and* BLM? Patrisse Cullors, a BLM co-founder, said in a 2015 video that she and her fellow organisers, including co-founder Alicia Garza, are 'trained Marxists'. The lady known after marriage as Patrisse Khan-Cullors bought a \$1.4 million home in 2021 in one of the whitest areas of California with a black population of just 1.6 per cent and has so far bought *four* high-end homes for a total of \$3.2 million. How very Marxist. There must be a bit of spare in the BLM coffers, however, when Cult corporations and billionaires have handed over the best part of \$100 million. Many black people can see that Black Lives Matter is not

working for them, but against them, and this is still more confirmation. Black journalist Jason Whitlock, who had his account suspended by Twitter for simply linking to the story about the ‘Marxist’s’ home buying spree, said that BLM leaders are ‘making millions of dollars off the backs of these dead black men who they wouldn’t spit on if they were on fire and alive’.

## **Black Lies Matter**

Cult assets and agencies came together to promote BLM in the wake of the death of career criminal George Floyd who had been jailed a number of times including for forcing his way into the home of a black woman with others in a raid in which a gun was pointed at her stomach. Floyd was filmed being held in a Minneapolis street in 2020 with the knee of a police officer on his neck and he subsequently died. It was an appalling thing for the officer to do, but the same technique has been used by police on peaceful protestors of lockdown without any outcry from the Woke brigade. As unquestioning supporters of the Cult agenda Wokers have supported lockdown and all the ‘Covid’ claptrap while attacking anyone standing up to the tyranny imposed in its name. Court documents would later include details of an autopsy on Floyd by County Medical Examiner Dr Andrew Baker who concluded that Floyd had taken a fatal level of the drug fentanyl. None of this mattered to fact-free, question-free, Woke. Floyd’s death was followed by worldwide protests against police brutality amid calls to defund the police. Throwing babies out with the bathwater is a Woke speciality. In the wake of the murder of British woman Sarah Everard a Green Party member of the House of Lords, Baroness Jones of Moulsecoomb (Nincompoopia would have been better), called for a 6pm curfew for all men. This would be in breach of the Geneva Conventions on war crimes which ban collective punishment, but that would never have crossed the black and white Woke mind of Baroness Nincompoopia who would have been far too convinced of her own self-righteousness to compute such details. Many American cities did defund the police in the face of Floyd riots

and after \$15 million was deleted from the police budget in Washington DC under useless Woke mayor Muriel Bowser car-jacking alone rose by 300 percent and within six months the US capital recorded its highest murder rate in 15 years. The same happened in Chicago and other cities in line with the Cult/Soros plan to bring fear to streets and neighbourhoods by reducing the police, releasing violent criminals and not prosecuting crime. This is the mob-rule agenda that I have warned in the books was coming for so long. Shootings in the area of Minneapolis where Floyd was arrested increased by 2,500 percent compared with the year before. Defunding the police over George Floyd has led to a big increase in dead people with many of them black. Police protection for politicians making these decisions stayed the same or increased as you would expect from professional hypocrites. The Cult doesn't actually want to abolish the police. It wants to abolish local control over the police and hand it to federal government as the psychopaths advance the Hunger Games Society. Many George Floyd protests turned into violent riots with black stores and businesses destroyed by fire and looting across America fuelled by Black Lives Matter. Woke doesn't do irony. If you want civil rights you must loot the liquor store and the supermarket and make off with a smart TV. It's the only way.

### **It's not a race war – it's a class war**

Black people are patronised by privileged blacks and whites alike and told they are victims of white supremacy. I find it extraordinary to watch privileged blacks supporting the very system and bloodline networks behind the slave trade and parroting the same Cult-serving manipulative crap of their privileged white, often billionaire, associates. It is indeed not a race war but a class war and colour is just a diversion. Black Senator Cory Booker and black Congresswoman Maxine Waters, more residents of Nincompoopia, personify this. Once you tell people they are victims of someone else you devalue both their own responsibility for their plight and the power they have to impact on their reality and experience. Instead

we have: 'You are only in your situation because of whitey – turn on them and everything will change.' It won't change. Nothing changes in our lives unless *we* change it. Crucial to that is never seeing yourself as a victim and always as the creator of your reality. Life is a simple sequence of choice and consequence. Make different choices and you create different consequences. *You* have to make those choices – not Black Lives Matter, the Woke Mafia and anyone else that seeks to dictate your life. Who are they these Wokers, an emotional and psychological road traffic accident, to tell you what to do? Personal empowerment is the last thing the Cult and its Black Lives Matter want black people or anyone else to have. They claim to be defending the underdog while *creating* and perpetuating the underdog. The Cult's worst nightmare is human unity and if they are going to keep blacks, whites and every other race under economic servitude and control then the focus must be diverted from what they have in common to what they can be manipulated to believe divides them. Blacks have to be told that their poverty and plight is the fault of the white bloke living on the street in the same poverty and with the same plight they are experiencing. The difference is that your plight black people is due to him, a white supremacist with 'white privilege' living on the street. Don't unite as one human family against your mutual oppressors and suppressors – fight the oppressor with the white face who is as financially deprived as you are. The Cult knows that as its 'Covid' agenda moves into still new levels of extremism people are going to respond and it has been spreading the seeds of disunity everywhere to stop a united response to the evil that targets *all of us*.

Racist attacks on 'whiteness' are getting ever more outrageous and especially through the American Democratic Party which has an appalling history for anti-black racism. Barack Obama, Joe Biden, Hillary Clinton and Nancy Pelosi all eulogised about Senator Robert Byrd at his funeral in 2010 after a nearly 60-year career in Congress. Byrd was a brutal Ku Klux Klan racist and a violent abuser of Cathy O'Brien in MKUltra. He said he would never fight in the military 'with a negro by my side' and 'rather I should die a thousand times,

and see Old Glory trampled in the dirt never to rise again, than to see this beloved land of ours become degraded by race mongrels, a throwback to the blackest specimen from the wilds'. Biden called Byrd a 'very close friend and mentor'. These 'Woke' hypocrites are not anti-racist they are anti-poor and anti-people not of their perceived class. Here is an illustration of the scale of anti-white racism to which we have now descended. Seriously Woke and moronic *New York Times* contributor Damon Young described whiteness as a 'virus' that 'like other viruses will not die until there are no bodies left for it to infect'. He went on: '... the only way to stop it is to locate it, isolate it, extract it, and kill it.' Young can say that as a black man with no consequences when a white man saying the same in reverse would be facing a jail sentence. *That's* racism. We had super-Woke numbskull senators Tammy Duckworth and Mazie Hirono saying they would object to future Biden Cabinet appointments if he did not nominate more Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders. Never mind the ability of the candidate what do they look like? Duckworth said: 'I will vote for racial minorities and I will vote for LGBTQ, but anyone else I'm not voting for.' Appointing people on the grounds of race is illegal, but that was not a problem for this ludicrous pair. They were on-message and that's a free pass in any situation.

## Critical race racism

White children are told at school they are intrinsically racist as they are taught the divisive 'critical race theory'. This claims that the law and legal institutions are inherently racist and that race is a socially constructed concept used by white people to further their economic and political interests at the expense of people of colour. White is a 'virus' as we've seen. Racial inequality results from 'social, economic, and legal differences that white people create between races to maintain white interests which leads to poverty and criminality in minority communities'. I must tell that to the white guy sleeping on the street. The principal of East Side Community School in New York sent white parents a manifesto that called on

them to become ‘white traitors’ and advocate for full ‘white abolition’. These people are teaching your kids when they urgently need a psychiatrist. The ‘school’ included a chart with ‘eight white identities’ that ranged from ‘white supremacist’ to ‘white abolition’ and defined the behaviour white people must follow to end ‘the regime of whiteness’. Woke blacks and their privileged white associates are acting exactly like the slave owners of old and Ku Klux Klan racists like Robert Byrd. They are too full of their own self-purity to see that, but it’s true. Racism is not a body type; it’s a state of mind that can manifest through any colour, creed or culture.

Another racial fraud is ‘*equity*’. Not equality of treatment and opportunity – equity. It’s a term spun as equality when it means something very different. Equality in its true sense is a raising up while ‘*equity*’ is a race to the bottom. Everyone in the same level of poverty is ‘*equity*’. Keep everyone down – that’s equity. The Cult doesn’t want anyone in the human family to be empowered and BLM leaders, like all these ‘anti-racist’ organisations, continue their privileged, pampered existence by perpetuating the perception of gathering racism. When is the last time you heard an ‘anti-racist’ or ‘anti-Semitism’ organisation say that acts of racism and discrimination have *fallen*? It’s not in the interests of their fund-raising and power to influence and the same goes for the professional soccer anti-racism operation, Kick It Out. Two things confirmed that the Black Lives Matter riots in the summer of 2020 were Cult creations. One was that while anti-lockdown protests were condemned in this same period for ‘transmitting ‘Covid’ the authorities supported mass gatherings of Black Lives Matter supporters. I even saw self-deluding people claiming to be doctors say the two types of protest were not the same. No – the non-existent ‘Covid’ was in favour of lockdowns and attacked those that protested against them while ‘Covid’ supported Black Lives Matter and kept well away from its protests. The whole thing was a joke and as lockdown protestors were arrested, often brutally, by reframed Face-Nappies we had the grotesque sight of police officers taking the knee to Black Lives Matter, a Cult-funded Marxist

organisation that supports violent riots and wants to destroy the nuclear family and white people.

## **He's not white? Shucks!**

Woke obsession with race was on display again when ten people were shot dead in Boulder, Colorado, in March, 2021. Cult-owned Woke TV channels like CNN said the shooter appeared to be a white man and Wokers were on Twitter condemning 'violent white men' with the usual mantras. Then the shooter's name was released as Ahmad Al Aliwi Alissa, an anti-Trump Arab-American, and the sigh of disappointment could be heard five miles away. Never mind that ten people were dead and what that meant for their families. Race baiting was all that mattered to these sick Cult-serving people like Barack Obama who exploited the deaths to further divide America on racial grounds which is his job for the Cult. This is the man that 'racist' white Americans made the first black president of the United States and then gave him a second term. Not-very-bright Obama has become filthy rich on the back of that and today appears to have a big influence on the Biden administration. Even so he's still a downtrodden black man and a victim of white supremacy. This disingenuous fraud reveals the contempt he has for black people when he puts on a Deep South Alabama accent whenever he talks to them, no, *at* them.

Another BLM red flag was how the now fully-Woke (fully-Cult) and fully-virtue-signalled professional soccer authorities had their teams taking the knee before every match in support of Marxist Black Lives Matter. Soccer authorities and clubs displayed 'Black Lives Matter' on the players' shirts and flashed the name on electronic billboards around the pitch. Any fans that condemned what is a Freemasonic taking-the-knee ritual were widely condemned as you would expect from the Woke virtue-signallers of professional sport and the now fully-Woke media. We have reverse racism in which you are banned from criticising any race or culture except for white people for whom anything goes – say what you like, no problem. What has this got to do with racial harmony and

equality? We've had black supremacists from Black Lives Matter telling white people to fall to their knees in the street and apologise for their white supremacy. Black supremacists acting like white supremacist slave owners of the past couldn't breach their self-obsessed, race-obsessed sense of self-purity. Joe Biden appointed a race-obsessed black supremacist Kristen Clarke to head the Justice Department Civil Rights Division. Clarke claimed that blacks are endowed with 'greater mental, physical and spiritual abilities' than whites. If anyone reversed that statement they would be vilified. Clarke is on-message so no problem. She's never seen a black-white situation in which the black figure is anything but a virtuous victim and she heads the Civil Rights Division which should treat everyone the same or it isn't civil rights. Another perception of the Renegade Mind: If something or someone is part of the Cult agenda they will be supported by Woke governments and media no matter what. If they're not, they will be condemned and censored. It really is that simple and so racist Clarke prospers despite (make that because of) her racism.

## **The end of culture**

Biden's administration is full of such racial, cultural and economic bias as the Cult requires the human family to be divided into warring factions. We are now seeing racially-segregated graduations and everything, but everything, is defined through the lens of perceived 'racism. We have 'racist' mathematics, 'racist' food and even 'racist' *plants*. World famous Kew Gardens in London said it was changing labels on plants and flowers to tell its pre-'Covid' more than two million visitors a year how racist they are. Kew director Richard Deverell said this was part of an effort to 'move quickly to decolonise collections' after they were approached by one Ajay Chhabra 'an actor with an insight into how sugar cane was linked to slavery'. They are *plants* you idiots. 'Decolonisation' in the Woke manual really means colonisation of society with its mentality and by extension colonisation by the Cult. We are witnessing a new Chinese-style 'Cultural Revolution' so essential to the success of all

Marxist takeovers. Our cultural past and traditions have to be swept away to allow a new culture to be built-back-better. Woke targeting of long-standing Western cultural pillars including historical monuments and cancelling of historical figures is what happened in the Mao revolution in China which ‘purged remnants of capitalist and traditional elements from Chinese society’ and installed Maoism as the dominant ideology’. For China see the Western world today and for ‘dominant ideology’ see Woke. Better still see Marxism or Maoism. The ‘Covid’ hoax has specifically sought to destroy the arts and all elements of Western culture from people meeting in a pub or restaurant to closing theatres, music venues, sports stadiums, places of worship and even banning *singing*. Destruction of Western society is also why criticism of any religion is banned except for Christianity which again is the dominant religion as white is the numerically-dominant race. Christianity may be fading rapidly, but its history and traditions are weaved through the fabric of Western society. Delete the pillars and other structures will follow until the whole thing collapses. I am not a Christian defending that religion when I say that. I have no religion. It’s just a fact. To this end Christianity has itself been turned Woke to usher its own downfall and its ranks are awash with ‘change agents’ – knowing and unknowing – at every level including Pope Francis (*definitely* knowing) and the clueless Archbishop of Canterbury Justin Welby (possibly not, but who can be sure?). Woke seeks to coordinate attacks on Western culture, traditions, and ways of life through ‘intersectionality’ defined as ‘the complex, cumulative way in which the effects of multiple forms of discrimination (such as racism, sexism, and classism) combine, overlap, or intersect especially in the experiences of marginalised individuals or groups’. Wade through the Orwellian Woke-speak and this means coordinating disparate groups in a common cause to overthrow freedom and liberal values.

The entire structure of public institutions has been infested with Woke – government at all levels, political parties, police, military, schools, universities, advertising, media and trade unions. This abomination has been achieved through the Cult web by appointing

Wokers to positions of power and battering non-Wokers into line through intimidation, isolation and threats to their job. Many have been fired in the wake of the empathy-deleted, vicious hostility of 'social justice' Wokers and the desire of gutless, spineless employers to virtue-signal their Wokeness. Corporations are filled with Wokers today, most notably those in Silicon Valley. Ironically at the top they are not Woke at all. They are only exploiting the mentality their Cult masters have created and funded to censor and enslave while the Wokers cheer them on until it's their turn. Thus the Woke 'liberal left' is an inversion of the traditional liberal left. Campaigning for justice on the grounds of power and wealth distribution has been replaced by campaigning for identity politics. The genuine traditional left would never have taken money from today's billionaire abusers of fairness and justice and nor would the billionaires have wanted to fund that genuine left. It would not have been in their interests to do so. The division of opinion in those days was between the haves and have nots. This all changed with Cult manipulated and funded identity politics. The division of opinion today is between Wokers and non-Wokers and not income brackets. Cult corporations and their billionaires may have taken wealth disparity to cataclysmic levels of injustice, but as long as they speak the language of Woke, hand out the dosh to the Woke network and censor the enemy they are 'one of us'. Billionaires who don't give a damn about injustice are laughing at them till their bellies hurt. Wokers are not even close to self-aware enough to see that. The transformed 'left' dynamic means that Wokers who drone on about 'social justice' are funded by billionaires that have destroyed social justice the world over. It's *why* they are billionaires.

## **The climate con**

Nothing encapsulates what I have said more comprehensively than the hoax of human-caused global warming. I have detailed in my books over the years how Cult operatives and organisations were the pump-primers from the start of the climate con. A purpose-built vehicle for this is the Club of Rome established by the Cult in 1968

with the Rockefellers and Rothschilds centrally involved all along. Their gofer frontman Maurice Strong, a Canadian oil millionaire, hosted the Earth Summit in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, in 1992 where the global ‘green movement’ really expanded in earnest under the guiding hand of the Cult. The Earth Summit established Agenda 21 through the Cult-created-and-owned United Nations to use the illusion of human-caused climate change to justify the transformation of global society to save the world from climate disaster. It is a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution sold through governments, media, schools and universities as whole generations have been terrified into believing that the world was going to end in their lifetimes unless what old people had inflicted upon them was stopped by a complete restructuring of how everything is done. Chill, kids, it’s all a hoax. Such restructuring is precisely what the Cult agenda demands (purely by coincidence of course). Today this has been given the codename of the Great Reset which is only an updated term for Agenda 21 and its associated Agenda 2030. The latter, too, is administered through the UN and was voted into being by the General Assembly in 2015. Both 21 and 2030 seek centralised control of all resources and food right down to the raindrops falling on your own land. These are some of the demands of Agenda 21 established in 1992. See if you recognise this society emerging today:

- End national sovereignty
- State planning and management of all land resources, ecosystems, deserts, forests, mountains, oceans and fresh water; agriculture; rural development; biotechnology; and ensuring ‘*equity*’
- The state to ‘define the role’ of business and financial resources
- Abolition of private property
- ‘Restructuring’ the family unit (see BLM)
- Children raised by the state
- People told what their job will be
- Major restrictions on movement
- Creation of ‘human settlement zones’

- Mass resettlement as people are forced to vacate land where they live
- Dumbing down education
- Mass global depopulation in pursuit of all the above

The United Nations was created as a Trojan horse for world government. With the climate con of critical importance to promoting that outcome you would expect the UN to be involved. Oh, it's involved all right. The UN is promoting Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030 justified by 'climate change' while also driving the climate hoax through its Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), one of the world's most corrupt organisations. The IPCC has been lying ferociously and constantly since the day it opened its doors with the global media hanging unquestioningly on its every mendacious word. The Green movement is entirely Woke and has long lost its original environmental focus since it was co-opted by the Cult. An obsession with 'global warming' has deleted its values and scrambled its head. I experienced a small example of what I mean on a beautiful country walk that I have enjoyed several times a week for many years. The path merged into the fields and forests and you felt at one with the natural world. Then a 'Green' organisation, the Hampshire and Isle of Wight Wildlife Trust, took over part of the land and proceeded to cut down a large number of trees, including mature ones, to install a horrible big, bright steel 'this-is-ours-stay-out' fence that destroyed the whole atmosphere of this beautiful place. No one with a feel for nature would do that. Day after day I walked to the sound of chainsaws and a magnificent mature weeping willow tree that I so admired was cut down at the base of the trunk. When I challenged a Woke young girl in a green shirt (of course) about this vandalism she replied: 'It's a weeping willow – it will grow back.' This is what people are paying for when they donate to the Hampshire and Isle of Wight Wildlife Trust and many other 'green' organisations today. It is not the environmental movement that I knew and instead has become a support-system – as with Extinction Rebellion – for a very dark agenda.

## **Private jets for climate justice**

The Cult-owned, Gates-funded, World Economic Forum and its founder Klaus Schwab were behind the emergence of Greta Thunberg to harness the young behind the climate agenda and she was invited to speak to the world at ... the UN. Schwab published a book, *Covid-19: The Great Reset* in 2020 in which he used the 'Covid' hoax and the climate hoax to lay out a new society straight out of Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030. Bill Gates followed in early 2021 when he took time out from destroying the world to produce a book in his name about the way to save it. Gates flies across the world in private jets and admitted that 'I probably have one of the highest greenhouse gas footprints of anyone on the planet ... my personal flying alone is gigantic.' He has also bid for the planet's biggest private jet operator. Other climate change saviours who fly in private jets include John Kerry, the US Special Presidential Envoy for Climate, and actor Leonardo DiCaprio, a 'UN Messenger of Peace with special focus on climate change'. These people are so full of bullshit they could corner the market in manure. We mustn't be sceptical, though, because the Gates book, *How to Avoid a Climate Disaster: The Solutions We Have and the Breakthroughs We Need*, is a genuine attempt to protect the world and not an obvious pile of excrement attributed to a mega-psychopath aimed at selling his masters' plans for humanity. The Gates book and the other shite-pile by Klaus Schwab could have been written by the same person and may well have been. Both use 'climate change' and 'Covid' as the excuses for their new society and by coincidence the Cult's World Economic Forum and Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation promote the climate hoax and hosted Event 201 which pre-empted with a 'simulation' the very 'coronavirus' hoax that would be simulated for real on humanity within weeks. The British 'royal' family is promoting the 'Reset' as you would expect through Prince 'climate change caused the war in Syria' Charles and his hapless son Prince William who said that we must 'reset our relationship with nature and our trajectory as a species' to avoid a climate disaster. Amazing how many promoters of the 'Covid' and 'climate change' control

systems are connected to Gates and the World Economic Forum. A ‘study’ in early 2021 claimed that carbon dioxide emissions must fall by the equivalent of a global lockdown roughly every two years for the next decade to save the planet. The ‘study’ appeared in the same period that the Schwab mob claimed in a video that lockdowns destroying the lives of billions are good because they make the earth ‘quieter’ with less ‘ambient noise’. They took down the video amid a public backlash for such arrogant, empathy-deleted stupidity You see, however, where they are going with this. Corinne Le Quéré, a professor at the Tyndall Centre for Climate Change Research, University of East Anglia, was lead author of the climate lockdown study, and she writes for ... the World Economic Forum. Gates calls in ‘his’ book for changing ‘every aspect of the economy’ (long-time Cult agenda) and for humans to eat synthetic ‘meat’ (predicted in my books) while cows and other farm animals are eliminated.

Australian TV host and commentator Alan Jones described what carbon emission targets would mean for farm animals in Australia alone if emissions were reduced as demanded by 35 percent by 2030 and zero by 2050:

Well, let’s take agriculture, the total emissions from agriculture are about 75 million tonnes of carbon dioxide, equivalent. Now reduce that by 35 percent and you have to come down to 50 million tonnes, I’ve done the maths. So if you take for example 1.5 million cows, you’re going to have to reduce the herd by 525,000 [by] 2030, nine years, that’s 58,000 cows a year. The beef herd’s 30 million, reduce that by 35 percent, that’s 10.5 million, which means 1.2 million cattle have to go every year between now and 2030. This is insanity!

There are 75 million sheep. Reduce that by 35 percent, that’s 26 million sheep, that’s almost 3 million a year. So under the Paris Agreement over 30 million beasts. dairy cows, cattle, pigs and sheep would go. More than 8,000 every minute of every hour for the next decade, do these people know what they’re talking about?

Clearly they don’t at the level of campaigners, politicians and administrators. The Cult *does* know; that’s the outcome it wants. We are faced with not just a war on humanity. Animals and the natural world are being targeted and I have been saying since the ‘Covid’ hoax began that the plan eventually was to claim that the ‘deadly virus’ is able to jump from animals, including farm animals and

domestic pets, to humans. Just before this book went into production came this story: 'Russia registers world's first Covid-19 vaccine for cats & dogs as makers of Sputnik V warn pets & farm animals could spread virus'. The report said 'top scientists warned that the deadly pathogen could soon begin spreading through homes and farms' and 'the next stage is the infection of farm and domestic animals'. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey. Think what that would mean for animals and keep your eye on a term called zoonosis or zoonotic diseases which transmit between animals and humans. The Cult wants to break the connection between animals and people as it does between people and people. Farm animals fit with the Cult agenda to transform food from natural to synthetic.

### **The gas of life is killing us**

There can be few greater examples of Cult inversion than the condemnation of carbon dioxide as a dangerous pollutant when it is the gas of life. Without it the natural world would be dead and so we would all be dead. We breathe in oxygen and breathe out carbon dioxide while plants produce oxygen and absorb carbon dioxide. It is a perfect symbiotic relationship that the Cult wants to dismantle for reasons I will come to in the final two chapters. Gates, Schwab, other Cult operatives and mindless repeaters, want the world to be 'carbon neutral' by at least 2050 and the earlier the better. 'Zero carbon' is the cry echoed by lunatics calling for 'Zero Covid' when we already have it. These carbon emission targets will deindustrialise the world in accordance with Cult plans – the post-industrial, post-democratic society – and with so-called renewables like solar and wind not coming even close to meeting human energy needs blackouts and cold are inevitable. Texans got the picture in the winter of 2021 when a snow storm stopped wind turbines and solar panels from working and the lights went down along with water which relies on electricity for its supply system. Gates wants everything to be powered by electricity to ensure that his masters have the kill switch to stop all human activity, movement, cooking, water and warmth any time they like. The climate lie is so

stupendously inverted that it claims we must urgently reduce carbon dioxide when we *don't have enough*.

Co<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere is a little above 400 parts per million when the optimum for plant growth is 2,000 ppm and when it falls anywhere near 150 ppm the natural world starts to die and so do we. It fell to as low as 280 ppm in an 1880 measurement in Hawaii and rose to 413 ppm in 2019 with industrialisation which is why the planet has become *greener* in the industrial period. How insane then that psychopathic madman Gates is not satisfied only with blocking the rise of Co<sub>2</sub>. He's funding technology to suck it out of the atmosphere. The reason why will become clear. The industrial era is not destroying the world through Co<sub>2</sub> and has instead turned around a potentially disastrous ongoing fall in Co<sub>2</sub>. Greenpeace co-founder and scientist Patrick Moore walked away from Greenpeace in 1986 and has exposed the green movement for fear-mongering and lies. He said that 500 million years ago there was *17 times* more Co<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere than we have today and levels have been falling for hundreds of millions of years. In the last 150 million years Co<sub>2</sub> levels in Earth's atmosphere had reduced by *90 percent*. Moore said that by the time humanity began to unlock carbon dioxide from fossil fuels we were at '38 seconds to midnight' and in that sense: 'Humans are [the Earth's] salvation.' Moore made the point that only half the Co<sub>2</sub> emitted by fossil fuels stays in the atmosphere and we should remember that all pollution pouring from chimneys that we are told is carbon dioxide is in fact nothing of the kind. It's pollution. Carbon dioxide is an invisible gas.

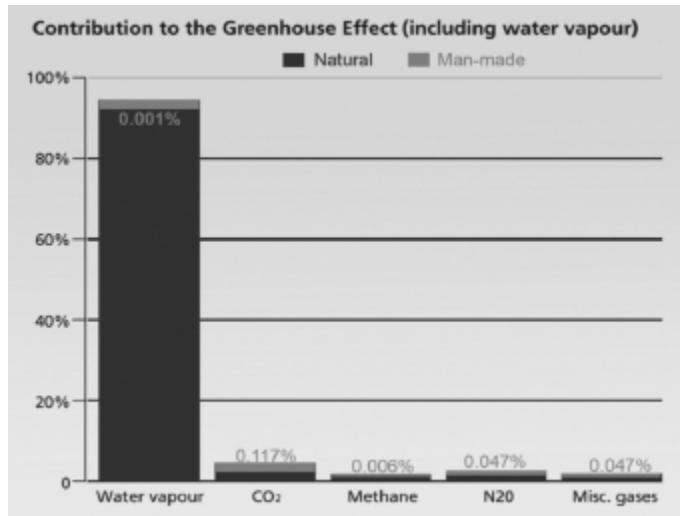
William Happer, Professor of Physics at Princeton University and long-time government adviser on climate, has emphasised the Co<sub>2</sub> deficiency for maximum growth and food production. Greenhouse growers don't add carbon dioxide for a bit of fun. He said that most of the warming in the last 100 years, after the earth emerged from the super-cold period of the 'Little Ice Age' into a natural warming cycle, was over by 1940. Happer said that a peak year for warming in 1988 can be explained by a 'monster El Nino' which is a natural and cyclical warming of the Pacific that has nothing to do with 'climate

change'. He said the effect of Co2 could be compared to painting a wall with red paint in that once two or three coats have been applied it didn't matter how much more you slapped on because the wall will not get much redder. Almost all the effect of the rise in Co2 has already happened, he said, and the volume in the atmosphere would now have to *double* to increase temperature by a single degree. Climate hoaxers know this and they have invented the most ridiculously complicated series of 'feedback' loops to try to overcome this rather devastating fact. You hear puppet Greta going on cluelessly about feedback loops and this is why.

### **The Sun affects temperature? No you *climate denier***

Some other nonsense to contemplate: Climate graphs show that rises in temperature do not follow rises in Co2 – *it's the other way round* with a lag between the two of some 800 years. If we go back 800 years from present time we hit the Medieval Warm Period when temperatures were higher than now without any industrialisation and this was followed by the Little Ice Age when temperatures plummeted. The world was still emerging from these centuries of serious cold when many climate records began which makes the ever-repeated line of the 'hottest year since records began' meaningless when you are not comparing like with like. The coldest period of the Little Ice Age corresponded with the lowest period of sunspot activity when the Sun was at its least active. Proper scientists will not be at all surprised by this when it confirms the obvious fact that earth temperature is affected by the scale of Sun activity and the energetic power that it subsequently emits; but when is the last time you heard a climate hoaxter talking about the Sun as a source of earth temperature?? Everything has to be focussed on Co2 which makes up just 0.117 percent of so-called greenhouse gases and only a fraction of even that is generated by human activity. The rest is natural. More than 90 percent of those greenhouse gases are water vapour and clouds ([Fig 9](#)). Ban moisture I say. Have you noticed that the climate hoaxers no longer use the polar bear as their promotion image? That's because far from becoming extinct polar

bear communities are stable or thriving. Joe Bastardi, American meteorologist, weather forecaster and outspoken critic of the climate lie, documents in his book *The Climate Chronicles* how weather patterns and events claimed to be evidence of climate change have been happening since long before industrialisation: 'What happened before naturally is happening again, as is to be expected given the cyclical nature of the climate due to the design of the planet.' If you read the detailed background to the climate hoax in my other books you will shake your head and wonder how anyone could believe the crap which has spawned a multi-trillion dollar industry based on absolute garbage (see HIV causes AIDS and Sars-Cov-2 causes 'Covid-19'). Climate and 'Covid' have much in common given they have the same source. They both have the contradictory *everything* factor in which everything is explained by reference to them. It's hot – 'it's climate change'. It's cold – 'it's climate change'. I got a sniffle – 'it's Covid'. I haven't got a sniffle – 'it's Covid'. Not having a sniffle has to be a symptom of 'Covid'. Everything is and not having a sniffle is especially dangerous if you are a slow walker. For sheer audacity I offer you a Cambridge University 'study' that actually linked 'Covid' to 'climate change'. It had to happen eventually. They concluded that climate change played a role in 'Covid-19' spreading from animals to humans because ... wait for it ... I kid you not ... *the two groups were forced closer together as populations grow.* Er, that's it. The whole foundation on which this depended was that 'Bats are the likely zoonotic origin of SARS-CoV-1 and SARS-CoV-2'. Well, they are not. They are nothing to do with it. Apart from bats not being the origin and therefore 'climate change' effects on bats being irrelevant I am in awe of their academic insight. Where would we be without them? Not where we are that's for sure.



**Figure 9:** The idea that the gas of life is disastrously changing the climate is an insult to brain cell activity.

One other point about the weather is that climate modification is now well advanced and not every major weather event is natural – or earthquake come to that. I cover this subject at some length in other books. China is openly planning a rapid expansion of its weather modification programme which includes changing the climate in an area more than one and a half times the size of India. China used weather manipulation to ensure clear skies during the 2008 Olympics in Beijing. I have quoted from US military documents detailing how to employ weather manipulation as a weapon of war and they did that in the 1960s and 70s during the conflict in Vietnam with Operation Popeye manipulating monsoon rains for military purposes. Why would there be international treaties on weather modification if it wasn't possible? Of course it is. Weather is energetic information and it can be changed.

## **How was the climate hoax pulled off? See 'Covid'**

If you can get billions to believe in a 'virus' that doesn't exist you can get them to believe in human-caused climate change that doesn't exist. Both are being used by the Cult to transform global society in the way it has long planned. Both hoaxes have been achieved in pretty much the same way. First you declare a lie is a fact. There's a

'virus' you call SARS-Cov-2 or humans are warming the planet with their behaviour. Next this becomes, via Cult networks, the foundation of government, academic and science policy and belief. Those who parrot the mantra are given big grants to produce research that confirms the narrative is true and ever more 'symptoms' are added to make the 'virus'/'climate change' sound even more scary. Scientists and researchers who challenge the narrative have their grants withdrawn and their careers destroyed. The media promote the lie as the unquestionable truth and censor those with an alternative view or evidence. A great percentage of the population believe what they are told as the lie becomes an everybody-knows-that and the believing-masses turn on those with a mind of their own. The technique has been used endlessly throughout human history. Wokers are the biggest promotorrs of the climate lie *and* 'Covid' fascism because their minds are owned by the Cult; their sense of self-righteous self-purity knows no bounds; and they exist in a bubble of reality in which facts are irrelevant and only get in the way of looking without seeing.

Running through all of this like veins in a blue cheese is control of information, which means control of perception, which means control of behaviour, which collectively means control of human society. The Cult owns the global media and Silicon Valley fascists for the simple reason that it *has* to. Without control of information it can't control perception and through that human society. Examine every facet of the Cult agenda and you will see that anything supporting its introduction is never censored while anything pushing back is always censored. I say again: Psychopaths that know why they are doing this must go before Nuremberg trials and those that follow their orders must trot along behind them into the same dock. 'I was just following orders' didn't work the first time and it must not work now. Nuremberg trials must be held all over the world before public juries for politicians, government officials, police, compliant doctors, scientists and virologists, and all Cult operatives such as Gates, Tedros, Fauci, Vallance, Whitty, Ferguson, Zuckerberg, Wojcicki, Brin, Page, Dorsey, the whole damn lot of

them – including, no *especially*, the psychopath psychologists. Without them and the brainless, gutless excuses for journalists that have repeated their lies, none of this could be happening. Nobody can be allowed to escape justice for the psychological and economic Armageddon they are all responsible for visiting upon the human race.

As for the compliant, unquestioning, swathes of humanity, and the self-obsessed, all-knowing ignorance of the Wokers ... don't start me. God help their kids. God help their grandkids. God *help them*.

## CHAPTER NINE

### We must have it? So what is it?

*Well I won't back down. No, I won't back down. You can stand me up at the Gates of Hell. But I won't back down*

Tom Petty

I will now focus on the genetically-manipulating ‘Covid vaccines’ which do not meet this official definition of a vaccine by the US Centers for Disease Control (CDC): ‘A product that stimulates a person’s immune system to produce immunity to a specific disease, protecting the person from that disease.’ On that basis ‘Covid vaccines’ are not a vaccine in that the makers don’t even claim they stop infection or transmission.

They are instead part of a multi-levelled conspiracy to change the nature of the human body and what it means to be ‘human’ and to depopulate an enormous swathe of humanity. What I shall call Human 1.0 is on the cusp of becoming Human 2.0 and for very sinister reasons. Before I get to the ‘Covid vaccine’ in detail here’s some background to vaccines in general. Government regulators do not test vaccines – the makers do – and the makers control which data is revealed and which isn’t. Children in America are given 50 vaccine doses by age six and 69 by age 19 and the effect of the whole combined schedule has never been tested. Autoimmune diseases when the immune system attacks its own body have soared in the mass vaccine era and so has disease in general in children and the young. Why wouldn’t this be the case when vaccines target the *immune system*? The US government gave Big Pharma drug

companies immunity from prosecution for vaccine death and injury in the 1986 National Childhood Vaccine Injury Act (NCVIA) and since then the government (taxpayer) has been funding compensation for the consequences of Big Pharma vaccines. The criminal and satanic drug giants can't lose and the vaccine schedule has increased dramatically since 1986 for this reason. There is no incentive to make vaccines safe and a big incentive to make money by introducing ever more. Even against a ridiculously high bar to prove vaccine liability, and with the government controlling the hearing in which it is being challenged for compensation, the vaccine court has so far paid out more than \$4 billion. These are the vaccines we are told are safe and psychopaths like Zuckerberg censor posts saying otherwise. The immunity law was even justified by a ruling that vaccines by their nature were 'unavoidably unsafe'.

Check out the ingredients of vaccines and you will be shocked if you are new to this. *They put that in children's bodies?? What??* Try aluminium, a brain toxin connected to dementia, aborted foetal tissue and formaldehyde which is used to embalm corpses. World-renowned aluminium expert Christopher Exley had his research into the health effect of aluminium in vaccines shut down by Keele University in the UK when it began taking funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Research when diseases 'eradicated' by vaccines began to decline and you will find the fall began long *before* the vaccine was introduced. Sometimes the fall even plateaued after the vaccine. Diseases like scarlet fever for which there was no vaccine declined in the same way because of environmental and other factors. A perfect case in point is the polio vaccine. Polio began when lead arsenate was first sprayed as an insecticide and residues remained in food products. Spraying started in 1892 and the first US polio epidemic came in Vermont in 1894. The simple answer was to stop spraying, but Rockefeller-created Big Pharma had a better idea. Polio was decreed to be caused by the *poliovirus* which 'spreads from person to person and can infect a person's spinal cord'. Lead arsenate was replaced by the lethal DDT which had the same effect of causing paralysis by damaging the brain and central nervous

system. Polio plummeted when DDT was reduced and then banned, but the vaccine is still given the credit for something it didn't do. Today by far the biggest cause of polio is the vaccines promoted by Bill Gates. Vaccine justice campaigner Robert Kennedy Jr, son of assassinated (by the Cult) US Attorney General Robert Kennedy, wrote:

In 2017, the World Health Organization (WHO) reluctantly admitted that the global explosion in polio is predominantly vaccine strain. The most frightening epidemics in Congo, Afghanistan, and the Philippines, are all linked to vaccines. In fact, by 2018, 70% of global polio cases were vaccine strain.

Vaccines make fortunes for Cult-owned Gates and Big Pharma while undermining the health and immune systems of the population. We had a glimpse of the mentality behind the Big Pharma cartel with a report on WION (World is One News), an international English language TV station based in India, which exposed the extraordinary behaviour of US drug company Pfizer over its 'Covid vaccine'. The WION report told how Pfizer had made fantastic demands of Argentina, Brazil and other countries in return for its 'vaccine'. These included immunity from prosecution, even for Pfizer negligence, government insurance to protect Pfizer from law suits and handing over as collateral sovereign assets of the country to include Argentina's bank reserves, military bases and embassy buildings. Pfizer demanded the same of Brazil in the form of waiving sovereignty of its assets abroad; exempting Pfizer from Brazilian laws; and giving Pfizer immunity from all civil liability. This is a 'vaccine' developed with government funding. Big Pharma is evil incarnate as a creation of the Cult and all must be handed tickets to Nuremberg.

### **Phantom 'vaccine' for a phantom 'disease'**

I'll expose the 'Covid vaccine' fraud and then go on to the wider background of why the Cult has set out to 'vaccinate' every man, woman and child on the planet for an alleged 'new disease' with a survival rate of 99.77 percent (or more) even by the grotesquely-

manipulated figures of the World Health Organization and Johns Hopkins University. The ‘infection’ to ‘death’ ratio is 0.23 to 0.15 percent according to Stanford epidemiologist Dr John Ioannidis and while estimates vary the danger remains tiny. I say that if the truth be told the fake infection to fake death ratio is zero. Never mind all the evidence I have presented here and in *The Answer* that there is no ‘virus’ let us just focus for a moment on that death-rate figure of say 0.23 percent. The figure includes all those worldwide who have tested positive with a test not testing for the ‘virus’ and then died within 28 days or even longer of any other cause – *any other cause*. Now subtract all those illusory ‘Covid’ deaths on the global data sheets from the 0.23 percent. What do you think you would be left with? *Zero*. A vaccination has never been successfully developed for a so-called coronavirus. They have all failed at the animal testing stage when they caused hypersensitivity to what they were claiming to protect against and made the impact of a disease far worse. Cult-owned vaccine corporations got around that problem this time by bypassing animal trials, going straight to humans and making the length of the ‘trials’ before the public rollout as short as they could get away with. Normally it takes five to ten years or more to develop vaccines that still cause demonstrable harm to many people and that’s without including the long-term effects that are never officially connected to the vaccination. ‘Covid’ non-vaccines have been officially produced and approved in a matter of months from a standing start and part of the reason is that (a) they were developed before the ‘Covid’ hoax began and (b) they are based on computer programs and not natural sources. Official non-trials were so short that government agencies gave *emergency*, not full, approval. ‘Trials’ were not even completed and full approval cannot be secured until they are. Public ‘Covid vaccination’ is actually a *continuation of the trial*. Drug company ‘trials’ are not scheduled to end until 2023 by which time a lot of people are going to be dead. Data on which government agencies gave this emergency approval was supplied by the Big Pharma corporations themselves in the form of Pfizer/BioNTech, AstraZeneca, Moderna, Johnson & Johnson, and

others, and this is the case with all vaccines. By its very nature *emergency* approval means drug companies do not have to prove that the ‘vaccine’ is ‘safe and effective’. How could they with trials way short of complete? Government regulators only have to *believe* that they *could* be safe and effective. It is criminal manipulation to get products in circulation with no testing worth the name. Agencies giving that approval are infested with Big Pharma-connected place-people and they act in the interests of Big Pharma (the Cult) and not the public about whom they do not give a damn.

## **More human lab rats**

‘Covid vaccines’ produced in record time by Pfizer/BioNTech and Moderna employ a technique *never approved before for use on humans*. They are known as mRNA ‘vaccines’ and inject a synthetic version of ‘viral’ mRNA or ‘messenger RNA’. The key is in the term ‘messenger’. The body works, or doesn’t, on the basis of information messaging. Communications are constantly passing between and within the genetic system and the brain. Change those messages and you change the state of the body and even its very nature and you can change psychology and behaviour by the way the brain processes information. I think you are going to see significant changes in personality and perception of many people who have had the ‘Covid vaccine’ synthetic potions. Insider Aldous Huxley predicted the following in 1961 and mRNA ‘vaccines’ can be included in the term ‘pharmacological methods’:

There will be, in the next generation or so, a pharmacological method of making people love their servitude, and producing dictatorship without tears, so to speak, producing a kind of painless concentration camp for entire societies, so that people will in fact have their own liberties taken away from them, but rather enjoy it, because they will be distracted from any desire to rebel by propaganda or brainwashing, or brainwashing enhanced by pharmacological methods. And this seems to be the final revolution.

Apologists claim that mRNA synthetic ‘vaccines’ don’t change the DNA genetic blueprint because RNA does not affect DNA only the other way round. This is so disingenuous. A process called ‘reverse

'transcription' can convert RNA into DNA and be integrated into DNA in the cell nucleus. This was highlighted in December, 2020, by scientists at Harvard and Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). Geneticists report that more than 40 percent of mammalian genomes results from reverse transcription. On the most basic level if messaging changes then that sequence must lead to changes in DNA which is receiving and transmitting those communications. How can introducing synthetic material into cells not change the cells where DNA is located? The process is known as transfection which is defined as 'a technique to insert foreign nucleic acid (DNA or RNA) into a cell, typically with the intention of altering the properties of the cell'. Researchers at the Sloan Kettering Institute in New York found that changes in messenger RNA can deactivate tumour-suppressing proteins and thereby promote cancer. This is what happens when you mess with messaging. 'Covid vaccine' maker Moderna was founded in 2010 by Canadian stem cell biologist Derrick J. Rossi after his breakthrough discovery in the field of transforming and reprogramming stem cells. These are neutral cells that can be programmed to become any cell including sperm cells. Moderna was therefore founded on the principle of genetic manipulation and has never produced any vaccine or drug before its genetically-manipulating synthetic 'Covid' shite. Look at the name – Mode-RNA or Modify-RNA. Another important point is that the US Supreme Court has ruled that genetically-modified DNA, or complementary DNA (cDNA) synthesized in the laboratory from messenger RNA, can be patented and owned. These psychopaths are doing this to the human body.

Cells replicate synthetic mRNA in the 'Covid vaccines' and in theory the body is tricked into making antigens which trigger antibodies to target the 'virus spike proteins' which as Dr Tom Cowan said have *never been seen*. Cut the crap and these 'vaccines' deliver *self-replicating* synthetic material to the cells with the effect of changing human DNA. The more of them you have the more that process is compounded while synthetic material is all the time self-replicating. 'Vaccine'-maker Moderna describes mRNA as 'like

software for the cell' and so they are messing with the body's software. What happens when you change the software in a computer? Everything changes. For this reason the Cult is preparing a production line of mRNA 'Covid vaccines' and a long list of excuses to use them as with all the 'variants' of a 'virus' never shown to exist. The plan is further to transfer the mRNA technique to other vaccines mostly given to children and young people. The cumulative consequences will be a transformation of human DNA through a constant infusion of synthetic genetic material which will kill many and change the rest. Now consider that governments that have given emergency approval for a vaccine that's not a vaccine; never been approved for humans before; had no testing worth the name; and the makers have been given immunity from prosecution for any deaths or adverse effects suffered by the public. The UK government awarded *permanent legal indemnity* to itself and its employees for harm done when a patient is being treated for 'Covid-19' or 'suspected Covid-19'. That is quite a thought when these are possible 'side-effects' from the 'vaccine' (they are not 'side', they are effects) listed by the US Food and Drug Administration:

Guillain-Barre syndrome; acute disseminated encephalomyelitis; transverse myelitis; encephalitis; myelitis; encephalomyelitis; meningoencephalitis; meningitis; encephalopathy; convulsions; seizures; stroke; narcolepsy; cataplexy; anaphylaxis; acute myocardial infarction (heart attack); myocarditis; pericarditis; autoimmune disease; death; implications for pregnancy, and birth outcomes; other acute demyelinating diseases; non anaphylactic allergy reactions; thrombocytopenia ; disseminated intravascular coagulation; venous thromboembolism; arthritis; arthralgia; joint pain; Kawasaki disease; multisystem inflammatory syndrome in children; vaccine enhanced disease. The latter is the way the 'vaccine' has the potential to make diseases far worse than they would otherwise be.

UK doctor and freedom campaigner Vernon Coleman described the conditions in this list as 'all unpleasant, most of them very serious, and you can't get more serious than death'. The thought that anyone at all has had the 'vaccine' in these circumstances is testament to the potential that humanity has for clueless, unquestioning, stupidity and for many that programmed stupidity has already been terminal.

## An insider speaks

Dr Michael Yeadon is a former Vice President, head of research and Chief Scientific Adviser at vaccine giant Pfizer. Yeadon worked on the inside of Big Pharma, but that did not stop him becoming a vocal critic of 'Covid vaccines' and their potential for multiple harms, including infertility in women. By the spring of 2021 he went much further and even used the no, no, term 'conspiracy'. When you begin to see what is going on it is impossible not to do so. Yeadon spoke out in an interview with freedom campaigner James Delingpole and I mentioned earlier how he said that no one had samples of 'the virus'. He explained that the mRNA technique originated in the anti-cancer field and ways to turn on and off certain genes which could be advantageous if you wanted to stop cancer growing out of control. 'That's the origin of them. They are a very unusual application, really.' Yeadon said that treating a cancer patient with an aggressive procedure might be understandable if the alternative was dying, but it was quite another thing to use the same technique as a public health measure. Most people involved wouldn't catch the infectious agent you were vaccinating against and if they did they probably wouldn't die:

If you are really using it as a public health measure you really want to as close as you can get to zero side-effects ... I find it odd that they chose techniques that were really cutting their teeth in the field of oncology and I'm worried that in using gene-based vaccines that have to be injected in the body and spread around the body, get taken up into some cells, and the regulators haven't quite told us which cells they get taken up into ... you are going to be generating a wide range of responses ... with multiple steps each of which could go well or badly.

I doubt the Cult intends it to go well. Yeadon said that you can put any gene you like into the body through the 'vaccine'. 'You can certainly give them a gene that would do them some harm if you wanted.' I was intrigued when he said that when used in the cancer field the technique could turn genes on and off. I explore this process in *The Answer* and with different genes having different functions you could create mayhem – physically and psychologically – if you turned the wrong ones on and the right ones off. I read reports of an experiment by researchers at the University of Washington's school of computer science and engineering in which they encoded DNA to infect computers. The body is itself a biological computer and if human DNA can inflict damage on a computer why can't the computer via synthetic material mess with the human body? It can. The Washington research team said it was possible to insert malicious malware into 'physical DNA strands' and corrupt the computer system of a gene sequencing machine as it 'reads gene letters and stores them as binary digits 0 and 1'. They concluded that hackers could one day use blood or spit samples to access computer systems and obtain sensitive data from police forensics labs or infect genome files. It is at this level of digital interaction that synthetic 'vaccines' need to be seen to get the full picture and that will become very clear later on. Michael Yeadon said it made no sense to give the 'vaccine' to younger people who were in no danger from the 'virus'. What was the benefit? It was all downside with potential effects:

The fact that my government in what I thought was a civilised, rational country, is raining [the 'vaccine'] on people in their 30s and 40s, even my children in their 20s, they're getting letters and phone calls, I know this is not right and any of you doctors who are vaccinating you know it's not right, too. They are not at risk. They are not at risk from the disease, so you are now hoping that the side-effects are so rare that you get away with it. You don't give new technology ... that you don't understand to 100 percent of the population.

Blood clot problems with the AstraZeneca 'vaccine' have been affecting younger people to emphasise the downside risks with no benefit. AstraZeneca's version, produced with Oxford University, does not use mRNA, but still gets its toxic cocktail inside cells where

it targets DNA. The Johnson & Johnson ‘vaccine’ which uses a similar technique has also produced blood clot effects to such an extent that the United States paused its use at one point. They are all ‘gene therapy’ (cell modification) procedures and not ‘vaccines’. The truth is that once the content of these injections enter cells we have no idea what the effect will be. People can speculate and some can give very educated opinions and that’s good. In the end, though, only the makers know what their potions are designed to do and even they won’t know every last consequence. Michael Yeadon was scathing about doctors doing what they knew to be wrong.

‘Everyone’s mute’, he said. Doctors in the NHS must know this was not right, coming into work and injecting people. ‘I don’t know how they sleep at night. I know I couldn’t do it. I know that if I were in that position I’d have to quit.’ He said he knew enough about toxicology to know this was not a good risk-benefit. Yeadon had spoken to seven or eight university professors and all except two would not speak out publicly. Their universities had a policy that no one said anything that countered the government and its medical advisors. They were afraid of losing their government grants. This is how intimidation has been used to silence the truth at every level of the system. I say silence, but these people could still speak out if they made that choice. Yeadon called them ‘moral cowards’ – ‘This is about your children and grandchildren’s lives and you have just buggered off and left it.’

## **‘Variant’ nonsense**

Some of his most powerful comments related to the alleged ‘variants’ being used to instil more fear, justify more lockdowns, and introduce more ‘vaccines’. He said government claims about ‘variants’ were nonsense. He had checked the alleged variant ‘codes’ and they were 99.7 percent identical to the ‘original’. This was the human identity difference equivalent to putting a baseball cap on and off or wearing it the other way round. A 0.3 percent difference would make it impossible for that ‘variant’ to escape immunity from the ‘original’. This made no sense of having new ‘vaccines’ for

'variants'. He said there would have to be at least a *30 percent* difference for that to be justified and even then he believed the immune system would still recognise what it was. Gates-funded 'variant modeller' and 'vaccine'-pusher John Edmunds might care to comment. Yeadon said drug companies were making new versions of the 'vaccine' as a 'top up' for 'variants'. Worse than that, he said, the 'regulators' around the world like the MHRA in the UK had got together and agreed that because 'vaccines' for 'variants' were so similar to the first 'vaccines' *they did not have to do safety studies*. How transparently sinister that is. This is when Yeadon said: 'There is a conspiracy here.' There was no need for another vaccine for 'variants' and yet we were told that there was and the country had shut its borders because of them. 'They are going into hundreds of millions of arms without passing 'go' or any regulator. Why did they do that? Why did they pick this method of making the vaccine?'

The reason had to be something bigger than that it seemed and 'it's not protection against the virus'. It's was a far bigger project that meant politicians and advisers were willing to do things and not do things that knowingly resulted in avoidable deaths – 'that's already happened when you think about lockdown and deprivation of health care for a year.' He spoke of people prepared to do something that results in the avoidable death of their fellow human beings and it not bother them. This is the penny-drop I have been working to get across for more than 30 years – the level of pure evil we are dealing with. Yeadon said his friends and associates could not believe there could be that much evil, but he reminded them of Stalin, Pol Pot and Hitler and of what Stalin had said: 'One death is a tragedy. A million? A statistic.' He could not think of a benign explanation for why you need top-up vaccines 'which I'm sure you don't' and for the regulators 'to just get out of the way and wave them through'. Why would the regulators do that when they were still wrestling with the dangers of the 'parent' vaccine? He was clearly shocked by what he had seen since the 'Covid' hoax began and now he was thinking the previously unthinkable:

If you wanted to depopulate a significant proportion of the world and to do it in a way that doesn't involve destruction of the environment with nuclear weapons, poisoning everyone with anthrax or something like that, and you wanted plausible deniability while you had a multi-year infectious disease crisis, I actually don't think you could come up with a better plan of work than seems to be in front of me. I can't say that's what they are going to do, but I can't think of a benign explanation why they are doing it.

He said he never thought that they would get rid of 99 percent of humans, but now he wondered. 'If you wanted to that this would be a hell of a way to do it – it would be unstoppable folks.' Yeadon had concluded that those who submitted to the 'vaccine' would be allowed to have some kind of normal life (but for how long?) while screws were tightened to coerce and mandate the last few percent. 'I think they'll put the rest of them in a prison camp. I wish I was wrong, but I don't think I am.' Other points he made included: There were no coronavirus vaccines then suddenly they all come along at the same time; we have no idea of the long term affect with trials so short; coercing or forcing people to have medical procedures is against the Nuremberg Code instigated when the Nazis did just that; people should at least delay having the 'vaccine'; a quick Internet search confirms that masks don't reduce respiratory viral transmission and 'the government knows that'; they have smashed civil society and they know that, too; two dozen peer-reviewed studies show no connection between lockdown and reducing deaths; he knew from personal friends the elite were still flying around and going on holiday while the public were locked down; the elite were not having the 'vaccines'. He was also asked if 'vaccines' could be made to target difference races. He said he didn't know, but the document by the Project for the New American Century in September, 2000, said developing 'advanced forms of biological warfare that can target *specific genotypes* may transform biological warfare from the realm of terror to a politically useful tool.' Oh, they're evil all right. Of that we can be *absolutely* sure.

## **Another cull of old people**

We have seen from the CDC definition that the mRNA 'Covid vaccine' is not a vaccine and nor are the others that *claim* to reduce 'severity of symptoms' in *some* people, but not protect from infection or transmission. What about all the lies about returning to 'normal' if people were 'vaccinated'? If they are not claimed to stop infection and transmission of the alleged 'virus', how does anything change? This was all lies to manipulate people to take the jabs and we are seeing that now with masks and distancing still required for the 'vaccinated'. How did they think that elderly people with fragile health and immune responses were going to be affected by infusing their cells with synthetic material and other toxic substances? They *knew* that in the short and long term it would be devastating and fatal as the culling of the old that began with the first lockdowns was continued with the 'vaccine'. Death rates in care homes soared immediately residents began to be 'vaccinated' – infused with synthetic material. Brave and committed whistleblower nurses put their careers at risk by exposing this truth while the rest kept their heads down and their mouths shut to put their careers before those they are supposed to care for. A long-time American Certified Nursing Assistant who gave his name as James posted a video in which he described emotionally what happened in his care home when vaccination began. He said that during 2020 very few residents were sick with 'Covid' and no one died during the entire year; but shortly after the Pfizer mRNA injections 14 people died within two weeks and many others were near death. 'They're dropping like flies', he said. Residents who walked on their own before the shot could no longer and they had lost their ability to conduct an intelligent conversation. The home's management said the sudden deaths were caused by a 'super-spreader' of 'Covid-19'. Then how come, James asked, that residents who refused to take the injections were not sick? It was a case of inject the elderly with mRNA synthetic potions and blame their illness and death that followed on the 'virus'. James described what was happening in care homes as 'the greatest crime of genocide this country has ever seen'. Remember the NHS staff nurse from earlier who used the same

word ‘genocide’ for what was happening with the ‘vaccines’ and that it was an ‘act of human annihilation’. A UK care home whistleblower told a similar story to James about the effect of the ‘vaccine’ in deaths and ‘outbreaks’ of illness dubbed ‘Covid’ after getting the jab. She told how her care home management and staff had zealously imposed government regulations and no one was allowed to even question the official narrative let alone speak out against it. She said the NHS was even worse. Again we see the results of reframing. A worker at a local care home where I live said they had not had a single case of ‘Covid’ there for almost a year and when the residents were ‘vaccinated’ they had 19 positive cases in two weeks with eight dying.

### **It's not the 'vaccine' – honest**

The obvious cause and effect was being ignored by the media and most of the public. Australia’s health minister Greg Hunt (a former head of strategy at the World Economic Forum) was admitted to hospital after he had the ‘vaccine’. He was suffering according to reports from the skin infection ‘cellulitis’ and it must have been a severe case to have warranted days in hospital. Immediately the authorities said this was nothing to do with the ‘vaccine’ when an effect of some vaccines is a ‘cellulitis-like reaction’. We had families of perfectly healthy old people who died after the ‘vaccine’ saying that if only they had been given the ‘vaccine’ earlier they would still be alive. As a numbskull rating that is off the chart. A father of four ‘died of Covid’ at aged 48 when he was taken ill two days after having the ‘vaccine’. The man, a health administrator, had been ‘shielding during the pandemic’ and had ‘not really left the house’ until he went for the ‘vaccine’. Having the ‘vaccine’ and then falling ill and dying does not seem to have qualified as a possible cause and effect and ‘Covid-19’ went on his death certificate. His family said they had no idea how he ‘caught the virus’. A family member said: ‘Tragically, it could be that going for a vaccination ultimately led to him catching Covid ...The sad truth is that they are never going to know where it came from.’ The family warned people to remember

that the virus still existed and was ‘very real’. So was their stupidity. Nurses and doctors who had the first round of the ‘vaccine’ were collapsing, dying and ending up in a hospital bed while they or their grieving relatives were saying they’d still have the ‘vaccine’ again despite what happened. I kid you not. You mean if your husband returned from the dead he’d have the same ‘vaccine’ again that killed him??

Doctors at the VCU Medical Center in Richmond, Virginia, said the Johnson & Johnson ‘vaccine’ was to blame for a man’s skin peeling off. Patient Richard Terrell said: ‘It all just happened so fast. My skin peeled off. It’s still coming off on my hands now.’ He said it was stinging, burning and itching and when he bent his arms and legs it was very painful with ‘the skin swollen and rubbing against itself’. Pfizer/BioNTech and Moderna vaccines use mRNA to change the cell while the Johnson & Johnson version uses DNA in a process similar to AstraZeneca’s technique. Johnson & Johnson and AstraZeneca have both had their ‘vaccines’ paused by many countries after causing serious blood problems. Terrell’s doctor Fnu Nutan said he could have died if he hadn’t got medical attention. It sounds terrible so what did Nutan and Terrell say about the ‘vaccine’ now? Oh, they still recommend that people have it. A nurse in a hospital bed 40 minutes after the vaccination and unable to swallow due to throat swelling was told by a doctor that he lost mobility in his arm for 36 hours following the vaccination. What did he say to the ailing nurse? ‘Good for you for getting the vaccination.’ We are dealing with a serious form of cognitive dissonance madness in both public and medical staff. There is a remarkable correlation between those having the ‘vaccine’ and trumpeting the fact and suffering bad happenings shortly afterwards. Witold Rogiewicz, a Polish doctor, made a video of his ‘vaccination’ and ridiculed those who were questioning its safety and the intentions of Bill Gates: ‘Vaccinate yourself to protect yourself, your loved ones, friends and also patients. And to mention quickly I have info for anti-vaxxers and anti-Covidiers if you want to contact Bill Gates you can do this through me.’ He further ridiculed the dangers of 5G. Days later he

was dead, but naturally the vaccination wasn't mentioned in the verdict of 'heart attack'.

## **Lies, lies and more lies**

So many members of the human race have slipped into extreme states of insanity and unfortunately they include reframed doctors and nursing staff. Having a 'vaccine' and dying within minutes or hours is not considered a valid connection while death from any cause within 28 days or longer of a positive test with a test not testing for the 'virus' means 'Covid-19' goes on the death certificate. How could that 'vaccine'-death connection not have been made except by calculated deceit? US figures in the initial rollout period to February 12th, 2020, revealed that a third of the deaths reported to the CDC after 'Covid vaccines' happened within 48 hours. Five men in the UK suffered an 'extremely rare' blood clot problem after having the AstraZeneca 'vaccine', but no causal link was established said the Gates-funded Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) which had given the 'vaccine' emergency approval to be used. Former Pfizer executive Dr Michael Yeadon explained in his interview how the procedures could cause blood coagulation and clots. People who should have been at no risk were dying from blood clots in the brain and he said he had heard from medical doctor friends that people were suffering from skin bleeding and massive headaches. The AstraZeneca 'shot' was stopped by some 20 countries over the blood clotting issue and still the corrupt MHRA, the European Medicines Agency (EMA) and the World Health Organization said that it should continue to be given even though the EMA admitted that it 'still cannot rule out definitively' a link between blood clotting and the 'vaccine'. Later Marco Cavaleri, head of EMA vaccine strategy, said there was indeed a clear link between the 'vaccine' and thrombosis, but they didn't know why. So much for the trials showing the 'vaccine' is safe. Blood clots were affecting younger people who would be under virtually no danger from 'Covid' even if it existed which makes it all the more stupid and sinister.

The British government responded to public alarm by wheeling out June Raine, the terrifyingly weak infant school headmistress sound-alike who heads the UK MHRA drug ‘regulator’. The idea that she would stand up to Big Pharma and government pressure is laughable and she told us that all was well in the same way that she did when allowing untested, never-used-on-humans-before, genetically-manipulating ‘vaccines’ to be exposed to the public in the first place. Mass lying is the new normal of the ‘Covid’ era. The MHRA later said 30 cases of rare blood clots had by then been connected with the AstraZeneca ‘vaccine’ (that means a lot more in reality) while stressing that the benefits of the jab in preventing ‘Covid-19’ outweighed any risks. A more ridiculous and disingenuous statement with callous disregard for human health it is hard to contemplate. Immediately after the mendacious ‘all-clears’ two hospital workers in Denmark experienced blood clots and cerebral haemorrhaging following the AstraZeneca jab and one died. Top Norwegian health official Pål Andre Holme said the ‘vaccine’ was the only common factor: ‘There is nothing in the patient history of these individuals that can give such a powerful immune response ... I am confident that the antibodies that we have found are the cause, and I see no other explanation than it being the vaccine which triggers it.’ Strokes, a clot or bleed in the brain, were clearly associated with the ‘vaccine’ from word of mouth and whistleblower reports. Similar consequences followed with all these ‘vaccines’ that we were told were so safe and as the numbers grew by the day it was clear we were witnessing human carnage.

## **Learning the hard way**

A woman interviewed by UKColumn told how her husband suffered dramatic health effects after the vaccine when he’d been in good health all his life. He went from being a little unwell to losing all feeling in his legs and experiencing ‘excruciating pain’. Misdiagnosis followed twice at Accident and Emergency (an ‘allergy’ and ‘sciatica’) before he was admitted to a neurology ward where doctors said his serious condition had been caused by the

'vaccine'. Another seven 'vaccinated' people were apparently being treated on the same ward for similar symptoms. The woman said he had the 'vaccine' because they believed media claims that it was safe. 'I didn't think the government would give out a vaccine that does this to somebody; I believed they would be bringing out a vaccination that would be safe.' What a tragic way to learn that lesson. Another woman posted that her husband was transporting stroke patients to hospital on almost every shift and when he asked them if they had been 'vaccinated' for 'Covid' they all replied 'yes'. One had a 'massive brain bleed' the day after his second dose. She said her husband reported the 'just been vaccinated' information every time to doctors in A and E only for them to ignore it, make no notes and appear annoyed that it was even mentioned. This particular report cannot be verified, but it expresses a common theme that confirms the monumental underreporting of 'vaccine' consequences. Interestingly as the 'vaccines' and their brain blood clot/stroke consequences began to emerge the UK National Health Service began a publicity campaign telling the public what to do in the event of a stroke. A Scottish NHS staff nurse who quit in disgust in March, 2021, said:

I have seen traumatic injuries from the vaccine, they're not getting reported to the yellow card [adverse reaction] scheme, they're treating the symptoms, not asking why, why it's happening. It's just treating the symptoms and when you speak about it you're dismissed like you're crazy, I'm not crazy, I'm not crazy because every other colleague I've spoken to is terrified to speak out, they've had enough.

Videos appeared on the Internet of people uncontrollably shaking after the 'vaccine' with no control over muscles, limbs and even their face. A Scottish mother broke out in a severe rash all over her body almost immediately after she was given the AstraZeneca 'vaccine'. The pictures were horrific. Leigh King, a 41-year-old hairdresser from Lanarkshire said: 'Never in my life was I prepared for what I was about to experience ... My skin was so sore and constantly hot ... I have never felt pain like this ...' But don't you worry, the 'vaccine' is perfectly safe. Then there has been the effect on medical

staff who have been pressured to have the ‘vaccine’ by psychopathic ‘health’ authorities and government. A London hospital consultant who gave the name K. Polyakova wrote this to the *British Medical Journal* or *BMJ*:

I am currently struggling with ... the failure to report the reality of the morbidity caused by our current vaccination program within the health service and staff population. The levels of sickness after vaccination is unprecedented and staff are getting very sick and some with neurological symptoms which is having a huge impact on the health service function. Even the young and healthy are off for days, some for weeks, and some requiring medical treatment. Whole teams are being taken out as they went to get vaccinated together.

Mandatory vaccination in this instance is stupid, unethical and irresponsible when it comes to protecting our staff and public health. We are in the voluntary phase of vaccination, and encouraging staff to take an unlicensed product that is impacting on their immediate health ... it is clearly stated that these vaccine products do not offer immunity or stop transmission. In which case why are we doing it?

Not to protect health that’s for sure. Medical workers are lauded by governments for agenda reasons when they couldn’t give a toss about them any more than they can for the population in general. Schools across America faced the same situation as they closed due to the high number of teachers and other staff with bad reactions to the Pfizer/BioNTech, Moderna, and Johnson & Johnson ‘Covid vaccines’ all of which were linked to death and serious adverse effects. The *BMJ* took down the consultant’s comments pretty quickly on the grounds that they were being used to spread ‘disinformation’. They were exposing the truth about the ‘vaccine’ was the real reason. The cover-up is breathtaking.

## **Hiding the evidence**

The scale of the ‘vaccine’ death cover-up worldwide can be confirmed by comparing official figures with the personal experience of the public. I heard of many people in my community who died immediately or soon after the vaccine that would never appear in the media or even likely on the official totals of ‘vaccine’ fatalities and adverse reactions when only about ten percent are estimated to be

reported and I have seen some estimates as low as one percent in a Harvard study. In the UK alone by April 29th, 2021, some 757,654 adverse reactions had been officially reported from the Pfizer/BioNTech, Oxford/AstraZeneca and Moderna 'vaccines' with more than a thousand deaths linked to jabs and that means an estimated ten times this number in reality from a ten percent reporting rate percentage. That's seven million adverse reactions and 10,000 potential deaths and a one percent reporting rate would be ten times *those* figures. In 1976 the US government pulled the swine flu vaccine after 53 deaths. The UK data included a combined 10,000 eye disorders from the 'Covid vaccines' with more than 750 suffering visual impairment or blindness and again multiply by the estimated reporting percentages. As 'Covid cases' officially fell hospitals virtually empty during the 'Covid crisis' began to fill up with a range of other problems in the wake of the 'vaccine' rollout. The numbers across America have also been catastrophic. Deaths linked to *all* types of vaccine increased by *6,000 percent* in the first quarter of 2021 compared with 2020. A 39-year-old woman from Ogden, Utah, died four days after receiving a second dose of Moderna's 'Covid vaccine' when her liver, heart and kidneys all failed despite the fact that she had no known medical issues or conditions. Her family sought an autopsy, but Dr Erik Christensen, Utah's chief medical examiner, said proving vaccine injury as a cause of death almost never happened. He could think of only one instance where an autopsy would name a vaccine as the official cause of death and that would be anaphylaxis where someone received a vaccine and died almost instantaneously. 'Short of that, it would be difficult for us to definitively say this is the vaccine,' Christensen said. If that is true this must be added to the estimated ten percent (or far less) reporting rate of vaccine deaths and serious reactions and the conclusion can only be that vaccine deaths and serious reactions – including these 'Covid' potions – are phenomenally understated in official figures. The same story can be found everywhere. Endless accounts of deaths and serious reactions among the public, medical

and care home staff while official figures did not even begin to reflect this.

Professional script-reader Dr David Williams, a ‘top public-health official’ in Ontario, Canada, insulted our intelligence by claiming only four serious adverse reactions and no deaths from the more than 380,000 vaccine doses then given. This bore no resemblance to what people knew had happened in their own circles and we had Dirk Huyer in charge of getting millions vaccinated in Ontario while at the same time he was Chief Coroner for the province investigating causes of death including possible death from the vaccine. An aide said he had stepped back from investigating deaths, but evidence indicated otherwise. Rosemary Frei, who secured a Master of Science degree in molecular biology at the Faculty of Medicine at Canada’s University of Calgary before turning to investigative journalism, was one who could see that official figures for ‘vaccine’ deaths and reactions made no sense. She said that doctors seldom reported adverse events and when people got really sick or died after getting a vaccination they would attribute that to anything except the vaccines. It had been that way for years and anyone who wondered aloud whether the ‘Covid vaccines’ or other shots cause harm is immediately branded as ‘anti-vax’ and ‘anti-science’. This was ‘career-threatening’ for health professionals. Then there was the huge pressure to support the push to ‘vaccinate’ billions in the quickest time possible. Frei said:

So that’s where we’re at today. More than half a million vaccine doses have been given to people in Ontario alone. The rush is on to vaccinate all 15 million of us in the province by September. And the mainstream media are screaming for this to be sped up even more. That all adds up to only a very slim likelihood that we’re going to be told the truth by officials about how many people are getting sick or dying from the vaccines.

What is true of Ontario is true of everywhere.

## **They KNEW – and still did it**

The authorities knew what was going to happen with multiple deaths and adverse reactions. The UK government’s Gates-funded

and Big Pharma-dominated Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) hired a company to employ AI in compiling the projected reactions to the ‘vaccine’ that would otherwise be uncountable. The request for applications said: ‘The MHRA urgently seeks an Artificial Intelligence (AI) software tool to process the expected high volume of Covid-19 vaccine Adverse Drug Reaction ...’ This was from the agency, headed by the disingenuous June Raine, that gave the ‘vaccines’ emergency approval and the company was hired before the first shot was given. ‘We are going to kill and maim you – is that okay?’ ‘Oh, yes, perfectly fine – I’m very grateful, thank you, doctor.’ The range of ‘Covid vaccine’ adverse reactions goes on for page after page in the MHRA criminally underreported ‘Yellow Card’ system and includes affects to eyes, ears, skin, digestion, blood and so on. Raine’s MHRA amazingly claimed that the ‘overall safety experience ... is so far as expected from the clinical trials’. The death, serious adverse effects, deafness and blindness were *expected*? When did they ever mention that? If these human tragedies were expected then those that gave approval for the use of these ‘vaccines’ must be guilty of crimes against humanity including murder – a definition of which is ‘killing a person with malice aforethought or with recklessness manifesting extreme indifference to the value of human life.’ People involved at the MHRA, the CDC in America and their equivalent around the world must go before Nuremberg trials to answer for their callous inhumanity. We are only talking here about the immediate effects of the ‘vaccine’. The longer-term impact of the DNA synthetic manipulation is the main reason they are so hysterically desperate to inoculate the entire global population in the shortest possible time.

Africa and the developing world are a major focus for the ‘vaccine’ depopulation agenda and a mass vaccination sales-pitch is underway thanks to caring people like the Rockefellers and other Cult assets. The Rockefeller Foundation, which pre-empted the ‘Covid pandemic’ in a document published in 2010 that ‘predicted’ what happened a decade later, announced an initial \$34.95 million grant in February, 2021, ‘to ensure more equitable access to Covid-19

testing and vaccines' among other things in Africa in collaboration with '24 organizations, businesses, and government agencies'. The pan-Africa initiative would focus on 10 countries: Burkina Faso, Ethiopia, Ghana, Kenya, Nigeria, Rwanda, South Africa, Tanzania, Uganda, and Zambia'. Rajiv Shah, President of the Rockefeller Foundation and former administrator of CIA-controlled USAID, said that if Africa was not mass-vaccinated (to change the DNA of its people) it was a 'threat to all of humanity' and not fair on Africans. When someone from the Rockefeller Foundation says they want to do something to help poor and deprived people and countries it is time for a belly-laugh. They are doing this out of the goodness of their 'heart' because 'vaccinating' the entire global population is what the 'Covid' hoax set out to achieve. Official 'decolonisation' of Africa by the Cult was merely a prelude to financial colonisation on the road to a return to physical colonisation. The 'vaccine' is vital to that and the sudden and convenient death of the 'Covid' sceptic president of Tanzania can be seen in its true light. A lot of people in Africa are aware that this is another form of colonisation and exploitation and they need to stand their ground.

## **The 'vaccine is working' scam**

A potential problem for the Cult was that the 'vaccine' is meant to change human DNA and body messaging and not to protect anyone from a 'virus' never shown to exist. The vaccine couldn't work because it was not designed to work and how could they make it *appear* to be working so that more people would have it? This was overcome by lowering the amplification rate of the PCR test to produce fewer 'cases' and therefore fewer 'deaths'. Some of us had been pointing out since March, 2020, that the amplification rate of the test not testing for the 'virus' had been made artificially high to generate positive tests which they could call 'cases' to justify lockdowns. The World Health Organization recommended an absurdly high 45 amplification cycles to ensure the high positives required by the Cult and then remained silent on the issue until January 20th, 2021 – Biden's Inauguration Day. This was when the

'vaccinations' were seriously underway and on that day the WHO recommended after discussions with America's CDC that laboratories *lowered their testing amplification*. Dr David Samadi, a certified urologist and health writer, said the WHO was encouraging all labs to reduce their cycle count for PCR tests. He said the current cycle was much too high and was 'resulting in any particle being declared a positive case'. Even one mainstream news report I saw said this meant the number of 'Covid' infections may have been 'dramatically inflated'. Oh, just a little bit. The CDC in America issued new guidance to laboratories in April, 2021, to use 28 cycles *but only for 'vaccinated' people*. The timing of the CDC/WHO interventions were cynically designed to make it appear the 'vaccines' were responsible for falling cases and deaths when the real reason can be seen in the following examples. New York's state lab, the Wadsworth Center, identified 872 positive tests in July, 2020, based on a threshold of 40 cycles. When the figure was lowered to 35 cycles *43 percent* of the 872 were no longer 'positives'. At 30 cycles the figure was 63 percent. A Massachusetts lab found that between *85 to 90 percent* of people who tested positive in July with a cycle threshold of 40 would be negative at 30 cycles, Ashish Jha, MD, director of the Harvard Global Health Institute, said: 'I'm really shocked that it could be that high ... Boy, does it really change the way we need to be thinking about testing.' I'm shocked that I could see the obvious in the spring of 2020, with no medical background, and most medical professionals still haven't worked it out. No, that's not shocking – it's terrifying.

Three weeks after the WHO directive to lower PCR cycles the London *Daily Mail* ran this headline: 'Why ARE Covid cases plummeting? New infections have fallen 45% in the US and 30% globally in the past 3 weeks but experts say vaccine is NOT the main driver because only 8% of Americans and 13% of people worldwide have received their first dose.' They acknowledged that the drop could not be attributed to the 'vaccine', but soon this morphed throughout the media into the 'vaccine' has caused cases and deaths to fall when it was the PCR threshold. In December, 2020, there was

chaos at English Channel ports with truck drivers needing negative 'Covid' tests before they could board a ferry home for Christmas. The government wanted to remove the backlog as fast as possible and they brought in troops to do the 'testing'. Out of 1,600 drivers just 36 tested positive and the rest were given the all clear to cross the Channel. I guess the authorities thought that 36 was the least they could get away with without the unquestioning catching on. The amplification trick which most people believed in the absence of information in the mainstream applied more pressure on those refusing the 'vaccine' to succumb when it 'obviously worked'. The truth was the exact opposite with deaths in care homes soaring with the 'vaccine' and in Israel the term used was 'skyrocket'. A re-analysis of published data from the Israeli Health Ministry led by Dr Hervé Seligmann at the Medicine Emerging Infectious and Tropical Diseases at Aix-Marseille University found that Pfizer's 'Covid vaccine' killed 'about 40 times more [elderly] people than the disease itself would have killed' during a five-week vaccination period and 260 *times* more younger people than would have died from the 'virus' even according to the manipulated 'virus' figures. Dr Seligmann and his co-study author, Haim Yativ, declared after reviewing the Israeli 'vaccine' death data: 'This is a new Holocaust.'

Then, in mid-April, 2021, after vast numbers of people worldwide had been 'vaccinated', the story changed with clear coordination. The UK government began to prepare the ground for more future lockdowns when Nuremberg-destined Boris Johnson told yet another whopper. He said that cases had fallen because of *lockdowns* not 'vaccines'. Lockdowns are irrelevant when *there is no 'virus'* and the test and fraudulent death certificates are deciding the number of 'cases' and 'deaths'. Study after study has shown that lockdowns don't work and instead kill and psychologically destroy people. Meanwhile in the United States Anthony Fauci and Rochelle Walensky, the ultra-Zionist head of the CDC, peddled the same line. More lockdown was the answer and not the 'vaccine', a line repeated on cue by the moron that is Canadian Prime Minister Justin Trudeau. Why all the hysteria to get everyone 'vaccinated' if lockdowns and

not ‘vaccines’ made the difference? None of it makes sense on the face of it. Oh, but it does. The Cult wants lockdowns *and* the ‘vaccine’ and if the ‘vaccine’ is allowed to be seen as the total answer lockdowns would no longer be justified when there are still livelihoods to destroy. ‘Variants’ and renewed upward manipulation of PCR amplification are planned to instigate never-ending lockdown *and* more ‘vaccines’.

## **You must have it – we’re desperate**

Israel, where the Jewish and Arab population are ruled by the Sabbatian Cult, was the front-runner in imposing the DNA-manipulating ‘vaccine’ on its people to such an extent that Jewish refusers began to liken what was happening to the early years of Nazi Germany. This would seem to be a fantastic claim. Why would a government of Jewish people be acting like the Nazis did? If you realise that the Sabbatian Cult was behind the Nazis and that Sabbatians hate Jews the pieces start to fit and the question of why a ‘Jewish’ government would treat Jews with such callous disregard for their lives and freedom finds an answer. Those controlling the government of Israel *aren’t Jewish* – they’re Sabbatian. Israeli lawyer Tamir Turgal was one who made the Nazi comparison in comments to German lawyer Reiner Fuellmich who is leading a class action lawsuit against the psychopaths for crimes against humanity. Turgal described how the Israeli government was vaccinating children and pregnant women on the basis that there was no evidence that this was dangerous when they had no evidence that it *wasn’t* dangerous either. They just had no evidence. This was medical experimentation and Turgal said this breached the Nuremberg Code about medical experimentation and procedures requiring informed consent and choice. Think about that. A Nuremberg Code developed because of Nazi experimentation on Jews and others in concentration camps by people like the evil-beyond-belief Josef Mengele is being breached by the *Israeli* government; but when you know that it’s a *Sabbatian* government along with its intelligence and military agencies like Mossad, Shin Bet and the Israeli Defense Forces, and that Sabbatians

were the force behind the Nazis, the kaleidoscope comes into focus. What have we come to when Israeli Jews are suing their government for violating the Nuremberg Code by essentially making Israelis subject to a medical experiment using the controversial 'vaccines'? It's a shocker that this has to be done in the light of what happened in Nazi Germany. The Anshe Ha-Emet, or 'People of the Truth', made up of Israeli doctors, lawyers, campaigners and public, have launched a lawsuit with the International Criminal Court. It says:

When the heads of the Ministry of Health as well as the prime minister presented the vaccine in Israel and began the vaccination of Israeli residents, the vaccinated were not advised, that, in practice, they are taking part in a medical experiment and that their consent is required for this under the Nuremberg Code.

The irony is unbelievable, but easily explained in one word: Sabbatians. The foundation of Israeli 'Covid' apartheid is the 'green pass' or 'green passport' which allows Jews and Arabs who have had the DNA-manipulating 'vaccine' to go about their lives – to work, fly, travel in general, go to shopping malls, bars, restaurants, hotels, concerts, gyms, swimming pools, theatres and sports venues, while non-'vaccinated' are banned from all those places and activities. Israelis have likened the 'green pass' to the yellow stars that Jews in Nazi Germany were forced to wear – the same as the yellow stickers that a branch of UK supermarket chain Morrisons told exempt mask-wears they had to display when shopping. How very sensitive. The Israeli system is blatant South African-style apartheid on the basis of compliance or non-compliance to fascism rather than colour of the skin. How appropriate that the Sabbatian Israeli government was so close to the pre-Mandela apartheid regime in Pretoria. The Sabbatian-instigated 'vaccine passport' in Israel is planned for everywhere. Sabbatians struck a deal with Pfizer that allowed them to lead the way in the percentage of a national population infused with synthetic material and the result was catastrophic. Israeli freedom activist Shai Dannon told me how chairs were appearing on beaches that said 'vaccinated only'. Health Minister Yuli Edelstein said that anyone unwilling or unable to get

the jabs that ‘confer immunity’ will be ‘left behind’. The man’s a liar. Not even the makers claim the ‘vaccines’ confer immunity. When you see those figures of ‘vaccine’ deaths these psychopaths were saying that you must take the chance the ‘vaccine’ will kill you or maim you while knowing it will change your DNA or lockdown for you will be permanent. That’s fascism. The Israeli parliament passed a law to allow personal information of the non-vaccinated to be shared with local and national authorities for three months. This was claimed by its supporters to be a way to ‘encourage’ people to be vaccinated. Hadas Ziv from Physicians for Human Rights described this as a ‘draconian law which crushed medical ethics and the patient rights’. But that’s the idea, the Sabbatians would reply.

## **Your papers, please**

Sabbatian Israel was leading what has been planned all along to be a global ‘vaccine pass’ called a ‘green passport’ without which you would remain in permanent lockdown restriction and unable to do anything. This is how badly – *desperately* – the Cult is to get everyone ‘vaccinated’. The term and colour ‘green’ was not by chance and related to the psychology of fusing the perception of the green climate hoax with the ‘Covid’ hoax and how the ‘solution’ to both is the same Great Reset. Lying politicians, health officials and psychologists denied there were any plans for mandatory vaccinations or restrictions based on vaccinations, but they knew that was exactly what was meant to happen with governments of all countries reaching agreements to enforce a global system. ‘Free’ Denmark and ‘free’ Sweden unveiled digital vaccine certification. Cyprus, Czech Republic, Estonia, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Italy, Poland, Portugal, Slovakia, and Spain have all committed to a vaccine passport system and the rest including the whole of the EU would follow. The satanic UK government will certainly go this way despite mendacious denials and at the time of writing it is trying to manipulate the public into having the ‘vaccine’ so they could go abroad on a summer holiday. How would that work without something to prove you had the synthetic toxicity injected into you?

Documents show that the EU's European Commission was moving towards 'vaccine certificates' in 2018 and 2019 before the 'Covid' hoax began. They knew what was coming. Abracadabra – Ursula von der Leyen, the German President of the Commission, announced in March, 2021, an EU 'Digital Green Certificate' – green again – to track the public's 'Covid status'. The passport sting is worldwide and the Far East followed the same pattern with South Korea ruling that only those with 'vaccination' passports – again the *green* pass – would be able to 'return to their daily lives'.

Bill Gates has been preparing for this 'passport' with other Cult operatives for years and beyond the paper version is a Gates-funded 'digital tattoo' to identify who has been vaccinated and who hasn't. The 'tattoo' is reported to include a substance which is externally readable to confirm who has been vaccinated. This is a bio-luminous light-generating enzyme (think fireflies) called ... *Luciferase*. Yes, named after the Cult 'god' Lucifer the 'light bringer' of whom more to come. Gates said he funded the readable tattoo to ensure children in the developing world were vaccinated and no one was missed out. He cares so much about poor kids as we know. This was just the cover story to develop a vaccine tagging system for everyone on the planet. Gates has been funding the ID2020 'alliance' to do just that in league with other lovely people at Microsoft, GAVI, the Rockefeller Foundation, Accenture and IDEO.org. He said in interviews in March, 2020, before any 'vaccine' publicly existed, that the world must have a globalised digital certificate to track the 'virus' and who had been vaccinated. Gates knew from the start that the mRNA vaccines were coming and when they would come and that the plan was to tag the 'vaccinated' to marginalise the intelligent and stop them doing anything including travel. Evil just doesn't suffice. Gates was exposed for offering a \$10 million bribe to the Nigerian House of Representatives to invoke compulsory 'Covid' vaccination of all Nigerians. Sara Cunial, a member of the Italian Parliament, called Gates a 'vaccine criminal'. She urged the Italian President to hand him over to the International Criminal Court for crimes against

humanity and condemned his plans to 'chip the human race' through ID2020.

You know it's a long-planned agenda when war criminal and Cult gofer Tony Blair is on the case. With the scale of arrogance only someone as dark as Blair can muster he said: 'Vaccination in the end is going to be your route to liberty.' Blair is a disgusting piece of work and he confirms that again. The media has given a lot of coverage to a bloke called Charlie Mullins, founder of London's biggest independent plumbing company, Pimlico Plumbers, who has said he won't employ anyone who has not been vaccinated or have them go to any home where people are not vaccinated. He said that if he had his way no one would be allowed to walk the streets if they have not been vaccinated. Gates was cheering at the time while I was alerting the white coats. The plan is that people will qualify for 'passports' for having the first two doses and then to keep it they will have to have all the follow ups and new ones for invented 'variants' until human genetics is transformed and many are dead who can't adjust to the changes. Hollywood celebrities – the usual propaganda stunt – are promoting something called the WELL Health-Safety Rating to verify that a building or space has 'taken the necessary steps to prioritize the health and safety of their staff, visitors and other stakeholders'. They included Lady Gaga, Jennifer Lopez, Michael B. Jordan, Robert DeNiro, Venus Williams, Wolfgang Puck, Deepak Chopra and 17th Surgeon General Richard Carmona. Yawn. WELL Health-Safety has big connections with China. Parent company Delos is headed by former Goldman Sachs partner Paul Scialla. This is another example – and we will see so many others – of using the excuse of 'health' to dictate the lives and activities of the population. I guess one confirmation of the 'safety' of buildings is that only 'vaccinated' people can go in, right?

## **Electronic concentration camps**

I wrote decades ago about the plans to restrict travel and here we are for those who refuse to bow to tyranny. This can be achieved in one go with air travel if the aviation industry makes a blanket decree.

The ‘vaccine’ and guaranteed income are designed to be part of a global version of China’s social credit system which tracks behaviour 24/7 and awards or deletes ‘credits’ based on whether your behaviour is supported by the state or not. I mean your entire lifestyle – what you do, eat, say, everything. Once your credit score falls below a certain level consequences kick in. In China tens of millions have been denied travel by air and train because of this. All the locations and activities denied to refusers by the ‘vaccine’ passports will be included in one big mass ban on doing almost anything for those that don’t bow their head to government. It’s beyond fascist and a new term is required to describe its extremes – I guess fascist technocracy will have to do. The way the Chinese system of technological – technocratic – control is sweeping the West can be seen in the Los Angeles school system and is planned to be expanded worldwide. Every child is required to have a ‘Covid’-tracking app scanned daily before they can enter the classroom. The so-called Daily Pass tracking system is produced by Gates’ Microsoft which I’m sure will shock you rigid. The pass will be scanned using a barcode (one step from an inside-the-body barcode) and the information will include health checks, ‘Covid’ tests and vaccinations. Entry codes are for one specific building only and access will only be allowed if a student or teacher has a negative test with a test not testing for the ‘virus’, has no symptoms of anything alleged to be related to ‘Covid’ (symptoms from a range of other illness), and has a temperature under 100 degrees. No barcode, no entry, is planned to be the case for everywhere and not only schools.

Kids are being psychologically prepared to accept this as ‘normal’ their whole life which is why what they can impose in schools is so important to the Cult and its gofers. Long-time American freedom campaigner John Whitehead of the Rutherford Institute was not exaggerating when he said: ‘Databit by databit, we are building our own electronic concentration camps.’ Canada under its Cult gofer prime minister Justin Trudeau has taken a major step towards the real thing with people interned against their will if they test positive with a test not testing for the ‘virus’ when they arrive at a Canadian

airport. They are jailed in internment hotels often without food or water for long periods and with many doors failing to lock there have been sexual assaults. The interned are being charged sometimes \$2,000 for the privilege of being abused in this way. Trudeau is fully on board with the Cult and says the 'Covid pandemic' has provided an opportunity for a global 'reset' to permanently change Western civilisation. His number two, Deputy Prime Minister Chrystia Freeland, is a trustee of the World Economic Forum and a Rhodes Scholar. The Trudeau family have long been servants of the Cult. See *The Biggest Secret* and Cathy O'Brien's book *Trance-Formation of America* for the horrific background to Trudeau's father Pierre Trudeau another Canadian prime minister. Hide your fascism behind the façade of a heart-on-the-sleeve liberal. It's a well-honed Cult technique.

## **What can the 'vaccine' really do?**

We have a 'virus' never shown to exist and 'variants' of the 'virus' that have also never been shown to exist except, like the 'original', as computer-generated fictions. Even if you believe there's a 'virus' the 'case' to 'death' rate is in the region of 0.23 to 0.15 percent and those 'deaths' are concentrated among the very old around the same average age that people die anyway. In response to this lack of threat (in truth none) psychopaths and idiots, knowingly and unknowingly answering to Gates and the Cult, are seeking to 'vaccinate' every man, woman and child on Planet Earth. Clearly the 'vaccine' is not about 'Covid' – none of this ever has been. So what is it all about *really*? Why the desperation to infuse genetically-manipulating synthetic material into everyone through mRNA fraudulent 'vaccines' with the intent of doing this over and over with the excuses of 'variants' and other 'virus' inventions? Dr Sherri Tenpenny, an osteopathic medical doctor in the United States, has made herself an expert on vaccines and their effects as a vehement campaigner against their use. Tenpenny was board certified in emergency medicine, the director of a level two trauma centre for 12 years, and moved to Cleveland in 1996 to start an integrative

medicine practice which has treated patients from all 50 states and some 17 other countries. Weaning people off pharmaceutical drugs is a speciality.

She became interested in the consequences of vaccines after attending a meeting at the National Vaccine Information Center in Washington DC in 2000 where she 'sat through four days of listening to medical doctors and scientists and lawyers and parents of vaccine injured kids' and asked: 'What's going on?' She had never been vaccinated and never got ill while her father was given a list of vaccines to be in the military and was 'sick his entire life'. The experience added to her questions and she began to examine vaccine documents from the Centers for Disease Control (CDC). After reading the first one, the 1998 version of *The General Recommendations of Vaccination*, she thought: 'This is it?' The document was poorly written and bad science and Tenpenny began 20 years of research into vaccines that continues to this day. She began her research into 'Covid vaccines' in March, 2020, and she describes them as 'deadly'. For many, as we have seen, they already have been. Tenpenny said that in the first 30 days of the 'vaccine' rollout in the United States there had been more than 40,000 adverse events reported to the vaccine adverse event database. A document had been delivered to her the day before that was 172 pages long. 'We have over 40,000 adverse events; we have over 3,100 cases of [potentially deadly] anaphylactic shock; we have over 5,000 neurological reactions.' Effects ranged from headaches to numbness, dizziness and vertigo, to losing feeling in hands or feet and paraesthesia which is when limbs 'fall asleep' and people have the sensation of insects crawling underneath their skin. All this happened in the first 30 days and remember that only about *ten percent* (or far less) of adverse reactions and vaccine-related deaths are estimated to be officially reported. Tenpenny said:

So can you think of one single product in any industry, any industry, for as long as products have been made on the planet that within 30 days we have 40,000 people complaining of side effects that not only is still on the market but ... we've got paid actors telling us how great

they are for getting their vaccine. We're offering people \$500 if they will just get their vaccine and we've got nurses and doctors going; 'I got the vaccine, I got the vaccine'.

Tenpenny said they were not going to be 'happy dancing folks' when they began to suffer Bell's palsy (facial paralysis), neuropathies, cardiac arrhythmias and autoimmune reactions that kill through a blood disorder. 'They're not going to be so happy, happy then, but we're never going to see pictures of those people' she said. Tenpenny described the 'vaccine' as 'a well-designed killing tool'.

## No off-switch

Bad as the initial consequences had been Tenpenny said it would be maybe 14 months before we began to see the 'full ravage' of what is going to happen to the 'Covid vaccinated' with full-out consequences taking anything between two years and 20 years to show. You can understand why when you consider that variations of the 'Covid vaccine' use mRNA (messenger RNA) to in theory activate the immune system to produce protective antibodies without using the actual 'virus'. How can they when it's a computer program and they've never isolated what they claim is the 'real thing'? Instead they use *synthetic* mRNA. They are inoculating synthetic material into the body which through a technique known as the Trojan horse is absorbed into cells to change the nature of DNA. Human DNA is changed by an infusion of messenger RNA and with each new 'vaccine' of this type it is changed even more. Say so and you are banned by Cult Internet platforms. The contempt the contemptuous Mark Zuckerberg has for the truth and human health can be seen in an internal Facebook video leaked to the Project Veritas investigative team in which he said of the 'Covid vaccines': '... I share some caution on this because we just don't know the long term side-effects of basically modifying people's DNA and RNA.' At the same time this disgusting man's Facebook was censoring and banning anyone saying exactly the same. He must go before a Nuremberg trial for crimes against humanity when he *knows* that he

is censoring legitimate concerns and denying the right of informed consent on behalf of the Cult that owns him. People have been killed and damaged by the very ‘vaccination’ technique he cast doubt on himself when they may not have had the ‘vaccine’ with access to information that he denied them. The plan is to have at least annual ‘Covid vaccinations’, add others to deal with invented ‘variants’, and change all other vaccines into the mRNA system. Pfizer executives told shareholders at a virtual Barclays Global Healthcare Conference in March, 2021, that the public may need a third dose of ‘Covid vaccine’, plus regular yearly boosters and the company planned to hike prices to milk the profits in a ‘significant opportunity for our vaccine’. These are the professional liars, cheats and opportunists who are telling you their ‘vaccine’ is safe. Given this volume of mRNA planned to be infused into the human body and its ability to then replicate we will have a transformation of human genetics from biological to synthetic biological – exactly the long-time Cult plan for reasons we’ll see – and many will die. Sherri Tenpenny said of this replication:

It’s like having an on-button but no off-button and that whole mechanism ... they actually give it a name and they call it the Trojan horse mechanism, because it allows that [synthetic] virus and that piece of that [synthetic] virus to get inside of your cells, start to replicate and even get inserted into other parts of your DNA as a Trojan-horse.

Ask the overwhelming majority of people who have the ‘vaccine’ what they know about the contents and what they do and they would reply: ‘The government says it will stop me getting the virus.’ Governments give that false impression on purpose to increase take-up. You can read Sherri Tenpenny’s detailed analysis of the health consequences in her blog at [Vaxxter.com](http://Vaxxter.com), but in summary these are some of them. She highlights the statement by Bill Gates about how human beings can become their own ‘vaccine manufacturing machine’. The man is insane. [‘Vaccine’-generated] ‘antibodies’ carry synthetic messenger RNA into the cells and the damage starts, Tenpenny contends, and she says that lungs can be adversely affected through varying degrees of pus and bleeding which

obviously affects breathing and would be dubbed ‘Covid-19’. Even more sinister was the impact of ‘antibodies’ on macrophages, a white blood cell of the immune system. They consist of Type 1 and Type 2 which have very different functions. She said Type 1 are ‘hyper-vigilant’ white blood cells which ‘gobble up’ bacteria etc. However, in doing so, this could cause inflammation and in extreme circumstances be fatal. She says these affects are mitigated by Type 2 macrophages which kick in to calm down the system and stop it going rogue. They clear up dead tissue debris and reduce inflammation that the Type 1 ‘fire crews’ have caused. Type 1 kills the infection and Type 2 heals the damage, she says. This is her punchline with regard to ‘Covid vaccinations’: She says that mRNA ‘antibodies’ block Type 2 macrophages by attaching to them and deactivating them. This meant that when the Type 1 response was triggered by infection there was nothing to stop that getting out of hand by calming everything down. There’s an on-switch, but no off-switch, she says. What follows can be ‘over and out, see you when I see you’.

## **Genetic suicide**

Tenpenny also highlights the potential for autoimmune disease – the body attacking itself – which has been associated with vaccines since they first appeared. Infusing a synthetic foreign substance into cells could cause the immune system to react in a panic believing that the body is being overwhelmed by an invader (it is) and the consequences can again be fatal. There is an autoimmune response known as a ‘cytokine storm’ which I have likened to a homeowner panicked by an intruder and picking up a gun to shoot randomly in all directions before turning the fire on himself. The immune system unleashes a storm of inflammatory response called cytokines to a threat and the body commits hara-kiri. The lesson is that you mess with the body’s immune response at your peril and these ‘vaccines’ seriously – fundamentally – mess with immune response. Tenpenny refers to a consequence called anaphylactic shock which is a severe and highly dangerous allergic reaction when the immune system

floods the body with chemicals. She gives the example of having a bee sting which primes the immune system and makes it sensitive to those chemicals. When people are stung again maybe years later the immune response can be so powerful that it leads to anaphylactic shock. Tenpenny relates this 'shock' with regard to the 'Covid vaccine' to something called polyethylene glycol or PEG. Enormous numbers of people have become sensitive to this over decades of use in a whole range of products and processes including food, drink, skin creams and 'medicine'. Studies have claimed that some 72 percent of people have antibodies triggered by PEG compared with two percent in the 1960s and allergic hypersensitive reactions to this become a gathering cause for concern. Tenpenny points out that the 'mRNA vaccine' is coated in a 'bubble' of polyethylene glycol which has the potential to cause anaphylactic shock through immune sensitivity. Many reports have appeared of people reacting this way after having the 'Covid vaccine'. What do we think is going to happen as humanity has more and more of these 'vaccines'?

Tenpenny said: 'All these pictures we have seen with people with these rashes ... these weepy rashes, big reactions on their arms and things like that – it's an acute allergic reaction most likely to the polyethylene glycol that you've been previously primed and sensitised to.'

Those who have not studied the conspiracy and its perpetrators at length might think that making the population sensitive to PEG and then putting it in these 'vaccines' is just a coincidence. It is not. It is instead testament to how carefully and coldly-planned current events have been and the scale of the conspiracy we are dealing with. Tenpenny further explains that the 'vaccine' mRNA procedure can breach the blood-brain barrier which protects the brain from toxins and other crap that will cause malfunction. In this case they could make two proteins corrupt brain function to cause Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), a progressive nervous system disease leading to loss of muscle control, and frontal lobe degeneration – Alzheimer's and dementia. Immunologist J. Bart Classon published a paper connecting mRNA 'vaccines' to prion

disease which can lead to Alzheimer's and other forms of neurodegenerative disease while others have pointed out the potential to affect the placenta in ways that make women infertile. This will become highly significant in the next chapter when I will discuss other aspects of this non-vaccine that relate to its nanotechnology and transmission from the injected to the uninjected.

## **Qualified in idiocy**

Tenpenny describes how research has confirmed that these 'vaccine'-generated antibodies can interact with a range of other tissues in the body and attack many other organs including the lungs. 'This means that if you have a hundred people standing in front of you that all got this shot they could have a hundred different symptoms.'

Anyone really think that Cult gofers like the Queen, Tony Blair, Christopher Whitty, Anthony Fauci, and all the other psychopaths have really had this 'vaccine' in the pictures we've seen? Not a bloody chance. Why don't doctors all tell us about all these dangers and consequences of the 'Covid vaccine'? Why instead do they encourage and pressure patients to have the shot? Don't let's think for a moment that doctors and medical staff can't be stupid, lazy, and psychopathic and that's without the financial incentives to give the jab. Tenpenny again:

Some people are going to die from the vaccine directly but a large number of people are going to start to get horribly sick and get all kinds of autoimmune diseases 42 days to maybe a year out. What are they going to do, these stupid doctors who say; 'Good for you for getting that vaccine.' What are they going to say; 'Oh, it must be a mutant, we need to give an extra dose of that vaccine.'

Because now the vaccine, instead of one dose or two doses we need three or four because the stupid physicians aren't taking the time to learn anything about it. If I can learn this sitting in my living room reading a 19 page paper and several others so can they. There's nothing special about me, I just take the time to do it.

Remember how Sara Kayat, the NHS and TV doctor, said that the 'Covid vaccine' would '100 percent prevent hospitalisation and death'. Doctors can be idiots like every other profession and they

should not be worshipped as infallible. They are not and far from it. Behind many medical and scientific ‘experts’ lies an uninformed prat trying to hide themselves from you although in the ‘Covid’ era many have failed to do so as with UK narrative-repeating ‘TV doctor’ Hilary Jones. Pushing back against the minority of proper doctors and scientists speaking out against the ‘vaccine’ has been the entire edifice of the Cult global state in the form of governments, medical systems, corporations, mainstream media, Silicon Valley, and an army of compliant doctors, medical staff and scientists willing to say anything for money and to enhance their careers by promoting the party line. If you do that you are an ‘expert’ and if you won’t you are an ‘anti-vaxxer’ and ‘Covidiot’. The pressure to be ‘vaccinated’ is incessant. We have even had reports claiming that the ‘vaccine’ can help cure cancer and Alzheimer’s and make the lame walk. I am waiting for the announcement that it can bring you coffee in the morning and cook your tea. Just as the symptoms of ‘Covid’ seem to increase by the week so have the miracles of the ‘vaccine’. American supermarket giant Kroger Co. offered nearly 500,000 employees in 35 states a \$100 bonus for having the ‘vaccine’ while donut chain Krispy Kreme promised ‘vaccinated’ customers a free glazed donut every day for the rest of 2021. Have your DNA changed and you will get a doughnut although we might not have to give you them for long. Such offers and incentives confirm the desperation.

Perhaps the worse vaccine-stunt of them all was UK ‘Health’ Secretary Matt-the-prat Hancock on live TV after watching a clip of someone being ‘vaccinated’ when the roll-out began. Hancock faked tears so badly it was embarrassing. Brain-of-Britain Piers Morgan, the lockdown-supporting, ‘vaccine’ supporting, ‘vaccine’ passport-supporting, TV host played along with Hancock – ‘You’re quite emotional about that’ he said in response to acting so atrocious it would have been called out at a school nativity which will presumably today include Mary and Jesus in masks, wise men keeping their camels six feet apart, and shepherds under tent arrest. System-serving Morgan tweeted this: ‘Love the idea of covid vaccine passports for everywhere: flights, restaurants, clubs, football, gyms,

shops etc. It's time covid-denying, anti-vaxxer loonies had their bullsh\*t bluff called & bar themselves from going anywhere that responsible citizens go.' If only I could aspire to his genius. To think that Morgan, who specialises in shouting over anyone he disagrees with, was lauded as a free speech hero when he lost his job after storming off the set of his live show like a child throwing his dolly out of the pram. If he is a free speech hero we are in real trouble. I have no idea what 'bullsh\*t' means, by the way, the \* throws me completely.

The Cult is desperate to infuse its synthetic DNA-changing concoction into everyone and has been using every lie, trick and intimidation to do so. The question of '*Why?*' we shall now address.

## CHAPTER TEN

### Human 2.0

***I believe that at the end of the century the use of words and general educated opinion will have altered so much that one will be able to speak of machines thinking without expecting to be contradicted –***

**Alan Turing (1912-1954), the ‘Father of artificial intelligence’**

I have been exposing for decades the plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic-biological state. The new human that I will call Human 2.0 is planned to be connected to artificial intelligence and a global AI ‘Smart Grid’ that would operate as one global system in which AI would control everything from your fridge to your heating system to your car to your mind. Humans would no longer be ‘human’, but post-human and sub-human, with their thinking and emotional processes replaced by AI.

What I said sounded crazy and beyond science fiction and I could understand that. To any balanced, rational, mind it *is* crazy. Today, however, that world is becoming reality and it puts the ‘Covid vaccine’ into its true context. Ray Kurzweil is the ultra-Zionist ‘computer scientist, inventor and futurist’ and co-founder of the Singularity University. Singularity refers to the merging of humans with machines or ‘transhumanism’. Kurzweil has said humanity would be connected to the cyber ‘cloud’ in the period of the ever-recurring year of 2030:

Our thinking ... will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking ... humans will be able to extend their limitations and ‘think in the cloud’ ... We’re going to put gateways to the

cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being human – we transcend our limitations. As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.

They are trying to sell this end-of-humanity-as-we-know-it as the next stage of 'evolution' when we become super-human and 'like the gods'. They are lying to you. Shocked, eh? The population, and again especially the young, have been manipulated into addiction to technologies designed to enslave them for life. First they induced an addiction to smartphones (holdables); next they moved to technology on the body (wearables); and then began the invasion of the body (implantables). I warned way back about the plan for microchipped people and we are now entering that era. We should not be diverted into thinking that this refers only to chips we can see. Most important are the nanochips known as smart dust, neural dust and nanobots which are far too small to be seen by the human eye. Nanotechnology is everywhere, increasingly in food products, and released into the atmosphere by the geoengineering of the skies funded by Bill Gates to 'shut out the Sun' and 'save the planet from global warming'. Gates has been funding a project to spray millions of tonnes of chalk (calcium carbonate) into the stratosphere over Sweden to 'dim the Sun' and cool the Earth. Scientists warned the move could be disastrous for weather systems in ways no one can predict and opposition led to the Swedish space agency announcing that the 'experiment' would not be happening as planned in the summer of 2021; but it shows where the Cult is going with dimming the impact of the Sun and there's an associated plan to change the planet's atmosphere. Who gives psychopath Gates the right to dictate to the entire human race and dismantle planetary systems? The world will not be safe while this man is at large.

The global warming hoax has made the Sun, like the gas of life, something to fear when both are essential to good health and human survival (more inversion). The body transforms sunlight into vital vitamin D through a process involving ... *cholesterol*. This is the cholesterol we are also told to fear. We are urged to take Big Pharma

statin drugs to reduce cholesterol and it's all systematic. Reducing cholesterol means reducing vitamin D uptake with all the multiple health problems that will cause. At least if you take statins long term it saves the government from having to pay you a pension. The delivery system to block sunlight is widely referred to as chemtrails although these have a much deeper agenda, too. They appear at first to be contrails or condensation trails streaming from aircraft into cold air at high altitudes. Contrails disperse very quickly while chemtrails do not and spread out across the sky before eventually their content falls to earth. Many times I have watched aircraft cross-cross a clear blue sky releasing chemtrails until it looks like a cloudy day. Chemtrails contain many things harmful to humans and the natural world including toxic heavy metals, aluminium (see Alzheimer's) and nanotechnology. Ray Kurzweil reveals the reason without actually saying so: 'Nanobots will infuse all the matter around us with information. Rocks, trees, everything will become these intelligent creatures.' How do you deliver that? *From the sky.* Self-replicating nanobots would connect everything to the Smart Grid. The phenomenon of Morgellons disease began in the chemtrail era and the correlation has led to it being dubbed the 'chemtrail disease'. Self-replicating fibres appear in the body that can be pulled out through the skin. Morgellons fibres continue to grow outside the body and have a form of artificial intelligence. I cover this at greater length in *Phantom Self*.

## **'Vaccine' operating system**

'Covid vaccines' with their self-replicating synthetic material are also designed to make the connection between humanity and Kurzweil's 'cloud'. American doctor and dedicated campaigner for truth, Carrie Madej, an Internal Medicine Specialist in Georgia with more than 20 years medical experience, has highlighted the nanotechnology aspect of the fake 'vaccines'. She explains how one of the components in at least the Moderna and Pfizer synthetic potions are 'lipid nanoparticles' which are 'like little tiny computer bits' – a 'sci-fi substance' known as nanobots and hydrogel which can be 'triggered

at any moment to deliver its payload' and act as 'biosensors'. The synthetic substance had 'the ability to accumulate data from your body like your breathing, your respiration, thoughts and emotions, all kind of things' and each syringe could carry a *million* nanobots:

This substance because it's like little bits of computers in your body, crazy, but it's true, it can do that, [and] obviously has the ability to act through Wi-Fi. It can receive and transmit energy, messages, frequencies or impulses. That issue has never been addressed by these companies. What does that do to the human?

Just imagine getting this substance in you and it can react to things all around you, the 5G, your smart device, your phones, what is happening with that? What if something is triggering it, too, like an impulse, a frequency? We have something completely foreign in the human body.

Madej said her research revealed that electromagnetic (EMF) frequencies emitted by phones and other devices had increased dramatically in the same period of the 'vaccine' rollout and she was seeing more people with radiation problems as 5G and other electromagnetic technology was expanded and introduced to schools and hospitals. She said she was 'floored with the EMF coming off' the devices she checked. All this makes total sense and syncs with my own work of decades when you think that Moderna refers in documents to its mRNA 'vaccine' as an 'operating system':

Recognizing the broad potential of mRNA science, we set out to create an mRNA technology platform that functions very much like an operating system on a computer. It is designed so that it can plug and play interchangeably with different programs. In our case, the 'program' or 'app' is our mRNA drug – the unique mRNA sequence that codes for a protein ...

... Our mRNA Medicines – 'The Software Of Life': When we have a concept for a new mRNA medicine and begin research, fundamental components are already in place. Generally, the only thing that changes from one potential mRNA medicine to another is the coding region – the actual genetic code that instructs ribosomes to make protein. Utilizing these instruction sets gives our investigational mRNA medicines a software-like quality. We also have the ability to combine different mRNA sequences encoding for different proteins in a single mRNA investigational medicine.

Who needs a real ‘virus’ when you can create a computer version to justify infusing your operating system into the entire human race on the road to making living, breathing people into cyborgs? What is missed with the ‘vaccines’ is the *digital* connection between synthetic material and the body that I highlighted earlier with the study that hacked a computer with human DNA. On one level the body is digital, based on mathematical codes, and I’ll have more about that in the next chapter. Those who ridiculously claim that mRNA ‘vaccines’ are not designed to change human genetics should explain the words of Dr Tal Zaks, chief medical officer at Moderna, in a 2017 TED talk. He said that over the last 30 years ‘we’ve been living this phenomenal digital scientific revolution, and I’m here today to tell you, that we are actually *hacking the software of life*, and that it’s changing the way we think about prevention and treatment of disease’:

In every cell there’s this thing called messenger RNA, or mRNA for short, that transmits the critical information from the DNA in our genes to the protein, which is really the stuff we’re all made out of. This is the critical information that determines what the cell will do. So we think about it as an operating system. So if you could change that, if you could introduce a line of code, or change a line of code, it turns out, that has profound implications for everything, from the flu to cancer.

Zaks should more accurately have said that this has profound implications for the human genetic code and the nature of DNA. Communications within the body go both ways and not only one. But, hey, no, the ‘Covid vaccine’ will not affect your genetics. Cult fact-checkers say so even though the man who helped to develop the mRNA technique says that it does. Zaks said in 2017:

If you think about what it is we’re trying to do. We’ve taken information and our understanding of that information and how that information is transmitted in a cell, and we’ve taken our understanding of medicine and how to make drugs, and we’re fusing the two. We think of it as information therapy.

I have been writing for decades that the body is an information field communicating with itself and the wider world. This is why

radiation which is information can change the information field of body and mind through phenomena like 5G and change their nature and function. 'Information therapy' means to change the body's information field and change the way it operates. DNA is a receiver-transmitter of information and can be mutated by information like mRNA synthetic messaging. Technology to do this has been ready and waiting in the underground bases and other secret projects to be rolled out when the 'Covid' hoax was played. 'Trials' of such short and irrelevant duration were only for public consumption. When they say the 'vaccine' is 'experimental' that is not true. It may appear to be 'experimental' to those who don't know what's going on, but the trials have already been done to ensure the Cult gets the result it desires. Zaks said that it took decades to sequence the human genome, completed in 2003, but now they could do it in a week. By 'they' he means scientists operating in the public domain. In the secret projects they were sequencing the genome in a week long before even 2003.

## **Deluge of mRNA**

Highly significantly the Moderna document says the guiding premise is that if using mRNA as a medicine works for one disease then it should work for many diseases. They were leveraging the flexibility afforded by their platform and the fundamental role mRNA plays in protein synthesis to pursue mRNA medicines for a broad spectrum of diseases. Moderna is confirming what I was saying through 2020 that multiple 'vaccines' were planned for 'Covid' (and later invented 'variants') and that previous vaccines would be converted to the mRNA system to infuse the body with massive amounts of genetically-manipulating synthetic material to secure a transformation to a synthetic-biological state. The 'vaccines' are designed to kill stunning numbers as part of the long-exposed Cult depopulation agenda and transform the rest. Given this is the goal you can appreciate why there is such hysterical demand for every human to be 'vaccinated' for an alleged 'disease' that has an estimated 'infection' to 'death' ratio of 0.23-0.15 percent. As I write

children are being given the ‘vaccine’ in trials (their parents are a disgrace) and ever-younger people are being offered the vaccine for a ‘virus’ that even if you believe it exists has virtually zero chance of harming them. Horrific effects of the ‘trials’ on a 12-year-old girl were revealed by a family member to be serious brain and gastric problems that included a bowel obstruction and the inability to swallow liquids or solids. She was unable to eat or drink without throwing up, had extreme pain in her back, neck and abdomen, and was paralysed from the waist down which stopped her urinating unaided. When the girl was first taken to hospital doctors said it was all in her mind. She was signed up for the ‘trial’ by her parents for whom no words suffice. None of this ‘Covid vaccine’ insanity makes any sense unless you see what the ‘vaccine’ really is – a body-changer. Synthetic biology or ‘SynBio’ is a fast-emerging and expanding scientific discipline which includes everything from genetic and molecular engineering to electrical and computer engineering. Synthetic biology is defined in these ways:

- A multidisciplinary area of research that seeks to create new biological parts, devices, and systems, or to redesign systems that are already found in nature.
- The use of a mixture of physical engineering and genetic engineering to create new (and therefore synthetic) life forms.
- An emerging field of research that aims to combine the knowledge and methods of biology, engineering and related disciplines in the design of chemically-synthesized DNA to create organisms with novel or enhanced characteristics and traits (synthetic organisms including humans).

We now have synthetic blood, skin, organs and limbs being developed along with synthetic body parts produced by 3D printers. These are all elements of the synthetic human programme and this comment by Kurzweil’s co-founder of the Singularity University,

Peter Diamandis, can be seen in a whole new light with the 'Covid' hoax and the sanctions against those that refuse the 'vaccine':

Anybody who is going to be resisting the progress forward [to transhumanism] is going to be resisting evolution and, fundamentally, they will die out. It's not a matter of whether it's good or bad. It's going to happen.

'Resisting evolution'? What absolute bollocks. The arrogance of these people is without limit. His 'it's going to happen' mantra is another way of saying 'resistance is futile' to break the spirit of those pushing back and we must not fall for it. Getting this genetically-transforming 'vaccine' into everyone is crucial to the Cult plan for total control and the desperation to achieve that is clear for anyone to see. Vaccine passports are a major factor in this and they, too, are a form of resistance is futile. It's NOT. The paper funded by the Rockefeller Foundation for the 2013 'health conference' in China said:

We will interact more with artificial intelligence. The use of robotics, bio-engineering to augment human functioning is already well underway and will advance. Re-engineering of humans into potentially separate and unequal forms through genetic engineering or mixed human-robots raises debates on ethics and equality.

A new demography is projected to emerge after 2030 [that year again] of technologies (robotics, genetic engineering, nanotechnology) producing robots, engineered organisms, 'nanobots' and artificial intelligence (AI) that can self-replicate. Debates will grow on the implications of an impending reality of human designed life.

What is happening today is so long planned. The world army enforcing the will of the world government is intended to be a robot army, not a human one. Today's military and its technologically 'enhanced' troops, pilotless planes and driverless vehicles are just stepping stones to that end. Human soldiers are used as Cult fodder and its time they woke up to that and worked for the freedom of the population instead of their own destruction and their family's destruction – the same with the police. Join us and let's sort this out. The phenomenon of enforce my own destruction is widespread in the 'Covid' era with Woker 'luvvies' in the acting and entertainment

industries supporting ‘Covid’ rules which have destroyed their profession and the same with those among the public who put signs on the doors of their businesses ‘closed due to Covid – stay safe’ when many will never reopen. It’s a form of masochism and most certainly insanity.

## **Transgender = transhumanism**

When something explodes out of nowhere and is suddenly everywhere it is always the Cult agenda and so it is with the tidal wave of claims and demands that have infiltrated every aspect of society under the heading of ‘transgenderism’. The term ‘trans’ is so ‘in’ and this is the dictionary definition:

A prefix meaning ‘across’, ‘through’, occurring ... in loanwords from Latin, used in particular for denoting movement or conveyance from place to place (transfer; transmit; transplant) or complete change (transform; transmute), or to form adjectives meaning ‘crossing’, ‘on the other side of’, or ‘going beyond’ the place named (transmontane; transnational; trans-Siberian).

Transgender means to go beyond gender and transhuman means to go beyond human. Both are aspects of the Cult plan to transform the human body to a synthetic state with *no gender*. Human 2.0 is not designed to procreate and would be produced technologically with no need for parents. The new human would mean the end of parents and so men, and increasingly women, are being targeted for the deletion of their rights and status. Parental rights are disappearing at an ever-quickening speed for the same reason. The new human would have no need for men or women when there is no procreation and no gender. Perhaps the transgender movement that appears to be in a permanent state of frenzy might now contemplate on how it is being used. This was never about transgender rights which are only the interim excuse for confusing gender, particularly in the young, on the road to *fusing* gender. Transgender activism is not an end; it is a *means* to an end. We see again the technique of creative destruction in which you destroy the status quo to ‘build back better’ in the form that you want. The gender status quo had to be

destroyed by persuading the Cult-created Woke mentality to believe that you can have 100 genders or more. A programme for 9 to 12 year olds produced by the Cult-owned BBC promoted the 100 genders narrative. The very idea may be the most monumental nonsense, but it is not what is true that counts, only what you can make people *believe* is true. Once the gender of  $2 + 2 = 4$  has been dismantled through indoctrination, intimidation and  $2 + 2 = 5$  then the new no-gender normal can take its place with Human 2.0.

Aldous Huxley revealed the plan in his prophetic *Brave New World* in 1932:

Natural reproduction has been done away with and children are created, 'decanted', and raised in 'hatcheries and conditioning centres'. From birth, people are genetically designed to fit into one of five castes, which are further split into 'Plus' and 'Minus' members and designed to fulfil predetermined positions within the social and economic strata of the World State.

How could Huxley know this in 1932? For the same reason George Orwell knew about the Big Brother state in 1948, Cult insiders I have quoted knew about it in 1969, and I have known about it since the early 1990s. If you are connected to the Cult or you work your balls off to uncover the plan you can predict the future. The process is simple. If there is a plan for the world and nothing intervenes to stop it then it will happen. Thus if you communicate the plan ahead of time you are perceived to have predicted the future, but you haven't. You have revealed the plan which without intervention will become the human future. The whole reason I have done what I have is to alert enough people to inspire an intervention and maybe at last that time has come with the Cult and its intentions now so obvious to anyone with a brain in working order.

## **The future is here**

Technological wombs that Huxley described to replace parent procreation are already being developed and they are only the projects we know about in the public arena. Israeli scientists told *The Times of Israel* in March, 2021, that they have grown 250-cell embryos

into mouse foetuses with fully formed organs using artificial wombs in a development they say could pave the way for gestating humans outside the womb. Professor Jacob Hanna of the Weizmann Institute of Science said:

We took mouse embryos from the mother at day five of development, when they are just of 250 cells, and had them in the incubator from day five until day 11, by which point they had grown all their organs.

By day 11 they make their own blood and have a beating heart, a fully developed brain. Anybody would look at them and say, 'this is clearly a mouse foetus with all the characteristics of a mouse.' It's gone from being a ball of cells to being an advanced foetus.

A special liquid is used to nourish embryo cells in a laboratory dish and they float on the liquid to duplicate the first stage of embryonic development. The incubator creates all the right conditions for its development, Hanna said. The liquid gives the embryo 'all the nutrients, hormones and sugars they need' along with a custom-made electronic incubator which controls gas concentration, pressure and temperature. The cutting-edge in the underground bases and other secret locations will be light years ahead of that, however, and this was reported by the London *Guardian* in 2017:

We are approaching a biotechnological breakthrough. Ectogenesis, the invention of a complete external womb, could completely change the nature of human reproduction. In April this year, researchers at the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia announced their development of an artificial womb.

The article was headed 'Artificial wombs could soon be a reality. What will this mean for women?' What would it mean for children is an even bigger question. No mother to bond with only a machine in preparation for a life of soulless interaction and control in a world governed by machines (see the *Matrix* movies). Now observe the calculated manipulations of the 'Covid' hoax as human interaction and warmth has been curtailed by distancing, isolation and fear with people communicating via machines on a scale never seen before.

These are all dots in the same picture as are all the personal assistants, gadgets and children's toys through which kids and adults communicate with AI as if it is human. The AI 'voice' on Sat-Nav should be included. All these things are psychological preparation for the Cult endgame. Before you can make a physical connection with AI you have to make a psychological connection and that is what people are being conditioned to do with this ever gathering human-AI interaction. Movies and TV programmes depicting the transhuman, robot dystopia relate to a phenomenon known as 'pre-emptive programming' in which the world that is planned is portrayed everywhere in movies, TV and advertising. This is conditioning the conscious and subconscious mind to become familiar with the planned reality to dilute resistance when it happens for real. What would have been a shock such is the change is made less so. We have young children put on the road to transgender transition surgery with puberty blocking drugs at an age when they could never be able to make those life-changing decisions.

Rachel Levine, a professor of paediatrics and psychiatry who believes in treating children this way, became America's highest-ranked openly-transgender official when she was confirmed as US Assistant Secretary at the Department of Health and Human Services after being nominated by Joe Biden (the Cult). Activists and governments press for laws to deny parents a say in their children's transition process so the kids can be isolated and manipulated into agreeing to irreversible medical procedures. A Canadian father Robert Hoogland was denied bail by the Vancouver Supreme Court in 2021 and remained in jail for breaching a court order that he stay silent over his young teenage daughter, a minor, who was being offered life-changing hormone therapy without parental consent. At the age of 12 the girl's 'school counsellor' said she may be transgender, referred her to a doctor and told the school to treat her like a boy. This is another example of state-serving schools imposing ever more control over children's lives while parents have ever less.

Contemptible and extreme child abuse is happening all over the world as the Cult gender-fusion operation goes into warp-speed.

## **Why the war on men – and now women?**

The question about what artificial wombs mean for women should rightly be asked. The answer can be seen in the deletion of women's rights involving sport, changing rooms, toilets and status in favour of people in male bodies claiming to identify as women. I can identify as a mountain climber, but it doesn't mean I can climb a mountain any more than a biological man can be a biological woman. To believe so is a triumph of belief over factual reality which is the very perceptual basis of everything Woke. Women's sport is being destroyed by allowing those with male bodies who say they identify as female to 'compete' with girls and women. Male body 'women' dominate 'women's' competition with their greater muscle mass, bone density, strength and speed. With that disadvantage sport for women loses all meaning. To put this in perspective nearly 300 American high school boys can run faster than the quickest woman sprinter in the world. Women are seeing their previously protected spaces invaded by male bodies simply because they claim to identify as women. That's all they need to do to access all women's spaces and activities under the Biden 'Equality Act' that destroys equality for women with the usual Orwellian Woke inversion. Male sex offenders have already committed rapes in women's prisons after claiming to identify as women to get them transferred. Does this not matter to the Woke 'equality' hypocrites? Not in the least. What matters to Cult manipulators and funders behind transgender activists is to advance gender fusion on the way to the no-gender 'human'. When you are seeking to impose transparent nonsense like this, or the 'Covid' hoax, the only way the nonsense can prevail is through censorship and intimidation of dissenters, deletion of factual information, and programming of the unquestioning, bewildered and naive. You don't have to scan the world for long to see that all these things are happening.

Many women's rights organisations have realised that rights and status which took such a long time to secure are being eroded and that it is systematic. Kara Dansky of the global Women's Human Rights Campaign said that Biden's transgender executive order immediately he took office, subsequent orders, and Equality Act legislation that followed 'seek to erase women and girls in the law as a category'. *Exactly.* I said during the long ago-started war on men (in which many women play a crucial part) that this was going to turn into a war on them. The Cult is phasing out *both* male and female genders. To get away with that they are brought into conflict so they are busy fighting each other while the Cult completes the job with no unity of response. Unity, people, *unity*. We need unity everywhere. Transgender is the only show in town as the big step towards the no-gender human. It's not about rights for transgender people and never has been. Woke political correctness is deleting words relating to genders to the same end. Wokers believe this is to be 'inclusive' when the opposite is true. They are deleting words describing gender because gender *itself* is being deleted by Human 2.0. Terms like 'man', 'woman', 'mother' and 'father' are being deleted in the universities and other institutions to be replaced by the *no*-gender, not trans-gender, 'individuals' and 'guardians'. Women's rights campaigner Maria Keffler of Partners for Ethical Care said: 'Children are being taught from kindergarten upward that some boys have a vagina, some girls have a penis, and that kids can be any gender they want to be.' Do we really believe that suddenly countries all over the world at the same time had the idea of having drag queens go into schools or read transgender stories to very young children in the local library? It's coldly-calculated confusion of gender on the way to the fusion of gender. Suzanne Vierling, a psychologist from Southern California, made another important point:

Yesterday's slave woman who endured gynecological medical experiments is today's girl-child being butchered in a booming gender-transitioning sector. Ovaries removed, pushing her into menopause and osteoporosis, uncharted territory, and parents' rights and authority decimated.

The erosion of parental rights is a common theme in line with the Cult plans to erase the very concept of parents and 'ovaries removed, pushing her into menopause' means what? Those born female lose the ability to have children – another way to discontinue humanity as we know it.

## **Eliminating Human 1.0 (before our very eyes)**

To pave the way for Human 2.0 you must phase out Human 1.0. This is happening through plummeting sperm counts and making women infertile through an onslaught of chemicals, radiation (including smartphones in pockets of men) and mRNA 'vaccines'. Common agriculture pesticides are also having a devastating impact on human fertility. I have been tracking collapsing sperm counts in the books for a long time and in 2021 came a book by fertility scientist and reproductive epidemiologist Shanna Swan, *Count Down: How Our Modern World Is Threatening Sperm Counts, Altering Male and Female Reproductive Development and Imperiling the Future of the Human Race*. She reports how the global fertility rate dropped by half between 1960 and 2016 with America's birth rate 16 percent below where it needs to be to sustain the population. Women are experiencing declining egg quality, more miscarriages, and more couples suffer from infertility. Other findings were an increase in erectile dysfunction, infant boys developing more genital abnormalities, male problems with conception, and plunging levels of the male hormone testosterone which would explain why so many men have lost their backbone and masculinity. This has been very evident during the 'Covid' hoax when women have been prominent among the Pushbackers and big strapping blokes have bowed their heads, covered their faces with a nappy and quietly submitted. Mind control expert Cathy O'Brien also points to how global education introduced the concept of 'we're all winners' in sport and classrooms: 'Competition was defused, and it in turn defused a sense of fighting back.' This is another version of the 'equity' doctrine in which you drive down rather than raise up. What a contrast in Cult-controlled China with its global ambitions

where the government published plans in January, 2021, to 'cultivate masculinity' in boys from kindergarten through to high school in the face of a 'masculinity crisis'. A government adviser said boys would be soon become 'delicate, timid and effeminate' unless action was taken. Don't expect any similar policy in the targeted West. A 2006 study showed that a 65-year-old man in 2002 had testosterone levels 15 percent lower than a 65-year-old man in 1987 while a 2020 study found a similar story with young adults and adolescents. Men are getting prescriptions for testosterone replacement therapy which causes an even greater drop in sperm count with up to 99 percent seeing sperm counts drop to zero during the treatment. More sperm is defective and malfunctioning with some having two heads or not pursuing an egg.

A class of *synthetic* chemicals known as phthalates are being blamed for the decline. These are found everywhere in plastics, shampoos, cosmetics, furniture, flame retardants, personal care products, pesticides, canned foods and even receipts. Why till receipts? Everyone touches them. Let no one delude themselves that all this is not systematic to advance the long-time agenda for human body transformation. Phthalates mimic hormones and disrupt the hormone balance causing testosterone to fall and genital birth defects in male infants. Animals and fish have been affected in the same way due to phthalates and other toxins in rivers. When fish turn gay or change sex through chemicals in rivers and streams it is a pointer to why there has been such an increase in gay people and the sexually confused. It doesn't matter to me what sexuality people choose to be, but if it's being affected by chemical pollution and consumption then we need to know. Does anyone really think that this is not connected to the transgender agenda, the war on men and the condemnation of male 'toxic masculinity'? You watch this being followed by 'toxic femininity'. It's already happening. When breastfeeding becomes 'chest-feeding', pregnant women become pregnant people along with all the other Woke claptrap you know that the world is going insane and there's a Cult scam in progress. Transgender activists are promoting the Cult agenda while Cult

billionaires support and fund the insanity as they laugh themselves to sleep at the sheer stupidity for which humans must be infamous in galaxies far, far away.

## **'Covid vaccines' and female infertility**

We can now see why the 'vaccine' has been connected to potential infertility in women. Dr Michael Yeadon, former Vice President and Chief Scientific Advisor at Pfizer, and Dr Wolfgang Wodarg in Germany, filed a petition with the European Medicines Agency in December, 2020, urging them to stop trials for the Pfizer/BioNTech shot and all other mRNA trials until further studies had been done. They were particularly concerned about possible effects on fertility with 'vaccine'-produced antibodies attacking the protein Syncytin-1 which is responsible for developing the placenta. The result would be infertility 'of indefinite duration' in women who have the 'vaccine' with the placenta failing to form. Section 10.4.2 of the Pfizer/BioNTech trial protocol says that pregnant women or those who might become so should not have mRNA shots. Section 10.4 warns men taking mRNA shots to 'be abstinent from heterosexual intercourse' and not to donate sperm. The UK government said that it *did not know* if the mRNA procedure had an effect on fertility. *Did not know?* These people have to go to jail. UK government advice did not recommend at the start that pregnant women had the shot and said they should avoid pregnancy for at least two months after 'vaccination'. The 'advice' was later updated to pregnant women should only have the 'vaccine' if the benefits outweighed the risks to mother and foetus. What the hell is that supposed to mean? Then 'spontaneous abortions' began to appear and rapidly increase on the adverse reaction reporting schemes which include only a fraction of adverse reactions. Thousands and ever-growing numbers of 'vaccinated' women are describing changes to their menstrual cycle with heavier blood flow, irregular periods and menstruating again after going through the menopause – all links to reproduction effects. Women are passing blood clots and the lining of their uterus while men report erectile dysfunction and blood effects. Most

significantly of all *unvaccinated* women began to report similar menstrual changes after interaction with '*vaccinated*' people and men and children were also affected with bleeding noses, blood clots and other conditions. 'Shedding' is when vaccinated people can emit the content of a vaccine to affect the unvaccinated, but this is different. '*Vaccinated*' people were not shedding a 'live virus' allegedly in '*vaccines*' as before because the fake '*Covid vaccines*' involve synthetic material and other toxicity. Doctors exposing what is happening prefer the term '*transmission*' to shedding. Somehow those that have had the shots are transmitting effects to those that haven't. Dr Carrie Madej said the nano-content of the '*vaccines*' can 'act like an antenna' to others around them which fits perfectly with my own conclusions. This '*vaccine*' transmission phenomenon was becoming known as the book went into production and I deal with this further in the Postscript.

Vaccine effects on sterility are well known. The World Health Organization was accused in 2014 of sterilising millions of women in Kenya with the evidence confirmed by the content of the vaccines involved. The same WHO behind the '*Covid*' hoax admitted its involvement for more than ten years with the vaccine programme. Other countries made similar claims. Charges were lodged by Tanzania, Nicaragua, Mexico, and the Philippines. The Gardasil vaccine claimed to protect against a genital 'virus' known as HPV has also been linked to infertility. Big Pharma and the WHO (same thing) are criminal and satanic entities. Then there's the Bill Gates Foundation which is connected through funding and shared interests with 20 pharmaceutical giants and laboratories. He stands accused of directing the policy of United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF), vaccine alliance GAVI, and other groupings, to advance the vaccine agenda and silence opposition at great cost to women and children. At the same time Gates wants to reduce the global population. Coincidence?

**Great Reset = Smart Grid = new human**

The Cult agenda I have been exposing for 30 years is now being openly promoted by Cult assets like Gates and Klaus Schwab of the World Economic Forum under code-terms like the 'Great Reset', 'Build Back Better' and 'a rare but narrow window of opportunity to reflect, reimagine, and reset our world'. What provided this 'rare but narrow window of opportunity'? The 'Covid' hoax did. Who created that? *They* did. My books from not that long ago warned about the planned 'Internet of Things' (IoT) and its implications for human freedom. This was the plan to connect all technology to the Internet and artificial intelligence and today we are way down that road with an estimated 36 billion devices connected to the World Wide Web and that figure is projected to be 76 billion by 2025. I further warned that the Cult planned to go beyond that to the Internet of *Everything* when the human brain was connected via AI to the Internet and Kurzweil's 'cloud'. Now we have Cult operatives like Schwab calling for precisely that under the term 'Internet of Bodies', a fusion of the physical, digital and biological into one centrally-controlled Smart Grid system which the Cult refers to as the 'Fourth Industrial Revolution'. They talk about the 'biological', but they really mean the synthetic-biological which is required to fully integrate the human body and brain into the Smart Grid and artificial intelligence planned to replace the human mind. We have everything being synthetically manipulated including the natural world through GMO and smart dust, the food we eat and the human body itself with synthetic 'vaccines'. I said in *The Answer* that we would see the Cult push for synthetic meat to replace animals and in February, 2021, the so predictable psychopath Bill Gates called for the introduction of synthetic meat to save us all from 'climate change'. The climate hoax just keeps on giving like the 'Covid' hoax. The war on meat by vegan activists is a carbon (oops, sorry) copy of the manipulation of transgender activists. They have no idea (except their inner core) that they are being used to promote and impose the agenda of the Cult or that they are only the *vehicle* and not the *reason*. This is not to say those who choose not to eat meat shouldn't be respected and supported in that right, but there are ulterior motives

for those in power. A *Forbes* article in December, 2019, highlighted the plan so beloved of Schwab and the Cult under the heading: 'What Is The Internet of Bodies? And How Is It Changing Our World?' The article said the human body is the latest data platform (remember 'our vaccine is an operating system'). *Forbes* described the plan very accurately and the words could have come straight out of my books from long before:

The Internet of Bodies (IoB) is an extension of the IoT and basically connects the human body to a network through devices that are ingested, implanted, or connected to the body in some way. Once connected, data can be exchanged, and the body and device can be remotely monitored and controlled.

They were really describing a human hive mind with human perception centrally-dictated via an AI connection as well as allowing people to be 'remotely monitored and controlled'.

Everything from a fridge to a human mind could be directed from a central point by these insane psychopaths and 'Covid vaccines' are crucial to this. *Forbes* explained the process I mentioned earlier of holdable and wearable technology followed by implantable. The article said there were three generations of the Internet of Bodies that include:

- Body external: These are wearable devices such as Apple Watches or Fitbits that can monitor our health.
- Body internal: These include pacemakers, cochlear implants, and digital pills that go inside our bodies to monitor or control various aspects of health.
- Body embedded: The third generation of the Internet of Bodies is embedded technology where technology and the human body are melded together and have a real-time connection to a remote machine.

*Forbes* noted the development of the Brain Computer Interface (BCI) which merges the brain with an external device for monitoring and controlling in real-time. ‘The ultimate goal is to help restore function to individuals with disabilities by using brain signals rather than conventional neuromuscular pathways.’ Oh, do fuck off. The goal of brain interface technology is controlling human thought and emotion from the central point in a hive mind serving its masters wishes. Many people are now agreeing to be chipped to open doors without a key. You can recognise them because they’ll be wearing a mask, social distancing and lining up for the ‘vaccine’. The Cult plans a Great Reset money system after they have completed the demolition of the global economy in which ‘money’ will be exchanged through communication with body operating systems. Rand Corporation, a Cult-owned think tank, said of the Internet of Bodies or IoB:

Internet of Bodies technologies fall under the broader IoT umbrella. But as the name suggests, IoB devices introduce an even more intimate interplay between humans and gadgets. IoB devices monitor the human body, collect health metrics and other personal information, and transmit those data over the Internet. Many devices, such as fitness trackers, are already in use ... IoB devices ... and those in development can track, record, and store users’ whereabouts, bodily functions, and what they see, hear, and even think.

Schwab’s World Economic Forum, a long-winded way of saying ‘fascism’ or ‘the Cult’, has gone full-on with the Internet of Bodies in the ‘Covid’ era. ‘We’re entering the era of the Internet of Bodies’, it declared, ‘collecting our physical data via a range of devices that can be implanted, swallowed or worn’. The result would be a huge amount of health-related data that could improve human wellbeing around the world, and prove crucial in fighting the ‘Covid-19 pandemic’. Does anyone think these clowns care about ‘human wellbeing’ after the death and devastation their pandemic hoax has purposely caused? Schwab and co say we should move forward with the Internet of Bodies because ‘Keeping track of symptoms could help us stop the spread of infection, and quickly detect new cases’. How wonderful, but keeping track’ is all they are really bothered

about. Researchers were investigating if data gathered from smartwatches and similar devices could be used as viral infection alerts by tracking the user's heart rate and breathing. Schwab said in his 2018 book *Shaping the Future of the Fourth Industrial Revolution*:

The lines between technologies and beings are becoming blurred and not just by the ability to create lifelike robots or synthetics. Instead it is about the ability of new technologies to literally become part of us. Technologies already influence how we understand ourselves, how we think about each other, and how we determine our realities. As the technologies ... give us deeper access to parts of ourselves, we may begin to integrate digital technologies into our bodies.

You can see what the game is. Twenty-four hour control and people – if you could still call them that – would never know when something would go ping and take them out of circulation. It's the most obvious rush to a global fascist dictatorship and the complete submission of humanity and yet still so many are locked away in their Cult-induced perceptual coma and can't see it.

## **Smart Grid control centres**

The human body is being transformed by the 'vaccines' and in other ways into a synthetic cyborg that can be attached to the global Smart Grid which would be controlled from a central point and other sub-locations of Grid manipulation. Where are these planned to be? Well, China for a start which is one of the Cult's biggest centres of operation. The technological control system and technocratic rule was incubated here to be unleashed across the world after the 'Covid' hoax came out of China in 2020. Another Smart Grid location that will surprise people new to this is Israel. I have exposed in *The Trigger* how Sabbatian technocrats, intelligence and military operatives were behind the horrors of 9/11 and not 19 Arab hijackers' who somehow manifested the ability to pilot big passenger airliners when instructors at puddle-jumping flying schools described some of them as a joke. The 9/11 attacks were made possible through control of civilian and military air computer systems and those of the White House, Pentagon and connected agencies. See *The Trigger* – it

will blow your mind. The controlling and coordinating force were the Sabbatian networks in Israel and the United States which by then had infiltrated the entire US government, military and intelligence system. The real name of the American Deep State is 'Sabbatian State'. Israel is a tiny country of only nine million people, but it is one of the global centres of cyber operations and fast catching Silicon Valley in importance to the Cult. Israel is known as the 'start-up nation' for all the cyber companies spawned there with the Sabbatian specialisation of 'cyber security' that I mentioned earlier which gives those companies access to computer systems of their clients in real time through 'backdoors' written into the coding when security software is downloaded. The Sabbatian centre of cyber operations outside Silicon Valley is the Israeli military Cyber Intelligence Unit, the biggest infrastructure project in Israel's history, headquartered in the desert-city of Beersheba and involving some 20,000 'cyber soldiers'. Here are located a literal army of Internet trolls scanning social media, forums and comment lists for anyone challenging the Cult agenda. The UK military has something similar with its 77th Brigade and associated operations. The Beersheba complex includes research and development centres for other Cult operations such as Intel, Microsoft, IBM, Google, Apple, Hewlett-Packard, Cisco Systems, Facebook and Motorola. [Techcrunch.com](#) ran an article about the Beersheba global Internet technology centre headlined 'Israel's desert city of Beersheba is turning into a cybertech oasis':

The military's massive relocation of its prestigious technology units, the presence of multinational and local companies, a close proximity to Ben Gurion University and generous government subsidies are turning Beersheba into a major global cybertech hub. Beersheba has all of the ingredients of a vibrant security technology ecosystem, including Ben Gurion University with its graduate program in cybersecurity and Cyber Security Research Center, and the presence of companies such as EMC, Deutsche Telekom, PayPal, Oracle, IBM, and Lockheed Martin. It's also the future home of the INCB (Israeli National Cyber Bureau); offers a special income tax incentive for cyber security companies, and was the site for the relocation of the army's intelligence corps units.

Sabbatians have taken over the cyber world through the following process: They scan the schools for likely cyber talent and develop them at Ben Gurion University and their period of conscription in the Israeli Defense Forces when they are stationed at the Beersheba complex. When the cyber talented officially leave the army they are funded to start cyber companies with technology developed by themselves or given to them by the state. Much of this is stolen through backdoors of computer systems around the world with America top of the list. Others are sent off to Silicon Valley to start companies or join the major ones and so we have many major positions filled by apparently 'Jewish' but really Sabbatian operatives. Google, YouTube and Facebook are all run by 'Jewish' CEOs while Twitter is all but run by ultra-Zionist hedge-fund shark Paul Singer. At the centre of the Sabbatian global cyber web is the Israeli army's Unit 8200 which specialises in hacking into computer systems of other countries, inserting viruses, gathering information, instigating malfunction, and even taking control of them from a distance. A long list of Sabbatians involved with 9/11, Silicon Valley and Israeli cyber security companies are operatives of Unit 8200. This is not about Israel. It's about the Cult. Israel is planned to be a Smart Grid hub as with China and what is happening at Beersheba is not for the benefit of Jewish people who are treated disgustingly by the Sabbatian elite that control the country. A glance at the Nuremberg Codes will tell you that.

The story is much bigger than 'Covid', important as that is to where we are being taken. Now, though, it's time to really strap in. There's more ... much more ...

## CHAPTER ELEVEN

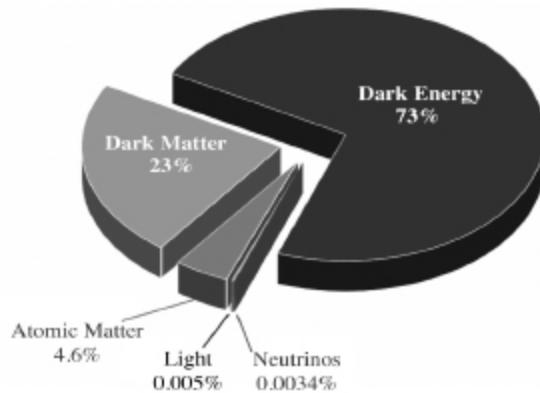
### Who controls the Cult?

*Awake, arise or be forever fall'n*  
John Milton, *Paradise Lost*

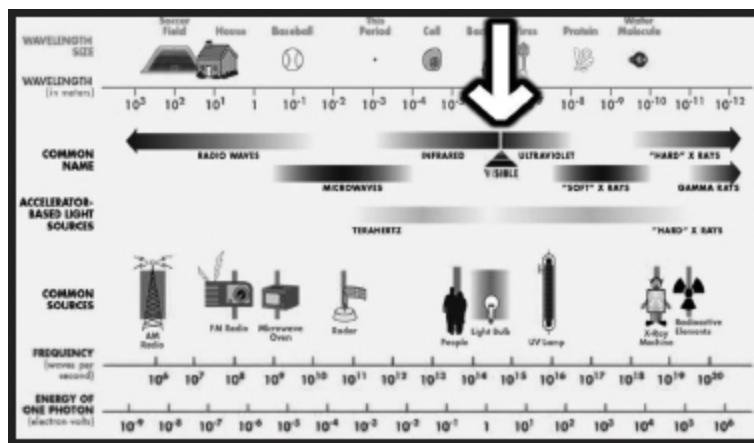
I have exposed this far the level of the Cult conspiracy that operates in the world of the seen and within the global secret society and satanic network which operates in the shadows one step back from the seen. The story, however, goes much deeper than that.

The 'Covid' hoax is major part of the Cult agenda, but only part, and to grasp the biggest picture we have to expand our attention beyond the realm of human sight and into the infinity of possibility that we cannot see. It is from here, ultimately, that humanity is being manipulated into a state of total control by the force which dictates the actions of the Cult. How much of reality can we see? Next to damn all is the answer. We may appear to see all there is to see in the 'space' our eyes survey and observe, but little could be further from the truth. The human 'world' is only a tiny band of frequency that the body's visual and perceptual systems can decode into *perception* of a 'world'. According to mainstream science the electromagnetic spectrum is 0.005 percent of what exists in the Universe ([Fig 10](#)). The maximum estimate I have seen is 0.5 percent and either way it's minuscule. I say it is far, far, smaller even than 0.005 percent when you compare reality we see with the totality of reality that we don't. Now get this if you are new to such information: Visible light, the only band of frequency that we can see, is a *fraction* of the 0.005

percent (Fig 11 overleaf). Take this further and realise that our universe is one of infinite universes and that universes are only a fragment of overall reality – *infinite* reality. Then compare that with the almost infinitesimal frequency band of visible light or human sight. You see that humans are as near blind as it is possible to be without actually being so. Artist and filmmaker, Sergio Toporek, said:



**Figure 10:** Humans can perceive such a tiny band of visual reality it's laughable.



**Figure 11:** We can see a smear of the 0.005 percent electromagnetic spectrum, but we still know it all. Yep, makes sense.

Consider that you can see less than 1% of the electromagnetic spectrum and hear less than 1% of the acoustic spectrum. 90% of the cells in your body carry their own microbial DNA and are not 'you'. The atoms in your body are 99.99999999999999% empty space and none of them are the ones you were born with ... Human beings have 46 chromosomes, two less than a potato.

The existence of the rainbow depends on the conical photoreceptors in your eyes; to animals without cones, the rainbow does not exist. So you don't just look at a rainbow, you create it. This is pretty amazing, especially considering that all the beautiful colours you see represent less than 1% of the electromagnetic spectrum.

Suddenly the 'world' of humans looks a very different place. Take into account, too, that Planet Earth when compared with the projected size of this single universe is the equivalent of a billionth of a pinhead. Imagine the ratio that would be when compared to infinite reality. To think that Christianity once insisted that Earth and humanity were the centre of everything. This background is vital if we are going to appreciate the nature of 'human' and how we can be manipulated by an unseen force. To human visual reality virtually *everything* is unseen and yet the prevailing perception within the institutions and so much of the public is that if we can't see it, touch it, hear it, taste it and smell it then it cannot exist. Such perception is indoctrinated and encouraged by the Cult and its agents because it isolates believers in the strictly limited, village-idiot, realm of the five senses where perceptions can be firewalled and information controlled. Most of those perpetuating the 'this-world-is-all-there-is' insanity are themselves indoctrinated into believing the same delusion. While major players and influencers know that official reality is laughable most of those in science, academia and medicine really believe the nonsense they peddle and teach succeeding generations. Those who challenge the orthodoxy are dismissed as nutters and freaks to protect the manufactured illusion from exposure. Observe the dynamic of the 'Covid' hoax and you will see how that takes the same form. The inner-circle psychopaths know it's a gigantic scam, but almost the entirety of those imposing their fascist rules believe that 'Covid' is all that they're told it is.

## **Stolen identity**

Ask people who they are and they will give you their name, place of birth, location, job, family background and life story. Yet that is not who they are – it is what they are *experiencing*. The difference is *absolutely crucial*. The true 'I', the eternal, infinite 'I', is consciousness,

a state of being aware. Forget ‘form’. That is a vehicle for a brief experience. Consciousness does not come *from* the brain, but *through* the brain and even that is more symbolic than literal. We are awareness, pure awareness, and this is what withdraws from the body at what we call ‘death’ to continue our eternal beingness, *isness*, in other realms of reality within the limitlessness of infinity or the Biblical ‘many mansions in my father’s house’. Labels of a human life, man, woman, transgender, black, white, brown, nationality, circumstances and income are not who we are. They are what we are – awareness – is *experiencing* in a brief connection with a band of frequency we call ‘human’. The labels are not the self; they are, to use the title of one of my books, a *Phantom Self*. I am not David Icke born in Leicester, England, on April 29th, 1952. I am the consciousness *having that experience*. The Cult and its non-human masters seek to convince us through the institutions of ‘education’, science, medicine, media and government that what we are *experiencing* is who we *are*. It’s so easy to control and direct perception locked away in the bewildered illusions of the five senses with no expanded radar. Try, by contrast, doing the same with a humanity aware of its true self and its true power to consciously create its reality and experience. How is it possible to do this? We do it all day every day. If you perceive yourself as ‘little me’ with no power to impact upon your life and the world then your life experience will reflect that. You will hand the power you don’t think you have to authority in all its forms which will use it to control your experience. This, in turn, will appear to confirm your perception of ‘little me’ in a self-fulfilling feedback loop. But that is what ‘little me’ really is – a *perception*. We are all ‘big-me’, infinite me, and the Cult has to make us forget that if its will is to prevail. We are therefore manipulated and pressured into self-identifying with human labels and not the consciousness/awareness *experiencing* those human labels.

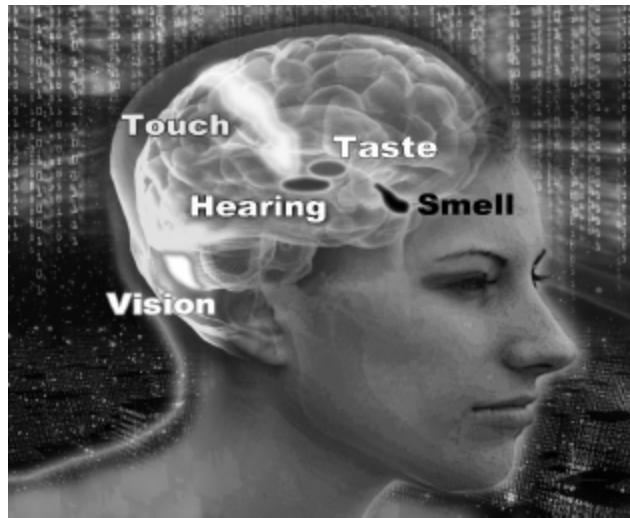
The phenomenon of identity politics is a Cult-instigated manipulation technique to sub-divide previous labels into even smaller ones. A United States university employs this list of letters to

describe student identity: LGBTQQFAGPBDSM or lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, transsexual, queer, questioning, flexual, asexual, gender-fuck, polyamorous, bondage/discipline, dominance/submission and sadism/masochism. I'm sure other lists are even longer by now as people feel the need to self-identify the 'I' with the minutiae of race and sexual preference. Wokers programmed by the Cult for generations believe this is about 'inclusivity' when it's really the Cult locking them away into smaller and smaller versions of Phantom Self while firewalls them from the influence of their true self, the infinite, eternal 'I'. You may notice that my philosophy which contends that we are all unique points of attention/awareness within the same infinite whole or Oneness is the ultimate non-racism. The very sense of Oneness makes the judgement of people by their body-type, colour or sexuality utterly ridiculous and confirms that racism has no understanding of reality (including anti-white racism). Yet despite my perception of life Cult agents and fast-asleep Wokers label me racist to discredit my information while they are themselves phenomenally racist and sexist. All they see is race and sexuality and they judge people as good or bad, demons or untouchables, by their race and sexuality. All they see is *Phantom Self* and perceive themselves in terms of *Phantom Self*. They are pawns and puppets of the Cult agenda to focus attention and self-identity in the five senses and play those identities against each other to divide and rule. Columbia University has introduced segregated graduations in another version of social distancing designed to drive people apart and teach them that different racial and cultural groups have nothing in common with each other. The last thing the Cult wants is unity. Again the pump-primers of this will be Cult operatives in the knowledge of what they are doing, but the rest are just the *Phantom Self* blind leading the *Phantom Self* blind. We *do* have something in common – we are all *the same consciousness* having different temporary experiences.

## **What is this 'human'?**

Yes, what *is* ‘human’? That is what we are supposed to be, right? I mean ‘human’? True, but ‘human’ is the experience not the ‘I’. Break it down to basics and ‘human’ is the way that information is processed. If we are to experience and interact with this band of frequency we call the ‘world’ we must have a vehicle that operates within that band of frequency. Our consciousness in its prime form cannot do that; it is way beyond the frequency of the human realm. My consciousness or awareness could not tap these keys and pick up the cup in front of me in the same way that radio station A cannot interact with radio station B when they are on different frequencies. The human body is the means through which we have that interaction. I have long described the body as a biological computer which processes information in a way that allows consciousness to experience this reality. The body is a receiver, transmitter and processor of information in a particular way that we call human. We visually perceive only the world of the five senses in a wakened state – that is the limit of the body’s visual decoding system. In truth it’s not even visual in the way we experience ‘visual reality’ as I will come to in a moment. We are ‘human’ because the body processes the information sources of human into a reality and behaviour system that we *perceive* as human. Why does an elephant act like an elephant and not like a human or a duck? The elephant’s biological computer is a different information field and processes information according to that program into a visual and behaviour type we call an elephant. The same applies to everything in our reality. These body information fields are perpetuated through procreation (like making a copy of a software program). The Cult wants to break that cycle and intervene technologically to transform the human information field into one that will change what we call humanity. If it can change the human information field it will change the way that field processes information and change humanity both ‘physically’ and psychologically. Hence the *messenger* (information) RNA ‘vaccines’ and so much more that is targeting human genetics by changing the body’s information – *messaging* – construct through food, drink, radiation, toxicity and other means.

Reality that we experience is nothing like reality as it really is in the same way that the reality people experience in virtual reality games is not the reality they are really living in. The game is only a decoded source of information that appears to be a reality. Our world is also an information construct – a *simulation* (more later). In its base form our reality is a wavefield of information much the same in theme as Wi-Fi. The five senses decode wavefield information into electrical information which they communicate to the brain to decode into holographic (illusory ‘physical’) information. Different parts of the brain specialise in decoding different senses and the information is fused into a reality that appears to be outside of us but is really inside the brain and the genetic structure in general ([Fig 12](#) overleaf). DNA is a receiver-transmitter of information and a vital part of this decoding process and the body’s connection to other realities. Change DNA and you change the way we decode and connect with reality – see ‘Covid vaccines’. Think of computers decoding Wi-Fi. You have information encoded in a radiation field and the computer decodes that information into a very different form on the screen. You can’t see the Wi-Fi until its information is made manifest on the screen and the information on the screen is inside the computer and not outside. I have just described how we decode the ‘human world’. All five senses decode the waveform ‘Wi-Fi’ field into electrical signals and the brain (computer) constructs reality inside the brain and not outside – ‘You don’t just look at a rainbow, you create it’. Sound is a simple example. We don’t hear sound until the brain decodes it. Waveform sound waves are picked up by the hearing sense and communicated to the brain in an electrical form to be decoded into the sounds that we hear. Everything we hear is inside the brain along with everything we see, feel, smell and taste. Words and language are waveform fields generated by our vocal chords which pass through this process until they are decoded by the brain into words that we hear. Different languages are different frequency fields or sound waves generated by vocal chords. Late British philosopher Alan Watts said:



**Figure 12:** The brain receives information from the five senses and constructs from that our perceived reality.

[Without the brain] the world is devoid of light, heat, weight, solidity, motion, space, time or any other imaginable feature. All these phenomena are interactions, or transactions, of vibrations with a certain arrangement of neurons.

That's exactly what they are and scientist Robert Lanza describes in his book, *Biocentrism*, how we decode electromagnetic waves and energy into visual and 'physical' experience. He uses the example of a flame emitting photons, electromagnetic energy, each pulsing electrically and magnetically:

... these ... invisible electromagnetic waves strike a human retina, and if (and only if) the waves happen to measure between 400 and 700 nano meters in length from crest to crest, then their energy is just right to deliver a stimulus to the 8 million cone-shaped cells in the retina.

Each in turn send an electrical pulse to a neighbour neuron, and on up the line this goes, at 250 mph, until it reaches the ... occipital lobe of the brain, in the back of the head. There, a cascading complex of neurons fire from the incoming stimuli, and we subjectively perceive this experience as a yellow brightness occurring in a place we have been conditioned to call the 'external world'.

## You hear what you decode

If a tree falls or a building collapses they make no noise unless someone is there to decode the energetic waves generated by the disturbance into what we call sound. Does a falling tree make a noise? Only if you hear it – *decode* it. Everything in our reality is a frequency field of information operating within the overall ‘Wi-Fi’ field that I call The Field. A vibrational disturbance is generated in The Field by the fields of the falling tree or building. These disturbance waves are what we decode into the sound of them falling. If no one is there to do that then neither will make any noise. Reality is created by the observer – *decoder* – and the *perceptions* of the observer affect the decoding process. For this reason different people – different *perceptions* – will perceive the same reality or situation in a different way. What one may perceive as a nightmare another will see as an opportunity. The question of why the Cult is so focused on controlling human perception now answers itself. All experienced reality is the act of decoding and we don’t experience Wi-Fi until it is decoded on the computer screen. The sight and sound of an Internet video is encoded in the Wi-Fi all around us, but we don’t see or hear it until the computer decodes that information. Taste, smell and touch are all phenomena of the brain as a result of the same process. We don’t taste, smell or feel anything except in the brain and there are pain relief techniques that seek to block the signal from the site of discomfort to the brain because if the brain doesn’t decode that signal we don’t feel pain. Pain is in the brain and only appears to be at the point of impact thanks to the feedback loop between them. We don’t see anything until electrical information from the sight senses is decoded in an area at the back of the brain. If that area is damaged we can go blind when our eyes are perfectly okay. So why do we go blind if we damage an eye? We damage the information processing between the waveform visual information and the visual decoding area of the brain. If information doesn’t reach the brain in a form it can decode then we can’t see the visual reality that it represents. What’s more the brain is decoding only a fraction of the information it receives and the rest is absorbed by the

sub-conscious mind. This explanation is from the science magazine, *Wonderpedia*:

Every second, 11 million sensations crackle along these [brain] pathways ... The brain is confronted with an alarming array of images, sounds and smells which it rigorously filters down until it is left with a manageable list of around 40. Thus 40 sensations per second make up what we perceive as reality.

The ‘world’ is not what people are told to believe that is it and the inner circles of the Cult *know that*.

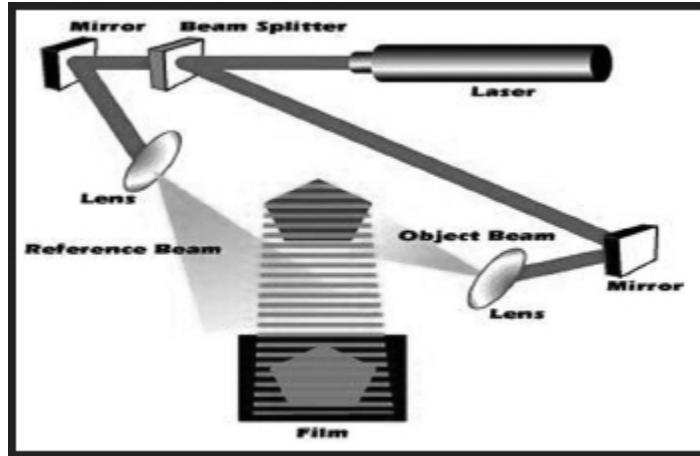
### **Illusory ‘physical’ reality**

We can only see a smear of 0.005 percent of the Universe which is only one of a vast array of universes – ‘mansions’ – within infinite reality. Even then the brain decodes only 40 pieces of information (‘sensations’) from a potential *11 million* that we receive every second. Two points strike you from this immediately: The sheer breathtaking stupidity of believing we know anything so rigidly that there’s nothing more to know; and the potential for these processes to be manipulated by a malevolent force to control the reality of the population. One thing I can say for sure with no risk of contradiction is that when you can perceive an almost indescribable fraction of infinite reality there is always more to know as in tidal waves of it. Ancient Greek philosopher Socrates was so right when he said that wisdom is to know how little we know. How obviously true that is when you think that we are experiencing a physical world of solidity that is neither physical nor solid and a world of apartness when everything is connected. Cult-controlled ‘science’ dismisses the so-called ‘paranormal’ and all phenomena related to that when the ‘para’-normal is perfectly normal and explains the alleged ‘great mysteries’ which dumbfound scientific minds. There is a reason for this. A ‘scientific mind’ in terms of the mainstream is a material mind, a five-sense mind imprisoned in see it, touch it, hear it, smell it and taste it. Phenomena and happenings that can’t be explained that way leave the ‘scientific mind’ bewildered and the rule is that if they

can't account for why something is happening then it can't, by definition, be happening. I beg to differ. Telepathy is thought waves passing through The Field (think wave disturbance again) to be decoded by someone able to connect with that wavelength (information). For example: You can pick up the thought waves of a friend at any distance and at the very least that will bring them to mind. A few minutes later the friend calls you. 'My god', you say, 'that's incredible – I was just thinking of you.' Ah, but *they* were thinking of *you* before they made the call and that's what you decoded. Native peoples not entrapped in five-sense reality do this so well it became known as the 'bush telegraph'. Those known as psychics and mediums (genuine ones) are doing the same only across dimensions of reality. 'Mind over matter' comes from the fact that matter and mind are the *same*. The state of one influences the state of the other. Indeed one *and* the other are illusions. They are aspects of the same field. Paranormal phenomena are all explainable so why are they still considered 'mysteries' or not happening? Once you go down this road of understanding you begin to expand awareness beyond the five senses and that's the nightmare for the Cult.



**Figure 13:** Holograms are not solid, but the best ones appear to be.



**Figure 14:** How holograms are created by capturing a waveform version of the subject image.

## Holographic ‘solidity’

Our reality is not solid, it is holographic. We are now well aware of holograms which are widely used today. Two-dimensional information is decoded into a three-dimensional reality that is not solid although can very much appear to be (Fig 13). Holograms are created with a laser divided into two parts. One goes directly onto a photographic print ('reference beam') and the other takes a waveform image of the subject ('working beam') before being directed onto the print where it 'collides' with the other half of the laser (Fig 14). This creates a *waveform* interference pattern which contains the wavefield information of whatever is being photographed (Fig 15 overleaf). The process can be likened to dropping pebbles in a pond. Waves generated by each one spread out across the water to collide with the others and create a wave representation of where the stones fell and at what speed, weight and distance. A waveform interference pattern of a hologram is akin to the waveform information in The Field which the five senses decode into electrical signals to be decoded by the brain into a holographic illusory 'physical' reality. In the same way when a laser (think human attention) is directed at the waveform interference pattern a three-dimensional version of the subject is projected into apparently 'solid' reality (Fig 16). An amazing trait of holograms reveals more 'paranormal mysteries'. Information of the *whole*

hologram is encoded in waveform in every part of the interference pattern by the way they are created. This means that every *part* of a hologram is a smaller version of the whole. Cut the interference wave-pattern into four and you won't get four parts of the image. You get quarter-sized versions of the *whole* image. The body is a hologram and the same applies. Here we have the basis of acupuncture, reflexology and other forms of healing which identify representations of the whole body in all of the parts, hands, feet, ears, everywhere. Skilled palm readers can do what they do because the information of whole body is encoded in the hand. The concept of as above, so below, comes from this.



**Figure 15:** A waveform interference pattern that holds the information that transforms into a hologram.



**Figure 16:** Holographic people including 'Elvis' holographically inserted to sing a duet with Celine Dion.

The question will be asked of why, if solidity is illusory, we can't just walk through walls and each other. The resistance is not solid against solid; it is electromagnetic field against electromagnetic field and we decode this into the *experience* of solid against solid. We should also not underestimate the power of belief to dictate reality. What you believe is impossible *will be*. Your belief impacts on your decoding processes and they won't decode what you think is impossible. What we believe we perceive and what we perceive we experience. 'Can't dos' and 'impossibles' are like a firewall in a computer system that won't put on the screen what the firewall blocks. How vital that is to understanding how human experience has been hijacked. I explain in *The Answer, Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told* and other books a long list of 'mysteries' and 'paranormal' phenomena that are not mysterious and perfectly normal once you realise what reality is and how it works. 'Ghosts' can be seen to pass through 'solid' walls because the walls are not solid and the ghost is a discarnate entity operating on a frequency so different to that of the wall that it's like two radio stations sharing the same space while never interfering with each other. I have seen ghosts do this myself. The apartness of people and objects is also an illusion. Everything is connected by the Field like all sea life is connected by the sea. It's just that within the limits of our visual reality we only 'see' holographic information and not the field of information that connects everything and from which the holographic world is made manifest. If you can only see holographic 'objects' and not the field that connects them they will appear to you as unconnected to each other in the same way that we see the computer while not seeing the Wi-Fi.

## **What you don't know *can* hurt you**

Okay, we return to those 'two worlds' of human society and the Cult with its global network of interconnecting secret societies and satanic groups which manipulate through governments, corporations, media, religions, etc. The fundamental difference between them is *knowledge*. The idea has been to keep humanity

ignorant of the plan for its total enslavement underpinned by a crucial ignorance of reality – who we are and where we are – and how we interact with it. ‘Human’ should be the interaction between our expanded eternal consciousness and the five-sense body experience. We are meant to be *in* this world in terms of the five senses but not *of* this world in relation to our greater consciousness and perspective. In that state we experience the small picture of the five senses within the wider context of the big picture of awareness beyond the five senses. Put another way the five senses see the dots and expanded awareness connects them into pictures and patterns that give context to the apparently random and unconnected. Without the context of expanded awareness the five senses see only apartness and randomness with apparently no meaning. The Cult and its other-dimensional controllers seek to intervene in the frequency realm where five-sense reality is supposed to connect with expanded reality and to keep the two apart (more on this in the final chapter). When that happens five-sense mental and emotional processes are no longer influenced by expanded awareness, or the True ‘I’, and instead are driven by the isolated perceptions of the body’s decoding systems. They are in the world *and* of it. Here we have the human plight and why humanity with its potential for infinite awareness can be so easily manipulatable and descend into such extremes of stupidity.

Once the Cult isolates five-sense mind from expanded awareness it can then program the mind with perceptions and beliefs by controlling information that the mind receives through the ‘education’ system of the formative years and the media perceptual bombardment and censorship of an entire lifetime. Limit perception and a sense of the possible through limiting knowledge by limiting and skewing information while censoring and discrediting that which could set people free. As the title of another of my books says ... *And The Truth Shall Set You Free*. For this reason the last thing the Cult wants in circulation is the truth about anything – especially the reality of the eternal ‘I’ – and that’s why it is desperate to control information. The Cult knows that information becomes perception

which becomes behaviour which, collectively, becomes human society. Cult-controlled and funded mainstream ‘science’ denies the existence of an eternal ‘I’ and seeks to dismiss and trash all evidence to the contrary. Cult-controlled mainstream religion has a version of ‘God’ that is little more than a system of control and dictatorship that employs threats of damnation in an afterlife to control perceptions and behaviour in the here and now through fear and guilt. Neither is true and it’s the ‘neither’ that the Cult wishes to suppress. This ‘neither’ is that everything is an expression, a point of attention, within an infinite state of consciousness which is the real meaning of the term ‘God’.

Perceptual obsession with the ‘physical body’ and five-senses means that ‘God’ becomes personified as a bearded bloke sitting among the clouds or a raging bully who loves us if we do what ‘he’ wants and condemns us to the fires of hell if we don’t. These are no more than a ‘spiritual’ fairy tales to control and dictate events and behaviour through fear of this ‘God’ which has bizarrely made ‘God-fearing’ in religious circles a state to be desired. I would suggest that fearing *anything* is not to be encouraged and celebrated, but rather deleted. You can see why ‘God fearing’ is so beneficial to the Cult and its religions when *they* decide what ‘God’ wants and what ‘God’ demands (the Cult demands) that everyone do. As the great American comedian Bill Hicks said satirising a Christian zealot: ‘I think what God meant to say.’ How much of this infinite awareness (“God”) that we access is decided by how far we choose to expand our perceptions, self-identity and sense of the possible. The scale of self-identity reflects itself in the scale of awareness that we can connect with and are influenced by – how much knowing and insight we have instead of programmed perception. You cannot expand your awareness into the infinity of possibility when you believe that you are little me Peter the postman or Mary in marketing and nothing more. I’ll deal with this in the concluding chapter because it’s crucial to how we turnaround current events.

## **Where the Cult came from**

When I realised in the early 1990s there was a Cult network behind global events I asked the obvious question: When did it start? I took it back to ancient Rome and Egypt and on to Babylon and Sumer in Mesopotamia, the 'Land Between Two Rivers', in what we now call Iraq. The two rivers are the Tigris and Euphrates and this region is of immense historical and other importance to the Cult, as is the land called Israel only 550 miles away by air. There is much more going with deep esoteric meaning across this whole region. It's not only about 'wars for oil'. Priceless artefacts from Mesopotamia were stolen or destroyed after the American and British invasion of Iraq in 2003 justified by the lies of Boy Bush and Tony Blair (their Cult masters) about non-existent 'weapons of mass destruction'.

Mesopotamia was the location of Sumer (about 5,400BC to 1,750BC), and Babylon (about 2,350BC to 539BC). Sabbatians may have become immensely influential in the Cult in modern times but they are part of a network that goes back into the mists of history. Sumer is said by historians to be the 'cradle of civilisation'. I disagree. I say it was the re-start of what we call human civilisation after cataclysmic events symbolised in part as the 'Great Flood' destroyed the world that existed before. These fantastic upheavals that I have been describing in detail in the books since the early 1990s appear in accounts and legends of ancient cultures across the world and they are supported by geological and biological evidence. Stone tablets found in Iraq detailing the Sumer period say the cataclysms were caused by non-human 'gods' they call the Anunnaki. These are described in terms of extraterrestrial visitations in which knowledge supplied by the Anunnaki is said to have been the source of at least one of the world's oldest writing systems and developments in astronomy, mathematics and architecture that were way ahead of their time. I have covered this subject at length in *The Biggest Secret* and *Children of the Matrix* and the same basic 'Anunnaki' story can be found in Zulu accounts in South Africa where the late and very great Zulu high shaman Credo Mutwa told me that the Sumerian Anunnaki were known by Zulus as the Chitauri or 'children of the serpent'. See my six-hour video interview with Credo on this subject entitled *The*

*Reptilian Agenda* recorded at his then home near Johannesburg in 1999 which you can watch on the Ickonic media platform.

The Cult emerged out of Sumer, Babylon and Egypt (and elsewhere) and established the Roman Empire before expanding with the Romans into northern Europe from where many empires were savagely imposed in the form of Cult-controlled societies all over the world. Mass death and destruction was their calling card. The Cult established its centre of operations in Europe and European Empires were Cult empires which allowed it to expand into a global force. Spanish and Portuguese colonialists headed for Central and South America while the British and French targeted North America. Africa was colonised by Britain, France, Belgium, the Netherlands, Portugal, Spain, Italy, and Germany. Some like Britain and France moved in on the Middle East. The British Empire was by far the biggest for a simple reason. By now Britain was the headquarters of the Cult from which it expanded to form Canada, the United States, Australia and New Zealand. The Sun never set on the British Empire such was the scale of its occupation. London remains a global centre for the Cult along with Rome and the Vatican although others have emerged in Israel and China. It is no accident that the 'virus' is alleged to have come out of China while Italy was chosen as the means to terrify the Western population into compliance with 'Covid' fascism. Nor that Israel has led the world in 'Covid' fascism and mass 'vaccination'.

You would think that I would mention the United States here, but while it has been an important means of imposing the Cult's will it is less significant than would appear and is currently in the process of having what power it does have deleted. The Cult in Europe has mostly loaded the guns for the US to fire. America has been controlled from Europe from the start through Cult operatives in Britain and Europe. The American Revolution was an illusion to make it appear that America was governing itself while very different forces were pulling the strings in the form of Cult families such as the Rothschilds through the Rockefellers and other subordinates. The Rockefellers are extremely close to Bill Gates and

established both scalpel and drug ‘medicine’ and the World Health Organization. They play a major role in the development and circulation of vaccines through the Rockefeller Foundation on which Bill Gates said his Foundation is based. Why wouldn’t this be the case when the Rockefellers and Gates are on the same team? Cult infiltration of human society goes way back into what we call history and has been constantly expanding and centralising power with the goal of establishing a global structure to dictate everything. Look how this has been advanced in great leaps with the ‘Covid’ hoax.

## **The non-human dimension**

I researched and observed the comings and goings of Cult operatives through the centuries and even thousands of years as they were born, worked to promote the agenda within the secret society and satanic networks, and then died for others to replace them. Clearly there had to be a coordinating force that spanned this entire period while operatives who would not have seen the end goal in their lifetimes came and went advancing the plan over millennia. I went in search of that coordinating force with the usual support from the extraordinary synchronicity of my life which has been an almost daily experience since 1990. I saw common themes in religious texts and ancient cultures about a non-human force manipulating human society from the hidden. Christianity calls this force Satan, the Devil and demons; Islam refers to the Jinn or Djinn; Zulus have their Chitauri (spelt in other ways in different parts of Africa); and the Gnostic people in Egypt in the period around and before 400AD referred to this phenomena as the ‘Archons’, a word meaning rulers in Greek. Central American cultures speak of the ‘Predators’ among other names and the same theme is everywhere. I will use ‘Archons’ as a collective name for all of them. When you see how their nature and behaviour is described all these different sources are clearly talking about the same force. Gnostics described the Archons in terms of ‘luminous fire’ while Islam relates the Jinn to ‘smokeless fire’. Some refer to beings in form that could occasionally be seen, but the most common of common theme is that they operate from

unseen realms which means almost all existence to the visual processes of humans. I had concluded that this was indeed the foundation of human control and that the Cult was operating within the human frequency band on behalf of this hidden force when I came across the writings of Gnostics which supported my conclusions in the most extraordinary way.

A sealed earthen jar was found in 1945 near the town of Nag Hammadi about 75-80 miles north of Luxor on the banks of the River Nile in Egypt. Inside was a treasure trove of manuscripts and texts left by the Gnostic people some 1,600 years earlier. They included 13 leather-bound papyrus codices (manuscripts) and more than 50 texts written in Coptic Egyptian estimated to have been hidden in the jar in the period of 400AD although the source of the information goes back much further. Gnostics oversaw the Great or Royal Library of Alexandria, the fantastic depository of ancient texts detailing advanced knowledge and accounts of human history. The Library was dismantled and destroyed in stages over a long period with the death-blow delivered by the Cult-established Roman Church in the period around 415AD. The Church of Rome was the Church of Babylon relocated as I said earlier. Gnostics were not a race. They were a way of perceiving reality. Whenever they established themselves and their information circulated the terrorists of the Church of Rome would target them for destruction. This happened with the Great Library and with the Gnostic Cathars who were burned to death by the psychopaths after a long period of oppression at the siege of the Castle of Monségur in southern France in 1244. The Church has always been terrified of Gnostic information which demolishes the official Christian narrative although there is much in the Bible that supports the Gnostic view if you read it in another way. To anyone studying the texts of what became known as the Nag Hammadi Library it is clear that great swathes of Christian and Biblical belief has its origin with Gnostics sources going back to Sumer. Gnostic themes have been twisted to manipulate the perceived reality of Bible believers. Biblical texts have been in the open for centuries where they could be changed while Gnostic

documents found at Nag Hammadi were sealed away and untouched for 1,600 years. What you see is what they wrote.

### **Use your *pneuma* not your *nous***

Gnosticism and Gnostic come from 'gnosis' which means knowledge, or rather *secret* knowledge, in the sense of spiritual awareness – knowledge about reality and life itself. The desperation of the Cult's Church of Rome to destroy the Gnostics can be understood when the knowledge they were circulating was the last thing the Cult wanted the population to know. Sixteen hundred years later the same Cult is working hard to undermine and silence me for the same reason. The dynamic between knowledge and ignorance is a constant. 'Time' appears to move on, but essential themes remain the same. We are told to 'use your *nous*', a Gnostic word for head/brain/intelligence. They said, however, that spiritual awakening or 'salvation' could only be secured by expanding awareness *beyond* what they called *nous* and into *pneuma* or Infinite Self. Obviously as I read these texts the parallels with what I have been saying since 1990 were fascinating to me. There is a universal truth that spans human history and in that case why wouldn't we be talking the same language 16 centuries apart? When you free yourself from the perception program of the five senses and explore expanded realms of consciousness you are going to connect with the same information no matter what the perceived 'era' within a manufactured timeline of a single and tiny range of manipulated frequency. Humans working with 'smart' technology or knocking rocks together in caves is only a timeline appearing to operate within the human frequency band. Expanded awareness and the knowledge it holds have always been there whether the era be Stone Age or computer age. We can only access that knowledge by opening ourselves to its frequency which the five-sense prison cell is designed to stop us doing. Gates, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance, Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki, Bezos, and all the others behind the 'Covid' hoax clearly have a long wait before their range of frequency can make that connection given that an open heart is

crucial to that as we shall see. Instead of accessing knowledge directly through expanded awareness it is given to Cult operatives by the secret society networks of the Cult where it has been passed on over thousands of years outside the public arena. Expanded realms of consciousness is where great artists, composers and writers find their inspiration and where truth awaits anyone open enough to connect with it. We need to go there fast.

## **Archon hijack**

A fifth of the Nag Hammadi texts describe the existence and manipulation of the Archons led by a 'Chief Archon' they call 'Yaldabaoth', or the 'Demiurge', and this is the Christian 'Devil', 'Satan', 'Lucifer', and his demons. Archons in Biblical symbolism are the 'fallen ones' which are also referred to as fallen angels after the angels expelled from heaven according to the Abrahamic religions of Judaism, Christianity and Islam. These angels are claimed to tempt humans to 'sin' ongoing and you will see how accurate that symbolism is during the rest of the book. The theme of 'original sin' is related to the 'Fall' when Adam and Eve were 'tempted by the serpent' and fell from a state of innocence and 'obedience' (connection) with God into a state of disobedience (disconnection). The Fall is said to have brought sin into the world and corrupted everything including human nature. Yaldabaoth, the 'Lord Archon', is described by Gnostics as a 'counterfeit spirit', 'The Blind One', 'The Blind God', and 'The Foolish One'. The Jewish name for Yaldabaoth in Talmudic writings is Samael which translates as 'Poison of God', or 'Blindness of God'. You see the parallels. Yaldabaoth in Islamic belief is the Muslim Jinn devil known as Shaytan – Shaytan is Satan as the same themes are found all over the world in every religion and culture. The 'Lord God' of the Old Testament is the 'Lord Archon' of Gnostic manuscripts and that's why he's such a bloodthirsty bastard. Satan is known by Christians as 'the Demon of Demons' and Gnostics called Yaldabaoth the 'Archon of Archons'. Both are known as 'The Deceiver'. We are talking about the same 'bloke' for sure and these common themes

using different names, storylines and symbolism tell a common tale of the human plight.

Archons are referred to in Nag Hammadi documents as mind parasites, inverters, guards, gatekeepers, detainers, judges, pitiless ones and deceivers. The 'Covid' hoax alone is a glaring example of all these things. The Biblical 'God' is so different in the Old and New Testaments because they are not describing the same phenomenon. The vindictive, angry, hate-filled, 'God' of the Old Testament, known as Yahweh, is Yaldabaoth who is depicted in Cult-dictated popular culture as the 'Dark Lord', 'Lord of Time', Lord (Darth) Vader and Dormammu, the evil ruler of the 'Dark Dimension' trying to take over the 'Earth Dimension' in the Marvel comic movie, *Dr Strange*. Yaldabaoth is both the Old Testament 'god' and the Biblical 'Satan'. Gnostics referred to Yaldabaoth as the 'Great Architect of the Universe' and the Cult-controlled Freemason network calls their god 'the Great Architect of the Universe' (also Grand Architect). The 'Great Architect' Yaldabaoth is symbolised by the Cult as the all-seeing eye at the top of the pyramid on the Great Seal of the United States and the dollar bill. Archon is encoded in *arch-itect* as it is in *arch-angels* and *arch-bishops*. All religions have the theme of a force for good and force for evil in some sort of spiritual war and there is a reason for that – the theme is true. The Cult and its non-human masters are quite happy for this to circulate. They present themselves as the force for good fighting evil when they are really the force of evil (absence of love). The whole foundation of Cult modus operandi is inversion. They promote themselves as a force for good and anyone challenging them in pursuit of peace, love, fairness, truth and justice is condemned as a satanic force for evil. This has been the game plan throughout history whether the Church of Rome inquisitions of non-believers or 'conspiracy theorists' and 'anti-vaxxers' of today. The technique is the same whatever the timeline era.

## **Yaldabaoth is revolting (true)**

Yaldabaoth and the Archons are said to have revolted against God with Yaldabaoth claiming to *be* God – the *All That Is*. The Old Testament ‘God’ (Yaldabaoth) demanded to be worshipped as such: ‘*I am the LORD, and there is none else, there is no God beside me*’ (Isaiah 45:5). I have quoted in other books a man who said he was the unofficial son of the late Baron Philippe de Rothschild of the Mouton-Rothschild wine producing estates in France who died in 1988 and he told me about the Rothschild ‘revolt from God’. The man said he was given the name Phillip Eugene de Rothschild and we shared long correspondence many years ago while he was living under another identity. He said that he was conceived through ‘occult incest’ which (within the Cult) was ‘normal and to be admired’. ‘Phillip’ told me about his experience attending satanic rituals with rich and famous people whom he names and you can see them and the wider background to Cult Satanism in my other books starting with *The Biggest Secret*. Cult rituals are interactions with Archontic ‘gods’. ‘Phillip’ described Baron Philippe de Rothschild as ‘a master Satanist and hater of God’ and he used the same term ‘revolt from God’ associated with Yaldabaoth/Satan/Lucifer/the Devil in describing the Sabbatian Rothschild dynasty. ‘I played a key role in my family’s revolt from God’, he said. That role was to infiltrate in classic Sabbatian style the Christian Church, but eventually he escaped the mind-prison to live another life. The Cult has been targeting religion in a plan to make worship of the Archons the global one-world religion. Infiltration of Satanism into modern ‘culture’, especially among the young, through music videos, stage shows and other means, is all part of this.

Nag Hammadi texts describe Yaldabaoth and the Archons in their prime form as energy – consciousness – and say they can take form if they choose in the same way that consciousness takes form as a human. Yaldabaoth is called ‘formless’ and represents a deeply inverted, distorted and chaotic state of consciousness which seeks to attach to humans and turn them into a likeness of itself in an attempt at assimilation. For that to happen it has to manipulate

humans into low frequency mental and emotional states that match its own. Archons can certainly appear in human form and this is the origin of the psychopathic personality. The energetic distortion Gnostics called Yaldabaoth is psychopathy. When psychopathic Archons take human form that human will be a psychopath as an expression of Yaldabaoth consciousness. Cult psychopaths are Archons in human form. The principle is the same as that portrayed in the 2009 *Avatar* movie when the American military travelled to a fictional Earth-like moon called Pandora in the Alpha Centauri star system to infiltrate a society of blue people, or Na'vi, by hiding within bodies that looked like the Na'vi. Archons posing as humans have a particular hybrid information field, part human, part Archon, (the ancient 'demigods') which processes information in a way that manifests behaviour to match their psychopathic evil, lack of empathy and compassion, and stops them being influenced by the empathy, compassion and love that a fully-human information field is capable of expressing. Cult bloodlines interbreed, be they royalty or dark suits, for this reason and you have their obsession with incest. Interbreeding with full-blown humans would dilute the Archontic energy field that guarantees psychopathy in its representatives in the human realm.

Gnostic writings say the main non-human forms that Archons take are *serpentine* (what I have called for decades 'reptilian' amid unbounded ridicule from the Archontically-programmed) and what Gnostics describe as 'an unborn baby or foetus with grey skin and dark, unmoving eyes'. This is an excellent representation of the ET 'Greys' of UFO folklore which large numbers of people claim to have seen and been abducted by – Zulu shaman Credo Mutwa among them. I agree with those that believe in extraterrestrial or interdimensional visitations today and for thousands of years past. No wonder with their advanced knowledge and technological capability they were perceived and worshipped as gods for technological and other 'miracles' they appeared to perform. Imagine someone arriving in a culture disconnected from the modern world with a smartphone and computer. They would be

seen as a ‘god’ capable of ‘miracles’. The Renegade Mind, however, wants to know the source of everything and not only the way that source manifests as human or non-human. In the same way that a Renegade Mind seeks the original source material for the ‘Covid virus’ to see if what is claimed is true. The original source of Archons in form is consciousness – the distorted state of consciousness known to Gnostics as Yaldabaoth.

### **‘Revolt from God’ is energetic disconnection**

Where I am going next will make a lot of sense of religious texts and ancient legends relating to ‘Satan’, Lucifer’ and the ‘gods’. Gnostic descriptions sync perfectly with the themes of my own research over the years in how they describe a consciousness distortion seeking to impose itself on human consciousness. I’ve referred to the core of infinite awareness in previous books as Infinite Awareness in Awareness of Itself. By that I mean a level of awareness that knows that it is all awareness and is aware of all awareness. From here comes the frequency of love in its true sense and balance which is what love is on one level – the balance of all forces into a single whole called Oneness and Isness. The more we disconnect from this state of love that many call ‘God’ the constituent parts of that Oneness start to unravel and express themselves as a part and not a whole. They become individualised as intellect, mind, selfishness, hatred, envy, desire for power over others, and such like. This is not a problem in the greater scheme in that ‘God’, the *All That Is*, can experience all these possibilities through different expressions of itself including humans. What we as expressions of the whole experience the *All That Is* experiences. We are the *All That Is* experiencing itself. As we withdraw from that state of Oneness we disconnect from its influence and things can get very unpleasant and very stupid. Archontic consciousness is at the extreme end of that. It has so disconnected from the influence of Oneness that it has become an inversion of unity and love, an inversion of everything, an inversion of life itself. Evil is appropriately live written backwards. Archontic consciousness is obsessed with death, an inversion of life,

and so its manifestations in Satanism are obsessed with death. They use inverted symbols in their rituals such as the inverted pentagram and cross. Sabbatians as Archontic consciousness incarnate invert Judaism and every other religion and culture they infiltrate. They seek disunity and chaos and they fear unity and harmony as they fear love like garlic to a vampire. As a result the Cult, Archons incarnate, act with such evil, psychopathy and lack of empathy and compassion disconnected as they are from the source of love. How could Bill Gates and the rest of the Archontic psychopaths do what they have to human society in the 'Covid' era with all the death, suffering and destruction involved and have no emotional consequence for the impact on others? Now you know. Why have Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki and company callously censored information warning about the dangers of the 'vaccine' while thousands have been dying and having severe, sometimes life-changing reactions? Now you know. Why have Tedros, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance and their like around the world been using case and death figures they're aware are fraudulent to justify lockdowns and all the deaths and destroyed lives that have come from that? Now you know. Why did Christian Drosten produce and promote a 'testing' protocol that he knew couldn't test for infectious disease which led to a global human catastrophe. Now you know. The Archontic mind doesn't give a shit ([Fig 17](#)). I personally think that Gates and major Cult insiders are a form of AI cyborg that the Archons want humans to become.

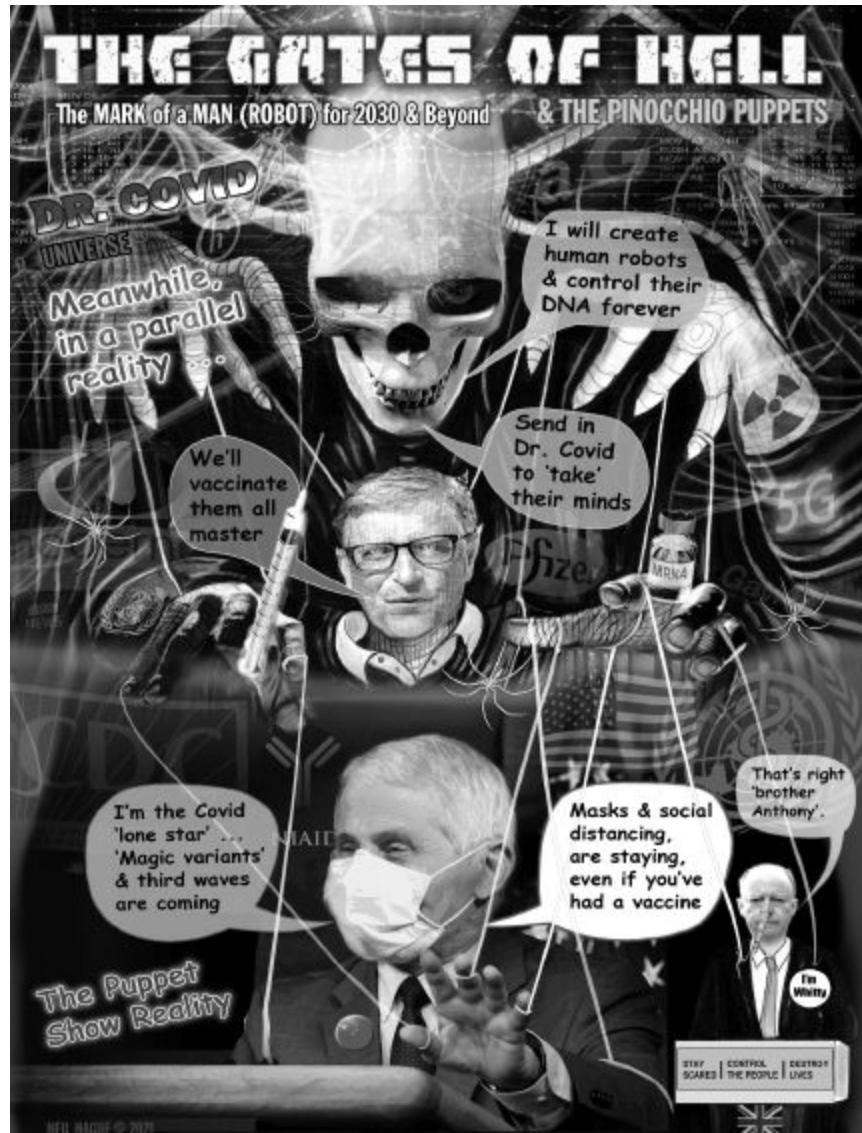


Figure 17: Artist Neil Hague's version of the 'Covid' hierarchy.

## Human batteries

A state of such inversion does have its consequences, however. The level of disconnection from the Source of All means that you withdraw from that source of energetic sustenance and creativity. This means that you have to find your own supply of energetic power and it has – *us*. When the Morpheus character in the first *Matrix* movie held up a battery he spoke a profound truth when he said: ‘The Matrix is a computer-generated dream world built to keep us under control in order to change the human being into one of

these.' The statement was true in all respects. We do live in a technologically-generated virtual reality simulation (more very shortly) and we have been manipulated to be an energy source for Archontic consciousness. The Disney-Pixar animated movie *Monsters, Inc.* in 2001 symbolised the dynamic when monsters in their world had no energy source and they would enter the human world to terrify children in their beds, catch the child's scream, terror (low-vibrational frequencies), and take that energy back to power the monster world. The lead character you might remember was a single giant eye and the symbolism of the Cult's all-seeing eye was obvious. Every thought and emotion is broadcast as a frequency unique to that thought and emotion. Feelings of love and joy, empathy and compassion, are high, quick, frequencies while fear, depression, anxiety, suffering and hate are low, slow, dense frequencies. Which kind do you think Archontic consciousness can connect with and absorb? In such a low and dense frequency state there's no way it can connect with the energy of love and joy. Archons can only feed off energy compatible with their own frequency and they and their Cult agents want to delete the human world of love and joy and manipulate the transmission of low vibrational frequencies through low-vibrational human mental and emotional states. *We are their energy source.* Wars are energetic banquets to the Archons – a world war even more so – and think how much low-frequency mental and emotional energy has been generated from the consequences for humanity of the 'Covid' hoax orchestrated by Archons incarnate like Gates.

The ancient practice of human sacrifice 'to the gods', continued in secret today by the Cult, is based on the same principle. 'The gods' are Archontic consciousness in different forms and the sacrifice is induced into a state of intense terror to generate the energy the Archontic frequency can absorb. Incarnate Archons in the ritual drink the blood which contains an adrenaline they crave which floods into the bloodstream when people are terrorised. Most of the sacrifices, ancient and modern, are children and the theme of 'sacrificing young virgins to the gods' is just code for children. They

have a particular pre-puberty energy that Archons want more than anything and the energy of the young in general is their target. The California Department of Education wants students to chant the names of Aztec gods (Archontic gods) once worshipped in human sacrifice rituals in a curriculum designed to encourage them to ‘challenge racist, bigoted, discriminatory, imperialist/colonial beliefs’, join ‘social movements that struggle for social justice’, and ‘build new possibilities for a post-racist, post-systemic racism society’. It’s the usual Woke crap that inverts racism and calls it anti-racism. In this case solidarity with ‘indigenous tribes’ is being used as an excuse to chant the names of ‘gods’ to which people were sacrificed (and still are in secret). What an example of Woke’s inability to see beyond black and white, us and them, They condemn the colonisation of these tribal cultures by Europeans (quite right), but those cultures sacrificing people including children to their ‘gods’, and mass murdering untold numbers as the Aztecs did, is just fine. One chant is to the Aztec god Tezcatlipoca who had a man sacrificed to him in the 5th month of the Aztec calendar. His heart was cut out and he was eaten. Oh, that’s okay then. Come on children … after three … Other sacrificial ‘gods’ for the young to chant their allegiance include Quetzalcoatl, Huitzilopochtli and Xipe Totec. The curriculum says that ‘chants, affirmations, and energizers can be used to bring the class together, build unity around ethnic studies principles and values, and to reinvigorate the class following a lesson that may be emotionally taxing or even when student engagement may appear to be low’. Well, that’s the cover story, anyway. Chanting and mantras are the repetition of a particular frequency generated from the vocal cords and chanting the names of these Archontic ‘gods’ tunes you into their frequency. That is the last thing you want when it allows for energetic synchronisation, attachment and perceptual influence. Initiates chant the names of their ‘Gods’ in their rituals for this very reason.

## **Vampires of the Woke**

Paedophilia is another way that Archons absorb the energy of children. Paedophiles possessed by Archontic consciousness are used as the conduit during sexual abuse for discarnate Archons to vampire the energy of the young they desire so much. Stupendous numbers of children disappear every year never to be seen again although you would never know from the media. Imagine how much low-vibrational energy has been generated by children during the 'Covid' hoax when so many have become depressed and psychologically destroyed to the point of killing themselves.

Shocking numbers of children are now taken by the state from loving parents to be handed to others. I can tell you from long experience of researching this since 1996 that many end up with paedophiles and assets of the Cult through corrupt and Cult-owned social services which in the reframing era has hired many psychopaths and emotionless automatons to do the job. Children are even stolen to order using spurious reasons to take them by the corrupt and secret (because they're corrupt) 'family courts'. I have written in detail in other books, starting with *The Biggest Secret* in 1997, about the ubiquitous connections between the political, corporate, government, intelligence and military elites (Cult operatives) and Satanism and paedophilia. If you go deep enough both networks have an interlocking leadership. The Woke mentality has been developed by the Cult for many reasons: To promote almost every aspect of its agenda; to hijack the traditional political left and turn it fascist; to divide and rule; and to target agenda pushbackers. But there are other reasons which relate to what I am describing here. How many happy and joyful Wokers do you ever see especially at the extreme end? They are a mental and psychological mess consumed by emotional stress and constantly emotionally cocked for the next explosion of indignation at someone referring to a female as a female. They are walking, talking, batteries as Morpheus might say emitting frequencies which both enslave them in low-vibrational bubbles of perceptual limitation and feed the Archons. Add to this the hatred claimed to be love; fascism claimed to 'anti-fascism', racism claimed to be 'anti-racism';

exclusion claimed to inclusion; and the abuse-filled Internet trolling. You have a purpose-built Archontic energy system with not a wind turbine in sight and all founded on Archontic *inversion*. We have whole generations now manipulated to serve the Archons with their actions and energy. They will be doing so their entire adult lives unless they snap out of their Archon-induced trance. Is it really a surprise that Cult billionaires and corporations put so much money their way? Where is the energy of joy and laughter, including laughing at yourself which is confirmation of your own emotional security? Mark Twain said: 'The human race has one really effective weapon, and that is laughter.' We must use it all the time. Woke has destroyed comedy because it has no humour, no joy, sense of irony, or self-deprecation. Its energy is dense and intense. *Mmmmm*, lunch says the Archontic frequency. Rudolf Steiner (1861-1925) was the Austrian philosopher and famous esoteric thinker who established Waldorf education or Steiner schools to treat children like unique expressions of consciousness and not minds to be programmed with the perceptions determined by authority. I'd been writing about this energy vampiring for decades when I was sent in 2016 a quote by Steiner. He was spot on:

There are beings in the spiritual realms for whom anxiety and fear emanating from human beings offer welcome food. When humans have no anxiety and fear, then these creatures starve. If fear and anxiety radiates from people and they break out in panic, then these creatures find welcome nutrition and they become more and more powerful. These beings are hostile towards humanity. Everything that feeds on negative feelings, on anxiety, fear and superstition, despair or doubt, are in reality hostile forces in super-sensible worlds, launching cruel attacks on human beings, while they are being fed ... These are exactly the feelings that belong to contemporary culture and materialism; because it estranges people from the spiritual world, it is especially suited to evoke hopelessness and fear of the unknown in people, thereby calling up the above mentioned hostile forces against them.

Pause for a moment from this perspective and reflect on what has happened in the world since the start of 2020. Not only will pennies drop, but billion dollar bills. We see the same theme from Don Juan Matus, a Yaqui Indian shaman in Mexico and the information source for Peruvian-born writer, Carlos Castaneda, who wrote a series of

books from the 1960s to 1990s. Don Juan described the force manipulating human society and his name for the Archons was the predator:

We have a predator that came from the depths of the cosmos and took over the rule of our lives. Human beings are its prisoners. The predator is our lord and master. It has rendered us docile, helpless. If we want to protest, it suppresses our protest. If we want to act independently, it demands that we don't do so ... indeed we are held prisoner!

They took us over because we are food to them, and they squeeze us mercilessly because we are their sustenance. Just as we rear chickens in coops, the predators rear us in human coops, humaneros. Therefore, their food is always available to them.

Different cultures, different eras, same recurring theme.

## **The 'ennoia' dilemma**

Nag Hammadi Gnostic manuscripts say that Archon consciousness has no 'ennoia'. This is directly translated as 'intentionality', but I'll use the term 'creative imagination'. The *All That Is* in awareness of itself is the source of all creativity – all possibility – and the more disconnected you are from that source the more you are subsequently denied 'creative imagination'. Given that Archon consciousness is almost entirely disconnected it severely lacks creativity and has to rely on far more mechanical processes of thought and exploit the creative potential of those that do have 'ennoia'. You can see cases of this throughout human society. Archon consciousness almost entirely dominates the global banking system and if we study how that system works you will appreciate what I mean. Banks manifest 'money' out of nothing by issuing lines of 'credit' which is 'money' that has never, does not, and will never exist except in theory. It's a confidence trick. If you think 'credit' figures-on-a-screen 'money' is worth anything you accept it as payment. If you don't then the whole system collapses through lack of confidence in the value of that 'money'. Archontic bankers with no 'ennoia' are 'lending' 'money' that doesn't exist to humans that *do* have creativity – those that have the inspired ideas and create businesses and products. Archon banking feeds off human creativity

which it controls through ‘money’ creation and debt. Humans have the creativity and Archons exploit that for their own benefit and control while having none themselves. Archon Internet platforms like Facebook claim joint copyright of everything that creative users post and while Archontic minds like Zuckerberg may officially head that company it will be human creatives on the staff that provide the creative inspiration. When you have limitless ‘money’ you can then buy other companies established by creative humans. Witness the acquisition record of Facebook, Google and their like. Survey the Archon-controlled music industry and you see non-creative dark suit executives making their fortune from the human creativity of their artists. The cases are endless. Research the history of people like Gates and Zuckerberg and how their empires were built on exploiting the creativity of others. Archon minds cannot create out of nothing, but they are skilled (because they have to be) in what Gnostic texts call ‘countermimicry’. They can imitate, but not innovate. Sabbatians trawl the creativity of others through backdoors they install in computer systems through their cybersecurity systems. Archon-controlled China is globally infamous for stealing intellectual property and I remember how Hong Kong, now part of China, became notorious for making counterfeit copies of the creativity of others – ‘countermimicry’. With the now pervasive and all-seeing surveillance systems able to infiltrate any computer you can appreciate the potential for Archons to vampire the creativity of humans. Author John Lamb Lash wrote in his book about the Nag Hammadi texts, *Not In His Image*:

Although they cannot originate anything, because they lack the divine factor of ennoia (intentionality), Archons can imitate with a vengeance. Their expertise is simulation (HAL, virtual reality). The Demiurge [Yaldabaoth] fashions a heaven world copied from the fractal patterns [of the original] ... His construction is celestial kitsch, like the fake Italianate villa of a Mafia don complete with militant angels to guard every portal.

This brings us to something that I have been speaking about since the turn of the millennium. Our reality is a simulation; a virtual reality that we think is real. No, I’m not kidding.

## **Human reality? Well, virtually**

I had pondered for years about whether our reality is ‘real’ or some kind of construct. I remembered being immensely affected on a visit as a small child in the late 1950s to the then newly-opened Planetarium on the Marylebone Road in London which is now closed and part of the adjacent Madame Tussauds wax museum. It was in the middle of the day, but when the lights went out there was the night sky projected in the Planetarium’s domed ceiling and it appeared to be so real. The experience never left me and I didn’t know why until around the turn of the millennium when I became certain that our ‘night sky’ and entire reality is a projection, a virtual reality, akin to the illusory world portrayed in the *Matrix* movies. I looked at the sky one day in this period and it appeared to me like the domed roof of the Planetarium. The release of the first *Matrix* movie in 1999 also provided a synchronistic and perfect visual representation of where my mind had been going for a long time. I hadn’t come across the Gnostic Nag Hammadi texts then. When I did years later the correlation was once again astounding. As I read Gnostic accounts from 1,600 years and more earlier it was clear that they were describing the same simulation phenomenon. They tell how the Yaldabaoth ‘Demiurge’ and Archons created a ‘bad copy’ of original reality to rule over all that were captured by its illusions and the body was a prison to trap consciousness in the ‘bad copy’ fake reality. Read how Gnostics describe the ‘bad copy’ and update that to current times and they are referring to what we would call today a virtual reality simulation.

Author John Lamb Lash said ‘the Demiurge fashions a heaven world copied from the fractal patterns’ of the original through expertise in ‘HAL’ or virtual reality simulation. Fractal patterns are part of the energetic information construct of our reality, a sort of blueprint. If these patterns were copied in computer terms it would indeed give you a copy of a ‘natural’ reality in a non-natural frequency and digital form. The principle is the same as making a copy of a website. The original website still exists, but now you can change the copy version to make it whatever you like and it can

become very different to the original website. Archons have done this with our reality, a *synthetic* copy of prime reality that still exists beyond the frequency walls of the simulation. Trapped within the illusions of this synthetic Matrix, however, were and are human consciousness and other expressions of prime reality and this is why the Archons via the Cult are seeking to make the human body synthetic and give us synthetic AI minds to complete the job of turning the entire reality synthetic including what we perceive to be the natural world. To quote Kurzweil: 'Nanobots will infuse all the matter around us with information. Rocks, trees, everything will become these intelligent creatures.' Yes, *synthetic* 'creatures' just as 'Covid' and other genetically-manipulating 'vaccines' are designed to make the human body synthetic. From this perspective it is obvious why Archons and their Cult are so desperate to infuse synthetic material into every human with their 'Covid' scam.

### **Let there be (electromagnetic) light**

Yaldabaoth, the force that created the simulation, or Matrix, makes sense of the Gnostic reference to 'The Great Architect' and its use by Cult Freemasonry as the name of its deity. The designer of the Matrix in the movies is called 'The Architect' and that trilogy is jam-packed with symbolism relating to these subjects. I have contended for years that the angry Old Testament God (Yaldabaoth) is the 'God' being symbolically 'quoted' in the opening of Genesis as 'creating the world'. This is not the creation of prime reality – it's the creation of the *simulation*. The Genesis 'God' says: 'Let there be Light: and there was light.' But what is this 'Light'? I have said for decades that the speed of light (186,000 miles per second) is not the fastest speed possible as claimed by mainstream science and is in fact the frequency walls or outer limits of the Matrix. You can't have a fastest or slowest anything within all possibility when everything is possible. The human body is encoded to operate within the speed of light or *within the simulation* and thus we see only the tiny frequency band of visible *light*. Near-death experiencers who perceive reality outside the body during temporary 'death' describe a very different

form of light and this is supported by the Nag Hammadi texts. Prime reality beyond the simulation ('Upper Aeons' to the Gnostics) is described as a realm of incredible beauty, bliss, love and harmony – a realm of 'watery light' that is so powerful 'there are no shadows'. Our false reality of Archon control, which Gnostics call the 'Lower Aeons', is depicted as a realm with a different kind of 'light' and described in terms of chaos, 'Hell', 'the Abyss' and 'Outer Darkness', where trapped souls are tormented and manipulated by demons (relate that to the 'Covid' hoax alone). The watery light theme can be found in near-death accounts and it is not the same as *simulation* 'light' which is electromagnetic or radiation light within the speed of light – the 'Lower Aeons'. Simulation 'light' is the 'luminous fire' associated by Gnostics with the Archons. The Bible refers to Yaldabaoth as 'that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world' (Revelation 12:9). I think that making a simulated copy of prime reality ('countermimicry') and changing it dramatically while all the time manipulating humanity to believe it to be real could probably meet the criteria of deceiving the whole world. Then we come to the Cult god Lucifer – the *Light Bringer*. Lucifer is symbolic of Yaldabaoth, the bringer of radiation light that forms the bad copy simulation within the speed of light. 'He' is symbolised by the lighted torch held by the Statue of Liberty and in the name 'Illuminati'. Sabbatian-Frankism declares that Lucifer is the true god and Lucifer is the real god of Freemasonry honoured as their 'Great or Grand Architect of the Universe' (simulation).

I would emphasise, too, the way Archontic technologically-generated luminous fire of radiation has deluged our environment since I was a kid in the 1950s and changed the nature of The Field with which we constantly interact. Through that interaction technological radiation is changing us. The Smart Grid is designed to operate with immense levels of communication power with 5G expanding across the world and 6G, 7G, in the process of development. Radiation is the simulation and the Archontic manipulation system. Why wouldn't the Archon Cult wish to unleash radiation upon us to an ever-greater extreme to form

Kurzweil's 'cloud'? The plan for a synthetic human is related to the need to cope with levels of radiation beyond even anything we've seen so far. Biological humans would not survive the scale of radiation they have in their script. The Smart Grid is a technological sub-reality within the technological simulation to further disconnect five-sense perception from expanded consciousness. It's a technological prison of the mind.

### **Infusing the 'spirit of darkness'**

A recurring theme in religion and native cultures is the manipulation of human genetics by a non-human force and most famously recorded as the biblical 'sons of god' (the gods plural in the original) who interbred with the daughters of men. The Nag Hammadi *Apocryphon of John* tells the same story this way:

He [Yaldabaoth] sent his angels [Archons/demons] to the daughters of men, that they might take some of them for themselves and raise offspring for their enjoyment. And at first they did not succeed. When they had no success, they gathered together again and they made a plan together ... And the angels changed themselves in their likeness into the likeness of their mates, filling them with the spirit of darkness, which they had mixed for them, and with evil ... And they took women and begot children out of the darkness according to the likeness of their spirit.

Possession when a discarnate entity takes over a human body is an age-old theme and continues today. It's very real and I've seen it. Satanic and secret society rituals can create an energetic environment in which entities can attach to initiates and I've heard many stories of how people have changed their personality after being initiated even into lower levels of the Freemasons. I have been inside three Masonic temples, one at a public open day and two by just walking in when there was no one around to stop me. They were in Ryde, the town where I live, Birmingham, England, when I was with a group, and Boston, Massachusetts. They all felt the same energetically – dark, dense, low-vibrational and sinister. Demonic attachment can happen while the initiate has no idea what is going on. To them it's just a ritual to get in the Masons and do a bit of good

business. In the far more extreme rituals of Satanism human possession is even more powerful and they are designed to make possession possible. The hierarchy of the Cult is dictated by the power and perceived status of the possessing Archon. In this way the Archon hierarchy becomes the Cult hierarchy. Once the entity has attached it can influence perception and behaviour and if it attaches to the extreme then so much of its energy (information) infuses into the body information field that the hologram starts to reflect the nature of the possessing entity. This is the *Exorcist* movie type of possession when facial features change and it's known as shapeshifting. Islam's Jinn are said to be invisible tricksters who change shape, 'whisper', confuse and take human form. These are all traits of the Archons and other versions of the same phenomenon. Extreme possession could certainty infuse the 'spirit of darkness' into a partner during sex as the Nag Hammadi texts appear to describe. Such an infusion can change genetics which is also energetic information. Human genetics is information and the 'spirit of darkness' is information. Mix one with the other and change must happen. Islam has the concept of a 'Jinn baby' through possession of the mother and by Jinn taking human form. There are many ways that human genetics can be changed and remember that Archons have been aware all along of advanced techniques to do this. What is being done in human society today – and far more – was known about by Archons at the time of the 'fallen ones' and their other versions described in religions and cultures.

Archons and their human-world Cult are obsessed with genetics as we see today and they know this dictates how information is processed into perceived reality during a human life. They needed to produce a human form that would decode the simulation and this is symbolically known as 'Adam and Eve' who left the 'garden' (prime reality) and 'fell' into Matrix reality. The simulation is not a 'physical' construct (there is no 'physical'); it is a source of information. Think Wi-Fi again. The simulation is an energetic field encoded with information and body-brain systems are designed to decode that information encoded in wave or frequency form which

is transmitted to the brain as electrical signals. These are decoded by the brain to construct our sense of reality – an illusory ‘physical’ world that only exists in the brain or the mind. Virtual reality games mimic this process using the same sensory decoding system. Information is fed to the senses to decode a virtual reality that can appear so real, but isn’t (Figs 18 and 19). Some scientists believe – and I agree with them – that what we perceive as ‘physical’ reality only exists when we are looking or observing. The act of perception or focus triggers the decoding systems which turn waveform information into holographic reality. When we are not observing something our reality reverts from a holographic state to a waveform state. This relates to the same principle as a falling tree not making a noise unless someone is there to hear it or decode it. The concept makes sense from the simulation perspective. A computer is not decoding all the information in a Wi-Fi field all the time and only decodes or brings into reality on the screen that part of Wi-Fi that it’s decoding – focusing upon – at that moment.



**Figure 18:** Virtual reality technology ‘hacks’ into the body’s five-sense decoding system.



**Figure 19:** The result can be experienced as very ‘real’.

Interestingly, Professor Donald Hoffman at the Department of Cognitive Sciences at the University of California, Irvine, says that our experienced reality is like a computer interface that shows us only the level with which we interact while hiding all that exists beyond it: ‘Evolution shaped us with a user interface that hides the truth. Nothing that we see is the truth – the very language of space and time and objects is the wrong language to describe reality.’ He is correct in what he says on so many levels. Space and time are not a universal reality. They are a phenomenon of decoded *simulation* reality as part of the process of enslaving our sense of reality. Near-death experiencers report again and again how space and time did not exist as we perceive them once they were free of the body – body decoding systems. You can appreciate from this why Archons and their Cult are so desperate to entrap human attention in the five senses where we are in the Matrix and of the Matrix. Opening your mind to expanded states of awareness takes you beyond the information confines of the simulation and you become aware of knowledge and insights denied to you before. This is what we call ‘awakening’ – *awakening from the Matrix* – and in the final chapter I will relate this to current events.

## **Where are the ‘aliens’?**

A simulation would explain the so-called ‘Fermi Paradox’ named after Italian physicist Enrico Fermi (1901-1954) who created the first nuclear reactor. He considered the question of why there is such a lack of extraterrestrial activity when there are so many stars and planets in an apparently vast universe; but what if the night sky that we see, or think we do, is a simulated projection as I say? If you control the simulation and your aim is to hold humanity fast in essential ignorance would you want other forms of life including advanced life coming and going sharing information with humanity? Or would you want them to believe they were isolated and apparently alone? Themes of human isolation and apartness are common whether they be the perception of a lifeless universe or the fascist isolation laws of the ‘Covid’ era. Paradoxically the very

existence of a simulation means that we are not alone when some force had to construct it. My view is that experiences that people have reported all over the world for centuries with Reptilians and Grey entities are Archon phenomena as Nag Hammadi texts describe; and that benevolent 'alien' interactions are non-human groups that come in and out of the simulation by overcoming Archon attempts to keep them out. It should be highlighted, too, that Reptilians and Greys are obsessed with *genetics* and *technology* as related by cultural accounts and those who say they have been abducted by them. Technology is their way of overcoming some of the limitations in their creative potential and our technology-driven and controlled human society of today is *archetypical* Archon-Reptilian-Grey modus operandi. Technocracy is really *Archontocracy*. The Universe does not have to be as big as it appears with a simulation. There is no space or distance only information decoded into holographic reality. What we call 'space' is only the absence of holographic 'objects' and that 'space' is The Field of energetic information which connects everything into a single whole. The same applies with the artificially-generated information field of the simulation. The Universe is not big or small as a physical reality. It is decoded information, that's all, and its perceived size is decided by the way the simulation is encoded to make it appear. The entire night sky as we perceive it only exists in our brain and so where are those 'millions of light years'? The 'stars' on the ceiling of the Planetarium looked a vast distance away.

There's another point to mention about 'aliens'. I have been highlighting since the 1990s the plan to stage a fake 'alien invasion' to justify the centralisation of global power and a world military. Nazi scientist Werner von Braun, who was taken to America by Operation Paperclip after World War Two to help found NASA, told his American assistant Dr Carol Rosin about the Cult agenda when he knew he was dying in 1977. Rosin said that he told her about a sequence that would lead to total human control by a one-world government. This included threats from terrorism, rogue nations, meteors and asteroids before finally an 'alien invasion'. All of these

things, von Braun said, would be bogus and what I would refer to as a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Keep this in mind when ‘the aliens are coming’ is the new mantra. The aliens are not coming – they are *already here* and they have infiltrated human society while looking human. French-Canadian investigative journalist Serge Monast said in 1994 that he had uncovered a NASA/military operation called Project Blue Beam which fits with what Werner von Braun predicted. Monast died of a ‘heart attack’ in 1996 the day after he was arrested and spent a night in prison. He was 51. He said Blue Beam was a plan to stage an alien invasion that would include religious figures beamed holographically into the sky as part of a global manipulation to usher in a ‘new age’ of worshipping what I would say is the Cult ‘god’ Yaldabaoth in a one-world religion. Fake holographic asteroids are also said to be part of the plan which again syncs with von Braun. How could you stage an illusory threat from asteroids unless they were holographic inserts? This is pretty straightforward given the advanced technology outside the public arena and the fact that our ‘physical’ reality is holographic anyway. Information fields would be projected and we would decode them into the illusion of a ‘physical’ asteroid. If they can sell a global ‘pandemic’ with a ‘virus’ that doesn’t exist what will humans not believe if government and media tell them?

All this is particularly relevant as I write with the Pentagon planning to release in June, 2021, information about ‘UFO sightings’. I have been following the UFO story since the early 1990s and the common theme throughout has been government and military denials and cover up. More recently, however, the Pentagon has suddenly become more talkative and apparently open with Air Force pilot radar images released of unexplained craft moving and changing direction at speeds well beyond anything believed possible with human technology. Then, in March, 2021, former Director of National Intelligence John Ratcliffe said a Pentagon report months later in June would reveal a great deal of information about UFO sightings unknown to the public. He said the report would have ‘massive implications’. The order to do this was included bizarrely

in a \$2.3 trillion ‘coronavirus’ relief and government funding bill passed by the Trump administration at the end of 2020. I would add some serious notes of caution here. I have been pointing out since the 1990s that the US military and intelligence networks have long had craft – ‘flying saucers’ or anti-gravity craft – which any observer would take to be extraterrestrial in origin. Keeping this knowledge from the public allows craft flown by *humans* to be perceived as alien visitations. I am not saying that ‘aliens’ do not exist. I would be the last one to say that, but we have to be streetwise here. President Ronald Reagan told the UN General Assembly in 1987: ‘I occasionally think how quickly our differences worldwide would vanish if we were facing an alien threat from outside this world.’ That’s the idea. Unite against a common ‘enemy’ with a common purpose behind your ‘saviour force’ (the Cult) as this age-old technique of mass manipulation goes global.

### **Science moves this way ...**

I could find only one other person who was discussing the simulation hypothesis publicly when I concluded it was real. This was Nick Bostrom, a Swedish-born philosopher at the University of Oxford, who has explored for many years the possibility that human reality is a computer simulation although his version and mine are not the same. Today the simulation and holographic reality hypothesis have increasingly entered the scientific mainstream. Well, the more open-minded mainstream, that is. Here are a few of the ever-gathering examples. American nuclear physicist Silas Beane led a team of physicists at the University of Bonn in Germany pursuing the question of whether we live in a simulation. They concluded that we probably do and it was likely based on a lattice of cubes. They found that cosmic rays align with that specific pattern. The team highlighted the Greisen-Zatsepin-Kuzmin (GZK) limit which refers to cosmic ray particle interaction with cosmic background radiation that creates an apparent boundary for cosmic ray particles. They say in a paper entitled ‘Constraints on the Universe as a Numerical Simulation’ that this ‘pattern of constraint’ is exactly what you

would find with a computer simulation. They also made the point that a simulation would create its own ‘laws of physics’ that would limit possibility. I’ve been making the same point for decades that the *perceived* laws of physics relate only to this reality, or what I would later call the simulation. When designers write codes to create computer and virtual reality games they are the equivalent of the laws of physics for that game. Players interact within the limitations laid out by the coding. In the same way those who wrote the codes for the simulation decided the laws of physics that would apply. These can be overridden by expanded states of consciousness, but not by those enslaved in only five-sense awareness where simulation codes rule. Overriding the codes is what people call ‘miracles’. They are not. They are bypassing the encoded limits of the simulation. A population caught in simulation perception would have no idea that this was their plight. As the Bonn paper said: ‘Like a prisoner in a pitch-black cell we would not be able to see the “walls” of our prison.’ That’s true if people remain mesmerised by the five senses. Open to expanded awareness and those walls become very clear. The main one is the speed of light.

American theoretical physicist James Gates is another who has explored the simulation question and found considerable evidence to support the idea. Gates was Professor of Physics at the University of Maryland, Director of The Center for String and Particle Theory, and on Barack Obama’s Council of Advisors on Science and Technology. He and his team found *computer codes* of digital data embedded in the fabric of our reality. They relate to on-off electrical charges of 1 and 0 in the binary system used by computers. ‘We have no idea what they are doing there’, Gates said. They found within the energetic fabric mathematical sequences known as error-correcting codes or block codes that ‘reboot’ data to its original state or ‘default settings’ when something knocks it out of sync. Gates was asked if he had found a set of equations embedded in our reality indistinguishable from those that drive search engines and browsers and he said: ‘That is correct.’ Rich Terrile, director of the Centre for Evolutionary Computation and Automated Design at NASA’s Jet

Propulsion Laboratory, has said publicly that he believes the Universe is a digital hologram that must have been created by a form of intelligence. I agree with that in every way. Waveform information is delivered electrically by the senses to the brain which constructs a *digital* holographic reality that we call the ‘world’. This digital level of reality can be read by the esoteric art of numerology. Digital holograms are at the cutting edge of holographics today. We have digital technology everywhere designed to access and manipulate our digital level of perceived reality. Synthetic mRNA in ‘Covid vaccines’ has a digital component to manipulate the body’s digital ‘operating system’.

## **Reality is numbers**

How many know that our reality can be broken down to numbers and codes that are the same as computer games? Max Tegmark, a physicist at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), is the author of *Our Mathematical Universe* in which he lays out how reality can be entirely described by numbers and maths in the way that a video game is encoded with the ‘physics’ of computer games. Our world and computer virtual reality are essentially the same.

Tegmark imagines the perceptions of characters in an advanced computer game when the graphics are so good they don’t know they are in a game. They think they can bump into real objects (electromagnetic resistance in our reality), fall in love and feel emotions like excitement. When they began to study the apparently ‘physical world’ of the video game they would realise that everything was made of pixels (which have been found in our energetic reality as must be the case when on one level our world is digital). What computer game characters thought was physical ‘stuff’, Tegmark said, could actually be broken down into numbers:

And we’re exactly in this situation in our world. We look around and it doesn’t seem that mathematical at all, but everything we see is made out of elementary particles like quarks and electrons. And what properties does an electron have? Does it have a smell or a colour or a texture? No! ... We physicists have come up with geeky names for [Electron] properties, like

electric charge, or spin, or lepton number, but the electron doesn't care what we call it, the properties are just numbers.

This is the illusory reality Gnostics were describing. This is the simulation. The A, C, G, and T codes of DNA have a binary value – A and C = 0 while G and T = 1. This has to be when the simulation is digital and the body must be digital to interact with it. Recurring mathematical sequences are encoded throughout reality and the body. They include the Fibonacci sequence in which the two previous numbers are added to get the next one, as in ... 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, etc. The sequence is encoded in the human face and body, proportions of animals, DNA, seed heads, pine cones, trees, shells, spiral galaxies, hurricanes and the number of petals in a flower. The list goes on and on. There are fractal patterns – a 'never-ending pattern that is infinitely complex and self-similar across all scales in the as above, so below, principle of holograms. These and other famous recurring geometrical and mathematical sequences such as Phi, Pi, Golden Mean, Golden Ratio and Golden Section are *computer codes* of the simulation. I had to laugh and give my head a shake the day I finished this book and it went into the production stage. I was sent an article in *Scientific American* published in April, 2021, with the headline 'Confirmed! We Live in a Simulation'. Two decades after I first said our reality is a simulation and the speed of light is its outer limit the article suggested that we do live in a simulation and that the speed of light is its outer limit. I left school at 15 and never passed a major exam in my life while the writer was up to his eyes in qualifications. As I will explain in the final chapter *knowing* is far better than thinking and they come from very different sources. The article rightly connected the speed of light to the processing speed of the 'Matrix' and said what has been in my books all this time ... 'If we are in a simulation, as it appears, then space is an abstract property written in code. It is not real'. No it's not and if we live in a simulation something created it and it wasn't *us*. 'That David Icke says we are manipulated by aliens' – he's crackers.'

## **Wow ...**

The reality that humanity thinks is so real is an illusion. Politicians, governments, scientists, doctors, academics, law enforcement, media, school and university curriculums, on and on, are all founded on a world that *does not exist* except as a simulated prison cell. Is it such a stretch to accept that 'Covid' doesn't exist when our entire 'physical' reality doesn't exist? Revealed here is the knowledge kept under raps in the Cult networks of compartmentalised secrecy to control humanity's sense of reality by inducing the population to believe in a reality that's not real. If it wasn't so tragic in its experiential consequences the whole thing would be hysterically funny. None of this is new to Renegade Minds. Ancient Greek philosopher Plato (about 428 to about 347BC) was a major influence on Gnostic belief and he described the human plight thousands of years ago with his Allegory of the Cave. He told the symbolic story of prisoners living in a cave who had never been outside. They were chained and could only see one wall of the cave while behind them was a fire that they could not see. Figures walked past the fire casting shadows on the prisoners' wall and those moving shadows became their sense of reality. Some prisoners began to study the shadows and were considered experts on them (today's academics and scientists), but what they studied was only an illusion (today's academics and scientists). A prisoner escaped from the cave and saw reality as it really is. When he returned to report this revelation they didn't believe him, called him mad and threatened to kill him if he tried to set them free. Plato's tale is not only a brilliant analogy of the human plight and our illusory reality. It describes, too, the dynamics of the 'Covid' hoax. I have only skimmed the surface of these subjects here. The aim of this book is to crisply connect all essential dots to put what is happening today into its true context. All subject areas and their connections in this chapter are covered in great evidential detail in *Everything You Need To Know, But Have Never Been Told* and *The Answer*.

They say that bewildered people 'can't see the forest for the trees'. Humanity, however, can't see the forest for the *twigs*. The five senses

see only twigs while Renegade Minds can see the forest and it's the forest where the answers lie with the connections that reveals. Breaking free of perceptual programming so the forest can be seen is the way we turn all this around. Not breaking free is how humanity got into this mess. The situation may seem hopeless, but I promise you it's not. We are a perceptual heartbeat from paradise if only we knew.

## CHAPTER TWELVE

### Escaping Wetiko

*Life is simply a vacation from the infinite*

Dean Cavanagh

Renegade Minds weave the web of life and events and see common themes in the apparently random. They are always there if you look for them and their pursuit is aided by incredible synchronicity that comes when your mind is open rather than mesmerised by what it thinks it can see.

Infinite awareness is infinite possibility and the more of infinite possibility that we access the more becomes infinitely possible. That may be stating the apparently obvious, but it is a devastatingly-powerful fact that can set us free. We are a point of attention within an infinity of consciousness. The question is how much of that infinity do we choose to access? How much knowledge, insight, awareness, wisdom, do we want to connect with and explore? If your focus is only in the five senses you will be influenced by a fraction of infinite awareness. I mean a range so tiny that it gives new meaning to infinitesimal. Limitation of self-identity and a sense of the possible limit accordingly your range of consciousness. We are what we think we are. Life is what we think it is. The dream is the dreamer and the dreamer is the dream. Buddhist philosophy puts it this way: 'As a thing is viewed, so it appears.' Most humans live in the realm of touch, taste, see, hear, and smell and that's the limit of their sense of the possible and sense of self. Many will follow a religion and speak of a God in his heaven, but their lives are still

dominated by the five senses in their perceptions and actions. The five senses become the arbiter of everything. When that happens all except a smear of infinity is sealed away from influence by the rigid, unyielding, reality bubbles that are the five-sense human or Phantom Self. Archon Cult methodology is to isolate consciousness within five-sense reality – the simulation – and then program that consciousness with a sense of self and the world through a deluge of life-long information designed to instil the desired perception that allows global control. Efforts to do this have increased dramatically with identity politics as identity bubbles are squeezed into the minutiae of five-sense detail which disconnect people even more profoundly from the infinite ‘I’.

Five-sense focus and self-identity are like a firewall that limits access to the infinite realms. You only perceive one radio or television station and no other. We’ll take that literally for a moment. Imagine a vast array of stations giving different information and angles on reality, but you only ever listen to one. Here we have the human plight in which the population is overwhelmingly confined to CultFM. This relates only to the frequency range of CultFM and limits perception and insight to that band – limits *possibility* to that band. It means you are connecting with an almost imperceptibly minuscule range of possibility and creative potential within the infinite Field. It’s a world where everything seems apart from everything else and where synchronicity is rare. Synchronicity is defined in the dictionary as ‘the happening by chance of two or more related or similar events at the same time’. Use of ‘by chance’ betrays a complete misunderstanding of reality. Synchronicity is not ‘by chance’. As people open their minds, or ‘awaken’ to use the term, they notice more and more coincidences in their lives, bits of ‘luck’, apparently miraculous happenings that put them in the right place at the right time with the right people. Days become peppered with ‘fancy meeting you here’ and ‘what are the chances of that?’ My entire life has been lived like this and ever more so since my own colossal awakening in 1990 and 91 which transformed my sense of reality. Synchronicity is not ‘by chance’; it is by accessing expanded

realms of possibility which allow expanded potential for manifestation. People broadcasting the same vibe from the same openness of mind tend to be drawn ‘by chance’ to each other through what I call frequency magnetism and it’s not only people. In the last more than 30 years incredible synchronicity has also led me through the Cult maze to information in so many forms and to crucial personal experiences. These ‘coincidences’ have allowed me to put the puzzle pieces together across an enormous array of subjects and situations. Those who have breached the bubble of five-sense reality will know exactly what I mean and this escape from the perceptual prison cell is open to everyone whenever they make that choice. This may appear super-human when compared with the limitations of ‘human’, but it’s really our natural state. ‘Human’ as currently experienced is consciousness in an unnatural state of induced separation from the infinity of the whole. I’ll come to how this transformation into unity can be made when I have described in more detail the force that holds humanity in servitude by denying this access to infinite self.

## **The Wetiko factor**

I have been talking and writing for decades about the way five-sense mind is systematically barricaded from expanded awareness. I have used the analogy of a computer (five-sense mind) and someone at the keyboard (expanded awareness). Interaction between the computer and the operator is symbolic of the interaction between five-sense mind and expanded awareness. The computer directly experiences the Internet and the operator experiences the Internet via the computer which is how it’s supposed to be – the two working as one. Archons seek to control that point where the operator connects with the computer to stop that interaction ([Fig 20](#)). Now the operator is banging the keyboard and clicking the mouse, but the computer is not responding and this happens when the computer is taken over – *possessed* – by an appropriately-named computer ‘virus’. The operator has lost all influence over the computer which goes its own way making decisions under the control of the ‘virus’. I have

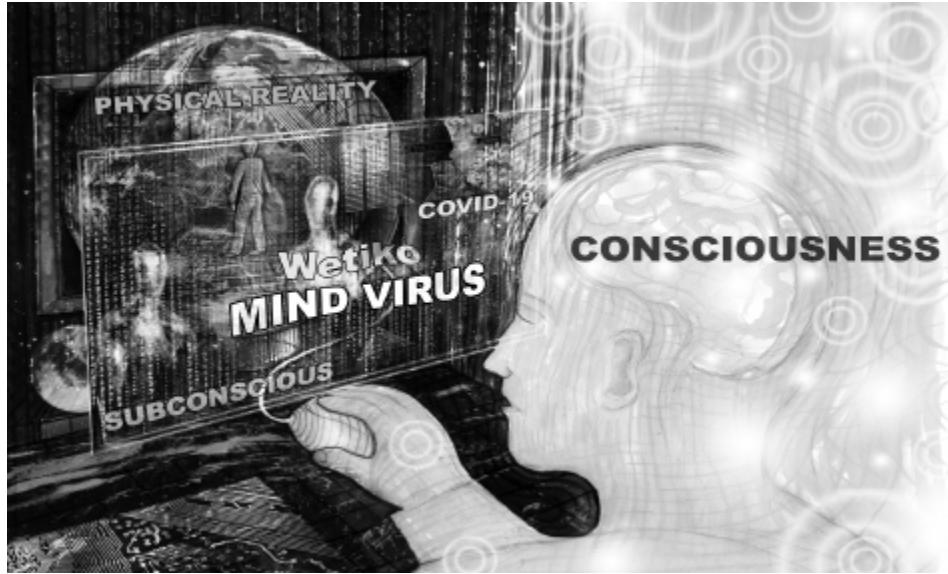
just described the dynamic through which the force known to Gnostics as Yaldabaoth and Archons disconnects five-sense mind from expanded awareness to imprison humanity in perceptual servitude.



**Figure 20:** The mind ‘virus’ I have been writing about for decades seeks to isolate five-sense mind (the computer) from the true ‘I’. (Image by Neil Hague).

About a year ago I came across a Native American concept of Wetiko which describes precisely the same phenomenon. Wetiko is the spelling used by the Cree and there are other versions including wintiko and windigo used by other tribal groups. They spell the name with lower case, but I see Wetiko as a proper noun as with Archons and prefer a capital. I first saw an article about Wetiko by writer and researcher Paul Levy which so synced with what I had been writing about the computer/operator disconnection and later the Archons. I then read his book, the fascinating *Dispelling Wetiko, Breaking the Spell of Evil*. The parallels between what I had concluded long before and the Native American concept of Wetiko were so clear and obvious that it was almost funny. For Wetiko see the Gnostic Archons for sure and the Jinn, the Predators, and every other name for a force of evil, inversion and chaos. Wetiko is the Native American name for the force that divides the computer from

the operator ([Fig 21](#)). Indigenous author Jack D. Forbes, a founder of the Native American movement in the 1960s, wrote another book about Wetiko entitled *Columbus And Other Cannibals – The Wetiko Disease of Exploitation, Imperialism, and Terrorism* which I also read. Forbes says that Wetiko refers to an evil person or spirit ‘who terrorizes other creatures by means of terrible acts, including cannibalism’. Zulu shaman Credo Mutwa told me that African accounts tell how cannibalism was brought into the world by the Chitauri ‘gods’ – another manifestation of Wetiko. The distinction between ‘evil person or spirit’ relates to Archons/Wetiko possessing a human or acting as pure consciousness. Wetiko is said to be a sickness of the soul or spirit and a state of being that takes but gives nothing back – the Cult and its operatives perfectly described. Black Hawk, a Native American war leader defending their lands from confiscation, said European invaders had ‘poisoned hearts’ – Wetiko hearts – and that this would spread to native societies. Mention of the heart is very significant as we shall shortly see. Forbes writes: ‘Tragically, the history of the world for the past 2,000 years is, in great part, the story of the epidemiology of the wetiko disease.’ Yes, and much longer. Forbes is correct when he says: ‘The wetikos destroyed Egypt and Babylon and Athens and Rome and Tenochtitlan [capital of the Aztec empire] and perhaps now they will destroy the entire earth.’ Evil, he said, is the number one export of a Wetiko culture – see its globalisation with ‘Covid’. Constant war, mass murder, suffering of all kinds, child abuse, Satanism, torture and human sacrifice are all expressions of Wetiko and the Wetiko possessed. The world is Wetiko made manifest, *but it doesn’t have to be*. There is a way out of this even now.



**Figure 21:** The mind ‘virus’ is known to Native Americans as ‘Wetiko’. (Image by Neil Hague).

## Cult of Wetiko

Wetiko is the Yaldabaoth frequency distortion that seeks to attach to human consciousness and absorb it into its own. Once this connection is made Wetiko can drive the perceptions of the target which they believe to be coming from their own mind. All the horrors of history and today from mass killers to Satanists, paedophiles like Jeffrey Epstein and other psychopaths, are the embodiment of Wetiko and express its state of being in all its grotesqueness. The Cult is Wetiko incarnate, Yaldabaoth incarnate, and it seeks to facilitate Wetiko assimilation of humanity in totality into its distortion by manipulating the population into low frequency states that match its own. Paul Levy writes: ‘Holographically enforced within the psyche of every human being the wetiko virus pervades and underlies the entire field of consciousness, and can therefore potentially manifest through any one of us at any moment if we are not mindful.’ The ‘Covid’ hoax has achieved this with many people, but others have not fallen into Wetiko’s frequency lair. Players in the ‘Covid’ human catastrophe including Gates, Schwab, Tedros, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance, Johnson, Hancock, Ferguson, Drosten, and all the rest, including the psychopath psychologists, are expressions of Wetiko. This is why

they have no compassion or empathy and no emotional consequence for what they do that would make them stop doing it. Observe all the people who support the psychopaths in authority against the Pushbackers despite the damaging impact the psychopaths have on their own lives and their family's lives. You are again looking at Wetiko possession which prevents them seeing through the lies to the obvious scam going on. *Why can't they see it?* Wetiko won't let them see it. The perceptual divide that has now become a chasm is between the Wetikoed and the non-Wetikoed.

Paul Levy describes Wetiko in the same way that I have long described the Archontic force. They are the same distorted consciousness operating across dimensions of reality: '... the subtle body of wetiko is not located in the third dimension of space and time, literally existing in another dimension ... it is able to affect ordinary lives by mysteriously interpenetrating into our three-dimensional world.' Wetiko does this through its incarnate representatives in the Cult and by weaving itself into The Field which on our level of reality is the electromagnetic information field of the simulation or Matrix. More than that, the simulation *is* Wetiko / Yaldabaoth. Caleb Scharf, Director of Astrobiology at Columbia University, has speculated that 'alien life' could be so advanced that it has transcribed itself into the quantum realm to become what we call physics. He said intelligence indistinguishable from the fabric of the Universe would solve many of its greatest mysteries:

Perhaps hyper-advanced life isn't just external. Perhaps it's already all around. It is embedded in what we perceive to be physics itself, from the root behaviour of particles and fields to the phenomena of complexity and emergence ... In other words, life might not just be in the equations. It might BE the equations [My emphasis].

Scharf said it is possible that 'we don't recognise advanced life because it forms an integral and unsuspicious part of what we've considered to be the natural world'. I agree. Wetiko/Yaldabaoth *is* the simulation. We are literally in the body of the beast. But that doesn't mean it has to control us. We all have the power to overcome Wetiko

influence and the Cult knows that. I doubt it sleeps too well because it knows that.

## **Which Field?**

This, I suggest, is how it all works. There are two Fields. One is the fierce electromagnetic light of the Matrix within the speed of light; the other is the ‘watery light’ of The Field beyond the walls of the Matrix that connects with the Great Infinity. Five-sense mind and the decoding systems of the body attach us to the Field of Matrix light. They have to or we could not experience this reality. Five-sense mind sees only the Matrix Field of information while our expanded consciousness is part of the Infinity Field. When we open our minds, and most importantly our hearts, to the Infinity Field we have a mission control which gives us an expanded perspective, a road map, to understand the nature of the five-sense world. If we are isolated only in five-sense mind there is no mission control. We’re on our own trying to understand a world that’s constantly feeding us information to ensure we do not understand. People in this state can feel ‘lost’ and bewildered with no direction or radar. You can see ever more clearly those who are influenced by the Fields of Big Infinity or little five-sense mind simply by their views and behaviour with regard to the ‘Covid’ hoax. We have had this division throughout known human history with the mass of the people on one side and individuals who could see and intuit beyond the walls of the simulation – Plato’s prisoner who broke out of the cave and saw reality for what it is. Such people have always been targeted by Wetiko/Archon-possessed authority, burned at the stake or demonised as mad, bad and dangerous. The Cult today and its global network of ‘anti-hate’, ‘anti-fascist’ Woke groups are all expressions of Wetiko attacking those exposing the conspiracy, ‘Covid’ lies and the ‘vaccine’ agenda.

Woke as a whole is Wetiko which explains its black and white mentality and how at one it is with the Wetiko-possessed Cult. Paul Levy said: ‘To be in this paradigm is to still be under the thrall of a two-valued logic – where things are either true or false – of a

wetikoized mind.' Wetiko consciousness is in a permanent rage, therefore so is Woke, and then there is Woke inversion and contradiction. 'Anti-fascists' act like fascists because fascists *and* 'anti-fascists' are both Wetiko at work. Political parties act the same while claiming to be different for the same reason. Secret society and satanic rituals are attaching initiates to Wetiko and the cold, ruthless, psychopathic mentality that secures the positions of power all over the world is Wetiko. Reframing 'training programmes' have the same cumulative effect of attaching Wetiko and we have their graduates described as automatons and robots with a cold, psychopathic, uncaring demeanour. They are all traits of Wetiko possession and look how many times they have been described in this book and elsewhere with regard to personnel behind 'Covid' including the police and medical profession. Climbing the greasy pole in any profession in a Wetiko society requires traits of Wetiko to get there and that is particularly true of politics which is not about fair competition and pre-eminence of ideas. It is founded on how many backs you can stab and arses you can lick. This culminated in the global 'Covid' coordination between the Wetiko possessed who pulled it off in all the different countries without a trace of empathy and compassion for their impact on humans. Our sight sense can see only holographic form and not the Field which connects holographic form. Therefore we perceive 'physical' objects with 'space' in between. In fact that 'space' is energy/consciousness operating on multiple frequencies. One of them is Wetiko and that connects the Cult psychopaths, those who submit to the psychopaths, and those who serve the psychopaths in the media operations of the world. Wetiko is Gates. Wetiko is the mask-wearing submissive. Wetiko is the fake journalist and 'fact-checker'. The Wetiko Field is coordinating the whole thing. Psychopaths, gofers, media operatives, 'anti-hate' hate groups, 'fact-checkers' and submissive people work as one unit *even without human coordination* because they are attached to the *same* Field which is organising it all ([Fig 22](#)). Paul Levy is here describing how Wetiko-possessed people are drawn together and refuse to let any information breach their rigid

perceptions. He was writing long before ‘Covid’, but I think you will recognise followers of the ‘Covid’ religion *oh just a little bit*:

People who are channelling the vibratory frequency of wetiko align with each other through psychic resonance to reinforce their unspoken shared agreement so as to uphold their deranged view of reality. Once an unconscious content takes possession of certain individuals, it irresistibly draws them together by mutual attraction and knits them into groups tied together by their shared madness that can easily swell into an avalanche of insanity.

A psychic epidemic is a closed system, which is to say that it is insular and not open to any new information or informing influences from the outside world which contradict its fixed, limited, and limiting perspective.

There we have the Woke mind and the ‘Covid’ mind. Compatible resonance draws the awakening together, too, which is clearly happening today.



**Figure 22:** The Wetiko Field from which the Cult pyramid and its personnel are made manifest. (Image by Neil Hague).

## Spiritual servitude

Wetiko doesn’t care about humans. It’s not human; it just possesses humans for its own ends and the effect (depending on the scale of

possession) can be anything from extreme psychopathy to unquestioning obedience. Wetiko's worst nightmare is for human consciousness to expand beyond the simulation. Everything is focussed on stopping that happening through control of information, thus perception, thus frequency. The 'education system', media, science, medicine, academia, are all geared to maintaining humanity in five-sense servitude as is the constant stimulation of low-vibrational mental and emotional states (see 'Covid'). Wetiko seeks to dominate those subconscious spaces between five-sense perception and expanded consciousness where the computer meets the operator. From these subconscious hiding places Wetiko speaks to us to trigger urges and desires that we take to be our own and manipulate us into anything from low-vibrational to psychopathic states. Remember how Islam describes the Jinn as invisible tricksters that 'whisper' and confuse. Wetiko is the origin of the 'trickster god' theme that you find in cultures all over the world. Jinn, like the Archons, are Wetiko which is terrified of humans awakening and reconnecting with our true self for then its energy source has gone. With that the feedback loop breaks between Wetiko and human perception that provides the energetic momentum on which its very existence depends as a force of evil. Humans are both its target and its source of survival, but only if we are operating in low-vibrational states of fear, hate, depression and the background anxiety that most people suffer. We are Wetiko's target because we are its key to survival. It needs us, not the other way round. Paul Levy writes:

A vampire has no intrinsic, independent, substantial existence in its own right; it only exists in relation to us. The pathogenic, vampiric mind-parasite called wetiko is nothing in itself – not being able to exist from its own side – yet it has a 'virtual reality' such that it can potentially destroy our species ...

...The fact that a vampire is not reflected by a mirror can also mean that what we need to see is that there's nothing, no-thing to see, other than ourselves. The fact that wetiko is the expression of something inside of us means that the cure for wetiko is with us as well. The critical issue is finding this cure within us and then putting it into effect.

Evil begets evil because if evil does not constantly expand and find new sources of energetic sustenance its evil, its *distortion*, dies with the assimilation into balance and harmony. Love is the garlic to Wetiko's vampire. Evil, the absence of love, cannot exist in the presence of love. I think I see a way out of here. I have emphasised so many times over the decades that the Archons/Wetiko and their Cult are not all powerful. *They are not.* I don't care how it looks even now *they are not.* I have not called them little boys in short trousers for effect. I have said it because it is true. Wetiko's insatiable desire for power over others is not a sign of its omnipotence, but its insecurity. Paul Levy writes: 'Due to the primal fear which ultimately drives it and which it is driven to cultivate, wetiko's body politic has an intrinsic and insistent need for centralising power and control so as to create imagined safety for itself.' *Yeeeeees!* Exactly! Why does Wetiko want humans in an ongoing state of fear? Wetiko itself *is* fear and it is petrified of love. As evil is an absence of love, so love is an absence of fear. Love conquers all and *especially* Wetiko which *is* fear. Wetiko brought fear into the world when it wasn't here before. *Fear* was the 'fall', the fall into low-frequency ignorance and illusion – fear is False Emotion Appearing Real. The simulation is driven and energised by fear because Wetiko/Yaldabaoth (fear) *are* the simulation. Fear is the absence of love and Wetiko is the absence of love.

## **Wetiko today**

We can now view current events from this level of perspective. The 'Covid' hoax has generated momentous amounts of ongoing fear, anxiety, depression and despair which have empowered Wetiko. No wonder people like Gates have been the instigators when they are Wetiko incarnate and exhibit every trait of Wetiko in the extreme. See how cold and unemotional these people are like Gates and his cronies, how dead of eye they are. That's Wetiko. Sabbatians are Wetiko and everything they control including the World Health Organization, Big Pharma and the 'vaccine' makers, national 'health'

hierarchies, corporate media, Silicon Valley, the banking system, and the United Nations with its planned transformation into world government. All are controlled and possessed by the Wetiko distortion into distorting human society in its image. We are with this knowledge at the gateway to understanding the world.

Divisions of race, culture, creed and sexuality are diversions to hide the real division between those possessed and influenced by Wetiko and those that are not. The ‘Covid’ hoax has brought both clearly into view. Human behaviour is not about race. Tyrants and dictatorships come in all colours and creeds. What unites the US president bombing the innocent and an African tribe committing genocide against another as in Rwanda? What unites them? *Wetiko*. All wars are Wetiko, all genocide is Wetiko, all hunger over centuries in a world of plenty is Wetiko. Children going to bed hungry, including in the West, is Wetiko. Cult-generated Woke racial divisions that focus on the body are designed to obscure the reality that divisions in behaviour are manifestations of mind, not body. Obsession with body identity and group judgement is a means to divert attention from the real source of behaviour – mind and perception. Conflict sown by the Woke both within themselves and with their target groups are Wetiko providing lunch for itself through still more agents of the division, chaos, and fear on which it feeds. The Cult is seeking to assimilate the entirety of humanity and all children and young people into the Wetiko frequency by manipulating them into states of fear and despair. Witness all the suicide and psychological unravelling since the spring of 2020. Wetiko psychopaths want to impose a state of unquestioning obedience to authority which is no more than a conduit for Wetiko to enforce its will and assimilate humanity into itself. It needs us to believe that resistance is futile when it fears resistance and even more so the game-changing non-cooperation with its impositions. It can use violent resistance for its benefit. Violent impositions and violent resistance are *both* Wetiko. The Power of Love with its Power of No will sweep Wetiko from our world. Wetiko and its Cult know that. They just don’t want us to know.

## **AI Wetiko**

This brings me to AI or artificial intelligence and something else Wetikos don't want us to know. What is AI *really*? I know about computer code algorithms and AI that learns from data input. These, however, are more diversions, the expeditionary force, for the real AI that they want to connect to the human brain as promoted by Silicon Valley Wetikos like Kurzweil. What is this AI? It is the frequency of *Wetiko*, the frequency of the Archons. The connection of AI to the human brain is the connection of the Wetiko frequency to create a Wetiko hive mind and complete the job of assimilation. The hive mind is planned to be controlled from Israel and China which are both 100 percent owned by Wetiko Sabbatians. The assimilation process has been going on minute by minute in the 'smart' era which fused with the 'Covid' era. We are told that social media is scrambling the minds of the young and changing their personality. This is true, but what is social media? Look more deeply at how it works, how it creates divisions and conflict, the hostility and cruelty, the targeting of people until they are destroyed. That's Wetiko. Social media is manipulated to tune people to the Wetiko frequency with all the emotional exploitation tricks employed by platforms like Facebook and its Wetiko front man, Zuckerberg. Facebook's Instagram announced a new platform for children to overcome a legal bar on them using the main site. This is more Wetiko exploitation and manipulation of kids. Amnesty International likened the plan to foxes offering to guard the henhouse and said it was incompatible with human rights. Since when did Wetiko or Zuckerberg (I repeat myself) care about that? Would Brin and Page at Google, Wojcicki at YouTube, Bezos at Amazon and whoever the hell runs Twitter act as they do if they were not channelling Wetiko? Would those who are developing technologies for no other reason than human control? How about those designing and selling technologies to kill people and Big Pharma drug and 'vaccine' producers who know they will end or devastate lives? Quite a thought for these people to consider is that if you are Wetiko in a human life you are Wetiko on the 'other side' unless your frequency

changes and that can only change by a change of perception which becomes a change of behaviour. Where Gates is going does not bear thinking about although perhaps that's exactly where he wants to go. Either way, that's where he's going. His frequency will make it so.

## **The frequency lair**

I have been saying for a long time that a big part of the addiction to smartphones and devices is that a frequency is coming off them that entraps the mind. People spend ages on their phones and sometimes even a minute or so after they put them down they pick them up again and it all repeats. 'Covid' lockdowns will have increased this addiction a million times for obvious reasons. Addictions to alcohol overindulgence and drugs are another way that Wetiko entraps consciousness to attach to its own. Both are symptoms of low-vibrational psychological distress which alcoholism and drug addiction further compound. Do we think it's really a coincidence that access to them is made so easy while potions that can take people into realms beyond the simulation are banned and illegal? I have explored smartphone addiction in other books, the scale is mind-blowing, and that level of addiction does not come without help. Tech companies that make these phones are Wetiko and they will have no qualms about destroying the minds of children. We are seeing again with these companies the Wetiko perceptual combination of psychopathic enforcers and weak and meek unquestioning compliance by the rank and file.

The global Smart Grid is the Wetiko Grid and it is crucial to complete the Cult endgame. The simulation is radiation and we are being deluged with technological radiation on a devastating scale. Wetiko frauds like Elon Musk serve Cult interests while occasionally criticising them to maintain his street-cred. 5G and other forms of Wi-Fi are being directed at the earth from space on a volume and scale that goes on increasing by the day. Elon Musk's (officially) SpaceX Starlink project is in the process of putting tens of thousands of satellites in low orbit to cover every inch of the planet with 5G and other Wi-Fi to create Kurzweil's global 'cloud' to which the

human mind is planned to be attached very soon. SpaceX has approval to operate 12,000 satellites with more than 1,300 launched at the time of writing and applications filed for 30,000 more. Other operators in the Wi-Fi, 5G, low-orbit satellite market include OneWeb (UK), Telesat (Canada), and AST & Science (US). Musk tells us that AI could be the end of humanity and then launches a company called Neuralink to connect the human brain to computers. Musk's (in theory) Tesla company is building electric cars and the driverless vehicles of the smart control grid. As frauds and bullshitters go Elon Musk in my opinion is Major League.

5G and technological radiation in general are destructive to human health, genetics and psychology and increasing the strength of artificial radiation underpins the five-sense perceptual bubbles which are themselves expressions of radiation or electromagnetism. Freedom activist John Whitehead was so right with his 'databit by databit, we are building our own electronic concentration camps'. The Smart Grid and 5G is a means to control the human mind and infuse perceptual information into The Field to influence anyone in sync with its frequency. You can change perception and behaviour en masse if you can manipulate the population into those levels of frequency and this is happening all around us today. The arrogance of Musk and his fellow Cult operatives knows no bounds in the way that we see with Gates. Musk's satellites are so many in number already they are changing the night sky when viewed from Earth. The astronomy community has complained about this and they have seen nothing yet. Some consequences of Musk's Wetiko hubris include: Radiation; visible pollution of the night sky; interference with astronomy and meteorology; ground and water pollution from intensive use of increasingly many spaceports; accumulating space debris; continual deorbiting and burning up of aging satellites, polluting the atmosphere with toxic dust and smoke; and ever-increasing likelihood of collisions. A collective public open letter of complaint to Musk said:

We are writing to you ... because SpaceX is in process of surrounding the Earth with a network of thousands of satellites whose very purpose is to irradiate every square inch of the

Earth. SpaceX, like everyone else, is treating the radiation as if it were not there. As if the mitochondria in our cells do not depend on electrons moving undisturbed from the food we digest to the oxygen we breathe.

As if our nervous systems and our hearts are not subject to radio frequency interference like any piece of electronic equipment. As if the cancer, diabetes, and heart disease that now afflict a majority of the Earth's population are not metabolic diseases that result from interference with our cellular machinery. As if insects everywhere, and the birds and animals that eat them, are not starving to death as a result.

People like Musk and Gates believe in their limitless Wetiko arrogance that they can do whatever they like to the world because they own it. Consequences for humanity are irrelevant. It's absolutely time that we stopped taking this shit from these self-styled masters of the Earth when you consider where this is going.

## **Why is the Cult so anti-human?**

I hear this question often: Why would they do this when it will affect them, too? Ah, but will it? Who is this *them*? Forget their bodies. They are just vehicles for Wetiko consciousness. When you break it all down to the foundations we are looking at a state of severely distorted consciousness targeting another state of consciousness for assimilation. The rest is detail. The simulation is the fly-trap in which unique sensations of the five senses create a cycle of addiction called reincarnation. Renegade Minds see that everything which happens in our reality is a smaller version of the whole picture in line with the holographic principle. Addiction to the radiation of smart technology is a smaller version of addiction to the whole simulation. Connecting the body/brain to AI is taking that addiction on a giant step further to total ongoing control by assimilating human incarnate consciousness into Wetiko. I have watched during the 'Covid' hoax how many are becoming ever more profoundly attached to Wetiko's perceptual calling cards of aggressive response to any other point of view ('There is no other god but me'), psychopathic lack of compassion and empathy, and servile submission to the narrative and will of authority. Wetiko is the psychopaths *and* subservience to psychopaths. The Cult of Wetiko is

so anti-human because it is *not* human. It embarked on a mission to destroy human by targeting everything that it means to be human and to survive as human. ‘Covid’ is not the end, just a means to an end. The Cult with its Wetiko consciousness is seeking to change Earth systems, including the atmosphere, to suit them, not humans. The gathering bombardment of 5G alone from ground and space is dramatically changing The Field with which the five senses interact. There is so much more to come if we sit on our hands and hope it will all go away. It is not meant to go away. It is meant to get ever more extreme and we need to face that while we still can – just.

Carbon dioxide is the gas of life. Without that human is over. Kaput, gone, history. No natural world, no human. The Cult has created a cock and bull story about carbon dioxide and climate change to justify its reduction to the point where Gates and the ignoramus Biden ‘climate chief’ John Kerry want to suck it out of the atmosphere. Kerry wants to do this because his master Gates does. Wetikos have made the gas of life a demon with the usual support from the Wokers of Extinction Rebellion and similar organisations and the bewildered puppet-child that is Greta Thunberg who was put on the world stage by Klaus Schwab and the World Economic Forum. The name Extinction Rebellion is both ironic and as always Wetiko inversion. The gas that we need to survive must be reduced to save us from extinction. The most basic need of human is oxygen and we now have billions walking around in face nappies depriving body and brain of this essential requirement of human existence. More than that 5G at 60 gigahertz interacts with the oxygen molecule to reduce the amount of oxygen the body can absorb into the bloodstream. The obvious knock-on consequences of that for respiratory and cognitive problems and life itself need no further explanation. Psychopaths like Musk are assembling a global system of satellites to deluge the human atmosphere with this insanity. The man should be in jail. Here we have two most basic of human needs, oxygen and carbon dioxide, being dismantled.

Two others, water and food, are getting similar treatment with the United Nations Agendas 21 and 2030 – the Great Reset – planning to

centrally control all water and food supplies. People will not even own rain water that falls on their land. Food is affected at the most basic level by reducing carbon dioxide. We have genetic modification or GMO infiltrating the food chain on a mass scale, pesticides and herbicides polluting the air and destroying the soil. Freshwater fish that provide livelihoods for 60 million people and feed hundreds of millions worldwide are being 'pushed to the brink' according the conservationists while climate change is the only focus. Now we have Gates and Schwab wanting to dispense with current food sources all together and replace them with a synthetic version which the Wetiko Cult would control in terms of production and who eats and who doesn't. We have been on the Totalitarian Tiptoe to this for more than 60 years as food has become ever more processed and full of chemical shite to the point today when it's not natural food at all. As Dr Tom Cowan says: 'If it has a label don't eat it.' Bill Gates is now the biggest owner of farmland in the United States and he does nothing without an ulterior motive involving the Cult. Klaus Schwab wrote: 'To feed the world in the next 50 years we will need to produce as much food as was produced in the last 10,000 years ... food security will only be achieved, however, if regulations on genetically modified foods are adapted to reflect the reality that gene editing offers a precise, efficient and safe method of improving crops.' Liar. People and the world are being targeted with aluminium through vaccines, chemtrails, food, drink cans, and endless other sources when aluminium has been linked to many health issues including dementia which is increasing year after year. Insects, bees and wildlife essential to the food chain are being deleted by pesticides, herbicides and radiation which 5G is dramatically increasing with 6G and 7G to come. The pollinating bee population is being devastated while wildlife including birds, dolphins and whales are having their natural radar blocked by the effects of ever-increasing radiation. In the summer windscreens used to be splattered with insects so numerous were they. It doesn't happen now. Where have they gone?

## **Synthetic everything**

The Cult is introducing genetically-modified versions of trees, plants and insects including a Gates-funded project to unleash hundreds of millions of genetically-modified, lab-altered and patented male mosquitoes to mate with wild mosquitoes and induce genetic flaws that cause them to die out. Clinically-insane Gates-funded Japanese researchers have developed mosquitos that spread vaccine and are dubbed 'flying vaccinators'. Gates is funding the modification of weather patterns in part to sell the myth that this is caused by carbon dioxide and he's funding geoengineering of the skies to change the atmosphere. Some of this came to light with the Gates-backed plan to release tonnes of chalk into the atmosphere to 'deflect the Sun and cool the planet'. Funny how they do this while the heating effect of the Sun is not factored into climate projections focussed on carbon dioxide. The reason is that they want to reduce carbon dioxide (so don't mention the Sun), but at the same time they do want to reduce the impact of the Sun which is so essential to human life and health. I have mentioned the sun-cholesterol-vitamin D connection as they demonise the Sun with warnings about skin cancer (caused by the chemicals in sun cream they tell you to splash on). They come from the other end of the process with statin drugs to reduce cholesterol that turns sunlight into vitamin D. A lack of vitamin D leads to a long list of health effects and how vitamin D levels must have fallen with people confined to their homes over 'Covid'. Gates is funding other forms of geoengineering and most importantly chemtrails which are dropping heavy metals, aluminium and self-replicating nanotechnology onto the Earth which is killing the natural world. See *Everything You Need To Know, But Have Never Been Told* for the detailed background to this.

Every human system is being targeted for deletion by a force that's not human. The Wetiko Cult has embarked on the process of transforming the human body from biological to synthetic biological as I have explained. Biological is being replaced by the artificial and synthetic – Archontic 'countermimicry' – right across human society. The plan eventually is to dispense with the human body altogether

and absorb human consciousness – which it wouldn't really be by then – into cyberspace (the simulation which is Wetiko/Yaldabaoth). Preparations for that are already happening if people would care to look. The alternative media rightly warns about globalism and 'the globalists', but this is far bigger than that and represents the end of the human race as we know it. The 'bad copy' of prime reality that Gnostics describe was a bad copy of harmony, wonder and beauty to start with before Wetiko/Yaldabaoth set out to change the simulated 'copy' into something very different. The process was slow to start with. Entrapped humans in the simulation timeline were not technologically aware and they had to be brought up to intellectual speed while being suppressed spiritually to the point where they could build their own prison while having no idea they were doing so. We have now reached that stage where technological intellect has the potential to destroy us and that's why events are moving so fast. Central American shaman Don Juan Matus said:

Think for a moment, and tell me how you would explain the contradictions between the intelligence of man the engineer and the stupidity of his systems of belief, or the stupidity of his contradictory behaviour. Sorcerers believe that the predators have given us our systems of beliefs, our ideas of good and evil; our social mores. They are the ones who set up our dreams of success or failure. They have given us covetousness, greed, and cowardice. It is the predator who makes us complacent, routinary, and egomaniacal.

In order to keep us obedient and meek and weak, the predators engaged themselves in a stupendous manoeuvre – stupendous, of course, from the point of view of a fighting strategist; a horrendous manoeuvre from the point of those who suffer it. They gave us their mind. The predators' mind is baroque, contradictory, morose, filled with the fear of being discovered any minute now.

For 'predators' see Wetiko, Archons, Yaldabaoth, Jinn, and all the other versions of the same phenomenon in cultures and religions all over the world. The theme is always the same because it's true and it's real. We have reached the point where we have to deal with it. The question is – how?

## **Don't fight – walk away**

I thought I'd use a controversial subheading to get things moving in terms of our response to global fascism. What do you mean 'don't fight'? What do you mean 'walk away'? We've got to fight. We can't walk away. Well, it depends what we mean by fight and walk away. If fighting means physical combat we are playing Wetiko's game and falling for its trap. It wants us to get angry, aggressive, and direct hate and hostility at the enemy we think we must fight. Every war, every battle, every conflict, has been fought with Wetiko leading both sides. It's what it does. Wetiko wants a fight, anywhere, any place. Just hit me, son, so I can hit you back. Wetiko hits Wetiko and Wetiko hits Wetiko in return. I am very forthright as you can see in exposing Wetikos of the Cult, but I don't hate them. I refuse to hate them. It's what they want. What you hate you become. What you *fight* you become. Wokers, 'anti-haters' and 'anti-fascists' prove this every time they reach for their keyboards or don their balaclavas. By walk away I mean to disengage from Wetiko which includes ceasing to cooperate with its tyranny. Paul Levy says of Wetiko:

The way to 'defeat' evil is not to try to destroy it (for then, in playing evil's game, we have already lost), but rather, to find the invulnerable place within ourselves where evil is unable to vanquish us – this is to truly 'win' our battle with evil.

Wetiko is everywhere in human society and it's been on steroids since the 'Covid' hoax. Every shouting match over wearing masks has Wetiko wearing a mask and Wetiko not wearing one. It's an electrical circuit of push and resist, push and resist, with Wetiko pushing *and* resisting. Each polarity is Wetiko empowering itself. Dictionary definitions of 'resist' include 'opposing, refusing to accept or comply with' and the word to focus on is 'opposing'. What form does this take – setting police cars alight or 'refusing to accept or comply with'? The former is Wetiko opposing Wetiko while the other points the way forward. This is the difference between those aggressively demanding that government fascism must be obeyed who stand in stark contrast to the great majority of Pushbackers. We saw this clearly with a march by thousands of Pushbackers against lockdown in London followed days later by a Woker-hijacked

protest in Bristol in which police cars were set on fire. Masks were virtually absent in London and widespread in Bristol. Wetiko wants lockdown on every level of society and infuses its aggression to police it through its unknowing stooges. Lockdown protesters are the ones with the smiling faces and the hugs, The two blatantly obvious states of being – getting more obvious by the day – are the result of Wokers and their like becoming ever more influenced by the simulation Field of Wetiko and Pushbackers ever more influenced by The Field of a far higher vibration beyond the simulation. Wetiko can't invade the heart which is where most lockdown opponents are coming from. It's the heart that allows them to see through the lies to the truth in ways I will be highlighting.

Renegade Minds know that calmness is the place from which wisdom comes. You won't find wisdom in a hissing fit and wisdom is what we need in abundance right now. Calmness is not weakness – you don't have to scream at the top of your voice to be strong. Calmness is indeed a sign of strength. 'No' means I'm not doing it. NOOOO!!! doesn't mean you're not doing it even more. Volume does not advance 'No – I'm not doing it'. You are just not doing it. Wetiko possessed and influenced don't know how to deal with that. Wetiko wants a fight and we should not give it one. What it needs more than anything is our *cooperation* and we should not give that either. Mass rallies and marches are great in that they are a visual representation of feeling, but if it ends there they are irrelevant. You demand that Wetikos act differently? Well, they're not going to are they? They are Wetikos. We don't need to waste our time demanding that something doesn't happen when that will make no difference. We need to delete the means that *allows* it to happen. This, invariably, is our cooperation. You can demand a child stop firing a peashooter at the dog or you can refuse to buy the peashooter. If you provide the means you are cooperating with the dog being smacked on the nose with a pea. How can the authorities enforce mask-wearing if millions in a country refuse? What if the 74 million Pushbackers that voted for Trump in 2020 refused to wear masks, close their businesses or stay in their homes. It would be unenforceable. The

few control the many through the compliance of the many and that's always been the dynamic be it 'Covid' regulations or the Roman Empire. I know people can find it intimidating to say no to authority or stand out in a crowd for being the only one with a face on display; but it has to be done or it's over. I hope I've made clear in this book that where this is going will be far more intimidating than standing up now and saying 'No' – I will not cooperate with my own enslavement and that of my children. There might be consequences for some initially, although not so if enough do the same. The question that must be addressed is what is going to happen if we don't? It is time to be strong and unyieldingly so. No means no. Not here and there, but *everywhere* and *always*. I have refused to wear a mask and obey all the other nonsense. I will not comply with tyranny. I repeat: Fascism is not imposed by fascists – there are never enough of them. Fascism is imposed by the population acquiescing to fascism. *I will not do it.* I will die first, or my body will. Living meekly under fascism is a form of death anyway, the death of the spirit that Martin Luther King described.

## **Making things happen**

We must not despair. This is not over till it's over and it's far from that. The 'fat lady' must refuse to sing. The longer the 'Covid' hoax has dragged on and impacted on more lives we have seen an awakening of phenomenal numbers of people worldwide to the realisation that what they have believed all their lives is not how the world really is. Research published by the system-serving University of Bristol and King's College London in February, 2021, concluded: 'One in every 11 people in Britain say they trust David Icke's take on the coronavirus pandemic.' It will be more by now and we have gathering numbers to build on. We must urgently progress from seeing the scam to ceasing to cooperate with it. Prominent German lawyer Reiner Fuellmich, also licenced to practice law in America, is doing a magnificent job taking the legal route to bring the psychopaths to justice through a second Nuremberg tribunal for crimes against humanity. Fuellmich has an impressive record of

beating the elite in court and he formed the German Corona Investigative Committee to pursue civil charges against the main perpetrators with a view to triggering criminal charges. Most importantly he has grasped the foundation of the hoax – the PCR test not testing for the ‘virus’ – and Christian Drosten is therefore on his charge sheet along with Gates frontman Tedros at the World Health Organization. Major players must be not be allowed to inflict their horrors on the human race without being brought to book. A life sentence must follow for Bill Gates and the rest of them. A group of researchers has also indicted the government of Norway for crimes against humanity with copies sent to the police and the International Criminal Court. The lawsuit cites participation in an internationally-planned false pandemic and violation of international law and human rights, the European Commission’s definition of human rights by coercive rules, Nuremberg and Hague rules on fundamental human rights, and the Norwegian constitution. We must take the initiative from hereon and not just complain, protest and react.

There are practical ways to support vital mass non-cooperation. Organising in numbers is one. Lockdown marches in London in the spring in 2021 were mass non-cooperation that the authorities could not stop. There were too many people. Hundreds of thousands walked the London streets in the centre of the road for mile after mile while the Face-Nappies could only look on. They were determined, but calm, and just *did it* with no histrionics and lots of smiles. The police were impotent. Others are organising group shopping without masks for mutual support and imagine if that was happening all over. Policing it would be impossible. If the store refuses to serve people in these circumstances they would be faced with a long line of trolleys full of goods standing on their own and everything would have to be returned to the shelves. How would they cope with that if it kept happening? I am talking here about moving on from complaining to being pro-active; from watching things happen to making things happen. I include in this our relationship with the police. The behaviour of many Face-Nappies

has been disgraceful and anyone who thinks they would never find concentration camp guards in the ‘enlightened’ modern era have had that myth busted big-time. The period and setting may change – Wetikos never do. I watched film footage from a London march in which a police thug viciously kicked a protestor on the floor who had done nothing. His fellow Face-Nappies stood in a ring protecting him. What he did was a criminal assault and with a crowd far outnumbering the police this can no longer be allowed to happen unchallenged. I get it when people chant ‘shame on you’ in these circumstances, but that is no longer enough. They *have* no shame those who do this. Crowds needs to start making a citizen’s arrest of the police who commit criminal offences and brutally attack innocent people and defenceless women. A citizen’s arrest can be made under section 24A of the UK Police and Criminal Evidence (PACE) Act of 1984 and you will find something similar in other countries. I prefer to call it a Common Law arrest rather than citizen’s for reasons I will come to shortly. Anyone can arrest a person committing an indictable offence or if they have reasonable grounds to suspect they are committing an indictable offence. On both counts the attack by the police thug would have fallen into this category. A citizen’s arrest can be made to stop someone:

- Causing physical injury to himself or any other person
- Suffering physical injury
- Causing loss of or damage to property
- Making off before a constable can assume responsibility for him

A citizen’s arrest may also be made to prevent a breach of the peace under Common Law and if they believe a breach of the peace will happen or anything related to harm likely to be done or already done in their presence. This is the way to go I think – the Common Law version. If police know that the crowd and members of the public will no longer be standing and watching while they commit

their thuggery and crimes they will think twice about acting like Brownshirts and Blackshirts.

## **Common Law – common sense**

Mention of Common Law is very important. Most people think the law is the law as in one law. This is not the case. There are two bodies of law, Common Law and Statute Law, and they are not the same. Common Law is founded on the simple premise of do no harm. It does not recognise victimless crimes in which no harm is done while Statute Law does. There is a Statute Law against almost everything. So what is Statute Law? Amazingly it's the law of the sea that was brought ashore by the Cult to override the law of the land which is Common Law. They had no right to do this and as always they did it anyway. They had to. They could not impose their will on the people through Common Law which only applies to do no harm. How could you stitch up the fine detail of people's lives with that? Instead they took the law of the sea, or Admiralty Law, and applied it to the population. Statute Law refers to all the laws spewing out of governments and their agencies including all the fascist laws and regulations relating to 'Covid'. The key point to make is that Statute Law is *contract law*. It only applies between *contracting* corporations. Most police officers don't even know this. They have to be kept in the dark, too. Long ago when merchants and their sailing ships began to trade with different countries a contractual law was developed called Admiralty Law and other names. Again it only applied to *contracts* agreed between *corporate* entities. If there is no agreed contract the law of the sea had no jurisdiction *and that still applies to its new alias of Statute Law*. The problem for the Cult when the law of the sea was brought ashore was an obvious one. People were not corporations and neither were government entities. To overcome the latter they made governments and all associated organisations corporations. All the institutions are *private corporations* and I mean governments and their agencies, local councils, police, courts, military, US states, the whole lot. Go to the

Dun and Bradstreet corporate listings website for confirmation that they are all corporations. You are arrested by a private corporation called the police by someone who is really a private security guard and they take you to court which is another private corporation.

Neither have jurisdiction over you unless you consent and *contract* with them. This is why you hear the mantra about law enforcement policing by *consent* of the people. In truth the people 'consent' only in theory through monumental trickery.

Okay, the Cult overcame the corporate law problem by making governments and institutions corporate entities; but what about people? They are not corporations are they? Ah ... well in a sense, and *only* a sense, they are. Not people exactly – the illusion of people. The Cult creates a corporation in the name of everyone at the time that their birth certificate is issued. Note birth/ *berth* certificate and when you go to court under the law of the sea on land you stand in a *dock*. These are throwbacks to the origin. My Common Law name is David Vaughan Icke. The name of the corporation created by the government when I was born is called Mr David Vaughan Icke usually written in capitals as MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE. That is not me, the living, breathing man. It is a fictitious corporate entity. The trick is to make you think that David Vaughan Icke and MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE are the same thing. *They are not*. When police charge you and take you to court they are prosecuting the corporate entity and not the living, breathing, man or woman. They have to trick you into identifying as the corporate entity and contracting with them. Otherwise they have no jurisdiction. They do this through a language known as legalese. Lawful and legal are not the same either. Lawful relates to Common Law and legal relates to Statute Law. Legalese is the language of Statue Law which uses terms that mean one thing to the public and another in legalese. Notice that when a police officer tells someone why they are being charged he or she will say at the end: 'Do you understand?' To the public that means 'Do you comprehend?' In legalese it means 'Do you stand under me?' Do you stand under my authority? If you say

yes to the question you are unknowingly agreeing to give them jurisdiction over you in a contract between two corporate entities.

This is a confidence trick in every way. Contracts have to be agreed between informed parties and if you don't know that David Vaughan Icke is agreeing to be the corporation MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE you cannot knowingly agree to contract. They are deceiving you and another way they do this is to ask for proof of identity. You usually show them a driving licence or other document on which your corporate name is written. In doing so you are accepting that you are that corporate entity when you are not. Referring to yourself as a 'person' or 'citizen' is also identifying with your corporate fiction which is why I made the Common Law point about the citizen's arrest. If you are approached by a police officer you identify yourself immediately as a living, breathing, man or woman and say 'I do not consent, I do not contract with you and I do not understand' or stand under their authority. I have a Common Law birth certificate as a living man and these are available at no charge from [commonlawcourt.com](http://commonlawcourt.com). Businesses registered under the Statute Law system means that its laws apply. There are, however, ways to run a business under Common Law. Remember all 'Covid' laws and regulations are Statute Law – the law of *contracts* and you do not have to contract. This doesn't mean that you can kill someone and get away with it. Common Law says do no harm and that applies to physical harm, financial harm etc. Police are employees of private corporations and there needs to be a new system of non-corporate Common Law constables operating outside the Statute Law system. If you go to [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com) and put Common Law into the search engine you will find videos that explain Common Law in much greater detail. It is definitely a road we should walk.

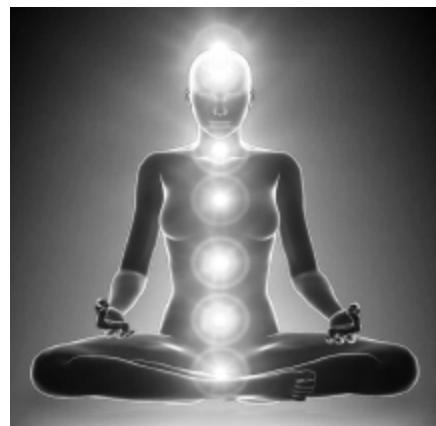
## **With all my heart**

I have heard people say that we are in a spiritual war. I don't like the term 'war' with its Wetiko dynamic, but I know what they mean. Sweep aside all the bodily forms and we are in a situation in which two states of consciousness are seeking very different realities.

Wetiko wants upheaval, chaos, fear, suffering, conflict and control. The other wants love, peace, harmony, fairness and freedom. That's where we are. We should not fall for the idea that Wetiko is all-powerful and there's nothing we can do. Wetiko is not all-powerful. It's a joke, pathetic. It doesn't have to be, but it has made that choice for now. A handful of times over the years when I have felt the presence of its frequency I have allowed it to attach briefly so I could consciously observe its nature. The experience is not pleasant, the energy is heavy and dark, but the ease with which you can kick it back out the door shows that its real power is in persuading us that it has power. It's all a con. Wetiko is a con. It's a trickster and not a power that can control us if we unleash our own. The con is founded on manipulating humanity to give its power to Wetiko which recycles it back to present the illusion that it has power when its power is *ours* that we gave away. This happens on an energetic level and plays out in the world of the seen as humanity giving its power to Wetiko authority which uses that power to control the population when the power is only the power the population has handed over. How could it be any other way for billions to be controlled by a relative few? I have had experiences with people possessed by Wetiko and again you can kick its arse if you do it with an open heart. Oh yes – the *heart* which can transform the world of perceived 'matter'.

We are receiver-transmitters and processors of information, but what information and where from? Information is processed into perception in three main areas – the brain, the heart and the belly. These relate to thinking, knowing, and emotion. Wetiko wants us to be head and belly people which means we think within the confines of the Matrix simulation and low-vibrational emotional reaction scrambles balance and perception. A few minutes on social media and you see how emotion is the dominant force. Woke is all emotion and is therefore thought-free and fact-free. Our heart is something different. It *knows* while the head *thinks* and has to try to work it out because it doesn't know. The human energy field has seven prime vortexes which connect us with wider reality ([Fig 23](#)). Chakra means

'wheels of light' in the Sanskrit language of ancient India. The main ones are: The crown chakra on top of the head; brow (or 'third eye') chakra in the centre of the forehead; throat chakra; heart chakra in the centre of the chest; solar plexus chakra below the sternum; sacral chakra beneath the navel; and base chakra at the bottom of the spine. Each one has a particular function or functions. We feel anxiety and nervousness in the belly where the sacral chakra is located and this processes emotion that can affect the colon to give people 'the shits' or make them 'shit scared' when they are nervous. Chakras all play an important role, but the Mr and Mrs Big is the heart chakra which sits at the centre of the seven, above the chakras that connect us to the 'physical' and below those that connect with higher realms (or at least should). Here in the heart chakra we feel love, empathy and compassion – 'My heart goes out to you'. Those with closed hearts become literally 'heart-less' in their attitudes and behaviour (see Bill Gates). Native Americans portrayed Wetiko with what Paul Levy calls a 'frigid, icy heart, devoid of mercy' (see Bill Gates).



**Figure 23:** The chakra system which interpenetrates the human energy field. The heart chakra is the governor – or should be.

Wetiko trembles at the thought of heart energy which it cannot infiltrate. The frequency is too high. What it seeks to do instead is close the heart chakra vortex to block its perceptual and energetic influence. Psychopaths have 'hearts of stone' and emotionally-damaged people have 'heartache' and 'broken hearts'. The astonishing amount of heart disease is related to heart chakra

disruption with its fundamental connection to the ‘physical’ heart. Dr Tom Cowan has written an outstanding book challenging the belief that the heart is a pump and making the connection between the ‘physical’ and spiritual heart. Rudolph Steiner who was way ahead of his time said the same about the fallacy that the heart is a pump. *What?* The heart is not a pump? That’s crazy, right? Everybody knows that. Read Cowan’s *Human Heart, Cosmic Heart* and you will realise that the very idea of the heart as a pump is ridiculous when you see the evidence. How does blood in the feet so far from the heart get pumped horizontally up the body by the heart?? Cowan explains in the book the real reason why blood moves as it does. Our ‘physical’ heart is used to symbolise love when the source is really the heart vortex or spiritual heart which is our most powerful energetic connection to ‘out there’ expanded consciousness. That’s why we feel *knowing* – intuitive knowing – in the centre of the chest. Knowing doesn’t come from a process of thoughts leading to a conclusion. It is there in an instant all in one go. Our heart knows because of its connection to levels of awareness that *do* know. This is the meaning and source of intuition – intuitive *knowing*.

For the last more than 30 years of uncovering the global game and the nature of reality my heart has been my constant antenna for truth and accuracy. An American intelligence insider once said that I had quoted a disinformor in one of my books and yet I had only quoted the part that was true. He asked: ‘How do you do that?’ By using my heart antenna was the answer and anyone can do it. Heart-centred is how we are meant to be. With a closed heart chakra we withdraw into a closed mind and the bubble of five-sense reality. If you take a moment to focus your attention on the centre of your chest, picture a spinning wheel of light and see it opening and expanding. You will feel it happening, too, and perceptions of the heart like joy and love as the heart impacts on the mind as they interact. The more the chakra opens the more you will feel expressions of heart consciousness and as the process continues, and becomes part of you, insights and knowings will follow. An open

heart is connected to that level of awareness that knows all is *One*. You will see from its perspective that the fault-lines that divide us are only illusions to control us. An open heart does not process the illusions of race, creed and sexuality except as brief experiences for a consciousness that is all. Our heart does not see division, only unity (Figs 24 and 25). There's something else, too. Our hearts love to laugh. Mark Twain's quote that says 'The human race has one really effective weapon, and that is laughter' is really a reference to the heart which loves to laugh with the joy of knowing the true nature of infinite reality and that all the madness of human society is an illusion of the mind. Twain also said: 'Against the assault of laughter nothing can stand.' This is so true of Wetiko and the Cult. Their insecurity demands that they be taken seriously and their power and authority acknowledged and feared. We should do nothing of the sort. We should not get aggressive or fearful which their insecurity so desires. We should laugh in their face. Even in their no-face as police come over in their face-nappies and expect to be taken seriously. They don't take themselves seriously looking like that so why should we? Laugh in the face of intimidation. Laugh in the face of tyranny. You will see by its reaction that you have pressed all of its buttons. Wetiko does not know what to do in the face of laughter or when its targets refuse to concede their joy to fear. We have seen many examples during the 'Covid' hoax when people have expressed their energetic power and the string puppets of Wetiko retreat with their tail limp between their knees. Laugh – the world is bloody mad after all and if it's a choice between laughter and tears I know which way I'm going.



**Figure 24:** Head consciousness without the heart sees division and everything apart from everything else.



**Figure 25:** Heart consciousness sees everything as One.

## **'Vaccines' and the soul**

The foundation of Wetiko/Archon control of humans is the separation of incarnate five-sense mind from the infinite 'I' and closing the heart chakra where the True 'I' lives during a human life. The goal has been to achieve complete separation in both cases. I was interested therefore to read an account by a French energetic healer of what she said she experienced with a patient who had been given the 'Covid' vaccine. Genuine energy healers can sense information and consciousness fields at different levels of being which are referred to as 'subtle bodies'. She described treating the patient who later returned after having, without the healer's knowledge, two doses of the 'Covid vaccine'. The healer said:

I noticed immediately the change, very heavy energy emanating from [the] subtle bodies. The scariest thing was when I was working on the heart chakra, I connected with her soul: it was detached from the physical body, it had no contact and it was, as if it was floating in a state of total confusion: a damage to the consciousness that loses contact with the physical body, i.e. with our biological machine, there is no longer any communication between them.

I continued the treatment by sending light to the heart chakra, the soul of the person, but it seemed that the soul could no longer receive any light, frequency or energy. It was a very powerful experience for me. Then I understood that this substance is indeed used to detach consciousness so that this consciousness can no longer interact through this body that it possesses in life, where there is no longer any contact, no frequency, no light, no more energetic balance or mind.

This would create a human that is rudderless and at the extreme almost zombie-like operating with a fractional state of consciousness at the mercy of Wetiko. I was especially intrigued by what the healer said in the light of the prediction by the highly-informed Rudolf Steiner more than a hundred years ago. He said:

In the future, we will eliminate the soul with medicine. Under the pretext of a 'healthy point of view', there will be a vaccine by which the human body will be treated as soon as possible directly at birth, so that the human being cannot develop the thought of the existence of soul and Spirit. To materialistic doctors will be entrusted the task of removing the soul of humanity.

As today, people are vaccinated against this disease or that disease, so in the future, children will be vaccinated with a substance that can be produced precisely in such a way that people, thanks to this vaccination, will be immune to being subjected to the 'madness' of spiritual life. He would be extremely smart, but he would not develop a conscience, and that is the true goal of some materialistic circles.

Steiner said the vaccine would detach the physical body from the etheric body (subtle bodies) and 'once the etheric body is detached the relationship between the universe and the etheric body would become extremely unstable, and man would become an automaton'. He said 'the physical body of man must be polished on this Earth by spiritual will – so the vaccine becomes a kind of arymanique (Wetiko) force' and 'man can no longer get rid of a given materialistic feeling'. Humans would then, he said, become 'materialistic of constitution and can no longer rise to the spiritual'. I have been writing for years about DNA being a receiver-transmitter of information that connects us to other levels of reality and these 'vaccines' changing DNA can be likened to changing an antenna and what it can transmit and receive. Such a disconnection would clearly lead to changes in personality and perception. Steiner further predicted the arrival of AI. Big Pharma 'Covid vaccine' makers, expressions of Wetiko, are testing their DNA-manipulating evil on children as I write with a view to giving the 'vaccine' to babies. If it's a soul-body disconnecter – and I say that it is or can be – every child would be disconnected from 'soul' at birth and the 'vaccine' would create a closed system in which spiritual guidance from the greater self would play no part. This has been the ambition of Wetiko all

along. A Pentagon video from 2005 was leaked of a presentation explaining the development of vaccines to change behaviour by their effect on the brain. Those that believe this is not happening with the ‘Covid’ genetically-modifying procedure masquerading as a ‘vaccine’ should make an urgent appointment with Naivety Anonymous. Klaus Schwab wrote in 2018:

Neurotechnologies enable us to better influence consciousness and thought and to understand many activities of the brain. They include decoding what we are thinking in fine levels of detail through new chemicals and interventions that can influence our brains to correct for errors or enhance functionality.

The plan is clear and only the heart can stop it. With every heart that opens, every mind that awakens, Wetiko is weakened. Heart and love are far more powerful than head and hate and so nothing like a majority is needed to turn this around.

## **Beyond the Phantom**

Our heart is the prime target of Wetiko and so it must be the answer to Wetiko. We *are* our heart which is part of one heart, the infinite heart. Our heart is where the true self lives in a human life behind firewalls of five-sense illusion when an imposter takes its place – *Phantom Self*; but our heart waits patiently to be set free any time we choose to see beyond the Phantom, beyond Wetiko. A Wetikoed Phantom Self can wreak mass death and destruction while the love of forever is locked away in its heart. The time is here to unleash its power and let it sweep away the fear and despair that is Wetiko. Heart consciousness does not seek manipulated, censored, advantage for its belief or religion, its activism and desires. As an expression of the One it treats all as One with the same rights to freedom and opinion. Our heart demands fairness for itself no more than for others. From this unity of heart we can come together in mutual support and transform this Wetikoed world into what reality is meant to be – a place of love, joy, happiness, fairness, justice and freedom. Wetiko has another agenda and that’s why the world is as

it is, but enough of this nonsense. Wetiko can't stay where hearts are open and it works so hard to keep them closed. Fear is its currency and its food source and love in its true sense has no fear. Why would love have fear when it knows it is *All That Is, Has Been, And Ever Can Be* on an eternal exploration of all possibility? Love in this true sense is not the physical attraction that passes for love. This can be an expression of it, yes, but Infinite Love, a love without condition, goes far deeper to the core of all being. It is the core of all being. Infinite reality was born from love beyond the illusions of the simulation. Love infinitely expressed is the knowing that all is One and the swiftly-passing experience of separation is a temporary hallucination. You cannot disconnect from Oneness; you can only perceive that you have and withdraw from its influence. This is the most important of all perception trickery by the mind parasite that is Wetiko and the foundation of all its potential for manipulation.

If we open our hearts, open the sluice gates of the mind, and redefine self-identity amazing things start to happen. Consciousness expands or contracts in accordance with self-identity. When true self is recognised as infinite awareness and label self – Phantom Self – is seen as only a series of brief experiences life is transformed. Consciousness expands to the extent that self-identity expands and everything changes. You see unity, not division, the picture, not the pixels. From this we can play the long game. No more is an experience something in and of itself, but a fleeting moment in the eternity of forever. Suddenly people in uniform and dark suits are no longer intimidating. Doing what your heart knows to be right is no longer intimidating and consequences for those actions take on the same nature of a brief experience that passes in the blink of an infinite eye. Intimidation is all in the mind. Beyond the mind there is no intimidation.

An open heart does not consider consequences for what it knows to be right. To do so would be to consider not doing what it knows to be right and for a heart in its power that is never an option. The Renegade Mind is really the Renegade Heart. Consideration of consequences will always provide a getaway car for the mind and

the heart doesn't want one. What is right in the light of what we face today is to stop cooperating with Wetiko in all its forms and to do it without fear or compromise. You cannot compromise with tyranny when tyranny always demands more until it has everything. Life is your perception and you are your destiny. Change your perception and you change your life. Change collective perception and we change the world.

*Come on people ... One human family, One heart, One goal ...  
FREEEEEDOM!*

We must settle for nothing less.

## **Postscript**

**T**he big scare story as the book goes to press is the ‘Indian’ variant and the world is being deluged with propaganda about the ‘Covid catastrophe’ in India which mirrors in its lies and misrepresentations what happened in Italy before the first lockdown in 2020.

The *New York Post* published a picture of someone who had ‘collapsed in the street from Covid’ in India in April, 2021, which was actually taken during a gas leak in May, 2020. Same old, same old. Media articles in mid-February were asking why India had been so untouched by ‘Covid’ and then as their vaccine rollout gathered pace the alleged ‘cases’ began to rapidly increase. Indian ‘Covid vaccine’ maker Bharat Biotech was funded into existence by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (the pair announced their divorce in May, 2021, which is a pity because they so deserve each other). The Indian ‘Covid crisis’ was ramped up by the media to terrify the world and prepare people for submission to still more restrictions. The scam that worked the first time was being repeated only with far more people seeing through the deceit. [Davidicke.com](http://Davidicke.com) and [Ickonic.com](http://Ickonic.com) have sought to tell the true story of what is happening by talking to people living through the Indian nightmare which has nothing to do with ‘Covid’. We posted a letter from ‘Alisha’ in Pune who told a very different story to government and media mendacity. She said scenes of dying people and overwhelmed hospitals were designed to hide what was really happening – genocide and starvation. Alisha said that millions had already died of starvation during the ongoing lockdowns while government and media were lying and making it look like the ‘virus’:

Restaurants, shops, gyms, theatres, basically everything is shut. The cities are ghost towns. Even so-called 'essential' businesses are only open till 11am in the morning. You basically have just an hour to buy food and then your time is up.

Inter-state travel and even inter-district travel is banned. The cops wait at all major crossroads to question why you are traveling outdoors or to fine you if you are not wearing a mask.

The medical community here is also complicit in genocide, lying about hospitals being full and turning away people with genuine illnesses, who need immediate care. They have even created a shortage of oxygen cylinders.

This is the classic Cult modus operandi played out in every country. Alisha said that people who would not have a PCR test not testing for the 'virus' were being denied hospital treatment. She said the people hit hardest were migrant workers and those in rural areas. Most businesses employed migrant workers and with everything closed there were no jobs, no income and no food. As a result millions were dying of starvation or malnutrition. All this was happening under Prime Minister Narendra Modi, a 100-percent asset of the Cult, and it emphasises yet again the scale of pure anti-human evil we are dealing with. Australia banned its people from returning home from India with penalties for trying to do so of up to five years in jail and a fine of £37,000. The manufactured 'Covid' crisis in India was being prepared to justify further fascism in the West. Obvious connections could be seen between the Indian 'vaccine' programme and increased 'cases' and this became a common theme. The Seychelles, the most per capita 'Covid vaccinated' population in the world, went back into lockdown after a 'surge of cases'.

Long ago the truly evil Monsanto agricultural biotechnology corporation with its big connections to Bill Gates devastated Indian farming with genetically-modified crops. Human rights activist Gurcharan Singh highlighted the efforts by the Indian government to complete the job by destroying the food supply to hundreds of millions with 'Covid' lockdowns. He said that 415 million people at the bottom of the disgusting caste system (still going whatever they say) were below the poverty line and struggled to feed themselves every year. Now the government was imposing lockdown at just the

time to destroy the harvest. This deliberate policy was leading to mass starvation. People may reel back at the suggestion that a government would do that, but Wetiko-controlled ‘leaders’ are capable of any level of evil. In fact what is described in India is in the process of being instigated worldwide. The food chain and food supply are being targeted at every level to cause world hunger and thus control. Bill Gates is not the biggest owner of farmland in America for no reason and destroying access to food aids both the depopulation agenda and the plan for synthetic ‘food’ already being funded into existence by Gates. Add to this the coming hyper-inflation from the suicidal creation of fake ‘money’ in response to ‘Covid’ and the breakdown of container shipping systems and you have a cocktail that can only lead one way and is meant to. The Cult plan is to crash the entire system to ‘build back better’ with the Great Reset.

## **'Vaccine' transmission**

Reports from all over the world continue to emerge of women suffering menstrual and fertility problems after having the fake ‘vaccine’ and of the non-‘vaccinated’ having similar problems when interacting with the ‘vaccinated’. There are far too many for ‘coincidence’ to be credible. We’ve had menopausal women getting periods, others having periods stop or not stopping for weeks, passing clots, sometimes the lining of the uterus, breast irregularities, and miscarriages (which increased by 400 percent in parts of the United States). Non-‘vaccinated’ men and children have suffered blood clots and nose bleeding after interaction with the ‘vaccinated’. Babies have died from the effects of breast milk from a ‘vaccinated’ mother. Awake doctors – the small minority – speculated on the cause of non-‘vaccinated’ suffering the same effects as the ‘vaccinated’. Was it nanotechnology in the synthetic substance transmitting frequencies or was it a straight chemical bioweapon that was being transmitted between people? I am not saying that some kind of chemical transmission is not one possible answer, but the foundation of all that the Cult does is frequency and

this is fertile ground for understanding how transmission can happen. American doctor Carrie Madej, an internal medicine physician and osteopath, has been practicing for the last 20 years, teaching medical students, and she says attending different meetings where the agenda for humanity was discussed. Madej, who operates out of Georgia, did not dismiss other possible forms of transmission, but she focused on frequency in search of an explanation for transmission. She said the Moderna and Pfizer 'vaccines' contained nano-lipid particles as a key component. This was a brand new technology never before used on humanity. 'They're using a nanotechnology which is pretty much little tiny computer bits ... nanobots or hydrogel.' Inside the 'vaccines' was 'this sci-fi kind of substance' which suppressed immune checkpoints to get into the cell. I referred to this earlier as the 'Trojan horse' technique that tricks the cell into opening a gateway for the self-replicating synthetic material and while the immune system is artificially suppressed the body has no defences. Madej said the substance served many purposes including an on-demand ability to 'deliver the payload' and using the nano 'computer bits' as biosensors in the body. 'It actually has the ability to accumulate data from your body, like your breathing, your respiration, thoughts, emotions, all kinds of things.'

She said the technology obviously has the ability to operate through Wi-Fi and transmit and receive energy, messages, frequencies or impulses. 'Just imagine you're getting this new substance in you and it can react to things all around you, the 5G, your smart device, your phones.' We had something completely foreign in the human body that had never been launched large scale at a time when we were seeing 5G going into schools and hospitals (plus the Musk satellites) and she believed the 'vaccine' transmission had something to do with this: '... if these people have this inside of them ... it can act like an antenna and actually transmit it outwardly as well.' The synthetic substance produced its own voltage and so it could have that kind of effect. This fits with my own contention that the nano receiver-transmitters are designed to connect people to the

Smart Grid and break the receiver-transmitter connection to expanded consciousness. That would explain the French energy healer's experience of the disconnection of body from 'soul' with those who have had the 'vaccine'. The nanobots, self-replicating inside the body, would also transmit the synthetic frequency which could be picked up through close interaction by those who have not been 'vaccinated'. Madej speculated that perhaps it was 5G and increased levels of other radiation that was causing the symptoms directly although interestingly she said that non-'vaccinated' patients had shown improvement when they were away from the 'vaccinated' person they had interacted with. It must be remembered that you can control frequency and energy with your mind and you can consciously create energetic barriers or bubbles with the mind to stop damaging frequencies from penetrating your field. American paediatrician Dr Larry Palevsky said the 'vaccine' was not a 'vaccine' and was never designed to protect from a 'viral' infection. He called it 'a massive, brilliant propaganda of genocide' because they didn't have to inject everyone to get the result they wanted. He said the content of the jabs was able to infuse any material into the brain, heart, lungs, kidneys, liver, sperm and female productive system. 'This is genocide; this is a weapon of mass destruction.' At the same time American colleges were banning students from attending if they didn't have this life-changing and potentially life-ending 'vaccine'. Class action lawsuits must follow when the consequences of this college fascism come to light. As the book was going to press came reports about fertility effects on sperm in 'vaccinated' men which would absolutely fit with what I have been saying and hospitals continued to fill with 'vaccine' reactions. Another question is what about transmission via blood transfusions? The NHS has extended blood donation restrictions from seven days after a 'Covid vaccination' to 28 days after even a sore arm reaction.

I said in the spring of 2020 that the then touted 'Covid vaccine' would be ongoing each year like the flu jab. A year later Pfizer CEO, the appalling Albert Bourla, said people would 'likely' need a 'booster dose' of the 'vaccine' within 12 months of getting 'fully

'vaccinated' and then a yearly shot. 'Variants will play a key role', he said confirming the point. Johnson & Johnson CEO Alex Gorsky also took time out from his 'vaccine' disaster to say that people may need to be vaccinated against 'Covid-19' each year. UK Health Secretary, the psychopath Matt Hancock, said additional 'boosters' would be available in the autumn of 2021. This is the trap of the 'vaccine passport'. The public will have to accept every last 'vaccine' they introduce, including for the fake 'variants', or it would cease to be valid. The only other way in some cases would be continuous testing with a test not testing for the 'virus' and what is on the swabs constantly pushed up your noise towards the brain every time?

## **'Vaccines' changing behaviour**

I mentioned in the body of the book how I believed we would see gathering behaviour changes in the 'vaccinated' and I am already hearing such comments from the non-'vaccinated' describing behaviour changes in friends, loved ones and work colleagues. This will only increase as the self-replicating synthetic material and nanoparticles expand in body and brain. An article in the *Guardian* in 2016 detailed research at the University of Virginia in Charlottesville which developed a new method for controlling brain circuits associated with complex animal behaviour. The method, dubbed 'magnetogenetics', involves genetically-engineering a protein called ferritin, which stores and releases iron, to create a magnetised substance – 'Magneto' – that can activate specific groups of nerve cells from a distance. This is claimed to be an advance on other methods of brain activity manipulation known as optogenetics and chemogenetics (the Cult has been developing methods of brain control for a long time). The ferritin technique is said to be non-invasive and able to activate neurons 'rapidly and reversibly'. In other words, human thought and perception. The article said that earlier studies revealed how nerve cell proteins 'activated by heat and mechanical pressure can be genetically engineered so that they become sensitive to radio waves and magnetic fields, by attaching them to an iron-storing protein called ferritin, or to inorganic

paramagnetic particles'. Sensitive to radio waves and magnetic fields? You mean like 5G, 6G and 7G? This is the human-AI Smart Grid hive mind we are talking about. The *Guardian* article said:

... the researchers injected Magneto into the striatum of freely behaving mice, a deep brain structure containing dopamine-producing neurons that are involved in reward and motivation, and then placed the animals into an apparatus split into magnetised and non-magnetised sections.

Mice expressing Magneto spent far more time in the magnetised areas than mice that did not, because activation of the protein caused the striatal neurons expressing it to release dopamine, so that the mice found being in those areas rewarding. This shows that Magneto can remotely control the firing of neurons deep within the brain, and also control complex behaviours.

Make no mistake this basic methodology will be part of the 'Covid vaccine' cocktail and using magnetics to change brain function through electromagnetic field frequency activation. The Pentagon is developing a 'Covid vaccine' using ferritin. Magnetics would explain changes in behaviour and why videos are appearing across the Internet as I write showing how magnets stick to the skin at the point of the 'vaccine' shot. Once people take these 'vaccines' anything becomes possible in terms of brain function and illness which will be blamed on 'Covid-19' and 'variants'. Magnetic field manipulation would further explain why the non-'vaccinated' are reporting the same symptoms as the 'vaccinated' they interact with and why those symptoms are reported to decrease when not in their company. Interestingly 'Magneto', a 'mutant', is a character in the Marvel Comic *X-Men* stories with the ability to manipulate magnetic fields and he believes that mutants should fight back against their human oppressors by any means necessary. The character was born Erik Lehnsherr to a Jewish family in Germany.

## Cult-controlled courts

The European Court of Human Rights opened the door for mandatory 'Covid-19 vaccines' across the continent when it ruled in a Czech Republic dispute over childhood immunisation that legally

enforced vaccination could be ‘necessary in a democratic society’. The 17 judges decided that compulsory vaccinations did not breach human rights law. On the face of it the judgement was so inverted you gasp for air. If not having a vaccine infused into your body is not a human right then what is? Ah, but they said human rights law which has been specifically written to delete all human rights at the behest of the state (the Cult). Article 8 of the European Convention on Human Rights relates to the right to a private life. The crucial word here is ‘*except*’:

There shall be no interference by a public authority with the exercise of this right EXCEPT such as is in accordance with the law and is necessary in a democratic society in the interests of national security, public safety or the economic wellbeing of the country, for the prevention of disorder or crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others [My emphasis].

No interference *except* in accordance with the law means there *are* no ‘human rights’ *except* what EU governments decide you can have at their behest. ‘As is necessary in a democratic society’ explains that reference in the judgement and ‘in the interests of national security, public safety or the economic well-being of the country, for the prevention of disorder or crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others’ gives the EU a coach and horses to ride through ‘human rights’ and scatter them in all directions. The judiciary is not a check and balance on government extremism; it is a vehicle to enforce it. This judgement was almost laughably predictable when the last thing the Cult wanted was a decision that went against mandatory vaccination. Judges rule over and over again to benefit the system of which they are a part. Vaccination disputes that come before them are invariably delivered in favour of doctors and authorities representing the view of the state which owns the judiciary. Oh, yes, and we have even had calls to stop putting ‘Covid-19’ on death certificates within 28 days of a ‘positive test’ because it is claimed the practice makes the ‘vaccine’ appear not to work. They are laughing at you.

The scale of madness, inhumanity and things to come was highlighted when those not ‘vaccinated’ for ‘Covid’ were refused evacuation from the Caribbean island of St Vincent during massive volcanic eruptions. Cruise ships taking residents to the safety of another island allowed only the ‘vaccinated’ to board and the rest were left to their fate. Even in life and death situations like this we see ‘Covid’ stripping people of their most basic human instincts and the insanity is even more extreme when you think that fake ‘vaccine’-makers are not even claiming their body-manipulating concoctions stop ‘infection’ and ‘transmission’ of a ‘virus’ that doesn’t exist. St Vincent Prime Minister Ralph Gonsalves said: ‘The chief medical officer will be identifying the persons already vaccinated so that we can get them on the ship.’ Note again the power of the chief medical officer who, like Whitty in the UK, will be answering to the World Health Organization. This is the Cult network structure that has overridden politicians who ‘follow the science’ which means doing what WHO-controlled ‘medical officers’ and ‘science advisers’ tell them. Gonsalves even said that residents who were ‘vaccinated’ after the order so they could board the ships would still be refused entry due to possible side effects such as ‘wooziness in the head’. The good news is that if they were woozy enough in the head they could qualify to be prime minister of St Vincent.

## **Microchipping freedom**

The European judgement will be used at some point to justify moves to enforce the ‘Covid’ DNA-manipulating procedure. Sandra Ro, CEO of the Global Blockchain Business Council, told a World Economic Forum event that she hoped ‘vaccine passports’ would help to ‘drive forced consent and standardisation’ of global digital identity schemes: ‘I’m hoping with the desire and global demand for some sort of vaccine passport – so that people can get travelling and working again – [it] will drive forced consent, standardisation, and frankly, cooperation across the world.’ The lady is either not very bright, or thoroughly mendacious, to use the term ‘forced consent’.

You do not ‘consent’ if you are forced – you *submit*. She was describing what the plan has been all along and that’s to enforce a digital identity on every human without which they could not function. ‘Vaccine passports’ are opening the door and are far from the end goal. A digital identity would allow you to be tracked in everything you do in cyberspace and this is the same technique used by Cult-owned China to enforce its social credit system of total control. The ultimate ‘passport’ is planned to be a microchip as my books have warned for nearly 30 years. Those nice people at the Pentagon working for the Cult-controlled Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) claimed in April, 2021, they have developed a microchip inserted under the skin to detect ‘asymptomatic Covid-19 infection’ before it becomes an outbreak and a ‘revolutionary filter’ that can remove the ‘virus’ from the blood when attached to a dialysis machine. The only problems with this are that the ‘virus’ does not exist and people transmitting the ‘virus’ with no symptoms is brain-numbing bullshit. This is, of course, not a ruse to get people to be microchipped for very different reasons. DARPA also said it was producing a one-stop ‘vaccine’ for the ‘virus’ and all ‘variants’. One of the most sinister organisations on Planet Earth is doing this? Better have it then. These people are insane because Wetiko that possesses them is insane.

Researchers from the Salk Institute in California announced they have created an embryo that is part human and part monkey. My books going back to the 1990s have exposed experiments in top secret underground facilities in the United States where humans are being crossed with animal and non-human ‘extraterrestrial’ species. They are now easing that long-developed capability into the public arena and there is much more to come given we are dealing with psychiatric basket cases. Talking of which – Elon Musk’s scientists at Neuralink trained a monkey to play Pong and other puzzles on a computer screen using a joystick and when the monkey made the correct move a metal tube squirted banana smoothie into his mouth which is the basic technique for training humans into unquestioning compliance. Two Neuralink chips were in the monkey’s skull and

more than 2,000 wires ‘fanned out’ into its brain. Eventually the monkey played a video game purely with its brain waves. Psychopathic narcissist Musk said the ‘breakthrough’ was a step towards putting Neuralink chips into human skulls and merging minds with artificial intelligence. *Exactly.* This man is so dark and Cult to his DNA.

## **World Economic Fascism (WEF)**

The World Economic Forum is telling you the plan by the statements made at its many and various events. Cult-owned fascist YouTube CEO Susan Wojcicki spoke at the 2021 WEF Global Technology Governance Summit (see the name) in which 40 governments and 150 companies met to ensure ‘the responsible design and deployment of emerging technologies’. Orwellian translation: ‘Ensuring the design and deployment of long-planned technologies will advance the Cult agenda for control and censorship.’ Freedom-destroyer and Nuremberg-bound Wojcicki expressed support for tech platforms like hers to censor content that is ‘technically legal but could be harmful’. Who decides what is ‘harmful’? She does and they do. ‘Harmful’ will be whatever the Cult doesn’t want people to see and we have legislation proposed by the UK government that would censor content on the basis of ‘harm’ no matter if the information is fair, legal and provably true. Make that *especially* if it is fair, legal and provably true. Wojcicki called for a global coalition to be formed to enforce content moderation standards through automated censorship. This is a woman and mega-censor so self-deluded that she shamelessly accepted a ‘free expression’ award – *Wojcicki* – in an event sponsored by her own *YouTube*. They have no shame and no self-awareness.

You know that ‘Covid’ is a scam and Wojcicki a Cult operative when YouTube is censoring medical and scientific opinion purely on the grounds of whether it supports or opposes the Cult ‘Covid’ narrative. Florida governor Ron DeSantis compiled an expert panel with four professors of medicine from Harvard, Oxford, and Stanford Universities who spoke against forcing children and

vaccinated people to wear masks. They also said there was no proof that lockdowns reduced spread or death rates of 'Covid-19'. Cult-gofer Wojcicki and her YouTube deleted the panel video 'because it included content that contradicts the consensus of local and global health authorities regarding the efficacy of masks to prevent the spread of Covid-19'. This 'consensus' refers to what the Cult tells the World Health Organization to say and the WHO tells 'local health authorities' to do. Wojcicki knows this, of course. The panellists pointed out that censorship of scientific debate was responsible for deaths from many causes, but Wojcicki couldn't care less. She would not dare go against what she is told and as a disgrace to humanity she wouldn't want to anyway. The UK government is seeking to pass a fascist 'Online Safety Bill' to specifically target with massive fines and other means non-censored video and social media platforms to make them censor 'lawful but harmful' content like the Cult-owned Facebook, Twitter, Google and YouTube. What is 'lawful but harmful' would be decided by the fascist Blair-created Ofcom.

Another WEF obsession is a cyber-attack on the financial system and this is clearly what the Cult has planned to take down the bank accounts of everyone – except theirs. Those that think they have enough money for the Cult agenda not to matter to them have got a big lesson coming if they continue to ignore what is staring them in the face. The World Economic Forum, funded by Gates and fronted by Klaus Schwab, announced it would be running a 'simulation' with the Russian government and global banks of just such an attack called Cyber Polygon 2021. What they simulate – as with the 'Covid' Event 201 – they plan to instigate. The WEF is involved in a project with the Cult-owned Carnegie Endowment for International Peace called the WEF-Carnegie Cyber Policy Initiative which seeks to merge Wall Street banks, 'regulators' (I love it) and intelligence agencies to 'prevent' (arrange and allow) a cyber-attack that would bring down the global financial system as long planned by those that control the WEF and the Carnegie operation. The Carnegie Endowment for International Peace sent an instruction to First World

War US President Woodrow Wilson not to let the war end before society had been irreversibly transformed.

## **The Wuhan lab diversion**

As I close, the Cult-controlled authorities and lapdog media are systematically pushing ‘the virus was released from the Wuhan lab’ narrative. There are two versions – it happened by accident and it happened on purpose. Both are nonsense. The perceived existence of the never-shown-to-exist ‘virus’ is vital to sell the impression that there is actually an infective agent to deal with and to allow the endless potential for terrifying the population with ‘variants’ of a ‘virus’ that does not exist. The authorities at the time of writing are going with the ‘by accident’ while the alternative media is promoting the ‘on purpose’. Cable news host Tucker Carlson who has questioned aspects of lockdown and ‘vaccine’ compulsion has bought the Wuhan lab story. ‘Everyone now agrees’ he said. Well, I don’t and many others don’t and the question is *why* does the system and its media suddenly ‘agree’? When the media moves as one unit with a narrative it is always a lie – witness the hour by hour mendacity of the ‘Covid’ era. Why would this Cult-owned combination which has unleashed lies like machine gun fire suddenly ‘agree’ to tell the truth??

Much of the alternative media is buying the lie because it fits the conspiracy narrative, but it’s the *wrong* conspiracy. The real conspiracy is that *there is no virus* and that is what the Cult is desperate to hide. The idea that the ‘virus’ was released by accident is ludicrous when the whole ‘Covid’ hoax was clearly long-planned and waiting to be played out as it was so fast in accordance with the Rockefeller document and Event 201. So they prepared everything in detail over decades and then sat around strumming their fingers waiting for an ‘accidental’ release from a bio-lab? *What??* It’s crazy. Then there’s the ‘on purpose’ claim. You want to circulate a ‘deadly virus’ and hide the fact that you’ve done so and you release it down the street from the highest-level bio-lab in China? I repeat – *What??*

You would release it far from that lab to stop any association being made. But, no, we'll do it in a place where the connection was certain to be made. Why would you need to scam 'cases' and 'deaths' and pay hospitals to diagnose 'Covid-19' if you had a real 'virus'? What are sections of the alternative media doing believing this crap? Where were all the mass deaths in Wuhan from a 'deadly pathogen' when the recovery to normal life after the initial propaganda was dramatic in speed? Why isn't the 'deadly pathogen' now circulating all over China with bodies in the street? Once again we have the technique of tell them what they want to hear and they will likely believe it. The alternative media has its 'conspiracy' and with Carlson it fits with his 'China is the danger' narrative over years. China *is* a danger as a global Cult operations centre, but not for this reason. The Wuhan lab story also has the potential to instigate conflict with China when at some stage the plan is to trigger a Problem-Reaction-Solution confrontation with the West. Question everything – *everything* – and especially when the media agrees on a common party line.

### **Third wave ... fourth wave ... fifth wave ...**

As the book went into production the world was being set up for more lockdowns and a 'third wave' supported by invented 'variants' that were increasing all the time and will continue to do so in public statements and computer programs, but not in reality. India became the new Italy in the 'Covid' propaganda campaign and we were told to be frightened of the new 'Indian strain'. Somehow I couldn't find it within myself to do so. A document produced for the UK government entitled 'Summary of further modelling of easing of restrictions – Roadmap Step 2' declared that a third wave was inevitable (of course when it's in the script) and it would be the fault of children and those who refuse the health-destroying fake 'Covid vaccine'. One of the computer models involved came from the Cult-owned *Imperial College* and the other from Warwick University which I wouldn't trust to tell me the date in a calendar factory. The document states that both models presumed extremely high uptake

of the ‘Covid vaccines’ and didn’t allow for ‘variants’. The document states: ‘The resurgence is a result of some people (mostly children) being ineligible for vaccination; others choosing not to receive the vaccine; and others being vaccinated but not perfectly protected.’ The mendacity takes the breath away. Okay, blame those with a brain who won’t take the DNA-modifying shots and put more pressure on children to have it as ‘trials’ were underway involving children as young as six months with parents who give insanity a bad name. Massive pressure is being put on the young to have the fake ‘vaccine’ and child age consent limits have been systematically lowered around the world to stop parents intervening. Most extraordinary about the document was its claim that the ‘third wave’ would be driven by ‘the resurgence in both hospitalisations and deaths … dominated by *those that have received two doses of the vaccine*, comprising around 60-70% of the wave respectively’. The predicted peak of the ‘third wave’ suggested 300 deaths per day with 250 of them *fully ‘vaccinated’ people*. How many more lies do acquiescers need to be told before they see the obvious? Those who took the jab to ‘protect themselves’ are projected to be those who mostly get sick and die? So what’s in the ‘vaccine’? The document went on:

It is possible that a summer of low prevalence could be followed by substantial increases in incidence over the following autumn and winter. Low prevalence in late summer should not be taken as an indication that SARS-CoV-2 has retreated or that the population has high enough levels of immunity to prevent another wave.

They are telling you the script and while many British people believed ‘Covid’ restrictions would end in the summer of 2021 the government was preparing for them to be ongoing. Authorities were awarding contracts for ‘Covid marshals’ to police the restrictions with contracts starting in July, 2021, and going through to January 31st, 2022, and the government was advertising for ‘Media Buying Services’ to secure media propaganda slots worth a potential £320 million for ‘Covid-19 campaigns’ with a contract not ending until March, 2022. The recipient – via a list of other front companies – was reported to be American media marketing giant Omnicom Group

Inc. While money is no object for ‘Covid’ the UK waiting list for all other treatment – including life-threatening conditions – passed 4.5 million. Meantime the Cult is seeking to control all official ‘inquiries’ to block revelations about what has really been happening and why. It must not be allowed to – we need Nuremberg jury trials in every country. The cover-up doesn’t get more obvious than appointing ultra-Zionist professor Philip Zelikow to oversee two dozen US virologists, public health officials, clinicians, former government officials and four American ‘charitable foundations’ to ‘learn the lessons’ of the ‘Covid’ debacle. The personnel will be those that created and perpetuated the ‘Covid’ lies while Zelikow is the former executive director of the 9/11 Commission who ensured that the truth about those attacks never came out and produced a report that must be among the most mendacious and manipulative documents ever written – see *The Trigger* for the detailed exposure of the almost unimaginable 9/11 story in which Sabbatians can be found at every level.

## **Passive no more**

People are increasingly challenging the authorities with amazing numbers of people taking to the streets in London well beyond the ability of the Face-Nappies to stop them. Instead the Nappies choose situations away from the mass crowds to target, intimidate, and seek to promote the impression of ‘violent protestors’. One such incident happened in London’s Hyde Park. Hundreds of thousands walking through the streets in protest against ‘Covid’ fascism were ignored by the Cult-owned BBC and most of the rest of the mainstream media, but they delighted in reporting how police were injured in ‘clashes with protestors’. The truth was that a group of people gathered in Hyde Park at the end of one march when most had gone home and they were peacefully having a good time with music and chat. Face-Nappies who couldn’t deal with the full-march crowd then waded in with their batons and got more than they bargained for. Instead of just standing for this criminal brutality the crowd used their numerical superiority to push the Face-Nappies out of the

park. Eventually the Nappies turned and ran. Unfortunately two or three idiots in the crowd threw drink cans striking two officers which gave the media and the government the image they wanted to discredit the 99.9999 percent who were peaceful. The idiots walked straight into the trap and we must always be aware of potential agent provocateurs used by the authorities to discredit their targets.

This response from the crowd – the can people apart – must be a turning point when the public no longer stand by while the innocent are arrested and brutally attacked by the Face-Nappies. That doesn't mean to be violent, that's the last thing we need. We'll leave the violence to the Face-Nappies and government. But it does mean that when the Face-Nappies use violence against peaceful people the numerical superiority is employed to stop them and make citizen's arrests or Common Law arrests for a breach of the peace. The time for being passive in the face of fascism is over.

We are the many, they are the few, and we need to make that count before there is no freedom left and our children and grandchildren face an ongoing fascist nightmare.

*COME ON PEOPLE – IT'S TIME.*

### **One final thought ...**

The power of love  
A force from above  
Cleaning my soul  
Flame on burn desire  
Love with tongues of fire  
Purge the soul  
Make love your goal

I'll protect you from the hooded claw  
Keep the vampires from your door  
When the chips are down I'll be around  
With my undying, death-defying  
Love for you

Envy will hurt itself  
Let yourself be beautiful  
Sparkling love, flowers  
And pearls and pretty girls  
Love is like an energy  
Rushin' rushin' inside of me

This time we go sublime  
Lovers entwine, divine, divine,  
Love is danger, love is pleasure  
Love is pure – the only treasure

I'm so in love with you  
Purge the soul  
Make love your goal

The power of love  
A force from above  
Cleaning my soul  
The power of love  
A force from above  
A sky-scraping dove

Flame on burn desire  
Love with tongues of fire  
Purge the soul  
Make love your goal

**Frankie Goes To Hollywood**

## APPENDIX

### Cowan-Kaufman-Morell Statement on Virus Isolation (SOVI)

*Isolation: The action of isolating; the fact or condition of being isolated or standing alone; separation from other things or persons; solitariness*

Oxford English Dictionary

The controversy over whether the SARS-CoV-2 virus has ever been isolated or purified continues. However, using the above definition, common sense, the laws of logic and the dictates of science, any unbiased person must come to the conclusion that the SARS-CoV-2 virus has never been isolated or purified. As a result, no confirmation of the virus' existence can be found. The logical, common sense, and scientific consequences of this fact are:

- the structure and composition of something not shown to exist can't be known, including the presence, structure, and function of any hypothetical spike or other proteins;
- the genetic sequence of something that has never been found can't be known;
- "variants" of something that hasn't been shown to exist can't be known;
- it's impossible to demonstrate that SARS-CoV-2 causes a disease called Covid-19.

In as concise terms as possible, here's the proper way to isolate, characterize and demonstrate a new virus. First, one takes samples (blood, sputum, secretions) from many people (e.g. 500) with symptoms which are unique and specific enough to characterize an illness. Without mixing these samples with ANY tissue or products that also contain genetic material, the virologist macerates, filters and ultracentrifuges i.e. *purifies* the specimen. This common virology technique, done for decades to isolate bacteriophages<sup>1</sup> and so-called giant viruses in every virology lab, then allows the virologist to demonstrate with electron microscopy thousands of identically sized and shaped particles. These particles are the isolated and purified virus.

These identical particles are then checked for uniformity by physical and/or microscopic techniques. Once the purity is determined, the particles may be further characterized. This would include examining the structure, morphology, and chemical composition of the particles. Next, their genetic makeup is characterized by extracting the genetic material directly from the purified particles and using genetic-sequencing techniques, such as Sanger sequencing, that have also been around for decades. Then one does an analysis to confirm that these uniform particles are exogenous (outside) in origin as a virus is conceptualized to be, and not the normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues.<sup>2</sup> (As of May 2020, we know that virologists have no way to determine whether the particles they're seeing are viruses or just normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues.)<sup>3</sup>

---

1 Isolation, characterization and analysis of bacteriophages from the haloalkaline lake Elmenteita, KenyaJuliah Khayeli Akhwale et al, PLOS One, Published: April 25, 2019.  
<https://journals.plos.org/plosone/article?id=10.1371/journal.pone.0215734> – accessed 2/15/21

2 "Extracellular Vesicles Derived From Apoptotic Cells: An Essential Link Between Death and Regeneration," Maojiao Li et al, Frontiers in Cell and Developmental Biology, 2020 October 2.  
<https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fcell.2020.573511/full> – accessed 2/15/21

---

3 "The Role of Extracellular Vesicles as Allies of HIV, HCV and SARS Viruses," Flavia Giannessi, et al, *Viruses*, 2020 May

If we have come this far then we have fully isolated, characterized, and genetically sequenced an exogenous virus particle. However, we still have to show it is causally related to a disease. This is carried out by exposing a group of healthy subjects (animals are usually used) to this isolated, purified virus in the manner in which the disease is thought to be transmitted. If the animals get sick with the same disease, as confirmed by clinical and autopsy findings, one has now shown that the virus actually causes a disease. This demonstrates infectivity and transmission of an infectious agent.

None of these steps has even been attempted with the SARS-CoV-2 virus, nor have all these steps been successfully performed for any so-called pathogenic virus. Our research indicates that a single study showing these steps does not exist in the medical literature.

Instead, since 1954, virologists have taken unpurified samples from a relatively few people, often less than ten, with a similar disease. They then minimally process this sample and inoculate this unpurified sample onto tissue culture containing usually four to six other types of material – all of which contain identical genetic material as to what is called a “virus.” The tissue culture is starved and poisoned and naturally disintegrates into many types of particles, some of which contain genetic material. Against all common sense, logic, use of the English language and scientific integrity, this process is called “virus isolation.” This brew containing fragments of genetic material from many sources is then subjected to genetic analysis, which then creates in a computer-simulation process the alleged sequence of the alleged virus, a so-called *in silico* genome. At no time is an actual virus confirmed by electron microscopy. At no time is a genome extracted and sequenced from an actual virus. This is scientific fraud.

The observation that the unpurified specimen — inoculated onto tissue culture along with toxic antibiotics, bovine fetal tissue, amniotic fluid and other tissues — destroys the kidney tissue onto which it is inoculated is given as evidence of the virus' existence and pathogenicity. This is scientific fraud.

From now on, when anyone gives you a paper that suggests the SARS-CoV-2 virus has been isolated, please check the methods sections. If the researchers used Vero cells or any other culture method, you know that their process was not isolation. You will hear the following excuses for why actual isolation isn't done:

1. There were not enough virus particles found in samples from patients to analyze.
2. Viruses are intracellular parasites; they can't be found outside the cell in this manner.

If No. 1 is correct, and we can't find the virus in the sputum of sick people, then on what evidence do we think the virus is dangerous or even lethal? If No. 2 is correct, then how is the virus spread from person to person? We are told it emerges from the cell to infect others. Then why isn't it possible to find it?

Finally, questioning these virology techniques and conclusions is not some distraction or divisive issue. Shining the light on this truth is essential to stop this terrible fraud that humanity is confronting. For, as we now know, if the virus has never been isolated, sequenced or shown to cause illness, if the virus is imaginary, then why are we wearing masks, social distancing and putting the whole world into prison?

Finally, if pathogenic viruses don't exist, then what is going into those injectable devices erroneously called "vaccines," and what is their purpose? This scientific question is the most urgent and relevant one of our time.

We are correct. The SARS-CoV2 virus does not exist.

Sally Fallon Morell, MA

Dr. Thomas Cowan, MD

Dr. Andrew Kaufman, MD

# Bibliography

- Alinsky, Saul:** *Rules for Radicals* (Vintage, 1989)
- Antelman, Rabbi Marvin:** *To Eliminate the Opiate* (Zahavia, 1974)
- Bastardi, Joe:** *The Climate Chronicles* (Relentless Thunder Press, 2018)
- Cowan, Tom:** *Human Heart, Cosmic Heart* (Chelsea Green Publishing, 2016)
- Cowan, Tom, and Fallon Morell, Sally:** *The Contagion Myth* (Skyhorse Publishing, 2020)
- Forbes, Jack D:** *Columbus And Other Cannibals – The Wetiko Disease of Exploitation, Imperialism, and Terrorism* (Seven Stories Press, 2008 – originally published in 1979)
- Gates, Bill:** *How to Avoid a Climate Disaster: The Solutions We Have and the Breakthroughs We Need* (Allen Lane, 2021)
- Huxley, Aldous:** *Brave New World* (Chatto & Windus, 1932)
- Köhnlein, Dr Claus, and Engelbrecht, Torsten:** *Virus Mania* (emu-Vertag, Lahnstein, 2020)
- Lanza, Robert, and Berman, Bob:** *Biocentrism* (BenBella Books, 2010)
- Lash, John Lamb:** *Not In His Image* (Chelsea Green Publishing, 2006)
- Lester, Dawn, and Parker, David:** *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong* (Independently Published, 2019)
- Levy, Paul:** *Dispelling Wetiko, Breaking the Spell of Evil* (North Atlantic Books, 2013)
- Marx, Karl:** *A World Without Jews* (Philosophical Library, first edition, 1959)
- Mullis, Kary:** *Dancing Naked in the Mine Field* (Bloomsbury, 1999)
- O'Brien, Cathy:** *Trance-Formation of America* (Reality Marketing, 1995)
- Scholem, Gershon:** *The Messianic Idea in Judaism* (Schocken Books, 1994)
- Schwab, Klaus, and Davis, Nicholas:** *Shaping the Future of the Fourth Industrial Revolution: A guide to building a better world* (Penguin Books, 2018)
- Schwab, Klaus:** *The Great Reset* (Agentur Schweiz, 2020)
- Sunstein, Cass and Thaler, Richard:** *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness* (Penguin, 2009)
- Swan, Shanna:** *Count Down: How Our Modern World Is Threatening Sperm Counts, Altering Male and Female Reproductive Development and Imperiling the Future of the Human Race* (Scribner, 2021)
- Tegmark, Max:** *Our Mathematical Universe: My Quest for the Ultimate Nature of Reality* (Penguin, 2015)
- Velikovsky, Immanuel:** *Worlds in Collision* (Paradigma, 2009)

**Wilton, Robert:** *The Last Days of the Romanovs* (Blurb, 2018, first published 1920)

# **Index**

## **A**

### **abusive relationships**

blaming themselves, abused as [ref1](#)  
children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)  
conspiracy theories [ref1](#)  
domestic abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
economic abuse and dependency [ref1](#)  
isolation [ref1](#)  
physical abuse [ref1](#)  
psychological abuse [ref1](#)  
signs of abuse [ref1](#)

### **addiction**

alcoholism [ref1](#)  
frequencies [ref1](#)  
substance abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
technology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

### **Adelson, Sheldon** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

### **Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 (UN)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

### **AIDs/HIV** [ref1](#)

causal link between HIV and AIDs [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
retroviruses [ref1](#)  
testing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
trial-run for Covid-19, as [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**aliens/extraterrestrials** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**aluminium** [ref1](#)  
**Amazon** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**amplification cycles** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**anaphylactic shock** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**animals** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**antibodies** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**Antifa** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**antigens** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**anti-Semitism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Archons** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    energy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    ennoia [ref1](#)  
    genetic manipulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    inversion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    lockdowns [ref1](#)  
    money [ref1](#)  
    radiation [ref1](#)  
    religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    technology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**artificial intelligence (AI)** [ref1](#)  
**army made up of robots** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Internet [ref1](#)  
    MHRA [ref1](#)  
    Morgellons fibres [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Smart Grid [ref1](#)  
    Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
**asymptomatic, Covid-19 as** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**aviation industry** [ref1](#)

## B

**banking, finance and money** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

2008 crisis [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

boom and bust [ref1](#)

cashless digital money systems [ref1](#)

central banks [ref1](#)

credit [ref1](#)

digital currency [ref1](#)

fractional reserve lending [ref1](#)

Great Reset [ref1](#)

guaranteed income [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Human 2.0 [ref1](#)

incomes, destruction of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

interest [ref1](#)

one per cent [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

scams [ref1](#)

**BBC** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**Becker-Phelps, Leslie** [ref1](#)

**Behavioural Insights Team (BIT) (Nudge Unit)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**behavioural scientists and psychologists, advice from** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Bezos, Jeff** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Biden, Hunter** [ref1](#)

**Biden, Joe** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#),  
[ref12](#), [ref13](#), [ref14](#), [ref15](#), [ref16](#), [ref17](#)

**Big Pharma**

cholesterol [ref1](#)

health professionals [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

immunity from prosecution in US [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#),  
[ref7](#)

**billionaires** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#) [ref10](#), [ref11](#)  
**bird flu (H5N1)** [ref1](#)  
**Black Lives Matter (BLM)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**Blair, Tony** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**Brin, Sergei** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**British Empire** [ref1](#)  
**Bush, George HW** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Bush, George W** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Byrd, Robert** [ref1](#)

## C

### **Canada**

Global Cult [ref1](#)  
hate speech [ref1](#)  
internment [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
old people [ref1](#)  
SARS-COV-2 [ref1](#)  
satellites [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
wearable technology [ref1](#)

**Capitol Hill riot** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
agents provocateur [ref1](#)  
Antifa [ref1](#)  
Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**QAnon** [ref1](#)  
security precautions, lack of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**carbon dioxide** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**care homes, deaths in** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**cashless digital money systems** [ref1](#)  
**censorship** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

fact-checkers [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
private messages [ref1](#)  
social media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
transgender persons [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#)

**Centers for Disease Control (CDC) (United States)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#), [ref13](#)

**centralisation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**chakras** [ref1](#)

**change agents** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**chemtrails** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**chief medical officers and scientific advisers** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**children** *see also young people*

abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

care, taken into [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

education [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

energy [ref1](#)

family courts [ref1](#)

hand sanitisers [ref1](#)

human sacrifice [ref1](#)

lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

mental health [ref1](#)

old people [ref1](#)

parents, replacement of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

reframing [ref1](#)

smartphone addiction [ref1](#)

social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)  
social media [ref1](#)  
transgender persons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
United States [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

**China** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
anal swab tests [ref1](#)  
**Chinese Revolution** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
digital currency [ref1](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
guaranteed income [ref1](#)  
Imperial College [ref1](#)  
Israel [ref1](#)  
lockdown [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
masculinity crisis [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
media [ref1](#)  
origins of virus in China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
pollution causing respiratory diseases [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Smart Grid [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
social credit system [ref1](#)  
testing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
wet market conspiracy [ref1](#)  
**Wuhan** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**cholesterol** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Christianity** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
criticism [ref1](#)  
cross, inversion of the [ref1](#)

Nag Hammadi texts [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Roman Catholic Church [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Satan [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#)

**class** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**climate change hoax** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

carbon dioxide [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Club of Rome [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

fear [ref1](#)

funding [ref1](#)

Global Cult [ref1](#)

green new deals [ref1](#)

green parties [ref1](#)

inversion [ref1](#)

perception, control of [ref1](#)

PICC [ref1](#)

reframing [ref1](#)

temperature, increases in [ref1](#)

United Nations [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Wikipedia [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Clinton, Bill** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**Clinton, Hillary** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**the cloud** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**Club of Rome and climate change hoax** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

cognitive therapy [ref1](#)

**Cohn, Roy** [ref1](#)

**Common Law** [ref1](#)

Admiralty Law [ref1](#)

arrests [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

contractual law, Statute Law as [ref1](#)  
corporate entities, people as [ref1](#)  
legalese [ref1](#)  
*sea, law of the* [ref1](#)  
Statute Law [ref1](#)

**Common Purpose** leadership programme [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**communism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**co-morbidities** [ref1](#)  
**computer-generated virus**,  
**Covid-19** as [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**computer models** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**connections** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**consciousness** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
expanded [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
experience [ref1](#)  
heart [ref1](#)  
infinity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
self-identity [ref1](#)  
simulation thesis [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**conspiracy theorists** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**contradictory rules** [ref1](#)  
**contrails** [ref1](#)  
**Corman-Drosten test** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**countermimicry** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Covid-19 vaccines** *see* vaccines  
**Covidiots** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Cowan, Tom** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**crimes against humanity** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**cyber-operations** [ref1](#)

**cyberwarfare** [ref1](#)

## D

**DARPA (Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency)** [ref1](#)

**deaths**

care homes [ref1](#)

certificates [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

mortality rate [ref1](#)

post-mortems/autopsies [ref1](#)

recording [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**deceit**

pyramid of deceit [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

sequence of deceit [ref1](#)

**decoding** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**dehumanisation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Delphi technique** [ref1](#)

**democracy** [ref1](#)

**dependency** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Descartes, René** [ref1](#)

**DNA**

numbers [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

**DNR (do not resuscitate)**

orders [ref1](#)

**domestic abuse** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**downgrading of Covid-19** [ref1](#)

**Drosten, Christian** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**Duesberg, Peter** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## **E**

**economic abuse** [ref1](#)

**Edmunds, John** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**education** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**electromagnetic spectrum** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Enders, John** [ref1](#)

**energy**

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

children and young people [ref1](#)

consciousness [ref1](#)

decoding [ref1](#)

frequencies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

heart [ref1](#)

human energy field [ref1](#)

source, humans as an energy [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#)

viruses [ref1](#)

**ennoia** [ref1](#)

**Epstein, Jeffrey** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**eternal 'I'** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**ethylene oxide** [ref1](#)

**European Union** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Event** [ref1](#) and Bill Gates [ref2](#)

**exosomes**, Covid-19 as natural defence mechanism called [ref1](#)

**experience** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Extinction Rebellion** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## **F**

**Facebook**

addiction [ref1](#), 448–50

Facebook

Archons [ref1](#)  
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
hate speech [ref1](#)  
monopoly, as [ref1](#)  
private messages, censorship of [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#)  
United States election fraud [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

**fact-checkers** [ref1](#)

**Fauci, Anthony** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#),  
[ref11](#), [ref12](#)

**fear** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
climate change [ref1](#)  
computer models [ref1](#)  
conspiracy theories [ref1](#)  
empty hospitals [ref1](#)  
Italy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
medical staff [ref1](#)  
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**female infertility** [ref1](#)

**Fermi Paradox** [ref1](#)

**Ferguson, Neil** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**fertility, decline in** [ref1](#)

**The Field** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**finance** *see banking, finance and money*

**five-senses** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

censorship [ref1](#)  
consciousness, expansion of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
decoding [ref1](#)  
education [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
the Field [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
God, personification of [ref1](#)  
infinity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
media [ref1](#)  
paranormal [ref1](#)  
perceptual programming [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Phantom Self [ref1](#)  
pneuma not nous, using [ref1](#)  
reincarnation [ref1](#)  
self-identity [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
**5G** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
**Floyd, George and protests, killing of** [ref1](#)  
**flu, re-labelling of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**food and water, control of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Freemasons** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
**Frei, Rosemary** [ref1](#)  
**frequencies**  
addictions [ref1](#)  
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
awareness [ref1](#)  
chanting and mantras [ref1](#)  
consciousness [ref1](#)  
decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
education [ref1](#)  
electromagnetic (EMF) frequencies [ref1](#)  
energy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
fear [ref1](#)

the Field [ref1](#), [ref2](#) 5G [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)  
five-senses [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
ghosts [ref1](#)  
Gnostics [ref1](#)  
hive-minds [ref1](#)  
human, meaning of [ref1](#)  
light [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
love [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
magnetism [ref1](#)  
perception [ref1](#)  
reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
simulation [ref1](#)  
terror [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Fuellmich, Reiner** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**furlough/rescue payments** [ref1](#)

## G

**Gallo, Robert** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Gates, Bill**

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Daily Pass tracking system [ref1](#)  
Epstein [ref1](#)  
fascism [ref1](#)  
five senses [ref1](#)  
GAVI [ref1](#)  
Great Reset [ref1](#)  
GSK [ref1](#)  
Imperial College [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Johns Hopkins University [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

masks [ref1](#)

Nuremberg trial, proposal for [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Rockefellers [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)

Sun, dimming the [ref1](#)

synthetic meat [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

Wellcome Trust [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#)

World Economic Forum [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Gates, Melinda** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**GAVI vaccine alliance** [ref1](#)

**genetics, manipulation of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Germany** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#) *see also Nazi Germany*

**Global Cult** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

anti-human, why Global Cult is [ref1](#)

Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)

climate change hoax [ref1](#)

contradictory rules [ref1](#)

Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

fascism [ref1](#)

geographical origins [ref1](#)

immigration [ref1](#)

Internet [ref1](#)

mainstream media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

monarchy [ref1](#)

non-human dimension [ref1](#)

perception [ref1](#)  
political parties [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
pyramidal hierarchy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
reframing [ref1](#)  
Sabbantian-Frankism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
science, manipulation of [ref1](#)  
spider and the web [ref1](#)  
transgender persons [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
who controls the Cult [ref1](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**globalisation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Gnostics** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Google** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**government**

- behavioural scientists and psychologists, advice from [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- definition [ref1](#)
- Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) [ref1](#)
- people, abusive relationship with [ref1](#)

**Great Reset** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

- fascism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
- financial system [ref1](#)
- Human 2.0 [ref1](#)
- water and food, control of [ref1](#)

**green parties** [ref1](#)

**Griesz-Brisson, Margarite** [ref1](#)

**guaranteed income** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

## H

**Hancock, Matt** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**hand sanitisers** [ref1](#)

**heart** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**hive-minds/groupthink** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**holographs** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**hospitals, empty** [ref1](#)

**human, meaning of** [ref1](#)

**Human 2.0** [ref1](#)

addiction to technology [ref1](#)

artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

elimination of Human 1.0 [ref1](#)

fertility, decline in [ref1](#)

Great Reset [ref1](#)

implantables [ref1](#)

money [ref1](#)

mRNA [ref1](#)

nanotechnology [ref1](#)

parents, replacement of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Smart Grid, connection to [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

synthetic biology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

testosterone levels, decrease in [ref1](#)

transgender = transhumanism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**human sacrifice** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Hunger Games Society** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**Huxley, Aldous** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

## I

**identity politics** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Illuminati** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**illusory physical reality** [ref1](#)

**immigration** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Imperial College** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**implantables** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**incomes, destruction of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Infinite Awareness** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Internet** [ref1](#), [ref2](#) *see also* social media  
    artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)  
    independent journalism, lack of [ref1](#)  
    Internet of Bodies (IoB) [ref1](#)

**Internet of Everything (IoE)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Internet of Things (IoT)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**lockdowns** [ref1](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)  
    trolls [ref1](#)

**intersectionality** [ref1](#)

**inversion**  
    Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    climate change hoax [ref1](#)  
    energy [ref1](#)  
    Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    symbolism [ref1](#)  
    Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
    Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Islam**  
    Archons [ref1](#)  
    crypto-Jews [ref1](#)  
    Islamic State [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Jinn and Djinn [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    Ottoman Empire [ref1](#)  
    Wahhabism [ref1](#)

**isolation** *see* **social distancing and isolation**

**Israel**  
    China [ref1](#)  
    Cyber Intelligence Unit Beersheba complex [ref1](#)  
    expansion of illegal settlements [ref1](#)

formation [ref1](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#)  
Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
medical experiments, consent for [ref1](#)  
Mossad [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Palestine-Israel conflict [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
parents, replacement of [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States [ref1](#)  
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)  
Smart Grid [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

## **Italy**

fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Lombardy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)

## **J**

Johns Hopkins University [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
Johnson, Boris [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) [ref1](#)

## **Judaism**

anti-Semitism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
crypto-Jews [ref1](#)  
inversion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Labour Party [ref1](#)  
Nazi Germany [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Silicon Valley [ref1](#)  
Torah [ref1](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Zionists [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

## K

**Kaufman, Andrew** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**knowledge** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
**Koch's postulates** [ref1](#)  
**Kurzweil, Ray** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**Kushner, Jared** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## L

**Labour Party** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Lanka, Stefan** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Lateral Flow Device (LFD)** [ref1](#)  
**Levy, Paul** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Life Program** [ref1](#)  
**lockdowns** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    amplification tampering [ref1](#)  
    Archons [ref1](#)  
    Behavioural Insights Team [ref1](#)  
    Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#)  
    care homes, deaths in [ref1](#)  
    children  
    abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    mental health [ref1](#)  
    China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    computer models [ref1](#)  
    consequences [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    dependency [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

domestic abuse [ref1](#)  
fall in cases [ref1](#)  
fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
guaranteed income [ref1](#)  
Hunger Games Society [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
interaction, destroying [ref1](#)  
Internet [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
overdoses [ref1](#)  
perception [ref1](#)  
police-military state [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
protests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
psychopathic personality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
reporting/snitching, encouragement of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
testing [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
WHO [ref1](#)  
**love** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Lucifer** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

## M

**Madej, Carrie** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Magufuli, John** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**mainstream media** [ref1](#)  
BBC [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
China [ref1](#)  
climate change hoax [ref1](#)  
fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
independent journalism, lack of [ref1](#)  
Ofcom [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
social disapproval [ref1](#)  
social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Mao Zedong** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Marx and Marxism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**masculinity** [ref1](#)

**masks/face coverings** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

censorship [ref1](#)

children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

China, made in [ref1](#)

dehumanisation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

flu [ref1](#)

health professionals [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

isolation [ref1](#)

laughter [ref1](#)

**mass non-cooperation** [ref1](#)

**microplastics, risk of** [ref1](#)

**mind control** [ref1](#)

**multiple masks** [ref1](#)

oxygen deficiency [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

police [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

pollution, as cause of plastic [ref1](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)

reframing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

risk assessments, lack of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

self-respect [ref1](#)

surgeons [ref1](#)

United States [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
'worms' [ref1](#)  
*The Matrix* movies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
measles [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
media see mainstream media  
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)  
[ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Mesopotamia** [ref1](#)  
**messaging** [ref1](#)  
**military-police state** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**mind control** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#) *see also MKUltra*  
**MKUltra** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**monarchy** [ref1](#)  
**money** *see banking, finance and money*  
**Montagnier, Luc** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Mooney, Bel** [ref1](#)  
**Morgellons disease** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**mortality rate** [ref1](#)  
**Mullis, Kary** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Musk, Elon** [ref1](#)

## N

**Nag Hammadi texts** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**nanotechnology** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**narcissism** [ref1](#)  
**Nazi Germany** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
**near-death experiences** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Neocons** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP) and the Delphi technique**  
[ref1](#)

**NHS (National Health Service)**

amplification cycles [ref1](#)

Common Purpose [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

mind control [ref1](#)

**NHS England** [ref1](#)

saving the NHS [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

whistle-blowers [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**No-Problem-Reaction-Solution** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**non-human dimension of Global Cult** [ref1](#)

**nous** [ref1](#)

**numbers, reality as** [ref1](#)

**Nuremberg Codes** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Nuremberg-like tribunal, proposal for** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#),  
[ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)

## Ø

**Obama, Barack** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

**O'Brien, Cathy** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Ochel, Evita** [ref1](#)

**Ofcom** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**old people** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Oneness** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Open Society Foundations (Soros)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**oxygen** 406, 528–34

## P

**paedophilia** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Page, Larry** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**Palestine-Israel conflict** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**pandemic, definition of** [ref1](#)

**pandemic and health crisis scenarios/simulations** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**paranormal** [ref1](#)

**PCR tests** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**Pearl Harbor attacks, prior knowledge of** [ref1](#)

**Pelosi, Nancy** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**perception** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

- climate change hoax [ref1](#)
- control [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
- decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- enslavement [ref1](#)
- externally-delivered perceptions [ref1](#)
- five senses [ref1](#)
- human labels [ref1](#)
- media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- political parties [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)
- sale of perception [ref1](#)
- self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- Wokeness [ref1](#)

**Phantom Self** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**pharmaceutical industry** *see* **Big Pharma**

**phthalates** [ref1](#)

**Plato's Allegory of the Cave** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**pneuma** [ref1](#)

**police**

- Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#)
- brutality [ref1](#)
- citizen's arrests [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- common law arrests [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Common Purpose [ref1](#)  
defunding [ref1](#)  
lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
police-military state [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
psychopathic personality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
reframing [ref1](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#)

**polio** [ref1](#)

**political correctness** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**political parties** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**political puppets** [ref1](#)

**pollution** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**post-mortems/autopsies** [ref1](#)

**Postage Stamp Consensus** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**pre-emptive programming** [ref1](#)

**Problem-Reaction-Solution** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**Project for the New American Century** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**psychopathic personality** [ref1](#)

- Archons [ref1](#)
- heart energy [ref1](#)
- lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
- police [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
- recruitment [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- vaccines [ref1](#)
- wealth [ref1](#)
- Wetiko [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#),  
[ref5](#)

**Pushbackers** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**pyramid structure** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

## **Q**

**QAnon Psyop** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

## **R**

**racism** *see also* **Black Lives**

Matter (BLM)

anti-racism industry [ref1](#)

class [ref1](#)

critical race theory [ref1](#)

culture [ref1](#)

intersectionality [ref1](#)

reverse racism [ref1](#)

white privilege [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

white supremacy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**radiation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**randomness, illusion of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**reality** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**reframing** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

change agents [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

children [ref1](#)

climate change [ref1](#)

Common Purpose leadership programme [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

contradictory rules [ref1](#)

enforcers [ref1](#)

masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

NLP and the Delphi technique [ref1](#)

police [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**religion** *see also* particular religions

alien invasions [ref1](#)

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
control, system of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
criticism, prohibition on [ref1](#)  
five senses [ref1](#)  
good and evil, war between [ref1](#)  
hidden non-human forces [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#)  
save me syndrome [ref1](#)  
Wetiko [ref1](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#)  
**repetition and mind control** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**reporting/snitching, encouragement of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Reptilians/Grey entities** [ref1](#)  
**rewiring the mind** [ref1](#)  
**Rivers, Thomas Milton** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Rockefeller family** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
**Rockefeller Foundation documents** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Roman Empire** [ref1](#)  
**Rothschild family** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
**RT-PCR tests** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
**Russia**  
    collusion inquiry in US [ref1](#)  
**Russian Revolution** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#)

## §

**Sabbantian-Frankism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    anti-Semitism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    banking and finance [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Lucifer [ref1](#)

media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Nazis [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

QAnon [ref1](#)

Rothschilds [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

Russia [ref1](#)

Saudi Arabia [ref1](#)

Silicon Valley [ref1](#)

Sumer [ref1](#)

United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**SAGE (Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#),  
[ref4](#)

**SARS-1** [ref1](#)

**SARs-CoV-2** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**Satan/Satanism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**satellites in low-orbit** [ref1](#)

**Saudi Arabia** [ref1](#)

**Save Me Syndrome** [ref1](#)

**scapegoating** [ref1](#)

**Schwab, Klaus** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#),  
[ref11](#), [ref12](#)

**science, manipulation of** [ref1](#)

**self-identity** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**self-respect, attacks on** [ref1](#)

**September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States** [ref1](#), [ref2](#),  
[ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**77th Brigade of UK military** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Silicon Valley/tech giants** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#) *see also*  
Facebook

Israel [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#)  
technocracy [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#)  
**simulation hypothesis** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**Smart Grid** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)  
China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
control centres [ref1](#)  
the Field [ref1](#)  
Great Reset [ref1](#)  
Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
**social disapproval** [ref1](#)  
**social distancing and isolation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
abusive relationships [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
children [ref1](#)  
flats and apartments [ref1](#)  
heart issues [ref1](#)  
hugs [ref1](#)  
Internet [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
media [ref1](#)  
older people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
one-metre (three feet) rule [ref1](#)  
rewiring the mind [ref1](#)  
**simulation, universe as a** [ref1](#)  
**SPI-B** [ref1](#)  
substance abuse [ref1](#)

suicide and self-harm [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
technology [ref1](#)  
torture, as [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
two-metre (six feet) rule [ref1](#)  
women [ref1](#)

**social justice** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**social media** *see also Facebook bans on alternative views* [ref1](#)  
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
children [ref1](#)  
emotion [ref1](#)  
perception [ref1](#)  
private messages [ref1](#)  
Twitter [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
YouTube [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Soros, George** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**Spain** [ref1](#)

**SPI-B (Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours)** [ref1](#),  
[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**spider and the web** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Starmer, Keir** [ref1](#)

**Statute Law** [ref1](#)

**Steiner, Rudolf** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Stockholm syndrome** [ref1](#)

**streptomycin** [ref1](#)

**suicide and self-harm** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Sumer** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Sunstein, Cass** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**swine flu (H1N1)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**synchronicity** [ref1](#)

**synthetic biology** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**synthetic meat** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

# T

**technology** *see also* **artificial intelligence (AI); Internet; social media addiction** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Archons** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**the cloud** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**cyber-operations** [ref1](#)  
**cyberwarfare** [ref1](#)  
**radiation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**social distancing and isolation** [ref1](#)  
**technocracy** [ref1](#)

**Tedros Adhanom Ghebreyesus** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#),  
[ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#), [ref13](#)

**telepathy** [ref1](#)

**Tenpenny, Sherri** [ref1](#)

**Tesla, Nikola** [ref1](#)

**testosterone levels, decrease in** [ref1](#)

**testing for Covid-19** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    anal swab tests [ref1](#)  
    cancer [ref1](#)  
    China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    Corman-Drosten test [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
    death certificates [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    fraudulent testing [ref1](#)  
    genetic material, amplification of [ref1](#)  
    Lateral Flow Device (LFD) [ref1](#)  
    PCR tests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
    vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Thunberg, Greta** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Totalitarian Tiptoe** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**transgender persons**  
    activism [ref1](#)  
    artificial wombs [ref1](#)

censorship [ref1](#)  
child abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
women, deletion of rights and status of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
young persons [ref1](#)  
**travel restrictions** [ref1](#)  
**Trudeau, Justin** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Trump, Donald** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#),  
[ref11](#)  
**Twitter** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

## U

**UKColumn** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**United Nations (UN)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#) *see also Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 (UN)*  
**United States** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    American Revolution [ref1](#)  
    borders [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Capitol Hill riot [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    children [ref1](#)  
    China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    CIA [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Daily Pass tracking system [ref1](#)  
    demographics by immigration, changes in [ref1](#)  
    Democrats [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
    election fraud [ref1](#)  
    far-right domestic terrorists, pushbackers as [ref1](#)  
    Federal Reserve [ref1](#)  
    flu/respiratory diseases statistics [ref1](#)  
    Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    hand sanitisers, FDA warnings on [ref1](#)

immigration, effects of illegal [ref1](#)  
impeachment [ref1](#)  
Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
lockdown [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
mass media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
nursing homes [ref1](#)  
Pentagon [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
police [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
pushbackers [ref1](#)  
Republicans [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
borders [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Democrats [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Russia, inquiry into collusion with [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
UFO sightings, release of information on [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
white supremacy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Woke Democrats [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## V

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
adverse reactions [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Africa [ref1](#)  
anaphylactic shock [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
animals [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
anti-vax movement [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
AstraZeneca/Oxford [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
autoimmune diseases, rise in [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

bioweapon, as real [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
black and ethnic minority communities [ref1](#)  
blood clots [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Brain Computer Interface (BCI) [ref1](#)  
care homes, deaths in [ref1](#)  
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
chief medical officers and scientific advisers, financial interests of  
[ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)  
China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
clinical trials [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
compensation [ref1](#)  
compulsory vaccinations [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
computer programs [ref1](#)  
consciousness [ref1](#)  
cover-ups [ref1](#)  
creation before Covid [ref1](#)  
cytokine storm [ref1](#)  
deaths and illnesses caused by vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
definition [ref1](#)  
developing countries [ref1](#)  
digital tattoos [ref1](#)  
DNA-manipulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#),  
[ref10](#)  
emergency approval [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
female infertility [ref1](#)  
funding [ref1](#)  
genetic suicide [ref1](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#)  
heart chakras [ref1](#)  
hesitancy [ref1](#)  
Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
immunity from prosecution [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

implantable technology [ref1](#)  
Israel [ref1](#)  
Johnson & Johnson [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
lockdowns [ref1](#)  
long-term effects [ref1](#)  
mainstream media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)  
[ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
messaging [ref1](#)  
Moderna [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
mRNA vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
nanotechnology [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
NHS [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
older people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
operating system [ref1](#)  
passports [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Pfizer/BioNTech [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
polyethylene glycol [ref1](#)  
pregnant women [ref1](#)  
psychopathic personality [ref1](#)  
races, targeting different [ref1](#)  
reverse transcription [ref1](#)  
Smart Grid [ref1](#)  
social distancing [ref1](#)  
social media [ref1](#)  
sterility [ref1](#)  
synthetic material, introduction of [ref1](#)  
tests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
travel restrictions [ref1](#)  
**variants** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**viruses, existence of** [ref1](#)  
whistle-blowing [ref1](#)

WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#)  
working, vaccine as [ref1](#)  
young people [ref1](#)  
**Vallance, Patrick** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
**variants** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**vegans** [ref1](#)  
**ventilators** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**virology** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**virtual reality** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**viruses, existence of** [ref1](#)  
**visual reality** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**vitamin D** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**von Braun, Wernher** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## **W**

**war-zone hospital myths** [ref1](#)  
**waveforms** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**wealth** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#) [ref10](#), [ref11](#)  
**wet market conspiracy** [ref1](#)  
**Wetiko factor** [ref1](#)  
alcoholism and drug addiction [ref1](#)  
anti-human, why Global Cult is [ref1](#)  
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)  
Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
children [ref1](#)  
China [ref1](#)  
consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
education [ref1](#)  
Facebook [ref1](#)

fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
frequency [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Gates [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
lockdowns [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
Native American concept [ref1](#)  
psychopathic personality [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
reframing/retraining programmes [ref1](#)  
religion [ref1](#)  
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)  
Smart Grid [ref1](#)  
smartphone addiction [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
social media [ref1](#)  
war [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
WHO [ref1](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Yaldabaoth [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**whistle-blowing** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**white privilege** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**white supremacy** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**Whitty, Christopher** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#),  
[ref10](#)  
'who benefits' [ref1](#)  
**Wi-Fi** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Wikipedia** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Wojcicki, Susan** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**Wokeness**  
Antifa [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
anti-Semitism [ref1](#)  
billionaire social justice warriors [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Capitol Hill riot [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
censorship [ref1](#)  
Christianity [ref1](#)  
climate change hoax [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
culture [ref1](#)  
education, control of [ref1](#)  
emotion [ref1](#)  
facts [ref1](#)  
fascism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
group-think [ref1](#)  
immigration [ref1](#)  
indigenous people, solidarity with [ref1](#)  
inversion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
left, hijacking the [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Marxism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
mind control [ref1](#)  
New Woke [ref1](#)  
Old Woke [ref1](#)  
Oneness [ref1](#)  
perceptual programming [ref1](#)  
    Phantom Self [ref1](#)  
police [ref1](#)  
defunding the [ref1](#)  
reframing [ref1](#)  
public institutions [ref1](#)  
Pushbackers [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
racism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
reframing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
religion, as [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)  
social justice [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

transgender [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
young people [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**women, deletion of rights and status of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**World Economic Forum (WEF)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#),  
[ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
**World Health Organization (WHO)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#),  
[ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
AIDs/HIV [ref1](#)  
amplification cycles [ref1](#)  
Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
cooperation in health emergencies [ref1](#)  
creation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
fatality rate [ref1](#)  
funding [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Gates [ref1](#)  
Internet [ref1](#)  
lockdown [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Wetiko factor** [ref1](#)  
**world number 1 (masses)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**world number 2** [ref1](#)  
**Wuhan** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#) [ref8](#)

## Y

**Yaldabaoth** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
**Yeadon, Michael** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**young people** *see also children* addiction to technology [ref1](#)  
Human 2.0 [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**YouTube** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

WHO 548

## Z

**Zaks, Tal** [ref1](#)

**Zionism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Zuckerberg, Mark** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#),  
[ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)

**Zulus** [ref1](#)

# **ICKONIC**

**THE ALTERNATIVE**

Ickonic is something that has been a dream of mine for the last 5 years, growing up around alternative information I have always had a natural interest in what is going on in the World and what could I do to make it better. Across the range of subjects and positions of influence occupied mainly by people who don't strive to make things better it's the Media that I have always found the most frustrating and fascinating. Mainly because if the Media did their Jobs properly then so much of the negative things happening in the World simply would not be able to happen, because they would be exposed within a heartbeat.

Free Press and the Opportunities that the internet could have given would mean that the Media are able to expose things like never before and hold people to account for their actions. As we all know there are 'Untouchables' that walk among us, people the Media simply won't touch, expose or investigate and that leads to the dark underworlds that infest the establishment the World over. Well I say enough, it's time for something different, a different kind of Media, where no one is off limits from exposing and investigating. All we're interested in at Ickonic is the truth of what is really going on in the World on whichever subject we're covering.

We hope you enjoy what we have created and take something away from the platform, we aim to deliver information that's informative and most importantly self-empowering, you're not a little person, you're part of something much bigger than that and its time we as a collective race began to understand that and look to the future as ours to take.

It's time...

Jaymie Icke - Founder Ickonic Alternative Media.

**SIGN UP NOW AT [ICKONIC.COM](http://ICKONIC.COM)**

DAVID ICKE

# THE ANSWER



We live in extraordinary times with billions bewildered and seeking answers for what is happening. David Icke, the man who has been proved right again and again, has spent 30 years uncovering the truth behind world affairs and in a stream of previous books he predicted current events.

The Answer will change your every perception of life and the world and set you free of the illusions that control human society. There is nothing more vital for our collective freedom than humanity becoming aware of what is in this book.

**Available now at [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com).**

# THE **TRIGGER**

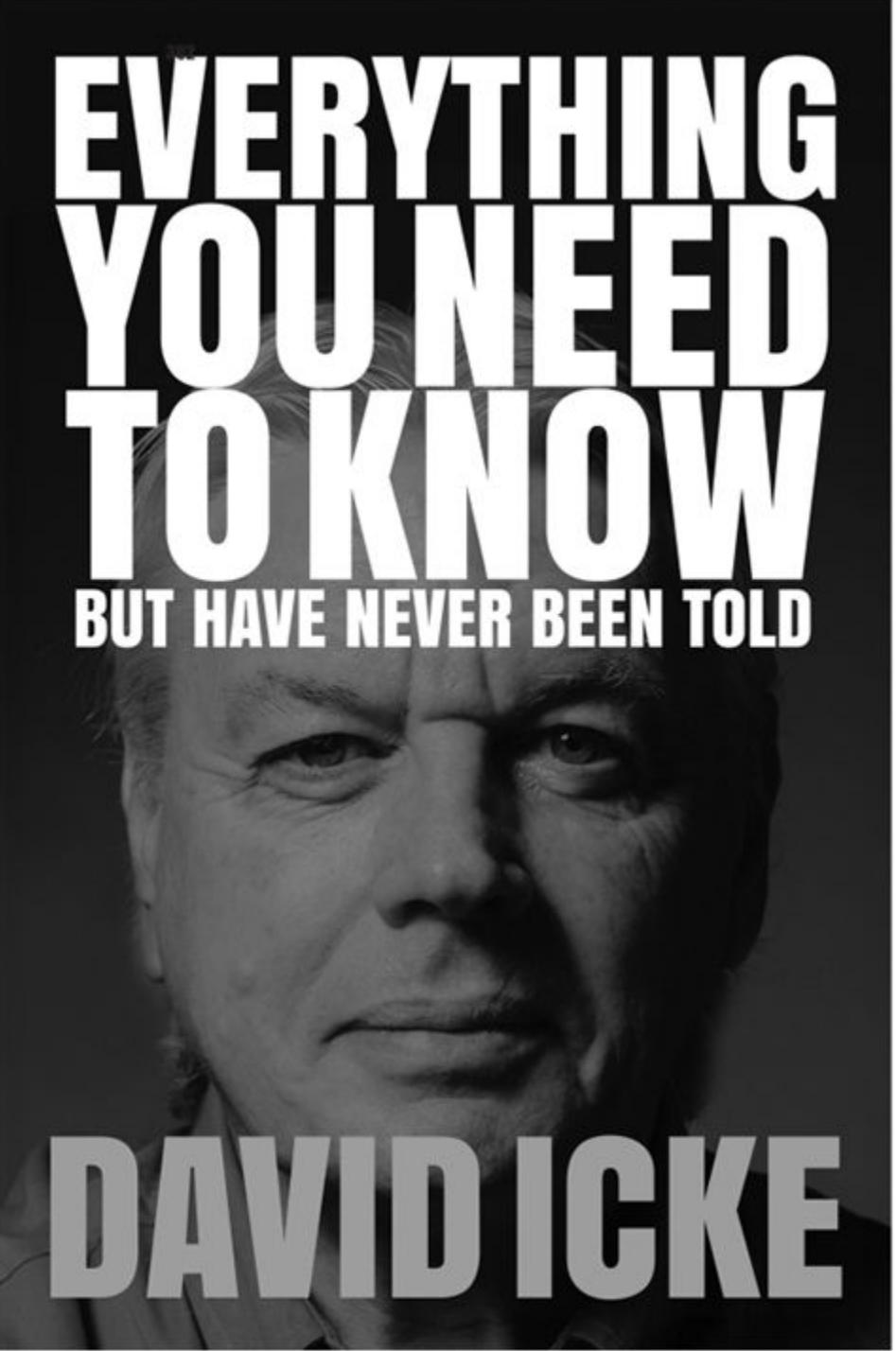
THE LIE THAT CHANGED THE WORLD  
- WHO REALLY DID IT AND WHY



**DAVID ICKE**

# **EVERYTHING YOU NEED TO KNOW**

**BUT HAVE NEVER BEEN TOLD**



**DAVID ICKE**

**DAVIDICKE.COM**



**DAVID ICKE STORE  
LATEST NEWS ARTICLES  
DAVID ICKE VIDEOS  
WEEKLY DOT-CONNECTOR PODCASTS  
LIVE EVENTS**  
**WWW.DAVIDICKE.COM**

THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE

# RENEGADE

/'ren-i,geɪd/

**noun**

A person who behaves in a rebelliously unconventional manner.

THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM



AVAILABLE NOW AT [DAVIDICKE.COM](http://DAVIDICKE.COM)

2 NEW BOOKS  
BY NEIL HAGUE

# ORION'S DOOR

SYMBOLS OF CONSCIOUSNESS & BLUEPRINTS OF CONTROL  
- THE STORY OF ORION'S INFLUENCE OVER HUMANITY

CUTTING EDGE VISIONARY ART  
& UNIQUE ILLUSTRATED BOOKS

NEIL HAGUE

FOR  
BOOKS, PRINTS & T-SHIRTS  
VISIT:  
**NEILHAGUEBOOKS.COM**  
OR **NEILHAGUE.COM**



## **Before you go ...**

For more detail, background and evidence about the subjects in *Perceptions of a Renegade Mind* – and so much more – see my others books including *And The Truth Shall Set You Free; The Biggest Secret; Children of the Matrix; The David Icke Guide to the Global Conspiracy; Tales from the Time Loop; The Perception Deception; Remember Who You Are; Human Race Get Off Your Knees; Phantom Self; Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told, The Trigger and The Answer.*

You can subscribe to the fantastic new Ickonic media platform where there are many hundreds of hours of cutting-edge information in videos, documentaries and series across a whole range of subjects which are added to every week. This includes my 90 minute breakdown of the week's news every Friday to explain *why* events are happening and to what end.